



ڈاکٹر ذاکر حسین لائبریری

**DR. ZAKIR HUSAIN LIBRARY**

JAMIA MILLIA ISLAMIA

JAMIA NAGAR

NEW DELHI

*Rave*

**CALL NO.** 750.0776 B1.2.1

**Accession No.** 44 152





# TABAḲĀT-I-NĀṢIRĪ:



**MUNSHIRAM MANOHARLAL**

ORIENTAL PUBLISHERS & BOOKSELLERS

54 RANI CHANDI ROAD, NEW DELHI 55

5, ANAND VIHAR, 44, NAL SARAK, DELHI 6

# TABAQĀT-I - NĀṢIRĪ :

A GENERAL HISTORY

OF THE

MUHAMMADAN DYNASTIES OF ASIA,

INCLUDING HINDUSTAN,

from A.H. 194 (810 A.D.) to A.H. 658 (1260 A.D.)

and the

Irruption of the Infidel Mughals into Islam

by

MAULĀNĀ. MINHĀJ-UD-DĪN. ABŪ-'UMAR-I-'USMĀN

*Translated from Original Persian Manuscripts*

by

MAJOR H G RAVERTY

VOL. II



*Oriental Books Reprint Corporation*

*Book Publishers, 54 Kala Ghara Road, New Delhi-110 072*

*Reprinted February 1970*  
FIRST PUBLISHED 1881 IN THE  
BIBLIOTHECA INDICA SERIES BY  
ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BENGAL

*Published by Mrs. Nirmal D. Jain for Oriental Book Reprint Corporation  
Post Box 1165, 54 Ram Jhansi Road, New Delhi-55 and printed by  
Mr. K. L. Sachdeva at Skylark Printers, Idgah Road New Delhi-55*

## SECTION XXII

### ACCOUNT OF THE SHAMSIAH MALIKS IN HIND

[Our author—after laying much stress on the necessity of showing due gratitude to benefactors for favours and benefits conferred by them, which necessity is clear to every well ordered mind, and which the most wise and pious men have inculcated and enjoined, for, as philosophers have said ‘They who have no gratitude for man have no gratitude for God,’ therefore returns his grateful thanks, as in duty bound—in highly-coloured terms—to the august Sultān of the Sultāns of Islām Shams-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, I-yal-timishī, and to those sovereigns, his children [and grandchildren], who have placed the foot of dignity on the throne of empire, for their manifold donations and benefactions, and also to those Maliks and Khāns, the servants of that dynasty, who have attained to the hall of their sovereignty—the arena of dominion—for their kindnesses and favours towards himself, his children, his dependents, and his followers, from the year 625 H. up to this present time which is the year 655 H. and which benefits and favours, day by day, and hour by hour, have been increasing and augmenting by the granting of offices and dignities, by gifts and benefactions, the enumeration of which cannot be contained within the limits of this abbreviated work. “I have now,” he says, “reached the point of my design,” and here I must render what he says, as nearly as possible, in his own words.]

SINCE Almighty God of His favour prolonged the reign of the Sultāns of the I-yal-timishī dynasty, and raised on

high the standards of jurisdiction of HIS servants in the decree of duration, this frail one, in repayment of some of those many debts of gratitude, desired that he should thread upon the thread of description, and string on the string of writing, an account of those Maliks and **Khāns**, the servants of that Court which is the asylum of the universe, more particularly the mention of the successive benefits, and increasing generosity of that **Khākān-i-Mu'azzam**<sup>1</sup>, **Shahr-yār-i-'Adil wa Akram**, **Khusrāu-i-Banī Adam**, **Bahā-ul-Hak̄k wa ud-Dīn**, **Mughis-ul-Mulūk-i-Islām wa ul-Muslimīn**, **Zil-l-ullah fī ul-'Ālāmīn**, **'Uzd-ud-Daulah wa us-Sultanat**, **Yamīn-ul-Mamlakat**, **Ḳutb-ul-Ma'ālī**, **Rukn-ul-'Ālā**, **Ulugh Ḳutlugh-i-A'zam**, **ULUGH KHĀN-I-BALBAN-US-SULTĀN**<sup>2</sup>, **Abī-Salātīn**, **Zahir-i-Amir-ul-Mūminīn** [The Great King, the Most Just and Most Generous Prince, the **Khusrāu** of the race of Adam, the precious of God and of the Faith, the auxiliary of the Maliks of Islām and of Musalmāns, the shadow of the Almighty upon the worlds, the pole-star of grandeur, the sublime prop, the arm of the kingdom and empire,

<sup>1</sup> It must not be supposed that these are his *actual* titles: the greater part of them are conferred on him by his author out of gratitude for favours received; neither do these titles prove that **Ulugh Khān-i-Balbān** was Sultān of Dillī when these words were penned. The contrary is proved over and over again in the following pages. As to the word **Khān** which signifies a king or emperor [particularly the rulers of Iran and Chīn] being applied to a great noble, without his being a sovereign prince, I have myself seen it applied to a petty Afghān of Multān, who had been a servant of the late Dīwān Muḥrāj on the liberal salary of 75 rūpīs monthly. Our author has also styled **Ulugh Khān** the father of kings, although he could not tell whether either of Balbān's sons would succeed their father, who was not king in 658 H., when he finished this History. Moreover, had **Ulugh Khān** been Sultān of Dillī at this time, he would not have been styled "the right arm of the state," &c. See next page, and note <sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> In his titles given further on, as here, he is called "**Khān-i-Mu'azzam**," in the same line being called "the Sultān's arm." His brother also is styled "**Ulugh Kultugh**" by our author after the same fashion.

It will also be noticed that, with some of these titles, our author uses the Arabic article **J** but with others no **J** is given. *For example*, although no *repetitions* are written he treats them to be used, otherwise the names and titles would be unintelligible non-sense. I suppose boys to follow after the fashion of "**Fir'zang**," "**Khān Zāhir**," "**Khān Kalān**," &c. Dr. CHAMANN will consider this too "a dangerous novelty," but I must for the read them according to the Iranī fashion, which by the bye Mr. Liechmann is sometimes guilty of—"**Kutub-i-Zamān**," "**Ḳutub-i-Akbar**," "**Khān-i-Balbān**," &c.

the right hand of the state, the most great Ulugh Kutlugh, ULUGH KHĀN-I-BALBĀN of the [time of the] I-yal-timishī dynasty, the father of Sultāns, the Supporter of the Lord of the Faithful]—May the Almighty exalt his Helper and double his power!—for, since the pen of the orbit of existence on the pages of the dawn of empire delineated the tracery of prosperity and the figure of dominion, it hath not depicted a countenance of felicity more charming than the aspect of his power; and the exalting hand of time, a standard more sublime than his precious and superb banner, hath never raised. The Court of no sovereign of the universe, either in the east or the west, who hath placed the foot on the throne of dominion, hath had a servant more sagacious, and no ear hath heard a tale of the might of dominion more brilliant than the narration of his rule, for verily his equitable age appears like the succession of 'Umr, his benevolence tells of the liberality of Hātim, his sword reminds [one] of the force of Rustam's blow, and his arrow the penetration of the arm of Arash<sup>3</sup>. May God crown his banner with victory: make strong his nobles and chiefs: and annihilate his foes!

In the way of repayment therefore of debts [of gratitude] due to those renowned Maliks, and more particularly for the mention of the rule of that powerful prince [Ulugh Khān], this TĀBAKĀH has been written after the manner of a miscellany, in order that scrutinizers, when they look into these pages, may, according to the benediction for those departed and the invocation for the preservation of those remaining, have the character of every one of them clearly defined upon the page of the mind. In the arrangement also of this TĀBAKĀH, some Maliks were earlier, in time, than they appear here, and some have been mentioned later, arising from the period that the author arrived at this Court<sup>4</sup>. May the Most High God preserve the Sultān of Sultāns and<sup>5</sup> the Ulugh-i-A'zam, Ulugh Khān-i-Mu'azzam,

<sup>3</sup> One of the old Persian heroes—the famous archer—who is also mentioned in the Shāh-Nāmāh.

<sup>4</sup> Several are not mentioned at all, the reason of which does not appear.

<sup>5</sup> This proves what I have already alluded to at page 720. Our author would scarcely have invoked blessings upon Ulugh Khān, as "a great monarch," while Nasir ul-Dīn, Mahmūd Shāh, was alive, and prayed for in the same sentence. His manumission is never noticed.

in the hall of existence to the utmost limits of possibility. *Amîn*!<sup>1</sup>

### I. TĀJ-UD-DĪN, SANJAR-I-GAJZ-LAK KHĀN<sup>2</sup>.

The arrival of the author [of this history] at the Court—the asylum of the world—of the beneficent king of kings [I-yal-timish] took place on Wednesday, the 1st of the month of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 625 H., before [the walls of] the preserved city of *Ūchchah*, at the period when the *Shamsi* forces had marched from the capital city of Dihli for the purpose of taking possession of the kingdom of Sind, and had turned their faces towards that country. Fifteen days prior to this, the victorious troops of that monarch, comprising the force under Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Gajz-lak *Khān*—The Almighty's mercy be upon him!—had arrived before *Ūchchah*; and the first personage among the Malikis of that Court who was seen by the author was Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Gajz-lak *Khān*.

When, on Wednesday, the 16th of the month of Ṣafar, the author proceeded from the city of *Ūchchah*, and reached the camp of the victorious [forces], that Malik of good disposition treated him with reverence, and rose from his *masnad*, and went through the ceremonial of receiving him, and came to meet him, and seated the author in his own place, and put a rosy apple<sup>3</sup> into his hand, and

<sup>1</sup> To translate that portion of our author's work referring to the kings of Dihli, without translating this Section, which throws much light on the previous ones, would be much like the play of Hamlet with the Prince of Denmark left out.

<sup>2</sup> He is also called Gaz-lak *Khān*.

<sup>3</sup> Literally "apple of ruby." Apples grow in Upper Sind, but they are small. The description of apple here referred to, was probably such as the traders, up to this day, bring down from above the Passes. It is usual to carry an apple in the hand for its grateful perfume. I have witnessed this constantly, and, probably, the custom is not new.

The printed text, which has lately become of considerable authority, because its statements, in its very defective state, happen to coincide with some errors and erroneous statements made on the faith of translations from Firāhīyah, has, contrary to all MSS. copies collated, the words *سبب لعل* e *twenty rubies*—instead of *سبب لعل*. If these words—*seb la'l*—are translated without that "dangerous innovation," the *lusrak* of description—*کرمه توصیفی*—they mean "apple ruby"—which is nonsense of course, but, with the necessary "innovation," would be *seb-i-la'l*—an apple of ruby—that is an apple red as a ruby.



observed: "Take this Maulānā, that it may be a good omen." I found Malik Taj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Gajz-lak Khān, a Malik of sufficiently formidable aspect, his form of magnitude, and his piety pure, and with a numerous suite, and followers countless.

Trustworthy persons have related on this wise, that the august Sultān [I-yal-timish] purchased Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Gajz-lak Khān, during the reign of the late Sultān, Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, from the Khwājah, 'Alī, the Bastābādī [of Bastābād<sup>1</sup>], when he held the government of the fief of Baran, and gave him to his eldest son, the late Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, and in the hall of felicity, along with him, was he nurtured and brought up. After some time, when the Sultān perceived signs of merit upon his forehead, he removed him from attendance on Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, and took him into his own immediate service, and gave him the office of Chāshni-gīr [Comptroller of the [royal] Kitchen]. After serving [in this office] for some time, he became Amīr-i-Akhur [Lord or Head of the Stables]. Subsequently, in the year in which the Sultān proceeded towards Multān, namely, in 625 H., the territory of Wanj-rūt<sup>2</sup> of Multān was made over to him. When the Sultān returned from thence, he conferred upon Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Gajz-lak Khān, the fief of Kuhrām. After some time, the preserved city of Tabarhindah was given to him, and, in that year, the author reached the Court.

The Sultān had despatched him [Gajz-lak Khān] in advance, at the head of a force, in concert with Malik 'Izz-ud-

These words might, certainly, be translated "a ruby like an apple in shape," but I think this very unlikely for the reasons above stated; and a ruby of that size would be a very costly present, and not to be earned about in one's hand.

<sup>1</sup> Or might be, Bastābād. The name is doubtful.

<sup>2</sup> This place, in most of the copies of the text is written لغروت for لغروت --Lanj-rūt for Lanj-rūt, and also لغروت—Ganj-rūt, but Wanj-rūt is a well-known place, giving name to a *pargana*. At present there is a tolerably strong fort there, and it is now contained in the Bahāwal-pūr state. At the period Gajz-lak Khān held it, it was in the Multān province, the river Blāh then flowed in its old bed. Between Wanj-rūt and Multān no river then existed, whilst the Lost River—the Hakra and its feeders, as the Sutlay or Ghāri, separated it from Bikanēr. In Persian words و is sometimes used for , but in Sanskrit words, or words derived from that language, ॠ is often substituted for ॠ and *vice versa*. The printed text, which displays such a profound knowledge of the geography of India, has *Gujrat* and *Multān* !

Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sālārī—The Almighty's mercy be upon him!—from the frontier of the territory of Sind to the foot [of the walls] of Ūchchah.

When Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn [I-yal-timish], with his army, pitched his camp before the fortress of Ūchchah, in the year 625 H., Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Gajz-lak Khān, was despatched [at the head of a force] in attendance on the Wazīr of the realm, the Nizām-ul-Mulk, Muhammad, the Junaidī, against the fortress of Bakhar<sup>3</sup>. After some time, that fortress was taken, and Malik [Sultān] Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Qabā-jah—The Almighty's mercy be on him!—was drowned in the river Sind, and the fortress fell into their hands, as has been before recorded. The preserved city<sup>4</sup> of Ūchchah, with its dependencies and territories, was all placed in Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar's charge.

When the Sultān with his forces returned towards the glorious capital, Dihlī, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Gajz-lak Khān, assumed jurisdiction over those territories, and caused them to flourish and prosper; and he brought the scattered people, both gentle and simple, together, who dwelt happily under the justice and benevolence of this Malik of good disposition. He continued to pursue the beaten track of impartiality and kindness towards all, and exerted his powers for the security, safety, and repose of the peasantry, and the welfare of all [the people], and, after some time, under the safeguard of faith, and alms for pious uses, charitable foundations, and works of public utility, he came to a happy end, and was removed from the house of this world to the mansions of life eternal, in the year 629 H. The Almighty's mercy and pardon be upon him!

## II. MALIK 'IZZ-UD-DĪN, KABIR KHAN, WAZIR-I-HĀZAR MARDĀN, UT MU'IZZ<sup>4</sup>

Malik Kabir Khān-i-Ayār was a Rūmī Turk, and he had been the slave of Malik Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Husain, the

<sup>3</sup> Turned into Phangh in the printed text.

<sup>4</sup> What Ūchchah was in those days may be gathered from the account of its investment by the Mughals in the last Section.

So styled because he was the slave of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Samī, Gharī.

Amir-i-Shikār [Chief Huntsman] of Ghaznīn, and, after he was put to death, Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz, along with his children, reached the country of Hindūstān. He attracted the benevolent notice of the august Sultān [I-yal-timish], and served him in every degree of employment. He was a Turk, wise, prudent, and experienced, and, in agility and martial accomplishments, was the incomparable of his time. Malik Naṣir-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, the Amir-i-Shikār of Ghaznīn, who was his owner and lord, was the theme of every tongue throughout the whole of the countries of Ghūr, Ghaznīn, Khurasān, and Khwārazm, for warlike powers and skill; and Malik Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz had accompanied his master, in all circumstances and situations, and had learnt from him martial accomplishments and the modes of warfare, and had become a perfect master in the art.

When Malik Naṣir-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, was put to death by the Turks of Ghaznīn<sup>1</sup>, his sons, namely Sher Khān-i-Surkh [the Red], and his brother reached the presence of the sublime Court, and Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish, purchased 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz, direct from them. Some have related on this wise, that, when the august Sultān brought the territory of Multān under his sway in the year 625 H., he conferred upon 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz, the city and fortress of Multān, with the whole of its towns, districts, and dependencies<sup>2</sup>, and installed him in the government of that territory, and exalted him to the title of Kabīr Khān-i-Man-girni<sup>3</sup>, and, although he used to be styled by people Ayāz-i-Hazār-Mardah—the name he was famed by—he, consequently, became celebrated under the title of Kabīr Khān-i-Man-girni. On the return of the Sult. [with his forces] to Dihlī, the capital, Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz took possession of that territory and brought it under his jurisdiction, and

<sup>1</sup> He had shown dissatisfaction, and, when I-yal-timish marched towards Dihlī against I-yal-timish, the Turkish chiefs of Ghaznīn put him, as well as the former Warir, to death. See page 504-5.

<sup>2</sup> This fact is not mentioned under the reign of I-yal-timish, and, in the account of the preceding Malik, it is stated that he—Guzluk Khān—had the territory of Wangrut of Multān conferred upon him in that same year, 625 H.

<sup>3</sup> This name is somewhat doubtful. In the most trustworthy copies of the text it is written مان گرنی—Man-girni—as above, and also مان گیرنی—Man-girni; but in others it is written all sorts of ways—مان گرنی—مان گرنی—مان گرنی. The word is Turkish, in all probability.

caused it to flourish; and, after a period of two, three, or four years, he was recalled to the capital, and Palwal was assigned to him for his maintenance<sup>6</sup>.

When the Shamsī reign came to its termination, and Sultān Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh, succeeded, he conferred upon Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz the district of Sunām<sup>7</sup>; and, when Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī, from Lohor, and Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Kūjī, from Hānsī, assembled with hostile intent against the Court, Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz joined them; and, for a considerable period, they alarmed and distracted the forces of Sultān Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh. At last, when Sultān Raḡīyyat<sup>1</sup> ascended the throne, they advanced upon the capital, and for a considerable period molested the city and parts around, and engaged in conflict with the servants of the Court of the Sultān of Islām, until Sultān Raḡīyyat, secretly, by promises of favour, detached him from that party, and he, in concert with Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sālārī, went over to the service of the Court. Through their coming [over to the Court party], the Sultān, the servants of her Court, and the people of the city, gained a great accession of strength, and Malik Jānī and Malik Kūjī, baffled, withdrew.

Sultān Raḡīyyat showed Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz great honour, and conferred upon him the province of Lohor, with the whole of the dependencies and districts belonging to that territory; but, after a year or two<sup>2</sup>, a slight change manifested itself in the mind of Sultān Raḡīyyat towards him, and, in the year 636 H., her sublime standards advanced towards Lohor. Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz retired before her, crossed the Rāwah<sup>3</sup> of Lohor, and retreated as far as the borders of Sūḍḥarāh, and the army marched in pursuit of him. Finding it was impossible to follow any other course<sup>4</sup>,

<sup>6</sup> He must have, consequently, fallen under the Sultān's displeasure, for some reason.

<sup>7</sup> See under the reign of Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh, at page 633.

<sup>1</sup> Here too is a "dangerous innovation;" I have ventured to spell the name of this queen the right way, and different to the "best authorities."

<sup>2</sup> Most copies of the text have "some years," and a few "some time" Raḡīyyat only reigned three years and a half.

<sup>3</sup> Thus written in the oldest copies of the text—راوہ "Rāwah." See also the account of the march against the Mughals in 643 H. in the notice of Ulugh Khān farther on.

<sup>4</sup> See the margin under, page 645.

he made his submission, and Multān was again placed under his charge<sup>4</sup>. After a considerable period had passed away, and, when an army of Mughals, under the accursed Mangūtah, the Nū-lā, and the Bahādur, Tā-ir, turned its face towards Lohor, Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz [assumed sovereignty] in the territory of Sind<sup>5</sup>, and a canopy of state, and possessed himself of Uchchah. Shortly after this disaffection, in the year 639 H., he died.

After his decease, his son, Tāj-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bikr-i-Ayāz, who was a young man of good disposition, fiery, very impetuous, and courageous, brought the territory of Sind under his sway. Several times he attacked the Ḳarlugh<sup>7</sup> army before the gate of Multān and put it to flight, and showed such great skill and high-spiritedness that he was noted for his manliness and valour, when, suddenly, in the morning of life and flower of his youth, he passed to the Almighty's mercy. May God have mercy upon them both [father and son].

### III. MALIK NAṢĪR-UD-DĪN, AI-YITIM-UL-BAHĀ-Ī.

Malik Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Ai-yitim, was the slave of Malik Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughril, the slave of Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, and some [persons] have related that the august Sulṭān, Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish, had purchased Malik Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Ai-yitim, from the heirs of Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughril<sup>6</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> The feudatory of Multān got the fief of Lāhor in lieu of it. See page 747.

<sup>5</sup> This indicates that the province of Multān, as well as Uchchah, was called Sind in those days. Some writers style all the tract as far north as the Salt Range by the name of Sind, but see next page.

<sup>7</sup> Also Ḳarlugh. I have given an account of them in the last Section. See note <sup>4</sup>, para. 2, page 374. This was the second invasion of the Ḳarlughs. See page 730.

This shows the state of the Dāhlī kingdom at this time, for, although the father had openly thrown off allegiance to its sovereign, the latter appears to have been unable to recover possession of those provinces until after some time elapsed on the death of the son, Abū-Bikr-i-Ayāz. Nothing whatever respecting this assumption of sovereignty is mentioned under Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bah-sām Shāh's reign. The *iqāfat* here stands for *his* Ayāz was the father's name, another of thousands of undoubted proofs, were any wanting, to show that "the use of the *iqāfat*" is *not* "restricted to poetry, and that it *constantly* occurs in prose for *his* or *father*. See Blochmann's "Contributions," Part III., page 138, last line, and note †.

<sup>6</sup> See page 544 for an account of Malik Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughril.

Malik Naṣir-ud-Dīn, Aī-yitim, was a man of great prudence and experience, intrepid and steadfast, and just. When he first was honoured by the august Sultān's service, he became Sar-i-Jān-dāi [Chief or Head of the Jān dārs<sup>1</sup>], and, after some time, having done good service, the fief of Lohor was assigned to him. When in the year 625 H.<sup>1</sup>, the august Sultān [I-yāl-timish] came for the purpose of seizing the territory of Sind, and Uchchah and Multān, by the Sultān's command, Malik Naṣir-ud-Dīn, Aī-yitim, advanced from Lohor and appeared before the fortress of Multān, and did good service in the acquisition of that fortification; and, at length, that stronghold and city he gained possession of by capitulation<sup>2</sup>. When the Sultān came back from the territory of Sind, and returned to the capital, Dihlī, the Siwālikh country, and Ajmīr, Lāwah, Kāsīlī, and Sanbhar Namak<sup>3</sup>, he made over to his charge, and the Sultān assigned him an elephant, and in this honour he was distinguished above the other Maliks.

On Malik Naṣir-ud-Dīn, Aī-yitim's proceeding to Ajmīr, he showed many proofs of vigour and judgment, in undertaking expeditions and making holy-war upon the infidel Hindūs and devastating their country, and performed great achievements. Once, during the time he held that government, the author found him in the territory of Sanbhar Namak, and he was pleased to show him much honour and respect, and, of a verity, he was a Malik of exemplary faith. Suddenly, he set out on an expedition against the infidel Hindūs into the Bundī territory, and came upon the Hindūs in a position in a defile, and was under the necessity of passing a river which lay at that place. Being heavily armed with cuirass, and other defensive armour, he sank in that river, and was drowned.—The Almighty's mercy be upon him!

<sup>1</sup> Already described, in note 7, page 603

<sup>2</sup> He says 624 H. at page 542 at pages 723, 725, and 731, we have 625 H. See also under the reign of I-yāl-timish

<sup>3</sup> See under Kabā-jah page 544, and I-yāl-timish's reign, pages 611 and 612

<sup>4</sup> Sanbhar— $\text{सम्भार}$ —which our author writes as above, and also Sanbhal, with /, is the name of a town and district, on the great Salt Lake in Rāj-pūtānah, north of Ajmīr. Kāsīlī is written Kasullie in Tod's map, but, in the Indian Atlas, sheet No. 33, it is turned into *Kashī*. Lāwah is more to the N W, in Long 74°, Lat 25°, 10

IV. MALIK SAIF-UD-DĪN, I-BAK<sup>4</sup>, I-ŪCHCHAH.

Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak, was the slave of the august Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yāl-timish, and was a Turk of energy and sagacity, and exemplary faith, and the Sultān had purchased him from Jamāl ud-Dīn, the Armourer<sup>5</sup>, at Budā'ūn.

At first he was made Sar-i-Jān-dār [Head of the Jān-dārs]. He was directed to enter upon that office against his wishes, and the sum of three laks of *jitals* for the maintenance of his position he did not receive with appreciation. When this came to the Sultān's hearing he in-

<sup>4</sup> From the fact of so many chiefs, mentioned in this work, being styled **سلطان** as well as Sultān Kūth-ud-Dīn, there is some room to doubt whether this word may not here be intended to be pronounced otherwise than I-bak, since all of them would have fingers, although *all* could scarcely have had any peculiarity of finger, and, as regards Kūth ud Dīn, the matter is cleared up by the adjective *shul* or *shul* added to it. With other vowel points—the word *Ar-bak*—signifies *but*—idol or, may be a compound word, from **ار** *ar*—moon, and **بک** *bak*—lord the moon-lord—which, although it *might* be the by name of one, could scarcely be the by name of several individuals, all of whom were sold as slaves. The probability however is that *Ar-bak* is the most correct meaning here, viz. *ar*—moon, and *bak*—face, countenance—the moon-faced, but even then it would be strange that there were so many of them. Another matter for consideration is, that the word **ب** has several other meanings, and is written with **و**—but described as Persian **ب**, which signifies *p*—*p*, and that the vowel points also may change its meaning; for example *pak* means a finger joint, and the heel, and also, beauty, grace, &c., and *pak* signifies a frog.

I have never met with the word written **بک** and but once met with **ار** with *muad* over the *Ar*—and that is Turkish and signifies *female*, not moon. Another matter for consideration is, that, if we divide the word **ار**—assuming it to be a compound word—and take the last portion of it—**ک**—it has various significations, most of which are said to be Turkish, according to the pronunciation as shown by the vowel points, and also whether the **و** and **ک** are described as Arabic or Persian letters, the former being **و** and **ک**, and the latter *p* and *k*; but, at the same time, it must be understood that they are continually used indiscriminately, for example—*Bak*, a lord or chief. 2 A wild cucumber. *Bak*, cheek, countenance. 3 Ignorant stupid. 4 *Weak*, languid, &c. *Bak*, finger. 5 A live coal. *Pak*, aid, help. 6 A defender, patron. 7 The finger joint, the heel. 8 A turban. *Pak*, in Persian is the same in signification as the Arabic **طاهر**, which means, refined, weak, languid. 9 Lean, ignorant, &c. As well as 10 Delicate, beautiful. There are some other meanings which I need not mention, but I fear we shall be unable to come to any certain or satisfactory conclusion until some competent scholar, who is thoroughly acquainted with the old Turkish dialects, shall examine this and several other titles in this Section which are undoubtedly Turkish.

<sup>5</sup> Literally, one who gives to swords or armour the fine water, as it is termed, so much esteemed in the east.

quired of him the reason of his not regarding it. Apprehensive, he replied : " My lord, the Sultān, in the first place, commands his slave to take an office of affliction, while his humble servant is unable to practise blood-shedding, torture, extortion, and oppression upon Muslims and subjects. Let the Sultān be pleased to assign other employment to his slave." The Sultān showed great reliance on him [in consequence] and made Nārṇul his fief. He served in the government of that fief for sometime, and, subsequently, the fief of Baran was assigned to him, and, after that again, the fief of Sunām was conferred upon him. When the expedition into Lakhaṇawāṭi was undertaken, and the force had reduced Balkā, the Khalj, and was on its way back to the capital, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Gajz-lak Khān, died at Ūchchah [while holding the government of Sind], and the august Sultān, Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish, assigned the fief of Ūchchah, and the fortress and city of Ūchchah to Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak.

For a considerable period he exercised the government, and was guardian of the people of that country, and brought it under his control. When the Sultān passed to the Creator's mercy, Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak, became very powerful; and, at that juncture, Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan, the Ḳarlugh, became covetous of the possession of Ūchchah and the Panjāb territory, and he arrived before the gate of the city of Ūchchah, from the direction of Baniān<sup>6</sup> with a large army. Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak, with a well organized force, in battle array, marched out of the fortress of Ūchchah and encountered them in battle. Almighty God gave him the victory, and the Ḳarlugh forces were routed, and retired without gaining their object<sup>7</sup>.

This, truly, was a very important victory, at this time, because, at this period, through the decease of Sultān

<sup>6</sup> This is the tract of country so often mentioned in these pages and which I have already indicated the position of, but it is often written in a very careless manner [the Calcutta printed text sometimes turns it into Multān], and this fact has led Thomas into a great error, at page 76 of his "PATHAN KINGS OF DELHI." All the references made by him to the printed text in the foot-note to that page refer to Baniān—بنیان, and not to Multān.

<sup>7</sup> This, of course, has been omitted under the reign to which it properly belongs. It was the first occasion on which the Ḳār-lugh, or Ḳarlugh—the word is written both ways—invaded the Dīali kingdom after Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish's decease. See also page 677.



**Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yāl-timish**, awe and fear of the kingdom of Hindūstān in [people's] hearts had sustained detriment, and enemies had sprung up on all sides of the empire, and the vain desire of appropriating its territory began to trouble their minds, when Almighty God bestowed this victory on him. The good name of Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak, remained in that country, and in all the territory of Hindūstān his renown was diffused.

Shortly after this victory, Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak, sustained a fall from his horse, and the animal kicked him in a mortal place, and he was killed. The mercy and forgiveness of the Almighty be upon him !

#### V. MALIK SAIF-UD-DĪN, I-BAK-I-YUGHĀN-TAT.

Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak-i-Yughān-tat, was a **Khāṭā-i Turk**, and was, both externally and internally, adorned and endowed with divers manly qualities. The august Sultān [**Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yāl-timish**] had purchased him from the heirs of **Ikhṭiyār-ud-Dīn-i-Ḥusṭ-Ḳabā** \* [of the tight-fitting vest], and he distinguished him by his intimacy, and conferred upon him the office of **Amīr-i-Majlis** [Lord of the Assembly or Council]. After he had performed good service in that appointment, he was raised to a high position, and the fief of the district of **Sursutī** was bestowed upon him. At the time of this honour being conferred upon him, he gave directions for the presentation of a horse to each of the Amīrs, Malikhs, and Grandees; and this gift caused him to be remembered, and his acquirement of some influence.

In the year 625 H, at the time that the author found the Sultān's camp in the territory of **Ūchchah** of **Multān**, Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak, was the feudatory of **Sursutī**, and, in the presence of the Sultān, he possessed much influence and intimacy; and when, after some time, he had done distinguished services, the fief of **Bihār** was entrusted to his charge. On Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī's ' being deposed from

\* This appears to have been the nick-name of two persons who dealt in slaves, since I-yāl-timish himself was sold to **Ḳutb-ud-Dīn**, by **Jamāl-ud-Dīn-i-Ḥusṭ-Ḳabā**.

\* Referred to in the List of **Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yāl-timish's** Malikhs as Prince of **Turkistān**, who gave such trouble in the reign of Sultān **Rasūyyat**.

the fief of Lakhanawāṭī, that country was made over to Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak.

In that territory he displayed great vigour, and captured several elephants from the country of Bang, and despatched them to the most sublime Court; and, from the Sulṭān, he received the title of Yughān-tat, and his name became great. He held the government of that country for some time, and in the year 631 H.<sup>1</sup> he died. The Almighty's mercy and pardon be upon him!

#### VI. MALIK NUṢRAT-UD-DĪN, TĀ-YASA'Ī<sup>2</sup>.

Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn, Tā-yasa'ī, was the slave of the illustrious martyr, Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām. He was a Turk of short sight, but Almighty God had adorned him with all manly virtues and humanity, and he was endowed with great resolution, gallantry, and vigour, and possessed perfect sense, and sagacity.

At the time that the writer of this ṬABAKĀT, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, attached himself to the sublime Shamsi court, Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn, Tā-yasa'ī, was the feudatory of Jīnd [Jhind], Barwālah, and Hānsī. After some time, as he had performed approved services, two years subsequent to the taking of the fortress of Gwāliyūr, the august Sulṭān [Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish] entrusted Bhīlānah and Sulṭān-koṭ to<sup>3</sup> his charge, together with the Superintendency<sup>4</sup> of the territory of Gwāliyūr, and he received directions likewise to make Gwāliyūr [the fortress] his

<sup>1</sup> Stewart in his "HISTORY OF BENGAL" says [page 65] that Sief Addeen Yusan Tunt [!] died in 651 H.—a mistake of only *twenty years*.

<sup>2</sup> In nearly every copy of the text this word or title is somewhat differently written; but the above—*تایسی*—Tā-yasa'ī—seems most correct. In one copy it is written with vowel points thus *تایسی*.

VAMBÉRY considers it is a Chinese word, and that it means a writer, or secretary, but that does not seem applicable here. I think it undoubtedly Turkish, and it possibly *may* refer to his shortsightedness, but more probably to the name of some place. A somewhat similar term occurs in Sharf-ud-Dīn, 'Alī's, History, but written *Tāghī*, but it may be wholly different from the above.

<sup>3</sup> Its being founded is mentioned in the account of Malik Bahā-ud-Dughlī, at page 545.

<sup>4</sup> The word here used is *شاهی*—*shahāgi*—which is rarely used by our author except with reference to those states and territories over which the Maghals obtained sway. The meaning of *Shahāgi* has been already given.

residence. The contingents of *Ķinnauj*, and *Mahir* [or *Mihar*], and *Mahā'un* were all placed under his control, in order that he might undertake an inroad into the *Kālinjar* and *Chandīrī* territories. In the year 631 H.<sup>4</sup>, he accordingly led an army from *Gwāliyūr* towards the *Kālinjar* country, and the *Rāc* of *Kālinjar* fled discomfited before him. He plundered the townships of that territory, and, in a very short period, obtained vast booty, in such wise, that, in the space of fifty days, the *Sultān's* fifth share was set down at twenty-five *laks* [of *ḡittals* or *dirams*?].

On the return of *Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn*, *Tā-yasa'ī*, the *Rānah* of *Ajār*<sup>5</sup>, *Chāhar*, by name, occupied the route of the *Musalman* forces, and blocked up the road in the narrow parts of [some] deep ravines, and was drawn up [with his forces], at the head of the road, prepared to oppose their passage<sup>6</sup>. *Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn*, *Tā-yasa'ī*, was somewhat weak in body [from sickness?] at the time, and he divided his force into three bodies, at the head of three roads—the first body consisted of the unincumbered horsemen [under his own command]; the second body of the baggage, material, and the followers of the force, with an *Amīr* in charge; and the third consisted of the booty and the cattle with an *Amīr* with it also. I heard *Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn* himself state, saying: "Through the divine favour,

<sup>4</sup> In the account of *Ulugh Khān* farther on, it is stated that this took place in 632 H., and *Yamū* is mentioned as well as *Ķinnauj* and the other places just mentioned, but 632 H. was the year in which *I-yal-tumish* himself advanced into *Mālwah*, and took *Bhilsān* and *Ujjain*. See under his reign, page 621.

<sup>5</sup> This is according to the best copies of the text, which style him, respectively, *أجار*, *أجارى*, *أجارى*, and *أجارى*—all have the *kasrah* denoting the genitive case—*Rānah of Ajār*, *Ajārī*, or *Ajārnah* [probably *Ajārīah* or *Achārīah*], and state that his name was *Chāhar*. See page 691, and the account of *Ulugh Khān* farther on.

<sup>6</sup> In his account of *Ulugh Khān* farther on, our author, in all the oldest copies, mentions "the ravines of the river *کارانه*—*Karānah* or *Garānah*" which, in the more modern copies of the text, is *سندى*—*Sindī*. This latter river flows by the fortress of *Nurwul*, previously referred to at page 690, bounds the *Gwāliyūr* territory on the east, and falls into the *Jūn* or *Yamunā*. In about the direction *Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn* must have taken on his return to *Gwāliyūr*, this river is about 200 yards broad in the rainy season, and about forty in the dry, and some two feet deep; and, at this part of its course, its banks are steep, and cut into numerous ravines. Whether the *Karānah* or *Garānah* and the *Sindī* be one and the same river it is difficult to say; but it is not improbable that the first is its proper name, as *Sindī* is, of course, derived from *سند*—river, and that one and the same river is referred to.

never in Hindūstān had an enemy seen my back ; and, on that day, that Hindū fellow fell upon me like a wolf upon a flock of sheep. I divided my force into three bodies in order that, in the event of the Hindū confronting me and the unincumbered horsemen, the baggage and war material and cattle might pass on in safety, and, in case he should show a desire towards the baggage and war material or cattle, I, together with the auxiliaries of the true faith, would come behind him and take satisfaction on his malignity." The Hindū confronted Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn's own division, and Almighty God gave him the victory. The Hindūs were routed, and numbers of them sent to hell, and he returned with his booty to the fortress of Gwāliyūr in safety.

An anecdote of an occurrence, showing his perfect sagacity, which happened during this expedition, which was made known [to the author], is here related, that readers may derive profit therefrom : and that anecdote is as follows. A milch sheep, from among his flocks, had been lost for some time—nearly a month and a half—during this inroad. One day, Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn was moving round the camp among the tents, after the force had been encamped at that same place a week, and every one had set up something or other to shade himself. Suddenly, during his perambulation, the bleating of a sheep reached his ear. He immediately said to his attendants : " That is the bleating of my sheep " They proceeded in the direction, and found that it was as that Amīr-i-Ghāzī had said. the animal was there, and they brought back the [stray] sheep again.

Many other acts of his sagacity and intelligence occurred during this expedition, and one of them is as follows. At the time when the Rāe of Kālīnjar faced about and retired routed before him, Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn, Tā-yasā'ī, pursued him. Having succeeded in obtaining a Hindū guide, he set out, on their track, in pursuit of the fugitive [Hindūs] and pushed on for four nights and days, and part of the fifth night until half the night had passed, when the Hindū guide stated that he had lost the road, and was unacquainted with the route in advance. Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn commanded so that they sent the Hindū to hell, and began to

act as guide himself. So they reached some high ground\*, at which place the fugitives had watered, and the cattle of their army had cast the water and heavy baggage away. In the victorious army every one said: "It is night and the enemy near: let it not be that we fall among them. Their camp must be near by." Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn Tā-yasa'ī dismounted from his horse, and went up round the place on foot, and examined the water cast away by the horses of the infidels. He exclaimed [after his examination]: "Be of good cheer, my friends: the force, which is here and has watered here, is the rearmost column of the enemy's army, by this proof. Had it been the van or the main body, in this place would have been the tracks of the rest of their army, but, on this place, there are no tracks: keep up your hearts, for we are on the rear of the enemy!" With these prognostics of victory he remounted, and, at dawn the following morning, came up with those infidels, and sent the whole [!] of them to hell, and captured the canopy of state, and the standards of the Rāe of Kālinjar, and returned in safety from that expedition†.

When the reign of the Sultān [Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh] terminated, and Malik Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Muhammad Shāh [his brother], son of Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish, became the victim of misfortune‡, Sultān Raḡiyyat conferred [the fief of] Awadh upon Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn, Tā-yasa'ī; and, at the period when Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī, and Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Kūjī, advanced to the gate of the city [of Dihlī], and began to act in a rebellious manner, he set out from Awadh for the sublime Court of Sovereignty to render his services. Suddenly and unexpectedly, Malik Kūjī moved against him, and took Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn, Tā-yasa'ī, prisoner§. He was overcome by sickness

\* The untrustworthy Calcutta printed text makes *جبل*—a *bridge*, of *جبل*—high ground, a height, &c.

† This important expedition took place during the reign of I-yal-timish, in the year after he gained possession of Gwāliyūr, and the year before he took Bhlāsh and Ujjain, but not the least reference is made to it under that Sultān's reign, and no reference is made to either Rānah Chāhar nor to the Rāe of Kālinjar. See the account of Uluḡh Khān farther on, and page 690, and note ‡.

‡ This refers to his rebellion. See page 633.

§ See page 639.

at the time, and the malady carried him off, and he died. The mercy of the Almighty be upon him!

#### VII. MALIK 'IZZ-UD-DĪN, TUGHRIL<sup>3</sup>-I-TUGHĀN KHĀN.

Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān was a Turk of good looks and good disposition, and his origin was from Qarah <sup>4</sup> Khutā. He was adorned with all sorts of humanity and sagacity, and graced with many virtues and noble qualities, and in liberality, generosity, and winning men's hearts, he had no equal, in that day, among the [royal] retinue or military.

When the Sultān [I-yal-timish] first purchased Tughril-i-Tughān Khān, he made him his Sāḳī-i-Khās [own personal Cup-bearer]<sup>5</sup>; and, having served in that capacity for sometime, he became Sar-Dawāt-dār [Chief Keeper of the Private Writing-case], when, suddenly, he lost the Sultān's own jeweled pen-case. The Sultān administered to him a sound chastisement, but, subsequently, bestowed upon him a rich dress of honour and made him Chashni-gir [Comptroller of the Royal Kitchen]. After a considerable time, Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān became Amīr-i-Ākhur [Lord of the Stable], and, subsequently, in 630 H., was made feudatory of Budā'un. When the territory of Lakhanawati was made the fief of Malik [Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak-i]-Yughān-tat, the country of Bihār was conferred upon Malik Tughril; and, when Malik Yughān-tat died [in 631 H.], Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān became feudatory of the country of Lakhanawati, and he brought that territory under his jurisdiction.

After the decease of the august Sultān [I-yal-timish], between him and the feudatory of Lakhanawati-Lakhan-or, I-bak, by name, whom they used to style Aor Khān, a Turk of great daring, and impetuosity, enmity arose, and a

<sup>3</sup> For the pronunciation of this Turkish word see note <sup>4</sup>, page 544. Tughān, in the Turkish language, is equivalent to the Persian word تغ—a species of hawk.

<sup>4</sup> Our author writes this Turkish word Qarā and Qarah indiscriminately.

<sup>5</sup> It is worthy of notice regarding these great men of the so-called "PATHĀN" dynasties, that nearly every one of these Maliks were Turkish Mamlūks or purchased slaves; but did any one ever hear of an Afghan or Pāḡān a slave?

battle took place between them for [the possession of] the town of Basan-koṭ of Lakhanawāṭī, within the environs of the city of Lakhanawāṭī itself. During the engagement, Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān pierced Aor Khān with an arrow in a mortal place, and he forthwith died<sup>6</sup>. Tughril's name became great [in consequence], and both sides of the country of Lakhanawāṭī—the one part of which they style Rāl [Rāḥ] which is towards Lakhan-or, and the other is named Barind [Barindah] on the side of Basan-koṭ—became one, and came into Malik Tughril's possession<sup>7</sup>.

When the throne of the kingdom passed to Sultān Raṣiyyat, Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān despatched some persons of note to the sublime Court, and he was dignified by being honoured with a canopy of state and standards<sup>8</sup>, and was paid high honour. He made an inroad into the country of Tirhut from Lakhanawāṭī, and acquired much valuable booty.

When the throne devolved upon Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān was distinguished in the same manner, and was in the continual habit of sending for the service of the sublime Court offerings of great value. After the termination of the Mu'izzi dynasty, in the beginning of the 'Alā-ī reign [the reign of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd-Shāh], his confidential adviser, Bahā-ud-Dīn, Hilāl, the Sūriānī [Syrian], instigated him to take possession of the territory of Awadh, and Karah and Mānik-pūr, and An-desah-i-Balā-tar [Upper-most An-des—or Urnā-desah]<sup>9</sup>. In the year 640 H., when this author, with his dependents, and children, set out from the capital,

<sup>6</sup> All this is omitted from the reign in which it took place.

<sup>7</sup> This indicates then that at this time there were two great fiefs in this part—Lakhanawāṭī and Lakhan-or, one on each side of the Ganges, but that, by way of distinction, as stated above, the Rāḥ "wing" was called Lakhanawāṭī-Lakhan-or. See also page 585, and note <sup>6</sup>.

<sup>8</sup> This is equivalent to acknowledging him as a sovereign, but tributary, of course. Some few copies have *red* standards. He duly publishes this in his Bihār inscription given in Blochmann's "*Contributions*," page 37.

<sup>9</sup> That part of Tibbat through which the Sutlej flows on issuing from the lake Rāwan Hṛda, and bounded by the Kailās and Himālaya ridges. In the time here referred to this name may have been applied to a larger extent of country, farther to the south-east, now included in Nepāl.

In the Calcutta printed text An-desah is turned into *اندهاه*—"*consideration, meditation, thought*," &c.

Dihlī, for Lakhanawati, when he arrived in Awadh, Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān had reached the country of Karah and Mānik-pūr. The author, taking his family along with him, proceeded from Awadh and waited on him; and Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān remained for sometime in that vicinity, close upon Awadh, but afterwards returned to Lakhanawati again. The author accompanied him<sup>1</sup>.

In the year 641 H., the Rāe of Jāj-nagar commenced molesting the Lakhanawati territory; and, in the month of Shawwāl, 641 H., Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān marched towards the Jāj-nagar country, and this servant of the state accompanied him on that holy expedition. On reaching Katāsin<sup>2</sup>, which was the boundary of Jāj-nagar [on the side of Lakhanawati], on Saturday, the 6th of the month of Zi-Ḳa'dah, 641 H., Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān made his troops mount, and an engagement commenced. The holy-warriors of Islām passed over two ditches, and the Hindū infidels took to flight. So far as they continued in the author's sight, except the fodder which was before their elephants, nothing fell into the hands of the foot-men of the army of Islām, and, moreover, Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān's commands were that no one should molest the elephants, and, for this reason, the fierce fire of battle subsided.

When the engagement had been kept up until mid-day the foot-men of the Musalmān army—every one of them—returned [to the camp?] to eat their food, and the Hindūs, in another direction, stole through the cane *jāngal*, and took five elephants; and about two hundred foot and fifty horsemen came upon the rear of a portion of the Musalmān army<sup>3</sup>. The Muḥammadans sustained an overthrow, and a great number of those holy warriors attained martyrdom, and Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān retired from that place without having effected his object, and returned to Lakhanawati. He despatched the Sharf-ul-Mulk<sup>4</sup>, the Ash'ari,

<sup>1</sup> See pages 662 and 663.

<sup>2</sup> See note 4, para 8, page 587.

<sup>3</sup> In every copy of the text collated this sentence, like the preceding, is very defective—no two copies being alike—and, altogether, our author's account of this affair seems imperfect. It appears improbable that 250 Hindūs only should throw a whole army into confusion, in broad daylight.

<sup>4</sup> The title of the Malik's minister probably, not his name. At page 664 it is stated that Kāẓi Jalāl ud-Dīn, who was Ḳāṭi of Awadh, was directed to



to the Court of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, to solicit assistance. Kāfi Jalāl-ud-Dīn, the Kāsānī—on whom be peace!—was deputed, along with the Sharf-ul-Mulk, bearing a rich robe of honour, a canopy of state, a standard and tent, coupled with [expressions of] much honour and reverence, to return to Lakhanawātī; and the forces of Hindūstān<sup>1</sup>, under the orders of Kamar-ud-Dīn, Tamur Khān-i Qī-rān, who was feudatory of Awadh, moved towards Lakhanawātī, by the sublime command of the Sultān, to operate against the infidels of Jāj-nagar.

In this same year likewise [642 H], the Rāe of Jāj-nagar<sup>2</sup>, in order to avenge the plundering of Katāsin, which had taken place the preceding year, as has been already recorded, having turned his face towards the Lakhanawātī territory, on Tuesday, the 13th of the month of Shawwāl, 642 H., the army of infidels of Jāj-nagar, consisting of elephants, and *pāyiks* [foot-men] in great numbers, arrived opposite Lakhanawātī. Malik Tughrl-i-Tughān Khān came out of the city to confront them. The infidel host, on coming beyond the frontier of the Jāj-nagar territory, first took Lakhan-or; and Fakhr-ul-Mulk, Karīm-ud-Dīn, Lāghrī<sup>3</sup>, who was the feudatory of I akhan-or, with a body of proceed to Lakhanawātī along with the Sharf-ul-Mulk, bearing a red canopy of state, and a robe of honour, and that they reached Lakhanawātī on the 11th of Rabī'ul-Awwal, 641 H. This is impossible, as the repulse before Katāsin took place *eight months after this date*. The year must be 642 H. Another discrepancy is that [page 664], under the reign, it is said that the agent was sent to the Court, when Malik Tughrl-i-Tughān Khān returned from Kajah towards Lakhanawātī!

<sup>1</sup> That is of the Antarbed Do-ābah and districts lying immediately east of the Gang.

<sup>2</sup> Mr. Blochmann [*Contributions to the History and Geography of Bengal*, page 143, para. 4] is really *too* magnanimous when he says that "Regarding Jāj-nagar" I *have* "come to the same conclusion" he "*had*." I beg leave to state that I *HAD* come to the conclusion in 1865, when I first made translations of the history of Bengal from as many works as I could find—eight in all, I think, or more—and then collected the materials which enabled me to insert the notes in question in this translation. I hope to publish the fruit of these translations not long hence, with additions since obtained.

The italics noticed in the same "*Contributions*" [note §, page 144] namely, Jāj-nagar, page 592 of my translation, *I dare say*, do *not* imply a reference to Jāj-nagar; and, farther, whether it be a mistake or not, the work I quoted has the word, and also the account of Kaḡhah-Katankah. Perhaps Mr. Blochmann will refer to the Ma'dan-i-Akhhār-i-Aḡmadī and satisfy himself.

<sup>3</sup> He must have succeeded Ī-bak-i-Aor Khān in that fief, under Tughrl-i-Tughān Khān perhaps. See page 736.

Musalmāns, they made martyrs of, and, after that, appeared before the gate of Lakhanawati\*. The second day after that, swift messengers arrived from above [the Do-ābah and Awadh, &c.] and gave information respecting the army of Islām that it was near at hand. Panic now took possession of the infidels, and they decamped.

When the army from above reached the gate of Lakhanawati, distrust arose between Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān and Malik Tamur Khān-i-Īrān, and led to strife; and a conflict took place between the two armies of Musalmāns before the gate of the city of Lakhanawati, and continued from day-dawn to the early forenoon, when certain people appealed to them, and the two forces disengaged from each other, and each returned to its own camp. As Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān's own quarters were before the city gate, by the time he had alighted at his own tent, the whole of his troops had returned to their own dwellings within the city, and he remained alone. Malik Tamur Khān-i-Īrān however, on returning to his camp, continued ready armed as before, when, finding opportunity, and becoming aware that Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān was all alone in his tent within his camp, he mounted with his whole force, and made a dash upon Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān's camp. The latter was under the necessity of mounting and flying within the city; and this event took place on Tuesday, the 5th of the month of Zi-Hijjah, 642 H.

On Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān's reaching the city, he employed the author, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, and despatched him out of the city to seek an accommodation and his safety; and a truce and compact were entered into between the two Maliks, under the engagement that Lakhanawati should be delivered up to Malik Tamur Khān-i-Īrān, and that Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān should proceed to the Sublime Court, taking along with him his treasures

\* The Jāj-nagar forces must have crossed the Ganges before they could invest the city of Lakhanawati, if the course of that river was then as it is at present. For further details of this—for our author appears to have been totally unable to give the details of *our* affair in one place—see the account of Malik Tamur Khān-i-Īrān at page 763, where the name of the leader of the infidels is also mentioned. These are the Mughals of Chauguz Khān referred to at page 665, and note \*

and elephants, his dependents and followers<sup>1</sup>. Under this agreement, Lakhanawati was delivered up to Malik Tamur Khān-i-Ḳī-rān, and Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān, in company with Malik Ḳarā-Ḳash Khān, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Māh-peṣhānī [of the moon-like brow], and the [other?] Amīrs of the Court<sup>2</sup>, returned to the sublime presence. The author, with his family and dependents, returned to Dihlī along with Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān, and the Sublime Court was reached, on Monday, the 14th of the month of Ṣafar, 643 H.<sup>3</sup>

On Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān's arrival at Court, he was distinguished by great honour and reverence, and, in the [following] month of Rabi'-ul-Awwal of that same year, the territory of Awadh was consigned to him, and he received much comfort and encouragement.

When the throne of sovereignty acquired additional glory from [the accession of] the Sulṭān-i-Mu'azzam, Nāṣir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, in the year 644 H., Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān proceeded into Awadh; and, a short time afterwards, on the night of Friday, the end of the month of Shawwāl of that year, he passed to the Almighty's mercy. Of destiny's wonderful decrees one was this, that, enmity and contest having arisen between Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān and Malik Tamur Khān-i-Ḳī-rān, and each having seized<sup>4</sup> the other's territory, Tamur Khān should have died in Lakhanawati, and Tughān Khān in Awadh [the same night], in such wise that neither of the two, in this world, was aware of the other's death.

On this subject, that prince of mortals of the great

<sup>1</sup> The sending of a robe of honour and standards to Tughril-i-Tughān Khān must have been merely for the purpose of putting him off his guard, and it must have been previously determined to deprive him of his government. See pages 665—667.

<sup>2</sup> Who had accompanied the troops sent to the relief of Lakhanawati, or, rather, under pretence of relieving it.

<sup>3</sup> See Blochmann's "*Contributions*" previously referred to, page 38. 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Tughril-i-Tughān Khān, did not withdraw from Lakhanawati direct into Awadh, but proceeded to Dihlī first, and then, in Nāṣir-ud-Dīn's reign, proceeded to take charge of the latter fief, as shown immediately under, and at page 744.

<sup>4</sup> Not so, by the writer's own account: Tughril-i-Tughān Khān's territory was seized by treachery, but he had not seized his rival's.

and of the less, Sharf-ud-Dīn, the Balkhī, composed a verse<sup>4</sup>:—

"On Friday, the end of the month entitled Shawwāl,  
In the year, according to the 'Arab era, khā, mīm, dāl,  
Was Tamur Khān's and Tughān Khān's march from the world  
This [one] at the beginning of the night went, that at its close<sup>5</sup>."

Doubtless, their meeting will have taken place in the Court of the King of Glory in the everlasting mansion in the other world. The Almighty's mercy be upon them!

#### VIII MALIK KAMAR-UD-DĪN, KĪ RĀN-I-TAMUR KHĀN-US-SULTĀNĪ.

Malik Tamur<sup>6</sup> Khān-i-Kī-rān was a Turk of good qualities and excellent disposition, and very hasty and impetuous, prudent and intrepid. His origin was from Khifchāk, and he was good looking, and had a long beard and mustachios. The Sultān [I-yal-timish], at the outset [of his career], purchased him of Asad-ud-Dīn, Mankalī, the brother's son of Malik Firūz<sup>7</sup>, for the sum of fifty thousand Sultānī *dirams*<sup>8</sup>.

During the expedition to Chand-wāl<sup>9</sup> [i. e. Chand-wār],

<sup>4</sup> This paragraph, and these lines may be looked upon as an interpolation, for they are only contained in some of the more modern copies of the text.

<sup>5</sup> The printed text has *sin*—س—but that letter stands for *sixty*, which is not correct. *Ḥād*—ح—stands for 600, *mīm*—م—for 40, and *dāl*—د—for 4 = 644 H. The last day of the month is the 29th.

<sup>6</sup> Tamur, in Turkish, signifies iron.

<sup>7</sup> In some copies, "brother" of Malik Firūz. This is the person who stands first in the list of the Maliks of Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish, and bore likewise the latter Turkish name. See page 625.

<sup>8</sup> All the old copies have *dirams*, but the modern ones *jūts*.

<sup>9</sup> Chand-wāl and Chand-wār are synonymous. It is, no doubt, the place referred to at page 470, near which Jai-Chand, Rājā of Kinnaur and Banāras, was overthrown by Sultān Mu'izz ud-Dīn, Muhammad-i-Sām, Ghūrī. Its name even has nearly perished, and Firūzābād has arisen almost upon its ruins. It is situated about twenty-five miles east of Āgrah on the banks of the jūn or Yamunā. There are other places bearing similar names which led me to suppose, as stated in note<sup>1</sup>, page 470, and, also from the loose manner in which native writers refer to it, as noticed in para 5 to note at page 518, that it was a different place, several authors stating that the battle above referred to took place "in the neighbourhood of Chand-wār and Itāwah," while, at the same time, these two places are some forty or more miles apart. The ruins of the ancient city of Chand wār cover the surrounding country for miles round Firūzābād—mosques, mausoleums, gateways, and other extensive buildings—indicating the size and importance of the place.

unexpectedly, the son of the Rāe of Chand-wāl, Laddah, by name, fell into his hands; and, when he brought him to the Sultān's presence, Tamur Khān-i-Ḳī-rān received suitable commendation. Subsequently, he became Nā'ib Amīr-i-Ākhur [Deputy Lord of the Stable], and, at that time, the Amīr-i-Ākhur was Tughril-i-Tughān Khān [No. vii.]. Having obtained this office, he performed approved service therein; and, when Tughril-i-Tughān Khān was assigned the fief of Budā'un, Tamur Khān-i-Ḳī-rān became Amīr-i-Ākhur.

During the reign of Sultān Raḡīyyat—on whom be the Almighty's mercy!—he became feudatory of Ḳinnaui; and, during that reign, by the sublime command, he was despatched towards Gwāliyūr and Mālwah in command of the Islāmi forces, and, during that expedition, he did good service<sup>1</sup>. Subsequently, after he returned to the Court, the fief of Karah was entrusted to him, and, in that part, he undertook many expeditions against the infidels, and discharged, in a complete manner, all the duties of good generalship.

When Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn, Tā-yasa'ī, who was feudatory of Awadh, died, the territory of Awadh, with its dependencies, was entrusted to Malik Tamur Khān-i-Ḳī-rān's charge. In that part, as far as the frontier of the Tirhut territory, he performed great deeds, and obtained possession of vast booty; and compelled the Rāes and Rānās, and independent [Hindū] tribes<sup>2</sup>, of that country, to pay him tribute. On several occasions he plundered the territory of Bhatī-ghor<sup>3</sup>, and extorted tribute.

In the year 642 H., when he proceeded to Lakhanawati, his behaviour towards Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān, and to what point it reached, has been previously recorded in this Section<sup>4</sup>; and, whilst Malik Tughril-i-Tughān Khān

<sup>1</sup> No mention of this expedition occurs in the account of her reign.

<sup>2</sup> Here the word مواسات referred to in note<sup>7</sup>, page 705, is used evidently as the plural of موسى. The meaning is apparent.

<sup>3</sup> Bhatī-Ghorā, or Bhat-Ghorah—the tract lying on the left bank of the Son, east of Banāras, in the centre of which Kālmjar is situated.

<sup>4</sup> See pages 664—667. His death occurred on the 29th of Shawwāl, 644 H. There is an inscription respecting him in the Bihār Museum, dated in the first month of this year, which has been published in the *Bengal Asiatic Journal* for 1871. That inscription tends to show that he considered himself inde-

was at the capital, he came, unattended, to Mānīsh<sup>1</sup>, and removed his family, and the whole of his effects, from Awadh to Lakhanawātī. For a period of two years he continued, in rebellion<sup>2</sup>, at Lakhanawātī, and afterwards died, on the same night in which Tughril-i-Tughān Khān took his departure from the world; and, as the daughter<sup>3</sup> of Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak-i-Yughān-tat, was his wife, she duly performed her obligation [to him], and took his corpse to Awadh from Lakhanawātī, and there he was buried. The Almighty's mercy be upon him!

IX. MALIK HINDŪ KHĀN, MU-AYYID-UD-DĪN, MIHTAR-I-MUBĀRAK-UL-KHĀZĪN-US-SULTĀNĪ.

Hindū Khān, Mihtar<sup>4</sup>-i-Mubārak, was, by origin, of Mahir<sup>5</sup>. When he first came into the august Sultān's service, the Sultān [I-yal-timīsh] purchased him of Fakhr-ud-Dīn, the Ṣafahānī. Hindū Khān was a man of exceeding good disposition, and of exemplary conduct, of sincere piety, and, in the Sultān's service, had attained great intimacy with him, and had reached a position of the most

pendent, unless, as is often the case, and as repeatedly shown in this work, his subordinate has given him titles after his own fancy. This inscription is also given in Blochmann's "*Contributions*," page 37, with a translation. There is an error in the last however, the words Tughrl-us-Sultānī do not mean Tughrl, *the Royal*, but Tughrl, the Sultān's [I-yal-timīsh's] slave—the Sultānī Tughrl—a term applied to the following Malik and to several of the great Maliks herein mentioned. See also note \*, to page 41 of the same paper.

<sup>1</sup> This name is doubtful. In the most reliable copies it is مانی as above, but in others مانی and مانی. The Calcutta printed text has تاسی—Tābas.

<sup>2</sup> Some copies of the text have شکر نشی—organization and conduct of troops—but it is evidently a mistake for سرکشی—rebellion—from the facts of the matter, as the inscription previously referred to shows. It was the stormy period preceding the reign of Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh. See the latter part of 'Alā-ud Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh's reign, pages 667—669. Some modern copies have کام رانی—happiness, felicity, &c.

<sup>3</sup> In the printed text, the word *farwand*—child or daughter of—has been left out, so it may be imagined what a sentence it makes.

<sup>4</sup> The word Mihtar signifies greater, and a lord, the head or chief of a tribe, &c. It is here probably used as a title.

<sup>5</sup> If he was originally from Mihir or Mīhr, which is probably intended for the place of that name in the Sāgar and Narbadah territories, in Lat. 24° 16', Long. 80° 49'—for I know of no place of such name in Turkistān—Hindū Khān was probably a converted Hindū. This seems to show that there was a brisk trade carried on in Hindū as well as Turkish slaves.

perfect confidence. Throughout the whole reign of Sultān I-yal-timish—from the beginning to the close—and the reign of Sultān Rapiyyat likewise, he was honoured and esteemed, had held the office of Treasurer, and had done good services. All Sultān I-yal-timish's slaves who attained offices in the state, and positions of greatness, were objects of his regard and affection; and they all looked upon him as a kind and loving father.

When Hindū Khān first came into the Sultān's service, he became Yūz-bān [Keeper of the hunting leopards], and, subsequently, he was made Torch-bearer; and, whilst holding that office, within the limits of the territory of Baran, at the time when the Sultān [I-yal-timish] was feudatory of Baran [before he succeeded to the throne], in the reign of the beneficent Sultān, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, during a raid against one of the independent tribes of Hindū infidels, Hindū Khān Mihtar-i-Mubārak, with the spike of his torch, unhorsed a Hindū and sent the man to Hell. The Sultān [afterwards] made him his Tasht-dār [Ewer-bearer], and, in that capacity, he served for a considerable time.

When the affairs of the kingdom came under the administration of the Shamsī dynasty, the Mihtar-i-Mubārak became Treasurer to Sultān I-yal-timish, but he did not ever give up the office of Tasht-dār up to the end of the Sultān's lifetime, and used, as heretofore, to perform the duties of personal Ewer-bearer. When the august Sultān encamped before the preserved fortress of Gwāliyūr, and took that place, this servant of the victorious dynasty, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, during that expedition, for a period of seven months, in accordance with commands, was in the habit of delivering a discourse, twice in each week, at the entrance of the royal pavilion; and, throughout the month of Ramaṣān, and on the 10th of Zi-Hijjah, and 10th of Muḥarram, the author used to perform the service daily<sup>1</sup>. After the fortress was taken possession of, as the just claims of his priestly duties had been established, the administration of all matters of law and religion of that fortress was entrusted to the author, and this installation took place in the year 630 H<sup>2</sup>. This is mentioned because,

<sup>1</sup> See page 619. There our author makes a different statement.

<sup>2</sup> This appears to have been our author's first appointment under the government of Dillī, at least the first one he mentions.

at the time of investing the author with the direction of law affairs, that Mihtar of Mihtars, Mihtar-i-Mubārak, Hindū Khān himself, was present in the royal treasury, and treated him with such kindness and encouragement that this servant of the state was much beholden to him for such honour on his part. Almighty God reward him, and have mercy on him!

When the Shamsī reign came to a termination, in the reign of Sultān Rāziyyat, the territory and fortress of Uchchah was entrusted to Malik Hindū Khān's charge; and, when the throne passed to Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, he returned from that province to the Court, and the territory of Jalandhar [Jalhandar] was conferred upon him, and there also he died

X. MALIK IKHTIYĀR-UD-DĪN, QARĀ-QASH<sup>a</sup> KHĀN-I-AET-KĪN.

Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Qarā-Qash Khān-i-Aet-kin<sup>a</sup>, was from Qarah-Khitā, and was a man of exceeding amiable disposition, magnanimous, pure in mind, and adorned with all manliness and valour, and was one of the ancient slaves of the Sultān [I-yal-timish].

When the august Sultān first purchased him, he made him his personal Cup-bearer, and, after he had served in that capacity for a considerable time, he acquired the fief of Barīhūn and Darangawān [Daran-gā-on?]<sup>b</sup>. Some years subsequently, he became the Superintendent of the Khālīṣah [crown province] of Tabarhūndah, and, after that, also during the reign of the august Sultān, Multān became his fief, after Malik Kabīr Khān<sup>c</sup> [Izz-ud-Dīn, Ayāz-i-Hazār-Mardah], and his title then became Qarā-Qash Khān.

On the expiration of the Shamsī reign, Sultān Rāziyyat

<sup>a</sup> Also written قرا قوش—Qarā-Qūsh.

<sup>b</sup> Some writers give the pronounciation of this word Aytkin, instead of Aet-kin, but the last, I think, is the most correct. See page 318 Under the reign he is styled Malik-al-Kabīr—the Great Malik.

<sup>c</sup> I fail to recognize these places satisfactorily. One may be meant for Dharam-gā-on, a very common name. The words are written — درہم — درہم — and درگاہ and درگاہ —  
<sup>d</sup> See page 725



took Lohor from Malik Kabir Khān-i-Ayāz, and made over to him, in lieu thereof, the fief of Multān, as has been previously narrated<sup>7</sup>. What befell Malik Qarā-Qash at Lohor, and his evacuation of that city, during the inroad of the infidel Mughals and their appearance before Lohor, will be recorded in the account of the Lohor disaster<sup>8</sup>. He [then] had the territory of Bhīānah conferred upon him, and he continued in that part some time. When the reign of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, came, and the Malik revolted, Malik Qarā-Qash Khān, with Malik Yūz-Bak [Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Tughril Khān], came to the capital and attached themselves to Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh. As Mihtar-i-Mubārak [Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Mubārak Shāh, the Farrāsh], Farrukhī, conspired against the Turk Malik and Amīrs, he influenced Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, against Malik Qarā-Qash and Malik Yūz-Bak, and the Sultān imprisoned both of them<sup>9</sup>.

After the city of Dihlī was taken, and the throne passed to Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, Malik Qarā-Qash Khān, became Amir-i-Ḥājib, and, shortly afterwards, on Friday, the 25th of the month of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, 640 H., Bhīānah became his fief<sup>1</sup>. After some time Karah was assigned to him; and, from thence, in company with Malik Tamur Khān-i-Ki-rān, with troops, he marched towards Lakhanawāṭī, and returned from thence along with Malik Tughril-i-Tughhān Khān<sup>2</sup>.

When the throne of sovereignty acquired beauty and adornment from the auspicious dignity of the Sultān of the Universe, Nāṣir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, in the year 644 H., Malik Qarā-Qash Khān was killed within the limits of Karah<sup>3</sup>. The Almighty's mercy be upon him!

<sup>7</sup> At pages 644 and 727.

<sup>8</sup> In the account of the Mughal irruption in the next Section. See also page 655.

<sup>9</sup> See pages 659 and 761.

<sup>1</sup> This must mean that he was restored to that fief again, because, just before, it is stated that he was made feudatory of Bhīānah after the evacuation of Lohor, and that, from Bhīānah, he marched to support Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh.

<sup>2</sup> See page 741.

<sup>3</sup> No particulars of this affair occur anywhere throughout this work.

XI. MALIK IKHTIYĀR-UD-DĪN, ALTŪNĪAH, OF TABARHINDAH.

Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Altūniah of Tabarhindah, was a great Malik, of vast boldness and gallantry, manliness and energy, lion-heartedness and magnanimity; and the whole of the Maliks of that time were unanimous as to his manliness and valour. At the time of the imprisonment of Sultān Raḡīyyat—on whom be peace!—he had fought encounters with the forces of the disaffected Maliks, in conjunction with Sultān Raḡīyyat, and had displayed great heroism<sup>4</sup>.

When the august Sultān [I-yal-timish] first purchased him, he gave him the *Sharāb-dārī* [office—the care of the liquors]<sup>5</sup>. After some time, as the Sultān had remarked proofs of manliness depicted upon his brow, he gave him the office of *Sar Chatar-dār* [Head of the state canopy-bearers]; and, when the *Shamsī* rule came to its termination, during the reign of Sultān Raḡīyyat, the fief of Baran was conferred upon Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn. Subsequently, Tabarhindah<sup>6</sup> was given to him; and, at the time when the hearts of the Turk Maliks and Amirs, who were the slaves of the *Shamsī* dynasty, became changed towards Sultān Raḡīyyat, on account of the favour Jamāl-ud-Dīn, Yā-kūt, the Abyssinian, had found with her, the Amir-i-Ḥājjib, Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn-i-Aet-kin, and Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Altūniah, of Tabarhindah, were connected by a firm compact of unanimity and friendship, and bonds of intimacy; and, by virtue of this fabric of union, Malik Aet-kin, secretly, gave intimation of this change to the latter. Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Altūniah, in the fortress of Tabarhindah, began openly to rebel, and withdrew his head from the yoke of obedience to that Sultān.

Sultān Raḡīyyat, in the month of Ahār<sup>7</sup>, moved from the

<sup>4</sup> The ambitious and rebellious conduct of himself and his colleague in sedition was the cause of her downfall, as is stated under

<sup>5</sup> Not necessarily intoxicating

<sup>6</sup> This was a *Kāndīsh* district, as mentioned at page 746

<sup>7</sup> Ahār, from the Sanskrit—अहर्—the third solar month of the Hindūs—June—July. The Muhammadans, as early as this, it seems, had begun to use the names of the Hindū months. Under her reign it is said to have been the

capital towards Tabarhindah with the [contingents] comprising the centre<sup>a</sup> [division] of her forces, as<sup>a</sup> has been related [under her reign]; and, when Sultān Raḡiyyat was seized and imprisoned, and the Malik and Amīrs returned to the capital again<sup>b</sup>, and the throne of sovereignty came to Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Altūnlah, contracted marriage with Sultān Raḡiyyat, who was in duress [under his charge in the fort of Tabarhindah], and, by reason of that union, began to evince contumacy<sup>c</sup>. When Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Aet-kin [Altūnlah's confederate], was assassinated, and Malik Badr-ud-Dīn-i-Sunḡar, the Rūmī, became Amīr-i-Hājib, Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Altūnlah, brought forth Sultān Raḡiyyat from the fortress of Tabarhindah, assembled forces, and marched towards the capital. In the month of Rabī'ul-Awwāl, however, they retired unsuccessful. Sultān Raḡiyyat was taken prisoner within the limits of Kaithal; and Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Altūnlah, was taken in the Maṣūr-pūr<sup>d</sup> district, and was martyred by Hindūs on Tuesday, the 25th of Rabī'ul-Akḡhir, 638 H.<sup>e</sup> The Almighty's mercy be upon him!

#### XII. MALIK IKHTIYĀR-UD-DĪN, AET-KĪN.

Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Aet-kin, was a Ḳarah-Khitā-ī, a well-favoured Turk, a man of good disposition and of handsome countenance, dignity, wisdom, and sagacity.

The august Sultān [I-yal-timish] purchased him from Amīr Ī-bak, Sannā-ī<sup>f</sup>, and he had served the Sultān long in

9th of Ramaḡān 637 H.—May, 1230, A.D. It was a great object with the rebels to make Sultān Raḡiyyat move in the hot season.

<sup>a</sup> See note <sup>2</sup>, page 634.

<sup>b</sup> They lost no time, for on the 28th of the same month they set up Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh.

<sup>c</sup> Contumacy towards the usurper of her throne. See under Raḡiyyat's reign, page 645, and 647. His confederates in sedition against Raḡiyyat had now been removed from the scene and their ambitious designs frustrated, and therefore Altūnlah thought it to his advantage to espouse her cause.

<sup>d</sup> West of Dhillī, and north-west of Kaithal, Lat. 30° 21', Long. 76° 5'.

<sup>e</sup> These events are related differently under Raḡiyyat's reign, which see.

<sup>f</sup> In some copies Nālwi—native of Nisā, and, in the list of Malik's at the beginning of the Nāḡirī reign, page 673, there is a Malik Naif-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak-i-Balkā Khān, styled, *Sannā-ī*, but not the person here referred to. He may have been the son of the above.

every office and degree, and become deserving of royal kindness and dignities of greatness. In the beginning of the Sultān's reign, he was made Sar-i-Jān-dār [Head of the Jān-dārs]<sup>6</sup>, and, after some time, as proofs of merit were conspicuous upon his brow, Maṣṣūr-pūr was given to him in fief. Some time after, Kūjāh<sup>7</sup> and Nandanah were entrusted to his charge, and, on that frontier, he performed distinguished services. When the period of sovereignty devolved upon Sultān Raṣiyyat, she summoned him to the Court, and assigned him the fief of Budā'un. After some farther period, he attained the dignity of Amīr-i-Ḥājib, and performed approved services before the throne; but, on account of the favour which Jamāl-ud-Dīn, Yā-ḡūt, the Abyssinian, had acquired, the whole of the Maliks and Amīrs, Turks, Ghūrīs, and Tājiks<sup>8</sup>, were withdrawing from their attendance on the Court of Sultān Raṣiyyat, and were afflicted in heart, particularly Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Aet-kin<sup>9</sup>, the Amīr-i-Ḥājib, as has been recorded in the account of Sultān Raṣiyyat. For this reason, Jamāl-ud-Dīn, Yā-ḡūt, was martyred, and the throne passed to Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh<sup>10</sup>.

On the day of rendering fealty at the Kūshk [the

<sup>6</sup> In some copies, Sar-i-Jamādār [Sar-i-Jāmah-dār<sup>1</sup>] or Head of the Wardrobe, and, in one good copy, Sharḡ-badār

<sup>7</sup> This place is generally mentioned in connexion with Banīān and the Kārlūgh Turks. The word might be spelt with گ—Gūjāh. The majority of copies and the oldest have كوجا but one has كوجان and a second كوجا. The <sup>2</sup> likewise may be intended for گ. See list of victories, page 627

<sup>8</sup> At pages 304 and 333, our author says the Ghūrīs are Tājiks, or Tāziks —i. e. descendants of Arabs born in 'Ajam—but here he evidently applies the term as it originally means, and Ghūrīs to natives of Ghūr only. The compilers of "*Puthān*" dynasties may see that such a term as theirs never occurs in any Muḥammadan History. Tājiks are not Scythians, I beg leave to say

<sup>9</sup> The "affliction" that appears to have troubled him was ambition and sedition, as may be gathered from the statement in the account of Malik Altūniah, just related, and a little farther on

<sup>10</sup> The modern copies of the text have an additional sentence and a verse here, but it is evidently an interpolation: they are as follows:—"As sovereignty turned its face from Sultān Raṣiyyat, on this account, a wag gives these lines:—

'Sovereignty from her robe's skirt turned away,  
When it perceived black dust on the hem thereof''

Our author, who was resident at her Court, does not attempt to make us believe that Sultān Raṣiyyat was guilty of any criminal familiarity with the Abyssinian, although more modern writers do insinuate it, but, I believe, without reason.

Castle], the royal residence, when they seated the [new] Sultān on the throne of the kingdom, and the Maliks, Amīrā, 'Ulamā, Şadrā, and the Chiefs of the troops and Grandees of the capital were assembled together in the sublime audience hall for the purpose of the public rendering of fealty<sup>1</sup>, all pledged their allegiance to the sovereignty of Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, and the Deputy-ship [Lieutenancy] of Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Aet-kin; and he stipulated with Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, that, as he, the Sultān, was young in years, he should, for the period of one year, leave the administration of the affairs of the realm to his slave [Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Aet-kin], and that the Sultān should issue an order in accordance with all this<sup>2</sup>.

His petition having been complied with, Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Aet-kin, in union with the Khwājah, Muhazzab-ud-Dīn, the Wazīr, proceeded to administer the affairs of the kingdom. He requested [permission] from the Sultān to assume the *naubat* and to have an elephant. He took a sister of the Sultān to wife, and the whole of the affairs of the country appertained to him<sup>3</sup>. From these circumstances jealousy entered into the heart of the Sultān, and, secretly, several times he plotted against him, to get rid of him, but did not succeed, until, on Monday, the 8th of the month of Muḥarram, 638 H. They related on this wise, that the Sālār [chief, leader], Aḥmad-i-Sa'd—the Almighty's mercy be upon him!—came secretly to the Sultān's presence and made a representation, in consequence of which intoxicating drink was given to several Turks, and he [the Sultān] gave directions to those inebriated Turks, who descended from the upper part [upper apartments] of the Kaşr-i-Safed [White Castle], and came down in front of the dais in the Audience Hall<sup>4</sup>, and with a wound from a knife martyred Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Aet-kin<sup>5</sup>. They

<sup>1</sup> On Sunday, the 11th of Shawwāl, 637 H.

<sup>2</sup> The period for which he was to act is not mentioned under the Sultān's reign.

<sup>3</sup> See under Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh's reign. There it is stated that he assumed the triple *naubat*, and stationed an elephant at his gate. The Sultān's sister had previously been married to a Kaşī's son. See page 650.

<sup>4</sup> Where Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Aet-kin, as Deputy, would be transacting state affairs.

<sup>5</sup> This is related in a very different manner under the reign, which see, at page 651.

inflicted several wounds on the *Khawājah*, *Muhazzab-ud-Dīn*, the *Wazīr*, but he got away from them, wounded as he was, and made his escape.

### XIII. MALIK BADR-UD-DĪN, SUNĀR °-İ-RŪMĪ.

Malik Badr-ud-Dīn, SunĀr, was a Rūmī [of Rūm—Rūmīliah] by origin, and some of the trustworthy have related after this manner, that he was the son of a *Musal-mān* and had fallen into slavery; but he was a man of exceedingly good disposition, with comeliness and dignity, of admirable morality, humble, and endowed with kindness and laudable qualities for winning men.

When the Sultān [I-yal-timish] first purchased him, he became *Tasht-dār* [Ewer-bearer], and, after he had performed that office for some time, he became *Bahlah-dār* [Bearer of the Privy Purse]. Subsequently, he became *Shahnah*° [Superintendent] of the *Zarrād Khānah* of *Budā'un*°; and, after some farther time, he rose to be *Nā'ib Amīr-i-Ākhur* [Deputy Lord of the Stable], and served the Sultān in every capacity, and did approved services. After he became *Amīr-i-Ākhur*, he used never to be absent from the gate of the royal stable for a moment save through unavoidable necessity; and, whether on the move or stationary, he used to be always present in attendance at the threshold of sovereignty. Whilst the fortress of *Gwāliyūr* was being invested, he was pleased to show such goodness and countenance towards the writer of these words, and to treat him with such honour and respect, that the impression of such benevolence will never be effaced from his heart. May the Almighty have mercy on him!

When the sovereignty passed to Sultān *Rāziyyat*, the fief of *Budā'un* was given him, and, in the year 638 H°, at the time that *Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn*, *Act-kin*, was

° SunĀr, in the Rūmī [Turkish] dialect, is said to signify a black-eyed falcon, which lives to a great age, and to have the same meaning as *Shunghār* or *Shunġār*.

° See note 4, page 732.

° Whilst *I-yal-timish* held that fief before he came to the throne. The office was the same as that of *Sar-ı Jān-dār*. See note 7, page 603.

° On the 8th of *Muharram*, 638 H.

assassinated, in the reign of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, the latter summoned Malik Badr-ud-Dīn, Sunḡar, from Budā'ūn, and conferred upon him the office of Amir-i-Ḥājib. When Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Altūniah, of Tabarhindah, along with Sultān Rāziyyat, resolved to march upon the capital, and they arrived in the vicinity of Dihlī, in the quelling of that sedition, Malik Badr-ud-Dīn, Sunḡar, performed excellent services; but, after a short time, disagreement arose between him and the Khwājah, Muhazzab-ud-Dīn, the Wazīr, through a trifling cause which it behoveth not to mention. This irritation continued to increase, and, on this account, the Khwājah, Muhazzab-ud-Dīn<sup>1</sup>, incited the Sultān against him, and the Sultān's confidence in Malik Badr-ud-Dīn, Sunḡar, departed, and his faith in the Sultān likewise ceased. He [Badr-ud-Dīn Sunḡar] convoked the great men of the capital, for the purpose [of discussing] a change in the government, at the mansion of Sayyid Tāj-ud-Dīn, Mūsāwī, on Monday, the 14th<sup>2</sup> of the month of Ṣafar, 639 H. The Khwājah, Muhazzab-ud-Dīn, gave intimation to the Sultān of this circumstance, and the Sultān mounted, and called upon Malik Badr-ud-Dīn, Sunḡar, to give up his intentions<sup>3</sup>. He joined the Sultān, and, on that same day, he was sent off [on his way] to Budā'ūn.

After some time, the decree of destiny having gone forth, it brought him back to the capital again, without having received orders to return, and he came to the city of Dihlī, and alighted at the dwelling of Malik Kuṭb-ud-Dīn [Ḥusain, son of 'Alī, the Ghūrī]—on whom be the Almighty's mercy!—thinking that perhaps, under his protection, he might obtain mercy. A mandate was issued from the sovereign's Court so that they seized him, and he was cast into prison. He continued in imprisonment and confinement for some time, and, in the end, on the night of

<sup>1</sup> This is the "upright officer" in ELLIOT, referred to in note <sup>o</sup>, page 641.

<sup>2</sup> Some copies here, as well as under the reign, disagree about this date. Some have the 10th, and some, the 17th, but two of the best copies have here, as well as previously, the 14th of Ṣafar.

<sup>3</sup> The particulars of this affair have been already given under the reign, pages 652 and 653. Here likewise is additional proof, were any required, to show who the parties were, and who betrayed Malik Badr-ud-Dīn, Sunḡar.

Wednesday, the 14th of the month of Jamādi-ul-Awwal<sup>4</sup>, 639 H., he attained martyrdom<sup>5</sup>. The Almighty's mercy be upon him!

#### XIV. MALIK TĀJ-UD-DĪN, SANJAR-I-ĶĶ-LUK.

Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-ĶĶ-luk, was a thorough man, and his native country was Khifchāk. He was a person of vast energy, manliness, sagacity, stateliness, gallantry, and valour, and in all endowments he had reached the acme. He was of great rectitude and continence, and no intoxicating drink was ever allowed to come near him.

The august Sultān [I-yal-timish] had purchased him from the Khawājah, Jamāl-ud-Dīn-i-Nadīmān; and, in the beginning of the Sultān's reign, he became Jāma-dār [Keeper of the Wardrobe]; and, after some time, he became Shahnah<sup>6</sup> [Superintendent] of the Stable, and in every department he performed distinguished services for the Sultān.

When the Shamsi reign came to a termination, and the throne devolved on Sultān Rāziyyat, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-ĶĶ-luk, became feudatory of Baran, and was appointed to proceed at the head of a body of troops towards the fortress of Gwāliyūr, and in Sha'bān, 635 H., the writer of these words, the servant of the victorious dynasty, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, in company with Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-ĶĶ-luk, came out of the fortress of Gwāliyūr<sup>7</sup> and proceeded, and presented himself at the Court of Sultān Rāziyyat. On the road Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar, showed

<sup>4</sup> See note <sup>4</sup>, page 654.

<sup>5</sup> There must have been some reason why he returned to the capital—probably to sue for pardon in person—and our author could, evidently, have said more, had he chosen to do so. Malik Kutb-ud-Dīn, Husain, son of 'Alī, the Ghūrī, is the same venerable chief as mentioned, at pages 658 and 661. He was one of the greatest of I-yal-timish's Mahks, and his name is entered in the list of them at the end of his reign. He too was made away with, in some mysterious manner, during the reign of that paragon of perfection, according to our author, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, n. 653 H. The events, which induced him to seek an asylum in Hind, will be found in the account of the Mughal irruption in the next Section.

<sup>6</sup> See note <sup>4</sup>, page 732.

<sup>7</sup> See page 643, and note <sup>4</sup>.



such goodness towards the author as cannot be expressed. At the time of removing from Gwāliyūr he carried two chests of books, the private property of this servant, upon one of his own camels, and brought them to Mahā'un, and upon other occasions, had treated the author with manifold kindness—May the Almighty make him be acceptable, and have mercy upon him!

On his reaching the capital again, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar, became feudatory of the district of Sursutl; and, when the throne of sovereignty came to Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrār Shāh, he performed abundant services. On the termination of the Mu'izzi reign, and the throne passing to 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, he became feudatory of Budā'un<sup>1</sup>; and in the year 640 H., he overthrew the independent [Hindū tribes<sup>2</sup> of Kathehr of Budā'un, and performed many exploits against the infidels, and founded Jāmi' Masjids in several places, and established pulpits for the Khatibs. He assembled a numerous body of forces—8000 horse on foot, besides *pāyiks* with horses<sup>3</sup>—and his determination was to lead a force towards Kālinjar and Mahobah, and reduce that tract of country to subjection. A certain party [however] began to be envious of the number of his following, the quantity and efficiency of his war material, the greatness of his power, the awe in which he was held, and his intrepidity in leading troops. The deceitful promptings of the spirit of devilry moved them, so that they prepared some poison placed in a betel leaf and administered it to him, and disease of the bowels supervened, and from that disorder, in a few days, he joined the Almighty mercy. May the Most High God accept, in behalf of this amiable Malik, in repayment of the many debts of gratitude he owed him, the prayers of this frail one!

One among those debts of gratitude due to him is this. In the year 640 H., when the author resolved upon leaving

<sup>1</sup> In the oldest copy of the text the name of this city and district is always written بدالون — Budālūn—the middle *n* is nasal, and this is the correct mode of writing the word.

<sup>2</sup> There seems to have been numbers of the Mew tribe in that part in those days.

<sup>3</sup> The preacher who pronounces the *Khutbah* already explained.

<sup>4</sup> All the copies of the text are alike here—mounted *pāyiks* is a novel term I think—considering that the word means foot-man.

the capital city of Dīhli, on a journey to Lakhanawati<sup>3</sup>, and sent off his family and dependents, in advance, towards Budā'un, that Malik of excellent disposition assigned a stipend for his family and children, and treated them with all sorts of honour and reverence. Five months afterwards, when the author, following after his family, reached Budā'un, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar, bestowed upon him so many gifts, and treated him with such honour as cannot be contained within the area of writing. He was pleased to assign the author a fief with a residence at Budā'un, together with ample benefits and favours; but, as destiny, and the means of livelihood, was attracting him to the country of Lakhanawati, and the decree of fate was carrying him, the writer proceeded thither. May Almighty God accept in his favour the kindness [towards the author] of that Malik of good disposition!

#### XV. MALIK TĀJ-UD-DĪN, SANJAR-I-KURET KHĀN<sup>4</sup>

Malik Kuret Khān was a Turk of Khishchāk, of great manhood and courage, energy and wisdom, and among warriors, for warlike accomplishments, he was the peerless in all the ranks of the army of Islām; and, in horsemanship and skill in arms, he had no equal. For example, he would have two horses under saddle, one of which he would ride, and the other he would lead after him, and thus used to dash on, and, whilst the horses were galloping, he would leap from this horse to that with agility, would return to this first one again, so that, during a gallop, he used several times to mount two horses. In archery he was so skilful that no enemy in battle, and no animal in the chase used to escape his arrow. He never used to take along with him into any Shikār-gāh [chase] either leopard, hawk, or sporting dog: he brought down all with his own arrow; and in every fastness in which he imagined there would be game he would be in advance of the whole of his retinue.

<sup>3</sup> Our author was evidently unable to remain at Dīhli, in safety after the attack made upon him by the Khawājah Muḥazzab-ud-Dīn's creatures, and hence resolved to retire for a time. See under the reign of 'Alā' ud-Dīn, Ma'nās Shāh, pages 659 to 662.

<sup>4</sup> This is the only Malik among twenty-five who was not a slave.

He was the Shahnah [Superintendent] of rivers<sup>1</sup> and vessels; and this author had a great regard and affection for him. May Almighty God immerse him in forgiveness! When the Turks of the [late] Sultān [I-yal-timish] first rose against the Khwājah, Muhazzab-ud-Dīn, the Wazīr, on Wednesday, the 2nd of the month of Jamādi-ul-Awwal, 640 H., the ring-leader of the party in that outbreak was Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Kuret Khān; and a slave of the Khwājah, Muhazzab-ud-Dīn, Mihtar Jattā [by name], a Farrāsh [carpet-spreader, &c.], wounded the Malik on the face with a sword in such manner that the mark of it ever after remained<sup>2</sup>.

After the Khwājah, Muhazzab-ud-Dīn, was put to death, Malik Sanjar-i-Kuret Khān became Shahnah [Superintendent] of the elephants, and, after that, was made Sar-i-Jān-dār [Head of the Jān-dārs]. Subsequently, he was made feudatory of Budā'un, and, some time after that again, obtained the fief of Awadh. In that part he undertook many holy expeditions against infidels, achieved numerous gallant exploits, and reduced several powerful independent [Hindū] tribes. From Awadh he proceeded into Bihār and plundered that territory. Suddenly, when before the preserved city of Bihār, an arrow struck him in a mortal place, and he attained martyrdom<sup>3</sup>. The mercy of the Almighty be upon him!

#### XVI. MALIK SAIF-UD-DĪN, BAT KHĀN-I-I-BAK, THE KHITĀ-I.

Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Bat Khān-i-i-bak, the Khitā-i, was a

<sup>1</sup> The word used is *sa*—ocean, sea, great river, which last meaning must be intended here, as the Duhlī kings had no more to do with the *sea* and *sea-going* vessels than Sher Shāh the Afghān had, who is said, by a modern translator, to have "built great ships to convey Pilgrims to Makkah," by land, possibly.

<sup>2</sup> It was when the "upright officer"—the Khwājah, met with his deserts in the plain of the Rānī's *Awwa*, or reservoir.

<sup>3</sup> From this it is apparent that, after the fall of the Khalj dynasty, and the death of I-yal-timish, Bihār could not have remained in Musalmān hands. We hear of the fief of Karah, Mānak-pūr, Awadh, and Lakhapawāṭī, but never of Bihār, which must have been recovered by the Hindūs in the same way as Kālnagar, Mahobah, and other places which, previously, our author says, were conquered, and as mentioned in the lists of victories of some of the Sultāns. The particulars respecting this chief's death before Bihār, which would have been so interesting to us, our author either considered not worth mentioning, or has purposely suppressed.

person of very excellent qualities, gentle, humble, and of exemplary piety, and, in skill and warlike accomplishments, had become a master, and for manliness and sagacity was famed.

The august Sultān [I-yal-timish] purchased him in the beginning of his reign, and he became Sar Jāma-dār [Head Keeper of the Wardrobe]. Subsequently, in the reign of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, he became Sar-i-Jān-dār [Head of the Jān-dārs] <sup>2</sup>, and Kuhrām and Sāmānah became his fief. Afterwards he obtained the fief of Baran, and was appointed to proceed at the head of [a body of] forces for the purpose of taking possession of the territory of Ūchchah and Multān <sup>3</sup>. During that expedition, one of his sons, who, at the very outset of his youth, had become a proficient in manliness and skill, together with his horse, was drowned in the river Sind.

Some time after his return from thence, during the reign of the Sultān of Sultāns, Nāsir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak, the Khātā-i, became Wakil-i-Dar [Representative in Dar-bār], and, in the service of the Sublime Court, performed distinguished services <sup>1</sup>.

He served for a considerable time during the Sultān's reign, and during the expedition to Santūr he suddenly sustained a fall from his horse and was killed <sup>2</sup>. The mercy and pardon of the Almighty be upon him!

<sup>1</sup> See the printed text. the editors are sorely puzzled here.

<sup>2</sup> This expedition is not referred to under the reign, but probably has reference, in some way, to the advance of the Delhi forces to the Bīāh, the Mughals having appeared before Ūchchah mentioned at page 667. Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak, was probably sent to Ūchchah to take charge of it after the death of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bikr, son of Maḥk 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz, mentioned at page 727.

There are two other persons named Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak, an account of one of whom has been given at page 729, and the other is Ulugh Khān's brother, an account of whom will be found farther on.

<sup>3</sup> See page 699. He appears to have become Wakil-i-Dar, when 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān was disgraced, from what is stated in the account of Ulugh Khān farther on, in which the events of this period are much more detailed than under the different reigns.

<sup>2</sup> On Sunday, the 6th of Rabī'ul-Awwal, 655 H., the 12th year of Sultān Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh's reign.

## XVII. MALIK TĀJ-UD-DĪN, SANJAR-I-TEZ KHĀN.

Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Tez Khān, is a Karakhī [of Karakh]<sup>2</sup>, and is exceedingly impetuous, manly, sagacious, and intelligent, and is endowed with many excellent qualities, and numberless worthy habits. He is famed for his valour and military talents, and distinguished for his amiable disposition.

The august Sultān [I-yal-timish] purchased him; and, in the reign of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, he became Amīr-i-Ākhur. Subsequently, in the reign of Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd Shāh, he was made Nā'ib Amīr-i-Hājib<sup>3</sup> [Deputy Lord Chamberlain] and Jhanjhānah was made his fief; and, when the Khān-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, in felicity, proceeded towards Nāg-awr, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Tez Khān, who was particularly devoted to his interest and friendship, received charge of the fief of Kasmandī<sup>4</sup> and Mandiānah, of the country of Hindūstān, and there he continued some time. When the Khān-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, again joined the Court, Malik Tez Khān again returned to the capital, and Baran was made his fief, and there he remained a considerable time.

In the year 654 H., he became Wakil-i-Dar [Representative in Dar-bār] to the sovereign of Islām, and obtained the fief of Budā'ūn. Since Malik Kutlugh Khān<sup>5</sup> remained in Awadh [as feudatory], contrary to the commands of the Sublime Court, and, with the forces of Hindūstān advanced

<sup>2</sup> Karakh is the name of a village near Baghdād, but the name of this place is pronounced Karakh, with the difference of a vowel point. It is the name of a place [township] in Māwar-un-Nahr.

<sup>3</sup> In Rajab, 647 H., shortly after the marriage of Ulugh Khān's daughter to the Sultān.

<sup>4</sup> A district in Awadh, a few miles N.W. of Lucknow, also written Kasmandhī in some copies of the text.

<sup>5</sup> Who married Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn's mother, and who appears to have held the fief in conjunction with her husband. These matters are related in quite a different way under the reign of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, page 703. There our author says that Malik Bak-Tamur, the Ruknī [i. e. of Sultān Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firāz Shāh's, reign] was sent from the capital to expel Kutlugh Khān from Awadh, and that Bak-Tamur was defeated and slain, and that, upon this, the Sultān had to take the field with Ulugh Khān. See also in the account of Ulugh Khān farther on, where these events are again differently related.

towards Budā'ūn, Malik Tez Khān, at the head of a body of troops, was nominated, along with Malik Bak-tam-i-Aor Khān, to march from the capital for the purpose of repelling the troops of Hindūstān. When the two armies met within the limits of Sihrā-mū<sup>7</sup>, Malik Tez Khān was under the necessity of retiring, and he returned to the capital again. The fief of Awadh was now given to him, and he proceeded into that part, and brought that territory under his control; and gave the independent communities of infidels of Hindūstān a thorough chastisement, and extorted tribute from them.

Malik Tez Khān returned to the sublime presence in conformity with orders, and, at all times, kept the neck of service within the yoke of obedience; and, in the year in which this history was written, namely the year 658 H., he returned to the capital in conformity with the sublime command, and by the counsel of the Khān-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, at the head of the [contingents forming the] centre [division] of the forces, and those at the capital<sup>8</sup>, marched towards the Koh-pāyah of Mewāt, and performed distinguished services, and returned again to the presence of the Court, the asylum of the universe.

On a second occasion<sup>9</sup>, in attendance at the illustrious stirrup of the Khān-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, he again proceeded to the Koh-pāyah of Mewāt on an expedition and holy war against the Hindūs, and displayed great gallantry and activity. On his return to the capital, he was distinguished by being presented with ample honours; and he returned again towards [his fief of] Awadh. May the Almighty God preserve and continue the servants of the Nāsirī dynasty in power and dominion. Amin!

<sup>7</sup> A place west of the Ghograh river, in Lat 28° 19', Long 80° 24', the Sera-Mow of the Indian Atlas.

<sup>8</sup> The available troops at the capital probably The *kalā*—or centre contingents forming it—has been explained in a previous note. See also the latter part of the year 657 H., under Nāsir-ud-Dīn's reign, page 714.

<sup>9</sup> Our author ends his history, under Nāsir-ud-Dīn's reign, with the force leaving upon this expedition, on the 13th of Šafar, 658 H., and the events of the following day. These operations, on this occasion, were against the Mew or Mewrā. See page 715, and in the account of Ulugh Khān farther on, where these events are related in a totally different manner.

XVIII. MALIK IKHTIYĀR-UD-DĪN, YŪZ-BAK-I-TUGHRLĪ  
KHĀN.

Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Yūz-Bak-i-Tughrīl Khān, was a native of Khīschāk, and the slave of the august Sultān, Shams-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, I-yāl-timish; and during the investment of the preserved fortress of Gwāliyūr he was Nāib Chāshnī-gīr [Deputy Comptroller of the Royal Kitchen]. When Sultān Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh, came to the throne, the office of Amīr-i-Majlis [Lord of the Council] was entrusted to Malik Yūz-Bak, and he was confirmed therein. Subsequently, the Shāhnagī [Superintendency] of the elephants was assigned to him; and, during this reign, he became especially distinguished by the Sultān's intimacy and favour.

When the Turkish slaves of the Sultān broke out into rebellion in the plain of Tarā'in<sup>1</sup>, and a number of grandees, such as Tāj-ul-Mulk, Muḥammad [Maḥmūd?], the Secretary, Bahā-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan [Ḥusain?] -i-Ash'arī, Karīm-ud-Dīn-i-Zāhid [the Recluse], and Niẓām-ud-Dīn, the Shafurkānī, were put to death, one of the ringleaders of the faction was Malik Yūz-Bak-i-Tughrīl Khān.<sup>2</sup>

When the throne came to Sultān Raẓīyyat, he was made Amīr-i-Ākhur [Lord of the Stable], and on Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh's, ascending the throne, and when, subsequently, a party of the Turkish Malikis and Amīrs invested the city of Dīhlī<sup>3</sup>, Malik Yūz-Bak, along with Malik Karā-Ḳash, came into the city and attached themselves to Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh's party<sup>4</sup>, on Tuesday, the last day of the month of Sha'bān, 639 H., and, upon several occasions, rendered approved service. Mihtar-i-Mubārak Shāh, Farrukhī, who had acquired entire power over the Sultān, and had caused the Turkish Malikis and Amīrs to be expelled from the capital, instigated the Sultān in such manner that he seized Malik Yūz-Bak and

<sup>1</sup> The scene of Rāe Pithorā's victory over the forces of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, and of his own total overthrow in the following year—the present Talāwarī.

<sup>2</sup> See under the reign at page 635.

<sup>3</sup> See the account of Malik Karā-Ḳash Khān, page 747.

<sup>4</sup> See under the reign, pages 658 and 659.

Malik Karā-Kash, and they were imprisoned<sup>4</sup> on Wednesday, the 9th of the month of Ramaḡān, 639 H. When the city was taken, on Tuesday, the 8th of the month of Zī-Ka'dah, Malik Yūz-Bak was liberated<sup>5</sup>.

When Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, ascended the throne, Tabarhindah was entrusted to his charge, and, subsequently, Lohor was made his fief. There he continued some time, when a feud arose between him and Malik Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Muḡammad of Bindār<sup>6</sup>, and, subsequently, he began to rebel against the Court, for rashness and imperiousness were implanted in his nature and constitution, until Ulugh Khān-i-Mu'azzam, unexpectedly, brought him to the Court, and he was made much of. Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam likewise made a representation for the royal consideration so that Malik Yūz-Bak was distinguished by the Sulṭān's favour, and his disobedient conduct was pardoned. Subsequently, for some time, Kinnauj was his fief, when he again began to act in a contumacious manner, and Malik Kutb-ud-Dīn, Husain [son of 'Alī, the Ghūrī], on whom be peace<sup>7</sup>—was despatched from the capital, at the head of a body of troops, against him. He reduced Malik Yūz-Bak to duty and obedience, and brought him back to the sublime Court again<sup>8</sup>.

After some time had passed, Awadh was entrusted to his charge. When he again returned to the capital, the territory of Lakhaṇawaṭī was made over to him<sup>9</sup>. After he went to that part, and brought that country under his jurisdiction, hostility arose between him and the Rāc of Jāj-nagar. The leader of the forces of Jāj-nagar was a

<sup>4</sup> See page 747.

<sup>5</sup> Malik Karā-Kash was liberated at the same time.

<sup>6</sup> The same person, no doubt, who is styled Chā-ūsh, or Pursuivant, in the list of I-yal-timsh's Malikhs at page 626.

<sup>7</sup> There is nothing of all this referred to either under the reign of Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, Sulṭān Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, or in the account of Ulugh Khān.

<sup>8</sup> This also is not mentioned under the two last reigns. STEWART, in his "HISTORY OF BENGAL," page 65, states that "Ikhtyar Addien Faghri Khan, Mulk [*mult* signifies a country] Yuzbek," succeeded "Stef Addeen Yugan Tunt," who died in 651 H., as governor of Bengal, but, as he makes a mistake of only *twenty years* respecting the death of Saif-ud-Dīn, I bak i- Yughān-Tai, it may be imagined what dependence can be placed upon the statements in that work.



person, by name, Sāban-tar [Sāwan-tara ?]<sup>10</sup>, the son-in-law of the Rāe, who, during the time of Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Tughril-i-Tughān-Khān, had advanced to the bank of the river<sup>1</sup> of Lakhanawati, and, having shown the greatest audacity, had driven the Musalmān forces as far as the gate [of the city] of Lakhanawati<sup>2</sup>. In Malik Tughril Khān-i-Yüz-Bak's time, judging from the past, he [the Jāj-nagar leader] manifested great boldness, and fought, and was defeated. Again, another time, Malik Tughril Khān-i-Yüz-Bak fought an engagement with the Rāe of Jāj-nagar, and again came out victorious.

On a third occasion<sup>3</sup>, Malik Yüz-Bak sustained a slight reverse, and a white elephant, than which there was no other more valuable in that part, and which was ruttish, got out of his hands in the field of battle, and fell into the hands of the infidels of Jāj-nagar.

The following year, however, Malik Yüz-Bak asked assistance from the Court of Dihlī, and, then, marched an army from Lakhanawati into the territory of Umurdaṇ, and, unexpectedly, reached the Rāe's capital, which city [town] they style Umurdaṇ<sup>4</sup>. The Rāe of that place retired before Malik Yüz-Bak, and the whole of the Rāe's family, dependents, and followers, and his wealth, and elephants, fell into the hands of the Musalmān forces.

On his return to Lakhanawati, Malik Yüz-Bak began to act contumaciously towards the Court, and assumed three canopies of state, red, black, and white. He then marched an army from Lakhanawati towards Awadh, and entered the city of Awadh; and directed that the *Khutbah* should

<sup>10</sup> Evidently the Sanskrit—बुध्वा—brave, heroic, and—बल or बल—nature, bottom.

A branch of the Ganges is probably meant here, as it is styled in the original, the Ab-i-Lakhanawati.

<sup>2</sup> See page 740.

<sup>3</sup> Compare STEWART, [page 65], who states that Tughril Khān-i-Yüz-Bak, "invaded the dominions of that prince"—the Rāe of Jāj-nagar, and "was completely defeated, and lost all his elephants; among which was a white one, esteemed a great curiosity."

<sup>4</sup> This evidently refers to the capital of Jāj-nagar, and not a different territory—Sylhet—as STEWART makes it out.

In the oldest copies the word is اورمدن as above, but in others ارمردن Armurdaṇ or Urmardaṇ, and ارمردن—Armurdaṇ or Uzmurdaṇ. See note <sup>6</sup>, page 587, para. 8.

be read for him, and styled himself Sultān Mughis-ud-Dīn. After a couple of weeks, one among the Turkish Amīrs, belonging to the troops of the sovereign which were [located] in the vicinity of [the territory of] Awadh, unawares, pushed forward into Awadh [giving out] that the Sultān's troops were at hand. Malik Yūz-Bak, discomfited, embarked on board a vessel and returned to Lakhanawati again.

This rebellious act on the part of Malik Yūz-Bak, the whole of the people of the realm of Hindūstān—both clergy and laity, Musalmāns and Hindūs<sup>5</sup>—condemned, that he should have become a traitor to his sovereign, and displayed such hostility and sedition. Undoubtedly the evil consequences attending such conduct befell him, and he fell from foundation and root. After he returned from Awadh to Lakhanawati, he determined upon marching into Kāmūd, and transported an army across the river Beg-matī<sup>6</sup>. As the Rāe of Kāmūd had not the power to resist him, he retired precipitately some whither. Malik Yūz-Bak took the city of Kāmūd and possessed himself of countless wealth and treasure, to such extent, that the amount and weight thereof cannot be contained within the area of record.

The author, at the time he was sojourning at Lakhanawati, had heard from travellers whose statements are to be relied upon, that from the reign of Gushkasb<sup>7</sup>, Shah of 'Ajam, who had invaded Chīn, and had come towards Hindūstān by that route [by way of Kāmūd], twelve hundred hoards of treasure, all sealed which were [there deposited], and any portion of which wealth and treasures not one of the Rāes had availed himself of, the whole fell into the hands of the Musalmān troops. The reading of the Khutbah, and Friday religious service were instituted

<sup>5</sup> The remark would seem to show that the Hindūs were actually begun to be thought something of, or that even infidels reproached such conduct.

<sup>6</sup> Also written Beg-matī and Bā-k-matī, as in the account of Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yar, in it is the same river. The old capital of Kāmūd was Komatā-pūr on the west bank of the Doria river, and the mention of it and the Beg-matī here tend to elucidate what I have before stated respecting the route taken by Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yar, referred to at page 561. See also note <sup>3</sup> and <sup>4</sup> in the same page.

<sup>7</sup> Gargh is <sup>14</sup> as a page 561, in some copies.

in Kāmṛūd, and signs of the people of Islām appeared there. But of what avail was all this, when the whole, from phrensy, he gave to the winds? for the wise have said that, "the seeking to perform overmuch work hath never turned out fortunate for the seeker." Distich :—

"Wealth is best which will be falling and rising :  
Wealth will be quick in springing up."

After Kāmṛūd was taken [possession of], so they related, several times the Rāc sent confidential persons [to Malik Yüz-Bak], saying : "Thou hast subdued this territory, and no Malik of the Musalmān people ever before obtained such success. Now do thou return, and replace me upon the throne, and I will send to thee tribute every year so many bags of gold, and so many elephants, and I will continue the *Khutbah* unchanged, and the Musalmān stamped coin as established \*."

Malik Yüz-Bak did not become willing to agree to this in any way ; and the Rāc gave command that all his train, and the peasantry, should go to Malik Yüz-Bak, and get him to pledge his right hand [for their safety], and buy up all the grain procurable in [the city and country of?] Kāmṛūd, at whatever price he might require, so that the Musalmān troops might have no provisions left. They did so accordingly, and bought up from them all the produce that was obtainable at a heavy rate.

Depending on the cultivated state and flourishing condition of the country, Malik Yüz-Bak did not lay up any stores of grain ; and, when the time of the spring harvest came round, the Rāc, with the whole of his subjects, rose, and opened the water dykes all around, and brought Malik Yüz-Bak and the troops of Islām to a state of helplessness, in such wise, that they were near perishing through destitution. They now took counsel together, and came to the conclusion that it was necessary to retreat, otherwise they would die of starvation.

\* Out of this passage STEWART [History of Bengal, page 66] makes the following, which is rather a free translation, certainly—"Malik [Malik probably : Mulk means country] Yuzbek ordered a mosque to be built and, after the accustomed prayers and thanksgiving, for the success of the Mohammedan arms, had been read, he was proclaimed Sovereign of the United Kingdoms of Bengal and Kanwarup!"

They accordingly set out from Kāmrūd with the intention of proceeding towards Lakḥaṇawātī. The route through the plain [country] was flooded with water, and occupied by the Hindūs. The Musalmāns obtained a guide to bring them out of that country by conducting them towards the skirt of the mountains. After they had proceeded some few stages, they got entangled among passes and defiles, and narrow roads, and both their front and rear was seized by the Hindūs. In a narrow place a fight took place in front of the leading rank between two elephants, the force fell into confusion, the Hindūs came upon them from every side, and Musalmān and Hindū mingled pell mell together. Suddenly an arrow struck Malik Yüz-Bak, who was mounted on an elephant, in the breast, and he fell, and was made prisoner; and all his children, family, and dependents, and the whole of his force, were made captive.

When they carried Malik Yüz-Bak before the Rāe, he made a request that they would bring his son to him, and, when they brought his son to him, he placed his face to the face of his son, and yielded his soul to God<sup>1</sup>. The Almighty's mercy be upon him!

#### XIX. MALIK TAJ-UD-DĪN, ARSALĀN KHĀN, SANJAR I-CHAST.

Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Arsalān Khān, was an impetuous and warlike man, and had attained the acme of capacity and intrepidity. The august Sultān [I-yal-timish] had purchased him from Ikhtiyār-ul-Mulk, Abū-Bikr, the Ḥabash [Abyssinian]. Ikhtiyār-ul-Mulk had brought him from 'Adan<sup>1</sup>; and some have narrated on this wise, that he was one among the sons of the Khwārazmī Amīrs, in the territory of Shām [Syria], and Mīṣr [Egypt]<sup>2</sup>, and had been carried away captive from those parts and sold to Ikhtiyār-ul-Mulk, Abū-Bikr.

When the Sultān first purchased him, he became Jāmah-dār<sup>3</sup> [Keeper of the Wardrobe], and in that office he served

<sup>1</sup> See pages 769 to 776, farther on, where our author makes a totally different statement from this, and also in the account of Ulugh Khān farther on.

<sup>2</sup> Anglicized, Aden.

<sup>3</sup> See page 230

<sup>4</sup> Some copies have Khāsh-dār, instead of Jāmah-dār.

the Sultān some time. When the period of the Shamsi sovereignty terminated, and the reign of Sultān Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh, also came to its conclusion, he became Chāshni-gir [Comptroller of the Royal Kitchen] in the reign of Sultān Raḡiyyat. After some time, he obtained the fief of Balārām<sup>4</sup>.

During his own lifetime, the august<sup>5</sup> Sultān [I-yal-timish] conferred upon him, in marriage, a daughter of Malik [Sultān] Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughril, of Bhīānah<sup>6</sup>, which territory and adjacent parts were, in the beginning of the Musalmān rule, rendered flourishing and cultivated by him. By this connexion, in the reign of Sultān Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh—May his sovereignty continue!—Bhīānah was made Arsalān Khān's fief. Some years subsequent to this, the dignity of Wakil-i-Dar [Representative in Dar-bār] was entrusted to him. Subsequently, when the preserved city of Tabarhindah was recovered from the dependents of Sher Khān [Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Sher Khān-i-Sunkar], it was made over to his charge, in the month of Zī-Hijjah, 651 H.<sup>7</sup> After that, when by the sublime order of the Court, the Khān-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, had departed, and gone to Nāg-awr<sup>8</sup>, and proposed to return again to the service of the Court, Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar attached himself to his service and accompanied him<sup>9</sup>. When they arrived at the capital, Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar received honour at the Court, the asylum of the universe, and returned again to Tabarhindah<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> In Awadh. In some copies Balarām or Balrām.

<sup>5</sup> Nearly every copy of the text here, the Calcutta Text included, has the words سید شهید—august martyr, but it is a blunder of course.

<sup>6</sup> It does not appear how I-yal-timish became possessed of the right to dispose of another man's daughter, and we must suppose that, after Bahā-ud-Dīn, Tughril's death, his family, in some way, came under Rukn-ud-Dīn, I-bak's authority, and from him to I-yal-timish. See the account of Tughril, page 544.

<sup>7</sup> See page 695.

<sup>8</sup> This occurred some time after Ulugh Khān had been banished from the Court, and directed to proceed to Hānsī. See in the account of Ulugh Khān farther on.

<sup>9</sup> Joined in the outbreak against 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān, in the middle of the year 652 H.

<sup>1</sup> This must have been early in 653 H.—in Muḥarram probably—as Ulugh Khān, having recovered power again, returned to Dihli, in company with the

Malik Sher Khān, having come back again from Turkistān, determined upon [re-]possessing himself of Tabarhindah. He brought a large number of cavalry and infantry from the side of Lohor along with him against Tabarhindah, and, at night, appeared before the walls of the fortress. Sher Khān's troops dispersed themselves in the town, and about the fortress; and when, in the morning, the world became illumined with the sun's light, Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar, with his sons and principal retainers, attacked him. As his cavalry had become dispersed, Sher Khān was under the necessity of retiring. When Sher Khān, subsequently to this affair, came to the sublime Court, in conformity with the royal command, Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar likewise presented himself there<sup>2</sup>.

He continued to sojourn at the capital for some time, after which Awadh was entrusted to his charge. On several occasions, Kutlugh Khān<sup>3</sup>, with those Amīrs who had confederated themselves with him, began to harass the borders of Awadh and Karah. Arsalān Khān averted this annoyance: he led a body of troops against them, and compelled that faction to disperse. After that, a slight change in his mind, antagonistic to the Court, became manifest, and the sublime standards moved towards Awadh<sup>4</sup> and Karah for the purpose of suppressing his designs. When the sublime standards cast their shadow upon that country, Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar retired before the [contingents forming the] centre division of the royal forces, and he despatched confidential persons, and sought safety for himself, under the

Sultān, on the 9th of Zi-Hijjah, 652 H. See also the account of Sher Khān farther on.

<sup>2</sup> See page 793. Sher Khān's hief of Tabarhindah was restored to him, together with others he had previously held. The year is not mentioned, but, from the occurrence of other events, it appears to have been early in 653 H.

<sup>3</sup> The second husband of the Sultān's mother. The hief of Awadh was assigned to them, our author says, on the 6th of Muharram, 653 H. See page 701, and note<sup>4</sup>. The statements there and in the account of Uluḡ Khān, farther on, differ greatly from this.

<sup>4</sup> In one of the oldest copies of the text, and a more modern one, "Awadh and the Koh-pāyah." The reason for this movement is very differently stated in the account of Uluḡ Khān. Arsalān Khān is said there to have delayed joining the Sultān's army concentrated before Delhi, on the invasion of Sind by the Mughals at the end of 655 H., and Kutlugh Khān—there styled Kutuj Khān, Mas'ūd-i-Jāni—had done the same, and, consequently, they were in a state of apprehension.

stipulation that, when the Sultān's troops returned [to the capital], he, Arsalān Khān, along with Kutlugh Khān\*, son of [the late] Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī, should present themselves there. Their supplication was graciously complied with; and, when the royal army returned again to the abode of sovereignty and illustrious seat of government, Dihlī, after some time, Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar again attached himself to the sublime Court, and was distinguished by ample honour and deference.

After he had remained in attendance at the Court for some time, in the year 657 H, the city of Karah<sup>†</sup> was assigned to him as a fief, and, in the beginning of that same year, he led an army from Karah with the intention of pillaging the country of Malwah and Kālinjar. After he had advanced some stages, he turned aside and marched towards the territory of Lakhanawati. At this time, the feudatory of Lakhanawati [Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Yūz-Bakī] had proceeded towards the country of Bang and left the city of Lakhanawati empty [of troops]. Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar had not unfolded this secret to a single person among his Amirs and Maliks, his sons and slaves, that he was entertaining the intention of marching against Lakhanawati, and he had neither permission nor orders from the sublime Court for this undertaking. When he reached the frontier of that country, a number of his sons, Amirs, and slaves, discovered that which he had resolved in his mind, and they refused to follow him. As, however, there was no means of returning, out of necessity, they accompanied him.

When Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar arrived before the gate of the city of Lakhanawati, the inhabitants thereof took refuge within the walls [and defended themselves]. Annalists have stated on this wise, that, for a space of three days, they fought, and, at the end of that time, Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar took the city, and gave orders to sack it. The property, cattle, and Musalmān captives that fell into

\* This second Kutlugh Khān cannot be correct, and does not refer to the Sultān's step-father. The person here referred to, as stated in the previous note, is, in some places, styled Kulj and Kulich Khān. See also the List at page 673, and page 712, where he is styled Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd.

† See following note, para third. This is not mentioned in the account of Naṣr-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh's reign.

the hands of his followers was very great ; and, for a period of three days, that plunder, sack, and rapine was kept up. When that tumult had been allayed, and he had taken possession of the city, Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Yūz-Bakī, who was the feudatory of Lakhanawāṭī, at the place he then was in, became acquainted with this misfortune. He returned from thence, and between him and Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar an engagement took place.

From the sublime Court an order granting the investiture of the government of Lakhanawāṭī had been [previously] issued to Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Yūz-Bakī', after that he had despatched, to the presence of the sublime Court, two elephants, valuable property, and precious things to a large amount.

Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar thus gained the upper hand, and Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn', Balban-i-Yūz-Bakī, became a captive, and it is so stated that he was martyred<sup>1</sup>. This much,

<sup>1</sup> STEWART appears to have used the I O L. MS., No. 1952, of our author's work, for his History of Bengal as well as another mentioned subsequently ; and, when I mention that, on the margin of that MS., which is quite correct, he has written, in pencil, that "this person"—from his being also named *Balban*, I suppose—"is *The Visitor*," it is not surprising that the HISTORY OF *BENGAL*, in that place, contains so many absurd errors.

<sup>2</sup> One of the oldest and best copies has 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Balban, here, but in other places agrees with the above.

<sup>3</sup> Very great discrepancy occurs here, and in other places in this work, with respect to the history of Lakhanawāṭī, which is the more to be regretted because our author is the sole authority, as a contemporary writer, for the events of this early period. This discrepancy is occasioned chiefly from the loose manner in which he records important events, which may have appeared to him of minor consequence, and from the fact of his mentioning them in different places, with, very often, considerable difference in the details. Another cause of confusion is his omission of dates, and, as his history is brought to conclusion in 658 H., just six years of the reign of Sulṭān Naṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, is a perfect blank in the history of Muḥammadan India which no other writer has supplied.

Since I wrote note <sup>2</sup> to page 617, some further facts have been gleaned about the previous obscure period in the history of Lakhanawāṭī, viz. from the putting to death or butchery of Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaz, the *Khālī*, by the eldest son of Sulṭān I-yal-timish—Naṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh [the first of that name]—who invaded his territory from Awadh whilst he was absent on an expedition into Bang and Kāmrūd, and had left the capital, the city of Lakhanawāṭī, denuded of troops, and the appointment, as feudatory, but of which the date is not given, of Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak-i-Yughān-Tat [Malik, No. V.], who died there in 631 H.

I must, therefore, go back a little, in order to make the facts stand out a little more clearly ; but, first, I must refer to Mr. Blochmann's "*Contributions*



that the author was aware of, as to the state of affairs in *to the Geography and History of Bengal*," as there are some errors and discrepancies therein which require to be noticed and corrected.

At page 37 of Part I., he says the Muhammadan period of the history of Bengal may be "conveniently divided into five parts. I. The 'Initial period,' or *regns of the governors of Lak'hnauli appointed by the Dihli sovereigns, from the conquest of Bengal by Muhammad Bakhtyār Khilji* [i.e. Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, son of Bakht-yār-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd, the Khāl] A.D. 1203 to 1338 A.D."

In Part III. of his "*Contributions*," page 134 [See also APPENDIX D, page xxiv.], he criticizes my statement respecting the year of the conquest of Bengal by the Khāl chief, and says it was conquered in 594 H., or A.D. 1198, whilst A.D. 1203, mentioned in the preceding paragraph, is equivalent to 600 H.—a difference of *only* six years! He also calls these rulers "governors," and says they were "appointed by the Dihli sovereigns," but this is erroneous. The Khāl rulers, from the "conquest" to the acknowledgment of I-yālmish's suzerainty by Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, 'Iwāz, in 622 H., were entirely independent of the Dihli rulers with the single exception of the mad-man, 'Alī-i-Mardān.

Mr Blochmann also commences his 'Initial period' [Part I., page 38] with "Tughrl" in 613 H., but 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Tughrl-i-Tughān Khān, was the third feudatory of Lakhanawāṣ after the downfall of the Khāl sovereigns. Mr. Blochmann's List [condensed] is as follows—

"Saifuddin Aibak Dies at Lak'hnauli in 631 H.

"Tughrl, 631 H., to 5th Zī Qa'dah, 642 H.

"Qamar-ud-dīn Timur (?) [See page 742, note 4] Khān, governor from 5th Zī Qa'dah, 642, to 29th Shawwāl, 644.

"Ikhtiyār-ud-dīn Yuzbak Tughrl Khān, proclaims himself king under the title of Sultān Muḥammad. Perishes in Kāmrūp. No dates are given.

"Jalal-ud-dīn Mas'ūd, Malik Jānī Khilji (?) Khan becomes governor, 18th Zī Qa'dah 656 "

[Mr Blochmann eschews *isāfat*s, and criticizes my use of them as *un-Persian*. By not using an *isāfat* here, as is meant in the original, he turns Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd, *into his father*, Malik Jānī, who was killed in 634 H., and at page 206 of the Calcutta Printed Text, what Mr Thomas styles the impossible name of Khilji Khān is not given, but *جلی*—which is an error in the "official text," "officially imperfect" I suppose is meant—for *جلی*—Kulich. He is also styled *بنگ*—Kutlugh, in some copies, but Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī, who is styled, at page 626 of this Translation [Calcutta Text, page 187, with *جلی* for *جلی*], Shāh-zādah of Turkistān, was his father.]

"'Izz-ud-dīn Balban, was governor in 657, in which year he was attacked by Tāj-ud-dīn Arsalān Khān Sanjar i Khwārazmī, who, however, was captured or killed by 'Izz-ud-dīn. *Tabyq* p. 267 [in a foot-note]—Hence Tāj-ud-dīn Arsalān Khān should not be put among the governors of Bengal."

[He must be put among the Sultāns then, for he ruled some years. The "official text" here kills the wrong man. It was 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Yūz Bakī, who was made captive by Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar, and "some say was put to death." The certainty of this is proved from the fact that Tātār Khān, who now follows in Mr. Blochmann's list, was Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar's son.]

"Muhammad Arsalān Tatar Khān, son of Arsalān Khan Sanjar. He had been for some time governor, when the *emperor* Balban ascended the throne [664]. *Barani*, p. 66 After a few years he was succeeded by—

that country, and of the events which happened in those parts, is here recorded. May Almighty God have mercy

“Tughril, who proclaimed himself king under the name of Sultān Muḡhiṣ-uddīn. His fate has been mentioned above. No dates are given.”

See also note at page 589 of this translation.

In Part II. of his “*Contributions*,” Mr. Blochmann varies the latter part of the above list; and, after “Muḡammad Arsalān Tātār Khān,” we have two additional names, “Sher Khān,” “Amin Khān,” and then Tughril [11], Amin Khān’s *Nāib*, but, as I do not propose, at present, to go into matters relating to the successor of Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḡmūd Shāh, I will here return to the Khālī dynasty, with the object of giving a brief consecutive account of those rulers and the feudatories who succeeded them, from the time that Sultān Ḡhiyās-ud-Dīn, ‘Iwaz, was forced to acknowledge the supremacy of I-yal-timish.

This event happened about the middle of 622 H., and the coins of Sultān Ḡhiyās-ud-Dīn ‘Iwaz [see THOMAS “Initial Comage of Bengal,” *Journal R. A. Soc.*, vol. vi, 1873, pages 352—357], prove that he was an independent sovereign up to that period, and used the title of Kaṣīm-ud-Dīn al-Muḡminīn, which was peculiar to the Shamsabānīs of Fīruz-koh, and never assumed by their *manulūk* successors, but he did not necessarily “*smile* his property” with the Khālfah. For the origin of the title see note <sup>2</sup>, page 315, and pages 366 and 389.

Mr. Thomas also gives, in the same paper, coins of Sultān I-yal-timish as early as 614 H. and 616 H.—eight and six years *before* Ḡhiyās-ud-Dīn, ‘Iwaz, had to acknowledge a superior, and these coins are attributed by him to the Bengal mints. I am not aware how this conclusion has been arrived at, for I-yal-timish had certainly not been acknowledged by the ruler of Lakṣmīnārī at that time. I think the issue of these coins may be well accounted for, from a passage in our author [see pages 590—591], which may not have received such attention as it ought to have received, namely, that I-yal-timish, “on several occasions, *sent forces* from Dhillī towards Lakṣmīnārī, possessed himself of Bihār, and installed his own Amīr thereon,” but our author, unfortunately, mentions nothing definite until 622 H., when Ḡhiyās-ud-Dīn, ‘Iwaz, was reduced.

We may therefore conclude that the coins bearing I-yal-timish’s name and titles, attributed to the Bengal mints, were struck in Bihār on the occasions mentioned by our author in the passage above referred to, and before he had obtained any decided advantage over the Khālī Sultān.

However, having compelled Sultān Ḡhiyās-ud-Dīn, ‘Iwaz, about the middle of 622 H., to acknowledge him as suzerain and to coin the money in his name [page 593], I-yal-timish left Malik ‘Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī [who is called ‘Izz-ud-Dīn, Jānī, at page 594], Shāh-zādah of Turkistān [see list, page 626] in charge of Bihār, but I-yal-timish had no sooner withdrawn than Sultān Ḡhiyās-ud-Dīn, ‘Iwaz, marched into Bihār, compelled Malik Jānī to fly into Awadh, and took possession of that territory again. I should imagine the coins bearing the high-sounding titles given by Thomas, at page 357 of the same paper, must have been issued at that time—622 H. or 623 H.—but he reads the date 620. This, however, is not very material to the present subject.

With this fact before him, it seems inexplicable to me why Mr. Thomas calls him “this self-made king,” and that “Altamsh” [I-yal-timish] “con-

on that great Khān, and long preserve the Sultān of Sul-

ceded the tardy justice of decreeing, that, in virtue of his good works, Ghiyās-ud-dīn 'Awz [*'Iwaṣ?*] *should, in his grave, be endowed with that coveted title of Sultān, which had been denied to him while living.*" Who denied it to him? Minhāj-ud-Dīn, even at page 163 of the Calcutta "Official Text," does not say so. What he did say will be found literally rendered at page 587 of this Translation. Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaṣ, was equally as much entitled to the "coveted title" of Sultān as his adversary, I-yal-timish, was. He had been chosen precisely in the same way, by the chief men of the country, he owed no fealty whatever to Dihlī or its sovereigns, was a Turk like his rival, what is more, was a free-born man, and not a manumitted slave—the slave of a slave—which I-yal-timish was, and was included among the great Malik of Sultān Mu'izz ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-ʿAlā, master of I-yal-timish's master.

These erroneous ideas respecting the two Sultāns I have felt myself bound to correct, according to historical facts, and our author's statements.

I would also remark, *en passant*, that Naṣir-ud-Dīn, Kālā-jah, was not overcome by I-yal-timish until ten years after 614 H. See page 348 of "Initial Coinage of Bengal," and page 542 of this Translation, and Printed Text, page 144.

At the time Malik Jānī fled before the Khālī Sultān into Awadh, Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, the eldest son and heir-apparent of I-yal-timish, was there located, having been entrusted with the *kef* of Awadh in 623 H. About two years and a half after he had been compelled to acknowledge the suzerainty of the Dihlī Sultān, as shown by his coins, Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaṣ, having set out on an expedition against the infidels of Bang and Kāmrūd [See page 594], Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, incited by Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī [I-yal-timish was occupied elsewhere in 624 H., but he sent reinforcements to his son, see page 611], whom the Khālī Sultān had expelled from Bihār, seized the opportunity—no intimation, of course, having been given beforehand—and invaded Lakhnawāṣī, which had been left nearly empty of troops, seized the fortress of Ḥasan-kot, and took possession of the city of Lakhnawāṣī. Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaṣ, on becoming aware of this perfidious act, flew to the rescue—with a portion only of his forces, from what our author states at page 595—encountered the son of I-yal-timish, but was defeated, and taken captive, along with "all the Khālī Amīrs," and the whole of them were butchered.

Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, died, or was killed, for there is some mystery about it, seemingly, some time in the month of Rabī'-us-Sānī probably, since the news reached Dihlī in the following month, or it may have happened in that same month. How or where he died our author, "the sole authority for this period," does not say, but he repeatedly styles him "the martyred Malik" [See note 1, page 630]. Firsihtah's assertion that he died at Lakhnawāṣī is like a good many of his assertions, without any proof whatever, and his own invention probably.

Immediately after the death of Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaṣ, it appears, another Khālī chief succeeded in acquiring power, but how, is not clear, and, I fear, can never be thoroughly made so. He is styled, by our author, at page 617, Balkā Malik-i-Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaṣ—that is to say, the son of Ḥusām, &c., the *isāfat* standing for *son of* [See APPENDIX D.], which is sufficiently proved, I imagine, from the fact that he *was not at all likely* to have been called by the precise title of his predecessor—Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaṣ—as well; at page 626,

ṭāns, Nāsir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, in sovereignty and prosperity!

in the List of I-yal-timish's Maliks, Daulat Shāh-i-Balkā, son [the *iqāfat* understood] of Husām-ud-Dīn, 'Iwaṣ, Malik of Lakhanaṭatī, thus showing beyond a doubt that he had been acknowledged by I-yal-timish as dependent ruler, otherwise why put him in the List of Maliks? [See THOMAS, "Initial Coinage," page 366]; in two copies of the text, Ī-rān Shāh-i-Balkā; in one, his title is Abū-l-Ma'ālī, and by others he is styled Nāsir-ud-Dīn-i-'Iwaṣ [See pages 617—618]; in the Calcutta "Official Text," at page 177, Malik Gazlak Khān Daulat Shāh, Khālji, with *two* names jumbled into one, and, the next page, Ī-rān Shāh, Balkā, Khālji. Balkā is not peculiar to the Ghaznawī rulers: it is a purely Turkish name. There is another Balkā—Sauf-ud-Dīn, Ī bak-i-Balkā Khān—in the List of Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh's Maliks at page 673, and, from what is said in the account of Malik Kāshī Khān [No. XXIV], there were many Khālji Amīrs in the time of Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh.

From the coin given by Thomas ["Initial Coinage of Bengal," page 367], his titles and name—plate, fig. 9—are Abū-l-Ma'ālī [Thomas, himself, as mentioned at page 367, was in doubt about *أبو* being correct, and thought it ended in *علي*—i.e. Daulat Shāh, *bin* Mau-dūd [and there is nothing in the titular name of Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, who, before he came to the throne was entitled Husām-ud-Dīn-i-'Iwaṣ, to show that his name was not Mau-dūd] and, although he acknowledges the suzerainty of I-yal-timish, and styles him Sulṭān-ul-A'ṣam, he calls himself Shāhan-Shāh, and also inverts on his coin the name of the Khālīfah, and, doubtless, had received a patent conveying the titles from Baghdād. The date on this coin, the only one that has come to light, I believe, is *سنة سبع و ستين* which may be either 627 or 629 H., the stubborn *سم* occurring again. It is not to be wondered at that "the coin does not give him the name Husāmuddin." Husām-ud-Dīn was his title before he assumed that of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, which he did—not at all an unusual thing—with the title of Sulṭān.

In 628 H., I-yal-timish had to move against this Khālji Sulṭān, who, doubtless, was getting too powerful to please the Dīhlī sovereign, and he was overthrown, and "secured," as our author remarks, much in the same way, probably, as Tāj-ud-Dīn, I-yal-dūr, was—in the grave. With him the Khālji dynasty finally terminated.

I-yal-timish now conferred the "*throne of Lakhanaṭatī*" upon Malik 'Ala-ud-Dīn, Jānī—the Shāh-zādah of Turkīstan—but he was shortly after deposed, and then governors, or more correctly feudatories, were appointed from Dīhlī, and the first of them was Malik Sauf-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak-i-Yughān-Fat, as he is styled at page 729, which see.

It will be noticed from the above that Mr Blochmann has fallen into considerable error [See "Remarks on Mr Thomas's readings," in the "*Proceedings of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*," No. 2, December, 1872], in assuming that "Daulat shāh seems to be the Malik 'Alauddin Jani mentioned in the *Ṭabaqāt-i-Nāsirī* (Bibl. Ind. Edition), pp. 174, 178." Our author very distinctly shows that they were two totally different persons.

In the same way, I cannot agree with him that "The royal titles assumed by the early Bengal Governors were customary in those days," but, on the contrary, such titles were never assumed unless the feudatory rebelled as in the case of Malik [No. XVIII] Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Yūz-bak-i-Tughrl Khān, who assumed the title of Sulṭān [see page 764] Malik Tughrl-i-Tughān Khān

## XX. MALIK 'IZZ-UD-DĪN, BALBAN-I-KASHLŪ KHĀN-US-SULTĀNĪ SHAMSI.

Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban, is a native of Khishchāk, and

had been specially honoured by his sovereign [See note <sup>3</sup>, page 641], hence he records it in the Bihār inscription, in which the words "*Tughril-us-Sulṭāni*," with *yd-i-nusbat*, merely show, as in Mu'izzi, Kuṭbī, Shamsī, &c., that he was a slave of the reigning dynasty, as shown at page 736.

Under the events of the 13th year of Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh's reign, it is stated that, on the 18th of Zī-Ḳa'dah—the *last* month—656 H., the kingdom of Lakhanawātī was conferred upon MALIK JALĀL-UD-DĪN, MAS'ŪD SHĀH, son of the late Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī—the same, who, in the List of Malikis at the end of Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish's reign, is called "Prince of Turkistān," and who was made ruler of Lakhanawātī at the close of the Khāhī dynasty, as already related, and subsequently held Lāhor, rebelled, and was slain in 634. See page 640. Afterwards, in the account of the 14th year of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh's reign, it is mentioned that, on the 4th of the month of Jamādī-ul-Ākhir, 657 H., two elephants, treasure, &c., reached the capital from Lakhanawātī, but who the sender was is not mentioned.

In his account of Ulugh Khān, farther on, our author states that Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjār—the subject of the above notice—and ẸUTLUGH [ẸULICH] KHĀN, MAS'ŪD-I JĀNĪ, i.e. son of ['Alā-ud-Dīn], Jānī, on the advance of Ulugh Khān against them with the Sultān's forces, and as referred to in note <sup>4</sup>, page 768, having agreed to present themselves at Court, did so on the 27th of Shawwāl—the *tenth* month—656 H. Two months after this, which would be the *twelfth* month of that year, the state of Lakhanawātī was conferred upon ẸUTLUGH [ẸULICH] KHĀN—as he is styled—and the districts of the *Koh-pāyah* upon Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjār.

A few lines under, it is stated, that, on the 4th of Jamādī-ul-Ākhir, 657 H., *only the sixth month after* Lakhanawātī is said to have been conferred on Ẹutluḡh [Ẹulich] Khān, *two elephants*, treasure, and other valuables, reached Dihlī from Lakhanawātī—some time must be allowed for Ẹutluḡh [Ẹulich] Khān, so called, to have reached that part from Dihlī, and some time also for the elephants, &c., to have arrived from thence—and that the sender of these things was not Ẹutluḡh [Ẹulich] Khān, but MALIK 'IZZ-UD-DĪN, BALBAN-I-YŪZ-BAKĪ; *not YŪZ-Bak* [YŪZ-Bakī refers to a dependent or slave, in the same manner as the terms, Kuṭbī, Shamsī, and the like]; and that, through Ulugh Khān's exertions and good offices, *the investiture of* Lakhanawātī *was conferred upon him*, and that an honorary robe and other honours were despatched for him, stated above also, in this notice of Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjār.

From these statements of our author, it would appear, that 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-YŪZ-Bakī, would not allow Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd-i-Jānī—otherwise Ẹutluḡh [Ẹulich] Khān—if he ever went there, to assume authority, or that he had died suddenly, and 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban, had assumed the government. *Had the word been YŪZ-Bak*, and not *YŪZ-Bakī*, we might safely assume that he was Tughril Khān i-YŪZ-Bak's, otherwise Sultān Muḡhīḡ-ud-Dīn's, son, and the same that had been made prisoner with his father in the disastrous retreat from Kāmrūd [just related at page 766], and named successor by him. This assump-

a man impetuous and gallant, of good disposition, and the votary of 'Ulamā, upright and good men, and recluses.

tion, too, would have explained what appears strange above, namely, that the first mention of 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Yūz Bakī, is that he *was absent on an expedition*, in Bang, when Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjār took advantage of it to invade his fief, slew him, and took possession of the territory.

This also shows what a state the Dīhlī Kingdom must have been in for one feudatory to make war upon another, put him to death, and seize his fief and hold it with perfect impunity.

Our author himself is *uncertain* of the upshot of the circumstances, and it must also be remembered that these events must have happened about the time our author closes his history so abruptly, and leaves all the rest of the events of Nāṣir-ud Dīn's reign a perfect blank, and, from the time he closed his history, no other writer, that we know of—or, at least, that is available—continued the history of the Dīhlī sovereigns, until *ninety-five years* after, when Ziyā-ud Dīn, Baranī, finished his work, which, however, only took up the events from the accession of Sulṭān Ghīyās-ud-Dīn, Balban, and still left the events of six years—from 658 H. to 664 H.—blank as before.

Very little is to be gathered from the *Tārikh-i-Firūz-Shāhī* of Ziyā ud Dīn respecting the events which happened in Lakhnawati—for the work is written in a gossiping style, and dates are rarely given. This much, however, is stated therein, that, in 662 H., on the accession of Sulṭān Balban [the date is corrected to 664 H. in a foot-note—I quote from the printed text], sixty-two elephants were despatched from Lakhnawati to Dīhlī by Tātār Khān, son of Arsalān Khān. From this it must be assumed that he held the fief, but when or how he was appointed, or when and how he was removed, and whether Tughlī, who subsequently rebelled, succeeded him or what, cannot be discovered therein. Mr. Blochmann [“Contributions,” page 114, Part II.] says a person named Sher Khān succeeded Tātār Khān, and that another named Arṣīn Khān succeeded him, but the authority is not stated. The title of Khān, given to both these persons, savours much of Firūzshāh's statements.

No dependence whatever is to be placed on either the *Tabakāt-i Akbarī*, Budā'unī, or Firūzshāh, for the events of Sulṭān Balban's reign. They all copy one from another, and the first-mentioned work closes the reign of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, when our author does, takes the reign of Balban from Ziyā ud-Dīn, Baranī, and says neither more nor less, except in an abbreviated form, than is contained in Ziyā ud-Dīn's work.

Stewart is totally wrong in his statements [History of Bengal, pages 66 and 67] respecting this period. He says “*Mul*—Mulk means a country Kingdom, &c.—Yuzbek”—he means Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Iughlī Khān-i-Yūz-Bak, otherwise, Sulṭān Muḥiṣ-ud-Dīn—” died, on the occasion of his being taken captive” [as related at page 766], “in 656 H.,” but who says so, and in what work is such a statement to be found? Our author does not say so, and Stewart takes his account from him, for *I have never before met the MS. copies of our author's work which Stewart used, with his writing in pencil, every here and there, on the margins of the pages, where he alters the names and makes those written correctly totally wrong—as “Aza Addin,” “Mulk Yuzbek,”* &c. At this very place, in one MS. which has 'Izz-ud-Dīn he alters it with a pencil to *Jalal Ad-Din Khany*, and, in his History, this *same name* is thus given. Thus enabled me to discover that I had the identical copies he used, before me.

## The august Sultān [I-yaI-timish] purchased him of

As I have already shown, our author does not give the date of Tughril Khān-i-Yüz-Bak's death [see page 766], and there is *not a word more* used than I have rendered above; yet Stewart goes on to say that Jalāl Addeen Khany [*A'hany*, that is Khānī, I suppose, signifying Khān-shay, the office or dignity of Khān] was sent to take possession of the province of Lucknowty, "as soon as the death of *Almuk* Yuzbak was known at Court." There is not the least authority for all this, more than our author's words above, and yet his statement respecting the elephants and treasure, and the name of 'Izz-ud-Dīn-Balban-i-Yüz-Bakī, is ignored altogether or changed at the caprice of Stewart into "Jalāl Addeen Khany."

Stewart then perpetrates a terrible blunder, in consequence of *altering* the names given by our author, in stating, that it was this Jalāl Addeen Khany who was killed in battle with *Irsulan* Khan [Arsalan Khān-i-Sanjar], the Imperial Governor of Kurrah [Karah], who had "*been entrusted with the command of an army to subdue the Raja of Callinger* [Kāimjar], in Bundelcund," &c [see our author's statement, page 769], and then crowns the blunder with another still greater in making Tāj-ud Dīn, Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar, whom he here styles "*Isa Al Mulk, Tāj addeen Irsulan Khan Sanjar*," the sender of the elephants, for he says [page 68], that, in consequence of his sending "elephants, *horses*, and other property of the *murdered* chief, as a *bride* to the flagitious minister [all this is his own amplification of our author's simple statements], the Vizier [Wazir] of the contemptible Court of Dehly, his conduct was overlooked."

He then goes on to say, under his account of "*Isa Addeen*," that, "The Governor, JelaI Addeen, returning soon afterwards, an engagement took place, in the month of *Jumad* [there are two months named Jamādī—the first and second Jamādī], 657, *between the two chiefs*. The latter (*—ie*) was slain in the contest [he is the *murdered* chief just before], and the plunder of his property having been remitted to Dehly procured the confirmation of the usurper. He continued to rule Bengal for two years, and died at Lucknowty in the year 659."

Whether Stewart obtained these dates from the very modern Rīāz-us-Salāṭīn, which echoes its authorities, referred to by Mr Blochmann in his "*Contributions*," page 1, I cannot say, or whether they were taken from some such work as I have shown Firishtah's to be, but these dates are certainly to be doubted, unless some *authorities* for them be forthcoming.

The Tabakāt-i Akbarī says—evidently copying our author, after a fashion—in 656 H., "Malik Jalāl-ud Dīn i Jānī"—i. e. Jalāl-ud-Dīn, son of 'Alā-ud Dīn, Jānī—"was presented with an honorary robe, and sent to Lakhanawati," and that, "in 657 H., he sent two elephants, jewels, &c." Immediately after, it is stated that "Malik 'Izz-ud Dīn, Kāshlū Khān, *who is mention'd above*, died in Rajab" of that year. Now this is a pretty hash, but if the reader will look at the passages under Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh's reign, and in the account of Ulugh Khān, previously referred to, and compare them with the work in question, he will find that the author of the Tabakāt-i Akbarī has turned 'Izz-ud Dīn, Balban-i-Yüz-Bakī, into 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kāshlū Khān, the seditious feudatory of Sind, who marched upon Dihlī, in concert with Kutlugh Khān, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh's step-father, in 655 H., who is the person "*mentioned above*" immediately before in that work, and who was never in Bengal in his life. He, too, did not die in Rajab, 657 H., for he *was living* when our author closed his history, in 658 H., as may be found at page 786.

The Tabakāt-i Akbarī, and Firishtah, both make the same great blunder

a merchant, when before the fortress of Maṇḍa-  
throughout Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh's reign of confusing 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Ashkū Khān, with Ulugh Khān's brother, Saif-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak-i-Kushū Khān, who died on the 20th of Rajab, 657 H. In fact, because the name Balban occurs, Ashkū Khān is often mistaken, in that work, for Ulugh Khān himself. Finghtah of course, by copying from the Ṭabaqāt-i-Akbarī, copies all its blunders, without exception.

From what our author states in different places in this work, it may be supposed, merely, that, when Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn [Kulich Khān], Mas'ūd Shāh, son of the late Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī, was appointed to the government of Lakhanawātī, in the last month of the year 656 H., there must either have been a vacancy, or the Court had determined to oust Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Tughril Khān i-Yüz-Bak, who had invaded it, and usurped the fief, and, if the former, it must, in all probability, have been caused by his death.

If this latter supposition be correct, the 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Yüz-Bakī, mentioned by our author, who is evidently the same person who is referred to at page 827—Kutluḡ Khān's [the Sultān's father-in-law] son-in-law—who became Deputy Amīr-i Hājib, when 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i Kaykhan conspired against Ulugh Khān, must have been confirmed in it by the Court of Dihlī.

I think he must have been a dependent of Tughril's, not his son, for this reason, that, when referring to a son, our author merely adds the father's name to the son's, using the *isāfat* for *bin* [see APPENDIX C], namely — Muḥammad-i-Sām, Mas'ūd-i-Jānī, Abū-Bikr-i-Ayāz, and the like, but, when he refers to a retainer, freedman, or slave, he always adds the *yā-i nishat*, signifying relation or connexion, to the person's name, as, Sultānī, Kuṭbī, Shāmsī, Ajazī, Yüz-Bakī, — as previously stated.

The Zublat-ut-Tawārikh, which quotes our author largely, as far it goes, throws a little more light than others on this subject (Alfi, possibly, which I have not the means of examining just at this time, might throw more), although very meagre. It states that Malik, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī, ruled over Lakhanawātī three years, and was removed.

Saif-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak-i-Yughān-Tat, succeeded, and died in 633 H. Our author says he died in 631 H.

'Izz-ud-Dīn, Tughril-i-Tughān Khān, succeeded him and held the government thirteen years and some months [to the end of the year 643 H. See page 740].

Ḳī-rān-i-Tamur Khān succeeded and held it ten years [two years less two months. He died in 644 H. See page 741], and, after him, in Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh's reign, Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Yüz Bak i-Tughril Khān, who assumed the title of Sultān Muḡhīṣ-ud-Dīn, became feudatory.

The Tārīkh-i-Firūz Shāhī says "this assumption of sovereignty took place in Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Balban's reign, but God knows best." He ruled over Lakhanawātī twenty-six years [from the death of Ḳī-rān-i-Tamur Khān, twenty-six years would bring us to Shawwāl, 670 H., however], and, after him, Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Balban, conferred Lakhanawātī upon his youngest son, Bughrā Khān.

The Gauṣ Mūs, previously referred to [in note 1, page 558], also states that Yüz-Bak-i-Tughril Khān reigned twenty-six years, from 653 H. to 682 H., and both authors make the same mistake with respect to Ḳī-rān-i-Tamur Khān's holding the government ten years instead of two, but, in this matter, our author himself gives the date of his being ousted from Lakhanawātī as the last month of 642 H.



war<sup>1</sup>. At the outset [of his career] he became Cup-bearer, and, after he had served the Sultān some time, he was made Shrāb-Dār [Purveyor of Drinkables], when before the fortress of Gwāliyūr. Subsequently, Barhamūn<sup>2</sup> [or Barhanmūn] was assigned to him in fief; and, after some time, the fief of Baran was entrusted to him.

When the Shamsī reign came to its termination, in the outbreak of the Turkish Amīrs in the camp of Sultān Rukn-ud-Dīn, Fīrūz Shāh, at Tarā'in<sup>3</sup>, he was the ring-leader. On the Ruknī reign passing away, and the disaffection of Malik Jānī and Malik Kūjī<sup>4</sup> towards Sultān Rāziyyat continuing, during the conflicts [which then took place,] before the gate of the city of Dihlī, between the Turkish Amīrs who were the slaves of the [late] Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yāl-timish, and who were present in the service of Sultān Rāziyyat's Court, Malik Balban fell captive into the hands of the rebels. He again obtained his release, and was treated with distinguished honour and

It seems utterly impossible, in the face of Ziyā-ud-Dīn, Baranī's statement about Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar's son—Tātār Khān—that Tughrl Khān i-Yüz-Bak, otherwise Sultān Mughis-ud-Dīn, who is said to have been mortally wounded in the retreat from Kāmrūd, and died there, and the Tughrl, who also assumed the *very same* title of Mughis-ud-Dīn, and was killed on the frontier of the Jāj-nagar territory, can be one and the same person, but such the works above quoted consider to be the case, and, from the remark of Mr. Blochmann, in his "*Contributions*" [Part I fifth line, page 39], he seems to entertain the same opinion.

Farther research may throw more light on this matter of Tughrl Khān-i-Yüz-Bak's, and Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar's successor to the fief of Lakhnawāt; but, at present, the matter is clouded in obscurity.

Thomas, in his "PATHAN KINGS OF DEHLI," gives, at page 8, a list of the rulers and kings of Bengal, in which he styles Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Yüz-Bak-i-Tughrl Khān, *Yüzbeg*, and 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Yüz-Bakī, *Yüzbeg*. and, in a note, says "These contrasts in the orthography follow the *Persi* text of *Minhaj-us-Siraj*, who seems to have *designed* to mark a difference in the pronunciation"! This is erroneous. the words 'are—*اورنگی* and *اورنگی*—*aurangī*, is merely added to the last, and nothing indicates any g in the names.

<sup>1</sup> This was in 624 H. See page 611

<sup>2</sup> This is one of the two places referred to at page 746, and I fail to recognise it. It is written, in the original, in various ways; but the above is contained in the majority of the copies—*برهمون*—and in others, according to the ratio in which they are to be depended upon, *برهمون*, *برهمون*, *برهمون* [Hindūn] *برهمون* *برهمون*. It may possibly be meant for Burhanawāh, anglicized Bur-nawa, Lat. 29° 7', Long. 77° 29'.

<sup>3</sup> Now A'gim-ābād-i-Tallawāt, the scene of Rāe Pithorā's victory and subsequent defeat. See page 635.

<sup>4</sup> Not they only: there were several others. See page 639.

favour ; and, when the reign of Sultān Rāziyyat lapsed, and the throne of sovereignty devolved on Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, he was honoured as heretofore, until the time when the Khwājah, Muhazzab-ud-Dīn, the Wazīr, caused animosity to show itself between that Sultān and his Turkish Amīrs, as is recorded [under his reign]. Previous to this, the whole of the Amīrs and Maliks had entered into a compact together to expel Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, from the throne. In the year 640 H., the whole of them, in concert together, advanced to the gate of the city of Dihlī<sup>6</sup>, and, for a period of five months or more, this hostility and strife went on ; and, when the city was taken by the Maliks [and Amīrs], the ring-leader in this outbreak was Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān.

Early in the day on which the troops of the Amīrs [and Maliks] entered the city, Malik Balban proceeded to the Royal Palace, and once, by his command, a proclamation was circulated throughout the city [announcing his assumption of the sovereignty]. Immediately, Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Aet-kin, of Kuhrām, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Kīkluk, and Malik Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Ai-yitim, and several other Amīrs, assembled at the mausoleum of Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish—May he rest in peace!—and repudiated that proclamation<sup>7</sup>, and, in concert together, brought forth the sons of the late Sultān [I-yal-timish], and the princes who were in confinement. When Malik Balban became aware of this, he took part with them, and they raised 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, to the throne. He assigned the territory of Nāg-awr, together with an elephant<sup>8</sup>, to Malik Balban, and he proceeded thither.

After some time had passed, when an army of the infidels of Chīn [Mughals] appeared before the fortress of Uchchah, and Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, marched from the capital with the troops of Islām towards the river Bīāh to repel them, Malik Balban came from Nāg-awr with a body of troops [and joined the Sultān's army], and that

<sup>6</sup> See under the reign, pages 658-662

<sup>7</sup> See pages 660 and 661 and note 1.

<sup>8</sup> This was accounted a great honour in these days, as may be seen from what is stated at page 650, note 2.

momentous affair terminated successfully. When the army of infidels retired from before Üchchah precipitately, Malik Balban returned to Nāg-awr again, and Multān was placed under his charge\*.

When the Sultān of Islām, Nāṣir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, ascended the throne of sovereignty—May it ever continue!—after Malik Balban had come [to Court?] he, on several occasions, made a request for Üchchah together with Multān. This was acquiesced in, under the understanding that the Siwālikh [territory] and Nāg-awr should be relinquished, by him, to other Malikis who are servants of the government, and that the Court should have the nomination [of them]†.

After he brought Üchchah under his jurisdiction, he still continued to retain possession of Nāg-awr, and did not relinquish it. The Sultān-i-Mu'azzam—The Almighty perpetuate his reign!—with the Malikis of Islām—Be victory always theirs!—particularly the Khān-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam—Be his Khilāfat¹ perpetuated!—determined to proceed from the capital in the direction of Nāg-awr. On the Sultān's reaching that part, after making much difficulty of the matter, and protracting as long as possible, in the semblance of submission, Malik Balban presented himself [in the Sultān's presence], relinquished Nāg-awr, and proceeded towards Üchchah.

When the territory of Üchchah and Multān was made over to Malik Balban's charge from the sublime Court, Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan, the Kārugh², from the direction of [the

\* See note †, page 667, para. 4, and proceedings of Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan, the Kārugh, in the last Section.

† Our author has just above said that Multān was made over to him before this. He means that the understanding was, that, if he got Üchchah as well as Multān, Nāg-awr was to be relinquished. After he was compelled to give it up, Ulugh Khān's brother, Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak-i-Kashī Khān, got that fief. See page 798.

¹ Khilāfat signifies deputy-ship, or lieutenantancy, as well as imperial dignity and monarchy, but, under any circumstances, the Sultān was alive when this was written.

² Some details are necessary respecting the Kārugh Turks, which I must reserve for the concluding Section, in which Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan, again appears, and his previous history is referred to. I will merely observe here, that he had appeared before Multān long before this—soon after the death of Sultān I-yal-tumagh, who, it will be remembered [page 623], was marching

territory of] Banīān brought an army before the gate of Multān in order to possess himself of that city [and fortress], and Malik Balban advanced from Uchchah to repel him. When the two armies came opposite to each other, a band of warriors and heroic men in Malik Balban's service, to the number of about fifty picked horsemen, having formed a ring, attacked Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan, the Qarlugh, charged into the centre [of his army], and Malik Ḥasan was slain, the greater part of those heroic men, who displayed such impetuosity, having fallen in the attack. Malik Balban entered the fortress of Multān; and the Qarlugh troops kept the death of their Malik concealed<sup>1</sup>, and pitched their camp before the gate of the city of Multān. Emissaries passed to and fro between the two armies and discussed terms of peace, and the surrender of Multān to the Qarlughs. The peace was concluded, and Malik Balban delivered up Multān to the Qarlughs, and returned towards Uchchah; and the Qarlughs took possession of Multān.

When Malik Balban became aware that Malik Ḥasan, the Qarlugh, had been killed, he repented of having given up Multān, but it was useless. After some time, Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn, Sher Khān-i-Sunkar, wrested Multān out of the hands of the Qarlughs, and took possession of it, and located there Malik Kureẓ<sup>2</sup>. On Saturday, the 2nd of the month of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 648 H., Malik Balban, having advanced from Uchchah for the purpose of regaining possession of Multān, appeared before the walls of that fortress<sup>3</sup>. The writer of these words, two days subse-

towards the territory of Banīān, when taken ill, and obliged to return to Dihlī, where he soon after died.

<sup>1</sup> The whole band must have fallen or have been taken, otherwise the news of Ḥasan's having been slain would certainly have reached Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān. Or, perhaps, the band, or, rather, the remainder of it, did not know whether they had killed him or not, or whether he had only been left for dead. Ḥasan's son, who is referred to under Sulṭān Raḡīyyat's reign [note 7, page 644], and in the account of Ulugh Khān, farther on, and in the last Section—Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad—would, probably, have been the person to whom Multān was surrendered; and it is strange our author does not mention who succeeded Malik Ḥasan in the command of the Qarlughs.

<sup>2</sup> He is the person referred to under the fifth year of Sulṭān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh's reign, page 688.

<sup>3</sup> Under the events of the year 648 H., at page 686, our author states that he

quently [to that], arrived before Multān from the illustrious capital, Dihlī, for the purpose of despatching [a number] of male slaves to Khurāsān<sup>1</sup>. After that he [the author] continued at that place for a period of two months; and the fortress did not come into Malik Balban's possession, and he returned again towards Ūchchah.

Malik Sher Khān-i-Sunkar advanced from Tabarhindah and Lohor, and appeared before the fortress of Ūchchah and invested it, and remained before it for some time. Malik Balban, who was away from it at this period<sup>2</sup>, placing confidence in this, that they were both of one house and of one threshold<sup>3</sup>, unexpectedly, presented himself in the camp of Malik Sher Khān-i-Sunkar, and seated himself down in the latter's pavilion, upon which Malik Sher Khān-i-Sunkar manifested some show of regard towards him, arose, and came out by way of the back of the pavilion, giving directions to guard Malik Balban, and not permit him to depart from the place until such time as the garrison of Ūchchah should surrender that fortress. As Malik Balban was helpless and in straits, he gave directions to the garrison of the fortress to surrender it to Malik Sher Khān-i-Sunkar, who, after he had taken possession of the fortress of Ūchchah, set Malik Balban at liberty, who came to the capital<sup>4</sup>.

Having presented<sup>5</sup> himself at Court, the [fief of the]

reached Multān on Wednesday, the 6th of Rabī'-ul-Awwal, of that year, and that Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān reached it from Ūchchah, the same day. In his account of Ulugh Khān, farther on, the same date is given.

<sup>1</sup> See note <sup>1</sup>, page 686

<sup>2</sup> Under the events of Sulṭān Nāṣir ud Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh's reign, 648 H, our author says he had an interview with Sher Khān, on the banks of the Bīāh, on the 11th day of the second month of that year, when proceeding to Multān [see page 687], and that Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān reached Multān, to endeavour to take it, on the same day that he himself reached it—the 6th of the third month.

<sup>3</sup> The "official" Calcutta Printed Text and the MSS from which it is chiefly taken have *اشاء*—nest—for *اشاء*—threshold.

<sup>4</sup> See page 689. There he says, under the events of 649 H, that Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān began to act contumaciously at Nāg-awr in that year, and the Sulṭān had to move against him, and that, after that, in the fourth month of that same year, he presented himself at Dihlī. Between that date, and the date on which he made his submission, at Nāg-awr, he had fallen into Sher Khān's hands.

<sup>5</sup> Under Sulṭān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh's reign, it is stated, that, on the 22nd of Shawwāl, 650 H [in the account of Ulugh Khān, it is the 12th],

province of Budā'ūn with its dependencies was assigned to him ; and, when the sublime standards advanced towards the upper parts [of the kingdom—the Bīāh and Lohor], and the preserved city of Tabarhindah was recovered, forces were nominated to march towards Ūchchah and Multān. Between Malik Sher Khān-i-Sunḡar and the Maliks of the Court, contention went on ; and Sher Khān proceeded into Turkistān<sup>2</sup>, and Ūchchah and Multān were entrusted, a second time, to Malik Balban's charge<sup>3</sup>.

No sooner had Malik Balban taken possession of that country than he became disloyal to the Court, and, making Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, Kurt<sup>4</sup>, the Ghūrī, his medium, preferred a request [through him] to Hulā'ū [Hulākū] the Mughal, who was a Shāh-zādah [Prince] of Turkistān<sup>5</sup>, for a Shāhnah<sup>6</sup> [Intendant].—Malik Balban sent [to Hulākū's Court] a grand-son in pledge, and brought a Shāhnah thither [into Sind and Multān]. Subsequently, when the Khān-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, had returned to

the Sultān moved towards Lāhor, intending to march to Ūchchah and Multān, and that Malik Ḳutlugh Khān from Bhlānah, and Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān from Budā'ūn, with their contingents, accompanied him. On reaching the Bīāh, however, 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān's plot developed itself, and Ulugh Khān was banished to his fief.

Under the year 651 H., it is again stated that the Sultān marched from Dhlī to "secure" Ūchchah and Multān, and that, on reaching the Bīāh [it flowed in its old bed then], a force was detached to Tabarhindah to secure it, as Malik Sher Khān-i-Sunḡar had withdrawn to Turkistān, and that *they* were taken possession of on the 26th of Zī-Ḥijjah, the last month of 651 H., and made over to Malik Arsalān Khān, Sanjar-i-Chast ; but, in the account of the latter Malik [page 767], it is said he got Tabarhindah, and Ūchchah and Multān are not mentioned.

<sup>2</sup> See pages 695 and 792, where are two other and different statements, with respect to the cause of Sher Khān-i-Sunḡar's withdrawal.

<sup>3</sup> His restoration to the fief of Ūchchah and Multān is never referred to in any other place in the present work save the above, but that he was restored to it there is, of course, no doubt from the context. It appears probable that, when Ul. gh Khān succeeded in ejecting 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān from power at the end of 652 H., and on his being sent to rule at Budā'ūn, Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān got Ūchchah and Multān again, some time in 653 H. See also note<sup>4</sup>, page 692.

<sup>4</sup> He will be noticed in the last Section with reference to the Mughal invasion of the Panjāb.

<sup>5</sup> Hulā'ū or Hulākū was, certainly, a Prince of Turkistān, but, at this time, ruled over Irān on the part of his brother, Mangū Kā'ān. More respecting him will be found in the next Section.

<sup>6</sup> He thus threw off his allegiance to Dhlī.

the Court, and Malik Kutlugh Khān had separated from it<sup>7</sup> and had joined Malik Balban, and the Sultān and his forces had returned to the capital, Malik Balban, in the year 655 H., suddenly resolved to advance to the frontiers of the kingdom of Dihlī with the troops of Uchchah and Multān. When this determination and purpose [of the confederates] was represented before the sublime throne, the royal command was given to repel that faction, and Malik Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, with the whole of the Malikis and Amīrs, marched against the troops of Malik Balban.

On the 15th<sup>8</sup> of the month of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, 655 H., when, within the limits of [the districts of] Kuhram and Sāmānah, they drew near [Malik Balban's army], a faction of seditious [persons] of the capital city, Dihlī, consisting of turban wearers [priest-hood] and cap-wearers<sup>9</sup> [Sayyids], wrote and despatched letters secretly to Malik Balban, soliciting him to come thither, saying: "In order that we may deliver up the city to thee it behoveth thee to set out for it." Malik Balban accordingly moved towards Dihlī, and, on Thursday, the 6th of Jamādī-ul-Ākhir, 655 H., he [and Kutlugh Khān and their forces] reached the environs and suburbs of the city; but his conceptions were not realized, and the faction, who had written letters to him, had, by the sublime command, left the city<sup>1</sup>.

When Malik Balban reached the Bāgh-i-Jūd [the Jūd Garden]<sup>2</sup>, which is in the environs of the city of Dihlī, along with Malik Kutlugh Khān and the Malikah-i-Jahān [Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn's mother], the account of the expul-

<sup>7</sup> He had been sent away from the Court, with his wife, the Sultān's mother, as early as 653 H., but the events here referred to took place in 655 H., some time previous to which Kutlugh Khān was in rebellion. See page 707.

<sup>8</sup> See page 707.

<sup>9</sup> Only turban-wearers are mentioned under the reign, but cap-wearers merely refers to others besides the regular priest hood, such as the descendants and disciples of Zam-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, probably, who wore black caps or turbans. The allusion is to Sayyid Kutb-ud-Dīn, the Shaikh-ul-Islām, and this party. See page 707.

<sup>1</sup> They had been sent away out of the city four days before. See page 708.

<sup>2</sup> In the Calcutta Printed Text, the word جود—Jūd—has been invariably mistaken for جود—khūd, which signifies self, &c., and thereby the Jūd Garden is turned into *his own garden*. The Bāgh-i-Jūd, and Şahr-i-Jūd, are often mentioned.

The account of this affair varies from that detailed under the reign, page 708, and in the account of Ulugh Khān farther on.

sion of that faction became known to them, and that flame of the fire of hope [from the faction] was extinguished with the water of disappointment. After the time of forenoon prayers, they advanced to the gate<sup>a</sup> of the city, and made a perambulation round the place. They remained at the Bāgh-i-Jūd for the night, and, at morning dawn, they came to the determination to retire. On the Friday, which was the 7th<sup>b</sup> of the month of Jamādī-ul-Ākhir, the troops of Ūchchah and Multān, the whole of them, separated from Malik Balban, and went off in bodies in various directions, but the greater number were those [among them] who entered the city, and who joined the service of the sublime Court.

Malik Balban—the Almighty have him in His keeping<sup>c</sup>—withdrew, and by way of the Siwālīkh [country], and, with a slight retinue, less than 200 or 300 in number, returned to Ūchchah again. Subsequent to these events, Malik Balban came to the determination of undertaking a journey into Khurāsān, and proceeding into 'Irāk to the presence of Hulā'ū, the Mughal, who is a Shāh-zādah [Prince] of Turkistān<sup>d</sup>, and presented himself before him. He returned from thence, and came back to his own place of residence again [to Ūchchah], and, up to the date of this narrative, which was the year 658 H, he has despatched his own agents, along with the Shahnah [the Mughal Intendant] of the territories of Sind, which was on account of the army of Mughals [then on the Dihlī frontier], to the presence of the Court<sup>e</sup>.

Please God, it may turn out well and advantageously,

<sup>a</sup> Our author always uses the word "gate" when *gates* may be understood. In this instance he may mean the gate on the side of the Jūd plain and garden.

<sup>b</sup> According to some copies the dates are, respectively, the 26th and 27th of Jamādī-ul-Ākhir.

<sup>c</sup> It is remarkable that he should have gone to Hulākū's camp in 'Irāk, and Sher Khān to that of the Great Khān—Mangū Kā'ān, in Turkistān. Their object, probably, was the same.

<sup>d</sup> This refers to the return of Ulugh Khān's agent despatched some time before to Malik Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Hasan, the Kārūgh, the details of which affair will be found at the end of this Section. There he says Shahnagān—Intendants—as if there were more than one at Ūchchah. The Mughal army referred to, is that of the Nū-īn, Sārī, or Sālin, as he is also called, which entered Sind, a few months after Malik Balban's attempt on Dihlī, in the latter part of 655 H, an account of which will be found at page 711.



and may He long preserve the Sultān of Islām. Nāṣir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Muẓaffar-i-Mahmūd Shāh, on the throne of sovereignty !

XXI. MALIK NUŞRAT KHĀN, BADR-UD-DĪN, SUNĀR-I-ŞŪFĪ, THE RŪMĪ.

Malik Nuşrat Khān-i-Sunkar, the Şūfī, is a Rūmī [Rūmīlān] by birth. He is a person of exceeding laudable qualities and inestimable virtues, valiant and warlike, and of good disposition, and adorned with all the attributes of manliness and resclution

He was a slave of the august Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn [I-yal-timish], and he had, in the reigns of every one of the Sultāns [his descendants], served in offices of every degree ; but, in the reign of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, in the year 640 H., when the Turk Amīrs rebelled and put the Khwājah, Muhazzab, the Wazīr, to death, this Malik, Nuşrat Khān-i-Sunkar, was one of the Amīrs, the principal ringleaders in that outbreak. After that event he became Amīr\* of Kol, and he brought that territory under his control, and, along with his retinue and the people, on the beaten track of equity and justice, he passed his days. In that same year [640 H.], the writer of these words, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, chanced to undertake a journey to Lakhanawaṭī. On reaching the district of Kol, this Amīr of excellent disposition treated him with great kindness and encouragement.

Subsequently, Malik Nuşrat Khān-i-Sunkar obtained other fiefs ; and, in the reign of the Sultān of Sultāns, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd Shāh, the territory of Bhīānah was made his fief. He continued to remain some time in that part, and many times punished the seditious and evil doers.

At the time when Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kaṣhlū

and in the biography of Ulugh Khān, but more particularly detailed in the last Section.

\* He was of the Şūfī sect, apparently.

† Our author has never used the word Amīr like this before. he generally uses feudatory.

Khān, advanced out of the territory of Sind and appeared before the gate of Dihlī, Malik Nuṣrat Khān-i-Sunḡar, with a numerous force, reached the city of Dihlī from Bhīānah. The inhabitants of the city, and grantees of the Court, were placed in safety by his arrival at the head of a body of troops. After that affair, in the year 657 H., from the implicit faith which the Sulṭān of Islām placed in Malik Nuṣrat Khān-i-Sunḡar, and the powerful support of the Khān-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, the preserved city of Tabarhindah, and Sunām, Jhajhar, and Lakhwāl, and the frontiers, as far as the ferries over the river Blāh, all were conferred upon him<sup>2</sup>, and his title became Nuṣrat Khān.

On those frontiers he performed distinguished services, and assembled a numerous body of troops; and, up to the date of this book's [being written], by the sublime command, he is still [stationed] on that frontier, with ample military resources, and a large army<sup>1</sup>. May the Almighty long preserve the Sulṭān of Sulṭāns upon the throne of sovereignty!

XXII. AZ KULLĪ DĀD-BAK<sup>3</sup>, MALIK SAIF-UD-DĪN, I-BAK,  
THE SHAMSĪ, 'AJAMĪ

Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak, the Shamsī, 'Ajāmī, is, by

<sup>2</sup> It was at this period that Malik Sher Khān-i-Sunḡar had the extensive fiefs of Bhīānah, Kol, Balarām, and Gwāhyūr, conferred upon him, but, under that year, in the Sulṭān's reign, the placing of these frontier territories in Nuṣrat Khān-i-Sunḡar's charge is not stated. See page 794.

The mention of "the frontiers," and the "ferries of the Blāh," taken in connexion with the orders of Hulūkū to his general, mentioned at the end of the account of Ulugh Khān, plainly indicates the limits within which the Dihlī territory was now confined.

The Blāh, as before stated, then flowed in its old bed, entirely separate from the Sutlej.

<sup>1</sup> Why are not his "distinguished services" mentioned, and, if he had such "ample military resources and large army," why did he not drive away Sārt, the Nū-īn, and his Mughals, who were making constant raids upon the Dihlī territory?

<sup>3</sup> The Calcutta Printed Text has امیر instead of امیر. Amīr-i-Dād, and Dād-Bak, are synonymous, the former being Persian and the latter the Turkish form, and the office appears to have been much the same as that of Mīr-i-'Adl in Akbar's time. The words *az kullī* show that he was the head of that department and exercised full powers. See note <sup>4</sup>, page 529, and page 605, note <sup>1</sup>.

origin <sup>3</sup>, of *Khifchāk*, a Malik adorned with justice, sagacity, strictness, and judgment, and famed and celebrated for all manner of energy and ability. In the learning of the Musalmān faith he was proficient, in religiousness perfect, and in words and in deeds sincere, on the path of probity and justice staunch and regular.

It must be about eighteen years <sup>4</sup> since the bench of the administration of justice was adorned by his dignity; and, during the whole period, he has followed the path of justice and equity, and been obedient to the canons of the [Muḥammadan] law, and beyond those which the law decrees he has not added a tittle. The writer of this History, Maulānā Minhāj-i-Sarāj—God protect him!—upon two occasions, for nearly eight years, by the gracious command of the Sultān of Sultāns, Nāṣir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn—The Almighty perpetuate his rule and sovereignty!—is seated on the same bench with that just Malik <sup>5</sup> in the Court of Justice at the capital city, Dihlī, and the author has seen that the whole of his acts, procedures, and expositions have been conformable with the faith and its ordinances. By the dignity of his punishments, and the majesty of his justice, the multitude of contumacious [persons] round about the capital, and the gangs of evil doers and robbers, having drawn back the hand of violence within the sleeve of relinquishment and suspension, are quiescent in the corner of fear and terror.

From the period when Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak, became enrolled among the series <sup>6</sup> of slaves of the Court of the Shamsī dynasty—the asylum of the universe—he has, at all times, been revered; and every district, fief, or tract of country, which has been entrusted to his charge, through his equity and rigour, has become flourishing and pros-

<sup>3</sup> His being styled “Shamsī, and ‘Ajamī,” in this instance, means that, originally, he was the slave of the Khawājah Shams-ud-Dīn, the ‘Ajamī.

<sup>4</sup> What year is referred to is left to conjecture, unless he means the year in which he closed this history—658 H. He was, however, appointed *Kāshī* of the realm, for the second time, in 649 H. See page 690.

<sup>5</sup> This expression shows that the term Malik is not peculiar to the military only, and the fallacy of translating the word *general*, as in ELLIOT, in numerous places.

<sup>6</sup> Nearly every copy of the text, Calcutta Printed Text included, has ملاطی —Sultāns—for ملاطی—series, &c. In this instance the L. O. L. M.S., No. 1952, and the R. A. S. M.S., are both correct.

perous, and the commonalty have dwelt in quiet and tranquillity, and have continued safe and exempt from oppression and violence. During this period since he has been the Amīr-i-Dād [Chief Justiciary] of the kingdom of Dihlī, the customary fees at the rate of ten or fifteen per cent, which other Chief Justices before him have imposed, he has not extorted, nor has he had any concern with such, neither has he considered such to be legal.

At the outset of his career when he became severed from the tribes of Khifchāk and his native country, and through the discord of kindred became a captive in the bonds of misfortune, he chanced to fall into the service of the generous Khwājah, Shams-ud-Dīn, the 'Ajamī, who was the Malik-ut-Tujjār<sup>7</sup> [Chief of the Merchants] of the countries of 'Ajam, 'Irāk, Khwārazm, and Ghaznīn, and, up to this period of time, they call Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak, by the term Shamsī, after that great man.

When Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak, reached the sublime Court of Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-tīmish [along with his master], and the Sultān purchased him, he acquired favour and influence. Perceiving the indications of energy and vigour which were depicted on his brow, the august Sultān used to send him upon important affairs into different parts of the kingdom, and assign him duties, until, in the reign of Sultān Raziyyat, he became Sahm-ul-Hasham [Marshal of the Retinue]. In the reign of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, he became Amīr-i-Dād [Justiciary] of Karah; and, when the throne devolved on Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, in the year 640 H, he became Amīr-i-Dād of the illustrious capital, the city of Dihlī, and the fief of the Amīrs-i-Dād, and the bench [pertaining to that office] passed to him.

After some time, when the throne devolved upon the Sultān of Sultāns, Nāṣir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, the fief of Palwal and Kāmāh<sup>8</sup>, with the bench of

<sup>7</sup> That is, Prince or Chief of the Merchants—a term often used in the Arabian Nights, and applied to the chief or general syndic of the merchants, trading exclusively with particular countries.

<sup>8</sup> See note <sup>6</sup>, page 150.

<sup>9</sup> In the Bharat-pūr territory, on the route from Mathurah to Fīrūz pūr, 39 miles N W of the former place, Lat 27° 40', Long 77° 20'. It was taken by Najaf Khān about eighty years since, and was then a small city fortified

XXIII. MALIK NUŞRAT-UD-DİN<sup>2</sup>, SHER KHÂN, SUNĞAR-I-SAGHALSÜS<sup>2</sup>

\* Our author relates how Ulugh Khan and his brother became slaves, and from whom they were purchased, but he appears not to have known much

vice before the throne, and the signs of worthiness were indicated upon his brow. He served the Sultāns of that dynasty much in every rank and degree; and, when he attained greatness, Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, at the time he led an army from the capital towards Lohor<sup>7</sup>, with the object of repelling the army of infidel Mughals which was before the walls of the fortress of Ūchchah, assigned to Malik Sher Khān the fortress of Tabarhindah and the whole of its dependencies as his fief.

Afterwards, when the ẖarluḡhs wrested Multān out of the hands of Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān<sup>8</sup>, Malik Sher Khān led an army from the preserved city of Tabarhindah towards Multān, and liberated it again out of the hands of the ẖarluḡhs, and placed therein Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Kurez<sup>9</sup>. Subsequently, upon several occasions, contention arose between Malik Sher Khān and Malik Balban, arising from their proximity to each other, as has been previously stated; and Malik Sher Khān wrested the fortress of Ūchchah out of the hands of Malik Balban, and the whole of the territory of Sind came under the sway of Malik Sher Khān. When the Malik-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, led a body of forces<sup>1</sup> towards Nāg-awr, and strife went on between Malik Sher Khān and him near the banks of the river Sind, Malik Sher Khān [retired from thence], and proceeded towards Upper Turkistān<sup>2</sup>, and went to the *urdū* [camp] of the Mughal, and presented himself at the Court of Mangū [Ḳā'ān].

respecting Sher Khān's early years, or was unwilling to relate much on the subject.

<sup>7</sup> See page 667, and page 811.

<sup>8</sup> See also the account of Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, page 782.

<sup>9</sup> It will be seen, from this, that these great Malikhs were like so many dependent kings, and had Malikhs of their own. Kurez is the person who, in 648 H., sent some Mughal prisoners to Dihlī, and they were, evidently, so rare, that, even for this small mercy, Dihlī was decorated.

<sup>1</sup> Our author gives no less than *three* other and *different* accounts of these events—one, at page 693, another at page 794, and a third in his account of Ulugh Khān, farther on. Leading "a body of forces towards Nāg-awr" is our author's mode of stating the fact of Ulugh Khān's banishment to his fief, when ousted from power by the Rayḡānī plot, already referred to, and further detailed in the account of Ulugh Khān. Strife, with his cousin, seems altogether improbable, for, immediately on his return to Hind, he joined the party of his cousin, Ulugh Khān, in ousting the Rayḡānī clique.

<sup>2</sup> This whole sentence is one of the most defective in the entire work; there

He returned with honour from thence, and set out towards Lohor. When he arrived in the neighbourhood of Lohor and these parts<sup>2</sup>, he joined Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn Mas'ūd Shāh<sup>3</sup>, son of the august Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish. In the end, matters did not go on without disagreements between them, and Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, retired in disappointment, and his dependents and followers fell into the hands of Malik Sher Khān's train<sup>4</sup>.

After that affair, Malik Sher Khān endeavoured to gain possession of Tabarhindah [again], but, as Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar [the then feudatory], issued from the fortress [to oppose him], Malik Sher Khān was under the necessity of withdrawing again. Swift messengers went from the capital from the nobles, and a covenant and pledges were entered into, and Malik Sher Khān proceeded and presented himself at Court<sup>5</sup>. Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Arsalān Khān, likewise came to the capital, and [the fief of] Awadh was assigned to him, and Tabarhindah was [again] committed to Malik Sher Khān, with the whole of the territory and fiefs which he had previously held.

For some time he remained upon that frontier<sup>7</sup>, during

are scarcely two copies alike. One copy has something more after the words "Upper Turkistān," namely, that "he proceeded towards Lohor, and every one who used to see him, would bow down his head to the ground [در سجده افتادی] out of awe of him."

<sup>2</sup> The neighbourhood of Dhilli where our author wrote his History

<sup>3</sup> This too is one of our author's mysteries. I shall have to refer to it again. See note <sup>2</sup>, page 699, and note <sup>1</sup>, page 767

<sup>4</sup> For some farther particulars respecting this Prince, whose proceedings are made a mystery of, see pages 683, 699, 818 and note <sup>4</sup>, and pages 830 to 834. I shall have to refer to him, in connexion with the Mughals, in the last Section.

STEWART has written on the margin of the MS I have referred to in note <sup>3</sup>, page 776, notwithstanding it is plainly indicated who Jalāl-ud-Dīn was, that he is "*Jalāl Addeen King of Aharism*," who died or disappeared from the world nearly *thirty-five years before* ! See page 297, and note <sup>3</sup>.

<sup>5</sup> See under Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar, page 768

<sup>7</sup> Although Lāhor is mentioned, after fourteen years' silence, as the fief of Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh—probably half-brother only of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh—in the ninth year of the latter's reign, page 700, it does not again occur. It also appears that Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, held Lāhor with foreign aid, independent of Dhilli. I shall have to refer to this matter again. The frontier here referred to indicates, as in several other places, the limits of the Dhilli kingdom in this direction—namely, the banks of the Bāh,

which contention used to go on between him and Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, as on former occasions. A mandate was issued from the sublime Court so that Malik Sher Khān returned to the capital; and, in order to avert strife on the frontier, the fief of Tabarhindah was entrusted to the charge of Malik Nuṣrat Khān, Sunḡar-i-Sūfi. The territory of Kol and Bhiānah, and Balārām, Jalī-sar, Baltārah\*, Mihir and Mahāwan, and the fortress of Gwāliyūr, which is among the most famous strongholds of Islām, were placed in Malik Sher Khān's charge; and there he still is, up to the date that these pages were written, in the month of Rajab, 658 H.

May the Most High God long preserve the Sulṭān-i-Mu'azzam upon the throne of sovereignty!

not as it at present flows, but when it ran in its old bed. See also page 818, and note 4

\* In the best copies كاشل as above, but in one, instead of كاشل we have كاشل

On the 21st of the month of Ṣafar, 657 H. See pages 712 and 788, and the account of Ulugh Khān farther on. It is strange that such leniency was shown to Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, for this was after his attempt to seize the capital, and after he had thrown off allegiance to the Dillī kingdom, and had received a Mughal Shaḡnah. He appears always to have been treated with the utmost consideration, and there must have been some reason for it.

It may not be amiss here to give an extract from the Tārikh-i-Firūz-Shāhī of Ziyā-ud-Dīn, respecting Sher Khān, as there may be somewhat of a leaven of correctness in it, but, at the same time, it shows that the statements of Ziyā-ud-Dīn are not to be wholly depended upon, at least for the accounts of Sulṭān Balban's reign. I take this from the printed text, which, in many places, is lamentably incorrect.

"After four or five years of Sulṭān Balban's reign [had passed], thirty years after the decease of Sulṭān Shams-ud-Dīn, Sher Khān, the uncle's son of Sulṭān Balban, who was a Khān greatly honoured, and who had become as the ḡadd-i-Yāyū Mājū [the Barrier of Gog and Magog, or Great Wall of China] to the Mughals, died."

[As Sulṭān Shams-ud-Dīn died in 633 H., Sher Khān, consequently, died in 663 H. According to Ziyā-ud-Dīn, himself, Balban came to the throne in 662 H., but, according to others, Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Maḡmūd Shāh, did not die until 664 H.]

"I have heard from some credible persons, that he, Sher Khān, used not to come to Dillī, and that Sulṭān Balban caused poison to be administered to him in his drink. [The word used is عصب which is said to be a liquor made from barley and other things, a sort of beer.] This Sher Khān had built a lofty cupola at Bhatnir, and the fortresses of Bhaḡindah and Bhatnir are among the places founded by him.

"He was one of the great slaves of Sulṭān Shams-ud-Dīn, and one among the CHĪHL-GĀNĪĀN—of that Sulṭān—Chīhl—forty, gānīān—the plural form of the redundant particle used after numerals—Bātugs' "Turky tribe of



## XXIV. MALIK SAIF-UD-DĪN, I-BAK-I-KASHĪ KHĀN-US-SULTĀNĪ.

The Malik-ul-Hujāb [Chief of Chamberlains], Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak-i-Kashī Khān<sup>1</sup>—on whom be peace!—was the

HELGHAN<sup>2</sup>—every one of whom became styled by the title of Khān, and Sher Khān had great confidence placed in him. From the reign of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn [Maḥmūd Shāh], Sunnām [in the text  $\text{سنان}$  instead of  $\text{سن}$ —belonging to the first clause of the sentence—and  $\text{لہور}$ ], Lohor, and Dīhāl-pār [in the text  $\text{دینالپور}$ —Dīndīl-pār?] and other fiefs in the direction of the coming of the Mughals, the whole he held.”

[The dependence to be placed upon the statements in this last sentence may be judged of from our author's account above—the statement of a contemporary writer living at Dīhlī, who knew him personally, and the statement of one “who heard” about these things ninety-five years after, and, who states that he has only taken up the history of these times from the end of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh's reign, where our author left off. Sher Khān did not hold these fiefs during the period our author's work embraces; and so the last years of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh's reign still remain a blank with Zayā-ud-Dīn, as with others.]

“He [Sher Khān] entertained many thousand well-organized and efficient cavalry in his service, and several times had he fallen upon the Mughals, turned them upside down, and dispersed them, and caused the *Aḥutbak* to be read for Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn at Ghaznī; and, on account of his vigilance, valour, strength, and grandeur, and the number of his followers, it was impossible for the Mughals to prowl around the frontiers of Hindūstān”!!

The statements contained in this paragraph are enough to stamp the Tārīkh-i-Firīz Shāhī for the history of this period as utter rubbish. Our author's statements respecting Sher Khān and the fiefs he held, and of the state of the frontier on the Bīāh, in the latter part of his account of Ulugh Khān, show, that these things were not true, and could not have been true. Malik Balban-i-Kashī Khān, who held Sindh and Multān, and who was in league with the Mughals, is ignored altogether by Zayā-ud-Dīn, but he, like Sher Khān, was living when our author closed his history. Firāzshāh, probably, got his version of this absurdity about Ghaznī from Zayā-ud-Dīn, only he relates it as taking place in 649 H. See page 689, and note <sup>2</sup>.

According to Zayā-ud-Dīn, Sher Khān reduced under his subjection the Jats, Khokhars, Bhaṭṭas, the Mīns, and the Mandāhars, and was succeeded in the fief of Sunnām by Tamar Khān, who was also one of the Chihil-gānān. He is not the person referred to by our author, at page 741, he having died many years previously.

<sup>1</sup> At page 702, he is styled Malik Kashī Khān, Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak, Sultānī Shamsī [i. e. the slave of Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timush], and further entitled, “Ulugh Kutluḡ, A'zam-i-Bār-Bak.”

There is no doubt, I think, but that the 'Alī-garh inscription given by Thomas [PATHAN KINGS OF DELHI, page 129, and by Blochmann, in his *Contributions*, page 40] refers to him, as his brother, Ulugh Khān, is never, throughout this work, styled “A'zam-i-Bār-Bak,” but his brother did hold the office of Bār-Bak, and is styled *Kutluḡ* and Saif-ul-Hakīk wa ud-Dīn. He

brother, paternally and maternally, of the Khān-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam. They were both two pearls of one shell, two suns and two moons of one exalted constellation, two rubies of one mine, two flowers of one parterre of prosperity, two Maliks of one royal Court, and two great lords of one imperial conclave. Their lineage was from the Khāns of the Ilbari, and, when the infidel Mughals acquired predominance over the countries of Turkistān and the tribes of Khishchāk, as a matter of necessity, it became incumbent on them to remove, with their families, dependents, and effects, from their accustomed place of abode.

Malik Kashli Khān-i-I-bak was the younger brother, and the Khān-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, the elder. At this time the [future] Malik and Amir-i-Hājib was of tender years, and, when they [the tribe] decamped before the Mughals, on their way was marshy ground, and the [future] Malik, the Amir-i-Hājib, in the night, fell out of the waggon, in which he was, into the mud, and no one had the power to take him out of the quagmire, because the Mughals were at their heels. They urged forward their waggons, and he [the child] remained in that same place [where he fell]. Ulugh Khān returned to the spot where his little brother was, and took him up. A second time the Mughals came up behind them, and the [future] Malik, the Amir-i-Hājib, fell into their hands.

By the decrees of heaven, a merchant, having purchased him, brought him to the cities of Islām, and Ikhṭiyār-ul-Mulk, Rashid-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bikr, the Habash [Abyssinian], who had proceeded from the Court of Dihli on a mission to Mīṣr [Egypt] and Baghdād<sup>1</sup>, purchased the [future] Malik, the

also held the fief in which 'Alī-garh, otherwise Sābit garh, is situated, but not until 653 H. I doubt, however, the correctness of the reading of *Balkhan* in the inscription given in the first-named work.

The year 652 H., mentioned in the reading of this inscription, is that in which Ulugh Khān and his party, who had been ousted from power, succeeded, in the latter part of it, in regaining it; and, at this time, his brother had been recently deprived of his office, and sent to the fief of Karab. Whoever he was, it would require a great stretch of the imagination to conceive what he had to do with China — الصين.

<sup>1</sup> Thus, evidently, is connected with the arrival of the emissaries from Baghdād with a robe of honour, from the Khalīfah, for Iyal tūnah, mentioned under the latter's reign, at page 616, which see, and note <sup>2</sup>.

Amīr-i-Hājib, from that merchant. Indications of rectitude were manifest on his brow, and Ikhtiyār-ul-Mulk brought him from thence<sup>4</sup> to the capital, Dihlī, and the august Sultān [I-yal-timish] purchased him of Ikhtiyār-ul-Mulk. The lights of intellect and intelligence, and the indications of rectitude and sagacity were beaming upon his brow. These words are written from a sense of justice and truth, for, among the Turks, a Malik more sagacious, with more modesty or more constancy, the eye of beholder never gazed upon. The Most High God had graced him with divers endowments of manliness and humanity, and adorned him with laudable qualities and excellent conduct.

In wisdom and sagacity he excelled all the Wazīrs of the past, and, in valour and prowess, had placed the foot of manhood higher on the pinnacle [of perfection?] than the whole of the champions of Irān and Tūrān. May the Most High God, in the gardens of bliss on high, confer upon him pardon and mercy, and bless him; and continue the Khān-i-Mu'azzam<sup>5</sup> [his brother], in sway and authority, permanent and perpetual! We now come to the topic of history.

When the august Sultān purchased the [future] Malik, the Amīr-i-Hājib, he continued to serve in the Sultān's

I-yal-timish evidently despatched this envoy to the court of the Khalīfah of Baghdād to seek from him a deed of investiture as sovereign of Hindūstān. This was done probably after he had "secured" all his rivals, and found himself firmly established, and the person above mentioned was his envoy. The Khālī Sultān of Lakhanawātī appears to have done the same. See note page 774.

<sup>4</sup> No place mentioned, but, from what is stated above, he may have purchased him at Baghdād.

<sup>5</sup> The Calcutta Printed Text, and two modern copies of the text, with slight variation, have the words—"who is the Bādshāh of the age, and the Shāhan-Shāh of the time" here, and, from this, Thomas says, it is a proof that this part of our author's work was written when Balban was King of Dihlī. There are, however, many proofs to the contrary, in the shape of several invocations for the reigning Sultān and for Ulugh Khān in the same sentence farther on, and a more particular proof in the fact, that this evident interpolation does not occur in two of the three oldest copies of the text, nor even in the I. O. L. MS. 1952, and R. A. S. MS. By what follows after the word Mu'azzam we need scarcely imagine, from the power which Ulugh Khān held as Deputy of the kingdom under the puppet Sultān—the former possessing and exercising the whole power in reality—that our author means that Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, was dead, for, a few lines farther on, such a doubt is set at rest completely. Our author evidently refers to his authority as Deputy of the kingdom, and no more.

own presence chamber, until, in the reign of Sultān Raṣīyat, he became the deputy Sar-i-Jān-dār. After some time, in the reign of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahram Shāh, he was made Sar-i-Jān-dār<sup>4</sup>. Subsequently, during the reign of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, he became Amīr-i-Ākhur. He continued, in this manner, to exercise that authority and office up to the time that the throne of sovereignty became adorned with the august dignity of the Sultān of Sultāns, Nāṣir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh—May God prolong his reign and sovereignty!—and, when the Sultān conferred upon the Khān-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam—May God prolong his prosperity!—the name and title of Khān, the Malik, Kashlī Khān, was elevated from the office of Amīr-i-Ākhur to the dignity of Amīr-i-Hājib. When Nāg-awr was taken from Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, it was entrusted to the charge of Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak-i-Kashlī Khān, the Amīr-i-Hājib<sup>5</sup>:

Whilst Malik Kashlī Khān filled the office of Amīr-i-Hājib, he studied so much to please the great, the middle rank, and the least in degree, as the pen cannot write, and showed such regard and favour towards the Turk Maliks, the Tājīk nobles, and the Khalj Amīra, as cannot be contained within the limits of writing. All hearts became filled with good-will towards him, and all persons felt obliged by his favours. When the Khān-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, departed<sup>6</sup> for Nāg-awr, they gave the khittāh [district or territory] of Karah to the Amīr-i-Hājib, Kashlī Khān, his brother, and to that part he proceeded. When Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam returned to the Court again, the Amīr-i-Hājib returned likewise, and he became Amīr-i-Hājib the second time<sup>7</sup>.

After some time, when, in the month of Rabi'-ul-Ākhir, 653 H., Malik Kutb-ud-Dīn, Husain, son of 'Alī [the Ghūrī, who was the Lieutenant of the kingdom]—May he rest in peace!—departed<sup>8</sup> to the eternal mansion, the territory

<sup>4</sup> The printed text generally turns چاندان—Jān-dār into چانداندار—Jām dār

<sup>5</sup> See pages 689 and 781

<sup>6</sup> When he was ousted from office, deprived of the fief of Hānsī, and forced to content himself with the fief of Nāg-awr

<sup>7</sup> See page 702

<sup>8</sup> He was put to death, and the reason of it is not plainly stated. It is another of our author's mysteries.

and city of Mirat was placed in the Amīr-i-Ḥājib's charge, to the skirt of the mountains of Bandlārān. During some years he reduced under his sway those confines and districts, and he took possession of the country within the mountain territory of Bandlārān<sup>1</sup>, as far as Rurkī, and Mīā-pūr, and extorted tribute, and overthrew Rānās and independent [Hindū] tribes, and reduced them to subjection, until the year 656 H., when weakness gained the ascendancy over his dear body and delicate form, and his intestines became swollen<sup>2</sup>. Through excessive modesty and bashfulness, he did not make known the whole of his disease to any one, and, for a period of some months, he endured affliction; and, as the appointed time was come, on Sunday, the 20th of the month of Rajab, 657 H., he transmitted his blessed soul, on the couch of pardon, attended by the escort of sincere piety, to the presence of majesty and nearness of glory.

May the Most High God keep in His protection the sovereign of the present time, the Sultān of Sultāns, Nāṣir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, for the sake of His most illustrious prophet, Muḥammad!

XXV. UL-KHĀKĀN-UL-MUA'ZZAM-UL-A'ZAM, BAHĀ-UL-HAKK WA UD-DĪN, ULUGH KHĀN-I-BALBAN-US-SULTĀNĪ<sup>3</sup>.

The Khākān-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, is of

<sup>1</sup> Six copies of the text, including the three oldest, have سداباران as above, two have سداباران one سدابانی one سدابان one سداباران one سدابان - the others are unintelligible. The Kumā'ūn mountains are undoubtedly referred to, and I should have expected the first part of the word to have been سدابانی—Nandī or سداب—Nandah. Nandah Dīwā is the name of one of the peaks overlooking them.

The second word is written درکی in the majority of the copies, in some درکی and درکی [these are probably meant for درکی as, in MS. d and r, and r are much alike if carelessly written], and درکی Mīā pūr occurs in every copy collated with a single exception, which has Mahā-pūr.

I have spelt Rurkī, as it should be written with the equivalent of Sanskrit रुरकी. The Mīā-pūr, here mentioned, is probably Mīā-pūrī, a very old place, a little to the S.W. of Hardwār [Hrad-wār].

<sup>2</sup> Hernia probably.

<sup>3</sup> That is, Balban, the Sultān's slave. It is a wholly erroneous statement that Ulugh Khān was called "Bahā-ud-Dīn Balban, Ulugh Khān;" the title Bahā-ud-Dīn wa ud-Dīn—a title bestowed by our author—is also given to his cousin, Sher Khān, and to his brother, Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak. Ulugh

the posterity of the renowned Khāns<sup>6</sup> of the Ilbarī [tribe]. The father of Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn, Sher Khān-i-Sunkar, and the father of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam<sup>7</sup>, were born of one father and one mother. The father of these two was of the seed of Abar<sup>8</sup> Khān, the Ilbarī, and he was the Khān of about 10,000 families; and their affinity to the Ilbarī [tribe] of Turkistān is well-known among the tribes of Turks. At this period, the sons of his [Ulugh Khān's] paternal uncle still continue to hold the name of greatness among those tribes of Turks: this fact was heard [by the author] from the late Malik, Kuret Khān-i-Sanjar.

Forasmuch as the Almighty God had willed to grant a bulwark for the support of Islām and the stability of the Muhammadi religion, and confer a shelter of protection in [this] the end of the world, and keep Hindūstān within the area of His own favour and the sphere of integrity, He had removed Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, in his youth, from Turkistān, and, on account of the domination of the Mughals in that country, had severed him from his family and kinsmen, and from among his tribes and people, so that they brought him to Baghdād<sup>9</sup>. The Khwājah, Jamāl-ud-Dīn, of Baṣrah

Khān's name, before he received that title, was Ghuyās ud-Dīn, Balban. See Thomas PAṬHĀN KINGS, page 124.

<sup>6</sup> There is not a word about "Khakāns" of the Ilbarī either in the MS copies of the text or the Calcutta Printed Text, as in Elliot INDIA, vol. II page 360. The word is خاکان. The renown of the "renowned" Khāns above mentioned is not recorded in history I believe. It is somewhat remarkable that Shāms-ud-Dīn, and his three slaves—Ulugh Khān, his brother, and their cousin—should have been all of the same tribe, as I have before noticed. In one copy of the text only, the name of the tribe is written خاکان — Ilbarī. It is also strange that the name of Ulugh Khān's father is not mentioned.

<sup>7</sup> Several copies of the text have "Sultan" instead of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, but the former may be attributed to over zealous copiers.

<sup>8</sup> This name is written in several ways, but the majority of copies have آبار — Abar, with the vowel points, some have آ — Āyah, one آ — Abah, one آ — Ayyah, and some leave it out altogether.

<sup>9</sup> Some copies have "and from thence into Gujarāt," but this does not occur in the oldest copie. Abū-'Abd ullah, Muhammad, of Tānīra, otherwise, the son of Baṭūṭah, in his Travels, gives the following account of Ulugh Khān, I quote the translation by Lee "This man's name was originally Balaban [Balban], his character had been just, discriminating, and mild: he filled the office of Nawāb [Nawwāb] of India, under Nāṣir-oddīn [Nāṣir-ud-Dīn], for twenty years: he also reigned twenty years. When a child he lived at Bokhāra in the possession of one of its inhabitants, and was a little despicable ill-looking wretch. Upon a time, a certain Fakcer saw him there, and said, 'You little Turk!' which is considered by them as a very reproachful

—on whom be peace!—who was noted for his piety, honesty, resolution of purpose, and conscientiousness, purchased him, and used to foster him in the hall of his kindness like a son. As the signs of integrity and sagacity were clear and manifest upon his sacred brow, he [the Khwājah] was wont to look upon him with the eye of benevolence, and regard him with special esteem; and, in the year 630 H., he brought Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam to the capital city of Dihli, at which time the throne of sovereignty was adorned with the sublime majesty of the august Sultān, Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-tīmish—May he rest in peace!—and brought, along with him, several other Turks, to the presence of the Sultān.

When the sacred look of that august monarch fell upon Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, under the auspices of his dignity and sagacity, the whole of those Turks were disposed of, and he was honoured with an office before the throne<sup>9</sup>. As the lustre of felicity and the effulgence of prosperity

term The reply was "I am here, good Sir!" This surprised the Fakcer, who said to him, 'Go and bring me one of those pomegranates,' pointing to some which had been exposed for sale in the street. The urchin replied, 'Yes, Sir,' and immediately, taking out all the money he had, went and bought the pomegranate. When the Fakcer received it, he said to Balaban, 'We give you the kingdom of India.' Upon which the boy kissed his own hand, and said, 'I have accepted of it, and am quite satisfied.'

"It happened, about this time, that the Sultan Shams Oddin sent a merchant to purchase slaves from Bokhāra and Samarkand. He accordingly bought a hundred, and Balaban was among them. When these Mamlūks were brought before the Sultan, they all pleased him *except Balaban, and him he rejected, on account of his despicable appearance*. Upon this, Balaban said to the Emperor, 'Lord of the world! why have you bought all these slaves?' The Emperor smiled, and said, 'For my own sake, no doubt.' The slave replied, 'Buy me then, for God's sake.' 'I will,' said he. He then accepted him, and placed him among the rest, but, on account of the badness of his appearance, gave him a situation among the cup-bearers!"<sup>1</sup>

Ulugh Khān has the reputation of having been a very fine man.

The traveller appears to have mixed up an anecdote respecting the Atā-Bak, Hatt-giz, of Irāk and Azarbāijān, and that related of Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-tīmish, by our author [page 600], into one delightful jumble.

There is a great deal more of such like nonsense as this, but the translator mentions Firāhtah, and quotes him—his text not a translation—showing that, according to the crude idea of the writer, he considers the name Balban to be that of a Turkish tribe because several persons, so named, occur in Firāhtah's history. After the same fashion I-bak would be the name of a Turkish tribe perhaps. See also note <sup>9</sup>, page 678.

<sup>9</sup> ELLIOT. "When the monarch observed him he bought *all the lot of* Turks and appointed *them* to attend before his throne!"

shone upon his brow, the Sultān made him his *Khāṣah-dār*<sup>1</sup> [personal attendant] as if he had placed the falcon of dominion and power upon his sacred wrist; and, in fact, this took place in order, that, in the reign of his children, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam should restrain the enemies of the realm from violence and bar their ambition, and so it turned out to the end that the glory of the Shamsī sovereignty might shine forth from the horizon of good fortune. Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam continued to serve in that office; and, by the will of heaven, he found his brother [the future] Kashlī Khān, the Amīr-i-Hājib, again, and greatly rejoiced at his re-appearance, and acquired strength therefrom.

When the throne of empire devolved upon Sultān Rukn-ud-Dīn, Firūz Shāh, Ulugh Khān went out of the capital along with the Turks when they left it, and proceeded towards [upper?] Hindūstān<sup>2</sup>, and, when they were brought back, he returned likewise, in their army, and was imprisoned for a short time, and disappointment overspread his sacred face. The purpose, in that incident, may have been—God knows!—that he might realize the measure of misery of the grief-stricken, so that, when he attained the felicity of dominion, he might have compassion upon such persons, and give thanks for the blessing of power.

<sup>1</sup> *Khāṣah-bardār* is the name formerly applied to a soldier whose arms were furnished by his master, and, in more recent times, applied to the bearer of the *betel* box; but we are not to suppose that Sultān I-yal-timish was so much of a Hindū as to chew *pān supārī*. The word above used seems to signify a page, henchman, or personal attendant, perhaps a falconer.

The *Tabakāt-i-Akbarī* states that Ulugh Khān was the slave and *dāmdār*—son-in-law, and sometimes, but rarely, used for the husband of the sovereign's sister—of I-yal-timish, and Firūzshāh, of course, agrees. But where is there the least authority whatever for such a statement? Our author was not likely to conceal such a matter as this, tending to the glorification of his patron. To judge from the fact of his causing himself to be proclaimed Sultān [see page 661], the lenient manner in which he was treated after such continual and repeated misconduct, and an elephant having been assigned him, Balban-i Kashlū Khān is more likely to have been related by marriage to I-yal-timish than Balban-i-Ulugh Khān. Fancy Ibn-Batūtah's "*little despicable ill-looking wretch*," his master's son-in-law! I-yal-timish died only about two years after the future Ulugh Khān's purchase, but Kashlū Khān was purchased in 624 H.

<sup>2</sup> This refers to the affair which culminated at Tarā'in in 634. See page 638.



## ANECDOTE.

They have related that there was a monarch at the acme of felicity and the zenith of dominion. He had a son of extreme beauty and sagacity, merit and innocence. That monarch commanded, so that wherever wise, intelligent, learned, and accomplished persons were [to be found], they got them together for the purpose of instructing that son; and one of those accomplished men, who was superior to the others, and excelled the rest in a variety of wisdom, knowledge, and learning, and various arts and sciences, was selected by the monarch, and placed in charge of the education of that light of his eyes, his son.

The king commanded, saying: "It is necessary that this son of mine should acquire instruction in, and information respecting, the theory of the truths of religion, and thorough knowledge of the difficulties of power, the subtile distinctions of knowledge, the treasuring up of information, the conditions of government, the institutions of prosperity, the ways of fostering subjects, and the laws respecting the dispensation of justice, and that he should be acquainted with the contingencies and complications of them all."

That learned man placed the face of acceptance to the ground of service, and occupied himself in his task. When the prescribed period of the youth's education terminated, and the seeds of instruction came up, and the honorary robe of erudition became fitted to the person, and that son, the one fruit of the king's tree, became embellished in all accomplishments, they made known to the monarch the matter of his son's perfect acquirements. He commanded, saying: "It is necessary that the preceptor should be present in the audience-hall of sovereignty to-morrow at morning dawn; and let the prince also be brought thither, in order that the divers pearls of learning, which he has acquired, he may string upon the thread of demonstration, so that gentle and simple—high and low—may become enlightened and cognizant of the perfect knowledge, the elegance of attainments, the realities of capacity, and performances of penetration of my son."

On this command being issued, the preceptor solicited three days' delay from the monarch; and, on his request

being granted, the preceptor, early in the morning of the [next] day, mounted, and brought forth the young prince from the city for the purpose of taking a ramble. After they had passed beyond the habitations, the preceptor made the prince dismount, and constrained him to walk on in front of his [the preceptor's] horse, and obliged him to run along several leagues to keep up with his horse's cantering, in such wise that the delicate person of the prince became excessively afflicted from the fatigue of walking and running. So he brought him back to the city again.

The second day, the preceptor entered the school-room, and commanded the prince, saying : "Get up, and remain standing," and, in this way, he kept him standing during the whole day, in such wise that the prince's tender body was sorely pained. When the third day came, the preceptor entered the school-room, and directed that the place should be cleared, tied the hands and feet of the king's son together, and inflicted upon him more than a hundred blows with a cane; and, from the severity of the flogging, all the limbs of the young prince's body, from the number of blows, became wounded. He left him thus bound, repeated the invocation before flight<sup>1</sup>, and disappeared.

A number of servants, on becoming aware of the circumstance, liberated the king's son from his bonds, and sought for the preceptor, but could not find him. They made a representation to the king, and he directed them to bring his son before him, and, upon every science wherein they questioned him, they found him so proficient that "there is no exceeding perfection" fitly described his proficiency. The king remarked, saying : "The preceptor, in teaching and instructing, and making his pupil perfect, has, by the grace of Almighty God, not neglected the least thing. It would be well to know the cause of these cuts and hurts, and what was the reason of his flight."

He commanded, so that they used their utmost endeavours in seeking the preceptor, and, after a considerable time, and at a distant period, they again found him, and brought him into the monarch's presence. He showed the preceptor great reverence and honour, and inquired of

<sup>1</sup> A prayer or invocation according to Musalmān custom

him the motive of the severe flogging, and compelling the young prince to run on foot on the first day, making him stand all the second day, the reason of leaving him bound, and the cause of his own disappearance, on the third. The preceptor, bowing the head of service to the ground of representation, replied: "May the king's felicity continue! It will be manifest to the sublime mind, that it behoveth the possessor of dominion to understand the condition of those persons who are objects of commendation and approval, and likewise the state of those individuals who are the objects of indignation and reprehension, so that whatever he may command in such circumstances may be fitting; and, in no manner whatsoever, either in pleasure or displeasure, may he deviate from the bounds of moderation. Your slave was desirous of making the prince acquainted with the condition of the oppressed, the captive, and of the numbers who have to run before [his] horse, of the people who may have to remain standing [before him], and of the state of those persons who may have become deserving of condign punishment, or of being made public examples of, so that, when exercising his royal wrath, he may conceive what measure of distress and pain their hearts and bodies suffer, and that, when he should have endured somewhat of such severities, whatsoever he may direct as regards punishment, running, or standing, he may do so in proportion to their powers of endurance and strength. The reason, moreover of my flight and disappearance was apprehension, since the noble person and delicate frame of the prince had sustained affliction, lest parental affection should have induced the king, in requital of such act on the part of his humble servant, to have censured him, whereby all his pains and labours would have been thrown away."

This anecdote was applicable to the case of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam in the amount of trouble that befell him in being brought back again to the capital among the Turks<sup>4</sup>, in order that, when he attained unto power, and became Lieutenant of the kingdom<sup>5</sup>, he might be cognizant of the

<sup>4</sup> It would be interesting to know why he was treated in this manner, but the reason does not transpire.

<sup>5</sup> The word used in one of the best and oldest copies of the text is نائب

condition of the broken and oppressed. May Almighty God cause justice and beneficence to be the associate of all his acts and proceedings!

We have returned to the subject of the narration of this history.

When the sovereignty devolved upon Sultān Rāziyyat, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam was, as before, Khāṣah-dār, until good fortune came to his aid, and he became Amīr-i-Shukār [Chief Huntsman]. The ball of fate was saying: "a world will be the quarry of his power, and a universe the prey of his authority," hence the first of his offices was that of the Chief Huntsmanship. When he had filled that office some time, and had done approved service, suddenly, the sun of the Rāziyyat dynasty came to its setting, and the luminary of the Mu'izzī sovereignty arose, and the Ulugh Khānī prosperity began to increase. As in the duties of Chief Huntsman he had filled that office well, and done approved service, he became Amīr-i-Ākhur, and the horses of state and of sovereignty came under the bridle of his possession. When Malik Badr-ud-Dīn, Sunkar, the Şūfī, was made Amīr-i-Hājib, he, having a parental affection towards Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, showed a sincere regard for his welfare, and raised Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam to a still higher degree. The fief<sup>6</sup> of Rīwārī was entrusted to his charge; and, when he proceeded to that part, he thoroughly chastized the independent [Hindū] tribes of the Koh-pāyah<sup>7</sup> by the power of his valour, and reduced those tracts under his jurisdiction.

When the Mu'izzī sovereignty began to totter, and the Maliks, in concert together, appeared before the gate of the city [of Dihlī], and the whole of the Amīrs and Maliks

as above, and another has نائب سلطان but, if I left out the word نائب—deputy or lieutenant—the sense would be materially changed, and it would be "in order that when he attained unto power and sovereignty," &c.,—but this is not meant by our author—and it might then naturally be supposed, by a reader, that this history was written during Balban's reign, if one solitary passage were sufficient to prove it, contrary to scores of others. See note <sup>1</sup>, page 797.

<sup>6</sup> Not "lands." it was an extensive and important tract of country, as the context shows.

<sup>7</sup> In ELLIOT, page 362, the words موات كوه پاه are rendered "hill chiefs," but in several other places the word is not translated at all, and "the Mawalis" are introduced as if the word was a proper name. The Koh-pāyah is a tract repeatedly mentioned, the literal meaning of which is "hill skirt."

conspired among themselves, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam—May his power be perpetuated<sup>1</sup>!—who was feudatory of Rīwārī, in concert with other Malik<sup>2</sup>s and Amīrs, displayed so much sagacity in ascertaining the aims and intentions of the Malik<sup>3</sup>s, that among the whole of them—Turk or Tājzīk, not one attained to the hundredth part thereof; and the whole [of them] admitted his firmness, heroism, intrepidity, and enterprise to be greater than that of all the Malik<sup>4</sup>s and Amīrs of that period. On the city being taken, the fief of Hānsī was made over to his charge,<sup>5</sup> and, on that territory coming under his control, he turned his attention to its cultivation and improvement; and the people, from the effects of his justice and conspicuous liberality, became contented and prosperous.

Ulugh Khān's affairs became so flourishing,<sup>6</sup> that the whole of the Malik<sup>7</sup>s and Amīrs began to be jealous at the freshness of his good fortune, and envy's disquieting thorn began to prick their minds, but, as Almighty God had willed that he should be greater than the whole [of them], by how much the more the fire of their envy increased, by so much the more did the incense of his prosperity, within the censer of time, diffuse additional perfume: "They endeavour to extinguish the light of God with [the breath of] their mouths, but God rejects aught but the perfection of his light."—May Almighty God prolong his office of power,

<sup>1</sup> The Printed Text, and two *MS.* copies—modern ones—but neither of them the I. O. L. *MS.*, No 1952, nor the R. A. S. *MS.*, have "the Sultān—May his dominion and sovereignty continue!—who was feudatory of Rīwārī," &c., which convinces Mr Dowson [ELLIOT vol. II page 362] "that this part of the work was written in the reign of Balban." The majority of copies, however, including the oldest, have as rendered above. See note <sup>4</sup>, next page.

<sup>2</sup> The word "Malik<sup>3</sup>" here, does not signify *princes* any more than it does kings: it refers to those persons, with a single exception, slaves, mentioned in this Section. Compare ELLIOT here.

<sup>3</sup> In a few copies "to the charge of his retainers."

<sup>4</sup> Here is a good proof of how the Calcutta Printed Text—the "official Text"—has been "revised" before printing. It has, whilst referring to Ulugh Khān the whole time—سلاطین دولت پانی رسید—thus turning him into a Sultān, a *quarter of a century* too soon. All the best copies have the name of Ulugh Khān, where Sultān has been inserted in the Printed Text, or Ulugh Khānī, which latter mode of writing makes it "the prosperity of the Ulugh Khān's affairs," whilst the first would be "the prosperity of the Ulugh Khān affairs." In two modern copies of the text, the word سلاطین has been written in mistake for سلاطین.

and make this servant of the state, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, who is the author of this ṬABAKĀT, feel due gratitude towards him, for his abundant benefactions combined with respect, for, should a thousand sections of paper be filled with closely written encomiums on his admirable qualities and inestimable virtues, it would be but as a drop in the vast ocean, and not even a single particle from out of the fragrance from the paradise-like flower garden [thereof] would have affected the smelling sense of hearer or reader, and, should a hundred thousand such-like effusions be composed, out of gratitude for the princely countenance of this great lord, at the foot-step of the exalted throne of the king of the sovereigns of the face of the earth—May God perpetuate his dominion and sovereignty<sup>1</sup>—towards this servant, in the entrusting of offices, the bestowal of appointments, and abundant benefactions, together with honour and reverence, which he still continues to bestow, even yet, the debts of gratitude will be due to him, in return for those benefits, by this servant, by his children, and by his family. May the Almighty God long preserve his high majesty, the Sultān of the Sultāns of the universe, NĀSIR-UD-DUNYĀ WA UD-DĪN, ABŪ-L-MUZAFFAR-I-MAHMŪD SHĀH, in the pomp of power, decked in the jewels of submission, and adorned with the garment of the services of that KHĀKĀN-I-MU'AZZAM, the Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, to the utmost bounds of possibility in the revolution of time,<sup>2</sup> for the sake of Muḥammad and the whole of his posterity!

We have returned to the subject of this history.

This frail one, in the year 640 H., chanced to undertake a journey to Lakhanawati. On this journey he continued two years with his family and dependents. Trustworthy

<sup>1</sup> But two copies have the correct word here, which is ملكى—celestial—the rest have ملكى the adjective derived from ملك—Malik, or Mulk.

<sup>2</sup> Had those, who looked upon the imperfect passages in the Printed Text for "proofs" that this account of Ulugh Khān was written in his reign, read or translated this passage, where "*The author continues in a high strain of benediction and eulogy,*" they would have found undoubted proof that Ulugh Khān was not long when this was written. He was, however, father in law to the Sultān and his Deputy or Lieutenant, in fact, his master, and possessed all the power, and Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd Shāh, was a mere puppet. It is somewhat strange that there is not the most remote allusion to Ulugh Khān's having been manumitted throughout this work. It seems scarcely possible that he was still a slave.

persons have related on this wise, that, in the year 642 H.<sup>5</sup>, the *Khākān-i-Mu'azzam*, Ulugh *Khān-i-A'zam*<sup>6</sup>, became Amir-i-*Hājib* in the illustrious capital, Dihlī, when the august standards—may victory and success expand them!—moved out of Dihlī, into the Do-āb of the Jūn and Gang, and when he gave the rebels of Jarālī and Datolī<sup>7</sup>, and other independent [*Hindū*] tribes, a thorough chastisement, and carried on holy war, as by the faith enjoined, and the roads in the adjacent parts of that territory were cleared of the violence of the contumacious<sup>8</sup>. The author of this work [at this time], in conformity with the sublime commands, in company with Malik 'Izz-ud-Din, Tughril-i-Tughān *Khān*, returned from Lakhanawati again with his family and dependents, and arrived at the capital, Dihlī, in the year 643 H.<sup>9</sup>

In this same year, Mangūtah<sup>1</sup> the accursed, who was one of the Mughal leaders, and of the Malikis of Turkistān, led an army from the borders of Tāe-kān<sup>2</sup> and Kunduz, into the territories of Sind, and invested the fortress of Uchchah, which is one of the famous strongholds of the country of Sind, and of the territory<sup>3</sup> of Manṣūrah. Within

<sup>5</sup> The Calcutta Printed Text has 642 H., and 641 H., as in ELLIOT, is incorrect. See page 664, and note <sup>2</sup>.

<sup>6</sup> He is thus styled, except at page 810, throughout the remainder of this work, but I shall, for simplicity's sake, merely style him as previously, Ulugh *Khān-i-A'zam*.

<sup>7</sup> Every copy of the text has درای as above with very trifling differences, and the oldest and best copies have also دوی as above, but some have دور which seems intended for the same, but the copyists have put the points under and made the latter ى instead of ب and a few have no points at all. I fail to recognize these places. There is a Jowah in Lat 28° 17', Long 78° 17', in the Survey Map, and a place named Atowli, in Lat 28° 2', Long 78° 20'.

<sup>8</sup> This is not mentioned under the reign. See page 663, and note <sup>8</sup>.

<sup>9</sup> See page 667, and 735.

<sup>1</sup> In some few copies Mangūtī, which is not correct. In ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 363, Mr. Dowson makes Mangū *Khān* of him, although his name is given correctly in the text. The Great *Khān*, Mangū *Kā'ān*, was never east of the Indus in his life.

<sup>2</sup> Two of the three oldest copies have تالکان—*Tāl kān*—here, the third oldest and others تالکان—*Tāl-kān*, and تالکان—*Tāe kān*, and some have no points to the third letter, hence it may be read *Tāe-kān* or *Tāl-kān*. The place intended is that east of "Kunduz," and is correctly *Tāe-kān* as distinct from *Tāl-kān* of Tukhārīstān. I shall have to refer again to these places in the last Section, as they are very liable to be mistaken one for the other.

<sup>3</sup> The word ى does not mean "equal to." The Printed Text is quite correct here, and "the words" are "as precise" as they are anywhere through-

that fortress a Khawjah Sarāe [Eunuch], one of the servants of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bikr, son of [the late] Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Kabīr Khān, Ayāz-i-Hazār-Mardah, named Mukhlis-ud-Dīn, was the Kotwāl-Bak [Seneschal], and a slave of Kabīr Khān, Ak-Sunḡar, by name, was the Amīr-i-Dād [Lord Justiciary].

When intimation of this irruption reached the capital, Malik Ulugh Khān<sup>a</sup> represented it<sup>b</sup> for the sublime consideration, and caused an army to be organized for the purpose of repelling the Mughals. While every one of the [other] Amīrs and Maliks<sup>c</sup> was showing indecision about this undertaking, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam showed determination in carrying it out; and, when the royal standards moved for-

out that work See ELLIOT - vol. II. page 363. The very same word, at page 303 of that work, is rendered "lands."

Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz, and his son Tāj-ud-Dīn, Abū Bikr, are both mentioned at page 727, and there it is stated that, when the Mughals under the Nū-īn, Mangūtah, turned their faces towards Lohor, Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz, who was feudatory of Multān, assumed sovereignty, and soon after, in 639 H., died. The death of his son is also recorded, but nothing whatever respecting this attack upon Ūchchah, which must have happened after the son's death, the date of which is not given.

There is an excellent specimen of the lamentable errors that may be caused through not knowing when and where the *ṣafat*—so "in-Persian," and "never use ' to signify son of," according to Mr. Blochmann [See APPENDIX C, xviii., and his "*Bengal Contributions*," part III. page 138], and which "is restricted to poetry, and does not occur in prose"—ought to be used, in the extract from our author's work given in ELLIOT. The following is the rendering of this passage in that work, vol. II. page 363: "He laid siege to Ūch, one of the most renowned fortresses of Sindh, and equal to Mansūra. There was a eunuch in (command of) the fort who belonged to the household of *Taj-ud-din. Abū Bakr-Kabīr Khān Aksunkar* was chief justice, and *Mukhtis-ud-dīn* was *horwal*." This last rendering is well worthy Mr. Blochmann's attention.

Here we have Tāj-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bikr's title and name separated into two parts, then his name is given to his father, Kabīr Khān, and the father's name and title, and his son's name also, are all given to Kabīr Khān's SLAVE whose name was Ak-Sunḡar. I need but add that, in this instance, the Calcutta "official" Text is perfectly correct with the exception of not having all the father's names and titles recorded as above. Had they all been contained in it, what a number might not have been heaped upon the slave! Kabīr Khān's titles, and his son's will be found at pages 724—727.

<sup>a</sup> He is thus styled in the text, but did not receive the title of Ulugh Khān until many years after—in 664 H. At this period he was Malik Ghayās-ud-Dīn, Balban, only.

<sup>b</sup> Not "his views." He brought it to the Sultān's notice by virtue of the office he held. He was the cause of an army's being got ready. See page 667 and note <sup>4</sup>.

<sup>c</sup> See note <sup>9</sup>, page 807.



ward towards that [threatened] quarter, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam—Be his power prolonged!—despatched guides in advance on the line of route, so that [the troops] used to get over the marches with rapidity. He was wont to represent to the troops that the [next] halting-ground would be about eight *kuroh*<sup>7</sup> off, and [consequently] about twelve *kuroh*, and even more than that they used to march, until the forces reached the banks of the Biāh, and passed over that river, and he conducted them to the banks of the river Rāwah [Rāwī] of Lohor<sup>8</sup>.

In this manner used he to show such-like determination on this expedition, and such lion-heartedness, and was wont to stimulate the Sultān and Malik to repel the infidel Mughals, until Monday, the 25th of the month of Sha'bān, 643 H, when intimation reached the royal camp that the army of infidel Mughals had raised the investment of the fortress of Ūchchah. The cause of it was, that, on reaching the vicinity of the river Biāh, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam appointed couriers, and directed so that they wrote letters from the sublime presence to the garrison of the fort of Ūchchah, and announced to them the approach of the royal standards, the vast numbers of the array and elephants, the host of cavalry with the army, and the courage of the soldiery in attendance at the august stirrup, and despatched them towards the fortress of Ūchchah. A division from the army was moved on in front, to act as a reconnoitring force and advance guard.

When the couriers reached the vicinity of Ūchchah, a few of these letters fell into the hands of the host of the accursed, and some reached the people of the fortress. On the drum of joy being beaten in the fort, and the subject of the letters, the advance of the victorious army, and approach of the royal standards, becoming manifest to the

<sup>7</sup> His object, in making the troops believe that the marches were much shorter than they were in reality, can be easily seen through, but compare ELLIOT, vol. II. page 363

<sup>8</sup> There is nothing in the text about "reaching Lahore:" it is the Rāwah [in some, Rāwī] of Lohor. See also page 726, and page 792

As the Biāh and Rāwī then flowed, before the Sutlej ran in its present bed, the Dīlī forces would have been in a position to threaten the Mughal line of retreat, as stated farther on, and would have marched down the Do-ābah and reached Ūchchah without having any other river to cross. See the note on the Lost River or Hakra, and the changes in the beds of the Panjāb rivers.

accursed Mangūtah, and the cavalry of the advance guard approaching the banks of the river Biāh of Lohor, near to the frontiers of the territory of Sind, fear and terror became manifest in the heart and spirit of the Mughal [leader], and the favour of the Creator became a helper<sup>6</sup> [of the Dihli army].

Trustworthy persons have related on this wise, that, when Mangūtah became aware of the advance of the army of Islām, and approach of the royal standards, and that the army moved towards the river Biāh, near the skirts of the mountains, and from thence, in the same manner, was marching along the banks of that river, he made inquiry of some persons<sup>7</sup> what might be the reason of the deviation of the army of Islām towards the skirts of the hills, because that was a longer route, while that by way of Sursuti and Marūṭ<sup>8</sup> was near. They replied that, on account of the number of islands on the banks of the river<sup>9</sup>, there might

<sup>6</sup> See under the reign of Sulṭān 'Alī-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, page 667.

<sup>7</sup> Not "prisoners" necessarily.

<sup>8</sup> Compare ELLIOT, vol. II. page 364, where Marūt is supposed to be intended for *Mirat*. It is the same place as mentioned at page 350 of the same volume, where the same error is made. See also page 688.

Marūt is a well known place. It is a small town with a bastioned wall, in the direct route from Dihli to Bahāwal-pūr and Uchchah, and to Bahāwal-pur and Multān. It is only about *five degrees* west of "*Mirat*," if that east of Dihli is referred to. Bahāwal-pūr is, comparatively, quite a modern town. The Mughals seem to have been pretty well acquainted with the geography of these parts.

<sup>9</sup> Sic in MSS. Long narrow banks of sand, probably extending in some places for several miles, and, sometimes, of some height, are doubtless meant here, such as are formed after the annual inundations, with water, sometimes of considerable depth, between. These would have caused great obstructions, and have taken much time to cross, and, therefore, the forces of Dihli kept farther north, and made their march a flank movement at the same time, which may have been the original intention. In what direction they went may be seen farther on.

The above passage, as rendered in ELLIOT, is quoted by the writer of an interesting article in one of the numbers of the Calcutta Review for 1874, entitled "THE LOST RIVER OF THE INDIAN DESERT," to prove his theory respecting it; but the passage in question is not correct in the Calcutta Printed Text, neither is it quite correctly rendered in the translation referred to. The word in the printed text which is supposed to mean "*islands*" [plural], namely *جزیر* is but part of the word *جزایر*—signifying *islands*, &c.; and, moreover, the writer in the Calcutta Review does not quote ELLIOT correctly. He says, "It is stated in the *Tabakāt-i-Nāsiri* that when Uchh was besieged by the Mughals in 643 H. (A.D. 1245) the army sent to its relief was unable to march by Sursuti and Marūt, in consequence of the drought on the banks

not be a road for the army of Islām. Mangūtah remarked: "This is a vast army: we have not the power to resist it: it is necessary to retire;" and fear overcame him and his army lest, if they remained longer, their line of retreat should be cut off<sup>4</sup>. Their army was formed into three divisions, and routed, they fled, and numerous captives, both Musalmān and Hindū, obtained their liberty [in consequence]. The instrument of that success was the vigour, the military talent, intrepidity, and zeal of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam<sup>5</sup>, for, had he not shown such lion-heartedness and heroism, such a success would not have resulted. Almighty God of His favour and beneficence have him in His keeping!

After such a success came to pass, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam represented that it was advisable that the royal forces should move towards the river Sūdharah, in order that their strength, their number, valour, and energy might be established in the hearts and minds of the enemy, and, according to that counsel, the army marched to the banks of the

*of the river*" Neither is *drought* nor *inability* to march mentioned in our author's text, and, even in the passage in ELLIOT, there is not a word about drought.

The lower part of the course of the present Ghārah, which formed, or close to which lay, at the period in question, the bed of the Biāh, before they flowed in the same channel, had low banks of soft alluvial earth which were overflowed to the extent of several miles on occasion of the slightest swell.

I shall probably have to refer to this article on the "LOST RIVER" again when I come to the account of the investment of Uchchah in the next Section. The mention of this lost river is by no means new—a great deal respecting it is contained in a geographical work in Persian, written in the last century from a personal survey, and to which excellent work I have often referred in these notes.

<sup>4</sup> Compare this passage in ELLIOT.

<sup>5</sup> Our author had forgotten, probably, that he had just before attributed this favourable upshot of the affair to Divine aid, and forgets to mention, here, the wide spread disaffection, at this very time, in 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh's army. See page 668.

I think it is rather doubtful, from our author's own words, in his previous accounts of this reign, whether Ulugh Khān possessed such power at this time. As Amīr-i-Hājib, no doubt it was very considerable, but there were a great number of powerful Malikhs living at this period, who brought about the enthronement of 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, and set up his uncle, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh. Our author does not mention Ulugh Khān's having had anything in particular to do with that matter, and would scarcely have omitted to mention it, had he been the instrument of the latter's accession to the throne.

river Sūdharah<sup>6</sup>, until, on the 27th of the month of Shawwāl, 643 H., the army set out from the banks of the Sūdharah on its return to the capital, Dihlī, which was reached on Monday, the 12th of the month of Zī-Ḥijjah, of the same year.

During this short time, the disposition of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, received a change towards the Maliks; and, for the greater part of that [time] that he was wont to be invisible to the army, malignity had become established in his mind. The whole of the Maliks, in league together, wrote secretly and surreptitiously, and tendered their allegiance to Sultān 'Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, and besought him to put his august standards in motion [towards the capital], for the purpose of assuming the sovereignty. On Sunday, the 23rd of the month of Muharram<sup>7</sup>, 644 H., he reached the capital accordingly, and ascended the throne of sovereignty—May he be preserved for many years<sup>1</sup>

Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam<sup>2</sup> represented [to the new Sultān] "Since the Khuṭbah and coin of the kingdom are adorned with the august Nāsirī name, and, in the past year, the army of the accursed [Mughals], having fled before the forces of Islām, are gone towards the upper country, it may be advisable that the royal forces should march towards the upper [parts]<sup>3</sup>." In accordance with this expedient counsel<sup>4</sup>, the expedition to the upper parts was determined upon; and, on Monday, the 1st of the month of Rajab, 644 H., the sublime standards moved out of the capital, and Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, in using celerity and getting over the stages, continued to strive,<sup>5</sup> until the banks of the river Sūdharah were reached. Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam,

<sup>6</sup> This movement is not mentioned at all under the reign. See page 668, and page 678, and note <sup>1</sup>. Our author seems to have confused his statements here.

<sup>7</sup> That is, who became Sultān subsequently. He was simply Malik Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, at this time.

<sup>8</sup> The same day on which 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, was seized and imprisoned.

<sup>9</sup> What office Ulugh Khān held, after the accession of the new Sultān, is not mentioned, but we may assume that he was confirmed in his former office of Amīr-i-Ḥāyib.

<sup>1</sup> Compare ELLIOT here.

<sup>2</sup> The R. A. S. MS is defective from this word, to the words "sacred knot," page 820.

<sup>3</sup> The Calcutta Printed Text is defective here.

with the Malik<sup>4</sup> and Amīrs of Islām [with their contingents], separated from the army on an expedition to the Jūd Hills in order to wreak vengeance on the Rānah of those Hills, who, in the previous year, had acted as guide to the Mughal army<sup>5</sup>.

With that object they pushed onwards, and the Jūd Hills and parts adjacent to the river Jīlam<sup>6</sup> [Jhilam] they assailed; and the army of Islām carried its incursions, and ravaged [the country], as far as the banks of the river Sind, and despoiled Jas-Pāl, Sīhrā [or Schrā], and the whole of his tribes<sup>7</sup>. The Musalmān force was taken over the river Jīlam [Jhilam], and carried its ravages as far as the banks of the river Sind, in such wise, that all women, families, and dependents of the infidels who were in those parts, took to flight, and a body [of men] from the army of the infidel Mughals came to<sup>8</sup> the ferries of the Jīlam [Jhilam], and beheld the lines of the Musalmān troops serving under Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, and fear fell upon their hearts, at the number of troops composing his army, the number of cavalry in defensive armour, and the abundance of arms, and war material, and they wondered greatly, and great terror took possession of that gathering. That vigour, military organization, and overthrowing of enemies, in the assault of mountain heights, the gorges of mountain passes, and of ravines, the capturing of strong places and forts<sup>9</sup>, and penetrating of forests, which Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam displayed, cannot be contained within the area of recital, and the fame of that holy warfare extended as far as the land of Turkistān.

In this tract<sup>1</sup>, as there were neither fields nor tillage, supplies were not to be obtained, and, of necessity, Ulugh

<sup>4</sup> Malik and Amīrs are not necessarily "generals".

<sup>5</sup> This plainly indicates that the Mughals came through the Sind-Sāgar Doālah, and accounts for the flank march of Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh's army.

<sup>6</sup> Around Nandanah, and the territory of the Khokhar tribe. See under the reign, page 678.

<sup>7</sup> Many copies of the text are defective here.

<sup>8</sup> Compare EIGHT also. The Mughals would have scarcely "crossed over the Jīlam" [Jhilam?] the same side as the Dīhlī army was, when they were so terrified at Ulugh Khān's host, unless they wished to become captives.

<sup>9</sup> What a pity that our author did not deem it necessary to name some of them!

<sup>1</sup> Beyond the Jhilam

**Khān-i-A'zam** was compelled to return again. When he presented himself in the presence of the Court, victorious, triumphant, and safe, with the whole of the troops, and the Amīrs and Maliks who were along with him, the sublime standards moved<sup>3</sup> to return again towards the illustrious capital, Dihlī, on Thursday, the 25th of the month of Zī-Ḳa'dah, 644 H. On Thursday, the 2nd of the month of Muḥarram, 645 H., the capital was reached.

Since, through the firmness of counsel, and the justness of determination of **Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam**, the army of Turkistān and Mughal had beheld those exploits and that military organization, during this year, 645 H., not a single man, from the parts above<sup>4</sup>, came towards the territory of Sind. Therefore, in the month of **Shā'bān** of this same year, **Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam** represented for the sublime consideration, "it is advisable, that, during this year, the sublime standards should be put in motion for the purpose of ravaging and carrying on holy war in the extreme parts of the territory of Hindūstān<sup>5</sup>, in order that the independent [Hindū] tribes, and Rāes and Rānahs, who, during the last few years, have not been punished, may receive a thorough chastisement that booty may fall into the hands of the troops of Islām, and means to repel the infidel Mughals, in the shape of wealth, may be amassed."

In accordance with that prudent counsel, the august standards were put in motion towards Hindūstān, and moved down the middle of the Do-ābah of the Gang and Jūn; and, after much fighting with the infidels, the army gained possession of the fort of Talsandah<sup>6</sup>. **Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam**,

<sup>3</sup> The Sultān remained with his camp, and a great portion of his forces, on the banks of the Sūḍharah or Chināb during this raid to the Sind or Indus.

<sup>4</sup> That is from the Sind-Sāgar Do-ābah, and west of the Indus. It seems that the Mughals, previous to this, made almost yearly raids upon the border tracts of Sind and Multān.

<sup>5</sup> In the Antarbed Do-āb, E. of Dihlī, and in Awāh.

<sup>6</sup> The word Nandanah, contained in the Calcutta Printed Text only, is totally incorrect. *Nandanah* is in the Sind-Sāgar Do-ābah. The correct word is given in a foot-note in the Printed Text, but, in E111071, the former is copied. See foot-note of page 347 to that work also.

At page 679, under the events of the year 645 H., it is stated to have been situated within the limits of Kinnauj. See note <sup>1</sup> to that page.

The word is plainly written, in the three best copies of the text, and in two others **تالسانده** and the only variation, in other good copies is **تالسانده**.

with others of the Malikis of Islām, and troops, were despatched to coerce Dalakī of Malakī, and he was a Rānah in the vicinity of the river Jūn, which is between Kālinjar and Karah, whom the Rāes of the parts around Kālinjar and Mālwah<sup>6</sup> used not to be able to gain superiority over, on account of the number of his dependents and followers, the immensity of his wealth, the difficulty of the routes, the stability of position, the strength of the narrow, winding, defiles, the denseness of numerous forests, and strong mountains, places, which had never, at any time, been reached by Musalmān troops.<sup>7</sup>

When Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam reached the locality where that Rānah had taken up his position, and the place of his abode, he displayed so much perseverance in his own defence, and the defence of his family and children, that, from the time of early morning until the period of evening prayer, he remained; and, when night came, he repeated the invocation of flight, and removed from that place to [other] strong positions<sup>8</sup>. When the day broke, the troops of Islām entered that place and dwelling of his, and [afterwards] pursued him. That accursed one had ascended the high mountains, and had withdrawn to a place, to enter the narrow defiles of which was impossible without the greatest contrivance, and the aid of ropes and ladders<sup>9</sup>. Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam stimulated the Musalmān troops to holy warfare, and, animated by his entreaties, commands, and gestures, they took the place<sup>1</sup>. They captured the whole of the Rānah's family, kinsmen, and children, together with cattle, and horses, and captives, in great number; and such an amount of booty fell into the hands of the troops of Islām that the conception of the arithmetician would be helpless in recounting it.

<sup>6</sup> The Rāes of Kālinjar and Mālwah are not referred to. The text has, as rendered above — رايان اطراف لاهور و مالود.

<sup>7</sup> This shows the fallacy of reading "Chin" instead of Ujjain, referred to in note <sup>5</sup>, page 517, when the Sultāns of Dillī, half a century subsequent to the period there mentioned, had not subdued the Hindū rulers of these parts so near their very capital.

<sup>8</sup> Compare ELLIOT here, page 366—367, vol. ii.

<sup>9</sup> Here the hill tracts extending to the left bank of the Son are evidently referred to.

<sup>1</sup> Our author appears not to have known the name of the place in question.

On the last day<sup>2</sup> of the month of *Shawwāl*, 645 H., *Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam*, with vast booty, rejoined the *Sultān's* camp [at *Karah*]; and, after the festival of the *Aẓhā*, the sublime standards moved forward to return to the capital<sup>3</sup>. An account of the whole of that expedition and holy warfare is composed [by the author] in verse, in a separate book, and that book has been named the *NĀSIRI NĀMAH*. On the 24th of the month of *Muharram*, 646 H., the capital was reached.

Subsequently, in the month of *Shahbān*, 646 H., the royal standards moved towards the upper provinces as far as the extreme confines, and the bank of the river *Biāh*, and from thence returned again to the capital.

*Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam*, along with other *Maliks* under his orders, with numerous forces, was appointed to proceed towards *Rantabhūr*<sup>4</sup>, and to ravage the *Koh-payah* of *Mewāt*, and the territory of *Nāhar Dīw*<sup>5</sup>, who was greatest of all the *Rāes* of *Hindūstān*. The whole country, and the

<sup>2</sup> The word used is *ع*—which does not signify “beginning,” but the contrary.

<sup>3</sup> There is considerable discrepancy here. Under the events of this year at page 681, it is said that *Karah* was reached, by the *Sultān*, on the 12th of *Zi-Ka'dah*—the *Īd-i-Aẓhā* is on the 10th—and that, *thirty days* previous to that date, *Ulugh Khān*, and other great *Maliks* associated with him, had been despatched on this expedition.

<sup>4</sup> On the march back from *Karah*, *Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn*, *Mas'ūd Shāh*, the *Sultān's* brother, who held the fief of *Kinnau*, prevented himself to the *Sultān*, and the fiefs of *Sanbhal* and *Budā'ūn* were assigned him. The prince, soon after, for some reason or other, became frightened or disaffected, and fled to *Lāhor*, abandoning his fiefs. I shall have more to say, respecting this mysterious matter, in the next Section. The march to the *Biāh*, mentioned a few lines under, was evidently connected with his flight in some way, but, strange to say, under the reign it is not mentioned, and an expedition “against the infidels of the hills and plains” is stated to have been undertaken in that month and year, and the despatch of forces towards *Rantabhūr* is afterwards mentioned. See page 684, and page 793, and note <sup>4</sup>. See also where *Sher Khān-i-Sunkar* is mentioned as having joined *Jalāl-ud-Dīn*, *Mas'ūd Shāh*, at page 793, and note <sup>7</sup>.

<sup>5</sup> This stronghold had been taken by *I-yal timish* in 623 H., but, after his death, the *Hindūs* had closely invested it; and, in *Razviyyat's* reign, the garrison was withdrawn, and the fort destroyed. See page 642.

<sup>6</sup> The *Calcutta Printed Text* refers its readers to page 681—as if this chief were one and the same with *Chāhar*, the *Ajār*, mentioned at page 691, which see. *Thomas [PATHAN KINGS OF DEHLI, page 125]* also falls into the same error. *Ulugh Khān* did not make war upon *Chāhar*, the *Ajār*, *twice*, but once. This *Nāhar Dīw* is a different person altogether. See pages 824 and 828, farther on.



confines of that territory were ravaged, and a large amount of booty was acquired, and, at the foot of the fort of Rantabhūr, on Sunday, the 11th<sup>7</sup> of the month of Zi-Hijjah, 646 H., Malik Bahā-ud-Dīn, I-bak, the Khawājah, attained martyrdom. Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam was engaged [at this time] in holy warfare on another side of the fortress, and his dependents were [also] occupied in battle and holy warfare, and despatched numbers of the infidels to hell. Immense booty, and invaluable property was acquired, and the Musalmān troops were made rich with plunder, and returned to the sublime presence.

In this year, the royal mind evinced a desire to enter into a matrimonial alliance with the family of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam<sup>8</sup>, who, every year, in leading the forces, and efforts in the service of the sublime Court, continued to display praiseworthy proofs, to such degree that no monarch has ever had a servant who, having attained the dignity of Khān and Malik, possessed a greater soul or more august temperament than Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, of honour greater, of counsel more prudent, in leading armies more intrepid, in overthrowing foes more victorious, more worthy of being dignified with the honour of a matrimonial alliance with His Majesty, the Sultān-ul-A'zam, NĀ'IR-UD-DUNYĀ WA UD-DIN, ABŪ-L-MUZAFFAR-I-MAHMOD SHĀH—whose dominion and sovereignty may God long continue!—and, by virtue of that alliance, labours for the glory of the kingdom, and the destruction of enemies in adjacent parts were likely to be increased.

Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, with due reverence and submission to command, complied, and repeated the saying: "The slave and what he possesses is the property of his master," and that union became completed by the sacred

<sup>7</sup> In a few copies, the 15th, but, under the reign, the 11th of the month is also mentioned.

<sup>8</sup> Mr. Dowson, who translates the account of Ulugh Khān in ELLIOT, renders this passage thus: "*In the course of this year his majesty was pleased to recognise the great ability of his general. He therefore promoted him from the rank of Malik, &c.,*" and adds in a foot-note, "Many lines of eulogy are here compressed into this short but adequate statement." This *adequate and compressed* statement, as may be seen, leaves out all about the marriage of the Sultān to Ulugh Khān's daughter, in fact, both the following paragraphs given above. See also page 665 and note <sup>4</sup>

knot, on Monday, the 30th of the month of Rabi'ul-Akhir, 647 H., and the verse, "He hath let loose the two seas which meet together . . . Out of them come forth pearls and coral<sup>1</sup>," was made manifest. May the Most High God, during the lifetime of the Sultān-i-A'zam, and high position of Ulugh Khān-i-Mu'azzam<sup>2</sup>, continue those[?] Princes, in the Shamsi dominion and sovereignty, life-heirs of the whole of the monarchs<sup>3</sup>, for the sake of Muḥammad and the whole of his house!

After such a propitious event happened, which must have been the result of the felicitous conjunction of the stars, the status of Ulugh Khān was raised, from the rank of Malik and Amīr-i-Hājib, to the dignity and eminent position of Khān, and on Tuesday, the 3rd of the month of Rajab, 647 H., [a mandate] issued from the sublime Court, conferring the Deputy-ship of the kingdom and leadership of the forces, with the title and name of Ulugh Khān<sup>4</sup> [the Great Lord], upon that incomparable individual of august disposition, and, in truth, one might say, "titles come down from Heaven," for, from that day forward, the Nāsirī rule acquired additional freshness from the zealous services, and heroism, of Ulugh Khān.

On the title of Ulugh Khān being conferred upon him, his brother, who was Amīr-i-Akḥur—that beneficent and humane Malik, of pure morals and excellent disposition—Saif-ul-Ḥakk wa ud-Dīn, Kashlī Khān-i-, I-bak-us-Sultānī—on whom be peace!—became Amīr-i-Hājib, and Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Tez-Khān, at that time, became Deputy Amīr-i-Hājib, and the Malik-ul-Ḥujjāb<sup>4</sup> [Head of the Chamberlains], 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Ayāz, the Zinjānī, became the Deputy Wakil-i-Dar [Representative in Dar-bār], who

<sup>1</sup> KUR'ĀN Chap. LV verses 19—22. Sale's translation is somewhat different — "He hath let loose the two seas that they meet each another . . . From them are taken forth unions and lesser pearls."

<sup>2</sup> He makes a distinction here, and Ulugh Khān, who, upon other occasions, gets the title of A'zam, receives the *lesser* title.

<sup>3</sup> Such is the original, but it would seem more natural that during the lifetime and eminence of Ulugh Khān an heir might be born to the Sultān, and the Shamsi line be perpetuated.

<sup>4</sup> Up to this date his correct title was Malik Ghivās-ud-Dīn, Balban, only. This our author means, although he styles him by the title he held when this work was written.

<sup>5</sup> Ḥujjāb is the plural of Hājib, and, therefore, there must have been

is my son<sup>6</sup> and the light of my eyes, and adorned with all laudable qualifications, of whom no stronger encomium is needed than that of his loyalty to Ulugh Khān's service, and may such augment! The assignment of these appointments took place on Friday, the 6th of the month of Rajab, 647 H., and the Deputy Amīr-i-Ākhur, Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Aet-kin, the Long-haired, became Amīr-i-Ākhur.

Subsequently, on Monday, the 9th of the month of Sha'bān, 647 H., he [Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam] moved from the capital [with the troops] for the purpose of [undertaking] an expedition against the infidels, and, at the ford of the river Jūn, the camp was pitched, and they engaged in holy warfare and hostilities against the infidels, the independent [Hindū] tribes<sup>7</sup> around, when<sup>7</sup> intelligence reached this author, from Khurāsān, from his sister, and her lonesomeness affected his heart much. He proceeded to the camp and waited upon Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, and laid the matter before him, who gave him such support and showed so much kindness as cannot be recounted, and conferred a dress of honour upon this his devoted servant, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, presented him with a bay horse saddled and bridled, a great roll of gold brocade cloth, and the grant of a village producing about thirty thousand *jittals*; and, up to this present date, that grant comes to this sincere votary every year. May Almighty God make this the cause of the augmentation of Ulugh Khān's dignity and power, and make him victorious and triumphant over the enemies

some difference between the Amīr-i-Hājib—Lord Chamberlain—and the Malik-ul-Hujjāb—Head or Chief of the Chamberlains, or janitors. Such an officer has never before been mentioned in this work.

<sup>6</sup> He may have been our author's son in law, adopted son, or a favourite disciple so styled. He would not be styled the Zinjānī—native of Zinjān—had he been his son in reality. Jurjānī would have been given him here if he were. In one of the best copies of the text he is styled Ī-bak.

<sup>7</sup> Under the reign, our author says "Hindūs" merely. The troops moved from Dihlī on the 22nd of Shawwāl, the Jūn was crossed, and the camp pitched on the *left* bank, on Sunday, the 4th of Sha'bān. The infidels must have been very close at hand for the troops to be able to undertake operations against them immediately they crossed the Jūn.

<sup>7</sup> All from this place, to the end of this and the two following paragraphs, is left out entirely in ELLIOT [vol. II. page 368] as "*matters personal of the author*," and page 350 is referred to, where the forty captives are turned into "*a hundred beasts of burden*," &c., noticed at page 686, note 7.

of the faith ! Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam represented the situation of this servant of the state, and his anxieties, to His Majesty ; and, on Sunday, the 2nd of the month of Zī-Ka'dah, 647 H., a command was issued from the sublime Court for forty chains of captives<sup>\*</sup>, and a hundred ass-loads of presents to be transmitted to the sister of the author into Khurāsān—May the Most High God continue the Nāsiri dynasty and dominion until the conclusion of time's revolution, for bestowing so many benefits !

On Monday, the 29th of the month of Zī-Ka'dāh, of this same year, the author proceeded on a journey from the capital to Multān<sup>†</sup> for the purpose of despatching the gifts to Khurāsān. On the road, on reaching every town, city, or fort, held by the dependents and servants of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, the servants of that household showed the author so much reverence and honour that the eye of sense would be fatigued in recording it—may God accept them all for it ! On Wednesday, the 6th<sup>‡</sup> of the month of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 648 H., Multān was reached, and the author proceeded as far as the bank of the river Jilam [Jhilam]<sup>§</sup>. After having despatched those captives and loads to Khurāsān, for a period of two months the author

\* The Printed Text here, as well as in the former instance, has "forty *chains* of captives," but the editors seem astonished at it, from the note of interrogation added, and, in a foot-note, they put a piece upon it, by making them "forty *chain* of elephants loaded with captives [as contained in one copy of the text] and several ass-loads."

There are certain technical and idiomatic words applied to men and animals, and other things, in use in the *East*, which the mere tyro in Oriental languages is expected to be acquainted with, and such a term our author has applied to these captives, at page 686, where the term *nafar*—person—which is applied only to human beings, is used, *zanjur*—chain—is applied to elephants generally, but, here, is not quite incorrect, as the captives were, no doubt, secured by chains, and *rā*—head—to oxen and horses, &c., just as we apply *cocky* to partridges, *shoal* to fish, *swarm* to bees, *litter* to puppies and pigs, and so on, but I never heard of زنجیر فیء برداک—*zanjur fil-i-bardak*—before, nor do I think any one ever did.

† Our author's object in going to Multān for this purpose arose evidently from the fact that Lāhor and the upper parts of the Panjāb were in the hands of the Mughals and Khokhars, and he had to send the captives by one of the other, and more southern routes into Khurāsān.

‡ At page 688 also, our author says he reached Multān on the 6th, *the same day* on which Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashmī Khān, reached it, but, at page 782, he says that Malik reached Multān on the 2nd of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, and that he arrived himself two days subsequently.

§ According to the theory advanced in the article on the "Lost River,"

happened to stay in the army of Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, at the foot of the walls of the fortress of Multān, for the air was still exceeding hot. When the rainy season set in, and the rains of compassion fell<sup>1</sup>, on the 26th of the month of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, the author set out on his return from Multān, and, on the 22nd of the month of Jamādī-ul-Ākhir, reached the capital again.

At this period the Kāzī-ul-Quzāt [Kāzī of Kāzīs], Jalāl-ud-Dīn, the Kāsānī—on whom be peace and pardon!—was Kāzī of the realm of Hindūstān; and, when the term of the days of that unique one of his age came to conclusion, great countenance and favour was shown by Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam towards this devoted suppliant, and his invaluable support was the means of this servant of his power being entrusted anew with the office of the Kāzī-ship of the kingdom, and he [Ulugh Khān] submitted it for the sublime consideration. On Sunday, the 10th of the month of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, 649 H.<sup>2</sup> for the second time, the Kāzī-ship of the realm was consigned to the author—May Almighty God, continual and enduring preserve the Sultān of Sultāns, Nāsir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Muzaffar-i-Mahmūd Shāh, upon the throne of sovereignty, and Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, in the royal audience hall of power<sup>3</sup>!

previously referred to respecting the Sutlej, as no river is here mentioned by our author between Dihlī and the Jhilam, all the others must have left their beds or become dried up.

<sup>1</sup> It would appear, from the above remark, that a great change has taken place since this period, for the effects of the monsoon do not now extend to Multān, and, while further east they are enjoying the coolness of the rainy season, at Multān and parts adjacent, and in Sind, the heat is at its height. I have known rain fall for a few hours at a time now and then in August, and some good showers, towards the close of the monsoon, in September, but the heat is not much lessened, except for a short time after rain, until about the close of the latter month.

The date on which our author left Multān to return to Dihlī was about the end of June, the hottest part of the hot season in these days, a fearful time to have to cross the Indian desert. The fact of our author setting out from Multān, and proceeding to Dihlī by way of Abūhur [page 687], is a pretty conclusive proof that, at the period in question, the now Lost River must have fertilized those parts.

<sup>2</sup> See under Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd Shāh's reign, sixth year, for other events of this period.

<sup>3</sup> Here end the "matters personal of the author" referred to in the previous note<sup>7</sup>, page 821.

On Tuesday, the 25th of the month of Shā'bān, 649 H., the sublime standards<sup>6</sup> moved towards the territory of Mālwah and Kālinjar<sup>7</sup>. When Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, with the troops of Islām, arrived in those parts, he overthrew Chāhar, Ajārī<sup>8</sup>, who was a great Rānah, with a numerous following, and a multitude of dependents and people, and who possessed ample resources of horses and arms, and rooted him out from his country. This Rānah of [?] Ajārī, who was named Chāhar, was a great man, impetuous, and experienced; and has been previously mentioned. In the reign of the august Sultān, Shams-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn—on whom be peace!—[namely] in the year 632 H., the troops of Islām from Bhānāh, Sultān-koṭ, Qinnauj, Mahir, Mahāwan, and Gwāliyūr, were despatched for the purpose of ravaging the territory of Kālinjar and Jamū<sup>9</sup>, the leader of which forces was Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn, Tā-yas'ī, the Mu'izzī, who for manhood, competency, judgment, vigour, military talents, and expertness, has been distinguished above all his compeers, the Maliks of that time. For a period of fifty days<sup>1</sup>, they proceeded on that expedition, from Gwāliyūr, and vast booty was acquired, to such degree that, for this short

<sup>6</sup> It appears that, from the time Ulugh Khān was raised to the dignity of Deputy or Lieutenant of the realm, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd Shāh, very seldom accompanied his armies as before, but left all to Ulugh Khān's energy.

<sup>7</sup> Under the reign, page 690, it is stated that the troops moved towards Gwāliyūr, Chandīrī, Nurwul, and Mālwah.

<sup>8</sup> Here also, in all the copies of the text collated, the words are چار اجاری and چار اجاری—which, from the mode in which they are written, mean, that Chāhar was his name, and Ajārī [Achārya <sup>9</sup>] the name of his caste or title, but, three lines under, he is styled رده اجاری—which, if the *kamsāh* [·] is correct, can only be read, from the original, as above, thus tending to show that our author considered the word اجاری—Ajārī—to be the name of his territory, for, immediately after, he says *his name was Chāhar*. In the account of Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn, Tā-yas'ī, page 733, the Rāe of Kālinjar is mentioned *as well as* Rānah Chāhar, and there the latter is called Rānah of Ajār. See also page 691. The Mir'ā-i-Jahān-Numā has what may be read either Māhar, Bāhar, or Nāhar Diw, but it must refer to the Rāe of Rantabdhūr mentioned at page 818, which see.

<sup>9</sup> This name does not occur in two copies of the text, and there is great probability that the word چمو—Jamū—is an error for دمو—Damow or Damū, a place giving name to a parganah, about 46 miles E. of Saugor [Sāgar], in Lat. 22° 50', Long. 79° 30'. The first word might easily be written by mistake, for the latter, and there would be no error in the direction.

<sup>1</sup> There is not a word in the text about marching "on fifty days from Gwalior," as in ELLIOT.

period, the Sultān's share of a fifth amounted to nearly twenty-two *laks*<sup>1</sup>. In short, at the time of returning from Kālinjar, the passage of the army of Islām lay [through the territory of] this Rānah of Ajārī, and that Rānah had seized the route of the Musalmān forces in the narrow ravines leading from the [banks of the] river Gārānah [or Kārānah].

The author of this book heard from the mouth of Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn, Tā-yas'ī, himself, [who said]:—"Never, in Hindūstān, did a foe see my back, [but] that Hindūak [Hindū fellow] of Ajārī made an attack upon me in such wise that you might say it was a wolf falling upon a flock of sheep. It was necessary to turn aside before him, until I emerged from another direction, attacked, and routed him<sup>2</sup>." This anecdote has been related in order that readers [of these pages] may understand to what degree was the genius and success of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, that, with one onslaught, he overthrew and routed such an enemy, and wrested out of his possession the fort of Nurwul<sup>3</sup>, which is a famous stronghold, and, on that expedition and inroad, he displayed such sagacity and promptitude, and performed such exploits [against the infidels], as will remain a record on the face of time.

On Monday, the 23rd of the month of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 650 H., the sublime standards returned to Dihlī again, and, for a period of six months, the troops continued at the capital of the empire, the city of Dihlī, until Monday, the 12th<sup>4</sup> of the month of Shawwāl, when the sublime standards moved towards the upper provinces<sup>5</sup> and the river Biāh; and, at this period, Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, was feudatory of Budā'ūn, and Malik Kutlugh Khān feudatory of Bhīānah, and both Malikhs were requested by

<sup>1</sup> At page 733, the sum is 25 *laks*.

<sup>2</sup> He was coming up from the river, not going down towards it from the statement above. This does not agree with the details given in the account of Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn, Tā-yas'ī, at page 773, in fact, rather tends to contradict them. Compare ELLIOT, vol. II page 369.

<sup>3</sup> See page 690. Nurwul and Nurwur are one and the same thing.

<sup>4</sup> At page 692, seven months, until the 22nd of Shawwāl. One of the oldest copies has *Shā'bān*.

<sup>5</sup> Towards Lohor, with the intention of marching to Uchchah and Multān, but the Biāh was the farthest point reached. See pages 692, and 767, and page 783, and note<sup>2</sup>.

His Majesty [to attend him]. Both these Maliks, with the whole of the other Maliks, were present in attendance during this expedition, at the audience tent of majesty.

When the sublime standards reached the districts on the river Biāh, 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān secretly plotted with the Maliks, and began to excite them all greatly to envy of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam's power, and malicious eyes were beginning to regard his brilliant position with repugnance, and they conspired whether, in some hunting-ground, or the defiles of some passes, or in crossing some river, they might not injure or afflict the sacred person and august body of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam: "They endeavour to extinguish the light of God with [the breath of] their mouths, but God rejects aught but the perfection of His light<sup>7</sup>," continued to shield the Ulugh Khān's good fortune with His own protection, and gave no opportunity to his enemies to injure his gentle nature and noble person. Since that which was conceived in the hearts of that faction was not easily carried out, they concerted together, and, assembling before the entrance of the royal tent, represented for the regal consideration, that it was advisable that a mandate should be conveyed to Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam that he should proceed towards his own sief<sup>8</sup>, and to this effect<sup>9</sup> they caused a mandate to be conveyed to him; and, from the halting-place of Hasīrah<sup>1</sup>, on Tuesday, the last day<sup>2</sup> of the month of Muḥarram, 651 H., Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, with his retinue and family and dependents, departed towards Hānsi<sup>3</sup>

<sup>7</sup> KUR'ĀN, chap. ix. verse 32

<sup>8</sup> Not "estates," but a province

<sup>9</sup> Compare ELLIOT here. There is nothing in the text about "indirectly" or about being "brought about in a left-handed way." The Printed Text has الاجرة the left wing of an army—instead of the name of a halting place

<sup>1</sup> The name of this place is extremely doubtful, and there is no knowing exactly where to look for it, as we do not know from what part they were returning. The following are the different ways in which it is written, as near as types will permit الاجرة and الاجرة. One copy—a very modern one, and the Calcutta Printed Text have الاجرة which means the left wing of an army, left side, &c., which in ELLIOT, as said above, has been turned into "brought about in a left-handed way," but the words "halting place" along with it show that it is intended for the name of a place of some sort. See also under the reign, page 693, and note <sup>7</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Under the reign الاجرة first of the month here الاجرة—last day.

<sup>3</sup> The name of this place is derived from the tribe named Hāns.



When the sublime standards returned again to the capital<sup>4</sup>, and the prickings of the thorn of envy towards Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam were afflicting the darkness-filled heart of 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān, he, consequently, represented for the royal consideration: "It may be advisable that a command should be issued to Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam to proceed to Nāg-awr, and that the Hānsī territory should be given in charge to one of the Princes of the Universe" — May God long preserve their lives! In conformity with that counsel the sublime standards moved in the direction of Hānsī in order that Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam should depart to Nāg-awr<sup>5</sup>; and this undertaking was entered upon in the month of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, 651 H.

On reaching Hānsī<sup>6</sup>, 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān became Wakīl-i-Dar [Representative in Dar-bār], and he took into his own hands the direction of affairs within the hall of the pavilion of majesty<sup>7</sup>, and, according to the promptings of that envy and malevolence, the office of Kāzī of the kingdom was taken from this servant of the state, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, in the month of Rajab of the before-mentioned year, and was committed to Kāzī Shams-ud-Dīn, the Bharā'ijī; and, on the 17th [27th?] of the month of Shawwāl, [the Sultān and his forces] returned to the capital. Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak-i-Kashlī Khān,—on whom be peace!—who was the brother of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, the Amīr-i-Hājib<sup>8</sup>, they sent to the fief of Karah, and the office of Deputy Amīr-i-Hājib was consigned to Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn-i-Balban<sup>9</sup>, the son-in-law of Kutlugh Khān. Every one holding an office or employment which

<sup>4</sup> In the month of Rabi'ul-Awwal

<sup>5</sup> This, in other words, was to oust him from the fief of Hānsī and confine him to that of Nāg-awr. See note <sup>2</sup>, below.

<sup>6</sup> Differently stated under the reign, page 694, which see. There it is stated that he became Wakīl-i-Dar, *after* returning to the capital.

<sup>7</sup> The words سرایى كاهل are rendered, in ELLIOT, page 370, "the royal orders," but, at page 369, the same words are rendered "the royal abode."

<sup>8</sup> At page 695 our author says Prince Rukn-ud-Dīn [Fīrūz Shāh] was nominated to the office of Amīr-i-Hājib and the fief of Hānsī. See also note <sup>2</sup> to that page, and page 798.

<sup>9</sup> This does not refer to Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlī Khān, but to the person who, subsequently, in 657 H., became ruler of Lakhnawati—'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Yūs-Bakī. See page 770, and note <sup>2</sup> at page 775, para. 4.

appertained to Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam's patronage was removed and transferred; and the established affairs of a quiet kingdom were deranged by the pernicious counsel of 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān.

During the period that Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam had gone to Nāg-awr, he led the troops of Islām<sup>1</sup> towards the territory of Rantabhūr, Bhundī<sup>2</sup>, and Chitrūr. The Rāe of Rantabhūr, Nāhar Diw<sup>3</sup>, who is the greatest of the Rāes, and the most noble and illustrious of the Maliks of Hind, assembled an army in order that perchance he might be able to inflict a disaster upon Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam. Since the Most High and Holy God had willed that the renown of His Highness, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, for victory, triumph, and success, should endure upon the records of time, the whole of that army of Rāe Nāhar Diw, notwithstanding it was very numerous, well provided with arms, and elephants, with choice horses, and famous Rāwats<sup>4</sup>, he put to the rout, and the heroic men sent great numbers of the enemy to hell. Vast booty was captured, and horses and captives<sup>5</sup> beyond computation were taken. Safe and rich, under the protection of the Creator, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam returned again to the province of Nāg-awr, and that place, through his felicitous presence, became a large city.

When the new year of 652 H.<sup>6</sup> came round, a change took

<sup>1</sup> His own contingent of troops—the forces of his fief.

<sup>2</sup> Also spelt Bhūndī. The "official" Printed Text, by a great blunder, makes Hindī of this well-known place, and, in ELLIOT, of course, it is the same.

<sup>3</sup> This was the second time Ulugh Khān had encountered him. In some copies here, as well as in a previous place, we have نام—Bāhur or Bāhar, but in others نام—Nāhar, and in some نام—Nāhīr Diw. Nāhar is a Rājput name.

According to Tod, the state and city of *Boonder*, as he calls it, was only founded in the year [S. ?] 1342—A. D. 1286, and yet this, our author's work, was finished in A. D. 1259!

<sup>4</sup> Champions, heroes, in the vernacular.

<sup>5</sup> Compare ELLIOT, vol. II page 371. The same word for captive *bardah*—is used here, as at page 350 of that work, and yet it is there declared that "It can hardly bear this meaning," and so it is turned into "*beast of burden*," from the verb *burdan*, to carry!! See also at the end of this account of Ulugh Khān.

<sup>6</sup> See under the reign, ninth year, pages 196-7, for an account of the expedition into the Do-ābah and Kāthehr. The events recorded in the reign and this account of Ulugh Khān together form a chronicle of the reign, but one

place in the condition of the number of oppressed, who, by the hand of tyranny, and through removal from office, occasioned by the absence of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, had remained<sup>7</sup> in a place of seclusion like unto fish without water and the sick without sleep, from night to day, and, day to night, continued to beseech the Holy Creator, that the morn of the Ulugh Khānī prosperity might raise its face from the east of power, and the darkness of the Rayhānī tyranny might be changed to the sun-light of the Ulugh Khānī administration<sup>8</sup>. The Most High God was graciously pleased to grant the prayers of the afflicted, and the appeals of the distressed, and was pleased to cause the victorious standards of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam to be given to the wind from the preserved city of Nāg-awr, towards, and with the design of proceeding to, the capital.

The reason was this, that the Malik and servants of the Sultān's Court were all Turks of pure lineage, and Tājziks of noble birth, and 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān, [who] was castrated and mutilated, and of the tribes of Hind<sup>9</sup>, was ruling over the heads of lords of high descent, and the whole of them were loathing that state, and were unable any longer to suffer that degradation<sup>1</sup>. The case of this frail individual was on this wise, that, for a period of six months, or even longer, it was out of his power to leave his dwelling<sup>2</sup> and go to the Friday's prayers, for fear of the

is incomplete without the other, as often the events mentioned in one are left out in the other, or barely touched upon

<sup>7</sup> According to the version in ELLIOT, vol. II page 371, which see, it was only "*at the opening of the year*," that they "retired to their closets," and offered up their prayers "*like fish out of water* (sic), and sick men without slumber" !!—the Calcutta Printed Text, which is quite correct here has—  
در گوشه ماند بودند

<sup>8</sup> Our author, being one of those deprived of office, writes feelingly on this subject. The I. O. L. MS, No 1952, and R. A. S. MS. are both defective here, in the same place, to the extent of two or three pages.

<sup>9</sup> In fact, a Hindūstānī Muzalmān, one of a Hindū family previously converted to the Muḥammadan faith, or, possibly, a new convert.

Rayhān is a common proper name of men among the Muḥammadans of Egypt, and now commonly given to slaves, according to Lane, but the term Rayhānī means a Seller of Flowers, and, probably, this upstart's father followed such an occupation.

<sup>1</sup> This alone indicates what a Sultān it was—a mere puppet in the hands of the strongest party.

<sup>2</sup> In ELLIOT, instead of our author being obliged to stay at home for six months, as the printed text has, like other copies, all those, who "retired to

violence of a gang of villains who were patronized by 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān : so the condition of others, every one of whom consisted of Turks and conquering, ruling, and foe-breaking, Maliks, may well be conceived. How could they continue under this disgrace ?

In short, the Maliks of Hindūstān<sup>3</sup>, namely, from the territory of Kaṛah and Mānik-pūr, and Awadh and the district of Tirhut, as far as Budā'ūn, and from the side of Tabarhindah as far as Sunām, Kuhrām, and Sāmānah, and the whole of the Siwālikh [country], prayed Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam to return to the capital<sup>4</sup>. Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar, brought forth a body of troops from Tabarhindah, and Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Bat Khān-i-I-bak, the Khitā-ī, issued from Sunām and Maṣūr-pūr, and Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam assembled forces from Nāg-awr and the Siwālikh, and Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh<sup>5</sup>, son of Sulṭān Shams-ud-Dīn [I-yal-timish], from the side of Lohor joined them, and they turned their faces towards the environs of the capital.

'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān represented to the Sulṭān that the sublime standards should move out for the purpose of repelling his own servants, and they [the Sulṭān and his adviser] marched the forces from Dihlī towards Sunām, for that purpose<sup>6</sup>. Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, with the other Maliks, was in the neighbourhood of Tabarhindah ; and the author set out from the capital for the purpose of joining the royal camp, because it was impossible for him to remain in the city [of Dihlī] without the presence of the sublime Court<sup>7</sup>. On Monday, the 26th of the month of

their closets to pray like fish out of water," &c., are *all* made to suffer "from the hands of the bullies" of 'Imād-ud-Dīn, "so that for six months *they* could not leave *their* houses" ?

<sup>3</sup> This explains what he means by Hindūstān, and which I have previously alluded to.

<sup>4</sup> See under the reign, page 699. There it is said that these Maliks gathered about Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, the Sulṭān's brother, no, about Ulugh Khān, but that the latter, with others, joined the prince, who is there made the ringleader in this outbreak.

<sup>5</sup> See pages 683 and 699, and note <sup>4</sup>, page 818. More on this subject will be found in the last Section. Lāhor, at this time, was not under the sway of the ruler of Dihlī, apparently, and Jalāl-ud Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, is said to have gone to the Mughals.

<sup>6</sup> Compare ELLIOT here also.

<sup>7</sup> In ELLIOT, page 372, this is rendered : "The author of this book started

Ramaṣān, 652 H., the author reached the royal camp, and, on Lailat-ul-Ḳadr<sup>1</sup> [the night of Power], in the public apartment of the august Sulṭān's [pavilion], he offered up prayer.

On the second day [after the author's arrival], on Wednesday, the 28th of the before-named month, whilst on the march, both armies drew near towards each other, and the advance guards came in contact, and immense disorder arose among the Sulṭān's forces. The prayers appropriate to the 'Id-i-Fiṭr [the festival of Fast-breaking—1st of the month *Shawwāl*] were performed at Sunām. On Saturday, the 8th of the month of *Shawwāl*, the sublime standards made a retrograde movement towards Hānsī, and Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd *Shāh* [the Sulṭān's brother], and Ulugh *Khān-i-A'zam*, with the other illustrious Maliks, marched towards Kaithal<sup>2</sup>.

A number of Maliks and Amīrs on both sides [now] spoke about a mutual accommodation of affairs, and the Sipah-Sālār [leader of troops] *Qarah-Jamāk*<sup>3</sup>, one of the personal slaves of Ulugh *Khān-i-A'zam*, who was noted for manliness, arrived from his chief's camp, and the Amīr of the black standard, *Husām-ud-Dīn*, *Qutlugh Shāh*<sup>4</sup>, that Amīr of angelic attributes, of great sincerity, and excellent disposition, who was qualified above the other Amīrs of

from the capital for the royal camp, which was stationed [sic] in the city near the royal residence"! The Sulṭān and his party were, at this time, near Sunām.

<sup>1</sup> The 27th of the month of Ramaṣān—the fast month. This night is greatly revered, because on it the *Qur'ān*, according to the Musalmān belief, began to descend from heaven. On this night all orthodox Muḥammadans continue in fervent prayer, imagining that every petition then offered up to the Almighty will be favourably received. The occasion must have been pressing to cause active operations to be undertaken during the *fast* month.

<sup>2</sup> See under the reign, page 699. There these events are differently related.

<sup>3</sup> He was Ulugh *Khān*'s right-hand man, his Chief of the Staff so to say. Whether he was so styled as well as "*General*" in Ulugh *Khān*'s Army List I cannot pretend to say.

In one of the oldest copies the name is written *قراچاماک* *Qarah-Jamāk*. *چاماک* *Chamāk* signifies a six-horned or six-spiked mace. The Calcutta Printed Text, in a foot-note, has *چان* but it does not occur in any copy of the text collated.

<sup>4</sup> He is not mentioned either in the List of the *Shamsī* Maliks, nor in that of *Nāṣir-ud-Dīn*, *Mahmūd Shāh*.

Islām by his age<sup>3</sup>, was nominated, on this side [the Court's], to treat, and [on the other side] the Sipah-Sālār, Qarah-Jamāk, while Malik Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain<sup>4</sup>, son of 'Alī, the Ghūrī—on whom be peace!—made use of every effort and endeavour that was possible to bring the matter to an accommodation. The representation of the whole of the Maliks to His Majesty was this: "We all bow our heads in submission to the mandates of the Court, the Asylum of the Universe, save that we are not safe from the malice, deceit, and iniquitous conduct of 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān. If he should be removed from before the sublime throne of sovereignty, and sent away to some part, we all will present ourselves and return to allegiance, and lay the head of servitude on the line of obedience to the sublime mandates<sup>5</sup>."

When the sublime standards moved from within sight of Hānsī towards Jind [Jhīnd], on Monday, the 22nd of the month of Shawwāl, 652 H., 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayhān was removed from the office of Wakil-i-Dar [Representative in Dar-bār]; and praise be unto God for this and all other blessings! The government of the province of Budā'un<sup>6</sup> was committed to him<sup>7</sup>, and 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban [-i-Yūz-Bakī], the Deputy Amīr-i-Ḥājib, proceeded to the camp of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, and, on Tuesday, the 3rd of the month of Zī-Ḥa'dah, Malik Bat Khān-i-I-bak, the Khutā-i—on whom be the Almighty's mercy!—reached the [royal] camp for the purpose of concluding the reconciliation. Here is a strange occurrence which happened, of the matter

<sup>3</sup> Compare ELLIOT, vol. II. page 372.

<sup>4</sup> In some copies here, as in other places, Ḥasan. He seems to have acted peacemaker between the two factions.

<sup>5</sup> The domineering proceedings over these great chiefs of this eunuch, who was a Hindū by birth or descent, have been styled, by a modern writer, an effort to shake off the Turk tyranny and give power to Hindūstānīs<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>6</sup> This was the greatest fief of the kingdom in Shams ud Dīn, I-yal-timugh's reign, and was so, probably, still. There is not a word about "privileges attaching to the government" in any copy of the text, printed or otherwise.

<sup>7</sup> A solitary copy of the text, one of the St. Petersburg MSS., after this word, has "and it was three years and six days, and may Almighty God preserve our sovereign," &c., as though it was meant thereby that the eunuch had held power for that time, but the period was much less—from Muḥarram 651 H. to Zī-Ḥa'dah 652, just one year and eleven months.

of which the author was cognizant, and it is this. 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān conspired with a number of Turks<sup>8</sup>, in whose hearts somewhat of the leaven of opposition towards Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam was implanted, that, when Malik Bat Khān-i-I-bak, the Khitā-i, should reach the entrance of the royal tent, they should cut him down in the vestibule of the tent, so that, when intimation of it should reach the camp of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, they [the confederate Maliks] should bring 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Yūz-Bakī<sup>9</sup>, the Deputy Amīr-i-Hājib, under the sword also, and this accommodation should not come about, so that 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān might continue in safety, and Ulugh Khān's return to the Court be impossible.

Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Husain<sup>1</sup>, son of 'Alī, Ghūrī, on becoming aware of this intention, despatched the Ulugh-i-Khāṣ Hājib<sup>2</sup> [the Chief Royal Chamberlain], the Sharf-ul-Mulk, Rashīd-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, Hanafī, to Malik Bat Khān-i-I-bak, the Khitā-i [saying] :—"It is advisable that you remain quiet in your own quarters to-morrow morning, and do not go to the entrance of the royal tent. As Malik Bat Khān-i-I-bak, in accordance with this advice, delayed proceeding to the entrance of the royal tent<sup>3</sup>, the scheme of 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān with those hostile Turks<sup>4</sup> did not succeed, and the grandees gained a knowledge of it. 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān, in obedience to the sublime mandate, was sent away from the royal camp towards Budā'ūn; and, on Tuesday, the 17th of the month of Zi-Ḳa'dah, the Sulṭān of Sulṭāns, and the Maliks of the sublime Court,

<sup>8</sup> There is not a word about "Turks of low degree" in the text.

<sup>9</sup> The same person who is referred to in para. 4 of note to page 775 and at page 827, who afterwards became feudatory of Lakhanawati. He was Kutlugh Khān's—the Sulṭān's step-father's—son-in-law. Kutlugh Khān was himself of the Rayḥān party.

<sup>1</sup> In some, Hasan, as before.

<sup>2</sup> Under the reign our author mentions the Amīr-i-Hājib, and the Malik-ul-Hujāb, and, here, the Ulugh-i-Khāṣ Hājib. This last is an official never before mentioned, and seems to refer to the chief chamberlain of the Sulṭān's own household, as distinct from the other Hājibs. The literal translation of the words would be—Great Personal or Private Chamberlain.

<sup>3</sup> The entrance or vestibule of the tent where those waiting an audience would assemble. The word for tent is in the singular, but a suite of tents is meant.

<sup>4</sup> Among the hostile Turks the Sulṭān's step-father, Kutlugh Khān, was, no doubt, included, and this is apparent from what afterwards happens.

commanded this servant of the state, Minhaj-i-Sarāj, for the purpose of effecting a reconciliation between both parties<sup>6</sup>, so that he proceeded [to the other camp] and gave them pledges and guarantees. The next day, Wednesday, the 18th, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, with the other Maliks, returned and presented themselves at the sublime Court, and obtained permission to kiss the sovereign's hand. Praise be to God for this and other blessings !

The sublime standards were now brought back, and Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, in attendance at the king's august stirrup, on Wednesday, the 9th of the month of Zi-Ḥijjah, 652 H., again returned to the capital city of Dihli. During the period of Ulugh Khān's absence from the capital, the rain of mercy had not rained upon the land, but by the wisdom of the Divine favour, at the blessed footstep of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, the gate of the Divine mercy opened, and rain, which is the source of life to herbs and vegetation, mankind and animals, fell upon the ground ; and all people accounted his auspicious arrival an omen of good unto mortals. On the arrival of his august cavalcade, all became glad and rejoiced, and gave thanks unto Almighty God for that immense boon<sup>7</sup>.

When the new year 653 H. came round, on account of some occurrence which manifested itself in the womens' apartments of the royal household, with the secret of which not a soul had any acquaintance<sup>8</sup>, on Wednesday, the 7th<sup>9</sup> of the month of Muḥarram of the same year, Kutlugh Khān was directed to assume the government of Awadh, and he set out in that direction. At that time the government of Bharā'ij<sup>10</sup> was entrusted to 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān.

<sup>6</sup> Compare ELLIOT.

<sup>7</sup> See ELLIOT also here.

<sup>8</sup> The cause is stated under the reign. The Sultān's mother seems to have contracted a second marriage with Kutlugh Khān—respecting whose antecedents not a word of particulars is given, nor is his name contained in the List of Mahks—without the knowledge or permission of her son. She had been with the latter in that part when, as a boy of thirteen, he held the fief of Bharā'ij, and this may have been the reason why it was assigned to her and her new husband. See page 676

<sup>9</sup> At page 701, Tuesday, the 6th of Muḥarram

<sup>10</sup> Just before he is said to have been sent to take charge of Budd'īm. He may have been subsequently removed to Bharā'ij, but this is not mentioned.



When the Ulugh Khānī good fortune emitted a blaze of brightness, the garden of hope assumed freshness, and the key of divine favour opened the closed gates of the dwellers in retirement. One of that number was this servant of the sovereign dynasty, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, Jūrjānī, who, by the power of enemies' accusations, and the oppressive tyranny of eunuchs, had kept within the cell of dismissal and misfortune, and in a retired corner from adversity and malevolence<sup>1</sup>. Through the patronage and favour of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, who submitted it for the sublime confirmation, on Sunday, the 7th of the month of Rabī'-ul-Awwal, 653 H.<sup>2</sup>, for the third time, the Kāẓi-ship of the kingdom and the bench of jurisdiction (as chief Kāẓi) was conferred upon this loyal supplicant, the enunciator of prayer and thanksgiving; and "Verily, He who hath prescribed to thee the Qur'ān will bring thee back to a place of return"<sup>3</sup> was manifested towards this frail one. May the most High God, of His favour, unto the uttermost revolutions of the heavens, in felicity and supremacy, preserve and perpetuate the Nāṣirī sovereignty and Ulugh Khānī authority, for the sake of Muḥammad and his whole race!

After Kutlugh Khān proceeded towards Awadh, a considerable period elapsed, [when] the eventualities of destiny became the cause of disaffection displaying itself, and, on several occasions, mandates, which were issued on that subject, were treated with indifference<sup>4</sup>. 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān still continued to use great efforts to enkindle the

A little farther on it is said that Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar, had been appointed to the charge of Iḥarā'ij. See also under the reign.

<sup>1</sup> "In a corner retired from clamour and the cruel joy of others." See page 829, and note <sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> A month after this, on the 23rd of Rabī'-ul-Akḥar, 653 H., that illustrious Malik, Kutb-ud Dīn, Ḥusām, son of 'Alī, the Ghūrī, was put to death in a mysterious manner, and his fief made over to Ulugh Khān's brother. See page 702, and note <sup>3</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> QUR'ĀN, chap. xxviii verse 85. Sale's translation of this verse is "Verily He, who hath given thee the Koran for a rule of faith and practice, will certainly bring thee back home to Mecca," but others translate the last part of the verse as "a place of return," or "some retreat," that is, a future state. The verse some commentators say was revealed to Muḥammad to comfort him in his flight from Makkah.

<sup>4</sup> This seems to refer to Kutlugh Khān's plotting with 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān, and not giving up Bharā'ij to Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar, referred to farther on.

fires of sedition in order that, perhaps, he might, by fraud and deception, with the mud-mortar of his own vicious artifice, overspread the sun of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam's good fortune, and veil the moon of that great chief's glory with the cloak of his own knavery, but the favour of the Eternal without beginning, and the all-sufficiency of the Eternal without end, used to be the averter of that depravity<sup>6</sup>

Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar-i-Māh-Peshānī<sup>7</sup> [of the moon-like brow]—God preserve him!—who had been detained and imprisoned by Malik Kutlugh Khān, and to whom the government of Bharā'ij had been entrusted by the Court, and on which account he had fallen into captivity, by his own manly stratagem, freed himself from Awadh<sup>8</sup>, and the hands of wicked wretches, crossed the river Sar'ū<sup>9</sup> in a boat, and, with a small force, advanced towards Bharā'ij. The decree of the Creator was on such wise that the prosperity of the Turks rose victorious, and the influence of the Hindūs<sup>10</sup> sank into the dust of defeat. 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān fled discomfited before him, and was taken prisoner, and the sun of his existence set in death.

By the death of 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān, the affairs of Malik Kutlugh Khān declined, and he ['Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān] met his doom at Bharā'ij, in the month of Rajab, 653 H.<sup>1</sup> Since those seditions still continued in Hindūstān, and some of the Amīrs withdrew their heads from the yoke of obedience to the sublime Court, with the necessity of quelling that sedition and tranquillizing the servants of the victorious Nāsirī dynasty, the sublime standards were put

<sup>6</sup> Compare ELLIOT here also.—The Calcutta Printed Text has مراغ for راع here.

<sup>7</sup> There are several Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjars, among the Maliks, two of whom, Nos XVII and XIX, lived at this period, but this must be a different person from either of them. Under the reign he is called a Sihwastānī. See page 703, and note<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>8</sup> The old city of Awadh is probably referred to.

<sup>9</sup> The Sar'ū—جړ—gazetted into Sarjoo, Sarjou, &c. Bhaia'ij is on its E bank.

<sup>10</sup> 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān, on the strength of Malik Kutlugh Khān's support, who, seemingly, belonged to the same party, refused to give up Bharā'ij to Tāj-ud-Dīn, Sanjar. The Sultān's mother, Kutlugh Khān's wife, was, evidently, of the Rayḥānī party also, and thus may probably account for their being sent away to Awadh so suddenly.

<sup>1</sup> See under the reign, page 703, where the accounts of these events are very differently related.

in motion from the capital, Dihlī, on Thursday, the last day of the month of *Shawwāl*, 653 H., with the intention of marching into Hindūstān. When the royal tent was pitched at Talh-pat<sup>2</sup>, as the [contingent] forces of the Siwālikh<sup>3</sup> [districts], which were the fiefs of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, had been delayed in the completion of their equipment for the expedition, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam set out for Hānsī from the camp at Talh-pat, on Sunday, the 17th of the month of *Zi-Ḳa'dah*, 653 H. On reaching the Hānsī territory, he, with the utmost celerity, issued his mandate, so that, in the space of fourteen days, the troops of the Siwālikh, Hānsī, Sursutī, Jīnd [Jhīnd], and Barwālah<sup>4</sup>, and confines of that territory, assembled so fully organized and equipped, numerous, and well provided with warlike apparatus, that you would say they were a mountain of iron when still, and a tempestuous sea when in motion<sup>5</sup>. He reached the capital, Dihlī [with this force], on the 3rd of the month of *Zi-Ḥijjah*, and halted at the capital seventeen days for the purpose of further completing his preparations, and for the purpose of directing the assembling of the [contingent] troops of the Koh-pāyah of Mewāt. On the 19th of *Zi-Ḥijjah*, with an army resplendent with arms, and ranks arrayed with warriors, he proceeded towards the Sulṭān's camp; and in the month of Muharram, 654 H., they [the Sulṭān and his army] reached the frontiers of Awadh.

Malik Ḳutlugh Khān<sup>6</sup>, and those Amīrs who followed him—notwithstanding they were all vassals of the sublime Court, still, through contingencies and urgent obstacles of fate, the countenance of their good-fortune was strewn with dust—left Awadh and crossed the river Sar'ū, and receded before the royal army. By the sublime command, in the

<sup>2</sup> Also written Tal pat, about thirteen miles S S.E. of the present city of Dihlī.

<sup>3</sup> There is not a word in the text, printed or otherwise, about Siwālikh *kūls* or "*these mountains*" See ELLIOT here

<sup>4</sup> The Burwala of the Indian Atlas, in Lat 75° 59', Long 28° 22'.

<sup>5</sup> Compare ELLIOT also here

<sup>6</sup> These events are related very differently under the reign, so much so indeed, that any one might suppose they were the events of a different period. Here there is not the least allusion to Malik Bak-Tamur's defeat and death. See page 703.



reached the illustrious seat of government, Dihli, on the 4th of Rabi'-ul-Akhir.

As Malik Kutlugh Khān found it impossible to make any further resistance within the limits of Hindūstān, he came, through the midst of the independent [Hindū] tribes, towards Santūr<sup>4</sup>, and in that mountainous tract sought shelter, and took up his abode<sup>5</sup>. All [the people of that part] were wont to serve him, for he was a great Malik, and one among the grandees, and a servant of the Court<sup>6</sup>, and one of the Turk Maliks, and had just claims upon them all. Wherever he used to come, on account of what was owed him for the past, and having regard for the possible issue of his affairs, they were wont to hold him in veneration. When he sought safety and protection in the Santūr mountains, Rānah Ran-pāl<sup>7</sup> [Ran-pāla], the Hindī, who held the chieftain-ship among the Hindūs—and it was the usage among that people to protect those who sought shelter with them—assisted<sup>8</sup> Malik Kutlugh Khān.

When the report of that came to the sublime hearing, the royal standards, in the beginning of the month of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 655 H., moved towards Santūr, and Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, with his own personal forces, and the Maliks of the Court [with their troops], used great exertions in those mountains, and carried on holy war, as by the faith enjoined, in the defiles of the hills and passes, and on the crests of the mountains of Santūr, in describing which the eye of intellect would be bewildered, gained the advantage [over the infidels], and penetrated as far as the fort and territory of Silmūr [i. e. Sirmūr]<sup>9</sup>,

<sup>4</sup> His object, in proceeding towards Santūr or Santūr-garh [Lat. 30° 24', Long. 78° 5'], according to the statement under the reign, was to reach the Bīah and Lāhor, after he had been defeated by Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjār, which seems to be referred to at page 836, but our author's account is very confused.

<sup>5</sup> There is not a word about chiefs.

<sup>6</sup> They were also doubtless aware that he had married the Sultān's mother.

<sup>7</sup> In one old copy ران, in another رانہ but in others it is plainly written as above, a correct Hindū name, from Ran—battle, &c.

<sup>8</sup> Compare ELLIOT, vol. ii. page 375.

<sup>9</sup> Nāhūn or Nāhūn, a very old place, situated on the acclivity of a mountain, the defiles leading to which were fortified, in ancient times, was called the *ghahr*—city or town—of Silmūr or Sirmūr, and the territory belonging to it was also called by the same name. From the description given of it he

which is in the possession of that great Rāe. All the Rāes round about pay homage to him and do his bidding. He fled<sup>1</sup> before the army of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam; and the whole of the market-place and city [town?] of Sīlmūr was plundered by the Musalmān troops. The followers of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam acquired power over a place where the troops of Islām, in any reign, had never before penetrated; and, by the grace of the favour of the Creator, the Glorious, the Most High, and the aid of the Divine assistance, with great booty, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam [with his forces] reached the sublime presence, and the illustrious capital, Dihlī, under the shadow of the august standards of the kingdom, on the 25th of the month of Rabi'-ul-Ākhir, 655 H.

On the return of the sublime standards to the capital, Malik Kutlugh Khān issued from the mountains of Santūr, and Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, had [previously] marched out of the territory of Sind and advanced to the vicinity of the river Biāh<sup>2</sup>. These two great Maliks [with their followers] effected a junction together, and turned their faces towards Sāmānah and Kuhrām, and began to take possession of the country. When intimation of that assemblage and this audacity reached the royal hearing, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak-i-Kashlī Khān [his brother], with other Maliks of the Court, and troops, were appointed to proceed for the purpose of quelling this sedition.

Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam moved from Dihlī on Thursday, the 15th of the month of Jamādi-ul-Awwal, 655 H.<sup>3</sup>, and pushed on with the utmost expedition to the limits of Kaithal; and Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān

modern travellers, and the remains of ancient buildings, it must have been a strong place.

<sup>1</sup> If he fled, where was the fighting?—the "holy war as by the faith enjoined!"

<sup>2</sup> See the account of Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, page 784. At this time, he had thrown off his allegiance to Dihlī, he had been to Hūlā-kū's camp, had received a Mughal Shāhnaḥ [Intendant], and had sent a grandson to the Mughals as a pledge of his own fidelity. This advance from Ūchchah and Multān was, evidently, with the object of aiding Kutlugh Khān, and invading the Dihlī territory. The Biāh, at this period, flowed in its former bed, as mentioned in a previous note.

<sup>3</sup> See under the reign, page 707, and note 7.

and Malik Kutlugh Khān were in that vicinity. When they drew near towards each other—all brethren and all friends of each other, two hosts of one dynasty, two cavalcades of one Court, two armies of one habitation, two wings of one main body<sup>4</sup>—never could there be a case more wonderful than this! All were cronies of one purse, and messmates over one dish, between whom, Satan, the accursed, disclosed such discord. A gang of demon-natured men, for their own carnal objects, and of their infernal malignity, were sowing dissension among those brethren<sup>5</sup> and were raising the banner of sedition, and, for the aggrandisement of their own affairs, were setting things by the ears. Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, in accordance with his own wise policy, was keeping his own personal followers together with those of Malik Sher Khān-i-Sunkar, who was his brother<sup>6</sup> and the son of his paternal uncle, separate from the troops of [the contingents forming] the centre of the Sultān's forces, and Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, I-bak-i-Kashlī Khān, the Amir-i-Hājib, who was his own full brother, with the Malik of the Court, and the [contingent] troops of the centre, and the elephants, separate also, in such wise that those two columns of the army were appearing like two efficient and distinct hosts.

The both armies [the Sultān's and the rebels] came into near proximity to each other in the vicinity of Sāmānah and Kaūthal, and all were in expectation of an engagement, when the intriguing among the turban-wearers<sup>7</sup> [i. e. ecclesiastics] of the capital, Dihlī, indited

<sup>4</sup> This last simile is somewhat differently expressed in a few copies where حور—a cavity or hollow is used for قور—a troop or body, &c. Compare ELLIOT here, vol II page 377

<sup>5</sup> Malik 'Izz-ud Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, can hardly, by our author's own account, for the reasons mentioned in the previous note <sup>2</sup>, page 840, have been considered as a subject of Dihlī at this time.

<sup>6</sup> That is to say, like a brother to him. He was, by relationship, his cousin. The object of Ulugh Khān in keeping his own personal forces—not "the household troops"—on whom he could depend, separate, is evident, as also the object of stationing his brother with the other Malik. The Sultān's mother, Kutlugh Khān's wife, who, evidently, was the cause of a good deal of this sedition, if not the whole of it, was also present with the disaffected party.

<sup>7</sup> Compare ELLIOT. The original is plain enough in the printed text. See also page 708, and note <sup>3</sup>.

letters to Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, and Malik Kutluḡh Khān, and entreated them, saying: "The gates of the city are in our hands: it behoveth you to move towards the city, for it is denuded of troops. You are among the servants and supporters of the sublime Court, and are nothing alien intervening. When you shall come hither, and shall attach yourselves to the service of the exalted throne of sovereignty, Ulugh Khān, with that army [now with him], will remain outside, and affairs will come to pass according to desire; and this, which is stated [herein], will be rendered easy and brought to pass."

A number of persons among the loyal adherents of the Sultān's Court, and well-wishers of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam's service<sup>a</sup>, on becoming aware of this hostility and design of theirs [the turban-wearers'], with all despatch, wrote a statement and sent it to Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, and, from Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, a representation reached the sublime throne, to the effect that the disaffected parties should be expelled from the city, the whole of which circumstances are recorded in the account of the reign of Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Maḥmūd Shāh,—whose glory God preserve!—and, in the details thereof, the names of the persons concerned are mentioned<sup>b</sup>. May Almighty God overlook their enmity, and cause them to repent of it!

During this state of affairs while the two armies were in close proximity to each other, a person of a certain name, whom they were wont to call the son of so-and-so, came [to Ulugh Khān's camp] as a spy on the part of Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, and made out that he was come to present himself to Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, and [pretended], on the part of the Maliks and Amīrs who were supporting Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, to represent that they all desired to make their submission in Ulugh Khān's presence, and that, if a deed of immunity were granted, and the right hand pledged, assurance given, and means of subsistence and a fief assigned to himself who had presented himself before Ulugh Khān, he would

<sup>a</sup> Among the first of whom was our author, no doubt.

<sup>b</sup> The fact of the matter is that, generally, what is detailed there is slurred over here, and what is slurred over there is detailed here. See also page 785.



bring over all the Maliks and Amīrs of Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān's party, and cause them to be ranged on the series of the other servants [of the state] <sup>1</sup>.

As Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, in secret, had become cognizant of the bent of that individual, he commanded that the whole of the troops should be paraded before him, in such wise that he might behold the whole force with their armament, their numbers, their efficiency, and the elephants, and horses in defensive armour<sup>2</sup>. Then Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam directed that a letter should be written secretly and clandestinely to the Amīrs and Maliks of Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān's party saying: "Your communications have come under observation, and the purport thereof has been understood. There is no doubt that, if, in an obedient manner, you shall present yourselves, fiefs and suitable subsistence will be assigned to you, indeed even more; and, if the contrary should happen, on this day it will be manifest and evident unto mortals what the upshot of each one's affairs will come to by the wound of the flashing sword and flaming spear, and, when confounded and humbled, bound in the bonds of destiny, they are dragged to the foot of the sublime standards and banners." When that letter, after the manner of honey mixed with gall, a sting with sweet drink, and graciousness with rigour, was written, and that person went back again, and related to Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān—The Almighty have him in His keeping<sup>3</sup>—all that he had seen and heard,<sup>3</sup> those having an insight into the human mind will conceive to what the state of antagonism between the Maliks and Amīrs and the agent [deputed] would reach,

<sup>1</sup> Compare ELLIOT

<sup>2</sup> What this defensive armour was like may be gathered from some of the ancient illuminated historical MSS in the Persian language.

<sup>3</sup> But the letter was not given to him. The Calcutta Printed Text, following a modern copy, has, "and had shown the letter," but this is not so in the oldest copies of the text. It stands to reason that, if 'Izz ud-Dīn, Balban's spy, had brought that letter to his camp, much less shown it to that Malik himself, the latter would have known that it was a mere ruse, and could have suppressed the said letter, but the letter was written by command of Ulugh Khān as if addressed to 'Izz-ud-Dīn Balban's partisans, that it might fall into 'Izz-ud-Dīn Balban's hands and rouse suspicion in his mind, that his own partisans were negotiating with the other party. The modern copies of the text, generally, are minus about two lines here

In the meantime the letters<sup>4</sup> from the city of Dihlī reached them, and Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, and Malik Kutluḡh Khān turned their faces towards the capital, but returned again from thence without having effected their object [as previously narrated].

Two days subsequently<sup>5</sup>, their design became known to Ulugh Khān-i-Aʿẓam, and he became disturbed in mind as to how affairs might be [going on] at the Court, and before the throne of sovereignty, when, after the happening of this strange circumstance [the arrival of the spy in his camp] letters reached him from the city<sup>6</sup>. He set out for the capital, and reached it safe and prosperous under the protection of the Creator, and under the Divine guardianship and keeping, on Monday, the 10th<sup>7</sup> of the month of Jamādī-ul-Ākhir, 653 H.

The royal troops continued at the city of Dihlī for a period of seven months, until, in the month of Zī-Ḥijjah of the before mentioned year, an army of infidel Mughals arrived in the territory of Sind, and the head of those accursed ones was the Nū-yīn, Sārī<sup>8</sup>. Since Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān had brought a *Shahnah* [Intendant] of that people thither<sup>9</sup>, as a matter of necessity, he had to go to them, and they [the Mughals] dismantled the defences of the citadel of Multān<sup>1</sup>. On intimation of this reaching his

<sup>4</sup> These are the letters referred to at page 842—not *fresh* letters. This passage, with respect to the letter referred to in the previous note, and the letters mentioned at page 842, is thus rendered in ELLIOT, vol II page 378. "When the letter was delivered to the officers of Balban, the wise among them perceived its drift, and knew that the dissensions between the nobles and generals would be settled elsewhere (yakyd): Fresh letters now arrived from Dehli, and Malik Balban and Katluḡh Khān set forth in that direction and showed no intention of returning"!! There is nothing of this kind in the Printed Text, nor in any MSS copy. See under the reign, page 707, and in the account of Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, where these events are given in detail.

<sup>5</sup> The patrols of Ulugh Khān's army could not have kept a very sharp look-out in this case.

<sup>6</sup> See under the reign, pages 708—710, where our author relates differently, and also note<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>7</sup> At page 710, the date given is the 14th of that month.

<sup>8</sup> In other places he is styled Sālīn and Sālī, which last is the same as Sārī, being interchangeable with *r*.

<sup>9</sup> See the account of Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, page 786.

<sup>1</sup> In ELLIOT (vol II page 378), this passage is rendered,—"When their general brought in this army, Malik Balban went to them of necessity, and the forces of the fort of Multan fell back," but the Calcutta Printed Text,

august hearing, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam represented for the consideration of the sublime Court, that it was advisable that the royal standards of the kingdom, conjoined with victory and triumph, should move from the capital. It was the year 656 H., and, on the 2nd<sup>3</sup> of the month of Muharram of that year, the sublime standards, under an auspicious horoscope, moved out from the capital, and the Sultān's tent was set up<sup>4</sup> outside, in sight of the city of Dihlī. In consultation with Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, mandates were at once issued and despatched to all parts of the country, to the great Maliks and Lords of the kingdom, and on the confines, directing them all to turn their faces towards the capital, and, in the greatest possible state of efficiency, present themselves [with their contingents] at the sublime threshold. On the 10th of the month of Muharram, within the tent of sovereignty, which in victory and triumph be ever set up, and the ropes of its prosperity, be secured with the pegs of stability!—this suppliant, by command, delivered an exhortation<sup>4</sup>, with the object of

although so often incorrect, is right in this instance. The compound verb here used is not necessarily *faro-raftan*, to subside, come down, &c., but the verb *faro-rufsan*—the consonants are the same in both, but not the vowels—to sweep away, destroy, and the like.

The correct reading, as in all copies of the text, is evidently *مشارف دیوار* literally—They swept away, destroyed, the parapet wall, battlements, pinnacles, &c., of the citadel of Multān. The object of the Mughals, taken into consideration with the fact of their harassing the frontiers of the Dihlī kingdom as far as the west bank of the Bīāh, at this period, is plain enough. Their object also will be further seen from the events mentioned in the last Section. Malik Balhan gave Multān up to them as a vassal of their sovereign, and they then dismantled it, that it might not be an obstacle to them in future.

<sup>3</sup> The 6th of the month at page 711.

<sup>4</sup> It is usual to pitch a tent in this manner previous to undertaking a journey or expedition, but, in this case, it does not follow that the Sultān dwelt in it the whole time. In this instance, it was like “a sovereign setting up his standard” around which his troops assembled, in fact it is so stated just above. In ELLIOT, this passage is incorrectly rendered “Ulugh Khan advised his Majesty to set the royal army in motion, and, accordingly, *it marched forth* on the 2nd Muharram.” It was not assembled yet, as our author plainly states. Mandates were issued for the Maliks to present themselves with their contingents. There is not a word either about collecting “all the forces they could.”

<sup>4</sup> Here, too, is an absurd mistake in the same work [page 379]: “On the 10th Muharram, the author received orders *in the royal tent to compose an ODE to stir up the feelings*,” &c. The words, as in the Printed Text also, are, *نظم لافانی* which have nothing to do with odes.

stimulating to holy warfare, and the merit of fighting against infidels, and efforts to defend the glories of Islām, and serve the sublime Court, by obeying the orders of the legitimate commanders—May God increase the execution of His commands!—and Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, with a body of troops in array, and attended by a numerous equipage, in association with the august stirrup of sovereignty, issued forth<sup>6</sup>. All the Malikis joined [with their contingents], and all the troops united.

When intimation of this concentration reached the accursed [Mughals] and their camp, they did not advance beyond the frontiers which they had assailed and ravaged, and evinced no further audacity<sup>6</sup>, but it was considered advisable that the army, for a period of four months, or even longer<sup>7</sup>, should remain concentrated within sight of the city. Bodies of horse [during this period] used to go out in various directions, and make holy war upon the independent [Hindū] tribes, until, when news of the withdrawal of those accursed [Mughals] arrived, and the heart was freed of the

<sup>6</sup> The words are *بروز آمد*—came out, i.e. from the city to the camp, not that they “marched in company with his majesty.” The force never moved out of sight of Dihlī. The troops, which did come out of Dihlī with the Sulṭān and Ulugh Khān, were personal followers, a large force in themselves. Those of the Sulṭān might be styled the household troops. Detachments of horse only were sent out, and those not against the Mughals.

<sup>6</sup> This concentration of the forces of Dihlī, if not intended as a defensive act, turned out to be one, and the Mughals were left to ravage the frontier provinces—which then appear not to have extended beyond the Bīah, that is, when it flowed in its *old bed* already referred to—with impunity. The state of Mewāt, and the independent Hindū tribes, appear to have prevented operations against the Mughals, as referred to at page 850. See also page 862, where our author states that Hulakū Khān was so good, out of regard for Ulugh Khān, as to direct his forces not to molest the frontiers of the Dihlī kingdom, a sufficiently humiliating statement for our author to make.

This passage is rendered in ELLIOT [page 379] “When the infidel Mughal heard of this host on the frontier he had assailed, he advanced no further and showed no spirit,” &c. All the copies of the text are as above, even the “official” Calcutta Printed Text.

<sup>7</sup> At page 712, “five months,” but seven months was the correct period. See note <sup>7</sup> to that page. The *ḥalb* or [the troops forming the] centre of the Sulṭān's army returned to the city, from the camp outside, on the 1st of Ramaṣān.

The forces continued thus encamped in sight of the capital all the hot season, until the commencement of the rains. The year 656 H. began 7th January, 1258 A.D.—the year in which Simon de Montfort, Earl of Leicester, and the other Barons, his supporters, imposed terms upon King Henry III.

sedition of that gathering, [the Hindūs<sup>2</sup>] a number of intelligencers brought to the blessed hearing of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam that, probably, Taj-ud-Dīn, Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar<sup>3</sup>, from Awadh, and Kutlugh [Kulich ?] Khān<sup>4</sup>, Mas'ūd-i-Jānī, on account of their having delayed in joining the Sultān's camp<sup>5</sup>, were, in consequence, in a state of apprehension, and in their minds thoughts of contumacy were presenting themselves. Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam submitted to the notice of the sublime Court that, before that party acquired feathers and wings, and, through the fear they were in, should take a flight into the air of contumaciousness, it was advisable that time should not be given them, and that this fire should be speedily smothered.

In conformity with the prudent advice of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, notwithstanding it was the time of the hot season, and that the army of Islām, on account of the advance of the accursed Mughals, and guarding the frontiers, had experienced trouble, still, as there was expediency in moving, on Tuesday, the 6th of the month of Jamādī-ul-Ākhir, 656 H., the sublime standards departed towards the country of Hindūstān<sup>6</sup>, and advanced, march by march, as far as the boundaries of Karah and Mānik-pūr<sup>7</sup>. Ulugh Khān-i-

<sup>2</sup> As mentioned a few lines before. The Mughals were not gone yet.

<sup>3</sup> See under Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar, page 768.

<sup>4</sup> In one of the oldest copies Kutlugh Khān, Mas'ūd-i-Jānī. This is not the Kutlugh Khān who married the Sultān's mother, but a son of Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī, the Shāh-zādeh of Turkistān, referred to in the List of Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish's Malik, at page 626. For more respecting Kulij, Kulich, or Kutlugh Khān, who, under the reign, at pages 673 and 712, is also styled, but wrongly, Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh-i-Jānī, see note at page 775, para. 3, and page 848.

<sup>5</sup> The camp before Dhill just previously referred to.

<sup>6</sup> The Antarbēd Dō ābah.

<sup>7</sup> In his account of this Malik [page 768] our author says that, after Malik Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar had been successful against Kutlugh Khān [the step-father of the Sultān], he became disaffected towards the Court, and Ulugh Khān had to move into Awadh and Karah to coerce him and Kutlugh [Kulich ?] Khān, Mas'ūd, son of the late Malik 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī [see List of nobles, page 673]. Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar was entrusted with the government of the fief of Karah in 657 H., and, subsequently, got possession of the City of Lakhnawati by treachery, and without orders from the Court, and yet, in his account of the events of the thirteenth year of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh's reign, our author says that, on Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh,

A'zam made such exertions in chastising the seditious Hindūs and harassing the Rānahs as cannot be conceived. On his reaching that territory [Karāh and Mānik-pūr], Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar, and Malik Ḳutlugh [Ḳulīḥ?] Khān, Mas'ūd-i-Jānī, got away, and out of necessity sent away their families and dependents among the independent [Hindū] tribes, and despatched confidential persons to the presence of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam asking that he should make a representation before the exalted throne and explain the necessity they were under of withdrawing, and to supplicate that the sublime standards might be directed to return towards the capital on the stipulation that, when the royal standards should reach Dihlī, the illustrious capital, Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar and Ḳutlugh [Ḳulīḥ?] Khān, both of them, should present themselves in attendance at the sublime Court, the Asylum of the Universe. When Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam made this representation, the sublime standards returned towards Dihlī, and, on Monday, the 2nd of the month of Ramaḡān, 656 H., the illustrious seat of government was reached.

On Sunday, the 27th of the month of Shawwāl, of the same year, Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar, and Ḳutlugh [Ḳulīḥ?] Khān, Mas'ūd-i-Jānī, presented themselves at the threshold of sovereignty, and made their obeisance. Notwithstanding so much opposition, their flight, and the tardiness and negligence they had displayed, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam gave them his support, and manifested towards them such kindness, gentleness, moderation, good faith, and sympathy, out of his great benevolence and infinite clemency, and lordly assistance and princely favour, as neither the fingers can record nor explanation relate. May the Most High God have him perpetually in His keeping for the sake of Muḡammad and the whole of his posterity!

After a period of two months, through Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam's patronage, the states of Lakhanawati were made

son of the late Malik Jānī, the kingdom of Lakhanawati was conferred. The account here given, and that in the notice of Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar, are widely different. The discrepancies respecting Lakhanawati I have noticed at page 770

over to Kutlugh [Kulich?]<sup>1</sup> Khān, Mas'ūd-i-Jānī's charge, and the district of Karah<sup>2</sup> to Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjar.

When the new year of 657 H. set in, on the 13th of the month of Muḥarram, the sublime standards were directed to be moved out of the capital, and the pavilion of majesty was pitched in sight of the city of Dihlī<sup>3</sup>. Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam—may God perpetuate his prosperity!—held it meet to exercise his patronage in behalf of Malik Nuṣrat-ud-Dīn, Sher Khān-i-Sunḡar, who was his paternal uncle's son, and he made a representation before the exalted throne, so that the whole of the territory of Bhīānah, Kol, Jalī-sar, and the preserved city of Gwāliyūr was entrusted to his charge<sup>4</sup>, and that assignment was committed to him on Sunday, the 21st of the month of Ṣafar, 657 H. For the remainder of that year, by reason that—and thank God for it!—there was no cause of apprehension, the sublime standards made no farther movement<sup>5</sup>.

On Wednesday, the 4th of the month of Jamādī-ul-Akhir, 657 H., treasure, valuables, and elegancies to a large amount, with two elephants, reached the sublime threshold from the Lakhanawati territory, and Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, in return for such commendable assiduity, exerted [his] interest, in behalf of Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Yūz-Bakī,<sup>6</sup> who was the sender of these elephants and property; and the investiture of the fief of Lakhanawati was bestowed upon him by his majesty, and that territory was confirmed to him, and a robe of honour and other distinctions were transmitted to him.

<sup>1</sup> In this place again there is a great difference in the title of this personage. In seven copies of the text, including the oldest, he is styled Kulj, in one Kutlugh, and in three Kulj or Kulich.

<sup>2</sup> In some copies the Koh-pāyah. perhaps both Karah and the Koh-pāyah districts may be meant.

<sup>3</sup> In ELLIOT, they are made again to march from Dihlī, which is not so stated, even in the Calcutta Text. The reason why no marching was necessary is given below.

<sup>4</sup> See the account of Malik Sher Khān-i-Sunḡar, page 794. There it is stated that Balārām, Baltārāh, Mihur, and Mahāwan, were also entrusted to him. Under the reign, page 712, there is no mention of Jalī-sar.

<sup>5</sup> In Rajab of this year a grandson was born to Ulugh Khān. His daughter, Nāḡir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh's wife, presented her husband, the Sulṭān, with a son; and two months after, Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak, the Ulugh Kutlugh-i-A'zam, the Bār-Bak, died.

<sup>6</sup> This is the person referred to at pages 770 and 827.

When the new year 658 H. came round, and the month of Ṣafar arrived, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam resolved upon making a raid upon the Koh-pāyah [hill tracts of Mewāt] round about the capital, because, in this Koh-pāyah, there was a community of obdurate rebels, who, unceasingly, committed highway robbery and plundered the property of Musal-māns, and the ejection of the subject peasantry, and destruction of the villages in the districts of Hariānah, the Siwālikh, and Bhiānah, necessarily followed their outbreaks. Three years<sup>3</sup> previous to this period, they had likewise carried off herds of camels, the property of the vassals and loyal followers of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam's household—be victory ever theirs!—from the outskirts of the Hānsī territory. The leader of the rebels was a person, Malkā<sup>4</sup> by name, an obdurate Hindū *gabr* [infidel], like a gigantic demon and a serpent-hued '*Ifrit*'. They had carried off herds of camels and camel-men, and had, in the meantime, dispersed them among the Hindūs throughout the Koh-pāyah [hill tracts], as far as the vicinity of Rantabhūr, and the time that these camel-men and camels were carried off was a time when an expedition was pending, and the camp-followers of the force, and the warriors of the retinue of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, were in urgent need of them for the purpose of carrying the equipage of the troops. When that contumacious rebel committed this act, an infinite load weighed upon the dear heart of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, and all the Maliks and Amīrs and warriors of the troops of Islām—May God ever accord victory to them! Nevertheless, it was impossible to chastise that sedition by reason of anxiety [consequent] on the appearance of the Mughal army<sup>5</sup> which continued to harass the frontier tracts of the dominions of Islām, namely, the territory of Sind, Lohor<sup>6</sup>, and the line of the river

<sup>3</sup> Two copies have "one year," but this can scarcely be correct. The period referred to seems to be the year 656 H., on the appearance of the Mughals under Sā'ī, on the western frontier. See page 844.

<sup>4</sup> This must not be supposed to refer to Dalālī, of Malakī, the great Rānah in the vicinity of the river Jūn, between Kālinjar and Kapah, for he is a wholly different person.

<sup>5</sup> Compare ELLIOT here.

<sup>6</sup> The words are, correctly, as rendered above—*بوسطہ دل سحرئی واقع لشکر مل*. The Printed Text has *دع* for *واقع* and, hence, the passage in Elliot is incorrect.

<sup>7</sup> Not much of Lohor remained for them to harass at that time belonging to Duhli, but see page 846, where our author says the Mughals "evinc'd no





contumacious rebels of that tract. All those that were on the mountain sides, in the deep defiles, and great ravines, were taken and were brought under the swords of the Musalmāns. For a period of twenty days he [Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam] continued to move about that Koh-pāyah in every direction. The dwelling-places and villages of those mountaineers were on the summits of the high hills, and the whole of their edifices on the acclivities of rocks, so that you would say they were, in altitude, equal to the stars, and even with the sky. By command of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, the whole of those places which, in strength, might compare with the tale told of the wall of Sikandar in solidity, were captured and plundered, and the people of those places, who were knaves, Hindūs, thieves, and high-way robbers, were all put to the sword. The Ulugh Khān orders to that army of holy warriors were, that whoever should bring in a head should receive one *tangah* of silver, and whoever brought in a man alive two *tangahs* of silver from the private treasurer.

The defenders of the truth, in conformity with Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam's commands, penetrated into all the loftiest places, into the defiles, and deep ravines<sup>3</sup>, and acquired heads and captives, and became filled with property and money, especially the sept of Afghāns, every one of whom you might say was some huge elephant with [the tails of] two Khīṭā-i bulls<sup>4</sup> over his shoulders, or some tall tower of a fortress, placed on its summit, for the purpose of over-awing, with banner displayed. The number of them, employed in the service of, and attending the stirrup of, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, was about 3000 horse and foot, daring, intrepid, and valiant soldiers, each one of whom, either on mountain or in forest, would take a hundred Hindūs in his grip, and, in a dark night, would reduce a

<sup>3</sup> In nearly every instance, throughout this work, the Calcutta Printed Text uses *درو* and *دروى* for *لور* and *لورى*.

<sup>4</sup> The same word—*ghajz-ghāc*—is used here as applied to Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Sabuk-Tigīn, page 68. It evidently refers to their hairy faces and the long curly hair hanging down their backs, and as some tribes wear their hair to this day. These Afghāns are the first PATĀNS mentioned in this work, and in no other place in it, either before or after, are they mentioned. Compare ELLIOT here also.

demon to utter helplessness<sup>6</sup>. In short, the whole of the Malikis and Amirs, Turks and Tājziks, displayed zeal and energy, the mention of which will ever endure upon the pages of time; and, up to this period, since the standards of Islām were first displayed in the land of Hind, at no time had the Musalmān troops ever before reached that locality or ravaged it<sup>7</sup>. Under the auspices of the good fortune of the Sultān of Sultāns, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, the Most High God facilitated the delivery into the hands of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam that obdurate Hindū, who had carried off those camels and camel men, together with his sons and family, all of whom were taken, and the decree of fate brought them into the bondage and captivity of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam's followers, and the whole of the heads and chiefs of the rebels, to the number of about 250 persons, among the chief men of that people, fell into the chains of bondage. One hundred and forty-two horses reached the Sultān's stables, and sixty *badrahs*<sup>8</sup> of *tangahs*, the amount of [each of?] which was 35,000<sup>9</sup> *tangahs*, he [Ulugh Khān] extorted from the Rānahs and Rāes of that mountain tract<sup>10</sup>, and they were conveyed to the royal treasury; and, in the

<sup>6</sup> One of the St. Petersburg copies of the text ends the Section here, and passes at once to the last Section

<sup>7</sup> The tract of country here indicated, the Koh-pāyah of our author, seems to be Bharatpūr, Dholpūr, and part of the Rājput states of Jaipūr and Alwar. The Musalmāns had penetrated before this much farther south to the vicinity of the Narbadah

We may be sure these successes will not be found recorded in Rājput annals.

<sup>8</sup> A small bag of cotton or linen cloth, goats' leather, or felt cloth, rather longer than broad. The word also means a bag of 10,000 *dramas*

<sup>9</sup> The probability is that each *badrah* contained that number of *tangahs*—in value about as many rūpīs—in which case the total would be 2,100,000 *tangahs*, or about equal to 21 *laks* of rūpīs, not a very large sum to extort from several rich Rāes and Rānahs, the smaller sum would have been too paltry to convey to the royal treasury. One of the best copies has gold *tangahs*, in which case the total amount may have been that given above, but, even then, the sum would be but a comparatively paltry one

<sup>10</sup> In the Printed Text, the original word—سند—he extorted—from the verb —سند— is turned into—سند—and thus has been followed in ELIOT, hence this sentence has assumed the following amusing form: "and six bags of *tankas*, amounting to thirty thousand tankas, were *taken* from the Rānas of the hills and the *Rāes* of SIND, and *sent* to the royal treasury"

As the word سند stands in the place of—سند—there is no word for *taken* in this sentence in the Printed Text, and so the literal translation of it would be: "so much from the Rānahs, &c., to the royal treasury conveyed"—an intelligible jumble of words.

space of twenty days, such were the important feats effected through the vigorous and energetic command of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam—May his glory ever continue!

On the 24th of the month Rabi'-ul-Awwāl, 658 H., Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam returned to the capital. The august canopy of sovereignty, and the king of the world like an imperial sun under the shadow thereof—God perpetuate his sovereignty!—and all the Maliks, Amirs, Ṣadrs, men of rank and position, and the inhabitants of the city, came out to the plain of the Hauz-i-Rānī [the Rānī's Reservoir], and drew up in lines, extending from the Bāgh-i-Jūd<sup>1</sup> [the Jūd Garden] to the Rānī's Reservoir,<sup>2</sup> and hastened in the footsteps of loyalty to meet and do honour to the sublime standards which accompanied Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam<sup>3</sup>. The Sultān of Sultāns—God long preserve his sovereignty!—at the head of the Rānī's Reservoir, on the exalted seat of the throne of sovereignty, held an audience, and Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, with the Maliks and Amirs of the force, arrayed in robes of honour conferred by Ulugh Khān himself, attained the honour of kissing the threshold of the place of audience, so that one might say, from the various coloured robes, of satin, silk, brocade, gold and silver tissue, and other expensive textures, and gold embroidered tunics and other garments, that that plain bloomed like a thousand flower gardens. All these Grandees, Maliks, Amirs, incomparable champions and warriors of the force, one day previous to this, in their own quarters, had donned these honorary dresses from out of the lordly treasury of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam—May it never cease being replete with riches and spoils!—and [now] the whole of them, victorious and triumphant, safe and rich, hied to the sublime audience-hall, and great and small—high and low—attained the honour of kissing the Sultān's hand, together with thousands of commendations, favours,

<sup>1</sup> In one copy of the text—one of the older ones—this is here written with the vowel points—بَیْد—Bāgh-i-Chūd. It is, however, nowhere else written so. In Arabic—جود—jūd—signifies liberality, munificence, but the original may be a local name.

<sup>2</sup> The Hamilton Ms. is minus the whole of the remainder of this section.

<sup>3</sup> This grand reception plainly shows that Ulugh Khān's force had achieved a great success over the unbelievers.

and assurances, and returned thanks to the Most High and Holy God for that success<sup>4</sup>.

After two days, the royal cavalcade [again] proceeded out of the city to the plain at the Rānī's Reservoir, with the intention of making an example of infidels, and command was given for the elephants, of mountain-like form and reaching to the sky, of demon-like aspect, and wind-like speed—so that you might say they were the delegates of destiny and the soldiers of the angel of death—to be brought for the purpose of inflicting condign punishment upon the infidels. The relentless Turks, of the profession of Mars, drew their well-tempered, fire-flashing, swords from the scabbards of power, and then the sublime order was issued so that they commenced to execute [the rebels]. After that, some of those rebels they cast at the feet of the elephants, and made the heads of Hindūs, under the heavy hands and feet of those mountain-like figures, the grain in the orifice of the grinding mill of death, and, by the keen swords of the ruthless Turks, and the life-ravishing executioners, every two of these Hindūs were made four, and, by scavengers, with knives, such that, at the gashes of them, a demon would be horror-stricken, a hundred and odd rebels were flayed from head to foot, and at the hand of their skinners, they quaffed, in the goblet of their own heads, the *Sharbat* of death. Command was given so that they stuffed the whole of their skins with straw, and suspended them over every gate-way of the city.

In short, an example of retribution was made such as the plain at the Rānī's Reservoir, and the open space before the gate of Dihlī never remembered the like of, and the ear of no hearer ever heard a tale so terrible as that.<sup>5</sup> Such like religious warfare and victory over the infidels, and such amount of booty was acquired, and such efforts

<sup>4</sup> In E.I.I. 107 [page 382, vol. II.], the Editor considering that "The author here becomes very diffuse in his descriptions and praises, which are not worth translation," this entire paragraph is dismissed with a very few words.—"His Majesty, with a great retinue of chiefs and nobles, came forth to the plain of *Hawa-rānī* to meet him, and a great court was held in which many honours and rewards were bestowed."

<sup>5</sup> We must make allowances for the age in which this occurred, but what an idea it gives us of the merciful disposition, and amiability of "the king of the world," and copier of Kur'ān, if he had any authority!

were brought about through the power of the Ulugh Khānī good fortune. May the Most High God preserve the Sultān of Sultāns, NĀSIR-UD-DUNYĀ WA UD-DIN, MAḤMUD SHĀH, on the throne of sovereignty, and adorn the exalted seat of ULUGH KHĀN-I-A'ZAM with permanency and stability ! \*

Having achieved such deeds, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam represented before the sublime throne, that it was right that the Khurāsān emissaries<sup>7</sup> should be conducted to the capital, and attain the honour of kissing the royal hand. On the command being issued, on Wednesday, the 8th of the month of Rabi'-ul-Ākhir, 658 H., the august retinue [of the Sultān] moved to the Kūshk-i-Sabz [the Green Castle], and Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam gave orders, so that the Şāhib, the Diwān-i-Āriz-i-Mamālik [the Head of the Department of the Muster-master of the Kingdom] marshalled in order the men bearing arms from the different parts around and in the vicinity of the capital. About 200,000 footmen, well armed, came to Dihli, and they drew up, in battle array, about 50,000 horse<sup>8</sup>, fully equipped with defensive armour, and with banners [displayed], and of the populace of the city—the higher, middle, and lower classes—so many men bearing arms, both on horseback and on foot went forth, that, from the Shahr-i-Nau [new city] of Gilūkhari to within the city where was the Royal Qasr, twenty lines<sup>9</sup> of men, one behind the other—like the avenue of a pleasure-garden with the branches entwined—placed shoulder to shoulder, stood row after row. Truly you might say—"It is the last great day, the time of the general resurrection, the hour of perturbation, the rendering of account of good and evil"—through the experience, energy,

\* Compare ELLIOT here

<sup>7</sup> Now, in ELLIOT, we have "*the* Mughal ambassador in Khurāsān." In the Printed Text "*they*" correctly, the—مرسلان [plural of مرسل] See note 7, page 851.

<sup>8</sup> The Calcutta "official" Printed Text, copying the I O.L. MS 1952, has a very amusing blunder here. Instead of آماده—signifying "prepared," "ready," "drawn up," &c., after—سوار—it has—ماده—signifying "female"—سوار—thus turning them into 50,000 *female* horse!! The R A S. MS is also incorrect, but has—مادر—not—ماده—and the former word is meaningless.

<sup>9</sup> Twenty-seven lines, in some copies "The author becomes very diffuse in his description and praises, which are not worth translation," according to ELLIOT, vol. II page 382, which see.

ontrol, and lieutenantancy of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam—God perpetuate his good fortune! The arrangement of the lines, the assignment of the place of every one of the Amīrs, Maliks, Grandees, and Šadr̄s, with their followings and lependants, the disposition of the standards and banners, he donning of arms, the preservation of every one's rank, which Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam directed, he himself saw to, y moving from one end of the lines to the other, placing very one in the place which had been assigned to him.

That concourse of people presented such a tremendous ppearance, that the ear of the heavens, at the din of the ymbals and kettle-drums, the cries of the trumpeting elephants, the neighings of the prancing horses, and the vociferations of the people, became deaf, and the eye of the malicious and envious blind. When the Turkistān emissaries<sup>1</sup> mounted and set out from the Shahr-i-Nau [of Jilū-kharī], and their sight fell upon that concourse, their right was such from the awe inspired by that immense concourse and the warlike apparatus, that the danger was lest the bird of their souls should take wing from their bodies. It is most likely—indeed it is the fact—that, at the time of the charge of the trumpeting elephants, some of<sup>2</sup> those emissaries got thrown from their horses and fell to the ground. May the Most High God avert the evil eye from this kingdom and realm, capital and army, and the Maliks of the dynasty!

When the emissaries<sup>3</sup> reached the city gate, by the royal command, and the approval of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, all the Maliks observed the custom of going to receive them, and, in doing honour to the emissaries' party, observed towards them] the usages of respect, and with due reve-

<sup>1</sup> They are so-called here in all the copies of the text collated, with a single exception, but, hitherto, they have always been styled emissaries "from Khurāsān," and "of Khurāsān," and the context proves the above a mistake for Khurāsān, because they came from thence, and not from Turkistān. See page 59.

<sup>2</sup> They and their followers must be meant, as the emissaries were but three in all.

<sup>3</sup> These persons came with no political object: merely respecting this matrimonial alliance with Ulugh Khān, and therefore I have neither styled them envoys nor "ambassadors from" Hulākū Khān, but Ulugh Khān evidently wished to let them see the Delhi forces to the best advantage, and carry back a good report of them.

rence conducted them to the *Ḳaṣr-i-Sabz* [the Green Castle] and before the exalted throne of sovereignty. On that day, the Castle of Sovereignty was adorned with various kinds of carpets and cushions, and a variety of princely articles of luxury and convenience, both of gold and silver, and round about the royal throne two canopies<sup>4</sup>, one red and the other black, adorned with jewels of great price, were extended. The golden throne ornamented with the *masnad* [seat] of empire, and the series of illustrious Maliks, great Amīrs, distinguished Ṣadrs, eminent personages, the handsome young Turk slaves with golden girdles, and the champions in pomp and pride ranged around, made the assembly halls studded with gems, and saloons burnished with gold, seem like unto the garden of bliss, and the eighth heaven, so that the [following] lines having become applicable to the occasion, and having been pronounced before the exalted throne by one of the sons of this suppliant, from his composition, are here introduced. [These lines are a mere repetition of the same fulsome epithets and exaggerated figures as are found in the preceding and following prose, and are scarcely worth insertion here.]

Thou mightest with truth say that that assembly was as a heaven full of stars, or like a firmament teeming with planets. The sovereign of the universe on the throne appeared as a sun from the fourth heaven, with *Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam* in attendance as a shining moon, kneeling upon the knees of veneration and reverence, the Maliks in rows like unto revolving planets, and the Turks in their gold and gem-studded girdles like unto stars innumerable.

In short, all this arrangement, and preparation, and [these] different matters, were carried out with the approval and wise counsel, and sagacious conception of *Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam*, for, although the Sultān of Sultāns, in conformity with the Prophet's sayings, accords to him the position of a father, nevertheless he is more obedient and submissive than a thousand newly-purchased slaves.<sup>5</sup> So

<sup>4</sup> If *ṣāḥ*—signified an *umbrella* merely, it would scarcely be applicable here. What canopies of state are may be seen from Plate vii. to Blochmann's Translation of the *Ā'in-i-Akbarī*

<sup>5</sup> I should imagine that this remark—in fact the whole of this account—



the emissaries, after their reception, were conducted, after receiving various marks of favour, and different benefits were conferred upon them, to the assigned place prepared for their residence.

It is necessary at this place to mention what was the motive of the arrival of these emissaries from the country of Khurāsān,<sup>6</sup> and from Hulā'ū [Hulākū] Khān, the Mughal, and how it fell out. The facts of the matter are these, that Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Malik Ḥasan the Ḳarluḡh—The Almighty's mercy be upon him!—perhaps, entertained a strong inclination to cause a pearl from the oyster shell of his family to be transferred to the string of marriage to Shāh,<sup>7</sup> the son of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, in order that, through that union, he [Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad] might display his glory over the Malikis of the time and the great rulers of the world, and that that connexion might be a means of strength to him, and a source of security. On this subject he wrote secretly and confidentially, to one of the servants of the household of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, and endeavoured to obtain an inkling as to the possibility of the [proposed] connexion, and intimated that he himself would, under this veil, submit the matter for the august consideration of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, by way of sincerity and duty. As Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Ḥasan the Ḳarluḡh, was one of the illustrious Malikis of his day,<sup>8</sup> it became necessary, on the

clearly proves that Ulugh Khān was not Sulṭān when this was written. It is somewhat remarkable that our author has never once mentioned whether Ulugh Khān had obtained his freedom or not. We must hence suppose that he had not, for our author would scarcely have omitted to mention such an important fact.

<sup>6</sup> The following six paragraphs are what, in ELLIOT [page 383, vol. II.], is said, by the Editor, to be "*a long digression of no interest*."

<sup>7</sup> All the copies of the text are alike here, but it is very certain that Ulugh Khān's son must have had some other name prefixed to the word Shāh, but no son of his is mentioned in history of whose name Shāh forms a part.

<sup>8</sup> See Thomas PATHAN KINGS, page 98. It is there stated that he, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Ḳarluḡh, "*seem.* to have succeeded to his father's dominions in *Sind*, and to have been held in consideration as a powerful monarch. He was still reigning on the arrival of the ambassadors of Hulāḡū Khān in A. H. 658." His holding dominions in *Sind* is entirely erroneous. Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, held *Sind* in 658 H., and was still holding it when this history was brought to a conclusion, and where the dominions of the Ḳarluḡh lay will be found in the following statement, and likewise the proof respecting 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān's still holding *Sind* and Multān also.

part of Ulugh Khān, to give an answer on the subject, and his consent to the connexion. He, accordingly, directed one of the middle rank among his retinue to bear the answer to this request, and that bearer, a Khalj, they used to style by the name of the Hājib-i-Ajall [the most worthy Chamberlain], Jamāl-ud-Dīn, 'Alī.

On this Khalj being nominated to this important matter, he obtained from the royal revenue department an order for a number of captives, on account of unavoidable necessities, and the expenses of the road,<sup>1</sup> and to enable him to get over his journey. When he set out upon the road, at the different stations and stages, the toll-collectors, on the way, continued to demand of him and expect payment of the established tolls and fixed cesses, and the Hājib, 'Alī, continued, in this manner, to repudiate them [saying] : " I am an agent [and therefore exempt]. "

By the time he had got over the stages and stations within the kingdom [of Dihlī] and reached the territory of Sind, the report of his being on a mission became public ; and, when he passed on to Multān, and from thence to Uchchah, Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, commanded that he should be summoned.<sup>1</sup> So they summoned the Hājib, 'Alī, and detained him,<sup>2</sup> and demanded of him the letters he was bearing, that they might become acquainted with the nature, import, and contents of the documents. The Hājib, 'Alī, denied his mission ; but, when the affair assumed severity, on being constrained, he avowed, in the presence of the Mughal Shahnagān [Intendants]<sup>3</sup> : " I am an Emis-

This Nāṣir-ud Dīn, Muḥammad, the Karluḡ, is the same who presented himself to Sulṭān Rāṣiyyat when in the Panjāb in 637 H., and was probably personally known to Ulugh Khān. See page 644, and note 7.

<sup>1</sup> These slaves or captives must have been given him for the purpose of being sold to provide for the expenses of his journey as occasion required, after the same fashion as our author obtained a grant of forty head to send to his " dear sister " in Khurāsān. These captives could have been of no other use to him, and the object is evident.

TAVERNIER says, respecting an ambassador of the king of Mingrelia whom he saw at Constantinople when he was there, " The first time of his audience, he had a train of above 200 persons. But every day he sold two or three to defray his expenses. "

<sup>2</sup> See note 2, preceding page

<sup>3</sup> The Calcutta Printed Text has سواطد—chastizing, &c., instead of سواخو—delaying, postponing, and the like

<sup>4</sup> The word is in the plural here—شعنان. This conduct on the part of

sary, and I am going upwards." Having, in the presence of that assembly<sup>4</sup>, made such a statement, Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū-Khān, as a matter of necessity, gave over requiring aught from him, and said: "It is necessary for thee to proceed, that I may have thee taken to thy place of destination." The Hājib, 'Alī, replied: "My orders are on this wise, that I should proceed to the presence of Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Ḥasan the Ḳarlugh," and, consequently, Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban, was under the necessity of allowing him to proceed in the direction indicated.

When the Hājib, 'Alī, reached the *khittah* [district or country] of Baniān, the report of his coming from the borders of Dihlī, on a mission, having become published and disseminated among the Mughal Shahnagān [Intendants], and the gentle and simple of that territory, Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Ḥasan, the Ḳarlugh, had to send him, perforce<sup>5</sup>, towards 'Irāk and Āzarbāijān, to the presence of Hulā'ū, the Mughal, and he [Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Ḥasan], of his own accord, and without the sanction of this Court [the Court of Dihlī], indited letters as from the dear tongue of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, and, sending some small present along with the Hājib, 'Alī, despatched him along with confidential persons of his own.

On arriving in the neighbourhood of the 'Irāk territory, they reached Hulā'ū's presence in the city of Tabriz of Āzarbāijān. Hulā'ū treated the Hājib, 'Alī, with much honour, and showed him great consideration. At the time they desired to read out the letters unto Hulā'ū, the Accursed, it became necessary to translate them from the Persian into the Mughalī language. In the letters they had written the name of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, '*Malik*,' for the

Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, shows that he had thrown off all dependence on the Court of Dihlī, but he does not appear to have benefited much from so doing, as he was now a mere vassal of the Mughals.

<sup>4</sup> The word *مجلس* is used here, with reference to the Mughal Shahnagān, and shows that Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān must have had several—more than one, at least—of the Mughal Intendants to take care of him.

<sup>5</sup> Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, also, had been obliged to succumb to the Mughals, and receive their Shahnagān. He will be referred to again.

These last three paragraphs prove how erroneous is Mr Thomas's statement, mentioned in note <sup>6</sup>, page 859.

custom of Turkistān is this, that there is but one supreme ruler, no more, and him they do not style Malik, but Khān, and all others have the name of *Malik*<sup>6</sup>. So, when they read out the letters to Hulā'ū, the Mughal, he said: "Why have ye given an equivalent for the name Ulugh Khān? it behoveth that his designation of Khān be preserved." Such honour and respect did he esteem fit to show towards Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam. Every person of the Khāns of the countries of Hind and Sind, who proceeded to the presence of the Khāns and rulers of the Mughals, they altered the title of, and styled them all simply '*Malik*,' with this exception of the name of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam which they recognized as it originally stood. This is one, among the proofs of the Divine grace, that both friend and foe, believer and unbeliever, mention his august name with veneration:—"This is the grace of God which He bestows on whomsoever He pleaseth; and God is the possessor of great grace."<sup>7</sup>

When the Hājib, 'Alī, was dismissed, on his return, the Shahnah [Intendant] of the *khuttah* [territory] of Banlān, who was the son<sup>8</sup> of Amīr Yagh-rash<sup>9</sup>, a famous person, and a respected Musalmān, was nominated by Hulā'ū to accompany him, and Hulā'ū sent orders to the Mughal forces which would be under the standard of Sāri [Sālī], the Nū-in, saying: "If the hoof of a horse of your troops shall have entered the ground of the dominions of the Sultān of Sultāns, Nāṣir-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh—God perpetuate his reign!—the command unto

<sup>6</sup> The Calcutta Printed Text is a mere jumble of words here.

<sup>7</sup> KUR'AN: chap. lvi verse 21

<sup>8</sup> Why then is his name not given as well as his father's? The Mughal troops had, at this time, been nearly three years—from the end of 655 H.—on the western frontier of the Iḥlīf kingdom, and this fact does not speak much for its power. Perhaps internal dissension prevented vigorous measures being taken against them. For what purpose this person came to Iḥlīf does not appear, unless it was to inform the Sultān of Sultāns, that, out of respect for Ulugh Khān, his troops had been directed not to molest the narrowed frontier on the Bīāh.

<sup>9</sup> This name is somewhat uncertain, and may possibly be Ragh-rash. It is written برش as above in three copies, including two of the oldest, and in others برش and برش.

<sup>1</sup> We may scarcely suppose that our author wishes us to believe that these are the *exact* words of Hulā'ū Khān's order

you is this, that all four feet of such horse be lopped off." Such like security did the Most High God miraculously vouchsafe unto the kingdom of Hindūstān through the felicity attending the rectitude of the Ulugh-Khān's counsels.

When the emissaries reached the capital, the sovereign of Islām, in requital and return for that honour which Hulā'ū, the Mughal, had been pleased to show towards the Hājib of this Court<sup>a</sup>, conformable with the saying, "Verily the reward of kindness should be nought save kindness"—great favour was lavished upon his emissaries likewise. This [which has been related] was the reason of the arrival of the emissaries of Khurāsān and the troops<sup>a</sup> of Turkistān.

May the Most High God long preserve the Sultān of Islām, NĀSIR-UD-DUNYĀ WA UD-DĪN, ABŪ-L-MUZAFFAR-I-MAHMUD SHĀH, upon the throne of sovereignty, and the prosperity of the Khākān-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, in successive increase and augmentation, for the sake of Muḥammad and his posterity!

<sup>a</sup> At page 860, he is said to have been a Hājib of Ulugh Khān's own household. No doubt, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, was acquainted with the matter of this proposed alliance from the outset.

<sup>a</sup> This remark is unintelligible save as referring to a retinue or escort accompanying this nameless person, the son of the Shāhnāh of Banīān, and the other nameless persons who accompanied him. The word used is لکھ, signifying an army, a body of troops, large or small. As to emissaries, there is only one mentioned here—the person above referred to, but, in the account of Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Balban-i-Kashlū Khān, our author states that he despatched his own agents along with the Mughal Shāhnāh [at page 860 the plural is used—Shāhnagān] of Hind, on account of the Mughal army being on the Dhlī frontier, to the Sultān's presence. Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Ḳarluḡh, in all probability, also despatched an emissary of his own with Ulugh Khān's Hājib. Our author is either very reticent or appears not to have known the upshot of these matters when he finished this work, for he says, at page 786, "Please God it may turn out well and advantageously." It is also plainly apparent that both Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān and Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Ḳarluḡh, could not act independently, and that our Mughal Shāhnāhs must have had the control of their affairs.

It is much to be regretted that our author has not given us more particulars respecting these events, and particularly of the last six years of the reign of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh. It would have been interesting to have known the upshot of Malik Balban-i-Kashlū Khān's career, and whether the matrimonial alliance took place between the son of Ulugh Khān, and the Ḳarluḡh chief's daughter, and many other interesting matters, which are not to be found in any subsequent writer.

We have again returned to our history, and the last of the events thereof is this, that Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, having carried out, after the manner [before related], holy-war upon the infidels of the Koh-pāyah with such condign severity, a large number of the remainder of the kinsmen of those rebels, who, previous to that, had escaped from the neighbourhood of the Koh-pāyah from the hand of the troops and defenders of Islām—may victory ever attend them!—and fled into different parts, and, by great stratagems, had managed to preserve their abominable lives under the protection of flight from the keen swords of the retainers of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam's house, began, a second time, to renew their sedition, and commenced to infest the roads and to shed the blood of Musalmāns, and, by reason of the violence of that gathering, the roads were perilous. This fact being brought to the august hearing of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, he despatched intelligencers, informers, and spies, so that they reconnoitred the remaining positions of the rebels, and made thorough inquiry as to the present whereabouts of those vagabonds. On Monday, the 24th of the month of Rajab, 658 H, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, mounted with his own following, the forces of [the contingents composing] the centre [division], and other troops of the Maliks and warriors, issued from Dihli and pushed on towards the Koh-pāyah, in suchwise that, in one march, he proceeded about fifty *kuroh* or more<sup>4</sup>, came unexpectedly upon that gathering, captured the whole of them, and put about 12,000 persons, consisting of men and women, and their children, to the sword. All the passes, defiles, and the crests of the hills, were purified of the bodies of the rebels by the wounds of the swords of the Auxiliaries of the Truth, and much booty was captured. Praise be unto God for this victory of Islām, and honour to its votaries!

This much, which had been witnessed of that dynasty by the author, came under the pen of sincerity—from

<sup>4</sup> There is not a word about *kurs* in the whole text. Fifty *kuroh* is not a very astonishing distance for a forced march of cavalry, and is not more wonderful than the previous one of the same distance mentioned at page 851. Compare

readers and examiners he is hopeful of benediction, and, from the possessors of dominion, hopeful of honour, that which is hoped for through God the Beneficent, and that asked for through God the Merciful—in the month of Shawwāl<sup>6</sup>, in the year 658 H.

Praise be unto God, and blessings upon His Prophet, and progeny, and his companions all, through Thy mercy, O Thou Most Merciful of the Merciful !

<sup>6</sup> Shawwāl is the tenth-month. In the account of Malik Nusrat-ud-Dīn, Sher Khān-i-Sunkar, page 799, he states that he finished it in Rajah, the seventh month.

ADDITIONAL NOTE.—As I am unacquainted with the Turkish language Mr. Arthur Grote was kind enough to refer, at my suggestion, a List of the less known Turkish titles and names occurring in this and the preceding Sections, but in this one more particularly, with the various readings and the names pointed, as in the very old MS. of our author's work in my possession, to Professor A. Vambery, to ask him if he could submit them to some Turkish scholar for elucidation. In reply, the Professor himself has been so good as to supply the following explanations; but, while tendering to that gentleman my best thanks for the trouble he has taken, I fear I cannot possibly adopt his solutions of the difficulty, with two or three exceptions, for reasons here mentioned.—

Page 720—اوغ کتلیغ—“(Ulug Kutlug) the great blessed, can be taken as a proper name as well as for an attribute paid generally to princes. To kutlug corresponds the Arab كاتب and Mongol Oldjatu.”

The Professor seems to read گ—gh—as simple ک—k—which is not correct. Of the meaning of Ulug there was no doubt.

Page 722—کرک—“Judging by the subsequent کاک is a proper name, and is probably instead of کاک kudjak = the mighty, the powerful. کرک can only signify a knife, in kmg [?] dialect.”

There was no doubt of its being a name or title, but, in the majority of copies collated, it is written with ج—j—, not with ز, or with ک.

Page 722—“هالابان—halaban, a bird of prey, a much used proper name.”

The word in my List is هلبان—not هالابان—which does not occur in any work I have ever met with.

Page 725—“کیر خان مگرلی—an erroneous transcription of مینگری—ming-krī = he broke, annihilated thousands. (2) مگرلی—mengerli = he was like. (Instead of mangit [sic in MS.]), of the tribe of مغت—mangut.”

As the name is not written with م—m—it cannot possibly refer to any tribe called ‘Mangit.’ The second definition is nearer the mark—but not with two ه's—and that reading, viz. —مگرلی—was given in my List. It is by no means improbable, although it only occurs in one of the copies of the text collated, that the fifth consonant should be ه instead of م—a mistake which is very liable to arise, and, from what our author him-<sup>self</sup> states at page 725, that he

was styled Ayāz-i-Hazār-Mardāh, that is Ayāz [in prowess] equal to a thousand men, the first signification is not inapplicable

Page 727—"ایم for ایم—*yātim* = a youngster, a lad?"

This definition will certainly not apply to the person in question.

Pages 513, 729, &c—"ایبل for *eybel*, *iybel*, also *eybil*, decidedly the name of a bird (swan, *hoohoo*, the Arab کوکب and Osmanlı—چاوش قوشی = *chaush kushu*) frequently used as a nickname in older Turkish writings."

From the way the word is pointed it cannot be read otherwise than *ī-bak*, which is fully described in some of the best lexicons as a Turki word, with the definitions I have given to it at pages 513 and 729, and is frequently used in Persian Histories, as our author's work shows. What will Mr. Blochmann say to the above definition? Fancy Kutb-ud-Dīn, the Swan! The Arabic—کوکب—*kūkū*, signifies the cooing of a dove, not a swan

Page 732—"تایسی—instead of تاشی—*taishi* = a writer, a secretary. It is a Chinese word, and occurs in Vas'al's and Sherefeddin's works"

Since note \*, page 732, was written, I find the word تایشی—*Tā-ishī*—repeatedly used in the History of Amīr Timur, the *Gūrgin*—Abu l-Ghāzī, Bahādur Khān, in his *Shajarah-ul-Atrak*, says a man possessing this voice is so styled, and Vambéry says it is Chinese for a writer, but he has evidently confounded it with the Turkish word *Bük-ghī*, which bears that signification. There cannot be any doubt of its being a Turkish word, and it is undoubtedly a title of rank. It is therefore clear that the words in the text—تایسی and تایشی—are meant for تایشی—*Tā-ishī*. The only difficulty in adopting this solution of the matter is, that a Turk of that rank should have been in a state of bondage; but he may have been taken captive in some of the constant feuds between the Turks of the Tāttār and Mughal i-māk, and sold as a slave

Page 731—"چان تات—*Yughān-Tat*—I his title the Professor defines thus—"چان تات—instead of *ayghan tat* = the named foreigner"

The above definition is wholly out of the question with respect to Kutb-ud-Dīn, *ī-bak*, who received the title of *Yughān-Tat*, on account of, or, after his capturing several elephants in Bang

Page 761—"توگرل—*Toghrul* = a proper name, not the righteous as hitherto believed, but *toghrul* = the breaker, from *toghrumak* = to put in pieces."

Here the Professor writes *ع* correctly with *gh*, but the definition of this well known word, which depends upon the pointing, is thus described in a very trustworthy work before referred to—"Spelt '*Tughrul*,' it signifies a species of the falcon tribe used in the chase"—and, as plainly indicated by our author farther on, page 936, with reference to the Wang Khān—"and '*Tughul*,' the name of a man," which may signify "the breaker." Moreover one noble is named *Tughul-i-Yughān Khān*. See page 743

Page 742—"توران تیرکان—Either a displacement of توران خان *Tamur kuran khān* = the iron breaking Khan, or tamur who defeated Kamreddin"

The Iron [like] Khān would be appropriate, and the word *tamur*—iron—has already been described at page 742.

Page 746—"کاش خان ایکن—*Kāsh khān aykin* = the man named



Kara kash khan. *Kara kash* = black eyebrow, is a frequently-used proper name."

Undoubtedly it is the name of a man, and *may* mean the Black-eyebrowed, but what does Aet-kin mean? The former is also written قرا گوش—*Qari Qūsh*.

Page 748—"الثوبه—instead of الثوبه يامي—*altun yay* [yāhī?] = the golden bow."

*Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn* of the Golden bow is not inapplicable, but the word signifying gold is written either أثنى or أثان with long ā—ا.

Page 752—"سنگر—*senkar, shonkar* = a bird of prey, a hawk"

*Sunkar*, as it is written, on the authority before referred to, which gives the meanings of some—but not all, I regret to say—Turkī words, signifies a black-eyed falcon of a particular species. See note \* to the page above referred to.

Page 754—"ثقلی—*kabakluk* = the gross, the thick; or a mistake of the copyist instead of *kulluk* = مارك

The word in the majority of the copies of the text collated has ثقلی—*kik-luk*, with the vowel points, but two copies have certainly ثقلی, and the first meaning assigned to it is not inapplicable, i. e. *Tāj-ud-Dīn*, Sanjar, the Stout or Gross. The Professor previously said that *kulluk* meant مارك.

Page 756—"كرت خان—*Kerit khan* a title = the prince of *Kerit*, a known Turkish tribe."

This I look upon as wholly inadmissible, because the *Karāyat*—كرایت—tribe—not كريت certainly—so famous in the history of the Mughals, as will be found farther on, was a purely Mughal tribe, and *Karāyat* signifies dark or swarthy. The Malik referred to at page 756 was a Turk, and not of the Mughal Ī-māk.

Page 673—"ملك بكم اور خان—The incomprehensible part is بكم and here I suppose it to be an orthographical mistake for بكم—*yekitum* = my champion, a hero."

The word may possibly be بكم as a single point makes all the difference, but it might, after the same fashion, be meant for بكم or بكم and the like, but the next question is, as اور is not translated with it, whether "my champion" is possible or not. I rather think it is not.

Page 775—"بالان كشلو—*balaban keshlu* or *keshlu* = of the tribe *Balaban*. *Keshi* [or ?] *kushi* means a person, an individual, but *keshlu* [sic in MS] or *kushlu*, if preceded by a proper name, signifies a man of. Thus *L'igar kushlu* = a man of the Uigur tribe; *balaban kushlu* = a man of the Balaban tribe."

Unfortunately for these definitions the word I submitted was بالی—*balaban*—not بالان—*balabān*, and this latter word has already been stated to mean "a bird of prey, a much-used proper name." Since these words were submitted to the learned Professor, I have found, beyond a doubt, according to my authorities, as will be found farther on, that *Kashlū Khān* is a title, and it is said, in the history of the Mughals, that *Koshlak Khān*, the Nāemān, was entitled *Kashlū* and *Kashlī Khān*, which title is said to be the same in signification as *Koshlak*, who is also called *Kojlak Khān*. "A man of" therefore is entirely out of the question for *Kashlū* here, at least.

Page 831—"چماق—rock. چماق = a block, a hatchet. قرا چماق—*kara chumak* = the black hatchet, a proper name."

This rendering is not improbable, and not unlike many other Turkish nick-names, but between a *block* and a *hatchet* there is a great difference except

---

when they come together. In the work I have before alluded to چاماق—Chumāk (in the text it is جاماق—Jamāk) is described as an iron mace of six points or divisions.

From the above result, I fear that a satisfactory solution of the correct significations of these titles and names, with the few exceptions referred to, must remain in abeyance until some good Dictionary of the old Turkish language shall be forthcoming.

## SECTION XXIII.

### THE AFFAIRS OF ISLĀM, AND IRRUPTION OF THE INFIDELS.

[As our author relates here the various prophecies respecting the end of the world, of which the irruption of the Mughals was one of the chief indications, I need scarcely follow him, since the world has not yet come to an end, although more than six centuries have elapsed since he foretold it, and closed his history, and, therefore, I may pass over these matters altogether, and begin where he commences his relation of events.]<sup>1</sup>

Notwithstanding that, by the will of the Almighty, and the decrees of Destiny, the turn of sovereignty passed unto the Chingiz Khān<sup>2</sup>, the Accursed, and his descendants, after

<sup>1</sup> This is, perhaps, the most interesting portion of our author's work ; and it contains much information not hitherto known, and many important particulars respecting the Panjāb, Sind, and Hindūstān, and throws additional light on other events mentioned in the preceding Sections. This highly important portion has not been given at all by ELLIOT in the extracts from our author's work contained in the second vol. of his "Historians of India."

<sup>2</sup> Chingiz or Chingiz Khān signifies "THE GREAT KHAN," and therefore, although apparently pedantic, that is the correct mode of writing his title, which will be explained farther on.

I did not intend to give an account of the descendants of Yāhg, son of Nūh, but, perhaps, it will be well to do so, since many persons appear to entertain very erroneous ideas respecting Turke, Tātārs, and Mughals, and respecting their correct names, and as our author here has also made some errors respecting the last-named people. I shall be as brief as possible ; but I fear that, in giving this account, I shall seriously interfere with some people's theories on the subject.

This account is taken from several histories which I will name, in order that I may not have constantly to quote them, viz :—'Abd-ullah bin Khurdād-bih, Tārīkh-i-Fanākati, Jāmi'-ut Tawārīkh of the Wazīr, Raghd-ud-Dīn, Tārīkh-i-Ghāzāni, Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr, Tārīkh-i-Alfi, Shajarah-ul-Atrāk, Mujmal-i-Fawā'id, Tārīkh-i-Yāfa-i, Tārīkh-i-Guzidah, Tārīkh-i-Jahān-Kushāe of the Jūwāni, Tārīkh-i-Jahān-Ārā, Lubh ut Tawārīkh, Tārīkh-i-Ibrāhīmī, Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh, Rauzat-us-Safā, Habīb-us-Siyar, Majāmi'-ul-Khiyār, Tārīkh-i-Abū l-Ghāzi, Behādur Khān, and the Akbar-Nāmāh, the last of



## Tūrān and the East fell under the sway of the Mughals

and into which seventy rivers fall, but the lake is salt, and some say the water is warm."

**Chîn**, son of **Yāfiṣ**, was very clever, and inventive, and among other things invented by him was the custom of winding silk (from the cocoon), and weaving silken textures. He had a son whom he named **Mā-Chîn**, who was exceedingly wise. When the latter's family became numerous, he said to his father that he would construct a place of abode for himself, and he founded the city of **Mi Chîn**. He acquired the jade stone, and discovered its properties and virtues and made it known to his people, and he also took musk from the musk-deer.

**Khurz**, son of **Yāfiṣ**, was very mild, tractable, and taciturn, and, having roamed about in all directions, at length fixed his residence by the bank of the river **Ātil**—**آتل**. In the summer season he dwelt [with his family] in the open country, and, in winter, in a town [**شهر**]<sup>1</sup>—a fixed habitation, probably.

**Saklāb**, son of **Yāfiṣ**, made some request to the chief of his *ulūs* or tril—<sup>one writer says, to Gumārī, Khurz, and Rūs, to be allowed to dwell with them—which was not granted, and, on this account, enmity arose between them.</sup> Others say, that the descendants of **Saklāb**, having become much more numerous than the others, came to a fight with their kinsmen, but, being worsted, took up their residence in more distant parts, farther west, beyond the seventh clime, where the cold is great. They appear to have not only made up their feud in these latter days, A. D. 1876, but also, for political purposes, to have merged into one people. 'Abd-ullah-i-Khurdād-bih calls him **Sag-lāb**—**سگلاب**—and says that he was suckled by a bitch, hence the name, and which if true, may account for the very Christian-like proclivities manifested lately by his simple-minded "Christian" descendants, so-called, in cutting off ears, lips, noses, and heads, and otherwise mutilating their dead foes, a very dog-like disposition. They—the *Slavs* of European writers—are notorious for such-like acts, as *Tacitus* and *Procopius* testify.

**Rūs**, son of **Yāfiṣ**, is the ancestor of the **Rūsāns** [Russians]. Being held in little account, and without sufficient means, he continued, for some time, to dwell along with **Saklāb**, but, subsequently, left him. Among the descendants of **Rūs** the custom prevails of giving the parents' whole inheritance to the daughters, and nothing but a sword to the sons.

**Mang**, or **Mansag**, son of **Yāfiṣ**, was full of deceit and artifice, and he took up his dwelling on the side of **Bulghār**. There is the land of the **Ghuzz** and the whole of that race are his descendants, from his son, named **Ghuzz**, and they are the worst of the descendants of **Yāfiṣ**. Some few writers say "the worst of the Turks," but to be Turks they must have been descended from Turk, which does not appear to have been the case. After the decease of **Yāfiṣ**, **Mansag** managed to get possession of the rain stone, and it remained with the **Ghuzz**, but, on one occasion, when Turk required it to bring rain, he sent and demanded the stone from them. They substituted a false one and sent it, which being discovered, strife arose, and numbers of the **Ghuzz** family were killed in consequence, and, from that time, enmity has continued between the Turks and Turk-māns. [See under **Āghūr**, farther on, for the origin of this name.] **Ghuzz**'s eldest son was killed in this affair. He was named **Beghū**—**بغی**—which is also written **Beghūn**—**بغون**—the *β* being nasal, and hence the Turk-māns style themselves **Beghū**. See note <sup>1</sup>, page 374, at note <sup>2</sup>, page 433.

**Gumārī** (Gomer of European historians who is also called **Kīmāl** or **Gīm**

and that the authority of the Muḥammadan religion de-

and Kīmān or Gīmān and Gīmāl, &c., as previously stated], son of Yāfiṣ, was addicted to pleasure and jollity, and passionately fond of the chase; and he took up his residence in the part which is known as Bulghār. He had two sons:—1. Bulghār, and 2. Barjās, and the Māshkrūfān—ماشكروان—probably, the Bāshghrūfān or Bāshkrūfān—باشكروان or باشكروان—[the Bāshkurs?] are of their seed. Barjās took up his quarters on the side of Bulghār, and the taking of furs is attributed to him. Bulghār is the ancestor of the Bulghārs, vul. Bulgarians, and therefore are not Saqlabs [Slavs].

Some historians are of opinion that the Yūnānīān, and Rūmīān [Ionians and Romans], are descended from Gumārī, otherwise Kīmāl or Gīmāl, and that Yā-jūy and Mā-jūy [Gog and Mā-gog]—who, probably, are the ancestors of the Samoydes—were likewise sons of Gumārī.

No account whatever is given of the eighth son of Yāfiṣ—Tārāj, Tārakh, or Bārakh.

This is the genealogy of the descendants of Yāfiṣ, son of Nūh, but, as such numbers of tribes have sprung from them as cannot be easily enumerated, and, as the object of the writers was merely to give an account of the Turks, they do not chronicle much more respecting the other sons of Yāfiṣ, but concentrate their attention on the movements of his eldest son, Turk.

Yāfiṣ, son of Nūh, having died at the age of 250—some say 240—years, Turk was chosen head of his people, and they styled him Yāfiṣ Ughlān, or the Younger Yāfiṣ. The vast tract of country, called Turkistān, takes its name from him. He is said to have been contemporary with Gaiū-murt, the first of the Malikis of 'Ajām, and he was the first who was chosen Khān among the children of Yāfiṣ. The Jāmi'-i-'Uzm states that he succeeded to the authority at a place named Sfiūk—سفوك.

He had four sons:—1. Tūnak or Tūnag—توناك—but, according to some, his name was Tūtag or Tūtak—توتاك. 2. Jinkal—جنگل—also written Jikal or Jigal—جكل—and Chukal or Chigal—چكل. [This latter name is still known, and is now applied to a small tract of country], 3. Barsinjūr—برسنجور—and Barsinjūr—برسنجور and 4. Amīlak or Imīlak—املاك which may be written also Amīlagh or Imīlagh—املاخ.

Tūnag, or Tūnak or Tūtak or Tūtag, took up his quarters on the banks of the river Ātil, but the dwelling places of the other brothers are not mentioned.

At this point considerable discrepancy occurs among the authors quoted, respecting the successor of Turk, entitled Yāfiṣ Ughlān. With a single exception they state that, when his end drew near, Turk made over the chieftainship to his son, whom they styled Alminjah—المنجه—Almīn Jah—المنجه—and Aln Jah—المنجه. In some works—Iljah—الجه—Īn Jah—الجه—and Īl Jah—الجه. Turk, however, had no son so called, even by their own accounts, for, as regards the names of his four sons, previously given, they all agree except the Ḥabīb-us-Siyar, in some copies of which Turk is said to have had five sons, of whom Alminjah—المنجه—was the eldest, but this, although apparently correct from what follows, is contrary to every other work I have named, except Abū-l-Ḥārī's, which again is different to all others. It is possible that Alminjah was a grandson of Turk, and son of one of the four named above.

Abū-l-Ḥārī, Bahādur Khān, states, that "Turk, at his death, bequeathed his sovereignty to his son Tūnak" [Tūtak or Tūtag, previously mentioned], and that "Tūnak left the sovereignty to Jalrah [جلراخ] his son." This

parted from those regions, which became the seat of

Jalzah may be meant for Alinjah or the like, but I must mention that Abū-l-*Ghāzī* is the *most modern* of all the authors I have referred to, he having only begun his History in 1074 H. = 1663 A.D., and that, in one place in his work, he states that he himself copied from other authors what is contained therein down to the time of his ancestor *Shahānī Khān*, the contemporary and enemy of Bābar. Those authors must have been some of those whose works I have already named; but Abū-l-*Ghāzī* differs from them essentially, and can scarcely be considered a better authority than those who centuries previously compiled the history of the descendants of Yāfiḡ by command of Mughal sovereigns, and from the best authorities.

For the above reasons I must assume that Turk was succeeded by his grandson, Alminjah or Alinjah, possibly the son of Tūtag or Tūnag.

III. ALMINJAH—*ألمنج*—or ALINJAH—*المنج*—having succeeded, during his chieftainship the whole of the Turk tribes forsook the true faith [of their ancestor Yāfiḡ] and turned pagans. When he became stricken in years he resigned the chieftainship to his son, Dib-bākūe.

IV. DIB-BĀKŪE—*دب بادوی*—also written Dib-bādīkūe—*دب بادوی*—Dib-bākūn—*دب بادون*—and Dib-yākūn—*دب باقو*—and Dib-bākūe—*دب بادوی*—the son of Alminjah or Alinjah, succeeded his father, and, in his chieftainship, all the Turks took the road of error and perversity. *Dib* signifies throne, grandeur, possession, and *bākūe*, great, venerable, and the like. He had four sons.

V. KIWAK—*کوک*—also written Kiwak—*کوک*—by some, Kjuk, and by two authors Kūr, or Gūr—*کور*—another son of Alminjah or Alinjah, but, according to some, his eldest son, succeeded to the chieftainship over the Turks. He became an idol worshipper according to the Fanākatī, who then makes a sudden leap to *Āghūz Khān* who does not belong to this dynasty at all. Others state however that Kiwak did not deviate from the just and virtuous path of his forefathers.

VI. I now come to a period respecting which all the authors named, with a single exception, to be referred to presently, agree, namely, that wherein Kiwak was succeeded by his son, ALINJAH—*المنج*—*Khān*, during whose chieftainship his people, filled with arrogance at their prosperity and flourishing condition, continued to fall deeper into darkness and perversity until they all became infidels. After a considerable time, two sons were born to him at one birth, to the eldest of whom he gave the name of Tāttār—*تاتار*—and to the second the name of Mughal—*مغل* which is also written Mughūl—*مغول*—and Mughūl—*مغول*—but *Mongol* is wholly erroneous. I cannot imagine how it ever came to be adopted. When Alinjah became old and infirm, and his two sons had grown up, he divided his territory between them, giving to each a half, and retired from the world. The two brothers appear to have ruled jointly, and in harmony, for some time, but, eventually, separation took place between them, and two sects or tribes arose, which authors call by the Turkish words *Ī-māk*—*ایماق*—*Ī-māgh*—*ایماغ*—and *Ūt-māk*—*اوتماق*—or *Ūt-māgh*—*اوتماغ*.

It may be well to mention another matter which occurs to me here, and, although it is not a necessary or very material part of the present subject, it can scarcely be deemed foreign to it.

Those Turks—Tāttārs, and Mughals—who occupy at present the old seats of the Tājuk *Ghūrīs*, between Hirāt, Kābul, and Kāndahār ["the *Afghans* of Ghore" as they were wont, until very lately, improperly to be styled, and who are said to have "founded the 'pre-Mughal' *Padsh* dynasty of Hin-

paganism, the kingdom of Hindūstān, by the grace of

dostan"], to whom ELPHINSTONE refers in his "*Account of Cabul*," under the name of "Eimauks," still style themselves "*Chahār* [Four] *Ī-māk* or *Ū-māk*," after the same Turkish words as given above, they having been originally four tribes of those people, and the people now styled Hazārah—which word is not a proper name but derived from *hazār*, a thousand, the name given by the Mughal rulers to bodies of 1000 men, but these so-called *hazārah*s often contained many more, even 4 and 5000. One or more bodies of these troops were, with their families, stationed in those parts—once exceedingly flourishing and populous—after their conquest by the Mughals, subsequent to which period likewise the *Chahār Ī-māk* were settled therein. One of the former was the Hazārah of the Nū-yūn, Muḥah, a Karāyat Mughal, who with his *ulūs*, was sent to reside on the frontiers of Khurāsān, and occupied the tracts extending from the limits of Balkh to Bādghais of Hirāt. They were not the first, however, for, long prior to the time of the Turkish rulers of Ghazni, we find Turkish tribes settling in the N W parts of that tract of country which is called Afghānistān in later times, and in the parts between Kābul and Peshāwar, about the skirts of the Safed Koh. Elphinstone says, "Their features refer them at once to the Tartar stock, and a tradition declares them to be the offspring of the Moguls (*sic*)," and, in a foot-note, he adds: "I find it difficult to account for the number of Toorkee words which are met with in the language of those tribes. *Why, if they be Moguls, should they have spoken Toorkee?*"

"Toorkee," I beg leave to observe, is the mode in which DEW and BRIGGS thought proper to write the word Turkī—تورکی—after the absurd elegancies of a "pronouncing-dictionary," I suppose, or the Phonetic Nuz, and they appear to have been under the impression that Turk and Turkī referred solely to the 'Uṣmānī (Ottoman) Turks and their language, and that they, according to their supposition, were a totally different race from the children of the soil of Yāfēs, and so they invariably wrote the word, without any authority whatever—*Toorkee*—as if it were written in the original توری with ی which it is not. It will also be seen that Elphinstone's difficulty was a self-made one, and that the "Moguls should have spoken *Toorkee*" is not to be wondered at. He also says [vol. II p. 222] "the Moguls and Uzbeks,"—for he seems to have been unaware that the Uzbaks are Mughals in reality—"compose what we call the Tartar nation." The fact however is precisely the contrary.

BĀBAR mentions these *Chahār Ī-māk*. He styles them respectively "the Turk Ī-māk," "Hazārah Mughal," "Turk-māns," and "Īmānāf [not 'Tymunee'] Ī-māk." I have never come into contact with them myself or I would have learned the correct names of their Ī māk's and their descent, but, certainly, the Nikūdaris were included among them in former days. "*Fīrūz-kohī*" is a mere local name.

I now return to the account of the two Ī-māk's of Tāttār and Mughal, and commence with the eldest branch.

#### THE TĀTTĀR Ī-MĀK

The chiefs or sovereigns of the Tāttār Ī-mak consist of eight persons, the first of whom was the eldest of the twin sons of Alinjah Khan.

I. TĀTTĀR KHĀN—تابار خان—son of Alinjah, ruled for a considerable time, and was succeeded by his son,

II. BŪKĀ KHĀN—بوكا خان—also written, in some histories, Būkū—بوكو—who was succeeded by his son,



Almighty God, and the favour of fortune, under the shadow

III. AMINJAH—**امينج**—and, by different authors, Almjah—**المنج**—Balmjah—**بالمج**—Malinjah—**المنج**—and without points—**المنج**—which may be anything, but Abū-l-Ghāzī, contrary to all other writers, styles him Jalūzah [جلزه]. He was succeeded by his son,

IV. Ī-LEY—**ابلي**—whom some style Anṣī or Inṣī—**انسي**—and Īsley—**ايلي**—and **ابلي** without diacritical points. Abū-l-Ghāzī styles this ruler Itelah [ايله]. He was succeeded by his son,

V. ATSIZ—**اتسر**—which is written in some of the works quoted Altūr and Astur **استر** but they are evidently both intended for **اتسر** which is a well-known Turkish name. This however is a specimen of the manner in which careless copyists, ignorant of the subject copied, make correct names incorrect. Abū-l-Ghāzī calls him Atasir or Atsir [اتسر]. He was engaged in war, but against whom is not recorded. Hostility had probably already arisen between the Tātar and Mughal Ī-māk.

VI. ARDŪ or URDŪ—**ارد** also written Ardah or Urdah **ارد** son of Atsir, succeeded to the authority, and, at his death, his son,

VII. BĀIDŪ—**بايدو** succeeded to the chieftainship. He was much superior to his predecessors in power and state. He marched his forces against the Ī-māk or **لماک** of the Mughals, and hence commenced that extinguishable hostility which has ever since existed between the two sects. Abū-l-Ghāzī says he died whilst war was going on against the Mughals.

VIII. SŪNŪ KHĀN—**سون** and by some styled SUNDŪZ—**سوندز**—son of Bāidū, succeeded, but, before I say more concerning him, I must bring the Mughal Ī-māk down to his time.

THE MUGHAL OR MUGHUL ĪMĀK

This Ī-māk was ruled over by nine persons, and from this circumstance the number nine is held in great veneration by the Mughals. The first was,

I. MUGHYĀI—**مغل**—or Mughūl—**مغل**—KHĀN, second son of Almjah, who was a chieftain of great dignity. It must be remembered, however that nearly every one of the writers named at the head of this account wrote for, or under the reigns of, the Mughal sovereigns, and, consequently, nothing good is said of the Tātars. Mughal Khān had four sons: 1. Kuā KHĀN—**قوا** 2. Āwar, Āwar, or Āor KHAN—**اور** 3. Kū KHAN—**قو** 4. Kūr, or Gur KHAN—**قور**—also written Kūi or Gūi—**قور**. With respect to the second and fourth sons' names, particularly with regard to the second, considerable difference exists in these Histories. Some call him Ār or Āgur—**اور**—perhaps Āzar or Azur—**اور**—is meant, others, Āwar or Āwuz—**اور**—Āwaz or Āwuz—**اور**. And the fourth son is called Kuz, or Kawa—**قوز** or Cwuz—**قور**—and Kuz or Guz—**قور**—&c, according to the vowel points, that may be used with the word when not marked in the original.

II. KARĀ KHĀN, eldest son of Mughal Khān, succeeded his father, and in his time, most of the descendants of Turk were idol-worshippers, and but few followed the faith of their ancestors. During his reign a movement took place among his people, and he made subject the parts about Kua-Kūni, and the tracts lying between those two lofty mountain ranges which they call Ur-Tāk—**اور تاق**—or Ūr-Tāk—**اور تاق**—and Kar-Tāk—**قار تاق**—and some, War-Tāk—**قار تاق**—and Kar Tāk, or, as—**قار** is interchangeable with **قار**—**قار** in Turkish words, it may be more correctly written U-Tāgh or Ūr-Tāgh, and Kar Tāgh, or War-Tāgh and Kar Tāgh—**قار تاق**, in Turkish, signifying a range of mountains—and therein took up his *jūrat*—encamping

of the guardianship of the Shamsī race, and the shade of

ground—and his *ī-lāk* or *ī-lāgh*, or summer, and *kish-lāk* or *kish-lāgh*, or winter station. These terms are still used by the Chahār-ī-māk in Afghānistān, and even the Afghāns have, during the course of time, adopted the terms from them.

Abū-l-Ghāzī says "those mountain ranges are now [in his time] called Ulugh-Tāgh—the high, great, over topping mountains, and the Kızıl-Tāgh—the red or ruddy mountains," which are sufficiently delineated on all good maps, but under various different names. Karā Khān's *kish-lāk*, or winter quarters, was generally at the foot of the mountains in about Lat 40°, Long 94° or 95°. The name *kash*—red—occurs constantly in the names Kızıl-kol, Kızıl-kum, and the like. Another writer describes the country of the Mughal Ī-māk as bounded E by Khifī, W by the Ī-ghūr country, N by Kūīkīr [which is also written, by some, Kīrkiz, and Kūrkiz, but Mīrā Ḥaidar always writes it Kūīr-kīr—قراير—which evidently refers to the country around the Kīrkīr Nor of the Jesuits' map, and the Fārtkh-i-Alfi has Kūrkīr—قورقور. Mīrā Ḥaidar does not refer to the tribe of Khaghīz, which he always writes قراير] and S. by Kharkhez Tungūt—مردم نکوت.

Karā Khān was a tyrannical and odious infidel, and greatly feared and avoided. During his sovereignty he had a son born to him by his chief Khātūn, who received the name of Āghūz, which name refers to his refusal of nourishment from his mother's breast for three days and nights, according to the Mughal tradition—but I have not space to detail it here—because she too had become an infidel, the word Āghūz being said to mean the sound of milk taken from an ewe which has recently had young. It was usual among the Mughals not to name their offspring until they were a year old, but Āghūz turned out to be a most remarkable infant, and so he named himself, to the surprise of his parents, who were consulting upon what name to give him, crying out from his cradle "My name is Āghūz."

Āghūz Khān grew up in the true faith, which his mother returned to, and his father, Karā Khān, disavowing this, resolved to put him to death, and to take advantage of such time as Āghūz should be following the diversion of hunting in order to carry it out. Āghūz was married, in succession to three daughters of his three uncles, one of whom adopted the true faith, and she gave him intimation of his father's design, and he, being in consequence joined by numerous partisans, kept aloof from his father. At last, however, a conflict ensued between the father and son, and Āghūz slew his parent. Abū-l-Ghāzī says the father "was killed" during the rout of his followers.

III. ĀGHŪZ KHĀN — ام — also written ĀGHUZ — ام — which is equally correct, and by the Fanatikī, Ūghūz — اوغور — having succeeded to the authority, for a space of two or three years, but, according to some of the best of the Histories this account is taken from, for seventy-two or seventy-three years [seventeen years are more probable], waged war with his paternal and maternal uncles and other kinsmen and their dependents, and his own tribe, and, at length, succeeded in compelling the greater part of them to return to the true faith, and those who would not be treated with the utmost rigour. His uncles, however, with their dependents, and some of his father's likewise, fled from his territory farther to the east, to the borders of Chīn, and sought protection from the Malik of the Tātār Ī-māk. He aided them with his forces, and they marched against Āghūz Khān, but, being filled with fear and terror of him, they were put to the rout. Āghūz Khān pursued them, and even

the protection of the I-yal-timishī dynasty, became the

penetrated to the frontiers of Chīn, and subdued part of that clime likewise. How this will agree with the Chinese annals remains to be seen, but, as one of his uncles was named Kin Khān, this may possibly account for the Kin—who are styled “Kin Tartars,” but, perhaps, more correctly, should be Kin Mughals—in the farther east, who subsequently conquered Northern China.

After this, such was his power, and the awe he was held in, that many *ulūs* or tribes of the Tāttār Ī-māk, as well as that of Mughal, became subject to him. He also brought under his sway the city of Tālāgh, and Šairām or Šīrām to the frontiers of Bukhārā.

He adopted wise laws and regulations, and assigned names to several Turkish tribes [i. e. his own Mughal Ī-māk and such of the Tāttār Ī-māk as had acknowledged his sway], by which names they are known still, such as Ī-ghūr—*ايجور*—[an offshoot of Mughal Khān's family] which signifies “coming to one's aid” and “making a compact,” they having been the first to join him when his father resolved to take his life, Kānkūl—*كانكل*—which is also written Kānghūl—*كانغول*—and Kāghūl—*كانغول*—and Kākhūl—*كانخول*—which means a wheeled-carriage or cart, which they, on a certain expedition, invented, when the booty was so immense that there was difficulty in removing it. They are still to be found on the banks of the Sīhūn and parts adjacent. Abū I-Ghāzī says *kankul*—*كانكل*—signifies the creaking of a wheel; Kābchāk—*كباحك*—which is also written Kāshchāk—*كاشك*—and Kāfchāk—*كافك*—the meaning of which, it is said, is derived from *قون* or *فوق*—signifying a tree hollow in the trunk.

(One of the conflicts in which Āghūz Khān was engaged was with Āyat, the Burāk, and Āghūz was overthrown, and had to retire into a delta, but seventeen years after he finally overcame him.)

There was with his forces, on that occasion, a pregnant woman—the Mughals and Tāttārs used to take their wives with them in war—whose husband had been killed in that affair, and, being taken in labour, she took shelter within the trunk of a hollow tree which happened to be there, and gave birth to a son. Āghūz, hearing of it, took pity on her, as her husband had been slain in his defence, and adopted the boy, and gave him the name of Kābchāk because he was born in a hollow tree. When he grew up, Kābchāk was sent into the tract of country called Tāmāk, to guard that frontier, and it got the name, in course of time, of *dācht* or plain of Kābchāk.

The next to whom he assigned a name were the Kārūks—*كاروك*—also *كارلوق*—Kārūgh—Kārūk—*كارلوق*—and Kārūgh—*كارلوق*—and the circumstance which gave rise to it was this. Āghūz Khān, returning from an expedition into the eastern parts of Ī-rān Zamīn, was passing the borders of Ghūr and Ghazistān on his way back to Tūān. It was the depth of winter, and he then fore commanded that his followers should not loiter on the line of march because of the dangerous state of the route by reason of the frost and snow. Some few of his followers however—men of one family—did loiter, and soon found themselves unable to come up with the main body until a considerable time afterwards—some say Āghūz was on his way into Ī-rān Zamīn, and that the loiterers did not rejoin him until the following spring. After punishing them he gave them the nick-name of Kārūgh, which word, in Turkish, according to my authorities, signifies “the father of snow,” i. e. “pertaining to snow,” but here, “detained by the snow,” which name their descendants, who formed

focus of the people of Islām, and orbit of the possessors of

a separate tribe of Turks, were ever after known by, and continue to be known by up to this day. There is a couplet respecting them which is well known :—

کون مرکه او هست قریح زاد      همان است کردل ایشان بزد

and they are continually mentioned in Oriental history, but European translators have transliterated the words قریح — قریح — قریح — قریح — according to their ideas of the value of the letters of the 'Arabic alphabet, and the different languages in which they themselves wrote, and turned them into *Carlouks*, *Karlaks*, *Corluks*, *Carlugues*, *Carracks*, *Karlaks*, and the like, whereby they are nearly unrecognizable.

Some of these simple Turks, who appeared on the N W frontier of the I-yal-timishī kings of Dihlī, subsequent to the irruption of the Mughals, have been turned into "Indo-Scythians" by Major-General A Cunningham. See THOMAS, "Pathān Kings," p 97. See also the theories on this name contained in the *Geographical Magazine* for 1875, vol II page 217, last para.

Āghūz Khān also named the Turk tribe of Khalaj — خالج — sometimes pronounced *Khalaj*, in poetry — from the following circumstance. On one of Āghūz's expeditions, the particulars of which are too long for mention here, some of his men fell out on the line of march, and remained behind. When they came up with the army again, Āghūz demanded the reason of their disobeying his strict orders against loitering. One of them replied, although they had been directed to take food with them sufficient for some days, that they had stayed behind in search of it, and that, in his own case, he had to remain because his wife was taken in labour, and, when the child came into the world, the mother, for want of nourishment, had no milk to give it. He had no food to offer her, when, looking about him, he espied, near by, a fox which had caught a partridge. He threw a stick at the fox which dropped the bird, which he seized, and, having roasted it, gave it to his wife to eat, and thereby she was able to afford nourishment to her babe. Hearing this tale, Āghūz gave the child — a boy — the name of *Khalaj* or *Khalij*, which signifies according to some authors, "leave the woman behind," but others again say it is a compound word derived from خال — *khāl*, left, and ج — *j*, hungry — "left hungry." The posterity of this man became, in time, very numerous, and various branches of them went out into Māwar-un-Nahr, the Gurmīr of Ghūr, and other parts of Khurāsān, and into 'Irāk [see also note 2, page 287]. They furnished subsequently several independent Sultāns to Lakhmawālī [Bengal], and other independent kingdoms of India. There are branches of them still to be found in Central Asia. Colnely, during his travels, had one of their descendants as his guide at Astārābād.

The 'Uṣmanlī [vul Ottoman] Turks trace their descent from Āghūz.

It may not be amiss here to mention likewise the tradition respecting the origin of the Turk-māns, and the reason of their being so named. On the occasion of Āghūz Khān's entering Khurāsān with his tribes, some of them had children born to them there, and, liking the climate "in preference to the rigorous winters and hardships of Turkīah," and partly through certain exigencies which arose — they were enemies of the Turks from the time Beghū, son of Ghuzz, was slain — they selected to remain and dwell there, near the banks of the Āmūīah. They multiplied considerably, and by degrees, possibly by further intermixture with the natives of the country, their appearance became, in course of time, somewhat like the Tājiks or *Ḥakāns*, as they are also styled,

religion ; and, as from the extremity of the territories o

but, as they were not Tājiks [Can the term *Sārik*—ساریک—or *Sārigh*—ساریغ—applied to the Tājiks by the Turks, signifying poor-spirited and the like, be the derivation of *Sari*? The Ūzbaks call traders, and citizens, and people o the towns generally, Sarts, while others style them *Bukhārs*], those peopl styled them Turk-mānind, and Turk-mān, the both terminations, *mānind* an *mān*, signifying, like, similar, &c. In this tradition, *Khawārazm* or the northern tracts between the Sīhūn and the Jīhūn, and not *Khurāsān*, must be meant because most authors agree that it was many centuries after the time assigned to Āghūz Khān before any Turk-māns made their appearance west of the Jīhūn or Oxus, which, by two channels, then fell into the Caspian. See note <sup>b</sup>, page 374. Some traditions assert that the Turk-māns have neither connexion nor affinity with the Turks, and that they are altogether of a different race, which is tolerably correct, since they are not descended from Turk, but his brother.

The Kānkulī tribes dwelt in the same tracts as the Turk-māns for some time in the sandy desert, but, on a great movement among the latter, and some o them taking up their residence in towns and villages, the Kānkulīs left them, and pitched their tents about the Tālāgh river, and I-sigh-Kol, or the Issigh Lake, but the greater part of those who continued there were massacred by the Chingiz Khān on account of their relationship by marriage to the Khawārazmī Sulṭāns.

The movement of the Kārūghs is connected with that of the Ghuzz already mentioned in note <sup>b</sup>, page 374, which see.

The other tribes of the Turks, not being so much mixed up with the events of Western Asia and frontiers of Hind, at the period of our author's history, need not be referred to here, as the details would make this account much longer than necessary.

To return to Āghūz Khān. He, having returned to his original *yūrat*, "which was Kār-Tāgh and Ūr-Tāgh," after his great expeditions and proposed conquests, gave a mighty feast, to which all the chiefs and principal men of all the tribes were summoned, and, at which, 90,000 sheep and 900 mares were consumed, besides other dainties, and a vast quantity of *kamis*, and other strong drinks. He assigned *yūrats* and names to all the different tribes [under his sway], made laws and regulations, and organised armies into the various divisions, as subsequently continued to be observed. He occupies much the same position and celebrity among the Mughal Ī-māk, as Jamshēd among the Ī-rānīs. According to Abū-l-Ghārī, he was contemporary with Gaiū-murt and his son Hūshang, but, as he said *the very same thing* previously with respect to Tūtag or Tūnag, son of Tuik, we may doubt his accuracy upon other subjects.

One day, Āghūz Khān, attended by his six sons, went out on a hunting excursion, when the latter found a golden bow and three golden arrows which they brought to their father. He gave the bow to the three eldest, and the arrows to the three youngest. The former divided the bow into three portions, for which reason they were styled Bardz-ūki—بردزیکی—and Baj-ūki—باجیکی—from Bardz-ūk or Baj-ūk, which is said to mean "broken bow," but, more probably, "sharers of the broken bow," and the three youngest were styled Ūdz-ūki—اوزدیکی—and Ūr-ūki—اوردیکی from Ūdz-ūk or Ūr-ūk, signifying "three arrows. On this account, the Bardz-ūki are greater in degree than the Ūdz-ūki, in the same manner as the bow represents sovereignty, while the arrows refer to the

## Chīn, Turkistān, Māwar-un-Nahr, Ṭukhāristān, Zāwul,

sovereign's representatives and lieutenants. On all state occasions, and in war, the right hand, which the Turks call *baranghār*—برسار—or *barankār*—برنگار and the succession to the sovereignty, was assigned for ever to the Badz-ūki, and the left hand, or *juwānghār*—جواسار—or *juwānkār*—جوانکار—the Ūdz-ūki, with the lieutenancy and command of the soldiery.

After having ruled for 116 years, Āghūz Khān died, leaving the sovereignty to his eldest son, Kun or Kūn.

The six sons of Āghūz Khān are named 1. Kun—کُن—or Kūn—کُون which signifies *sun*, 2. Ae or A-ī—ای—*moon*, 3. Yal-dūz—یالدر—Yül-düz—یولدر—Yül-düz—or 1-yal-düz—یالدر *star* [See APPENDIX B, pages xi and xii. This is a complete answer to Mr Blochmann's "Contributions" as to "آی—*a moon*"—instead of *yul*—یُل—and 1-yal—یال—being contained in the name of 1-yal-timish—یلمش—or 1-yal-timish—یلمش &c, as well as in Ī-bak—ایبک—who were the eldest or Badz-ūki, and 4. Kūk—کوک—or Kuk—کوک—*sky*, 5. Tāk—تاق—or Tāgh—تاع—and Digh—دع [Turks use *t* where 'Ajamis use *d*, and substitute *b* where the latter use *f*] *mountain*, and 6. Tingiz—تنگیز *sea*, but probably lake, and this name is still used for the great lake known as the Bāl Kāsh, or the Timgiz.

From these six sons descended twenty-four sons, and, according to some historians, each had four sons, while some others say that each of the brothers had six sons, but this last seems an error. Abū-l-Ghāfi states that each of the six brothers had four legitimate sons, and also four natural sons, which appears from the very even numbers to be doubtful and improbable, and is totally contrary to other writers, thus making them forty-eight in all, but, farther on, he again contradicts his own words.

The Akbar Nāmah of Abū-l-Faṣl, contrary to all others, asserts that Āghūz's sons and sons' sons are twenty-four in all, and that "the whole of the Turk-māns" are descended from these patriarchs or great men. This statement does not give us a very favourable opinion of that writer's knowledge of his subject, and, if all these six sons' descendants were Turk-māns, where does he manage to get a Mughal pedigree for his master from? This is what my Akbar Nāmahs have what other Akbar Nāmahs may contain I am unaware.

The Fanākātī says that "Ūghūz Khān sent some of his sons and kinsmen, with a body of forces, into the parts more to the east, now called Mughūl-tān," which statement I shall have to refer to again farther on.

IV KUN—کُن—or KŪN—کُون KHĀN, eldest son of Āghūz, succeeded his father. He ruled over an extensive territory, and acquired predominance over great part of Samāirān, and died after a reign of eighty years, but some say seventy-three, and some twenty. By advice of his father's old Wazīr, Kābal Khwājāh, he made such wise arrangements that each of his brothers and their sons had an appanage conferred upon him, and the place and rank of every one was so specifically assigned that each knew his proper place and his share even to the portion of the sheep at meal times, and this tended to keep them all on a good understanding towards each other.

Abū-l-Ghāfi says he divided his territory among his brothers and "their twenty-four legitimate sons and natural sons." He appears to have forgotten that, by his own previous account, four legitimate sons, and as many natural ones, belonged to Kun Khān himself. What he calls a division of dominions is, no doubt, what I have just previously mentioned.

**Ghūr, Kābul, Ghaznīn, 'Irāk, Tabaristān, Arān, Āzarbāijān**

V. On the death of Kun **Khān**, his brother, **Āz** or **Ā-i Khān**, succeeded, and, after a long reign, was succeeded by his eldest son,

VI. **YAL-DŪZ**—يالدور—**YŪL-DŪZ** or **I-YAL-DŪZ** ايلدور During his rule the people of Mughalīstān were flourishing and prosperous. **Abū-l-Ghāsi**, contrary to other writers, says he was not **Āz Khān's** brother of that name, but merely one of the same family, and says nothing of his being **Āz Khān's** son.

VII. Next succeeded **MANGALĪ KHĀN**—مكل son of **Yal-dūz**. He also made his people happy and prosperous, and died after a long reign. Some writers, however, do not even mention his name

VIII. **TINGĪZ KHĀN**—تنگيز also written, according to the Tāzjik method of substituting *g* for *g*—**TINJĪZ**—تنجيز son of **Mangalī**, succeeded on the death of his father. A few writers are in doubts whether he was the son of **Mangalī** or not, but there can be no reasonable doubt on the subject. By some he is said likewise to have abandoned the just ways and customs of his ancestors, but the contrary seems the fact, and that he reigned worthily for a period of 110 years over Mughalīstān, and then resigned the authority into the hands of his son, and retired from the world. Some say his rule extended to a period of 100 years, and some 102

IX. **I-YAL KHĀN**—الي—but which *may be*, according to the vowel points that may be used with it, **Ī Khān**, son of **Tingīz** or **Tinjīz**, succeeded to the chieftainship of the Mughal **Ī-māk**. His reign is a most important one in the annals of the descendants of **Türk**; and, at the period in question, **Tūr**, son of **Faridūn**, sovereign of 'Ājam, ruled over [what the 'Arabs subsequently styled by the name of] **Māwar-un-Nahr**, and **Turkistān**, which he had, it is said, lately reduced, and invaded **I-yal Khān's** territory with a numerous army. Inveterate enmity had, long prior to this, arisen between the **Ī-māk** of **Tāttār** and **Ī-māk** of Mughal, as previously mentioned, and **Tūr** succeeded in gaining over to his side **Sūnj** or **Sündz Khān**, the eighth chief of the **Tāttār** dynasty, and his subjects, and the **Ī-ghūr**, who were descended from another son of Mughal **Khān**, and had formed a separate tribe at an early date, and had now become a great nation, likewise aided **Tūr**. The confederates marched against **I-yal Khān**, but the tribes of the Mughal **Ī-māk**, being much attached to **I-yal Khān**, fought bravely in his defence, and a great number of **Tāttār**s and **Ī-ghūr**s and followers of **Tūr** were slain in the conflict which ensued, and were pursued for two *farisakhs* by the Mughals; but victory was soon turned into defeat. The retreat of the confederates was a mere ruse, and, the Mughals having left their strong position and broken their array to pursue them, the confederates faced about—some say the confederates did not renew the attack until next day, when they fell upon them unawares—and entirely overthrew them, put the whole of them to the sword, and made a general massacre of the Mughal people, in such wise that, with the exception of **Karān**—كاران—son of **I-yal Khān**, and **Nagūz**—نگوز—son of **I-yal's** maternal uncle, and their two wives who were sisters, and all four of whom chanced to be without the camp at the time, not a soul escaped of the whole Mughal **Ī-māk**.

This event is said to have happened 1000 years after the time of **Āghūz Khān**. At this rate, his five successors must have reigned 200 years each on the average, and it is therefore evident that, either what are termed rulers are the names of dynasties, or that only the names of the most celebrated of their chiefs or sovereigns have been handed down to posterity, or the thousand years must mean from the time of **Yāfiṣ**, not **Aghu**.

the Jazīrah, Anbār, Sijistān, Mukrān, Kirmān, Fārs,

At this point, the Fanākati, who gives but a very brief notice of the Čingiz Khān's ancestors, seems quite at sea. He says nothing whatever about Āghūz Khān's five predecessors, but states that, "after Ūghūz had conquered many countries, and had become firmly established, he despatched some of his sons and kinsmen, with other persons, and a body of forces into the east, into the parts *now*, i.e. in his time, called Mūghulstān [only Āghūz himself was ruler of Mughalstān as his forefathers had been before him], and, after a period of 4000 years, one among the Bādghāhīs of Khitāe began to make expeditions against those peoples, crossed the Karā Mūrān or Black River, made a night attack upon them and massacred the whole [of the males], and carried off into captivity their women and children. Of that people, but two persons, named Nagūz and Karūn, with their families, fled into the mountain tract which they call Irkanah—*إرکانه*—in one copy, and Irākanah *كِرْكَنَه*—in another, entered it, and there continued to dwell for a period of 400 years, during which time they increased to such degree that that tract became too confined for them," &c.

This statement of his is simply impossible, because, if it were only those peoples sent into the east, into what in the writer's time was called "Mūghulstān," by Ūghūr, under "some of his sons and kinsmen," that were massacred, what became of the parent stock of the Mughuls over whom Ūghūz reigned? They too must have also increased immensely during 4000 years. How is it that he says nothing about them? He has turned two events into one, and the last part of his statement is the account of the extermination of the Mughal Ī-māk related above, and the former refers to a great massacre of the Jalā-ir tribe by the Khitāis in after years, as will be presently related.

There is little to be gathered from the traditional history of Iran respecting these events, and the little that is mentioned is contradictory of the Mughal accounts. Careful comparison of the voluminous traditions of the two peoples might throw some light upon these occurrences, and some day I may attempt it. According to the Ī-rānī accounts, however, Turdūn divided his dominions among his sons, and gave Tūn—not *all* Asia east of the Oxus, as modern writers appear to assume—the capital of which is Kishghar, and part of which tract was afterwards called Māwar-un-Nahr by the Arabs, Khuz, and Saklāl, to Tūr, and Tūrān is so named after him. Some of the Ī-rānī chronicles relate that the Turks are of the seed of Tūn, and that Afrāsyāb [who is certainly styled "the Turk" by the 'Ajāmīs] was his great grandson, and that he ruled over the countries east of the Jilūn, from the limits of Hind to the frontier of the Turks.

Our author, Minhāj-ud-Dīn, in his account of the Ī-rānī or 'Ajāmī kings, also says that Afrāsyāb was third in descent from Turk, and that his father was Sunj—*سُنج*—which is much the same name as that of *سُنج*—*سُنج*—Khān, the VIIth of the Sautār Ī-māk, which may also be written Sunj, without the long *u*.

But, as all this happened 1000 years—taking the most moderate period—after Āghūz Khān, and as Faridūn, father of Tūn, was contemporary, they say, with the patriarch Ibrāhīm, who was born in his reign, Āghūz Khān must, according to those chronicles, have flourished very far back indeed, and anterior to Noah's flood.

Abū l-Ghaffār, whose history, as previously mentioned, is the most modern of those named at the beginning of this account, relates these events differently



**Khūzistān, the Diyār-i-Bakr, and Mauṣil, as far as the**

He says that I-yal or Īl Khān and Sūndz Khān were continually at war with each other, and the former was always victorious, but it must be remembered that Abū-l-Ghāzī sprung from the Mughal I-māk. Sūndz Khān had therefore to seek aid from the Khān of Karkir or Karkiz, who was a very powerful ruler, and he also worked so much upon other tribes, the neighbours of I-yal Khān, that they too combined with him. I-yal Khān, in consequence, took up a very advantageous position which he strengthened so much, that the confederates were unable to force it, but, having placed their best soldiers in ambuscade, pretended flight, to draw the Mughals from their stronghold.

The rest agrees with what has been already stated, and Karkir or Karkiz is evidently a mistake for Khar-khez—خرخیز—also written Khar-kher—خرخر—of the Ī-ghūrs, which is generally used in conjunction with Tungūt in the history of the Chingiz Khān. Abū-l-Ghāzī however mentions, with regard to those who escaped the massacre, that they were taken captive by the Tāttār, but, subsequently, escaped from the solitary guard placed over them. The Khān of Karkir or Karkiz, in this account, would seem to be meant for Tūr of the I-tānt authors.

Abū-l-Ghāzī however constantly falls into error, for, after having given this account of the destruction of the Mughals by the Tāttārs, he, in another place, makes "the tribe of Tāttārs" an entirely new subject, as though another, and distinct tribe. See also the translation of that work—"History of the Turks, Moguls, and Tatars," page 38, vol. 1. London, MDCCCXX.

Mirzā Muḥammad Hasan Khān, otherwise Mirzā Muḥammad Haidr, son of Muḥammad Husam, Dughlātī, who preceded Abū-l-Ghāzī, Bahādur Khān, by about a century, says, that the country and tribes of Mughalstān had become so utterly ruined and dispersed a hundred years or more before *his time* even—he wrote in 951 H.—that not a sign or trace remained of men capable of writing history, and mentions this as the reason of his own inability to furnish better accounts of them than he has done. I mention this to show that Abū-l-Ghāzī, although he did possess eighteen books on the subject—including the *Tārikh-i-Ghāzīnī*—written by Turks and Turpiks, preferred, it seems, rather to collect oral traditions, many centuries old than refer to his written authorities.

Abū-l-Faḡl, the author of the Akbar Namah, who conceals everything that he fancies does not tend to the glorification of his master, Akbar, smooths over this total overthrow and almost extinction of the Mughal I-māk. from which his master traces his descent, gives a cock and bull story to begin with, and says that, "after putting Iūr, and Sūndz Khān, and the Ī-ghūrs to flight, they played the part of the fox upon the Mughals," and winds up with excuses and apologies for the disaster, where none are required, and the union of consolation that it was "all for the best," &c., &c. If the Mughals had been the triumphant party, what a flourish of trumpets we should have been treated to!

Thus it was then that the Mughal I-māk was exterminated, with the exception of two males, Kauān and Nagūr, and two females, their wives, and, hence, all Mughals whatsoever are descended from them—with the exception of those of the I-māk who followed the uncle of Āghūz into the farther east, according to the traditions contained in some works—and are not Tāttārs, although they are, by descent, Turks.

From what has just been stated, and what has been previously mentioned, it will now be clearly seen why such hostility existed—and continues to exist to

boundaries of Rūm and Shām, fell into the hands of the

this day—between the Turks of the Tāttār Ī-māk, from that time known in the writings of Oriental historians under the general name of Turks as well as Tāttārs, and the descendants of the two Mughals who escaped this general massacre, and who were destined to become the progenitors of that sanguinary conqueror, the Chingiz Khān. This enmity, doubtless, burnt in the breasts of himself and his tribe, when he invaded and attacked the dominions of Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, besides the provocation he had received through the treatment of his envoys and merchants, that Sulṭān being a Turk of the Tāttār Ī-māk, and also allied to them by marriage.

We cannot fail to perceive the same enmity existing from the pages of our author. The great Turk Mahiks of the Dihlī kingdom, and the Dihlī sovereigns, were Turks of the Tāttār Ī-māk, and, consequently, natural foes of the Mughal Ī-māk, and our author, probably taking the cue from his patrons, invariably styles the latter the “inheritor Mughals,” and hence too the refusal of Sulṭān, I-yal-timish, to hold any communication with the emissaries of the Mughal Khāns, the descendants of the Chingiz Khān, and of Barkah Khān in particular, although he was a Musalmān like himself, and his emissaries likewise were of the same faith, and the Sulṭān’s sending them to the fortress of Gwāliyūr, and afterwards, by command of his daughter, Sulṭān Razziyat, they were confined at Kinnaw, beyond which city they were not allowed to go, and there they subsequently died, as will be found farther on. Ulugh Khān’s own tribe—the Ilbari—too had to fly before the Mughals when they acquired predominance over Turkistān, and the tribes of Khutghāk, and his little brother, afterwards the Amīr-i-Hājjib of Sulṭān Nāsir ud-Dīn, Mahmūd Shāh, fell into the hands of the Mughals, and was sold by them as a slave, as previously related, at page 800, which see.

The same natural enmity probably influenced Timūr in some way, in after years, in his hostility towards the ‘Usmānī Sulṭān, Bāyazid, for Timūr was of the Mughal Ī-māk, and of the royal tribe of the Mughals, whilst Bāyazid was of the Tāttār Ī-māk. To call a Turk, or a Tāttār Turk, a Mughal was the greatest insult that could be offered him, or to call a Mughal a Tāttār, but several European writers have held peculiar ideas respecting these two Ī-māks. I extract the following as a specimen, from a work entitled “*Travels in the Steppes of the Caspian Sea, the Crimea, the Caucasus,*” &c., by Xavier Hommaire de Hell. London, 1847.

“Perhaps no people has given occasion to more discussions than the Tatars and Mongols, nor is the problem of their origin completely solved in our day, notwithstanding the most learned investigations. Some admit that the Tatars and Mongols formed but one nation, others allege that they are *two essentially different races*. According to Lesvêque, D’Herbelot, and Lesur, the Tatars are but Turks. Klapiroth, while he asserts that the Tatars and Mongols spring from the same stock, nevertheless regards the White Tatars whom Genghis [Chingiz?] Khān conquered, as Turks.”

The first three authors mentioned were quite correct in their statements, and Klapiroth is both right and wrong, for his “white Tatars,” like *all other Tāttārs*, are undoubtedly Turks. The statement of D’Ohsson is the most astonishing, and totally incorrect.—“Lastly, D’Ohsson, in his remarkable history of the Mongols, treats the Mongols and Tatars as *distinct race*, but *does not admit the theory* [!] *of the Turkish origin*.”

The writer continues.—“The same uncertainty, that hangs over the Mon-

infidel Mughals, and not a trace of the Muḥammadan

gol and Tatar hordes of the fourteenth century, prevails with regard to the people who, under the name of Tatar, now dwell in the southern part of the Russian empire; and they have been considered sometimes as descendants of the Turkish tribes that occupied those regions previously to the twelfth century, sometimes as remnants of the conquering *Mongol Tatars*."

This last compound is an utterly impossible name. There is no uncertainty, and no theory, whatever, in the matter, as might have been seen had the Oriental writers been correctly read, and the difference between the Turks of the two Ī-māks of Tāttār and Mughal been properly understood. I hope I have clearly demonstrated the fact now, because, according to compilers of Indian history, who merely draw their inspirations from DOW, BRIGGS, and some few others, the Turks with other wholly different races have formed their "PATHAN or AFGHAN DYNASTIES," so-called—the "Dchli Pathans," "Jounpoure Pathans," "Ghorī Pathans," "Khilji Pathans," "Tughluk Pathans," &c., of the Oriental Congress of 1874—and which fantastic names, I am lately informed, signify, or, are meant to signify, "Pre-Mughal" dynasties!

The same writer continues to show into what a state of utter confusion this simple genealogy has been thrown by the writers themselves—"The Chinese writers for the first time make mention of the Tatar people in the eighth century of our era, under the name of Tata, and consider them as a branch of the Mongols. The general and historian, Meng Koung [Klaproth *Asia Polyglotta*], who died in 1246, and who commanded a Chinese force sent to aid the Mongols against the Kin, informs us in his memoirs that a part of the Tatar horde, formerly dispersed or subdued by the Khitans [who, in the same work, are said to have occupied the country north of the Chinese provinces of Tschy Li and Ching Chung, watered by the Charamun [Ḳarā Murān], or Liao Ho and its confluent] quitted the In Chan mountains, where they had taken refuge, and joined their countrymen who dwelt north-east of the Khitans. The *white* Tatars and the savage or *black* Tatars then formed the most important tribes of those regions." Here undoubtedly the issuing forth of the descendants of Ḳauān and Nagüz is referred to, which I shall presently mention.

The author continues in the same strain, making similar blunders, while the truth lies under his very nose, but he fails to see it, and here is a very rich specimen.—"*The princes of this empire [Kapsbat—Ḳhaṣḥāk ?] were Mongols or Tatars, but the majority of their subjects were Turks*"!! He also states, taking his information from different European writers, that "*Genghis K'ān, though born in the tribe especially designated as black Tatars, yet adopted the denomination of Mongols for his people,*" and "*that the appellation Tatar lost all signification in Asia under the destroying power of Ghenghis (sic) Khan, and has ever since existed only in the European vocabulary*."

The writer of this last marvellously incorrect statement also asserts that "*the word Tatar owes its origin only to a jeu de mots of which St. Louis was the author*"! Perhaps St. Louis stood god-father to Tāttār the son of Alanjah, and gave him that name.

The assertion that the Chingiz Khān was "a black Tatar," and adopted the denomination of "Mongols" or Mughals for his people is, as I have already shown, and shall show still more farther on, totally and utterly incorrect, and for that, as well as the other incorrect assertion contained in this book, and its author's authorities, respecting the Turks, Tatars, and Mughals, I challenge

Maliks and Sultāns of Islām remained in these countries—

any one to show me a single proof in any Muḥammadan, or in any Asiatic, writer whatever

I notice, and, I must say, with utter surprise, that much the same erroneous ideas are put forward in "AN ANCIENT HISTORY from the Earliest Records to the Fall of the Western Empire, by Philip Smith, B A, one of the principal contributors to the Dictionaries of Greek and Roman Antiquities, Biography, and Geography," published in 1868, and which has gone through several editions. He says [vol iii., page 737] —

"Sober criticism has cast more than a doubt upon the romantic story, originated by Des Guignes and adorned by the pen of Gibbon, which seeks in wars upon the frontiers of China the remote cause of the appearance of the HUNS in Europe in the former part of the fourth century. It is quite true that the people belonged to that great Turanian race, known to the Greeks as SCYTHIANS, and in modern times as TATARS," &c, &c

No "romantic story" originated with Des Guignes, he merely related what he found in the history of the people he wrote about, and who, at least, may be allowed to have known their own history and traditions better than a Greek who wrote down what he heard from illiterate soldiers, and the often idle tales of traders.

In a foot-note he says: "The extension of this from a specific to a generic name is due to the prominent place occupied by the Tatars of Eastern Mongolia in the army of Zingis (or Genghis) Khan, and the common corruption into *Tartars* is ascribed to a pun of St. Louis. . . . As the name of Tatar is even more specific than that of Mongol, it were to be wished that ethnologists would follow the practice of the Greeks, and use SCYTHIANS for the generic name."

If ethnologists were to do so, they would commit a terrible blunder. The error of asserting that the name of Tattār—which appears in the earliest of the Muḥammadan writers—is modern, is not greater than the assertion that the, owed the name "to the prominent place they occupied in the army of Zingis (or Genghis) Khan."

"The Tatars of Eastern Mongolia" did not occupy "a prominent place in the army of Zingis (or Genghis)," but the Mughal I-mak did, and the Tattārs contained in it, who were comparatively few, had been compelled, by the Chingiz Khān, to join him.

Again [page 738] "The Scythians are divided into four great races—1 The *Mongolians* are the least numerous, though many writers apply their name to the whole family, in consequence of the fame of their chief Zingis Khan. . . . 2 The *Jungunian race*. . . 3 The *Ugrian race*. . . 4 The *Turkish race* occupied not only the great region of West Central Asia from the Lake Baikal to the Caspian, which the progress of Russia is fast depriving of the name of *Independent Tartary*, but they extended over the vast steppes of south-eastern Europe, round the northern sides of the Caspian, the Caucasus, and the Euxine. Then precise partition from the Slavonian race is a difficult problem," &c, &c

Their "precise partition from the Slavonian race" is no "difficult problem" whatever. In the Scythians so-called, we have clearly included the whole of the descendants of Yāfi's sons, as given in the fourth para. of this account of them. The localities of the Turkish race are wrongly given, and most of the tracts mentioned above were peopled by the descendants of other sons of Yāfi, more particularly of Bulghār, ancestor of the Bulgarans, Saḡ-lāb, of the Slavonians,

the Almighty's mercy be upon them, and may He long pre-

and Rūs, of the Russians. It is something new to hear the name of "Mongolians," who "are the least numerous," applied to the whole race of Scythians.

The writer continues in a similar strain, and we are at length told that the name "Decebalus" is "strange to Gothic, strange to Slavonic, *not strange to Turkish history*," but the writer would have had some little difficulty to name any Turkish history in which such a name occurs, and Darius and Herodotus are also quoted to prove such statements as these, but which the authors who wrote *in the country of the Turks, Tättärs, and Mughals, and with many tribes of those people dwelling around them*, would simply ridicule.

After this long, but necessary, digression, I return to the subject of the Mughal Ī-māk.

The reason why we possess much greater information respecting the Mughal Ī-māk is owing to their overwhelming successes and conquests, and because nearly all authors who have written on the subject were subjects of the Mughal rulers, and their object was to trace their descent more particularly, but the main facts are not concealed—they merely gave more attention to the history of the Mughals. It is to be regretted however that we have no detailed accounts of the movements of the tribes of the Tättār Ī-māk and their rulers, after the time of Sämdr Khān the VIIIth of the Tättār dynasty herein mentioned, who, with the aid of his allies, nearly exterminated the whole Mughal race; but, from what may be gathered from Oriental history, and as shown in this Translation, the Tättār Ī-māk, the offshoots of the descendants of the seven chieftains preceding Sämdr Khān, also formed, like preceding offshoots of the descendants of Turk, in the course of time, great independent tribes who are correctly styled Tättärs, as well as those springing from Tättār Khān and his descendants, the whole being undoubtedly Turks, or, in other words, all those who do not spring from the Mughal Ī-māk, and are not descended from Mughal Khān—Tättār's brother—being correctly styled Tättärs, and others, not springing in a direct line from Tättār Khān, but from others, the offshoots of his ancestors, being properly called Turks.

All these formed mighty tribes and nations, the names of some of which have been herein mentioned, and some formed great empires, like as did the Saljūks, Khwārazmīs, and others. The early Musalmāns made raids upon them, and the Khalīfahs also, from a very early period, entertained numbers of Turks and Tättār Ī-māk in their service, but we never hear of Mughals being entertained by them. There is no doubt that their taking service under the Khalīfahs and their great vassals, many of whom were their own countrymen, considerably tended to the greater civilization of the Turks and Tättärs, and their early conversion to the Musalmān faith, but, with regard to others, not converted, it is evident that feuds arose among them and that Musalmān merchants carried on a large traffic in Turkish slaves.

The four persons, two males—Kaiān, son of I-yai-Khān, and Nagūz, his maternal uncle's son, with their respective sisters, their wives—the Tīmūr Nāmāh says two females, sisters, who, at this juncture, they took to wife—having escaped the slaughter of their people, secured some of their effects, and as soon as night set in they mounted horses, and made for the mountains which were some distance off. They also collected some of the stray cattle and flocks which they met with in their flight, and reached the mountain—some say, the next morning—entered them by a narrow track, scarcely distinguishable, made by the wild animals haunting it, and which was almost inaccessible, from rocks

serve the Nāshirīah dynasty!—I desired to record in writing

and forests, and proceeded onwards for a long distance among its mazes until they reached a more open country where was plenty of pasture. At some distance, farther off, they perceived a still higher range, the sides of which, bare and barren, appeared to be of flint alone, and which towered upwards like a vast fortress. With much difficulty they ascended it, and to their great joy found themselves in a delightful tract of country, well watered, with plenty of rich pasture, and abounding with game, and thence they resolved to take up their dwelling. This higher range is called Irgānah Kū or Kūn—ارگانه کون or کون—*argānah* being said to signify a valley, and *kū* or *kūn* a steep ascent or height—the valley [or table-land?] surrounded by hills, or valley of precipices. The mountains referred to are evidently those mighty ranges towards the sources of the Sālūghah and its upper tributaries.

In this place of residence Kāiān and Nagūz flourished, and in the course of time their posterity multiplied, and separated into several branches under different names. The descendants of Kāiān are styled Kāiāt—کایات—and those of Nagūz, Dūral-gīn or Dūr-la-gīn—دورنگین or دورال گین or Dūr-la-gīn—دورلنگین. After a considerable period, which most of the works I have quoted do not pretend to fix, their writers moreover stating that no chronicler is cognizant of it, but which the Fanākātī, who is followed by Abū-l-Ghāzī, says, was over 400 years, the tribes of Kāiāt and Dūral-gīn had increased to such degree that the country about Irgānah-Kūn was insufficient to afford them subsistence. They therefore resolved to leave it, and seek the encamping grounds which they had heard, through tradition, their ancestors had formerly possessed, and they entered the old country of the Mughal Ī-mūk accordingly.

Abū-l-Faṣl, the author of the Akbar Nāmāh, however, makes a very bold guess indeed, and has the assurance to fix the period at "about 2000 years."—This is almost as absurd as the Fanākātī's 4000 years previously referred to.—He has mixed up the account of the Ī-ghūrīs with that of Kāiāt and Dūral-gīn, and hence this assumption. He also asserts that this migration took place at the end of the reign of Nūshīrwān, the Just, ruler of Ī-rān [۱۰۱: 521-579], and "supposes" that the art of writing and reading did not exist. He also states that, during that period of "nearly 2000 years," while they dwelt in Irgānah-Kūn, twenty-five persons "reigned," which would give over eighty years' reign to each, but most of the other writers I have compiled this account from, with the exception of Abū-l-Ghāzī, say nothing about any previous rulers, while some others distinctly state that they obeyed no single chief, until the period when the chief authority over the different tribes fell to I-yā-l-dūz, son of Mangālī.

At the time that the descendants of Kāiān and Nagūz determined upon issuing from Irgānah-Kūn, the chieftainship had fallen to YAL-DŪZ—یال دوز—or YŪL-DŪZ—یول دوز—or I-YAL-DŪZ—ایال دوز.—Khān, son of Mangālī Khān, [styled Mangālī Khwājah, by some] son of Timūr-lāsh, of the race of Kāiān, and he was a chieftain of considerable power and dignity. In this matter all agree except Abū-l-Ghāzī, who states that, when they issued from Irgānah-Kūn, their chief was named Bartazīnah [? برتزینه], and gives names of seven other chiefs before he reaches that of Timūr-lāsh, Mangālī Khān, and Yal-dūz or I-yal-dūz, but gives no account of them beyond their succeeding and dying. This however we cannot credit, since, in the account of the Chingiz Khān, almost immediately after, he says, that, while dwelling in Irgānah-Kūn, the Mughals were in total ignorance of the names of the rulers, but that they

an account of these occurrences, from the beginning of the

were certainly *Kāilās*, and, since the books of the *Mughals* contain nothing certain on this head, he is obliged to leave a gap in this place !!

At this point the different writers I have been quoting mention the boundaries and limits of the *Mughal* country—*Mughalīstān*. "It lies," they say, "a long way east, and far from cultivated countries, and is seven or eight months' journey (in extent)," some say it is a year's journey. The *Mughals* lived in forests and wilds, their food was from the animals of the chase, and the produce of their flocks and herds, and their garments the skins thereof. The extreme eastern limit was the frontier of *Khujā*, on the west it adjoined the country of the *Ī-ghūrs*. On the north it extended as far as the country of the *Qirghiz*—*قيرغيز*—[the *Akbar Nāmah* has *Farghānah* which is S.] which is also written *Qirghiz*—*قيرغيز*—and *Qirghiz*—*قيرغيز*—and *Qirghiz*—*قيرغيز*—being interchangeable, and *Sālingāe*—*سالنگاي*—[the country towards the River *Sālingah* is evidently meant here], and south it reached to the frontiers of *Tibbat*. Our author [page 273] says the forces of the *Chingiz Khān* had to undertake a three months' march through "the wilderness," or steppe, from the place where he assembled his host on hearing of the massacre of his emissaries and merchants by the *Khwārazmīs*, to enable them to reach the *Utrar* frontier.

The country of the *Ī-ghūrs* is described as containing two great ranges of mountains, one of which they call *Qarā-Tū*, and the other, *Uškūn-Lūk*, and the mountain (range?) of *Qarā-Quram* lies between these two ranges. The residence built by *Ūktāe Kā'an* near it is named after this *lak* of *Qarā-Quram*. To the south of these two great ranges, before named, is another which they style *Kūt-Tāgh*. Out of one of these ranges ten rivers flow, and out of the other nine, and, in ancient times, the *Ī-ghūrs* dwelt along the banks of these rivers. Those who dwelt on the ten [*sh*] rivers were called *Ūn-Ī-ghūrs*, and those who were located on the nine [*tokūs*], *Tokūs-Ī-ghūrs*. There were some other tribes dwelling near them, but space forbids my going into farther detail here.

*Mīrzā Muḥammad Ḥaidar*, of the *Doghlatī* tribe of the *Mughals*, previously mentioned, a native of *Farghānah*, in his work, written in 951 H., explains the southern boundary as extending towards *Tungūt* or *Tūngūn*, and the northern to *Qarā-kīr*, the *Qirghiz* or *Qirghiz* of others. He adds [I only give a brief abstract] that of "these four boundaries, mentioned in the *Jāhān Kushāe* of the *Jūwainī*, the country of *Khutāe* is distinct and known, but, as regards the *Ī-ghūr* country, nothing is known of it at present as to where it is, and, at this day, nothing is known of *Qarā-kīr* or *Sālingāe*, and no places with such names are indicated. The name of *Tungūt* often occurs in the history of the *Mughals*, and the *Chingiz Khān*, at the outset of his power, despatched an army thither, but now nothing whatever is known of it, nor is information to be obtained regarding these parts which are mentioned in books, and the same may be said of many famous cities such as *Bilāsā-ghūn*, *Tarāz*, and the like."

He further states, that "the extent of *Mughūlīstān*, so called in his time, which was much contracted from what it had been [and which is styled *Jatah* in the *History of Tīmūr*], was seven or eight months' journey in length and breadth, and gives the following as its boundaries. On the N. the *Kokjah* *Tingiz*—*كوكجه تينگيز*—*Bom-Labas* or *Laba*—*بوم لباس*—and *Qarā-Tāl*—*قار تال*—S. the territory of *Farghānah*, *Kāshghar*, *Aksū*, *Jālish*, and *Tūrfān*. On the E. it adjoins the land of the *Qālīmāls* [the *Qāl* *l-māk*? this is not the name

irruption of that race, and domination of that nation, up to

of the people, but merely their nickname] which is the Pāras or Pārs-Kol—*پارس کول*—*ī-mīl*—*ایمل*—*Irīsh*—*ایریش* [or *Irīsh*—*ایریش*—also the name of a tract of country] and the Pāras-Kol is its eastern limit, and the W boundary is the territory of Turkistān and Tāshkand [the Āltān or Golden Mountains, the northern boundary of Tāshkand] The writer was himself well acquainted with its southern boundary, and, respecting the other three, obtained his information from persons who had visited, and were acquainted with them, and Mughūlīstān consists entirely of mountains and plains [steppes] "What he himself saw of it, he says, he cannot find words to praise sufficiently, and that, from the accounts of others, the other parts are equally delightful, but the waters are cold. "Mughūlīstān," he says, "has several rivers, like unto the Jihūn and Sīhūn in size and extent, such as the *ī-lah*—*ایله*—*ī-mīl*—*ایمل*—*Irīsh*—*جولک*—*ایریش*—*Jūlīk*—*ایریش*—*Nārīn*—*نارین*—all of which, in respect of volume, are not less than the Jihūn and Sīhūn These waters mostly fall into the Kokyah-Yingīr, which is a *Kol* or Lake Bāe-Kol [the Baikāl Lake of our maps] between Mughūlīstān and Ūzbakīstān Its length is eight months' [weeks? 2] journey, and its width, in some places, by computation, is thirty *farāṅghs*, and, when it is frozen in the winter, the Ūzbaks pass over it, and enter Mughūlīstān The *Irīgh*-Kol is also in Mughūlīstān "

Bābar however, who preceded Mirzā Muḥammad Ḥaidar, a few years, says that Ālmāgh, Almatū, and Utār, lay north of Karghānah, but that they had been laid waste by the Ūzbaks

Abū-l-Ḡhāzī says the true Mughal country contains two ranges of very lofty mountains [which are plainly shown on the best maps of Central Asia] extending from east to west, and between these two ranges, nearest to the west, is the true country of the Mughals Still more west lay the country of the *I-ghūrs* This description agrees with that given by other authors in the account of Karā Khān [page 875], and those two great ranges of mountains have been already named

To return to the descendants of Kāiān and Nagūz. They, having determined to issue from Irghānah-Kūn, thought of doing so by the same route or defile by which their ancestors had entered it, but they found it impossible The pass had been destroyed by an earthquake, and no trace of it remained They searched about in all directions, and at last they found one spot which seemed easier than any other, but it was impeded by a hill in which was a mine of iron [iron-stone rock possibly], and to enable them to get out they split the rocks by means of fire [Hannibal used vinegar in the Alps], and succeeded in making a practicable route The tribe of Kungkurāt or Kungḡurāt, as it is also written, led the way out, and were in such haste to do so that they are said, in the tradition, to have burnt their feet. The Majāmi'-ul-Khīyār distinctly states that this event took place some time after the 200th year of the Hijrah

This is improved upon by Petis de la Croix, in his "Life of Genghī" can the Great," page 6, who says that the Cayat [Kaiāt?] derived their name "from a certain people who lived in the remotest Northern Parts of *Mogolistan* which were called *Cayat*, because their Chief had heretofore erected a Foundry for Iron-work in a mountain called *Arkenekom*, which gained them a great Reputation, and made this Branch of the Moguls highly esteemed, by the great advantage all the Moguls Country received from this Invention, they therefore called these people the *Arkenekom-Smūks* This is history with a vengeance!



the year 658 H., when this work was brought to a conclusion,

Their former country had been in the meantime occupied by tribes of the Tāttārs I-māk, and other Turks, and the Mughals fought with them, and drove them out. The former, consequently, had to seek other tracts. Some went away to the eastward, while others went west, and south, and north; and, about this period, we find a great movement among the Saljūqs and the Ghuzs in a south-westerly direction. Those tribes of the Mughal I-māk which left Ūghūz Khān's country, as previously related, and had gone towards the borders of Chīn and sought the protection of the Tāttārs, now returned, and rejoined the tribes of Kāsāt and Dūral-gīn, while some other small tribes, but of which I-māk is not mentioned, which submitted to Yal-dūs or I-yal-dūs Khān, were permitted to dwell in his newly acquired territory.

According to the Fanākatī the name Mughāl or Mughūl is the appellative or generic name applied to those who came out of Irghānah-Kūn, and to the others of that I-māk who rejoined and continued to dwell with them, and that name commenced to be used respecting them *from this period*, but they had been known, *centuries before*, as Turks of the Mughūl I-māk, by his own account.

Some writers who approach this subject from the "Mongol" point of view, and who, unable to read the originals for themselves, imagine that every author who wrote in the Persian language must necessarily be a Persian, and, consequently, cannot know anything of Mughal or Mughūl history, because such a word as "Mongol" is not to be found in their works, hug themselves with the idea that the History written by the "great Raschid" may contain something in support of their crude ideas. For the information of such I here append the headings of the first four Sections of Raschid-ud-Dīn's History of the Mughūls, as he styles them, and which was compiled from the Āltān Daftar, or Golden Record, and other authorities:—

*First Section.*—History of the tribes of Āghūz, who was the great grandson of Ālīmjah Khān, son of Turk, son of Yāfīg, son of Nūh, the Prophet, and of the tribes descended from his uncles, with an account of their genealogy and ramifications.

*Second Section.*—Account of the Turk tribes whom they designate by the name of Mughūls, but every one of which, in ancient times, bore distinct and particular surnames, and have had Sar-wars and Amīrs over them

*Third Section.*—Account of the Turk tribes, every one of which have had Bādshāhs and Chiefs, but who bore no relationship to the tribes mentioned in the preceding Sections. [This is a paradox, even from his own words, because, being Turks, they naturally bore relationship to the Turks as descendants from a common ancestor.]

*Fourth Section.*—Account of the tribes of Turks, whose surname from time immemorial was Mughūl, and this Section is in two parts. 1 Account of the Dūral-gīn Mughūls. 2 Account of the Nairūn Mughūls [The author cannot be right, for has not Mr. H. H. Howorth, in the Geographical Magazine for November, 1876, declared that Mongols are not Turks? This *may* be correct with regard to "Mongols," but scarcely so with respect to Raschid-ud-Dīn's Mughūls.]

The next Section treats of the ancestors of the Chingiz Khān.

Every year, when the anniversary of that day comes round on which the Kāsāt and Dūral-gīn came out of Irghānah-Kūn, the Mughals keep it as a great festival, and on the night thereof the Mughal sovereigns have the implements of the blacksmith brought in, place a piece of iron in the fire, and heat it, and,

and in order that that which I myself witnessed, and what

when hot, beat it on an anvil with a hammer, in commemoration of opening the way out, and this custom, imperfectly understood by Ibn Baṭṭūṭah, and others, led them probably to make the absurd statement that the Chingiz Khān, or Tamur-g̃hī, "was in his outset a blacksmith in the country of Khitā!"

Other authors say that all who can trace their descent to Khān or Nagūz—Kaiāts and Dūral-g̃ins—are considered true Mughals.

On the death of Val-dūz or I-yal-dūz his son succeeded to his authority.

Jū-inah—جویناه—and, by some few writers, Chūbīnah—چوبیناه—and Khū-inah—خوبیناه—and even خوسار but these two last forms are erroneous without doubt, particularly the last, succeeded his father, Val-dūz or I-yal-dūz, in the chieftainship, but the Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr does not account him as a ruler, and makes Jū-inah's daughter next in succession to Val-dūz or I-yal-dūz. The Tārīkh-i-Ghāzī, which Abū-l-Ghāzī also quotes, differs considerably from other writers. It states that Val-dūz or I-yal-dūz had two sons named Bakjadī or Bagjadī—بکجدی—and Bilkadae or Bilgadae—بلکدای—[according to Rashīd-ad-Dīn, in the Jāmi'at-Tawārīkh, Nūsh-Tigīn-i-Gharjah, the founder of the Khwārazmī empire, claimed descent from Āghūz through this very Bilkadae or Bilgadae. See note <sup>a</sup> to page 231, para. 4], but these names are somewhat doubtfully written and may not be quite correct. According to the same authority, both died before him, and he gave to the son of one of them, named Do-yūn or Doī-ūn Byān—دویون یاں or Do-yūn Bāyān—دویون بابان which is also written Dūbūn—دوبون—Diyūn—دیون—and in other ways, the daughter of the other son, who was named Ālān-Kuwā, a damsel of great beauty and talent, in marriage. Abū-l-Ghāzī however differs from the preceding this much that he says the husband of Ālān-Kuwā, who was Val-dūz's grandson, did not succeed to the sovereignty because he had not attained the age of thirty, and died soon after his father, leaving two sons—named as above—by Ālān-Kuwā, and that she acted as regent only, while others say that her husband was chief over some few ulūs, and that the Turks generally were under various independent chiefs.

The Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr however says that Ālān-Kuwā was given in marriage by her father, Jū-inah, to her uncle's son, as stated by the others, and that, by him, she had two sons named Bilkadī or Bilgadī and Bakjadī or Bagjadī, and after his death she assumed the sovereignty and occupied herself in the nurture of her two sons. At this time she dwelt near the upper sources of the Kalūr-Ān river,

ĀLĀN-KUWĀ—آلان کوه—which is also written ĀLĀN-KŪ—آلان کوه—and ĀLĀN-KUWĀN—آلان کوان—on the death of her father, her husband being dead, was entrusted with the direction of affairs until such time as her eldest son should become of age to succeed, but, in the meantime, although she refused to marry again, whilst lying asleep upon her couch, on a certain occasion, a mysterious light entered through the hole in the top of the felt tent and enveloped her, and the light passed through her mouth, penetrated her, and she conceived. This mysterious light came more than once, such was her story, and, as matters could no longer be concealed, it was made known unto her tribe, who reviled her, and refused to believe her story. Some writers state that she asked some of the chief persons of her tribe to keep watch, and satisfy themselves of the truth of what she had stated, and that some did so, and found her story correct, and the tribe were satisfied.

This is not much like the "story of the incarnation of the Buddha Sakya-

I became cognizant of from the accounts of trustworthy

muni" as a recent writer asserts, considering that the husband of his mother [who had never consummated her marriage with her husband] was, according to Chinese belief, ruler of Kashmīr, and that his birth took place 222 years before the Christian era, while the Hindūs, on the other hand, give a different account of his birth.

This story of Ālān-Kuwā is related somewhat differently by nearly every author, including Abū-l-Ghāzī, but I have no space for the various versions here. Abū-l-Faṣl, however, for the glorification of his master, according to his usual unctuous system of flattery, compares this circumstance to the immaculate conception of the Virgin Mother of our Blessed Saviour.

In due time, Ālān-Kuwā gave birth to three sons at one time, with one of whom, the youngest, a new dynasty, and a new era commences, and therefore it will be well to conclude this one here.

#### THE BŪ-ZANJAR OR BŪ-ZANJAR DYNASTY

I BŪ-ZANJAR. Ālān-Kuwā, the widow, having given birth to three sons at once, fathered on the mysterious light, according to the fabulous tale just narrated, the youngest of the brothers, according to some writers, and the eldest of the three, according to others, who was named BŪ-ZANJAR—بوزنجر—which some write Abū-zanjar—ابوزنجر—and Bū-zanjar—بوزنجر which is said to signify Bādshāh-i-Mu'azzam—Great Sovereign—and who is the ninth ancestor of the Chingiz Khān, and fourteenth of Amīr Timūr, in due time succeeded to the chieftainship over the Mughals, and, as I wish to compress as much as possible, I will only mention that the other two sons of Ālān-Kuwā—the eldest and second sons—became the progenitors of the Kat-ghan—کاتگن—and Sāhīfūt—سایفوت—tribes, and whose descendants, together with those of Bū-zanjar himself, are designated Nūrūn—نورن—from nūr—light, which some authors write, Nairūn—نیرن. The whole of the Mughal Khāns [one copy of the Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr adds—"and all the Sultāns of Turkestān"] trace their descent from Bū-zanjar, but, really, the whole of his descendants are Mughals only on the mother's side, unless the father, of which there can be no doubt, was a Mughal also.

The descendants of Ālān-Kuwā's legitimate sons, by her husband, are styled by the general name of Dural-gīn—دورلگین—previously written Dūral-gīn—دورلگین—Dural-gīn—دورلگین and applied to the descendants of Nagūz, whilst, by the different writers' own accounts, without exception, they, as well as their father and mother, belonged to the Kaīāt sept. They are considered lower in rank than the Nūrūn or Nairūn.

The majority of writers state that the birth of these sons of light took place in the time of Abū-Mushim, the Marwazī, the proclaimer of the rights of the 'Abhāsīs to the Khilāfat. He was born in 99 H [A.D. 717—718]—some say in the following year—and he began to advocate the claims of that house in 128 H. [A.D. 745—746]. Abū-l-Ghāzī states that 450 years elapsed between the flight of Kaīāt and his cousin Nagūz and the reign of Bū-zanjar, and, calculating from these dates, their flight would have taken place about 322 years before the first year of the Muḥammadan era, that is, about the middle of A.D. 300, but other historians, as I have stated before, mention that the Kaīāt and Nagūz continued to dwell in Irgānah-Kūn 400 years, and they say that Bū-zanjar succeeded to the chieftainship, when in his fifteenth year, in

informants, the events of the Muḥammadan territory, and

Rabīʾ-ul-Awwal, but no year is given. One work, however, the "*Shajarah-ul-Atrak*," states that it was on the 1st of that month in the year 130 H.

Abū-l-Faṣl, in the Akbar Nāmah, as before mentioned, says the Mughals came out of Irḡānah-Ḳūn at the end of the reign of Nūshīrwān, but he died in A.D. 579, about forty-three years previous to the year of the Flight or *Hijrah*, but Abū-l-Ḡhāzī gives neither month nor year. Faṣḥ-i, on the contrary, states, that Ālān-Ḳawā gave birth to Bū-zanjar and his brothers in the year 376 H. [middle of A.D. 986], and this, coupled with the statement in the Majāmʾ-ul-Ḳhiyār, that the Kaāt and Nagüz issued from Irḡānah-Ḳūn some time after H. 200 [A.D. 815—816], doubtless, is the correct date. Now, if we add 400 to 579—the date of Nūshīrwān's death, and suppose that the date of Kaāt and Nagüz entering Irḡānah-Ḳūn, instead of the date of leaving it, we shall have 979 years, and, if we take 400 years from A.D. 986—the year mentioned by Faṣḥ-i, namely 376 H., we shall have 407 years remaining, and this seems, to me, to show that the flight of the two fugitives and their wives took place about the middle of Nūshīrwān's reign, and not their issuing from Irḡānah-Ḳūn, which took place some time after H. 200 [A.D. 815—816], and, if we allow the average of thirty years for each generation, and consider that Bū-zanjar was the great grandson of Yal-düz or I-yal-düz, we shall not be far from the year 376 H. [A.D. 986].

More events are assigned to the period of Abū-Muslim than can be credited, and this is the period our author assigns to the rise of the Shansabānīs of Ḡhūr. The date given by Faṣḥ-i, for the birth of Bū-zanjar, is 186 years previous to the death of the Ḡhingiz Khān's father, the eighth in descent from Bū-zanjar, an average of little more than twenty years to each, but 130 H. for the accession of Bū-zanjar gives an average, to the death of the Ḡhingiz Khān's father, of exactly fifty-four years to each reign. On the other hand Bū-zanjar was third in descent from Yal-düz or I-yal-düz.

Bū-zanjar, who is styled Kāʾān, framed laws and regulations, and divided the Mughals into tribes as they still existed at the period when the different authors I have named, with the exception of Abū-l-Ḡhāzī, and Abū-l-Faṣl, wrote their accounts. The Tārīkh-i-Jahān gir and a few other histories likewise state, that some of the Tāttār chiefs and Amīrs of other tribes which, for a long period of time, had been ruled by their own chiefs, now submitted to Bū-zanjar Kāʾān's authority, and acknowledged his suzerainty, but this, it must be remembered, is a Mughal account. Bū-zanjar at his death, of which no date is given, left two sons, Būkā—بوكا—also written Būkās—بوكاس and Būkāe—بوكاي—and Tūkā—توكا—also written Tūkās—توكاس and Tūkāe—توكاي. The latter had a son named Mā-Ḡhīn.

II BŪKĀ or BŪKĀE KHĀN succeeded his father in the chieftain-ship, and, dying, was succeeded by his son,

III ZŪTŪMIN — ذوتومين — or Zütümīn — ذوتومي — Zütü-manīn — ذوتومين — as it is variously written, who was the father of nine sons, one of whom, Kāfidū, succeeded to the chieftain-ship. During the time of Zütümīn's chieftain-ship hostilities broke out between the Jalā-īr tribe, of the Dūral gīn branch of the Mughals, and the Khūṣā-īs. The Jalā-īrs had become a very numerous tribe at this period, and amounted to about 70,000 families, and had pitched their tents on the banks of the river Kalūr-Ān — كالوران. The Mughals and Khūṣā-īs were always at enmity, and hostilities continued perpetually to go on between them. At the period in question, the latter suddenly

the transmission of the Mughal sovereignty from one to

resolved to make a raid upon the Jalā-īrs, but on reaching the river found it too deep to ford. They constructed a temporary bridge, crossed over in the night, fell suddenly upon the Jalā-īrs, and almost annihilated them. Those that escaped, and other portions of the tribe not then present, fled for shelter into the parts where the other Mughal tribes dwelt.

This is the affair about which the Fanākātī makes such a great blunder previously noticed in the account of Āghūz Khān. He there stated, that, "when Ūghūz became firmly established in his sovereignty, and had secured his conquests, he sent a party from among his sons and kinsmen, and a considerable army, into the east, into the land called, in the writer's time, Mughūlistān. Four thousand years after, one among the Bādghāhs of the Khitā-īs moved against them, crossed the river Karā-Mūrān in the night, fell upon them, and slew the whole of them [the males] and made their wives and children captives, and only two persons escaped—Kaiān and Nagūz—with their wives, who fled to Irāganah-Kūn, where they and their posterity dwelt 400 years." It will easily be perceived what a muddle we have here—he has confounded the two events, and makes a sudden leap from Āghūz Khān to the period of the massacre of the Jalā-īrs.

After the death of Zūtūmin, his Khātūn, Matūlūn—متولون—or, as some write it, Manūlūn—مولون—an error probably of *n* for *m*—who was a talented woman, with eight of her sons, and her numerous herds and flocks, took up her residence in the retired tract of country—some say hill tract—named, but somewhat doubtfully, Alūgh or Ulūgh Arkī or Argī—الوى ارکى—but the first name is also written Alūs or Ulūs—الوس—and Kolūgh—کولوش—[Ulūs-i-Aurgah or Ūrgah—the Ourga or Kuren of modern maps? in about Lon 108° Lat 48°] whilst her ninth son, Kāidū, was absent. He had gone to his uncle, Mā-Chīn—some say, to his uncle's son—to demand in marriage a daughter of a kinsman of the sept of Dūral gīn, who had become exceedingly numerous, and who were also kinsmen of Mā-Chīn. During Kāidū's absence some of the Jalā-īrs, overcome by the Khitā-īs, came and took up their quarters among the *ū* or tribe of Matūlūn and her sons, and, in a dispute arising between them, the Jalā-īrs slew her and her eight sons. Kāidū sought his uncle's assistance to avenge them, and a message was sent to the heads of the Jalā-īrs demanding satisfaction for this outrage. This had such an effect upon the chief men of the tribe, who were absent with their people fighting against the Khitā-īs, that they slew seventy Jalā-īrs concerned in the slaughter of Matūlūn and her sons, and sent their wives and families, with many apologies, to Kāidū to do with them as he might think fit. Kāidū kept them as slaves; and, from one generation to another, for a long period, they continued the slaves of his family.

IV KĀIDŪ—کایدو—KHĀN—the sixth ancestor of the Chingiz Khān, through the endeavours of Mā-Chīn succeeded to the chieftainship. He had three sons, 1 Bāc-Sunkar—باى سىنکار—or Bāc-Sungkar—باى سىنکار—who was the eldest, and successor of Kāidū, 2 Jirkaḥ-Langūm—جىركاه لىنگوم—also written Jirkaḥ-Likūm—جىركاه لىكوم—and even Kharkah-Langūm—خارکاه لىنگوم—but this last is probably a mistake of *h* for *g*, and 3 Jār-chīn—جارجى—which some write Jār-jīn—جارجى—and Chār-chīn—چارچى—called Jaochīn—چارچى—by Abū-l-Ghāzī. These two last brothers were the progenitors of other tribes. Some few authors relate that the son of Kāidū's second son, named Hamanḡā or Hamanghā—همانگا or همانگا—was carried off by the

another, might become known, and also that [such account]

Tāttāra, and given up to the Āltān Khān, who put him to death, but this appears to be incorrect, and to be the same circumstance which happened to Ḳabal's son, mentioned farther on, as it is unlikely Ḳabal himself would have ventured to the Āltān Khān's court *after* one of his race had been thus put to death.

Ḳāidū cut a canal, in his territory, from a river, and named it Jarā-lūm—جرالم—[D'Ohsson's Karokol?] and thereby rendered that part exceedingly prosperous and flourishing. He also went to war with the Jalā-īrs and overcame them. At his death he was succeeded by his son,

V BĀE-SUNKAR—باير-سنگار—or BĀE-SUNGHAR—باي-سفر—which the Fanākātī writes Bāe-Sunḡūr—باي-سور—who made some conquests, and, dying, was succeeded by his son,

VI. TŪMĪNĀ-Ī—تومانی—also written TŪMNAH or TŪMINAH—تومند—TŪMĪNĀE—توميناي—and TUMĪVAH—توميد—He was a powerful chieftain, and added other territories of Turkistān to his own, brought the whole of the Nūrūn or Naurūn tribes under his authority [this seems to indicate that part of them had been independent some time previously], and in all Turkistān [sic in MSS, but probably Mughalstān] there was no sovereign equal in power to him. He had two Khātūns, by one of whom he had seven, and, by the other, two sons, who were twins. These twins were named Ḳā-jūlī—كاجولي—also written Ḳā-ghūlī—كاجولي—and Ḳabal—كابل—also called Ḳabalī—كابلی—

In consequence of a strange dream which Tūmīnā-ī had, when its interpretation was told him, he made these two sons enter into a solemn compact, whereby it was agreed between them, in their father's presence, that the sovereignty should pertain to Ḳabal and his descendants, and the Deputyship or Lieutenantcy, and leadership of the troops to Ḳā-jūlī and his progeny. A compact to this effect was drawn up in the Ī-ghūrī language—which is said to be the same as was in use in Tibbat, and written in what are called Tūngūt characters, signed by them both, and deposited in the treasury. Abū-l-Ghāzī does not mention this circumstance at all. Āghūr Khān is said to have made a similar arrangement with respect to his six sons—styled the Bardz-ūkī and Ūdz-ūkī, but, when all perished but two persons, the compact terminated.

If I mistake not, we shall find that the people named Budziāk, who dwell on the banks of the Borysthene, W of the Black Sea, are offshoots of the Bardz-ūkī division.

VII In accordance with the above compact, on the death of his father, ḲABAL—كابل—or ḲABALĪ—كابلی—KHĀN succeeded to the chieftainship, and his brother Ḳā-jūlī, to the leadership of the troops. The Mughals style Ḳabal Khān Alan-jik—الانجيك—or Alan-jik—الانجيك—which signifies "the cherisher of his people." He is the great grandfather of the Chingiz Khān, and of Ḳā-jūlī, who is the eighth ancestor of Amīr Tīmūr. All the tribes of the Mughals were in unanimity and accord with him, and stood in awe of his power and ascendancy, and the Āltān Khān of Khitā sent an emissary to him and summoned him to his Court. Those, however, who desire to glorify the Mughals, say, he "invited him to his Court, in a friendly manner," but there is little doubt, even by their own account, that the Mughals were dependent upon, and paid tribute to the Āltān or Āltān Khāns, as our author, Minhaj-ud-Dīn, likewise asserts.

Ḳabal, leaving his brother Ḳā-jūlī as his Deputy or Lieutenant, set out for

might remain a memorial of the writer of this **TABAQĀT**—

**Khuṣṣ**, and, having arrived there, was treated with honour and consideration ; but, while in a state of intoxication, at an entertainment, **Ḳabal** committed an offence which greatly displeased the **Āltān Khān**, so he presented him with a head-dress and belt, and sent him away. The glorifiers of the **Mughals** say "a crown," but crowns are not generally pre-ented at such times ; and **Abū-l-Faṣl**, not to offend his master's vanity, and **Abū-l-Ghāzī**, who was himself a **Mughal**, and descended from **Ḳabal**, leave out this little incident altogether.

After **Ḳabal** had departed, the **Āltān Khān** was blamed for letting him go so easily, and messengers were sent to recall him. He refused to return, upon which the **Āltān Khān** sent a party after him to compel him to do so. They came up with him whilst he was stopping in the camp of a friend named **Sān-jūt**. **Ḳabal** was for going back with them, but his friend lent him a very swift horse he possessed, and advised him to fly. This certainly does not bespeak the powerful sovereign. He at once mounted and made off for his own *yūrat* or camp. The party still pursued, but only found him after he had reached his home and people. He then, with the assistance of **Kā-jūt** and the tribe, put the whole of the **Āltān Khān's** men to death. At this period also, the eldest son of **Ḳabal**, whose name was **Ūkīn** or **Ūkain-Barḳāḳ** **اورکین برکائی**—also written **Ūkīn-Barḳā**—**اورکین برکائی**—while out on an excursion, was fallen in with, suddenly, by a tribe of the **Tāttār Ī-māk**, their mortal enemies—some say **Ūkīn-Barḳāḳ** was following the tracks of the **Ghuzz Turk-māns** at the time—who carried him off to the **Āltān Khān**, who put him to death. Here was a fresh cause of feud between the already inveterate foes, the **Mughal** and **Tāttār** Turks.

Some few writers, as I have just noticed above, say he was called **Hamanghā** or **Hamankā**, thus showing that it was merely one person who was thus put to death, and that those writers divided one event into two.

Besides **Ūkīn-Barḳāḳ**, **Ḳabal** had five other sons, two of whom were **Ḳūbīlah Khān** and **Bartān Bahādur**, but the others are not named, and the eldest of them, **Ḳūbīlah**, succeeded on the death of his father.

VIII. **ḲŪBĪLAH**—**قوبلا**—also written **ḲUBILAH**—**قوبلا** was a man of prodigious strength, immense stature, and great valour. "His voice would pierce the seventh heaven, and his grip was like that of a bear. He could take a strong man, and with both hands bend him like a twig until his back broke, and one author states that he delighted in amusing himself in this pleasant way." During the cold nights of winter he was wont to go to sleep naked before a great fire made of the trunks of trees. He used not to care for the sparks of fire which used to fly out and touch him, for, if he chanced to awake, he would fancy the fleas had disturbed him, and he would scratch himself and go off to sleep again !"

In order to avenge the death of his brother, **Ūkīn Barḳāḳ**, whom the **Tāttārs** had carried off, and delivered over to the **Āltān Khān**, who put him to death by having him mounted upon a wooden ass and nailed to it with iron spikes, and kept there until he expired, **Ḳūbīlah** led his forces against the **Āltān Khān**, and the **Tāttārs**, overthrew them [1], and carried off immense booty.

**Ḳūbīlah Khān** is not even named by **Abū-l-Ghāzī**, whose work is much confused here ; and, in several places, he relates events twice and even three times over, and differently each time.

This is the **Katula** of **Beresane** and **Kutlah** of **Eidmann**, derived from this

**Minhāj-i-Sarāj.** He confidently hopes that, during his life-

word incorrectly written with two dots over the third consonant instead of one under.

IX. On the death of **Khūbulah Khān**, his brother, **BARTĀN**—برتان—succeeded to the authority. The title of **Khān** was dropped with respect to him, and the new one of **Bahādur** was introduced. It is said that there was no one among their rulers who was endowed with greater valour and wisdom, and hence that title was assigned him. During his reign **Khā-jūlī** died, and his son, **Īrdam-ghī**, succeeded his father in his hereditary offices. "In the Turkish language, **Īrdam** or **Īrdam**—ایردم—they call a **Mīrā**—a secretary or writer—to which **ghī**—چی [the shortened form of **ghīz**—چیز] is affixed, indicating the actor or instrument, when applied to Turkish words." From this explanation, however, *irdam* may mean *writing*, not a writer. He used to be styled **Barlās**, by **Bartān**, because he had no equal in valour, and hence he is known as **Īrdam-ghī**, **Barlās**, but some say **Barlās** signifies a leader of troops. He had twenty-nine sons, and the tribe of that name are so called after **Īrdam-ghī**. The **Bahādur**, **Bartān**, had four sons, some say, several, one of whom succeeded him. "*Baghatur*," I beg to remark, is an utterly impossible title, and shows how those, who cannot "dig out the gold," are apt to vitiate the metal—the pronunciation of names.

X. **YASSŪKĀ**—یاسوکا—the **Bahādur**, whose name is also written **YASSŪKĪ**—یسوکی—and **YASSŪKĀE**—یاسوکای—and, erroneously, **Tasūkā**—تسوکا—the most competent and sagacious of **Bartān**'s sons, succeeded to the chieftainship of the **Mughal** tribes, and ruled over 40,000 families. This last statement shows plainly, however, that these persons, whom chroniclers make out to be such mighty sovereigns, could only have ruled over a few tribes, or their power must have dwindled considerably. The rulership over 40,000 families was not considerable, since the **Jalā-irs** alone were previously computed at 70,000. **Yassūkā** is the father of the **Chingiz Khān**, and, during his chieftainship, **Īrdam-ghī**, the **Barlās**, died, and his eldest son, **Sūghū-ghī**—سوغوچی—whose name is also written **Sūghū-jujan**—سوغوجین—signifying wise, succeeded to his late father's offices. He is the fifth ancestor of **Amir Timūr**, the statement of **Mr. H. H. Howorth**, in his "*Mongols Proper*," notwithstanding.

On account of the ancient enmity which had come down from one generation to another, and still more recent causes of hostility between the **Tāttār** and **Mughal** Turks, the **Bahādur**, **Yassūkā**, in concert with **Sūghū-jujan** led an army against them, overthrew them, and made captive **Tamū-ghī**, but more correctly, **Tamur-ghī**, which is also written **Tamur-ghīn**—the meaning of which will be explained farther on in the account of the **Chingiz Khān**—and **Karbūkā** or **Karbūghā**, who were their rulers and chiefs, and plundered their property and effects. After this the **Bahādur**, **Yassūkā**, set out in great pomp, for **Dilūn-Yöldük**—دیلون یولدوک—which is also written **Dīlūn-Yuldūk**—دیلون یلدون and, on reaching that place [which **Petis de la Croix**, in his innocency, says—*Life of "Genghiscan the Great,"* page 13—was "his Country-House, where he commonly resided" ] **Yassūkā**'s **Khātūn**, who was named **Ūlūn-Ānkah** or **Āngah**—اون اسکه—but whom the **Fanākatī** and **Faqīhī** call **Ūlūn-Kūjin**—الون کوجین of the tribe of **Ūlkūnūt**, who was pregnant, gave birth to a son, on the 20th of **Zī-Kā'dah**, 549 H [25th January, 1167 A D], and to commemorate his victory over the **Tāttārs**, by **Sūghū-jujan**'s advice, he named that son **Tamur-ghī**, afterwards the **Chingiz Khān**. **Yassūkā**, the **Bahādur**, besides this son, had, by the same **Khātūn**, three other sons—**Jūjī Khān**—



time, he will be [considered worthy to be] remembered with pious benediction, and, after his death, with invocation

اورنجی—*Oranjī*—or *Kājīn*—اورنجی—*Oranjī*—and *Onjī*—اورنجی—*Oranjī*—also written *Ūghkīn*—اورنجی—said to mean the youngest son, and also called *Ū-tigīn* or *Aw-Tigīn*—اورنجی— and, by a second *Khātūn*, a fifth son, who was named *Bilkūtī*—بیلکوتی—likewise written *Bīkūtī*—بیلکوتی—by others, who constantly attended *Tamur-ghī*.

When *Yassūkā* died in 562 H., his son *Tamur-ghī* was in his thirteenth year. About the same time *Sūghū-jīan* also died, and the *Nū-yān*, *Qarāchār*, his son, was also young in years, and the *Nūrūn* or *Nairūn* tribe—their own—forsook them and went over to the *Tāijūt*, and other tribes.

At this period the tribes of the *Mughals*, *Tāttārs*, and *Turks*, were ruled by *seventy-one chiefs* or *pākuns*, each of whom ruled over one or two tribes; and this shows very clearly what I have before stated, that the chiefs I have been here giving an account of were not supreme rulers over the whole of the *Mughal* tribes even, but only over a certain portion of them, and that only a portion of the *Nūrūn* or *Nairūn* division of them were under the sway of the *Bahādur*, *Yassūkā*.

I have now brought down, in an abstract form, an account of the *Turks*, and the *Tāttār* and *Mughal* *Ī-māks*, according to the accounts compiled by command of the *Mughal* sovereigns, and contained in the *Histories* I have named at page 869, to the point where our author begins his account of *Tamur-ghī*, afterwards the *Chingiz Khān*. I have done it chiefly because he has confused events, and with respect to their earliest history he is in some error, and states contrary to all other authors who have written on the *Mughals*, but I also do so because European writers go on floundering and blundering with respect to these people, the descendants of *Nāfiḡ*, while, at the same time, the matter lies in a nutshell. One of the latest specimens of this kind is contained in the "*Times*," whose special correspondent, writing from "*Therapia*," Nov. 7th, 1876, says. "The conglomeration of Eastern races, the *Turks* and *Arabs*, detest their enforced unity with their *Turannas* oppressors, their very existence culminating with a common feeling of unextinguishable hatred for the *Osmanlı*." So the writer appears to have made the wonderful discovery that the *Uḡmānlı* *Turks* are not *Turks* but *Tūrānfāns*, and so, by the same logic, these *Turks* are not *Tūrānfāns*. Who knows? perhaps he has discovered that they are *Aryans*, or even "*Tartars*," as some of the newspaper philosophers have lately discovered.

The *Yarkand Mission* [to the ruler of the State of *Kāshghar*] made some similar ethnological discoveries in that part of Central Asia, of which the following is one specimen out of many. At page 81 of the "*REPORT*," we are told respecting "the urban population," that they consist of "two typical forms," one of which, "the *Mongolian*," contains "the *Manju*, the *Moghol* or *Mongol*, the *Kalmāk*, the *Kirghiz*, the *Noghay*, the *Kapchak*, and the *Uzbek*. All of whom are designated *Tartar*, together with the *Kara Khitay*, the *Khitay*, and the *Tungani*, who are excluded from the catalogue though of the same stock." This may be termed, confusion worse confounded, but two pages farther on we are informed that "all that can be distinctly stated is that *Tartar* blood predominates with a greater or less admixture of the *Turk* element," &c., &c.

The monkish travellers found, centuries ago, how incorrect it was to style *Mughals* by the name of *Tartars*. De Plano Carpini [A.D. 1246] says he and

of pardon, in the world-illuminating opinion of the Sovereign of the people of Islām—NĀṢIR-UD-DIN, MAḤMŪD SHĀH—and other readers of his work.<sup>1</sup>

\* \* \* \* \*

#### FIRST INROAD OF THE TURKS OF QARAH KHITĀ.

Trustworthy persons have related after this manner, that the first irruption of the Turks was that the tribes of Qarah Khitā issued from the territory of Chīn and land of the East, and came out upon the confines of Kaiālik<sup>2</sup> and Bilāsāghūn, and withdrew their allegiance from the sovereign of Tamghāj,<sup>3</sup> and made the frontier tracts of Islām their dwelling-place, and their grazing-grounds. On agreeing to pay certain fixed imposts, for pasturage, to the Afrāsiyābī Maliks,<sup>4</sup> who were Musalmān sovereigns, of the

his party "*came to the land of the Mughals, whom Europeans call Tartars.*" Rubruquus also [A D 1253] says, "*near them [the Mughals] are the Tartars, by which name the Muls cannot endure to be called*"

Turks consist of those branches and offshoots from Turk and his descendants before the time of Tāttār Khān and Mughal Khān, who continued, and continue to retain the name of Turks, and of the two latter, who gave name to the two Ī-māks of Tāttār and Mughul. Both are Turks, by descent, but Tāttārs are not Mughals, nor are Mughals Tāttārs.

<sup>1</sup> Here our author proceeds to give an account of the various predictions respecting the end of the world, which the irruption of the Mughals prognosticate<sup>2</sup>, but which I need scarcely insert here.

<sup>2</sup> Kaiālik—كايلىق—or Kaiālik—كايلىق—the last letter of which may be also written with ع—gh—which is interchangeable with ك—k—namely, Kaiāligh or Kaiālig, is the correct name. In nearly every copy of our author's work the copyists have written the word Kaiālik—كايلىق—with ب—b—instead of ي—y—which is incorrect, as at page 154. These two letters, which, in the middle or beginning of a word, differ in one point only, are very liable to be written one for the other in MSS by ignorant scribes. In the oldest St Petersburg MS, instead of Bilāsā-ghūn, the name of the city is written with an extra د—d—Bilādsā-ghūn—بلادسامون—as will be again noticed farther on.

Rubruquus describes Kaiālik, under the name of Koylak. He says it was a great trading city in his time, and had three idol temples, the doors of which were always open to the south.

<sup>3</sup> This country will be found referred to at page 933.

<sup>4</sup> At page 154 our author says "they solicited Sultān Sanjar to assign them lands," but, although expressed in different words, the same thing, in fact, is there meant as is here related. Sanjar was the *suzerain*, and the Afrāsiyābī Sultāns or Maliks were *subject* to him, as is plainly indicated from the following account of them. Nothing is more dangerous or more likely to bring a writer into trouble than a superficial knowledge of Oriental authors derived from translations often made from a single and imperfectly written MS.

It will probably be well to give, however, a brief account of the Afrāsiyābī

posterity of *Afrāsiyāb*—the descendants of the *I-lak*

Maliks, because our author, both here and in his account of the *Sāmāni*s, *Saljūks*, and *Khwārazmī* Sultāns, occasionally confuses their names in such a manner as to puzzle and bewilder his readers. Such brief account of them will also tend to make the preceding account of the Turks clearer, and throw light upon the previous account of the *Khwārazmī* dynasty and of the *Gūr Khāns* farther on, and correct some crude theories recently put forth.

The *Muḥammadan* writers make continual mention of the Turks and infidels of *Māwarā-un-Nahr* and *Turkistān*, from the time that the first 'Arab—*Hakam*, son of 'Umr, in the *Khilāfat* of *Mu'āwiyah*, drank of the waters of the *Amūfah*, and 'Abd-ullah, son of *Ziyād*, was the first to cross it, but those writers give no consecutive accounts of the *Afrāsiyābī* Maliks until they come down to the year 367 H. It must also be borne in mind that the name of *Afrāsiyāb* does not occur in the Turkish traditions, although the 'Ajamī style him "the Turk."

The first person with whom most *Muḥammadan* writers begin this dynasty is *the Bughrā Khān*, [No IV in this account] whose *Musalman* name was *Abū-Musā-i-Hārūn*, and his title, *Shihāb-ud-Daulah*, and who, in 380 H., defeated *Mardāwan*, the general of the *Sāmānī* forces, near *Samrḳand*. Although this *Bughrā Khān*, "the Turk," is said to have been the son of *Sulimān*—whom some also style by the title of the *I-lak Khān*—son of *the I-lak Khān*, the meaning of which will be presently given, they do not include these two personages, among those rulers, although the latter, probably, brought the dynasty into greater notice, and splendour.

A few writers, however, including *Abū-Sa'īd-i-'Abd-ul-Hayy*, son of *Zuhāk*, a native of *Gardez* in *Kāpman* of the present *Afghānistān*—begin somewhat earlier, and, accordingly, I shall follow them. On reaching the time of the *Bughrā Khān*, *Abū Musā-i-Hārūn*, son of *Sulimān*, the different accounts agree. The *Gardezi* wrote about 441 H., in the reign of Sultān 'Abd-ur-Rashīd, son of *Maḥmūd-i-Sabuk-Tigin*, the seventh of the Sultāns of *Ghaznīn*, and that writer is, therefore, a little before *Abū-i-Faṣl-i-Baihaḳī*, who wrote in the reign of *Farrukh-zād*, the eighth of the Sultāns of that line, and who died in 470 H.

I *SATUK KUJAH*, written *Sātūk*—سَاطُوق—by one author, was an infidel, and the ruler of *Turkistān*; but, from a remarkable dream which he had one night, he, in the morning, became a convert to Islām, and induced his people to embrace it also. This happened probably about the year 315 or 320 H., but no dates are given. In *Alfi* he is called *Satuk-Karachār*.

There is a *History*, so-called, of this personage, who, in recent times, has been regarded as a saint, and a tomb and masjid have been raised over him. The account is written by the *Shāikh Najm-ud-Dīn*, in Persian, and translated into *Turki*; but, as might be expected, it is history burlesqued. It is quoted by Surgeon-Major *Bellew*, C. S. I., who was attached to the late *Kāshghar Mission*, who has composed a "History of *Kāshghar*, from the *Tahāṭi Nisari*," etc., etc., which may be styled history in chaos. *Shāikh Najm-ud-Dīn* causes *Ḥazrat Sātūk* to be born in 333 H., and to die in 430 H., at the age of ninety-six years. Unfortunately for such history, the IXth sovereign of the race, and the eighth or ninth in descent from the *Satuk* in question, was reigning over *Turkistān* including *Kāshghar* in 430 H. The Doctor, however, "would identify" *Sātūk* with, whom he calls, "*Iyūk Māzi*—as he is usually styled *I-lak-i-Māṣī*, probably—the past, or late *I-lak*, or of days of yore, as he is

[*Khān*], of days of yore<sup>a</sup>—and who were subject to the

<sup>a</sup> This is the *Ī-lak-i-Māṣī* referred to in para. 4, of the preceding note.

always called in the Persian, and who was not an “Uighur,”], son of the Bughra Khan, who invaded Bukhārā, where he died in the reign of the Amir Sāid Abul Kāsim,” etc., etc. The reign of the Sāmānī ruler, the Amīr-i-Sa’īd, or August Amīr, Abū-l-Kāsim-i-Nūh, will be found at page 45 of this Translation, and, farther on, when and where *Shihāb-ud-Daulah*, Abū-Mūsā-i-Hārūn, entitled the Bughrā *Khān*, died, which event did not take place at Bukhārā, neither did his dominions extend to the Caspian, but, on the west, adjoined the Sāmānī empire.

The Doctor, in several places, states that the Kāshghar territory, “from occupation,” was styled, “Mogholistan, or the country of the Moghol,” but this is wholly erroneous, and no History will show that Turkistān was ever styled Mughahstān, which Mīrzā Haidar, the Mughal Prince, and others distinctly describe, as may be seen in the note at page 889.

The Doctor tells us that the name of the city—Kāshghar—only “came into use under the rule of the Chaghtay Khans,” as referring to the territory, but this is also erroneous, as Histories written before their time sufficiently prove, and as may be seen at page 133 of this Translation.

II After Satuk-Kūjah’s death, of which likewise no date is given, his son, Musā, succeeded him as ruler. The date of his death is not stated.

III. On the death of Musā, his grandson, Abū-Naṣr-i-Aḥmad, son of ‘Alī, son of Musā, son of Satuk-Kūjah, succeeded to the sovereignty, and became famous under the title of the *Ī-LAK-KHĀN*. *Ī-lak*, in the Turkish language, is said to mean “prudent in counsel,” but some writers say that it is the title by which the rulers of Yughmā, that is to say, Turkistān, who are the lowest of the rulers of Tūrān, are known, and that, in comparison with *Khān*, it merely signifies a chieftain, or leader, the ruler of a tribe. The poet, Abū-l-Farāḥ is also quoted, to show that a difference exists between the two titles, by the following couplet:—

چر درك توكله مادا ايلك و جان را

تا ايلك و جان قلہٗ یمّا تاراد

This *Ī-lak Khān* bore the Musalmān title of *Shams-ud-Daulah*, and is evidently the same who entered Māwarā-un-Nahr from Turkistān in 367 H., just eleven years before *Ālān-Kuwā* gave birth to the three sons of light.

IV. We now come to *Shihāb-ud-Daulah*, *BUGHRĀ KHĀN*, whose name was Abū Mūsā-i-Hārūn, son of Sulīmān, son of the *Ī-lak Khān*, and no doubt the latter is one and the same person with the one previously mentioned above, No. III.

The Bughrā *Khān* entered Māwarā-un-Nahr, from Kāshghar, the city of which name was his capital, the first time, in 372 H. Subsequently, he was induced to invade it again, by Abū ‘Alī-i-Simjūr, and Fāyik-i Khāṣṣah, the traitor nobles of Amīr Nūh, son of Maṣṣūr, the Sāmānī. [See their dynasty, page 45, and note <sup>a</sup>, where, from the similarity of names, some slight confusion arises through our author calling Hārūn [Abū-Mūsā-i-Hārūn], “*Ī-lak Khān*,” instead of which, the *Ī-lak Khān* was his grandfather’s title.] On comparing our author’s statement, at page 51, with the account of the Gardezī, I find he confirms that author’s statement by mentioning “Amīr Abū-l-Ḥasan, *Ī-lak-i-Naṣr*, son of ‘Alī, brother of the Great *Khān*,” which evidently refers to the first *Ī-lak Khān* [No. III.] here mentioned, viz. —Abū-Naṣr-i-Aḥmad, son of ‘Alī, son of Musā, son of Satuk-Kūjah.

Saljūki Sultāns, they occupied those plains and pasture

During the reign of Abū-Mūsā-i-Hārūn, Shihāb-ud-Daulah, son of Sulimān, son of the Ī-lak, the Bughrā Khān, in 375 of the H., Saljūk, son of Lajmān, and his family and dependents, entered Māwarā-un-Nahr from Kārī-Khīfī for the sake of pasturage. In this same year a wonderful bird was seen to rise daily, for three days in succession, from the sea of 'Ummān, which was said to portend evil to Islām; and indeed, in the following year, 376 H., Ālān-Kuwā gave birth to the three sons "of the mysterious light," as related in the Mughal tradition, one of whom was Bū-zanjar, the great ancestor of, the Chingiz Khān. The Bughrā Khān was subsequently induced once more to invade Māwarā-un-Nahr by 'Abū-Ālī-i-Simjūr and Fāyik-i-Khāṣah, the traitor nobles of Amīr Nūḥ; and, in the year 380 H., he entered Māwarā-un-Nahr and defeated Mardāwanj, the general of Amīr Nūḥ, in the vicinity of Samrḳand. Fāyik also became subject to him, and was allowed to hold Isfānjāb. In 382 H., accompanied by Fāyik, he appeared before Bukhārā, entered it in Rabī'ul-Awwal, and Amīr Nūḥ fled. Whilst at Bukhārā, the Bughrā Khān was attacked with a painful disorder, and set out to return into Turkistān, but death overtook him on the way in 383 H.

Bughrā in the Turkish language signifies a stallion kept for breeding purposes, but, more particularly, a two humped stallion camel.

The Bughrā Khān was a just and well-disposed monarch, the friend of learning and the learned, and ruled over the vast tract of country extending from Kāshghar to Chīn. He was succeeded by his brother's son, the Ī-lak Khān, Abū-l-Ḥasan-i-Naṣr, son of 'Alī

V. The Ī-LAK KHĀN, Abū-l-Ḥasan-i-Naṣr, son of 'Alī, brother of Hārūn-i-Bughrā Khān (this is the person our author mentions at page 51), marched from Ūz-gand, and acquired predominance over Bukhārā on the 10th of Zī-Ḥijjah, 389 H., seized Amīr 'Abd-ul-Malik, son of Nūḥ, the Sāmānī, and sent him away to Ūz-gand—اورگند—in Farghānah [a totally different place from Ūrganj—اورگنج—as stated in note \*, page 52, through an error of the copyist in writing ر for گ—and from Gur-gānj—گورگنج—of Khwārezm], and took possession of the whole of Māwarā-un-Nahr. He again came to Samrḳand in 391 H.; and, in 393 H., Abū-Ibrāhīm-i-Muntaṣir, the last of the Sāmānīs, with the aid of the Ghuzz, defeated the Ī-lak Khān, and compelled him to retire. With the help of the Ghuzz tribe, under their Mīhtar, or Chief, Beghū, Abū-Ibrāhīm re-took Bukhārā, and re-subdued all Māwarā-un-Nahr. It was but a temporary advantage however, although the Ī-lak Khān was a second time defeated by the confederates, for he returned soon after with a great host, and subsequently completely overthrew Abū-Ibrāhīm in 395 H., who, in the meantime, had been deserted by the Ghuzz tribe.

In Jamādī-ul-Awwal, 391 H., it is stated that an envoy came from the Ī-lak Khān to Sultān Maḥmūd-i-Sabuk-Tigīn, proposing that all the territories of Māwarā-un-Nahr should appertain to him, and all Mādūm-un-Nahr [مادوم النهر—I have never noticed this term applied to the cis-Amūfah or cis-Oxus countries but in one old author. I shall refer to this again farther on] to Maḥmūd. Other writers state that a treaty to this effect was entered into between them in 396 H. There may possibly have been two treaties, the latter modified.

Whilst Maḥmūd-i-Sabuk-Tigīn was at Multān, after taking it in 396 H., intimation reached him that the Turks had broken the treaty, crossed the Amūfah in great numbers under Subāghī-Tigīn, and had penetrated as far even as Hirāt and Nishāpūr, but, that they had been driven back, and all Mādūm-

lands; and, being few in point of numbers, they there

un-Nahr cleared of them. In the following year, Sulṭān Maḥmūd marched to Balkh, in order to avenge this attack; and the Ī-lak Khān assembled 40,000 horse in Māwarā-un-Nahr, and crossed the river to encounter him. A battle took place in the plain a few miles from Balkh, and a charge of elephants decided the fate of the battle, and the Ī-lak Khān and his ally, Qadr Khān—his brother, probably—ruler of Khutan, were completely routed, on Sunday, the 22nd of Rabi'ul-Ākḥir, 398 H., many prisoners were taken, and, in crossing the Āmūīah, the Ī-lak Khān lost a great number of his followers who were carried away by the current and drowned. The Khān nourished the hope of revenge, but Time did not permit him to gratify it, and he died in 403 H.

VI. Sharf-ud-Dīn-i-TUGHĀN KHĀN, his brother, succeeded to the throne of Māwarā-un-Nahr and Turkistān. In the Turkish language *tughan* signifies a species of hawk—[توغان]—the Hawk or Falcon Khān. In the year 408 H., [began 29th May, 1017, A.D., old style], his dominions were invaded from the side of Chīn, by a vast host of infidel Turks, who had been displaced from their former localities, to the amount of 300,000 *khargaks*—felt tents so-called by the Turks—and equivalent to that number of families. This must have been about the time of the Mughal ruler, Zūlūmn No III., at page 894—which see. They certainly were not the people called *Karā Khitā'i*, or "Kitān" of European writers, subsequently to be noticed. Tughān Khān, although suffering from illness at the time, sallied out against them; and, after much fighting, drove them back again. Vast booty, and a great number of captives fell into the hands of the Musalmān Turks [and their Musalmān allies]. Tughān Khān died in the same year, and was succeeded by his brother.

VII. Abū-l-Muḥaffar-i-ARSAĪĀN KHĀN—also styled Ul-Aṣam, or "the deaf" brother of Tughān, succeeded him in the sovereignty. In 410 H., he is said to have fought a battle with Sulṭān Maḥmūd-i-Sabuk-Tigīn, and was overthrown, and, during his retreat across the Jihūn or Āmūīah, most of his troops were drowned, the incident which happened after the defeat in 398 H., above referred to. Maḥmūd, however, was engaged during part of this year in his expedition in Hind. The date of Arsalān Khān's death is not given; but, in 408 H., a princess of the family of the Ī-lak Khān, who had previously been betrothed to Prince Mas'ūd, Maḥmūd's son, arrived at Balkh on her way to Ghaznī.

VIII. QADR KHĀN, son of Yūsuf, son of the Bughrā Khān-i-Ilārūn, son of Sulṣmān—the Garderī, calls him Yūsuf-i-Qadr Khān, and states that he was one of the cousins of the Ī-lak Khān [No V ?], and who had been made governor, on his part, over Samrḳand—succeeded to the sovereignty on the death of Arsalān Khān. He was a prince of great justice and goodness. The Garderī states that, in 415 H., Maḥmūd-i-Sabuk-Tigīn reached Balkh with the intention of crossing the Jihūn into Māwarā-un-Nahr, to deliver the Musalmāns from the tyranny of 'Alī-Tigīn, ruler of Bukhārā, and one of the Afrāsiyābī Khāns, upon which, Yūsuf-i-Qadr Khān, who was the Sālār of all Turkistān and the great Ī-lak Khān, hearing of Maḥmūd's having crossed, left Kāshghar and came to Samrḳand. He then proceeded to meet Maḥmūd [see pages 116—118], and they entered into a fresh treaty. 'Alī Tigīn [this is the person referred to at page 121, which see], hearing of this, fled to the desert [the steppes E. of the Sīhūn]. Fasiḥ-i, however, says this took place in 419 H. It was at this time that Maḥmūd seized Isrā'īl, the Saljūk, and sent

continued to dwell, without violence or disturbance, in peace and tranquillity.

him off to Hind [Kāhna in the Panjāb]. In 416 H. [Faṣḥ-i, 419 H.]; Jaghar Beg, Abū Sulīmān-i-Dā'ūd [also called Dā'ūd-i-Jaghar Beg. See page 116. Here are some more *ṣafats* showing how they are used, and the necessity of their use], son of Tughri or Tughri Beg, son of Mikā'il, son of Saljūk [the Gardesī styles the Saljūks Turks and Turk-māns indiscriminately], broke out, left the Bukhārā territory and the Sughd of Samrkand, and retired into Khwārazm [see page 121], with the consent of Sulṭān Maḥmūd, but not the approbation of his ministers.

In 417 H., envoys came to Ghaznīn, to Sulṭān Maḥmūd, from Kayā [W] Khān, and Bughrā Khān, requesting a matrimonial alliance. Maḥmūd replied that he was a Musalmān and they were infidels, and that it was not the custom to give the sisters and daughters of Musalmāns to infidels, but that, if they would embrace Islām, the matter would be considered. These chiefs were Qadr Khān's brothers. Subsequently it was agreed that Zainab, the Sulṭān's daughter, should be betrothed to the son of Qadr Khān, who was then styled Yughān-Tigin, and afterwards took the title of Bughrā Khān, and a daughter of Qadr Khān was betrothed to Muḥammad, but subsequently to Mas'ūd, Sulṭān Maḥmūd's eldest son. Qadr Khān died in the year 423 H., and was succeeded by

IX. ARSALĀN KHĀN, son of the Bughrā Khān [No. IV] who was, at that period, Lord of Kāshghar, Khutan, Khujand, and Bilāsā-ghūn, now succeeded to the sovereignty, but, between him and his own brother, Bughrā, hostility arose, and the latter overcame Arsalān, and made him captive. Arsalān is the person to whom Sulṭān Mas'ūd of Ghaznīn sent a despatch after the battle of Dandānkān, mentioned in note <sup>4</sup>, page 94.

X. The BUGHRĀ KHĀN, son of Qadr Khān, who was Lord of Bānkī, or Jarāz, and Sinjāb [Isfānjāb or Sfanjāb, as it is also written. See page 28], after having overcome his brother, Arsalān, became absolute ruler. The mention of these provinces and countries sufficiently indicates the extent of country under the sway of the Afrāsiyābī Malik. The Bughrā Khān nominated his eldest son, Ja'far-Tigin, his heir, on which the mother of Ibrāhīm, the youngest son, poisoned the Bughrā Khān, together with some of his Amirs, and also put an end to Arsalān Khān, who was still in confinement, in 439 H.

Bughrā, also written with ب for ع—Bukra, is the same well-known Turkish name that is turned into *Bagorā Khan* by STEWART in his "*History of Bengal*," and Baikara by others.

XI. IBRĀHīm KHĀN, son of the Bughrā Khān, succeeded to the sovereignty after the murder of his father. His mother sent him against Bināl Tigin [one author has Nāl-Tigin], who used to act rebelliously, and, in the encounter which ensued, Ibrāhīm was killed, and the family of the Bughrā Khān [No. X], in the direct line, terminated with him. The year of his death is not mentioned.

In 453 or 454 H., Sulṭān Alb-Arsalān, the Saljūk, undertook the subjugation of Turkistān, but had to return from the frontiers of Kāshghar and Bilāsā-ghūn to the aid of the Khālfah. See page 134.

XII. Abū-i-Muzaḥḥar-i-Taf-kā [مذحجر] KHĀN, son of another Ibrāhīm, son of Naṣr, who was likewise of the house of Afrāsiyāb, and whose father had withdrawn from the world, succeeded to the sovereignty. He had previously been ruler of Samrkand, under the sovereign. He died of paralysis in 460 H.

XIII. Shams-ul-Mulk [some Mulūk] the KHĀKĀN, NAṢR, son of Taf-kā

When the period of repose continued for a prolonged

**Khān**, succeeded his father, and the daughter of Sultān Alb-Arsalān, the **Saljūk**, was married to him, and the daughter of 'Isā, his brother, was married to Alb-Arsalān's son, afterwards Malik **Shāh**. The **Khān**, **Shams-ul-Mulk**, died in 21-**Ādāh**, 472 H.

XIV. **KHĪṢA KHĀN**, brother of the **Khān**, **Naṣr**, succeeded to the throne, but very soon after died.

XV. **AHMAD KHĀN**, son of **Khizr Khān**, succeeded to his father, but used to act in such a manner that Sultān Malik **Shāh** had to march into Māwarā-un-Nahr, in 482 H. to coerce him. He defeated him, and sent him away to Iṣfahān, to the care of his aunt, Turkān **Khātūn**, Alb-Arsalān's daughter. After a time Sultān Malik **Shāh** restored him to the sovereignty, but in 488 H. he was put to death on being accused of heresy. The **Rauṭat-us-Ṣafā** states that Sanjar gave the throne to **Aḥmad's** son, **Naṣr** by name.

XVI. **MAHMŪD KHĀN**, uncle's son of **Aḥmad Khān**, succeeded to the throne of Māwarā-un-Nahr and Turkistān; and, in the year 490 H., **Dabkūllī**—[دبکولی]—**Tughān Khān**, son of **Qarā Khān**, marched an army against him and slew him. Who he was does not appear.

XVII. **QADR KHĀN**, son of 'Umr **Khān**, son of **Aḥmad Khān**, succeeded him. In 495 H. he became ambitious of possessing himself of part of **Khurāsān**, and invaded it. In **Shirvān** of that year he was encountered by Sultān Sanjar [this was long before Sanjar became supreme ruler of the **Saljūk** empire] near **Tirmīz**, and was defeated, taken prisoner, and put to death. He is called **Qunduz Khān** elsewhere. See note <sup>2</sup>, page 147.

XVIII. **MUHAMMAD KHĀN** [some, by mistake, call him **Aḥmad Khān**] to whom the title of **ARSALĀN** was assigned, son of **Sulīmān** by a sister of Sultān Sanjar, son of **Dā'ūd**, son of the **Bughrā Khān** [No. 3], and who, for a long time, had been an exile from Māwarā-un-Nahr, and dwelling at Marw, at the Court of that Sultān, succeeded to the sovereignty in 495 H.

In 523 H., **Sayyid Aḥraf**, the 'Alawī, and the men of **Samrḳand**, slew **Naṣr**, the son of **Arsalān Khān**, and openly rebelled against him. **Arsalān Khān** called upon his uncle, Sultān Sanjar, for aid, who set out in person with an army to succour him. Before Sanjar reached **Samrḳand**, **Arsalān Khān** had suppressed the outbreak, and he despatched an emissary to make apologies to the Sultān [not wishing him to come seemingly]. This conduct did not please Sanjar, and he continued his advance towards **Samrḳand**. **Arsalān Khān** was also accused of sending persons to assassinate the Sultān. The latter invested **Samrḳand**, took it in 524 H., imprisoned him, and sent him off to Marw, to his mother, Sanjar's sister.

**Muḥammad-i-Arsalān Khān**, son of **Sulīmān**, was restored to the sovereignty of Māwarā-un-Nahr by his uncle, Sultān Sanjar, in 526 H. Most of the authors I have taken this account from style him **Muḥammad** as before, and one calls him **Maḥmūd** [his son], but **Ḥaṣṣ-i**, and some others, distinctly call him **Aḥmad**—and the context proves it correct—[see note <sup>2</sup>, page 147], but they give 530 H. as the date of his restoration. This can scarcely be correct, as his son succeeded in 526 H. What subsequently became of him is not stated, nor is the year of his death recorded.

The **Ṭarīkh-i-Alfi**, the accounts in which are generally derived from the best authorities, without mentioning who he was or where he ruled, states that **Qadr Khān** invaded Māwarā-un-Nahr, at the head of a large army, with the object of conquering it and Turkistān, and that **Arsalān Khān**, **Muḥammad**,



time, and their offspring and posterity had become nume-

unable to cope with him, fled into **Khurāsān** to Sultān Sanjar for protection, and gave the Sultān a daughter in marriage. Sultān Sanjar marched into **Māwarā-un-Nahr**, overthrew **Qadr Khān**, put him to death, and restored **Arsalān** to his throne again.

After a short time, a number of the **Khāns** of the Turks became hostile to **Arsalān**, and, unable to resist them, he again fled to Sanjar for help, and again the Sultān restored him, after punishing his enemies. The soldiery of **Arsalān Khān** were principally of the two septs of **Kārlūghfah** Turks, and **Ghuzz**, and the former, having been intrigued with, and gained over by **Ashraf**, the 'Alawī, son of **Muḥammad-i-Abī-Shujā'**, the Samrkandī, to combine with **Nagr Khān**, **Arsalān's** son, the 'Alawī incited **Nagr Khān** to dethrone his father. **Arsalān Khān** gained intimation of the plot, and forthwith put his son, and the 'Alawī to death. After this, **Arsalān** regarded the **Kārlūghfah** with hostility, and they looked upon him with dread. At last, they combined to destroy him, and **Arsalān** had again to fly to Sultān Sanjar. He marched towards Samrkand to quell this outbreak, upon which, the **Kārlūghfah** took to flight and retired to the mountains. Another version of these events is, that **Arsalān Khān** had located 12,000 **kharghas**, or felt tents of **Kārlūghs**, equal to that number of families, on his eastern frontier to protect it from the incursions of the Chinese [**Khūā fā**], but he had latterly ill-treated them, and they had left his dominions, and retired into the territory of **Bilā-saghūn**, the particulars respecting which will be found in the account of the **Gūr Khāns**, farther on.

Sultān Sanjar entered Samrkand, and remained there a short time. It was at this period that, while occupied in the chase, the Sultān perceived a band of armed men lying in ambush in the **Shukār-gah**, or preserve. These were seized, and, they having confessed that **Arsalān Khān** had sent them thither, the Sultān proceeded to invest the ingrate within the walls of Samrkand, captured him, and sent him away to **Balkh**, where he died. Some say his death was natural, but others, that the Sultān had something administered to him.

During this reign, in the year 522 H., **Aghūz** [أغوز], the **Chīnī**, with a host more numerous than ants or locusts, invaded the territory of **Kāshghar**. The Wāf of **Kāshghar**, **Aḥmad**, son of **Hasan**, collected his forces to repel the invaders. The two armies met within the frontiers of **Kāshghar**, and an obstinate battle ensued, which ended in favour of **Aḥmad**.

Who **Aḥmad** was is not mentioned, but he was, doubtless, one of the **Afrāsīyābī** family, subordinate to **Arsalān** as head of the house, and has, evidently, from the discrepancies above noticed, been taken for one of the sovereigns of this dynasty.

**Aghūz**, the **Chīnī**, after the slaughter of great part of his army, took to flight; and, after he had reached his capital, the name of which is not given, died of grief and chagrin. "The **Gūr Khān**," according to the same authority, "became his successor over the country of **Chīn**," as will be presently mentioned.

**XIX** **ḤASAN-TIGİN**, son of 'Alī, son of 'Abd-ul-Mūmin [**Alfī** has, son of 'Abd-ul-Mūmin, son of 'Alī], famous under the name of **Abū-l-Ma'ālī**, **Kulj-i-Tamghaj**, who likewise was of the same family, was, by command of Sultān Sanjar, raised to the sovereignty, but he died very shortly after.

**XX** **Rukn-ud-Dīn**, **MAHMUD KHĀN**, **Arsalān's** son, and great nephew of Sanjar, who is mentioned in the **Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh** and in **Alfī** as the

rous, they began to act in a refractory manner. The

**KHĀKĀN**, Rukn-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd, son of Muḥammad, son of the Bughrā Khān [No. X Yāfa'i says he was his great grandson], with the support of Sulṭān Sanjar was raised to the throne in 526 H., and, in Ramaṣān 531 H., he encountered the Gūr Khān of the Karā Khitā-ī in battle, within the limits of Khujand, but was defeated, and compelled to retire to Samrḳand. Sulṭān Sanjar advanced soon after to his assistance with his forces, but he also was overthrown [in 534 H., A.D. 1134 Guṛidah and others say in 535 H. Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh says in 536 H.] by the Khitā-īs under Āt Khān and Bāufko, as has been already stated under Sanjar's reign, at page 154, but, since that portion of this work was translated, some further particulars, tending to throw light on this subject, will be found in the notice of the Gūr Khāns farther on.

Rashīd-ud-Dīn, in the Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh, further states, that Sulṭān Itsuz [our author's Utsuz], Khawārazm, Shāh, in 547 H., marched against Sak-nāk—also written Sagh-nāk, which lies north of Utrār, and other tracts, and also against Kamāl-ud-Dīn, Arsalān Khān, son of Maḥmūd, the Wālī or ruler of Jund, who fled to Rūdbār. Who he was is not said, but he is evidently one of the Afrāsiyāb family. He was induced to return, but was put to death, and Sulṭān Itsuz annexed Jund, which he gave to his own son, I-yāl-Arsalān. The year above-mentioned is that in which the Ghuzz acquired such predominance, but, according to some writers, and more correctly, the year previous to Sanjar's falling into their hands.

Maḥmūd Khān, forsaking country and possessions, after the victory of the Karā-Khitā-īs, in 534 H., came into Khurāsān along with Sulṭān Sanjar, and continued at his Court, and, subsequently, after the Sulṭān was taken captive by the Ghuzz, he was raised to the sovereignty of Khurāsān, as a temporary measure. After his uncle's escape out of their hands, and his death soon after, Maḥmūd, in 552 H., for a time, again obtained the nominal sovereignty over Khurāsān, but, after a stormy reign of five years and a half, in 557 H., he was deprived of his right by Sanjar's slave—Mu'ayyid ud-Dīn, the Āfnah-dār [See page 180], and died in 558 H.

XXI. TAMGHĀJ KHĀN, son of Muḥammad Khān [but whether this is the same Muḥammad, who is called Ahmad, and dethroned and again restored to sovereignty by Sulṭān Sanjar, is not stated], became Wālī of Māwarā-un-Nahr after Sulṭān Sanjar's imprisonment by the Ghuzz, but he did not possess much grandeur or power, and his reign was a very stormy and agitated one. He was tributary to the Karā Khitā-īs, who continued to hold sway in those parts, after Sanjar's captivity, until finally driven out and expelled by Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khawārazm Shāh.

Tamghāj Khān was at length slain and his corpse cast into the desert by the Kārliuks or Kārliuchs. This happened in 551 H., some say, in 550 H.

One author refers to a Tamghāj or Taghmanj Khān, named Ibrāhīm, son of Al-Ḥusain [Al-Ḥasan?], as one of the Khāns of Turkistān, who, when he became absolute, came to Samrḳand, and dwelt there many years. He was a great patron of 'Ulamā and other learned men, and wrote Qur'āns which were sold, and the prices realized therefrom he subsisted on. He must be one and the same with the above, from the mention of Samrḳand, although there is a discrepancy with respect to his father's name, and he too had a son, Khayr Khān, who is said to have been a Sulṭān of great pomp. Probably, Nos. X and XI are referred to.

period of the Sanjarî empire had nearly reached its termi-

I may also add that *Tamghā*, the name of which often appears in this Section, is a territory of Turkistān, as well as a name given to rulers, and that some writers state that it is the name—dynastic name, probably—of the sovereigns of Tihbat and Yughmā, which last word is also the name of an old city and territory in Turkistān.

XXII. Jalāl-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, son of Hasan-Tigin [Raghd-ud-Dīn calls him Husain merely], son of 'Alī, son of 'Abd-ul-Mūmin, who bore the title of *Khizā Khān*—some say *Jaghar Khān*—with the support of the Gūr Khān of the *Qarā-Khizā-Is*, after Sultān Sanjar's defeat at *Qajrān*, succeeded to the sovereignty of Māwarā-un-Nahr. *Khizīr Khān*, subsequently [in 553 H.] slew, in *Khizā* it is said, *Beghū* or *Beghūn Khān*, the chief of the *Kārlūks* or *Kārlūghs*, and other chiefs of that tribe, then located in Māwarā-un-Nahr, such as *Lā-chīn Beg*, and, the sons of the slain *Beghū*, fled to the *Khwārazm* territory, and connecting themselves with Sultān I-yāl-Arsalān, *Khwārazm Shāh*, instigated him to attack *Khizīr Khān*, the *Khizān*, as he is also styled—another title by which this dynasty is also called—of Samrkand, that is to say, Māwarā-un-Nahr. This is a sufficient proof that the rulers were not *Kārlūghs*, and that they were *Ī ghūrs* is utterly out of the question.

I-yāl-Arsalān, *Khwārazm Shāh*, accordingly, in the same year [553 H.—A.D. 1158], in Jamādī-ul-Ākhir, marched an army into Māwarā-un-Nahr, arrived at *Bukhārā*, and, from thence, moved towards Samrkand. On the news of his movements reaching *Khizīr Khān*, he at once summoned to his standard all the *Tārākamah* nomads of those parts, from the *Qarā Kol* or Black Lake, as far as Jund, and brought them to Samrkand. He mustered his forces on the bank of the *Bagh-dād* river in the *Sughd*, near the capital, and within the walls of the city. He likewise sought aid from the *Qarā-Khizā-Is*, who despatched to his aid the *Ī-lak* of the *Turkān*, but the *Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh*, and *Rauzat-us-Safā*, both style him the *Ī-lak* of the *Tārākamah* [plural of *Turk-mān*, which, since they also consider them Turks, or belonging to the Turk tribes, is much the same in signification], who, soon after arrived, with a force of 10,000 gallant men to the aid of *Khizīr Khān*, and, through the *Ī-lak's* endeavours, an accommodation was entered into, and the *Khwārazm Shāh* retired into his own territory again. There were one portion only of the *Kārlūgh* Turks, for *Ibn-Dastah*, in his account of the *Jihūn*, says, several rivers flow into the *Jihūn*, among which is the considerable river called the *Wakhsh* river, which issues from the tract of country above the land of the *Kārlūgh* Turks.

The *Beghū* are often referred to by our author, after this period, in several places in this work, as being located in *Wakhsh* and *Badakhshān* [see note <sup>4</sup>, page 374, and page 494], and they are the tribe of this same *Beghū*, the *Kārlūk* or *Kārlūgh*. The *Ghuzz* are also styled *Beghū*, as previously stated in the account of the Turks, but these *Beghū Kārlūghs* are totally distinct from the *Ghuzz*. There are no such people, I beg leave to say, as "*Ghozzs*," or "*Ghoz*" or "*Gusses*," nor do "we know that the Osmanli claim descent from the *Ghozz*," any more than they do from the "*Kankulis*," but we know quite the contrary.

*Khizīr Khān*, and his predecessor also, were tributaries of the Gūr Khāns, as was likewise 'Ugmān, *Khizīr's* successor; but the mention here, by different historians, of the *Ī-lak* of the *Tārākamah* or *Turkān* being sent by the Gūr Khān himself to the assistance of *Khizīr Khān* is very important, proving, as it does, what I was quite cognizant of before, how crude and erroneous are

nation, and they broke out into rebellion. Sultān Sanja

the theories put forward by a writer—Mr H H Howorth—who has been writing largely of late on “Mongols,” “Ghuzzes,” “Gusses,” and the like, and imagines that the “*It* [sic] Turkan,” of D’Ohsson, was one of the sovereigns of this dynasty I am here giving an account of, and that they were all styled “Arslan Khans,” i.e. “Lion Khans,” when, out of the twenty-three sovereigns here mentioned, but *three* were styled Arslān, i.e. Lion. The Ī-lak-i-Turkā or Ī-lak-i-Tārākanah, as he is also called, was certainly one of the descendants of Afrāsiyāb, and that was why the Gūr Khān sent him to the aid of his kinsman Khwār Khān [and he had good cause to hate Kārlūks], and there were several others, too, who claimed similar descent, as well as the dynasty of the Bugh and Ī-lak Khāns I have here given a brief account of. Ī-ghūrs they certainly were not.

The Ī-lak-i-Turkān above referred to is most likely the very same person who, in 522 H [A.D. 1128], gave up his authority to the Gūr Khān, or otherwise his son or successor in that title. The former is the more probable. The length of his reign, which must have been considerable, is not given neither the date of his son’s succession.

XXIII SULTĀN ‘UṢMĀN, son of Jalāl-ud-Dīn, ‘Alī, son of Ḥas. [Tug̃ā] of the Bughrā Khān family, who, on account of the antiquity of his race, is styled Sultān-us-Salāṣīn, is the last of this dynasty, but, at what period he attained the sovereignty, is not stated. As he had solicited a daughter from the Gūr Khān, to whom he was tributary, in marriage, and been refused, Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, for that very reason, to spite the Gūr Khān, gave him a daughter of his own in marriage in 606 H. Great friendship and intimacy arose, in consequence, between Sultān ‘Uṣmān and his father-in-law, but it developed into great resentment. ‘Uṣmān abandoned the Sultān’s friendship and was going to ally himself again with the Gūr Khān. At last, Sultān Muḥammad marched against him, took Samarkand, and secured the person of Sultān ‘Uṣmān. Sultān Muḥammad was inclined to forgive him, but his own daughter, ‘Uṣmān’s wife, whose name was Khān Mah, was against it, and, in 609 H, he was put to death, at her instigation, you say, by her command, and with him that dynasty became extinct. The length of his reign is not mentioned.

From the account of ‘Uṣmān in the notice of the Karā-Khitā’is farther on, considerable discrepancy will be noticed respecting his again attaching himself to the Gūr Khān after his alliance with the Sultān of Khwārazm, and the Sultān’s occupying Samarkand, and the absolute contrary would appear to be the fact, but, that something unpleasant did occur between him and his father-in-law, ‘Uṣmān’s being removed from Samarkand, and taking up his quarters at Khwārazm plainly show.

Sultān ‘Uṣmān—said to have been a second Yūsuf in beauty—it was, when along with the Gūr Khān’s army, interceded with the Karā-Khitā’is and saved Sultān Mu’izz-ud-Dīn, Muhammad-i-Sām, Ghūrī, from captivity and enabled him to escape from Andkhūd, after his defeat there in 601 H. See page 480.

Another proof that Turkistān was ruled by many petty princes is, that among the Malikis of the Dihlī kingdom in Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yasim’s reign, one was ‘Alā-ud-Dīn, Jānī, a Prince of Turkistān—a refugee apparently—but of what family he came is not mentioned. He subsequently gave considerable trouble, and was put to death in 634 H. See page 640.

marched to coerce them ; and Bānko of Ṭarāz, from the side of Khitā [the Qarā-Khitā-i territory—from Ṭarāz] with a numerous army, advanced to encounter the Sultān, and a battle took place between that host of infidels and Sultān Sanjar. The army of Islām was defeated, and Turkān Khātūn, who was the Sultān's consort, became a captive [in the hands of the Khitā-is].<sup>6</sup> After the Sultān retired, they [!] sought for peace, and sent back Turkān Khātūn, and they obtained immunity.

When the insurrection of the Ghuzz [tribe] of Khandān<sup>7</sup> broke out and continued, and the dominion of Sanjar declined, as has been recorded, the Qarah Khitā-is acquired vast strength, and the Maliks of Turkistān, with their assistance, used to subdue each other, and were wont to send them riches, valuable gifts, and presents, in hope of their aid and help. Those Maliks continued to use their utmost endeavours in the subjection and destruction of each other for so long a time, that the Qarah Khitā-is became rulers over the whole of them ; and, for a period of near eighty years and over, their power continued

At first, when they became supreme, the chief men among them, in succession to each other, were several persons ; and those who lived near unto my own time, and of whom I have heard from narrators, were I-mā, Sunkam, Arbaz, Tūmā, and Bānko [of Ṭarāz], and their sovereign was a woman, and, at last, after that female, there was a man, and his title was "the Gūr Khān," and they were wont to style him "the Khān-i-Khānān."<sup>8</sup> Some have related that

Another is mentioned as holding Utrār, and another Jand, during Sultān 'Usmān's reign over Māwarā-un-Nahr

<sup>6</sup> See also the account of the rulers of Siyistān and Nīmroz, page 188.

<sup>7</sup> Some copies of the text, as in the account of Sultān Sanjar's reign, where the particulars of these events will be found [page 154], have Khatlān, some Khandān. Here, the former is correct—there the latter. The Ghuzz or Ghūzz—غر or غور—[it would require a good deal of "twisting" to turn their name into the impossible one of "Gusses"] came into the Musalmān territories from Khandān, which is on the frontiers of Chin or China, but, when they revolted against Sultān Sanjar, they were dwelling in Khatlān, whence the confusion, and only crossed the Jihūn towards the close of Sanjar's reign, prior to his defeat by them. See notes <sup>6</sup>, page 374, <sup>5</sup>, page 424, and <sup>6</sup>, page 426.

<sup>8</sup> Which is the Persian translation of the title "Gūr Khān." Mr. H. Howorth in his book on the "*Mongols Proper*," page 719, has the following :—

this Gūr Khān had, secretly, become a Musalmān, but God knows the truth in this matter. It is agreed, however, that the first among them [the Karah Khitā-ī rulers] were just sovereigns, and were adorned with equity, and ability, and used to treat Muḥammadans with great reverence, show respect unto ecclesiastics, and used not to consider tyranny and violence allowable towards any created being.\*

"Colonel Yule adds, 'the tendency to swelling titles is always to degenerate, and, when the value of Khan had sunk, a new form, *Khān-Khānān*, was devised at the court of Delhi, and applied to one of the high-officers of state.'" Here we have the "new devised form" as early as 1259 A.D., nearly *three centuries* before the first Mughal Sulṭān of Dihlī appeared in India. The title of Khān-i-Khānān—Khān of Khāns—is not at all uncommon, and is frequently mentioned in histories centuries before any Mughals reigned at Dihlī.

Surgeon-Major Bellew, the Historian of the Kāshghar Mission of 1873, has fallen into error in his account of the "Gorkhān" from the "*Tabaḥṭi Nāsiri*," and other works quoted by him, for he makes out, in the first place [page 132], that the "Kara Khitāy," who "came to the cities of Cubāligh and Bālāsghūn, took the government upon themselves," from "the Afrāsīyāb Princes descended from Iylik Marzi [*sic*]," and "kept it for eighty and odd years," and then tells us that "their rulers in succession were Ayma, and Sangam, and Arhar, and Tana, and Tāynko, and then a queen who was succeeded by Gorkhan." All this is different from the ṬabaḥĀt-i-Nāsirī, of which this work is a Translation.

\* It would tend, probably, to elucidate the above statement, and to correct some of our author's errors and shortcomings, if I gave, here, a brief account of the dynasty known as the Gūr Khāns of Karā-Khitāe or Karah-Khitā.

The original country of these rulers is Khitā or Khitāe, which consists of several vast tracts of territory, and the designation of Khitā differs according to the different races who speak of it. For example, "that great and famous country which has always been the seat of government of powerful sovereigns, and is so at present [when the Fanākatī wrote 578 years ago], is called by the people themselves—*خانی جاکوت*—Khān zjū Khān-kūc—and the Mughals call it *جاکوت*—Jākūt or *جاکوت*—Jāh-kūt. The Hindūs call it *Chin*, while we, in Māwarā-un-Nahr, term it *Khitā* and *Khitāe*."

"There is another country of great extent, to the east of Khitā inclining south—S E—which the *Chīnī*, [Chinese] call by the name of *میری* or *میری* [?]—but the Mughals style it *نکاشی*—and the Hindūs, *Māh-Chin* (not *Mā Chin*), which is to say *Chin-i-Buzurg*, or Great China." [That *Khutan* was ever called *Chin* or *Mā-Chin*, as Remusat is said to have stated, cannot be shown, but it formed part of the Chinese empire]

"To the north of Khitā there are certain tribes of *Saḥrā-Nishīnān* [Nomads] whom they [the *Khitā-ī*] call *Jidān* or *Jaidān*, and the Mughals know them by the name of *Karā-Khitā-ī* or Black *Khitā-ī*. The great barrier or wall separates *Khitāe* from the lands of the Turks and Nomads." It must be borne in mind that it is a custom among eastern people to distinguish countries, and sometimes people, by the epithets of white—*āf* and *chaghān*—and black—*karā* or *karah*, the former name being given to the most extensive or fertile countries, and most civilized people, and the latter to the poorest and least fertile countries, and the

Upon several occasions the armies of these rulers had

less civilized people. The same may be remarked with respect to the term, *sarḡh-rū*—red-faced, that is to say, honourable, of good fame, and *nydḥ-rū*—black-faced, meaning disgraced or dishonoured.

"The dwelling-places or lands of the Jidān tribe adjoin the plains, wilds, or steppes of Mughahstān; and, on one occasion, a person of the Jidān tribe rebelled, seized the sovereign of *Khifā*, and became Bādshāh himself. For several generations his descendants reigned. They were afterwards ousted by another person, and the Āltān Khāns, who were finally overthrown by the Chingiz Khān, and his son, Ūktāc Khān, were his descendants."

The family of the person who afterwards rose to sovereignty with the title of the Gūr Khān ["Gorkhān," "Kawar" and "Gawer," and "Kur, a form of Gur Khan," and the like, of European authors, and some European translators, are entirely wrong] was named *قورغین*—*QŪMĪN* or *KŌMĪN* *TĀE-GHŪ* or *ṬĀVA-GHŪ*, also written *قوشین*—*Kūshṭīn* or *Koshṭīn* *Tāe-kū*, or *Ṭāya-kū* [the *Yailu Taislu* probably of D Ohsson], which names might vary a little more according to the vowel points, but *not the consonants*, except that *ج* and *غ* in the middle or end of a word are interchangeable, and that Turks, Tāttārs, and Mughals, change *ḡ* and *t* into *ḡ* and *d* occasionally. I have read the above words according to the usages of the Persian language. *Kūmīn* *Tāe ghū*'s family was one of distinction in those parts, and, long before the time of the Chingiz Khān, and antecedent to the rise of the sovereigns of the *Khūjah* or *Khorjah*—*خورجہ*—dynasty [Corca of Europeans is here referred to], forced, through the vicissitudes of destiny, he left his native country along with 80 persons of different tribes or families, and took up his dwelling—pitched his tents—within the borders of *Kırkız* or *Kırkiz*, respecting which see the account of the Turks at page 876. This tract is generally mentioned along with *Tingḡūt* by most of the authors I have quoted in my note on the descent of the Turks, Tāttārs, and Mughals.

Some again say that these 80 persons were his own family and kin, and that they were accompanied by their dependents and followers, who made up a considerable number, and, from their proceedings, this last statement appears the more correct of the two.

The *Karā-Khifā*'s fugitives assailed the people of those parts—*Kırkız* or *Kırkiz*—and were themselves attacked in return, and hard pressed. On this account the *Karā-Khifā*'s moved away from those tracts, and entered the territory of *Ī-mil*—*إمل* or *Ī-mil*—*امل*—or the territory on the river of that name, and there founded "a city," in, and about which, the Gūr Khān being an exceedingly just and efficient ruler, some 40,000 families, Turks, and numbers of others, soon gathered around him. The remains of that city, the name of which is not given, were still to be traced at the time the Histories I take this account from were written, but, in the time of *Mirzā Muḥammad Ḥaidar*, the author of the *Tārīkh-i-Rashīdī*, who wrote subsequently—whose work I have partly translated, and of which more hereafter—neither traces of this place nor of the city of *Bilāsā-ghūn* were known.

Subsequently, the *Karā-Khifā*'s moved from the territory of *Ī-mil*, because it could not contain them, they had multiplied so greatly, and advanced towards the boundary of the *Bilāsā-ghūn* territory. This city—*Bilāsā-ghūn*—the Mughals, subsequently, but long previous to the days of *Amir Tīmūr*, styled *Kū* or *Ghū* and *Akū* or *Aghū*—*بایق*, that is to say, according to the *Ḥabīb-us-Siyar*, and some other works, the pleasant, good, or

crossed the river Jīhūn, and had made raids upon the fron-

beautiful city. The ruler of that tract of country was a person who claimed descent from Afrāsiyāb, but whose name is *never once mentioned*, and he possessed neither power nor grandeur; and the Turk tribes of Kārūk or Kār-lūgh—whose immigration thither has been recorded in the account of Arsalān Khān—and Kanḳulī, who were dwelling in those parts [and also the Khufchāk tribes, according to another writer, only Khufchāk or Kibchāk is not the actual name of any tribe, but a tract of country], having withdrawn their allegiance from him, used to resist his officers, harry his people and followers, carry off their flocks and herds, “and were wont to act as wolf and fox.”

This Amīr of Bilāsā-ghūn, as previously shown, was a totally different person from either of the rulers mentioned in the account of the Afrāsiyābī dynasty of kings just recorded, for all the accounts given by different writers, and what has been stated respecting the IXth and Xth sovereign of that dynasty, tend to show that, besides that dynasty, there were several other Khāns, who appear to have been, in some way, subject to them; and our author, in several places, as well as other writers, confirms this, as in the following examples.

At page 51, our author mentions “the rulers of the Afrāsiyābī dynasty of kings,” and one as “the Great Khān,” thus showing that there were lesser Khāns. At page 84 he mentions, “Kadr Khān,” and “the Khāns of the Turks,” and “the Khāns of Turkistān.” Saljuḳ also is said [see note 2, page 117] to have descended from Afrāsiyāb. Agun, at page 118, our author says “all the Maliks of Turkistān and the Afrāsiyābī rulers” were afraid of the son of Saljuḳ, and, at page 121, “‘Alī Tigin, the late ruler of Bukhārā, who was one of the Afrāsiyābī Khāns,” is referred to. At page 133, he informs us that Sulṭān Alb-Arsalān “led an army into Turkistān and Tūrān, and the Maliks of Turkistān, and the Afrāsiyābī Amīrs, submitted to his authority,” and, on the next page, that he had reached the frontiers of Kāsh-ghar and Bilāsā-ghūn, in 453 or 454 H., when he had to hasten to the Kāshfah’s succour. At page 137 he says Malik Shāh brought under his sway “the whole of the countries of Turkistān.” At page 260 also, our author states that “the Sulṭān [Muhammad, Khwārazm Shāh] set out towards Māwarā-un-Nahr and Turkistān, and the whole of the Maliks and Sulṭāns of the Afrāsiyābī dynasty, who held territory in the countries of Māwarā-un-Nahr and Farghānah, presented themselves before him,” and this was immediately before the total downfall of the Gūr Khān and his dynasty. All this, and what has been already related, certainly does not show that “the Afrasiab dynasty is a mistake,” as a recent writer, merely because he has not found anything about them in the foreign translations to which he alone has access, supposes.

The Amīr of Bilāsā-ghūn, unable to coerce these Turks—the Kār-lūghs and Kanḳulīs—hearing of the arrival in his vicinity of the Gūr Khān, the plenitude of his power, and the number of his dependents and followers, despatched envoys to him to state his own weakness, and inability to keep the Kār-lūghs and Kanḳulīs in subjection, and to invite him to move towards his capital, that he might cede unto him his territories, and release himself from the troubles and sorrows of his present state, and his people be protected.

Before I proceed farther it may be well to say something on the geography of these parts, as described by Oriental authors, and also to refer to some



tiers of Khurāsān, and had ravaged Upper Khurāsān lying

statements on the subject which have recently appeared in the *Geographical Magazine*, and in the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, and more particularly because the geography of these parts refers as much to the notice of the Afrāsiyābī Maliks, of whom I have just given an account, as to the Qarā-Khūfā-Is, and will tend to elucidate the history of both dynasties.

In the *Geographical Magazine* for December, 1874, page 389, is an article or letter on "*Bala Sagun and Karakorum*," referring to a "brochure of Professor V Grigoreff, on the Khāns of Turkistān, who quotes the Chronicle of "Derwish Akhmed Effendi" [probably meant for Darwesh Ahmad Afandī,—there is no such a name as Akhmed] from a Turkish translation, in which it is said that "The capital of their dominions was at first the city of Balasagun, but afterwards Bukhara and Samarkand. They began to rule over Mavrennahr in the year 383 (993 A.D.), and their dynasty came to an end in 609 (1212 A.D.) Their main possessions were 1 *Bala Sagun*, which was their capital, situated at the beginning of the 7th climate in 102° of Long and 48° of Lat, not far from Kashghar, and considered from of old the old boundary city of Turkistan, 2 Kashghar, the capital of Turan, in the 6th climate in 120° of Long and 45° of Lat; it is also called *Ardukend*, &c; 3 *Khotan*, in the most distant part of Turkistan, Long 170°, and Lat 42°; 4 *Karakorum*, 5 *Taras*; 6 *Furab* all three important cities."

This statement is tolerably correct, according to the Oriental geographers, with a few exceptions. They could not possibly have begun to reign over Māwarā-un-Nahr in 383 H., because "the Great Khān" did not take possession permanently of Bukhārā until the 11th month of 389 H., up to which time, the Sāmānis ruled over Māwarā-un-Nahr [see page 52 of this translation].

In no histories, however, that I have met with, and they are not a few, is such a statement made as that, "at first, the city of Bala Sagun [What has the "Effendi Akhmed" done with the gā in the name Bilāsā-ghūn? He is not likely to have written it with simple g any more than he would write Ahmad with {h,} was the capital," and afterwards Bukhārā and Samarkand. Bilāsā-ghūn continued to be the capital of a branch of the family up to 522 H., when it was given up to the Qarā-Khūfā-Is. The Afrāsiyābī began to reign centuries before 383 H. Without referring at all to pre-Muhammadan times, we find a Turk dynasty, the ruler of which is styled Khākān, as the Afrāsiyābī kings are also sometimes called, at Samarkand and Bukhārā when the 'Arabs first crossed the Jihūn, and they are, doubtless, one and the same. The first we hear of them in Muhammadan times is during the period of the early 'Arab governors of Māwarā-un-Nahr, previous to the time of the Tāhiris and Sāmānis, but the earliest date mentioned is about the year 53 or 54 H., when Muhallab made a raid on Bukhārā. In 77 H., the people of the Sughd of Samarkand are mentioned, and their Malik, Tarkhūn by name. Inroads were made into Farghānah by the 'Arabs in 87 H., and a treaty was entered into with the Turks. In 111 H., the Turks issued from the tracts north of Bukhārā and Samarkand, and invaded Khurāsān, but the Khākān of the Turks was routed by Junaid. Soon after, the Khākān again returned with a great army, and the 'Arab Amir of Samarkand had to render aid to Junaid, but nothing decisive was effected. Then followed the rise of Abū-Muslim, when the tracts east of the Jihūn were little thought of, the rise of the Tāhiris and Sāmānis followed, who forced the 'Turks back from Māwarā-un-Nahr, but, in 367 H., Shams-ud-Daulah, the

on the bank of the Jihūn, and the confines of Balkh,

Ī-lak Khān of the Turks, entered Māwarā-un-Nahr, as already stated in the account of them. In no history is Bilāsā-ghūn mentioned as *their capital*, but Kāshghar is constantly referred to as such. Ahmad, the first of the Sāmānīs [See page 28], who died in 261 H., held Farghānah, Shāsh, and Isfānjāb—most of the people of which were Ghuzz, and Khal) Turks, who had embraced the Musalmān faith—together with Kāshghar and Turkistān to the frontier of Chīn, and this shows where some of the Turk tribes were located at that period. In 280 H., Ismāʿīl, Sāmānī, made a raid upon the country of the Turks, took their chief town, the name of which, unfortunately, is not mentioned, and carried off great booty and a vast number of captives, but it appears that, the more the Sāmānīs turned their attention to Khurāsān, the stronger grew the Turks beyond the Sīhūn. On disturbances arising in the Sāmānī empire, from the time of Amīr Nūh, the 14th of that dynasty, the Afrāsīyābī Malikḥ began to meditate conquests in Māwarā-un-Nahr, and, in 383 H., the son and successor of the Ī-lak Khān—Abū-Mūsā-i-Hārūn, the Bughrā Khān—determined to attack Bukhārā, but he did not retain possession of it. Three sovereigns of the Sāmānī dynasty reigned after 387 H. The former date was about seven years after the widow, Ālān-Kuwā, gave birth to the “sons of light.”

It is amusing to read the various theories put forth with regard to the site of Bilāsā-ghūn, and the derivation of its name.

In the *Geographical Magazine* for June, 1874, we are told, in a paper by Mr Robert Michell, who quotes M Paderin, that “Belasagun,” as he styles it, is indifferently called Kara-Korum, Kara-Kherem, Kara-Korum, and Kara-Khelin, and that, “by Muhammadan writers, it is called Urdu Balik [D’Ohsson, *Hist des Mongols*, t. 1, p. 76] or Belasagun, now written [by whom?] Balgasun, which M Semenof explains is only a title.”

This may be dismissed as simple nonsense. Bilāsā-ghūn and Qarā-Quram are totally distinct places.

In the same *Magazine* for July, 1874, p. 167, Colonel Yule, C B., referring to the above, says “That Belasaghun was a corruption of the Mongol Balghassun, or ‘city or royal residence,’ as is intimated in the same passage, seems highly probable,” but he thinks that it is “greatly to be questioned” whether “Belasaghun was the same as Karakoram.” By the story Belasaghun should lie somewhere between these (the Caspian, Aral, and Jaxartes) and Imil,” &c.

Who is the authority that “Belasaghun was a corruption of the Mongol Balghassun” is not mentioned, nor do I think any Eastern author will be found to contain such a statement for reasons I shall mention farther on.

In the next month’s *Geographical Magazine*, Mr. Michell again informs us that the correct version of the previous quotation is taken from M Semenof’s Russian edition of part of Ritter’s *Asia* as follows — “Muhammadan writers call this ancient capital of the Turks [Korin, or Kholm, or Kara-Korum] Ordu-Balik [D’Ohsson, *Hist des Mongols*] or Belasagun [Balgasun], which, however, is only its title.”

It certainly should like to know the name of any Muhammadan author who has made such an astounding assertion.

Farther on Mr. Michell says, “In conclusion, I would suggest that Pinjan, near Turfan, which is, too, situated near a lake [But who says the capital of the Ī-lak Khān, the Afrāsīyābī Malik, was near a lake?] may be the ancient

Tirmid, Amūd,<sup>1</sup> Tāl-kān, Guzarwān [also Juzarwān] and

<sup>1</sup> Probably Āmūt, or Āmūlah, a town on the banks of the Jihūn, a place frequently mentioned in history, and which gives the name of Āmū, Āmūn, or Āmūlah to the river Jihūn, which separates Khurāsān and Ī-rān from Tūrān and Turkistān, the signification of which words are, full, replete, running over, full to the brim.

The inroads of Karā-Khitā-Is into Khurāsān refer to the time of the Khwārazmī rulers, particularly Sultān Shāh. See note 7, page 245

Balga-sun (*Balga* meaning "guarded refuge," and *Sun* being, perhaps, an objective case, and derived from *su*, water," &c.

Such a situation for Bilāsā-ghūn is scarcely possible

In the next number of the *Geographical Magazine*, for September, 1874, Colonel Yule again writes, referring to the above, "Balghasan is a Mongol word apparently meaning city" (perhaps "walled city," but I have no access to a dictionary), and, in a foot-note, adds "It is, I presume, a derivative from *Balgh* *Asun* one sees in a common Mongol termination, but I do not know its force"

We are not informed who says "Balghasan" is a Mongol word, but considering that we only hear of it through the Musalmān writers, who give us the account of the Gūr Khān, and the battle between the Sultān of Khwārazm and the Karā-Khitā-Is, and before the irruption of the Mughals, is it likely to be "a Mongol word"? It appears also to have been entirely overlooked with regard to these theories, that the Mughals did not dwell in cities, towns, or houses, but in felt tents

Asūn is certainly a Mughal, or Turkish name, as in Tā-īr Asūn who was chief of the Ūrhār Markit tribes, and some others.

I shall have something more to say respecting Karā-Kuram under Ūktāle Kā'an's reign.

Surgeon-Major Bellew, of the late Kāshghar Mission, informs us that "Balāsāghun," is "the Kūbaligh of the Moghol"

Mr Eugene Schuyler, in the *Geographical Magazine*, for December, 1874, p. 389, is quite correct in supposing that Bilāsā ghūn is not a Mughal name, but it certainly does not come from Persian "*bala*," upper, as he supposes, because the second letter in that Persian word is *alif*—ا—while the second letter in بلالغون—also written with ب—ق—for ع—*gh*—which is pronounced, according to the vowel points mentioned in explanation of it—BILĀSĀ-ghūN—is *lām*—ل—and, without doubt, this place was a long way west of Karā-Kuram, and more to the south.

Colonel Yule, in "a note" to Mr. E Schuyler's "letter," says, Juwaine's expression as given by D'Ohsson conveys the impression that the name "Gubalik" was given to the city by the "Mongols" of the "Chinghis age," and that "Balghasan" alone could not have been the earlier name of the city, meaning as it does merely "city," and that "Gubalik" may be a clerical error for *Armalik*, and may indicate *Cobalik* (or *Gubalik*) was the same as *Almalig*," &c

It is very certain that the Mughals called Bilāsā-ghūn Ghū-Bālīk or Bālīgh with the guttural *gh*, and ب and غ being interchangeable—هو بالغ or هو بالیق—and the Juwani says so as well as many others, but neither "Gubalik," "Armalik," "Cobalik," nor "Balghasan" Bilāsā-ghūn was certainly its previous name, and by no other was it known, according to the histories avail-

**Gharjistān**, as far as the frontier of **Ghūr**. All **Māwarā-un-**

able, until the Mughals gave it a name among themselves, but I look upon the Mughal name as merely a by-name. The city did not lose its previous name in consequence of this by-name, but it is scarcely mentioned after its sack by the army of the last **Gūr Khān**, and it was subsequently destroyed by the Mughals at the time of the **Chingiz Khān's** irruption into Islām. The meaning assigned to **Ghū** by Oriental writers is "good," "fine," "pleasant," &c.; and **Baligh** signifies "city"—as **Bish-Baligh**, **Khān-Baligh**, **Mau-Baligh**, and the like, but **Ghū** alone does not mean "good city," "fine city," nor "beautiful city."

Mr. H. H. Howorth has been writing voluminous articles lately on "**Avlie Ata**," the "**Khara Khitai**," "**Balasagun**," and other kindred subjects, but, to judge from them, he appears to change his opinions, as well as his proper names, with each fresh one.

In the *Geographical Magazine*, for July, 1875, p. 217, he writes with reference to "**Balasagun**" that "**Gu-Balik**" is probably the literal translation of "**city on the Chu**," and he follows one of the writers just referred to, and says that "**Balasagun**" [all three writers mentioned spell the word differently, it will be observed] "**merely means city**," and that "**Balasagun** is a wholly indefinite term." In this last opinion I do not by any means agree with him. What more definite name is required I cannot conceive it is as definite as **Samikand** or **Bukhārā**. But in what tongue does "**Gu-Balik**" mean only "**city**"? This is diametrically opposed to Colonel Yule's theory.

In the *Geographical Magazine*, for December, 1875, p. 378, Mr. Howorth makes a very "bold guess" indeed "that **Kayalik** is no other than **Go-balik** [*sic*] i.e. *Beautiful City*," and so—as he states above that "**Balasagun**," which is "a wholly indefinite name," and "only means city," is "**Gu-Balik**"—**Bilāsāghūn** and **Kayalik** must, consequently, be one and the same place, while, on the very same page, **Kayalik**, the existence of which is undoubted, long before the **Karā-Khitāis** were heard of in that part, is supposed to be "a city or town, 'their foundation.'" In the map to his book, "*The Mongols Proper*," however, "**Bilasaghun**" and "**Kabalik (Kayalik)**" are some 500 miles apart!

On that same page it is also said that **Kayalik** is no doubt compounded of the well known Turkish particle **baligh** or town, but in the *J R As Soc.*, vol. viii., part ii., p. 275, he writes "The site of **Balasaghun** has been much debated. It was the capital of the ancient Turkish *Khans of Turkistan*. . . . It merely means city."

Again, in the *J R As Soc.*, p. 277, we have: "Another important town of the **Kara Khitais** was **Kayalik** or **Kabalik** . . . which name is not probably a corruption of **Kobalik** or **Kabalik**," and, "the present Russian station of **Kopal**" is supposed to be its site.

In the same paper, page 267, "**Bish balig**" is said to mean "six courts," which consisted of "six towns," but what authority exists for this last statement is not said. At pages 6 and 21 of his "*Mongols Proper*" we are informed that "**Urumsai**" is "**Bishbalig**," and in the map prefixed to it we have "**Bishbalig (Urunchu)**," but at page 737 it is stated that "**Piechpalai** is no doubt **Bishbalig**," and at page 165 it is "**Bish Balig**, the capital of **Uiguna**."

Another writer says the word signifies "*five towns*," which is correct, for **bish**, in Turkish, means *five*.

The "**Afrasiab dynasty**" is also believed, by Mr. Howorth, "to be a mistake," in reference to the **Khāns of Turkistān** [whom I have, I think,

Nahr, Farghānah, and Khwārazm, and some parts of

shown to be substantially palpable sovereigns], contrary to every *Muhammadian* writer, who has written on the subject, *without* exception, although, in another place [*Geog. Mag.* for July, 1875, p. 217], we have "the descendant of Afrasiab, who was deprived of his title of Khan, leaving him only that of 'Ilk Turkan!'"

In another place this very "Ilk" Khān, or "Ilk Turkan," is said to be "one of the Lion Khans—Lion Hoi or Lion Uighurs of Visdelu, whose northern capital was Almāligh, a *well known* city in the middle age history of Central Asia, which is said to mean *City of Apples*" [there is no *lāligh*, however, in the word], but in what tongue is not said . . . "It is fixed on the site of the modern ['] city of Old Kuldja, on the river Ili," but who fixed it is not said. In Col Walker's last Map (1875) Kuldja figures as *It*!

A line or two after we have, "I have no doubt, therefore, that it was its chief [the chief of Almāligh], the Lion Khan of the Uighurs," &c, . . the metropolitan city of the Lion Khans," &c, &c. See Nos IX and X. of that dynasty, note to page 905

Page 277, of the same paper, the writer says—"The deposed Khan of Turkistan had his seat of empire at Samarkand," it was at "Bilasagun" before, and, just above, p. 269, "Almaligh" was "the metropolitan city", and, by way of improving this, at page 272, I find that "At Khan" [Āt Khān—the Karā-Khūṣā-t, who, with Bāniko of Tarāz, fought the battle with Sulṭān Sanjar] "is probably the dispossessed Khan of Turkistan," his "Ilk Khan," and, at p. 282, that "the old royal race of the Turkish *Sulṭāns* of Turkistan still held subordinate authority at Samrkand" '1. In no History is the chief of Bilāsā-ghūn ever styled Sulṭān, which was the title of the head of the Afrāsiyābī dynasty

So the upshot of all this is that the Afrāsiyābī dynasty is "a mistake," and yet they are said to have reigned at three different capitals—Bilāsā-ghūn, Almāligh, and Samrkand, and also to have "held sway at Kashgar," to be "descendants of Afrasiab," also "Lion Uighurs" [Ī-ghūrs], and of "the old royal race of Turkish Sulṭāns," and yet also "Karluks." What a tissue of mistakes and inconsistencies have we here! See also the note on Koshluk farther on.

I have already alluded to some of these statements in my account of the Afrāsiyābī dynasty.

Mr. Howorth's latest theory [*Geog. Mag.* July, 1878] is that "Kenchak," which Mr. Schuyler has "identified" with Merke, "seems to mark the site of the famous capital of the Kara Khitai, *Balasaghun*, which has been the subject of much controversy!"

With respect to the situation of Almāligh, I have found some scanty particulars, which fix its position tolerably clearly. On the occasion of Timūr's moving into Mughalīstān from Samrkand, in 791 H., he crossed the Sībūn at Tāsh-kand, and reached the Issī-Kol—اسی کول—i. e. Issigh-Kol—اسیغ کول—where he was joined by the troops which had moved from Andigān thither. Having remained there for a time to perfect his arrangements, the force set out by the 'Uḡbāh or Pass of Arjatū or Irjatū, plundering and slaughtering the enemy on both sides of its route, until, *having passed* Almāligh, it crossed the river Iliḥ—الی—by swimming its horses, and reached the Karā-tāl, &c, and no river Chū is at all referred to. The Karā-tāl river rises about twenty or twenty-five miles west of Alten-umel [the Āltān

**Khurāsān** also, used to send them tribute; and, upon

[-mil?] of Col. Walker's map, in Lat.  $44^{\circ} 10'$ , Long  $78^{\circ} 10'$ , and falls into the **Tm-ghuz**, or **Din-ghuz**, or **Lake Bālkash**. So **Ālmāligh** is to be looked for, or rather its site, to the west of the river **-Jīh**, and nearer **Almāti** than "New **Khulja**."

In looking for sites of such places, it appears to me that sufficient allowance is not made for the physical changes which may have taken place during six centuries. In one great tract of country, in particular, as I shall presently show, a vast desert has existed for some centuries, where, previously, many flourishing cities stood, but the sites even of the cities of **Bilāsā-ghūn**, **Ḳayālīk**, **Bīgh-hāligh**, and **Ālmāligh**, were entirely unknown upwards of three centuries since. Landmarks have disappeared, and hence people look elsewhere than in this desert for lost cities, in many instances. I may also again mention here that our author's **Ḳabālīk**—**قالبك**—at page 154 is incorrect. The copyists of the different MSS wrote **ب** for **ي**—and such an error has occurred in other Histories than his carelessly copied. The city's name is properly **قالب** according to other authorities, and the place certainly lay south of the **Ulugh Tāgh**, or **Thianshan** mountains, but near them.

I will now give a few particulars as to what the Muhammadan authors, and some old travellers say, respecting the geography of the parts herein referred to.

In Astley's Collection **Bīgh-Bāligh**—**بیشالیغ**—is said to be  $26^{\circ}$  W. of **Pekin**, and rather more than  $44^{\circ}$  N. of the equator, and about a degree N. of **Turfān**—**طرفان**—while **Karā-Ḳuram** is said to be  $10^{\circ}$  W. from **Pekin**, and about the same distance as **Bīgh-Bāligh** N. of the line. The **I-ghūr** country formerly seems to have included the provinces of **Turfān** and **Khāmūl**, or at least the middle portion near **Turfān**, within eight or nine leagues of which was their capital called **Hō-chew** by the Chinese, but, as previously mentioned, the mountain [range] of **Karā-Ḳuram** was about the centre of it. Whether **Hō-chew** is **Bīgh-Bāligh**—which was a well known place long after the **Mughal** invasion—or whether the last was another capital to the N. of **Turfān**, as **Gaubil** mentions, is difficult to say. The **I-ghūrs** were masters of a portion of the adjacent parts of **Tātiāry** to the sources of the **Īrtīsh** and **Mount Altai** [**Altān** mountains], as were the **Karghiz**.

**Abū-l-Fidā** says **Bilāsā-ghūn** is near **Fārīb** or **Utrāi**—a totally different place from **Fār-yāb** in the territory of **Bukhā**, but **Abū-l-Fidā** blunders often. The authors quoted in Astley say the correct name is **Yalasā-ghūn**, or "Good Town," not **Bilāsā-ghūn**, and that **B** and **Y** in the Arabic are easy to mistake. This is true, but the mistake here is their own. **Bilā-ā-ghūn** is also said to be "still in existence [its ruins?] in Little **Bukharia**—**Kichuk Bukhārā**, or the western part of the **Kāshghar** territory, as at present constituted—near the borders of the Greater **Bukharia** and the country of the **Ḳālīmāks**, and one of the principal entrances on that side into Great **Bukharia**." Others again say that it was near **Kāshghar**, as **Darwesh Ahmad**, quoted by **Prof. Grigoreff**, also says, and some, more to the N., near **Utrār** or **Fārāb**, in **Turkistān**.

Others again seem to consider that the town which appears in some maps as "Turkistān"—a very unusual, and I think impossible name for either a town or city, but not for a country—is no other than **Bilāsā-ghūn**, but this cannot be right. I shall have something to say about this town of "Turkistān" farther on. Some call the former place "Tūrān which gives name to the country."

That portion of the Great Desert of **Kob**, or **Shāmo**, W. of the **Karā Muran**

several occasions, they had made captive and carried off Musalmāns from those tracts.

or Hohang-Ho, is said to be called Karā-Khūtā—because the Khūtā-is dwelt so long in that part, and herein the empire of the Kin, or Western Lyau of the Chinese writers, appears to have been founded. It is farther east and farther south than what appears in some recent maps as "Karakhitai."

Another writer plainly states that "Fārāb is a city of Turkistān *between Chāch*, i. e. Chāj or Tāsh-kand and Bilāsā-ghūn, both of which are cities of Turkistān, and that it is the name of the territory likewise in which it is situated," and, farther, that the word signifies "lands cultivated by artificial irrigation by means of rivers or *lārius*—subterranean canals—in distinction to lands irrigated naturally by rain." According to this, Bilāsā-ghūn must be looked for to the northward of Tāsh-kand.

It may also be well to mention what the Oriental geographers mean by the term MĀWARĀ-UN-NAHR, the Great Dukharia of old European writers and travellers. The term is neither "equivalent to Doub," nor to "Mesopotamia," but simply "that which is beyond the river," i. e. the Jihūn, Amūnah, or Oxus—*Trans-Oxus*. It has the territory of Tāsh-kand on the N., Balkh on the S, Khwārazm on the W, Farghānah on the E, and Samrkand is its capital.

"FARGHĀNAH, which is the name of a country [not of the city of Khoḳand as it is made to appear in Col Walker's map], is bounded on the W by Samrkand and its district, E. by Kashghar, S by the Kohistān of Barakshān, and, although the parts bounding it to the N, previous to the ninth century of the H, were in a flourishing condition, and contained places such as Almālīgh—المالغ—Alamātū or Almātū—الماو—and Bānkī—بانكي—otherwise Farāz—فرار [no Bilāsā-ghūn is referred to], yet now, through the passage of the Ūshaks, it has become desolated. The river Sihūn, also called the Āb-i-Khujand, flows through it, enters Turkistān, and becomes lost in the sands." There is no mention whatever made of the 'Aral Lake or Sea in the works I am quoting.

"In the territory of Farghānah there are seven large and small cities, five to the S, and two to the N of the Sihūn—1 Andigān [Andijān of the 'Arab], a very strongly fortified place, 2 Ūsh; 3 Marghāniān [مرغان—Marghilān of the maps], seven farsakhs W of Andigān, 4 Khujand, N of which is a mountain called Mughal-Tāgh in which much *firniak* and other valuable things are found, 5 Akhshī, on the N side of the Sihūn [the *Alsi* of maps], which, with the exception of Andigān, is the largest place in Farghānah, 6 Shāsh, a very old place, now [old] Tāsh-kand. It is also called Chāch and Chāj [incorrectly Jaj], 7 'Z-gand." Khoḳand is not mentioned, it being a comparatively modern place.

Farghānah, Māwarā un-Nahr, and Turkistān, are all separate territories.

"Turkistān is mostly in the sixth climate, including Fārāb, a small territory, the chief town of which is called Gugar—گلر, but some say it is the name of a city above Shāsh or Chāi, and near unto Bilād-i-ghūn—بلادافون. This other form of writing the name of this famous place—Bilādsā-ghūn—might plausibly be supposed to be from *bilād*, only it is the *plural* form of *balad*, which means city, town, country.

JUND, or, correctly, JAND, was once a great city, but it has been in ruins for over 300 years.

With the exception of the Sultāns of Ghūr and Bāmiān,

The territory of KĀSHGHAR is bounded N. by the mountains of Mughalstān [the Ulugh-Tāgh of the Turks—See note on the Turks, p. 875, and Thianshan of the maps], out of which several rivers flow. Its W boundary is also a range of mountains which shoot out from the mountains of Mughalstān towards the S—Bilaur [also written Billaür] Tāgh—the name of which range does not require “to be abolished,” since it has been known from the time of ‘Abd-ullah-i-Khurdādbeh down to Khushhāl, Khaṭak, Afghān, and to modern times—and from these also issue rivers which flow from W to E, and the whole of the country of Kāshghar and Khutan lies at the skirts of these two ranges of mountains. The E and S boundary is a great *sahrā* or steppe—a plain, not naturally a desert—which is wholly jungle and wicketness, and hillocks of moving sand. In ancient times there were several cities in this tract, the names of three of which are Katak or Katuk—کاتک—Tūr—تور—and Lob-Kaṣal—لوب کال—probably Lob-Katal, between Turfān and Khutan, but they have been all buried in the sands. There was another called Fulād-i-Sum—فلاد سوم—but its fate is not recorded. It was a well-known place in the Chingiz Khān’s time.

YĀRKAND, in former times, was a great city, but it had greatly decayed, and was becoming desolate, when Mirzā Abū-līkr made it his capital. It soon after had 12,000 gardens in and around the city, which was surrounded by a wall thirty cubits high. The people of this part of the territory are [when the author wrote] divided into four classes, the Tumān, cultivators or peasantry, the Kūchīn, or soldiery, the I māḳ, or nomads, and the officials.

KHUTAN was one of the most celebrated of cities and territories, “but of that rose, naught but the thorn remains at present.” ‘Abū-l-Fidā says it was a city of the I-ghūrs. In former times, before the desert just mentioned approached so near it, Chīn could be reached in fourteen days, the whole way was inhabited and cultivated, and one or two persons could pass to and fro with safety, without being obliged to join Kāfilahs, but now [when the author wrote], on account of the Kālmāks—Europeanized “Kalmuks”—the route is closed, and that which is now followed is 100 stages. Vast quantities of *yashab* or *yashu*, also called *beḡdah*—jade or jasper—is found in the rivers of Kāshghar and Khutan, and in those territories also the camel of the desert, which may be tamed, and the *kūtāsh*, *ḡutās*, or *ghajr-gāū* [the Bos Grunniens. See page 68, and note †].

The territory of Kāshghar [Little Bukharia] appears the same precisely as that called MANGALI-SŪYAH—مکلی سویه—which signifies “towards or facing the sun—sunny-side”—آفتاب رویه—the boundaries of which are thus given. “On the N. Issīgh-Kol, S Jirjān—جرجان—and Sārīgh-i-I-ghūr—ساریغ ابرو—E. Kosān—کوسان—and Tārbokor or Tārhogor—تاربکور, and W Sām-ghar—سام شر—and Jākashmān or Jākshman—جاکشان. This tract contains several cities, the greatest of which are Kāshghar and Khutan, Ūr-gand, Akhsikāt or Akhsisak, Andigān, Āt-pāshī, Ak-sū, and Kosān.” This may be considered the territory peculiar to the Afrāsyābī Malik before they again obtained possession of Samrkand and Bukhārā on the downfall of the Sāmānīs.

An account of Kāshghar and other places on the Sībūn, written by me some twenty years since, will be found in the *Journal of the Bengal Asiatic Society* for 1857. At that period a Chinese Jān-Jang or Governor General resided at Kourah near Ilīh.

I now return to the history of the Gūr Khāns.



who used not to submit to them, all the rest of the Malikis

Some say the first of this dynasty assumed the title of Gūr Khān before Bilāl-ghūn was given up to him by the Afrāsiyābī Khān, but, certainly, it was not conferred upon him by Musalmāns. Its assumption is said to have taken place in 522 H. [A.D. 1128], at which time Muḥammad Khān [Ahmad of some writers], who bore the title of Arsalān Khān, ruled over Māwarā-un-Nahr. See No. XVII. of the Afrāsiyābī dynasty, who, certainly, is *not* the person referred to as surrendering his sovereignty and capital to the Gūr Khān; and, from what follows, and what I have already stated, it is proved beyond a doubt, that there were several petty dynasties of Afrāsiyābī Khāns in Turkistān, besides the rulers of Māwarā-un-Nahr.

Alif says that, at the period when the Kāt-Khānīs fought with Sulṭān Ṣanjār, the territories of Turkistān, namely, Kāshghar, Balāḍ-sāghūn, Tārāz, Khutan, and other parts besides, were in the possession of great Khāns, who were Turks, who accounted themselves of the lineage of Afrāsiyāb, and descendants of Sātuk Ḳaraghār, and that, at that time, all had become converts to Islām.

The Gūr Khān, having assumed the sovereignty over the Afrāsiyābī Amīr of Bilāl-ghūn and his territory, now despatched Shāhnāhs [Intendants] into different provinces and districts, and, after a time, his dependants and followers increasing, and growing still more flourishing, and their cattle fat [sic in MSS.], reduced the Kānkūlis to subjection, despatched an army towards "Kāshghar and Khutan of Turkistān, and subjected those territories." The Kārūghs are also mentioned, but another division of that great tribe, not included in the one mentioned as being located on the eastern frontier of Arsalān Khān's dominions, appears to have moved, or to have been forced, farther south-west; for, about this period, or perhaps a short time previously, this portion of them had worsted the Ghuzs, and expelled them from their former pasture-lands, and compelled them to enter Chaghnānīān and Khātī, the plural form of which word, Khātīān, is also applied to that district or tract of country [but Khutan is incorrect the first vowel is *fath*, not *gammah*], and it is also called Kol-i-Āb, which is a dependency of Badakhshān, and famous for its beautiful damsels and fine horses. See note <sup>1</sup>, page 374, and note <sup>2</sup>, page 423

Sulṭān Muḥammad the Gūr Khān despatched a great army towards the territory of the Kırkız to take vengeance for the treatment he had suffered there, and Hāsh-Bāligh was taken possession of. From thence the Gūr Khān's forces were despatched towards the territory of Farghānah or Andigān and Māwarā-un-Nahr.

The situation of the land or territory of Khurkhiz, or Kırkız, or Kırākhiz, as it is also written, has been a puzzling subject hitherto, but its situation is apparent here, more particularly if we take the description along with what is stated in the MASĀLIK WA MAMĀLIK, and in IBN-HAUKAL. Speaking of China, the former work says:—"If one desires to proceed from the east [Chīn] towards the west, by the country of the Nāemāns, the territory of Khurkhiz, the Taghar-i-Ghuzs [see note on this subject farther on], and Kīmāk towards the sea, it is a journey of nearly four months. . . The country of Tibbat lies between the land of Khurkhiz and the kingdom of Chīn Chīn lies between the sea, the land of the Ghuzs and Tibbat," &c., &c.

The Sulṭāns of Māwarā-un-Nahr, "who were the father and grandfather of Sulṭān 'Ugmān of the Afrāsiyābī dynasty, also laid their heads upon the line of the Gūr Khān's commands, and became his tributaries." See the dynasty of the Afrāsiyābī Malikis, Nos. XIX. and XXIII.

of the confines had become subject to that race. On two

In 534 H. [A.D. 1137, but the Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh, contrary to several others, says in 536 H.], his troops defeated Sulṭān Sanjar on the frontiers of Samrḳand, as already recorded at page 154; but, since that was written by me, I have elsewhere found some further particulars respecting that defeat which clear up so completely a most obscure passage in our author's account there given, that I must relate them here. The identical passage in our author referred to is as follows: "After a great part of his [Sanjar's] reign had elapsed, a body of people from *Ḳarā-Khitā*, from *Tamghāj* [see Afrāsiyābī Malik, No. XXI.], and the dependencies of *Chīn*, entered the confines of *Ḳarā-Ḳurām* of *Turkistān*, and solicited Sulṭān Sanjar to assign them grazing lands; and, with the Sulṭān's permission, they took up their quarters on those confines, in *Bilāsā-ghūn*, *Ḳabāhik* [*Ḳawālik*—*كاوليك* is the correct name], and *Almalik*, and made those parts their grazing grounds."

In an article by Mr. H. H. Howorth, entitled "The Northern Brontogers of China: The Kara Khitai," in the *Journal Ro. As. Soc.* for April, 1876, p. 271, the above passage from this Translation is quoted, and its writer adds, referring to our author, "The latter author is mistaken in supposing that *Turkistan* was then subject to Sanjar," &c. Now, considering that Mr. Howorth is wholly dependent on foreign translations for his information on these matters, such a statement on his part, to say the least of it, is presumptuous. I need scarcely mention to those who can read the eastern historians for themselves, that every author who has written on the subject in the Persian language agrees with our author, even the "great Raschid" himself, respecting Sulṭān Sanjar's suzerainty over the parts in question, as well as to his father's and grandfather's suzerainty likewise.

"When their progeny became very numerous, during the Sulṭān's reign, they rebelled against his authority, and fought a battle against him. *Tānko* of *Tarāz*, at the nomination of *Sunkam* and *Ī-mā*, was at the head of the *Ḳhitā-īs*. The Sulṭān's forces, from a long period of inaction, and enervated by protracted ease and luxury, were unable to cope with or stand before the enemy, and were overthrown; . . . he [the Sulṭān] concluded a peace with them, and the pasture-lands of *Turkistān* and *Bilāsā-ghūn*, along with the cities and towns included in those frontier tracts, were left in the hands of the *Ḳhitā-ī* invaders."

The particulars I refer to, tending to throw light on the above, are, that, when Sulṭān Sanjar proceeded to Samrḳand and dethroned Muḥammad [No. XVIII. of the Afrāsiyābis], a part of the *Ḳarā-Khitā-īs* had a *yūrat* or camping ground in that part—on the frontier—the tracts assigned them by the Sulṭān in former years, for our author is, by no means, mistaken, as the author of "*Mongol's Prey*" imagines, in stating that Sanjar's authority extended as far as the confines of *Turkistān*, for his being at Samrḳand, on this occasion, proves it, and, moreover, as mentioned at page 133, the *Maliks* of *Turkistān*, and the Afrāsiyābī Amīrs submitted to the authority of *Alb-Arsalān*, Sanjar's grandfather. Some of the Sulṭān's Amīrs persuaded him that this was a good opportunity for seizing their flocks and herds, and driving out altogether these *Ḳarā-Khitā-īs*, whom they accused of contumacy. They implored the Sulṭān's mercy, and offered, through those Amīrs, to present 5000 horses, 5000 camels, and 50,000 sheep, as a propitiatory offering to him to allow them to remain where they were. This was approved of by the Sulṭān, but, in the meantime, the chiefs of the tribes of those *Ḳarā-Khitā-īs*

or three occasions, the forces of the sovereigns of Ghūr, the

[Sunkam and I-mā apparently] fled to the *arāḍ* of the Gūr Khān, whose power was a drag upon the Sultāns of Turkistān [the Afrāsīyābī Mahiks], and represented to him that the Sultān of Khurāsān had become enfeebled by the infirmities of age, and that the affairs of that country had fallen into the hands of slaves and boys, and urged the Gūr Khān to wrest Māwarā-un-Nahr and Khurāsān out of their hands. He accordingly put his forces in motion, and Sultān Sanjar and his troops, despising them, moved to encounter them without concert or precaution, or caring for immensely superior numbers, thinking to overthrow them easily. Sanjar's troops however, who were but few in comparison with the enemy, were soon completely surrounded by the Karā-Khitā-īs, and Sultān Sanjar had to attempt to cut his way out with a body of 300 men. He succeeded, but he came out with only ten or fifteen remaining. In this affair 30,000 Musalmāns were slain, and Tāj-ud-Dīn Abū-l-Fath, Malik of Ḥijlān and Nīmroz, who, with the centre, maintained his ground to the last [see page 188] was taken prisoner. The rest agrees with what our author has already stated under Sanjar's reign.

The Tārīkh-i-Alfi gives another account of the origin of the war between the Sultān and the Gūr Khān.

The Kārlūghīah families stationed on the frontier of Arsalān Khān's dominions had been harshly treated by him. He considered they multiplied too fast, and set overseers of his own over them to prevent them having intercourse with their wives. They endured this tyranny for a considerable time, not knowing whither to fly. At last, grown desperate, on the arrival on the frontier, which it was their duty to guard, of an immense *kāfilah* of traders and merchants, consisting of Turks, Khitā-īs, and people from all parts to the eastward, they attacked the *kāfilah*, and seized all the property and effects of the merchants composing it. They then made known to them that, if they desired to get their property restored to them, they must put them in the way of finding a place beyond Arsalān Khān's dominions, provided with water and forage sufficient to enable them to subsist, as they were resolved to stay no longer under his rule. The merchants told them they knew of a tract of country well provided with what they required, sufficient for the subsistence of ten times their number, and that it lay in the territory of Bilād-sāghūn in Turkistān. The Kārlūghīah Turks, on this, restored the property of the merchants, seized their overseers, and, taking them along with them, made for the territory of Bilād-sāghūn, and there took up their quarters.

They were, however, in constant dread of Arsalān Khān, until the Gūr Khān, who had, by this time, arrived in that part, entered into hostilities with the ruler of Māwarā-un-Nahr and Turkistān, and the Kārlūghīah entered into combination with him. At this juncture, Arsalān Khān, as previously mentioned, died, and Ḥasan-Tigīn, who had been installed in his place by Sultān Sanjar, soon followed him. The sovereignty then devolved upon the Khākān, Maḥmūd, son of Arsalān. Shortly after, the Gūr Khān, with a vast army of Khitā-īs and Turks, numbering, it is said, 300,000 men, advanced into Maḥmūd's territory, and began to annex it. The Gūr Khān imposed one dīnār as a tax upon each house in every city he reached, but neither allowed his troops to molest the people's dwellings, nor their cultivated lands, and did not farther molest them. To such of the Mahiks of Māwarā-un-Nahr as submitted, the Gūr Khān assigned a tablet of silver to be hung up at the entrance of their palaces. See *Journal Re. As. Soc.*, vol. v., for 1870, p. 29.

champions of which army were the Sipah-sālār, Khar-jam

As previously mentioned, the Khān, Maḥmūd, was defeated, and, at his urgent prayer, Sultān Sanjar prepared to succour him. Sanjar is said to have taken six months to complete his arrangements, and, in the month of Zi-Ḥijjah, 534 H., to have crossed the Jihūn with an army of 100,000 cavalry—an exaggerated number—and moved towards Samrḳand. Serving in his army were the Malikhs of Sistān, Gharnīn, and Ghūr, and the Hākims of Māzandarān.

When Sanjar reached Samrḳand Maḥmūd complained bitterly of the conduct of the Kārlūghīah, and the Sultān resolved to chastize them first. On becoming aware of his intention, they sought the protection of the Gūr Khān, who sent a letter to the Sultān demanding what crime was laid to the charge of the Kārlūghīah. The Sultān's reply, as may be imagined, was sufficiently haughty. The hostile forces moved to encounter each other, and, after an obstinate battle, the details of which have been already given, victory declared in favour of the Khujā-is, who were immensely superior in point of numbers; and the Sultān, having cut his way out with a few followers, fled to Tirmīz. The Wāli of Sistān was taken prisoner [see page 188], and Amīr Qīmā, who had charge of the Sultān's haram, and the whole of that establishment, were also made captive.

It is stated in the Tārīkh-i-Yāsa'ī, that nearly 30,000 Musalmāns fell in this battle, and that among the slain were 4000 women. "In some other Histories it is also stated that, after the flight of the Sultān, the Turks and Khujā-is poured into the camp, and began to plunder. On their approaching the part where the haram was, Turkān Khātūn, the Sultān's chief consort, and most of the wives of the Amīr, and the sokhtay who acted as their guard, defended it against the infidels, and slew a vast number of them, and it was only after 4000 women had fallen that the rest of the haram was captured, including Turkān Khātūn. The Gūr Khān left the females in charge of those of their own people who remained, and would not allow them to be interfered with. They were treated with honour and reverence, and, soon after, were sent back to the Sultān in Khurāsān."

Mr H. H. Howorth has not quoted my translation quite correctly [*Journal of the Asiatic Society* Vol viii p. 272]. Nowhere have I said that "At Khan was in alliance with the chief of Kara Khitai." In my note <sup>1</sup>, to page 154, I say "Sanjar fought a battle with At Khān," which, as my authority related it, refers to one of the leaders of the Gūr Khān's forces. Most certainly At Khān was not "the dispossessed Khan" of Turkistān, nor was he the dispossessed chief of Bilāsā-ghūn, nor does Rashīd-ud Dīn, in his Jāmi'ut-Tawārīkh, anywhere state that the ruler of Karā Khitāe adopted the title of Gūr Khān—not "Ghur" Khān—"after this great battle in 535 H." because he says, [in the MSS. before me] that this battle took place in 536 H. [which began 5th August, A.D. 1141], while others make it one year, and some, two years earlier—534 H., A.D. 1139-40, and 535, A.D. 1140-41.

Amīr Tīmūr, I also beg leave to say, never adopted the title of "Emir Timur Gur Khan," for the very significant reason that the title of the Karā-Khitāe chief consists of two words کورهان while the word applied to Amīr Tīmūr, which appears to have misled Mr. Howorth, is one and is written گورکان—Gūrgān, and in signification there is no connexion between them whatever.

To return to my story. After having gained this great success, the Gūr Khān overran great part of Turkistān and Māwarā-un-Nahr, acquired pre-dominance over those countries, and made their rulers tributaries. He in-

[*cham*], and Muḥammad-i-Khar-nak—on whom be peace!

creased his forces, and his war materials accumulated; and, shortly after, he despatched an army under the command of his general, Arbas—اربر—[this name is also mentioned by our author: "Irmas" is not correct] towards the Khwārazm territory, in order to sack and devastate the *rustāḥs* [a word particularly applied in Khwārazm to villages or collections of huts or felt tents, in distinction from the words *dih* and *ḥaryak* used in 'Irāk and Khurāsān]. His troops created great havoc, and Itsiz, Sultān of Khwārazm, despatched an envoy to the Gūr Khān to sue for peace, and agreed to pay allegiance to him for the future, and a yearly tribute of 30,000 *dinārs*, besides cattle, flocks, and other things. On this accommodation having been entered into, Arbas retired; and soon after, in 537 H. [A.D. 1142-3], the Gūr Khān died. He was of the Mānī [Manichean] religion himself, but his wife was a Christian.

It is stated in Alfī that he died in the month of Rajab of the following year.

He was succeeded by his wife, as no son remained to him, but some authors distinctly state that his daughter succeeded. To judge, however, from the events which followed, it is very improbable that the daughter then succeeded her father, because the name of the husband of the female sovereign who ruled so long is given, and it is scarcely probable that the Gūr Khān's wife married again, without some mention of it being recorded, nor was it the custom, I believe, for widows to re-marry.

The wife, whose name is not given, dying some time after her succession, but without any date being mentioned, was succeeded by the Gūr Khān's daughter, KONĪK or KONAYIK KHĪTŪN, but whether the late sovereign was her mother has not transpired. The word is somewhat uncertain in some works, but I put the most trustworthy reading first upon all occasions, and that used by the majority of writers. It is written كونيک which, according to whether *g* or *k* be used, may be spelt in various ways, and كونيک which may be Koyūnik, and كولون—Kolūn—but another author, in two copies of his work, has Komānik or Gomānik or Komāng or Gomāng—کومانگ—according as to whether the Tāzī or 'Ajāmī *o* be meant.

In the seventh year of I-yal-Arsalān, Khwārazm Shāh's reign [557 or 558 H.], because he was not punctual in the payment of his tribute, as stipulated by his father, his dominions were assailed by the Gūr Khān's forces. The Sultān sent forward, in advance, Ghā-ir Beg, the Kārūgh, a native of Māwarā-un-Nahr, with an advance force, towards the Āmūshāh, but he was defeated and taken captive before I-yal-Arsalān could come to his support, and the latter fell sick and returned to Khwārazm where he died in the month of Rajab of the same year.

On the death of I-yal-Arsalān, there were two claimants to the throne—his two sons, Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Sultān Shāh, and 'Imād-ud-Dīn, Takiyah Khān, who was the eldest son, but he, not being sufficiently powerful to oust the former, who, with his mother—a strong-minded woman—was in possession of the capital, and being at that time absent in charge of the territory of Jand, which his father had taken from Kamāl-ud-Dīn, Arsalān Khān, son of Maḥmūd, and annexed, entered the territory of the third Gūr Khān, and sought her help to recover his patrimony. She agreed to aid him, on the stipulation that, on his being put in possession of Khwārazm, he should pay over a certain amount of treasure, and a yearly tribute afterwards.

A large army was accordingly despatched to support Sultān Takiyah, and put him in possession, under the command of her husband, I amā or Farmāc,

—had caused the overthrow of the forces of **Khiṭā**, and, in

by name, —فرماي or فرما— who conducted the affairs of her empire. In the *Jāmi'ut-Tawārikh* he is styled **Farmāe Ākā**. Sultān **Shāh** and his mother fled, and **Takīsh** was put in possession of the capital, in Rabī'ul-Ākhir, 568 H. [the end of December A.D. 1172].

It is evident, from this, that this female **Gür Khān** must have reigned a considerable time, since she was, at this period, living, and lived for a considerable time subsequently, for, not long after, the **Karā-Khiṭā-ī** ruler sent to demand more tribute from Sultān **Takīsh** than had been previously stipulated, and, her envoy having behaved in a manner it was impossible to overlook, **Takīsh** put him to death, notwithstanding he was one of the most distinguished of the **Khiṭā-īs**.

On this, hostilities broke out between **Takīsh** and the **Gür Khān**, which the former's brother, Sultān **Shāh**, taking advantage of, left **Ghūr**, where he then was, and hastened to the presence of the **Gür Khān**, and sought assistance from her. This was in 569 H. Our author distinctly states that the **Ghūrīān** Sultāns treated Sultān **Shāh** with honour, but plainly refused to aid him against **Takīsh** with whom they were in alliance [see page 245, and also note <sup>1</sup>, page 239, para. 2], and our author was certainly well acquainted with **Ghūrīān** affairs generally. Mr Howorth [*Journal Re. As. Soc.*], in the article before referred to, quotes *Visdelu*, but, if *Visdelu* ever styled **MU'AYYID-UD-DĪN**—which title signifies "The Aider of the Faith"—the **Ā'INAH-DĀR**, or Mirror-Bearer, by the impossible and meaningless names of "*Umayyid i Aimahdur*," the value of his authority is clearly indicated.

The assistance sought by Sultān **Shāh** was granted by her [the **Gür Khān**] in 574-5 H. [A.D. 1178-9], and again **Farmāe** was sent with an army, but the success was only partial. The particulars will be found in note <sup>2</sup>, page 239, and note <sup>3</sup>, page 246. According to the authorities from which I take this account, the female **Gür Khān** now began to violate the laws and ordinances of the state, and to abandon herself to sensual desires, until matters went so far that the late **Gür Khān**'s brother, and the chief men in the empire resolved to rid themselves of her, and they put her to death along with her paramour.

It is very evident, from this, that she must have reigned many years, for, from the date of the first **Gür Khān**'s death, viz 537 H., to the year in which she rendered aid to Sultān **Shāh**, 574-5 H., is no less than thirty-eight years nearly, and therefore, had this been his wife, she must have been a very old woman, and her desires must have cooled. It appears to me, therefore—although all the Musalmān writers, *without exception*, mention *but three* persons, two males and a female, as composing this dynasty, which lasted altogether ninety-five years, and has greater credit for its mighty power than it is entitled to—that the first **Gür Khān** must have been succeeded first, by his wife, and then by his daughter, **Konik** or **Konayik**. The date of her being put to death is not given, and, I fear, not to be discovered. Having put **Konik** or **Konayik Khātūn** to death, they [the chief personages in the empire] chose one of the two brothers of the first **Gür Khān**, who were then alive, to succeed her, and the other, who was wont to embarrass and obstruct the affairs of the empire, was passed over.

Some authors state that it was the brother of the late **Gür Khān**—named **Koman** or **Kūmān**—who accused her of living a dissolute life, and thus brought about her destruction, and that he became the **Gür Khān** himself.

On his—**KOMAN**, or **KŪMĀN**—فرمان—becoming established in the sove-

[one of] those battles, the Sipah-sālār, **Khar-jam**, had

reignty, he sent out **Shāhnahs** [Intendants] into different parts, and appointed persons, with due discrimination, according to their different capacities, to various offices.

**Sulṭān Takiah, Khwārazm Shāh**, had, on his deathbed, enjoined his son and successor, on no account to embroil himself with the **Gūr Khān** if he desired to preserve the integrity and safety of his dominions, because, he said, he was a strong barrier between very powerful enemies, which should by no means be broken down. This refers to the **Chingiz Khān**, who, at this period, was becoming very powerful. When **Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh**, came to the throne, he continued for some time to transmit the tribute regularly as before, and friendship continued to subsist between him and the **Gūr Khān**; and, when **Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, Sulṭān of Ghūr**, became hostile to **Sulṭān Muḥammad**, and invaded his dominions in 601 H., the **Gūr Khān** despatched 10,000 men to the **Sulṭān's** assistance under **Bānko of Tarāz** [see pages 474 to 481 for our author's account of it]; and before the gate of **Andkhūd** [Indākhūd] the **Khutā-Is** fought an engagement with the **Ghūris**, and overthrew them. On this occasion, **Sulṭān 'Uḡmān of Samrḡand**, the last of the **Afrāsiyābīs**, was present, as a vassal, with the **Khutā-Is** army: he had not, at that time, withdrawn his allegiance from the **Gūr Khān**.

Now it was that **Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh**, being successful in all his affairs, considered it time to throw off the yoke of the **Gūr Khān**, to pay tribute to whom, as an infidel, he considered a blot upon his sovereignty, more especially since the insolence of the **Karā-Khutā-Is** had reached such a pitch, that their envoy, who is styled **Tonshī** or **Tūnshī**—**نوشی**—and, by some, **Tūghī**—**نوشی**—probably **Tāiḡhī**, was his title [See also page 732, and note at page 866], presumed to seat himself upon the throne along with the **Sulṭān**. He accordingly withheld the tribute for two or three years, and manifested great tardiness in paying it. At length, the **Gūr Khān** despatched, as his envoy, his **Wazīr, Muḥammad-i-Tāe** [**تای**—in some places written **Nāe**—**نای**], and others, to demand payment, including all arrears.

When the **Karā-Khutā-Is** envoy reached **Khwārazm** [the site of this famous capital has for centuries been known as **Ūrganj-i-Kubri**—**اورگنج کبری**—at which place the **Russians** have erected a fortress to protect their "trade routes." **Khiwāk**, anglicized **Akroa**, as it appears in **Col. Walker's** last map is not **Khwārazm**. What appears there as "**Kuma Urganj**," correctly, **Kuhnah**—old, ancient—**Ūrganj**, is the place], the **Sulṭān** had made his preparations for an expedition into **Khushchāk** [our author, at page 254, says the **Sulṭān's** mother was the daughter of **Kadr Khān** of **Khushchāk**—other authors style her tribe **Ūrānian**—but he does not refer, in the least, to this expedition; and, at page 260, calls the **Gūr Khān**, by mistake evidently, **Kulij Khān**—unless **Kulij** was another of his titles, or an error for **Komān**—of **Khutāe**, whose general was **Bānko of Tarāz**], and was unwilling, at the same time, to disobey his late father's last request, and, moreover, did not wish to give the **Karā-Khutā-Is** a pretext or an opportunity for molesting his dominions during his absence in **Khushchāk**, while he felt it a disgrace even to acknowledge his liability to pay this tribute. On this account he did not open his lips on the subject, but left the affair in the hands of his mother—the celebrated **Türkān Khātūn**, whose subsequent misfortunes are so pitiable—and set out on his expedition into **Khushchāk**, the particulars respecting which expedition are not related by any author with whom I am acquainted.

attained martyrdom.\* The last of their armies which

\* Our author has not given any details respecting these events in his account of the Ghurids, nor has he referred to any but the last person here mentioned.

Turkân Khâtûn directed that the envoys should be received with befitting honour; and the annual tribute due was made over to them. A number of distinguished persons of the capital were likewise despatched, along with Maḥmūd-i-Tāe, to the presence of the Gūr Khān, to apologize for the delay which had occurred, and they were charged with expressions of homage and fealty as heretofore. Maḥmūd-i-Tāe, however, "had witnessed the lofty bearing and stubbornness of Sulṭān Muḥammad, knew his humour, and fathomed his thoughts, that he considered himself, in power and magnificence—he was master of some of the richest parts of Western Asia, west of the Āmūfah—the superior of the Gūr Khān, and that he considered it beneath him to show humility or flattery to any human being, being satisfied, in his own mind, that the Malik of the world were his vassals, and that, in fact, fortune itself was his servant." Maḥmūd-i-Tāe represented these circumstances to the Gūr Khān, and assured him that, after this time, the Sulṭān would certainly never pay him tribute again, and, consequently, the Sulṭān's emissaries were not treated with the usual respect or consideration.

Sulṭān Muḥammad, having returned to the capital of his dominions, successful from his Khujak expedition, began to make preparations for his campaign for liberating Māwarā-un-Nahr from the yoke of the Karā-Khitā-ī. He had been constantly receiving communications in secret, with promises of support, from Bukhārā particularly, as far back as 600 H., and from Sulṭān 'Uṣmān of Samkand, and other rulers of Māwarā-un-Nahr to whom the protracted yoke of the Gūr Khāns was affliction, and who groaned under the exactions, the rapacity, and the injustice, of the Gūr Khān's representatives, who had begun to act contrary to previous usages. The Sulṭān, accordingly, marched an army to Bukhārā then held by an upstart, named Sanjar Malik, and sent messages inviting the rulers above referred to to join him in his proposed enterprise. They were well satisfied to accept the Sulṭān's offers, and, under the determination of commencing hostilities against the Gūr Khān, in the following year, he returned from Bukhārā. This was in 606 H.

Kojlak—also called Koshlak by some writers, and "Kashit, otherwise Koshluk" by Yāsa'ī, and Kashlū Khān-i-Sunkar, the Tatar, by our author—son of the sovereign of the Nāemāns, after the death of his father, and dispersion of his tribes, had, some time before, sought shelter with the Gūr Khān from the power of the Chingiz Khān. He had entertained rebellious ideas towards his protector, previous to Sulṭān 'Uṣmān's becoming a partizan of Sulṭān Muḥammad, and now that some of the Gūr Khān's own nobles [occasioned, no doubt, by the Chingiz Khān's proceedings], and, on the Chingiz Khān's [first] expedition against Khitā [not against the dominions of the Karā-Khitā-ī], Kojlak pretended to the Gūr Khān that, if permitted to do so, he would go and collect his wandering Nāemāns, from whom he had been so long separated, and who had been too long dispersed like sheep without a shepherd, and would bring them to his assistance, that he had many of his tribes at and around I mil, at Bish-Bāugh, and in the limits of Kailik (Kailik) who wanted a leader, and that, since the Chingiz Khān was then occupied in the country of Khitā, he could carry out his plans with facility.



crossed the Jihūn and passed over towards **Khurāsān** was

The **Gūr Khān** took the bait, conferred great honours upon him, and gave him the title of **Khān**—**Kojlak Khān**.

**Kojlak** having departed, the **Gūr Khān**, when too late, repented of having let him go, and sent out commands to have him recalled, but without effect. **Kojlak** assembled around him all the scattered **Nāemān** tribe, and his fame became noised abroad : all, who were in any way connected with him in the **Gūr Khān's** forces, also joined him, and he found himself at the head of a large army. On reaching **Ī-mīl**, and **Kāilīk**, he was joined by **Tūk-Tughān**, more respecting whom will be found farther on, the **Amīr** or **Chief** of the **Makrīt** **Mughals** of the **Kaāt** division [see note 4, page 268], who had fled on hearing of the power of the **Chingiz Khān** ; and, in concert, they began to plunder and devastate the country ; and the **Tūmāts**, another **Mughal** tribe, dwelling near the frontier of **Khujā** [on the S E ], also joined in the outbreak. The **Chingiz Khān** had to despatch troops against them, the details respecting which, not being connected with the fate of the **Gūr Khān**, I reserve for their proper place farther on.

**Kojlak**, having now become sufficiently powerful, showed open hostility to his benefactor, the **Gūr Khān**, having previously instigated **Sulṭān Muḥammad** to attack his dominions on the side of the **Sihūn** or river of **Fanākat**. Among others, to whom the **Gūr Khān** had despatched messengers with instructions for **Kojlak's** arrest, was **Sulṭān 'Uṣmān** of **Samrḳand**. He had asked the **Gūr Khān** to bestow upon him a daughter in marriage, and had been refused ; and this had completely alienated **'Uṣmān** from his cause. He took no notice of the message, and forthwith entered into communication with **Sulṭān Muḥammad**, acknowledged his suzerainty, read the **Khuṭbah** for him, and began to coin the money in his name.

The **Gūr Khān**, on becoming aware of this state of affairs, despatched a force of 30,000 men against **'Uṣmān**, and again reduced **Samrḳand**, but did not deem it advisable to injure **'Uṣmān** further, as he looked upon **Samrḳand** as the treasury of his empire, and, as **Kojlak** was acquiring great power, and making head in the other direction [i. e. in the E and S E ], and molesting his territories, the army was withdrawn from **Samrḳand**, and sent against **Kojlak**, who made an attempt to capture **Bilāsā-chūn**, but he did not succeed, and, subsequently, was overthrown, details respecting which will be found farther on.

There is considerable discrepancy with regard to these last events in connexion with the **Karā-Khujā's** and the **Khawārazmī** **Sulṭān**, since it is stated by several authors, as already given in the notes on that dynasty, that the **Gūr Khān's** troops appeared before **Samrḳand**, and assaulted it several times without success, and were finally recalled to operate against **Kojlak**. This, however, seems to refer to the defeat of the force sent by the **Gūr Khān** against **Samrḳand** a second time, after the victory over **Bān kō**, narrated farther on, while the former happened before the **Gūr Khān's** defeat by the **Khawārazmīs**, as soon as he heard of **'Uṣmān's** disaffection, as the **Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr** confirms.

Immediately on the withdrawal of the **Gūr Khān's** army to attack **Kojlak**, **Sulṭān Muḥammad**, who had been waiting his opportunity, now marched to **Samrḳand** with an army. **'Uṣmān** came forth to meet him, ceded his territory to him, and **Turfah**, a relative of the **Sulṭān's** mother, was located there, as the **Sulṭān's** lieutenant. The **Sulṭān** and his troops, accompanied by

that which fought an engagement with the Sultān-i-Ghāzi,

Sultān 'Ugmān, and his available forces, probably, commenced his march to invade the Gūr Khān's dominions. Having crossed the Sīhūn at Fanākat, which is also called the Jīhūn—i. e. great river—of Fanākat, by a bridge of boats, the Khwārazmī army advanced until it reached the Šahrā—plain or steppe—of I-lāsh, in the territory of Tarāz, which is also called Talāš, and Talāsh, situated beyond the frontier of Shāsh [now Tashkand], on the side nearest to Turkistān.

In Col Walker's map this place is called "TURKISTAN (HAZRET)," and this gives me a clue to the probable reason how it obtained this name. Near it is the tomb of the Khwājah, Aḥmād, a Musalmān saint of Turkistān, and, as the word Ḥaṣrat is applied to saints as well as to capitals, such as "Ḥaṣrat-i-Dihlī," or "Ḥaṣrat Ḥusam"—this place which sprung up near it, as Tarāz declined, became known as the Mazār-i Ḥaṣrat-i-Turkistān—the Tomb of the Saint of Turkistān, but Mazār, having been, by some means, dropped, Ḥaṣrat-i-Turkistān, Europeanized into "Turkistan (Hazret)," has been the result. Tarāz, in its day, was a large place, but was ruined, like many others, by the Uzbak invasions centuries since, as already stated.

Having reached the plain of I-lāsh—also written I-lāmīsh—Bānīko, who held that territory as his appanage, and was the leader of the Gūr Khān's troops, and who was then at Tarāz awaiting them, issued forth to encounter the Khwārazmīs; and, on the 22nd—some say the 7th—of Rabī-ul Awwal, 607 H. [12th of Sept. A. D. 1210], a battle was fought in which the Qarā-Khitā-Is were completely overthrown, and Bānīko wounded and taken prisoner.

For the remainder of the events which followed see my notes to the Khwārazmī dynasty, page 262, note 1, note 4, page 900, on the Afrāsīyābī Maliks, and other details farther on.

Surgeon-Major Bellow, who turns the Gūr Khān into "Gorkhan," after previously stating that "a Khan or Ruler of Afrāsīyāb descent" applied to "Gorkhan of the Karā Khitāy," immediately after turns "Gorkhan" into an "Uighur," and his army into "Uighurs," as well, and makes Khwārazm [where does the *K* come from in Khwārazm?] Shāh "defeat the Uighur army," and capture "Atrar," in 620 H., *four years after* the Chingiz Khān captured Bukhārā, and more than *thirteen years* after the defeat of Bānīko of Tarāz and the army of Qarā Khitā-Is, which took place in the third month of 607 H.

"Gorkhan" is then "deposed by the Shūncār Tártár [I wonder what sort of animal a "Shūncār Tártár is] Koshluk," who "destroys the Uighur empire." A little further on [p. 133] we have the same "Koshluk"—though probably unknown to the Doctor—made "*chief of the Náyman tribe of Christians*" who "*was a Buddhist*." Then we are told that "Gorkhan, now ninety-two years of age, at once took the field, recovered Atrar," &c., and then that "Koshluk"—the "Buddhist Christian Náyman," and "Shūncār Tártár"—"captured Gorkhan, whom he consigned to an honourable captivity, in which he died two years later aged ninety-five"!

For an account of these events see page 260.

The Doctor, besides making "Uighurs" of them, has skilfully turned *all* the Gūr Khāns into *one* "Gorkhan," and the period during which the Qarā Khitā-ī dynasty continued, into the years of the life of his one "venerable Gorkhan, 95 years old"!

Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Sām ; and, when the

A few lines further on the real Ī-ghūr sovereign, and successor of a long line of rulers, is turned into "another Buddhist chief, Aydy Cūt, Tártar," who "had risen to power at Bálā-aghūn" !

To the "History of Káshghar" above referred to, is appended a note, signed by Sir T. D. Forsyth, K. C. S. I., C. B., which states that "no one has gone into the History of Eastern Turkistán from the earliest times with such deep and careful research as Dr. Bellew. He has spent many months in reading voluminous Persian and Turkī manuscripts, &c., &c."

The History in question only came under my notice since this account was written, or I should have referred to many other errors. I merely do so now to correct a few of them, for history unless correct is worse than useless—nothing can be more pernicious, because it misleads.

I may also add that the *Rauzat-us-Safā*, which the writer refers to in his list of authorities, is quite correct in its statements, and agrees with other writers.

Before closing these remarks, I must say a few words on "the powerful dynasty of Kara Khitai," which is said to have "revived on a small scale when destroyed by Gengis Khan [I always imagined that Kojlak and Sultān Muḥammad destroyed it before the Chingiz Khān's advance westward, at least the Oriental writers say so, the "great Raschid" included]," and which Visdelin is said to have made such an incredibly ridiculous statement about [See Mr. H. H. Howorth's article in the *J. R. As Soc.*, before referred to], that the "*Kara Khitai should have traversed Khusasan and the wastes of Central Persia, and found their way into Kerman without a hint from the Persian historians. Nor can we conjecture a reason for such a march, nor why he [the Gūr Khān is referred to] should have returned again into Turkistan if it had been made*" ! Here again is confusion worse confounded.

One of the Persian authors whose work, from a foreign translation, Mr. Howorth so often quotes, but whose name I will not at present mention, at the close of his account of this dynasty, adds : "The Gūr Khān, having been seized by Kojlak, in one or two years died, and, since the period of decay in the affairs, and the regression of the fortunes of that dynasty came about, that person, who was the captive of a prison [evidently referring to the brother of the third Gūr Khān], became the Amīr and Khān of that tribe or people, and the Gūr Khān of the grave of the house, home, and possessions of that race [a play upon the words *gūr*, also written *gor*, a grave, and *khān wa mēn*, house, home, &c.], and his tribe became scattered and dispersed."

About the time in question, and subsequently, several persons of the race found their way into India, and some of the great nobles, mentioned in the preceding Section of this translation, were *Kara-Khitā-īs*. In the reign of Ūktāe also, Jai-Timūr of the *Kara-Khitā-ī* tribe or people held the government of *Khawārazm*, and, subsequently, *Māzandarān* was added to his government.

The *Kara-Khitā-īs* therefore were not so utterly destroyed, but "the older and younger dynasty," as they are fancifully styled by Mr. Howorth, had no connexion whatever. Burāk the Hājib, a native of the *Kara-Khitāe* territory, and a relative of the leader of the Gūr Khān's troops, taken prisoner in the great battle in which they were overthrown by the *Khawārazmī* Sultān, had become a convert to the Musalmān faith, entered the service of the Sultān, and rose to the rank and office of a chamberlain.

period of the sovereignty of that Sultān-i-Ghāzī elapsed, and Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, acquired sway over the territories of Turkistān, Bāniko of Tarāz fought a battle with him, was defeated, and taken prisoner, and, at the hand of Sultān Muḥammad, embraced the Muḥammadan faith.<sup>1</sup>

Trustworthy persons have related in this manner, that Bāniko of Tarāz came out victorious in forty-five battles over sovereigns of his own time, and no one [ever] defeated him [before]. On the third occasion,<sup>2</sup> Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, made a dash upon the equipage of the Khitā-īs, and captured the whole of it; and Kashlū Khān-

Fanākatī and Alfi say that Burāk and his brother, Husām-ud-Dīn, Hamīd-ī-Būr, came into Khwārazm, with others, on the part of the Gūr Khān, in the reign of Sultān Takīsh, to collect the tribute, and were treated so well, and liked their reception so much, that they remained there, and became Musalmāns, and rose in the Sultān's service.

Some ten years afterwards, when the Khwārazmī empire had been overturned by the irruption of the Mughals, and Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn was fighting against them, his brother, Ghuyās-ud-Dīn, Āk Sultān, was in Kirmān, the subordinate sovereignty of which his father had conferred upon him, Burāk, the chamberlain, joined him with some Karā-Khitā-īs, his own private followers, and some of the late Sultān's dispersed soldiery. After Ghuyās-ud-Dīn, Āk Sultān, had been defeated in an attempt upon Fārs in 620-621 H., Burāk, aggrieved on some account, left him, and set out for Hindūstān, accompanied by some other Khwārazmī leaders, to seek service with Sultān I-yal-tīmish, by way of Kīsh and Mukrān. On the way he was attacked near Jirāft by the governor of Gawāghīr, on the part of Ghuyās-ud-Dīn, Āk Sultān, near the eastern frontier of Kirmān, but chanced to defeat his assailant, through a party of Turks having deserted the latter during the fight. Burāk now resolved to take advantage of the distracted state of the empire, and set up for himself; and succeeded, by treachery and fraud, in gaining possession of Kirmān. At length, in order to secure his own safety from the Mughals, he sent the head of his master and benefactor's son to Ūktāe, son of the Chingiz Khān, who confirmed him in the government of Kirmān, subject, of course, to the Mughals. Burāk held it eleven years, and it passed to his descendants. Farther details will be found at page 283, and note <sup>2</sup>, and page 295.

Burāk was in no way related to the Gūr Khāns, and was a mere successful adventurer. How therefore can his rule over Kirmān be possibly construed into a "revival of the Kara Khitai dynasty on a small scale," without noticing the rest of the above grotesque statement as to the Gūr Khān's travels?

It may just as well be asserted that the dynasty of the Karā-Khitā-ī "revived on a small scale" in Khwārazm, at Dūhī, or at Mauṣil, for the Atā-Bak of Mauṣil was a Turk of Karā-Khitāe, as well as Jai-Tīmūr, and Sultān I-yal-tīmish.

<sup>1</sup> See note <sup>2</sup>, page 261.

<sup>2</sup> See note <sup>1</sup> to page 262, para. 8, page 264.

i-Sankur, the Tattār, fought a battle with the Gūr Khān, took him prisoner, and the dominion of the Khītā-is came to a termination, and passed away.

ACCOUNT OF THE OUTBREAK OF THE CHINGIZ KHAN  
THE MUGHAL—ON WHOM BE GOD'S CURSE!

[The author begins here by mentioning the sayings of the Prophet, Muḥammad, with respect to the portents betokening the end of the world, that they would be observed about the year 610 H. ; but, as the world has not yet terminated, I need merely refer to them with respect to the Ghūrī Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sam, whose assassination is considered by the author to be the first of those signs.]

The martyrdom of the Sultān-i-Ghāzī, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām—may he rest in peace!—happened in the year 602 H. ; and he was the monarch who became the last of the just Sultāns, and the last of the conquering Bādshāhs. His sovereignty was a barrier against the troubles of the end of the world, and the appearance of the portents of the judgment-day. According to the indication of these sayings [of the Prophet, Muḥammad], in the same year in which that victorious Bādshāh was martyred, the gates of sedition, war, and tumult, were opened, and, in this same year, the Chingiz Khān, the Mughal, rose up in the kingdoms of Chīn and Tamghāj,<sup>3</sup> and commenced to rebel ; and in all books it is written that the first signs of the end of time are the outbreak of the Turks.

A number of trustworthy persons, on whose statements reliance may be placed, have related on this wise, that the name of the father of this Chingiz Khān, the accursed, was the Tattār, Tamur-chī, and that he was the Mihtar [Chief] of the Mughal tribes, and ruler over his People.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>3</sup> Tamghāj is the name of a territory of Turkistān, according to the old geographers, and Tamghāj Khān is the title or name of one of the Afrāsiyābī Maliks [see No. XXI ], but Tamghāj Khān is the name generally applied to the "Bādshāhs of Tibbat and Yughmā," and Tamghāj and Yughmā are said to have been the names of cities giving names to countries also. Yughmā-oul is also said to be the name of a city or town of Turkistān, the same as the last-named place in all probability.

<sup>4</sup> Tamur, with short *e* and short *a*, in Turkī, signifies iron, and it is some-

On one occasion, whilst following the chase, a bird, the name of which is *Tughrul*, fell into his hands, and his surname [thereby] became *Tughrul-Tigīn*.<sup>6</sup> No one, at any time previous, has shown that that bird has fallen into the hands of a sovereign; and they held him in veneration, in consequence.

Among the tribes of *Mughal* was another Turk<sup>7</sup> of importance, a ruler and leader, and greatly venerated; and the whole of the tribes of *Mughals* were under the rule of these two persons. They, and all that people were subject to the family of the *Altūn Khān* of *Tamghāj*, and paid tribute to that dynasty; but among them [the *Mughals*] depravity, robbery, and adultery, greatly prevailed; and, both in their words and deeds, save lying, iniquity, robbery, and adultery, naught went on. All the tracts of [inhabited by ?] the Turk tribes, at the hand of their iniquity and sedition, were reduced to misery; and, for these reasons and acts, they [the *Mughals*] were wont to be treated

times written with *f* for the first, and long *ū* for the last, vowel; *chī* is the abbreviation of *chīz*, and, when it occurs at the end of Turkish words, signifies a maker or agent, as *top-chī*, an artillery-man, *baṭṭ māl-chī*, a shoe-maker, &c.

Our author has fallen into some confusion here, however [for the text, which is alike in all the copies collated, is defective], and has evidently mistaken the *Tāttār* chief named *Timur-chī*, after whom *Yassūkkā* named his son to commemorate his victory over him, for *Yassūkkā* himself. Here *Tamur-chī* means iron-*i* 'e, not that he was "a black-smith."

<sup>6</sup> This is the *Āwang Khān* of after years. *Tughrul*, with short *u* in the last syllable, is described as a bird used in field sports, one of the falcon tribe, a jerfalcon probably, and the above title is equivalent to the *Ilcro* [taker] of the *Tughrul*. Another name applied to men is written *Tughril*.

<sup>7</sup> Writers on "Mongols" may be astonished to find our author saying that there was among the *Mughals* another Turk, &c. He is literally correct, and means a Turk of the *Mughal* *Ī-māk*. This chief is called *Baidu* farther on.

Our author, like all other Oriental authors, very properly calls the *Mughals* and *Tāttārs* by the common name of *Turks*, according to their descent as already recorded.

It may be well to remember here, that our author is one of the two first Musalmān writers who wrote about the outbreak of the *Mughals* and the *Chingiz Khān* at the time it occurred, and completed his history just after *Hulākū*, his grandson, had captured *Baghdād* and entered *Asia Minor*. He had considerable advantages over *Ibn-Aṭṭir* in many ways. He was nearer the scenes he narrates, knew many persons who were personally acquainted with the *Chingiz Khān* and his sons, and actors in the events he records; knew personally, and dwelt among, several Turk, *Tāttār*, and *Khṭā-i* nobles at *Dihlī*, and in *Ghaznī* and *Ghūr*, who knew how they pelted their own names and others of their people, and the names of cities and countries, and had no cause whatever to praise or make out *Mughals* to be greater than they were.

with great contempt by the Court of the Altūn Khān, and much money and a great number of horses used to be demanded of them [as tribute].

When the father of the Chingiz Khān went to hell, and the chieftainship devolved on the Chingiz Khān, he began to act contumaciously and disobediently, and broke out into rebellion. An army from the forces of the Altūn Khān was nominated to lay waste and exterminate the Mughal tribes; and the greater number of them were put to the sword, in such wise, that but a few of them remained.

The remnant of them that escaped the sword gathered together and left their own territory, and proceeded towards the north of Turkistān, and sought shelter in a situation so strong that, from any direction, it had no road leading into it with the exception of a single Pass. The whole of that tract was girt about with massive mountains, and that place and pasture-land they call Kalur-ān.<sup>7</sup> They also say that in the midst of those pastures there is a spring of considerable size, the name of which is Balīk-Chāḡ;<sup>8</sup> and, in these pastures, they took up their abode, and dwelt there for a long period.<sup>9</sup>

In the course of time, their offspring and progeny multiplied greatly: and among that body a great number of men reached manhood. They all assembled and took counsel together, saying: "What was the cause of our downfall and of our being plundered and ravaged, and from whence arose our being made captive and being slain?" All made admission [saying]: "These calamities and misfortunes have arisen through our great misconduct; and it is necessary that we abstain from thus acting, in order that Almighty God may grant us assistance, and that we may take our revenge upon the forces of the Altūn Khān."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>7</sup> Also, in two of the oldest copies, Kalūr-ān

<sup>8</sup> ابلیج—In a few copies written Jāk, but it is only the fault of the copyists in writing ج for ق. A few copies, including the Printed Text, have ابلیج—Abalīḡ but the appears redundant. In the Turkī language Chāḡ is said to mean rapid, fast, violent, sharp, &c., and Balīḡ or Balīḡh and Balāk mean a spring.

<sup>9</sup> The flight of Kaūn and Nagūz into Irgānah Kūn, is here, evidently meant.

<sup>1</sup> It will be easily perceived, from my account of the descent of the Turks and the i-māh of Tāttār and Mughal, that our author has lost himself here, and mixes up the overthrow and destruction of the Mughal i-māh by the Tāttārs

Certainly, to carry out this intention, a firm ruler is neces-

and I-ghūr Turks, and the escape of the two fugitives into the fastnesses of Irqānah-Kūn, with the affairs of the Chingiz Khān at the time when he assumed sovereignty, and the title just mentioned was assigned to him. I will therefore now give a brief account of Tamur-ghī from the death of his father up to this period, in order to make our author's account intelligible.

I brought my account of the Mughal *i-māk* to a close with the death of the Bahādur Yassūkā, in 562 H [A.D. 1166-67], who usually resided at a place styled Dīlūn-Yıldūk, at which period the different tribes composing the *-māks* of Tāūtār and Mughal were ruled by no less a number than seventy-one different chiefs, independent of each other. Every two or three families had separate localities, and feuds and conflicts went on continually among them.

Tamur-ghī, or Tamur-ghīn—the *n* being nasal—was thirteen years old at the time of his father's death, having been born on the 20th of Zi-Ka'dah, 549 H. [27th January, old style, A.D. 1154], about which some recent writers appear to be in great doubt [neither the Persian "Raschid" nor any other of the "Persians" says he was born in 1155] and uncertainty, and his brothers were still younger. About the same time, the hereditary lieutenant or deputy, Sūghū-Jījan, whose care and counsel would have been so useful to young Tamur-ghī, also died, and Sūghū-Jījan's son, the Nū-yān, Karāghār—the great ancestor of Amīr Tīmūr—was young and inexperienced. This is the "tutor" appointed for him according to Des Guignes.

Of the 40,000 families of the Nairūn sept of the Mughals over whom his father ruled, and his own kinsmen and dependents, numbers now began to desert him and go over to the Tānjūtā, until not more than a third remained under his chieftainship.

He endured many hardships and dangers until he reached the age of thirty, when fortune began again to smile upon him for a time, when, in 579 H. [A.D. 1183], the Nairūns began to return to their allegiance, and Tamur-ghī succeeded in bringing some other Mughal tribes under his sway. In 584 H. [A.D. 1187-88] he became a captive in the hands of Türkütāe or Tūrghūtāe Karītūk, the Bādghāh as he is styled, [great grandson of Hamānkā, see note, page 895] of the Tānjūt Mughals, who was descended, in the fifth degree, from Kaīdū Khān, the fourth chief of the Bū-zanjār dynasty, which see, and to whom the other Nairūns attached themselves when they deserted Tamur-ghī, and against a confederacy headed by whom the latter was struggling.

It was not customary in those days among the tribes of Turkish descent to put captives at once to death, and so Tamur-ghī had a *do-shākhak* [a sort of portable pillory, described as a block of wood with two horns, hence the term. It may, in those days, have been formed out of two pieces of crooked wood, but what was used in after-years, and continues to be used still, consists of two flat boards with a hollow for the neck, a drawing of which may be seen in Astley's and other Collections], fastened round his neck, and thus was he detained in captivity. The Fanākati, Abū-Suifmān-i-Dā'ūd, who finished his History, and dedicated it to the ninth of the Mughal sovereigns of Irān [what would he have said had he been styled a "Mongol"?], 287 years before the "saga-loving" writer who has been much quoted lately, Ssanang Setsen, was born, gives the following particulars of Tamur-ghī's escape, which several other historians also relate.

Finding an opportunity, Tamur-ghī made his escape from the Tānjūtā, taking his *do-shākhak* along with him, and concealed himself in a lake in the



sary, and a severe Amīr is required, to restrain the trans-

neighbourhood of their camp, in such wise, that, of his person, nothing save his nose could be seen. A party of Tānjūtis was sent in search of him, and among them there chanced to be a Sūldūs [also written Saldūz], named Sūrghān or Sūrghān Shīrah, the tents of whose family happened to be pitched near that part, when, suddenly, his eye fell upon the fugitive's nose. He made a sign to him secretly—but how Tamur-ghī managed to see, and notice this sign, with his head under water, the chronicler sayeth not—that he should conceal his head still more—but this must have been as difficult to do as to see, considering that only his nose was out of the water. He then said to the party, "Do you make search in some other directions: I will take care of this part myself," and thus he managed to disperse them. As soon as night set in, Sūrghān Shīrah took Tamur-ghī out of the water, removed the *do-shāhhah* from round his neck, and brought him to his tent, and concealed him in a cart, under a load of *pašm*—the fine wool or hair with which goats and several other animals are provided by nature in the cold regions of Central Asia; but, as the party had discovered some trace of Tamur-ghī thereabout, and as Sūrghān Shīrah's dwelling was near by, they began to suspect that Tamur-ghī must be hidden somewhere by him. They accordingly made search, and even tried the load of *pašm* by piercing it with spits in various directions, and wounded him slightly in several places, but did not discover him. After they had departed, disappointed in their search, Sūrghān Shīrah mounted Tamur-ghī on his own bay mare with a black mane, supplied him with a little flesh, a roasting-spit, a bow and arrows, and everything required for a journey, but some say he did not give him any tinder-box or means of obtaining fire. The mother of Tamur-ghī, and his wives, had given him up for dead, when he arrived in his *yūrat* on the bay mare with the black mane, from which time the Mughals held such an animal in great veneration. His son, Tūlī, was a child at the time, and, for some days before, had been continually saying that his father was coming mounted on a certain coloured mare. This event happened in 587 H. [A.D. 1191]. The descendants of this Sūrghān Shīrah subsequently rose to high rank in the service of the Chingiz Khān and his sons, and, from him, the famous Amīr Chāupān was descended.

Tamur-ghī had fought with the Jūrī-āts, also styled Jājar-āts, a sept of the Nairūs, the tribe of Jāmūkah, the Sājān, or the double-tongued [Abū-l-Ghāzī, Bahādur, styles him Jajan and Jachan, which, he says, signifies possessed of sagacity], and other Mughal tribes—the Tānjūtis, Kūnghur-āts or Kūnghur-āts, as it is also written, Jākīrs, and Dūrmāns ["Durbens" and "Durlans" are out of the question], and the Bigī, Sūjī, and the tribe of Barlās, of the progeny of Irīdam-ghī, were in alliance with his enemies, but Karāchār, head of the Barlās, remained faithful to him.

In the year 589 H. [A.D. 1193], when in the fortieth year of his age, finding his enemies had entered into a confederacy to annihilate him, and that they were too numerous and too powerful to cope with, Tamur-ghī determined on taking refuge with the Āwang Khān, Tughrul-Tigān, and throwing himself on his protection, considering the friendship which had previously existed between his father, Yassūkā, and that sovereign, and Karāchār accompanied him.

This is contrary to the statement contained in a recent work on the "*Mongols Proper*," the authority for which appears to be Wolff or Erdmann, and, considering what follows, on undoubted authority, must be diametrically opposed to the fact.

gressors, and the violence of the seditious, to retaliate on

The Āwang Khān was the ruler of the Karīyat tribes, a sept of the Durdġin Mughals, and one of the most considerable of the Turkish nation, and he was a monarch [Bādshāh] of great dignity and magnificence, and was in alliance with the Āltān Khān, the sovereign of Khitāe. It was this personage who, before he was styled by the title of "the Āwang Khān," bore the name of Tughrul-Tigin, from his having captured one of those rare birds called a Tughrul. Tamur-chi was well received by the Karīyat ruler, and his affairs began to prosper. The Khān was wont to consult him on the affairs of his state; and, at length, Tamur-chi rose so high in the monarch's esteem, that he styled him son, and assigned him a position of great dignity.

Surgeon-Major Bellew, in his *Kashghar Mission History*, previously referred to, quoting some other writer, informs us that "This Aong Khan or Unc Cham ['], the Chief of the Karait of Karakoram, is the Tuli ['] of the Chinese writers, and the Toghrul of the Persian. He got the title Unc [uncle perhaps], or Aong, or Wang, as it appears in different authors ['], and which is equivalent to Khān = "Chief," "Lord," from *Kiu* ['], the sovereign of North China." This is History truly!

For a period of eight years Tamur-chi remained with the Āwang Khān, during which time he did good service for him, and gained him several victories. Among these was his victory over Irkah Qarā, or Irkah Qarā [also called Ūkah-Qarā], the brother of the Āwang Khān, who was in rebellion, and resisted his brother's authority, and Yorkin [it is written by Abū-l-Ghāzī, Bahādur, Portakin, Bortakin, and Bortikin], and the Bigī, Tūktā, the Peshwā, or leader of the Makrit tribe [also written Markit, but the first appears to be preferred] of the Karāt sept, descended from Karān; but some call them Narūns. After these events, the tribes of Tānjūt, Sāljiūt, Kunghur-āt, Dürmān, Jāyar-āt, Jalāir, Ūir-āt, also written Iūr-āt, Yorkin, and Qatghin, or Qatkin, and Tamur-chi's former opponents, the Makrits, and some of the Tāttār *Imdi*, entered into a confederacy against the Āwang Khān. Tamur-chi. They came to a compact, and took oath according to the most stringent tenets of their religion, by sacrificing a horse, a bullock, a ram, and a dog, to be faithful to each other, and, among them, there is no other engagement more solemn. This was in 596 H.

On becoming aware of this, the Āwang Khān and Tamur-chi got ready their forces, and, at a place near the Biyūr Nāwār—the Lake of Biyūr—the hostile forces came to an engagement, and the Āwang Khān and Tamur-chi completely overthrew the confederates, and brought their necks within the yoke of subjection. Hāfis Abrū states, however, that Tamur-chi fought a battle with the Bigī, Tūktā, the chief of the Makrits, in 593 H., at a place near the Qarās Murān [i.e. river] before Kalūr-ān, and near the river Salingāh; another, in concert with the Āwang Khān, in 594 H., at Tūkū Kahrah, and, again, in 596 H., after the Bigī, Tūktā, had escaped from the bonds of the Āwang Khān, which is the battle near the lake Biyūr already mentioned above. Several other affairs in 597 and 598 H. are mentioned by the same author, which are too long for insertion here, but I may mention that Jāmūkah—who had been set up as Bādshāh by several of the tribes, such as Anglās and Kūrlās, Kunghur-āt, Dürmān, Qatghin, Sāljiūt, and some Tāttār tribes, with the title of Gūr Khān—was overthrown at Sadī-Kurgān in the former year, and the Kunghur-āts submitted to his authority.

After this, Būe-Rūk, brother of the Tayānak Khān, ruler of the Nāemān

our enemies, and render the wreaking of vengeance upon

tribe, in concert with the Bādghāth of the Makrītis, the Bigl Tūktā, being hostile to the Āwang Khān and Tamur-chī, assembled a large army against them, and the hostile forces having met at a place named Kāzil-Tāgh, in 595 H., but in 598 H. according to the Tārīkh-i-Alfi, Būe-Rūf directed a Jījan, or Sorcerer, to have recourse to his art, which they term *yadah* and *āde*, which he effected by means of the *sang-i-yadah*, the jade or rain-stone, mentioned in the account of the descent of the Turks, which, on being thrown into water, forthwith brought on snow, mist, and wind; but these magical acts recoiled upon his own army, which was nearly destroyed by the cold. The few followers who remained with him were overthrown, a number were slain, and the remnant sought safety in flight. A curious anecdote respecting the Turks and their magical acts in this respect is related by Amīr Jamālī, son of Aḥmad, the third Sāmānī monarch, but I have not space for it here.

After Tamur-chī had passed eight years in the service of the Āwang Khān in various offices and duties, and had, through his intercourse and intimacy with him, acquired his confidence and esteem, and had been styled son by the monarch, the chiefs and kinsmen of the Āwang Khān became envious of Tamur-chī, and plotted together to bring about his downfall. Jāmūkah, the Bāshlīgh of the Jāyar-āis, bore him great enmity of old, and he maligned Tamur-chī to Sangūn, the son of the Āwang Khān, and convinced him that Tamur-chī sought to supplant him in his father's favour, and in the succession to his kingdom. Gurīdah, the Ḥabīb-us-Siyar, Tārīkh-i-Hāfīs Abrū, and some other works, however, state that the wrath of the Āwang Khān was raised against him through his asking of him a brother's daughter in marriage for his son Jūji, but some say it was on account of Tamur-chī not giving his own daughter, Kūchīn Bigl, to the Āwang Khān's son, Sangūn, that the negotiation broke down, and hostility arose. Jūji did subsequently marry the damsel, and Tūf married another sister, and Tamur-chī, their father, married a third. Endeavours were now made to instigate the Āwang Khān against Tamur-chī, but without effect at first. By repeated importunity on the part of the son, for even the dropping water at last wears the rock away, the conspirators succeeded in alienating the old ruler's regard for Tamur-chī, and he entered into the design to seize him. These events are said to have taken place in 599 H. One of the Āwang Khān's chiefs, Jādān, by name, who could keep nothing from his wife, was mentioning the design to her, in his *kārgūh*, or felt tent, only the day before it was intended to carry it into execution, when two boys, named Bātāe, or Bādāe, and Kāshlīk, came into the camp with the milk from the flocks, and, by chance, sat down near the tent, and heard the conversation. They at once made known his danger to Tamur-chī. He consulted with his kinsman, the Nū-yān, Karāghār; and it was determined, as soon as night set in, to make for the skirt of the mountain (range) of Kalāchīn with their followers and dependents, and to leave their tents standing; and thus they did, after having first despatched the women and children to a place of safety, called Bāhūnah Bulāk. That same night the Āwang Khān came to the tents with some of his forces, and, seeing the fires lighted as usual, ordered volleys of arrows to be poured into them, and then, finding all was silent within, entered the tents, but found them empty. He then determined to set out in pursuit of Tamur-chī; but how the Āwang Khān knew whither he had fled is not stated. The Karāyats probably tracked him. The Āwang Khān succeeded in coming up with him during the next day, when halted for rest, and a picket,

the Altūn Khān attainable." As the Chingiz Khān had

posted for the purpose, gave Tamur-chī timely warning of their drawing near the mountain (range) of Mū-āwand or Mū-āwandur, at a spot called Holānī Nūkāt, that is, the place where red canes or reeds grow. Notwithstanding the disparity of numbers, being sheltered by the hull skirt, he resolved to make a stand; and at last succeeded in beating off his pursuers. A great number of Karāyats were slain and disabled, and Sangūn—who is styled Shangūn by some, but the three dots over the— seem over zeal on the part of the copyists—was wounded in the face by an arrow discharged at his father, whose person he shielded with his own.

This is the place where Mr. H. H. Howorth, in his "*Mongols Proper*" page 59, on the authority of some foreign translation says: "He now collected an army and marched against the Keraites. His army was very inferior in numbers, but attacked the enemy with ardour," &c. His "flight from the Āwang Khān" is not alluded to in the least, and he must have been exceedingly clever to collect an army, but, at page 552 of the same book, the story is told from another translation in a totally different manner.

Tamur-chī thought it advisable however to withdraw quietly during the night towards the source of the Bāljūnah—some say, the Lake Bāljūnah—Bāljūnah Nāwar—and others, Bāljūnah Būlāk, Būlāgh, or Balīk, signifying a spring in Turkish, whither the women and children had been previously despatched. This lake was salt, and contained but little water, scarcely sufficient for his people to drink. If we consider that Karā-Kuram was the chief encampment or dwelling-place of the Āwang Khān, the retreat of Tamur-chī towards this lake of Bāljūnah, in which there was scarcely enough muddy water to quench the thirst of man and beast, and his subsequent movements, are sufficiently clear. The people of those parts, of his own Nairūn tribes, who had remained faithful, and had become dispersed when he took shelter with the Āwang Khān, were dwelling in the tracts adjacent to Bāljūnah Būlāgh, under his uncle Ū-tigin, also called Ūghkin, and, when he reached them, on this occasion, they began to gather around him, as well as many others from the Āwang Khān's territory. At this time, at the suggestion of the Nū-yān, Karāchār, Tamur-chī had a register made of the names of all those who had accompanied him in his flight from the presence of the Āwang Khān, and assigned certain ranks and offices to each of them. The two youths, Bātāe or Bādāe, and Kashlik, who had warned him of his danger, were made Tarkhāns. He was not "abandoned by most of his troops," nor did he "fly to the desert of Baljuna," as Mr. Howorth states (p. 59), nor was he "a hopeless fugitive at Baljuna," as the same writer states in another place (p. 553).

The meaning of Tarkhān is thus explained: "The person so called is secure and safe from all trouble and annoyance, in every place in which he serves, whatever booty he may take is his own, and he is not deprived of it; he can enter the place of audience of his sovereign without being summoned, and without first asking permission; and he can commit or be guilty of nine offences—nine is a number, as I have already noticed, held in great veneration by the Mughals—without being questioned, and Tamur-chī decreed that, for nine generations, the offspring of these Tarkhāns should be exempt from all burdens and imposts."

In the "General Description of Kāshghar," contained in the "REPORT" of the Yarkand Mission, previously referred to, we are told [p. 100], as to the "*Ancient punishments before the 10th century (Moghul)*," that, "Under the Moghuls, a noble was entitled to forgiveness nine times, but for the tenth was

become noted and famous among that fraternity for

imprisoned," &c., &c. Something respecting the privileges of the Tarkhāns had apparently been mentioned to the writer, who straightway turned *all* the Mughal nobles into Tarkhāns ! In another place we are informed that "the descendants of these Tarkhāns were still met with in Khurāsān in the *fifteenth century*," which is quite correct. They are also met with in several other centuries, and in this *modern* century in many other parts besides Khurāsān.

The descendants of the two persons above referred to were the progenitors of two tribes, styled respectively Bādāe Tarkhāns, and Khashlik Tarkhāns. The Tarkhāns of the Dašt-i-Kubchāk and Khwārazm are the descendants of Bādāe, while those of Turkistān are the descendants of Khashlik. Several great Amīrs arose from these tribes, among whom was the Tarkhān, Hāyf, who was the founder of a city on the Ātil, to which he gave his name. It was known as Hāyf Tarkhān, which, in after-years, was styled Haghtar Khān, but which European writers have "twisted" into Astrakhan, and not Orientals, as the author of the "*Mongols Proper*" imagines.

In the battle with the Āwang Khān, among other booty captured, was the *ghorāh* of that sovereign, which was of cloth of gold. This Tamur-ghī bestowed, with other things, upon Bādāe and Khashlik, and, in after-times, the distinguishing mark of a Tarkhān was a piece of the golden cloth tent of the Āwang Khān, which they used to wear hanging from their turbans.

Tamur-ghī now marched from the head of the Bāljūnah, and pitched his tents at a pleasant place on the bank of a river named the Ūr or Aor Mūrān [Ūn Mūrān ?], at the foot of a mountain range on the frontier of Kalangāh Qadā, or Qad, which is the boundary of Khatāe on that side, and there he mustered his followers, and they amounted to 4600 men. Leaving that spot after a time, he moved onwards, and reached a place where was a piece of water—the river Qalār [قار]—Kailar of our maps. Abū-l-Ghāzi, Bahādur, calls it the Kūlā Sūe or River Kūlā—and, there being plenty of grass thereabout, he determined to make some stay. On the way thither, with his forces divided into two bodies, one with the women and followers, and moving on either bank, he fell in with an Amīr, Turk-īlī, by name, who had a considerable following, and, on inquiry being made of him as to who he was, and his intentions and objects, he turned out to be a Angīrās, a Kunghur-āt Mughal, with a considerable body of that tribe, and he agreed to submit to Tamur-ghī, and was treated with great distinction. Whilst encamped at this spot, Tamur-ghī was joined by other smaller bodies of his other tribes, until, at length, his force grew formidable. Having marched from thence, Tamur-ghī despatched from the banks of the river Qūrkhān [قورخان]—some say from the Kālā Nāwar, Abū-l-Ghāzī says the Qolghā Nāwar—an emissary named Urkāe, or Ūrākāe Chūn, the Bahādur, to the Āwang Khān's presence soliciting an accommodation, and several times emissaries passed to and fro between them, but terms of peace did not result therefrom; and his brother, Jūji Qasār, who had been taken prisoner, and carried away with his family to the Āwang Khān's presence, now joined him, having made his escape. On the last occasion, Tamur-ghī despatched an agent of his own along with the Āwang Khān's envoy, to throw him off his guard, apparently, since he followed himself with all his forces, made raids upon that monarch's territory, reduced flourishing spots to desolation, slew great numbers of his people, and made others captive. After some time, wherein the Āwang Khān's people had suffered such misery, a battle ensued between Tamur-ghī and his forces, and the Karāyats—who were vastly superior in numbers—towards

manhood, vigour, valour, and intrepidity, all concurred in

the close of which *Karāghār* encountered the *Āwang Khān*, struck his horse with an arrow, and brought it head foremost to the ground. The *Āwang Khān* then succeeded in mounting another horse, and took to flight along with his son, *Sangūn*, leaving his wives and daughters captives in the hands of the victor; and such of the *Karīyat* tribe as saved their lives did so by submitting to *Tamur-chī*'s yoke. The *Āwang Khān* had fled towards the territory of the *Nāemān* tribe to seek shelter with their ruler, *Tūbukū* or *Taibukū*, the *Tayānak Khān*, but, when he reached the *Tayānak Khān*'s country, some of the latter's chiefs, without communicating with their sovereign, and on account of an old feud, put the *Āwang Khān* to death. *Sangūn* however managed to escape out of their clutches, and succeeded in reaching the territory of *Kirkit* and *Tibbat*, and from thence got to *Kāshghar*—another writer states that he proceeded towards *Khutan* and *Kāshghar*, thus indicating the whereabouts of *Kirkit*—but he was subsequently put to a cruel death, in the *Kāshghar* territory, by the chief of a branch of the *Khalj* tribe, of *Kuljī Kārī*, called *Kārī Mā*, who sent his family captives to *Tamur-chī*. The brother of the *Āwang Khān*, whose three daughters were wives to *Tamur-chī* and his sons *Jūjt* and *Tūlt*, escaped into *Tingūt*. Of this person more anon.

As the whole of the *Karīyat* tribe, and the forces of the *Āwang Khān*, had submitted to him, the mind of *Tamur-chī* being now at rest from anxiety, he resolved on taking some recreation after his fatigues. He accordingly passed some time pleasantly in the part, near which the battle took place, in pleasure, and in enjoying the diversion of the chase, after which he set out for his native *yūrat*, or encampment. These events happened in the year 599 H. [A.D. 1202-3], when *Tamur-chī* was 49 years old, but some say he was 50.

After having gained this important victory, and as the greater number of other tribes of the *Mughal ī-māk* had bent the neck of subjection to him, *Tamur-chī* assumed the seat of *Khān*-ship, at the camp or station named *Samān-Kaharah*, which is also written *Samān-Karah* [*Abū-l-Ghāzī*, *Bahādur*, has *Namān Karah*] which probably was near *Dīlūn-Yūldūk*, in *Ramāṣān* of that same year, and the sovereignty exercised by the *Āwang Khān* passed to *Tamur-chī*; but, as soon as the *Tayānak Khān*, also written *Tayān*, and *Tayānak*, son of *Balikto Ināna*j, sovereign of the *Nāemāns* [a Turkish tribe, but its direct descent is not certain], became aware of his predominance, he set about organizing an army against him, and the tribes of *Dürmān*, *Ḳaughīn*, *Makrīt*, and *Sāljūt*, the *Bādghāh* of the *Ūir-āt*, *Alīn Tāghī*, and some other *Bāshlīghs* of the *Karīyat*, the *Jājar-āt* of *Jāmūkah*, the *Sājan*, and some of the *Tāttār* tribes, it is said, entered into a confederacy with the *Tayānak Khān* for the purpose of making war upon *Tamur-chī*.

The *Tayānak Khān* also despatched an agent to *Ūlā-Kūsh-Tigīn*, the *Bādghāh* of the *Ungkūts*, a Turkish tribe who had charge of the Great Wall [According to the ideas of Mr H. H. Howorth, set forth in his "*Mongols Proper*," page 21, "*Tigūn seems to be a form of the Turkish Tikin*," and, at page 26, he says, "*Tikin is a title borne by chiefs of Turkish tribes*!"] He fails to see that "*Tikin*" is only correct in the sight of those who do not know *k* from *g* in the original. That it is a Turkish title there is not the least doubt, and hence it is borne by Turks and *Tāttārs*], asking him to join the confederacy, and aid in putting down the new claimant to sovereignty, which could be easily effected, if he joined him, as two kings in one country could not exist, nor two swords in one scabbard, and not to refuse his alliance, as he would

naming him for the chieftainship [saying]:—"For, save

remedy matters with the sword himself, even if he should reject his offers. Ūlā-Ḳūsh-Tigā, also written Alāḳūsh, Tigā Ḳūrīn, however, was a sagacious man, and an experienced one. He consequently despatched one of his Amīrs named Nūrdāsh, but, in one work, he is styled Burāndāsh, and Ḳurāldāsh, in Alfī, which is probably the most correct, to Tamur-ghī, and made him acquainted with the message he had received, and assembled his Ungkūts for the purpose of joining Tamur-ghī, as he was much annoyed at the Tayānak Khān's message. Tamur-ghī held counsel with his sons and Amīrs, and one of the Nū-yīns, some say it was Ḳarāghār, but others, that it was Tamur-ghī's paternal uncle, Dāritāe Ūngghūki, the Ūlkūnūt Ḳunghur-āt, advised that if Tamur-ghī took the initiative and attacked the Nāemāns he would be successful. That advice was approved of; and, in the middle of Jamādī-ug-Šānī, 600 H., [in March, A.D. 1204], he commenced his march, and set out to attack the Tayānak Khān.

He moved onwards until he reached the verdant tract of Kalangā, previously mentioned, but, on this occasion, no fight took place. Subsequently, in the same year, Tamur-ghī again set out to seek the Nāemān Bādghāh, despatching a force in advance, under the Nū-yīns, Ḳūldār Sājan, chief of the Mangkūt Nairūns, and Jabah. He then reached the banks of the river Altāe—[now Siba?] in the territory of Ḳangakṭāe—[Altāe]—Abū-l-Ghāṣī, Bahādur, calls it Altāe Soufing—[Altāe]—in the neighbourhood of which was the Tayānak Khān, who had been joined by the Bigī Tāktā, chief of the Markīts, and one of the chiefs of the late Āwang Khān, the Karīyat. At this juncture a stray horse from Tamur-ghī's camp, with its saddle turned under its belly, entered the camp of the Tayānak Khān, who, when he beheld it, it being very lean, held counsel with his Amīrs, saying: "The horses of the Mughals are miserably lean while ours are fat and in fine condition. It is advisable that we should fall back so that the enemy may be induced to follow us, whereby their horses will get into a worse plight still. Then we will make a stand and engage them." Most of the chiefs approved of this counsel, but the Tayānak Khān had an Amīr, Ḳūrī Subājū, by name, who, from childhood, had grown up with him; and he said to him on this occasion: "Thy father, Balıko İnāna, was not at rest a day without battle, and never showed his back nor the crupper of his horse to a foe. Thy heart is enthralled with thy Khātūn, Kūr-bāsū, and from thee the perfume of manhood emanateth not." Stung to the quick at these taunts, the Tayānak Khān, filled with rage, "grew hungry for the fight, like a roaring lion for his prey." When the two armies came near each other, and drew out their lines, Tamur-ghī entrusted the centre to his son Jūjī [some say Jūjī commanded the left wing, and Tamur-ghī's brother, Jūjī Ḳasār, the centre], and the two armies, having sounded their cows' horns and kettle-drums, engaged in battle, and Jāmūkah, the Jājar-āt, with his followers, having deserted the Tayānak Khān before the battle began, marched away to his own *yūrat*. In the obstinate struggle which ensued, and which continued until evening closed in, the Tayānak Khān was wounded, and his body was so weakened from the effect of his wound as to be almost without a soul; and with a few Amīrs he retreated toward the top of a hill. His Amīrs complained of this, and urged upon him the necessity, for his own sake, of returning to the field, and renewing the conflict, but he was now too badly wounded to be affected with their taunts and entreaties. Then Ḳūrī Subājū said to the other chiefs: "Since the Bādghāh dies thus deplorably in

## The Chingiz Khān bound the whole of the people of the

favour and kindness, but those which manifested contumacy, and refused to submit, he brought under the sword, both chiefs and tribes, so that, in this manner, he succeeded in bringing most of the Mughal tribes under his sway. Those among them who were with him in his first encounter with the Āwang Khān, whom he cherished, and to whom he had assigned certain ranks and degrees, and given certain exemptions, as previously narrated, he now directed should be formed into *Tomāns*—ten thousands—*Hasāraks* [there never was, nor is there, a "famous tribe" so named]—Thousands—*Šadaks*—Hundreds—and *Dahaks* or *Dahchaks*—Tens: these words it must be remembered, are not the Mughal terms, but the Persian translation of Ūn Mīng, Mīng, Yūs, and Ūn respectively; and these degrees have continued to be observed among them down to modern times.

In the month of Rajab [the seventh] 602 H., corresponding to the Mughal year of the Leopard—but the Mughal, Abū-l-Ghāzī, Bahādur Khān, says, the year of the Hog—and to the month of February, 1206 A.D., when Tamur-g̃hī was, it is said, by several historians, in the 49th year of his age, but he was really just 52 years and 7 months old, dating from the day of his birth, he commanded that a *kurultāi*, or general assembly, of all the Mughal tribes in subjection to him should meet at a certain place, the name of which is not recorded. It was very probably Samān or Samān Kaharah, where he, three years before, assumed the Khān-shīp, and this may have been the cause why so many authors confuse these two different events, and make one of them. There, accordingly, his sons, all his Nū-yīns and Āmīrs, from the parts around, of the Tomāns, Hazāraks, Šadaks, and Dahaks, assembled together, and a great feast was made. He then set up a white Tūk or Tūgh—standard—consisting of nine degrees, or tails, indicated by as many tails of the *ghajr* gāū, or *bes grunmens*, mentioned at page 68, and he was seated on a high throne with a diadem on his head. Some authors, including the Fanākātī and the author of the *ʿIrīkh-i-Jahān-gīr*, with slight variation, state, that the cause of his setting up this standard was a Mughal, held in veneration by the people, clothed in the guise of a recluse, who used to pass his time in devotion, and whom, from exposure to the elements in a state of nudity, in his wanderings, neither heat nor cold affected. He pretended to the knowledge of the secrets of futurity, and asserted that he was sometimes taken up into heaven, and the simple-minded Mughals believed him. On this account he was styled by them Tab or Tub Tingrī—*تب نگرى*. The first word has been altered into or mistaken for *Bud*—*بود*—and translated by several European writers, but not by the original authors, "The Image of God." Tingrī certainly is the Turkish for God, but "*bud*," signifying an idol, object of adoration, or image, is a purely Irānī, not a Turkī word, and it would be strange indeed if purely Irānī words, in combination with Turkī, were in common use among Turks, Tāttārs, and Mughals, at the period in question. For these reasons I think we are not at all certain of the true meaning of Tab or Tub [This, very probably, is the proper name of Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, the *Khutā-i*, the XVI. of the Dihlī Maliks, mentioned at page 757, whose name is written in precisely the same doubtful way, and without vowel points.] Tingrī, though, I should suppose, the Devotee of, or Devoted to, or Chosen of God, or something similar, is much more likely to be the correct signification.

His correct name was Kūkjū, *كوكجو*—or Kūkhū [turned into "Gueukdja" and "Gukju" in the "*Mongols Proper*"] though some write it Kūkhah.



tribes by pledges and oaths to obey him in all things, and

Kükjah, and Kükšü, and he was the son of Minglik Ichakah, the *Kunak-kumār*—*قوناك كومانر*—also written *Kūnak-kumār*—*قوناك كومانر*—who married Tamur-ghī's mother. He stepped forward and said: "Last night a person of a red colour, seated on a grey horse, appeared unto me, and said: 'Go thou to the son of Yasukā and say: 'After this they shall not style thee Tamur-ghī any more; for, in future, thy title shall be "the *Chingiz Khān*;"' and likewise say thou to the *Chingiz Khān*, 'Almighty God hath bestowed upon thee and thy posterity, the greater part of the universe.'" All present repeated it, and with acclamation hailed Tamur-ghī by that title, because its meaning, in the Tūrk language, signifies in the Iranī, *Shāh-an-Shāh*, King of Kings, or Emperor. The signification, however, is somewhat differently interpreted by authors into *the Great King* or *Emperor*, *Khān-i-Khānān* or *the Chief of Khāns*, and the like. From that time this was his title. Knowing how cunning Tamur-ghī was, several writers have stated that the appearance of Kükjū or Kükchū upon the scene was preconcerted between him and Tamur-ghī. It will be noticed from the foregoing that his *proper* title is *THE CHINGIZ KHĀN*, as in the case of the Great King, the Great Napoleon, etc., and not simply "*Chingiz*." Another writer well informed as to the Turks, Tātārs, and Mughals, says that *Ching*—*چنگ*—signifies in the Mughal dialect, firm, confirmed, established, and the like, the plural form of which is *Chingiz*—*چنگیز*. The impostor was so puffed up with his own importance, after the success of his pretended revelation, that he began to entertain ambitious views for himself, until, one day, he entered into an angry dispute with Tamur-ghī's brother, Jūjī Kāsār, when he took him by the throat and dashed him to the ground with such violence that Kükjū never rose again.

After this *hurillā*, those who were in the secret of this pretended revelation began to spread the report all over the countries round, and among the peoples who had submitted to him, so that they began to believe that the Almighty had really given the world to the *Chingiz Khān*, and future war and conquest were chiefly considered.

The first victim of these pretended predictions was Būe-Rūk, brother of the Tayānak Khān, to whom Koshlūk, the latter's son, and the Makrit chief, the Bigī, Tūktā, had fled for shelter. Būe-Rūk, after he had made such preparations as he was able for resistance, aided by the Makrits, was surprised by a body of Mughals whilst engaged in the chase, in the neighbourhood of Awāy Tāk or Tāgh [*Habib-us-Siyar* has *Ulūgh Tāgh*] at a place called Sūjā—Sūjā river?—like the quarry in the net of the fowler, and carried off to the camp of the *Chingiz Khān*, and was forthwith put to death. Some say he was killed in the *ḥakār-gāh*, or hunting-ground. Rashid-ud-Dīn says he was surprised "after making a slight resistance," which is rather improbable. His tribe on this dispersed, and Koshlūk, and the Bigī, Tūktā, after directing their followers to disperse and rejoin them, with as many others as possible, at a certain rendezvous in Ardīsh, fled also to a place on the frontier of the Nāe-mān country.

The ruler of Tīngkūt, Shīdarkū, also called Shīdāskū, now began to manifest hostility again, upon which the *Chingiz Khān*, being then near to that country, determined to invade it. He entered it with a portion of his immense forces in 603 H. [A.D. 1206-7]. The capital named Kāshīn—the *Akashīn* *اباشی* of Abū-l-Ghāzi, Bahādur Khān—which formerly, it is said, gave name

him, no one will be capable to undertake the carrying out

adversity, better let us show our fidelity, and turn our faces again against the enemy, since we have given the Tayānak Khān to be slain," and, with one accord, like lions, they descended, and rushed upon the enemy, and fought valiantly while life remained, in such wise as to gain the encomiums even of their foes. They all perished, but not before they had made great havoc among the Mughals, who lost great numbers.

The Tayānak Khān having died of his wound received in that battle, his son, Koshlūk or Koshlak, or Kojlak, as he is also styled, fled to his uncle, Būe-Rūk. The Ḥabīb-us-Siyar however says that the Tayānak Khān, after the battle, was conveyed to a place of safety, but that he died from the effects of his wound before the end of that same year 600 H.

The females of the family of the Tayānak Khān fell into the hands of the victors, and, subsequently, his favourite Khātūn, Kor-bāsū, was brought to Tamur-ghī, who, in accordance with the custom of the Mughals, married her. A daughter of the Tayānak Khān's son, Koshlūk, named Liqūm Khātūn, was given in marriage to Tūfī, Tamur-ghī's youngest son. The Nāemān and Ungkūt females are said to have been remarkable for their beauty, above all the other tribes of Turk descent.

After Tamur-ghī had been thus successful over the Tayānak Khān, in this battle, the tribes and families in confederacy with the Nāemān sovereign, being without a head, for the most part submitted to Tamur-ghī's sway, but the Nāemāns became dispersed, and the Bigī, Tūktā, the Wālī or sovereign of the Makrīt, was still hostile. Tamur-ghī marched against him, and speedily overthrew him, and reduced the whole tribe of Makrīt to subjection, but the Bigī, Tūktā, with Koshlūk, the Tayānak Khān's son, sought an asylum with Būe-Rūk, the Nāemān, elder brother of the latter, as detailed farther on.

Most of the accounts of Tamur-ghī's proceedings, after the overthrow of the Tayānak Khān, are somewhat obscure and confused, but the authorities quoted in the *Tārīkh-i-Alfi* throw considerable light upon these events. I must refer to them briefly, leaving numerous details of the life of the Chingiz Khān, both here, as well as elsewhere, in these notes, for some future day, when I hope to give them in proper order, and detail.

About this time Jāmūkah, the Sājān, the Jājar-āt, was seized by his own people, bound hand and foot, and brought to Tamur-ghī, his mortal foe. He, considering that, as the Jājar-āts had not been faithful to their own chief, they would scarcely prove faithful to him, commanded that the greater part of them should be massacred, and this, as will subsequently appear, was the treatment traitors generally received at Mughal hands. Jāmūkah was made over to a nephew of Tamur-ghī, with orders to put him to death by dividing him limb from limb, because this was the treatment he had reserved for his rival, in case he had fallen into his power. He bore it without flinching, merely observing that he would have treated Tamur-ghī after the same fashion, and telling the executioners how to proceed, and thus he met his end.

Tamur-ghī, after this success, returned to his own *yūrat*, and despatched agents to various tribes of the Mughals, and exhorted them to submit. Such as did so were cherished, and such as refused were reduced and punished. In the following year—601 H.—Tamur-ghī moved against the Makrīt tribe, which, through their determined hostility, he sought to root out entirely. The *Rauzat-uṣ-Ṣafā* mentions these events as taking place a year later. The Bigī, Tūktā, the Makrīt chief, having fled from the forces of Tamur-ghī, took shelter with

of these matters, and this affair will not be accomplished, nor succeed at the hands of any other except him."

another division of the Makrīt tribe—the Ūrhār Makrīt—the chief of which was named Dā-ir or Tā-ir [the Turks, and the people of the different *i-māḥ*, use *d* for *t* and *ḡ*, and *vice versa*] Asūn, who, with his division of the tribe, was then encamped on the Tāz Murān, or River Tāz, hoping to obtain support from them. When the Bigī, Tūktā, and his followers arrived there, Tā-ir Asūn told them that he had not the power to cope with Tamur-ḡhī, and so, taking along with him his daughter, Kūlān Khātūn, he sought the presence of Tamur-ḡhī, who received him honourably. He then represented that, for want of cattle, the whole of his people were unable to come and join his camp; but Tamur-ḡhī, being somewhat suspicious of them, would not allow him and his followers to dwell in his own *yūrat*, but placed an intendant over them, and, soon after, Tamur-ḡhī set out for his own *yūrat*, as before stated. After his departure, the Makrīts, with Tā-ir Asūn, took to plundering the Mughals still remaining behind, but were resisted, and the plunder recaptured from them. After this, the Makrīts went away. Tamur-ḡhī, on becoming aware of their proceedings, resolved to uproot them. He invested one sept of them, the Ūdūkūt, who were in the stronghold of Bijand, which they call Wāḡkāl Kūrgān, took it, overcame several other septs of the same tribe, and then retired. The Bigī, Tūktā, with his sons and a few of his people, fled to Būe-Rūk the Nāmān, the elder brother of the Tayānak Khān, while his own sept, with the rest of the Makrīt tribe, along with Tā-ir Asūn, retired to the banks of the river Sālingāh, near the fortress of Kūrkāh Kūnchān, or Kūpān (?) and there took up their quarters. Tamur-ḡhī on this despatched a force under two of his Nū-yīns, against them. The Makrīts were mostly destroyed, and the remainder of them were conducted to Tamur-ḡhī's presence.

In the month of Jamādi-ul-Ākhir of this same year 601 H., Tamur-ḡhī, having ordered his forces to be mustered, resolved to move into the country of Tingkūt—تنگوت—also written Tinghūt—تخوت—and Tingūt—تگوت—which is described as a mountain country called Anksāe or Ankasāe, of great elevation, adjoining the country of Khitāe. The Mughals style the country, which contained cities, fortresses, and fine buildings, Kāshīn [this is the country about which Mr. H. H. Howorth, in his "*Mongols Proper*," quoting D'Ohsson probably, says, "Tangut, the Hia of the 'Chinese,' had been previously known as *Ho Se*," and had been "*corrupted by the Mongols into Kaschin*"! "Who is the authority that they or any one else *corrupted* it? On the very next page of the same work we find that "Tangut" is "Kansuh," and, further on, that "Kan-su" is "dependent on the kingdom of Hia!"], and, on the way thither, Tā-ir Asūn, the Ūrhār Makrīt chief was seized and brought to Tamur-ḡhī. Having reached Tingkūt, otherwise Kāshīn, the chief place, which appears to have given name to the country—but an Uzbek writer says the country was called Ankasāe—the fortress of Lankai was taken by storm and levelled with the ground, and the territory of Kāshīn was plundered and devastated. From thence Tamur-ḡhī advanced towards Kalangūgh—كلانكوش—or Kalankūgh, which was a vast city, and very strong. It was taken, and the greater part of the territory of Tingkūt was also plundered and devastated. From thence Tamur-ḡhī returned, in triumph, to his own *yūrat* again. Karā-Kuram, I may mention, is never once named in the histories I have been quoting from, up to this period.

Every tribe, however, which submitted, Tamur-ḡhī ceased from oppressing and treating with severity, incorporated it with his people, and showed it

submit to his command ; and, in conformity with the usual

to the territory, was surprised, and Shīdarkū and his people submitted. He was left without further molestation, it is said, on agreeing to pay tribute, and permitting the Mughals to occupy his capital. Abū-l-Ghāzī, Bahādur Khān, says he was an aged prince or ruler, and that his capital was taken by assault after a long investment, and its walls thrown down. From our author's accounts farther on, however, it will be found that Shīdarkū had often boasted of his defeats of the Chingiz Khān, and was, at last, treacherously put to death by him. Kāshīn city was the point at which the great *hārwan*s of traders met from the west and south in their trade with Khitā or China. It was a very rich city, and the abode of learned men. It is evident that it was a city of the Buddhists, but few would recognize Kāshīn under the vitiated name of *Camphon* given to it by the old European travellers. In the Kāshghar Mission Report the route is referred to, at p. 114, as the Chachan route, but, at page 139, of the same Report, Kāshīn is turned into "Cāsh-min."

At the same period the Chingiz Khān, having returned from the subjugation of Tīngkūt, subdued the Kırkız territory.

In the winter of the before-mentioned year [603 H.], but some say the winter of 604 H., which appears to be most correct, the Chingiz Khān set out in order to attack the Bigī, Tūktā, and his Makrītis, and Koshlūk and his Nāemāns, who had again acquired considerable strength on the frontier of the Ardīsh territory, which some connect with Tibbat, whilst others say that it is also the name of a stronghold on the frontiers of the territories of the Makrītis and Nāemāns, but that it was a fortress is very doubtful. Ardīsh apparently extended to Tibbat or the south.

In Shaw's account of "*High Tartary*," Artush appears as the chief town of a district, watered by a river of the same name, lying north of Kāshghar city on the northern frontier of the Kāshghar state. It appears under the name of Artish in Colonel Walker's last map, and, in the Kāshghar Mission Report, under the name of Artosh and Artysh. It is probable that this name, correctly written Ardīsh or Artīsh [with *d* or *t*], applied to a much larger extent of country, now buried in the sands, extending S W as far as the frontier of Tibbat, as anciently constituted, but the sands of the desert have buried former landmarks in this direction.

Mr. H. H. Howorth, however, straightway, transfers this tract, in his "*Mongols Proper*," to "the land watered by the Irtysh," about 10° farther North than the part indicated, even according to the map of "Mongolia" in his own book ! West of the Yellow River it certainly was.

Although the cold was intense and the water frozen, the Chingiz Khān set out with a vast army, and on the way the Bigī Kōlūkah, also written Kūnūkah, of the Mughal tribe of Ūir-āt [ویرات] with his people, unable to resist, submitted to the Chingiz Khān, and they were incorporated with his army, and conducted it into Ardīsh, where they came upon Koshlūk, and the Bigī, Tūktā. An engagement ensued between them, and the confederates were overwhelmed by superior numbers, and Tūktā was killed by an arrow in the action.

Kodū, the brother of Tūktā, and the latter's three sons with him, endeavoured to carry his body off, but, finding this impossible, they cut off the head and carried it with them. They, in company with Koshlūk, fled from the territory of Ardīsh into that of the Ī-ghūrs, the situation of which has been already

customs in force among that people, these important matters

indicated, and sent an agent of their own to the Yiddi-Küt, whose capital was Bigh Bāligh, and asked for shelter. He slew the agent, and cast his body into the Kham [خام—in some MSS. the point has been left out altogether, and in others put under instead of over—hence it has been incorrectly styled the JAM] Murān. This river is said to rise in the hills crossing the Gobi or Shāmo desert, to run S.S.W., and to fall into the Hoang-ho—the Kārā Murān—on the borders of Tibbat, and I believe, from the context, that this is correct. I shall refer to it again farther on. This desert of sand has destroyed many landmarks, and overwhelmed many cities, hence writers are led to look farther north, east, and west for places, and to make rash guesses respecting them, while they lie buried under the sands of the Gobi. The explorations of the Russian Colonel, Prejevalsky, throw considerable light on the parts about Lob Nāwar, and the mountains to the south.

The Yiddi-Küt, having slain the agent, turned out with his people to expel them, and the fugitives, tired and worn out from the hardships they had endured in their flight, after a slight skirmish, being unable to cope with the Ī-ghūrs, went off, and the Yiddi-Küt sent the news of their repulse and flight to the Chingiz Khān. Koshlūk retired, by way of Bigh-Bāligh, into the territory of the Gūr Khān of the Kārā-Khujā-ī, while the Makrits retired to Kam-Kunghak كَمْ كَهْ [written كَمْ كَهْ in the Rauzat-us-Ṣafā], which has, by the carelessness of copyists been turned into كَمْ كَهْ—Kibchāk and كَمْ كَهْ—Kibchāk, and, consequently, the most absurd errors have arisen, and no wonder “the country to which he went is not known.” This must not be mistaken for Kam-Kamjūt—كَمْ كَهْ—about which I shall have more to say farther on, but as the tract east of Lob Nāwar.

Koshlūk was well received by the Gūr Khān, who gave him his daughter in marriage, the details respecting which, and his subsequent ingratitude, have been given in a previous note, on the Kārā Khujā-ī dynasty, page 930.

After the overthrow and death of the Bigt, Tūktā, the Chingiz Khān despatched two agents to the Kirghiz or Kırkız tribe, calling upon them to submit. The Bādakhā, as he is styled, Ūrūs Ī-nāl, by name, finding himself unable to offer any opposition, sent back with them an agent of his own with presents, including a rare bird—the Āk-Shunkār—probably a white eagle, or some bird of the same species, and made his submission. This event is said to have happened in 603 H., but, as it certainly happened after the overthrow of the Makrit chief, which, as already mentioned, some say took place in 604 H., the submission of the Kirghiz may have happened in that year also, for, in consequence of the Bigt, Tūktā's finding shelter in that part, the Chingiz Khān called upon them to submit to his yoke.

The next accession of strength gained by the Mughal sovereign was the homage, in 605 H., but some say in 604 H., of Bāurchūk—بَورچوک—a ruler of other tribes of Ī-ghūrs, which belong to the Mughal *i-nak* although they are neither Kaiāts, Nagūz, nor Durāl-gins. They consisted of over one hundred and twenty different septa, and were descended in a direct line from Mughal Khān, brother of Tāttār Khān, which former was grandfather of Āghūz Khān, and the Ī-ghūrs were the first to join him against Kārā Khān, his father, as already related. In religion, the Ī-ghūrs were Lamaists, and, in times previous to those here referred to, the Bāghlighs, or Chiefs of the Ūn Ī-ghūrs, used to be styled Īl-Īltār, and those of the Tūkūz Ī-ghūrs, Kol-Īrkā, or Īl-Īrkā,

were caused to be ratified. He said: "If you will be obe-

and, in after-times, when about a century of their sovereignty had passed, those titles fell into disuse, and the title given to their ruler was Yiddī-Kūt—**يَدِّي كُوت**—which, as regards the first word, in some MSS. is written in such a manner that the two points of the first letter **ي**—**ی**—are run into one, and made to appear as **ا**, **ب**—which alters it altogether. The proper mode of writing it is evidently the above, with the **د** doubled, which I have taken from a work written by an Uzbek Mughal. In writing words of this kind beginning with **ا**, an **ahf**—**ا**—is sometimes substituted, thus Abū-l-Ghāzī, Bahādūr Khān, writes it **ابا**—**إددی**. It signifies "the Lord of Sovereignty," but some writers say, "the Reigning Prince," and his territory lay in Turkistān. At the time in question, he was a tributary to the Gūr Khān [The "Aydy Cūt," of "Balāghūn," as Surgeon-Major Bellew styles him at p. 140 of the Kāshghar Mission History, had nothing whatever to do with Balāghūn—that was the Gūr Khān's capital. The Yiddī Kūt's chief town was Bāgh-Bāfīgh], whose Shāhnah or Intendant, named Shāh-kam, dwelt at his court. Having occasion to complain to this Intendant about his illegal and oppressive acts towards the Ī-ghūr people, and receiving naught but insolence and threats in return, the Yiddī-Kūt, having heard the noise of the Chingiz Khān's invincibility, and being himself, with his tribe, descended from the same *i-māk*, slew the Intendant of the Gūr Khān at Karā Khwājah, —a place still well known in Ī-ghūrīstān—and flung the body into the Kham Murān, saying, at the same time, that no one was safe who was the enemy of the Chingiz Khān, and he determined to de-patch an agent to him. The latter, who was, by no means, friendly inclined towards the Gūr Khān for giving shelter to Koshlūk, the Nāemān chief, on hearing what had happened, despatched an agent named Dūrbāe, with a friendly message to the Yiddī-Kūt, and invited him to come to him, for the Ī-ghūr ruler, as said to have previously informed the Chingiz Khān that he had driven Koshlūk, and the Bigī, Tūktā's brother and sons out of his territory. A few writers say the Ī-ghūr was the first to negotiate. Be this as it may, according to the majority of the most trustworthy historians, the Yiddī-Kūt, dreading the resentment of the Gūr Khān, was well pleased to seek the protection of the Mughals. He accordingly set out from the Ī-ghūr territory bearing rich presents—for he was a very wealthy prince—consisting of gold, silken garments, cattle, and horses, among which were 1000 of high breed, and slaves both male and female. This was in 605 H. [A.D. 1208-9]. When these negotiations began, the Chingiz Khān was in the territory of Tīngkūt, whither he had gone, in that same year, to chastise the ruler of that country, Shīdarkū, who, with some other chiefs, had revolted, and among whom was the Khān of Kırkız whose country was utterly ruined. The Mughals then appeared before the city of Irīkī [Polo's Egrigaia], but, in a work written by an Uzbek, it is Arkey], the ruler of Tīngkūt, thereupon made his submission, and is said to have sent his daughter to be espoused by the Chingiz Khān. These events took place in 606 H.

On his way back the Yiddī-Kūt reached his presence with befitting offerings. He was well received by the Chingiz Khān, and a liberal appanage was assigned him. He solicited that he might be considered as the Great Khān's fifth son, being himself the son of a Khān. This was consented to, and one of the Chingiz Khān's daughters was given him to wife, and he became his fifth son—his son-in-law.

dient to my mandates, it behoveth that, if I should command the sons to slay the fathers, you should all obey,"<sup>2</sup> and they entered into a solemn promise accordingly; and the first command he gave was that they should slay the sons of the great Amīr Bāisū,<sup>3</sup> who had been the associate [in the chieftainship] with the Chingiz Khān's father. He [the Chingiz Khān] brought the whole of the tribes under his own sway, and set about making preparations for hostilities, and employed himself in getting ready war material and arms. As the numbers of the Mughals had largely increased and become very great, and an account of this determination of the Chingiz Khān had reached the hearing of the Altūn Khān, he nominated [a force of] 300,000 horse in order to guard the route against the

There is a different version of this matter, and, from the circumstantial manner in which it is related, it bears the impress of truth. The Yiddī-Kūt served under Ūktāe and Chaghatāe Khāns during the invasion of the Musalmān territories, and was at the siege of Utrār. After returning from that campaign, when he presented himself before the Chingiz Khān, on the latter's return homewards, the I-ghūr king solicited an alliance, and one of the Chingiz Khān's daughters was betrothed to him, but the nuptial knot was never tied during the Chingiz Khān's lifetime. When Ūktāe succeeded, the Yiddī-Kūt solicited that the marriage might be completed, but, in the meantime, the lady died. On this Ūktāe betrothed him to Ulāji Bīgī, his own daughter, but before that marriage could be carried out the I-ghūr ruler was removed from the world. On this, his son proceeded to the Kā'an's presence, and was married to Ūktāe's daughter, but he too soon followed his father, and was succeeded by his own brother in the rulership of his people, by command of Tūrākīnah Khātūn, during the time she administered the government, after her husband's, Ūktāe's, decease.

After the Chingiz Khān had gained so many victories, and acquired such power, the chiefs of other tribes and their people now began to submit to him, and among them was Arsalān Khān, the most prominent of the chiefs of one portion of the numerous Turkish tribe of Kārlūgh [or Kārlūk: K is written both ways] who submitted to him, and joined him with all his people. This was in 607 H., when the Chingiz Khān was encamped at Kalūr-ān. There were several divisions of the Kārlūk or Kārlūgh Turks or Turk-māns, as they are likewise called by several oriental writers, as may be gathered from what I have mentioned in the account of the Afrāsiyābī Malik, pages 907 and 925, and in note <sup>2</sup>, page 376.

I have now briefly noticed the most prominent events in the life of the Chingiz Khān up to the time of his revolt against the Altān Khān, where our author's account takes its proper place.

<sup>1</sup> In a few modern copies—"and fathers to slay their sons"—in addition to the former part of the sentence.

<sup>2</sup> The Printed Text has Baisū also in a note, but in the page itself the particle ل, governing the oblique case, of, is so printed as to appear like part of the word, thus—ل،

Mughals, and hold the pass [leading out of the tract then occupied by them].

The Chingiz Khān despatched a Musalmān, named Ja'far, who was among that people [the Mughals], among the forces of the Altūn Khān under semblance of traffic ;<sup>4</sup> and the Altūn Khān commanded that he should be imprisoned ; and he detained him for a considerable time. The prisoner [in question], by some good contrivance that became practicable, fled from that confinement ; and, by a secret route, made for the presence of the Chingiz Khān, and related the matter to him, and informed him respecting the road by which he had come. The Chingiz Khān determined upon the design of rebelling, got his forces ready, and first directed so that the whole of the Mughal families assembled together at the base of a mountain. He enjoined that all the men should be separated from the women, and the children from their mothers : and, for three whole days and nights, all of them remained bare-headed ; and for three days no one tasted food, and no animal was allowed to give milk to its young. The Chingiz Khān himself entered a khargāh [a felt tent], and placed a tent-rope about his neck, and came not forth from it for three nights and days ; and, during this period, the whole of the people [there assembled] were crying out, *Tingrī ! Tingrī !*

After three days, at dawn, on the fourth day, the Chingiz Khān issued from the tent, and exclaimed, "Tingrī hath given me victory. Now we will get ready that we may wreak our vengeance upon the Altūn Khān !" For the space of another three days, in that same place likewise, a feast was held. At the end of those three days, he led forth his troops ; and, following the route by which that fugitive, Ja'far, had come through the mountains, they issued forth, and assailed the country of Ṭamghāj, carried their inroads into it, and put the people to the sword. When the news of the Chingiz Khān's outbreak became spread abroad, and reached the Altūn Khān, he imagined that, perhaps, that army of 300,000 horse, which were holding that pass<sup>4</sup> and the high road, had been overthrown ;

In a few copies *رباط*—on a mission to demand peace or war—but he was evidently sent as a spy.

<sup>4</sup> Pass or Defile. Thus in the text, but one of the entrances in the Great Wall



and put to the sword ; and the heart of the Altūn Khān,

is meant—that of Salū-ling-kiw?—سارلنگ کيو—which, according to Hāfiḡ Abri, “having once been passed, the country of Khitāi may be considered as subdued.”

I must here also briefly relate what other more modern writers, who wrote however under Mughal influence, state ; because our author's account contains much that no others have related, and he was contemporary with the Chingiz Khān, knew many of the actors in these events, and was not influenced by the patronage of Mughal sovereigns.

Now that the Chingiz Khān, through the submission of the Yiddi-Kūt of the I-ghūrs, had reduced, nominally, or partially, at least, all the tribes between the Gūr Khān's dominions on the west, and Khitāi, or Northern China, on the east, and most of the Mughal tribes, and had become exceedingly prosperous, and his forces countless, he resolved to make an attempt upon the territory of the Altān Khān of Khitāi, Shūdui-Shū-o-ahū—the “Ninkiasu” of some European writers—to whom, for many ages, his forefathers had been tributary. He wanted a plea, like the wolf in the fable, and found one as easily, and certainly more justly, than another descendant of Yāfiḡ has lately manufactured one against the ‘Uḡmānī Turks : only the Chingiz Khān acted openly, not perfidiously, or hypocritically : so, what had happened seven and four generations before respectively, he now adopted as an excuse for invading the Altān Khān's dominions. The Altān Khāns of by-gone times had put to death two chiefs' sons of the Nairūn Mughals, as already related in the account of the Turks, namely Hamanghā or Hamanḡā, and Ūkīn-Barḡāk.

Oriental writers differ considerably in their accounts of these events. It appears that the Chingiz Khān continually conferred with his chiefs and tributaries on the injuries and wrongs their forefathers had sustained at the hands of the Khitāi-Is, by reason of which the Mughal people were looked upon with scorn by other nations, their neighbours. He recalled to them the prediction [the imposture of Tab Tingrī, previously referred to] that they were always to be victorious over their enemies.

On this, the Khwājah, Ja'fir—the very same as mentioned by our author—a Musalmān of sagacity, as he is called, who had long been in the Chingiz Khān's service—as being a more respectable agent, probably, than a barbarian Mughal—was despatched to the court of the Altān Khān, to intimate to that monarch his accession to the sovereignty of the Mughal tribes, and calling upon him to render allegiance, and pay tribute to his former vassals, the Mughals, in which case he might continue as heretofore to rule over Khitāi ! The Altān Khān treated the messenger and his demands with utter contempt, and sent him away.

The author of the “*Mongols Proper*,” who disdains all who wrote in Persian (while his information is derived from translations from them), with the exception, I suppose, of the “great Raschid,” as mere “second-rate authorities,” “muddy streams,” &c., &c., turns this Musalmān, whose name plainly indicates his religion, and who was not a Mughal, into “Jafar Khodsha,” and adds that he was “one of the principal *Mongols*” !!

Then occurred the tent and fast scene related by our author, but in much greater detail. More particulars respecting the impostures of the Mughal ruler will be found farther on.

After this, in the eighth month of 607 [March, 1211 A. D.] H., the Mughal troops

and of the whole of the inhabitants of the country of Ṭam-ghāj, became much afflicted.

were assembled; a portion, amounting to 10,000 horse, under Tughachār, also styled Dākin, was left behind to guard the Chingiz Khān's own camp and territory, and keep the conquered tribes of Karāyat, Nāemān, and others quiet, while, from the remainder, two armies were formed: one was despatched under the Chingiz Khān's three sons, Jūjī, Chaghatāe, and Ūktāe, and some of his Nū-yins, into Khūrjah [Corea of Europeans], passing through the country of the Kāl-imāk, who had already acknowledged the supremacy of the Mughals. There they committed great devastation, and sacked cities and towns without opposition, the troops of that country having gone to join the Khitāi forces.

The country of Khūrjah, or Khūrjat, is said to have been computed at seventy tomāns—700,000—that is to say, such was the number of fighting men it had to furnish—and the city of Sūkin [سوكين] or Sunkin [سكنين], as it is also called, and the great city of Kūiking [كوكين] or Kūyūiking [كوكيونين], which was one of the greatest in the empire, was captured by Jablah [our author's Yamah], the Nū-yin, and destroyed.

Subsequently, Jūjī, and his brothers, advanced in another direction, and wrested out of the hands of the Khitāi-Is, the cities of Tūng—[possibly قونگ—Kūng]—Chīw—چو—Sūk—سوک—Kū—کوک—Ūn—اوی—Long—چنگ—one M.S. لنگ]. I may mention that no languages are worse than the Persian, and such others as use the 'Arabic characters, for recording foreign proper names, unless the scribes are very careful to point the letters correctly, and no language is so bad, probably, for vitiating the pronunciation of foreign words as the Chinese, and, therefore, the absolute accuracy of these Chinese names cannot be vouched for. I have added the originals as I find them, but after comparing and authenticating them as well as possible I have, among other helps, used four copies of Alf

The Chingiz Khān himself, with his army, received further reinforcements near the river Tīl, also written Tīl, of Karā-Khitāe, and the cities, which lay on the banks of that river, such as Baisūc—بیسوق— and others, were taken.

After that, Ūlā-Kūsh or Alākūsh, Tugīn Kūrin, chief of the Ungkūt Turks, the same who betrayed the Tayānak Khān's proposals to Tamur-chī, again betrayed the trust reposed in him. He and his tribe were subject to, and in the pay of, the Khitāi sovereigns, and located in the part now approached by the Mughals, for the purpose of guarding that part of the Great Wall or Barrier called Ūin-Kūn—اوی کون—by the Turkish tribes, and which was built for the purpose of restraining the Karāyats, Nāemāns, and Mughals, and preventing their molesting the Khitāe territory. He had a grievance against the Āltān Khān, and admitted the Mughals within the Great Wall, and provided the invaders with guides.

The name Ung-kūt or Ūin-kūt is said to signify the guards of the Wall or Barrier. It is also written Unkut—اكنـت Abū-l-Ghāzī, Bahādur Khān, says the Turks call this Wall or Barrier Tūr-kūrgah [or Tūr-kūrgah—تورگورگه] and the Khitāi-Is, Ungū—اگو.

The Chingiz Khān and his hordes having been admitted within the Great Wall, and having gained a footing there, he despatched bodies of troops in various directions to ravage and subdue the Khitāe territory; and two hundred cities, towns, and fortresses, they destroyed or captured, including the cities of Nū-shā—نوشا—Kūching Chīw—کوکچینگ چو—and Kūn—کون—Chīw—چو.

Some writers state, with regard to these events, that all the towns and

When the news of that disaster, plunder, devastation,

cities, which submitted without resistance and furnished supplies to the invaders, were spared, but that all others were destroyed.

He then turned his face towards the Āltān Khān's capital, and metropolis of Khitāi, which, in the *Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr*, *Ḥabīb-us-Siyar*, &c., is named Chingdū [چنگدو] or Chungtū [چنگتو], where the Āltān Khān then was. This must be our author's city of Tamghāj, that is to say, the chief city of the country of Tamghāj.

When the Āltān Khān became aware of the advance of the Mughal host, he marched with his army, reinforced by the forces of Khūrjah—a numerous host—and took up a position to guard one of the strong entrances leading into his empire, detaching a considerable body of troops in advance to watch the frontiers and harass the Mughals if opportunity occurred. This could have been of little effect with the Mughals within the Great Wall, and, evidently, is the same circumstance as our author refers to; but he says, more probably, that the Āltān Khān sent 300,000 horse to guard the entrance into his territory. The sovereigns of Khitāi did not usually accompany their armies, and Ḥāfiṣ Abrū also says that he was not present. Our author also mentions the same Ja'fir; and the latter's return, by a secret route, evidently refers to the route by the Great Wall, betrayed by Alā-kūsh, Tiglū Kūrīn.

To return to the accounts of writers who wrote a century or more after our author. The force detached from the Āltān Khān's main army, commanded by the Amīr of Khūrjah, was so far successful that, information having reached it that the Mughals, after capturing one of the cities in the vicinity, were then engaged, unsuspecting of the near approach of enemies, in dividing the spoil in their camp, the Khitāi leaders thought this an excellent opportunity, and determined to endeavour to surprise them. They came upon the Mughals when cooking their food, but the Chingiz Khān was speedily on the alert, and his troops, dropping their cookery, were soon mounted, and they speedily put the Khitāi to the rout.

The main army of the Āltān Khān, which had advanced to meet the Mughals, when within a few marches of them, was found to be so much fatigued that it was deemed advisable to halt to give it some rest. Its camp was fortified by a deep trench in front, and the waggons or carts of the army were placed on either flank. Hearing, however, that the Mughals were advancing in search of them, they foolishly left this secure position, and, despising the Mughals whom they had so often coerced in former times, sallied forth to meet them. The battle was obstinate and bloody, but ended without any decisive result; for, although the Khitāi lost nearly 30,000 men, the Mughals lost even more. The Chingiz Khān thought it advisable to retire with his spoils towards his own borders, and the Khitāi did not deem it advisable to follow, as they were much worn out with long marches and their exertions in the late battle.

Ḥāfiṣ Abrū says it was one of the Chingiz Khān's most famous battles, that the Khitāi were nearly annihilated, and that it took place towards the end of 607 H. [about the end of May, 1211 A.D.], while some writers leave it out entirely. If the Khitāi were nearly annihilated, it is strange the Mughals should have retired. The *Ḥabīb-us-Siyar* also says the Khitāi were overthrown, and that the Āltān Khān fled in dismay to his capital. Fearing for the safety of that city, if the war continued, the Āltān Khān now summoned his minister and his two principal generals, to deliberate on the

and slaughter, reached that [great] army which was guard-

state of affairs. It was agreed that a temporary accommodation should be entered into, if possible, in order to get rid of the Mughals for the present, trusting to what events might happen hereafter; and to give themselves time to make preparations for the future when once rid of them. An ambassador was despatched to treat with the Chingiz Khān, and the Āltān Khān's daughter, Konjū by name, was offered him in marriage. This offer was at once accepted for some cause—probably because he had lost so heavily in the great battle, and because he found the conquest of the Āltān Khān's country, at that time, and under present circumstances, was not so easy as he had expected. For these reasons, and flattered with the condescending offer of the Khān's daughter, and such an imperial alliance, the Chingiz Khān accepted the offer of peace; and accompanied by the Khitāi princess withdrew from the Āltān Khān's dominions to his *yūrat* in the country of Karā-Kūram.

According to the Chinese historians quoted by Gaubil, the great battle just referred to, took place in A. D. 1212 [= 609-10 H.], near the mountain [range?] Yehu, seven or eight leagues W.N.W. of Swen-wha-fū; and, in an attack upon Tai-tong-fū, the Chingiz Khān was dangerously wounded, upon which he thought fit to return home. The Khitāis on this retook several places, among which was Kū-yang-quan.

These historians also state that, on the subsequent return of the Chingiz Khān, in A. D. 1213, a still more bloody battle took place between the Khitāis and the invaders near Whayley, four or five leagues W. of Kū-yang-quan, and that the field was strewn with dead bodies for four leagues together. This coincides exactly with what our author describes as page 965, which see.

As soon as the Mughals had withdrawn, the Āltān Khān left his son at Chung-dū, with several distinguished nobles as his counsellors, along with a considerable army, and withdrew himself from the capital, which was situated a little to the north of the city, called, *as after-years*, Khān-Baligh by the Mughals, and is said to be the Yen-king of the Chinese, situated a little N. of the present Peking, and, doubtless our author's city of Tamghāj, by which he does not mean to say that such was its name, but that it was *the* city—the capital—of the Tamghāj country or empire. The Āltān Khān retired to Taming—تامين—the Pyen-lyang of the Chinese, and called also Nanking, and still called Pyen-lyang. Its site is just where Kai-song-fū, the capital of Honan now stands, which his father had founded, and which they likewise call Antā-e or Intā-i [انتاي], which is somewhat doubtfully written. It is said to have been some forty leagues in circumference, surrounded by a triple wall, and situated on a river which they call the Chang or Ching-Khū [چنگخو] and some the Iprī—ایپری—Murān], and “in which [on one side of which?] its foundations were laid. The breadth of this river is so great, that, between early morning and evening, a boat passes from one side to the other, and returns with considerable exertion.” On the way to this city, some of the Āltān Khān's troops deserted him, and went away and joined the Mughals; and the Chingiz Khān, on becoming advised of the Āltān Khān's retirement from Chung-dū, despatched an army under two Amīns of Tomāns—the Bahādur Sāmūkah—[هافس ابڑہ ساموکاہ], the Sāijūt, and another Nū-yān, to invest Chung-dū, which they did.

The Ḥabīb-us-Siyar gives a different account of these events, which agrees more with the Chinese statements, which affairs are said to have happened in 608—10 H. [A. D. 1211—13], that the whole of the northern part of the Āltān Khān's

ing the high road, through panic, on account of the state of

dominions was in a disturbed and disaffected state, and that disloyalty and sedition prevailed, so much so that the Altān Khān's son, through these disaffections, withdrew from Ching-dū, and went and joined his father, and that intelligence of the forsaken condition of that capital conveyed to him through the governor of Khūjah, who tendered his allegiance to him, induced the Chingiz Khān to invade Khūjā a second time.

Another account is that the Altān Khān had given orders to ravage some parts of Karī-Khūjā [i.e. north-west of, and beyond the Great Wall], on which the people sent agents to the Chingiz Khān at Karī-Kuram, and sought his protection, and the Khān of one of the disaffected parts, having gained possession of one of the fortresses guarding one of the entrances through the Great Wall, offered to admit the Mughals thereby. This statement is confused, and refers to the *first*, not the second expedition, as I have shown. However, it is farther stated that the Chingiz Khān thought the time propitious, and determined on invading the Altān Khān's dominions again, and that he proposed that his I-gūr and Karlūgh allies should take a part in the expedition; but, being unable, through sickness—caused by the wound perhaps, referred to previously—to proceed himself, the command was given to Sāmūkāh, the Sāljūt, his oldest Nū-yān.

The Chinese authors tell us that the Chingiz Khān, having retired from Khūjā, after the accommodation with the Altān Khān, and, having received his daughter in marriage, in 1211 A.D., set out, accompanied by Jūjī, to conquer Kibchāk—an error for Kam-Kunchāk previously referred to—in order to reduce several tribes which had been subject to the Wang Khān, who had sought to do with “Kipchak,” that the tribes inhabiting Jatah [European Getes] submitted, and that, leaving half his forces with Jūjī, who defeated the Komāns, Walāks, Bulghārs, and Hungarians, the Chingiz Khān retired to Karī-Kuram. Now this is wholly incorrect, and caused apparently through mistaking Kam-Kunchāk for Kibchāk. The Chingiz Khān never entered Kibchāk, and Jūjī was not sent into Kibchāk until several years after—he never went against either Walāks, Bulghārs, or Hungarians—as will be seen farther on; and it is quite certain that the Awang Khān had nothing to do with their country.

The same writers also state that the Chingiz Khān determined to invade Khūjā again in consequence of certain threats of the Altān Khān, and, at the instigation of the Gūr Khān, who had been provoked by the Altān Khān's ravages on his territory, and who had, by help of some rebels, seized a considerable fortress which opened the way into China. Here they have terribly confused matters. The Gūr Khān dynasty had already terminated, and the Ungkūt Turks betrayed the passage through the great mound or Wall on the occasion of the first invasion.

The Rauzat-uz-Şafā also states that another Mughal army was despatched into Khūjah to prevent the forces of that territory from going to the aid of the Altān Khān, and several places in it were taken. Meanwhile, the other army is said to have been met, on its advance, by the army of the Altān Khān, which was pushing forward to meet it; and it is related that the advance of the Mughals was defeated, but that, the main army coming up, the Khūjā-is were overthrown and routed, and their troops took refuge in different cities. The capital was strongly garrisoned, and the Altān Khān's son is said to have been there in command [this is totally contrary to the Ḥabīb-us-Siyar, written

affairs, they became dispersed, and were slain, and made captive.

The Chingiz Khān acquired domination over the countries of Ṣaghār,\* and Tingit, and Tamghāj, and he came

by the son of the author of the *Rauzat-uṣ-Ṣafā*, and the Mughals are said to have been induced to endeavour to take the city by assault, but to have been repulsed, and the investment continued for a long time. The defenders being numerous and the inhabitants likewise, the besiegers determined to starve the city into surrender, and subsequently it was taken by stratagem; and, this being reported to the Khāṭā-I sovereign, he was so affected that he destroyed himself by poison.

The Ḥabīb-us-Siyar says an attempt was made by a body of troops, each carrying a portion of grain, as well as the followers of the army, to conduct a convoy of provisions, to relieve the capital, but that they were intercepted on the march and defeated, and the convoy was taken. On this two of the Khāṭā-I generals destroyed themselves by means of poison, and others escaped to Tayming, and these disasters were followed by the submission of the capital and country.

The details of the capture of the city in the *Rauzat-uṣ-Ṣafā*, and in the work of the Turkish author, Abū-I-Khair, are somewhat similar to our author's account, the details of which he had of persons who, shortly after its capture, visited it, and therefore his account is of the utmost value. The date of its capture is 610 H. [A.D. 1213-14].

I have now brought up the events in the career of the Chingiz Khān, as briefly as possible, to where our author begins to give his narrative in greater detail. Ḥāfiḡ Abrū gives most elaborate accounts of these events, but I must, for want of space, leave his particulars for another occasion.

\* This is the same name as occurs at page 267 and 270, and in the second para immediately under, and in the account of Tūshī [Tūjī] Khān farther on. The word varies in the different copies of the text from *سَـغْـهَر*—*سَـغْـهَر*—*سَـغْـهَر*—*سَـغْـهَر*—*سَـغْـهَر*—without any points. When I wrote the notes to the account of the Khwārazmī Sultāns, I concluded, from the mention, invariably, of Tingit and Tamghāj along with it, that the I-ghūr country must be meant, from the third form of the doubtful word as given above—*سَـغْـهَر*—Then again I thought the word must be *سَـغْـهَر*—*سَـغْـهَر*—an 'Arabic word in common use, signifying the frontier of an infidel country, but this, too, is, I think, from what is mentioned farther on, also untenable, although Tingit and Tamghāj are still used in connexion with it. As, in Turkish words, occurring in the histories of this period, the letters *g* and *gh* are interchangeable, I was inclined to consider that the word here might be *Saghar*, or *Ṣakar*, or *Saghar*, or *Sakur*, and that it referred to the place which the old travellers call, and what appears in the Jesuits' maps as, Sukkier, and Saker, and Sukquer, Sukuir, Suchur, and Sucur, in as many copies of Polo's work, but this idea must also be abandoned, for this reason that Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, never penetrated as far east as the limits of Turkistān, in that quarter, in his pursuit of Kadr Khān, with respect to whose pursuit in 615 H., it is first mentioned at pages 267 and 270, and there it is stated as being in or part of "Tatār," and "Turkistān." But it is also distinctly stated, on the former page, that, in reaching this identical part—"as far as Yighur [I-ghūr]—that is supposing—*سَـغْـهَر*—was correct—the Sultān penetrated so far northwards—I leave out the "North Pole"—that the light of twilight never left the sky all night," and,

before the gate of the city of **Tamghāj** and seat of government of the **Altūn Khān** [and invested it]. He continued

from note <sup>3</sup> to that page, even were the time midsummer, the **Sulṭān** must have reached as far north as the parallel of 49° or 50° of north latitude, for such a phenomenon to occur, and, consequently, **Sakir** or **Saghir**—the Sukker, &c., of the old travellers, between **Kāshghar** and **Khujā**, is out of the question. **سبر**—Siberia, likewise, will not do, as the word is written very differently.

In the notice of **Tūshī** [Jūī], farther on, referring to the same place and event, it is said that, "in the year 615 H., the **Sulṭān** had gone to make a raid upon the tribes of **Ḳadr Khān** of **Turkistān**, who was the son of **Safaqtān** the **Yamak**," and that "**Tūshī**, from the side of **Tamghāj**, had advanced with an army"—at page 269 it is said that "**Tūshī** had come out of **Chīn** in pursuit of an army of **Tatārs**," and that refers to **Tuk-Tughān**, the **Makrit** chief, a totally different person from **Ḳadr Khān**, the son of **Safaqtān-i-Yamak**, but who, at page 267, is called **Yūsuf** [his correct name apparently is **Yūsuf**, and **Ḳadr Khān** his title], the **Tatār**, whose father's Turkish name was **Safaqtān**, and his tribe the **Yamak**. According to our author, **Ulugh Khān**, afterwards **Sulṭān** of **Dihlī**, was connected with the **Yamak**.

In the lines of poetry with which our author closes this History, he styles his patron, **Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam** "**Khān** of the **Ilbarī**, and **Shāh** of the **Yamak**," and **Sulṭān I-yal-tumish** is also said to have belonged to the **Ilbarī** tribe, which, at page 796, is mentioned as being obliged to fly before the **Mughals**, "when they acquired predominance over the countries of **Turkistān** and the tribes of **Khufchāk**." **Yamak** or **Yamāk** is described as the name of a ruler and of a city or town, and also of a territory of **Turkistān**; and some add that it is also the name applied to the sovereign of the **I-gūr**, but that was, as already stated, **Yiddī-Kūt**. Respecting the **Ilbarī** tribe, which I believe to be that which ancient authors call the **Abars**, or a part of them, I shall have something to say before closing these notes.

In 'Abd-ullāh-i-**Khurdādbāsh**'s work there are some items of information which may throw a little light on this difficult matter, but, still, a deal remains to be cleared up; and the copy of his work which I have referred to, unfortunately, has been damaged by damp in the middle of each page for some thirty or forty pages, in the very portion I wanted most to be perfect. He says, with reference to the **Ghuzz** tribe, that "the **Ghuzzān** are a people, the **Malik** of whom they style the **Taghar**—**تغار**—**Khākān** [**تار** is one of the words in some copies of our author's text, and may easily be mistaken for **تار** by a copyist], and the capital of the **Taghar Khākān** is the city of **Aral**—**ارال**. There are **Tarsāh** [Christians—Nestorians] there as well as **Buddhists**, and others. The people are nomads and live in **khargāhs** [round felt tents] and tents [different to the **khargāh**], but their **Maliks** wear dresses of silk brocade, and silk, with wide sleeves and long skirts." He moreover says that the routes from that territory lead to **Barsakhān**—**برسان**—which is said, by another writer, to be a place between **Ī-rān** and **Tūrān**, not a very satisfactory explanation, and from thence to—**سول**—which, being without points, may be read many ways, where the routes [or where other routes] meet. From thence to **Sakī** [**سکت**], and then to **Kashmī-ghāzār**—**کشمیغاور**—and from thence to **Kak** [it appears to be **Ḳakat**, but **Jakut** seems more probable, but I can only give the original word as I find it], is a day's journey. It is farther added, that this **waliyat** or country—**Taghar**—is less in extent than **Kujā**—**کجا**—described by another author as a place within **Chīn**. Now all this, it appears to me, tends to

before the city for a period of four years, in such wise that every stone which was in that city they [the defenders] used to place in the catapults and discharge against the investors; and, when stones, bricks, and the like, ceased to be available, everything that was of iron, brass, lead, copper, tin, and pewter, all was expended in the catapults, and then *bālīshs*<sup>1</sup> [ingots] of gold and silver they continued to discharge in place of stones. Trustworthy [persons] have narrated on this wise, that the Chingiz Khān, during this period, had issued a mandate that no person in the Mughal army should take any notice of that gold and silver, nor remove any of it from the place where it might have fallen.

After a period of four years when that city was taken, and the Altūn Khān had fled, and his son and his Wazīr became captives in the hands of the Chingiz Khān, he commanded that, from the records of the treasuries and the Mushrifis [auditors] of the treasuries of the Altūn Khān, a copy of the account of gold and silver should be procured. They brought it to the Chingiz Khān accordingly, showing how many *bālīshs* of gold and silver had been discharged,

show that the tract indicated in the text is no other than this TAGHAR [the part indicated is described as a *wilāyat* by our author] OF THE GHUZZ, probably as far north as the Aral Nāwar, and that, from the two words having been mistaken in MS. for one, the puzzling, but incorrect, I believe, subject of "Taghargaz" has arisen [تغرغر out of تغر], the chief of which, like several others in Turkistān, bore the title of Khākān.

Ibn-Haukal says, speaking of Chīn, if you wish to proceed westward from the east, you come by Kharkhīz [this has no reference to the Karghīz], and Ghazghuzz—تغرغر Taghar-i-Ghuzz?, and by Kimāk to the sea, a four months' journey. Again he says, in another place, that Ghuzz is the boundary of the land of the Turks, from Khurz and Kimāk, and to خراسان—Khuranjīah?—and Bulghār, and the boundary on the land of the Musalmāns from Gurgān [Jurjānīah of the 'Arabs] to Bārāb [i. e. Fārāb] and Isfanjāh.

I was in hopes that M. Barbier de Meynard's edition of 'Abd-ullah-i-Khur-dādhbī, published in the "*Journal Asiatique*," for 1865, would help me here, but the names of places are so fearfully incorrect as to render it perfectly useless for the purpose. For example: the well-known city of Nīshāpūr is written with *u* instead of *u*; Isrūhtah—اسروخت—is written Ishrūsnaḥ—اشروسنه; Ūgh, in the same way, although so well-known, is printed اوس—Al-Ghūr—the *ghūr* is printed *ghūr*—Al-a'ūz, and so on.

<sup>1</sup> A *bālīsh* or *bālīsh* signifies a pillow or bolster for the head, but, here, an ingot of gold or silver in the form of a pillow or bolster, which, in former days, was current among the the Turks. A *bālīsh* of gold is said to have weighed eight *mishkāl*s and two *dāngs*, and a *bālīsh* of silver, eight *drams* and two *dāngs*, but the *bālīsh* here referred to must have been of far greater weight to have been of any effect on this occasion.



and, according to those records, he required the whole of the gold and silver : and he obtained it so that not a single bar thereof was missing.

From the Sayyid-i-Ajall [most worthy Sayyid], Bahā-ud-Dīn, the Rāzi—on whom be peace!—who was a Sayyid of noble nature, and of manifest lineage, this servant of the state, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, who is the compiler of this TABAKĀT, heard, that Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh—on whom be the Almighty's mercy!—despatched him on a mission to the Chingiz Khān, and the reason for sending it was, that, when the account of the outbreak of the Chingiz Khān, and the predominance of the Mughal forces over the territories of Tamghāj, and countries of Ṣaghār<sup>a</sup> and Tingit, and the regions of Chīn, from the extreme east, was brought to the hearing of Sultān Muḥammad, Khwarāzm Shāh, he was desirous of investigating, by means of trustworthy persons of his own, the truth of this statement, and to bring certain information respecting the condition and amount of the Mughal forces and their weapons and warlike apparatus.<sup>b</sup> The writer [of this book] who is Minhāj-i-Sarāj, in the year 617 H., which was the first year of the Mughal forces' crossing the Jihūn into Khurāsān, heard, whilst within the fortress of Tūlak, from the lips of the 'Imād-ul-Mulk, Tāj-ud-Dīn, the Jāmī, the Dabīr [secretary], who was one of the ministers of state of the Khwārazm-Shāhī dynasty, that the ambition to appropriate the countries of Chīn<sup>c</sup> had become implanted in the heart of Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, and he was constantly making inquiry respecting those states, and used to ask comers from the territories of Chīn, and the extreme limits of Turkistān, about them. "We [his] servants" [continued

<sup>a</sup> This name varies just as before in the different copies of the text. According to our author's statements at pages 268 and 270, and in his notice of Tūghī [Jūyī], between the seizure of the Chingiz Khān's merchants and envoys and the Sultān's return from Irāk, that is to say, in 615 H., the Sultān had penetrated into this part in pursuit of Kadr Khān, the Tatār, son of Safaktān, the Yamak, referred to at page 961, but his accounts are somewhat confused, wanting detail, and other writers do not refer to this particular affair.

<sup>b</sup> The idiom varies considerably in different copies here, as in other places previously mentioned.

<sup>c</sup> A few copies have "Hind and Chīn."

Tāj-ud-Dīn] "used to make representation in order to lead him from entertaining that resolution, but in no manner was that thought to be removed from his mind until he despatched the Sayyid-i-Ajall, Bahā-ud-Dīn, the Rāzī, for that important affair." \*

\* Ḥamd-ullah, the Mustawfī, in his *Tārīkh*, says [see also note 4, page 265] that, before this catastrophe, the Chingiz Khān sent an envoy into Ī-rān, and entered into a treaty with the Sulṭān of Khwārazm, that compacts were entered into, and letters passed between them, and that the treaty was ratified. Merchants are said to have proceeded to the *ardū* of the Mughal ruler, without hesitation, on this understanding between the two rulers; and it is stated that the Chingiz Khān sent envoys and merchants of his own, a second time, along with them. This cannot be correct from the statement of the Sayyid, Bahā-ud-Dīn, who went thither, as our author relates, and the one despatch of envoys and merchants on this single occasion has evidently been made into two. It is also asserted that, as early as 614 H., after his return from Ghaznīn, the Sulṭān began to show less respect towards the Mughals, but the Sulṭān came to Ghaznīn two years before that date, and in 615 H. invaded the northern parts of Asia. [See preceding note 4.] In the year 614 H., the Khālifāh, Un-Nāsir, is said to have instigated the Mughal to attack the Sulṭān, as previously related in the note first referred to, to which the Chingiz Khān is said to have replied that the restless nature of the Sulṭān would soon afford a plea for attacking him.

Rashīd-ud-Dīn and Mīr Khāwind state, that one cause of ill feeling on the part of the Mughal ruler towards the Musalmān Sulṭān was, that the latter had despatched bodies of troops occasionally into parts under allegiance to the Mughals, and ill-treated the people, as though war had actually commenced, and, at last, overran a territory belonging to Koshlūk, the Nāemān sovereign, which the Chingiz Khān considered his by right of conquest. Notwithstanding all this, it is said, the Mughal ruler was still inclined to keep on good terms with the Sulṭān. This statement is not correct, however, as may be seen from note 4, page 268, and in the account of Tūshī [Jūī] farther on. The invasion of the territory in question—Ardīsh [turned into "*Arwīsh*" in the Kashghar Mission History]—they say, was when the Sulṭān fell in with a Mughal army under Jūī, and compelled it to fight, but, on that occasion, the Sulṭān's intention was to protect his own territories from invasion by fugitives flying from the Mughals, not to attack them.

Petit de la Croix in his "*Genghiscan*," pages 158 to 164, causes Abū-l-Khāz and Rashīd to make a terrible blunder respecting the battle which took place between the Mughals under Jūī, after the defeat of the Makrīs, and the Sulṭān, which he has previously correctly mentioned as having taken place in A.D. 1216 [H. 613], and makes out that a great battle was fought between the Sulṭān and the Chingiz Khān in person, in A.D. 1218 [H. 615], while *they never once met*. He says the Sulṭān made secret levies of troops, and all those available from "Corassan, Balc, the Borders of India, and other parts of Iran," were directed to assemble at "Feraber," a town of "Bocara," that the Sulṭān's army amounted to 300,000 or 400,000 men, but yet was far inferior to the Mughal host. The Sulṭān is then said to have found the enemy at "Carcou," and an indecisive battle was the result. The details, however, are simply those of the battle which took place between the Gūr Khān and the

The Sayyid, Bahā-ud-Dīn, related<sup>3</sup> after this manner :—

"When we arrived within the boundaries of Tamghāj, and near to the seat of government of the Altūn Khān, from a considerable distance a high white mound appeared in sight, so distant, that between us and that high place was a distance of two or three stages, or more than that. We, who were the persons sent by the Khwārazm Shāhī government, supposed that that white eminence was perhaps a hill of snow, and we made inquiries of the guides and the people of that part [respecting it], and they replied: "The whole of it is the bones of men slain." When we had proceeded onwards another stage, the ground had become so greasy and dark from human fat, that it was necessary for us to advance another three stages on that same road, until we came to dry ground again.<sup>4</sup> Through the infections [arising] from that ground, some [of the party] became ill, and some perished. On reaching the gate of the city of Tamghāj, we perceived, in a place under a bastion of the citadel, an immense quantity of human bones collected. Inquiry was made, and people replied, that, on the day the city was captured, 60,000 young girls, virgins, threw themselves from this bastion of the fortress and destroyed themselves, in order that they might not fall captives into the hands of the Mughal forces, and that all these were their bones.

When we saw the Chingiz Khān,<sup>5</sup> they brought in bound,

Sulṭān referred to in note <sup>1</sup>, page 262, and note <sup>1</sup>, page 980, which see, and thus a sad confusion of events is the result.

<sup>3</sup> This worthy official is, I find, a totally different person from Badr-ud-Dīn, referred to in note <sup>2</sup>, page 270. I think therefore that such testimony is to be preferred to statements written about a century after by writers in the employ of Mughal sovereigns.

<sup>4</sup> It is said that the number of killed in the great battle referred to in para. eighteen, of note <sup>6</sup>, page 954, was so great that the beasts of the field and fowls of the air enjoyed their obscene feasts for more than a year, on that battle-field.

<sup>5</sup> Other, but much more modern writers, state that the Chingiz Khān, after his successes in Khitā, whither he did not proceed in person on the second invasion of that country, as already noticed, returned to his *yūrat*, and sent officers in command of numerous troops to guard his conquests. From our author's statement above, contrary to all others, and derived from the Sayyid, Bahā-ud-Dīn, an eye-witness, the Chingiz Khān was himself at Tamghāj when the Sulṭān's agents had this interview with him.

Surgeon-Major Bellew tells us that "Changiz," leaving strong garrisons in "Tughūr" [?] and its frontiers, returned to his Yurt or "country seat" [sic] at

where we were, the son of the Altūn Khān, and the Wazīr of his father; and, at the time of our return, the Chingiz Khān sent a great number of rareties and offerings with us for presentation to Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, and said: 'Say ye unto Khwārazm Shāh, "I am the sovereign of the sun-rise, and thou the sovereign of the sun-set. Let there be between us a firm treaty of friendship, amity, and peace, and let traders and *kār-wāns* on both sides come and go, and let the precious products and ordinary commodities which may be in my territory be conveyed by them into thine, and those of thine, in the same manner, let them bring into mine."<sup>4</sup> Among the rareties and presents that the Chingiz Khān sent to Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, was a nugget of pure<sup>5</sup> gold as big as a camel's neck, which they had brought to him [the Chingiz Khān] from the mountain [range] of Tamghāj, so that it was necessary to convey that piece of gold upon a cart. With us also he despatched five hundred camels laden with gold, silver, silks, *khass<sup>6</sup>-i-Khitā* [a coarse kind of woven silk of Khitā], *targhū* [a silken fabric red in colour], *hundūs* [beaver],<sup>7</sup> *samūr* [sable], and raw silk, and elegant and ingenious things of Chīn and Tamghāj, along with merchants of his own; and the majority of those camels were laden with gold and silver. When Utrār was reached, Kadr Khān<sup>1</sup> of Utrār acted in a per-

Shamān Gara = "The Shaman's home" I wonder what a barbarian Mughal's "country seat" may have been. The Shaman's home—in what language "Gara" may mean "home" is not stated—refers probably to the place called Samān-Kaharah, where he was chosen Khān. See previous note, paragraph twenty-five, page 937.

<sup>4</sup> Abū-l-Fidā says the envoys and merchants came from Mughūlistān through Kārā-Khitāe, and Turkistān. No doubt, they took the ordinary caravan-route by Tārān.

<sup>5</sup> In some copies of the text, "a piece of beaten gold;" in others, as rendered above, which is doubtless the correct version.

<sup>6</sup> This word also means any description of fur made up into garments, but here the meaning is as above. *Khitā-i*, in itself, is, I believe, the name of a fabric, also called nankeen by Europeans.

<sup>7</sup> According to some writers who explain the word, the animal is something like a fox, and some say, like an otter. It may mean the fur of the black fox or of the beaver.

<sup>1</sup> Our author has made this same mistake before. His title was Ghā-ir Khān, not Kadr Khān, and his name was Anāl Jūk. See note <sup>2</sup>, page 271.

In the *Geographical Magazine* for June, 1877, Mr. H. H. Howorth, who

fidious manner, and sought permission from Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, and, out of covetousness of that large amount of gold and silver, had the whole of the traders and travellers, and the emissaries [from the Chingiz Khān], slaughtered, so that not one among them escaped with the exception of a camel man who was at a bath, who, during that occurrence, managed to get out by way of the fireplace of the hot-bath, adopted a contrivance for his own safety, and, by way of the desert, returned to the territories of Chīn and Tamghā.

When he acquainted the Chingiz Khān with the particulars of that perfidy, and as Almighty God had so willed that this treachery should be the means of the ruin of the empire of Islām, it became evident that "the command of God is an inevitable decree,"<sup>1</sup> and the instruments of the predetermined will of fate became available—From Thy wrath preserve us, O God!

This servant of the victorious government, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, heard from the son of Malik Rukn-ud-Dīn of Khaesār of Ghūr, who heard [the particulars] from Shāh 'Uḡmān of Sistān,<sup>2</sup> who was one among the Princes of Nīmroz, and a favourite of Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, and the Shāh [Uḡmān] swore that, for every treasury in which was

makes rash guesses and assertions on Turks, "Mongols," etc., says, referring to this person, that he was named *Inaljek* and entitled *Ghaur Khan*, "which is probably a corruption either of the Gur Khan or, as the author of the *Tabakat-i-Nasir* makes it, of Kadr Khan." In his "*Mongols Proper*," on the other hand, we are told in one place, that he was named "*Inaljek*," and, that Sultān "*Muḥammed ordered that he was no longer to be styled Inaljek but Ghaur Khan (a form of Gur Khan); in a second place, that he was called Inalug; and, in a third, that he was named Inalluk, and "had been granted the title of Gur Khān by the former chief of Kara Khitas!"*" Now "*Ghā-ir Khān*" is no more a form of Gur Khān than this Kanqukt Turk was a "*Ghos*," or an "*original Ghuse*." *Ghā-ir* is a purely Arabic word, derived from the same root as *ghawrat*, and signifies the Khān jealous in point of honour or love, the high-minded Khān: it was his Musalmān title. The "*Tabakat-i-Nasiri*" quoted, if my translation is referred to, certainly does not make *Ghā-ir Khān* a form of Kadr Khān, for Kadr has a totally different meaning, and is in no way connected with *Ghā-ir*.

<sup>1</sup> KUR'ĀN: Chap. xxxiii. verse 38.

<sup>2</sup> Shāh 'Uḡmān, grandson of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Uḡmān-i-Ḥarab, ruler of Sijistān and Nīmroz, also styled Naṣrat-ud-Dīn, 'Uḡmān, by our author at pages 193 and 196, which see, also pages 200—201. He was related, on the mother's side, to Malik Rukn-ud-Dīn, of Khaesār of Ghūr.

a bit<sup>4</sup> of that gold or silver belonging to the traders of the Chingiz Khān, the whole of such treasury, sovereignty and country fell into the hands of the Chingiz Khān and the Mughal forces.

May Almighty God preserve the kingdom of our Sultān of Sultāns from calamity such as that !

#### HISTORY OF THE EVENTS WHICH HAPPENED IN ISLĀM.

Trustworthy persons have related on this wise, that, when that fugitive [camel-driver] stated to the Chingiz Khān, the accursed, what had befallen his traders and emissaries, the Chingiz Khān issued commands so that the forces of Turkistān, Chīn, and Tamghāj, assembled. Six hundred<sup>5</sup> banners were brought out, and under each banner were one thousand horsemen, and six hundred thousand horses were assigned to the Bahādurs :<sup>6</sup> they call a warrior, Bahādur. To every ten horsemen three head of *tūk-lī* sheep<sup>7</sup> were given, with orders to dry them ; and they took, along with them, an iron cauldron, and a skin of water ; and the host proceeded on its way.

From the place where the Mughals then were, on the frontier of the Chingiz Khān's territory, to Utrār,<sup>8</sup> was a three months' march, entirely through wild and uncultivated tracts ; and it was commanded that it was necessary to perform that march of three months, and subsist upon this

<sup>4</sup> In some copies a *dāng*—a bit, &c, and in others a *diramak*, the diminutive form of *diram*.

<sup>5</sup> The number given at page 273 is 700,000. The Calcutta Printed Text has 800,000, a few modern copies 300,000, but the above number is confirmed by other authors.

<sup>6</sup> Surgeon-Major Bellew, in his *Kāshghar Mission History* [page 141], does not quote the "*Ṭabāḥī Nasarī*," as he styles it, correctly. There is nothing in our author's work, as may be here seen, about "horses for the baggage of the army, its carts, and families, &c.," not even in the Calcutta Text, nor does our author make any such statement as that, "just at the time he ['Changiz'] was preparing to set out against Khwāhizm Shah, he received envoys in 615 from the Khālīf [sic] Nāsir of Baghdad urging him to do so." The Doctor must have been thinking of some other work.

<sup>7</sup> *tūk-lī*—*توکلی*—or *tūgh-lī*—*توغللی*—a sheep of six months old—a half-grown sheep. At page 273, our author says Mughāl sheep, which is, doubtless, an error on the part of the copyists for *tūk-lī*.

<sup>8</sup> The Calcutta Text is always incorrect with respect to the name of this well-known city, which was situated on the Sīḥūn. Its ruins are still to be seen on the east bank.

quantity of provision, and to eke it out with *gumfs* and the milk of their mares;<sup>9</sup> and, placing herds of horses in front of them, so numerous that their numbers cannot be computed, they turned their faces towards the land of Islām.

Towards the end of the year 616 H., they emerged on the frontier of Utrār,<sup>1</sup> at which place the violence had been hatched; and, although they were jaded from their journey and destitute, yet such was the energy, constancy, and intrepidity, which Almighty God had implanted in the nature of the *Chingiz Khān* and the *Mughal* army, that,

<sup>9</sup> Here again, the Printed Text has *shirāb*—شراب—for *shir-i-asf*—شیر اسب

<sup>1</sup> Petis de la Croix makes the astounding statement [page 158] on the authority, it would appear, of "Abulfaraje," and "Ben Abdallatif," as he styles them, that "Historians do not precisely mention the places by which the *Moguls* entered into the King of *Carisme's* Dominions," and yet, immediately after, says, "They only assure us that he marched by *Caracalay* and *Turquetian* . . . and that his troops entered into the Province of *Farab*, of which the City of *Atrar* was the Capital," &c. What more specific mention could he want?

The route taken by the *Chingiz Khān* in marching from his *vīrat* in the direction of *Karā-Kuram*, and from which he is said to have set out in the eleventh month of 615 H. [about the middle of February, 1219 A D], was by way of the river of *Ardīsh* [اردیش] with the object of making those parts his *i-lāḥ* or summer quarters. When he reached the boundary of the territory of *Kaiālīk* or *Kaiālīgh* [which, in Ravenstein's map in the "*Mongols Proper*," is inserted about two degrees south of Lake *Balkash*, but is too far N of *Khūljah* by several degrees *Sairām*, too, which lies S. of the *Ulugh-Tāgh* and E. of *Āksū*, is not near the *Balkash*, as there shown. From the route mentioned by Goetz, and the context of the account of the march of the *Mughals*, which I shall now refer to, *Kaiālīk* was S. of the *Ulugh Tāgh* and between *Turfān* and *Āksū*], *Arslān Khān*, the *Karlūgh*, the *principal* [مقدم] of the *Amīrs* thereof—thus showing that there were several—came to do him homage, got an appanage assigned him, and joined the *Mughal* army with his followers. The *Yiddi-Kūt* of the *I-ghūrs* also came from *Bīgh-Bālīgh*, and, likewise, *Tükīā-Tigīn* [farther on, the name of the chief of *Ālmālīgh* is said to be *Saghnāk Tigīn*] and his followers or tribe [سمل] from *Ālmālīgh* [near about *Khūljah*, but on the left or S. bank of the river *I-līh*]. *Jūji* had also been detached, before his father set out, it is said, by some, and, by the way, by others, against the forces [شکر] of the *Kırkız*, who had manifested contumacy, and shown delay and unwillingness [in furnishing a contingent probably], with directions to punish that tribe and seize their territory. Another version is that it was not the *Kırkız* who were to blame, but a tribe dwelling along with them, and that the former did not commit themselves. *Jūji* set out; and, as the river of *Kırkız* [the *Kam-Kamfūt*, on the opposite side of which they dwelt] chanced, at the time, to be frozen over, he crossed it with his army on the ice, and came upon them unawares in the wild country [بیهوش]—a wild uncultivated tract, overgrown with reeds and the like] in which they dwelt. A good

in a short time, they took Utrār<sup>2</sup> and put both small and

number were slain by the Mughals, and Ūrūsūt [اوراوسوت], their chief—Ūrūs Ināil—bent his neck to the yoke. After this Jūi returned and joined his father.

<sup>2</sup> It seems strange to me that the route taken by the Čingiz Khān and his host on the way to Utrār, after what has just been stated respecting Bīgh-Bāliḡh and Kaālīk, as related in the histories of the Mughals, is not clearly understood. It was much the same line of route—and, doubtless, that in general use by travellers, and *hārwan*s of merchants—as shown in Col. Walker's map, to Kārā-Kol or Almatū, skirting the northern slopes of the Ulugh or Ur-Tagh range, that he was pursuing, after detaching Jūi to the southward in pursuit of Tūk-Tughān, the Makrīt, on which occasion, he [Jūi], when returning to re-join his father, was fallen in with by the Khwārazm Shāh, near the rivers Kamaḡ and Kābal, and compelled to fight against his will. It must be sufficiently plain, to any one who will consult the map in question, that the great river Itīsh is not referred to Ardīsh, under the name of "Artush," the "Artush Pass," and "Artush, which was the principal town of that region," at "the foot of the Kakshāl mountains," is mentioned by SHAW in his work, "*High Tartary*," and refers to the same tract of country, which, in former times, extended much farther every way, as I have here pointed out. The Ardīsh Pass is about seven or eight days' journey, according to the author just quoted, from "the plains of Issik-kul" [Issīgh-Kol], only the "plains" there are mostly hills.

After this, the Čingiz Khān continued his westerly course from the vicinity of the Issīgh-Kol, by the present Almatū, in all probability—and, undoubtedly, it was an ancient route—through the territory of Tarāz or Bānkī, as it is also called, along the skirts of what is at present known as the Kārā-Tagh; and, from the route he subsequently took to Bukhārā, when he detached his two sons to invest Utrār, he must have passed the Sīrr or Sīhūn, a considerable distance W. of Utrār, at the Jūlik, or Āk-Masjūd ferry possibly. Strange to say, however, not a single author mentions his passage of that river. Having crossed, he took the direct route to Bukhārā. He had, by the way, previously detached—by the Samrām or Ardīsh route southwards, in all probability—an army, which was marching southwards against Tāshkand and Khujand, while Jūi was marching through Farḡhānah to join him before Bukhārā or Samrāḡand. With "Yengigent," Jūi had no more to do than I had, unless he flew along with his troops to it. Where are Saḡnāk, Ūzḡand and Ardīsh in Kāshḡhar? where Yangī-kant "on the Jaxartes, at two days' journey from its outlet into the sea of Aral"? ["*Mongols Proper*," pp 76 7]. Why only about nine degrees of Long, and four of Lat. distant from each other?

The Čingiz Khān reached the frontier of the Utrār territory, not the city and fortress of that name, for he was never at Utrār himself, towards the end of autumn, 616 H. [in September, 1219, A.D.] Finding that the Sultān of Khwārazm had dispersed his forces, and sent them to guard the great cities and fortresses, instead of concentrating them, and that there was no army left in the field to oppose him, he detached his sons Čaḡḡatāe and Uktāe, the Yīddī-Ḳūt of the Ī-ḡhūr, and other vassals, with several *tomāns* of troops, to invest Utrār, and, with his son Tūlī, and the main army, moved towards Bukhārā. Utrār, the chief place, and seat of government, which contained 50,000 troops—Alfī has 15,000, a more likely number, but some copies have 5000 only—was defended with great gallantry for five months, until the



great—young and old—to the sword, and left not a soul alive: they martyred the whole of them.

defenders were reduced to great straits, at which time the *Khāṣ Hājib*, *Ḳarāḡchah*, who had been sent thither with 10,000 more troops to support the *Ghā-ir Khān*, was for capitulating to the enemy, but the *Ghā-ir Khān*, who was well aware that he could expect no mercy from the *Mughals*, scouted the very idea of surrender, and being guilty of such base ingratitude to his sovereign. *Ḳarāḡchah*, however, entered into secret understanding with the *Mughals* [how history has repeated itself within the past year or two !], and, one night, left the place with his contingent, by the *Ṣūfi-Khānah* gate, and submitted to the enemy, who, without delay, rushed in by that same gate, and captured the city. As soon as morning arrived, *Ḳarāḡchah*, and his followers, after being reproached and reviled for their ingratitude to their sovereign, were all put to the sword, and the inhabitants of the place were removed outside into the plain and butchered—"the lives of the inhabitants were spared," says Mr. H. H. Howorth in his "*Mongols Proper*." The *Ghā-ir Khān* threw himself into the citadel, with 20,000 men—some say 3000, and some, 6000—all resolved to fight to the last, and held out for another month, during which they made several sallies, and slew a vast number of the *Mughal* army. At last, the *Ghā-ir Khān* was left with but two of his followers; and no shelter remained to them but the flat roof of his dwelling. These two soldiers fell at his side, and then the *Ghā-ir Khān*, whom the *Mughals* were expressly commanded to capture alive if possible, was made prisoner, and on the neck of *Anāl Juk* they placed a yoke—a play on the word *Juk*, which signifies a yoke for oxen, a collar. The citadel of *Utrār* was levelled with the dust, and of the few people of the place, and master artificers, who had escaped the massacre, some were imprisoned, and some were driven along with the army to exercise their trades in the *Mughal* camp, together with the *Ghā-ir Khān* in chains. As the *Chingiz Khān* was then before *Samrḡand*, his sons set out to join him there, and to the *Ghā-ir Khān* the cup of death was administered at *Kiwak Sarāi* (کوک ساری), a *sarāi* near *Samrḡand*. This place is the *Gheuceras* of *Petis de la Croix*.

I must now endeavour to give a short account of the different operations of the *Mughal* hordes, in order to bring up events to the siege of *Samrḡand*.

I have already mentioned in my previous notes, <sup>1</sup> page 268, and <sup>2</sup> page 964, how *Jūji* fell in with the *Khwarazmī* army in the northern part of the present *Kāshghar* territory, and, after a severe handling, his marching away, leaving his camp fires burning, so as to avoid pursuit. He subsequently, by command of his father, marched towards *Jand*, and, when he arrived near *Saḡnāk* on the way thither, he despatched the *Hājī, Ḥasan*, who was a native of that place, and then with his army, as an envoy, to endeavour to induce the inhabitants to submit. The populace, however, put him to death for advising them to submit to infidels and *Mughals*, and *Jūji*, filled with rage at the treatment of his emissary, attacked the place, and, in two days, captured it. The inhabitants were massacred and the place ruined [this is a mode of treating them "with tenderness," certainly, after the *Muslov* fashion. "*Mongols Proper*," page 76], and a son of the *Hājī, Ḥasan*, who was dwelling there, was made its governor—the governor of a desolated place ! *Jūji* then advanced to *Yūzḡand*, also written *Ūzḡand*, and, to quote the expressive words of the *History* in verse which I have elsewhere referred to : "In one night he took it, and in one day demolished it." After that he marched to *Aghnās* [I think this is an error, although contained in so many works, for the 'Arab *Uah-Shāh*—the

An astonishing relation [is here given] which was heard by the author from one of the merchants whom they were

ancient name of Tūshkand, but, if not, it is now unknown and its site also Jūfī was sent against it, and no mention is made of it after. Abū-l-Qāḥ Bahādur calls it Anīsh], "a city full of vagabonds and rascals," and, as they showed hostility, they were speedily annihilated. No particulars are given.

When the news reached Kutlak—also written Kutluḡ—Khān, the Hākh of Jand, he became fearful, evacuated the city, and fled by way of the steppes in order to reach Khwārazm. Jūfī on this despatched thither, as his agent Jai-Tīmūr—but who he was is not mentioned (see note page 933), save that he had been long in the Chingiz Khān's service—to advise the inhabitants to submit. There was no leader or authority with sufficient power there, and the populace raised a tumult and sought to take the agent's life, but he managed to escape by stratagem. On being made aware of the state of affairs, Jūfī pushed on, and came in sight of Jand; and the people had merely time to close the gates and mount the walls, but they showed no other opposition. The Mughals placed scaling ladders, mounted the walls, and the city was theirs. As no active opposition had been shown, the people, with the exception of few evil doers, who had spoken fiercely to Jai-Tīmūr, escaped from the Mughal talons; but they were all thrust out into the open country, and the dwellings were abandoned to be sacked for a period of two weeks, and the walls and defences were levelled with the dust. The Khwājah, 'Alī, who was one of the great men of Bukhārā, was located there in charge of the city. The Mughal Amir likewise having been detached with one *ṣawān* [10,000 men] the city or town of Mārjīn [مارجين] was taken possession of, and an intendant was left there. After this Jūfī set out to join the camp of his father.

The Nū-yūs, Ālāk also written Alāk, Saktūr, and Būḡā, according to the orders proceeded towards Khujand and Fanākat, or Banākat—afterwards known as Shāh-Rūkhjah—and, on reaching the latter place, the governor there, I-yā takū or I-yā-tagū by name, shut himself up in the citadel with a body of Kāḡulī, and defended it vigorously for three days. On the fourth they called for quarter, and came out of the city, and "were overwhelmed in the wave of blood." Destruction befell the people of Fanākat. Whether stranger or friend, not one remained, and but few escaped with their lives, with the exception of the young men of Tājik race who were incorporated with the enemy's forces, and compelled to serve against their own people. Ālāk then turned his face towards Khujand, the governor of which was Tīmūr Malik, "in whom Rustam, were he alive, would have acted as groom, and Sām, were he living in his day, would, on his own body, have inscribed his name." The Tīmūr Malik had constructed a lofty fortress at the point, near the city, where the river separates into two branches [at the junction, probably, of the tributary of the Sīḡūn which joins that river from the South just below the city], and with 1000 men, took post therein, determined to hold out as long as he had the power and means of doing so. The Mughal forces enclosed the city as a fortress as in a ring, but, as the missiles from their catapults took no effect upon the fortress, the young men of the city [which, from this remark, must have fallen, although no further mention is made of it] were collected in crowds and assistance was also brought from other places, near by, which had been subdued, until 50,000 men were assembled together to help the investing force consisting of 20,000 Mughals. The former were divided into gangs of ten

went to style **Khwājah Ahmad**, the **Wakhshi**, a man of veracity, who related after this manner : " It is narrated by

and hundreds, and one Mughal was placed over every ten **Tājika**, and, from the hills three *farangs* distant, they were compelled to convey stones on foot to the river side [in order to construct a causeway apparently, although this is not specified], and the Mughal horsemen cast them into the river. **Tīmūr Malik**, who was fertile in expedients, had caused twelve vessels to be constructed, which were covered with felts plastered over with a mixture of fresh clay and vinegar, in such wise that arrows and fire [such things as "stink-pots" in the accounts of this affair are purely ideal : a composition of naphtha is here referred to] took no effect upon them, but windows [lit. but loop or port-holes are meant] were left, so that arrows and other missiles could be discharged from them against the Mughals. Every day, at daylight, **Tīmūr Malik** used to despatch six of these vessels on either side, and keep up a desperate defence ; but, when matters became serious, and he found his efforts unavailing, seventy boats which had been got ready to provide means of escape he, one night, loaded with his effects, placed his family therein, embarked with his warriors, and like lightning launched into the river. The Mughal forces, becoming aware of it, set out along both banks to oppose his progress ; and, in every place where they could offer most opposition, he would draw near with his own vessel, and with his arrows, which like the arrow of destiny never missed their mark, would drive the Mughals off, and would push on again with his vessel. On reaching **Fanākat**, he found the Mughals had drawn a chain across the river, thinking to stop the little fleet, but, with one blow of an axe, **Tīmūr Malik** made the chain two, and pushed on again. I find no mention, in any author, of a "bridge of boats built at Jend," because **Tīmūr Malik** did not proceed to Jend at all, but, some distance below **Fanākat**, where the mountains approach the river, he landed on the western bank, entered the steppe, and made for the city of **Khwārazm**, because **Juḡī Khān**, on being informed of his heroic conduct, had made preparations to bar his progress farther down the river, which he would have been enabled to do from his position in the vicinity of **Tāghkand** or **Ush-Shāsh**. The Mughals however followed in his track, and when they drew near he would face about and withstand them until his family and effects made some progress in advance, and then he would follow. After some days, when most of **Tīmūr Malik's** men had fallen, the baggage was captured, and, with a few men remaining, he pushed on with rapidity, giving the Mughals no opportunity of taking him, and keeping them at bay. At last his few remaining followers were killed, and **Tīmūr Malik** was left alone—some say his family at this time had attained a distance which placed them out of danger—and with no means of defence left but three arrows, one of which was broken and its head gone. Three Mughals were still in pursuit of him, so he drew the broken and headless arrow—for he did not wish to have to use the others—and sent it through the eye of the foremost pursuer, and blinded him. He then said to the other two. "Two arrows still remain according to your number, and so it is advisable that ye return from whence ye came." They did retire ; and the Iron Malik—**Tīmūr** signifies iron—proceeded on his way without further molestation to **Khwārazm**. There he again prepared for war, and with a small force surprised and captured the town of **Kāt** [کات] on the **Jihūn**, in the district of **Hask-rasp**, and from thence he proceeded to join **Sulṭān Muḥammad**, not considering it advisable to remain in **Khwārazm**. He pushed on until he came up with him, and told

reliable persons that the **Chingiz Khān**, after that he had possessed himself of **Tamghāj**, and had brought it under his sway, and, for a period of four years, had caused great sedition and shedding of blood, saw one night, in a dream, that he was binding a turban of immense length about his head, so much so, that, from the vast length of the turban, and the labour of binding it, he began to grow fatigued after, in his interminable task, he had become like unto a great corn stack. When he awoke from his sleep, he was relating his dream to every one of his confidants, and the men of wisdom who were about him, but not one among them could interpret it in a manner to satisfy his mind, until one of his confidants said: 'The turban is part of the costume of the merchants who are in the habit of coming into this part from different directions of the west, and a party of them has arrived from 'Arabia. It is necessary to summon them in order that the interpretation may be obtained from these persons.' In accordance with that advice, they were called in order to interpret it.

"Among the merchants they found a few persons from the west, 'Arabian Musalmāns, turban-wearers, and

him all he had experienced at the hands of the **Mughals**, and that they were like unto a flood. This made the **Sultān** still more apprehensive and perplexed, and, though he was himself young his fortune was grown old—a play upon words in the original which is lost in translation.

The **Nū-yān Ālāk**, after having obtained possession of **Khujand**, the next day, set out to rejoin the great army, and reached the camp of the **Chingiz Khān** after the capture of **Samarkand**.

A few words more may not be out of place respecting **Tīmūr Malik**. He subsequently retired—disguised as a **Darwesh**, some say—into 'Irāk-i-'Ajam, proceeded to **Shīrāz** and **Jīraft**, and, finally, into **Shām**, until the **Mughal** troubles had somewhat subsided. He remained there some years; and in the time of **Bātū Khān**, son of **Jūjī Khān**, he, impelled by a desire of revisiting his native land once more, and by that monarch's leave, reached **Khujand**, where he found that his only remaining son had gained favour with the **Mughal** ruler, and had been put in possession of some of his father's property. He was recognized by an old slave, and proposed to proceed to the court of **Üktāe Khān**, whose name was celebrated for magnanimity, but, on the way, he fell in with one of the **Mughal** royal family, **Qadīkā-ān Ughlān**, who put him in chains, for the old Turk Malik's haughty bearing displeased him. Soon after, the very **Mughal**, into whose eye he had lodged the headless arrow, happened to come in, and began to question him as to his battles, in an insolent tone which provoked **Tīmūr Malik** to answer him in such a manner as awakened the wrath of the **Mughal** savage against his former adversary, and he discharged an arrow, in return for his arrow, as he exclaimed, right through the body of **Tīmūr Malik**, who fell dead on the spot.

they were sent for; and to the person who was the chief, and the most intelligent among the party, the Chingiz Khān related his dream. The Tārī ['Arabic]-speaking merchant said: 'The turban is the crown and diadem of the 'Arab, for head dresses' of that description are the tiaras of the 'Arab; and the Prophet of the Musalmāns—Muḥammad, the chosen one—the blessing of God be upon him!—was a turban-wearer, and the Khalīfahs of Islām are turban-wearers. The interpretation is this, that the kingdoms of Islām will come into thy possession, and the countries in which the Muḥammadan faith prevails thou wilt reduce under thy sway.' This signification chimed in with the opinion of the Chingiz Khān; and, for this reason, his design of appropriating the territory of Islām was resolved upon."

We return to the subject of [this] history.

After capturing Utrār<sup>3</sup> and martyring its inhabitants,

<sup>3</sup> The word used is صام the plural of صام which more particularly refers to the large turbans of Muḥammadan ecclesiastics.

I have several times mentioned the variation of idiom in different copies of the text, and here it varies considerably: in fact, there is greater difference, in this respect, in this Section than in any of the preceding ones.

<sup>4</sup> I doubt very much an 'Arab's saying so, even if he thought it; and, if the merchant told the Mughal this, and it made him determine upon invading Islām, the Musalmāns had not very great reason to be grateful to the 'Arab interpreter.

<sup>5</sup> This is a great mistake. The Chingiz Khān, as shown in the previous notes <sup>1</sup>, page 273, and <sup>2</sup>, page 970, para. four, had nothing to do with Utrār personally. He reached the frontier of that territory towards the close of autumn 616 H [September, 1219 A.D.]. He left his two sons, Utlāe and Chaghatāe, with a great army to invest Utrār, as already stated, and, detaching another and smaller force, under the Nū-yīns, Ālāe, Saktūr, and Bukāe, to Fanākat and Khujand, with the bulk of his mighty host, and accompanied by his son Tūfī, marched towards Bukhārā.

The name of this celebrated city is said to signify, "in the language of the Mughān—Fire-worshippers—an assembling place, or rendezvous of science, and this word, in the dialect of the idol-worshipping Ī-ghūrs and Khūtā-is, is nearly similar, for their places of worship, which are places of idols, they term Bukhār."

On the way thither, the Mughuls reached Zarnūk [there is no doubt respecting its name], and the inhabitants, having issued forth to receive them with due ceremony, were granted security for life and goods. The Chingiz Khān changed the name of the place to Kutlūgh Bāligh, that is, the Auspicious or Fortunate City, but he took away all the young men of the place to incorporate with his army. But Tāshkand did not receive the name of "Kutluk baligh," as in the recently published work so often referred to. The Hātib-us-Siyar says that the people first shut the gates, but, afterwards, were

they [the Mughals] marched, from thence, towards Bukhārā; and, on the first of the month of Zī-Ḥijjah, 616 H.,

induced to open them and submit, while another statement is, that the city was surprised. However this may be, its walls were razed to the ground, to make it "the Fortunate City" perhaps. The Bahādur, Ṭā-īr, whose name will frequently appear in the text, farther on, was sent, in advance, to summon Nūr [see page 118]. The place submitted, it and its dependencies were bestowed as an appanage upon the Bahādur, Saḥūdāh or Swidāe, as he is also called, the inhabitants paid a year's tribute in advance, and received security for life and property, and were not further molested.

At the end of the year 616 H. [February, 1220 A.D.—not the 19th of June, 1219 A.D., as we are told in "*Mongols Proper*," for the year, 617 H., began on the 7th March, 1220], the Mughal hosts appeared before Bukhārā, and the felt tent of the Chingiz Khān was pitched facing the citadel. There was no "several days' siege" whatever. When night set in, the Amirs commanding the troops there, Kiwak Khān, son of Ḥamid-i-Būr (an elder brother of the Ḥājib, Burāk, the Karā-Khātā, who subsequently usurped the sovereignty of Kirmān, subordinate to the Mughals, after that ingrate had compassed the murder of Ghuyāṣ-ud-Dīn, the Sulṭān's son, and ruler of that territory. See note 3, page 283), Kiwak Khān, Sūny Khān, Bughrāe Khān, and Kashlū [by some Kashlī, which is merely another form of the title] Khān, with 20,000—but some writers of Mughal proclivities make the number 30,000, in the same manner as they always exaggerate the numbers of the Musalmāns—came out, by one of the gates, in order to make a night attack upon the invaders, but, the enemy having got word of it, they were encountered and defeated by the Mughal advance. The great men of Bukhārā, consisting of ecclesiastics, doctors of the law, and distinguished persons, issued forth from the city next day [the 10th of Zī-Ḥijjah], at dawn, and strove, by the manifestation of submission and eloquent appeals, to make terms whereby the inhabitants might be saved from the violent blast of the invader's wrath. The Chingiz Khān entered the city in order to view it; and, when he reached the Masjid-i-Jāmi', or Friday's Masjid, beheld a great and lofty building, towards which he urged forward his horse, and rode into it, with his son, even up to the most sacred place within it—the Ṣaffah-i-Maḡṣūrah, the place where the Imām stands when officiating—and inquired: "Is this the Sulṭān's palace?" They replied: "This is the house of God." He then dismounted from his horse, certainly not out of respect, mounted two or three steps of the pulpit, and sat down [Alfī says, Ṭūfī ascended to the pulpit] and [according to Sharaf-ud-Dīn, 'Alfī] commanded his troops, saying: "There is no forage in the plain by means of which they [the people] may satiate the horses, [see ye to it]" The Fanākātī, Fasīḥ-i, Alfī, and others, however, relate more circumstantially, that he said to those present: "The plain [or open country outside] is destitute of grass: it behoveth that ye fill the bellies of my horses," and, on this, they opened the granaries [of the city], and brought forth grain. The Mughals then drew their horses into the Masjid, and made the chests, in which the sections of the Qur'ān—which is generally in thirty sections of sixteen pages each—and other religious books were kept, troughs for their horses to feed out of, while the books were trodden under foot, and they handed the head-stalls of their horses to the 'Ulamā to hold, while they themselves betook themselves to the cup [neither the wine, nor the "loving cup," but the fermented mares' milk cnp—*kumiz*] and began to sing their Mughal songs

pitched their camp before the gate of that city. **Kashlū Khān**, the **Amīr-i-Ākhur** of **Sultān Muḥammad**, **Khwā-**

Most European authors who relate this anecdote take it from **Sharaf-ud-Dīn 'Alī's** work, but neither that work, nor any other that I have met with, will bear translating "*The key is cast, give your horses fodder,*" as quoted by Mr. H. H. Howorth from **VAMBÉRY'S** "*Bokharah,*" page 28, and which he or his authority mistakes for "a cynical invitation to plunder." The original words in **Sharaf-ud-Dīn**, are "*dar qahrā 'alaf nist kih aspān rā zer shuand;*" [**Erdmann's** rendering of the same sentence is perfectly correct] and "the floor strewn with wine skins" and "the singing women [the word is **مساب**] introduced" are likewise not to be found in his work; the words are: "*ba aydgā dāghon mashghūl shudand, ba āhang-i-Mughūlī bar kashidand;*" there is not a word about women.

From the **Jāmi' Masjid** mounting again, the **Chingiz Khān** rode to the **Musallā-e-'Id**—the place of Prayer, where the prayers appointed for Festivals are said—and, mounting the pulpit, having first caused the people to be assembled, harangued them about the killing of his envoys, and, telling them that he had been sent against them as the instrument of the Divine wrath, on account of their sovereign's and their own misdeeds—he too was a "divine figure" also "from the north," and, after holding forth in a similar blasphemous strain, which address was interpreted from the **Mughal** language into **Persian** by an interpreter who stood by his side, he continued: "Such property as is visible in this city need not be referred to—he had an eye to plunder notwithstanding his divine mission—but all that is concealed it behoveth ye to give up." Much wealth was given up in consequence. As commands had been already issued that the adherents of the **Khwārazmī Sultān** should be expelled the city, and none should be sheltered or concealed therein, on finding that several of them had been sheltered by the people of **Bukhārā**, he—merely desiring an excuse—gave orders for a general massacre of the inhabitants, and to set fire to the city, which was mostly built of wood; and, in the space of one day, the whole, with the exception of the great **Masjid**, and a few brick buildings, was consumed, in such wise that the city became the haunt of wild beasts. The suburbs were then given to the flames, and the ditch of the citadel was filled up with whatever could be obtained—dead bodies of men and beasts, stones, timber, rubbish, and the like—and, in a few days, the **Mughals** captured it. Its governor, **Kiwak Khān**, with all found within the place, were put to the sword—more than 30,000 in all—including grandees and great men, the servants of the **Sultān**, who were treated in the most contemptuous manner, and their females and children were carried away into slavery, but babes were not spitted on lances as in these days of civilization and Christianity. After this the citadel was levelled with the ground, and not a vestige of gate, wall, or rampart, of either city or citadel remained. **Kiwak Masā**, or the Tomb of **Kiwak**, lies a few miles to the N E. of the present city.

The young men of **Bukhārā**, who had been spared for another purpose, were driven off with the troops towards **Samrkand** and **Dabūsah** [also called **Dabūs** and **Dabūsf**]. It was a fortified town about midway between **Bukhārā** and **Samrkand**, and from **Bukhārā** the **Chingiz Khān** turned his face towards **Samrkand**.

Having heard accounts of the great strength of **Samrkand**, which had lately been added to, the **Chingiz Khān** had been led to despatch bodies of troops under **Jūfī** and the **Nā-yān**, **Alak**, to subdue other places in **Turkistān**

razm Shāh, was there, on the part of that monarch, with a force of 12,000 horse; and the Mughals invested the city. On the day of the festival of the *kurbān* [10th of Ẓi-Hijjah—15th February, 1220] of that same year, they took the city and fortress of Bukhārā, and expelled the whole of the inhabitants—gentle and simple, the learned and the noble, both male and female—and martyred them, and burnt and destroyed the whole of the city, and all the libraries of books; and a few persons [only] were made captive. They then turned their faces towards Samrkand. The leader of the van of the Chingiz Khān's army, which issued from the wilds, and captured Utrār, and advanced to the

before he advanced into Māwarā-un-Nahr, in order to clear his rear of enemies, and to have the whole of his forces at his disposal before he attacked Samrkand. The resistance at Utrār however disappointed him with regard to the troops investing that place, and the movements of the others have been already narrated. Having made a vast levy of the country people, as stated above, to aid his troops, he left small detachments behind to invest Sar-i-Pūl and Dabūssah, while he hastened forward with his great host, which, numerous as ants or locusts, suddenly appeared before Samrkand, at the end of Ẓi-Hijjah, 616 H. [the latter part of February, 1220, A.D.], and the tent of the Chingiz Khān was pitched in sight of the place, at Kiwak-Sarāe. The next day—some say the third day—he reconnoitred the ramparts, bastions, ditch, gateways, and other defences; and, on the second day, as soon as morning dawned, I-yāl-Tāz Khān—the Shams Khān of Alfi—Barsigh Khān, Taghāe Khān, Ūlāk Khān, and several other leaders, with the troops within the citadel and city, with great intrepidity and boldness poured out of the place, and attacked the Mughals in their quarters. The number, in all, is said to have been 110,000, namely 60,000 Turks, and 50,000 Tājiks of the country, and twenty elephants. On that day, the Khwārazmīs displayed immense valour, and a great number were killed on either side, but chiefly, on the part of the Mughals, who also lost a great number of prisoners who were carried off triumphantly into the city. This statement does not agree with what our author states above as to the ambuscade, and the number of the troops has been just doubled.

Next day the Chingiz Khān mounted, and, in person, directed the operations, completely invested the place, prevented the troops within from making a sally, had the catapults placed in position, and began to batter the walls, and pour in volleys of stones and arrows. The walls were however defended with vigour until the day closed, but the defenders were disheartened, and, to make matters worse, there was treason within. One party of the inhabitants—the selfish part—“the peace at any price party”—were for going out and seeking quarter from the Mughal, while the other party was for defending the place to the utmost. This very division of opinion—without reckoning the traitors—caused great mischief—the leaders of the troops were discouraged, and at a loss what to do, and did not fight as they otherwise would have done, for the place was strong enough to have held out a considerable time. On the fifth day—but from our author's statement above it must have been the ninth—early in the morning, while fighting was going on, the Kāẓī of the city, the Shāikh-ul-Islām,



gate of Bukhārā and took it likewise, was a Turk whose name was Tamur-ghī, the Jazbī, a man of great energy; and, in the Mughal dialect, *jazbī* signifies a Hājib [Chamberlain].

On first reaching the gate of Samrḳand, the Mughal forces laid an ambushade; and the troops in Samrḳand, and the people, moved out to give battle. On the ambushade being drawn, defeat befell the troops of Islām and the people of Samrḳand, and nearly 50,000 Musalmāns became martyrs. Subsequently to that, for a period of ten days or a little over, the Mughals took up a position round about Samrḳand. Within the walls of that city, on the part of Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, was a force of 60,000

and a body of other ecclesiastics [old officials of 'Usmān, the Afrīsiyābī, and, doubtless, true to the hostile Khalīfah, who incited the infidels], unexpectedly went out, and presented themselves before the Chingiz Khān, who received them with much encouragement and favour. Without any security, and with the mere promise of safety for themselves and dependents—these barbarians rarely, if ever, kept their word—they were allowed to return; and, at the time of prayer, when the rest of the people were off their guard, these traitors opened the gate known as the Gate [some say Gates] of the Namāz-gāh—Alfī says—the 'Id-gāh—and admitted the Mughals within the walls! During that day and night the infidels completely destroyed the walls and defences of the city, and drove out into the open plain the inhabitants, both males and females, with the exception of the dependents of the Kāṣī, the Shaikh-ul-Islām, and other traitors, who are said to have amounted to 50,000 [5000 probably] persons, and then, as was their wont, proceeded to sack the place, and all whom they found within, with the exception of those mentioned, they slew. The Mughals continued within the city until the night of the next day, when they were withdrawn.

The garrison in the citadel was now completely hemmed in, and had no means of escape, but one resolute leader, Karā Alb, the Arsalān Khān, with 1000 men, charged through the Mughal force, cut his way out, and succeeded in joining the Sulṭān, to whom he conveyed the dismal news. Next day the Mughals attacked the citadel, and, having destroyed the defences, during the time of the two prayers, which are wont to be said every Friday about mid-day, succeeded in gaining possession of one of the gateways, and poured in. The Kanḡuli or Kanḡuli Turks, the chief of whom was Bar-Sipās [in one MS. Bar-Samās, and, in Alfī, Sham] Khān, Taghāe Khān, Sarligh [Sarsigh?] Khān, Ū-lāḳ Khān, the Ū-lāḳ Khān of the Jahān-Kushāe, together with about twenty other Amīrs and Sardārs of Sulṭān Muḥammad, with the whole of his troops that were therein, were butchered, to the number of 30,000 men, which is a small number in comparison with the 110,000 men said to have been the number stationed at Samrḳand. Of the remaining people of the city, 33,000 artificers, mechanics, and the like, were selected and divided among the sons and kinsmen of the Chingiz Khān, and the residue of the unharmed inhabitants were ransomed and spared for the sum of 200,000 *dīnārs*. These events took place in the beginning of the summer of 617 H. [April 4, A. D. 1220]. A Mughal Shahnāh was left at Samrḳand, and a native of the place, a Musalmān official, was placed in charge of the city under him

horse, consisting of Turks, Ghūris, Tājiks, Khālī, and Kariughis, and all the Maliks of Ghūr, such as Khar-zor Malikī [Malik ?], and Zangī-i-Khar-Jam [Cham ?],<sup>6</sup> and other Maliks of Ghūr, were there. On the day of 'Ashūrā, the 10th of the month of Muḥarram, 617 H., the Mughals took Samrḳand, and burnt that city and destroyed it, and made captives of some [of the inhabitants, and put the rest to the sword]. Bodies of troops were nominated to various parts of Māwarā-un-Nahr, Farghānah, and Bilāsā-ghūn, and destroyed all the cities,<sup>7</sup> and martyred all their inhabitants. Mughal armies were also despatched to take possession of different parts of the dominions [of the Khwārazmī Sulṭān], and forces were sent from Upper Turkistān to pursue Kāshlū\* Khān, the Tatār, who was a king, and the son of a king, of the Tatār tribes, who had seized and brought [away] the Gūr Khān of Karā-Khitā; and they captured him [Kāshlū Khān] on the boundaries of Jāb and Kikrab<sup>8</sup> which is Ghuzzistān, and the hill tracts of Samrḳand; and they slew him.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>6</sup> The leader referred to at page 926—probably Khar-Chām—Ass-energy—Thus, as well as Khar-Zor—Ass-power or force—is doubtless a nick-name.

As I have noticed elsewhere, several of the Ghūri Maliks have such like names, in which Khar, Ass, occurs, such as Khar-post—Ass-skinned, Khar-nak[nag ?]—Ass-palae or lipped, and the like. Malikī is contained in all the copies of the text, but Malik must be the more correct.

<sup>7</sup> The most modern copies of the text collated have, "as far as the gate of Bilāsā-ghūn."

It is not to be wondered at that this celebrated city is not mentioned subsequently, considering it was destroyed. The name Ghū-Baligh must have been applied to it by the Mughals in times prior to this period.

<sup>8</sup> Troops had been despatched against Koshlūk before entering the dominions of the Sulṭān of Khwārazm; and most of the strong places, in Māwarā-un-Nahr and Western Turkistān, had been captured or taken possession of before the investment of Samrḳand was undertaken.

<sup>9</sup> In some few copies the first word is جاب apparently—*habāb* or *habāb*, but جاب—Jāb—seems to be the correct name. These names are not to be found on modern maps. The following note further indicates their position. See also note <sup>5</sup>, page 374.

<sup>1</sup> I have already, in my previous notes to the reign of Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, given some details respecting Kojlak, Koshluk, Koshlūk, Kāshlū, or Kāshlī, as he is variously styled by different authors, the last four forms of writing being mere variations of the same name, his intrigues with the Sulṭān, and his seizure of his father-in-law and benefactor, the Gūr Khān, but, to make this account clear and connective, I must go back a little to refer to the chief of the Makrītis and his proceedings.

The Chingiz Khān having returned, in 611 H., from the campaign against the Altan Khān, and gone to his *yūrat* or encamping ground on the river Kalūr-ān

### When the news of the taking of Samrġand, and of the

or Lukah, soon after found that the Makrġts were again preparing for war. There is considerable discrepancy with regard to these events, and some oriental writers have, through the carelessness of copyists, apparently, turned two events into one, with respect to Kodū [كودو] and the sons of the late Bigġ Tūktā, and his nephews, and Tūġ-Tughān, the Makrġt.

At the period in question, Kodū and his nephews were residing in the Nāmān country, and were regaining strength, which they were using in support of Koghlik, the Nāmān sovereign, who, at this time, had seized the last of the Gūr Khāns, and his dominions. The Makrġts had likewise incited other tribes of Mughals, who were quite ready to do so, to throw off the yoke of the Chingiz Khān, under which they had fallen. Among the tribes instigated to war by them were the Tūm-āt or Tūm-ād Mughals [turned into "Comāt," in the Kāshghar Mission History, a different tribe from the Burghūts or Burkūts], who were dwelling in the tracts towards the south-east from Kāshghar—now part of the great sandy desert—towards the frontier of Khitā, about the Kok Nāwar, incorrectly written Kokonor in our maps.

In the year 612 H., therefore, the Chingiz Khān despatched the Nū-yġn, Sahūdāh, or Swidāe, the Ūrlāngkūt Kūngkur-āt, with a considerable army against the Makrġts, and he was provided with carts or waggons, specially made and strengthened with iron, so that they might not easily break down, as the Makrġts had taken shelter in a very mountainous tract of country. This tract was called Ķum-Ķunjak—[قۇمقۇنچەك] which, through the careless copying of some scribe, or an imperfect MS., has been mistaken for Kibahāk [كيبهك] by many oriental authors with ridiculous results, and European writers generally have followed them.

Sahūdāh set out in the beginning of 612 H. [it commenced on the 1st May, 1215 A.D.], and was joined, on the way, by the Bahādur, Taghachār, with another force [this leader, probably, is Gūzidāh's Tutmār-i-Chūbġn, but Abū-l-Ghāzġ, Bahādur Khān, calls him Toghājār]. The two leaders, after great exertions, reached the whereabouts of the Makrġts, brought them to action near the banks of the river Jam—the Jam Murān [چام مۇران] but, in some Histories, the letter چ has a dot over it instead of under, which makes it Khām, while in others again it is not pointed, and therefore stands for چ—q—with which no Turkish word begins [Chinese, and Europeans, however, vitiate čč, and turn it into 'Arabic č as in Hānum for Khānum, Tophānah, for Top-khānah, Hatt-i-Humayun for Khatt-i-Humāyūn, Hodjak for Khwājah, Halj for Khālġ, Hān for Khān, Hāmīl for Khāmīl, and the like]. Bentinck says the Jam Murān rises in the mountains crossing the Gobi—the Āltān, not Altyn mountains—of which but little had been previously known, if the existence of such a range has not been altogether ignored until the recent discoveries by the Russians, and that the river runs S S W, and falls into the Ķarā-Murān or Hoang-ho, on the borders of Tibbat. See the map to Col. Prejevalsky's explorations in the *Geographical Magazine* for May, 1878, which confirm the existence of this range, which has been distinctly mentioned by Oriental writers and old travellers, and which is clearly laid down, although not quite exactly, in the maps of the Jesuits. A Chinese envoy told Gerbillon that he had crossed a river of Kok Nāwar, "called in the Mongol [Turkġ?] tongue Āltān Kol, or Golden River," which falls into the Lakes of Tsing-fū-hay, and has abundance of gold mixed with its sands.

The Makrġts stood their ground against the Mughals, and the consequence was they were defeated with immense loss. Some say the tribe was almost

massacre and captivity of its inhabitants, and of the troop

destroyed, together with Kodū and all his nephews but one, a mere child, who was taken to the presence of the *Chingiz Khān*, who ordered him "to be sent to join his brothers and uncle," notwithstanding Jūyī Khān would have taken charge of him, and have brought him up.

It has been asserted that the Makrīt were entirely annihilated on this occasion, but such is not correct, as I shall presently show, and Kodū, brother of the late Bigl, Tūktā, and Tūk-Tughān, who is also called the brother of the same chief, have been mistaken for one and the same person, of which there is no probability, for Tūk-Tughān, and the remnant of the Makrīt tribe were encountered by Jūyī Khān, in the northern part of the present territory of Kāshghar in 615 H., after the death of Koshlūk, and when the *Chingiz Khān* was on his way westward to invade the territory of Sulṭān Muḥammad Khwārazm Shāh, and when Jūyī, against his will, sustained the attack of the Sulṭān's army in which his own was roughly handled. To demonstrate this clearly, it is necessary to go back a little, and refer to what is said about it elsewhere.

When Koshlūk, the Nāmān, left the presence of the Gūr Khān, his father-in-law, to call around him his dispersed Nāmāns, and proceeded toward Kāshghar, when he reached its confines and that of I-mū, Tūk-Tughān, the Amīr of the Makrīts, who had fled—from whence is not mentioned—on hearing the rumour of the *Chingiz Khān*'s fury, joined him, together with many of the Gūr Khān's chiefs. During the time that Koshlūk exercised dominion over the state of the Gūr Khān, however, after the latter's seizure by him, Tūk-Tughān, with the remainder of the tribe of Makrīt, had separated from Koshlūk, and returned to Kum-Kunjak again.

The next information we obtain is, that the *Chingiz Khān*, having determined to invade the dominions of the Khwārazmī Sulṭān, when making his preparations for the march, considered it advisable, before setting out, to leave no enemies in his rear, and, as Koshlūk, the Nāmān, and Tūk-Tughān the Makrīt, still remained, and their whereabouts was in the vicinity of his route towards the west, he deemed it necessary to reduce them first, and sent the Nū-yān, Jabah [Yamah], was sent with a large army against Koshlūk and Jūyī Ughlān, the *Chingiz Khān*'s son, at the head of another army against the Makrīts under Tūk-Tughān.

It would seem, therefore, that Tūk-Tughān, hearing of the movements of the two Mughal armies, and finding Jūyī was coming upon him, moved from Kum-Kunjak, with the remains of the Makrīt tribe, and endeavoured to reach Kārā-Kum [which, in some imperfectly or carelessly copied MSS., has been turned into Kārā-Kuram], which was the desert or steppe inhabited by the Kānkulī Turks, and which tribe had been assigned, by the Sulṭān of Khwārazm, to his mother, Turkān Khātūn, as part of her appanage.

At page 267, it is stated that, in 615 H., the Sulṭān had moved from Samarkand to Jand because a body of those remaining of the supporters of Kādī Khān [Kādīr Khān of others], respecting whom more will be found in the account of Jūyī Khān farther on, had broken out into revolt on the confines of Jand, for the purpose of suppressing it, and, that, after he had annihilated that faction, he returned towards Samarkand again. Some other writers, however [See note 1, page 262], say that this took place earlier, before the total downfall of the last Gūr Khān, and that, after quelling this revolt, the Sulṭān heard that an army of the Gūr Khān had appeared before Samarkand,

of Islām which were there stationed, reached Sulṭān

and was preparing to march to its relief, when the Karā-Khitā army was withdrawn to operate against Koshlūk, but our author twice distinctly states that this revolt, or its suppression, happened in 615 H., and immediately after says that "the calamity of the infidels of Chīn—i. e. the Mughals—arose."

The Sulṭān being at Samrāṇd, whither he had returned from Jand, hearing of the movements of Tūk-Tughān and the Mughals in the direction of Karā-Kūm, moved towards Jand to guard his own territory, and to seize or stop Tūk-Tughān, if practicable, and marched beyond it as far as the frontier of the Turks. In the meantime Tūk-Tughān and his people, marching westward towards the Kanṭul steppe, had been intercepted by Jujī Khān near the great mountain range forming the northern boundary of the present Kāshghar state, as previously related.

I think I have here shown that Kōdā, brother of the Bigī, Tūktā, the Makrīt, and Tūk-Tughān, the Makrīt, are different persons, and that the Makrīts were not wholly destroyed when defeated by Sahūdāh.

The author of the "*Mongols Proper*," on the authority of M. Wolff, states at page 73, that the destruction of the "Merkits" took place "near Lake Kossagol, between the Selinga and the Upper Jenneisei" [*sic*], but I notice that he had some doubts about it, and, at page 712, he places "the Merkits," as "living probably in the valley of the Chu, and perhaps at Balasaghun," after stating that, according to Erdmann, the "Merkit chiefs" were "met and defeated on the banks of the river Jem (not the Kem or Yenusei [*sic*], as Wolff seems to read it)," but without perceiving that, at page 73, he had given, from the same writer, apparently, a much more correct version of the affair, and had even named some of the places tolerably correctly, but under vitiated orthography!

I must, as briefly as possible, give some account of Koshlūk's subsequent acts, after his seizure of the Gūr Khān, his father-in-law, and benefactor, and his own fate, which immediately preceded the irruption of the Mughal barbarians into the countries of Islām.

After the seizure of the last Karā-Khitā-ī ruler, his dominions east of the Sihūn devolved upon Koshlūk, but he did not thereby "become himself Gur Khan," as we are informed in the "*Mongols Proper*." Had Koshlūk known how to have managed the Gūr Khān, after he became his son-in-law, he might have got up a formidable, and, perhaps, successful, combination against the Mughal ruler, to whom also he was related on the mother's side. Koshlūk was an idol-worshipper—but *parast*—a Buddhist, and his wife [or one of his wives?] was a follower of 'Ī sā—Jesus Christ; hence they were both intolerant to the Musalmāns, continually exhorting them to turn idolators—the Rauzat-uṣ-Ṣafā says, to embrace Christianity—and those who would not were massacred. The Tārīkh-i-Alfī, however, says that Koshlūk, "for the sake of an idol-worshipping damsel, became himself an idol-worshipper too," but without mentioning what faith he previously followed, which we must presume was the Christian.

Koshlūk, for a period of four years, from 610 to 614 H. [Mny, 1213, to April, 1217, A D.] continued to send forces against Kāshghar, and they used to commit great ravages, and burn the crops, in such wise, that famine began to show itself in that tract of country. The inhabitants could do no other than give up the city of Kāshghar and its defences to him, and the fort surrendered. Koshlūk's troops took up their quarters in the peoples' houses,

Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, who was then [encamped

leaving them to shift for themselves, and violence, wickedness, and sedition, reigning supreme.

Petis de la Croix, who quotes "Mirconde," that is to say, Mīr Khāwind, the author of the *Rauzat-uz-Ṣafā*, makes the astonishing statement in his "*Ginghiscan the Great*," that the Gūr Khān used to reside at Kāshghar, which was the capital of their Turkistān possessions, and sometimes called Urdū-kand. That the Musalmān religion prevailed there is, undoubtedly, correct—and had prevailed for centuries, it may be added—and the Nestorians had churches there, but that, "at this time the capital is Hyarcān, which is the same place as *Cashgar* was," shows that De la Croix's geography was a little at fault. Yārḳand is just 100 miles S.E. of Kāshghar. He moreover states, quoting, apparently, the same work, that the people of *Cashgar* refused to acknowledge any other sovereign than the Gūr Khān's son, and that "the *siege* lasted long," and "the city was at last taken."

In the last para. of the account of the Gūr Khāns, I have noticed what has been said respecting the survivors of that family, but, although it is very probable that the last Gūr Khān, and the former ones too, may have had descendants, they are not specified, nor is a son mentioned in any author that I am aware of. The statement as to "Gushluk" having killed "the sovereign" of "Kashgar," contained in the "*Mongols Proper*," is without any real authority, I fancy, and would be difficult to verify.

After obtaining possession of Kāshghar, Koshlūk moved towards Khutan, which 'Abū-l-Fidā and some others say was of the Ī-ghūrā, or "Ī-ghūrīā," lying in the 42° of Lat., while Kāshghar is said to be in the 44°, but correctly, according to the most recent observations, 39° 24' 26", and 37° 6' 58", respectively, which shows the correct direction of the Ī-ghūr country at the period in question, and which extended much farther to the S.W. than shown in the map in "*Mongols Proper*," and as the events mentioned clearly show. Koshlūk took possession of Khutan, and acted towards its people in the same tyrannical manner, as at Kāshghar, to compel Musalmāns to recant. He commanded that all the learned men of the place should come out and hold a disputation with him on the subject, and more than 3000 'Ulamā and men of learning appeared. One of them was the Shaikh 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Khutānī, and he got the best of the argument, by the Musalmān account, upon which Koshlūk began to mock him, and the Shaikh, losing all patience, cried out, "Dust on thy mouth, O Koshlūk! thou accursed enemy of the faith!" For this the Shaikh was seized and nailed up before the gate of the college he had founded. He lingered for several days, during which he continued to exhort the people to be staunch in the faith, and, at length, he was put to death, and thus attained the felicity of martyrdom. After this, Musalmāns were forbidden to exercise their religion, and the call to prayer and public worship were prohibited.

At that period, there was a person dwelling on the confines of Ālmāligh, of great valour and intrepidity, and a champion—a *pahlawān*, but not "a herald with red arrows" [see "*Mongols Proper*," page 130], and his name was Ūzār [وزار], and he also belonged to the Kānkūlī or Kānghūlī tribe. He was a freebooter, and did nothing better than steal horses from all parts, and carry on other wickedness, until vagabonds and bold spirits like himself gathered round him, and he began to acquire strength, and to ravage the parts around Ālmāligh, until, at last, he obtained possession of that place and parts around.

before] Balkh," as has been already related, he became

<sup>2</sup> He was not "investing" *his own city*, as some writers, who probably did not know that Balkh belonged to him, have made out.

Who held possession immediately before is not stated, but, probably, a governor on the part of the late Gūr Khān did.

This upstart is Mr. H. H. Howorth's "Prince of Almāligh," and he says [page 20] that Erdmann says "he was known as *Merdī Shudoka* (i. e. lion heart, or lion man), and adds, "This latter statement is probably well founded, for the Khāns of Almāligh are doubtless to be identified with the *Leon Khans of Kashgar* mentioned by Visselien," and yet, only on the *preceding page*, on the authority of Abū-l-Ghāṣīd, Bahādur Khān, he at once identifies this adventurer, who had only just obtained possession, as one and the same as "Arslan Khan of the *Karluks*, who was also Prince of Kayalik or Kabalik." What a jumble of errors have we here! Now, what Erdmann, in his innocence, supposes to be a title is merely the simple Persian words vitiated, namely, *ward-i-shayd*—a bold or intrepid man; and it is utterly impossible that he could be a *Kankul* and a *Karlugh*—two totally different tribes—at the same time, or, that he was ruler or prince of *Kayalik*, previously referred to in another note, who had submitted to the Mughals years before, and had again presented himself and joined them, on their way to Utrār. Mr. Howorth appears to have also forgotten that, at page 66 of his book, he states that, in 1209 [A.D. = 606-7 H.], when "Jingis" returned to his "yurt," he found there "the Idikut of the Uighurs, Arslan Khan, chief of the *Karluks* (i. e. Turks of *Kayalik*), and Ozar, Prince of Almāligh, who had come to do him homage."

Arslan Khān will appear on the scene in several places of our author's narrative, but that he and this upstart were totally different persons is beyond a doubt, as may be seen farther on.

I have already noticed that, because some of the Afrāsīyābī rulers of Kāshghar were styled Arslan, it did not follow that they were all styled "the *Leon Khāns*." Such an impossible statement will not be found in any of the historians of the Mughals, not even in the work of that *Persian*—"the great Raschid."

Now it is very evident that, if Almāligh had belonged to Arslan Khān, the *Karlugh*, and the *Kankul*, Uzār, had taken it from him, they would not have both appeared together in the *yūrat* of the Chingiz Khān.

The Chinese historians state, with respect to these very events, that Ko-pau-yu, a Chinese general in the Mughal army, on recovering from a dangerous wound received in a previous battle, was sent to invest Bīsh-Balgh, N. of Tūrfān, the capital of the Yiddī-Kūt of the Īghūrs of the Muhammadan writers [why this should be, seeing that the Yiddī-Kūt was a vassal of the Mughals at this time, is not said] but, on the other hand, the Chinese say Ho-chew, E. of Tūrfān, was the capital of the Īghūrs; and that, at this time, *Gon-chow*, chief of the tribe of *Yong-hu*, in W. Tartary, subdued the city and country of Almāligh—O-h-ma-lu. Further, that Kosmeli, one of the great chiefs of the last of the Kitan dynasty, on becoming aware that the Mughals were come to make war on Koshlūk, persuaded the chief of the city of *Asin* (supposed to be near to Kāshghar) to submit to Jubah, that Koshlūk had raised up all the country N.W. of Tūrfān, on the E. and W., as far as the Sībūn, leagued with the prince of Kichah, or Kinchah, and the Kanglis N.E. of Sāmṛkand, and, after slaying Koshlūk, the Nāmāns, and Kangh [Kanghul, or Kankul], acknowledged the Chingiz Khān's supremacy.

To return to the upstart, Uzār. After he had obtained possession of Almā-

filled with despondency, and retired precipitately towards

lgh—the “Turkish Prince” of which is said, by Abū-l-Fidā, to have been absent at this time, and which city is said by him to lie in the same degree of lat. as Kāshghar—he set out for Fulād-Sum [فولاد سوم], which was one of the greater cities in that part [afterwards buried in the sands, like several other cities], and gained possession of it likewise. Koshlūk used continually to lead troops against him, defeat him, and ravage and lay waste his recently acquired territory. When Ūsār’s position became dangerous, he despatched an agent to the Chingiz Khān, and complained of Koshlūk’s tyranny! The Chingiz Khān sent him a friendly answer—his being hostile to Koshlūk was enough to ensure that—and Ūsār proceeded to his presence and was well received, a dress of honour and other favours were bestowed upon him, and Jūjī sought his daughter in marriage. The Chingiz Khān advised him to abstain from hunting excursions [the mode of hunting of the Mughals and other peoples of Asia, often referred to in our author’s, as in other histories, is very different from our ideas of hunting, but I have not space to describe it here], lest he might fall a prey into the hands of a hunter foe, referring to Koshlūk, and presented him with a thousand sheep in order that he might not have occasion to go forth in search of game. However, when Ūsār returned to Ālmālgh, he again went out, when suddenly and unexpectedly the forces of Koshlūk came upon him in a hunting-ground, captured him, and brought him before the gate of Ālmālgh. The inhabitants, however, shut the gates of the city, and resolved to defend it. Fighting commenced, when, at this crisis, news arrived of the coming of the hosts of the Chingiz Khān, for he began to grow alarmed at Koshlūk’s continued success. On this Koshlūk’s troops retired from before Ālmālgh, and, on the way back to their own territory, put Ūsār, the Kānkulī, to death. The Chingiz Khān showed favour to his son, Saghnāk-Tigīn [In the account of those who presented themselves to the Chingiz Khān on his way to Ūsār, which occurred very shortly after, the chief of Ālmālgh is styled Tukīā-Tigīn. See note 1, page 969] gave him one of Jūjī’s daughters to wife, and sent him back to Ālmālgh [from this it would seem that he had been kept in the Mughal camp as security for his father’s behaviour], where he took up his residence; and Arsalan Khān, the Kārlūgh, who, at this period, was a vassal of the Mughal ruler, who had betrothed one of his daughters to him, was, by him, permitted to go back to Kānlgh or Kānlī.

In the meantime the Chingiz Khān’s envoys and the merchants had been put to death and plundered through the perfidy of Anfāl-Juk, the Kānkulī, whose title was Gihār Khān, and whose title, in the MSS of our author’s work, by mistake, is written Kadr Khān. The Chingiz Khān, before undertaking the war against the Sultān of Khwārazm to avenge that outrage, determined not to leave behind him any one likely to contemplate sedition in his territories during his absence, and, as his chief enemies, Koshlūk, the Nāemān, and Tūk-Tughān, the Makrīt, were committing disturbances and sedition in the vicinity of his line of route, he determined to finish Koshlūk first, and, accordingly, the Nū-yīn, Jabah, was sent “to the westward” against him, with a large army of several *tomāns*, from the frontier of Kārā-Khujā, as already stated.

Koshlūk, having committed violence and tyranny beyond measure in Khutan and Kāshghar, and endeavoured to extinguish Islām therein, had nothing to expect but hostility from its people, and therefore, on hearing of the approach of a Mughal army to that frontier, he fled from Kāshghar, and Jabah was allowed to take possession of it. He at once issued a proclamation that every one might follow his own faith unmolested. Every Nāemān that



**Nishāpūr.** On the **Chingiz Khān** receiving information of the Sultān's departure from the environs of **Balkh**, and of the sedition in, and dispersion of, the army which was along with him, he ordered 60,000 **Mughal** horse, from his own camp, to cross the **Jihūn**, and despatched this army, under the standard of two notable **Mughals**, one of whom was the **Bahādur**, **Sahūdah** by name, and the other the **Nū-īn**, **Yamah**,<sup>1</sup> in pursuit of the Sultān.

fell into his hands was slaughtered, and he sent out bodies of troops in all directions in pursuit of **Koshlūk**. He, out of fear for his life, expecting no mercy from his relentless foes, threw himself into the mountain fastnesses of **Badakhshān**, and, in the agitated and perturbed state of mind he was in, entered a *darah* [a valley between hills, with a river running through it, also a pass] which had no way out of it. Some call it the **Daiah** of the **Sarigh-Kol**—the **Sarigh Lake**, or **Lake of the Sarigh**—سریغ کول—or **Sarīk-kul**—سریق کول. Here we can easily find our ground. The word **Sarigh** occurs in **Sarigh-i-Ighūr**, and in **Sarigh Pāmīr**, which appears in **Col Walker's** map under the incorrect form of "*Saris Pamir*". A party of hunters, natives of **Badakhshān**, were pursuing game in those hills when the **Mughals** suddenly pounced upon them. They told the **Badakhshis** that they would spare their lives if they would seize and make over to them some fugitives who had lately fled from them. So some of the hunters, who had noticed some strangers, surrounded **Koshlūk** and his few dependents, captured them, and delivered them over to the **Mughals**, who slew the whole of them, and **Koshlūk's** head was forthwith cut off and taken away along with them. In that affair much booty, and precious jewels, fell into the hands of the **Badakhshi** hunters. Through the death of **Koshlūk**, sovereign of the **Nāmāns**, the countries of **Khutan** and **Kashghar**, to the **Ab-i-Fanākat**, which is also called the **Sihūn**, were added to the empire of the **Chingiz Khān**.

<sup>1</sup> This name is written in several ways. **Abū-l-Ghāzī**, **Bahādur**, in the **Kazān** ed. of his *History*, makes it **Chanah**, which is, apparently, a misprint for **Yamah**. Our author, and **Faṣīḥ-i**, and some others, write it **Yamah**—یاماه—but it is for the most part written **Jabah**—جابه—in other works. **Faṣīḥ-i** too has **Suntāe** for **Swidāe**.

I must give a few details here, in addition to my notes at page 276 to 278, respecting the movements of these three **Nū-yāns**, which may be considered generally correct, and they are chiefly taken from the **Tārikh-i-Alfi**, **Jahān Kushāe**, **Tārikh-i-Jahān-gīr**, **Rauzat-us-Safā**, and **Habīb-us-Siyar**, but it must be borne in mind that the authors of the four last, particularly, wrote under **Mughal** rule and **Mughal** patronage, and from one to three centuries after our author, who was contemporary with the **Chingiz Khān**, his sons, and grandsons, and knew persons who had taken part in the actions he relates, and therefore—although his accounts are meagre—he is entitled to full credit here. The authors who wrote under **Mughal** influence appear inclined to lessen the number of the **Mughal** forces on most occasions, while our author, who was very hostile to them, perhaps inclines to exaggerate a little on the other side. However, that a force of 30,000 horse only was engaged in this expedition of over three years, through half of **Asia**, containing great and strong fortresses, mighty cities, difficult passes, and tortuous defiles, is not worthy of credit, for, had

That host, in the month of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, 617 H.,

such a small number been sent they would have been liable to be cut off when separated, in a country too where there were men who only wanted leaders to make them fight. Even a force of 60,000, as our author states, allowing for those killed, disabled, or carried off by disease, was small enough; but, it is certain, that the Mughals, as was their custom, compelled men of the places they captured or passed through to join them, and incorporated them in their armies; and, by this means, they managed to save their own men at the cost of their recruits. We must also remember that they had to depend on the parts they overran for supplies. That they could be resisted in far greater numbers than 30,000 or even 60,000 by resolute men, the defence of Utrār, Khujand, Tirmid, Sīstān, and Khwārazm, abundantly shows, as well as the determined resistance of other places mentioned by our author farther on, but which *no other writers* have even named, much less described.

When the Chingiz Khān had reached Samarkand, in Zi-Hijjah, 616 H., [end of February, A.D. 1220], and had completely invested that place, news, it is said, reached him that the Sultān had crossed the Jihūn by the Tirmid ferry [See note 2, page 275. Perhaps his informant was Badr-ud-Dīn], that the greater part of his troops were stationed in different fortresses, and the remainder dispersed [see the note previously referred to] in various parts. The Chingiz Khān consequently held counsel with his Nū-yān, saying, that, as but very few troops remained with the Sultān, and his son, Jalāl-ud-Dīn's advice to concentrate his forces was not complied with, it was now possible to complete his downfall before his nobles and great men, and the armies of the different parts of his empire, should have time to rally round him. It was therefore determined that three Mughal Amirs of *tomāns*, who were among the greatest of the Mughal leaders, namely, the Nū-yān, Jabah, of the tribe of Balut, the Yamah of our author [see and see might be mistaken one for the other in MSS. Our author is distinct in his statement in several places], Yāfa-ī, Faṣṭṭ-ī, and some others, with one *tomān* [10,000 horse] as the van division, and the Bahā ur, Swidāe—the Sahūdah of our author and others—of the Mughal tribe of Kungkur-āt, and the Nū-yān [the Bahādur?], Tūqchār, also written Tūqachār and Taghachār, with their respective *tomāns*, should be directed to follow Jabah [Yamah] in succession in pursuit of the Sultān. They were to pursue him throughout his empire, and not to rest until they had captured him. If they came up with, and found themselves not strong enough to cope with him, they were to make it known to him, the Chingiz Khān, and not to turn aside, to spare those who submitted, and leave *Shahnahs* or *Intendants* with them, but to annihilate all that showed hostility. They were likewise to understand that three years were sufficient to accomplish this task, and turn the Sultān's empire upside down, that he himself did not intend to remain in the countries west of the Sīhūn more than three years, and that they were to rejoin him, at his native *yūrat*, or encamping ground, in Mughalīstān, by way of the Dasht or Steppe of Kīchbāk [along the north side of the Caspian]. They were further instructed to acquaint him in case of their being in danger, that his son, Tūf, would be at once sent after them, at the head of an army, into Khurāsān, and another army against Khwārazm, under his other sons.

These three leaders at once set out, and Jabah [Yamah], with his *tomān*, formed the van, while the others were directed to follow him in succession [at an interval of some few days probably]. They crossed the Amūsh, or Jihūn, by the Panj-āb ford, at the end of Rabi'-ul-Ākhar—some say in the previous

crossed the river Jīhūn; and, in conformity with the

month—617 H. [about the latter part of June, A.D. 1220], and pushed on to Balkh, where they arrived together. They were waited on by a deputation of the chief men, received supplies, left an Intendant there, and then, according to their instructions, proceeded towards Hirāt.

On the arrival of Jabah [Yamah] and Swīdāe [Sahūdāh] at Hirāt, they did not molest it because, when they entered that territory, the Malik of Hirāt [Amīn Malik, according to the Ḥabīb-us-Siyar, whose title was Yamīn-ul-Mulk] sent an emissary to meet them, and to signify his submission and obedience, he, from their unexpected arrival, being in no condition to resist them; but such proceedings, on that Malik's part, are contrary to the statements of our author and the tenour of that Malik's life. See the account of Sulṭān Jalāl ud-Dīn's coming to Ghazna farther on. They were allowed to receive supplies, but were not admitted within the walls. The two leaders continued to follow each other towards Zāwah; and, when Tūkachār reached Hirāt, he must needs refuse to believe the statement of the Malik's submission to Jabah [Yamah] and Swīdāe [Sahūdāh], and commence hostilities. The Malik therefore, of necessity, had to defend himself [See note \*, page 1014], and, in a conflict which ensued between the Mughals and Hirātīs, Tūkājār was killed, along with a great many of his force. This is a totally different person from the son-in-law of the Chingiz Khān killed before Nishābūr.

In the meantime, the Malik of Hirāt having sent messengers to the two Nū-yāns in advance, complaining of Tūkachār's conduct, agents from them to the Malik arrived merely in time to conduct his defeated troops to join the other two leaders. From this, it will be perceived, that it was only want of spirit, or rather want of union and concerted action, that prevented the Musalmāns from exterminating this Mughal force entirely.

From what has been already narrated by our author above, it will have been seen that he knew more of the actual facts of this affair than the pro-Mughal writers I have taken this from. Tūkachār was killed near Fushan, a dependency of Hirāt, and not at or before Hirāt itself.

These forces under these three leaders were not the only troops despatched from the Chingiz Khān's camp into Khurāsān in 617 H. Arsalān Khān of Kābilīk, and the Jusbi, Tūlān, the Talangūt (?) [see note \*, page 1061], were despatched across the Jīhūn, about the same time, to invest Balkh of Tukhārastān, which was bravely defended, and defied all the efforts of the invaders for eight months. See pages 1004—1006.

When Jabah [Yamah] and Swīdāe [Sahūdāh] reached Zāwah, they were in want of supplies [according to Rashīd-ud-Dīn], and all their solicitations and threats did not induce the people to open their gates or give them any, so, being in want, they stormed it vigorously. Others, however, state, that, the gates being shut upon them, and as the Sulṭān was their object, they would have left Zāwah unmolested, but those within began to beat their drums, and sound their clarions, and from the walls greeted their departure with shouts, jeers, and obscene language, which so exasperated the Mughals that they turned back, and attacked the place. In the space of three days they carried it by storm, massacred all the inhabitants, young and old, and levelled Zāwah with the dust, after which feat they turned their faces towards Nishābūr, without delay, pushing on day and night, "like the autumn blast or clouds of spring, slaughtering all who came across them, and destroying and burning all they possibly could."

Chingiz Khān's commands, they did not inflict any injury on any of the cities and towns of Khurāsān, and had

The Sultān had reached Nīshābūr in the month of Safar, 617 H [See note 3, page 275], and left it precipitately in the following Rabī-ul-Ākhar, and this shows that the Mughals could not have crossed the Jihūn in the latter month, but must have done so in the preceding one, as mentioned in the note referred to. The Sultān who had lost all heart—indeed some fatality seems to have overcome him—probably, the prophecy of the astrologers, already mentioned, may have influenced his superstition—could not be induced to make any stand, and seemed only to seek a place of safety. The females of his family he sent to the strong fortresses of Kāran-duj, to the care of Tāj-ud-Dīn, Tughān. The Fakhr-ul-Mulk, Nizām-ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Ma'ālī, the Kātub, a native of Jām, the Ziyā-ul-Mulk, the Āraq, the Zawzanī, and the Majir [by some, Majd-ul-Mulk, Umr-i-Rajī, the Kāfi, who were of the Šadrs of Khurāsān and Wazirs of the Sultān, were left to administer the affairs of Nīshābūr and its dependencies, and the Sultān left it, taking the route of Isfārā'n and Rai, which he passed without making any stay, and made for Karwīn, at the foot of the citadel of which his son, Rukn-ud-Dīn, the ruler of Irāk, was encamped with 30,000 Irākīs. Others again say, that the Sultān did stay at Rai, and that he there heard of a Mughal army having entered Khurāsān. On the way to Karwīn, the veteran, Nusrat-ud-Dīn, Hazār-Asp, also styled Hazār-Saf, one of the greatest of the ancient Maliks, and father-in-law of Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Pīr Shāh, the Sultān's son, joined him from Lār, and the Sultān went along with him to inspect Shirān-koh, with the object of staying there.

When Jabah [Yamah] and Swidāe [Sahūdah] reached Nīshābūr, they tortured every one they could meet with in order to extort information respecting the Sultān's movements, and sent, and called upon the Fakhr-ul-Mulk, and his colleagues, to submit to the Chingiz Khān's authority. They supplied the wants of the Mughals, and sent out three agents, with offerings, to express their submission, and to state that he, the Fakhr-ul-Mulk, was an old man of the class of people of the pen, that they were in search of the Sultān, and, in case they should overcome him in battle, the country would naturally be theirs—not, "Speed after him," etc., as a late writer, using some imperfect translation, says—"and that he and his colleagues would be their slaves."

Jabah [Yamah] gave them encouragement, and conciliated them, and, taking into consideration what had happened at Hirāt, left a Shahnah, or Intendant, with them for their security, and issued a proclamation, in the name of the Chingiz Khān, written in the Ī-ghūrī character, in the following words, or words to the same effect: "Be it known to every one, far and near, high and low, great and small, of Ī-rān and Tūr [i.e. Tūrān], that the Pure God [How history repeats itself! Here also the Pure God—the God of Peace—is invoked, but not under the veil of Christianity] hath given unto me the sovereignty of the east and of the west. Whoso shows hostility to me shall see no more safety in this world. His kinsmen and connexions shall perish, together with his women and children; but they, who place their heads upon the line of obedience unto me, shall, instead of the cap, place a diadem on their heads." He also advised them to submit when the Mughal army, which was following, should arrive, and not to trust to the strength of their walls.

The Mughal leaders made no stay at Nīshābūr, but pushed onwards. Jabah [Yamah] made towards Māzandarān by way of Juwain, and, on

nothing to do with them, except in the territory of Hirāt, at a place which they call the To-i<sup>4</sup> of Būshanj [Fūshanj]

arriving therein, committed great outrages, more particularly at Astarābād, and at Āmul, where he ordered a general massacre. Swiddāe [Sahūdāh] moved to Jām and Tūs. The latter place refused to submit, on which he massacred the inhabitants, and then proceeded by way of Rādakān [a well known place in history and geography, but it appears in Major St. John's new map of Persia, published by the India Office, under the impossible name of "Rádīān"], Isfarāin, or Isfarāyīn, as it is also spelt, and Khabūshān, to Dāmghān. The people took refuge in the strong and famous fortress of Gūd-Koh, W. of the city, and refused to submit, but a good many, who could not reach it, were massacred. He then moved upon Simnān, where many people were put to the sword, but places which submitted were spared.

Nusrat-ud-Dīn, Hazār-Aṣp or Hazār-Ṣaf, the Atā-Bak of Lār, who, as already stated, had reached the Sultān's presence, advised him to take shelter in Tang-Talū—also written Tangah-Takū—تنگ تکر—between Luristān and Fārs, as related in note <sup>4</sup>, page 277, but, hearing of the fall of Rāi, and the near arrival of the Mughals, the Sultān and his sons retired towards Kārun-duj, and Nusrat-ud Dīn is said to have retired to Lār, and other grandees and chiefs likewise sought places of safety.

On his way towards Kārun-duj, the Sultān narrowly escaped a party of the enemy, as related previously, at page 277, and he stayed there only two days to get fresh horses, and then turned his face, it is said, towards Baghdād [بغداد]—the place of all others, save the camp of the Chingiz Khān, which he would be likely to avoid], but some MSS have, to Fulād [فلاد]—*ba-Fulād*; but, hearing that the Mughals had already reached Kārun-duj, he changed his route for the fortress of Surkhāhān—سرخاهان—and from thence entered Gilān.

Jabah [Yamah] left a force to invest Kāran-duj, and again set out towards Rāi in pursuit of the unfortunate Sultān. Now, considering that, at the outset, if only 30,000 men were detached, what with fighting at Hirāt and other places, besides the losses the Mughals must have sustained after such marches, to leave a force behind to invest this stronghold must have so weakened their numbers as to have rendered their destruction easy, I cannot, therefore, for a moment, credit the statement that only 30,000 horse were detached. Considering that the Pro-Mughal writers generally lessen the numbers of their own forces, to flatter their patrons' vanity, our author's statement, that 60,000 was the number despatched, is much more reliable, and much more probable.

When Sultān Muḥammad reached Gilān, Ṣa'lūk, one of the chiefs of the Gil, received him, and advised him to take up his residence in Gilān. He remained seven days there, when he again set out towards Rustamdār for Astādārāh [استاداره], or Astarah [استره]—the Asdār—اسدار—of others, and Astawā or Istawā of the Jamī'ut-Tawāiikh, where all his treasures that remained with him were lost. From thence he set out in the direction of Dā-nū-i—دانوی—in some MSS دانوی and even دانی, a dependency of Āmul, and, from that place, embarked on the Kūlzum [the sea—the Caspian or Sea of Khur], on the advice of the Chief of Māzandarān, as related at page 278.

<sup>4</sup> *to-i*—توی—but, in a few copies, *to*—تو. In Pushto, *to*, in the masculine, and *to'e'a*—also written *to'e-a*—in the feminine, signifying—split, rent, scattered, dispersed, etc., is the past part. of the intrans. verb *to-verda*, but it does not follow that the above is a Pushto word. The printed text is hopelessly defective here.

where one of the chief men of the Mughal army, in a foray therein, went to hell. Būshanj was but a small fortification; and they took it by storm, and martyred all the Musalmāns in the place. From thence they pushed on towards Nishāpūr, and arrived there, and appeared before the gate of that city. A battle having taken place there [with the troops therein quartered], the son-in-law of the Chingiz Khān was killed.<sup>6</sup> Without occupying themselves in avenging his death, they proceeded onwards towards Ṭabaristān and Māzandarān in search of Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh. The Sultān was encamped within the *darah* [valley and pass] of Timmishīah,<sup>7</sup> on the road to Māzandarān, when, suddenly, the Mughal troops came up with him.

Sultān Muhammad left Utsuz, the Hājib, under the canopy of state in the centre of his troops,<sup>8</sup> with orders to move them to Dāmghān and 'Irāk, whilst he, himself, entered into the mountains of Māzandarān, and embarked on the sea [the Caspian], as has been previously related. The Mughal forces now separated into two armies; the one, which was greatest, pushed on towards 'Irāk in pursuit of Sultān Muhammad's troops, whilst the smaller one proceeded down the *darah* of Timmishīah.

Respecting the movements of both these armies, no further information, such as might be considered certain, reached Khurāsān. Some said that, not finding Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, in Māzandarān and 'Irāk, they fell upon the son of that Sultān, whom they were wont to style Sultān Rukn-ud-Dīn, Ghūrī Shānastī, and martyred him and the forces of 'Irāk, and, by way of Azarbāijān, came out in the direction of the Dasht-i-Khifchāk, but God knows best.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>6</sup> This is incorrect: it was, on the second occasion that a son-in-law of the Chingiz Khān—of whom he had several—was killed. Our author has confused this event. See page 1028, and note <sup>9</sup> page 1034.

<sup>7</sup> Not marked in modern maps. It is also written Timmeḥah and Timmishah.

<sup>8</sup> He had but a small number with him.

<sup>9</sup> As our author, up to the time he wrote his work, was in doubt respecting the subsequent movements of these two Mughal commanders, he having, in the year 624 H., left his native place and country at the time of their return, and retired into Hind, in order to connect what I have before briefly narrated, I will give a short account of their farther proceedings, in this Mughal raid.

The Mughals first possessed themselves of *Kāran-duj* [which was never called "Karendar," nor was it situated "between Nessa and Nishapoor," nor was it situated "in the Kurdish mountains, between Kermanshah and Baghdad," at a place called "Ardahan," nor was it "in Khorassan." See "*Mongols Proper*" pp. 81 and 714], so called after *Kāran*, an ancient Dīlāmāh king and champion, of the Gīl race, and situated in the *Karwin Darah*—*دره کاروین*—that is to say, *Kāran's Castle*. Without the points on the last letter, *r* might be mistaken for *j*, but any one acquainted with the Persian language would naturally, whether there were points or not, read *در* affixed to the name of a fortress, as *duj*, as a matter of course. It was plundered and levelled with the dust, after which the Mughals moved against *Ī-lāl*—*ایل* [called *Lāl* by our author, at page 280, which was not called "Ilak" then, and I think there is no proof adducible that it is called "Al Ask" now. It is precisely the same word, in the original, as PETIS DE LA CROIX's "Yiale".] where was the Sultān's mother, and other ladies of his family, and the younger children, and invested it.

Abū-l-Ghāzī, Bahādur's history has *Ī-lān*, but in the *Tārīkh-i-Alfi* this place is, invariably, styled the fortress of *Lār-jān*—*لاریجان*—and it is also stated that it was on a mountain in *Tabaristān*, which, in after times, was noted for a spring, the drops of water from which petrified. The same authority states that Yamah [as in our author, and the *Jabah* of others] detached a Mughal leader named *Suntāie* with a force to invest it.

No one could call to recollection the time when that stronghold ever wanted for water, for cisterns had been constructed previously, capable of containing such a quantity of water that if no rain fell for years, when they were once filled, there would have been no want of it. It seemed, however, as though Providence was against the *Khwārazmīs* and *Musalīmāns* in general, for, in fifteen days after the investment began, there was scarcely any water remaining, and no rain fell—an unusual event in that district—from the time the Mughals invested it. Consequently, the Sultān's mother, Turkān *Khātūn*, and the Wazīr, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, who was there also, were compelled to come down, and surrender. Almost at the moment of their reaching the foot of the walls the rain began to fall, and continued to pour, in such wise, that the water flowed out under the portals of the fortress!

The place was sacked, and all the vast treasures of gems, gold, and other precious things, fell into the hands of the barbarian Mughals, to such an amount that, besides precious stones and the like, ten thousand thousand—10,000,000—*miškāls* [about 1½ drachms each] of red gold, and 1000 *khawārs*—a load sufficient for an ass—of silken fabrics, clothes, etc., were among the spoils. This booty was sent, along with the unfortunate Turkān *Khātūn*, her children, grandchildren, and connexions, and Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, the Wazīr, towards Samrḳand, to the camp of the *Chingiz Khān*; but, on their way thither, they found that his camp was then in the neighbourhood of *Tāl-kān* [*Nasr-koh* of *Tāl-kān* of *Khurāsān*, as our author states farther on]. When the captives were brought before him, the Wazīr, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, was forthwith put to death, together with all the male children of the Sultān's family, however young. What befel the females may be imagined. I shall have something more to say respecting them and their cruel fate farther on. After that, when Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn was defeated on the banks of the *Sind*, and his *haram* too fell into the power of the Mughals, the females were sent to join Turkān *Khātūn*, and were all kept together in one place.

When Sultān Muḥammad, who was then seeking safety on one of the

islands in the Caspian [Āb-i-Sugūn, referred to in note <sup>4</sup>, page 278, is contained in the map of the Caspian and countries around it, in the *MASĀLIK WA MAMĀLIK*, and is placed on the south shore, about midway between Āmul and Astarābād], as previously related at page 279, heard of the capture of this stronghold, and the fate of his family, he died, within a few days, of a broken heart [but, according to our author, and contrary to all those who wrote after him, and improbable too—whilst being conveyed back towards Khwārazm. See page 279], in Shawwāl, the tenth month of 617 H [end of Nov., or early in Dec., old style, 1220 A.D.]. Considering that the first day of 618 H. commenced on the 24th of February, 1221 A.D., it is very evident that the Sulṭān could not have died on the 10th of January of that year, as stated in "*Mongols Proper*," on the authority of M. Wolff.

After the capture of Kāran-dug and Ī-lāl, and the death of the Sulṭān, had become known to the Mughal Nū-yīns, Jabah [Yamah] and Swidāe [Sahūdah], they despatched an agent to the camp of the Chingiz Khān to inform him thereof, and to intimate that the late Sulṭān's son, Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, was coming in his direction, that they themselves were thus relieved of any responsibility respecting them, and would now proceed to carry out the rest of his instructions by pushing on into Irāk and Māzandarān, and would rejoin him, within the prescribed time, by way of the Dai-band of Shurwān, and the Dasht-i-Khūfchāk.

Where the Mughals wintered—for it was mid winter when they heard of the Sulṭān's death—if they went into winter-quarters, is not precisely stated, but it must have been in the north-western part of Khurāsān, and as soon as the season opened in the following year - 618 H. —Jabah [Yamah] set out towards Rai by way of Khowāf. Having reached it, expecting he should be unable to take it alone, he summoned Swidāe [Sahūdah] to join him. There were, however, unknown to them, allies within the walls. The inhabitants of Rai were divided into two religious factions, the Hanūfīs and the Shā'fīs. The former had, not long before, burnt a *mayyad* belonging to their rivals, upon which when it became known that the Mughals were coming, the Kāzī of the Shā'fīs, and a number of his party, hastened forth to welcome them. They then offered to betray the city into their hands, the price being, for betraying their country and faith, and playing into the hands of barbarians, the destruction of the rival sect. The Mughal leaders accepted the terms, and they, having been admitted within the walls by the traitors, proceeded to butcher the Hanūfīs, but, having had clear proof of the disinterested friendship of the Shā'fīs, and their trustworthiness, the Mughals massacred them also, and completely destroyed the city. Thus was Rai—one of the most flourishing, populous, and finest cities of Asia—desolated, plundered, and depopulated; and it never after recovered. This took place early in 618 H. After this feat, Jabah [Yamah] advanced towards Hamadān, and Swidāe [Sahūdah] to Kazwīn.

When Jabah reached Kūm, to use the expressive simile of one of my authorities, "by the Mughals, the people of Kūm became *gum*"—the Persian for lost, destroyed, annihilated, etc. At Kūm, too, were two religious factions—the Shā'fīs and the Sunnis. The former sent a deputation to wait on Jabah [Yamah], and incited him to destroy the latter, and, as usual with the Mughals, after slaughtering the followers of the rival sect, they sent the followers of 'Alī after them, carried off such as escaped the sword into captivity, and left not a living soul at Kūm, in fact, they "destroyed" them completely, in "the true Circassian style."



When Jabah [Yamah] arrived near Hamadān, the venerable Sayyid, 'Alā-ud-Daulah, the Hamadānī—some, including the Raḡat-uṣ Ṣafā, say Majd-ud-Daulah, his son—of the race of 'Alī, who was dwelling there—not “commanding,” save in a spiritual point of view—sent him offerings, and tendered submission, in order to save the place and people, and agreed to receive a Mughal Shāhnāh.

In the meantime, the Mughals obtained information that a body of the late Sulṭān's forces, under two leaders, Beg-Tiġin, Salāḥī, and Kūj-Būkā Khān, had assembled at Najās [or Nakhās? *نخاس*], upon which they marched against them, overthrew, pursued, and dispersed them. Jabah [Yamah] attacked Gūzrūd, Khurramābād, and Nih-āwand, which were plundered and burnt, after the people were put to the sword. The Mughals continued to carry their depredations into every part of 'Irāk, with the exception of Iṣfahān, which remained safe in the hands of the Khwārazmīs, and did not fall under the yoke of the Mughals until many years after, and then treachery caused its fall, as our author relates farther on. After the slaughter of a vast number of people, Kāzwin was the next point assailed. The people defended it desperately, for the Kāzwinīs adopted their usual custom of street-fighting, which the disposition and nature of the streets of their city enabled them successfully to do. They fought hand to hand with the Mughals, and some 50,000 men were killed altogether on both sides. The city was captured at last, and those who still remained alive were massacred, and the place was sacked. It stands to reason that, if only 30,000 Mughals crossed the Oxus originally, as said by the pro-Mughal historians, they must have been somewhat reduced even were this the only fighting they engaged in, and therefore, as I have before mentioned, the 60,000 of our author must be much nearer the truth, and even in this case the Mughals must have greatly increased their troops by forced recruiting by the way. In more than one place, farther on, the despatch of fresh troops by the Čingiz Khān to reinforce these two Nū-yīns is expressly mentioned.

Having plundered, destroyed, and massacred to such degree in 'Irāk, the winter season [618-19 H.] having now arrived, Jabah [Yamah] and Swidāe [Sahūdāh] took up their winter-quarters in some of the dependencies of Rāi. When the spring came round the Mughals turned their faces towards Āgarbāijān, reached Zinjān, took it, and massacred the people. They then advanced to Arbīl, which they treated in the same fashion, and burnt it, after which they marched by way of Sar-i-Āb towards Tabriz. At that time, the ruler of Āgarbāijān was the Atā-Bak, Mugaḡfir-ud-Dīn, Yüz-Bak [see page 171, 'the son of the Jahān Pahlawān, and the last of that dynasty [see page 172, note 3], who, on the appearance of the enemy near Tabriz, concealed himself, and despatched an agent to Jabah [Yamah], together with valuable offerings, soliciting an accommodation. This was agreed to, and, it having been arranged, the Mughals passed on without farther molesting Tabriz.

According to the Raḡat-uṣ Ṣafā, however, “the Atā-Bak, Jahān Pahlawān, resisted the Mughals at first, but, having been defeated and routed, sent his son, Yüz-Bak, tendering submission, and despatched valuable presents, and thus saved his territory from further hostility.” The Jahān Pahlawān, however, died thirty-seven years before this, in 582 H.

The greater part of 'Irāk and Āgarbāijān having been trodden by the hoofs of the Mughals, and winter coming on, Jabah [Yamah] and Swidāe [Sahūdāh] took up their winter [619-620 H.] quarters in the plain of Mughān, but, according to Alif, at būā - موما.

I am unaware whether the accounts taken from Wolff, Erdmann, and other "Professors," quoted by the author of the "*Mongols Proper*," [p. 82], are verbatim, but, whether or not, these events have been made a terrible hash of in that book, and some, especially respecting the return of the Mughals homeward, have been mixed up with events which happened when Jūi entered **Khūshāk** some years subsequently. "Chepé Noyan, and Subutae Behadur," as they are styled therein, are made to capture, *after* some other places, "*Kum*, Hamadan, and Rudbar," and, afterwards, are marched upon "*Kazvin*," and the Suljān, who is, by the same account, still *living*, is followed to the south shore of the Caspian. This was in 1220 A D. Then we hear that "Chepé" and "Subutae," after taking Ilak [p. 93], marched against Rai, where the rival sects bring destruction upon each other. Then "*Kum*" is taken a *second* time, and "Chepé" makes a raid upon "the towns of Irak, Dinawar," etc., attacks "Nehawend, the far-famed Ecbatana," while "Subutae" captures Kazvin *over again* [p. 93], although it had been already taken, previous to the Suljān's death, and 50,000 people slaughtered [p. 82]. After this, "Chepé" advances through "Dilem upon Azerbaidjan, which, together with Arran, were then ruled by the Atabeg Uzbek," etc., etc., and, in the spring of the following year, after wintering in "the rich plains of Mogan," the "Mongols advance into Georgia." These events are said to have taken place *before* the Suljān's death, in 1221 A D., at p. 82, and, at p. 93, towards the end of 1222 A D. [= 618 H]. At p. 97, we are again informed that, "in 1224 A D. [= 621 H], a small body of 3000 [the original 30,000?] Mongols" was able to once more "destroy Rayi, to do the same to *Kum*, and Kashan," etc., etc., so "Rai" or "Rayi," as it is indiscriminately styled, and also "*Kum*," were, according to this account, destroyed no less than *two* and *three* times respectively, in about as many years. How speedily these cities must have recovered again from total ruin and destruction! All these different statements, however, refer really to one and the same events, for, on the first occasion of their incroad beyond the Oxus, with the exception, probably, of Marw and **Khwārazm**, no Mughal troops were left to hold any position in **Khurāsān** or **Irāk-i-'Aja**, and, consequently, in Uktāe's time fresh armies had to be sent. See page 1007.

During this winter [619-620 H—the winter of 1222-23 A D.], 2000—some say 10,000—Gürjī [Georgian] cavalry, all picked men, attacked the Mughals—where is not said, but in one of their advanced positions probably, and, as might have been expected from such a small force, they were overthrown. The Gürjīs now made preparations for attacking the Mughals in the coming spring, and sought help from Asia Minor, from the Dīār-i-Bakr, and Dīār-i-Rabī'. The Mughals, at the same time, were meditating an invasion of Gūrjistān as soon as the season should open. At this time, a Turk slave in the service of the Atā-Bak, Yūz-Bak, named Aghrūsh, also called Aghūsh, collected together a considerable force, consisting of **Khaj** Turks, Kurds, and other adventurers, and entered the service of the Mughals. This is a specimen of one of the ways in which they received reinforcements. As soon as the season opened, Aghrūsh, and his force of "free companions," supported by the Mughals, entered Gūrjistān, carrying slaughter and devastation as far as the gates of Taffīs. They were soon encountered by the valiant Gürjīs, and the latter, having inflicted great slaughter upon Aghrūsh's force, were about to overpower it, when the main Mughal army arrived on the spot, just in time to save it. Unable to withstand the combined forces, the Gürjīs had to beat a retreat.

In Šafar, 620 H. [March, 1223, A.D.], Jabah [Yamah] and Swidāe [Sahūdāh] advanced to Marāghah, which territory, at that time, was ruled by a female sovereign—I have no space for much detail—who held her court in a fortress named Rū-in-duja, three farsakhs or leagues from Marāghah. Although she was unprovided with the means of efficient resistance, and almost destitute of troops, the people defended Marāghah for a week, when it was captured, and the people massacred, and all their property destroyed or burnt.

After the capture of Marāghah, the Mughals moved towards Ardabīl [Ardibil of the maps], but, as the fame of its ruler, Mugaḥḥar-ud-Dīn, Gargart, for valour was sufficiently known, the Mughals gave up the idea of assailing it, and they thought it advisable to retire. On the way back, intimation reached Jabah [Yamah] and Swidāe [Sahūdāh] of resistance in another quarter.

In the spring of this same year, 620 H., another attempt, but a feeble one, was made to make a stand against the invaders. It must be remembered, however, that Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn had been overthrown on the banks of the Sind some time—about a year or more—before this, that he was now in the tracts east of that river—the present Panjāb, and Sindh—and that there was no supreme head to direct an efficient resistance. There was no combination. Jamāl-ud-Dīn, Abīah, one of the confidential officers of the late Sulṭān, and who held the Intendancy of 'Irāk during his reign, assembled a number of followers, whom the pro-Mughal historians, of course, style "rogues and vagabonds," to oppose the enemy; and the people of Hamadān also rose, slew the Mughal Shāhnaḥ, or Intendant—not a "governor"—located there, and openly threw off the Mughal yoke. They then seized the Sayyid, 'Alī-ud-Daulah, before referred to, for submitting to those infidels in the first place, and shut him up in the fortress of Kurbat—کربت—or Gurbat. On this Jabah [Yamah] re-entered 'Irāk, and moved towards Hamadān again, against Jamāl-ud-Dīn; and all offers of submission [if made], on his part, were rejected, and Jamāl-ud-Dīn was attacked, defeated, and slain. Hamadān, nevertheless, refused to open its gates, and resisted bravely for three days, when the Faḳīh [the Muḥammadan Law-officer, a theologian], who was the Peshwā, or spiritual guide of the Hamadānīs, and the prime mover in all this resistance, was killed; and the Mughals succeeded in gaining an entrance into the place by means of a secret passage, which this very Faḳīh had had excavated from his own house to the hills adjoining the city. The usual scene of slaughter, plunder, and devastation ensued.

After the capture of Hamadān, the Mughals set out towards Tabriz, at which place, at that time, one of the chief 'Ulamā, Shams-ud-Dīn, 'Ugmān, the Tuḡhrāe, a man of great learning and wisdom, was residing—the Atā-Bak, Yūz-Bak, the ruler, having retired to Khūe—who, in counsel with the chief men, sent presents and supplies to the Mughals, and tendered submission, and, among other things, a vessel filled with mercurial ointment, which, he thought, "might be very valuable and useful to the Mughals in freeing their persons from certain troublesome parasites, as they had come from a long distance." This so struck the Mughals, who met his agents with the presents at Maḥ-mūdābād, and at once proceeded to examine and count them, as a proof of his good wishes and intentions for their welfare, that they then and there turned back, and contented themselves with sending an Intendant to Tabriz, along with the bearer of the presents, as Shams-ud-Dīn had requested.

The Mughals now marched to Khūe, and Salmās, plundering, devastating, and slaughtering, and then proceeded to Nakhjuān, Barda', and Baikān. This last mentioned place was summoned to submit, and its people were

desirous of so doing, but, in a tumult which arose, the Mughal emissary was killed, upon which the Mughals stormed the place, violated all the women, and then made a general massacre of the inhabitants. After this feat of brutality, they advanced to Ganjah, which submitted.

At Ganjah intimation reached the Mughal Nū-yāns that an army of Gūrjīs were on the way to attack them, and they moved from thence to meet them. With 5000 men—probably double the number—Jahāh [Yamah] placed himself in ambush, while Šwidāe [Šahūdah], with the main army, was sent forward to oppose the Gūrjīs, but they treated him so roughly that he had to beat a retreat in considerable disorder, pursued by the Gūrjīs. The latter, however, took to plundering the effects of the Mughals, and, while thus occupied, and their ranks broken, Jahāh [Yamah] fell upon them unawares from the ambushade with his fresh troops, and Šwidāe [Šahūdah] soon after succeeded in rallying his army, and also attacked the Gūrjīs. They, in their turn, had to retire with the loss, it is said, in Alfī and Rauzat-uṣ-Šafā, of 30,000 men, but 3000 may be nearer the truth. The defeated Gūrjīs effected a junction at Taḥṣī with Malik Dā-ūd, their ruler, who had there assembled an army to resist the invaders. The Mughals, however, had sufficient experience of Gūrjī prowess, for the difficult nature of their country was made the plea for not further molesting them, and the Mughal leaders turned aside towards the territory of Širwān. On reaching Šamākhī, they proceeded at once to fill the ditch with everything they could get hold of, dead bodies of horses, asses, bullocks, cows, and even sheep included, captured it, violated the females, massacred its inhabitants, and destroyed the place, and Širwān was reduced to the same state of desolation as other countries they had passed through.

Having carried slaughter, devastation, and ruin—this is “an *affatus* of architecture” possibly—from the frontier of Māwarā-un-Nahr to the Caucasus, the Mughal leaders now prepared to carry out the plan of returning by the Dašt-i-Khūfchāk into Mughalīstān, and rejoining the Chingiz Khān, by taking the route of the Dar-band or Barrier—the Bāb-ul-Ahwāb, or Gate of Gates, of the ‘Arabs, known to the classical writers as the Caspian Gates—but, as they were totally unacquainted with the route, the Mughals had recourse to treacherous stratagem, at which they were such adepts. They despatched an agent to the Širwān Shāh, as the ruler of that territory was styled, who had shut himself up in his strongest fortress, saying “We do not intend to molest your territory any more, send unto us here some persons that we may enter into a compact together for the future, and then we will depart towards another direction.” The Širwān Shāh was so delighted at the idea of getting rid of these sanguinary barbarians that he was thrown off his guard completely, and despatched ten persons of note to their camp. Arrived there, the Mughals at once struck off the head of one of them in order to terrify the others, and told them that, if they guided them to the Dar-band, and conducted them through and beyond it safely, they should be set free, and, if not, that they should be sent to join their comrade. These helpless creatures could do no other so they guided them, and the Mughals, having passed beyond the Barrier, entered the territory of the Ālān, a feat which no army had been able to accomplish, without guides, since the time of Alexander.

The Ālāniāns assembled in great numbers to resist the invaders, and combined with the tribes of Khūfchāk [respecting the name *Khūfchāk* see note at page 877, para five] for that purpose, and occupied the route in the front of the Mughals, prepared to resist their passage. The Mughals perceived they were in great danger, and again had recourse to a treacherous

stratagem devised by Swīdā [Sahūdāh]. They sent secretly to the Khufchāk tribes, saying: "You and we are both Turks [here is farther proof respecting what I have said in my note on the descent of the Turks of the *i-māks* of Tāttār and Mughal. See last para. of that note, page 900] of one and the same stock, and all kinsmen together [and as they were Nagūz, vul "Nogays," this was really true, certain ethnological philosophers notwithstanding. See note to page 888, para. two], while the Ālānīān are aliens and foreigners. Let us enter into a covenant that we will be the friends of each others' friends and foes of each others' foes, and, whatever you may desire to have in the shape of money or goods, we will furnish you with, provided you give no aid to the Ālānīān, and leave us to deal with them." Jabah [Yamah] and Swīdā [Sahūdāh] accordingly sent many things from among the plunder the Mughals had brought with them, and money likewise. This induced the Khufchāk tribes to withdraw, and they went away, upon which the Mughals fell upon the Ālānīān, slaughtered great numbers of them, ravaged their country, and got out of their difficulties. Then, according to their usual custom, breaking the pledges they had given the Khufchāks, they made a forced march, fell upon them unawares in their own territory, slew, and dispersed them. The Khufchāks fled to the territory of the Rūs [Russians], while the Mughals halted in the kushlak or winter quarters of the Khufchāks, which they appropriated, and therein they passed the winter of 620-21 H. [A D 1223-24]

After being thus treated, the remainder of the Khufchāk tribes sought aid from the Rūs—in the Raṣṣat-us-Ṣafā, and some other Histories, they are always styled Urus—اروس—and, between them, they raised a great army, and set out to encounter the Mughals, who also advanced to meet them. The Mughal leaders, finding the confederates too numerous for them to cope with, again had recourse to stratagem, in order to separate them. When the Rūs and Khufchāks drew near, the Mughals, as though terrified of them, took to flight; and the Rūs, taking heart, followed in pursuit of them for ten or twelve successive days, when, finding the number of their pursuers gradually diminished, and that the horses of the remainder were quite knocked up, one morning, at dawn, the Mughals mounted quietly, and fell upon the Rūs, and, such was the havoc they made among them, that "the ground was made wet with their blood."

It is stated in Alfī, that, in the beginning of the year 611 of the Rihlat = 621 H. [it certainly is not correct that the two Nū-yīns rejoined the Chingiz Khān early in 620 H., as will be proved farther on], the Mughals moved from the country of the Khufchāks, and penetrated as far as the city of Sūdāk [سوداک]—by some Sūdāk [سودان]—on the shore of the same sea adjoining, and near to [the territory of?] Kusṭānṭīah [Constantinople?], and gained possession of Sūdāk city, after which they entered the country of the Rūs, as above stated.

PETIS DE LA CROIX gives another account, however—but does not quote his authority—in which it is stated that the Ālāns were Tāttārs of Dāghistān, but, in the account above, the Mughals, who doubtless knew best, styled them "*aliens and strangers*," and did not by descent consider them, in any way, connected with themselves, who were "Turks." "They devastated their country," he says, "so that the Mughals might not obtain anything, and this enraged them so, that they surprised and ruined their chief city, Tarkū, and took Terki [Mosdok of the present day], the chief city of the *Cherkassians*, who were in alliance with them, and also with the Kalmak Tartars!"

According to that account, it was to these last—the *Khufchāks* of my authorities—that the *Mughals* sent envoys claiming them as kinsmen, and that, by favour of the *Kāi Imāks*, they crossed the *Ātil* or *Volga*, and entered *Khufchāk*. P. de la Croix has here brought in events which happened when *Jūji Khān* subsequently went into *Khufchāk*, mentioned farther on, from a totally opposite direction, as the country of the *Kāi Imāks* sufficiently indicates.

The pro-Mughal writers narrate that, after the defeat of the *Rūs*, as I have narrated above, *Jabah [Yamah]* and *Swidāe [Sahūdah]* set out to rejoin the *Chingiz Khān*, and, having done so, laid their spoils before him, and that they completed their expedition within the prescribed period of three years, in which case they must have rejoined him before the fourth month of 620 H. [= June 1223 A.D.] But what are the facts? Having passed the *Ātil*, with the consent of the *Khufchāk* tribes, the season being far advanced, the *Mughals* had to winter in the *Dasht-i-Khufchāk*. They appropriated the lands and pastures of the *Khufchāk* tribes, in consequence of which hostilities arose between them and the *Mughals*, but the latter, being unable to cope with the former, had to act on the defensive, and send for aid to *Jūji Khān*, who, since the disagreement with his brothers before *Organy* of *Khwārazm*, had retired into the *Dasht-i-Khufchāk*, which had previously been assigned to him as his fief. The *Chingiz Khān* did not move homewards from the *Indus* until the spring of 620 H., and passed the summer at *Buklān* or *Bughlān*; and they only joined him in the summer of 621 H., when he was encamped near the *Shūn*, while others say they re-joined him only at *Kalūr-ān*. *Jūji* sent them aid, the *Khufchāk* tribes were now forced to submit; and *Jūji*, at this juncture, was summoned to join his father, who was on his return homewards, and he therefore kept *Jabah [Yamah]* and *Swidāe [Sahūdah]* in *Khufchāk* during his absence. They, by his command, reduced the *Nagūz* [vul. *Nogays*], crossed the river in their route, easily on the ice, reached what was afterwards known as *Hāji-Tarkhān*, the capital of the *Nagūz*, situated on an island in the *Ātil* or *Volga*, reduced it, and compelled the *Nagūz* to submit, after a war of six months, to the *Mughal* yoke. *Jūji* was directed to return to the *Dasht-i-Khufchāk* in the autumn of 621 H. [A.D. 1224], after the great *huriltāe*, subsequent to which *Jabah [Yamah]* and *Swidāe [Sahūdah]* set out for the *urdū* of the *Chingiz Khān*, and, in due course, joined him during the summer of 621 H., as stated farther on.

Now considering that the two *Nū-yūs* and their force wintered in the *khālak* of the *Khufchāk* tribes, during the winter of 620-21 H. [= A.D. 1223-24], and are supposed to have rejoined the *urdū* of the *Chingiz Khān* "early in that year," the idea of those, originally 30,000 horse, after nearly three years campaigning, during which they must have lost a good many of their number from sickness and fatigue, without allowing for the killed and wounded [P. de la Croix, quoting "Fadlallah," as he styles the "great Raschid," says that "Hubbe and Saūda" had lost 10,000 men, and the *Mughal* ruler had sent off a reinforcement of 20,000 to join them in *Māzan-darān*, when *Tūli* was sent against *Nishāpūr* in 618 H.], "dividing into two sections" after reaching the *Dasht-i-Khufchāk*, and partially destroying "Had-shi Tarkan"—"twisted" into *Astrakhan* by Europeans—and one body going back from thence into the "Crimea," and plundering the Genoese city of "Sudak," then "rejoining their brethren on the Don," and returning by way of "Precop," as stated in "*Mongols Proper*" on the authority, apparently, of *Karamzin* and *Wolff*, respecting this Russian campaign [pp. 94 and 95] is, as regards the expedition under *Jabah [Yamah]* and *Swidāe [Sahūdah]*, at this

ACCOUNT OF THE CROSSING OF THE RIVER JĪHŪN BY  
THE TROOPS OF THE CHINGIZ KHĀN TOWARDS KHU-  
RĀSĀN.\*

After the Nū-īn, Yamah, and the Bahādur Sahūdah, with 60,000 horse, passed through Khurāsān, and proceeded towards 'Irāk, disturbance and tumult arose in Khurāsān, and sedition manifested itself. Each one of the Maliks, in accordance with the commands of Sulṭān Muḥammad, was in some part or other, and they put the for-

period, as probable as that famous march which the "Gurkhan" made "round the Caspian," and which must have occurred at the same time, and much in the same manner, as when the Karā Khūfā "traversed Khurasan and the wastes of Central Asia, and found their way into Kerman without a hint from the Persian historians." What Jabah [Yamah] and Swīdā [Sahūdah] did was subsequent, while Jūfī was absent at the *kurildā* just referred to.

The author of "*Mongols Proper*" appears to have greatly confused events, or his foreign translations have led him astray, for at p. 94, referring to the raid of "Chepé," and "Subutae," we are told that Georgia was then governed by *Rusudan*, daughter of the celebrated "Queen Tamar," and was overrun by the Mughals, and, at p. 132, under "Ogotai," that, in 1235 [= 633-34 H.], the "Mongols" entered "*Erbil*," and in the following year "quitted the plain of *Mughan*"—it was "the rich plain of *Mogan*," at p. 93—on the Caspian, and sacked most of the towns of *Albania*, *Georgia*, and *Great Armenia*, the Queen *Rousudan* [This is the *Rusudan* of p. 94, and *Rusutan* of p. 167. *Rū-īn-dūy* was the name of the fortress in which the female ruler of *Marāghah* held her court, mentioned in para 1, p. 997, of note.], taking refuge in the fortress of "*Ousaneth*" of p. 132, but "*Usaneth*" of p. 167, etc. These events all refer to one and the same period of time.

One must be credulous indeed to believe that a force, which at the outset only numbered 30,000 horse, or even double the number, as our author states, could have performed these exploits. The very fact of the amount of plunder brought along with them indicates a goodly number of beasts of burden or vehicles of some sort, unless their plunder was packed in a very small compass indeed, and must have hampered them in their Krimian journey, and on the Don, or a large portion of their small force must have been left in some secure position to guard it. Therefore, there can be no doubt but that this original force was greatly augmented by reinforcements of Mughals, and fresh recruits; and the probability is, that a number of the Turk and Tāttār soldiery, which were dispersed throughout the Sulṭān's dominions without a head, and some of those taken at the capture of cities and fortresses, must have been taken into pay or forced to serve, and this enabled the two Nū-yīns to bring their bloody raid to a successful termination.

\* The great fault of our author here is that he does not give the events in order as they happened, which makes it somewhat difficult to follow him in this, otherwise, most interesting portion of his History, and which later historians, especially the pro-Mughal ones, and such writers as D'Ohsson and others, seem to have been wholly unacquainted with.

tresses in repair, and surrounded the cities with ditches, and caused preparations to be made for war, and to defend the fortresses as far as lay in their power; for every part was entrusted, by the Sultān, to the charge of some Malik, who had been [previously] appointed thereunto.

The fortress of Tirmid<sup>1</sup> the Sultān entrusted to the [contingent] troops of Sistān, the chief of whom was the Amīr, Zangī-i-Abī-Hafṣ, and the Sarhang [standard-bearer]<sup>2</sup> Sām, and the Pahlawān [champion], Arsiāh,<sup>3</sup> he despatched to the fortress of Walkh<sup>4</sup> of Tukhārīstān, the length and breadth of which fortress is about four *farsangs* [leagues]. The fortress of Bāmīān he gave to Amīr 'Umr, the Bāwardī, and likewise commanded Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of 'Alī-i-Khar-post [the ass-skinned], the Ghūrī, to proceed from Burshor [Purshor—Peshāwar ?<sup>5</sup>] for the purpose of securing the city of Ghaznī<sup>6</sup> and to defend that territory. To Malik Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain<sup>7</sup>-i-'Abd-ul-Malik, Sar-i-Zarrād, who was in the fort and town of Sangah<sup>8</sup> of Ghūr, and Malik Kutb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain son of 'Alī-i-Abi-'Alī,<sup>9</sup> he gave orders to garrison and put in

<sup>1</sup> Tirmid or Tirmiz two modes of writing this name, and both correct.

<sup>2</sup> See note 7, page 103.

<sup>3</sup> But few copies of the text have this name at all, and two copies have respectively a variation of it—Arsibah and Arubah.

<sup>4</sup> A different place altogether from Balkh, for which it must not be mistaken. See page 1024.

<sup>5</sup> It should not be lost sight of that Peshāwar is a modern name. Up to the time of Akbar it was styled Ilagrām. The old capital of the province was Takhāl, west of the present city. Excavations are being made there at present, I understand, and I have no doubt but that some important archaeological discoveries will be made there.

<sup>6</sup> The Bodleian and Ro. As Soc MSS have "and Dihli" after Ghaznīn, which proves how much their copyists knew of geography, or their carelessness, or they must have had very imperfect MSS. to copy from.

<sup>7</sup> In some copies Hasan Ḥusain-i-'Abd-ul-Malik, Sar-i-Zarrād, is the same person as is mentioned at pages 394 and 417, who was set up as ruler over Fīrūz-koh, after the death of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, and just previous to the termination of the Ghūrī dynasty. He is also styled Sipah Sālār.

<sup>8</sup> Sangah is the capital of Mandesh. See page 340.

<sup>9</sup> The same person as mentioned at pages 391, 410, and 416, and several times in the account of the Shamsiah Sultāns. Here is another proof, were any wanting, of an *waṣf* being used for *son* in the very same sentence with *bin*. Abi-'Alī was entitled Shujā'-ud-Dīn, and he was the son of 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain, mentioned at page 338, and he was the father of 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, otherwise Ziyā-ud-Dīn, the Pearl of Ghūr, and the last of its



order the fortresses of the territory of Ghūr, and to use their utmost endeavours in the defence of that country. The Malik-ul-Kuttāb [chief of secretaries], the Ikhtiyār-ul-Mulk, Daulat Yār-i-Tuḡhrā-i [the engrosser of the Tuḡhrā or imperial signature], he despatched to the fortress of Kālūn, and directed that the two famous Pahlawāns [champions] of Khurāsān, whom they were wont to call the sons of the Sozan-gar,<sup>1</sup> should also proceed thither. Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Jūzjānī,<sup>2</sup> was located in the city of Hirāt, and the fortress of Fiwār was entrusted to the charge of the Pahlawān, Aṣīl-ud-Dīn, the Nishāpūrī, the son-in-law of the Pahlawān, Mubārak, the Kurd. The fort of Naṣīr Koh of Tāl-kān was conferred upon the confidential retainers of Malik Shams-ud-Dīn-i-Utsuz, the Hājib, and the fortress of Rang of Guzarwān was made over to the vassals of Ulugh Khān-i-Abī-Muḥammad.<sup>3</sup> The fortresses of Gharjistān were assigned to Sherān, the Amīd [chief of the tribe] of the Abū Sahlān,<sup>4</sup> and those of Ghūr were entrusted to the

Sultāns, and this Kutb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, was the son of 'Alī, brother of the Pearl of Ghūr.

<sup>1</sup> سوزگر—*Sozan-gar*. One set of copies of the text, which almost always agree, in undoubted errors particularly, as I have several times mentioned before, all have سوزک—Yūz-Bak, which is Turkish, while these chiefs were all Tājiks. This is a specimen how copyists make errors, for سوزک is merely a careless error for سوزگر—which words are more alike in *M.S.* than in type. The meaning of *sozan-gar* literally is a needle-maker, but that evidently is not the meaning here, but the worker of a description of quilting for covering or spreading over beds or the like, in which flowers of various kinds are worked of silk and thread, termed *sozanī*.

<sup>2</sup> Written Jūzjānī in nearly every copy of the text, but Jūzjānī is correct here. The parts about Tūlak formed what is called the Jūzjānāt, or the two Jūzjāns of the 'Arab writers, but Gūzgān of the Tājiks. See note 7, page 321, para. 11.

<sup>3</sup> The same personages as are referred to at pages 266, 281, 399, and 414.

<sup>4</sup> One of the 'Arab tribes of which several, or a portion of several, settled in these parts of Asia, towards the Jihūn, at the time of the 'Arab conquest, and some of whom remain to this day.

The late Mr. W. H. Blochmann, M.A., in his criticisms on my account of the rulers of Lakhanawāṭī, contained in his "*Contributions to the Geography and History of Bengal*," JOURNAL BENGAL ASIATIC SOCIETY, Vol. XLIV., page 280, note ‡, asserted that *Sherān by itself is not a Muhammadan name*, and objected to my 'separating the name of the father of the VIth ruler of Lakhanawāṭī [page 573] from that of his sons.' Here is a proof that *Sherān is a name by itself*, and a Muhammadan name into the bargain. See also my *Reply* in the same JOURNAL, Part I., No. III., for 1876.

Maliks of Ghūr. The city of Fīrūz-koh was made over to Malik Mubārīz-ud-Dīn,<sup>1</sup> the Sabzwārī, and the fort Tūlak was placed under the charge of the Amīr, Ḥabashī-i-Nezah-war<sup>2</sup> [expert at the lance]; and, in every fortress and city, the Sultān located one of the distinguished Maliks among the Turks and Tājiks.

When Sultān Muhammad, Khwārazm Shāh, fled towards Māzandarān, and the armies of Islām became dispersed and disorganized, the Chingiz Khān had taken complete possession of the territory of Samrḳand, and had despatched a body of horse<sup>3</sup> in pursuit of the Sultān; and other armies were despatched into various parts of Khurāsān.<sup>4</sup> Arsalān Khān of Qaiālīk,<sup>5</sup> who was a Musalmān, and had [under him] about 6000 [horse-] men, all Musalmāns and 'Ajāmīs, along with Tūlān, the Juzbī, and a Mughal force, was sent against the fortress of Walkh of Tukhāristān, whilst the Chingiz Khān, himself, with the centre [main-body] of his host, advanced from Samrḳand to the foot of the walls of the fortress of Tirmid, and attacked it.<sup>1</sup> After some days,

<sup>1</sup> He is the chief who so gallantly defended Hirāt many months from the second attack of the Mughals, and perished in its defence.

<sup>2</sup> He was famed for his skill at the lance or spear, his favourite weapon, hence his appellation—the lance or spear-carrying, or the skilled at the lance or spear. See page 1059.

<sup>3</sup> An army of 60,000 horse, as mentioned at page 987.

<sup>4</sup> Including an army into Khwārazm, the operations against the capital of which are narrated under the notice of Tūshī, as Jūyī Khān's name is also written.

<sup>5</sup> A Kārūgh Turk of the same tribe as Saif-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan, the Kārūgh [Maj-Gen A Cunningham's Indo-Scythian], only the former belonged to those who continued in their old country, while the latter belonged to those who emigrated to the southwards. See note <sup>2</sup>, pages 374-5.

<sup>1</sup> Having passed the winter of 617 H. at Samrḳand—the winter of 1220 A.D.—the Chingiz Khān, as soon as spring drew near, in the month of Zī-l-Ḥijjah, the last month of 617 H., and after he had despatched his three sons into Khwārazm, moved, with the bulk of his host, towards the Jihūn. He first reached Nakhshab, and, in the pasture-lands in that neighbourhood, remained during the summer, in order to fatten his horses, and, probably, until such time as the water should be low enough to enable him to cross the Jihūn after destroying Tirmid, which was the next point of attack. When the summer came to an end, he set out with his main army by way of Timur Kala'h—from whence he despatched his son Tūlī, at the head of a great army against the cities and fortresses of Khurāsān—towards Tirmid. On drawing near it he despatched an agent to summon it to submit, and threatening the utmost severity in case of non-compliance. The people within, however, placing faith in the strength of their walls—the waters of the Jihūn partly surrounded the fortress—refused

during which the Musalmāns of Tirmid had fought many battles, and had sent great numbers of the Mughals to hell, and many Musalmāns had been martyred and made captive, the people of Tirmid were reduced to helplessness<sup>2</sup> by the stones of [discharged from] the catapults of those accursed ones, and they abandoned the place; and that fortress fell into the hands of the Mughals, who martyred the whole of the inhabitants.

From thence [Tirmid] the Chingiz Khān despatched bodies of Mughal troops down towards Khurāsān, Ghūr, and Ghaznīn; and the passage downwards of every army of Mughals which he sent towards Khurāsān and Ghūr used to be by the fortress of Naṣīr Koh of Tāl-kān.<sup>3</sup> The garrison used to come down from Naṣīr Koh, and fall upon the troops and followers of the Mughal armies, and retake captives<sup>4</sup> and cattle, and despatch those accursed ones to hell. These gallant exploits against the

to do so, and prepared for a vigorous defence. Catapults were used on either side, and great energy was displayed by besiegers and besieged, but, on the tenth day—Alfī and some others say the fifteenth—the Mughals, having succeeded in destroying the defences, gained possession of the place by assault. It is very probable that our author's account of the city having been evacuated is correct.

Under pretence of selecting people for distribution, as usual, the inhabitants were driven out into the open country without the city, and all, both old and young, male and female, were massacred. An aged female whom they were in the act of slaying on this occasion cried out, "Do not slay me until I shall have given up to you a great pearl." On making inquiry subsequently, they found she meant that she had swallowed—in the figurative language of the original—"one of great value, like an oyster-shell, and like a pearl! oyster-shell they treated her—they opened her bowels and found it; and, after that, it was usual with them to treat their prisoners in this way, in hopes of finding jewels."

After this bloody feat, the Chingiz Khān, in Zī-Hijjah of 617 H.—February, 1221 A.D. [according to the pro-Mughal writers, but three months after according to our author—see page 1008—who was close by at the time, and whose statement is preferable here, and at that page of our author's account it will be found], crossed the Jihūn by the Tirmid ferry. Alfī says in the beginning of 618 H., which is much the same, since Zī-Hijjah is the last month of the Musalmān year.

<sup>2</sup> Some copies have 𐤀 which signifies a fissure or rent, particularly in the ground; some 𐤀 which is the shortened form of 𐤀𐤀𐤀 which cannot be right; and others, the oldest, 𐤀𐤀 as translated above. The letters 𐤀 were left out by some copyists, hence the error.

<sup>3</sup> In some copies, Naṣīr Koh. See note <sup>7</sup>, page 1009.

<sup>4</sup> The Printed Text has "camels and cattle"—𐤀𐤀𐤀 𐤀𐤀𐤀—but camels come under the head of cattle I believe

infidels by the Ṭāl-kānis having become frequent, a numerous force from the main body of the Mughal host was sent against the fortress of Naṣīr Koh, and it invested that stronghold completely, and fighting began. Uḡlān,<sup>6</sup> the Juzbī, and Sa'dī, the Juzbī, together with the son-in-law of the Chingiz Khān, which accursed one's name was Fiḡū,<sup>7</sup> the Nū-in, and who had [under them] 45,000 horse, were likewise despatched to make inroads into various parts of Ghūr and Khurāsān. The whole of the cattle and flocks that were around about the cities, towns, ḡasrs, and villages of Khurāsān, Ghūr, and the Garm-sīr, fell into the hands of the Mughal forces, and the country as far as the gate of Ghaznīn, the territories of Tukhāristān, and the Garm-sīr, was ravaged, and the greater part of the Musalmān inhabitants were martyred and made captive. During this same year, 617 H., for a period of eight months, the Mughal troops continued to carry their devastations into different parts;<sup>8</sup> and, at this period, the writer of this ṬABAQĀT, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, was in the fortress of Tūlak, and the writer's brother was in the city and fortress of Fīrūz-koh. In this year likewise, a Mughal army came before the fort of Astīah of Ghūr, and for the space of eleven days vigorously attacked it. Within this fortress was an Amīr and feudatory, the Sipah-Sālār [Leader of Troops], Taj-ud-Dīn, Ḥabashī,<sup>9</sup> i-'Abd-ul-Malik,<sup>9</sup> Sar-i-Zarrād. He was a great Malik with ample resources, but, as the decree of destiny had come, he entered into an accommodation with the Mughals, and went unto them. They took him to the presence of the Chingiz Khān, and he bestowed upon him the title of Khusrāu.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>6</sup> In a few copies Uḡlān, which is also correct, ḡ and ḡā being interchangeable.

<sup>7</sup> The same as mentioned at page 287, and farther on. The Chingiz Khān had many sons-in-law.

<sup>8</sup> The pro-Mughal historians either did not know of these different expeditions or have concealed them because the Mughals were so often beaten. It is very significant to find that they are not to be found in any other work whatever save the present one, and hence, hitherto, this "honey" has not been utilized.

<sup>9</sup> Not an Ethiopian: it is a by-name here. See note <sup>2</sup>, page 368.

<sup>9</sup> He is the brother of Malik Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, Ḥusām-i-'Abd-ul-Malik, Sar-i-Zarrād, mentioned at page 417. See also pages 394 and 1002.

<sup>1</sup> A king, a prince, a just leader, any sovereign of pomp and magnificence. This, very probably, is the person whom the pro-Mughal writers mistake for Malik Khān of Hurāt. See note <sup>2</sup>, page 987, para. 4.

[Prince] of Ghūr, showed him great honour, and sent him back again in order that he might, by means of accommodation, cause the other strongholds to be given up. On his coming back again, after the Chingiz Khān defeated Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barnī, Khawārazm Shāh, on the banks of the river Sind, Tāj-ud-Dīn, Ḥabashī-i-'Abd-ul-Malik, Sar-i-Zarrād, deserted the Mughals, and engaged in battle with them, and attained the reward of martyrdom.

In this same year likewise, the army of Mughals under the Juzbī, Uklān, appeared before the gate of the city of Firūz-koh, and attacked it with great ardour for the space of twenty-one days, but did not succeed in getting possession of it, and they withdrew baffled in their attempt. When the winter season drew near, and the snow began to fall upon the mountains<sup>3</sup> of Ghūr, the Mughal forces turned their faces from Khurāsān towards Māwarā-un-Nahr. The number of the Mughal army which was in Ghūr, Mughals and renegades included, was about 20,000 horse,<sup>4</sup> and the route of that force lay by the foot of the fortress of Tūlak, and, for a period of eight months,<sup>4</sup> a force from that army used to carry their raids up to the foot [of the walls] of that fortress, and the veteran warriors of that fort—and this votary, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, was among those holy-warriors—the Almighty's mercy be upon them!—used to join issue with those infidels, in such wise that it used to be impossible for the infidels to come near the fort; and at times during that eight months, all the day long, the Mughal troops continued to prowl around the foot of the fortress.

Trustworthy persons related that there were so many Musalman captives in the hands of the Mughal infidels, that they had selected, for the Chingiz Khān specially, 12,000 young virgins, who followed [the troops] on foot.

<sup>3</sup> The Printed Text, and a few of the more modern *M.S.* copies, have جُل —peoples, families, etc., instead of جَال—mountains.

<sup>4</sup> This may have been a part of Arsalān Khān's force, or of Fikū's, or, possibly, a separate force altogether.

<sup>4</sup> One of the best and oldest copies of the text has eight days here instead of eight months, while another, immediately after the word month, has "days" also. The sequel proves that in the first case months are correct, and days after, as rendered above. The Mughals and their Musalman Turkish allies remained in those parts the whole period, from the end of one winter to the commencement of the next, during which time, *for days together*, they used to prowl about Tūlak, awaiting an opportunity of attacking or surprising it.

The Almighty deliver them out of their hands, and, in His wrath, take vengeance upon the infidels, and annihilate them!

#### ACCOUNT OF THE PASSAGE OF THE RIVER JIḤŪN BY THE CHINGIZ KHĀN.

When the month of Rabi'-ul-Awwal of the year 618 H. came round, the Mughal hosts, a second time, were despatched into different parts of *Khurāsān*, *Ghūr*, and *Gharjistān*; and, as the route of the Mughal armies used to be before the fortress of Naṣir Koh of Tālkān,<sup>5</sup> the holy-

<sup>5</sup> I have now come to a point where a very great and serious blunder has been made by some of the writers, who, under the *Īl-Khānlān*—the Mughal sovereigns of Persia—the descendants of the *Chingiz Khān*, wrote their general histories, in which the conquests of the Mughals are given in considerable detail, and, consequently, other historians who follow them have generally repeated this grave error, and the fact of its being undoubtedly such I shall, I believe, fully demonstrate. It must cause a rectification of maps, and will overturn some very pretty geographical theories recently put forth in some elaborately illustrated and printed books, which theories hang upon the error in question.

Taking some of my notes from the pro-Mughal writers to illustrate the inroad of the *Saljūqs*, and the life of *Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn*, I have, myself, been led into a slight error, at pages 94 and 130, of supposing all three places to be written as I found them, and as the authors themselves appeared to have imagined, or the scribes for them, in the same way, and was partly led away by Ouseley's translation of *Ibn-Haukal*, but even then had my doubts on the point, at pages 290, 376, 398, 399, and other places, however, after examining the *MASĀLIK WA MANĀLIK*, I found that there was a great difference between the places, and corrected it accordingly, but I little imagined what these grave mistakes on the part of the pro-Mughal writers would lead to here, and what blunders they would commit in consequence.

The error is that of entirely ignoring the existence of Tāl-kān—طالقان—of *Khurāsān*, and mistaking Tāe-kān—طایقان—of *Tukhārīstān*, east of *Kunduz*, for it. The latter place figures in our modern maps, including *Col J T Walker's* last, under the incorrect name of *Tahkhan*, but the word has no *kh* in it, and never had.

This error on the part of these *Muḥammadan* historians is the more to be wondered at, because some of them describe the situation of Tāl-kān sufficiently correctly to prove that it is the very place referred to above by our author, but in no other are such details given. The author of the *Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh*—the earliest of the pro-Mughal writers referred to—says Tāl-kān was an exceedingly strong place, seven days' journey from *Balkh*. The *Fanākātī*, who is very brief, says the *Chingiz Khān* proceeded from *Balkh* to the fort of *Tāe-ghān* [*k* and *gh* being interchangeable] and captured it. In the *Rauzat-us-Ṣafā* and *Habīb-us-Siyar*, it is "Tāl-kān, situated on a lofty hill called *Koh-i-Nukrah*"—the Mountain or Hill of Silver, after a silver

warriors of that fortress used to display valour and self-devotion. This circumstance coming constantly to the hearing of the Chingiz Khān, and the forces sent against that stronghold being unable to gain possession of it, and it being impossible to capture it, he crossed the Jihūn for the purpose of taking it,<sup>6</sup> and pitched his camp on the Pushtah [mound] of Nu'mān and in the Bayabān [uncultivated plain] of Ka'b<sup>7</sup> which is between Tālkān and Balkh.

<sup>6</sup> He did not proceed against it at first, in person, but, subsequently, on finding the troops he had detached for the purpose could not capture the fortress, as explained a little farther on.

To the south of what appears in Col. J. T. Walker's map as "Dasht-i-Chul," both words, *dašt* and *chul*, being precisely of the same meaning—a desert, plain, wilderness, uninhabited tract, etc. The Pushtah-i-Nu'mān lay in about Lat. 36° 20', Long. 64° 40'.

---

mine—and that it was "situated between Marw and Balkh," and, in this, the Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr, and the Tārīkh-i-Alfi agree. The Tārīkh-i-Guzidah also gives the name and situation correctly.

This may also be quite correct; but *نمرکوه* or *نمر* might also, in MSS, be mistaken for *نفرکوه* and I am inclined to think that *نفرکوه* is a mistake for the other, as our author was not likely to pass over such a matter as silver-mines without referring to it.

The older historians and geographers describe both places most distinctly. Baihaqi says "Sultān Mas'ūd on the way from Balkh to Sarakhs reached Tāl-kān;" and that monarch's defeat by the Saljūks occurred in that vicinity Ibn-Haukal says *Tāl-kān* of Tukhārīstān is seven days' journey from Badakhshān, while "*Tāl-kān* of Khurāsān is three stages, i.e. three days' journey from Marw-ar-Rūd" (now, Murghāb), and the same distance from Shīwarghān. Abū-l-Fidā says "the city of Tāl-kān, once a flourishing place, did not exist at this period, but merely a citadel built on Nukrah Koh by a prince of Tukhārīstān, on account of a silver mine which it enclosed." Ibn-al-Wardī [Hylander: Lundæ, 1823] says:—"الطالق [at-Tāl-kān] Urbs in Chorāsān vel Irāk el Ajem (in utraque enim regione urbes ejus nominis sitæ)." There was another place so called in 'Irāk-i-'Ajām, as Ibn-al-Wardī says. THE MASĀLIK WA MAMĀLIK, a work of undoubted authority, says, "From Balkh to Shīwarghān is three *marhalah* or stages, and from the latter place to Tāl-kān, three stages, and from Tāl-kān to Marw-ar-Rūd three stages. Tāl-kān lies among mountains, and has running water and gardens. A river runs between it and Marw-ar-Rūd which is crossed by a bridge." It is often mentioned in connexion with Fāryāb and Marw-ar-Rūd. See page 378. In another place it is said "*Tāl-kān* [which has been mistaken for Tāl-kān] is the largest city of Tukhārīstān, which is a district of Balkh, and is situated in a plain near hills, and is watered by a considerable river." In the various maps also in that work the position of Tāl-kān is plainly indicated. If we turn to WOOD'S work, "*A Journey to the Source of the Oxus*," new ed., pages 153 to 157, we shall find his description agree with what is stated in the MASĀLIK-WA-MAMĀLIK respecting its situation, and it proves, beyond a doubt, from the

When the affairs of the people of the fortress of Naşir Koh came to a crisis, they resigned their hearts to martyr-

physical nature of the country around, that, what he—led away by the mode of writing the name, as given by Elphinstone, and others—calls Talikhan and Taulikhaun was not the place invested and destroyed by the Mughals. It is a place distant from any hills, and not so situated that "every Mughal army passing to and fro between Khurāsān and Ghūr must, necessarily, pass at the foot of the fortress," as our author says. To crown the whole, at page 147, he mentions "Tāe-kān of Kunduz," in connexion with Walwālī, as a wholly different place.

Ibn-Khalkān, too, notices two Tāl-kāns—Tāl-kān of Khurāsān, and Tāl-kān of Kāzwīn, but not Tāe-kān of Tukhārīstān, and, after describing the vowel points, says: "Tāl-kān is the name of two cities, one in Khurāsān, and the other a dependency of Kāzwīn, and contiguous to the fortress of Ala-mūt."

ELPHINSTONE appears to have known nothing of Tāl-kān of Khurāsān, and refers to Tāe-kān of Kunduz, as Taulikhaun. Col. Yule, in his "Essay on the Geography, etc of the Oxus," in the second edition of Capt. Wood's "Journey," p. xxvi, refers to both places by one and the same name—"Tālikān on the Murghāb," and "Tālikān, on the borders of Badakhshān," but, at p. xxxi, he mentions "the more open country below, *Tālikān* (or Tālikān), and Balkh," etc., and, at p. xxxiii, refers again to Tālikān, east of Balkh, as the fortress invested by "Chinghiz," which, of course, is incorrect. Tāe-kān of Badakhshān again is often mentioned in that excellent work the *Agar-ul-Bilād*. As to the *Hayātīlah* see note <sup>2</sup>, page 423.

ELLIOT (Vol. II. p. 578) falls into the same errors as others. He says "Tālikān—a city of *Tukhārīstān* between Balkh and Merv, three days' journey from the latter. There is another town of the same name east of Kunduz. The *Tālikān* of *Tukhārīstān* is the one most frequently mentioned," etc. It is however precisely the reverse, and Tukhārīstān was situated east of *Tālikh*, while Marw is west, in Khurāsān. Tāl-kān had ceased to be known as "a city" or town prior to the time of the Chingiz Khān.

As the clearing up of this terrible error is necessary, I will show how such like mistakes are brought about. PÉTI'S DE LA CROIX'S "HISTORY OF GENGHIZCAN THE GREAT," which is one of the cabbage gardens to which manufacturers of histories have recourse for padding, at page 283, says, that Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn dwelt many weeks in the city of *Balc*, where he got together some troops, and thus it was that "displeased Genghizcan against its people." This is a blunder, and his own Jalāl-ud-Dīn was never at Balkh at this period: "Balc" is an error for Ghaznī. He gives no authority for his statement in the margin, but, soon after, begins to quote "Abulfarag," and "Mirconde." After mixing up a deal of his own with a little from oriental writers, he says, at page 286, quoting "Fadlallah" as well as "Abulfarag,"—"After the Mogul Emperor had thus reduced the city of *Balc* to his obedience, he sent detachments out of his army to *India* [this is incorrect: Ghūr and those parts are referred to by the writers he quotes], and *Persia*, and left a considerable part of his troops in *Transoxiana* to keep it in awe, whilst he went to *Tocarestan*, to besiege the city of *Talcan* (sic), which was but seven days' journey from *Balc* [here he has mixed up his own remarks], and was esteemed the strongest city in all Asia [his own] for its situation, it being built on a very steep mountain [which Tāe-kān of Tukhārīstān is not] called *Nocreceuk* . . . whilst *Tāl* went to execute his father's commands, Genghizcan planted the engines before



dom, and washed their hands of all hope of life. Three months prior to the occurrence of the capture of the fortress, and their attainment of the glory of martyrdom, the whole of them, by mutual consent, donned deep blue [mourning] garments, and used to repair daily to the great masjid of the fortress, and would repeat the whole *Kur'ān* and condole and mourn with each other; and, after doing all this, they used to pronounce benediction on and bid farewell to each other, and assume their arms, and engage in holy-warfare with the infidels, and despatch many of the *Mughals* to hell, and some among themselves would attain martyrdom.

On the *Chingiz Khān*, the *Mughal*, becoming aware of

*Talcus* (sic), etc. . . . he caused to be made, with all speed, a great number of grappling-irons, long nails, hooks, ladders, and ropes, to ascend the Roel [this cannot possibly be applied to *Tāc-kān* of *Kunduz* or *Tukhārīstān*, lying in a plain] . . . animated by the remembrance of the fatigues they had suffered for seven months past, which time the siege lasted," etc. *Talcus* was situated between *Merou* and *Balc* [here he is quite right] and dependent on *Tocaristan* [this is his own, and is wrong] . . . . The first city of this name was not standing in the time of Genghizcan, and there was nothing left but the *Citadel*, which a prince of *Tocarestan* [one of the *Shansabānī* rulers of *Tukhārīstān* and *Bāmīān*] had caused to be built on the top of the mountain *Nocracouh*, so called because of the mines of silver which it enclosed," etc. From the above extract it will be perceived how such errors have been brought about.

Of modern writers, I find THOMAS is the most correct as to the position of *Tāl-kān*, but he spells the word incorrectly—"Talakān" [*"Journal Ro. As Soc.,"* vol. xvii p. 188, "On the coins of the Kings of Ghazni"], and again at page 208:—"This is the *Talakān* in *Juzjān* [*Jawzjān*?], which must not be confounded with the city of the same name or nearly similar name in *Tohhdristān* situated to the eastward of *Kunduz* . . . . The second city is discriminated by many of the early geographical authorities, by the independent orthography of *الطالقان*." The 'Arabic *al* is not however always, or even often, prefixed to the name except in 'Arabic books. The advantageous position for a permanent camp chosen by the *Chingiz Khān* at the *Pushtah-i-Nu'mān* can be seen at a glance on looking at a good map, but this position did not secure

from an attack from the fortress of *Ashiyār* of *Gharjīstān*, mentioned at page 1072, when the *Chingiz Khān* set out towards *Ghaznīn* in pursuit of *Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn*, after the latter had repeatedly overthrown the *Mughal* force opposed to him. The fact of this attack from *Ashiyār* also still further tend to prove the position of the great camp mentioned farther on, and, consequently, the mistaking of *Tāl-kān*, of *Khurāsān* for *Tāc-kān* of *Kunduz* east of *Balkh* involves a blunder of only about 360 miles too far to the east. *Tāl-kān* is, undoubtedly, the place visited by the Chinese traveller, *Hsüen Thsang*, under the name of "Ta-la-kien" on the confines of "Po-la-si" [not "Persia," for *Fārs*, which is anglicized Persia, only applies to a province, and not to *Irān* and lay on the great caravan route between *Turkistān*, *Bukhārā*, by *Tirmīz* and *Balkh*, to *Hirāt* and *Khurāsān*. See also pages 378 and 398

the severity of the conflict carried on by these warriors of the faith, he moved from the Puṣhtah of Nu'mān against the fortress in person, and the attack commenced. On one side of the fortress, where the upper gateway was situated, they had excavated a ditch in the rock, and the Mughals, with stones from their catapults, battered down the bastion at that point, and filled in the ditch, and effected a breach to the extent of about a hundred ells.<sup>2</sup> Still the Mughal forces were unable to take the fort; but the Chingiz Khān, through excessive rage, swore his accustomed oath that he would take that fortress on horse-back.<sup>3</sup> For a period of fifteen days more fighting was carried on, until an even passage was made,<sup>1</sup> so that the capture of the fort of Naṣir Koh might be effected.

When the Mughal cavalry charged into the fortress, 500 men of the defenders of the place, tried warriors, formed in a compact body, and sallied forth from the gateway of the Koh-i-Janīnah<sup>2</sup> [Janīnah mountain] of Ṭālkān, and threw themselves upon the Mughal army, broke through its ranks, and cut their way out. As mountains and ravines were close by, some of them attained martyrdom, but the greater number escaped in safety.<sup>4</sup>

The Chingiz Khān destroyed that fortress, and caused the whole of [the rest of] the inhabitants<sup>4</sup> to be martyred. May God reward them!

ACCOUNT OF THE COMING OF SULTĀN JALĀL-UD DĪN, MANG-BARNĪ, SON OF SULTĀN MUḤAMMAD, KHWĀRAZM SHĀH, TO GHAZNĪN, AND THE EVENTS THAT BEFELL HIM THERE.

Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, sent his commands

<sup>2</sup> When ells occur, the English ell is referred to.

<sup>3</sup> He had to wait for Tuli Khān, whom he had ordered to rejoin him with his forces from Hirāt, before he could succeed in taking the place, according to the Raṣṣat-us-Safā, Ḥabīb-us-Siyar, and some others.

<sup>1</sup> By filling the ditch and levelling the walls.

<sup>2</sup> That is to say, the gateway facing the Janīnah—in some copies, Janīnah—mountain.

<sup>3</sup> The pro-Mughal writers say that it was taken after seven months, that not a soul was left alive within it, and that it was razed to the ground. If any place was entitled to be named Mau-hāligh it was this.

<sup>4</sup> Great fortresses, often miles in circumference, with towns within their walls. What they were may be seen from the sketches of Captain Hart, Dr Atkinson, and in Sale's "*Jalāl-ābād*."

to Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, son of 'Alī-i-Khar-post<sup>a</sup> [the ass-skinned], the Ghūrī, a man of experience, a valiant warrior, and of considerable firmness, who, some time previously, for a period of ten [two ?] years, had held out the fortress of Naṣīr Koh of Tālkān, against the forces of Khwārazm Shāh,<sup>b</sup> and who, in Ghūr and Khurāsān, had, consequently, become famed and renowned, and whose line was of the great Maliks of Ghūr, to set out from Burshor<sup>c</sup> [Purshor—Peshāwar ?], which was his fief, and proceed to Ghaznīn; and, when he arrived there, the forces of Islām turned their faces towards him. In the capital city of Ghaznīn, great numbers of troops assembled, in such wise, that about 130,000 horse, all brave soldiers and completely armed, were mustered with the intention of undertaking this important enterprise, that he should organize the army, and suddenly fall upon the forces of the Chingiz Khān who was then encamped at the Pushtah<sup>d</sup>-i-Nu'mān, and [endeavour to] overcome him.

He [Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Muhammad-i-Khar-post] was constantly occupied in organizing the army, and in the equipment of his train; and those grandees and distinguished men of Khwārazm, who had become severed from the service of Sulṭān Muhammad, were coming to him at Ghaznīn. Shihāb-ud-Dīn-i-Alb, the Sarakhsī,<sup>e</sup> who was the Wazīr of the kingdoms of Ghaznīn and Ghūr on the part of the Khwārazm Shāh, came to Ghaznīn. There was [also] at Ghaznīn a Kot-wāl [Seneschal], whom they used to style Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, who was of the *kaṣbah* [town] of Gird-gān,<sup>f</sup> in conformity with the command of Sulṭān Muhammad, Khwārazm Shāh. Malik Khān of Hirāt, who, at the time of flying [from thence], had proceeded towards Sistān, when the hot season set in, turned his face towards Ghaznīn, and news from Khurāsān was received respecting Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barnī, that he was coming to Ghaznīn. Shihāb-ud-Dīn-i-Alb, the Wazīr, in secret, had

<sup>a</sup> "Ass-skinned" or of "Ass-like skin." It is a nickname. See pages 286 and 1002.

<sup>b</sup> When Ghūr was independent.

<sup>c</sup> In some copies, *by way* of Burshor. See note <sup>b</sup>, page 1002.

<sup>d</sup> Or Pusht, which is the same in signification.

<sup>e</sup> See page 285.

<sup>f</sup> In a few copies of the text—کودگان—Kodakān, or Godagān.

now devised a treacherous plot with Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, the Koṭ-wāl, and had prepared a banquet and invited Malik Muḥammad-i-Khar-post to this convivial entertainment, and Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, the Koṭ-wāl, assassinated that Malik-i-Ghāzī with a knife; and the army which he had gathered together became dispersed.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>2</sup> As our author has not entered into detail here, the following may tend to elucidate the events of this period, but, in some particulars, it differs considerably from his account, though he is certainly worthy of credit, as he was living in those parts at the period in question.

The disloyal conduct of Malik Muḥammad, 'Alī-i-Khar-post, towards Malik Khān of Hirāt, brought about his own downfall.

The Jahān-Kushāe says that, when Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, fled from the banks of the river of Balkh, where he was encamped [on discovering disaffection among some of his Turkish troops, and a plot to deliver him over to the Mughals], Yamīn [our author's Malik Khān—which is his correct name, and whose *title* was Yamīn-ul-Mulk—i. e. the right arm of the country], Malik—the feudatory of Hirāt and its dependencies, having proceeded thither as directed, but unable to remain, retired from thence—which must have happened soon after the departure of the Mughals under Jabah [Yamah] and Swidās [Sahūdāh], on their way towards Nishābūr—by way of the Garu-sir. At this time, 'Alī-i-Khar-post, the Ghūrī, was at Ghaznah on the part of the Sulṭān, with a force of 20,000 men; and, when Yamīn Malik arrived within two or three stages of Ghaznah and encamped at Sūrah [سوره], he despatched an agent to Muḥammad son of 'Alī, saying, "assign us grazing ground [for the horses and other cattle], so that we—thou and I—may continue together [for mutual support], since the Sulṭān has fled towards 'Irāk, and the Mughals and Tāttārs have entered Khurāsān, in order that we may see what may occur in the Sulṭān's affairs."

At this time, the Shams-ul-Mulk, Shuhāb-ud-Dīn [Shuhāb-ud-Dīn-i-Alb just mentioned in the text above. See also page 285], the Sarakhsī, who was the Wazīr, [one of the Wazīrs ?] of the Sulṭān, was likewise at Ghaznah; and Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, the Nisāī, who was Koṭ-wāl [Seneschal] of the fortress and city, was likewise located there. From this it appears that Muḥammad, son of 'Alī-i-Khar-post, was merely feudatory of the province, and the Koṭ-wāl was in independent command. The Khar-post and the Umrā [of his troops] in reply to the Yamīn Malik's [the Yamīn-ul-Mulk's] request, sent answer "We are Ghūrīs and you are a Turk, and we cannot enter into connexion with you. The Sulṭān has assigned fiefs and grazing grounds to each one; let each of us therefore continue in his own locality until we see what may arise." This is a specimen of one out of the many similar causes of the Mughal successes, and the ruin of the Musalmān empire, and—like some modern Catos, who exclaim—"Perish our Indian Empire"—the faction of Ghaznāwī would rather see the Musalmān rule extinguished than their own selfishness and ambition frustrated.

Agents on several occasions passed between them, but no agreement was come to, and the Ghūrī faction was obstinate in its refusal. As might have been expected, the Shams-ul-Mulk, the Wazīr, and the Seneschal, Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn, conspired against the Khar-post, saying, "these Ghūrīs are disaffected towards the Sulṭān, and refuse to allow Yamīn Malik [the Yamīn-ul-Mulk], who is the Sulṭān's kinsman, to enter the Ghaznāwī territory." The whole of the forces of

In the year 617 H., Malik Khān of Hirāt, as above stated, Ghaznah were then collected together, encamped within half a *farsang* of the city; and the Shams-ul-Mulk and Salāh-ud-Dīn, who were among them, conspired against Muḥammad, son of 'Alī-i-Khar-post. They invited him to a feast, at a garden near by, when Salāh-ud-Dīn, seizing the opportunity, stabbed him with his dagger and slew him. After having killed the Khar-post, the Shams-ul-Mulk, and Salāh-ud-Dīn, before the deed became known, succeeded in throwing themselves into the city, and secured the citadel; and the Ghūrīs became disunited, and, after two or three days, Yamin Malik [the Yamin-ul-Mulk] arrived at Ghaznah and assumed authority.

Soon after came news that the Chingiz Khān had reached Tāl-kān, and 2000 or 3000 Mughals—20,000 or 30,000 more likely—came in search of Yamin Malik [the Yamin-ul-Mulk] by way of the Garm-sir. He sallied out with a body of troops to encounter them; but they, finding him too strong for them, did not venture to stand against him, and made a hasty retreat. Yamin Malik [the Yamin-ul-Mulk] pursued them as far as Bust and Tigin-ābād; but the Mughals had gone off in the direction of Hirāt, and he, by way of Kuṣḍār, proceeded into the Sho stān—the Salt Desert between Hirāt, the Kūhstān, and Sijistān.

He had taken along with him the Wazīr, the Shams-ul-Mulk, and imprisoned him in the fort of Kajūrān of Bust and Tigin-ābād, and had left Salāh-ud-Dīn, the Seneschal, in charge of the citadel of Ghaznī; but, after the departure of Yamin Malik [the Yamin-ul-Mulk], the people of Ghaznī rose against Salāh-ud-Dīn, slew him, and gibbeted him. There were at Ghaznī, at this time, two brothers, natives of Turmiz, the Raṣī-ul-Mulk, and the 'Umdat-ul-Mulk [these are, however, *titles* not patronyms], and they became the directors of affairs; and, having gathered together a large following, acquired the whole power. The Khaj tribe [a section, see page 539 and note <sup>2</sup>, para. 2], and Turkmāns, in great numbers, coming from Māwarā-un-Nahr and Khurāsān, congregated at Parṣhāwar, and their Sar-Khel, or Leader, was Saif-ud-Dīn, Aghrāk, who, in the Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh, is called a Turkmān. The Raṣī-ul-Mulk was desirous of moving against them, so that he might acquire power in Hindūstān [sic in MSS., but the provinces on the Indus, part of the present Panjāb, is meant]. He accordingly assembled his forces, and marched against them; but he was overthrown by the Khaj and Turkmāns, and killed with most of his followers. His brother, the 'Umdat-ul-Mulk, was left in charge at Ghaznī during his absence.

The A'zam-ul Mulk, also styled the A'zam Malik in the Jahān-Kushāe, who was the son of 'Imād-ud-Dīn of Balkh, as mentioned above by our author, who was the Hākīm [here signifying that he held the fief and ruled over it] of Nangrahār, and Malik Sher, the Hākīm of Kābul, with the Ghūrī troops of the Sultān, who had gathered around them [they were Ghūrīs themselves], marched upon Ghaznī, and invested the 'Umdat-ul-Mulk in the fort, *which is in the middle of the city*. After they had placed catapults against it, and besieged it for forty days, they captured the fortress; but, on the very same day, arrived the Shams-ul-Mulk, the Wazīr, whom Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, flying towards Ghaznī by way of Khurāsān [see note <sup>2</sup>, page 286], had released on reaching the fort of Kajūrān, in which Yamin Malik [the Yamin-ul-Mulk] had confined him, and had sent on, in advance, to prepare for his reception at Ghaznī. A week after, the Sultān himself arrived; and troops began to rally round him from all quarters, as already related under his reign, and as will be noticed farther on.

had retired before the Mughal forces and come to Ghaznīn, and, from thence, returned again towards the Garm-sīr with the intention of proceeding to Sistān. On the way thither, he conferred the territory of Burshor [Purshor] upon Rāzī-ul-Mulk; and, when Rāzī-ul-Mulk came to Ghaznīn for the purpose of proceeding to Burshor [Purshor], the people of Ghaznīn kept him there. Subsequently to that, however, Rāzī-ul-Mulk set out towards Burshor [Purshor], and the troops of the Ighrāk<sup>\*</sup> [tribe] which were there [congregated] put Rāzī-ul-Mulk to flight. After he had withdrawn from thence the A'zam Malik,<sup>†</sup> the Sipah-Sālār [Leader of Troops], the son of 'Imād-ud-Dīn of Balkh, who was Amīr of Nagrahār [Nangrahār], seized Rāzī-ul-Mulk, and detained him. Suddenly, Sultan Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barnī, arrived in the Ghaznīn [territory], upon which they ['Imād-ud-Dīn and his partizans] slew Rāzī-ul-Mulk; and, shortly after, Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barnī, and Malik Khān of Hirāt, reached Ghaznīn<sup>‡</sup>

Numerous troops joined them, consisting of Turks, Ghūrīs, Tājzīks, Khālī, and Ghuzz, and a great army collected. From Ghaznīn, they pushed forward towards Tukhāristān, and routed an army of Mughals which were before the walls of the fortress of Wālishtān,<sup>§</sup> and came back again [to Ghaznīn].

<sup>\*</sup> In some modern copies of the text, this name appears without the point over ع 's اعراق and in one عراب with the point omitted. Some modern historians, and writers of lesser calibre, have consequently jumped at the conclusion that these men were 'Irākīs, or natives of 'Irāk—Babylonia. They did not apparently know that 'Irāk cannot be so written, but عراق. The word above as it now stands without a point over ع is merely the plural form of 'Arāk—عرق—signifying, juice, essence, etc., and that, of course, is wrong.

The latest, and most amusing mistake on this subject is contributed by Surgeon-Major Bellew, C S I, in a book entitled "*Afghanistan and the Afghans*," written for the present Afghān crisis, in which he says, quoting some translation probably (page 185), that "Changiz at the time of his invasion found the Peshawar valley held by *Irac* or Persian (sic) troops." When, however, Ghazī Afghāns are not Afghāns but Khalick Turks [the Khālī tribe is possibly referred to], and "*Tarims*" are "Ghālīs," and "*Sabaktaghin*" is the "*founder of Ghazni*," what may we not expect?

The word 'Ighrāk,' as written by our author, is confirmed by the Jahān-nūshā and other Histories; and there is not the shadow of a doubt that the 'Ighrāk' were Turks, and, moreover, that they were a section of the great tribe of Khālī, as stated in the account of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn.

<sup>†</sup> See note <sup>\*</sup>, page 1021, where he is referred to.

<sup>‡</sup> On the 17th of Zi-Hijjah—the last month—657 H.

<sup>§</sup> The name of this place has been mistaken by many authors, who follow

When intimation of the coming of Sulṭān-Jalāl-ud-Dīn,

and copy from each other, and they have turned it into Wālfān—والفان—which, in *MS.*, is not so very different from والفان but that a careless copyist might leave out the الف—entirely, seeing that the three shoulders—if they may be so called—in the letter, in its intermedial form in a word—ف—are made one of in *MS.*, thus—الفان—and might put the two points of ف—t—under instead of over the letter, and thus make it —ف, which has been done in the cases in question. Our author, then in his 29th year, and his predecessor, the Bahāḳī, both of whom were natives of these parts, and government officials, must have known the names of such prominent places correctly. They continually refer to Wāliḡhān [in the printed text of the Bahāḳī, however, the three points of ل have been left out] as well as to Walwālij, as totally distinct places, but no such place as Wālfān is ever referred to. It is an undoubted error, as well as the supposed siege of Bāmīān, as I shall presently show.

Now let us examine what the different writers, generally quoted, say on the subject; for the clearing up of this serious error is a matter of necessity. I must first, however, refer to a European writer.

PÉTIS DE LA CROIX, in his Life of "Genghiscan," quotes a number of authors, some of whom are undoubtedly good, and some of little or no authority, but the earliest wrote about a century after our author, who was the Chingiz Khān's contemporary. Some of the originals (quoted by P. de la Croix), such as I could obtain access to on the spur of the moment, I have examined, and I find that, very often, they are not correctly quoted. The Nisāwī's Life of Jalāl-ud-Dīn, I have not had access to, but I am convinced the author could not have made some statements which he has had the credit of. I will first notice P. de la Croix, in juxtaposition with some of his chief authorities. for all I have not space

Quoting "Abulfarag" and "Mirconde," he tells us that "Genghuzcan," after taking *Talcan*, put his troops in motion against *Bamian*, and was still waiting for news of his troops, sent after *Gelaledin* towards India [*Ghūr* and the tracts between the Oxus and *Ghaznīn* are meant, but some troops were subsequently sent east of the Indus. See note 6, page 293 and page 297]. Then [Mirconde] that, "hearing *Gelaledin* was at *Ghama*, he hastened his march to surprise him, but was stopped in *Zabuletan* by the garrison of *Bamian*, which he hoped to take without opposition." He had just begun to batter the place when news reached him that the leaders of the forces he had sent towards India [this is his own, as the sequel proves, or "Marraschi"] had been defeated, and then De la C quotes the Nisāwī's History to the effect that, "two or three days after *Gelaledin* got to *Ghama*, he learnt that the Moguls were near by and investing *Candahar*." This is quite enough to stamp this quotation as incorrect, for there was no such name known to Bahāḳī, or to our author, at that period, and for very many years after, as *Kandahār*—without taking into account its position from *Ghaznīn*—although the site is undoubtedly ancient. It is probably identical with *Tigīn-ābād*, mentioned at page 448. Then we are told that. "*Emin Malec* was come out of *Hirat* to watch the Moguls," and that "*Shamseddin* commanded in the city for him," after De la Croix had just before said that *Shamseddin* had usurped possession of it, and that "he had surprised this city in the absence of *Emin Malec*." [see page 1013 of this translation], while the fact was that, at this time, *Hirat* had been taken by *Tūlī Khān*, and had received a *Mughal Shahnah* or Intendant. Then, again quoting the Nisāwī, as he says, "*Emin Malec* consented" to

## Mang-barnī, and Malik Khān of Hirāt, and the gathering

join his sovereign, and they now moved to relieve Candahar "before the citadel was taken," and "surprised the Moguls, who had already taken and plundered the town," and drove them off with great slaughter, "the town being full of dead bodies of Moguls and Tartars." All the Mogul army at Candahar perished! The Sultān "repaired Candahar," and "returned to Ghazna."

I have no opportunity, at present, of examining the Nisāwī's History, but I feel certain that no such name as the city of *Ḳandahār* will be found in it, unless the interpolation of some more modern writer or copyist; and further that it will not be found in any History of that period. *Ḳandahār* adjoins the tract called the *Zamīn-i-Dāwar*, which *Baihaḳī* so often refers to in connexion with *Bust* and *Ḳuḡdār*, and whose work, devoted to a single reign, is so full of detail; and he mentions *Wālight* in connexion with those places, but never mentions such a place as *Ḳandahār*. At page 319, our author too, in his account of the five great mountain ranges of *Ghūr*, says, that "the fourth is the mountain tract of *Warānī*, in the valleys and outskirts of which are the territories of *Dāwar* [the *Zamīn-i-Dāwar*], *Wālight*, and the *Ḳaḡr* of *Kajūrān*." Is it possible that such a position as that of the city of *Ḳandahār* could then have been in existence, and lying in the easiest route between *Ghaznīn* and *Bust*, without being once mentioned? It is also improbable that *Wālight* can be *Wālightān*, because we are distinctly told that the latter was in *Tukhārīstān*, which lies some five degrees farther north than *Ḳandahār*. The so-called "Saygīl," of some European writers, is merely an error for *Sigūz*, or *Sijūz*. The ancient name too of *Ḳandahār* is said to have been *Wahind*, and of the province *Bālyūs*.

Neither *Baihaḳī* nor our author, who constantly give names of places and routes, especially the former, as from *Hirāt* to *Balkh*, and *Ghaznīn* to *Balkh*, ever once mentions such a place as *Wāliān*, which, as I have already remarked, is a mistake of some copyist for *Wālightān*, but both of them mention *Walwālij*—*روالى*. The only places mentioned in the *MASĀLIK WA MAMĀLIK* and in *ISN-ḤAUḲĀL* in any way approaching the words under discussion, in the parts indicated, are *Zawālin*—*روالى*—and *Wālin*—*روالى*—with the—*ر*—left out in the latter, and which places neither *Baihaḳī* nor our author mention, and they are undoubted errors for *Walwālij*. See note 2, page 288. There is a *Walshān* in Col. J. T. Walker's last map, but no reliance can be placed on our maps for correctness of names—especially in Oriental names—names in the map of a country—which ninety, if not ninety-nine, times out of every hundred, are inserted on oral evidence alone, but, for historical accuracy, should be written first in the language of the country and people, and then inserted in the map. *Walshān* of Col. Walker is, however, just 90 miles N. of *Bāmīān* and 180 N. of *Ghaznīn*, and is not mentioned in any oriental History or Geography, that I am aware of.

P. de la Croix then goes on to say, first quoting *Abū-l-Faraj* for "Candahar" [page 306], and then *Fadlallah* [i. e. *Raghib-ud-Din*, *Faḡl-ullah*], that the *Chingiz Khān* determined, on hearing of this defeat, to despatch *Tūlī*, his son, against the Sultān, and was about to send him off with 80,000 horse, when another courier arrived announcing the revolt of *Hirāt*, and, instead, *Tūlī* was despatched thither, and continues: "Just after despatching *Tuhcan* [*Tūlī Khān*, however, had nothing whatever to do with the second attack upon *Hirāt*. See page 1049, and note 2], and after an unsuccessful attack on



of the troops of Islām, reached the Chingiz Khān, he

*Bamian*, news reached him of the movements of *Contumcon* Nevian [the Nā-yān, Fīkū, previously sent into "India"], who had arrived within a day's march of Gelaleddin, who advanced [quoting "Nisavi" and "Fadlallah"] to meet them, although one-fourth superior to his own force, and came upon them just beyond a town called *Biruman*, within a day's journey of Ghazna." This force of Mughals was overthrown as already related above, and at pages 289-90 of this Translation. Then we have the astonishing statement [from "Nisavi" it is said] that, *after* this defeat at Biruman [Barwān], "There was, some days' journey from thence, a party of Tartars [not Mughals] who were besieging a fortress called *Onala* [the Wāfān of others], who, when they heard of the battle of *Biruman*, raised the siege and fled, and that "the defeat of the *Moguls* and *Tartars* was quickly known to the Emperor, who was still before Bamian." Then follows the account of its capture and the massacre of every soul. The subsequent statements are generally correct.

As to some of the originals quoted, which I have examined in order to test the doubtful passages, I find that Rashīd-ud-Dīn's account is very different. He says that Amīn Malik [Vamīn-ul-Mulk—Malik Khān of Hīrāt] joined his sovereign with 50,000 men from the neighbourhood of Ghaznī, that the Sultān married his daughter, that the Sultān and his forces continued the whole winter at Ghaznī, and during that time, on the news of his arrival having spread, was joined by Saif-ud-Dīn, Ighrāk, with 40,000 men, and also by the Amīrs of Ghūr and their followers. He then goes on to say, that, early in the spring, hearing that the Mughals were attacking Wāfān [our author's Wāghān], and its being hard pressed, he advanced to Barwān [it was near the sources of the Lohgar river], left all his heavy materials there, and moved to attack them, as related in the notice of Jalāl-ud-Dīn, at page 288, note <sup>2</sup>. The Chingiz Khān heard of the first reverse within the limits of Tāl-kān, not at Bāmīān, as De la Croix asserts, and not one word is mentioned about any siege of Bāmīān, and he, after hearing of the last defeat of his troops, moved at once towards Ghaznī from Tāl-kān. The Fanākatī mentions Tāl-kān of Khurāsān, and makes no mention of any siege of Bāmīān.

The Jahān-Kushāc, the account in which I have detailed farther on, says Amīn Malik was in the vicinity of Ghaznah when the Sultān arrived there, and agrees with Rashīd-ud-Dīn's statements in all things, brings the Chingiz Khān, at once, from the vicinity of Tāl-kān of Khurāsān to Ghaznī, and makes no mention whatever of any siege or capture of any place called Bāmīān.

The Rauzat-us-Safā [De la Croix's *Mirconde*, meant for Mīr Khāwind] does not mention Wāfān at all, and the Chingiz Khān is made to advance from Tāl-kān [the correct name is given], but, to show his geographical knowledge, probably, the author says he came by Andar-āb to Bāmīān, by which the Mughals must have gone only 7 degrees of Long.—some 480 miles—directly from W. to E. to reach Andar-āb, then come backwards some 120 or 130 miles more to the S W to reach Bāmīān through some of the most difficult ground in Asia, while between Tāl-kān and Bāmīān the distance is only about 160 miles, and about equidistant from Marw-ar-Rūd and Balkh.

The Ḥabīb-us-Siyār, written by the son of the author of the Rauzat-us-Safā, agrees with that work.

The Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr agrees with Rashīd-ud-Dīn, and the Fanākatī,

nominated the Nū-in, Fikū, who was his son-in-law, to

except that, in it, we have Bārānī—as in several authors—for Barwān, and Bāmīān for the Bāmīān of the Rauzat-uṣ-Ṣafā.

The Ṭarīkh-i-Ibrāhīmī says nothing about Bāmīān, but the Mujāmaʿ-ul-Khiyār agrees with the Rauzat-uṣ-Ṣafā.

Abū-l-Ghāzī, Bahādūr Khān, says, that, after Balkh was destroyed, the Chingiz Khān despatched 30,000 men, under several leaders, including the Nū-yān Kutūkū, “to cut off [the Jāmiʿ-ut-Tawārīkh says, “to keep open”] the communication between Ghaznīn [in the Kazān edition wrongly spelt Gazmīn], Gharjstān, Zābul, and Kābul [wrongly spelt Zābul and Kāmīl], and drive him into Kīch; and thus shows, likewise, that Ghūr and its dependencies, and Zābulistān—N W and S W. of Ghaznīn, were the parts assailed by the Mughals, and not Parwān N N.E. of Kābul, which is quite in an opposite direction. The translation, so called, of Abū-l-Ghāzī, Bahādūr Khān’s history, however, leaves out all mention of Kīch, and much of the details; and says that the Mughals separated into two bodies, and that Kutūkū, with his force, moved towards Hirāt to prevent Khān Malik [the Yamīn-ul-Mulk] from joining the sultān. “Another body,” the translator continues, “nearly surprised Saygill,” and he also mentions *Saygill* above, where the Turki original has *Zābul*. Such a place as Saygill is not once referred to, and, instead of Saygill, the Turki has Wālfān. There is no mention of Barwān or of Kandahār, in fact Abū-l-Ghāzī, Bahādūr, does not give the name of the place where Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn overthrew the Mughals twice, but, with respect “to Tāl-kān, Andar-āb, and Bāmīān, he implicitly follows the Rauzat-uṣ-Ṣafā. One great blunder on the part of this translator speaks volumes for the value of his authority in these matters. He says that “Sultān Khān Malik”—as he styles Malik Khān of Hirāt—the Yamīn-ul-Mulk—after the desertion of Saif-ud-Dīn, Ighrāk, and Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn’s retreat to the Āb-i-Sind, “returned to his government of Hirāt.” It had been already invested and taken by the Mughals under Tūlī Khān, at this time, as already related.

The most astonishing statement, respecting Balkh and Bāmīān, is contained in Alfī, which I shall presently notice, but, as to Jalāl-ud-Dīn’s movements from Ghaznīn, it is very brief, and agrees with Rashīd-ud-Dīn, and the Jahān-Kushā, that the Sultān set out in the beginning of spring to Barwān, pushed on to relieve Wālfān, and defeated the Mughals, who retired across the river [the Hirmand, no doubt]—breaking the bridge that the Musalmāns might not follow them, and made their escape. The Sultān returned to Barwān, after relieving Wālfān [Wālightān. The same remarks apply here as at the head of this note]. But, on the seventh day after, a Mughal army of 30,000 men. [Fikū’s force was 45,000 our author says], which the Chingiz Khān had despatched under the Nū-yān, Sankghūr, appeared on the scene, but they were overthrown with great loss, notwithstanding their stratagem of dummy horsemen. Then follows Saif-ud-Dīn, Ighrāk’s desertion and the Sultān’s retreat to the Sind, “which is now known as the Nīl-Āb.” The same work also adds that the Chingiz Khān, at this time, had brought the siege of Tāl-kān to a conclusion, and Bāmīān is not once mentioned in his subsequent movements from Tāl-kān to Ghaznīn.

The most conclusive proofs, however, against a long siege of any place named Bāmīān are the dates and the facts that the Chingiz Khān heard near Tāl-kān of the repeated defeats of his troops, and that he moved straight from the Pushtah-i-Nuʿmān to Ghaznīn, and, to enable him to reach it by the

advance from Hirāt and Khurāsān towards Ghaznīn. When he [with his troops] arrived on the confines of Barwān,<sup>7</sup> Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn advanced against that army, and gave it battle, defeated it and put it to flight, and despatched great numbers of the Mughal infidels to hell. A second, and a third time, Mughal armies advanced, and were overthrown.

In the army of Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn were a great number of the Ighrāk [tribe], all warlike men, and ruthless horse-men, and, between that body of the Ighrāk, and the 'Ajāmis and Khawārazmīs, a quarrel arose respecting the booty, and hostility ensued; and that body of Ighrāk troops separated from Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, and went off to another place,<sup>8</sup> and the Sulṭān remained with the Turks [only].

shortest route, there was no need for him to have passed the place which appears in the maps as Bāmlān at all. See note <sup>7</sup>, page 1024.

<sup>7</sup> It lay near the sources of the Lohgar [now Logar] river.

<sup>8</sup> See note <sup>3</sup>, page 490, next to last para. and note <sup>2</sup>, page 498.

With respect to these movements, a very pretty muddle has been made in "*Mongols Proper*," page 89, and shows what a profound knowledge of the ethnology as well as the geography of these parts some of the "authorities" quoted therein must have possessed. After turning "Khan Melik," [Malik Khān—the Yamīn-ul-Mulk] into "the late governor of *Mern*," it is stated that "Seif ud dīn Agrūk, a Turkoman chief, brought his Turkomans and *Kalladjēs* [the latter a mixed race of Arabs and Turkomans, who wandered between the *Indus* and the *Ganges*]," joined Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, and, subsequently, "Seif ud dīn" is made to "retire into *Beloochistan*!" At page 716 of the same book, there is a note to this, and it is said there: "this is a statement from Wolff, and it is not quite exact." Truly! "Erdmann says, towards Kerman and Lenkoran. Raverty calls these mountains *Kaymān* and *Sankurān*. D'Ohsson says he retired to Peshawar. This is no doubt right [of course! but see note <sup>3</sup>, page 230, para. 6, and note <sup>2</sup>, page 498, para. 5], and his followers were not the Kankalis but the *Kalladjēs*."

The *Jahān-Kushāe*, which is generally well-informed on matters of detail, and also tolerably correct—save and except the practice of always lessening the number of the Mughals, and increasing the number of their opponents four-fold or more, and concealing their defeats—says, that Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn marched towards Barwān, which is the boundary of the Nāmīān [Bāmlān] territory [the situation of Barwān near the sources of the Lohgar river agrees with this description], where several routes converge, in order that he might become acquainted with the state of affairs, when, during his absence from Ghaznīn, a force of 10,000 or 12,000 Mughals [45,000, see p. 1006], who were in pursuit of him, reached Ghaznīn. The place being denuded of troops, they entered the city [!! suburbs?], burnt the *Adīnah* [Friday] *Masjid*, and slew all who happened to fall in their way, but, next day, after plundering the country around, they set out in pursuit of the Sulṭān, gave him battle [this is his pro-Mughal bias, and is quite the reverse of what took place, as confirmed by every other writer without exception—the author was a high official in the Mughal

When the *Mughal Nū-in, Fīkū*, returned defeated to the *Chingiz Khān*, the latter moved [from his camp at] the

service], and were defeated, and they retired to *Tāl-kān*, before which the *Chingiz Khān* then was. The writer then hushes up the subsequent overthrows of the *Mughals* at the *Sulṭān's* hands, and proceeds to narrate the defection of a great part of his troops, consequent on the quarrel between *Yamīn Malik*, as he styles *Malik Khān* of *Hirāt* [whose title was the *Yamīn-ul-Mulk*. See page 287, and page 540, note <sup>1</sup>, para 2], and *Saif-ud-Dīn, Ighrāk*. *Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ighrāk*, together with other *Khalj* Amīrs, and the *A'zam Malik* [the *A'zam-ul-Mulk*, son, of *Imād-ud-Dīn, the Balkhī*], a *Ghurī* chief, with their troops, *Khalj* [there were *Kanjulas*, and *Ghuzz*, among them too. See page 376], *Turkmāns*, and *Ghūrīs*, went off in the direction of *Parshāwar*, while the other *Turks* and *Khwārazmīs*, with the *Sulṭān*, retired towards *Ghaznīn*.

It must not be lost sight of, in connexion with this mention of *Ghuzz*, that they were once in possession of *Ghaznīn*, *Kābul*, and *Zābul*.

There, *Khalj* *Turks*, under the name of *Kkhluck*, Dr. Bellew makes *Ghald* *Afghāns* of, and Col G. B. Malletson first turns them into "*Abdāhs*" and afterwards into "*Ghulzais*!"

These selfish and disloyal chiefs, however, very soon received their deserts. They proceeded towards *Nangrahār* [originally called *Nek-anhār*—the district immediately south of the *Kābul* river, and extending from *Bhattī-koṭ* on the east to the *Surkh-Āb Kotāl* on the west, and to *Kajā* on the south, which was the fief of the *A'zam Malik*, and then included in the jurisdiction of *Hurshor*, or *Parshāwar*]. Arrived there he entertained the other chiefs for a time, but, there being aversion between *Nūh*, the *Jān-dār* [in *ELLIOT*, incorrectly rendered from an imperfect *MS*, probably, "*Kok Jān-dār*," a strange name for a man ګوچ has been read ګوچ and mistaken probably for ګوچ—the former is a proper name, the latter signifies a mountain. The office of *Jān-dār* has been previously described], who was head of a *khal* [clan] of about 5000 or 6000 families, and *Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ighrāk*, he, in consequence, turned his face towards *Parshāwar* with his 20,000 followers, while *Nūh*, the *Jān-dār*, stayed behind in the pasture-lands of *Nangrahār* [not "cantonned himself," as in the work above quoted]. When *Saif-ud-Dīn* had proceeded one stage on his way, he sent a message to the *A'zam Malik* saying—"We are as father and son towards each other thou the son, I the father. If thou desirest my good pleasure, send away *Nūh*, the *Jān-dār*, to his own place of dwelling, and his own locality, and do not allow him to remain in *Nangrahār* [The *Khalj* tribe—or rather a portion of them—had been located in the neighbourhood of the *Safed-koh*, on the southern slopes, in *Karmān* and *Shalūzān* for several centuries previous. See note 5, page 539, para 2]. The *A'zam Malik* replied "It is not well, at this time of warfare, that antagonism should exist among the soldiers of *Islām*." Thus saying, he rode off with some fifty of his *Khowās*—or retainers—after *Saif-ud-Dīn, Ighrāk*, to endeavour to bring about a reconciliation between him and *Nūh*, the *Jān-dār*. *Saif-ud-Dīn* went forth to receive the *A'zam Malik*, and brought him in, and seated him by his side at a convivial drinking party. The *A'zam Malik* began to refer to the matter of *Nūh*, the *Jān-dār*, and to interpose in his favour. *Saif-ud-Dīn, Ighrāk*, inebriated as he was, suddenly got up, mounted his horse, and, attended by 100 horsemen, set out towards the encampment of *Nūh*, the *Jān-dār*. *Nūh*, under the impression that he was coming to him, consequent on the *A'zam Malik's* intervention, with a friendly object, went forth, with

Puṣṭah-i-Nu'mān, with all the forces remaining there with him, and turned his face towards Ghaznīn. He fought a battle with Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barnī, and Malik Khān of Hirāt, and other Khwārazmī Maliks who stood by him, on the banks of the Sind river; and Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn and the troops of Islām were defeated, and threw themselves into the Sind river. Of the Musalmāns some were drowned, some attained martyrdom, some were made captive, and a few escaped in safety out of the river.

#### ACCOUNT OF THE TAKING OF WALKH \* OF TUKHĀRISTĀN.

When, in conformity with the command of the Chingiz Khān, Arsalān Khān of Kaiālīk, the Musalmān, with his own troops, and the Juzbī, Tūlān, the Mughal, marched to the fortress of Walkh,<sup>1</sup> they sat down before it for a period of eight months; and, as that fortress had no

his sons, to receive him, and saluted him, when Saif-ud-Dīn, Ighrāk, drew his sword to smite Nūh, but his followers seized him, and cut him to pieces.

When intimation of Saif-ud-Dīn, Ighrāk's, fate reached his camp, his people said: "This was deception which the A'ṣam Malik adopted, in concert with Nūh, in order to destroy the Ighrāk Malik," and, under this supposition, they seized the A'ṣam Malik, and slew him, and the Ighrāk forces fell upon the encampment of Nūh, and slew him and all his sons. Great numbers were killed on either side, and the Ghūrīs [غوریان—mistaken for غورتان—women, in ELLIOT, vol II, p 401, out of which a ridiculous episode has been made that "even the women took part in the affray!"] took part in the fighting, and a great number were killed.

About that time also Bak-chak and 'Alā-ul-Mulk, بدر [the word is doubtful. It might be Kunduz—'Alā-ul-Mulk of Kunduz, but it is not "Ṣadr," certainly, as in ELLIOT], by command of the Chingiz Khān, arrived in order to bring these wine-bibbers to condign punishment. Bak-chak was Amīr of the Mughals, and 'Alā-ul-Mulk, the Sar-Khel—head of the levy or body [yarīk] of local footmen; and so the remainder of those Khālī, Turkman, and Ghūrī troops, two or three months after they had deserted the Sultān, were all either slain and dispersed at the hands of each other, or slaughtered by the troops of the Chingiz Khān, in such wise that not a trace of them was left. See also page 1043.

No doubt, all these events had something to do with the subsequent movements of the Kārlūks, or Kārlūghs, and the Khālī, towards Sind. See note <sup>o</sup>, page 374, note <sup>p</sup>, page 498, page 534, and page 539, note <sup>q</sup>.

<sup>o</sup> In the best St. Petersburg MS. the copyist, in this heading, had written بلـWalkh—but afterwards crossed out the و and prefixed, to the word—بلـ. In some copies of the text to this heading is added "and the fortresses of the territory of Bāmīān," but Walkh is alone referred to.

<sup>1</sup> They had a force of 20,000 men with them.

approach [save one] in any direction, they gave orders to the Mughal troops in such wise that, around and in the parts adjacent to that mountain skirt, they kept felling trees and throwing their trunks and branches at the foot of the fortress, and making it appear to the people within the stronghold that they would [really] fill up the darah [defile], whereas it could not be filled up in the space of a hundred years from its profundity;<sup>3</sup> but, as the vengeance of

\* This description will not suit the situation of Balkh in any way whatever, which, as the MARĀLIK WA MAMĀLIK, IBN-HAUKAL, and others, tell us, is situated on level ground, at the distance of four farsakh—leagues—from the mountains, and that it was fortified [notwithstanding the author of "*Mongols Proper*," p. 80, tells us "it was unfortified"] with ramparts and a citadel.

As I have hinted before, it seems to me, that, as the words درا and درا are something similar in appearance, and درا sometimes used for درا and *vice versa*, and as Bāmi is another name for the city of Balkh, some of these writers, who incorrectly make Balkh stand a siege of thirty-seven days, may have jumbled the whole of these words together, and made Bāmfān out of it.

It will be noticed that our author, although he gives so many details respecting Walkh and other places—strong hill fortresses, sometimes miles in girth—[which the pro-Mughal historians seem quite uncognizant of, or the operations concerning which they were determined not to notice, and never quote], and knew so much about them, makes not the slightest allusion to any investment of Balkh, nor to its having submitted to the Mughals, nor to the slaying of its inhabitants by those infidels. Had such happened, so near his native place, is it possible he could not have known it? or that, had he been aware of it, he would have concealed it, especially when there was no reason for doing so?

Most of the works previously referred to are exceedingly meagre in their details, and there are numerous discrepancies in their accounts, and confusions in their dates, respecting the movements of the Chingiz Khān after the capture of Tirmid. The Tārīkh-i-Alfi says "Having passed the river Amūfah at the Tirmid ford, early in 618 H., the Chingiz Khān moved towards Balkh [our author's Walkh], which, after an investment of thirty-seven days, was taken by storm, the people having resisted obstinately to the last. He gave orders for a general massacre of the people of Balkh because, at Bāmfān, his grandson, Chaghatai's son, had been killed [here is a muddle! and so the attack on Bāmfān took place *first*, after crossing the Oxus! This remark sufficiently proves how much some of the historians are at sea. Crossing the Oxus at Tirmid, Balkh would be reached first, and Bāmfān is some 150 or 160 miles S. & E. of it], and, therefore, to avenge his death, the Chingiz Khān gave orders for a general massacre of the people of Balkh, and all, both young and old, perished."

P de la Croix pretends, but does not quote his author here, but, subsequently, quotes "Mirconde," that it was because Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn was "so favourably received by the people of Balc," where "he dwelt many weeks" [but near which he never went], that the people were massacred.

The other version, in which the majority of the works I have been quoting agree, is, that, in 617 H. [the end of the year is meant, but, some say, in the

Heaven, and the decree of Fate, had come down [upon the Musalmāns], the son of the Ra'īs<sup>a</sup> [Chief] of Walkh came into the camp of the Mughals, and he directed and guided

first month of 618 H., when the Chingiz Khān appeared before Balkh, the chief ecclesiastics and other personages went forth to receive him with offerings for his acceptance, and tendered the submission of the city; but, as Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn was still in existence, and causing tumult and disorder [it is here P. de la Croix's error occurs], the inhabitants were expelled from the city into the open country without, and all massacred to the number of 52,000 souls, after which, the city of Balkh, "the Tabernacle of Islām," as it is termed, "was levelled with the plain in which it stood."

The Raṣṭat-uṣ-Ṣafā says, that, "in the history of Balkh it is stated, that the city and its dependent villages—not the city only—had attained to such a degree of prosperity and populousness, that it contained no less than 1200 Jāmi' Masjid, and 1400 baths, and that there were some 50,000 Sayyids, Mullās, and Maulāwīs there [and yet all the inhabitants were massacred, and the number was 52,000 in all!] . . . Of all the lofty and splendid buildings which the city contained, not a vestige was left standing." The rest agrees with the accounts above given.

Now, considering that our author is so correct with respect to Tāl-kān of Khurāsān, and how most authors have blundered with respect to it, and, as he, who was a native of these very parts, was dwelling within the fortress of Tilak at the time, and personally acquainted with several of the great chiefs he names, I conceive that what the other Histories I have previously referred to speak of as Balkh, is no other than the great fortress of Walkh, that their Bāmīān is his Tāl-kān, and Wālfān, as some style it, and "Candahar" of others, is his, and Baihaḳt's, Wāliḡtān.

The MASĀLIK WA MAMĀLİK and IBN-HAUḠAL certainly tell us that "Tukhārīstān and Bāmīān are districts of Balḡh," and that "Bāmīān is a town half as large as Balkh, situated on a hill, and is the only town in the district situated on a hill," but others tell us [see note<sup>a</sup>, page 426] that there was no town or city so called, and that the chief place in the Bāmīān district was Rāṣīf—راصف—or Raṣīf—رصف—but in the History of Tīmūr it is written Arṣuf—ارصف—and is repeatedly mentioned. In his account of the dynasty of Bāmīān and Tukhārīstān, our author never once mentions such a town, city, or fortress, but he constantly mentions Balkh, and does so in this Section, as well as Walkh, Walwāli, and Wāliḡtān, and in this Section, also refers to "the fortress of Bāmīān," which, as in some other instances, might be correctly rendered, *a* or *the* fortress of or in the district of Bāmīān. Our author's "fortress of Bāmīān" is, doubtless, that which is called by modern travellers "Goolgooleh," built upon an isolated rock in the middle of the valley, through which runs the river of Bāmīān, and near which, in after times, a town named after the district sprung up. Excavations in the rocks, as may be noticed at page 1058, are by no means peculiar to the well known ones near this Bāmīān. The great fortress of Zubāk, situated at the extreme end of a defile on one of the two routes from Kābul to the comparatively modern Bāmīān, is, in my idea, the Walkh of our author. See "*Salā's Defence of Jalāl-ābād*," and note<sup>a</sup>, page 1058.

<sup>a</sup> It was previously stated that the Sarhang, Sām, and the Pahlawān, Arslah, were sent to the fortress of Walkh, but who the Ra'īs was is not mentioned.

them by a path by which a single light-footed person, on foot, alone could proceed. In the ridges of that mountain [on which the fortress stands] are numerous niches of stone, like unto couches ;<sup>4</sup> and, for the space of three nights and days, he continued to take the Mughals and conceal them in those niches until a considerable number of men ascended towards the fortress. On the fourth day, at the dawn of morning, the enemy raised a shout, and fell with their swords upon the band which guarded the gateway of the fortress, until they cleared the gateway completely of its defenders. The Mughal army [now] ascended to the place, and martyred the whole of the Musalmāns within it, and set their hearts at ease respecting that momentous affair.

They [the Mughal leaders] were directed so that they proceeded from the height of the fortress of Walkh to the foot of the [walls of the] fortress of Fīwār of Qādas,<sup>5</sup> and invested that fortress likewise.

Victory to the true believers, and destruction to the infidels !

#### ACCOUNT OF THE CAPTURE OF THE CITIES OF KHURĀSĀN, AND THE MARTYRDOM OF THEIR INHABITANTS.

Trustworthy persons relate after this manner, that the Chingiz Khān had four sons. The eldest of them was named Tūshī,<sup>6</sup> the next younger than he was named Chaghatāe, the third was called Uktāe, and the fourth, who was the youngest of all, was named Tūlī. When the Chingiz Khān marched from Māwarā-un-Nahr into Khurāsān, he despatched Tūshī and Chaghatāe, with a large army, towards Khwārazm,<sup>7</sup> Khifchāk, and Turkistān ; and Tūlī was nominated to proceed, with a numerous army, towards the cities of Khurāsān ; and Uktāe, the Chingiz Khān kept near himself.

In the year 617 H., Tūlī turned his face from the [great

<sup>4</sup> Recesses in the hills probably.

<sup>5</sup> See page 375, note \*.

<sup>6</sup> Which is also written Jūjī, using the *Īrānī*.

<sup>7</sup> The account of the capture of the capital of Khwārazm will be found in the notice of Tūshī farther on. He was afterwards to enter Khifchāk.



camp at the] *Pushtah-i-Nu'mān* towards the city of Marw, and took that city, and martyred its inhabitants.<sup>6</sup> From

<sup>6</sup> Our author and all other Musalmān and Mughal historians must be wrong, for does not Col. Malleon, C.S.I., in his "*History of Afghanistan from the Earliest Times*," which some writer in the "*Times*" has declared "a marvel of accuracy," tell us at page 113 that "*Chinghiz*" himself took Balkh, Merv, Herat, Nishāpor, and Tus in succession? Our author gives no particulars respecting the fall of Marw-i-Shāh-i-Jahān, one of the most celebrated and ancient cities of *Khurāsān*, and therefore I will endeavour to supply them from other writers. After the *Chingiz Khān* had crossed the *Jihūn* and destroyed Balkh, but *Walikh*, according to our author and some others, he determined to subjugate *Khurāsān*, and despatched, in 618 H., from the neighbourhood of *Tāl-kān*—between that place and Balkh [which agrees with our author's statement], 80,000 horse, computed as one tenth of his whole host, under his youngest son, *Tūli*, with whom he associated *Taghāchār*, a younger brother of the *Nū-yān*, *Qarāchār*, the ancestor of *Amīr Tīmūr*. *Taghāchār*, on account of his having married one of the *Chingiz Khān*'s daughters, is "styled the *Gūrgān*, which is to say, in the Turki language, son-in-law, and *dāmād* in Persian," and, therefore, those who have hitherto imagined that this is a Chinese title peculiar to, and first used with reference to *Tīmūr* as having married into the family of "the great Khan," [but that was not the reason] will perceive that, although *Amīr Tīmūr* may have been the last to whom that Turki title was applied, he was certainly not the first.

When *Tūli* had proceeded forward a few marches, he detached *Taghāchār*, in advance, with 12,000 horse, some say 10,000, to *Nīshābūr*, imagining probably, after what had been stated to *Jabah* [*Yamah*] and *Swidāe* [*Sahūdah*], as related previously, that that city would be given up at once. The *Mughals* were mistaken, however, for the *Majir-ul-Mulk*, the *Kāfi*, *'Umr-i-Rajī*, and *Ziyā-ul-Mulk*, the *Zauzanī*, who had made vast preparations for defending the city, had no such intention. *Alfi* states that the *Amīr-i-Majlis*, *Sharaf-ud-Dīn*, was the governor. They had, among other things, besides catapults and balistas, 3000 *tir-charakh*, machines for discharging iron projectiles filled with inflammable composition, in shape like a rocket, and naphtha in flasks, and 300 *ghadrāks* [the meaning of *ghadrāh* is variously given as an iron helmet, and also a kind of net, but some sort of projectile must be meant], all of which were disposed on the towers and ramparts. On a Wednesday, in the middle of *Ramaṣān* [December, 1220 A.D.], at dawn, the *Mughals* attacked the place, and continued the attack for three successive days without intermission, but, on the Friday, at the time of midday prayer, a rocket struck *Taghāchār* the *Gūrgān*, and killed him.

It is somewhat remarkable that a *Tūtajār* should have been killed at *Fūshanj* near *Hirāt*, in the first *Mughal* irruption into *Khurāsān*, and a *Taghāchār* before *Nīshābūr* on the second occasion, but, notwithstanding the similarity of names, the two events are clearly recorded.

After this reverse, the *Nū-yān*, *Nūrkā* [V.], the next in command, finding it was impossible to obtain possession of *Nīshābūr*, divided his force into two bodies, and departed. One took the direction of *Sabzwār*, and, after assailing that place for three days and nights, earned it, and the *Mughal* leader ordered a general massacre, and slew 70,000 persons. All this, however, seems scarcely possible for 5000 or 6000 men to effect, and the number, evidently, has not been truly stated. The other half of the *Mughal* force moved to *Tūs*,

thence he advanced to Nishāpūr, which, after much fighting,

captured the fortress of Jand, which was near Tūs, and likewise massacred the inhabitants. In the work entitled "*The Mongols Proper*," these proceedings, under the names "Thus" and "Kuhistan," are wrongly attributed to Tūlī Khān, who never went near those places.

In the meanwhile Tūlī marched towards Marw, but, before doing so, he sent requisitions into the different parts adjacent, which had submitted to the yoke, such as Sarakhs, Abīward, and some other towns, to levy men to assist in his operations against their fellow-countrymen, so that, besides his army, some 70,000 men were brought together. After demolishing some few small forts and places on his route, and drawing near Marw, according to the Mughal custom, he despatched a body of 400 horse to reconnoitre. This force, having advanced during the night, fell upon an encampment of *lāts*, or nomads, and on making investigation found it was an encampment of Saljūq Turkmāns, then preparing to make a raid upon the environs of Marw. How these Turkmāns happened to be there at this time I must briefly explain, for the details are very long.

At this period Marw-i-Shāh-i-Jahān—a different place from Marw-ar-Rūd—was one of the largest, wealthiest, richest, and most populous cities of Asia [a place, or rather that which has taken or stands in its position, which, at this moment attracts, and, for some time past, has attracted the serious attention of those patriotic Britons, who would not see the borders of another Chingiz dominant over Asia and Eastern Europe to the mortal injury of British interests both in India—which they do not desire to see "perish"—and in Europe]. Sharaf-ud-Dīn, Muṣaffar, who bore the title of Majir-ul-Mulk, was one of the great men of Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh's court, and carried his head very high, because his mother, who had occupied a subordinate position in the Sulṭān's *harem*, when she was conferred in marriage on the reputed father, who was made a mughrif [clerk or accountant in a treasury] on that occasion, was said to be pregnant by the Sulṭān. The son whom she bore, in time, rose to a high position, and had been a Wazīr, and Hākum of Marw and its dependencies. He had, however, for some reason, been removed, prior to the Mughal invasion, and another person, who bore the title of Bahā-ul-Mulk, son of Najib-ud-Dīn, had been appointed in his stead, and the Majir-ul-Mulk, Sharaf-ud-Dīn, Muṣaffar, consequently, returned to the presence of the Sulṭān. When the Sulṭān, dreading lest he might fall into the hands of the barbarian Mughals, proceeded towards Māzandarān, he gave directions to all his Amīrs to secure the fortresses of Khurāsān, and to have them garrisoned and provided with catapults and other war engines, so as to afford protection to the people around, while of such places as could offer no opposition the unfortunate Sulṭān recommended the inhabitants to submit to the invaders on their appearing, and so save their lives, and to trust to the upshot of events. On this command being issued, the Bahā-ul-Mulk removed all the valuable property and treasure from Marw to the fortress of Ṭāḡ—the Rauzat-us-Safā, and Abū-l-Ghāṣi, Bahādūr, have Yāzar and Yārāz, respectively—whither he himself withdrew, and left a Deputy at Marw, while the people, all but those whom fate induced to remain, dispersed into various other places. It was at this crisis that the Nū-yāns, Jabah [Yamah] and Swīdāe [Sahūdah], with a large army, appeared before it, as already related, and the chief ecclesiastics, who had remained behind in Marw, afraid of the Mughals, sent a person to those leaders with presents, and tendered submission. They could not stay to

he captured ; and, in order to take vengeance because the

take possession, and so, contenting themselves with the presents and offerings, passed on without molesting Marw.

At this time, a predatory Turkman chief, named Būkā, having concerted with a body of his clansmen, succeeded, unexpectedly, in throwing himself into Marw, and made himself Amīr and Hākim, and a great number of the Sultān's soldiery, and Turks of those parts, as well as other soldiers of fortune, gathered around him, so hostile were they to the Mughals. In the meantime, the Majr-ul-Mulk had left the Sultān in his retreat [Rauzat-ush-Shafā says, after the Sultān's death] in one of the islands in the Caspian, and gained the fort of Şa'lūk [in Gilān], the seneschal of which, Shams-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, received him with honour and reverence, and rendered him all assistance in his power. This enabled the Majr-ul-Mulk to collect a large force of Turks and Tājiks, and he marched to Marw, and took up a position in the garden facing the Dar-i-Sarrājān, or Gate of the Saddlers. A number of the chiefs of the Marghast, who had formerly been in the Majr-ul-Mulk's service, hearing of his arrival, flocked round him with the men of that tribe. Būkā, however, would not admit the Majr-ul-Mulk, until the latter, by presents and promises, had gained over a great number of the inhabitants, who had gone and waited on him, and on this accession of strength, one day at noon, boldly proceeded towards the city, and entered it without opposition. Būkā, out of necessity, now went and waited on him, and, with his followers, was enrolled among the rest of the Majr-ul-Mulk's retainers.

The Majr-ul-Mulk, having now gathered around him followers and fighting men to the number of 8000, began to think of something more than a subordinate position. This raised the ire of the Shaikh-ul-Islām of Marw, Shams-ud-Dīn, Hānsī, who began intriguing against him with a relative, the Kāsh of Sarakhs—which place the Mughals had obtained possession of, and left an Intendant at—in order, even at the cost of giving up Marw to the Mughals, to bring about the Majr-ul-Mulk's downfall. Some informers brought this to the latter's notice, and he accused the Shaikh-ul-Islām, who stoutly denied the charge. At last, a letter, in his own hand-writing, to the Kāsh of Sarakhs, in reply to one of his own, the bearer having been intercepted by the way—some say, a letter of the Kāsh to him—fell into the Majr-ul-Mulk's hands, who at once requested the Shaikh-ul-Islām to visit him. On his arrival, he said : "What news hast thou from Sarakhs? and what are its people doing?" The Shaikh replied "I have no cognizance of their affairs, and have no information respecting them." The Majr-ul-Mulk threw his own letter towards him, saying, "There, read that!" and, seeing his own letter, he was utterly confounded. The Majr-ul-Mulk, in a contemptuous manner, exclaimed, "Depart!" and the traitor was rising to do so when several chiefs closed with him, and with their daggers slew him, and then, dragging the corpse along by the heels, cast it into the market-place, and left it to the dogs, as all traitors to their country deserve.

After this, the Majr-ul-Mulk began to detach troops to harry the vicinity of Sarakhs; and the Bahā-ud-Mulk [the Sultān's governor], hearing of the state of affairs, and the predominance acquired by the Majr-ul-Mulk, came forth from the Hīşār of Tāq, and went to the Mughal Amīrs in those parts [our author mentions how numerous bodies of Mughals were sent into Ghūr and Ghazistān about this time], acquainted them with the state of affairs, and sought to obtain, through them, the charge of the territory of Marw

son-in-law of the Chingiz Khān had been slain at that

agreeing to pay a certain amount yearly as tribute. His offers were accepted, and he was sent to Marw, along with a body of Mughal troops. Arrived at Shahrastān, the Bahā-ul-Mulk indited a letter to the Majir-ul-Mulk, saying: "Some ill-feeling and distrust existed between us on account of a certain office, but that has vanished, and, as the power of the Mughals is such as cannot be coped with, wisdom and foresight alike demand that no other road, save that of submission and obedience, should be traversed. At this time 7000 Mughals and 10,000 levies are on the way to this part along with me, and therefore regret and sorrow will follow aught save submission to them."

When the Majir-ul-Mulk received this communication, he became disturbed and astounded, in such wise, that his most trusted and confidential followers were for at once dispersing and seeking places of security. After a time, however, they advised him not to believe this statement of an interested person and a traitor, and that to abandon Marw would be an act of great folly. The messengers from the Bahā-ul-Mulk were separated and questioned respecting the actual number of troops along with him, and, on their giving replies confirming the Bahā-ul-Mulk's statement, the Majir-ul-Mulk ordered both of them to be put to death, and despatched from Marw a body of 2500 Turk troops of the Sultān of Khwārazm, to drive off the Bahā-ul-Mulk and his Mughal allies. When the Mughals found this, they secured the Bahā-ul-Mulk, whose own followers now deserted him, and returned towards Tūs, where they struck off his head.

The body of Turk cavalry, detached by the Majir-ul-Mulk, pushed on as far as Sarakhs, and, on their appearance there, the Musalmāns seized the Ḳāṣī, Shams-ud-Dīn, who had taken offerings to Jabah [Yamah] and Swidāe [Sahūdah], and had assumed the authority there, and made him over to a man whose father the Ḳāṣī had caused to be put to death unjustly, who slew him according to the law of retaliation. All noise respecting the Mughal armies now became suspended—it was the calm preceding the hurricane, however—an. the Majir-ul-Mulk gave himself up to pleasure and revelry, drinking, and other unlawful acts.

At this juncture, Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, a Turkmān, who was Ḥākīm of Āmūfah, came to Marw, and reported that the Mughal forces were coming, that they had reached the Āmū, and were then investing Kala'-i-Nau. Although the Majir-ul-Mulk received him with great distinction, nevertheless Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn was hostile to him—on account of his remissness probably, at such a crisis—and he went and took up his quarters with the Turkmāns. Soon after 800 Mughal horsemen came in search of Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, and threw themselves upon the Turkmāns. At this juncture, Shaikh Khān, and Aghūl, the Ḥājib, who arrived with 2000 men from the side of Khwārazm, laid an ambuscade for the Mughals, slew the greater part of them, and took sixty of them captive, who were paraded about Marw, and then put to a cruel death.

Shaikh Khān, and the Ḥājib, Aghūl, made no stay, and retired to the Dasht-i-Khurz, upon which the Turkmāns chose Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn as their head and ruler, entered into a covenant with him, left the service of the Majir-ul-Mulk, and contemplated taking the city out of his hands. He, however, got information of it, and prepared to defeat their design, upon which they, being hopeless of surprising Marw, went and pitched their camp on the banks of the river of Marw. They then began to plunder the villages around, and the suburbs of the city, up to its very walls, and to appropriate

place, he martyred every person in Nishāpūr, desolated it,

everything they could lay their hands upon. In the meantime, Tūfī Khān, having drawn a levy of 70,000 men from Sarakhs, Nisā, Abiward, and other towns of Khurāsān, which had submitted to the Mughal yoke, and incorporated them into his army, moved towards Marw.

Having arrived in the vicinity, he sent in advance—so say the pro-Mughal historians—a body of 400 horse—much more probably 4000—to reconnoitre, so that, in the night, they reached the banks of the Marw river, close to the khels of the Turkmāns, and there they halted. There were 12,000 men there assembled for the purpose of making a raid in the vicinity of the city; and, in that dark night, each detachment of Turkmāns, as they came up, totally unsuspecting the presence of such foes, were attacked unawares, in detail, and slaughtered; and, during that night, the Mughals destroyed the whole of the 12,000 Turkmāns, and Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn is also said to have been killed. Now if the former only numbered 400 men, each man must have killed thirty on the average, and this they could scarcely have accomplished in the time, even had the Turkmāns lain down quietly to be butchered like sheep, which they probably did not do. The whole 12,000 must have come by precisely the same road, just at the propitious time, and when the 400 Mughals had just finished the preceding detachment, and of course, in the still night, the cries and shouts, groans and screams, and the clash of arms could not be heard, and close to their khels too. All this is gross exaggeration, although contained in the Jahān-Kushāe, the Rauzat-ush-Shafā, and several other pro-Mughal works. Having thus broken the back of their strength, the Mughals, next day, made for the encampments where were the families of the Turkmāns, and early in the morning fell upon them and slew the whole—with the exception of some, who, while the slaughter was going on, threw themselves into the river of Marw, hoping to escape, and perished—male and female, young and old—who were butchered, to the number of 70,000 souls! Now, at this rate of 400 men, each individual Mughal must, on the average, have killed, during the night and following day, just 230 souls, which is as incredible as it is ridiculous to expect any sane person to believe it, and, even assuming that these barbarian butchers numbered 4000, each one must have slain, on the average, thirty-two persons. Taking the fighting men at 12,000, and the average number of each family at from five to six persons, each furnishing one fighting man, 70,000 is not beyond the mark. The Mughals captured likewise 60,000 quadrupeds—oxen and camels—besides innumerable sheep, and proceeded to join Tūfī's camp.

This account reads like a page out of Mr. Eugene Schuyler's work, or a leaf from the annals of the "Christian" and "knightly warfare" in Asia Minor and European Turkey in 1878: the Turkmāns of that day, like the Turkmāns of this, were treated a *la Kaufmann*, and the whole proceedings were carried out in true "Circassian style." I would observe here, however, with respect to some strange theories respecting the origin of the name "TURKOMEN," in the "*Geographical Magazine*," for 1875, page 151, that there would be some difficulty to find such a word in any oriental writer whosoever.

The day after this fearful slaughter, which is said to have taken place on the 1st of Muḥarram [which must be an error for the 11th or 21st, as Tūfī was only despatched early in that month], 618 H [25th February, 1221 A D], Tūfī Khān, with his army arrived, and took up a position opposite the Shāhristānah Gateway, which is mentioned in the "*MASĀLIK WA MAMĀLIK*" as situated near the great *masjid*, and commenced to assail the place. The Majr-ul-

razed the walls of the city, and, having had a pair of oxen

Mulk, who had made great preparations for its defence, distributed his treasures liberally among the troops, and used to send forth large bodies of men to make sallies upon the Mughals, in such wise, that, on the first day, in the course of one hour, more than 1000 Mughals were slain. Here it will be remarked how large bodies of Turks and Tājiks only kill 1000 Mughals, in about the time that 400 Mughals, by the writer's account, would cut up a whole host.

At this show of resistance, Tūlī, next day, attacked the place in person, at the head of 22,000 Mughals—but the Rauzat-uz-Şafā says, an army in numbers beyond all computation—and inflicted great slaughter on the defenders; and, in this manner, from morn to eve, for a period of twenty-two days, the fighting went on. The Tārikh-i-Jahān-gīr, Ḥabīb-us-Siyar, and Jahān, Kūshāe, say the fighting only lasted for seven days, and that on the eighth the Majīr-ul-Mulk sent to beg for quarter, but this statement is much the same as that of the 400 horsemen slaughtering 12,000 Turkman soldiers and 70,000 of their people.

In the meantime, the vast population of Marw became reduced to great straits, and began to say among themselves, that there was no hope of resisting the Mughals. Besides this, many persons from Balkh, Samarkand, Bukhārā, Khwārazm, and other places captured by the Mughals, had taken shelter in Marw; and these fugitives persuaded the Marwazis that the city must surely be captured at last, and that it was better to seek an accommodation, and thus prevent the shedding of torrents of Musalmān blood. On the twenty-third day, therefore, the Majīr-ul-Mulk was prevailed upon to despatch the Imām, Jamāl-ud-Dīn, the chief ecclesiastic, who, attended by a body of the priesthood, came out of Marw, and sought the presence of Tūlī Khān. After presenting befitting *perī-kash*, the Imām offered, if the conqueror would promise to spare the lives of the inhabitants, and not destroy the city, to pay a ransom of 200,000 *dīnārs*, 30,000 *ekar-wārs* of grain, 100,000 ambling horses, and 100 Hindū and Turk slaves, to receive a Mughal *Shahnah* or Intendant, and pay yearly taxes into the Khān's treasury. Tūlī accepted these offers, a dress of honour was conferred upon the Imām and those with him, and he was sent back to the city with that Khān's reply. The next day, the Majīr-ul-Mulk, attended by ten of his principal officers, placing faith in the word of a Mughal prince, and taking with him valuable offerings of all descriptions, came out of Marw, and proceeded to the audience tent of Tūlī Khān. On his reaching the entrance, he was stopped by the Amīrs of Tūlī—the matter, of course, had been previously arranged—and he was required to give an assignment of 300 *ekar-wārs*—each computed at an ass's load—of *dīnārs* as an offering to the Bādshāh-Zādeh [Tūlī Khān], and another 100,000 *dīnārs* for themselves, on the wealthy people of the city, on which they would obtain from Tūlī Khān a written deed of security for the lives of the inhabitants, and thus they swore most solemnly to observe according to the rites of their belief. Willing to save the people, and again trusting the perfidious Mughals, the Majīr-ul-Mulk, at once, gave an assignment on 100 great merchants of the city, and sent a person of his own, with a party of Mughals, to receive the amount. The Mughals went and brought back with them the persons named, and, with the aid of the rack and other tortures, succeeded in extorting the money, and, besides these unfortunates, nearly 10,000 other persons were tortured to death. After this, the Majīr-ul-Mulk was mutilated by having his ears, nose, and lips cut off—the fashion of the "Sag-lab" Montenegrin and Bulgarian "heroes" of the present day—and then

yoked [to a plough], he had them driven over [the area on

put to death. Orders were then issued by this fiend in human form to destroy the city, and massacre the inhabitants. The Mughals poured in, and continued to expel the inhabitants, whom they drove out into the plain. Four days were occupied in separating the males from the females, and then, after the selection of a few young females for captivity, and about 400 artisans, the whole of the remainder were butchered, and not a soul was left alive.

By the generality of writers it is said, that some 300 or 400 victims fell to the share of each Mughal butcher; and, although the number seems incredible, when we consider that the people of other cities were fugitives at Marw, and that the inhabitants of the towns and villages near had taken shelter within the walls, it is doubtless correct. The Sayyid, 'Izz-ud-Dīn of Nisā, and a number of clerks, were occupied during thirteen days and nights in recording the number of the slain, and the number, without accounting such as it was impossible to recognize, belonging to the city and neighbouring villages alone, it is said, amounted to a little over 1,300,000 souls. See page 281.

After this, the walls and defences of this great city, which it had been thoroughly sacked, were demolished, and in such wise "that scarce a trace of it was left; and for a period of two hundred and nine years its desolation was such that its site did not afford sufficient shade for a wild beast," after which, in 812 H., through the favour of Sulṭān Shāh-Rukh, the son of Amīr Tīmūr, the Gūrgān, the city was rebuilt.

Tūlī Khān now bent his steps towards Nīshābūr; and, according to the Jahān-Khūshā, when he had proceeded two marches on his way, fearing, probably, that enough blood had not been shed, with the instinct of a fiend, sent back a body of 2000 horse to slay all who might have crept out of holes and corners since his departure; and about 10,000 persons more were, in this wise, massacred. The Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr, however, states that, after sacking Marw, Tūlī Khān nominated the Amīr, Ziyā-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, one of its great men, who had been spared because he had retired previously from public life, and was dwelling in seclusion, to proceed thither, and remain there as governor of the desolated city and its dependencies, along with a Mughal Dāroghah or Overseer, named Barmās—also styled Barmās and Barmās—over such of the inhabitants as might, from holes and corners, and other places of concealment, return to the city.

After the departure of the Mughal army towards Nīshābūr, about 5000 fugitives once more assembled, but their cup of misery was not yet full. A body of Mughals, who subsequently arrived there on their way to join Tūlī, desired to have their share of slaughter, and so they required that every person in the place should bring out a skirt full of grain for them. By this stratagem all who did so were massacred; and this same detachment slew all they met with on the road to Nīshābūr. Soon after another body of Mughals, who had separated from the Nū-yān Jabah [Yamah] arrived, and they also put to death all who chanced to come in their way.

There was still more misfortune in store for Marw. Some time after, an outbreak of Musalmāns against the Mughals took place at Sarakhṣ, and the Amīr, Ziyā-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, set out to suppress it, and the Mughal, Barmās, or Barmās, the Overseer, moved outside Marw, with his following, taking with him the artificers and mechanics of the place, with the object, in case of need, of retiring to Rukhārā. Those left within Marw imagined that he had heard news of the Sulṭān, Jalāl-ud-Dīn's arrival, and that he was preparing to fly.

which] the city [stood], in such wise that not a vestige of the buildings thereof remained.' Having finished with

They accordingly rose, and began to express their joy thereat by beating drums. Barmās came to the gate, and requested the chief men remaining among the inhabitants to attend him, but no one obeyed, on which he had all such as he met with outside slaughtered, and then retired hastily towards Bukhārā.

Amir Ziyā-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, returned soon after, and set about repairing the walls and the citadel; and people assembled around him from the vicinity, and other more distant places, but an officer of the late Sulṭān's, the Pahlawān Nūsh-Tigīn—called Kūsh-Tigīn by some—had gathered a considerable following under his standard, and arrived before Marw, and invested it. Ziyā-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, finding it impossible to remain, succeeded, by stealth, in leaving the city with his Mughal party, as the investment was but partial, took to flight, and entered the fort of Murghah. Nūsh-Tigīn now set to work to repair some part of the city, and to cultivate the land, but a faction secretly communicated with Ziyā-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, and incited him to return. He did so, and appeared with a force, and took up a position before the place. Nūsh-Tigīn sent a body of his followers, who took Amir Ziyā-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, and brought him before him, who, finding that he himself must perish or Ziyā-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, he had him put to death, and, with a heart at ease, set about his restoration of the city, and putting it in a state of defence. Three or four days only elapsed when a body of 2000 Mughal horse, on their way to join the Nū-yān, Fikū, finding how matters stood, one half went away on their duty, as ordered previously, leaving the remainder to watch the place. News was then despatched to Nakhshab, to the Mughal officers there stationed, acquainting them with the assemblage of a number of people at Marw again, and, after five days, two chiefs, Turḡāe [Turtāe?] and Ak Malik [a Musalmān Turk—it was Mughal policy to employ Mughals and Musalmāns in concert], with a body of 5000 Mughals, appeared, who penetrated into the city, and are said to have slain 100,000 people more [more likely 10,000], who had again assembled there, the different quarters of the city having been assigned to different detachments of this force for the purpose of hunting up and destroying all whom they could find. Turḡāe [Turtāe], with the principal part of the Mughals, then departed, but Ak Malik was left behind to search for other victims supposed to be in hiding. Every stratagem that was conceivable was adopted to draw them forth; and the last one, which was but too successful, was, that one of the party, a Musalmān of Nakhshab, was made to pronounce the call to prayer, upon which welcome sound the poor wretches issued forth from holes and cellars to be put to the sword, and in such wise that but twelve persons—some say only four—and no more, were left alive in Marw, and these, according to the Rauzat-uṣ-Ṣafā, were Hindūs.

Having left Amir Ziyā-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, in charge of what remained of Marw, Tūfī moved towards Nīshābūr, in order, says Alfi, "to avenge the Gūrgān, Taghāghāi, previously killed in Khurāsān." In advance, he despatched a great part of his army with the war engines and materials for carrying on a siege, and, although Nīshābūr is situated in a stony tract of country, nevertheless, he brought along with him, from a distance of several marches, so many loads of stone that they lay in great heaps all round the place. Not a tithe of them were used, for the inhabitants, perceiving the hand of the Almighty in what was taking place, and that this was a fresh



them [the inhabitants], and the city, and territory, Tūlī

army, greater in magnitude than the previous one, notwithstanding the vast preparations they had made for defence, as previously narrated, became disheartened, and so no other remedy remained than to despatch the *Ẹāṣī-i-Mamālik*, Rukn-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, son of Ibrāhīm, to the presence of Tūlī. On reaching his quarters, which was a considerable distance from the place, the *Ẹāṣī* besought security for the lives of the inhabitants, and tendered submission and payment of tribute, but all was of no avail, and he was dismissed. On Wednesday, the 12th [in some, the 2nd] of *Safar*, 618 H., early in the morning, the attack commenced, and was persisted in until the afternoon of the Friday, during which time, also, the Mughals had dammed up the water in the ditch in several places, so as to cause breaches in the walls. They then renewed the attack on all sides with greater vigour than before, and effected a lodgment on the top of the walls, where they were as bravely resisted; but the defenders were being gradually forced back. A lodgment had also been effected near the *Sher-bān* gate, and, during the Friday night, the walls and bastions became crowded with Mughals. On the following day they poured in through the gates, and began their work of plunder and massacre, while the people were still resisting at every favourable point. The Mughals made search for the *Majīr-ud-Dīn* [the *Fakhr-ul-Mulk*, *Nizām-ud-Dīn*, probably. See note <sup>3</sup>, page 990, para. 11], and at last dragged him forth, and he, to make them put him speedily out of pain, was reviling and defying them, and they put him to death in the basest manner possible. *Alif* says the defence was carried on for eight days, during which great numbers perished on both sides, and, on the ninth day, the city was taken by assault.

The remainder of the inhabitants were now, as customary, driven out into the open country outside the city and slaughtered; for it was directed, in order to avenge the death of the *Gūrgān*, *Taghāchār*, that *Nishābūr* should be utterly destroyed, and no living creature, not even a dog or cat, was to be left alive. The daughter of the *Chingiz Khān*, the *Khātūn* of *Taghāchār*, with her own followers, afterwards [not before. The idea of her "leading the avenging force at the head of 10,000 men," as stated in the "*Mongols Proper*," is as absurd as the idea of "cutting off all the heads, and making separate heaps of men's, women's, and children's heads"] entered the place, and caused all that could be found, and any who might have crept out of concealment, to be slaughtered. Only forty—not so many as four hundred—who were mechanics and artisans, were allowed to escape, and they were carried off to *Turkustān*; and in the time of *Amīr Tīmūr* their descendants were still dwelling there. The walls, towers, and all the buildings of *Nishābūr* were thrown down, and for seven days and nights the water of the neighbouring river, which had been dammed up for the purpose, was made to run over it, so as to sap whatever buildings remained—the greater number of houses were probably built of unburnt bricks—and bullocks and ploughs were brought, and its site was sown with barley, and the Mughal horses [some of them?] fed with it when it sprang up. One Mughal officer and four *Tājiks* were left there to slay any persons who might have escaped the general massacre!

It is stated in the *Tārīkh-i-Khurasān*, quoted by some of my authorities, that it took twelve days to number the slain, and that, without enumerating women and children, and such as could not be accounted for, the number recorded was 1,747,000 souls. With respect to this immense, and almost incredible, number of persons said to have been butchered by the Mughal

advanced towards Hirāt,<sup>1</sup> and pitched his camp before the

barbarians, we must understand that the people of the open country always sought shelter within the walled cities and towns. This fact, no doubt, tended to hamper their garrisons, and, from the quantity of food required for their subsistence, caused the early surrender of many very strong places that, otherwise, would have held out like the fortresses of Ghūr and Gharjstān, as our author so graphically relates farther on.

<sup>1</sup> The next movement of Tūlī Khān was against Hirāt. On reaching the verdant plain of Shābartū near that city, he despatched an agent, named Zānbūr, demanding that the Amīr who was governor on the part of Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, and the Kaṣī, the Khaṣīb, and chief men of the city of Hirāt, should come out and wait on him, and submit to the Mughal sovereign, and secure protection for their lives and property, lest the fate of Marw and Nishābūr might be theirs also. The governor, Amīr Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Jusānī, and other Maliks therein, on hearing of the advance of the Mughals, had prepared to make a determined resistance, and all the approaches and defences were strongly guarded. The Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr, Raṣaṭ-ud-Ṣafā, and Hāfiṣ Abrū, state, that there were 100,000 troops at that time in Hirāt, but this is mere exaggeration for the glorification of the Mughals, as the sequel shows the contrary to have been the fact, but there certainly was a strong force there. When the envoy from Tūlī Khān appeared before Amīr Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, and delivered his message, he forthwith ordered him to be put to death, saying at the same time: "Let not that day come for me to be subject to Mughal and Tāitār infidels while breath remains in my body!" Next day, when intimation reached Tūlī of the fate of his envoy, he was greatly enraged, and directed the troops to take up positions round about the city, and to slay every Harawī Tājzīk they could meet with.

For a period of seven days Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, opposed the Mughals with great valour, and inflicted heavy loss upon them, among those killed being several of the principal Amīrs, and 1700 others of lesser note, besides common men. On the eighth day Tūlī led the Mughals in person to the attack, and Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, sallied out, at the head of a large force, to encounter him, and an engagement ensued which was carried on with great obstinacy. The Mughals were so severely handled at last, that they were nearly giving way, when an arrow struck Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, and he fell from his horse, and then and there expired.

His fall caused division within the city, and the people became separated into two parties—those who were devotedly loyal to Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, and the soldiery, who were for vigorous resistance to the last, while the civilians, such as the Kaṣī and the ecclesiastics, the priesthood holding grants of land, and those to whom trade and their own selfish interests were all and everything, and patriotism nothing, who were for accommodation; and it will be noticed that, throughout these misfortunes, such persons invariably caused resistance to be abandoned, or they betrayed their people and their sovereign's interest for their own ends.

In the meantime, Tūlī Khān, who had taken a great fancy to Hirāt, and liked its climate and situation, did not wish to desolate it like other cities [and who, doubtless, had information of the state of affairs within, and the resistance likely to be offered], and whose ranks had been thinned, and were then drawn up facing the I Irūzī—some say Firūz-ābād—gateway, which, according to the "MASĀLIK WA MAMĀLIK," was the most flourishing quarter of Hirāt, rode forward on the ninth day, with 200 horse, to the edge of the ditch, and requested a parley. Then, removing his head-dress [some say helmet, others

gate of that city, and the attack began, and catapults were placed in position in every direction.\*

turban, but neither correctly], he called out : "O ! men of Hirāt ! know ye that I am Tūfī, the son of the Chingiz Khān ; and, if ye desire to save your lives, and those of your women and children, from the hands of the Mughals, cease from all further resistance, and submit, and I will agree that ye pay into my coffers one-half the amount of taxes [Alfi says, "the same amount to my deputies"] ye have been paying to your Sultāns." These words he accompanied with most solemn oaths and promises, that no injury should befall them, if they ceased fighting and opened the gates. Hearing these words from the mouth of Tūfī Khān himself, it was agreed to submit to his authority. This is what, in the "*Mongols Proper*," becomes "it offered to capitulate."

In the first place, 'Izz-ud-Dīn, the Harawī; who, by command of the Sultān, was the Mukaddam, or Provost of the guild of weavers and manufactories—with 100 persons of his craft, each bearing nine pieces [the Mughal fortunate number] of silks of various kinds, and of great price, for which Hirāt was famous—at still is for a kind styled *shamās*—proceeded to the presence of Tūfī, and after them followed the chief officials and men of the city. They were all well received, but, as though it were impossible for a Mughal to keep his plighted word, 12,000 persons, the soldiers and dependants of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, were massacred to a man, but to the other inhabitants, whom they had defended and for whom they had shed their blood, no further molestation was offered, and the Mughals acquired vast booty. Misery enough was, however, in store for the Harawīs.

After the surrender, Amīr Abū-Bakr-i-Maraghānī [see note on the Kurat dynasty, farther on] was left there as Governor of Hirāt and its dependencies, and a Mughal, named Mangatāe, also written Māngatāe and Mangāe, a favourite attendant of Tūfī's, was left with him as *Shahnah* or Intendant. The former set about remedying the distracted state of affairs, ruled justly, and endeavoured to restore the province to its former prosperity, and put the city in repair. Tūfī Khān, according to his father's commands, set out [Alfi says, in 609 H. = 619 H., but this is not correct : it was 618 H.] on his return eight days after the surrender, and joined the Chingiz Khān in his camp near Tāl-kān of Khurāsān, which he had not yet taken.

During this expedition under Tūfī Khān, besides Marw, Nīshābūr, Hirāt, Tūs, and Sabzwār, other cities and towns and their dependencies, such as Jāurm, Nisā, Abiward, Sarakhs, Khowāf, and other places in Khurāsān, fell under the yoke of the Mughals, which is referred to in the metrical account of the Mughals before noticed, in the following words, "than which," as an author says, "the Darī tongue furnishes no terms more forcibly expressing the fearful calamities caused by the Mughals," referring to the words contained in the first line of the second couplet :—

کرمت این عهد تا در سبستان	بہ ماہ تولی گیتی ستان
نماند کسی نہ برون نہ در	نکد و بکشت و برت و برد

"In three months, the world-seizing Tūfī  
Captured these all to the gate of Sīstān.  
He razed and he slew, and he swept and he clutched ;  
Not a person remained, neither great nor small."

Whilst these events were happening at Hirāt, Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn had upon several occasions overthrown the Mughals, as related under the reign of that hero, at page 288, and note 3, and farther on.

\* Those who consider the Muscov a lamb may take a lesson from these identical places—Marw and Hirāt

Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Jurjānī, and Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, the Jūzjānī,<sup>2</sup> and other Amīrs who were within the city, made preparations for resistance ; but trustworthy persons have related after this manner, that the stone of every catapult, which they used to discharge from the city in the direction of the Mughal camp, used to go into the air, and again descend into the city.

The city of Hirāt which Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, sat down before, and, before which, he carried on hostilities for a period of eleven months<sup>3</sup> before it was surrendered to him, the Mughals took up a position before, and, in the space of eight months, they captured that place which [in strength] was the barrier of Sikandar, and martyred the whole of the inhabitants [with few exceptions]. Persons, whose statements are to be depended upon, relate, that, in one quarter [part] of the city, 600,000 martyrs were counted. According to this proportion, in the whole four quarters of the city, twenty-four *laks* [2,400,000 !] Musalmāns were martyred. May the Almighty reward them !<sup>4</sup>

When Tūlī came to the determination of returning, he set at liberty some of those captives, and gave them a Shahnah [Intendant] and left him there, and commanded him to restore the city.

#### ANECDOTE.

An anecdote,<sup>5</sup> worthy of insertion here, is related, as referring to the occurrences which happened at the period in

<sup>2</sup> The other is styled Kazwīnī in one or two copies, but Jūzjānī may be the most correct after all. The Rauzat-uṣ-Ṣafā also has Jūzjānī.

<sup>3</sup> See page 259, and note 2.

<sup>4</sup> Our author has fallen into complete confusion, and has here entered the events of the second siege, while, in his account of the latter, at page 1048, he has introduced some events belonging to the former siege. The greater part of this paragraph and the next relates to the second siege with which Tūlī Khān had nothing to do.

<sup>5</sup> This anecdote refers to the attack on Hirāt by Tūlī Khān, the particulars of which have just been given. It has been stolen by the author of the Rauzat-uṣ-Ṣafā without acknowledgment, indeed he pretends—such is, too often, the conduct of some unprincipled writers—to have obtained it from the Kāfi, from whose lips our author heard it, and merely says “*It is stated by the Kāfi of Charnīn*,” and then uses our author’s own words, without acknowledgment. Such pirates, after they have pilfered from another’s writings, generally turn round and abuse him.

question. In the year 622 H., the author of this **ṬABAQĀT**, **Minhāj-i-Sarāj**, who is the servant of the Sultān's dynasty, had occasion to undertake a journey, on a mission from **Ghūr** towards the **Kuhistān**, at the request of the august **Malik**, **Rukn-ud-Dīn**, **Muḥammad-i-'Uṣmān**, the **Maraḡhanī**<sup>7</sup>—may he rest in peace!—for the adjustment of the route of **kārwāns** [of merchants and travellers], and the tranquillity of this territory. When he [the author] reached the city of **Qā'in**, he there saw an **Imām**, one of the great men of **Khurāsān**, whom they were wont to style **Qāzī Waḥid-ud-Dīn**, the **Būshanjī** [of **Būshanj** or **Fūshanj**]<sup>8</sup>—the Almighty's mercy be upon him! That **Imām** related [saying], "In the disaster of **Hirāt** I was present in that city; and, every day, in conjunction with the **Ghāzīs** [holy-warriors], its defenders, I used to don arms and armour, and proceed to the top of the ramparts, and view the multitude of the forces. One day, I was at the top of the ramparts of the city of **Hirāt** while the fight and tumult was going on, in full panoply, with helmet and cuirass, besides other things, when, suddenly, I missed my footing from the top of the walls, and fell down towards the ditch, and, like unto a stone or a ball, I went rolling down the face of the **khāk-res**,<sup>9</sup> whilst 50,000 men, **Mughals** and **Musalman** renegades, with arrows fitted to their bows, and with stones, were aiming at me, until, rolling over and over, I fell into the midst of the infidels, and was made prisoner by a body of men who, in making the attack, had come to the foot of the parapet, and the face of the **khāk-res**, and descended into the ditch. This mischance happened to me at a point facing which **Tūlī**, son of the **Chingiz Khān**, had had a tent pitched, at the edge of the ditch, and the **Mughal** troops were fighting under his personal observation. Although I came rolling down the face of the **khāk-res** a distance of about twenty **gas** [ells], until I descended into the abyss of the ditch, which was forty **gas** more,<sup>9</sup> Almighty

<sup>7</sup> A well-known race or family, one of whom—**Abū-Bikr-i-Maraḡhanī**—was left by **Tūlī Khān** as governor of the city and its dependencies, along with **Mangātāe**, the **Mughal** Intendant. See the note on the **Kurat** Dynasty, under the account of the downfall of the **Mulḡhidah**, farther on.

<sup>8</sup> An artificial mound, surrounding **Hirāt**, and forming its chief strength. See following note.

<sup>9</sup> The description of modern **Hirāt** will give some faint idea of what it was

God shielded me under his protection so that I experienced no wound, neither did any of my members sustain any hurt or fracture whatever.

"When I came to the ground he [Tūlī] caused a party to run up with speed, telling them: 'Bring ye that person alive, and do not harm him in the least.' When, in accordance with that command, they conducted me to the presence of Tūlī, he looked at me searchingly, and gave orders to them, saying: 'See whether he has received any hurt;' and, as there was none, he said to me: 'What person art thou—of the race of Adam, or a parī, a demon, or an angel, or dost thou hold a charm bearing the names of the Ulugh Tingri?' Speak truly, how it is' I bowed my face to the ground and replied: 'I am an unfortunate man of the learned class, and one of those who blesses or prays; but I had one thing with me.' He said: 'What hadst thou with thee,?' I bowed my head to the ground, and replied. 'The sight of a sovereign like thee had fallen upon me, and through the felicity thereof, I remained in safety' This reply was favourably received by Tūlī, and he looked upon me with favourable eyes, and remarked, saying: 'This person is a sagacious man, and a wise, and may be qualified for the service of the Chingiz Khān. It is necessary that ye take care of him in order that he may be conducted to his presence;' and he commanded so that they made me over to the care of one of the respected Mughals.

"After Tūlī had completed the conquest of the cities and districts of Khurāsān, he took me along with him to the Chingiz Khān's presence,<sup>2</sup> and related the story [to him], and in the Chingiz Khān's service I found great favour. I was constantly in attendance at his threshold, and he used continually to inquire of me the traditions of the prophets, and concerning the sovereigns of 'Ajām, and the

in its strength and glory at the period in question. It is entirely enclosed by an artificial mound of earth between fifty and sixty feet in height, at the present time, the walls rising about thirty feet above. This mound slopes down from the base of the rampart, at an angle of about forty or forty-five degrees, and at the bottom of the mound is a deep wet ditch thirty feet wide

<sup>1</sup> The Great Spirit—God

<sup>2</sup> Before Tāl-kān of Khurāsān, which the Chingiz Khān had not yet succeeded in capturing. See page 1008, and note <sup>2</sup>.

kings of the past; and would inquire: 'Did Muḥammad (on whom be peace!), foretell aught respecting my rise and sway?' I used to relate to him the traditions [of the Prophet] which they have related respecting the irruption of the Turk;<sup>3</sup> and he used to say: 'My heart bears evidence that thou speakest the truth,' until one day, during conversation, he said to me: 'A mighty name will remain behind me in the world through taking vengeance upon Muḥammad, the Aghrī'—that is to say, he used to call Sultān Muḥammad, Khawārazm Shāh, by this term, and, in the Turkī language, aghrī 'signifies a robber—and this expression he would greatly make use of and say:—'Khawārazm Shāh was not a monarch: he was a robber. Had he been a monarch he would not have slain my envoys and traders who had come to Utrār, for kings should not slay ambassadors.' In short, when he inquired of me, 'Will not a mighty name remain behind me?' I bowed my face to the ground, and said: 'If the Khān will promise the safety of my life, I will make a remark.' He replied: 'I have promised thee its security.' I said: 'A name continues to endure where there are people, but how will a name endure when the Khān's servants martyr all the people and massacre them, for who will remain to tell the tale?' When I finished this sentence, the Chingiz Khān dashed the bow and arrow which he had in his hand upon the ground, and became exceeding enraged, and turned his face away from me, and his back towards me. When I beheld the effects of rage upon his impious brow, I washed my hands of life, and gave up all hope of existence. I made sure to myself that the time of my departure was come, and that I should leave the world from the blow of the sword of this accursed one.

"After a minute had passed away, he turned his face towards me again, and said: 'I used to consider thee a sagacious and prudent man, but, from this speech of thine,

<sup>3</sup> Here again is another proof of what I have stated in my account of the descent of the Turks and of the i-māks of Tāttār and Mughal. Had the Kāfī, incorrectly, said by mistake, "the outbreak of the Tāttārs," the Chingiz Khān would, no doubt, have taken it as an insult, but he was a Turk of the Mughal i-māk. See note 3, page 869, and para. 21, page 875.

<sup>4</sup> In some copies "the Mughalī." The Printed Text has—اغلر—aghri, but all others are as above.

it has become evident to me that thou dost not possess complete understanding, and that thy comprehension is but small. There are many kings in the world, and, wherever the hoofs of the horses of Muḥammad, the Aghri, have reached, there I will carry slaughter and cause devastation. The remaining people who are in other parts of the world, and the sovereigns of other kingdoms that are, they will relate my history.' No favour on the part of the Chingiz Khān remained to me, and it came about that I was distant from his presence; and I fled from the Mughal army, and made my escape, and returned thanks and praise unto Almighty God for the same."

ACCOUNT OF THE CALAMITIES WHICH BEFELL THE  
TERRITORY OF KHURĀSĀN THE SECOND TIME.

After Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barnī, Khawārazm Shāh, overthrew the army of Mughals, on the confines of Barwān, between Bāmiān and Ghaznīn,<sup>5</sup> several times, and the Chingiz Khān turned his face towards Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barnī, and advanced towards the river of Sind, and the news of these victories [of the Sultān] reached all the cities of Khurāsān, in every city and town wherever the Mughal Shahnahs [Intendants] were stationed, the people thereof despatched the whole of them to hell,<sup>6</sup> and in every place a predominant person arose. After the Chingiz Khān defeated Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn on the banks of the river of Sind, he despatched the Bahādur, Shā'ūr,<sup>7</sup> along with Uktāc [his son] to Ghaznīn, so that they destroyed

<sup>5</sup> This shows, were any proof wanting, that our author did not refer to the narrow Parwān valley, north of Kābul, but to a locality much farther south-west.

The author of the Rauḡāt-uṣ-Ṣafā here repeats what he has stated several times before, in other places, that it is Barwān, a place between Ghaznīn and Bāmiān. As I have said before, the situation of Barwān was near the sources of the Lohgar river. See note <sup>3</sup>, page 288, note <sup>4</sup>, page 1008, and note <sup>5</sup>, page 1016.

<sup>6</sup> It was this that caused the second siege, and the utter desolation of Hirāt, the Hirātīs having slain the Mughal Shahnah and the Musalmān governor, the Maraghānī. Here again it will be observed that there is no mention either of Bāmiān or of its long siege.

<sup>7</sup> In one or two copies, Sā-ūr



the city of Ghaznī,<sup>a</sup> and brought forth the inhabitants without the city, and, with the exception of a few, who were made captives, martyred the whole of them.

The Chingiz Khān, himself, advanced from the banks of the Sind river in pursuit of the Ighrākī<sup>b</sup> Musalmāns, who formed a very large force, and a countless number of men, and proceeded towards Gibārī.<sup>1</sup> He took the fortress of

<sup>a</sup> It has never recovered to this day from the effects of this calamity like many other famous and formerly densely populous cities of Asia.

<sup>b</sup> Some modern copies of the text have أرأب—Arāb—here.

<sup>1</sup> This word is written Gabārī—گباری—Gībārī—کبری—and Gīrī—کبری in the different copies of the text, but the best and oldest copies have Gabārī or Gībārī. The Calcutta printed text has both کبری and کبری in *MSS.*, the point of the letter *ḡ* often appears as two, close together, occasioned by the two points of the reed, especially when there is not much ink in it, and *versura*. The letter might, in consequence, be sometimes mistaken for *ī*.

Baihaḳī and the Gardāwī continually refer to the fort of Gīrī—کبری—as being near the Sind or Indus [possibly Kāpūr dī Gīrī. See note <sup>2</sup>, page 76], but the former invariably mentions it in connexion with "Parḡāwar" or "Purḡhor," "Man-Manārah," and "Wahind." Man-Manārah is evidently Prata'h Manārah on the west bank of the Indus above Atak, and the words are, apparently, the Puṣhto translation of an older name, prata'h signifying "fallen," "overturned," &c., qualifying a feminine noun. Sulṭān Mas'ūd, the Martyr, was confined in the fortress of Gīrī. See page 95.

The tract referred to by our author, however, is, without doubt, the country north of the Kābul river, between the Kamān, or river of Kunar, and the Landey Sind, namely, Bājawr and the tracts forming its southern boundary; and I find, in an old geographical work, and in a Persian lexicon of old and difficult words, that Gabar—گر—with the pronunciation written, is the name of a town [shahr] in the country of Bājawr. To have come upon the Ighrākī, the Mughals must have entered Nangrahār, or, as it was anciently called, Nek-Anhār, lying south of Bājawr; and the Chingiz Khān was never in "Pakli," in his life, nor in Pakla'i either.

The people inhabiting the tracts lying along the banks of the river of Kābul, and east even as far as the Indus, were sometimes styled by the general name of Shalmānī by the Afghān chroniclers, and Dihgān by the Tājīks, but Elphinstone styles them by the fanciful name of "Swatis." They were a purely Tājīk race, and had become converts to Islām at an early period. On the northern bank of the Kābul river there was another race of people who are known up to very recent times under the name of 'Arab'—أرأب—respecting whom some account will be found in my "NOTES ON AFGHĀNISTĀN AND PART OF BALŪCHISTĀN, GEOGRAPHICAL, ETHNOLOGICAL, AND HISTORICAL," printed by command of the RT. Hon. the Secretary of State for India.

These Tājīk people were no more "Scythians," than the Musalmān Dilazīk Afghāns were "Buddhists," as Surgeon-Major Bellew, C.S.I., styles them in one of his books, and "Rājpūts" in another, or than the Kākar Afghāns are the "Gakar tribe of Indians in the north Panjab," or than the Khitrān Afghāns, whom he styles Khatrans in his last book, are "Khatir Hindus."

Gībarī and other forts of the territory of the Koh-pāyah [hill-skirts], and slew the Musalmāns. For a period of

The fort of Gībarī or Gabarī appears to be the very same as Gabar-koṭ, which the Mughal Bādshāh, Bābar, subsequently took from Mīr Ḥaidar, the Gabarī. The Shalmānis, with whom the Yūsufīs and Mandarī, of the **Khakhi** division of the Afghān nation, first came into contact, when they, in after years, retired from Kābul into Nangrahār, were divided into three septs or divisions.—Gabarī [not from Gabr, a fire-worshipper—it is a different word], Mutrāwī, and Mumfālī. Their rulers were descendants of the Jahāngīrīān Sultāns—Sultān Bahrām and Sultān Pakhal—who held all the country north of the Kābul river, from the Tag-āo river to the Pīr-Pinjāl mountains of Kashmīr, east of the Indus, and likewise some parts on the southern side of the Kābul river as far south as the Spīn Ghar or Safed Koh, but their power had greatly declined. Sultān Awes was the Gabarī Sultān of Suwāt at that period, and was the last king of that territory and its dependencies, but he retired northwards before the power of the Yūsufīs and Mandarī, towards the sources of the Amūsiāh or Oxus. He, and his descendants, for several generations, ruled therein as far as the frontier of Badakhshān, after which they are suddenly lost sight of. The great probability is that the rulers of Chitrāl, Kāshkār, Shighnān, Wākhān, and some other petty states on the upper Oxus, are their descendants; and, like them, they claim descent from Alexander of Macedon.

In the time of the Ākhūnd, Darwezah, some of the descendants of these Jahāngīrīān Sultāns of Pich, as they are called, were still dwelling in Nangrahār, at the town of Pāpīn in particular, and the Ākhūnd himself, on the mother's side, was descended from Sultān Bahrām. He gives the names of twelve direct generations of Chiefs and Sultāns as far back as Sultān Shams. I hope to be able to enter into details of this interesting subject shortly, but a good deal respecting the geography of these parts, and practical routes, will be found in my accounts of Suwāt, Kāshkār, Chitrāl, Kāfiristān, and the Independent Afghān States, and also of Yārkand and Kāshghar, in the *Journal of the Bengal Asiatic Society*, as far back as 1856, which contain many geographical details, which have since been discovered by "Havildars" and "Mullas," and appropriated by one or two literary vampires.

Khushbāl Khān, the celebrated Poet, and Chief of the Afghān tribe of Khatak, in one of his poems on Suwāt, which I have quoted in my account of that valley, in the *Journal* above mentioned, refers to some of the many routes leading into Turkistān from the tract in which the Chingiz Khān was encamped, and one of which he evidently intended to take, in the following manner:

"There is a road leading into Turkistān by Hindū-koh,  
And another that leads into Chitrāl and Badakhshān,  
Another route also leads to Butān and Kāshghar,  
And there is one more that goes to Morang—up hill and down dale."

A few of these Gībarīs are, I believe, still to be found in the districts referred to.

In the KASHGHAR MISSION HISTORY, Surgeon-Major Bellew states [p. 142] that "His route was probably across the *Sodt* country into the Kūmar [sic] valley, where Chaghān Sarāc, or 'white hostelry,' from its name attests Moghol occupation, and thence up the Chitrāl [sic] valley called also Kāshkār,

three months he halted in the Gībarī territory and the Koh-pāyah; and, from thence, the Chingiz Khān despatched envoys to the presence of the august Sultān, Shams-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish—May he rest in

through the easy Baroghī Pass. . . . Such, at least, is the route taken by part of his army, if not by Chingiz himself, who, according to the author of the *Tabaṭṭi Nasrī* (a personal actor at Tolak in the defence against his invasion of Ghor), rejoined his camp with the heavy baggage left at Naman Pushta, in Tokharistan [*sic*], and took it on with him to Samarcand, where he spent the spring and summer" !

The Doctor could not have had a map by him when he wrote this, and certainly did not read the "*Tabaṭṭi Nasrī*" aright. What the *Tabaṭṭi-i-Nāsrī* contains may be seen above and farther on. If the Chingiz Khān had taken the route marked out for him by the Doctor from "Pakli and Swāt"—but the Chingiz Khān *never* crossed to the east bank of the Indus with his army—he would have performed a feat indeed. From thence to Chaghān Sarāi and the Pushtah-i-Nu'man in Khurāsān, *not* in Tukhārīstān, I beg leave to say, he would have marched through a maze of mountains, the most difficult, perhaps, in Asia, some 30 degrees from E. to W., after which, to reach Samarkand only, he would have had to march backward some five degrees more in the direction of N. E. Chaghān certainly signifies white, as he says, but who shall show that the place in question was named Chaghān Sarāi in consequence of that march, or that it did not receive the name from Turks centuries before, or from Mughals—even the Mughals reigning in India—centuries after?

It will be observed that the Doctor simply says "*his route was probably across the Swāt country*" and "*through the easy Baroghī Pass*," but Mr. D. C. Boulger, in a book entitled "THE LIFE OF YAKOOB BEG, AMEER OF KASHGAR," whose sole authority [as he states] for such a statement is Doctor Bellew's narrative in "all its fullness," has ventured to assert, on the bare probability expressed by the Doctor, that the Chingiz Khān *did* actually return from the Indus to Kashghar by the "Baroghī Pass." At pp. 28 and 29 is the following :—

"Genghis Khan carried the terror of his name into the utmost recesses of the Hindoo Koosh. He wintered in the district of Swat, on our north-west frontier, a territory which is quite unknown to us except by hearsay [he might have added, "as far as he knew"], and which has only been occupied by the Mongol and Macedonian conquerors [here, too, he might have added, "as far as he knew"] From his head quarters on the banks of the Pasykora he sent messengers to Dehli. . . . He hastily broke up from his quarters in Swat, and, by the valley of the Kumar and Chutai, he entered Kashgar, through the Baroghī Pass."

All this may appear very satisfactory to the unwary, but there is not an atom of fact in the whole statement, and I shall presently show that the Chingiz Khān did nothing of the sort, and was never near the "Baroghī Pass" in his life. This is a specimen of the nonsense called history which this Afghan war has called forth by the hecatomb, and the public misled.

Colonel G. B. Mallison, C. S. I., in his "*History of Afghanistan from the Earliest Times*," states (p. 113) that "Chingiz Khān," meanwhile, on the first news of the outbreak in Khwārizm, had hastened to that province, had

peace!—as he was entertaining the design of conducting his army towards Hindūstān,<sup>2</sup> and of returning, by way of the Koh-i-Qarā-ghal<sup>3</sup> and Kām-rūd, to the country of Chin; but, although he was burning shoulder-bones [of sheep] continually and examining them, he used not to find permission

suppressed the rebellion [*sic*. Perhaps the writer did not know that Khawārazm was an independent empire, including great part of western Asia], *killing in battle the two brothers of Jalāl-u-Dīn*, and that he had then "marched southward, capturing in succession *Balkh, Mérv, Herdt, Nishāpor*, and *Tus*," which places, save *Balkh*, the Chingiz Khān was never near in his life. Soon after the author informs us that from 1227 to 1251 "the enslaved country (Afghanistan) *had no history*" [as far as Col. Malletson knew]. These pages will show the correctness of history, which is "a marvel of accuracy."

To return to the Chingiz Khān. His object was to save distance, and reach Tingkut by the shortest route. By Lakhanawāṣṭ and Kām-rūd the distance would have been still lessened, assuming that it lay as we find it in the maps of the old travellers and the Jesuits, but not if it had lain as far north as it appears in the map to the "*Mongols Proper*," wherein we are informed [p. 92] that "Jingis Khan wintered about the *sources* of the *Indus*," which are in Tibbat itself.<sup>4</sup> If so, he would have been very near Tingkut, without marching back some ten degrees west to reach Buklān, and then marching twenty degrees east again to reach Tingkut. He found, however, that he was not likely to obtain the consent of Sulṭān I-yal-timish to take the Qarā-ghal route, and as time pressed he had to give it up, and get into the route by which he had entered Khurāsān in the outset. The particulars respecting his return will be found farther on.

<sup>2</sup> Northern India is here referred to.

<sup>3</sup> In nearly all the copies of the original this word is written قاراقال with q, but g is meant the three points having been run into one, as is often done, in *MSS.* This is the mountain range which several European scholars have made mistakes about, but our author seems to refer to the Himālayah range in its general acceptation, in referring to Kām-rūd. Reinaud, for example, reads the name *Kilardjak* from AL-BIRŪNĪ, in the Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh of Rashīd-ud-Dīn, but, in the copies of the latter work which I have examined, the name is correctly written Ibn Batūṭah also has Qarā-ghāl. The description given shows very plainly the tract of country indicated. Al-Birūnī says the peaks resemble domes of *bilaur* [crystal], and that they are covered with perpetual snow, like the mountain of Dimāwand. Then, continuing his description from east to west, he says, next come the Bilaur Mountains in the direction of Turkistān, and that a two days' journey brings one into Turkistān. Their cities or countries [*bilād*] are Gilgt, Astūrah, and Chilās, and the people of Kashmīr suffer greatly from their raids. Farther on he says that, in two days after passing the mountains of Bilaur and Shāmīlān, the country of the Bhūtawāi Turks is reached [this was the part the Mughal ruler wished to reach], and again refers to their raids upon Kashmīr, but what I wish to draw particular attention to is this statement, that, if a person travels along the left bank of the Sind [Indus], he will meet with numerous towns and villages, to the south of the capital of Kashmīr, as far as the QARĀ-CHAL range between which and Kashmīr is a distance of two leagues.

augured that he should enter Hind, when swift messengers brought information to him from Tamghāj and Tingit, that the Khāns of Tingit, and Tamghāj were in a state of revolt, and that the loss of those territories was impending; and, as a matter of necessity, he returned from the Koh-pāyah of Gībarī.

The whole of the mountains [of that tract] were blocked with snow, and, by the Chingiz Khān's command, they used to sweep it away; and, by way of the passes of the territory of Ghaznīn and Kābul, he returned to Turkistān and Kāshghar.

From Gībarī, in the depth of the winter season, he despatched Uktāc with an army of Mughal troops into Ghūr and Khurāsān. Uktāc reached a place situated between Ghūr and Ghaznīn which they [the people] call Pul'-i-Āhangarān [the Blacksmiths' Boundary], near unto Firūz-koh, and there Uktāc pitched his camp. From thence he nominated the Juzbī, Sa'dī, and the Juzbī, Mankadhū,<sup>6</sup> and several other Nū-īns, with a large force, to proceed into Sistān, and the Nū-īn Abkah, who was the Chingiz Khān's personal Manjanikī [Engineer—head of the catapult workers], and in whose corps were 10,000 Mughal Manjanikīs, was

<sup>6</sup> The word appears to be شنب the plural of شمة as rendered above. In some copies of the text the word appears to be شنه which, unless a proper name, is meaningless. Other copies have شنه شنه and even شنه. The Calcutta Printed Text has شنه.

The Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh states that, after the defeat of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, the Chingiz Khān advanced up the Indus, and sent Uktāc downwards towards Ghaznīn, and that, during the hot season, the Chingiz Khān, with the main army, continued encamped in the plain of Mīrwān—میروان—or Nīrwān—نیروان—for it is written both ways, and also Yazwān—بران in expectation of being joined by the Nū-yān, Balā, who had been sent in pursuit of the Khwārazmī Sultān. When he rejoined, the Chingiz Khān moved from his summer quarters and set out in order to reach Tingkit by the shortest route. His forces advanced some marches, when news of the revolt in Tingkit reached him, and, as the route he was then following lay through a most difficult country, filled with mountains and forests, uncultivated, with a sickly climate, and bad water, he gave orders to make a retrograde movement back towards Parghāwar [the territory of—Alfi also states that he set out from thence in Muḥarram], and returned to his own country by the same route as he had come, by the Bāmīān mountains. When he reached the fortress of Kūnāūn-Kor-kān—کوناؤن کورکان—Uktāc rejoined him with his forces.

<sup>6</sup> Pul has other meanings besides that of a bridge, and here means as rendered. See page 321.

<sup>6</sup> In some works, Mankadah.

despatched against the fortress of [the] Ashiyār<sup>7</sup> of Gharjistān. Uktāe likewise sent the Nū-īn, Iljī, into the hill-tracts of Ghūr and Hirāt. In short, Shahnaḥs [Intendants] and bodies of troops were appointed to proceed into every part of Ghūr, Khurāsān, and Sistān; and, during the whole of that winter, those bodies of troops from the Mughal forces, which had entered into those different territories, carried slaughter into all the townships and villages thereof.

When information had reached the Chingiz Khān of the slaying of the Mughal Shahnaḥs, he commanded, saying: "From whence have these people whom I have killed come to life again? On this occasion my commands are on this wise, that the heads of people shall be separated from their bodies, in order that they may not come to life again." Consequent upon this, they [the Mughals] devastated all the cities of Khurāsān, a second time.

The force<sup>8</sup> which had advanced to the gate of Sistān took that place by assault; and, in every quarter, and in every dwelling thereof, they had to fight before they were able to overcome the people, for the Musalmāns of Sistān,<sup>9</sup> women and men—great and small—all resisted obstinately with knife and sword. All [the males] were slain, and the females were martyred.

In the city of Hirāt, to the gate of which [another] Mughal force had advanced—as has been previously recorded—there was a Khawājah, whom they were wont to style the Khawājah Fakhr-ud-Dīn-i-'Abd-ur-Raḥmān, the 'Ibrānī<sup>1</sup> [Hebrew] Banker, a Khawājah of vast opulence, and held in great respect; and, on this occasion, he held out the city of Hirāt for some days. Malik Mubārīz-ud-Dīn, the Sabzwārī, having evacuated and fled from the fortress of Fīrūz-koh, had arrived at Hirāt, and they [the

<sup>7</sup> Ashiyār is the plural of Shār, the title by which the ancient rulers of Gharjistān were known. See page 341, note <sup>6</sup>.

<sup>8</sup> From Uktāe's army, as will be seen farther on.

<sup>9</sup> The events of Sistān will be found farther on. The fortress referred to held out a considerable time.

<sup>1</sup> This word—عبرانی—occurs in the oldest and most of the other copies of the text, but a few have 'Irāqī—عراقي. He is also styled 'Abd-ur-Raḥīm in one copy, but that was his father's name. The Rauzat-us-Shāh has عزق which may be meant for Tūmrām. The Ḥabīb-ur-Siyar, according to Price, has 'Arab.

inhabitants] had made him commander of the forces of Hirāt.<sup>2</sup> They related on this wise that, when the Mughals

<sup>2</sup> The news of the defeats inflicted upon the Mughal armies by Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barāi, at Barwān, in the spring and summer of 618 H., spread rapidly; and, "the wish being parent to the thought," it was stated that, henceforth, the Mughals would never again be able to cope with the Sultān. Consequently, in every part where there was any Malik, Shahnāh, or official of the Mughals, he was put to death, and the people set over themselves some person to direct the affairs of their various cities and provinces until such time as the Sultān should restore order, while some, no doubt, hoped to become independent.

Hirāt followed the example: the people rose, Malik Abū-Bikr, the Maraghand, and the Mughal, Mangatāie, were put to death, and the chief people chose Malik Mubārīz-ud-Dīn, the Sabzwārī, as their leader and governor, the same who is mentioned by our author at page 1004, while the administration of civil affairs was made over to the Khwājsh, Fakhr-ud-Dīn-i-'Abd-ur-Rahmān, a man of experience, who is styled an 'Irākī by all but our author; and these two personages were of one heart and one mind to resist the Mughals to the utmost. They forthwith made great exertion to put Hirāt in a good state of defence.

When the Chingiz Khān heard of these outbreaks, and especially that of Hirāt, he was very wroth with his son, Tūlī, who had now rejoined him, and exclaimed: "This comes through your withholding the sword from the Hirātis!" and the very next day a force of 80,000 horse was despatched on the way to Hirāt, under command of the Nū-yān Ilydāe [the Ilykdāe of others—which seems the most correct—and Ilyf of our author · Abū-l-Ghāzī, Bahādūr, spells it Ilyfktāe. He was the son of Kājūbīn, brother of the Chingiz Khān, and greatly trusted by him], at the same time remarking to him that dead people had come to life again, but he was to take care this time to ensure their being dead, by cutting their heads off, and to spare nothing. He set out in the month of Shawwāl [Sha'bān?], 618 H. [January, 1222 A.D.]. Such is the date given, but it is simply impossible. It, however, tends to correct, at the same time that it proves itself impossible, another date—that of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn's defeat on the Indus. Tūlī Khān, in the same year, had marched against Marw, Nishābūr, and Hirāt, and had returned to the camp at the Pūshṭah-i-Nū'mān, near Tāl-kān, which still held out, in 618 H. The news of the defeats inflicted on the Mughals by the Sultān, in the spring and summer of that year [about the first quarter of that year which began on the 7th of March], required a little time to spread; then the news of the outbreaks in consequence, and among them the rising at Hirāt, required a little time to reach the Chingiz Khān's camp. By this time Tūlī had rejoined him, a supreme effort was made to capture Tāl-kān, and after that we may suppose that he determined to send Ilydāe against Hirāt, and move against the Sultān in person. The date generally assigned to the Sultān's defeat on the Indus is Rajab—the seventh month—618 H., *three months before* Ilydāe, according to the date above, *was sent from Tāl-kān against Hirāt*. Some, again, say the Sultān was defeated in Shawwāl, the month in which Ilydāe is said to have been despatched, and this also proves that he could not have been despatched in that month, but some time before. It therefore seems beyond a doubt that the Chingiz Khān heard of the rise at Hirāt in the fifth or sixth month of 618 H., despatched Ilydāe early in Sha'bān—the eighth month—pushed on

captured the city upon this occasion, this Malīk Mubārīz-ud-Dīn, an aged man of fine and handsome aspect, rode

himself to Ghazna in pursuit of the Sulṭān, very soon after, and defeated him on the Indus in Shawwāl, the ninth month of 618 H. The Sulṭān could not have been defeated in Rajab—the seventh month—therefore; and from these dates likewise it is clearly proved that, on his way to Ghazna and the Indus, the Chingiz Khān could not have been detained by the so-called siege of Bāmīān, referred to in notes <sup>1</sup>, page 1008, <sup>2</sup>, page 1012, and <sup>3</sup>, page 1016.

The Nū-yān, Iljūdāc, in due course reached the river of Hirāt, where he halted for the period of one month in order to prepare for undertaking operations, and make ready the catapults and other warlike engines. From the neighbouring places, previously indicated by the Chingiz Khān himself, which had submitted to the Mughal yoke or had been subdued, he obtained assistance and war materials, and, in a short space of time, from the confines of Khurāsān, the territories of Balkh, and the highlands of Shīwarghān, some 50,000 horse and foot, of the people of the country compelled to serve, arrived to aid in the siege.

On the other hand, they were not idle in Hirāt; and Malīk Mubārīz-ud-Dīn prepared for a vigorous defence. All the people, high and low, great and small, bound themselves by most solemn pledges not to do as was done on the former occasion, but to fight while life remained.

The month of preparation having expired, the Nū-yān, Iljūdāc, or Iljī, who now had a force of 130,000 men under him, advanced towards the city of Hirāt, and four bodies of 30,000 men each were disposed, so as to operate against the four sides of the city, and the four gateways. He took care beforehand that those among his troops who should be guilty of any misdemeanour [no doubt this was because their defeats, by Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, had made them feel themselves less sure of success than previously, and it was soon after the Sulṭān's overthrow of the two Mughal armies that this force was sent against Hirāt, and before the Sulṭān's defeat on the Indus] should be punished with death, but those who distinguished themselves should be fittingly rewarded.

The siege was prosecuted with vigour and as bravely defended during a period of 6 months and 17 days, when, in the month of Jamādi-ul-Awwal, 619 H., the Mughal commander determined upon a supreme effort, and assaulted the place for several successive days, with the loss of some 5000 men upon each occasion. The walls, from the constant battering of the catapults and other military engines, had become quite honey-combed, when, one day, about 50 ells of the curtain gave way, burying, among others, 400 men of note among the Mughals under the debris. Three days after this misfortune division arose among the defenders—one party being for holding out, the other for capitulation—for the people within had now become much straitened, both for military stores, as well as food to feed the immense number of inhabitants and fugitives within the beleaguered city, while day by day, reinforcements and assistance were reaching the Mughals. At length, on a Friday, in the month of Jamādi-ul-Awwal—Rauzat-us-Safā says, the month after, but all leave out the date—619 H., the final assault was delivered where a portion of the curtain fell, and the Mughals entered the fortifications at what was afterwards called the Khākistār Burj [bastion] and captured the city. They at once commenced an indiscriminate massacre—old and young, male and female, adult and infant—and for the space of seven days this was



through the city fully armed, and arrayed in defensive armour; and, lance in hand, fought against the infidels until he attained martyrdom; but God knows the truth of the matter.

ACCOUNT OF THE CAPTURE OF THE FORTS OF KĀL-YŪN  
AND FĪWĀR.<sup>3</sup>

After the Mughal troops had effected the capture of Hirāt and desolated the city, they divided into two divisions. One of these marched into Sīstān, and at its head was the Juzbī, Sa'dī, and other great Nū-īns; and the other force appeared at the foot [of the walls] of the *ḥiṣār* of Kāl-yūn, and the troops took up their position round about that fortress.<sup>4</sup> It is a fortification excessively strong, the like of which, in strength of construction, there is nowhere to be found, either in loftiness and sublimity, or in stability and solidity; and in the KITĀB-I-MASĀLIK WA MAMĀLIK [The Book of Roads and Kingdoms], which

carried on, the city sacked, the buildings and defences demolished, and the ditch filled up. "The number of persons who attained martyrdom on this occasion amounted to 1,600,000," in which number must be certainly included those who, from the towns and villages around, sought shelter within that stronghold, and it will easily be perceived how difficult it was to have held out so long with such a number to feed. The resources of Hirāt must have been immense.

After the Nū-yān, Ijydāe, or Ijī, had desolated the district around Hirāt and left not a soul alive, he, after a further stay of eight days, set out for the fortress of Kāl-yūn, as our author states; but some authors mistake the name, and have Isfīzār—اسفزار—which was the name of a town and district dependent on Hirāt, through which he passed, and also mentioned in the "MASĀLIK WA MAMĀLIK." See page 397, note 7. The fortress described by our author lies beyond that, but the direction agrees. From this place the Mughal leader sent such of the booty captured at Hirāt, as was befitting, to the *Chingiz Khān*; and, when he reached the *ḥaṣḥā* of Aobah, mentioned before, at page 358, note 2—still a well-known place on the direct route between Hirāt and Kābul, although geographers, at the present day, seem to have very hazy ideas on the subject—he sent back a body of 2000 horse, with the true fiendish instinct of these barbarians, to slaughter such of the unfortunate Hirātīs as might have concealed themselves, and who now, imagining that the Mughals were far away, had come out of their places of shelter. Sixteen persons, including the *Khaṭīb*, were all who remained alive! The particulars respecting them will be found under Uktāe's reign.

<sup>3</sup> This fortress was founded by Sultān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām. See page 342.

<sup>4</sup> It is worthy of note, and highly significant, that the pro-Mughal authors never allude to these events in *Ghūr* and *Khurāsān*. They either knew nothing about them, or purposely concealed them.

the masters learned in science have compiled, this fortress is mentioned in these words : " The strongest fortress in the world, and the fairest, is Kāl-yūn." It is such a fortress that whosoever would go from the foot of [the walls of] the city of Hirāt to the foot of the walls of that fort, it behoveth him to proceed twenty farsangs [leagues] in an upward direction to a considerable altitude, until he reaches the base of the rock upon which that fortification stands ; and, that point having been reached, it is necessary to proceed another league upwards in order to reach the foot of the rock on the summit of which the ramparts of the fort stand. The height of that rock is about a thousand cubits, and the face of it is like a wall, so that it is impossible for any living thing to mount it, with the exception of reptiles of the earth ; and on the top of the rock is the plateau of four leagues or more [in area ?].<sup>6</sup> In the fortress are seven wells which they have excavated in the solid rock, and in each of these is so much perennial water that, however much of it is expended, it does not diminish ; and, in the middle of the fortress, is an extensive plain.

The sons of Abū-Bikr who were the champions of Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, two brothers, two heroes of renown, and, in themselves, two huge elephants of war—were the seneschals<sup>6</sup> of that fortress. Trustworthy persons have related that both the brothers, in stature, were so tall that, when they used to accompany Sultān Muḥammad Khwārazm Shāh [on horseback], in procession, with their hands placed on his stirrup, their heads rose a head higher than that of the Sultān ; and the two brothers were famed for their valour and high spirit, and they were the Amirs [governors] of the fortress. During these events the Ikhtiyār-ul-Mulk, Daulat Yār, the Tughrā-i, who was one of the rulers in the Khwārazm-Shāhī empire, had also entered the fortress of Kāl-yūn

<sup>6</sup> In most of the modern copies, "four bow-shots or more," but the context shows that inside the fort itself was an extensive plain. The map compiled by Captain Sanders and Lieutenant North, of the country around Hirāt during the first occupation of Afghānistān, will probably show its position, which lies about 70 miles N E. of Hirāt.

<sup>6</sup> The principal person in charge was a civilian, as previously mentioned, the Malik-ul-Kutāb, the Ikhtiyār-ul-Mulk, Daulat Yār-i-Tughrā-i, as mentioned at page 1003, but these two champions acted as seneschals of the fortress.

At the time when the infidel horsemen reached the base of the fortress, there were in Kāl-yūn a great number of men and much war material. Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, had [previously] beleaguered and pressed hard this fortress and that of Fiwār, which is opposite to it, for a period of ten or eleven years before he obtained possession of them.<sup>7</sup> Kāl-yūn had [since] been thoroughly provided with men and arms, and stores and provisions. When the Mughal troops began the attack upon it, the holy warriors and tried men within descended from the fortress and commenced holy war upon them, and despatched numbers of Mughals to hell. Day and night they engaged in fighting with and resisting the infidels. The intrepidity of the garrison of the fortress reached such a pitch that it was impossible for the Mughal force to obtain sleep at night out of dread of them, and so these infidels completely enclosed the entire fortress round with a circular wall, in which they placed two gates, facing the fortress, with walls before them, and men were told off to keep watch at night.<sup>8</sup> A trustworthy person related that a fox had remained at the foot of the rock on which the fortress of Kāl-yūn stands, within the circumvallation of the Mughals, and, for a period of seven months, that fox had no way by which he might get out, so strictly did the Mughal troops guard this wall.

When one year of the investment of the fortress passed away, the Juzbī, Sa'dī, with a Mughal army, from before the gate of Sistān, came into Khurāsān, and arrived at the base of the fortress of Kāl-yūn; and, a second time, was the place closely invested.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>7</sup> That was during the time of the Ghūrī Sultāns and must have happened soon after the assassination of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i Sām, or even before that event.

<sup>8</sup> The Printed Text, like some MS copies, differs considerably here, and they have, "a double" wall.

<sup>9</sup> From this it appears that, before the arrival of the Juzbī, Sa'dī, the Mughals had latterly contented themselves with merely blockading the place, but, after his arrival, began more active operations. Although beaten off twice, they never left it entirely, and then came back again to invest it, as will presently appear.

The Rauzat-uz-Ṣafā has an apocryphal story to the effect, that the people of the great fortress of Kāl-yūn, fearing the Mughals, with the help of the Hūrātis, would attack them again, now that they had obtained possession of Hīrāt,

A pestilent disease overcame the defenders of the fortress, and the greater part of the people died, through the provisions with which the fortress was supplied, which consisted of a large quantity of dried flesh and pistachios—for the pistachios of Khurāsān mostly come from around about Kāl-yūn—and, from constantly eating dried flesh, pistachios, and clarified butter, the people of the fortress used to fall sick, and their heads and feet used to swell, and death would result. After the garrison had held out against this investment for a period of sixteen months, not more than fifty persons remained alive, and of these twenty were suffering from swollen feet, and thirty were strong and healthy. One of this band left the fortress and went over to the Mughal force, and made known the state of the garrison and of the fortress of Kāl-yūn; and, when the Mughal troops ascertained for certain the state in which the people of the place were, the infidels donned their arms and turned their faces towards it. The garrison, resigning themselves to martyrdom, threw everything of value within the fortress, consisting of gold and silver, and valuable clothes, and whatever was of worth, into the wells, and then filled them up with large stones from the fortress; and all else that remained they burnt. They then threw open the gateway of the fortress, drew their swords, and threw themselves upon the infidel Mughals, and attained the felicity of martyrdom.

When the fortress of Kāl-yūn was taken, a body of the Mughal forces which had been at the foot of the walls of the fort of Walkh<sup>1</sup> of Tukhāristān, namely Tūlān, the Juzbī, and Arsalān Khān of Ḳaiālīk, with those Mughal troops, by command of the Chingiz Khān, marched to the foot of the fortress of Fiwār of Ḳādas.<sup>2</sup> This fortress of

although they had twice been obliged to raise the investment, despatched eighty men to Hirāt to ku! Amīr Abū-Bikr and Mangātāe, the Mughal, and thus create a diversion, and direct the Chingiz Khān's power to the destruction of Hirāt!

<sup>1</sup> See page 1023, and also note <sup>2</sup>, page 1024.

<sup>2</sup> This is the tract respecting the name of which there were some doubts at pages 342, 375, and 398, but Ḳādas and not Fādas—there is but the difference between ق and ف—is the correct name, but, in some copies, it is written—Ḳādūsh—with sh. It is in these parts, and among these mighty fortresses that the student of the Macedonian Alexander's campaigns might identify the stronghold of the Bākhtrian Oxyartes, the rock fortress of Choricenes [Kāl-yūn?]

**Fiwār** in strength, solidity, and impregnability, is still stronger than the fortress of **Kāl-yūn**, and the fact of its strength may be held certain in that ten men can defend it. Between **Fiwār** and **Kāl-yūn** is a distance of about ten farsangs [leagues], in such wise that both fortresses are in sight of each other. If strange horsemen should reach the base of the fortress of **Kāl-yūn** in the day, the people would make a smoke, and, at night, they would light a fire; and the garrison of **Fiwār** used [thus] to know of it: and if such should reach the fortress of **Fiwār** the same would be done to make it known to **Kāl-yūn**.

For a period of ten months<sup>a</sup> that the **Juzbī**, **Tūlān**, and **Arsalān Khān** of **Kaiālīk**, lay before the fortress of **Fiwār**, on account of the great scarcity of provisions, their forces had become reduced to great straits. They now brought from the stores of the fortress of **Kāl-yūn** what was necessary for their subsistence,<sup>b</sup> so that, for a short time [longer], they were able to continue before the stronghold. A person from the fort of **Fiwār** [now] came into the force of the **Juzbī**, **Tūlān**, and gave information of the state of the place, that [nearly] the whole of the garrison were dead, and that, throughout the whole fortress, there were not more than seven men alive, and out of them four or five were sick. Then the infidels armed themselves, and captured the place, and martyred those seven persons—God reward them!

These events happened in the latter part of the year 619 H.,<sup>c</sup> and this was the affair, as has been [just] related, of those two strongholds, than which there were no stronger forts in all **Khurāsān** and **Ghūr**.

#### ACCOUNT OF THE EVENTS WHICH HAPPENED IN **GHŪR**, **GHARJISTĀN**, AND **FĪRŪZ-KOH**<sup>d</sup>

The city of **Firūz-koh** which was the capital and seat of

and other positions not made out, always supposing, however, that the first **Nicea** is no other than **Nisā**, a very ancient place. Several of these strongholds agree with the descriptions given by **Arrian** and **Strabo**.

<sup>a</sup> One of the oldest copies has eight months

<sup>b</sup> It is stated just above that everything of value had been thrown into wells or burnt, but perhaps they did not think pistachios and other provisions worth destroying

<sup>c</sup> See note 7, page 1061

<sup>d</sup> The fortress of **Tūlak** is included under this heading, and our author says it

government of the Sultāns of Ghūr, the Juzbī Uḡlān,<sup>7</sup> with the Mughal forces [under him] appeared before, in the year 617 H., and for twenty days and more attacked it vigorously, but retired without having effected their purpose.<sup>8</sup> The people of Fīrūz-koh showed opposition towards Malik Mubārīz-ud-Dīn, the Sabzwārī [who was in charge], and rose against him, and he was under the necessity of entering the upper fortress, which is situated to the north-east of the city, upon a lofty and overhanging mountain. During the time of the Sultāns of Ghūr there was no more upon that spot than a great kaṣr [castle],<sup>9</sup> and it used to be impossible for laden beasts to get there; but, at this period, that Malik Mubārīz-ud-Dīn, the Sabzwārī, had restored and enlarged that fortress, he had carried a rampart all round the top of that mountain, and had made a road to that fortress so that laden camels used to go up to it, and a thousand men could find quarters therein.

When disagreement arose between the people of Fīrūz-koh and Malik Mubārīz-ud-Dīn, the Sabzwārī, and the latter took up his quarters in the upper fortress, the people wrote letters to Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain<sup>1</sup>—may he rest in peace!—and solicited him to come thither. Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, with the forces of Ghūr, proceeded to Fīrūz-koh, and Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, located his uncle's son, Malik 'Imād-ud-Dīn, Zangī, Ba'lāmī,<sup>2</sup> at Fīrūz-koh, and this circumstance happened in the year 618 H.

lay between Ghūr and Khurāsān, and, therefore, it was situated, by this account, in Gharjstān, north of Hirāt, or close to it. In another place [page 362], he says it is in the hill-tracts of Hirāt.

<sup>7</sup> This is the person who is turned into Hulakoo in Miles's "*Shajrat ul Atrak*," so called, but it is a work of no authority whatever, and his translation contains gross and absurd errors.

<sup>8</sup> As already mentioned at page 1007, which see.

<sup>9</sup> This is the place referred to at pages 403 and 407.

<sup>1</sup> Here, as in other places preceding, he is, in some copies, styled Ḥasan. He was Malik of Ghūr, under the Khwārazmīs, after the downfall of the Ghūrī dynasty. This is the illustrious Malik—the son of 'Alī, son of Ābī 'Alī—who came into India in the reign of I-yāl-tīmish, who held such a prominent position in Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh's reign, and who was, at last, put to death by that Sultān, or rather his advisers. See pages 702 and 798.

<sup>2</sup> Doubtful. It is written سل in some of the best copies of the text as well as سل as above, and in others—نعلی and نعلی—without any points.

When the forces of the infidel Mughal, under Uktāe,<sup>3</sup> moved from Ghaznīn and advanced towards Ghūr, a body of troops [from that army] pushed on, suddenly and unexpectedly, and fell upon Fīrūz-koh. Malik 'Imād-ud-Dīn, Zangī, they martyred in the year 619 H.; and the people of the city were martyred also. Malik Mubārīz-ud-Dīn, the Sabzwārī, evacuated the [upper] fortress, and came to Hirāt, and there attained martyrdom; and the city of Fīrūz-koh was wholly destroyed.<sup>4</sup>

The fortress of Tūlak, however, of which Amīr Ḥabashī-i-Nezah-war [the expert at the lance] on the part of Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh—on whom be peace!—was governor, did not fall into the hands of the Mughals. The fortress of Tūlak is a fortification totally unconnected

<sup>3</sup> The Chingiz Khān's son, at the time his father left the banks of the Indus with the intention of returning homewards. See page 1047

<sup>4</sup> This place, the seat of a powerful empire never afterwards recovered; and at this day even its site appears to be imperfectly known. Its destruction is another specimen of the "architectural affluatus which fell upon the world after the Mongol invasions."

But neither our author, nor any other Oriental writer, knows anything about Ghūr, its capital, or its sovereigns, and when they tell us that Fīrūz-koh was the capital they merely show their ignorance, for does not "General Ferrier" tell us that "*Zerni*" was? In his book, entitled "*CARAVAN JOURNEYS*," he states at page 248, "*Zerni was, as I have before remarked, the ancient capital of the country of Gour. Its position in a valley is happily chosen*"!!

In his attempt to reach Kābul from Hirāt, "the General" set out from the latter place, and says he reached as far north as Sar-i-pul, and was compelled soon after to return to Hirāt again. This journey occupied him from the 22nd June to the 21st July—just *thirty days*—on which latter date he was brought back to Hirāt again. During the chief part of this time he was under *surveillance*, and not permitted to roam about, and travelled part of the time through "Gour" by *starlight*, but notwithstanding all this he not only discovered the ancient capital, but also its name, totally contrary to every native author who has written on the subject, and also had time to make researches into the history of Gour, although he did not even know how to spell the name correctly. Consequent on these discoveries our author's account of its twenty-two rulers, not including those of Ghaznīn and Tukhārīstān, must be contrary to fact, for "the General" tells us that the "Gour" dynasty only lasted sixty-four years, and that it only consisted of *five* persons!!

I may be permitted to doubt the correctness of "the General's" statements (upon a good many matters besides this, and not in this book alone), until some one can show me, in any history whatever, such a name as *Zerni*, much less that it was the "ancient capital" of Ghūr.

It is quite time such incorrect statements and such "Histories" should be exposed.

with any adjoining mountain, and the foundation of it dates from the time of Manūghīhr, and Ārašh,<sup>6</sup> the Archer, [then] held it. In the upper part of it are chambers hewn in the solid rock which they call Ārašhī [after Ārašh],<sup>6</sup> and Amīr Naṣr, the Tūlakī,<sup>7</sup> sunk a well, in the upper part of the fortress; and the diameter of the well will be about twenty *gas* [ells], and it is excavated in the solid rock. The water, however much is drawn from it, shows no decrease, and its depth is immense. The fortress is of great strength, and lies between Ghūr and Khurāsān. When Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, came to Balkh,<sup>8</sup> Ḥabashī-i-Nezah-

<sup>6</sup> The famous champion and archer of Manū-ghīhr—Heavenly-faced—the tenth king of the Bāstānīah dynasty, and one of the heroes of the Shāh-Nāmāh. Ārašh, upon one occasion, is said to have discharged an arrow from Āmul to Marw, a distance of only about “*forty days’ journey*.” This, however, is much of a kind with the feats the Greek heroes of antiquity performed, and not a whit more exaggerated.

<sup>7</sup> It will be seen from this, that the excavations in and around the district of Bāmīān, and where the two great idols, the *Khing But*—Grey Idol, and the *Surkh But*—Red Idol, stand, are, by no means, the only ones in these parts; and the fact shows, in a somewhat ridiculous light, the various opinions respecting the latter, and their purposes.

The account given respecting them by oriental writers is, briefly, this. “The *Khing But* is the beloved of the *Surkh But*, and they are each about fifty-two *gas*—ells—high. They are situated in the mauṣa’—district—of Bāmīān, a dependency of Tūkhārīstān, on the frontier of Badakhshān. People can go in and come out at the fingers and toes of these idols or figures, which are hollow within. Some call them Lāt and Manāt, and in ‘Arabic they are styled Yaghūṣ and Ya’ūḳ.”

MASSON, in his *Travels*, makes out these two figures to be the work of the “White Huns,” who conquered Transoxiana and “Khorasan,” and were finally exterminated by “Zingis Khan,” and his opinion is supposed to “receive countenance from the well-ascertained fact that Zingis Khan destroyed Ghulghuleh,” the ruins of which are scattered over the Bāmīān valley. The same author considers these caves to have been catacombs. Strange that we hear of no *white* or *black* Huns in connexion with “Zingis” and “the catacombs.” MOORECROFT [each rides his own hobby] was of opinion that Bāmīān was “the residence of a great Lama,” and the excavations the abodes of “Lama clergy,” and “the lower classes of the monastic society,” and that “the laity inhabited the adjoining city.”<sup>1</sup> ELPHINSTONE attributes these idols and the contiguous caves to “the Buddhist princes of Ghore,” but what history says that the Tājīk Ghūrī chiefs and rulers were Buddhists any more than that they were “White Huns”? and what are the proofs? Col. G. B. Malletson, however, makes “Ghilza” Afghāns of them!

<sup>7</sup> A former governor of the place: the chief whose *sief* it was.

<sup>8</sup> Just previous to his flight towards Nīshāpūr. Here all the copies of the text collated have Balkh—بلخ, and not Walkh—ولخ as before, showing, still more clearly, that they refer to two separate places.



war, with the troops of Tūlak, proceeded to Balkh also, and presented himself before the sublime threshold [of that monarch]. He was directed to return to Tūlak,<sup>9</sup> and put the fortress in order and make preparation for opposing the Mughals. After he returned from thence, in the beginning of the year 617 H., on several occasions, bodies of Mughal horsemen came to the foot of the fortress, and made raids in its neighbourhood; and, in the year 618 H., the Nū-īn, Fikū,<sup>1</sup> who was a son-in-law of the Chingiz Khān, and who commanded a force of 40,000 Mughal cavalry, and troops of other races, appeared at the foot of the fortress of Tūlak with a numerous army.

Amir Ḥabashī-i-Nezah-war<sup>2</sup> agreed with him that he would become tributary to the Mughals; and came down from the fortress and paid homage to him, and returned to it again. The subsidy which he had assented to, Ḥabashī-i-Nezah-war apportioned among the people of Tūlak, and enforced its payment rigorously. This Ḥabashī-i-Nezah-war, in his younger days, in the beginning of the reign of Sulṭān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, was a common man, a Nishāpūrī, and a maker of sacks; and, in Khurāsān and Khwārazm, there never has been one so skilled in the use of the lance as he. This has been heard oftentimes from his own lips,—“If, upon occasion, I should lie down on my back upon the ground, and take a staff in my hand, I would defend myself against four men with spears.” In short, he was a very excellent man, and his good works were many, and his charities countless. At this time, however, through his having apportioned this subsidy among them, the whole Tūlakī people decried him, and considered themselves oppressed in the collecting of it. One of the

<sup>9</sup> Tūlak must have been a place of considerable size, and its dependencies populous, as, some years before, 1200 Tūlakīs, were left to garrison Tabarhindah, just before Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, Ghūrī, was defeated by Rāe Pithorā at Tara'īn. See pages 458 and 459.

At page 362, our author states that it lies in the mountains in the vicinity of Hirāt, and is in the country of Khurāsān. It is in vain to look for it in any of our maps, but it is not in “Ghor,” so styled.

<sup>1</sup> The same who was overthrown by Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn. At page 1006 the number of troops is stated at 45,000. See note <sup>2</sup>, page 288.

<sup>2</sup> He must not, from the similarity of part of his name, be confounded with Tāj-ud-Dīn, Ḥabashī-i-'Abd-ul-Malik, Sar-i-Zarrād, referred to at page 1007, who, subsequently, fell, fighting against those infidels.

clever, of that time, composed a verse, and, as it is witty, it has been here inserted in order that it may come under the observation of the sovereign of Islām, and that the people of the Ṭulak district may be remembered with an invocation. The Khawājah, and Imām, Jamāl-ud-Dīn, the Khāzinchi<sup>2</sup>—on whom be the Almighty's mercy!—says:

"I said: 'Habashī, Nezhah-war! what is this wrong?

What have the Ṭulakīs to do with rack and prison?'

He replied 'I am a leather-worker and Fikū a dog.'<sup>3</sup>

The dog knows and the leather-worker knows what the wallet contains.'"

The inhabitants of Ṭulak, both the soldiery and the peasantry, having suffered extortion [at his hands], revolted against him, seized him, and delivered up the fortress of Ṭulak and Habashī-i-Nezhah-war to Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, in order that he might take charge of it, who came to the fortress of Ṭulak, and he located therein his own son, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Muhammad; and the maternal uncle of the writer [of this work], which is Minhāj-i-Sarāj, and whose name was Ḳāzī Jalāl-ud-Dīn-i-Majd-ul-Mulk, Aḥmad-i-'Usmān, Nisāwī, was Hākim [governor], and the Khawājah [Jamāl-ud-Dīn'] directed its affairs<sup>4</sup>. After Habashī-i-Nezhah-war fell into the power of Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, the latter for a time kept him in confinement, and, at length, gave him permission to proceed to the fortress of Fiwār. The Malik of that fortress was the Pah-

<sup>2</sup> This term, signifying treasurer, is somewhat doubtful, as it is written in different ways, and mostly without the diacritical points—ماروسی—مارعی—حارسی—حاری

<sup>3</sup> A tanner and a dog held near akin in those parts

<sup>4</sup> This is an important passage, in some respects, since, without the use of two izāfats, both of which stand in lieu of *bin son of*, no sense can possibly be made of it. At page 458, our author mentions this uncle "of his maternal grandfather," but that last part of the sentence must have been redundant or an interpolation. There, his name and titles are not given in full, he being merely styled Ḳāzī Majd-ud-Dīn, Ṭulakī, but it now appears that Majd-ud-Dīn was his title, and Aḥmad his name, and that he was the son of 'Usmān, the Ṭulakī, whose family, originally, came from Nisā. Ḳāzī Jalāl-ud-Dīn was his son, and the brother of that Ḳāzī of Ṭulak, named Muḥammad, entitled Ẓiyā-ud-Dīn, who was left, along with 1200 Ṭulakīs, to defend the fortress of Tabarhindah, when, thirty-seven years before, Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, Ghūrī, retired to Ghaznīn after his defeat by Rāe Pithorā.

The son of Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, the Ghūrī, must have been young in years, and therefore the Khawājah, Jamāl-ud-Dīn, and the Ḳāzī Jalāl-ud-Dīn, directed the affairs of Ṭulak, nominally for Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn. It appears strange, however, that his own people should have put the Ḳāzī to death, and our author does not give us any further particulars.

lawān, Aḡil-ud-Dīn,<sup>6</sup> the Nishābūrī, and he seized Ḥaba-shī-i-Nezah-war and martyred him.

When the fortress of Kāl-yūn fell into the hands of the infidels [the Mughals], the inhabitants of the fortress of Tūlak, who were also kinsmen of the Khwājah, and fifteen heads of families, also kinsmen of each other, entered into a compact together,<sup>7</sup> in the year 619 H., and caused the Khwājah to be martyred, and sent the son of Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, back to the presence of his father. For a period of four years, they [the Tūlakīs] waged war against the Mughal infidels a great many times, and the author of this work, which is Minhāj-ud-Dīn-i-Sarāj, during these four years, used to join the people of Tūlak, who were all kinsmen and brethren, in their holy warfare, and, in the end, it continued safe from the hands of the infidels.

After the people of Tūlak became disobedient to the authority of Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, he determined upon retiring into Hindūstān, in the year 620 H.,<sup>8</sup> and the fortress of Tūlak remained unmolested.<sup>9</sup>

Subsequently to these events, the author of this work chanced, upon two occasions, to undertake journeys into the Ḳuhistān on the subject of a mission: the first time, in the year 621 H.,<sup>1</sup> and, on the second occasion, in 622 H. Afterwards, in the year 623 H., on the part of Malik Rukn-

<sup>6</sup> Mentioned at page 1003

<sup>7</sup> The date here given in the text, in which all copies agree, is سبع—seven—but it cannot possibly be correct, and must be a mistake for تسع—nine—because Biwār, which held out over a year, was not captured, by our author's own account, until the latter part of the year 619 H. The investment of that fortress was only undertaken after the fall of Walkh of Tukhārastān, against which Arsalān Khān of Kābilīk, and Tūlān, the Jurbī, were despatched in the third month of 618 H., and which held out for eight months. See pages 1023 and 1055

<sup>8</sup> An account of what misfortunes befell him on his way thither will be found farther on

<sup>9</sup> At page 1069 it is stated that, on the 12th of a month, not given, in the year 620 H., the Mughals sprang an ambuscade against Tūlak, but did not succeed in their object. At page 1070 also, our author further states, that Tūlak was entered in 620 H. by the Mughals, after Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, had retired from the territory of Ghūr with other Malikhs, and they were making towards Hind by the route over the Arghand river

<sup>1</sup> At this time Khurāsān was entirely clear of Mughals. These journeys are mentioned farther on in the account of the downfall of the Mulāḥidāhs, which see, and page 201. He undertook two journeys for Malik Rukn-ud-Dīn, the first was in 622 H. See page 1039

ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-'Uṣmān, the Maraghani, of Khāesār [of Ghūr], the author proceeded to the presence of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bināl-Tigīn, the Khwārazmī, and, in the same year, on the part of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bināl-Tigīn, he went on another mission to the Bādshāh<sup>2</sup> of the Ḳuhistān, to Neh<sup>3</sup> and to Sistān. After this the author set out [on his journey] towards Hindūstān.

Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bināl-Tigīn [subsequently?], came to Tūlak,<sup>4</sup> and the people of that fortress paid obeisance to him, and he removed [some of?] them to Sistān. In the disaster of Sistān, they all attained martyrdom,<sup>5</sup> and [the remainder of?] that people continued there [at Tūlak]. The Amīr of Tūlak [at that time?] was Hizabr-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Mubārak, and he went to Kyuk Khān,<sup>6</sup> and, up to this present day, his children hold that fortress.

#### ACCOUNT OF THE EVENTS WHICH TOOK PLACE BEFORE THE FORT OF SAIF-RŪD OF GHŪR.

The fortress of Saif-rūd of Ghūr<sup>7</sup> is the strongest of all

<sup>2</sup> Not a sovereign or king here, but the Muḥtaṣhim—a sort of Abbot or Prior—of the Mulāḥidah heretics, on the part of the head of that sect. See "*Panyab and Dehli*," in 1857, "by Rev J Cave Browne," who raises up a "*Badshah*"—a king—by means of the poor old Ākhūnd of Suwāt [lately dead], not knowing that words sometimes have two meanings.

<sup>3</sup> The Printed Text is always wrong with respect to the name of this well-known place. See under the Maliks of Sistān, page 200.

<sup>4</sup> At page 201 our author says Bināl-Tigīn took possession of the fortress of Isfār, as well as that of Tūlak, in 623 H. about the time he himself left his native country and set out for Hind, and at page 200 he states, that Bināl-Tigīn was despatched to Neh, by Burāk, the Hājib, to the assistance of one of the rival Maliks of Sistān, and that he took possession of Neh for himself.

<sup>5</sup> Our author says "all," as contained in the whole of the MSS collated, but this cannot be, for, otherwise, how could he have remained at Tūlak at the same time? Perhaps, as these events occurred at the period he was preparing to leave for Hind, his account became somewhat confused. At the time the Mughals invested the citadel of Sistān—the second time of their appearing in that country—these very Tūlakīs who were removed formed part of the Sistān garrison and made a gallant defence. Hizabr-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, was set up by the Tūlakīs after Bināl-Tigīn withdrew, and, having made submission to the Mughals, was allowed to continue to hold it. The siege of Sistān is mentioned farther on.

<sup>6</sup> Kyuk Khān ascended the throne in 643 H., and died in 647 H., some say in 648 H. See under his reign. It is most absurd to notice how this simple name has been written in some copies of the text—كوكل خان and even كوك only.

<sup>7</sup> This is the fortress in which Bahrām Shāh, son of Khusrāu Malik, the last of the Maḥmūdīyah dynasty of Ghaznī, was immured. See page 115.

the strongholds of the *jibāl* [mountain tracts], and the foundation of it had been laid by the father of the Sultāns Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn, and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn—Sultān Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām,<sup>8</sup> son of 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Al-Ḥusain.

When Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, retired from before Balkh towards Māzandarān, he commanded so that Malik Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, should put the fortress in a state of repair. There was but little time [to do it in], and he was unable to construct more than a reservoir in the upper part of it; for, two months after the command was given, the Mughal army entered [that part], and the possibility of constructing anything more did not offer itself. In that reservoir he collected sufficient water for about forty days' supply for the people of the fortress. The Mughal troops carried their depredations into all parts of Ghūr; and the whole of the quadrupeds of every kind, from all parts, fell into the hands of the infidels, and the people of Ghūr attained martyrdom, through a *diram* of four *dāngs*.<sup>9</sup>

Malik Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, with his troops, sought shelter within that fortress, and the Nū-īn Mangūtah, the Nū-īn Karāchah, and the Nū-īn Utsuz,<sup>1</sup> with a numerous army, advanced to the foot [of the walls] of the fort, and, when they understood that the defenders had but a small supply of water, they fixed their camp at the base of the stronghold, and commenced hostilities. For a period of fifty days they assailed it with great vigour, and, on both sides, a great number of Musalmāns attained martyrdom, and Mughals beyond compute went to hell. There was an immense number of quadrupeds in the fortress; and as

<sup>8</sup> Four forts are mentioned as having been constructed by him, but this one is not mentioned. See page 341. The *jibāl* of Ghūr has already been noticed.

<sup>9</sup> This appears to be some proverb or trite saying. It might be read "four *dāngs* out of a *diram*"—four fourths. A *diram* has four *dāngs* or *tāngs*. Or it may mean that many people lost their lives in attempting to save their cattle.

<sup>1</sup> This name is very doubtful in the text, no two copies being alike; but this is, at least, Turkish, and is plainly written—السر—in one copy. The others may be Albar, Alsar, Absar, Atar, Asaz, Albasar, or Alburz, and thus, in three copies, the second letter is *z*, and in three other copies the last letter is *s*. This leader's name does not occur in other histories, because they do not contain any account whatever of the attacks upon, and determined defence of, these strongholds, nor is his name to be found in a long list of the Chingiz Khān's Nū-yīns.

many as they were able to cure by drying they slaughtered, and the remainder, amounting to the number of 24,400 odd, perished for want of water. The whole were thrown from the ramparts of the fort on to the glacis on the side of the hill [on which it stood], and the whole face thereof, for a depth of some forty *gas* [ells], was completely strewn with the carcasses of the dead animals, so that not a yard [of space] of the whole hill could be seen for them.

Orders were given so that, for the people of the fortress, a stated allowance of water, grain, and other provision was fixed, to each man half a *man* [about a gallon, or rather less] of water, and a *man* of grain;<sup>2</sup> and to Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, one *man* of water—half for [his own] drinking, and half for the purpose of his ablutions. There was no horse in the fortress but one, the private horse of Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, for the use of which the water expended in the Malik's ablutions used to be set aside, and was collected in an open vessel so that the animal might drink it. When a period of fifty days had expired, the party which had been stationed to guard the reservoir of water gave intimation that not more than one day's supply remained in it; and a person, from the fortress, went away, and informed the Mughal troops of that circumstance. Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, when he ascertained the fact, convened the males of the people of the fortress at the time of afternoon prayer, and proposed that, the next morning, at break of day, they should put all the females and children to death<sup>3</sup> with their own hands, and throw open the gateway of the fortress, and that every man, armed with a naked sword, should conceal himself in some place within the fortress, and, when the infidel Mughals should enter it, they [the Musalmāns], with one accord, should fall upon them with their swords, and should continue to fight them until they should attain the felicity of martyrdom.

All pledged themselves to this, and submitted their

<sup>2</sup> About 8 lbs. This weight varies in the different countries and districts of Persia, Afghānistān, and India, from 8 lbs. to 40 lbs.

<sup>3</sup> The I O L. MS., No. 1952, the Hamilton MS., and the Ro. As. Soc. MS. have instead of *بکشند*—"should put them to death"—*برهند*—"should strip them naked"! This shows the danger of trusting to a single MS., or even two, and the absurd mistakes made by ignorant scribes, who, in this instance, wrote the adjective qualifying sword twice over.

hearts to martyrdom; and this determination became fixed in their minds, and they were taking leave of each other, until, at the time of evening prayer, Almighty God, the Most High and Holy, unclosed the door of His mercy [upon them], and, out of His boundless beneficence, sent clouds, so that, on the summits of the mountains around about, and parts adjacent, until midnight, the rain of mercy descended, and the snow of compassion fell, in such wise, that, from the army of the infidels without, and the champions of the faith within the fortification, a hundred thousand exclamations and cries arose in wonderment at the succour of the Most High God. The people of the fortress, who had withdrawn their hearts from existence, and washed the hand of hope of life, and who had endured the thirst of fifty days, and during that time had not drunk the *sharbat* of their fill of water, drank from the coverings of the tents and *sāyah bāns*, so much snow water, in satisfying<sup>4</sup> their longing, that, for a period of seven days after, smoke issued from their throats along with their saliva.

When the Mughal forces beheld that Divine assistance, and witnessed the bountifulness of the Creator, they knew that the people of the fort had saved at least a month's supply of water, or even a two months' supply, that the month of *Tir* [the fourth solar month] was come to its close, and that, without doubt, in the winter season, snow would fall successively. The following day, therefore, they abandoned their position before the fortress and raised the investment, and went to hell until the following year.

When the new year, 619 H.,<sup>5</sup> came round, again the Mughal forces from *Khurāsān*, *Ghaznīn*, and *Sistān*, entered the different parts of the mountain tracts of *Ghūr*. After the disaster which befel Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, *Khawārazm Shāh*, a force from the Mughal armies, amply equipped

<sup>4</sup> In most copies of the text طعم—a cooking-place, a kitchen, etc.—and in the printed text طعم has been used for طعم.

<sup>5</sup> The greater number of the copies of the text have 618 H., but, as Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn's defeat happened, not in the seventh month—*Rajab*—of that year, as generally stated, for the reasons already given in note <sup>2</sup>, page 1049, but in *Shawwāl*, the ninth month, the second attack on this fortress, if it happened in the beginning of a year, must have happened in the beginning of that of 619 H., and it is subsequently stated that, with a winter intervening, it was taken in 620 H.

and provided, and [consisting of] cavalry, and infantry, and Amirs, beyond computation, appeared at the foot of the fortress of Saif-rūd, and pitched their camp; and hostilities commenced. As Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, had had opportunity, and had constructed reservoirs, and collected vast store of provision, he fought many encounters with the Mughal troops, and used strenuous efforts against them; and, the greater the efforts and endeavours the infidels put forth, the stronger became the affairs of the fortress, and the more intrepid grew the warriors of the faith. On this occasion, the fighting continued, and they kept up the investment, for a further period of two months, and, in no way, could they obtain possession of the fortress.

After that [period of time], the infidels turned their faces towards treachery and deceit, and entered into the gate of peace, and propounded words of amity. As the people, for a considerable time, had suffered the disquietude and care of a fortress, out of eagerness for gold, and clothes, and cattle, at a cheap rate, they were agreeable to an accommodation. Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, used to dissuade them greatly from entering into a truce with infidels, but the people had become wearied and exhausted, and the fate of some of them was near at hand. His expostulations were of no avail; and, in the end, a truce was agreed to, on the stipulation that, for a period of three days, the people of the fortress should come into the Mughal camp, bring the commodities they possessed and dispose of them, and take away the gold and silver the price thereof, and purchase such cattle and woollen garments as they required; and that, after the expiration of three days, the Mughal troops should march away from before the place. When the truce had been ratified, the people of the fortress conveyed all such commodities as they possessed into the camp of the accursed ones, and for a period of two days bought and sold what was necessary, and not a Mughal infidel, or any one else,\* annoyed any person whosoever. When the night of the third day came, the infidels concealed a great number of armed men behind rocks, [bales of] clothes, pack-saddles of animals, and in the old gullies and ravines

\* The contingent of the Kārlūgh chief, Arsalān Khān of Kāwālik, is doubtless referred to here.



about their camp ; and, when the morning of the third day broke, the people from above descended from the mountain and mingled as before among the infidels in their camp. All at once they [the Mughals] beat kettledrums and raised a shout, and every Mughal infidel and renegade, who was buying and selling with the Musalmāns, seized, on the spot, those Musalmāns and slew them, with the exception of the persons whose lives Almighty God had spared ; and all who had arms with them, or displayed knives, them they first deprived of their weapons, and then slew them.

At this place an incident occurs, and a piece of advice for observers and readers offers ; and it is this : There was a leader among the soldiery [in the fortress], a Nishāpūrī, a thorough man, whom they were wont to style Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Arziz-gar [the worker in tin<sup>7</sup>], one among the followers of Amīr Ḥabashī-i-Nezah-war, who was, at this time, in the fortress of Saif-rūd, in the service of Malik Kūṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain. He [Fakhr-ud-Dīn] also had gone into the camp of the Mughals, and was buying and selling ; and, in the leg of his boot, he had a knife in shape like a poniard. A Mughal, who was trafficking with him, desired to seize him, but he laid hand on his knife, and drew it out of the leg of his boot. The Mughal stayed his hand from him, and Fakhr-ud-Dīn again placed his foot to the mountain, and returned in safety to the fortress.

The warning [here conveyed] is, that it behoveth not a man, in any case, to be passive in the matter of his own safety, particularly when in a place he may be holding parley with a foe, or be in the company of an enemy ; and he should see to his own preservation for some useful purpose, and not be without a weapon : for the rest, the protection of the Most High God is sufficient to preserve whom He wills.<sup>8</sup>

Trustworthy persons have related that two hundred and

<sup>7</sup> Workers in tin are not generally " leaders " of soldiers, and the word here used, viz., " Sipah-Sālār," is that also applied to the commander of an army, but, of course, the context shows what is meant here.

<sup>8</sup> Here is a good proof how wrong are the ideas of some persons as to the Musalmāns and their religion, that *all* must be, and is left to fate, and that no effort must be made on their own parts to help themselves. Our author here describes the teachings of his religion

eighty men of note and heads of families, valiant<sup>9</sup> men, fell captive into the hands of the Mughals [upon this occasion]; and, such a disaster having befallen the people of Islām, there was not a dwelling [in the place] in which there was not mourning.<sup>10</sup> On the occurrence of this misfortune the Mughal Nū-īns employed emissaries to propose that they [the people of the fort of Saif-rūd] should ransom their own people; but Malik Ḳutb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, did not consent. When the Mughals understood that, on this occasion, the people of the fortress would not take the bait of treachery, they, on the following day, bound all the Musalmāns who had become captive—ten and fifteen together—and killed them with sword-wounds, stones, and knives, until they made martyrs of the whole of them. The next day, the Mughals made preparations to renew the attack; and Malik Ḳutb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, the night before the attack, gave directions so that all the great [blocks] of stone [lying about] on the face of the hill near the *khāk-rez*<sup>1</sup> of the fortress were speedily placed in such a manner that the touch of a child would move them from their places and send them rolling down. More than a hundred great stones as big as mill-stones, and hand-mill-stones, fastened to beams of wood, at the extremity of each beam a millstone, they had drawn out, and those beams were fastened to the battlements of the fortress by ropes. The whole of the men of the fortress were divided into two bodies. one half were concealed on the top of the ramparts, behind the battlements, and the other half outside the fortress, at the foot of the ramparts, behind the great blocks of stone. Malik Ḳutb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, enjoined that, until the sound of the kettledrums of the fortress arose, not a person should show himself.

All things having been arranged in this manner, at dawn the next morning, all at once, the Mughal forces—great and small, Amīrs and common men, infidel Mughals and renegades, armed at all points—issued from their camp,

<sup>9</sup> This tends to show what these forts were—in reality, fortified towns in themselves

<sup>10</sup> The "Printed Text," which is *so much* to be depended on, and *so very correct*, upon occasions, has *فرانی*

<sup>1</sup> An artificial mound See page 1039, note <sup>2</sup>.

and turned their faces towards the fortress. For example, there were more than 10,000 valiant men under shields,<sup>2</sup> whom they brought upwards. The Musalmāns had given them time, so that they ascended more than the distance of two arrow flights towards the fortress, and not a man of the Musalmāns appeared in view. When between the infidels and the Musalmāns about one hundred yards of the side of the hill remained, they beat the kettle-drums within the fortress, and the holy warriors and champions—leaders and common men—all raised a shout, cut away the mill-stones, beams, and ropes, and sent the great stones rolling down. Almighty God so willed it, that not a single individual among the infidel force should escape being killed, wounded, or disabled; and, from the summit<sup>3</sup> of the hill to the base of the same, Mughals and renegades lay prostrate together, and a great number of the Mughal grandees, Nū-ins, and Bahādurs, went to hell.

The remainder of the Mughal army arose and retired from before the foot of the fortress. This victory, bestowed through the grace of Almighty God, according to the promise. "It is a duty incumbent on Us to help the Believers"—took place on Thursday,<sup>4</sup> in the year 620 H.

On Sunday, the 12th of the same month, they [the Mughals] sprung an ambuscade against the fortress of Tūlak,<sup>5</sup> and made determined attacks upon it; and, on

<sup>2</sup> The words, or compound word, here used, differ considerably in different copies of the text, but one has plainly سركاو—another سركاو—and two others سركاو and سركاو respectively; and all three last are probably intended for the first, which is the name of a description of shield or buckler made of buffalo hide, and this would signify men under bucklers, as rendered above. The Printed Text has سركاو.

<sup>3</sup> Every copy has fort—قلعہ—instead of hill—تلة—but the error is palpable. The Mughals were within about one hundred yards of the foot of the walls when the great stones were sent rolling down upon them, and they had no chance of gaining the top of the fortress. Had they been able to reach that they might have captured the place.

<sup>4</sup> Here is one of the justly "vaunted impregnable castles and fortresses" which were *not* "without exception captured," as the Kāshghar Mission History informs us they were.

The month is wanting in every copy of the text collated, but, from what has been stated at page 1065, that in the first month of the year 619 H. the Mughals set out to invest it the second time, and that this happened in 620 H., the fortress must have held out over a year.

<sup>5</sup> As usual with our author, this circumstance he leaves out altogether in his

that day, the infidels lost great numbers of men killed before that fortress; and then they retired.

When the infidel Mughals had withdrawn from *Khurāsān*, and the *jibāl* [mountain tracts] of *Ghūr* and *Khurāsān* had become clear of that host, Malik *Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn*, *Husain*, resolved upon retiring into *Hindūstān*, together with other Maliks of *Ghūr*, such, for example, as Malik *Sarāj-ud-Dīn*, 'Umr-i-*Kharosh*,<sup>6</sup> from the territory of *Jār*,<sup>7</sup> and Malik *Saif-ud-Dīn*, and others, all joined him, and, with their families and dependents, set out. By destiny's decree, a force from the infidel Mughals' main army was nominated [about this time] for the purpose of ravaging *Khurāsān*, and, at the head of that army, was a Mughal of note, whose name was *Ḳāzīl Mañjuk*; and it entered *Khurāsān*. From the side of *Hirāt* and *Isfizār* it advanced to the foot of the fortress of *Tūlak*,<sup>8</sup> and every Musalmān the Mughals found within the fortress [of *Saif-rūd*] they martyred, or made captive. There they obtained information from the captives of the departure of Malik *Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn*, *Husain*, with other Maliks of *Ghūr*, with their families and dependents, and their followers. They set out after the *Ghūrī* forces, and, on the banks of the river *Arghand*,<sup>9</sup> discovered them, engaged in constructing a bridge over that river, in order that they might pass over the troops, families and dependents, and effects. Suddenly and unexpectedly, the Mughals came upon them. Malik *Saif-ud-Dīn*, with his followers, sought

account of the fortress of *Tūlak* already given, but gives it here in the account of *Saif-rūd*, and, since the month is not mentioned in the preceding paragraph, it cannot be gathered from this. See page 1061

<sup>6</sup> This term is both written *Kharoshī* and *Kharoshṭī*, as well as *Kharosh*. See pages 433, and 493

<sup>7</sup> Thus in the best and in the greater number of copies of the text, but in others *جَال* and *جَار* respectively. It is some district in *Ghūr* evidently, but no such place has been before mentioned in this work

<sup>8</sup> Our author must mean from the side of *Isfizār* and *Hirāt*, as going from the latter to the former place, or in its direction, would be moving farther from the river *Arghand*. The fortress of *Saif-rūd* must, from this, have been abandoned in a defenceless state

<sup>9</sup> Not the "*river Arghand-āb*"—*Urgundab*, or *Urghundab*, is entirely out of the question, and, indeed, it may be said that no such river exists—*āb* itself means river and water, and we might as well say the *river Arghand* river or *water*, which is the real signification of "*river Arghand-āb*" The word *Arghand* signifies angry, full of rage, impetuous, bold, etc., and thus denotes what the river is

the protection of the hills, and so remained safe, and again retired towards the mountains of Ghūr. Malik Sarāj-ud-Dīn, 'Umr-i-Kharosh, stood to fight, and was martyred; and Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, by great stratagem,<sup>1</sup> dashed his horse into the river, and, with a few men, emerged from it [on the opposite bank]. All the rest of the Amīrs of Ghūr, chieftains, and warriors, and the females, all attained martyrdom, including the sisters, daughters, and kinsfolk of Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain.

From thence the Mughal army returned again towards Ghūr and Khurāsān.

THE FALL OF THE FORT OF ASHIYĀR, OF GHARJISTĀN,<sup>2</sup>  
AND OTHER FORTRESSES.

Trustworthy persons have narrated, that, when the Chingiz Khān determined to advance from his camp at the Pughtah [hill] of Nu'mān of Tāl-kān of Khurāsān<sup>3</sup> towards Ghaznīn, he left behind there his baggage and heavy materials, and his treasures, because it was impossible for wheeled carriages to be taken into the defiles and passes

<sup>1</sup> Some of the best copies of the text have بیک بهار—with, or after much fighting, and some others have بیک بهار—with a numerous following, but I read it بیک بهار—by much or great stratagem. The reason for so doing is that it is said that the Malik who stood to fight was killed, and that Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, with a few followers, reached the opposite bank. It is possible many persons may have been drowned in crossing, but our author does not say so. Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, had probably heard of Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn's feat on the Indus, and here followed his sovereign's daring example.

It was this same Malik Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, Ḥusain, who recovered the body of his wounded Sulṭān, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Utsuz, mentioned at page 416, which see, and gained great renown in India. At last he fell a victim to ingratitude, or, as some state, intrigue on the part of Ulugh Khān. See pages 702, 798, and 833.

<sup>2</sup> The best Paris copy of the text always blunders at this name, respecting which there is not the shadow of a doubt, and turns it into "Ghazistān:" the scribe appears to have imagined that Ghuzzistān was meant. Here is another proof respecting the position of Tāl-kān, and also another proof against a siege of any such fortress as Bāmīān, which is said to have stopped the Mughal Khān on his way to Ghaznīn. No other author whosoever mentions his having left his heavy materials, baggage, and wheeled carriages, behind at this place, and no other writer enters into such interesting and valuable details respecting these strongholds, and the doings of the Mughals in these parts.

<sup>3</sup> Gharjistān is a district or province, once an independent principality of Khurāsān. See page 341.

of **Gharjistān**, by reason of the very mountainous nature of that country, and the impracticability of the roads. When the **Mughal** army moved towards **Ghaznīn**, only a small force was left behind for the protection of the heavy materials, baggage, and wheeled-carriages. The fortresses of **Gharjistān** of **Khurāsān** were near by, namely, the fortresses of **Rang**,<sup>4</sup> and **Bindār** [**Pindār**], **Balarwān**,<sup>5</sup> **Lāghri**,<sup>6</sup> **Siyā-Khānah**,<sup>7</sup> **Sabekjī**,<sup>8</sup> and **Ashiyār**. The most of these fortresses are galleries on the faces of the mountains, in such wise that the rain falls upon the inhabitants of those strongholds, and springs of water flow forth in front of the galleries of [forming] these fortifications.<sup>9</sup>

Within the fortress of **Ashiyār** was a **Gharjah**<sup>1</sup> Amīr of great determination and energy, and his name was Amīr

<sup>4</sup> In some copies of the text the name of this fortress is written رانج, —**Rang**, and in others زانج, —**Zang**. The former appears the most correct, according to the most trustworthy copies of the text. See page 1003.

<sup>5</sup> Here, as at page 115, the name of this fortress is written in some of the less trustworthy copies of the text, **Valarwan**, with : for :—one has **Bīrwān**—بروان—and one بروان which may be read in various ways. See also page 436. It is the stronghold in which **Khusrāu Malik**, the last of the **Mahmūdī** Sultāns of **Ghaznīn**, was confined, and, subsequently, put to death, together with his son, **Bahrām Shāh**, who was kept in captivity within the walls of **Saif-rūd** of **Ghūr**.

<sup>6</sup> A native of this place was feudatory of **Lakhan-or** in 642 H. See page 739.

<sup>7</sup> At page 416, this fortress, in some copies, is styled سايه—**Saiā-Khānah** as well as سايه—**Siyā-Khānah**. Here, however, the different MSS. vary still more, for, whilst two of the three best [the oldest abruptly terminates at page 1026] here have سايه—**Saiā-Khānah**, and سايه—**Shiyā** or **Shiā-Khānah**, others have سايه—**Shinā-Khānah**, and سايه—**Sā-Khānah**, and some, the more modern copies, turn it into ساه—**Sangah**, which is a totally different place, in **Mandesh**, not in **Gharjistān**. See pages 331 and 340.

<sup>8</sup> At page 363, the name of this fortress is as above, in the best copies of the text, and in others varies considerably, as stated in the foot-note, but here one of three oldest and best copies has what may be read either سانجی or **Sanbakjī**, or سانجی—**Sabangjī** or **Sabankjī**, whilst another of the three best copies has سانجی without any diacritical points whatever. **Bahakī** mentions a fort of **Sabekjī**—سانجی—as somewhere near **Ghaznīn**, probably west of it, but the latter must be a different place.

<sup>9</sup> Our author has described these famous strongholds so plainly that, should ever an opportunity offer of exploring these parts, of which we know comparatively nothing, there will not be much difficulty, from their peculiarity, in finding them. They appear to be excavations in the rocks something after the fashion of the excavations near the present **Dāmīān**.

<sup>1</sup> That is to say, a native of **Gharjistān**.

Muḥammad, the Maraghānī.<sup>3</sup> As there was a vast amount of wealth, and also innumerable captives, and numerous horses, in the Mughal camp[at the Puṣṭah-i-Nu'mān], Amīr Muḥammad-i-Maraghānī, with a strong force, started from the fortress of Ashiyār, and seized upon as many wheeled carriages, laden with gold and other wealth, as he possibly could, from the Mughal camp, set a great number of captives free, and obtained possession of many horses. On one or two occasions Amīr Muḥammad performed such like feats of daring, and displayed similar determination.<sup>3</sup>

When the Chingiz Khān set out from the territory of Gībarī towards Turkistān, and despatched his son, Uktāe, towards Ghūr, Uktāe, that winter, fixed his camp between Firūz-koh and Ghaznīn, and sent out bodics of his forces in every direction, as has been previously recorded.<sup>4</sup> The

<sup>3</sup> See page 1003. He was the ancestor of the Kurat dynasty.

<sup>3</sup> Which it is almost needless to state will not be found chronicled in any pre-Mughal history.

<sup>4</sup> See page 1047.

Strange to say, our author, although he refers in detail to the despatch of Uktāe with an army, never refers, in the most remote manner, to Chaghatāe and the force under him, nor will any reference to it be found under the reigns of Kabā-jah or I-yal-timish. I will, therefore, notice, as briefly as possible, what the subsequent writers mention on the subject.

Alarming accounts, as our author also mentions at page 1084, reached the Chingiz Khān respecting the state of affairs in Tīngkūt and Khujāe in consequence of his prolonged absence in the west, and that the Tīngkūtīs and Khujā-īs were preparing to throw off the Mughal yoke. Having held counsel with his sons, the Nū-yīn, Karāchār [the ancestor of Amīr Tīmūr], and other Nū-yīns and chiefs, he determined to despatch a force to endeavour to find out Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, wherever he might be, for his existence troubled him, and whose prowess and energy he feared. It was further determined that this army, which was to be very powerful, should push on as far as the limits of Kīch and the Mukrānāt [i.e. the Mukrāns], and the frontiers of Hind. This army was put under the command of Chaghatāe, and he was directed to utterly devastate and ruin the countries through which he passed, in order that the Sulṭān might have no means of acquiring strength or resources, or of recovering himself, and be completely crippled.

A second army was to be placed under the command of Uktāe, which was to advance from the valley of the river of Sind towards Ghaznīn, and was to devastate the country in that direction, and so utterly destroy that city that there should be no more inducement for Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn to return there. But our author's account as given above, of the movements of this force, is much more clear. It was also intimated that, towards the close of the cold season, the great *urdū* would be moved towards Turān Zamīn.

The army under Chaghatāe, which was the most numerous, penetrated into Sind and the Mukrānāt, but, strange to say, not one of the pre-Mughal writers

Nū-in Abkah,<sup>4</sup> who was the Amīr of 10,000 *Manjanīk-chīs*

<sup>4</sup> See page 1047.

referred to above, and previously, says by what route it went, and no reference is made to it either under the reign of Ḳabā-jah or I-yal-timish. This army is said to have overrun the whole of the territories in question, and to have wintered [the winter of 619-20 H.—A. D. 1222-23], within the limits of a territory named Kālinjar—*الانجر*—on the banks of the Sind river [but the name is also written *انجر*—*انجر*—*انجر*—Kānjar, and even *انجر*—*انجر*, the letter ح in the latter, however, is without points, and may be intended for ج, چ, or کھ. The Rauzat-us-Ṣafā calls it Kālanj—*الانج*], the ruler of which part of the country was the Sālar, Aḥmad, but who he was, and whether he was independent, or the feudatory of any sovereign, the chroniclers say not; and he is not known to the historians of Hind or Sind.

The Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh says he passed the *hot* season on the confines or frontiers of *کر* but this name, being without points, is unintelligible, and that the ruler of this part was the Sālar, Aḥmad.

The fort in which I-rā'īl, the Saljūk, was imprisoned and died, referred to at page 117, and note <sup>4</sup>, is spelt like the first name mentioned, and with long a—*الانجر*—and the word *الانج* in the Rauzat-us-Ṣafā may have been *الانجر* originally. This fort lay, we are told, in the Multān province, and was subsequently called Talwarah, but the place where Chaghatai's army wintered is said to have been on the banks of the Sind.

Whoever this Sālar Aḥmad was, he is said to have done his utmost to supply the requirements of the Mughals, and the subsistence of that great army. It, however, became prostrated with sickness through the unhealthiness of the climate [in the "*Mongols Proper*" this sickness, by mistake, is transferred to his father's army], and also impeded with a vast number of captives, in such wise that, in every tent [or dwelling, or hut—the word used is *kānāh*], there were from ten to twenty, or twenty to forty, and they had the task of bringing and preparing the food of the army. In this sickly state of his troops, Chaghatai issued commands for each captive to clean 400 *mann* [of 4 *seers* or 8 lbs. each] of rice—and this shows they were in a rice growing country—and the task was completed within the following week. His next command was to massacre the whole of these Hindūs [*see in MSS*], and, by the next morning, they were all killed, and their bodies lay about in great heaps. How unjust to call those times the dark ages! The Mughals, barbarians and infidels as they were, carried on war as it was carried on by "Christians" in the years of grace 1877 and 1878.

Whether the object of this massacre was to prevent an outbreak among the captives in the weak state of his army, who can tell? Another strange thing is that, throughout the year 619 H., and in the hot season of 620 H., Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn was in the countries on the Indus which constitute the present Panjāb, had defeated the Khokhars, and afterwards gained their alliance, and had overthrown Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Ḳabā-jah, before Üchchah. Towards the latter part of 620 H., Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn had come by way of Multān and Üchchah to Shiwān, the modern Shiwān, and into Lower Sind, remained there several months, sent an expedition as far east as Nahrwālah in Guzarāt, and only moved from Sind, by way of Mukrān, in 621 H., on his way into Irāk, on hearing of the movement of a numerous army of Mughals, which, if the accounts of these writers are correct, must have been this very army. See



[catapult workers], he nominated to proceed [with his men]

note <sup>4</sup>, page 293. It is therefore difficult to imagine whereabouts "Kalinjar" was, "near the banks of the Sind," where Chaghatāe and his army could have passed the winter of 620 H., and still more so that he could obtain no information respecting the Sultān, as will be mentioned presently; he could not have searched *very* diligently for him. It would have been a grand opportunity for the Sultān to have fallen upon the Mughals had he known the state they were in.

To return to the movements of Chaghatāe. He, finding no trace of the Sultān or his whereabouts, as soon as his troops had somewhat recovered from their sickness, determined to return, and set out, accordingly, on his way back to Turān-Zamīn. It is a long march from the territory of Mukrān to the Hindū-Koh, and yet the Mughal historians say not one word respecting the route followed.

I find the author of the "*Mongols Proper*," pages 90 and 91, quoting Wolff on this very subject, but, as Wolff often makes strange statements, one of which is contained in the passage referred to under, and as he gives no authorities, his statements are not very reliable. The passage is this: "While Jingis retired northwards his son Jagatai [this is the "*Mongol Proper*" name for Chaghatāe, probably] made a raid into Kerman in pursuit of Rokn-ud-dīn, a brother of Jalāl-ud-dīn [!]. He advanced as far as Tez [according to Abū-Ishāq, the Iṣṭakhūrī, Tiz is a seaport in Mukrān], on the borders of the Indian Ocean, passed through Beloochistan [which, being an entirely modern name, will not be found in *any early author*], where he wintered, and where he also lost a large number of his soldiers, and returned by the mountain land of the Afghans [this last clause of the sentence must also be Wolff's own. The land of the Afghāns in that day was very small], where he was joined by Bela Noyan," etc., etc. See page 281, and note <sup>2</sup>.

I must now notice the proceedings of the army under Uktāe, which are but slightly alluded to by the writers I take this from; but our author supplies some details not mentioned by them, as they, writing while in the employ of Mughal sovereigns, only cared to chronicle *successes*.

Uktāe, having marched from the valley of the Sind river, reached Ghaznīn, and all the offers of submission and obedience tendered by its inhabitants were of no avail [the writers appear to have forgotten that they previously stated that, on his advance to the Indus, the Chingiz Khān had "left Mahmūd, Yalwāj, at Ghaznīn as his Dāroghah." What had become of him in the meantime?], because Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn was still alive, and a source of anxiety to his foes, who feared he would make head again; so Ghaznīn was sacked and totally destroyed, its inhabitants massacred, and the parts through which he passed were devastated, and all buildings utterly destroyed. Ghaznīn never recovered this. Uktāe, after this feat, when the season arrived, proceeded by way of the Garm-sir of Hirāt, and set out for Māwarā-un-Nahr. For the further movements of the Chingiz Khān and his sons on their return homeward, see page 1081.

Surgeon-Major Bellow, in his *Kāshghar Mission History*, referring to "Changiz" sending his son "Aoktāy in mid-winter to Ghazni and Ghor, there to wipe out in the blood of the people the disaster his troops had suffered at the hands of Jalāluddīn at Parwan," which he is said to have done so effectually during a "campaign of two years," that "the aboriginal Aryan stock" were annihilated, considers the Hazāra "still pure Moghol in race type, and

against the fortress of Ashiyār, and that body advanced to the foot of that stronghold, and the attack commenced ; and, for a considerable time, they assailed it.

When they found that, through the vast strength of the fortress, and the brave men [within it], it was impossible to take it [by force], they sat down before it [and blockaded it] for a period of fifteen months—but God knows best—and, through scarcity of provisions, the people within the fortress became reduced to great straits. As long as there were provisions and flesh, they used to consume them, and, when food of that kind failed, affairs reached such a pitch that they were wont to eat the flesh of whoever was killed, or who died, to that degree, that every person used to keep his killed and dead for curing and eating. Some have related after this manner—the narrators are responsible for correctness—that there was a woman of the minstrel class in the fortress of Ashiyār. She had a mother and a female slave. Her mother died, and she dried her body, and her

many of their customs," but who "know nought of their antecedents," as "the descendants of the army of occupation left there by him." History, however, shows that there were many of the so-called "Aryan stock" in that part for some centuries after Uktā's campaign, but it is not to be wondered at that they should be lost, when Tājiks are supposed to be Scythians, Dilazak Afghāns "Rājputs" and "Buddhists," Kākar Afghāns Panjābī "Gukars," and the people of Irānī descent to be "foreign Aryans." There is not the least *proof*, that I am aware of, that the Chingiz Khān left any of his Mughal troops in Ghūr, but the direct contrary is shown by what our author states, and from the proceedings at the commencement of Uktā's reign. This "famous tribe of Hazāra," as Mr. Dowson styles them, without doubt, derive this "designation," however incorrect in fact, from *hasāraks* [this is the mere Tājik rendering of the Turki *ming*, the name applied to bodies of Mughals, and others of Turkish descent, numbering a thousand men generally. See page 1093] permanently located in the tract in question, but they were sent thither many years after, and about the same time that others, the descendants of whom now figure as the Chahār Ī-māk, were sent. One of the *hasāraks* moved into the part in question, from the territory of Balkh, was that of the Nū-yin Mūkā of the tribe of Karāyt, but they were not Mughals, but Turks, and it was located round about Bādghais, and in a short time increased considerably.

As to the "Hazāraks," so called, having "entirely lost their language," Elphinstone says, "Why, if they be Moguls, should they speak Toorkee?" See note at page 874. If some one acquainted with the history and traditions of the Turks, Tātārs, and Mughals, were to institute inquiries among some of their educated men, I have no doubt but that they would be able to furnish us with sufficient information to trace their antecedents pretty clearly, or their descent, at least. I shall have more to say about them hereafter.

female slave likewise died, and she dried her body also. She sold the flesh of both of them, so that, from the two corpses, she acquired two hundred and fifty *dinārs* of pure gold. At last she also died.

When a period of fifteen months and ten days had expired, about thirty men only remained alive within the fortress. They seized Amīr Muḥammad-i-Maraghānī, and martyred him, and threw his head near to the camp of the Mughal forces, in hopes of their own deliverance. When the Mughal troops beheld this occurrence, they at once assaulted the fortress and took it, and martyred the whole of those within it.

During this period [of the investment of *Ashiyār*] they [the Mughals] captured the other fortresses of *Gharjistār* likewise, so that, during the year 619 H., all the strongholds of *Gharjistān* were taken ; \* and they sated the hearts of the Mughals with slaughter.

May the Most High God continue the gates of victory and success open unto the servants of the kingdom of the present sovereign, SULTĀN NĀSIR-UD-DUNYĀ WA UD DĪN, ABŪ-L-MUZAFFAR-I-MAḤMŪD SHĀH, for the sake of His prophet and his race !

#### ACCOUNT OF THE RETURN OF THE CHINGIZ KHĀN TOWARDS TURKISTĀN, AND HIS DEPARTURE TO HELL

Trustworthy persons have related that the *Chingiz Khān*, at the time when he came into *Khurāsān*, was sixty-five years old, a man of tall stature, of vigorous build, robust in body, the hair on his face scanty and turned white, with cats' eyes, possessed of great energy, discernment, genius, and understanding, awe-striking, a butcher, just, resolute, an overthrower of enemies, intrepid, sanguinary, and cruel. The fact that there were astonishing things in several respects concerning him is sufficiently clear and apparent to all intelligent persons. In the first place, he was an adept in magic and deception, and some of the devils were his friends. Every now and again h

\* This date is simply impossible from his own previous and subsequent statements. The *Chingiz Khān* did not despatch Uktāe on this expedition until 619 H. , and, as *Ashiyār* is said to have held out over fifteen months, 620 H. must be the year in which it fell, and the other fortresses likewise.

used to fall into a trance, and, in that state of insensibility, all sorts of things used to proceed from his tongue, and that state of trance used to be similar to that [previously mentioned], which had happened to him at the outset of his rise ;<sup>7</sup> and the devils who had power over him foretold his victories. The tunic and clothes, which he had on, and wore on the first occasion, were placed in a trunk, and sealed up ; and he was wont to take them about with him. Whenever this inspiration came over him, every circumstance—victories, undertakings, indication of enemies, defeat, and the reduction of countries—anything which he might desire, would all be uttered by his tongue. A person used to take the whole down in writing and enclose it in a bag, and place a seal upon it ; and, when the Chingiz Khān came to his senses again, they used to read his utterances over to him one by one ; and according to these he would act, and, more or less, indeed, the whole used to come true.

Besides this, he was well acquainted with the art of divination by means of the shoulder-bones of sheep ; and he used continually to place shoulder-blades on the fire, and burn them, and in this manner he would discover the signs of the shoulder-blades, contrary to the shoulder-blade diviners of the 'Ajāmī countries who inspect the shoulder-blade itself.<sup>8</sup> The Chingiz Khān moreover in [the ad-

<sup>7</sup> See page 954

<sup>8</sup> The Afghāns, too, as well as some other Musalmān people of Asia, used to practise this sort of divination. One of the Sūfī poets of Afghānistān—of the family of the notorious Pīr-i-Tārīk, or Pīr-i-Roshān, as he styled himself, but not a *pure* Afghān—Mīrzā Khān, commences one of his mystical poems thus :—

“When, with the mind, I examined the shoulder-bone of prediction,  
I saw that, within unity's area, the community of plenitude dwelleth,” etc.

The shoulder-bone of an animal, but more particularly that of a sheep, which, like the Mughals, they also read their auguries by, is termed *walay* in Pushto ; but the Afghāns do not burn the bone, and merely draw their conclusions from the signs they pretend they see in it. See my “POETRY OF THE AFGHĀNS,” London, 1867, page 58.

Rubruquis in his narrative says that on *Septuagesima*, when they all went in procession to Mangū's dwelling [Khargah or felt tent], “as they entered, they saw a servant carrying out the shoulder-bones of rams, burnt black. These he consults on all occasions, be they ever so trivial ; as whether he shall admit such a person into his presence. The method is this : he calls for three bones, then, holding them, thinks whether he shall do what he proposed or not. Then he delivers them to be burnt, which is done in two little apartments [or

ministration of] justice was such, that, throughout his whole camp, it was impossible for any person to take up a fallen whip from the ground except he were the owner of it; and, throughout his whole army, no one could give indication of [the existence of] lying and theft. If any woman that they [the Mughals] took in all Khurāsān and the land of 'Ajām had a husband, no living being would form a connexion with her; and, if an infidel [a Mughal] set his eyes upon a woman who had a husband, he would [first] slay the husband of the woman, and then would form a connexion with her.\* It used to be impossible for falsehood to be spoken, and this fact is clear.

#### ANECDOTE.

In the year 618 H., the writer of this TABAQĀT, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, returned from Timrān towards Ghūr. In the fortress of Sangah, which they style Akhūl Mānī,<sup>1</sup> he saw Malik Husām-ud-Dīn, Husain<sup>2</sup>-i-'Abd-ul-Malik, Sar-i-Zarrād. Suddenly, his brother, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, [Hasan], Habashī-i-'Abd-ul-Malik, Sar-i-Zarrād, to whom they [the Mughals] had given the title of Khusrau of Ghūr—mention of whom has been previously recorded—with the permission of the Chingiz Khān, returned to Ghūr from Tāl-kān; <sup>3</sup> and from him this anecdote was heard.

He stated: "On a certain occasion we came forth from

ents?] near his dwelling. When they are black, they carry them to the Khān, who looks at them; and, if they be cleft lengthways, he may do it (it is enough if one of them be cleft), if across, or round pieces have flown out of them, he must not."

\* This perhaps is the style of justice the Chingiz Khān was endowed with, which our author refers to—murder a man first, and take his wife after!

<sup>1</sup> In some copies, أحول مانی as above, in some Khūl Mānī—حول مانی—but in other copies it is written حوالی مانی—حوالی مال and حوالی مانی. Mānī, among other significations, means uncommon, rare, matchless, but what the first word may signify is doubtful, and is not mentioned in connexion with Sangah in other places in this work.

<sup>2</sup> In some copies, Hasan, but his brother, Tāj-ud-Dīn, is styled Hasan in other places, and this brother, Husām-ud-Dīn, Husain. 'Abd-ul-Malik is evidently their father's title. Habashī is merely a nickname. See pages 368, 394, 1002, and 1006.

<sup>3</sup> Tāl-kān of Khurāsān, from the camp at the Pushtah-i-Nu'mān. What our author says is a clear indication of its whereabouts.

the presence of the Chingiz Khān and sat down in a tent.<sup>4</sup> Uklān,<sup>5</sup> the Juzbī, along with whom I had come, together with some other Nū-ins, were also seated there; and the greatest in rank among them all was the Juzbī, Uklān. Some persons brought thither two Mughals who, the previous night, when on guard around about the camp, had gone to sleep [upon their post] Uklān, the Juzbī, asked: 'What Mughal has brought them?' The Mughal who had done so bent the knee, and replied: 'I have brought them.' The former inquired; 'What offence have they been guilty of? State it.' He replied: 'These two men were mounted on horseback, and I was going my rounds and examining the guards. I came up to them, and found them both asleep. I struck their horses over their heads with a whip to let them [the riders] know they were culprits for being asleep; and I passed on. This day I have brought them up.' Uklān, turning his face towards those two Mughals, said: 'Were ye asleep?' They both acknowledged it, saying: 'We were.' He commanded, saying: 'Put one of them to death, and fasten his head to the locks<sup>6</sup> of the other, and parade the latter round the whole camp, and then put him to death also.' They [accusers and accused] all made their obeisance, and, at once, [the former] carried out the command. I was riveted in astonishment, and said to Uklān, the Juzbī: 'There was no evidence or proof on the part of that Mughal [the accuser], and, when they [the accused] were well aware that the punishment would be death, why did they confess? for, if they had denied [the charge], they would have escaped being killed.' Uklān, the Juzbī, said: 'Why are you asto-

<sup>4</sup> A Tāttār or Mughal *khargāh* or tent probably, consisting of felt supported on props. For a description of them see Rubruquis.

<sup>5</sup> Uklān and Ughlān are equally correct—the letters *k* and *gh* are interchangeable. He was an Ūlkūnūt Kungkūr-āt Mughal, brother of the Juzbī, Sukātū or Sugātū, who commanded the Ūlkūnūt *ming* or *hasārah*, and brother of the Juzbī, Tūlān. They were brothers of the Bat Tingrī, Kokjū, and were the sons of the Nū-yān Manglīk, who married the Chingiz Khān's mother. The term *juzbī* is said to mean true-hearted, and sincere, but our author gives it another meaning. See page 979.

<sup>6</sup> John de Plano Carpini says: "They [the Mughals] shave the crown of the head. They braid their hair behind in two locks, binding each behind the ear. . . . They highly reverence their lords, and never tell them a falsehood."

nished? You, Tājzīks,<sup>7</sup> do such things, and tell lies. A Mughal, were a thousand lives at stake, would choose being killed, but would not speak false; but false speaking is your occupation,\* and, on account of such things, it is that Almighty God hath sent a calamity like us upon you [Tājzīks]."

I have again returned to the relation of this history

When the Chingiz Khān, after Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mang-barnī, Khwārazm Shāh, was defeated, set out in pursuit of the Ighrākīs, for Gībari, for a period of three months he halted among those mountains. He used to go out hunting, and for the purpose of coming towards Hindūstān, used, continually, to burn shoulder-blades [of sheep], but used not to obtain permission [from the prognostications], and used not to perceive therefrom omens of victory. His purpose in entering Hindūstān was that, mayhap, he might return back into Chīn by way of Lakhānawatī and Kām-rūd; and, as he used not, from the portents of the shoulder-blades, to obtain dispensation to do so, he used to delay.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>7</sup> Here the word Tājzīk is applied to the people of 'Ajām generally, whom the Mughals had a contemptible opinion of, and not to Ghūrīs only. Our author also informs us what Tājīk or Tājzīk signifies, and, in the face of such an authority, and a Tājzīk himself, it is amusing to find that Surgeon Major Bellew has discovered, according to the statement of Capt T. C. Plowden, B S C, in his translation of a book entitled "Kalid-i-Afghānī," that they are "*a Scythian people, the aborigines of Afghānistān*, they still abound there, as well as in Persia and Turkistān." In his last book, entitled "Afghanistan and the Afghans," page 222, the Doctor has the following on the same subject. "*Another principal people of Afghanistan is the Tajik or Tazik. The term means Arabian, and is applied to anything of Arab origin. . . . But the offspring and descendants of Arabs who married women of the country in which they settled are called Tazik or Tajik*"! See also note at page 1076, and note <sup>8</sup>, page 304.

<sup>8</sup> In the most trustworthy copies کارتان—"your occupation," as above: in others, "the business of women."

<sup>9</sup> See the account of Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār-ud-Dīn, the Khālī, in Lakhānawatī, pages 560—568.

<sup>1</sup> His superstition therefore may be said to have saved India from sharing the fate of other countries, although it is probable he would have met with more combined and systematic opposition there.

In the spring of the year 620 H [the spring of 1223 A.D.] the Chingiz Khān resolved to move, for the reasons stated in a previous note, towards his native yīrat in Mughalustān, taking the same route as he had entered the Ghaznī territory by, through Bāmīān and Tukhārīstān, and marched to Bukhārā, or Bughlān, both being correct, where his Ughrūk [the families, the waggons, heavy baggage, felt tents, etc.] had been sent on his advance towards

Unexpectedly, swift messengers reached him from Ṭam-

Ghamīn. Alfī says he moved from the vicinity of Parshāwar, by way of the mountains of Nāmīān [*sic* in MSS, but Bāmīān must be meant], and that the Ughrūk was ordered to march from Buḳlān to join him on the way to Samrḳand. At page 1074, our author plainly states where his Ughrūk was left, and that he conversed with a person who had but recently left it [page 1079], and his statement with regard to it cannot be doubted in the least. It was left at the Puḡtah-i-Nu'mān between Tāl-kān and Balkh. The pro-Mughal writers, having made the great blunder of mistaking Tāe-kān of Kūndūz for Tāl-kān of Khurāsān, make all other places agree with it, as in the case of Andarāb, previously referred to. The Chingiz Khān may have had his heavy baggage, waggons, and war materials removed from the Puḡtah-i-Nu'mān to Buḳlān subsequently, after he had determined to return by the same route by which he had come, and most probably after the attacks made upon them by the Ghaznah chief, as related at page 1073.

To return, however, to the pro-Mughal accounts. The whole of his forces being concentrated there [at Buḳlān], the Chingiz Khān continued encamped in the pleasant pasture-lands thereabout during the summer [of 620 H — 1223 A.D.], and, when autumn came round, having appointed Dāroghahs to the different cities of Ī-rān-Zamīn, despatched them[!]. Troops, too, would have been required, but none are mentioned, and the subsequent proceedings, after his death, prove that no Mughal troops were left behind in Ī-rān-Zamīn, i.e., west of the Jihūn, and it is very doubtful whether any Dāroghahs were. In the beginning of autumn he crossed the Jihūn, and marched towards Samrḳand, in the vicinity of which he encamped, and there passed the winter [620-621 H = A.D. 1223—1224]. From Samrḳand, Jūjī, who, since the investment of the capital of Khwārazm, was ill-inclined towards his brother Chaghatāe—our author, however, tells the tale differently from the pro-Mughal historians, as will be seen farther on—and had continued to remain in the Daḡht-i-Kūbchāḳ, which had been assigned to his charge, was directed to move, with a portion of his forces, and to keep along the skirts of the mountains to drive the game before him, as a grand hunt was proposed farther in advance.

Chaghatāe and Uktāe took up their quarters during that winter near Buḳhārā, and devoted themselves to fowling and hunting, and sent weekly to their father 50 *ḷhar-wārs* of game. When the spring of 621 H set in, the Chingiz Khān moved towards Turkistān, and now he showed his fiendish nature in its true colours. He compelled the unfortunate Turkān Khātūn, the aged mother of the late Sulṭān, and the ladies of his family—his wives and daughters, and to whom had been also added the females of Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn's family captured after the battle on the Sind—to wend their way on foot [some authors say bare footed] and bare-headed, in front of his troops on the line of march, and to make lamentation, as they went along, on the downfall and humiliation of their empire, and the death of those Sulṭāns, and thus they were compelled to do until they reached his *yūrat*, in order, as he affirmed, that people might take warning therefrom. This again was partly the innate hostility of Mughals against the other Turks. Turkān Khātūn lived on in this miserable state until 630 H, when death relieved her.

Advancing by regular marches, the Chingiz Khān reached the Sīhūn, after which Uktāe and Chaghatāe also joined him from their expeditions, and, when he reached a place named Kulān Yāzī—کولان یازی—but this name is



ghāj and Tingit, and gave intelligence that the whole

written *Ḳulān Bāf*, and *Ḳulān Tāzī*, in as many different authors—supposed to be situated in the vicinity of *Fanākat*, but, apparently, farther N E., *Jūfī*, from the direction of the *Dašt-i-Kibchāk*, drew near, driving the game on his side before him. The *Chingiz Khān* now moved towards him, the two half-circles of troops dispersed for the purpose, drawing gradually closer together, and reached a place named *Alkābar* or *Alkābir*—*اَلْاَبَر*—or *Alkāfir*—*اَلْاَفِر*—and styled *Ūkā*—*اَلْاَكَا*—in the *Rauzat-uṣ-Ṣafā* [and *Oukāfir*—*اَلْاَكْفِر*—by *Pétis de la Croix*, but on what authority does not appear, as, in this particular part of his *History of "Genghiscan the Great,"* he gives none, and makes it out to be "the city of *Toncat*," where subsequently the *kuriltāz* or diet was held, but in no history with which I am acquainted, and such as I have named, is any reference made to any city, and such a city as *Tonkāt* or *Toncat* is never referred to]. The *Chingiz Khān* now mounted and entered the circle to enjoy the sport, and after he was satisfied his sons were permitted to do the same, and subsequently the great chiefs. The sport over, the remainder of the animals received a brand on one of the thighs, and were allowed to escape. After this *Jūfī* presented himself on bended knee, with offerings for his father's acceptance, among which were 100,000 horses, every 20,000 of which were of different colours—dappled grey, white, piebald, bay, and black, his father's troops being in want of horses.

The *Chingiz Khān* continued encamped in this place during the summer of this year [621 H.], and, all his sons and Amīrs having joined him from all parts, including *Jabah* [Yamah] and *Swidāe* [Sahūdah], he now held a great *kuriltāz* or assembly. He distributed honours and rewards, and put to death a number of the *Ī-ghūr* chiefs, why is not said, but it no doubt had reference, in some way, to the dismissal of the *ulūs* of the *Yiddī-Ḳūt*, mentioned in note <sup>1</sup>, page 1101, and evidently refers to what the *Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr* mentions in a few words, that, on his arrival in this part, he received the submission of the petty rulers around, but that some, who, at the outset, were the first to submit to him, now showed symptoms of hostility, and a body of troops had to be sent to coerce them. Their names are not given. *Jūfī* was now allowed to return to his government of the *Dašt-i-Kibchāk*, and, in the last month of the year 621 H. [Dec.-Jan., 1225 A.D.], after an absence of seven years, the *Chingiz Khān* reached his native *yūrat* in *Mughalīstān*—the Chinese say, on the banks of the *Tulā* river—and again enjoyed the society of his wives and children.

At this point I come to a very amusing matter, and which also is a specimen of history-writing taken from translations often second-hand, a somewhat dangerous course of procedure. At page 92 of "*Mongols Proper*," the author, immediately after stating that "*Jagatai and Ogotai went to hunt Kukus and Karaguls (i.e. wild swans and antelopes)*"—I have already stated how *Chaghatai* and *Uktai* employed the winter near *Bukhārā*—says that, "On the banks of the *Imul* he (*Jingis*) was met by two of his grandsons, afterwards very celebrated, namely, *Kubilai* [he is afterwards styled *Khubilai*] and *Khulagu*, one eleven and the other nine years old. *They had killed their first game, and, according to Mongol custom, Jengis pricked their middle fingers to mix some blood with their food and drink, a kind of baptism of the chase.* Afterwards he gave his army a fête, at a place called *Buka Suchiku*, and reached his *Ordu* or home [camp?] in the month of February, 1225." This appears to have been taken from *Erdmann*, and, at page 99, this fête is again

territories of Chîn, Tamghāj, and Tingit, were in a state of revolt, and that, on account of the very great distance [of the Chingiz Khān from the scene], those kingdoms were about to pass out of the hands of the Mughal governors. The Chingiz Khān, on account of this information, became anxious in mind, and he consequently set out on his return by way of Lob and the country of Tibbat.<sup>2</sup>

referred to as a "grand reception," as though a wholly different affair; and, in a note at page 716, on "Jingis Khan" crossing the Jaxartes, and before the "Kukus and Karaguls" [the *kargawal*, by-the-bye, is a pheasant, and Shaw, I believe, brought some specimens with him from Turkistān] are referred to, the writer says, "Before leaving Transoxiana Jingis, who had been joined by his sons, seems to have held a grand fête at Benaket or Tonkat. This was in 1224. It is described by De la Croix, but his description is a mere rhetorical display without facts." Now, considering that the author of the "*Monçols Proper*" has referred to this very "fête" in two other places, and as happening at two different times, and in two different localities, on which side have we "mere rhetorical display without facts"?

The facts of the "baptism of the chase" are these, and no doubt Erdmann, in some way, derived them from the same original source whence also I take mine—"When the Chingiz Khān reached the neighbourhood of his native yūrat, it is said, Hulākū Khān was nine years old, and Kūbīlā Khān two years older. They both came out to meet him [their grandfather], and, by the way, Kūbīlā had captured a hare, and Hulākū a small deer [with dogs, probably]; and, as it is a custom among the Mughals, on the first occasion of boys capturing game, to *anoint* the middle finger with flesh and fat of the game, which anointing is termed *امامیشی*—*aghāmeshī*—the Chingiz Khān anointed the fingers of his grandsons himself, petted them much, and gave feasts and banquets to celebrate the event."

The winter of 622 H. [A.D. 1224-5] was passed by the Chingiz Khān in pleasure and jollity in his own yūrat, but, during this time, news reached him of the hostility of Shīdarkū, the Hākim or ruler of Kāshīn, who had assembled a vast army, intending to throw off the Mughal yoke. The historians I quote from appear to have lost sight of the fact that the alarming state of the Tingkit country, or Kāshīn, as it is also called, and the revolt there, had, as our author says above, brought the Mughal sovereign back from west of the Jihūn. The Chingiz Khān now re-assembled his forces, and commenced his march towards the territory of Kāshīn. It was determined that Chaghataī, with his forces, should guard the rear of the *ardū*, or, in other words, form the reserve Yūli, through one of his Khātūns being attacked with small-pox, was unable to accompany his father, and followed some time after, but Uktāe accompanied him. In this same year likewise, and about this time, the news of the death of his eldest son, Jūji, in the Daht-i-Kūbchāk, reached him. The sons of Uktāe, Kūtān, our author's Kutan, and Kiwak, were now sent back to the yūrat under the care of a trusty person.

What follows next in the account of the Chingiz Khān's movements before his death, in the writers I am quoting, is so different from our author's accounts, that I must make that subject the matter of another note.

<sup>2</sup> These names vary considerably in the different copies of the text, but the above rendering is without doubt correct, though it is only by comparing the

When he reached that territory [Tingit], there was a Khān in the country of Tingit, a man of great energy and intrepidity, and he had an army and munitions and war materials beyond computation; and, on account of the multitude of his troops, the power of his servants, the amplitude of his dominions, the vastness of his riches, wealth, and treasures, he had assumed to himself the name of "the Tingri Khān." On several occasions the Mughal troops

whole of the copies that it could be arrived at. It is also confirmed by others. The best copies have لوپ و بلاد بہت some لوپ و بلاد بہت others لوپ و بلاد بہت and لوپ و بلاد بہت

The explorations of Col Prejevalsky about Lob Nāwar and the mountain-range to the south, the existence of which some people had the assurance altogether to ignore, confirm the correctness of our author's statement, and extent of his information, and also that possessed by the Jesuits

Our author's account of the events of this period differs considerably from that of the other Muḥammadan writers who followed him, and who appear unable, or unwilling, to write aught unpalatable to the Mughal rulers, whose subjects and *employés* they were, and is also very different from the Chinese annals of Gāubul and others. Passing over the little episode respecting the milk-coloured blood of the Tingri Khān, which is much after the fashion of the "Saga-loving Saṅgāng Setzen's" childish fables, of "the brown-coloured dog with a black muzzle which could prophesy," and the like, the accounts our author gives appear well worthy of credence, and are, no doubt, such as were related to him, as in other instances, probably, by actors in the events he records

We may therefore receive with some reserve the statements of the pro-Mughal writers who followed our author, and be somewhat sceptical as to the defeats sustained by the Tingri Khān, Shīdār-kū, on the previous occasions as related by them [See note at page 949], for, had that ruler been reduced to such a state of helplessness, as they mention, how could he have again managed to acquire such power, and assemble such an immense army?

The following is, briefly, what the other, and subsequent Muḥlinān writers say on the subject

The Chingiz Khān having reached the territory of Tingkūt, otherwise called Kāshīn, succeeded in possessing himself of the cities of Kām-jū, Kā-jū, Sujā, and Arūmī or Urūmī, and invested the city of Tingāi or Tangāl—تنگائی [this is the same doubtless as the Ning-hya of the Chinese, as ت and ن may be easily mistaken in MSS], and set it on fire in several places. Shīdār-kū—شیدارکو—the Tingri Khān of our author, and Shīdār-kū of some other writers, and the Ly-Hyen of the Chinese, but never styled "Khakān" in any history I have met with—the Bādshāh of Kāshīn, whom, in the language of Tingkūt, they style by the title of Lā-wān—لووان—[the Liyau of Europeans] moved from his capital, which, in the Tingkūt language, they style Irki or Irkiā—ایرکی—and the Mughals call Irkiā, or Irkiā—ایرکیا—and which is also written Irkiāh—ایرکیہ—with fifty *tomāns* of troops—500,000—[this is a *one-sided* statement it must be remembered], and advanced to encounter the Mughal sovereign, who, likewise, made ready to meet him. When they came in contact a desperate battle ensued, and such a vast number were

had invaded his territory, but had not overcome him or

slain on the side of Shīdārķū, but some say, as is most probable, on either side, that *three corpses were found, after the battle, standing on their heads!* Among the Mughals it has become firmly established [in their minds?] that, for every ten *imāns*—100,000 persons—slain on the battle-field, one of the killed stands on its head [sic in MSS.] The author of the "*Mongols Proper*" (p. 102) has got hold of this fable through some foreign translation, but the translator has made a muddle of it. Certainly "the great Raschid" never made such an error in telling it. Mr Howorth's version of it is as follows. "The story of Raschid about the man standing on his head is explained by D'Ohsson, who says, that, when the Mongols slaughtered a large number of people, in order to mark the number of the slain, a census in which they gloried, they put a corpse on its head on some elevated point for every thousand killed." There is nothing like a bold translation perhaps when a person may be in doubt.

At length, Shīdārķū, unable to make any further resistance, took to flight, much to the joy of the Mughals, who considered themselves fortunate in obtaining this success, and shut himself up in his stronghold, the city of Irīķī or Irīķā, but which Abū-l-Ghāzī, Bahādur, in the Kazāin edition of his work, styles Kāchī. The Chingiz Khān remarked that, as Shīdārķū had been so utterly defeated in this battle, and his territory devastated, he would have no more strength left to him, since great part of his troops had been slain. So, holding him of little importance, and paying his city without molesting it [he must have left a force to watch it], but plundering, slaughtering, and devastating the territory of Kāshīn, the Chingiz Khān turned his face towards Khīfā, and, when spring came round, he determined to move against the territories of Tīngnāsh—تنگناش—[See third para farther on] and Khūrjah—خورجہ—but, before he could carry out his intentions respecting them, he had an awful dream which warned him that his end was near, and he became very much agitated in mind in consequence. He is also said to have received intimation about this time of the death of the Khalīfah, Un-Nāṣir D'illah, who died in Shawwāl, 622 H. When he awoke from his dream, he inquired of Basūķā Āķā, his nephew, the son of Jūyī Kasār, who was in attendance: "Are my sons Uktāc and Tālī distant or near?" As they were in their own *ardūs*, with their forces, Basūķā Āķā replied that they might not be more than two or three *farsangs* distant. The Khān said: "Let them bring them hither;" and, when they presented themselves the following day, along with the great Amīrs, after partaking of the morning meal, the Chingiz Khān turned his face towards the assemblage and said "I have some counsel to hold with my sons, and a confidential matter which I wish to communicate to them, and desire to be private with them for a short time."

When the Amīrs and others who were then present withdrew, the Chingiz Khān turned towards his sons and said: "My beloved ones, the time approaches for me to take my last journey, and the period of my dissolution is at hand! By the power of the Almighty, and the aid of Providence, I have acquired and consolidated [not very consolidated west of the Jihūn, at least, and in very few, if in any, places had Intendants even been established, much less troops located, at this period, but certainly there were ample proofs of the butchery and desolation he and his barbarian hordes had committed] for you an empire, so extensive, that from one side of it to the other is one year's journey. I wish to ask of you who, by your counsel, is

subdued his country, and many times he had overcome the

the person most befitting to succeed me " Uktāe, Chaghatāe, and Tūlī—for he was also present according to some of my authorities, but Jūjī had recently died in the *Daght-i-Kūchāk*—bent the knee, and replied :—"Our father is sovereign, and we are his servants, and will obey what he commands " The Great Khān replied : "I have implicit faith, in all things, in the wisdom and experience of Karāchār, and desire his opinion, and whom he approves of I will appoint." Having received the opinion of that Nū-yīn, the Chingiz Khān directed that the Covenant entered into in by-gone times by Kābal Khān and the Bahādur, Ka-jūllī, bearing the Āl-Tamghah of Tumnā-ī Khān, which had descended to him from his ancestors, and to which his forefathers had also appended their names [see the note on the Turks at page 896] should be brought from the treasury. This having been done, it was shown to his sons, and he continued :—"I name Uktāe as Khān, and appoint him my successor, and make over the throne to him. Do ye likewise act in accord one with another, and enter likewise into a Covenant that ye will not deviate from his commands, and that ye will attend his kūriltāes " This they did, and the Covenant was attested by the Amirs and Ministers. He also requested that the mother of Uktāe, Bārtah Kūchīn, should exercise the sovereign authority over the *ulūs* until such time as a kūriltāe should assemble to confirm Uktāe's succession, which would be two years. He further commanded that, as the countries of Māwarā-un-Nahr and other territories adjoining it had previously been assigned by him to Chaghatāe, and as there were ancient [sic in MSS] foes still existing between Ī-rān and Tūrān, namely Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Dīn and his brother, he would make over Chaghatāe to the paternal charge of Karāchār; and urged that Nū-yīn to act towards his son as he had acted before towards himself, his father, and continue to give Chaghatāe the benefit of his assistance in the government of the affairs of his dominions. He also caused Chaghatāe and Karāchār to enter into a Covenant as father and son; and the last-mentioned Covenant was made over to Chaghatāe's charge, and that previously mentioned, between the brothers, to Uktāe. "The Great Khān further requested, that, when his death should happen, no lamentations whatever were to be made, and that it should be kept a profound secret ['the ruling passion' of treachery was 'strong even in death']; and that as soon as Shidarkū, the king of Kāshān, should leave his city and come to the Mughal camp, as he had agreed to do, he should be put, at once, to death, in order that firm possession of his territory might be secured. Having said this, he closed his eyes, and thou mightest have said that the Chingiz Khān had never existed."

Alfī, quoting Hāfiẓ Abrū, and other authorities, differs considerably from the above in some points. It states that, after settling the succession, at which Chaghatāe was not present, the Chingiz Khān requested his sons, Uktāe and Tūlī, to return to their own tribes and territories, that is such tribes and countries as had been entrusted to them, lest Chaghatāe, who was not present, might not act according to his father's commands, and might raise sedition in the empire; and he further urged them, for the sake of his good name and fame, to observe his laws and regulations.

Uktāe and Tūlī took leave of their father, and returned to their respective posts, while the Chingiz Khān, with a numerous army, marched towards the country of Tingnāsh—تنگاش [which may even be more correctly Ningāish—ننگاش. It is written in various ways. The Rauzat-us-Safā has Tang-

**Chingiz Khān in battle** At the period that the **Chingiz**

**tābāsh**—نکاشی—while others have **Biktāsh**—بکتاش—but the first mode of writing is contained in the majority of trustworthy writers, and **Khūrjah**—خورد—When he reached them, the **Bāidshāhs** of those countries were ready to become tributary, and to submit to him. On reaching a place named **Liwak khān**—لوق خان—which is on the frontier boundary between **Khūrjah**, **Tingnīsh**, or **Biktāsh**, and **Tingkūt**, the **Bāidshāh**—also styled **Wālī**—of **Khūrjah** [the **Kim** emperor according to the translations from the Chinese annals, but from what subsequently happens in the reigns of **Uktie** and **Mangū** this is contrary to fact] despatched envoys, with numerous and valuable presents for his acceptance, among which was a bowl of the finest pearls, and to tender their sovereign's submission and obedience. The **Chingiz Khān** commanded that such among those present at that time in his assembly, as had their ears bored, should be presented with pearls, while those, whose ears were not already bored, had them bored very quickly, and received pearls also, and, notwithstanding this, a great number of pearls remained undistributed. The **Chingiz Khān** commanded, saying, "It is a day of futility, let the pearls be scattered that people may pick them up." This was done, and, in consequence, a number of pearls were lost in the ground, and for a long time after that pearls used to be found there.

About this time **Shidarkū**, **Bāidshāh** of **Kishīn**, who had shut himself up in his capital, **Irākīā**, **Irkīn**, or **Irkīah**, sent an envoy to the **Chingiz Khān** to intimate that, if the **Mughal Khān** would enter into a covenant with him, stipulating for his safety and security, he would, within the period of one month, come in person to his *madū*, and present *pešh kash*, which is equivalent to doing homage. The **Chingiz Khān** gave the required guarantees, and confirmed them with most solemn oaths, and the envoy departed.

After the envoy had gone, the **Chingiz Khān** was taken ill, and grew exceedingly weak, and, from an awful dream which he had, warning him of his approaching death, he was much disturbed. It was at this time, according to the authority I have named, that he sent for his sons, and appointed his successor; the remainder agrees with the statements of other writers. His death, as he desired, was kept a profound secret, and, when **Shidarkū**, **Bāidshāh** of **Tingkūt** or **Kashīn**—he is styled so indiscriminately—according to the terms agreed upon, left his capital, the city of **Irākīā**, and drew near the **Mughal** camp, the **Nū-yīns** and **Amīrs** came forth to receive him, and escorted him and his train, as though about to lead him to the presence of the **Chingiz Khān**, but, on their arriving within a short distance of the *madū*, a body of **Mughals**, posted for the purpose, fell upon **Shidarkū** and his followers, and butchered the whole of them. An army was then despatched to **Irākīā**, which the **Mughals** entered, plundered, and massacred its inhabitants, and then desolated the country round. Such is **Alfī**'s account.

The death of the **Chingiz Khān** took place on the 4th of **Ramāzān**, 624 H., in the Turkish year of **Tungūz** or the **Hog**, which was the year of his birth, his ascending the throne, and of his decease, which last date is equivalent to the 16th of August, 1227 A.D. A few writers say 623 H. He had reigned 25 years, and his age was 75; some authors say 73, but, as he was born on the 20th of **Zī-Ka'dah**, 549 H. [See note, page 398], he was exactly 75 years, 1 month, and 10 days old [our author says he was 65 when he came into **Khurāsān**. See page 1077], whatever **Abū-l-Ghāzī**, **Bahādur Khān**, or **Father Gāubil** have said to the contrary, and he was certainly too old to have

**Khān** returned from the land of 'Ajām, and the countries

"coveted" the wife of the so-called "Shidurgho," as we are told he did in "*Mongols Proper*."

Having carried out their father's last instructions, the sons of the deceased **Khān** proceeded to perform the funeral ceremonies according to the custom of their people. There was no secrecy whatever after **Shidarkū** had been put to death, and his capital secured; and there was no killing every one they met.

Bentinck censures Marco Polo for relating, that, "in his time, the Tartars were accustomed, at the funerals of their **Khāns**, to slay all those they met in the way, and that they slew all whom they met on the way to the place appointed for the sepulchre of Jenghiz **Khān**; and that, a little before [true, a little before] his arrival in Grand Tartary, there had been 20,000 persons massacred in that manner, at the interment of Mangu **Khān**, grandson of the conqueror." Bentinck further remarks, and quite correctly too, that none of the Eastern authors, who have written on the Tartars [*Mughals*?], charge them with "such an abominable custom." He adds, that "in Grand Tartary"—he means *Mughalistan* and the *Mughals*—the inhabitants live so dispersed in their *khargāhs* or huts, that one might travel several hundred leagues without meeting a thousand. Polo too kills the **Chingiz Khān** six years only after his defeat of the "Um" **Khān**, as he styles the **Awang Khān**, and asserts that he was shot in the knee by an arrow before the castle of *Thaigā*!

Péris de la Croix who often quotes "the great Raschid," very correctly says, [page 382] "There is no likelihood that the barbarous custom, which has since been practised amongst the *Tartars* and *Moguls*, to kill those they meet in the way, when they are carrying to the grave the body of a Grand Can, was at this time observed; for the historians mention no such thing; and, besides, this custom is not countenanced by the law." The custom of burial among the *Mughals* is given in detail by our author further on.

After performing the funeral ceremonies—the preliminary mourning—the bier of the Great **Khān** was taken up, and his army set out on their return homeward, and the bier was in due time conveyed to his *urda's* in the locality of his ancient *yūrat*, which was "within the limits of," not *at*, *Qarā-Quram*. The corpse was finally buried at the foot of a large and solitary tree, under which, one day, when following the chase—not when he was "ill"—he had rested, and at which time he remarked. "This place is suitable for my sepulchre." The place in question is called *Būrkān Kāldūn*, according to some authorities, and *Būrkān Kāldūn* by others, including *Abū-ul-Ghāzī*, *Bahādur Khān*, which is merely the change of *l* for *r*. After the burial, the place was proscribed against intrusion from one generation to another, the word used to denote it is *ḥarām* or *ḥarām*—an 'Arabic word signifying "confiscated," "prohibited," "embargo," "ban," etc., and it was called the *ḥarām*—"the exclusive or especially prohibited place," which words appear to be the translation of *Būrkān Kāldūn*. The *Tā-īshī*, *Yasū Būkā*, the *Ūhūd Ūrmāngkūt* of the race of *Kāiān*, was the *Korchī* or guardian of the spot, which guardianship appertained exclusively to his tribe, who were, in consequence, exempted from all other duties and services.

It is likewise stated, as a wonderful fact, that, in that same year, that plain—*ḥarām*—thus showing that it was a plain, and neither "a mountain" nor "a cave"—became totally destitute of grass on account of the numerous trees of various kinds which grew up therein, and soon became such a dense forest.

of Islām, this Tīngri Khān held counsel with his Maliks

that one could not pass through it; and, the place being alike inaccessible and interdicted from curiosity, the exact whereabouts of the burial-place of the Chingiz Khān became wholly unknown. Tūli his son, who died about four years after, was also buried there. The Ḥabīb-us-Siyar distinctly states that the Chingiz Khān's body was taken back to Kārā-Kūram and buried in that neighbourhood, and that no human being was permitted to invade the spot, and this agrees with what other authors state, as given above, and the burial customs of the Mughals.

It is amusing to read, in the face of the statements of authors who wrote their histories in the territories of the Mughal sovereigns, with the best means of obtaining information on such a point, and about which there is absolutely nothing to conceal, the various theories of European writers. Pétis de la Croix, after stating that the spot was proscribed from the visitation of any one, says, "They buried him there [under the tree] with all the pompous ceremonies of the Mogul religion, and afterwards erected a most noble monument in this Place upon his Grave" ! Where is the native historian who ever said so, or whoever once mentioned such things as "the pompous ceremonies of the Mogul religion"? All this is purely imaginary. Again he says "The people, who came to visit the Tomb, planted other Trees round it, which so artfully covered it, and in such beautiful Order, as rendered it in time one of the finest Monuments in the World" ! He, however, quotes no authorities for these highly-coloured statements, and, moreover, buries him in "Tangut," which is totally incorrect.

Gaubil says he was buried "in the cave of Ki-nyen, in a mountain to the north of the sandy desert, and that his posterity were also buried there. Several Mughal lords of his posterity, whom he met at Pekin, he says, informed him that the Chingiz Khān was buried on the mountain of Ilan, in Lat 47° 54', Long 9° 3' W of Pekin. Another writer, not named, says the place of his burial was called Sali-chwen, and that the Chinese word *chwen* denotes "the place to have been a place full of fountains [springs?], lakes, and hills." The statement of Erdmann, p 444, agrees nearest with the Oriental writers, but D'Ohysson's, vol 1 p 381, seems purely mythical.

But why need I mention all this? Has not Professor Forbes himself discovered not only the place of burial, but even the tomb in which the corpse was enclosed? I wonder he did not discover Tūli's tomb also, for he was buried there too. In a paper read before the British Association in September, 1876, he asserts [but what are the *proofs*?] that it lies "almost a day's journey from Urga, viz, from twenty to twenty five miles, and that "the tomb consists of a stone structure which is now level with the ground, there is a circle of stone ten feet thick, and one hundred yards in diameter, and in the centre of this there is a circle which has once been a covered building, some fifteen yards in diameter," etc, etc. Did not he "discover" an inscription too? If it is a Mughal tomb, look *below* ground, not above, seeing what our author and others say with regard to Mughal modes of sepulture.

I must say a few words respecting the wives and children of the Chingiz Khān before closing the notice of him, as European writers have rendered the names of them even more unintelligible than those of his four famous sons.

He is said to have had 500 Khātūns [wives] and concubines, every one of whom was taken from some tribe or other after he had reduced or conquered it. Some were married to him according to the Mughal rites and customs,



and Amīrs, saying: "The Chingiz Khān is come. On

but most of them were such as had been carried off, and were kept in his *haram*. Those who were held in the highest respect and esteem were the following five:—

1. BŪRTAH KŪCHĪN—بورته کوچین She was neither called "*Burte Fudshin*" nor "*Burte Fudshin*," and consequently, whether "*Fudshin*" or "*Fougen*" was the title given by the Chinese Emperors to those of their wives who ranked "immediately after the Empress," or whether not, these names and titles do not appertain to Būrtah Kūchīn, who was the Chingiz Khān's chief wife. She was the daughter of the Nū-yīn, Dāe, the Bādghāh, as he is styled, of the Kungkur-āt Mughals, which was one of the most numerous, and distinguished for valour, as well as one of the proudest of the whole of the Nairūn tribes, one reason for which is stated to have been that, in issuing from Irgānah-Kūp, they led the way, and such was their celerity in doing so, that they burnt their feet on the ironstone not yet become cool.

They are Nairūn Mughals beyond the shadow of a doubt, and yet the author of the "*Mongols Proper*" informs us, at p 793, "*I have small doubt that they were Turks*, for although small clans still survive among the Mongols who are called Khongkuras (i.e. Kunkurat), by Hsuanang Seten, there is no tribe among them which bears the name, while we find that one of the four main divisions of the Uzbeks is called Kiat Kungrat," etc., etc. The author has made a very delightful muddle here. The Kungkur-āts are truly Turks of the Mughal i-māk, but Nairūn Mughals, of which Kaiāt is one of the two great divisions, and perhaps he is not aware that the Ūzbaks are Mughals, whence the term Kaiāt-Kungkur-āt. There are Kungkur-āts, Kan-kulis, and many other tribes mentioned in these notes, still to be found in Turkistān and Mughalistan. Mīr 'Abd-ul-Karīm, Bukhārī, who wrote in 1222 H.—1807 A.D.—continually refers to them in his work, and some of the Kāghghar Mission actually met a "Kirghiz who was a Naymān," and "Yuldūz Kalmāk who are Turgut and Koshot."

When the Chingiz Khān was defeated by the Makrīts, his Kungkur-āt wife was taken captive, and made over by them to the Āwang Khān, their sovereign. She is said to have been pregnant of Jūjī at the time, and the Āwang Khān, out of his former friendship for the husband, treated her with respect, and sent her back when the Chingiz Khān demanded her. Jūjī was born on the way home, and his appearance on the scene appears to have been unexpected, for his name, given in consequence, signifies "the unexpected guest." I may have to refer to this circumstance again, farther on.

Būrtah Kūchīn subsequently bore three other sons—Chaghataē, Uktāe, and Tūlī, and five daughters, who were, in due time, married to different Mughal and other chiefs, who, with a single exception, are styled Gūrgān, signifying, in the Turki language—not the "Chinese," I believe—son-in-law. One of these sons-in-law, a son of the chief of the Kungkur-āt, had previously borne the title of Gūrgān, but I have not space for much detail.

2. KŪLĀN KHĀTŪN, daughter of Tā'ir Asūn, the chief of the Ūrhār Makrīt tribe. Her father submitted to the sway of the Chingiz Khān, and brought his daughter, and presented her as an offering to him. Abū-l-Ghāzī, Bahādur Khān, ignores her altogether, in his History, and substitutes Kor-Bāsū, the widow of the Tayanak Khān, who is mentioned as one of his wives of lesser degree farther on. Kūlān Khātūn had a son by the Chingiz Khān named Kūlakān—كولكان—or Kūlakān—كولكان—who was assigned rank, in

several previous occasions we have fought with him and

every way, equal to the other sons of the **Chingiz Khān**. He died early, leaving several sons, and one of them, **Kūchah**, succeeded to his father's rank and position, and the command of the 6000 men, which the **Chingiz Khān** had conferred upon him.

3 **YASSĪ KĀN**, a **Tāttār** lady, whose name, in some Histories, is written **Tassūkān**, but it appears that the two points of the first letter **ط**—in this instance have been carelessly written, with the points over instead of under. She bore a son, who was named **Ūjār**, but he died in his youth.

4 **KONJŪ KHĀTŪN**, daughter of the **Ālān Khān** of **Khūtāe**. She was by no means good-looking, but, as her father was the greatest sovereign of that age, she was treated with respect accordingly. She bore no children, and was still living, in her own *urdu*, in the time of **Artū** or **Artūkh Būkā**.

5. **YASSŪTŪN**, sister of **Yassūkān** the third wife, but married to the **Chingiz Khān** after the death of her sister.

Besides these were other **Khātūns**, who, although not considered so high in rank or position, were nevertheless treated with great reverence, and sometimes would monopolize the company of their husband. One of these was **ANĪKĀH**—**انكاه**—**Khātūn**, daughter of the **Jākambū** also written **Jānkabū**, the brother of the **Āwang Khān**. His name is said to have been **Badāe**—**بدای**. After the overthrow and death of his brother, he took shelter in **Tingūt**, where he obtained protection, and was treated with honour. The **Bādshāh** of that country gave him the title of **Jākambū**, equivalent to "**Dāmbū**," in "**Degam Dāmbū**," and "**Mathi Dāmbū**," etc., in **Tibbatī** titles. **Jākambū** signifies "**Amir-i-Mu'azzam**," and "**Buzurg-i-Mamlakat**." The **Chingiz Khān** espoused her, and married one of her sisters, named **Bihtūmish Kūchīn**, to his son, **Jūji**, and another, **Sūr Kūchīn Bīgi**, to **Tūli**, and all four sons of **Tūli Khān** were by her. After the **Chingiz Khān** had married **Anīkah** a few days only, in consequence of a dream which he had, he gave her in marriage to one of his **Amirs**, the **Nū yin**, **Gahtī**, also called **Gatī**, the **Ūr-ūt** [he is turned into "**a dya** on the borders of China," in the "**Mongols Proper**"]. who happened to be the **Amir** in waiting that night.

Another of the **Chingiz Khān's Khātūns** was **KOR-BĀSŪ** the widow and chief **Khātūn** of the **Tayānak Khān**, **Bādshāh** of the **Nāemāns**. She was brought to him sometime after the **Tayānak Khān's** death, and, according to the **Mughal** custom, the **Chingiz Khān** entered into bonds of marriage with her.

Besides these **Khātūns** he had many others, the daughters of **Sultāns** [**Mughal** and **Tāttār** Chiefs?] and **Amirs**, and he also had a son named **Jūrjīn**, by a lady of the **Nāemān** tribe, who died before any other of his children; and another son named **Jifān** or **Arjifān**, who died in childhood. His mother was of the **Tāttār i-māk**.

The Great **Khān** likewise adopted a boy of the **Tingūt** tribe, in his eleventh year, and brought him up; and was wont to style him his fifth son. He was the **Nū-yān**, **Jifān**, who had a great name for valour, and was the **Bāsh-ligh** or Chief of the **Khās** or **Personal Ming**—in the **Tājīk** language signifying **Hazārah**—of the **Chingiz Khān**, which was limited to 1000 persons; and from it many of the chief officials and leaders were chosen. In **Uktāe Ka'an's** reign, when he was despatched into **Khūtāe**, **Jifān** adopted a son himself, who was also a **Tingūt**, named **Burah**, taken captive as a child of three years, who was from the *urdu* of **Burtah Kūchīn**, as were many other

defeated him. Now he has returned, and his forces have

eminent officers serving in the *Khā* Ming or *Hazārah* as *Sadhahs*—leaders of hundreds—but I have not space to mention more than one—the *Bāwurchī*, *Hürkī*, of the *Dürbān* tribe, who was the grandfather of *Kulād Akā*, from whom the *Khawājah*, *Rashid-ud-Dīn*, the *Hamālinī*, obtained information respecting his account of the *Mughals* compiled from the *Āltān Dīstar*, or *Golden Record*, and verified its contents. *Alfi* says, quoting other authorities, that *Jisān* was held in such high esteem and honour, that, in *Uktāe*'s reign, he used to sit higher, on public occasions, than his brother *Mangū*, afterwards supreme ruler of the *Mughal* empire.

The *Chingiz Khān* had yet another adopted son, a *Tättār*. When his tribe was attacked and plundered by the hostile *Mughal* tribes, a little boy was found by them weeping in his cradle. *Bürtah Kūchīn*, at that time, had borne her husband no children, and she adopted the child, and brought him up. He subsequently rose to high rank; his correct name was *Shīkī Kutūkū*, commander of the *Tättār* Ming or *Hazārah*. He is one of the leaders who was overthrown by *Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn*. See page 289.

The total number of the *Chingiz Khān*'s children was thirteen—eight sons and five daughters—and yet *Pétis de la Croix* says he had “a prodigious number of children.”

I intended to have given here a list of the whole of the *Chingiz Khān*'s Mings or *Hazārahs*, but I have not space for them.

The *Contingents* instituted by the *Chingiz Khān*, which were all cavalry, consisted of a *Khās* or *Personal* Ming, or *Hazārah*, a *Kol* or *Centre*, a *Burānghār*, or *Right Wing*, so styled, and a *Juwānghār*, or *Left Wing*, also called the *Jūk*. The word *Hazārah*, which is *Tāgīk* or *Persian*, must not be supposed to be the actual name by which these *Contingents* were called by the *Mughals*, for it is not—nor is it the name of a tribe, as *Mr Dowson*, in *ERRIOT'S HISTORIANS* [vol vi, page 368] imagines—“the famous tribe of *Hazarah*,” as he styles them. The word is the mere translation of the *Turkī* word *ming*, a thousand. The number, too, was but nominal in many instances, since there were two *Hazārahs* of 10,000 men each, one of 8000, and several others of a higher number than a thousand. See note, page 984.

The *Burānghār* contained 30,000 men in 22 *Hazārahs*. Out of these there was one of *Ūrūt* *Mughals* [val *Virats*], 4000; one of *Bārin* *Mughals*, 2000; another of *Ungkūt* *Tuiks*, 4000, and one of various *Kaiāt* tribes, 10,000. The *Nū-yīn*, *Burjī* or *Būjīn*, the *Arlāt*, was its head.

The *Juwānghār*, consisted of 25 *Hazārahs*, among which was the *Ūrūt* *Hazārah*, 4000 men, the *Angīrās* *Kungkur-āts*, 3000; the *Kungkur-āts*, 5000; the *Bārin*s, 3000, and another of *Kungkur-āts*, of 4000. Besides the other *Mughal* *Hazārahs*, there was one *Hazārah* of *Karā-Khitā-īs* of 10,000 men, and another styled the *Khūrjah* *Hazārah* of 10,000 men. Its head was the *Nū-yīn* *Mūkālī*, the *Jalāl-īr*, surnamed *The Ko-yāng*, signifying in the language of *Khitāe*, the Great *Khān*.

The *contingents* assigned to the *Chingiz Khān*'s sons and brothers, and their sons, his mother, and other relatives, amounted to 28,000. His eldest son *Jūjī*'s contingent numbered 4000 in four *Hazārahs*, consisting of the tribes of *Sujūt*, *Kangīt*, *Hoshīn*, also called *Ūshīn*, and *Suntāe* [?]. The contingent of his second son, *Chaghatāe*, amounted to the same number, also consisting of four *Hazārahs*, of the tribes of *Barlās*, *Karāyat*, *Sūniāt*, and *Sūldūs*.

Some recent Indian history compilers have made sad errors in connexion

become very numerous, and he is proceeding against the

with these four tribes assigned to Chaghatāe Khān—Chaghatāe's tribes. These writers have assumed that there was a great and distinct tribe called "Chaghtae," or "Chugtar," as a recent author writes it, and a "Chagtae language." Some have even gone so far [see "*The Turks in India*," by Henry George Keene, M R A S, Judge of Agra, etc London 1879] as to assert that Bābūr, who founded the Mughal empire in India, was not a Mughal, but a "Chugtae Turk." He was a Barlās Mughal [see note, page 898] pure and simple, of the race of ʿKaiāt. It is quite time such fallacies should be given to the winds.

The contingent of his third son, Uktāe, formed four Hazārahs of the same number as those of his other two brothers, consisting of the Hazārahs of Jalāʿr Yamkālān or Brunkālān [جالب?] a branch of the Süldūs, Mangkūt, and Sūnfat. After Uktāe came to the throne, the whole of his personal troops consisted of men of these four tribes.

The share of Kulākān, another son of the Chingiz Khān, and to whom he was greatly attached, numbered 4000, in four Hazārahs, consisting of men of the Birlās, and other tribes.

These four Mings or Contingents in all numbered 16,000 horse.

The Chingiz Khān conferred a contingent to the number of 5000 upon his younger brother, Ū-Tigīn, or Aw-Tigīn, as it is also spelt, consisting of Ūrad Kalangkūts, Busūt, Jūrī-āts, also called Jājar-āts, and small numbers of many of the other tribes not included in the previously mentioned Hazārahs. The contingent of the sons of Jūjī Kasār, another brother of the Chingiz Khān, consisted of 1000 men drawn from several tribes, and that of Ilchidāe, or Ilchikdāe, son of Kajbūn, a third brother of the Chingiz Khān, who died in his youth, numbered 3000 horse, consisting of Nāemāns, Ūrī-angkut, and some other scattered tribes. The contingent of his mother, Ūlūn Ankah, numbered 3000 ʿKūrlās and Ūlḡūnūts.

At the time of his decease the Chingiz Khān assigned the whole of his ʿKhāṣah, or personal troops, and all the Hazārahs of the Centre, Right, and Left, consisting of 101,000 men, and his *yūrats*, to his youngest son, Tūlūe or Tūlt, who always continued with him, and who, in his lifetime, commanded them, under himself, hence no separate contingent appertained to him, and, after Tūlt's decease, they fell to the share of his sons, Mangū, ʿKūhlāe, and others.

It must be understood that these were contingents always kept up by the Princes, Nū-yāns, Jurbis, and Rahādurs, to whom they were assigned, and not as being the entire amount, by any means, of the Chingiz Khān's forces. They were capable of being expanded at any time. That such was usual, we have sufficient proof in the number of troops which Hulākū led into Ī-rān-Zamīn, drawn from a portion of these contingents, some of which subsequently increased very much, and we are told that one of Chaghatāe's Hazārahs, in a short period of time, had increased to the number of 100,000.

I have been particular in mentioning these Hazārahs because, to judge from one of the questions propounded at the Oriental Congress of 1876, great doubt appears to have arisen in the minds of some persons on the subject, and some have even asserted that the real Mughal element in the Chingiz Khān's armies was very small, and that Mughal is "nothing more than a dynastic name adopted by Chengis to denote the empire which he founded," but, from what I have here given, those who know Turks from Tāttārs, and

Altūn Khān of Tamghāj. It is advisable that we should make peace with him, and enter into alliance with him, and that, in concert, we should proceed into the country of Khītā, and overthrow the Altūn Khān." His opinion and that of his Maliks agreeing, this was determined upon, and peace was made by the Tingrī Khān with the Chingiz Khān, and a firm treaty was entered into between them.

When the Tingrī Khān's heart became tranquil on this union, he came to the Chingiz Khān, and united with him ; and the forces of the Tingrī Khān combined with the Mughal army, and they turned their faces towards the countries of Chin and Khītā. There was a river the name of which is Ḳarā-Mūr [Mūr-ān ?],<sup>4</sup> and they crossed it with the intention of devastating the country of Khītā. A number of Nū-ins and [other] Mughals represented to the Chingiz Khān, saying : " Our army is moving towards Khītā : if we should sustain a defeat, the troops of the Tingrī Khān are likewise our enemies. His territory will be in our rear, and not one of us will reach our own country in safety. It is advisable, since the Tingrī Khān is among us, that we should slay him, and set our minds at ease respecting him, so that there will not be an enemy behind us, and, with our hearts at rest, we can turn our faces towards the Khītā country." The Chingiz Khān resolved to act upon this

Mughals, and who understand the difference between Badz-ūḳis, and Udz-ūḳis, Ḳaiāts and Nagūz, Durāl-gins and Naurūn, will perceive how greatly the Mughal element predominated, and how fallacious such a statement is.

To sum up :—

The <u>Khāṣ</u> Ming or <u>Hazārah</u> . . . . .	1,000
The Ming or <u>Hazārah</u> of the <u>Nū-yān Būrf</u> , also called the <u>Ḳol</u> . . . . .	8,000
The Right, or <u>Burānghār</u> . . . . .	30,000
The Left, or <u>Juwānghār</u> . . . . .	62,000
The Mings or <u>Hazārahs</u> of the sons . . . . .	16,000
The Mings or <u>Hazārahs</u> of the brothers, nephews, and mother . . . . .	12,000
	<hr/> 129,000

In the "*Mongols Proper*," on the authority apparently of M. Erdmann, the 101,000 men, including all the Hazārahs here given, with the exception of the contingents of Tūlī's brothers, mother, and kinsmen, 28,000 in all, which appertained to Tūlī, after his father's death—have been mistaken for, and added as, a separate force, and styled the "*Centre under Tului*," thus swelling the 129,000 to 230,000, which is not correct. The 8000 Arlāts, too, have been left out.

counsel, and he seized the Tingrī Khān, and gave orders to kill him. On the Tingrī Khān becoming certain that they would slay him, he said : " Convey a single message from me to the Chingiz Khān, and that message is this : ' I have not shown any perfidy towards thee. I came to thee under treaty. Thou art acting perfidiously towards me, and art going to act contrary to the covenant entered into with me. Now give ear. When thou slayest me, if from me issues blood white in colour like unto milk, know that three days after me thou diest.' " When they conveyed this message to the Chingiz Khān, he laughed, and said : " This man has become mad : blood like milk never issues from the wound of a slain person, nor has any one ever seen white blood. It behoveth the more speedily to put him to death "

When the executioner struck the Tingrī Khān with his sword, white blood like unto milk issued from the wound ; and he perished. When the tidings of this astonishing circumstance reached the Chingiz Khān, the accursed, he quickly arose, and came to the spot ; and, when he saw that the occurrence was actually so, it struck his heart, and his strength forsook him, and, on the third day, his heart broke, and he went to hell.

He had made his last request, saying " It is incumbent that ye slay the whole of the Tingrī Khān's people, both male and female, small and great, young and old, and not leave a single person alive " When the Chingiz Khān was departing to hell he had devised the sovereignty to his son Uktāe, and Uktāe turned back, and massacred all the people of the city and territory<sup>4</sup> of the Tingrī Khān.

## II. TŪSHĪ, SON OF THE CHINGIZ KHĀN

Tūshī<sup>5</sup> was the eldest of the Chingiz Khān's sons, and was exceedingly energetic, intrepid, manly, and warlike ; and his greatness was to that degree that his father used to stand in awe of him.

In the year 615 H, when Sultān Muḥammad, Khawārazm Shāh, had gone forth to devastate the tribes of Qadr Khān

<sup>4</sup> One of the best copies of the text omits the words "of the city and territory "

<sup>5</sup> See note 4, page 1026.

of Turkistān, who was the son of Šafaqtān-i-Yamak,<sup>6</sup> Tūshī likewise, from the side of Tamghāy had advanced [with an army] in that direction, and had been engaged in a conflict with the army of the Khwārazm Shāh for a night and a day, as has been previously mentioned in the account of the Khwārazm Shāh. At this time, when Sultān Muḥammad fled from the banks of the Jihūn and the neighbourhood of Balkh, the Chingiz Khān despatched his sons Tūshī and Chaghataē, with a great army, towards Khwārazm.

He [Tūshī] proceeded thither with that army, and appeared before the gate of [the capital city of] Khwārazm, and the fighting commenced. For a period of four months<sup>7</sup>

<sup>6</sup> This name is clearly written in the different copies of the text with but slight variation. Every one of the best copies have the 'Arabic توشی as the first letter, used, of course, to express or represent some Turkish letter. Thus seven copies have توشی one copy توشان three others توشان and one توشان.

The difficulty is to decide who this person is, but, at the same time, it is necessary to point out that this affair is in no way connected with Tūk-Tughān, the Makrīt, although it is mentioned by our author, at page 267, as immediately preceding the latter affair, which he refers to without mentioning any name as here. The Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh also refers to this affair very briefly, but mentions no name.

At the end of this work, in the lines addressed to the Ulugh Khān, he is styled "Khān of the Ilbari and Shāh of the Yamak," and these Ilbari are again plainly stated to be Turks at page 800, and at page 796 it is mentioned that that tribe had to remove from their accustomed place of abode, which is not specified, but Khushchāk is implied, when the Mughals became predominant over Turkistān and the tribes of Khushchāk. See also pages 599 and 791.

In an old geographical work Yamak is briefly referred to as the name of a city or town and a territory or country famous for its beautiful females, and that it is also said to be the name assigned to the sovereign of the Ī-ghūrs, whoever he might be. But, as I have previously mentioned, in note at page 951, the Bāshlighs, or Chiefs of the Ūn-Ī-ghūrs, were in ancient times styled Īl-Īltār and those of the Tukūz-Ī-ghūrs, Kol-Īrkīn, or, according to Abū-l-Ghāzī, Bahādur Khān, Īl-Īrkīn, and, in after years, Yiddi-Kūt.

<sup>7</sup> The Khwārazmīs made a much more gallant defence than our author has given them credit for.

After the Chingiz Khān had effected the capture of Samrḳand and had become established in Māwarā-un-Nahr, he, towards the close of 617 H., despatched his sons Jūjī, Chaghataē, and Uktāē, to reduce the Khwārazm territory at the head of a great army, which one author states amounted to about 100,000 men, and they set out by way of Bukhārā. The capital city of Khwārazm was named Jurjāniyah by 'Arabs, but was called Ūrganj and Ūrgānj by the Turks and the great men thereof. The 'Ajāmi's call it Gurgānj.

The author of the "*Mongols Proper*" tells us twice (pp. 83 and 85) that "Ūrgendj" is "the modern Khiva," but subsequently, in his additional

the people of Khwārazm continued to resist the Mughals,

notes, that "old Urgendj was the capital of Khwarezm," in which he is tolerably correct, but its site is not so very near "the modern capital—Khiva," being only ninety-two miles distant from it as the crow flies. In Col. J. C. Walker's last map [1879], notwithstanding the various "authorities" mentioned on the margin of it, "Khiva" duly figures under the name of *Kharezm*, while in the same map, as the name indicates, "Kunia"—an error for Kuhnah, or old—"Urganj" is the site. Such an error is to be lamented, but I fear I shall have to refer to many others. Khwārazm is the name of the territory, and the words "the city of Khwārazm" merely refer to the city which is the capital of Khwārazm, and this mode of terming a capital by the name of the country was not uncommon. I do not agree with Pétis de la Croix that the city was ever called Khwārazm, except in the sense mentioned. What is erroneously styled *Khirus* in maps is Kūīwāk—کویوک—of the people of the country.

Among the number of great men present in the territory of Khwārazm at this time, there was no one, in the absence of the members of the late Sulṭān's family, whom they could better choose under the circumstances than the Amīr, Khūmār-Tuḡīn, the chief of the Kanḡulis [Pétis de la Croix's "*Himar tequen*"—the point of the kh having been omitted by the scribe, he read it as *h*], who was a kinsman of the late Sulṭān's mother, the unfortunate Turkān Khātūn, and also held the office of Hājib-i-Dar, or War-Būkā, and they chose him to direct the administration. In the exigency of affairs, they accorded him the title of Sulṭān. There was besides, at the capital, the Pahlawān, 'Alī, the Darghamī.

After these measures had been adopted, one day, a small body of horse appeared before one of the gates, and began to drive off the cattle. Not knowing what calamity was lurking behind these horsemen, a number of imprudent and short-sighted persons led out a large force, both horse and foot, from the Khalkī gate towards them, thinking to capture them. The Mughal horsemen, for such they were, pretended flight, but took care occasionally to give their pursuers hope of overtaking them, until they had drawn them to a place called the Bāgh-i-Khurram—the Pleasant or Delightful Garden [turned into a "Town called Baghe-i-Irūn," by Pétis de la Croix, who has made some terrible errors in his account of these operations, and has interwoven his own observations so much with the authors he quotes, that one is not to be distinguished from the other]—about a farsang from the city, where was the van of the Mughal army in ambuscade. These rushed upon the Khwārazmīs, and assailed them on all sides. The latter fought from early morning till noon, but the Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gī says, from noon to the setting of the sun, when, having sustained great loss, they retreated precipitately towards the city. The Mughals pursued, and, in the confusion which ensued, succeeded in entering along with the fugitives by one of the gates, and penetrated as far as the Tanūrah quarter. This, however, could only have been a suburb, as the Mughals were stopped by Farīdūn, the Ghūrī, an old officer in the late Sulṭān's service, and his soldiers, and the Mughals thought fit to retire. The Tārīkh just named states, that the Khwārazmīs lost 100,000 men on this occasion, but this is impossible, and seems a mere confusion of events, and refers to the upshot of the siege, or is altogether an exaggeration.

Next day, the Mughals again appeared before one of the gates, but, finding Farīdūn there posted with 500 men, did not make any attack during the whole



and to fight against those infidels. At last, they took the

of that day, and withdrew at night. Next day, when Jūf and his brothers arrived with the remainder of the great host, they made a perambulation of the city, and a person was despatched to summon the defenders to submit to the yoke of the Mughals, and open the gates. This was refused, upon which the Mughals completely invested the city, and made preparations for besieging it. As there was no stone in those parts, the Mughals had to use blocks of wood for their catapults, cut from the timber of the mulberry-trees; but I do not see how blocks of that, even though "hardened by being soaked in water," as a European writer states, could have had much effect upon walls of burnt brick; but some say wood blocks were only used towards the close of the siege when the stones had all been expended. The Mughals, as was usual with them, made the men of the conquered cities do the hard work in sieges, and so they obtained assistance from Jund and other conquered places, in the shape of men, tools, and materials, including loads of stone which were brought in carts. When all had been prepared, and the missiles and battering apparatus were ready, they opened the siege, and carried on their operations with vigour, but the defenders were as active and determined in the defence.

After a considerable time, the Mughals sent a force of 3000 men to divert the stream or branch of the river Jībūn, which flowed past the city, and supplied the people with water, and there effect an entrance [the aqueduct apparently mentioned at page 474, which proved an effectual barrier to the Ghūrīs], but the garrison made a sally to prevent it, and slew every one of the detachment. Here again P de la C. has fallen into error, and makes the Mughals dig a canal to drain the ditch. Great part of the city was reduced to ashes by the discharges of flasks of naphtha and other inflammable ingredients; but, now, quarrels, which had been going on for some time between Jūf and Chaghataïe, became so serious—Fasih-I says severe fighting ensued as the upshot of these quarrels, and that a great number of Mughals were killed—that the matter was brought to the hearing of their father, then engaged in the siege of Tāl-kān. He was not at Samrkand, as P. de la C. states: he had, in the meantime, left it, and had taken Turmid also previous to this. Five months had already passed in the siege of the Khwārazmī capital, and great loss had been sustained, and the Chingiz Khān, in his rage, directed Uktāe, the younger brother of the two there present, to take the command, and that all should pay him implicit obedience. He accordingly carried on the siege with fresh vigour; but it took another two months before the Mughals succeeded, by filling up the ditch with brushwood and rubbish—they may have drained the ditch to do this—in effecting a lodgment, and planting their standards on the walls. Even then the people fought hand to hand with them, from street to street, and door to door, for several days, while the Mughals discharged flasks of naphtha among them. Vast numbers were slain on both sides, including the brave Khumār-Tigīn, indeed, one author says "the city became a sea of blood," and the siege altogether is said to have cost the Mughals nearly 100,000 men, including the unfortunate Musalmān people compelled to work for their own people's destruction.

The loss sustained by the defenders is computed at about the same amount, but round numbers are often doubtful, still it must have been very great. The whole of the remaining people were driven out into the plain without the city, and after 100,000 artisans, mechanics, and tradespeople, had been selected, to be carried off with them and transported into Mughalīstān, or to assist in

city, and martyred the whole of the people, and destroyed all the buildings with the exception of two places—one the *Kūshk-i-Akhjak*\* [the Castle of *Akhjak*], the other, the mausoleum of *Sultān Muhammad-i-Takish*.

Some have stated on this wise, that, when the *Mughals* captured the city of *Khwārazm*, and brought the inhabitants out of the city into the plain, he [*Tūshī*] commanded that the women should be separated from the men, and such of the women as they cared for the *Mughals* retained. The remainder were directed to form into two bodies, and they caused the whole of them to be stripped naked, and round about them *Mughal* Turks [*Türkān-i-Mughal*],<sup>9</sup> with drawn swords, were stationed. The two parties were then commanded, thus: 'The women of your city are good pugilists, therefore, the order is that both sides should set on each other with their fists.' Those unfortunate *Musalmān* females they caused, thus ignominiously, to attack each other with hands clenched, and, for the space of a whole watch of the day, all those women continued to deal

the destruction of their own people, and the young women and children, and young men, had been sent into slavery (they were transported into the farther East, and several towns and villages were peopled by them and their descendants), the remainder were all butchered [This reads like the doings at *Baka Baghra* and *Kasanklik* in 1877 A.D.] The number was so great that it was computed that each *Mughal* soldier had some twenty-four to put to death, but, before we compute the number at 2,400,000, because the *Mughals* numbered 100,000 at the commencement of the siege, we must allow for their loss during that operation, and also leave out the *Musalmān* auxiliaries, but we may safely assume that more than a million perished. *Alfi* says the *Mughals* numbered 100,000 at this time, and that the number said to have been butchered passes almost all belief.

It is said that the *Chingiz Khān*, before sending his hordes against the city, despatched a message to the celebrated *Khwārazmī* saint, the *Shaykh*, *Najm-ud-Dīn*, the *Kāfirī*, otherwise *Al Kiwākī*—or of *Kiwak*, which Europeans have turned into *Akwa*—advising him to leave the place, since the upshot might be its plunder, and the slaughter of the people, but the *Shaykh* refused, saying: "For eighty years have I dwelt here in its prosperity, and should not leave it in the day of its misfortune. I will take my chance with others, await my fate, whatever it may be, and not fly from the Almighty's decree." He perished with the rest.

After the fall of the capital, the other towns and cities of *Khwārazm* submitted.

\* In one copy, *Akhchak*.

<sup>9</sup> From the way in which our author here writes *Türkān-i-Mughal*, i.e. *Mughal* Turks—Turks of the *Mughal* *i. e. i. e.*—he was evidently well informed as to the accounts of their descent. See note at pages 874 and 875.

blows upon, and to receive the blows of, each other, until, at length, the Mughals fell upon them with their swords and martyred the whole of them—the Almighty reward them!

When Tūshī, and Chaghatāe, the sons of the Chingiz Khān, had finished their work at Khwārazm, they<sup>1</sup> turned their faces towards Khifchāk, and the forces and tribes of Khifchāk they continued to subdue one by one, and make captive; and they brought the whole of the tribes under subjection. Tūshī, who was the eldest son of the Chingiz Khān [as already stated], when he became acquainted with the climate of the land of Khifchāk, considered that, in the whole universe, there could not be a more delightful land, a pleasanter climate, softer water, meads more verdant, and pasture-lands more extensive; and repugnance towards his father began to enter into his mind. He said to his confidants. "The Chingiz Khān has become mad, as he massacres so many people, and desolates so many countries! It thus seems meritorious on my part that, in some hunting-ground, I should slay my father, enter into an alliance with Sultān Muhammad, [Khwārazm Shāh], render this country flourishing, and give help and assistance to the Musalmāns"<sup>2</sup> His brother, Chaghatāe, gained intimation of this idea [of his brother's], and made known this perfidious notion and design to his father. When the Chingiz Khān became aware of it, he despatched his own confidential agents, so that they administered poison to Tūshī, and killed him.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This is an error. The brothers never agreed together, as I shall presently show, and they had quarrelled at Khwārazm only recently. After the capture of Ūrganj, Jūjī, with the *ulās* (armed men of the tribe) of the Yiddi-Kāt of the I-ghūrs, returned towards Karā-Kuram, but subsequently Jūjī retired into the Dasht-i-Kibchāk; and Chaghatāe and Uktāe proceeded, by way of Hazār-asp, to rejoin their father's camp before Tāl-kān. They captured Hazār-asp in the course of two days, and massacred its inhabitants, the number of whom, according to some writers, was so great that they did not deem it advisable even to record it. These events happened in 618 H.

Although our author wrote soon after these events took place, and was living at the time they happened, he was seemingly unaware that Uktāe was present at Ūrganj, and that he, after the quarrels between the brothers, was put in command over them, a fact which is beyond a doubt. Such being the case, and from what he himself says was the cause of his father's enmity towards him, it is probable that Jūjī had no hand in these brutal cruelties.

<sup>2</sup> The Sultān had died some time previous to this, in 617 H.

<sup>3</sup> Jūjī was but thirty years old when he died. He left behind him fifteen

Tūshī likewise had fourteen sons, the eldest of whom was named Bātū, the second Chaghatāe, the third Shaibān,

sons, but some say, fourteen. The eldest was Ūrdah, whose mother was Sūrtāk Khātūn, daughter of the sovereign of the Kungkur-āt tribes, and that son was wont to lead the left of his army, while Bātū, his second son, led the right. Another was named Barkah, our author's Barkā, who turned Musalmān, being the first of that family who did so. The remaining sons, except Tūghāe-Tīmūr, who also turned Musalmān, are not so well known to history and need scarcely be mentioned here. Jūjī's death took place in Rabi'ul-Awwal, 624 H., not in 626 H., as P de la C says, for he died before his father. Bātū succeeded to his father's dominions, whose reign will be found farther on. The Khāns of Krim [the Krimīā] were lineally descended from Jūjī Khān, whose descendants reigned longer as independent sovereigns than any others of the race.

Our author has exaggerated a little here, probably, but there is evidently some truth in what he says. There is plenty of evidence to prove that his father stood in some awe of Jūjī, for, undoubtedly, he was a great and high-minded prince, and this, together with the occurrences attending his birth, appear to have alienated the heart of the Chingiz Khān from him. When the Makrit tribe plundered the *urdu* of Tamur-chī, they carried off Būrtah Kūchin, his wife, who is said to have been pregnant at the time, and brought her to the Awang Khān, their chief. P de la C, although he afterwards says Jūjī was the eldest son, says this lady was then "big with her second child," and makes out "Aunghcan" to be "her father"! He treated her with great reverence and respect, and, after some time, sent her back to her husband, and, on the way, she gave birth to a son. No preparations having been made for the occasion, there was nothing available to swaddle the babe with—therefore the messenger of Tamur-chī, who had been sent to demand her release, mixed some flour and water together, and swaddled the boy in the dough, and thus managed to convey him safely, with his mother, to the *urdu* of Tamur-chī. The boy being unexpected—it would seem indeed that Tamur-chī was unaware of his wife's pregnancy, hence the doubts respecting the paternity of the child—was named Jūjī, or Tūshī, which, in the dialect of the Mughals, signifies *the unexpected guest*. It is not correct, as related in "The Mongols Proper," that the mother gave birth to Jūjī "after her return from captivity," he was born on the road.

His brothers, particularly Chaghatāe and Uktāe, used constantly to taunt Jūjī respecting his birth, and they seem to have been jealous of him; but his father had great faith in his ability and valour, and entrusted him, previous to the invasion of Islām, with the command of an army, which army was overtaken by Suljān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, and brought to action, as related at page 269, and his father had since conferred upon him the government of the whole of the *alāyās* or tribes and territories within the limits of Ardīsh and the Altāe mountains. Subsequently, the Chingiz Khān added thereto the territories of Khwārazm, the Dasht-i-Kūbchāk or Khūshchāk, and such conquests as Jūjī might effect over the countries of Khuriz, Bulghār, Alān, Ās, and Rūs.

After the capture of the capital city of Khwārazm, that is to say, Ūrganj, Jūjī separated from his brothers, and withdrew into [towards?] the Dasht-i-Kūbchāk; and, when Jabah [Yamah] and Swidāe [Sahūdāh] returned from their three years' expedition, and reached the Dasht-i-Kūbchāk, they had to obtain aid from him, as already narrated, before they could proceed farther on.

and the fourth Barkā; and trustworthy persons have related on this wise, that the birth of this Barkā took place at the time of the conquests in the territories of Islām. When his mother gave him birth, Tūshī, his father, com-

their way. When the Chingiz Khān retired from Nangrahār, and set out on his return into Mughalīstān, and reached Kulān Yāzī, Jūjī presented himself, as already mentioned in the account of his father, but another writer, Hāfiḡ Abrū, states, and his statement is, without doubt, correct, that, after the disagreement with his brothers before Ūrganj, subsequent to its capture, Chaghatāe and Uktāe set out with their troops to rejoin their father, and reached his camp at Tāl-kān, but Jūjī set out towards Ardīsh, where were his wives and families, and joined his own *urdū*s. As his father, previous to this, had commanded him to invade the countries to the north and west, such as the territories of Būlār [sic. بولار], of the Bāgh-ghird, the Rūs, and the Jarkas [the Cheremis?], the Dasht-i-Kūbchāk, and other parts in that direction, and to hold possession of them, when Jūjī set out toward Ardīsh, his father, at first, imagined that he did not intend to obey his commands, respecting that expedition, and that he had, consequently, returned to his home and given himself up to pleasure and jollity instead of carrying out his instructions. The Chingiz Khān was, in consequence, exceedingly incensed, and commanded that it would be necessary to put him to death without looking upon his face again. The real cause however was that Jūjī, at the period in question, had become prostrated by disease, and, on that account, when the Chingiz Khān returned from the territory of the Tājiks, and took up his residence in his own *urdū*, Jūjī was unable to present himself in his father's presence, but he despatched several loads of game, and made known his illness. Subsequently, he was again summoned to appear, but he made apologies, and stated his inability to attend on account of sickness.

Shortly after that, a person having set out from Jūjī's *yūrats* to proceed to the presence of the Chingiz Khān, coming along the road, noticed that Jūjī had gone forth, and was proceeding from *yūrat* to *yūrat*. By the way, Jūjī had to pass a place where he had been wont to follow the chase, and, being incapable himself, through weakness, he despatched his Amirs to hunt. This person, who was on his way to the camp of his father, noticed, from a distance, a considerable gathering assembled engaged in hunting, and made sure to himself that it was Jūjī; and, when he reached the presence of the Chingiz Khān, and the latter inquired of him respecting Jūjī's illness, he replied. "As to his illness I know naught, but, at the time of coming hither, near the skirts of a certain mountain range, he was engaged in hunting." At these words the wrath of the Chingiz Khān was roused to such degree as cannot be narrated, and, in his mind, he felt certain that Jūjī had become disloyal, and paid no regard to his father's words, and so he said "Jūjī has gone mad, and, in consequence, is acting the part of a fool. It is necessary to send troops against him; and it is advisable to despatch Chaghatāe and Ūktāe in advance, and follow in person myself." At this crisis, news arrived that Jūjī was dead, and the Chingiz Khān was greatly grieved at his loss. What that person had stated respecting Jūjī hunting was entirely false and fictitious, and the Khān gave orders to put him to death, but he had got some inkling of what he might expect, when he heard of the decease of Jūjī, and made his escape from the *urdū*, and the wrath of Jūjī's father.

manded, saying: "Give ye this boy to a nurse of the Musalmāns, in order that his navel string may be severed by a Musalmān, that he may imbibe Musalmān milk, and turn out a Musalmān; for I intend that this son of mine shall be brought up in the Musalmān faith." If this statement is veracious, the Almighty mitigate his torment [in hell]! Undoubtedly, through the blessing attending this intention, when Barkā grew up, he became a scion of Islām. Up to this period of time, the date of the completion of this History, the year 658 H., of the sons of Tūshī, that one Musalmān sovereign is still left.

May Almighty God continue the Sultān of Islām, NĀSIR-UD-DIN WA UD-DUNYĀ, MAHMŪD SHĀH, upon the throne of sovereignty to the day of resurrection!

### III UKTĀE, SON OF THE CHINGIZ KHĀN.

When the Chingiz Khān died, he devised the sovereignty to Uktāe,<sup>4</sup> although Chaghatāe was older than he; but Chaghatāe was a butcher and a tyrant.

Uktāe, when he ascended the throne, and carried out the last command of his father, the Chingiz Khān, and massacred all the people of Tingat, both females and males, returned from thence towards Turkistān.<sup>5</sup> Having brought

<sup>4</sup> The name of this sovereign is also written Ūktāe, and Ūkdāe, *i* and *d* being interchangeable, signifying "ascent," "height," "loftiness," "sublimity," and the like, but *Ogotai* is absurd, and could only have occurred to a person who had never been in the East, and who was unacquainted with the pronunciation of the name as written in the original, and the value of the letters of the alphabet.

<sup>5</sup> This is incorrect. Ūktāe did not ascend the throne until *two years* and more after the decease of his father. I have already given an account of the events which happened after the death of the Chingiz Khān in a previous note.

I must notice the events of Ūktāe's reign in order to correct some erroneous accounts respecting him, but I must do so very briefly, because the events of his father's life, which were necessary to rectify incorrect accounts respecting him, have occupied much space. I must mention that "Tului," youngest son of the Chingiz Khān, did not "act as regent" at all: it would have been totally contrary to the custom of the Mughals, and the Chingiz Khān had himself named one, as already related. There are other equally erroneous statements respecting Ūktāe which may be seen from the following

Ūktāe is the first of the sovereigns who reigned in the Ulugh Yūrat, also

that territory under his authority, he nominated armies to march into various parts of **Khurāsān** and **ʿIrāk**, and

styled the **Aṣal** or Original or Chief **Yūrat**, which words refer to **Kalūr-ān** and **Qarā-Qurām**, and which last is also celebrated as the **Urdū-Bālīgh**.

After having performed the funeral ceremonies over their father and sovereign, the sons, **Nū-yīn**, and **Amīr**, each retired to his respective *yūrat*; and, for a period of two years, the mother of **Ükdāe** and his brothers, **Būrtah Kūchīn**, administered the affairs: she may be styled "Regent."

After two years, and the period of mourning had expired, this **Khātūn**, **Būrtah Kūchīn**, lest any untoward event might happen in the empire, summoned the sons of the deceased, and the great **Amīr**, to assemble at the **Ulugh Yūrat**, which the Chinese style **Ho-lu**, and hold a *khūritāe* or diet; and, in the beginning of the spring of 626 H., they arrived. From **Ī-mīl** and **Qū-Tāk** came **Üktāe** and his sons; from the **Daḡht-i-Kūchāḡ** came **Bātū**, **Barkah**, **Shahbān**, **Tingkūt**, and two other sons of **Jūjī Khān**; from the eastern parts of the empire [i. e. east of **Kalūr-ān**] came the **Nū-yīn**, **Ü-Tigīn** or **Aw-Tigīn**—also written **Ünjī** and **Ünshī-Tigīn**—and **Bilkūf**, the brothers of the **Chingiz Khān**; **Chaghatāe Khān** came from **Bīgh-Bālīgh**, and the **Nū-yīn**, **Qarachār**, from his *yūrat*, besides numbers of other personages from all parts of the empire.

The **Ulugh Nū-yīn**, **Tūlī Khān**, and other brothers younger than he, who were already present at the **Ulugh Yūrat**, and his **Amīr**, also attended; and, after all the Princes, **Nū-yīn**, and **Amīr**, had assembled, a mighty feast was given, during which the matter which brought them together there was discussed. After this, the testament of the **Chingiz Khān**, nominating **Üktāe** as his successor, and the covenant entered into between the sons, confirming that nomination, were read out before all, in the presence of the troops then in the **Urdū**, in order that they also should confirm it. All, with one accord, now addressed **Üktāe**, saying "In accordance with the will of the **Chingiz Khān** it behoveth thee to take thy seat on the throne of sovereignty," but **Üktāe** made excuses, saying: "There are others older than I am, my uncles and my brother **Chaghatāe**—let one of them be raised to the throne; moreover, my younger brother **Tūlī** is more worthy than I am, and, according to the customs and usages of the **Mughals**, the youngest son of the greatest of the **Khātūns**, and who is in possession of the **Yūrat** and place of abode, should succeed the father." For forty days was this feasting continued, during which discussion went on, and daily did **Üktāe** continue to make excuses, but, on the forty-first day, all the Princes and **Nū-yīn** came before him and said "This sovereignty was assigned to thee from among the rest of the brothers and sons of the **Chingiz Khān**—how then is it possible to contravene it?" Then the whole of the assembly, according to ancient [Turkish] custom, having taken goblets, removed their caps, unloosed their girdles, and thrown them over their shoulders, **Chaghatāe**, as the elder brother, seized the right hand of **Üktāe**, and **Tūlī** his left, while his uncle, **Ü-Tigīn**, seized him round the waist, and, with the approval of the Astrologers and Divines, seated him on the throne, and hailed him by the title of **Qāʾān**—قائان.

**Qāʾān**, I would observe, cannot be "a contraction" for **Khāḡān**—خاقان—because the metre of both words is precisely the same, and there is no **kh** in the former; further, that it was not "borne by all Ogotai's successors," for **Kyūk** did not bear it, neither was it "new," for **Bū-zanjār**, the ninth ancestor of the **Chingiz Khān**, bore that title. One writer indeed says that, "as the

towards Ghūr and Ghaznīn, and began to administer the affairs of the country according to justice and equity, to keep his forces under subordination, and to cherish his subjects

By nature, Uktāe was exceedingly beneficent and of excellent disposition, and a great friend to the Musalmāns. During his reign the Muhammadans in his dominions were tranquil and prosperous in condition, and treated with respect. He used to strive greatly to show honour to the Musalmān people, and to render them flourishing and contented. In his reign, *masjids* were founded in all the cities of Tingit, Tamghāj, Tibbat, and the countries of Chīn, and all the forts and strongholds of the region

Mughūls do not use much ceremony respecting titles, they style a Pādīshāh, Kā'ān or Khān indiscriminately."

Afūr Ūktāe had been placed on the throne, gold and gems were poured over him, and, Tūlti having held the bowl to him, the Princes, Nū-yīns Amīrs, and all who were both within and without the assembly, and all keeping exact time, bowed the knee to him nine times, the lucky number of the Mughūls. No author with whom I am acquainted refers, in the most remote manner, to "*prostrating* themselves nine times," whatever "ancient Chinese ceremonial might have been," and he was not a Chinese.

Surgeon-Major Bellin, in the "*Description of Kāshghar*" (REPORT, page 61), says with reference to this number nine "Similarly the presents given by the father to the bride must be in the same number or its multiple of each kind, as nine frocks, nine mantles, nine carpets &c, and the presents made by friends too must be in the same number, as nine pieces of silk, nine veils, nine caps, &c. The origin of the selection of this particular number, called *toūz*, is not known, but the custom is observed by all the Turk and Tartar tribes of Central Asia." He might have said, more correctly, "Mughal" *Tuğūz* stands for *nine* in the Turkish language, and I may add that the origin of the custom is known, and it will be found by referring to the note at page 875, which see, and is referred to in several other places.

A volume almost might be written on the subject of presenting the cup or bowl. It was not peculiar to the Mughals, but was usual among all the descendants of Turk. It would be interesting to compare their customs in this respect with those of the Scandinavians. The presentation of the cup was the highest mark of consideration and homage, and all present on such occasions bent the knee. It was likewise the highest honour a sovereign could show towards a vassal or subject. Ambassadors whom it was intended greatly to honour were presented with the cup, and it was necessary on the occasion of making a treaty, or confirming an oath. Kumiz or fermented mare's milk was generally used, but they also made drinks from millet, honey, and rice. Wine was used on special occasions, and by the Khāns.

This ceremony took place in the month of Rabī'ul-Awwal, 626 H [Febry. 1228 A D] — which is but eighteen months from Ramazān, 624 H, but, as previously stated, some contend that the Chingiz Khān died in Ramazān, 623 H, just two years and six months after the death of his father.



of the east he gave in charge to a number of Musalmān Amīrs. Such Amīrs as they [the Mughals] had removed from the countries of I-rān and Tūrān he located in the cities of Upper Turkistān, and in the land of Chīn and Tāngghā, and in Tīngit, and commanded that they [the Mughals] should address Musalmāns by the terms "friend," and "brother." He also directed the Mughals that they should give their daughters [in marriage] to Musalmāns, and that if they [the Musalmāns] should evince a desire to demand their children [in marriage for their sons] they should not deny them.

Throughout the whole of the eastern countries [under the sway of the Mughals], the Friday's religious services [of the Muḥammadans] were established; and Musalmāns took up their abode in those parts, and they founded towns and cities of their own, and built places according to the manner of their own [native] cities<sup>6</sup>

Of the friendliness of Uktāc towards Musalmāns the author has heard an anecdote which is here related.<sup>7</sup>

#### ANECDOTE.

Trustworthy persons have related that Chaghatac used to regard Musalmāns with hostility, and his mind constantly contemplated the shedding of Musalmān blood, and not leaving one of that faith alive. Now the Chingiz Khān had instituted certain ordinances, the punishment for the infringement of some of which laws used to be death. For example: adultery and crimes of lust in general, theft, lying, and embezzlement, and the act of seizing a morsel from another's mouth, were punishable with death, and whosoever should enter a piece of water, whether large or small, they were to kill him also, and likewise any one who should wash his face at the edge of any water, so that the water from the washed face of such person should enter that water.<sup>8</sup> The punishment of any

<sup>6</sup> The Jesuits in their accounts of the Chinese empire refer to some of these places. See also note at page 1100, first para.

<sup>7</sup> All writers agree respecting his showing a preference towards the Muḥammadan religion. He excelled his brothers and contemporaries in impartiality, grace, and bounty.

<sup>8</sup> See note 2, page 1109, for the reasons of this prohibition

one who might be guilty of an offence less than one of all these was to be three or five, or ten, or more, stripes with a rod, but with the stipulation that, while punishment was being administered, the offender should be entirely stripped, and that the rod should be wielded with force and severity. To these ordinances<sup>9</sup> they have applied the name of *Yasāk*, in the Mughali language, that is to say, command, mandate, decree.

One day, both the brothers—Uktāe and Chaghatāe—were proceeding along a track into the open country. Uktāe was in advance, and Chaghatāe behind him, at the distance of a quarter of a *farsang* [league]. Suddenly, Uktāe reached the head of a reservoir of water, and perceived therein a Musalmān who was washing his head and body. When the eyes of Uktāe fell upon that Musalmān, he turned his face towards his personal attendants, and said: "Alas! this unfortunate Musalmān will be forthwith put to death by the hand of my brother Chaghatāe: what is advisable?" After that he inquired: "Hath any person among you an ingot of gold or of silver<sup>1</sup> ready at hand?" One of his attendants bowed and said: "I have an ingot of silver with me." Uktāe said: "Give it to that Musalmān, and tell him to throw it into the reservoir; and that, when my brother Chaghatāe reaches this spot and sees him, and questions him, he must say: 'An ingot of silver of mine hath fallen into the water, and I have entered the reservoir in order to search for it,' so that he may escape being put to death." Uktāe's attendants gave the ingot of silver to that Musalmān, and he threw it into the water; and Uktāe urged his horse onwards.

When Chaghatāe reached the spot, he perceived that Musalmān in the water, and commanded his attendants to

<sup>9</sup> And a great many more forming the Code of the Chingiz Khān entitled *Yāsā*, or *Yāsāk*.

<sup>1</sup> In all these histories which I have gone through, strange to say, I have never met with the slightest allusion to coined money in any shape, with the exception of the *bātrāk* or ingot.

Thomas, in his "Pathan Kings," gives the description of a coin bearing the name of "Chingiz Khān," and the Khalifah un-Nāṣir's title, and he considers it genuine. It must then have been a coin of one of the subjected Musalmān rulers of Ghūr or Kārnān, or parts adjacent, such as Herāt, the Kārlūgh Turk, and others mentioned in these pages, and not a Mughal coin. It bears no date.

seize him. He demanded of him, saying: "Since it is the *yasah* of the Khān that no living being should go into the water, why hast thou acted to the contrary? we must kill thee." The Musalmān represented: "An ingot of silver of mine hath fallen into this reservoir, and I have got into the water in order to seek for it." Chaghatāe directed so that a number of Mughals entered the water, and made search for the ingot, and having found it brought it, and by the expedient and kindness of that just and beneficent sovereign, Uktāe, the Musalmān escaped.\* May the Almighty lighten his punishment hereafter!

Through his efforts, numerous Musalmāns escaped from the hands of the accursed tyrant, Chaghatāe. A number of trustworthy persons have related after this manner, that, judging from the ancient chronicles of bygone times, and of past ages, that, in the states of Turkistān, and the countries of Chīn, Tingit, and Tamghāj, no sovereign more beneficent nor of better disposition than Uktāe ever placed foot in stirrup. When he became firmly established in the dominions of his father, and his brothers and the Nū-yīns and Khāns of Turkistān, submitted to his authority, he girded up his loins, and organized and equipped his armies, and despatched them towards different countries. The Mughal Nū-yīn, Jurmāghūn, was despatched<sup>3</sup> into 'Irāk in the year 626 H, and the Nū-yīn, Mangūtah was sent towards Ghaznīn, and, in the before-mentioned year, Uktāe made over to his charge Tukhāristān, Ḳunduz, and Tāl-kān,<sup>4</sup> and the Maliks of Khurāsān, Ghūr, Kirmān,

<sup>2</sup> Our author does not appear to have known the reason why, in the ideas of the Tāitārs and Mughals, bathing in such a way required to be strictly prohibited. The prohibition was that "during the seasons of spring and summer no one should immerse himself in running water [one writer says, "in the day-time"], nor wash his hands in streams, nor wash his garments, and afterwards spread them in the open country to dry, and that water should not be taken from running streams in vessels of gold or of silver, because, in the belief of these people, such acts are the cause of increase of thunder and lightning, which, in their localities, from the beginning of spring to the end of summer, while rain used continually to fall, prevailed to such a degree, that the lightning was fearful, and the roaring of the thunder tremendous."

<sup>3</sup> Nominated to proceed, probably, but not despatched until the following year in which he crossed the Jihūn or Āmūiāh. He was a Mangkūt, or, as it is also written, Manghūt Mughal.

<sup>4</sup> One or two modern copies of the text have Tāe-ḥān here, but all the rest

and Fārs, and those, who still continued in [possession of] different forts and strongholds, all proceeded to Qarā-Kuram,<sup>6</sup> to the presence of Uktāe, and requested that Shāhnahs [Intendants] might be sent to them; and different parts of Khurāsān began to thrive again.<sup>6</sup>

Another anecdote of Uktāe's countenance of Musalmāns is apposite, and is [here] inserted.

#### ANECDOTE.

Trustworthy persons have related that Chaghatāe, the accursed, was, at all times, striving to oppress the Muḥammadans, and devising means to bring trouble and calamity upon the people of Islām, and bringing ruin upon those that remained of them and causing their extirpation, so that no sign or trace of them might anywhere be found. In the diffusion of that iniquity he was wont to machinate and to labour, and was in the habit of instigating a party of Mughals—Nū-yīns and Bahādurs—in such a manner that they used to bring to Uktāe's notice words and acts on the part of Musalmāns such as used to be the source of trouble and injury to the people of Islām, and the cause of their ruin and destruction, until, on one occasion, Chaghatāe incited one of the priests of the idol-worshippers, which sect, in the Turkī language, they style Tūnfān <sup>7</sup> [Tūnīs], on such wise, that he came before Uktāe

are as above. As Tāe-kān is in Tukhārīstān, which is first mentioned, as well as Kunduz, Tāl-kān of Khurāsān is undoubtedly referred to.

<sup>6</sup> Which is always mentioned as the *asal* or original *yūrat* of the Chingiz Khān, and known also as the Urdūe-Bāligh. It was not a city, but an encampment.

<sup>7</sup> Uktāe is said, by the Pro-Mughal Historians, to have poured balm into the wounds inflicted by his father. There was certainly much balm wanted, but many of the wounds have never been healed to this day, witness numbers of the once most flourishing cities of Asia, which still lie in ruins. Uktāe bears the character of a just ruler, and his liberality was excessive. When the records of his gifts and grants were made up, it was found that he had expended not less than 100,000 *tomāns* of gold *bāligh*, some say 60,000; but the statements respecting the value of each *bāligh* varies. Some compute a *bāligh* of gold at 500 *miskāls*, others at 60 *dukhms* and 2 *dāngs*, some, 8 *dinārs* and 2 *dāngs*, and others 8 *dukhms* and 2 *dāngs*.

<sup>8</sup> In some copies of the text it is Tūnān—تونیان—as in RUBELQUI, who calls them "Tuman," and says they were idolaters. This word has sorely puzzled some of the copyists of the different MSS. of the text collated, but, in the Printed "Official" Text, it is invariably mistaken for the plural form of

and stated, saying : " I have seen the Chingiz Khān in a dream, and he has given me a command to convey unto thee, and thou, who art Uktāe, his son, and installed by him, in his place, shouldst neither neglect, in any way, to carry out that command, nor deviate from, or fail to comply with, that *yasaḥ* [ordinance] ; and let it not be that thou receive not the Chingiz Khān's approbation. The mandate is this that the Chingiz Khān has commanded, saying : ' The Musalmāns have grown exceedingly numerous, and, in the end, the downfall of the Mughal empire will be brought about by the Musalmāns, therefore it is necessary that the whole of them that are in our whole dominions, to wit, from the countries of Chīn, Tamghāj, Tingit, and Turkistān, as far as the land of Ī-rān and 'Ajām, you should put to death, and not leave name nor vestige of them to remain.' I have now delivered unto thee the command of the Chingiz Khān, thy father, and have removed that obligation from my neck. It behoveth thee to comply with it, and show obedience thereto, and not grant respite of life to the Musalmān peoples, so that the empire may not sustain deterioration."

When he [the priest] conveyed this command to Uktāe, who was a just, wise, prudent, and sagacious monarch, and friendly towards the Musalmān people, he, of his princely penetration, perceived that this statement was false and a lie, that, from the utterance thereof, the odour of fabrication pervaded the smelling sense of discrimination, and that it appeared to have been hatched by his brother, Chaghatāe—the Almighty's curse upon him ! Uktāe presently commanded that, for the Tūnī idol-worshipper, a grand place should be got ready, with due preparation and arrangement for his accommodation, and provided with all things requisite and befitting for him, and said to him : " This command is a very serious and awful one, and it

the Turkish title, Nū-īn, Nū-yīn, or Nū-yān, which so often occurs, namely, Nū-īnān—نویان—or Nū-yīnān—نویان. The Editors of the Calcutta Text probably imagined that ī was an error for ī. The same errors occur in the printed text in the account of Muḥammad-ī-Bakht-yār, the Khālī ruler of Lakhanawātī. See note 2, page 567.

Farther on, our author styles them "the idol-worshippers of Tingut and Tamghāj." The singular form of the word above referred to is Tūnī or Tūnī.

will be necessary to shed the blood of a vast number of people. There is not a person among the Maliks, Nū-yīns, Bahādurs, and Juzbīs, that has not a great number of Musalmān captives, and they [the Maliks, etc.] are dispersed in various parts of the territories of Chīn, Tamghāj, Turkistān, I-rān, and 'Ajam. It is absolutely necessary that this command should be communicated to them, in order that the whole of them may act according to its precept, and therefore it is now necessary for thee to wait so that this mandate may be sent out into the whole of the Mughal dominions, in order that the Nū-yīns, Juzbīs, and Bahādurs, and other Maliks, may assemble, and this awful command may be communicated to them, in such wise that all of them may be required to comply with it." Uktāe consequently issued directions so that they lodged this Tūnī idol-worshipper at the place which had been fixed upon, in such a manner that he was treated with honour and reverence, and not a tittle of the minutiae of due attention was left unobserved, because that accursed Gabr' had some name and reputation in the region of Turkistān, and in Tamghāj and Chīn.

As soon as the prescribed period expired, and the grandees of the Mughal dominions assembled, Uktāe commanded so that they convoked a great assembly, attended with princely ceremony, such as was the established custom of that people [the Mughals], and all with befitting formality, and observance of the prescribed duties. After this, Uktāe ascended the throne; and the whole of the grandees of the empire were present, with loins girded,

\* This word is spelt in three different ways, as mentioned in the preceding note. It is applied by the Karghīz nomads, and other tribes erroneously supposed to be Karghīz, to their chiefs or the heads of tribes, in the present day.

As these Maliks are immediately after styled 'the Maliks of Turkistān,' it would seem to infer that they held Musalmāns of 'Ajam in bondage, while they, as in the case of Arsalān Khān of Kātālik, mentioned at page 1023, were Musalmān Turks.

\* I have previously mentioned that this term is not solely applied to Pānīs or Fire-Worshippers, any more than *tarsā* is to Christians. Our author uses the last word with respect to Christians in several places. It does not follow, therefore, that the person above mentioned was a Fire-Worshipper, nor need I write an essay on fire-worship in Mughalstān for the occasion. Our author here simply means to say that he was an infidel, or unbeliever.

before the throne; and those among them who were permitted to sit came down on the knees of homage. He then commanded that that Tūnī should be conducted into his place of audience with all honour and reverence. When he arrived, and sat down<sup>1</sup> before the throne, Uktāe said: "Now is the time that thou shouldst pronounce the command of the Chingiz Khān, and declare what that command is, in order that all may obey it." That Tūnī stood up, and pronounced the command of the Chingiz Khān in the manner he pretended he had received it, and delivered it. All present bowed their heads to the ground, and, with one accord, said: "We have heard the command, and we bend our necks thereto. What is the will of Uktāe, the sovereign of the time, with respect to the mode in which it is necessary to obey this command, and how it behoveth to proceed, in order that we may all of us act accordingly?" Uktāe replied "Every claim requires proof and demonstration, in order that truth from falsehood, and right from wrong, may be distinguished; and this statement requires the testimony of witnesses of the circumstances, because, if it turns out correct that it is the command of the Chingiz Khān, it will be necessary for all to obey that command; and, if it is false and a fabrication, or is the invention of this person, or invented at the instigation of an insidious person, the blood of people, subjects, and servants, must not be shed for a lie."

On Uktāe's concluding this speech, those present bowed their heads to the ground [saying] "This which the Khān speaks, the whole of the sages of the world, the discriminating and the exalted in intellect, cannot add to, for it is a princely speech and a noble saying, which excellency of understanding and sovereignty indeed demands, and no created being is able to place the hand of objection to the forehead of this command, but it behoveth that Uktāe should direct and point out in what manner the truth or falsehood, veracity or falsity thereof, may be demonstrated and made known." Uktāe turned his face towards that Tūnī idol-worshipper, saying: "Dost thou understand the Mughālī language, or the Turkī language,

<sup>1</sup> This shows that he was of high rank and position.

or dost thou know both those tongues?"<sup>1</sup> The Tūnī idol-worshipper replied: "I understand the Turkī language, and I do not understand the Mughalī tongue." Uktāe turned his face towards the hereditary Mughal grandees, whose lineage and descent were from pure Mughals, and said: "Unto ye it is certain and clear, that the Chingiz Khān used not to understand any language whatever save the Mughalī language." They all bent their heads to the ground, and, with one accord, replied: "Indeed, such is the case, that the Chingiz Khān understood no other language than the Mughalī." Uktāe, turning his face towards that Tūnī, asked: "In what language did the Chingiz Khān deliver this command unto thee in the Mughalī or the Turkī language? If he spoke in Mughalī, seeing thou dost not understand it, in what manner didst thou comprehend what he was saying; and, if he spoke in Turkī, since he used not to understand Turkī, how did he communicate the order? Give an answer from which an odour of truth may come, in order that action may be taken thereon."

That impious, malevolent, cursed, Tūnī remained silent and confounded, on such wise that the breath did not issue from that infernal one, and he became completely shamed. All the Mughal grandees and the Maliks of Turkistān bowed their heads to the ground, and with one accord said: "This command [from the Chingiz Khān] is false, and is devoid of truth." Uktāe said to the Tūnī: "For the sake of my own dignity, and that of my brother Chaghatāe, I do not inflict punishment upon thee. Return to thy abode, and say unto Chaghatāe, and to his dependents, that they must draw back their hands from afflicting and oppressing Musalmāns, as they are our brothers and friends; in them the strength of our dominion is evident, and, with their assistance, many peoples have been subdued by us"<sup>2</sup>. May Almighty God mitigate his torments [in hell]!

<sup>1</sup> Here is an indication that the dialects must have been, at this period, very different from each other.

<sup>2</sup> Some of the Historians of the Mughal sovereigns, who give this anecdote in half a dozen lines, state that Ūktāe ordered this Tūnī to be put to death, but they do not say who or what he was, merely "a person." A similar plot,



Some persons, whose statements are worthy of reliance, have so stated that such-like favours and reverence were a proof of this, that Uktāc, secretly, had become a Musalmān ;<sup>4</sup> but God knows the truth.

#### ACCOUNT OF THE NOMINATION OF ARMIES FROM TURK ISTĀN TO PROCEED INTO THE TERRITORY OF 'IRĀK.

When Uktāc despatched an army towards *Khurāsān* and 'Irāk, he made the *Nū-īn Jurmāghūn*<sup>5</sup> the com-

in which the then *Yiddi-Kūt* of the *I-ghūrs* was concerned, is mentioned farther on.

<sup>4</sup> "The wish" here is evidently "parent to the thought."

<sup>5</sup> Considerable convulsions arose in the territories overrun and partially subdued by the *Mughals*, after the death of the *Chingiz Khān*. I say partially, for such was the fact, wherever troops were not stationed for the purpose of holding possession. These convulsions extended, on one side, as far as *Khifchāk*, *Sakstān*, and *Bulghār*, and, on the other, as far as *Khutan*, *Chin*, and *Khujā*; while the countries west of the *Āmūfah* had been devastated and ruined, but not subdued.

It appears that soon after the decease of the *Chingiz Khān*, on the borders of *Ting-kūt*, *Tūli Khān*, who was in possession of the *Ulugh* or Great *Yīrat* of his father, in accord with, and at the advice of, the great nobles present there, thought it advisable to despatch the *Nū-yīn*, *Ijīdāc* [the *lichikdāc* of others. See page 1049], and *Kyuk Khān*, son of *Uktāc*, with troops, towards the frontiers of the country of *Kolghān* [كولغان], or *Kolkān* [كولكان]. After slaughtering the people and devastating the country, according to the fashion of modern Christian warriors, they reduced it; and an *Amīr* of *Ting-kūt*, named *Bahādūr* [بہادر], with a strong force, was left to hold it.

I notice that Colonel C. M. MacGregor, C.B., in his *Gazetteer* entitled "*Central Asia: Afghanistan*," Part II., in his article on "*Kūram*," has been led into an unfortunate error respecting the death of the *Chingiz Khān*, on the authority of one of the writers he quotes. viz., "*Wood, Burns, Moorcroft*," but which of the three does not appear. He says, page 573, "It is said that *Jangez Khān* [this is the "popular" way of writing the name] died here from the effects of a melon sent to him from *Balkh*, in which there was a little pernicious insect"! This place is but 113 miles in a direct line N.N.W. from *Kābul*. Where *Kābul*? Where *Ting-kūt*? See page 1085, and note at page 1088.

To remedy the state of affairs just mentioned was *Uktāc's* first object after he ascended the throne, and he prepared to despatch bodies of troops into various parts. *Alfī* says that as soon as he was established he despatched *Koktāc* and *Swīdāc* [Sahūdāh] with three *tomāns* of troops—according to the pro-Mughal accounts three *tomāns* is the maximum strength of their armies, and is, of course, wholly incorrect—into *Kubchāk*—or *Khuschāk*, as our author writes it—*Bulghār*, and *Sakstān*. This is probably the reason why some European writers have mixed up this expedition with the former one in which

mander of it; and on that army marching towards that territory it consisted of about 50,000 Mughals, and other

Swīdāe [Sahūdāh] and Jabah [Yamah] were engaged, already described in the note at page 1000

In 628 H., the Nū-yīn, Jūrmāghūn or Jūrmāghūn, of the Mangkūt tribe, was despatched at the head of three *tomāns* of horse [the "three" *tomāns* again], which, as I have previously stated, nominally consisted of 1000 men to each *ming* or *hasarak*, ten of which constituted a *tomān*, but really the *ming*, instead of merely numbering 1000 men, was often double and quadruple that number, as shown in note at page 1097. Our author's estimate of the strength of Jūrmāghūn's army is, I believe, nearest the truth

Another object, and the principal one, in despatching Jūrmāghūn, was to operate against Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Khwārazm Shāh, and, at the time of giving orders for the despatch of this army, Ūktāe turned his face towards one of the leaders named Itīmās—*التماس*—or Itmās—*ايماس*—as it is also written, and said "If any one among ye is able to finish the affair of the Sultān it is thou," and so it happened, according to the *Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr*, for, when Jūrmāghūn reached the vicinity of Isfahān, he detached Itīmās, with a body of troops, in advance, to operate against the Sultān.

It is necessary here to go back a little. After the capture of Ūrganj of Khwārazm, the Chingiz Khān installed in that territory, as Shāhnah or Intendant, Chīn-Tīmūr, sometimes called Jai-Tīmūr, who belonged to one of the tribes of the Karā-Khitāi, and this person is probably one of the family of the Gūr Khān, mentioned in the note on that dynasty, page 934. He had remained Intendant in Khwārazm up to this period [he had never, as yet, been governor of Khurāsān, but he became so shortly after], and, when Ūktāe, before setting out towards Khitāe, despatched the Nū-yīn, Jūrmāghūn, into Irān Zamīn, he confirmed Chīn-Tīmūr in his former appointment [Faḥḥ-i says Ūktāe nominated him Hākīm of all Irān-Zamīn in 628 H.] and commanded that all the Intendants in those parts should proceed, in person, to Jūrmāghūn's camp, and render him all possible aid. Jūrmāghūn crossed the Āmūsh in 627 H.

On receipt of this mandate, Chīn-Tīmūr set out by way of Shahrīstān for Jūrmāghūn's camp; and the different Princes of the family of the Chingiz Khān, located in the parts lying nearest to Khurāsān, were directed to despatch Amīrs of their own, with their contingents, to join Jūrmāghūn's army. His force of three *tomāns* was thereby increased by 50,000 additional troops, thus showing that our author's estimation of the number was pretty correct. The number of followers with Jūrmāghūn's whole force is said to have been innumerable.

After that leader had, as he supposed, arranged the affairs of Khurāsān, and commenced his march westward, two Amīrs of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Karāchah and Tughān-i-Sunkar, who were at Nīshābūr [*sic* in MSS.], commenced attacking and making raids into the parts around, and slew the Intendants left in Khurāsān by Jūrmāghūn; and other "rebels" and "disaffected people" [all are rebels and disaffected people who prefer their former independence to a foreign yoke in these enlightened days, as in the dark ages, so called] were daily creating sedition in that quarter. Such being the case, Jūrmāghūn sent back Chīn-Tīmūr, along with his deputy, Kalbād, with troops, against these Khwārazmī Amīrs [they were, as their names indicate, Turks of Khwārazm] in

racés of Turkistān, and captives of Khurāsān; and the number, which turned their faces towards 'Irāk, amounted, in all, to about 100,000 horse.

On reaching that country in the year 628 H.,<sup>6</sup> they massacred so many of the people of that territory and parts adjacent that the pen hath not the power of recording them; and all the cities of 'Irāk, and the Jibāl [of 'Irāk-i-'Ajām], of Arān, of Āzarbāijān, Gilān, the territory of Rustam-dār, which is on the shores of the Baḥr-i-Khurz [the Caspian sea], as far as the Dar-band-i-Rūm [the Caspian Gates], and Ṭabaristān, the whole were ravaged, pillaged, and laid waste, with the single exception of the city of Ṣafahān [Iṣfahān], which was not taken for a period of fifteen years after the first irruption of the Chingiz Khān, the Mughal, and the entry of his forces into the country of 'Irāk, as will be subsequently recorded in its proper place.

That army of Mughals [under Jurmāghūn] entered through the Hulwān Pass, and ravaged the country up to the neighbourhood of the metropolis of Islām—the city of Baghdād. On several occasions, from the Court of the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Mustanṣir B'illah, the Maliks of Islām, with the troops of 'Ajām, and Turks,<sup>7</sup> Kurds, and 'Arabs [in his service], were despatched to repel the Mughals and the infidel hosts. They [the troops of the Khalīfah] frequently engaged in holy warfare against the infidels, and encountered them in many conflicts; and, upon all occasions, the troops of Islām were triumphant and victorious.<sup>8</sup> During that period, in no way, could the infidels seize upon any of the parts adjacent to, and [immediately] round about, the Dār-ul-Khilāfat, Baghdād.

the direction of Nishābūr and Tūs, and, after the rout of one of them—Khāṭṭah—Kalbād returned to Jurmāghūn's army again, and Qhān-Tīmūr appears, from what followed, to have returned to his post in Khwārazm and Māzandarān, which events will be found referred to at page 1120, note <sup>2</sup>.

<sup>6</sup> All the copies of the text have 623 H., which, of course, is a great error, since the Chingiz Khān only died in 624 H., and Üktāe succeeded in the third month of 626 H. . 623 is evidently a mistake of ثلث for ثمان and, besides, at page 1109 he states that Jurmāghūn was despatched in 626 H.

<sup>7</sup> Turks had been entertained in the service of the Khalīfahs for three centuries previous to this period.

<sup>8</sup> See note <sup>2</sup>, page 711.

The accursed Jurmāghūn, who was the commander of the infidel Mughals, pitched his camp in the neighbourhood of Kūm and Kāshān, and some [of his forces] he despatched on incursions into Fārs and Kirmān. The Atā-Bak, Abū-Bikr of Fārs, who is the sovereign of that territory, and likewise the brother of the Hājib, Burāk,

\* There is a mistake here: it is his brother's son who is meant. Burāk, the Hājib, is the traitor who managed to obtain possession of Kirmān, and who afterwards murdered Malik Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Āk Sultān, brother of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn. To make interest with the Mughals, and get confirmed in his usurpations, he sent the head of that Prince to Ūktāe Kā'ān, and he was confirmed in the rulership of Kirmān. This "illustrious man," *par excellence*, came into Khwārazm, along with his brother, Husām-ud-Dīn, Hamid-i-Būr, in the reign of Sultān Takīsh, along with others, to collect the tribute for the Gūr Khān of Karā-Khātāe, and they were induced to remain in Khwārazm, and there turned Musalmāns. Some say they were not permitted to return; but this seems improbable, as they are said to have been brothers of Jai-Tīmūr-i-Tānīko, or Bānīko, son of Kaldūr, chief of Tarāz, the leader of the Gūr Khān's army; and others, again, that they came *after the defeat* of their elder brother, Bānīko. Whether they were detained or not, or came after or before Bānīko's defeat, they rose in the service of Sultān Takīsh and his successor; and Kiwak Khān, son of Hamid-i-Būr, became the commander of a body of troops, and was killed at Bukhārā when the Chingiz Khān appeared before it, and Burāk, Hamid's brother, became one of the Sultān's chamberlains. Another brother was styled Āghūz Malik. See page 282, note 2, page 283, and note to page 934.

This "illustrious man"—illustrious for the murder of his master and benefactor's son, and treachery towards another, to whom he presented a daughter for his *haram*—received from Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Pir Shāh, the title of Kutlūgh Sultān, and from the Mughal Kā'ān, to whom he sent Ghiyās-ud-Dīn head, the title of Kutlūgh Khān, Shāh [i.e. Lord] of Kirmān. Burāk died in 632 H., and Kuṣb-ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Fatḥ, son of Jai-Tīmūr-i-Bānīko, or Tānīko, who stood in the position of nephew, step-son, and son-in-law to Burāk, assumed the authority, according to the latter's will.

In the same year, several of the Khwārazmī Āmins, who, on the arrival of the Mughal army at Ūrganj, had fled from thence, and had come to Shīrāz, to the Court of Salghur Sultān, Abū-Bikr-i-Sa'd, from thence came [with their followers] to Jīraft of Kirmān. They were Aor Khān, Sūnj Khān, and Tīmūr Malik, that second Rustam and second Isfandiyār, the defender of Khujand [See note at page 972, para. 3], and from Jīraft they unexpectedly made a dash upon this same Kuṣb-ud-Dīn, son of Jai-Tīmūr-i-Tānīko, but he encountered and overthrew them. Some of the party, which appears to have been not very numerous, were killed in the encounter, some were taken prisoners, and some took to flight. After the victory, Kuṣb-ud-Dīn treated his captives with favour, gave them dresses of honour, and sent them back to Shīrāz; and the Atā-Bak, Abū-Bikr, son of Sa'd, sent, and made apologies to Kuṣb-ud-Dīn, and stated that he had been totally unaware of their intention. These Kuṣb-ud-Dīn accepted, and declared himself satisfied. In 633 H. he proceeded to the *Urdū* of Ūktāe Kā'ān, in order to get his accession to the sovereignty of Kirmān acknowledged and confirmed, but the Kā'ān directed that

the **Kẖitā-i**, who had become ruler of **Gawāshīr** and **Kirmān**, entered into an accommodation with the **Mughal** forces, and agreed upon a fixed sum as tribute which they should pay them yearly.<sup>1</sup> The territories of **Fārs** and **Kirmān**, through that conclusion of peace, became tranquillized, and remained safe from the molestation of the forces of the **Mughal** infidels. The whole of the remainder of the cities of **ʿIrāq**, **ʿAzarbāijān**, and **Ṭabaristān**, were ruined and destroyed.

At this period, likewise, armies of **Mughals** were nominated to march from the side of **Turkistān** into the territories of **Kābul**, **Ghaznīn**, and **Zāwulistān**; and **Malik Saif-ud-Dīn**, **Ḥasan**, the **Ḳarluḡh**—the Almighty's mercy be upon him!—when he saw, on several occasions, that he could not resist the power of the infidel **Mughals** except in the way of enduring vassalage, submitted to be dependent on them, and consented to receive **Shahnahs** [Intendants]; and the **Maliks** of **Ghūr** and **Khurāsān** likewise all obtained **Shahnahs**.

The **Bahādur**, **Tā-ir**, was appointed to proceed into the territory of **Hirāt** from **Turkistān**, and **Mughal** forces advanced towards the country of **Nīm-roz**. These events came to pass in **Sijistān** and **Nīm-roz**, on the second occasion, during the time of **Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn**, **Bināl-Tigīn**, the **Kẖwārazmī**, who, in **Sīstān**, had acquired strength, and had laid in abundant stores and munitions of war. In

**Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn** should be sent away into **Kẖitāe** to serve under the **Shāhib Vazīr**, **Maḥmūd**, **Yalwāj**, and the vassal sovereignty over **Kirmān** was given to the late **Burāk's** son, **Rukn-ud-Dīn**, **Mubārak-i Kẖwājah Jūk**, and he was installed on the 28th of **Shābān**, 633 H.

**Rukn-ud-Dīn** ruled sixteen years, and was afterwards deposed by command of **Mangū Ḳāʾān**, in 650 H.; and **Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn**, son of **Jai-Tīmūr-i-Bānko**, was restored. Subsequently, **Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn**, by the **Ḳāʾān's** command, put the deposed **Rukn-ud-Dīn** to death.

This **Jīraft** is the same well-known city, two miles in extent, which, in a work entitled "*Eastern Persia*," "with an Introduction by Maj.-General Sir F. J. Goldsmid, K.S.I.," one of the contributors, **Major O. B. St John, R.E.**, says was "not a town, but a district"!

**Tavernier**, who visited it, says "*Girefte*," as he spells it, "is one of the biggest cities in the province of **Kerman**," and that its trade is "hones and wheat."

<sup>1</sup> See page 180. There our author says that **Abū-Bīkr** brought dishonour and reproach upon himself through becoming tributary to the infidels. See also note <sup>2</sup> to the same page.

the year 625 H, a Mughal army entered the territory of Nīm-roz and invested the fortress of Ūk of Sijistān, which lies in the direction of north-east from the Shahristān of Sistān.<sup>2</sup> For a period of nineteen months that army sat

<sup>2</sup> When intimation reached Ūktāe Kā'ān of the agitated state of affairs in the provinces of Khurāsān, he directed that the Bahādur, Tā'ir, who, as stated by our author farther on, at this time was located in the territory of Hirāt, and stationed at Bādghar, which is a dependency of Hirāt, should move from that place, with his troops, against Karāchah, one of the two Amirs of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, referred to in the note at page 1116, who was still fighting against the Mughals. Bādghar, the chief place of this district, I beg leave to say, is not and never was called *Bādghis* or *Badghiss*. It is the place before which Tūqchār, one of the sons-in-law of the Chingiz Khān, was killed, as mentioned in note at page 989. There is no kh in the word it is written بادغیس

Tā'ir was directed to crush Karāchah, according to the Fanākātī, and put down the outbreak with the utmost severity. He began his march accordingly, but, on the way, heard of the reduction and rout of Karāchah having been already effected by Kalbād, and that the former had taken refuge within the fortress of Ūk of Sijistān or Ziwulistān. On this, the Bahādur, Tā'ir, marched against it, invested it for a period of two years; and at length, the walls having been mined, the fortress was taken.

After the Bahādur, Tā'ir, had gained possession of the fortress of Ūk of Sijistān, he despatched an agent to Chīn-Timūr saying, that, by virtue of the mandate received from the Court of the Kā'ān, the government of Khurāsān had been assigned to him, Tā'ir, and requested that Chīn-Timūr would refrain from exercising any authority therein. He replied that the statement that the people of Khurāsān were rebellious was false, and that therefore he could not see why such an extensive tract of territory, and so many subjects, should be ruined on account of the misdeeds of Karāchah, no doubt referring to what had already taken place in Sijistān and Khurāsān. Chīn-Timūr further stated that he would transmit a statement of the case to the Kā'ān, and act as he might be instructed.

This reply was not palatable to the agent of Tā'ir, and he left the presence of Chīn-Timūr in a rage. Subsequently, at Tā'ir's request, probably, the Nū-yin, Jūrmāghūn, sent to Chīn-Timūr, requesting that he, along with the Amirs despatched by the Princes [mentioned in the previous note] to reinforce him, would return to Khwārazm and Māzandarān, where he had been Intendant, and leave the affairs of Khurāsān in Amīr Tā'ir's hands.

Chīn-Timūr had nominated Kalbād, one of his principal retainers, to accompany the Amirs of the Princes on their return from Khurāsān to the presence of the Kā'ān, to do homage, and give an account of these affairs. At this juncture, Malik Bahā-ud-Dīn, Š 'lūk, on the stipulation that he should be allowed to proceed to the presence of the Kā'ān, came down from his stronghold in Māzandarān, and submitted. Chīn-Timūr returned from Māzandarān, whither he appears to have gone; and the holders of most of the strong fortresses of Khurāsān, on the report of Bahā-ud-Dīn having submitted, tendered submission likewise. On the arrival of Bahā-ud-Dīn, Chīn-Timūr treated him with the utmost consideration; and another Malik, at this time, also came from Māzandarān for the purpose of proceeding to the presence of the Kā'ān to do

down before the fortress; but, notwithstanding all the efforts and exertions which the Mughal infidels used to

homage, namely, the *Aṣṣahed* [see note 1, page 262, para. 4], 'Alā ud-Dīn of the Kabūd Jāmah—in one copy of the *Fanākaif*'s work styled *Nugrat ud-Dīn*—he having been approved of by his people and kinsmen for that purpose.

These two Maliks set out for the Urdū-Bāligh, accompanied by Kalbād, in 630 H. Aṣ, previous to this occasion, not one of the great Amīrs or Maliks of Māzandarān had presented himself before a Mughal sovereign, Ūktāe Kā'ān was exceeding well pleased thereat, and he ordered entertainments to be given in their honour, and showed them great favour. Chīn-Tīmūr and Kalbād, in consequence, were distinguished by the Kā'ān with various favours and benefits; and Ūktāe observed: "During the period that Jūrmāghūn has been away, and has gained possession of such an extent of territory, he has never yet sent a single Malik to me, while Chīn-Tīmūr, with such a small following and slender means, has done such good service. I therefore appoint him to the government of Khurāsān [as well as Khwārazm and Māzandarān which he then held], and no other Amīrs shall have aught whatever to do with those parts." Kalbād was also associated with Chīn-Tīmūr [subordinate to him]; and the Kā'ān conferred, in fief, upon the Aṣṣahed of the Kabūd Jāmah, the tract extending from the limits of the Kabūd Jāmah territory to Astar-ābād, and, upon Bahā-ud-Dīn, Ṣa'lūk, the districts of Isfārāfn, Jū-fn, Bathak, Jā-jurm, Khūrand, and Arghaūn, and, to each of them, the Kā'ān prevented a commission written in gold, and gave a *yarligh*, or patent, to Chīn-Tīmūr.

When Chīn-Tīmūr became duly installed, in accordance with the *yarligh* of the Kā'ān, he appointed Sharaḥ-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Yazdī, to be the Wazīr of his government, and Bahā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Jū-fn, the Ṣāhib-i-Diwān, or Head of the Revenue Department, and that department under him assumed order and lustre. Not long after this, Chīn-Tīmūr was about to despatch an official, named Kūrkūz, also written Kurkūz, on a mission to the presence of the Kā'ān, but Kalbād strongly objected to it, saying: "He is an Ī-ghūr, and will take care to make matters subservient to his own interests only, and therefore it is not advisable to send him." Chīn-Tīmūr, however, did not alter his determination, and Kūrkūz was despatched. Contrary to Kalbād's expectations, when he reached the presence of the Kā'ān, and the latter inquired of him respecting the state of the people, and the territory of Khurāsān, and other provinces under the control of Chīn-Tīmūr, he gave such details and information as greatly pleased the Kā'ān, and made him well satisfied, and he expressed himself accordingly. Kūrkūz was sent back again, having fulfilled his mission in the manner desired, and, the requests made having been granted, he returned, and, shortly after [in 633 H.], Chīn-Tīmūr died.

D'Ohsson has made a muddle of these affairs, if the extract contained in the "*Mongols Proper*" [pp. 133, 134] be from his work, and he could scarcely have understood the passage, or else he had an incorrect manuscript before him, whereby a good man, and an efficient administrator, is turned into a tyrant, torturer, and extortioner, and a causer of disaffection through his exactions. His co-partner, Kalbād, figures under the name of *Kelilat*, and as the "general of Chīn Tīmūr;" and such is history!

Amīr Chīn Tīmūr having died in 633 H., Amīr Tūsāl—توسال—whom some style Ūsāl—اوسال—was nominated to succeed him in the government of Irān—

make, in no way did they succeed in gaining possession of that fortress and city, until pestilence overcame the

Zamīn [as much of it as was under Mughal sway at that period], but the executive authority was administered by his Deputy, Kūrkūz, already referred to. Tūsāl or Ūsāl died in 638 H., and Amīr Arghūn, the Ūlī-āt, was nominated to succeed him, after he had acquired the requisite acquaintance with the duties of the office of Bakḥshī-gar, and proficiency in the duties of the Batak-chān department. He was first despatched to make a report on the manner in which Kūrkūz had administered the government, and, subsequently, held it himself for ten years. The fate of Kūrkūz will be related subsequently.

This is stated differently in Alfī, wherein it is mentioned that in the year 627 H., Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bināl-Tigīn, the Khwārazmī, having raised the banner of sovereignty in Sijistān, an army of Mughals was sent against him, but under what leader is not mentioned, and that the fortress of Ūk (ʔk), which is situated in the north-east part of that territory, was invested. The investment was carried on for a period of nineteen months; and all the efforts of the Mughals to take the fortress were of no avail, until pestilence arose, and then it fell. Our author may have mistaken the year, or perhaps it is the mistake of a scribe; and, taking into consideration the date of Ūktāe's accession, Alfī appears to be correct.

This is the affair related by our author above. He was resident in the neighbourhood, was moving about those parts just before these events took place—as has been related, and will be again mentioned farther on—and was personally acquainted with the defender of this fortress, and therefore is worthy of credit. Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bināl-Tigīn, must have been the person referred to by the Fanākātī as Qarāchah, or the latter joined him. That author, however, gives no further account of these proceedings, and the two Khwārazmī Amīrs are not again referred to by him, and, such being the case, our author's account is evidently the correct one. For some account of Bināl-Tigīn and his fate, see pages 199 to 202.

Ūk, which is a well-known place in history, was never called "Oke" nor "Hok," as it appears in a recent compilation, unless such can be made out of ʔk which would be rather difficult. It has been in ruins for many years; and Afghāns have often brought me Bakḥtrfān and Sasānīān coins from it. Its site is between Farāh and Zaranj, or the city of Sīstān or Sijistān, as it is also called.

Ūk is also the place referred to at pages 34 and 201, but regarding which the different copyists, with scarcely an exception, from its similarity to ʔk—*arg*, a citadel—and from its being mentioned in connexion with *al-kalāʔ*, a fortress—have jumped at the conclusion that *arg* must be meant. I find an example of great sagacity of this kind in the *Ro. As. Society's* copy of the Fanākātī's work. The word was correctly written with *g*, but someone *parily* erased the letter to make an *ʔ*, of it!

The fortress of Ūk is again mentioned, nearly three centuries after, when, in 908 H., Sulṭān 'Alī, the Arghūn, brother of the Amīr, Zū-un-Nūn, Arghūn, was governor or feudatory of the territory of Sijistān, at which time, at the instigation of Khudā Kulī, governor of the fort of Lāsh, Sulṭān Ḥusām Mīrzā despatched a force against Sulṭān 'Alī.

The word *Shahrīstān* signifies the walls round a city, also a *kūshk* with many gardens; but this place is one of the very few old sites, the names of which exist unaltered to the present day. The *Shahrīstān* stands upon or



Musalmāns of the fortress, and until matters reached such a pitch among the people thereof, that one or two hundred men, who would be collected together in one place, would suddenly—Be the readers preserved from such a fate!—pass to the Almighty's mercy.

Trustworthy persons have related that, one night, the people of the fortress projected the formation of an ambuscade during the night, for the purpose of repelling the Mughal troops, and that they should conceal themselves among some of the kilns outside the northern gate. It was determined that, when the morning dawned, [a body of] fighting men should issue from the eastern gate of the citadel, and engage in holy warfare [with the enemy], and, when the Mughal troops should turn their faces towards that body of holy-warriors which should issue from the eastern gate, the kettle drums should be sounded on the summit of the fort. Then the body of men in ambush outside the northern gate should, on hearing the sound of the kettle drums, disclose the ambuscade, and should advance on the rear of the infidel army, and fight for the faith as by the tenets thereof enjoined. According to this determination, about 700 men, Tūlakīs,<sup>2</sup> in complete panoply, issued from the fortress at midnight, and proceeded to the spot fixed upon for the place of ambuscade, and there took up their position. At daybreak the next morning, after having performed their religious duties, the people of the fortress donned their arms and issued forth from the eastern gate, and began the attack upon the infidels. The Mughals, from their camp, turned their faces towards those Musalmāns, the champions of the faith, and a severe action commenced; and, when the

close to the ruins of the place here referred to. As I have before mentioned, Zaranj was the capital city of the territory called Sijstān by 'Arabs, and by the people Sigistān and Zāwulistān; and the name of "city of Sīstān" or "Sijstān," applied to that city, is after the same fashion as styling Ūrganj, Khwārazm. The MASĀLIK WA MAMĀLIK says that an ancient city of Sīstān was called Rām Shahrīstān, and that Zaranj was founded by people from that place. There would be nothing easier than to take it for granted that the fortress here referred to is the citadel of the city of Sīstān, but Zaranj is not referred to. The fortress in question is a totally different place, and in a different situation.

<sup>2</sup> It is explained at page 1062 how the Tūlakīs got there.

forces on both sides mingled together at close quarters, with sword, spear, and arrow, according to the previous night's arrangement, they beat the kettle drums within the fortress for the purpose of unmasking the ambuscade. Once, twice, the drums sounded, but not a man issued from the ambuscade; and, of that whole body, not a trace could be discovered. Malīk Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bināl-Tigin, despatched confidential persons, saying: "Go ye and see what is the cause of this delay of the ambuscade party." When those sent came to the spot they found the whole 700 men dead, for they had surrendered their lives to God; and there was no sign of life in any one of them. God preserve us from the like!

This catastrophe has been recorded here in order that those who look into these pages may know, for certain, that, when the wrath of God, the Most High, ariseth, such like marks of punishment are manifested.

Trustworthy persons have related that the most common and violent manner in which the pestilence affected the people of the fort of Ūk of Sīstān was this, that their mouths would begin to ache, and their teeth to become loose, and, on the third day, they used to resign their lives to their Creator. The state of the people of the fortress continued in this way until, suddenly, a woman among the inhabitants thereof became attacked with the aching of the mouth, and, on the second day, her teeth became loose. She had a little daughter, and, on the third night,\* she called her unto her, seated her by her, and said: "My dear! to-night I will anoint thy hands and feet with *ḥinnā* with mine own hands, for to-morrow is the third day, and the hour of thy mother's decease." With this view she applied *ḥinnā* to the hands and feet of her little daughter. It is usual with women that, when they apply *ḥinnā* to the hands and feet of any one, they apply the fingers to the tongue in order that the fingers may be moistened with the saliva of their mouths, and then they apply the *ḥinnā* to the part to be dyed. Having applied the *ḥinnā* to her little daughter's hands and feet, she resigned her heart to death, and went to sleep. In the morning, the

\* It must be remembered that the night precedes the day in the computation of Oriental peoples.

woman's teeth had become firmly fixed at the roots, and the aching of the mouth had entirely passed away. When the third day came and passed, the neighbours and acquaintances found her recovered, and, on the fourth day, she had become quite well again.

People were astonished, and they made inquiry of her about it, saying : " How has it come about, and by what means, that thou art still alive, the disease of the mouth gone, and thy teeth firm ? What medicine didst thou take, and what remedy apply ? " The woman replied : " I had no medicine whatever, and took none : Almighty God restored me to health." They said . " He is the Author of all things, but, really, what act didst thou put in practice, and what operation was performed by thee ? " The woman mentioned the application of *ḥinnā* to her daughter's hands and feet, the incident of wetting her fingers, and, by that action, of the *ḥinnā* reaching her mouth. The whole [of the neighbours and acquaintances] concurred together that the cure for this disease was *ḥinnā*, and it so happened that this circumstance reached the [hearing of the] people of the fort, and the incident became diffused, and matters came to such a state, that every one who was attacked with this disorder they used to put *ḥinnā* in the mouth of, and such person would recover. A *mann* of *ḥinnā* reached the price of two hundred and fifty golden *dīnārs*, and whoever possessed any acquired great wealth by disposing of it.

Almighty God hath many favours for His servants, but for death there is no antidote !

At last, Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bināl-Tigīn, was struck in the eye by an arrow, and that eye was lost ; and, subsequent to that accident, he was directing the defence of the fortress from the top of one of the towers, when, suddenly, he lost his footing and fell from the top of the fort to the ground, and was taken prisoner. He was made a martyr of, and the fortress of Ūk of Sijistān fell into the hands of the Mughals ; and the inhabitants were martyred, after a great number of the infidels had gone to hell, as has been previously recorded herein

May God, the Most High, continue the Sultān of Islām, NĀSIR-UD-DUNYĀ WA UD-DĪN, MAḤMŪD SHĀH, who is

the Bādshāh of the present time, upon the throne of sovereignty, victorious and triumphant !

ACCOUNT OF THE DESPATCHING OF MUGHAL FORCES  
TOWARDS GHAZNĪN AND LUHĀWAR.\*

When Uktāe ascended the throne, he [likewise] gave orders for forces to proceed towards Ghūr and Ghaznīn, and the Bahādur, Tā-īr, who had displayed great zeal and energy during the fighting in Sijistān under the standard of one of the great Nū-īns, was made their commander. This great Mughal Nū-īn [Tā-īr's leader] in the fighting before Ūk of Sijistān had gone to hell, and Uktāe commanded that the Bahādur, Tā-īr, should become the head and commander of that Mughal army, in his place.<sup>4</sup>

\* Written here, as elsewhere, Luhāwar and Lohor.

<sup>4</sup> Who this great Nū-yīn does not appear, and he is not referred to by others. Tā-īr was in these parts, according to the Histories quoted, previous to the accession of Ūktāe Kā'ān, as early as Rabī'ul-Awwal, 626 H., and, as already narrated, he was subsequently ordered to aid in putting down the outbreak of Karāghah, so called, in the districts dependent on Nīshābūr. After that, Tā-īr invested the fortress of Ūk of Sijistān. Our author says it held out nineteen months, but some of the Histories, quoted in the previous notes, say it occupied Tā-īr two years, and, under these circumstances, the fortress could not have fallen before the close of the year 628 H., or beginning of 629 H., and not in 625 H., as our author states at page 201. Lāhor was not taken until upwards of *ten years* after the affair of Ūk.

The Tārīkh-i-Alfi states that, in 633 H., Ūktāe despatched armies into various parts, including an army, under a leader named Mukānū [موکانو]—in some copies, Mukātū [موکاتو]—towards Hind and Kaghmīr, and that, after ravaging many tracts of country, he returned again [into his own territory]

This is an important item of information, for it clears up a very obscure part of our author's account of Sultān I yal-timish's reign, at page 623, when he set out towards Banīān, and had to return through the illness of which he afterwards died; for our author has not stated whom he marched against, but it is evident, from the direction there indicated, and the year, that he must have been marching against this very Mukātū, when sickness obliged him to return. There is nothing mentioned in the Histories of Kaghmīr, of which there are several, of any such invasion.

The Nū-yīn, Mangūtah, we first hear of in Indian History, in 643 H. Mukātū must be a different person.

The capture and ruin of Hirāt by the Nū-yīn, Iljīdāe, or Ilchīkdāe, nephew of the Chingiz Khān, in 620 H., and the massacre of its inhabitants, all but eighteen persons, has been already described. Of these survivors seven remained hidden among its ruins, while eleven were at Kalah-i-Kuh, and the Khaṭīb, the Maulānā, Sharaf-ud-Dīn, was included among them.

When they [the Mughal troops] from Sijistān entered

After the infidel Mughals, and Tāttārs, had taken their departure from Hirāt and its territory, these sixteen persons—all men, it appears—issued from their places of concealment, and assembled before the shop of a certain *ḥalwā*-or confectioner, and began to look about them in all directions. Seeing no one, they stroked their faces and exclaimed "Thanks be unto God, that during our existence we can once more breathe freely!" After this, these sixteen, the unfortunate remnant of the inhabitants of Hirāt, were joined by twenty-four others from the places adjacent to that city; and, for sixteen years it is said, "there were no other inhabitants in *Khurāsān*; and, for some time from the banks of the *Jihūn* or *Āmūfah* to the territory of *Astar-ābād*, if there were any people who had escaped with their lives in some out-of-the-way place, they must have existed upon such things as the dead left unconsumed."

These forty persons passed their time in the tomb of *Sulṭān Gh̃iyās-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sām*, *Gh̃ūrī*, which had not been destroyed by the infidels. A full account of the matter of these persons, and their names, is recorded in the *History of Hirāt*.

In the year 635 H.—but *Alfi* says in 634 H.—*Ūktāe Kā'an* gave orders that the cities of *Khurāsān* destroyed by the Mughals should be restored, and among them was Hirāt; and those people of the weaver class, who had been removed from Hirāt when that city surrendered to *Tūlī Khān* in 618 H., and had been located in *Turkistān* and *Mughalustān* by him, were made the instruments in commencing this good work. The chief men and heads of families among these weavers were the *Muḥaddam* [he is also styled *Amīr* and *Peghawī* but not signifying a chief, a noble, or a leader here, but *Provost*] of the Guild of Weavers of Hirāt, *'Izz-ud-Dīn*, *Hirawī* [from *Hir* or *Hirāt*], *Jalāl-ud-Dīn Mālānī*; *Sā'id*, *Bādghausī*; and five others. It had been mentioned to the *Kā'an* that one of the cities in question was Hirāt, and he had been told much respecting its former populousness, wealth, and prosperity; so he was the more desirous of re-peopling it. *'Izz-ud-Dīn*, the Provost, with his family and kinsmen, had been located at *Bīgh-Bāligh*; and he had obtained access to the *Kā'an's* presence, and used, every year, to manufacture a thousand suits [pieces, probably] of clothes of excellent quality for his use. He was now summoned to the presence of *Ūktāe*, who said: "I am going to send thee for the purpose of re-peopling and restoring Hirāt. Art thou able to do so quickly, thinkest thou, so that people may be able to say that Hirāt is some thing like itself again?" *'Izz-ud-Dīn* replied that, under favour of such a great monarch, he could do so, and that every year he would send, for the *Kā'an's* use, 2000 suits of clothes of various delicate colours, such as, in the atmosphere of those northern parts, it was impossible to produce, equal in colours and texture to those of *Khurāsān*. *Ūktāe*, accordingly, despatched him; and he was allowed to take fifty of his people along with him, and was also furnished with a mandate to collect people from all parts of *Khurāsān* and locate them at Hirāt.

*'Izz-ud-Dīn* set out; and, on the arrival of the exiles in the neighbourhood of Hirāt, the *Khajfī*, *Sharaf-ud-Dīn*, and the others, who had been living in concealment, came forth to meet them, and conducted them into Hirāt, and they set about its restoration. Having made some progress, in the following year [636 H.], the Provost, *'Izz-ud-Dīn*, set out for the *ardū* of the *Kā'an* to arrange certain matters in connexion with the restoration of the city, and made a request that he might be permitted to remove to Hirāt his own family, and

Khurāsān, the Nū-īn, Anbān,<sup>7</sup> and the Nū-īn, Nikū-dar, and the troops which were in the territory of Ghūr and Khurāsān, marched towards Ghaznīn. Previous to this, they had driven<sup>8</sup> from Baniān Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan, the Qarlugh, and had entered into a stipulation with him for payment of tribute, but, notwithstanding this, they were desirous of getting Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan, the Qarlugh, into their hands, and they had been unable to

also the two hundred other families located in Turkistān and Mughalstān. His request was so far complied with that he was allowed to take away with him his own family, and one hundred—some say fifty—other families; but, on reaching Fāryāb, death overtook him. On this, his son, Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, who then succeeded to his father's office and title of Provost, conducted the families to Hirāt, after which he retraced his steps to the presence of Ūktāe. This was in the year in which Mahmūd, the Tārānī, broke out in Bukhārā. Having reached the Kā'ān's *Urdu*, he solicited that a *Shahnah* or Intendant should be appointed to Hirāt, and a *Dāroghah* [Warden, Provost, etc.] A Qarlugh Turk, but whose name is not mentioned, unfortunately, was nominated to the first-mentioned office, and a Mughal named Māngasāe to the last. The former was of the same tribe—but, probably, of the other branch—as Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan, the Qarlugh, referred to in the text above. See note <sup>1</sup>, next page.

Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, and the Qarlugh, reached Hirāt together, but the control of the civil affairs was left, as before, in the Provost's hands. In a short time the Jū-e Injil—a canal so called—was opened and brought into Hirāt, and the Burj-i-Qarlugh built, and named after the Intendant in question. In 638 H. Malik Majd-ud-Dīn, the Kāl-yūnī, was made governor of Hirāt, by command of Ilātū Khān [this must have been at the time Ūktāe, for his excessive inebriety, had to be looked after, as stated in note <sup>2</sup>, page 1142, and Bātū Khān did so by virtue of his position as head of the family. He subsequently exercised authority after Ūktāe's decease, and again during the interregnum after Kyūk Khān's death, as will be noticed farther on] and the Muḥaddam, Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, was relieved of his duties. Majd-ud-Dīn, in concert with the Qarlugh Intendant, opened the Alanjān canal, which became the source of such great prosperity to the Hirāt district.

Majd-ud-Dīn was put to death, after the decease of Ūktāe Kā'ān, in 640 H., by command of the Nū-yīn, Kūrkūz, and his head was brought to him at Tūs, but, in the following year, Prince Bātū, as my authority styles him, made Majd-ud-Dīn's son, Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Kāl-yūnī, governor of Hirāt, but he died from the effects of poison in the following year.

<sup>7</sup> This name is somewhat doubtful. It is written Anbān—انبان—as above, Inān—انان—and Anfān—انفان—also Ī-tān—ایتان—Abtān—ابتان—and Astān—استان. I do not find the name among the great Nū-yīns of the Chingiz Khān. Anbān is also a title of rank.

<sup>8</sup> The word used in the text—مستأمل—means "extirpated," "rooted out," "driven out," etc.; but, had such been the case, he could not have been made a tributary. He had been already reduced to subjection and made tributary, as already stated at page 1119.

effect their object. In the year 636 H., however, they suddenly and unexpectedly attacked Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan, and he fled discomfited from Karmān,<sup>9</sup> Ghaznin, and Baniān, and came towards the Multān territory, and the country of Sind. At that period the throne of Hindūstān was adorned by the Sultān Rāziyyat—May she rest in peace!—the daughter of the august Sultān, Shams-ud-Dīn, I-yal-timish; and the eldest son of Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan, the Ḳarlugh, presented himself before the Dihlī Court, and, by way of beneficence, the territory [fief] of Baran was assigned to him.<sup>1</sup> Some time passed, when,

<sup>9</sup> See note 7, page 498, para. 4.

<sup>1</sup> Sultān Rāziyyat reached Dihlī, from Iāhor, on the 19th of Sha'bān, the eighth month of 637 H.

This favour was shown towards him because he was a Turk, as Rāziyyat's father was, and also because a great number of the principal nobles were Turks also. His name and title are Malik Nāsir ud-Dīn, Muḥammad. See page 861. Had he been a Mughal he would probably have been put to death, or kept in durance until he died, as Barkā Khān's agents were, as will be found mentioned farther on, although their sovereign was a Musalmān.

The Ḳarlūghs or Ḳarlughs, or Ḳarlūks or Ḳarlūks, as the name is also written, here referred to, belong to that portion of the tribe mentioned in note 3, page 374, but I may add that there is no tribe of "Koorloogh (*properly* [?] called *Kharlokh* or *Qarluk*)" known to history. See *Journal Ro. Geogr. Soc.*, 1872, note to page 509.

Thomas [*"Pathān Kings"*], noticing the coins of those Turkish chiefs, says that "Saif ud dīn Hasan Ḳarlugh," as he styles him, "*was one of the leading generals of Jalāl ud dīn Mankbarnīn*," but where is the authority for that statement? This chief has been mistaken for Saif-ud-Dīn, Ighrāk, a totally different person, who deserted the Sultān, after his victory over the Mughals near Barwān; but *he and all his followers were destroyed within a few months* of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn's defeat on the Indus in 618 H., as mentioned in Yāfa'-'ī, in the Jahān-Kushā, and others, and detailed at the end of note 6, page 1021. Ḥasan, the Ḳarlugh, does not appear on the scene, east of the Indus, until many years after this event. See the preceding page, and page 720.

At page 96 of his work, Thomas quotes Major-General A. Cunningham's "*Archæological Report to the Government of India*," for 1863-4, to show who the "Ḳarlughs" were, but that statement is equally erroneous. Cunningham makes them out to be Indo-Scythians, and subjects or dependents of the rulers of Dihlī, which they *never* were, the bestowal of Baran upon Ḥasan's son, notwithstanding, since he left the Dihlī frontier very soon after, and, probably, never went to Baran at all. His going thither, moreover, would not have made his family and tribe, west of the Indus, dependents upon the Dihlī empire.

In order to dispel this very erroneous supposition, and to throw some light upon the matter, it will be well to give, in the first place, a short extract from the "*Report*" quoted by Thomas. Major-General Cunningham says:—

unexpectedly, he left it; and, without the permission of the Sulṭān, returned to the presence of his father.

"The first invasion of the *Indo-Scythians* must have caused a very general displacement of the ruling races. . . . The vanquished would naturally have sought refuge in the less accessible districts around, and to this period, therefore, I would refer the settlement of the *Andas* and *Janyukas* in the Salt Range to the south, and the *Gakars* in the hilly tracts of *Pharwāla* and *Dāngāl* to the south-east" [but what have they to do with the *ḲĀRLUGH* *TURKS*?].

"Of their subsequent history but little is recorded, we know only that they were divided into several branches, and that they all became Muhammadians. [When, or in what year?] In the time of Bāber, the ruling tribe, called the *Karluk* *Haudras*, held the districts on both banks of the lower *Suhān* river, under the chiefs *Sanger Khān Karluk* and *Muza Malvi Karluk*. At a still earlier period the chiefs of this tribe [?], *Hasan Karluk* and his son *Muhammad*, had asserted their independence [of whom? and what history says so?], by striking coins in their own names. The coins of the father are of the well known 'Bull and Horseman' type, with the legend in *Nāgarī* letters, '*Srī Hasan Karluk*.' The coins of the son are of three different kinds, two with Persian characters only, and the third with Persian on one side and *Nāgarī* on the other. On the last coin there is a rude figure of a horse surrounded by the chief's name, *Nāsir* [sic] *ul dāwūd wa ul dīn*, in Persian letters, and on the reverse his name in three lines of *Nāgarī* letters, *Srī Muhammad Karluk*. On one of the Persian coins this chief calls himself *Muhammad bin Hasan Karluk* (محمّد بن حسن قارلق), and on the other he takes the title of *al-Malik al-Muḥammad bin Hasan*. From the types and general appearance of these coins their date may be fixed with certainty as coeval with those of *Altamish* [I-yal-timish?] and his sons, or from A.D. 1210 to 1265. The accuracy of this date is strongly confirmed by *Ferishtah's* account [Dow's or *Briggs's Ferishtah*?] of the first campaign of *Nāṣir-ud-dīn Mahmūd*, the youngest son of *Altamish*. In July, A.D. 1247, *Mahmūd* proceeded to *Multān* [This is quite a mistake. See this Translation, pages 677, 678, 679, 814, and 815. *Multān* is a blunder in the Calcutta Printed Text for *Banīān*—بنیان—and, moreover, the expedition was against "the infidels of *Chīn*"—the *Mughals*—and "the *Rānah* of the *Jūd Hills*"—"Jae-Pāl, *Sfhrā*," and the *Khokhars*, not the *Ḳārlugh* *Turks*, who had been expelled from their own territory by the *Mughals*. *Mahmūd* left the capital, not in July—the height of the hot season, but in *Rajab*, 644 H., about 15th November, 1247 A.D., and advanced to the *Sūdharah* and the *Jhilam*, not the "*Chenāb*", from whence he sent his *Vazer* towards the mountains of *Jūd* and the provinces [Whose provinces?] on the *Indus*. . . . According to this account, the rebellion [against whom was this rebellion, and what History says so?] lasted for about twelve years, from the death of *Altamish*, in A.D. 1235, until the close of *Mahmūd's* campaign in the end of 1247 [Did the rebellion end then?]. It is to this period that I refer the assumption of independence [of whom?] by *Hasan Karluk* and his son *Muhammad*. The age of these coins, as I have observed, corresponds exactly with the date of this rebellion, and the coins themselves before [sic] are found in greatest number in the rebellious districts of the mountains of *Jūd*."

The remarks on *these coins*, and their correctness, are such as we might expect from *Major-General Cunningham's* knowledge of the subject, but the



On Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan, the Kārūgh, entering the country of Sind, the territory of Ghaznīn, and Kar-

historical, as shown by our author, in various places in his History, and by many other writers, are entirely erroneous, and are further proofs of the danger of trusting to translations of "Ferishtah."

For what "can be made of the Indo-Scythian theory" in the "Report" in question, see the very pertinent remarks of Beames in his edition of Elliot's "*Memoirs on the History, Folk-lore, and Distribution of the Races of the North Western Provinces of India*," London, 1869, pages 112, 113, 136, and 137; but *Tāgiks*, as well as *Turks*, have been brought under the "Indo-Scythian" system lately, as I have noticed in another place.

General Cunningham connects the Kārūghs with his "*Indo-Scythians*" of the Salt Range, and makes Ḥasan, the Kārūgh, and his son, Awāns and Janjhūhīs, and subjects of the Dihlī kingdom, as he alludes to their "rebellion." They were, in no wise, connected with the Awāns or Janjhūhīs, for the very cogent reason that the Kārūghs, who are constantly mentioned in the account of the Mughals, are Turks, and were *never* subject to Dihlī. Neither I-bak nor I-yal-timish held any part of the Sind-Sāgar Do-ābah, which, as well as the country as far east as the Rāwī, for some time was held by I-yal-dūz, and the southern part of that Do-ābah by Kabā-jah. That portion of the Ghūrī empire held by I-yal-dūz, consequent on his captivity and subsequent death, fell under the sway of the Sultān of Khwārazm, to whom the Kārūgh Turks were subject, and, in the time of the Chingiz Khān's advance to the Indus, Kamr-ud-Dīn, the Karmānī, had only shortly before been ousted from the fiefdom of NANDANAH, by the Khwārazmī Amirs [See note 1, page 534, para 7, and page 750]. Ḥasan, the Kārūgh, may have been connected with this Kamr-ud-Dīn, and he may even have been Ḥasan's father, for it is certain that Ḥasan, the Kārūgh, did hold Karmān, as our author states above. There were a number of Turkish tribes settled between Kābul and the Indus. The reason why these coins are found in the parts indicated by General Cunningham is, either that they formed part of the district or province of Banīān, or adjoined it, and Banīān was held by the Kārūghs. Naṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, of Dihlī, never held any territory west of the Jhilam, although Ulugh Khān, his lieutenant, did, on one occasion, penetrate into it as far as the Indus, and, soon after, Maḥmūd's territory extended no farther west than the Bīāh, as already stated. See also note 2, page 862.

Hābar says—I quote from his Memoirs translated into Persian, of which there are two versions, and have compared them with the Turkish original—"In the Zafar Nāmah, and some other books, this range [the Jūd Mountains] is called and written, Koh-i Jūd. Why it received this appellation was not discovered at first, but, afterwards, it was found that Jūd and Janjhūhah were two septis descended from one original. In one half of this range are the Jūd, and in the other the Janjhūhah [or Janjhūhī]. The greatest of them receives the name of Rāe, and his brothers and sons receive that of Malik. The Malik of the *īls* and *alūsīs* round about the river Sūhān was Malik Haibat. . . . As these few districts, such as Bharah, Khūsh āh, etc., had previously been held by the Turks, I was desirous of getting possession of them. . . . Sankar or Sangar Khān, the Janjhūhah, came in the same day. . . . There are Baltūchīs in the Bharah district. . . . There are Jaṭs and Gūjars as far as the mountains of Kashmīr, and among these are numerous other

mān,<sup>2</sup> remained in the hands of the Mughal *Shahnaḥs* [Intendants], until the year 639 H, when the Mughal forces, and the troops of *Ghūr*,<sup>3</sup> were directed to advance to Lohor. The Bahādur, Tā īr, who was in possession of Hirāt and Bādghais, and other Nū-ins who were holding

peoples " Bābar, of course, does not mean that these peoples were Turks. They had been settled in these parts long before the Turks, even if we go as far back as Maḥmūd of Ghaznā, the "*Puthān*" Turk of Dow, Briggs, etc. The peoples which Bābar refers to are Awān kār, Gahep, Jat, Janjhūhī, Hārup, Bhanḥr, Bhaghāl, Kabūn Jat, Mālir Jat, Kasur Jat, Kalitar, Gakhar, Tatrī, also called Rāthh, Gahrāl, besides Khokhars immediately south of the Jūd Mountains in the Bharah and Khūsh-āb districts, and a few others.

Bābar also mentions giving "Nīl-āb and the Hazārah-i-*Kārlūk* or *Kārlūgh* Hūmāyūn," and "Sunkar or Sungar, *Kārlūk*, Muzie Malawī [مولی], *Kārlūk*, with some thirty or forty chief men of *Kārlūk*" coming in, and making "over the *ūl* and *ulūs*, such as *Kārlūk*, Hazārah, Hālī, Dāl, etc."

Because Bābar uses the Turkish words *ūl* and *ulūs* for tribe and clan, in writing of them in his work, it must not be supposed that all the people must be Turks on that account.

We commonly hear of this tract of country referred to as *Chagh* Hazārah, and Taht Hazārah, but, according to fact, *Chachch* is separate from Hazārah-i-*Kārlūgh*, and the former lies nearer the Indus—along its banks really. It is probable that some *Kārlūghs* may have been permanently located in this part, as well as its being subject to the *Kārlūghs*, as previously referred to, but how it became styled Hazārah is very difficult to say, because, among all the *ming*s or *hasūrah*s of the Chingiz Khān, there was not one of *Kārlūgh* Turks, but a *Kārlūgh* contingent of that portion of the tribe which continued in its old seats did serve with the armies of the Chingiz Khān, in Khurāsān and Ghūr, under their chief, Arsalān Khān of *Kasālīk*, previously mentioned in several places in this translation.

What makes the matter still more complex is, that, in the original Memoirs of Bābar, I find, referring to the habitation of Tātār, the Gakhar, that it was situated much lower down than the *Kārlīk* or *Kārlūk* [it is written both ways in the original, and with *gh* for *k* for the final letter] *Tāgh*—تاریق دندین حلی—which, in one of the Persian versions, is translated as "much lower down than the *koh-i-Ārīlī*," thus retaining the Turkish word, while the other version gives the proper translation, "the *koh-i-beyf-dār*, or Snowy Mountains, which is to say, the Pīr Panjāl Mountains." It strikes me, therefore, that the non-translation of the word *kārlīk* or *kārlūgh*, signifying "snowy," or "pertaining to snow" [See the note on the Descent of the Turks, and the term *Kārlīk* or *Kārlūgh*, page 877]—the origin of the name of the tribe—in the Persian version referred to, has had something to do with this district having been styled "*Hazārah-i-Kārlūk*," and "*Kārlūk* Hazārah," as well as from the probability of *Kārlūgh* Turks having been once stationed therein, but who had no blood connexion whatever with the so-called "Indo-Seythians."

<sup>2</sup> There were no Afghān tribes, at this period, dwelling in Karmān, they were located farther south, and south-west, and their power was not great.

<sup>3</sup> Troops raised in those parts, or rather the contingents of those Musalmān chiefs and petty rulers who had submitted to the Mughal yoke.

possession of the territories of Ghūr, Ghaznīn, the Garm-sīr, and Tukhāristān, the whole of them, with their troops, arrived on the banks of the river Sind. At this time, Malik Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz was the feudatory of Multān, and Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Qarā-Qush, was feudatory of Lohor, and the throne of sovereignty had devolved upon Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh.<sup>4</sup>

When the news of the arrival of the Mughal forces reached Multān, Malik Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz, for the sake of his own dignity, assumed a canopy of state, assembled troops, and made ready to do battle with the infidels.<sup>5</sup> On information of the number of his followers reaching the Mughal camp, those infidels came to the determination of advancing towards Lohor, and they appeared before the gate of that city. The Hīṣār of Lohor was unprepared with either stores, provisions, arms, or war materials; and the people of Lohor were not united, and did not harmonize together. Most of the inhabitants of the city were merchants and traders, and had undertaken journeys, during the time of the Mughals, into the upper parts, into Khurāsān and Turkistān, and, by way of precaution, every one of them had obtained a pass<sup>6</sup> from the Mughal, and a safe conduct, and, knowing this, in defending and fighting for the safety of the Hīṣār<sup>7</sup> of Lohor, they used not to act in unison with Malik Qarā-Qush, and would neither render assistance nor make resistance, nor encounter the enemy. The troops of Islām did not assemble together, on this account, that the Turk and Ghūrī Maliks were distrustful of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahrām Shāh, and, consequently, the army did not speedily set out from Dihli for the purpose of repelling the Mughals.<sup>8</sup>

For some time fighting went on before the gate of the city of Lohor, and the Mughal army planted a great number of catapults<sup>9</sup> round about the fortifications of that

<sup>4</sup> See page 655

<sup>5</sup> See the account of Malik Kabīr Khān-i-Ayāz at page 727, and page 730

<sup>6</sup> The Printed Text uses ṣafā—profit, advantage, etc., instead of ṣafā—exemption, immunity, and the like.

<sup>7</sup> A walled city with a castle or citadel

<sup>8</sup> For the causes which led to the delay in relieving Lāhor, see pages 655, 656, and 657.

<sup>9</sup> The manjanīk, or ḥirā—the catapult or mangonel, which, under the name

city, and destroyed the walls; and, to such degree as Malik Qarā-Qush was able, he remained and resisted the infidels. On becoming aware of the disunion and discordant inclinations of the inhabitants, and, as the Kāẓi and chief personages used to show great misconduct in keeping guard on the walls of the city, Malik Qarā-Qush knew that the upshot of affairs would be disastrous, and that the preservation of that city was beyond his power and capability. He therefore came out of it with the troops his followers, under the pretext of a night attack, made a dash upon the camp of the infidels, and, in one charge, broke through the ranks of the Mughal army, and set out for Dihlī. In that charge some of the principal females of his *haram* and of his retinue got separated from him. A number of his people were slain and made martyrs of, and some, in the darkness of night, and in the tumult, threw themselves off the backs of the horses and hid themselves among the ruins and grave-yards. During that tumult likewise, the females of the Malik's *haram* managed to conceal themselves somewhere.

The following day, when the inhabitants of the city and fortress of Lohor, and the Mughal forces, became aware of Malik Qarā-Qush's evacuation of the place, and of his flight, the hearts of the former entirely broke, and the Mughals became still more bold, and they captured the city. Conflicts arose in every quarter of it, and the Musalmāns fought continuously with the infidels; but two bands of Musalmāns, in that disaster, girded up their lives like their waists, and firmly grasped the sword, and, up to the latest moment that a single pulsation remained in their dear bodies, and they could move, they continued to wield the sword and to send Mughals to hell, until the time when both bodies, after fighting gallantly for a long period against the infidels, attained the felicity of martyrdom. One of that [band of] heroes was Āk-Sunḡar,<sup>1</sup> the sene-

of trebuchet, will be found in FROISSART, and engraved in GROSE's *Military Antiquities*—was a kind of mechanical sling for casting stones, earth, and fire against an enemy. Balista is not a correct rendering of the word, for a balista or baluster is a cross-bow.

<sup>1</sup> He was a Turk. His name signifies the white sunḡar, or gerfalcon, as is supposed, referred to at page 752, note 4.

schal of Lohor, who, with his dependents, in combat, and in conflict, surpassed, a thousand times, Rustam-i-Dastān;<sup>2</sup> and the other hero was Dīn-dār Muḥammad, the Amīr-i-Ākhur [of Lohor], who, along with his sons and dependents—May the Almighty reward them!—on that day, waged holy-warfare, as by the tenets of the faith enjoined, and fought against the unbelievers in such manner as if the purified soul of 'Alī-i-Murtaẓā—May God be gracious to him!—in concert with the whole of the prophets and apostles, were showering blessings upon him from the garden of paradise.

When the Mughal forces captured the city,<sup>3</sup> they martyred all the inhabitants or made captives of them; but such a number of Mughals went to hell as cannot be computed or numbered—about 30,000 or 40,000 Mughal horsemen, with 80,000 horses, indeed more than they. There was not a person among the infidel army that did not bear the wound of arrow, sword, or *nāwak*.<sup>4</sup> The greater number of the Mughal Nū-īns and Bahādurs also departed to hell, and among them was the Bahādur, Ṭā-īr.<sup>5</sup> He had encountered Ak-Sunkar, lance to lance, and they had wounded each other with those weapons Ṭā-īr, the Bahādur, went to hell, and Ak-Sunkar, the lion-hearted,

<sup>2</sup> See note 7, page 422

<sup>3</sup> The Mughals obtained possession of the city on Monday, the 16th of Jamādī-ul-Ākhīr, 639 H

The Tārīkh-i-Alfi says this happened in 628 of the Rihlat = 638 H. Quoting Pro-Mughal Histories, it says, an army of Mughals and Tāttārs crossed the river Sind, and invested Lohāwūr—لہور—soon captured it, and made the younger part of the inhabitants, and the children, captive. Ḳaṣb-ud-Dīn, Ḥason, the Ghūrī, was sent with an army from Dihlī against them, but he was too late. By the time he reached these parts the invaders had gone off. This is a specimen how history is falsified to suit certain purposes. No notice of the resistance made, nor of the losses sustained by the invaders, is even hinted at.

<sup>4</sup> An arrow discharged through a tube—probably a cross-bow or balista, or something similar.

<sup>5</sup> It is scarcely probable that our author is correct as to Ṭā-īr having been killed on this occasion, for the Pro-Mughal writers mention him after this affair, and state that when, in 651 H, Ḳubīlī, brother of Mangū Ḳā'ān, was despatched into Ḳarā Jāng, Ṭā-īr was sent with an army into Kashmīr and Hindūstān, and that, when he died, the Nū yīn, Sālī, referred to at pages 711 and 862, got the command. Sā'ī, Sārī, or Sālīn, as it is also written, was of one of the Tāttār tribes.

passed into paradise—"One company to heaven : one to the flaming fire."<sup>6</sup>

After the Mughal forces had destroyed Lohor, and retired, Malik Ḳarā-Ḳush turned back again towards the city from the vicinity of the river Biāh, for, on the night of his flight from thence, his jāmah-dārs [wardrobe keepers] had abandoned property of great value, consisting of pure gold, and other valuables, and, they having marked the spot, he returned to search for and recover the property. On reaching the city of Lohor he recovered it, for it had not fallen into the hands of the Mughals.

On the departure of the Mughal infidels, the Hindū Khokhars and Gabr' wretches had come to Lohor, and were committing destruction. Malik Ḳarā-Ḳush discovered them, despatched the whole of them to hell,<sup>7</sup> and afterwards reached the Court of Dihli in safety.

May Almighty God accord victory to the lords and chiefs of the government of the Sultān of the Sultāns of Islām, and overthrow the foes of his kingdom ! Amīn !

#### ACCOUNT OF THE DEATH OF UKTĀL,\* SON OF THE CHINGIZ KHĀN

A tradition to this effect had been handed down from the ancients—May God reward them !—that, when the

\* ḲUR'ĀN Chap. XLII, verse 5

<sup>7</sup> Not mentioned under the events of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahram Shāh's reign. Khokhars are not Gakhars, I beg leave to say, although the latter are constantly confounded with them by writers who do not know of the former. See note at page 484.

<sup>8</sup> If so, what prevented him from taking possession of Lāhor again?

<sup>9</sup> The Āltān Khān, Shūdal-Shū-o-sū—شودلی شو و سُو—the "Ninkiasu" of some European writers, had withdrawn, as previously narrated under the reign of the Chingiz Khān, from his capital, Chūng-dū, Chūng-dū, or Chingtū, to Taining, or, as the Fanākhān writes it, Fāyāng fū, the "Pian kin" of Europeans, said to be "the present Fai-fong-fu;" and the Mughals had become predominant over a great part of the territory of Khitā, or northern empire of the Kim, as they are termed by the Chinese. The other dynasty of the Song as the Chinese style them, ruled what the Muḥammadan Historians and Hindūs call Mahā-Chīn, or Southern China. See note on the Ḳarā-Khitā-īs, page 912, and what our author states respecting the fall of the Āltān Khāns at pages 963 to 966, which differs considerably.

outbreak of the Turks should arise, and the narrow-eyed should seize upon the universe, and they should devastate

This was but a very partial conquest however on the part of the Mughals, for, during the absence of the *Chingiz Khān* in *Māwarā-un-Nahr* and *Mādūn-un-Nahr*, the Mughals had been exceedingly hard pressed, and he hastened his return on that account. Soon after his death, during the two and a half years' interregnum, the *Āltān Khān's* forces had twice defeated the Mughals towards the end of 625 H and in 627 H.

It has been already mentioned in note <sup>2</sup>, page 1115, that *Tūli*, during the interregnum which arose after his father's death, and before *Ūktāe* was raised to the throne, despatched troops into the territory of *Kulghān* or *Kolghān*, under the *Nū-yīn*, *Iljīdāe* or *Īlchīklāe* [of *Ilirāt* atrocities], and that it was reduced, and a *Tingkiūt Amīr* left to hold it.

*Ūktāe Kā'an*, therefore, as soon as he had settled the government of the empire, provided for making other conquests in the west, securing what had already been partially acquired, and prepared for the final conquest of *Khitāe*. Some writers say he set out in 629 H—this seems merely to be an error, which is confirmed by several others, of *سبع* nine for *سبع* seven—but he set out in *Rabi'-ul-Awwal*, 627 H [about March, 1230 A.D.], accompanied by his brother *Tūli*, and some say *Chaghatāe* also went, but this, apparently, is a mistake—the *Rauzat-ush-Shafā* says *Kyūk* was present as well as *Chaghatāe*. Having reached the N.W. parts of the *Khitāe* empire, several strong cities, and a large tract of country were subdued.

These successes, however, were not so great as expected, and, in the autumn following, *Tūli Khān*, accompanied by the *Juzbī*, *Tūkūlkū* or *Tūkūlkūcht*, as it is also written, was despatched with an army, consisting of two *tumāns*, to enter *Khitāe* by the southern route through *Tibbat*, and near the northern frontier of the empire of *Mahā-Chīn*, while *Ūktāe Kā'an* took the more direct route from the spot where he had passed the summer, north of the Great Barrier or Wall. On his way he had reached the territory of the *Holāk* and *Kulfān* [مولان و کلبان]—that is to say, a people whose garments and caps were all red—and reduced it to subjection. *Tūli's* force, on the other hand, was nearly perishing of famine, so that his men were reduced to eating human flesh and dry grass, and his further progress was stopped until aid was sent him. This was in 628 H. He subsequently renewed operations, and advanced over mountains and through plains like the ocean until he reached a city styled *Jūyāhū Kaskīn*—[جوہار و قسین]—the *Rauzat-ush-Shafā* has *Sining*—[سینگ]—on the banks of the *Karā-Mūr-ān*. After an investment of forty days the city surrendered, but 12,000 men of the troops stationed there succeeded in getting on board vessels and escaping down the river, and, on this account, the inhabitants were massacred, and their women and children were made captives. *Tūli*, after this, proceeded onwards, with the object of reaching the *Āltān Khān's* capital, *Chung-dū* or *Tāyāng-fū*, when he reached the *Kahlukah* [کھلکھ] or Pass called *Kongkahān* [کونگکھان], which was a most difficult Pass, between two lofty mountains, and the only route in that direction. *Tūli* was in hopes of finding it open, but he beheld it occupied by a host of *Khitāe* troops, under two generals named *Kailāe Ranko* or *Rango* and *Kamar Takodar* or *Tagodar*, occupying fortifications within, and drawn up in the plain [without or in front?]. To enable him to get out of this insurmountable difficulty, and prevent pursuit, tradition says he had recourse to a *Kānkūli* conjurer, who, by

the countries of 'Ajam and kingdoms of Ī-rān, whenever an army of them should reach Lohor, the dominion of that

means of the Yadah-Tāsh or Rain Stone, mentioned in my account of the descent of the Turks, raised such a storm of wind, rain, and snow, and thick mist, that, while its effects completely impeded the Khitā-īs, it enabled Tūlī and his army, under its cover, to escape without being pursued, with the intention of pushing northwards, in order to effect a junction with the main army under Ūktāe Kā'ān. When he reached the banks of the Kārā-Mūr-ān (again? The map shows the locality, where the Hoang-ho, after making a bend of several hundred miles nearly due S., turns to the E. again, in about Lat 34° N., and Long 110° 21' E.] he sent out the Nū-yīn, Jifān, the Tingkūt, the adopted son of the Chingis Khān, by some called Jifā Būkā Khān, with a party, along its banks to search for a place practicable for crossing. It so happened that the river had been greatly flooded some time before, and vast quantities of stones and sand had been brought down, which had accumulated at a certain point not far from the place where Tūlī then was, and had caused the river to separate into a number of channels, and the water, being thereby greatly spread out, more than a league in breadth, became much less in depth. The identical place, after some search, was found, and Tūlī and his whole army passed over without much difficulty. The Kaugat-us-Safā says no one had ever crossed the Kārā-Mūr-ān before this occasion—by fording, probably, he means.

Ūktāe had received alarming news of Tūlī's situation, and was in a state of great anxiety respecting him. When he arrived, therefore, his delight was great, and he received him with much affection and great honour. This was in 628 H., according to Alfī, but the Fanākātī says it was in 629 H. Some successes are said to have followed after this, but the Āltān Khān's capital still remained to be reduced. The Kā'ān now determined to return to his own royal place of residence, the Ulugh Yūrat, taking Tūlī along with him, and to leave the Juzbī, Tūkūlkū or Tūkūlkūe, with several great Amīrs, and a numerous army, to remain in Khitāe to carry out the conquest of the Āltān Khān's dominions, leisurely and deliberately, and the 'Arīz, Yalwā, was left to administer the civil and revenue affairs of the conquered territory, and such as might be subdued. Tūlī asked permission to be allowed to return in advance, which was granted, but the Kā'ān passed the following hot season at a place in Khitāe, which is known as Altā-karā, and only reached the Ulugh Yūrat in the beginning of the following winter [628—629 H.] Tūlī died on the way homewards. This was the same year that Jūrmāghūn crossed the Amūsiāh.

In the following year, the Juzbī, Tūkūlkū, fought a great battle with the Khitā-īs, before the capital of the Āltān Khān, and, after making great efforts to overcome them, was totally defeated and routed, and had to fall back some distance. He despatched swift messengers, and asked for aid from the Kā'ān, who directed that a large army should forthwith march to his assistance; and, as there was enmity of long standing between the sovereign of Mahā-Chīn and the Āltān Khān of Khitāe, Ūktāe Kā'ān sent to ask the former to join him in attacking the Khitā-īs at this juncture, and to send his troops to operate from the south, while the Mughals, from the opposite direction, should again march on Iamking [Ḳḡḡ], the Taming of others. The Bādshah of Mahā-Chīn agreed to this, and despatched an army for the pur-



race would begin to decline, and the power of the infidels to diminish.

pose. Such being the case, when the reinforcements despatched by the Kā'an joined him, the Juzbī, Tūṭūḷḷū, was enabled to resume the offensive; and the Khūṭī-i-, having been beaten in the open field, took shelter within the walls of the capital, which was soon after closely invested, by the Mughals on one side, and the Mahā-Chīnī on the other.

For some time the Khūṭī-i- commanders concealed the position of affairs from the Āltān Khān, but, at length, the true state of the case having reached him through some of the ladies of his haram, as it appeared certain that the place must soon fall, he determined to go out on the walls and see for himself. He found that the report was too true, and resolved to fly; and, having embarked, with his wives and other females of his family, his personal attendants and household slaves, on board vessels, by means of the canal which had been cut from the Karā-Mūr-ān, and brought into the midst of the capital, Tamḳing, he made his escape. He was again pursued by the Mughals, upon which he fled to another city, and was again followed. At length he reached a third city, but the Mughals, like fate, still pursued him. At last, when they had succeeded in investing the third city, which is called Baltāe —بالتاء—in the Tārīkh-i-Jahān gīr, and had set it on fire on all sides, the Āltān Khān summoned his chief men around him, and, telling them that he could not bear the idea of falling into the hands of the enemy, placed the diadem on the brow of one of his Korchīs, or guards, caused him to don the royal robes, and seated him in his own seat upon the throne. He then went out from among them, and hung himself to a tree. He was found in this position, taken down, and buried.

There is considerable discrepancy respecting the fate of the last Āltān Khān. Some say that he donned the dress of an ascetic, and was never heard of more, others again assert, that, when the city of Baltāe was taken, he fled and disappeared, and some say that he fled to a fortress on the frontiers of his territory, and, having caused a funeral pyre to be prepared, when the Mughals attacked the place, mounted it with his wife and child, fired it, and perished. The Khūṭī-i-, however, affirm that, when the Mughals set fire to the city of Baltāe in all directions, the Āltān Khān perished in the flames; but the previous statement is notorious that he hung himself to a tree, and, two days after he left the Korchī disguised in his robes, the Mughals captured the city. This event happened in Jamādī-ul-Awwal, the fifth month of 631 H., about March, 1233 A. D. Thus fell the empire of the Āltān Khāns, and thus perished the last ruler of the thirty six dynasties which had reigned over Khūṭāe.

From the time of the investment of his capital, and his flight from city to city, two years passed away, and, after the Āltān Khān's death, the whole of his dominions, by degrees, were reduced under the sway of the Mughals.

Ūktāe Kā'an, after reaching his own urdū, on his return from the campaign in Khūṭāe, founded a *karr* or castellated palace [see note <sup>a</sup>, page 331, where *karr* is described] near Karā-Kuram, and "they style it Karshī." It was not called "Ordu Balik," neither was it "the great city," nor "a celebrated city," nor "had he fixed his court" there. It was a *karr* [whatever it might subsequently have become], and it was surrounded by tents of felt, for the Mughals, be it remembered, did not dwell in houses. In course of time some of the Princes and great Amīrs began to erect dwellings for themselves, and, as I

At the time that the writer of these words, Minhāj-i-Sarāj—May God direct him aright!—was about seven

have before mentioned, on the authority of authors who were servants of the Mughal sovereigns, the Tughlū Yūrat, also styled the Aṣal Yūrat, or original Yūrat of the Chingiz Khān, where he had fixed his dwelling, refers to Kalūr-ān and Karā-Kūram, which, subsequently, became known as the Urdū-Bāligh. Alst, on the contrary, says it was styled Targhū-Bāligh. The latter word is the same precisely as contained in Bish Bāligh. This *kaṣṣ* is said to have been two leagues distant from Karā-Kūram.

His *kūḥlaḥ* was enclosed on four sides with a wall or fence of wood and mud mortar, two days' journey in length, and there were entrances at various points. When Ulūk was desirous of following the chase, his Towaghīs were despatched into the country within the distance of a month's journey, to drive the game before them into this enclosure. After the Kā'ān had hunted the game, and killed as much as he felt disposed to kill, he would take rest in a place erected for him within the enclosure. I have already referred to the I-ghūr country in the note at page 889, as lying between two ranges of mountains, and shown that the *koh* or mountain of Karā-Kūram is in the midst. It is stated that this place, where the *urdū* was, was called Karā-Kūram after this *koh*.

The felt tents, or portable houses, as they may be called, of the Mughals, from the Great Khān down to the lowest of his subjects, which were mounted on carts, appear to have given rise to the idea that the Mughals and other descendants of Turk dwell in cities and towns, and that Karā-Kūram was a city in its fullest sense. Rubruquis tells us what one of the great *urdūs* was like. He was astonished at the sight of Bātū's, the houses or tent [*khargahs*] of which appeared like a vast city, and the people were ranging about for leagues. The Court was always in the middle, and was, therefore, he says, called "curiaorda," and the houses [*khargahs*], when taken off the carts, were ranged on all sides except the south facing the Court entrance.

The friar also describes Surtāk's *urdū* as being very great, and says that the women of his family had each a great house [*khargah*] and 200 waggon, and, from his description of the first interview with Mangū Kā'ān, the Court, so called, was an extensive range of *khargahs* or portable houses, some of large size, and ornamented within. These, and those of other people of the camp, were ranged in streets. The probability is, that, in time, as the great camp near Karā-Kūram was the seat of government, as being near the original *yūrat* of the Chingiz Khān, mud walls were thrown up around it for greater comfort and security, and around the Kā'ān's *urdū*, and, the camp thus assuming a more permanent appearance, it was magnified into a city by Polo and others.

Kircher, in later times, writing of the Kā'ān's, says, that in certain seasons they settle on the banks of the rivers with their "portable cities."

It may be mentioned here that the Mughal sovereign, Abūl-Ghāzī, Bahādur Khān, never mentions the words Karā-Kūram in his History, but always refers to the great *yūrat* as being at Karā-Kūm—*قراکوم*—but the probability is that the *y* is an error for *j*.

The country all round Karā-Kūram was not sufficiently cultivated to furnish provisions and drinkables for the Kā'ān's use, and that of his *urdū*, and 500 cart-loads used to arrive daily from other parts of the empire nearest to it, particularly from Kara-bāsh in Timgūt.

years old, he used to come to the presence of the eminent teacher and Imām, 'Alī, the Ghaznawī—on whom be

Under the reign of Mangū Kā'ān, according to Chinese accounts, Karā-Kuram ceased to be the seat of government, and a city was founded, east of Whan-chew, styled Kay-ping-sū, afterwards called Shang-tū. Perhaps this city has been mixed up with Karā-Kuram.

With respect to the country around Karā-Kuram it is related that, "on account of the excessive cold, there used to be no cultivation there whatever in the olden time" [at the period when our author wrote]. When Ūktāe took up his residence there, people began to erect buildings or dwellings, and to cultivate. A certain person planted some radishes, and, when they were ready to be drawn, he brought a few and presented them to the Kā'ān, who was much pleased thereat. He commanded that the leaves should be counted, and they were found to number 100. The Kā'ān directed that the man should be presented with 100 *hālīsh* [of silver?]. When the Kā'ān built the *kughl* [the same meaning as *laer* before referred to] in the vicinity of Karā-Kuram—the work was carried out by Khitāi workmen—a person planted some willows and almond trees, but, on account of the extreme cold, trees absolutely would not grow there. These young trees, however, did sprout, and become green, and the Kā'ān was so pleased—trees never having been seen there before—that he ordered the person a reward of one *hālīsh* for every young tree planted. The absurd idea of "hunting parks," "fish ponds," "flower gardens," "music halls," and "a palace which covered several square miles of surface," is merely derived from a misunderstood passage in the *Rauzat-us-Safā*, the translator of which made up his want of knowledge by adding his own exaggerations out of the mud wall enclosures I have mentioned.

In the year 633 H., Ūktāe Kā'ān despatched, from the *Ṣahrā* or Steppe of As-jānk [اسجنگ] or *Sajāng* [سجنگ], his son, Kochū, along with the *Shāh-zadah*, Kūtūkū, with an army, towards Mahā-Chīn, which they also call *Tingnāgh* [تنگناغ], which is written in various ways. See note at pages 1086 and 1087. Of the cities of that country they took *Sindlim-yū* [سدلیمیر] or *Sindlim-yū* [سدلیو] and *Karīm-yū* [دریمو], and plundered the country on the routes bordering on the territory of Tibbat.

The civil and revenue administration of the whole of the conquered parts of *Khitāe* was in the hands of the 'Azīz and *Shāh-i-A'gām*, Maḥmūd, Yalwāj, the Bukhār, while his son, Ma'ūd Bak, was in similar charge of all the countries and territories from Bish-Bālīgh and Karā-Khūwājāt [this is the place where the Yiddi-Kūt of the I-ghūr's slew the Intendant of the Gūr Khān. See note at page 952], that is to say, the territories depending on them, constituting the country of I-ghūr-tān, and the territories of *Khutan*, *Kāshghar*, *Ālmālīgh*, *Kāialīgh* or *Kāalīk*, *Samarkand*, and *Bukhārā*, as far as the *Jihūn* or *Amūsiāh*. From *Khurāsān* to the frontiers of *Rūm* and the *Diyār-i-Bakr*, all was under the administration of Amīr Kūrkūz [after Chīn-Tīmūr's death, as the Deputy of Tūāl or Ūāl], and the revenues of all these countries were collected by these three persons, and transmitted to the Kā'ān's treasury.

Ūktāe Kā'ān had four *Khātūns*, and sixty concubines. The *Khātūns* were  
 1 BŪRĀ KICHIN, who was his first, and therefore held in great respect.  
 2 TŌRĀ-KINAH, a *Ī hāt*—or *Īr hāt*, as it is also written—Makrīt, said to have been the widow of Fa-ir Asun, the head of the *Ūhāts*. When he was slain,

peace!—for the purpose of acquiring the *Ḳur'ān* by heart ; and, from him, he heard the tradition, namely, that "A number of trustworthy persons have related, on this wise, from the Imām, Jamāl-ud-Dīn, the Bustājī"—on whom be peace!—that, whilst he filled the seat in the pulpit [of the *masjid-i-jāmi'*] in the city of Bukhārā, during the reign of Uktāe, he would often say in the sermon 'Oh God! speedily transport a Mughal army to Lohor that they may reach it,' and the sense of this became manifest when the Mughal army took Lohor in the month of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, in the year 639 H. A number of narrators among the merchants and traders of *Khurāsān* and *Māwarā-un-Nahr* [subsequently] stated, that Uktāe died, and was removed from the world, on the second day after the capture of Lohor<sup>3</sup>

she was carried off, and brought to Uktāe, who kept her for himself, and married her. Previous to this, Tā-ir Asūn had given his daughter, *Ḳülān Khātūn*, to the *Chingiz Khān*. Some say *Tūrā Kīnah* was not Tā-ir Asūn's widow, but merely one of his tribe. She was not possessed of beauty, but in her disposition there was greatness and talent for command, and she ruled for some time after Uktāe's death, but, through not respecting the precepts of the *Chingiz Khān*, she caused sedition and discord among his descendants, as will be mentioned farther on. She was the mother of five out of Uktāe's seven sons—*Ziyūk*, *Kūtān*, also called *Kūtā Mangū*, *Kochū*, or *Kochūe*, *Ḳurā-chār*, and *Kāshī*, so called because *Kāshī* or *Kāshīn*, "subsequently," it is said, "styled *lingkūt*," was subdued at the time of his birth. 3. *Mikā* or *Mikāf*, of the *Katrīn* [کترین] tribe ["who are neither *Ī-gūrs* nor *Mughals*"], who, at first, was a wife of his father, and the son married her after his decease. 4. The fourth wife was named *Jāyī R*, of the *Kungkūr āt* tribe.

The other two sons of Uktāe were by a *Kūmāi* concubine named *Arkanah* or *Irkanah*, or *Azkanah* or *Izkanah*—*Abū-l-Ghāzī*, *Bahādur*, calls her *Ḳamīsh*. They were named *Kadān Aghūl*, and *Malik*.

<sup>1</sup> This name is doubtful, but in the best copies it is as above. In others it is *Bastākī*, *Bastākī*, *Asājī*, and *Batākī*.

<sup>2</sup> Our author does not appear to have known, or was not inclined to state, that Uktāe killed himself by drunkenness. All the expostulations of his friends and confidants were of no avail to break him of his excess, but rather tended to make him drink the more. At last, his brother, *Chaghatae*, sent one of his *Amīrs*, in accord with the Princes of the family of the *Chingiz Khān*, under the name of a *Shahnah* or *Intendant*, to look after Uktāe, who was now unable to take care of himself, and he was only permitted to have a certain quantity of intoxicating liquor by *Chaghatae's* command. Uktāe, however, succeeded in making his *Intendant* his boon companion, who, unable, or afraid, to allow of his exceeding the number of cups, permitted him to increase their size, and therefore the *Intendant's* continuance with him was useless. In the thirteenth year of his reign, however, *Anīkah Bigī*, sister of *Sūr*.

After the death of Uktāe, the Mughal tribes drew the sword upon each other several times, and the accursed chief men [among them] generally, and for the most part, went to hell; and division arose among their tribes. The brother's sons of the Chingiz Khān, who are the sons of

Kakṭbi Bīgī, Tūfī Khān's chief Khātūn, whom the Chingiz Khān gave [in marriage] to the Nū-yīn, Ghatī, or Mīrghatī, the Ūrā-ūt, after his dream referred to in the account of his wives and concubines, used to come every year from Khatāe to see her sister, and banquets used to be given in her honour, and the cups to circulate. In the thirteenth year of Uktāe's reign, according to her usual custom, Anīkah [often written Abīkah] Bīgī arrived, and the usual entertainments were given, a' lshē, with her son, who held the high office of Bāwarghī—that is to say, a Comptroller of the Royal Kitchen, and one of the Intendants of the Purveyor's Department (in India, bāwarghī now signifies a cook), supplied the Kā'an with his favourite beverage, and he drank deeply. He soon went off to sleep, and never woke again, consequently, some of the Amīrs and Khātūns began to reproach Anīkah Bīgī and her son, and vowed they had administered poison to the Kā'an. The Nū-yīn Hūdāe [Hichīkdāe, nephew of the Chingiz Khān, of Hurāt atrocities], who held the office of Kokal-tāgh, and was an Amīr held in great veneration among the Jalāīr tribe, when he heard these words, scouted the idea of such a thing, and said: "What insensate words are these? when ye all know to what excess the Kā'an used to drink, and when ye know, too, that his fate only has overtaken him. It behoveth that no such words as these should be again uttered."

The bones of Uktāe Kā'an, and his *kutūk*, or *kūrūk*, signifying a place enclosed and prohibited from access, lie in a mountain range exceedingly lofty, called Būkdān Kā-īr, which is always covered with snow, two days' journey from Ardīsh, and which, in more recent times, they style Yakah Wandūr; and from those mountains issue the rivers Yavūn Mur-ān, Tarkān, and Ūsūn, which fall into the river of Ardīsh, in the vicinity of which river the Chāpār tribe take up their *kushlāks* or winter stations.

The author of the "*Mongol's Proper*," p. 725, quoting some foreign translation of Persian writers, evidently derived from a source similar to that whence I draw information, but probably misunderstood in the original, says "Abika had been married to a *dyer* on the borders of China," after the Chingiz Khān's death—an exceeding high position truly for Uktāe's chief Khātūn to "envy" because the other "had married so well—and went every year with her son, who was dressed as a cupbearer, to pay her respects at the court," etc. The errors here are plainly disclosed from the above account. The same writer, quoting some other foreign translation of Persian histories, says, "Ogottū Khan was buried in the valley of Kinien, i. e. another name for the Imperial cemetery, whose site we have already described *sub seq.* Jīngis Khan;" but it so happens that they were totally different places.

Uktāe promulgated a code of his own, which, under the name of *tūrah*—a Turkish word signifying, institute, system, code, etc.—was, like the *yāsā* of his father, observed among the Mughal people. In 633 H. new regulations were promulgated respecting taxes on cattle, and on grain for the poor, and other matters for which I have no space here.

Ü-Tigin,<sup>3</sup> went to the presence of the Altün Khān of Chīn,<sup>4</sup> and Chaghataē, and his sons, commenced acting in a refractory manner; and a great number were killed by the hands of each other—God's curse upon them!

The reign of Uktāe, son of the Chingiz Khān, extended over a period of nine<sup>5</sup> years, and, after his decease, for a period of one year and a half, no one of that cursed seed ascended the throne.<sup>6</sup> It is the custom among the Mughals that when a sovereign among them dies another should not mount the throne for one year and a half, and this period they call three years—one year and half of days and one year and half of nights.

When the reign of Uktāe came to an end, his wife, Turakinah Khātūn, ruled over the Mughal empire for a period of four years, and during this time she displayed woman's ways, such as proceed from deficiency of intellect, and excess of sensuality. The Mughal grandees took cognizance of that conduct, and sought a firm ruler. They sent Turakinah Khātūn to join Uktāe, and raised his son [Kyuk] to the throne of sovereignty, but God knows the truth.

#### IV CHAGHATAĒ, SON OF THE CHINGIZ KHĀN—MAY GOD'S CURSE BE UPON HIM!

Chaghataē, the accursed, was the second son of the Chingiz Khān, the Mughal.<sup>7</sup> He was a tyrannical man,

<sup>3</sup> Or Uighkīn. See page 899. This circumstance is not mentioned by the Pro-Mughal writers, but there is truth in it, as may be seen from the conduct of Ü-Tigin himself during the troubles which ushered in Kyūk's reign, mentioned farther on [in note 7, p. 1149, para. 3].

<sup>4</sup> Previously, the Altān Khān is generally styled "of Tamghāj," by our author.

<sup>5</sup> This is incorrect. Uktāe Kā'in reigned from the *third* month of 626 *it*, to the 5th of the *sixth* [Guzīdah says Jamādi-ul-Awwal, the *fifth*, and the Fanākātī says in the year 638 *it*] month of 639 *it*, exactly thirteen years, two months, and a few days, although authors, in round numbers, say thirteen years, and some fourteen.

<sup>6</sup> Not in our author's time, but Kāidū, the grandson of Uktāe, ruled nearly fifty years over the territory of Haytāl, and Kābul, and some parts of Hind [east of the Indus—the western parts of the present Panjāb], and his descendants continued to rule therein for a long period after.

<sup>7</sup> Chaghataē or Chaghadaē—the name is written both ways, but *Yagataē* is

cruel, sanguinary, and an evil-doer; and among the Mughal rulers there was not one who was a greater enemy

as incorrect as it is impossible from the letters in which it is written—**چغاتی** or **چغادای**—the second son of the **Chingiz Khān**, is said to have been a monarch of great dignity, pomp, and magnificence, open-hearted, valiant, and hospitable; and, according to the wishes of his father, did not object to pay obedience to his younger brother, **Üktäe**, as his sovereign. At the time that his father divided his empire among his sons, he assigned **Türān-Zamīn**, from the **Näemān** country to the banks of the **Jihūn** to **Chaghatäe**. Another author describes his territory as including the **Ī-ghūr** country and **Māwarā-un-Nahr**, and part of **Mādun-un-Nahr**, viz., **Kāshghar**, **Khwārazm**, **Samrkand**, **Bukhārā**, **Bada-ghān**, **Balkh**, and **Ghaznīn**, as far as the banks of the **Sind** or **Indus**. His minister and counsellor was his kinsman, the **Nū-yūn**, **Karāchār**, the famous counsellor and deputy of the **Chingiz Khān**, and who is constantly mentioned in connexion with him from his earliest youth onwards. **Karāchār** is also the ancestor of the **Gurgān** or **Son-in-law**, **Amīr Timūr**, and, from the benefit derived from that veteran statesman's counsel, **Chaghatäe Khān** became one of the wisest, manliest, and most energetic rulers of his time.

The capital, or seat of government, of his dominions was **Bish-Bālīgh**, and, in carrying out the provisions contained in the *yāsā* or code promulgated by his father, he passed not over the slightest thing, but carried them out to the letter, and hence arose the circumstance related in the anecdote at page 1107. Such was the efficiency of his administration, that the routes, in every part of his territory, were safe, and neither guards nor escorts were required.

During the time of their father, the sons of the **Chingiz Khān** did not get on well together, as was but too apparent during the investment of **Örganj** of **Khwārazm**, but now, through the wise measures of **Karāchār**, **Chaghatäe** got on with his younger brother **Üktäe** better than previously. **Chaghatäe** was passionately fond of the chase, and in following that pastime, and in jollity, he passed most of his time, while **Karāchār** carried on the government.

During **Chaghatäe's** reign occurred the outbreak of **Mahmūd**, the **Tārānī**, so called from his native place, **Tārān**, a village within three *farsakhs* of **Bukhārā**, who, in 630 H., broke out into rebellion, whereby many thousands of persons perished.

Among other fictions related by **Marco Polo** is that respecting "**Zagatay**," as he styles **Chaghatäe**, whom he makes to reign about one hundred years before his own time—1272 A D [671 H]. According to the same traveller's statements, "**Zagatay**" was persuaded to allow himself to be baptized, and the Christians built a church at **Bukhārā**, whose roof was supported by one pillar, that stood on a square stone, taken by "**Zagatay's**" favour, from a building of the **Muhammadans**!

The **Mughal** dynasty founded at **Dhli**, by **Bābar Bādshāh**, is constantly styled the **Chaghatäe** dynasty, and its Princes, the **Chaghatäe** Princes, but these designations are not correct, for the only connexion between **Bābar** and the descendants of the **Chingiz Khān** was that his mother was the sister of a descendant of **Chaghatäe**, the head of that branch of his house, but this is not a valid reason for styling the house of **Bābar**, **Chaghatäe's**, but it would be, and is, correct to style it the **Timūriah** dynasty. Although **Bābar** was a **Mughal**, both on the father's and mother's side, he was himself not much attached to the **Mughal** of the **Chingiz** family.

of the Musalmāns. He used to require that no created being should, in his presence, take the name of Musalmān on his tongue, except with evil intent; and, throughout the whole of his tribes [of which he was the head] it used not to be possible even to slaughter a sheep according to the ordinances of Islām, and all [sheep] used to be rendered [thereby] unclean. To say one's prayers [publicly] used to be impossible for any Musalmān. Chaghatāe used constantly to urge upon Uktāe that it was necessary to massacre all Musalmāns and not let any of them remain, and no Musalmān used to dare to put himself in his sight.

He was older than Uktāe; and, as the Chingiz Khān was aware that his nature was excessively sanguinary,\* malevolent, and tyrannical, he did not bequeath the sovereignty to him, and assigned it to his younger brother, Uktāe. Chaghatāe's place of residence likewise used to be the original Mughal locality, and that portion of the dominions of the Chingiz Khān which he held possession of [at his father's death] was assigned to him as his portion. His troops were [located] in different parts of Māwarā-un-Nahr, Farghānah, and Turkistān. For this reason, that he had impeached the elder of his brothers, Tūshī, before his father, [asserting] that Tūshī, in his mind, meditated killing the Chingiz Khān in some chase, when this reached the father's hearing, the Chingiz Khān gave poison to his son Tūshī, and destroyed him.

This Chaghatāe, the accursed, for some years, was at the head of his tribes and forces, and, when the decree of his death arrived, Almighty God made a holy man among His eminent saints the instrument of his death so that he went to hell. and it was on this wise. There was a pious Darwesh, of pure heart, from the confines of Khurāsān, whom they used to call Shāikh Mahmūd-i Atash-Kh'ār [the Fire eater], a Shāikh of much eminence,

The four tribes which are called Chaghatāes—that is to say, Chaghatāe's tribes—have been already mentioned in the note at page 1093, last paragraph. See also notes at pages 874, 875, and note †, page 1100.

\* More sanguinary than his own? The Pro-Mughal writers say that he was "the light of his father's eye," but they, too, do not seem to recollect his conduct, and that of his other brothers, before the capital of Khawārazm.



and a Darwesh of great repute, who, having cast off earthly wishes and desires, and, impressed with the aspiration after Truth,<sup>9</sup> had devoted his body to pain and affliction, and had gone out into the world, and used to wander about in different countries. He reached, during his wanderings, a place between two mountains [ranges?] through which lay the route between the country of Turkistān and the territory of Chīn, and between these two mountains strong barriers were placed, and guards were there posted and overseers stationed, in order that they might examine every person who proceeded towards Chīn, or who entered the territory of Turkistān from Chīn, and have information respecting his condition.<sup>1</sup>

When Shaiikh Mahmūd-i-Ātash-Kh'ār arrived at that place, the guards beheld a person, a stranger to the usages of the world, and, in outward appearance, like a maniac; and they seized him [saying]: "Thou art a *fidā-ī*." Shaiikh Mahmūd replied: "Aye! I am a *fidā-ī*;" and, notwithstanding they importuned him, saying: "Who art thou? Say!" his reply was: "I am what ye have said: a *fidā-ī*." As he had confessed this thing, they brought him before Chaghatāe Mas'ūd Bak, who was the Jumlat-ul-Mulk [Minister of State] of Chaghatāe, recognized Shaiikh Mahmūd, but, through fear of Chaghatāe, was unable to say anything, or mention Shaiikh Mahmūd's condition, or his eminence. Chaghatāe demanded of Shaiikh Mahmūd: "Who art thou?" He replied: "That same *fidā-ī* I am." Chaghatāe said: "What shall I do with thee? What doth it behove to do unto thee?" Shaiikh Mahmūd answered: "Command that they rain arrows upon me, that I may be freed [from life]." Chaghatāe commanded so that they killed him with volleys of arrows.

<sup>9</sup> See the Introduction to my "POETRY OF THE AFGHĀNS," page xi. London, 1867

<sup>1</sup> This is the Iron Gate Pass, mentioned in the journey of the envoys of Mīrzā Shāh Rukh Sultān, sent into China in 822 H.

<sup>2</sup> *Fidā-ī* means one who devotes his life as a sacrifice for a special object, or who consecrates himself to a cause. The Darwesh was right, literally, in what he said, but they appear to have mistaken him for, or suspected him of being, a *fidā-ī*, or disciple of the chief of the Mulāhidah sect

<sup>3</sup> Yet Mas'ūd Bak must have often come before him in his official capacity, and he was a Musalimān.

Some days after Shaikh Maḥmūd was received into the Almighty's mercy, Chaghatāe was in the act of discharging a recoiling arrow,<sup>4</sup> in a hunting-ground, at the prey, when, verily, it entered the back of that accursed one, and he went to hell; and God's people, particularly the people of Islām, were delivered from his malevolence.

V KYÜK,<sup>5</sup> SON OF UKTĀE, SON OF THE CHINGIZ KHĀN.

Trustworthy persons have related on this wise, that Uktāe had two sons,<sup>6</sup> one named Kutān, and the other

<sup>4</sup> The original is *fir-i-bās-gashtān*, as literally translated above. What it may have been I cannot say, probably some sort of rebounding missile.

I wonder whether this statement was mistaken by other writers, who followed our author, or whether he, before he wrote this passage, heard some vague or confused account of the cause of Chaghatāe's death; because it is stated on very good authority in Alif, that Hulākū Khān, when he overturned the Mulāhidāl dynasty, made over several of the children and kinsmen of Rukn-ud Dīn, Khūr Shāh, the last ruler of that dynasty and head of that sect, to Salghān Khātūn, a daughter of Chaghatāe Khān, in order "that she might avenge, on them, the blood of her father, who had been killed by Fidā-Is."

I find no particulars respecting Chaghatāe's death, how he died, or what he died of—save that he died among his own *ulus*, and that great mourning was made for him; but our author's version of his death is evidently fabulous. He died six months before his brother Uktāe, in the month of Zī-Ka'dah, 638 H. Rauzat-uz-Ṣafā says he died in 640 H., but this is contrary to the statements

<sup>5</sup> others, and seems to be a mistake for the date of the Nū-yīn Kārāghār's death, which took place in that year. He was succeeded in his dominions by his grandson, Karā Hulākū, or Hülākūe, as it is also written, son of Mitūkāe [میتوکا], according to the express wish of the Chingiz Khān before his death, that Karā Hulākū should succeed Chaghatāe Khān as head of his *ulus*.

The Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr states that, after the death of Chaghatāe, and Uktāe Ḳā'an's dying very soon after, up to the time of Kyūk's ascending the throne, some four years intervened, and, after the *ulus* of Chaghatāe had been for some time without a head, Kārāghār set up Karā-Hulākū or Karā Aghūl, as he is also called, but Kyūk, on coming to the throne, deposed him, and set up another of Chaghatāe's sons, Yassū or Yassūkāe Mungah, instead. Kyūk observed—and he spoke feelingly, no doubt, since he had himself been nearly excluded from the throne by a brother's son—"How is it possible, when there is a son living, that a brother's son can be his grandfather's heir?"

<sup>6</sup> The name is generally written كوك—Kyūk—but our author always has the shortened form—كك. The Calcutta Printed Text is invariably incorrect, and has كك and كك instead. He was styled simply Khān, and not Ḳā'an like his father.

<sup>7</sup> Uktāe had seven sons, of whom Kyūk, the later historians say, was his eldest son. Our author may have mistaken Kūtān for Kyūk, for the latter was subject to some disease from his childhood, though it is not improbable that

Kyuk; but Kutān, who was the eldest, had become afflicted with palsy and did not possess eligibility for the sovereignty, to rule over the empire, and administer its affairs, and he [therefore] made over the throne to his brother Kyuk.<sup>7</sup>

his statement respecting Kūtān is the correct one, for he had been nominated to succeed Ūktāe by his grandfather. But the Pro-Mughal historians state that Ūktāe had nominated his third son Kochū or Kochūe as his successor, as will be found detailed below. See next to last para. of note <sup>9</sup>, page 1142.

<sup>7</sup> Kyūk, son of Ūktāe, at the time of his father's death, had not yet arrived from the army then engaged in the campaigns west of Kīschāk, from which he and other Shāh-zādahs were returning, as before stated, and Mūkā Khātūn, the most beloved of Ūktāe's wives, also soon after died. Tūrā-Kīnah Khātūn—there was no such title as "empress," I beg to say, among the Mughals, nor will Khātūn bear any such translation, whatever there might have been among "Mongols"—mother of the five eldest sons, by her stratagems and cunning, and the liberal use of gold, had gained over a party, including some of the Chungiz Khān's family, and the Wazīrs, to her side; and, without consulting the whole of the Shāh-zādahs and Amīrs, as was customary, she assumed the direction of affairs. During the reign of the late Kā'an she was sorely displeased with a number of persons, and now she resolved to take revenge upon them. She had a Tājīk handmaid, named Fāṭimah, who had been made captive at the time of the invasion of Khurāsān, and sent into Mughalīstān by the Amīrs after the capture of the Mash-had of Tūs. This damsel was talented, and exceedingly clever and sagacious, and soon became the trusted servant and confidant of the Khātūn in all matters. Amīrs and Ministers sought her good offices, even in the Kā'an's reign, he being in a state of half inebriety all his time, and ignorant and unfit persons were often entrusted, through her interest, with offices of which they were wholly incapable or undeserving.

At this time, these two women, the mistress and handmaid, sought to seize Chīnkāe, the Grand Wazīr, but he made his escape to the *urdū* of Kūtān, son of Ūktāe. Fāṭimah bore enmity of old towards Maḥmūd, Yalwā, and, by her power, she now caused his removal, and a person named 'Abd-ur-Raḥmān was sent to administer the [financial] affairs of Khātāe, and endeavours were made to seize Maḥmūd and his servants, but he made his escape to Kūtān's *urdū* also. The son of Maḥmūd, Yalwā, who administered the revenue affairs of Turkīstān [but not the appanage of Chaghatae and his family, which the Nū-yīn, Qarāshār, is said to have been in charge of], on becoming aware of these matters, fled to the Court of Bātū Khān. Qarā Hulākū, or Qarā Aghū, as he is also called, and the Khātūns of Chaghatae, Ūrghanah Khātūn, and others, had despatched Kūr-Būkā, along with Arghūn Ākā, into Khurāsān, for the purpose of seizing the governor, Amīr Kūrkitz, the I-ghūr, and they put him to death, and Arghūn Ākā, the Ūr-āt, was installed in his place.

During this period of sedition, the different Shāh-zādahs were plotting, and sent agents into different parts to endeavour to get support in their ambitious proceedings; and, the field being vacant, and Kyūk Khān not yet arrived in his father's *urdū*, the Chungiz Khān's younger brother, the Nū-yīn, Ū-Tīgn [Ūtichkīn, i. e., Younger Brother. See page 899], sought to usurp possession of the throne, and, with a numerous force, set out for the late Kā'an's *urdū*.

When Kyuk assumed the sovereignty, all the refractory Mughals made their obeisance to him; and he nominated

This movement caused great disquietude in the *urdu* of Üktäe. Tūrā-Kīnah Khātūn, to gain time, despatched an agent to Ü-Tigīn, telling him that Kyük was shortly expected to reach the *urdu*, and asking him why he was coming thither with such a large following, as it was a source of great disquietude. Ü-Tigīn, finding that his design was suspected, became ashamed of what he had done—perhaps the near approach of Kyük added to it—and he pretended that his only object in coming was to offer condolence. At this juncture he received news that Kyük had reached the banks of the river Ī mal. On this his repentance became still greater; and he turned his steps, without delay, back towards his own *urdu* again.

In short, for a period of nearly four years, the throne remained vacant, and the empire was ruled by Tūrā-Kīnah Khātūn, because there was want of accord in the assembling of a *küriltäe* for the purpose of choosing a sovereign.

Some writers, on the contrary, affirm that Tūrā-Kīnah did consult with the heads of the family, and the chief men, when she assumed the chief power, in the same way as the wife of the Chingiz Khān, the mother of Üktäe, had done, on a previous occasion, and such was undoubtedly the custom, as our author also states farther on, and they also say that it was usual for three years to elapse before the *küriltäe* was held in order to choose a sovereign from among the heirs, and the mother of the eldest son, in the meantime, used to exercise the supreme authority.

Üktäe Kā'an had, during his lifetime, nominated his third son, Koghū, his successor, and, after his death, having been greatly attached to him, Üktäe named the latter's youngest son, Shīrāmūn, who was a promising and intelligent youth, whom he had brought up in his own haram, as his heir. When Üktäe felt that the hand of death was on him—but another version of his death has been already recorded; still, he may have been ill when he overdrank himself the last time—he sent to summon his eldest son, Kyük, to him, in order to assign the sovereignty to Shīrāmūn in his presence, so that there might not be any mistake about it, but before he arrived Üktäe was dead. At this time, it is said, after reaching his father's *urdu*, the desire of obtaining the sovereignty overcame him. At this juncture the different Shāh-zādahs, who had been previously summoned to a *küriltäe*, by the late Kā'an, arrived from different parts, at the place called Kokū or Kok Nāwar—the Kokonor of European translators, who always make *Nor of Nāwar*—and a *küriltäe* was held, and they began to consult on the choice of a successor to the late Kā'an. Bātū Khān, however, who, as the eldest son of Jūjī, eldest son of the Chingiz Khān, was the head of the family, did not come from the Dašt-i-Kīfchāk, and excused himself on account of illness; but, according to some accounts, he nourished displeasure in his heart against Kyük, and did not desire to come. It is certain, however, that illness was the cause; for, about this time, Bātū had been stricken with paralysis. His "horses feet" appear to have been quite well, although his own feet "were bad," but we are told differently in the "*Mongols Proper*," p. 162, whose author appears to have taken, or to have mistaken, it from some foreign version of one of those "muddy streams," some "*Persian History*." The original from whence this statement came, as well as other works, use the words *dard-i-pāe*—ache or pain of the foot—with respect to Bātū, in reference to the disease in question,

armies to [march into] the different countries of Chīn, I-rān, Hindūstān, Khurāsān, and 'Irāk. The Nū-īn,

hence the very amusing error. There was nothing the matter with his horses. Although unable to be present himself, Bātū sent his brothers and sons.

With respect, however, to the summoning of a *ḡuriltāi* by Ūktāi for another purpose, and the members of it consulting on his successor, and naming one, there is certainly some error in a part of the statement above, because nearly four years elapsed from the death of Ūktāi to the accession of Kyūk, and the *ḡuriltāi* was assembled by direction of Tūrī-Kīnah Khātūn.

Among those who were present on this occasion was Ūtighkīn, or Unchī-Tigīn, or Unjl-Tigīn, or Ū-Tigīn, for the name is written in these several ways, youngest brother of the Chingiz Khān, with his eighty sons, and a great number of other persons from all parts, including Amīr Arghūn, from Khurāsān, the chiefs and rulers of 'Irāk, Āzarbāijān, and Khurāsān; Rukn-ud-Dīn, brother [and envoy] of Sulṭān Kai-Kā-ū, of Rūm [The Saljuq Sulṭān, Kai-Khusrau, in 641 H., had "submitted to the yoke of the Mughals, and had agreed to stamp the coin with the name of the Kā'ān, to insert his name in the Khufbah—for an infidel!—to pay tribute at the rate of 1000 *dīnārs* daily, and yearly a male and female slave, and a sporting dog." See pages 162—164]; the two Dā'ūd, claimants to the sovereignty of Gūrjistān; the brother of the ruler of Ḥalab; the son of the ruler of the Dīyār-i-Bakr, Sulṭān Badr-ud-Dīn, Lūlū; the ambassador from the Dār-ul-Khilāfat [1], the Kāfi-ul-Kuṣāt, Fakhr-ud-Dīn; the ambassadors of the Farang, the rulers of Fārs and Kirmān; the Muṭashhims, Shihāb-ud-Dīn and Shams-ud-Dīn, on the part of 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Mulāhidah of Alamūt; the Malik of the Rūs [Russians], who was, however, left to stand outside the great tent, and others, all bringing presents and offerings befitting the occasion. About 3000 great *khargahs*, or felt tents, used by the Turks, Tātārs, and Mughals, were pitched for their use; and, on account of the vast number of persons who had assembled there, no vacant place remained available near the *us dū*—which certainly was neither a "city" nor a "town," but, as its name shows, a camp—and provisions rose to an excessive price.

After much consultation, it was agreed by a majority in the assembly, that, as Kūtān, son of Ūktāi, whom the Chingiz Khān had himself nominated to succeed after his father, was not alive, and his son, Shīrāmūn, who had been nominated by Ūktāi, had not yet reached manhood, Kyūk, the eldest son of the late Kā'ān, who was conspicuous for his spirit and talent for governing, should succeed to the sovereignty; and he was, accordingly, raised to the throne, which decision was chiefly brought about by the stratagems and efforts of his mother, Tūrī-Kīnah Khātūn, and her party in the state, in the month of Rabī'ul-Awwal, 643 H.—September, 1245 A. D. Bātū Khān's objection was, that Ūktāi had bequeathed the sovereignty to his grandson, Shīrāmūn.

Kyūk, whose constitution, from his childhood, had been weak, was not desirous of succeeding, but his mother's exhortations overcame him, and, after some time, he said "I will accept the sovereignty on the condition that, after me, the supreme sovereignty shall continue in my family, and to my descendants, and not to others." This was agreed to by those present, and Kyūk was placed on the throne according to the usual ceremonies.

Carpini, who describes the *khargahs* or pavilions of Kyūk Khān and his mother, which some recent writers will turn into cities and palaces, was pre-

Mangūtah, who was at the head of the forces of [the Mughal troops occupying] Tukhāristān, Khatlān, and Ghaznīn, was, another time, made leader of an army. He was an aged man, very tall, with dog-like eyes,<sup>a</sup> and one

sent on this occasion. He says: "The emperor seemed then to be about forty, or forty-five. He was of a middle stature, and behaved with exceeding gravity. He was a very wise Prince, and seldom laughed."

During the long interregnum, many of the Shāh-zādahs had been guilty of certain ambitious proceedings, misconducting themselves, acting contrary to the ordinances of the Chingiz Khān, stretching out their hands in acts of oppression, and appropriating the property of the state, and none were free of these acts but the sons of Tūlī Khān. In consequence of this, Mangū and Ūrdah, sons of Tūlī, were appointed to inquire into these matters. I have not space here for the details, but several persons were put to death in consequence, among whom were several of the followers of Kyūk's great uncle, Ū-Tigīn, and Fāṭimah Khātūn, his mother's favourite handmaid.

After disposing of these matters, Kyūk despatched armies into different parts of the empire. Siwidāe [Sahūdāh], the Bahādur, and the Nū-yīn, Chaghān, with a force consisting of Karāyats, were sent to the frontiers of Khujāe and the territories of Manzī [منزی], and the Nū-yīn Iljīdāe or Ilchikdāe, with a large army, was sent into Ī-rān-Zamīn, with the object of reducing Rūm, Shām, Ḥalab, and Miṣr under the yoke [See page 164, where our author mentions Iljīkdāe under the name of Aljaktā or Iljaktā; but he confuses Mangū Kān with Kyūk Khān.] 'Abd ur-Rahmān, who had been sent to administer the financial affairs—civil affairs were administered according to the *yāsā*—of Khujā by Kyūk's mother, was now removed, and put to death; the financial administration of the annexed territory of Khujā was again confirmed to the Šāhib, Maḥmūd, Yalwā; that of Turkistān and Māwarā-un-Nahr, in which Chaghataī's son ruled, was restored to Mas'ūd Bak, Maḥmūd's son, and the Amīr Arghūn Ākā was nominated to the direction of the finances and civil administration of Khurāsān, 'Irāk, Āgarbāijān, Shirwān, Kirmān, Gūrjistān, and that side of Hindūstān [the Panjāb as far as the Biāh] under the Mughal yoke. The Maliks and Amīrs from different countries, who had presented themselves, were made the recipients of the royal favour, and permitted to return; and, on Rukn-ud-Dīn of Rūm, Kyūk bestowed his brother's sovereignty [See page 164], but, as numerous complaints had been received from Jūrmāghūn from 'Irāk, the Khalīfah's ambassador was dismissed with admonitions and threats for his sovereign Dā'ūd, son of Kabār [کابر] Malik, was made ruler of Gūrjistān, and the other claimant was made subordinate to him.

During the period that Tūrā-Kīnah Khātūn exercised the chief authority, the Mughal troops had entered the territories of the Diyār-i-Bakr and Ḥarrān, taken Rammā, and Nārdīn surrendered. Shuhab-ud-Dīn-i-Ghāzī, the Wālī thereof, retired into Miṣr, and there obtained support, and attained authority.

In the same year in which Kyūk was elevated to the sovereignty, and shortly after that event, his mother died; and, during her administration of the affairs of the empire, in 640 H., the Nū-yīn, Karūchār, the kinsman [cousin, in fact], friend, and counsellor of the Chingiz Khān, died.

<sup>a</sup> Two of the best copies have *red-eyed*, and another copy has *one-eyed*, but

of the *Chingiz Khān's* favourites. On Mangūtah's entering the land of I-rān, he made Tāc-kān of Kūnduz, and Walwālij, his head quarters; and, in the year 643 H., he determined upon entering the states of Sind, and, from that territory, brought an army towards Ūchchah and Multān.

At this period, the throne of Hindūstān was adorned with the splendour and elegance of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh; and the city of Lohor had become ruined. Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan, the Kārugh, held [possession of] Multān; and Hindū Khān, Mihtar-i-Mubārak, the Khāzin [Treasurer], was ruler and governor of the city and fortress of Ūchchah,\* and he had, on his own part, placed a trusty person of his own as his Deputy within the fort of Ūchchah—the Khwājah, Šāliḥ, the Koṭ-wāl [Seneschal].

On Mangūtah's reaching the banks of the river Sind, with the Mughal army, Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan, the

the majority are as above. "Sheep-eyed" is a very common expression, and "dog-eyed" may be used after the same fashion.

Tāc-kān of Kūnduz, or, more correctly, Kuhanduz, also called or known as Tāc-kān of Tukhristān. A few modern copies have تاجکان without any points to the , which, in manuscript, might be read in error for Tāl-kān—تالکان—hence the mistakes which have arisen regarding these two places through people not knowing the difference. These are places which we shall probably know better before long. See page 1008.

Mangūtah is the person whom Mr. Dowson, the Editor of Elliot's *MUHAMMADAN HISTORIANS*, in the extracts from our author's work therein contained, and which extracts I have already referred to, straightway turns into *Mangū Khān*, without authority, either from our author or any other, for so doing. At page 344, vol. II., of that work, he has: "Thus army was under the command of the accused Mankūta (Mangū Khān)," and yet, in a footnote, adds var. "Mankuna." At page 363, of the same vol., he has again: "In this year the accused Mankūti (Mangū Khān), who was one of the generals of the Mughals," etc. Mangū Khān was never south of the Hindū Kush in his life, but there are some persons who would prevent such errors being spoken about, much less corrected, for fear of "*injuring the susceptibilities*" of people, and would allow them to stand, and continue to mislead!

\* He held it nominally only, and was not present. In the account of this Malik our author says he was placed in charge of Ūchchah and its dependencies in Raṣiyyat's reign, and that he returned to the Court when Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Bahram Shāh, came to the throne, subsequent to which Jalāndhar was assigned to him.

The text is somewhat imperfect here, and this attempt on Ūchchah is evidently the *first* one, when the Khwājah, Šāliḥ, was there, but, at this time, Mukhlis-ud-Dīn was the Koṭwāl-Bak. See pages 810—813.

Karlugh, abandoned the fortress and city of Multān,<sup>1</sup> and embarked on board a vessel, and proceeded to Dīwal and Sindūstān [Sewastān]. Mangūtah advanced to the foot of the walls of the fortress of Ūchchah,<sup>2</sup> invested it, and the attack commenced; and he destroyed the environs and neighbourhood round about that city. The people of the fortress put forth the utmost exertions and diligence, and used immense endeavours in defending the place, and despatched great numbers of the Mughals to hell.

Notwithstanding all the efforts the Mughal troops and the infidel Nū-īns and the Bahādurs were using, the holy-warriors of the fortress continued to defend the head of the breach<sup>3</sup> until one of the famous Bahādurs of the Mughals, who had gone away in some direction, when he returned to Mangūtah, began to reproach him, saying: "What stronghold and fortification is this in the taking of which thou makest so much delay and hesitation? I would take it in a single assault." The following night he made preparations, and put a great number of Mughals under arms; and, suddenly and unexpectedly, in the third watch, which was the time the guards on the walls took repose, and the men of the fortress had gone to sleep, he appeared on the top of the breach. The grace of Almighty God was such, however, that the people of the fortress had mixed up a vast quantity of water and clay in rear of the breach, and had [thus] prepared a great pit and deep quagmire,<sup>4</sup> more than a spear's length in depth.

<sup>1</sup> If Multān had then a broad river immediately on its *west* side, as the river near it flows at this time, he would scarcely have needed to evacuate Multān, and, probably, would not have done so. At the period in question, however, no river intervened between the Sind or Indus and Multān, and Malik Ḥasan's retreat might have been cut off. He, consequently, embarked on the combined rivers Jihlam, Chin-āb, and Rāwī, which then ran *east* of Multān, and so, placing a river between himself and the Mughals, was enabled to get down into Sind without danger or molestation. See page 1119, and page 1129, note <sup>1</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Ūchchah seems to have generally been the first point of attack by invaders of India from the west, especially by the Mughals. It was the key and bulwark of India at this period, like as Hurāt has ever been that of Khurāsān.

<sup>3</sup> We must presume that a breach had been already made.

<sup>4</sup> The "time of repose for the guards," etc. ! They must have been very efficient "guards," truly, and must have taken their duty very easily.

<sup>5</sup> The "official" Calcutta Printed Text, in every instance, has لوري for لوري



When that Mughal Bahādur planted his foot within the breach, under the supposition that it was firm ground, he fell into the quagmire, and sank in it. The people of the fortress raised a shout; and they brought out torches, and armed themselves, and the Mughals retired.\*

The next day they [the Mughals] deputed persons,

\* No details of this kind are to be found in any other writer, and the Pro-Mughal historians, including the "great Raschid," are silent on this subject. They do not chronicle defeats generally, unless they cannot possibly help it: victories alone are necessary for their pages.

This is the investment referred to at pages 667 and 809. The question naturally arises, how it was that Ūchchah, and sometimes Multān, was always the first point of attack by invaders from the north-west, for the Kārlūghs and Mughals attacked Ūchchah first, as did Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, the Ghūrī, before them, and Pīr Muḥammad, grandson of Tīmūr, after them. It seems the more strange when we look at the map of the Panjāb, and notice the present position of the rivers; for the invaders all came the same way, through the Sindh-Sāgar Do-ābah, and with scarcely an exception, from the direction of the Koh-i-Jūd, immediately south of which lay the great road from Ghaznī into India.

To attack either Ūchchah or Multān at the present day from the west, or north-west, coming by the same route, what is called the Chūn-Āb—three of the five rivers of the Panjāb, which join some distance above the latter city, and which is unfordable, would have to be crossed—an impossible matter at any time without a bridge of boats or inflated skins, or the tedious operation of ferrying across—while, to attack Ūchchah, the Panj-Nad or Panj-Āb—the five rivers combined—would have to be passed.

Ūchchah, from the *present* appearance of the country, could have been relieved from Dīhlī without crossing any of the Panjāb rivers, but to relieve Multān the Sutlaj or Ghārā must now be crossed. At the same time, an enemy beaten off from either place, or, in case of an army advancing to the relief of either from the east, the enemy would stand a chance of being hard pressed while retreating across the Chūn-Āb, unless he effected the passage in good time, and also of being cut off from his line of retreat by the advance of an army from the east towards Lāhor.

From the facts mentioned in this History, as well as in others, together with what is stated by the old Musalmān geographers, the traces of the former beds of four of these five rivers—that is, with the exception of the Jihlam—and also of the former bed of the Indus, and the traditions current in those parts, it is evident that very great physical changes have taken place during the 654 years since this investment of Ūchchah took place, and, indeed, even during the last hundred years. From all these facts which I have mentioned, it is certain that, when this attack upon Ūchchah took place, that place lay, as it had previously lain, on the right or *west*, not on the *east* or left, side of the Panj-Nad. Multān also lay *west* of the united Jihlam, Chūn-Āb, and Rāwī, at that period also, for we know, for certain, that those streams passed on the east side of Multān in those days, and therefore Ūchchah and Multān both lay in the same Do-ābah, no river intervening between them. I have prepared a paper on this special subject, and hope very shortly to see it in print.

requesting the defenders to give up the Bahādur who had been taken prisoner the previous night, in order that the army might raise the investment and depart. As that accursed one had gone to hell, and had sunk into the black water and slimy mud, to give him up was impossible; so the people of the fortress denied having taken him prisoner. In short, through the grace of the Most High God, causes were brought about, by means of which the Musalmāns of Ūchchah might continue safe and secure from the tyrannical hand of the infidel Mughals. One of those causes was this, that, when the Mughal army appeared before the fort of Ūchchah, the Musalmāns of that fortress sent an account of it to the Court, the capital city, Dihlī—God defend it from calamity!—imploping assistance in repelling them, and Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, animated and inspired, through the efforts and exertions of Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam, assembled the hosts of Hindūstān, and moved towards the upper provinces for the purpose of driving off the Mughal invaders. The writer of these words, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, during that holy expedition against the infidels, was in attendance at the august stirrup [of the Sulṭān].

When the sublime standards reached the banks of the river Bīāh, the army moved along its banks towards Ūchchah,<sup>7</sup> as has been previously related and recorded. On the Mughal forces becoming aware of the advance of the forces of Islām, and the vanguard of the warriors of the faith having reached within a short distance of the territory [of Ūchchah and Multān], they did not possess the power of withstanding them. They retired disappointed from before the fortress of Ūchchah, and went away; and that fortress, through the power of the sovereign of Islām,<sup>8</sup> and the Divine aid, remained safe from the wickedness of those accursed ones. Thanks be unto God, the Lord of the universe, for the same!

\* 7 This refers to the river when it flowed in its old bed—not as it runs now—between its west bank and the Rāwī, which also fell into the Bīāh, on the east side of Multān. Ūchchah and Multān lay in the same Do-abah, no river intervening between them, and no river had to be crossed after passing the Rāwī, or Rāwah, as our author calls it.

\* 8 Some copies have, "the potency of the army of Islām."

ACCOUNT OF A MUSALMĀN MIRACLE.

Trustworthy persons have stated on this wise, that, when Kyuk acquired stability in his sovereignty, and had put to death his cousins, who were the sons of Chaghatāe, and the Mughal Nū-īns and Bahādurs had submitted to his authority, he, upon several occasions, despatched immense armies towards Chīn; and, in that country, victories were gained. A fraternity of recluses and devotees of the infidels of Chīn, and idol-worshippers of Tingit and Tamghāj, whom they style by the name of Tūnīān\* [Tūnis], acquired ascendancy over Kyuk. That faction constantly used to study persecuting the Musalmāns, and were wont to promote means of afflicting the people of Islām continually, in order that, mayhap, they might entirely uproot them, extirpate them completely, and eradicate both name and sign of the true believers from the pages of that country.

One of those Tūnīān, who had a name and reputation in Chīn and Turkistān, presented himself before Kyuk and said: "If thou desirest that the sovereignty and throne of the Mughals should remain unto thee, of two things do one—either massacre the whole of the Musalmāns, or put a stop to their generating and propagating."† For a long

\* In some copies of the text Tūnīān, as in Rubruquis, before referred to. Kyuk was a Christian, and his mother also

† Our author appears quite demented on this subject. See also in his account of Chaghatāe, which is much the same.

He probably refers here to an event which happened in Mangū Kā'ān's reign, in 649 H., or it may be quite a different event. At Bīsh-Bālgh, the Yiddi-Kūt of the I-ghūrs, who was the head of the Idolaters—Bat-Parastān—of Khujāe, entered into a compact with a number of his religionists to put all the Musalmāns to death on a Friday—their Sabbath—when they should be assembled together for prayer in their Jāmi' Masjid, so that, throughout all Khujāe [*in MSS*], not one should be left alive. It so happened, however, that, previous to the identical Friday fixed upon for carrying out this diabolical plot, a slave among them became a convert to the Musalmān faith, and acquainted the Muḥammadans with the whole affair. A number of the chief men of that faith, taking the slave along with them, hastened to the presence of Mangū Kā'ān, and stated their case. He issued commands that the Yiddi-Kūt should be seized, and brought before him, and inquiry instituted. The truth of the slave's account having been proved, the Yiddi-Kūt confessed his guilt. Mangū Kā'ān commanded that he should be re-conducted to Bīsh-Bālgh, and, on a Friday, after the Musalmāns had finished their religious

time they were wont, in this manner, to importune and instigate Kyuk to this wickedness, and continued to devise insidious snares and artifices. On account of the numerousness of the Musalmāns in the countries of Chin, Turkistān, and Tingit, to massacre them would not be feasible, they therefore [the Tūnis] came to this conclusion that it would be right that a mandate should be issued by Kyuk, that all Musalmāns should be emasculated and made eunuchs of, in order that their race might become extinct, and the empire of the Mughals be safe from their rebellion and sedition.

When such [like] tyranny and barbarity took root in the mind of Kyuk, and his decision in this course was come to, he commanded that a mandate should be issued, to this effect, throughout all parts of the Mughal dominions, from the extreme limits of Chin and Turkistān to the farthest parts of 'Ajām, 'Irāk, Rūm, and Shām,<sup>2</sup> and the whole of the Mughal rulers, who were located in different parts, were directed to obey it, and hold it necessary to be carried out.

On this mandate having been written out, they brought it to Kyuk, and he impressed it with vermilion, which [impression], in the Turkī language, they call Āl-i-Tamghā.<sup>3</sup> Accordingly he delivered this mandate to [one of] those Mughal Tūniān,<sup>4</sup> saying: "Do ye transmit tl.'s mandate into all parts of the empire, and use the utmost efforts in so doing"

services in the Jāmi' Masjid, he should be brought out, and, in their presence, and in the presence of the rest of the people of the city, be torn to pieces, in order that others might take warning against entertaining such-like futile ideas as the Yiddi-Kūt had conceived.

<sup>2</sup> Over which two latter states their power was but small.

<sup>3</sup> Āl here signifies a fiery red colour, carnation, vermilion (?), and the compound word signifies the red or vermilion stamp or signet of the sovereign. In the Dictionaries, generally, the compound word is written التامغاة—Altamghā, instead of التمغاة as above. Tamghā, also written Tamghah, is said, in such works, to signify a stamp or 'rand, but, from the way our author uses these Turkish words here, with ṭ and long ā in the first syllable, and ā as the final letter of the last word, it evidently refers to the country of Tamghā, so often mentioned, and the word is also said to be the title of the sovereigns of Tibbat and Yughmā, and would thus signify, literally, the crimson or vermilion signet of Tamghā, and that is clearly the meaning of the words.

<sup>4</sup> In the Printed Calcutta Text this word is invariably turned into Nūnān and Nūnān, the difference apparently not being understood

When that accursed base one, who held that tyrannical mandate in his hand, was issuing from the place of audience in great glee and confidence,<sup>5</sup> there was a dog which they used constantly to keep there, and which was wont to be near the throne, at the sides, and in the precincts of the dais, and the sovereign's exclusive seat; and on the animal's golden collar, studded with precious stones, was impressed a brand denoting its being the royal property. It was a dog, which, in courage and fierceness, greatly exceeded and far surpassed a thousand roaring lions and howling tigers [!]. This dog was in Kyuk's place of audience, and, like unto a wolf upon a sheep, or fire among wild rue seeds, it seized hold of that impious Tūn, flung him to the ground, and then, with its teeth, tore out that base creature's genitals from the roots; and, by the Heavenly power and Divine help, at once, killed him,<sup>6</sup> and the imprecation, according to the *ḥadīṣ*, which Muṣṭafā—on whom be peace!—had pronounced upon the son of Abū Lahb: "O God! let one of thy dogs defile him!" was fulfilled upon that accursed wretch of a priest.

Such a miracle as this was vouchsafed in order that, under the shadow of the protection of the Most High God, the faith of Islām, the felicity of the Ḥanafī creed, the happiness of the Aḥmadī belief, the prestige of the followers of the orthodox Muḥammadī institutes, might continue safe from the malevolence of these accursed ones. When Kyuk, the Tūniān, and those present of the Mughals and infidels of *Chīn*, beheld such an awful and condign punishment, they abandoned that vicious meditation, and withheld the hand of tyranny from off the Musalmāns; and they tore that *Tamghā* [vermilion-sealed document] to pieces. Praise be unto God for the triumph of Islām and the overthrow of idolatry!

When a period of one year and a half<sup>7</sup> of the reign of Kyuk had passed away, the decree of death arrived, and at the board of destiny placed the morsel of death in the

<sup>5</sup> The Ro. As. Soc. MS., I O. L. MS. 1952, and the Printed Calcutta Text, are exceedingly defective here.

<sup>6</sup> The *Rauzat-uz-Ṣafā* states that it was the Christians who did this, and that it was a Christian whom the dog worried.

<sup>7</sup> The Pro-Mughal writers say just one year; some, less than a year.

mouth of Kyuk's existence; and the cause of his death, likewise, is thus related.

#### THE DECEASE OF KYUK, THE ACCURSED.

Trustworthy persons related that Kyuk was constantly being incited by the Tūnfān fraternity to acts of oppression towards the Musalmāns, and that they used to instigate him to persecute the true believers. There was an Imām, in that country, one of the theologians of the Musalmāns, adorned with manifold erudition in theological knowledge, and proficient in the rules and canons of the ecclesiastical law, and the subtle doctrines of the Truth. His exterior [mind] being illuminated with the jewel of knowledge and excellence, and his interior [soul] with the splendour of the attributes of purity, he had become distinguished among the followers of the faith of Islām, and a pole of indication in the orthodox religion of Mustafā—on whom be peace! His surname was Imām Nūr-ud-Dīn, the *Khwārazmī*—the Almighty's mercy be upon him! A number of Christian laymen and priests,\* and the fraternity of idol-worshipping Tūnfān, made a request to Kyuk, saying: "Be pleased to summon that Imām of the Musalmāns that we may carry on a discussion with him, and make him prove the superiority of the religion of Muḥammad, and his apostle-ship, or otherwise it behoveth that you should have him put to death"

In conformity with this request, Kyuk had this godly Imām brought into his presence, and he, trusting in [the promise] "and God will protect thee from [wicked] men," in the defence of his religion, was strengthening and

\* Kyūk Khān, from childhood, had been brought up in the Christian—Naṣārī—faith—respecting which there is no doubt whatever—and was much attached to it; and his mother also was of that religion. At this time, from Shām and Rūm, presbyters and monks of that religion turned their faces towards his Court, and received great consideration from him, and, consequently, the affairs of the Christians prospered. His chief minister, Chūnkāe, and the Atā-bak, Qadāk, were also Christians. Indeed, during his reign, no Musalmān dared to speak arrogantly to the Christians, while the Fanākalī states that the monks treated the Musalmāns with great oppression.

supporting himself with [the rest of the promise]: "for God directeth not the unbelieving people."<sup>1</sup> When he sat down in that assemblage, they asked him: "What person was Muḥammad? explain." That godly Imām answered: "The last of the prophets, the head of the apostles, and the messenger of the God of the universe, whose head is adorned with the diadem of 'By thy life I swear,' and his body with the mantle of 'Have we not opened?'"<sup>2</sup> Musā was enamoured of his excellence—Make me, O God! one of the people of Muhammad!—and 'Isā the herald of his mission 'bringing good tidings of an apostle, who shall come after me, whose name shall be Ahmad.'"<sup>3</sup> That assemblage of infidels said: "He will be a prophet who will be purely spiritual, and not entertain appetite for women, and not be inclined to it like as 'Isā was. Muḥammad had nine chambers [women] and a number of children: How was that?" That godly Imām replied: "The prophet Dā'ūd—on whom be peace!—had ninety-nine women—'This my brother hath ninety and nine ewes';<sup>4</sup> and Sulīmān, the Lord of Potentiality, had three hundred and sixty women to wife, and a thousand handmaids" That assemblage of infidels, by way of annoying, negation, contention, and obstinacy, denied the prophet-ship of Dā'ūd and Sulīmān—on whom be peace! and said: "They were kings merely."<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> KUR'ĀN, chap. v, verse 71

<sup>2</sup> This is the passage which the Muḥammadan theologists contend is proved by the passage in St. John, xvi. 7, foretelling, as they say, the coming of Muḥammad, who is referred to as the Paraclete, or, as they read it, the *Perriclyte*, or Illustrious. See KUR'ĀN, chap. lxi, verse 6

<sup>3</sup> KUR'ĀN, chap. xciv, verse 1.

<sup>4</sup> KUR'ĀN, chap. xxxviii, verse 22. Some authorities translate it with "lamba" instead of ewes.

<sup>4</sup> Rubruquis relates an anecdote something similar to the above, concerning an event which happened in the following reign. Repairing to the Palace [the Kā'ān's Khargah] a few days after Ascension Day, 1254 A.D., "Arbuga [Irtuk Būkā], near whom sat two Muḥammadan lords of the Court, being apprised of the animosity that reigned between the Christians and the followers of Muḥammad, asked the monk Sergius [who officiated in a little Armenian chapel in the *ardā*], if he was acquainted with the latter? Sergius answered, 'I know they are dogs. why have you them so near you?' They called out, 'Why do you treat us in so injurious a manner, who give you no cause of offence?' The monk justified himself by saying he spoke the truth, adding, 'Both you, and your Muḥammad, are vile dogs.' Provoked at such

At length, as the proofs and arguments of those accursed ones were weak, and destitute of the force of truth, they drew back the hand of contradiction, and drew the mark of oppression and outrage upon the pages of the subject, and made a request to Kyuk, saying: "Say unto the Imām that, in accordance with the rites and ordinances of the Muḥammadan law, he should perform two genuflexions

language (if such he durst utter), they began to blaspheme Christ; but Anbuga, it seems, forbade them, saying, 'We know that the Messias is God.' Some time after, certain Muḥammadans, meeting the monk on the road, urged him to dispute, and, as they laughed at him, because he could not defend his religion by reason, he was going to confuse them with his whip. These things coming to the Khān's [Kā'an's] ears, he commanded Sergius, and the other priests, to remove to a greater distance from the Court."

Rubruquis had, himself, a disputation with a Musalmān, as he states, in Mangū Kā'an's presence. He says, Mangū sent to acquaint him that, as there were Christians, Muḥammadans, and *Tuins* at his Court, and each of them pretended his Law was the best, and his Scriptures truest, he would be glad to have the matters argued, that he might judge whose cause was best. On the day appointed, the parties met before a numerous audience. Three of the Kā'an's secretaries, one of each persuasion, were arbitrators.

Rubruquis says he confuted the *Tuin*, who affirmed that "there was one supreme deity, and ten or eleven inferior gods, that none of them was omnipotent, that one half of things are good, the other bad, and that the souls of men passed from one body to another. The good friar also says that the Musalmāns confessed they believed everything contained in the Bible, and always prayed to God that they might die the death of Christians, but, with respect to this, we must needs be sceptical."

Mangū Kā'an, having been told that Rubruquis had called him a *Tuin* or idolator, sent for him on Whitsun Day, and asked him the question in the presence of his late *Tuin* adversary. Rubruquis having answered in the negative, Mangū told him that such had been his opinion all along. He then declared what his faith was. He said: "The Mughals believe there is but one God, and have an upright heart towards Him; that, as He hath given to the hand many fingers, so He hath infused into the minds of men various opinions. God hath," he continued, "given the Scriptures to you Christians, but you observe them not: you find it not there that one of you should revile another, or that for money a man ought to deviate from justice." The friar confessed all this; but, as he was going to make apology for himself, the Kā'an replied, that he did not apply what he had said to him, repeating, "God has given you the Scriptures, and you keep them not; but He hath given us soothsayers, whose injunctions we observe, and we live in peace."

If we are to credit the Armenian monk, Hayton, who was related to the King of Armenia, he, in his *Oriental History*, says the King sent his brother to the Kā'an, in 1253 [Rubruquis refers to his having passed him on his road back], who returned after four years' stay, and that after that the King himself went, and found Mangū at Almālgh, where the Kā'an was baptized, with all his Court, among whom were many of the chief men of the empire, at the Armenian King's request.



in prayer, in order that, to us and to thee, in the performance of this adoration, his unbecoming actions may be manifested." Kyuk commanded him, saying: "Arise, and perform two genuflexions in prayer, as with the congregation, according to the rites of thy religion." That godly Imām—God reward him!—called unto him one of the Musalmāns who was in the vicinity of the place, and arose, went through the form of pronouncing the call to prayer, and genuflexions, in accordance with the orthodox *Sunnī* rule, and standing up, Khalīf-like,<sup>6</sup> repeating, from his heart and mind, the verse: "Verily I have turned my face unto Him who hath created heaven and earth, being a true believer, and not one of the polytheists,"<sup>7</sup> began pronouncing "God is great." Then he commenced the form of prayer, and went through, as prescribed and enjoined, with due pause and ceremony, the standing, sitting, bowing, and prostration.

When, in the act of prostration, he placed his forehead to the ground, some individuals among the infidels, whom Kyuk had introduced and prompted, greatly annoyed that godly Imām, and the other Musalmān who had followed him [in the prayers], knocked their heads with force against the ground, and committed other unbecoming actions towards them, in order that, thereby, the prayers might perhaps be rendered ineffectual. But that godly Imām and holy sage continued to bear the whole of this annoyance and tyranny, performed all the required forms and ceremonies, and made no mistake whatever, and the prayers were in no way rendered ineffectual. Having delivered the salutation, he raised his face upwards towards the heavens, observed the form of "Invoke your Lord in humility and secresy," arose, with permission, and returned to his dwelling again. Almighty God of His perfect power and foe-consuming vengeance, that same night inflicted a disease upon Kyuk which, with the knife of death, severed the artery of his existence, so that verily that same night he went to hell, and the Musalmāns were delivered from his tyranny and oppression.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>6</sup> Like Ibrāhīm Khalīf 'Ullah—the Friend of God—is one of his titles.

<sup>7</sup> KUK'AN, chap. vi., verse 79

<sup>7</sup> Having arranged the affairs of the empire to his satisfaction, Kyūk resolved

When the sons of Kyuk beheld that awful vengeance, the next day they asked pardon of that Imām, and sought his good opinion. May God reward him and all true believers!

#### VI. BĀTŪ, SON OF TŪSHĪ, SON OF THE CHINGIZ KHĀN.

When Tūshī, the eldest son of the Chingiz Khān, as has been previously stated, was removed from the world<sup>a</sup> for conspiring against his father, several sons survived him, and the eldest of them all was Bātū.<sup>b</sup> The Chingiz Khān

to turn his face towards Ī-rān-Zamīn, and complete the subjugation of the territories therein. He passed the winter of 643 H—A D 1245-46—at the seat of sovereignty; and, when spring came round, with an immense host, he set out towards Ī-rān-Zamīn. On reaching the limits of Samrḳand, a week's journey from Bīgh-Bālīgh, death suddenly overtook him. The widow of Tālī Khān, Sūr Kākībī Bīgh, who cultivated good terms with Bātū Khān for a particular purpose, as will presently appear, suspected this movement on the part of Kyūk was against Bātū, and she sent him information at once.

Faṣīḥ-i and some others say that he was stricken with jaḳy—not gout: Bātū was gouty, however—and that he proceeded towards Samrḳand for change of climate.

The Fanākati says he reigned "nearly a year," but does not give the date of his decease.

Bātū Khān and other princes, who were on the way to join him with their troops, on receiving intimation of Kyūk's death, turned each back from the point he had reached, and returned to their own *ulūses* again.

Kyūk is said to have been merciful, liberal, and munificent, like his father, Ūktāe.

It is strange that our author, although so detailed in his account of the oppression of the Musalmāns, does not seem to know when and where Kyūk died.

<sup>a</sup> See page 1101.

<sup>b</sup> On the decease of Jūī Khān, the Chingiz Khān, his father, despatched his younger brother, Ūtūghīn, otherwise Ū-Tighīn, to the *urdu* [see note <sup>a</sup>, page 1101] of Jūī—some say, into the *Daht-i-Kīshāk*—to instal his son, Bātū or Bātūe, as it is also written, as successor to the appanage of his late father. The *Baḥr ul-Asrār* says, however, that Ūrdah, Bātū's elder brother, resigned his right to succeed in favour of Bātū, but it is probable that the Chingiz Khān nominated the one most capable of ruling over the *Daht-i-Kīshāk* and its dependencies. Bātū and others of the sons of Jūī held territories under their father; and one of them, the fifth son, Tūghāe Timūr Khān, whose mother was a *Kungkur-āt*, is said to have had assigned to him the territory of As and the *Meng-Kīshāk*, or "The Winter Station of the Meng" (*Man-gishlak* of the maps), and the "*ulūs-i-Chār-gānah*," or four tribes so styled—the *Tarkhān*, *Ūshūn*, *Meng*, and *Ūr-āt*—by his grandfather, and which Bātū, subsequently, confirmed him in. Tūghāe Timūr's chief *Khātūn* was

installed him in the place of his father, and all the states

Karak-Lük Bigi, daughter of the Bādshāh of the Nāemāns [Koshlūk]; and he was the founder, in time, of a separate dynasty. Bātū Khān, with several of his brothers, set out for the *yūral* of the Chingiz Khān, when the news of his grandfather's decease reached him, leaving Tūghāe Tīmūr his representative in Kīschāk, and was present at the installation of Ūktāe Kā'ān.

Tūghāe Tīmūr, like his elder brother, Barkah, became a convert to Islam, and, it is said, Barkah converted him to that faith.

Bātū is known by the title of the Šā-īn, or Šā-īn Khān, which title continued to be applied to his descendants down to modern times, and even after they became subject to the 'Ugmānī Turks.

Rubruquis, who had an interview with Bātū, says he was seated on a couch gilt all over, and his wife beside him. He had a fresh, ruddy, complexion, and, looking earnestly at the party, at length ordered them to speak. Then their guide bid them kneel on both knees, which they did, and Rubruquis began to pray for Bātū's conversion, at which he modestly smiled, but the others present jeered him.

After his return from the campaign in Khitāe, as previously mentioned, Ūktāe Kā'ān held a great *qūrultāe*, in 633 H., at a place named Tāīn Wasr, at which his sons, kinsmen, and the old Amīrs of the Chingiz Khān were present. After a month devoted to feasting and jollity, the laws and regulations of the Chingiz Khān were read out once more, and various rewards were given. It was then resolved that, as various parts of the empire had not been completely subjugated, and some were in a disturbed and disaffected state, each of his sons and kinsmen should be despatched at the head of armies into different parts, in order to arrange and settle their affairs, while the Kā'ān himself would proceed into the Dašt-i-Kīschāk at the head of another army. Mangū, son of Tūlī, although young in years at the time, gave very sound advice on this occasion. He urged that it was not advisable that the Kā'ān should go thither when he had so many sons and kinsmen whom he could send instead. This was approved by all present; and arrangements were made in conformity therewith.

The Šāh-zādabs appointed for this service were Mangū, Tūlī Khān's eldest son, and his brother Būghak [Kubīlāe is subsequently mentioned as being present, at least for part of the time, in the Dašt-i-Kīschāk]; of the family of Ūktāe, his eldest son, Kyūk, and his brother, Qadān Aghāl, and Bārī, Badār, and Kolkān, sons of Chaghatae, and among the great Amīrs was the Bahādūr, Swīdāe, also written Swīdān [Sahūdāh]. Having set out in the spring, in Jamādī-ul-Ākhar, 633 H. [March, 1235 A.D.], they passed the hot season of that year by the way, and towards its end—in the latter part of it—within the confines of Bulghār [Bulghār, its capital, was about fifty miles from Kāsān, and near the river Kāmā] joined the *urīk* of Bātū Khān, son of Jūji, who had succeeded to his father's appanage, and he was to hold the chief command. His brothers, Ūrdah, Šahbān, and Tingkūt, were likewise directed to proceed from the parts in which they were located, and join him, in order to accompany him on this expedition, which is famous as the Yūnsh i-Haft Sālah, or "Seven Years' Campaign." They were to invade the territories of Kīschāk [not yet subdued], the Urus [Rūs], Būlo [Poland?], Majār [Magyar], Bāshghird, Ās [Ossetae of Europeans], Sūdāk [Agdāk or Azof], Krim, and Charkas [the territory of the Cheremis, I believe, not the Circassians], and

of the tribes of Turkistān, from Khwārazm, Bulghār,

clear them of foreigners and enemies. They penetrated, as will be mentioned farther on, as far west as Poland and Silesia, as well as Russia.

All things being prepared, Bātū Khān, with Shaibān, and Boroldāe, with an army, commenced his march to subdue the Būlo [the Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr says the Kalār] and the Bashghird; and, having arrived in those parts, they, in a short time, subdued those territories, slew a great number of people, and carried off great booty. The Būlo were a mighty people of Christian faith, and the frontier of their country was adjoining that of the Farangs. Hearing of Bātū Khān's advance, they, arrogant because of their grandeur, and the number of their troops, moved forward to oppose him with an army of 40 *thousands*—400,000—composed of chosen warriors, who considered it an eternal disgrace to fly from the battle-field. Bātū Khān detached his brother, Shaibān [the Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr says Salnāk], with 10,000 horse as a vanguard, in order to reconnoitre the enemy and obtain information as to the number and position of their army. In the course of a week he returned, bringing information that the Būlān [Poles?] were, like the Mughals, all able and efficient men, and ten times more numerous than themselves.

The two armies soon came in sight of each other. They were separated by a morass—the Fanākātī and Aīfī say a river or water, but it would seem to refer to a morass containing a considerable body of water. Bātū requested the Musalmāns in his army to assemble together in prayer, and call upon Almighty God to give them the victory, while he, himself, as was his wont on such occasions, like his grandfather before him, retired to a hill or rising ground, and, during a night and day, without speaking word to any one, occupied himself in prayer and supplication to the Most High to accord the victory to his army. During the next night he sent Boroldāe [the Fanākātī says, his brother Shaibān] and some Amīrs, with their troops, to cross the water during the night, which they accomplished. Next morning early Bātū passed over and attacked the Būlān in person. By what means he crossed with his army, whether by a bridge or otherwise, is not stated, but it must have been a hazardous proceeding. Repeated charges were made upon the enemy, but they, being so strong in point of numbers, did not move from their position; and Shaibān greatly distinguished himself, in such wise that his prowess called forth praises from both sides. The force which, under Boroldāe, had passed over during the night, now attacked the enemy in the rear. The Mughal troops penetrated into their camp, and began cutting the ropes of the tents. They made towards the tent of Kalar [K], their Bādāshāh [Bela IV, king of Hungary of European writers?], and cut the ropes with their swords, and overturned it. Seeing this, his soldiers lost heart, and the main body of the Mughal army under Bātū, having pushed forward at the same time, the Būlān gave way and took to flight. The Mughals pursued, and made such slaughter among them "as cannot be computed."

The first place attacked, according to the Fanākātī, and the Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr, but which works enter into no details, was the city of Mankas—منكس—which, on account of the denseness of the forests among which it lay, was difficult to approach, even on foot. The trees were, however, felled on either side, and around it, sufficient to enable four carts to move abreast, which enabled Bātū to invest it. The city was, in due time, captured, and the inhabitants massacred; and it is stated that the left ears of all those slain were

Barṭās, Saḳlāb, as far as the boundaries of Rūm, came

cut off in order to obtain the number of them, and that the total amounted to 270,000. Its capture, in 636 H., is mentioned farther on.

Such was not unusual, even in comparatively modern times. Gerbillon [1699] mentions that, in the battle which took place between "Bosto or Bostugo Khān, Prince of the Kalmuks," and "Zun [Jūi?] Khān" Prince of the Mughals, the latter were defeated with great slaughter, and that nine camel-loads of ears and locks of hair were brought to him.

When the spring of the following year came round, Bātū Khān, having disposed of the affairs of Kūshāh, Rūs, and Ālān, resolved to turn his arms against the territory of Kalār—*Ḳ*—[Būlo of Alfi] and Bāghghur or Bāghkūr.

Wolff, in his History of the Mughals, refers to nine sacks full of ears having been collected after the battle near Signitz, fought on the 9th April, 1240 A.D. [15th Ramaṣān, 638 H.], but this appears much too late a date for the capture of the city in question, as that took place early in the campaign, in the year 633 H. [1235-36 A.D.], under which year also it is recorded in Alfi; and, from what follows, the inhabitants do not appear to have been Christians.

After this victory, the territories previously named are said to have fallen under the sway of the Mughals, "and a portion of Farang likewise."

This disastrous battle is that which took place, according to Von Hammer, on the banks of the Sayo, a tributary of the Theiss, in which Bela IV., King of Hungary, was overthrown in the spring of 1241 A.D., which accords with the last quarter of 638 H., but Alfi records it under the events of the year 623 of the Rīblat, equivalent to 633 H.; but this can scarcely be correct, for the other princes only set out to join Bātū in that year, and, as it is mentioned soon after the capture of the city of Mankas, the correct date would be 634 H., which commenced on September 3rd, 1236 A.D. In the accounts given by European writers generally, Bātū Khān's troops are incorrectly styled an army of "Tartars" [there were certainly some Tārtārs among these forces, as well as Turks and Tājiks, who were subject to the Mughal yoke], by some called "Thatturi," and, by others, "Mangali," and these were under the command of "Bathus and Pefa, sons of Hocotum Cham, son of Genzis Chara"! "Bathus, with his forces, had ravaged Great Russia, Lithuania, Poland, and Bohemia. The Cumani, a Sarmatian nation [the Kūmāns of Oriental authors], whose territory had been previously ravaged by the Mughal troops, brought intimation to the king of Hungary of the invasion of the countries of Rūs, Ālān, and Kūshāh, by the Mughals, and sought permission themselves to take shelter in Hungary, promising, in return, to turn Christians, and to be loyal subjects. Permission was granted; and some 40,000 Kūmāns, with their slaves, came into Hungary. The subjects of Bela IV., king of that country, were disaffected towards him; and, as the advance of Bātū took place within a year of the Kūmāns' arrival in their country, the Hungarians accused them of having instigated the Mughals to come, and slew their chief, and his attendants, on his way to join King Bela. This act caused the Kūmāns to join the invaders, who had ravaged Russia and sent part of their forces into Silesia, Moravia, and Bohemia, while Bathus with an army of 300,000 men was advancing towards the frontiers of Hungary. Meanwhile, King Bela, with an army nearly as numerous, moved to encounter them; and, as he advanced, they retreated leisurely towards Agria, both leaders seeking a favourable opportunity to give battle; but Bela's troops, as I have said before, were

under his sway ; and, in that region, he subjugated all the

disaffected, and rather wished that Bela might be defeated. At length the two armies drew so near each other that their respective camps were only separated by a marsh [this, no doubt, is the river or water of the Musalmān writers], which the Mughals finding passable crossed over by stealth in some places, and surrounded the camp of the Hungarians. One morning at daybreak the Mughals began the attack by volleys of arrows. The Hungarians, confounded at this unexpected attack, could not be persuaded to leave their camp. The upshot was that they were totally defeated, and the greater number perished : some say from 100,000 to 65,000 men. Pesth is said to have fallen immediately after.

"The Mughals then proceeded to ravage Upper Hungary, and King Bela had to fly into Austria. Then the invaders passed the Danube on the ice, entered and subdued Strigonia, while detached bands pursued Bela into Dalmatia. Unable to take him, they turned aside into Croatia, Bosnia, and Bulgaria, pillaging and destroying. At this time news reached Bathus of the decease of Hocotam Cham [his father !], on which he set out on his return homewards through Cumania and Ruthenia." This latter is a specimen of history writing ; Jūi Khān, Bātū's father, had been dead ten years before the campaign began.

Rubruquis, who passed through the Daġht-i Kīfchākh about sixteen or seven teen years after these events, says the whole country between the Danube and the Ałı was possessed by the *Koman Kapchak*, "who are," he says, "called Valani by the Germans, and their country Valania."

It will be seen from this that there is some discrepancy between the two accounts of eastern and western writers, and that the latter have made terrible havoc with the names, wrongly imagined that Bātū was the son of Ūktāe Kū'ān, instead of being his nephew, and turned all the Mughals into "Tatars." There is little doubt but that the Kūmāns were of Turkish descent, and that, as before stated, there were some Turks, Tāttārs, and Tāġāks in Bātū's army. Kādān Aghul, and Malik, sons of Ūktāe, were by a Kūmān concubine. Other blunders committed by most European writers are with regard to the dates, and the supposition that Ūktāe's death was the cause of the return of the Mughal princes and their armies, whereas, as has been, and will be presently, related, these wars were over, and they returned to their respective territories *before* the death of Ūktāe, which took place on the 5th day of the sixth month of 639 H — 10th December, 1241 A.D. ; and yet, according to the European writers, the battle of Lignitz was only fought in April of that very year, and the "Mongols" only crossed the Danube on the ice, after the great battle in which Bela, king of Hungary, was overthrown, to attack Gran, on the 25th December, 1241, or, according to this theory, twenty days *after* "Hocotam's" death.

After overrunning the country of Bolu [بولو], the Shāh-zādahs, and Amīrs, during the [following] winter, assembled on the banks of the river Jānān [جانان], and the Bahādur, Swīdāe [Sahūdah], with a large force, was despatched into the country of Urūs [also styled Rūs], and the frontiers of Bulghār. He penetrated as far as the city of Komak [كومك], and overthrew the armies of that state, after much fighting, and brought it under subjection ; and, the capital thereof having been reduced to wretchedness and desolation, the Amīrs of that place came out, proceeded to the presence of the Shāh-zādahs, and made their submission. They were well treated, received favours

tribes of *Khifchāk*, *Kankuli*, *Yamak*, *Ilbari* [*Albari*],<sup>1</sup> *Rūs*,<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The tribe to which *Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn*, *I-yal-timish*, belonged, and also *Ulugh Khān*, and his brother, and cousin. Our author connects them with the *Yamak* also. See pages 599, 791, 796, 800, and last page.

<sup>2</sup> In some copies written *روس* and *ارس*. The tract referred to is *Russia* in its restricted signification—*Russia Proper*. The meaning of *Rūs* is said to be "fox," which, to say the least, is suggestive.

and benefits, and were permitted to return [as vassals of the *Mughals*]. Again they became rebellious, and the *Shāh-zādahs* again detached *Swidāe* [*Sahūdāh*]. He soon reduced the disaffected, and put all concerned in the outbreak to death.

After these events a council was held by the *Shāh-zādahs*, and it was agreed that each one, with the troops under him, should march towards different points [where this council was held is not stated], subdue such territories as lay in his way, and destroy the fortified places. *Mangū*, accordingly, continued to advance on the left hand towards *Jirkah* [چرک] or *Churkah* [چرک], keeping along the banks of the *Jirkah* or *Churkah* river, and *Baymān* [This name is doubtful. It is written *نجمان*—*Najmān*, or *Baymān*—*تاجمان*—*Tajmān*—*Tajmān*—without any points. It may also be read *Tajmān*, or it may be *Tajmān*, but it seems to be *Baymān*, from the various modes here given, who was a great Amīr, and redoubtable warrior of the tribe or people of the *Aolbarlang* [اولبرلنگ] of the peoples of *Khifchāk*, and *Ājār Olūkah* [آچار اولوک] of the tribe of *Ās* [Ossetæ?], he made prisoners. It happened in this wise. *Baymān*, with a body of robbers, who had escaped the sword [probably at the time *Kūktāe* and *Swidāe* [*Sahūdāh*], at the commencement of *Ūktāe*'s reign, moved into those parts. See note <sup>2</sup>, page 1115], having been joined by other fugitives, were harrying the parts around and carrying off property, and the sedition was increasing daily. The *Mughals* were unable to lay hands on this *Baymān*, and he used to hide in the vast forests of canes along the banks of the *Ātūl* or *Volga*. *Mangū* caused two hundred vessels to be prepared, on each of which he embarked 100 *Mughals*, while *Mangū* himself, and his brother, *Tūkal*, moved along down either bank with their forces. [Neither *Mangū* nor his brother embarked on board these vessels. they would have defeated their own object if they had done so.] At last the troops under *Mangū* reached one of these forests of canes, and discovered traces of a recent encampment. After some search, an old woman, who had been left behind because she was sick, was discovered. On being questioned, she, to save her life, confessed that *Baymān* and his followers had recently decamped, and were then lurking in a certain island, which she pointed out, with all his property and effects. As his boats were not there, and he was unable to cross to the island, *Mangū* sent messengers to hasten onwards his vessels, but it so happened that, before the vessels arrived, a high wind arose, and the waters became so disturbed, and the waves rose so, that the shallow part which constituted the ford, pointed out by the old woman, became partially exposed from one side to the other. *Mangū* pushed across with his troops and caught *Baymān*, who requested that *Mangū* would put him to death with his own hand, but this he declined, and directed his brother, *Tūkal*, to cut him in two. On this island *Ājār Olūkah*, the Amīr of the *Ās*, was also slain. *Mangū* passed part of the summer on this island, and when the weather became very hot he moved into another country.

**Charkas,**<sup>3</sup> and **As,**<sup>4</sup> as far as the **Bahr-i-Zulmat** [Sea of

<sup>3</sup> The people styled Tachermiss probably, who, in ancient times, dwelt between the Volga and Tannus or Don.

<sup>4</sup> Said to have been a city of **Ḳiṣṣāḳ** giving name to a province.

These events are recorded as having taken place in the year 633 H. = September, 1235-36 A.D.

**Bātū Khān**, in the beginning of 634 H.—the latter part of 1236 A.D.—in concert with his brothers, **Ūrdah**, **Barkah**, and other **Shāh-zādahs**, undertook an expedition against **Toḡshāhī** [توغشایی] and **Barṭās**, and, after some delay, subdued their [those?] territories. Towards the close of this year, the **Shāh-zādahs** present held a *kūrultāi*, and it was therein determined to make war on the **Urūs** [اروس]. **Bātū**, **Ūrdah**, **Kyūk**, **Mangū**, **Kolkān**, **Ḳadān**, and **Būrī**, accordingly, invested the city of **Arpān**, and, after three days, it was captured by storm, and the city of **Ī-kah** [ایک] met the same fate. In the capture of **Ī-kah**, **Kolkān** [not the son of the **Chingiz Khān**, as supposed, merely because he bore an uncle's name who died long before, but **Chaghatai**'s son] was mortally wounded. One of the **Amīrs** of the **Urūs**, named **Aimān** [ایمان], also written **Azmān** [ازمان], advanced with an army against the **Mughals**, and, after many endeavours on his part, he was killed, with the greater part of his troops. The **Mughals** now captured the city of **Makār** [مکار] after five days' investment, and the ruler [**Hākīm**] of the city, who was named **Ūlā-tīmūr** [اولاتیمور]—**Vladimir**, son of the Grand Duke **George of Russia**?, was likewise killed. The city of **Bork-i-Bururg**—Great **Bork** [بورک]—was also invested, and, after eight days, during which its people fought desperately, it was taken, and fell into **Mangū Khān**'s hands. In the space of five days, the **Mughals** took the city of **Ḳatīklā** [قزقل], which is the native country of the **Wazīr** of **Lādān** or **Lāwān**. The **Amīr** of that country, **Wamkah Purko** [وکه پورکو], fled, and took shelter in a forest, and after some trouble he was captured and killed.

After this, the **Mughal Shāh-zādahs** made a retrograde movement [to the river **Don**?] and held counsel together respecting their future operations. It was agreed that they should continue to advance, *tomān* by *tomān*, to **Jīrkah** or **Chīrkah**, and capture and destroy every city and town and fortified place that came in their way. **Bātū**, on this occasion, appeared before the city of **Kasal Ankah** [کسل انک] and invested it for two months, but could not succeed in taking it. Subsequently, **Ḳadān**, and **Būrī**, arrived with their contingents, and, after three days, it was carried. After this they came to a pause, and took up their quarters in houses [for the winter?], and took their ease.

Towards the close of the year 635 H. [which commenced the end of August, 1237-38 A.D.], **Mangū** and **Ḳadān** marched into the country of the **Charkas** [Cheremis of **Nichi Novgorod**], and, in the midst of winter, entered it. The **Bādshah** of the **Charkas**, named **Būḳān** [بوکان—possibly **Yūḳān**—یوکان], was slain, and the country fell into the possession of the **Mughals**. In this year likewise, **Shāibān**, **Tūkal**, and **Būrī**, turned their attention to the country of **Marfm** [مرم], and subdued it from **Hejākān** [حصان—perhaps **Jejākān**—جیجان] as far as **Ḳarar** [قرار].

**Barkah**, during this year, set out towards **Ḳiṣṣāḳ**; and **Uzjāk** [وزجک], **Ḳozān** [قوزان], **Ḳezān** [قزآن], and other leaders, and their dependants, after



Darkness—the Arctic Sea ?],<sup>a</sup> and the whole submitted to his authority.

He was a very sagacious man, and friendly towards the

<sup>a</sup> A stormy sea is called by this name, in a passage in the *Qur'ān*, but there can be little doubt as to what sea is alluded to.

great slaughter, were captured, and their country devastated. After this, Barkah returned to the *urdu* of his uncle, Ūktāe Kā'ān, bearing along with him such a vast amount of spoil as cannot be computed.

In the year 636 H—August, 1239-40 A.D.—Kādān and Būrī proceeded towards the city of Mankas (منكس) during the height of winter, and took it, after forty-five days' investment. In the following year, 637 H—August, 1239-40 A.D.—Mangū Khān and Kublāe were directed to return from the Daḡht-i-Kiſchāk, while Bātū Khān and his brothers, and Kādān, Būrī, and Būchak, marched to attack the country of Urus [agam], and the tribe and soldiers of Halahān (هلاخان—called Halā Khān—هلالخان by some). The great city of the Urus (اروس) was captured by Mangū in nine days. The Mughals continued to advance towards the cities of Ūlā-tīmūr [Vladimr] and Jīrkah or Chirkah, *tomān* by *tomān*, taking and destroying all the fortified places they met with in their route. During this expedition, after three days, the city of Ūch-Ūghūl Ulādmūr (اوج اولادمور) was taken, which evidently refers to the city of Kiev.

"The Russians," according to the "*Modern Universal History*," quoting Petreus, par 11, were reduced to a most deplorable situation, perpetually distressed by their own sovereigns, harassed by their neighbours, and exposed to all the calamities of war; when, to complete their misery, the Tartars [Mughals?], still greater savages than themselves, poured in upon them with irresistible fury, and actually made a conquest of their country. History does not inform us of the particulars of this remarkable event, any farther than that innumerable multitudes of those barbarians, headed by their khan *Batto* or *Battu*, after ravaging great part of Poland and Silesia, broke suddenly into Russia, and laid waste everything before them, marking their steps with every act of cruelty. Most of the Russian princes, among whom was the great Duke George Sevodolitz, were made prisoners, and racked to death, in short, none found mercy but those who voluntarily acknowledged the Tartars [Mughals?] for their lords. The relentless conqueror imposed upon the Russians everything that is most mortifying in slavery, insisting that they should have no other princes than such as he approved of [History repeats itself often—this reads much like part of recent treaties which one power wished to impose upon the 'Uḡmānīl Turks, and another upon Afghāns]; and that they should pay him a yearly tribute, to be brought by their sovereigns themselves, now his vassals, on foot, who were to present it humbly to the Tartarian [Mughal?] ambassador on horseback. They were also to prostrate themselves before the haughty Tartar [Mughal?], to offer him milk to drink, and, if any drops of it fell down, to lick them up—a singular mark of servility, worthy of the barbarian who imposed it, and which lasted near two hundred and sixty years."

A duke or prince of the Rūs or Russians attended, as a vassal of the Mughals, the installation of Kyūk Khān, but was compelled to stand *outside* the audience tent or *khargah*. This is confirmed by John de Plano Carpini, who reached Kyūk's *urdu* in 1246 A.D.—644 H.—before Kyūk was elected, and he found Jeroslaus standing at the door of the *khargah*.

Musalmāns, and, under his protection, they used to live contented and happy. In his camp, and among his tribes, there were *masjids* with regular congregations, an Imām, and Mu'azzin, all duly organized; and, during the period of his reign, and the term of his life, the territories of Islām sustained neither harm nor injury by his command, nor from his dependents nor troops. The Musalmāns of Tur-kistān, under the shadow of his guardianship, enjoyed great affluence and infinite security.

Out of every country of Ī-rān which fell under the jurisdiction of the Mughals, he [Bātū] had a specified assignment, and his factors were placed over such portions as had been allotted to him,<sup>6</sup> and all the Grandees and Leaders of the Mughal forces were obedient unto Bātū, and used to look upon him in the light of his father Tūshī.

When Kyuk departed from the world, all concurred in the sovereignty of Bātū, with the exception of the sons of Chaghatāe, and made this request to him, that he would accept the throne of the Mughals, and assume the sovereignty,<sup>7</sup> in order that all might obey his commands. Bātū did not consent; and Mangū Khān, son of Tūlī, son of the Chingiz Khān, was raised to the sovereignty, as will, subsequently, be related.

Some among the trustworthy have stated on this wise, that Bātū, privately, and in secret, had become a Musalmān,<sup>8</sup> but used not to make it known, and that he reposed implicit confidence in the people of Islām. For twenty-eight years, more or less, he ruled over this extent of country [as previously mentioned], and died.<sup>9</sup> The mercy

<sup>6</sup> As head of the race and family See page 1177

<sup>7</sup> Not mentioned by any other author, but extremely probable It is also stated again at page 1164

<sup>8</sup> So he says respecting Ūktāe Kā'an

<sup>9</sup> After his return from the seven years' campaign, by command of his uncle, Ūktāe Kā'an, Bātū was raised to the sovereignty over all the parts of Kāschāk, and the farther west, including the extensive territories which he had subdued and made tributary, and he proceeded to the presence of his uncle, and remained with him some time. He subsequently returned to his own dominions.

In 639 H he was struck with paralysis, hence his inability to come to the Urdūe Bāligh to hold a *kūrūtūe* on the death of Kyūk; and, in the year 650 H, he died on the banks of the Atıl or Wolga, at the age of forty-eight, having been born in 602 H. There is some discrepancy regarding the date of

of the Almighty be upon him, if a true believer, and, if an infidel, may the Almighty lessen his punishment [in hell]!

They buried him in conformity with the Mughal custom; and among that people it is the usage, when one of them dies, to prepare a place under ground about the size of a chamber or hall, in largeness proportionate to the rank and degree of the accursed one who may have departed to hell. They furnish it with a throne and covering for the ground, and they place there vessels and numerous effects, together with his arms and weapons, and whatever may have been his own private property, and some of his wives, and slaves, male or female, and the person he loved most above all others. When they have placed that accursed one upon the throne, they bury his most beloved along with him in that place. In the night-time the place is covered up, and horses are driven over it, in such a manner that not a trace of it remains.<sup>1</sup> This custom of theirs—God curse them!—is comprehended by all Musalmāns. Here an astonishing anecdote which the author has heard is recorded, in order that readers thereof may, respecting the things of the world to come, increase their reverence; but God is all knowing.

#### AN ASTONISHING ANECDOTE.

An astonishing anecdote, which was heard from the **Khawājah** [opulent merchant], whose word is reliable, whom

his decease. Some say it happened in 645 H., some in 653 H., others in 654 H., and that he was aged forty-seven, and others, again, give 662 H. as the date; but, as nearly all agree that he was born in 601 or 602 H., and died at the age of forty-seven or forty-eight, there is no doubt that 650 H. is the correct year of his death.

Bātū Khān founded the city known as the Sarāe, on the Ātil or Wolga. He was succeeded by his son, Surtāk, who will be mentioned farther on.

<sup>1</sup> That quaint old traveller, Sir John Maundeville, had heard a correct version of the mode of interment, which he gives in detail, and winds up saying: "Many cause themselves to be interred privately by night, in wild places, and the grass put again over the pit to grow; or they cover the pit with gravel and sand, that no man may perceive where the pit is, to the intent that never after may his friends have mind or remembrance of him"—*Early Travels in Palestine*. London. Bohn.

Rubruquis states, and quite correctly too, with reference to burials, that, if the deceased be of the race of the Chingiz Khān, *his sepulchre is rarely known*. See note at page 1089, para. 5.

they used to style Rashīd-ud-Dīn, the Ḥakīm, a native of Balkh, is here related, in order that it may be acceptable to the Sultān of the Sultāns of Islām.

This Khwājah, Rashīd-ud-Dīn, the Ḥakīm, had come into Hindūstān from Khurāsān, in the year 648 H., for purposes of trade, and he accompanied the author of this ṬABAḲĀT, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, on a journey [from Dihlī] to Multān.\* He related as follows: "One of the Mughal lords, in the territory of Qarā-Quram,<sup>1</sup> who possessed numerous followers and servants and great wealth, [died and] went to hell. They accordingly caused a place to be prepared, with the utmost ceremony, for the interment of that accursed one, and placed with him arms and other effects, and furniture and utensils in great quantity. A couch also, adorned and decorated, they had prepared; and desired to bury, along with him, the most loved of his people. They consulted together as to whom among his servants they should inter who would be the one to whom he was most attached.

"There was a youth of the confines of Tirmid of Khurāsān,<sup>2</sup> who, in his childhood, had fallen captive into the hands of this Mughal *gabr*<sup>3</sup> in the beginning of the misfortunes of Khurāsān; and, when he reached puberty, and grew into youth and virility, and attained unto man's estate, he turned out exceedingly active, intelligent, expert, and frugal, in such wise, that everything belonging to that accursed one, in whole and in part, came under the youth's disposal, and, as this Mughal had called him son, on this account, the whole of the property and effects, and cattle, and whatever else belonged to him, the youth had taken under his control. All the servants and followers of that

\* This was on the occasion of our author's proceeding thither in order to despatch the slaves to his "dear sister" in Khurāsān. Perhaps they went along with Rashīd-ud-Dīn's own *kāfilah*, indeed, it is most probable that they accompanied it. At page 687, our author says he set out himself in Zi-Ḥijjah of 647 H., and returned again to Dihlī in Jamādi-ul-Ākhir, 648 H.

<sup>1</sup> In a few copies, "the territory of Qarā-Quram of the Mughals," as though that was some other Qarā-Quram.

<sup>2</sup> The Āmūyah being correctly considered as the boundary of Khurāsān.

<sup>3</sup> An entry on "Fire-Worship" in Mughalistan is not required to elucidate this any more than in Hindūstān or Upper India. The signification of this word, and the way in which it is applied, has been given at page 620.

Mughal were under his orders, so that not one of them, without the permission of that youth, used to have the power of making use of anything belonging to that accursed one. At this time, all of them [the Mughals], with one accord, girded up their loins to despatch this youth, saying: 'The deceased [Mughal] used not to regard any one more than this youth: it is necessary to inter him along with him.' Their object was to destroy this youth, and take vengeance on him for the sway he had exercised; and, in this proceeding, all agreed. The Musalmān youth, in this state of affliction, was astounded, and resigned his heart to death, seeing that he had no asylum and no succour, save in the Lord, the Helper of the Helpless. He stretched out the hand of supplication to the promise of Him, "who hears the distressed when they pray unto Him,"<sup>6</sup> and performed the ablution of purification, donned clean clothes, and placed his foot within that subterranean [chamber].

"When they had covered it up, in a corner of this chamber, that poor creature turned his face towards the *kiblah*, repeated a prayer of two genuflexions, and then occupied himself in repeating the Musalmān creed. Suddenly, a side of the chamber opened, and two persons, so majestic and awe-striking that the bile of a hundred thousand lions, at their aspect, would turn to water, entered. Each of them bore a fiery javelin, out of which issued flames of fire, and the flames encircled the couch of the [dead] Mughal all round; and a small spark from the fiery sparks [issuing from the flames], about the size of a needle's point, fell upon the cheek of that youth, burnt it, and made it smart. One of these two persons said: 'There appears to be a Musalmān here;' and the other turned his face on the youth and asked: 'Who art thou?' The youth states that he answered: 'I am a poor and miserable captive, captured by the hands of that Mughal.' They demanded: 'From whence art thou?'' and I replied: 'From Tirmid.' They then struck one side of the chamber with the heads of their javelins, and it rent

<sup>6</sup> KUR'ĀN, chap. xxvii, verse 63

<sup>7</sup> Strange that these supernatural beings did not know all about him, and that this never occurred to the narrator.

asunder to the extent of about [the size of] a doorway, and they said: 'Go out!' and I placed my foot without, and I found myself in the Tirmid country."

"From that place, namely, Ḳarā-Ḳuram\* of the Muḡhals to Tirmid, is a distance of six months' journey and more; and, up to this time, that youth is dwelling upon his own property and possessions, on the confines of Tirmid; and whatever salve he continues to apply to the hurt occasioned by that spark of fire, it is ineffectual to heal it, and it continues open to the size of a needle's point, and to discharge as before." Glory to Him who contrives what He pleases!

May Almighty God long preserve the Sultān of the Sultāns of the age, NĀSIR-UD-DUNYĀ WA UD-DĪN, upon the throne of sovereignty!

#### VII. MANGŪ KHĀN,\* SON OF TÜLĪ KHĀN, SON OF THE CHINGIZ KHAN

Trustworthy persons have stated that Tūlī was the

\* Here also, as at the beginning of this anecdote, two of the most modern copies of the text have Ḳarā-Ḳūm for Ḳarā-Ḳuram. See para 6 of note, page 1140.

\* Like Ūkdāe or Ūktāe, Mangū is always styled Kā'an.

Tūlī, or Tūlūe, as the name is also written, had *ten* sons, but the four named by our author were the most renowned among the Musalmāns: (1) Mangū Khān, (2) Ḳabilāe Khān, (3) Hulākū Khān, and (4) Irṭuk Būkā.

Our author has not devoted a separate heading to Tūlī Khān, although he was as much entitled to it as Ūktāe, Chaghatae, or Jūjī, but the account of his life is contained in the reigns of his father and brother Ūktāe. Tūlī was the youngest son, and most beloved by his father, and, when very young in years, his father married him to the daughter of the Jānkabū, Badāe, brother of the Āwang Khān, named Siūr Ḳūqībī Bigī, and by that Karāyat wife, the chief of his Khātūns, he had the four sons named above. At his decease, which took place in 628 H., was a source of grief to Ūktāe Kā'an, care was taken that the word "Tūlī," which in their language signifies a mirror, should not be mentioned, and instead of using the word *tūlī* for mirror, after his decease, the word *gūngū* was had recourse to, bearing the same signification, and it became common in consequence. Command was also issued that the name Tūlī should not be given to any one again. The Jahān-Ārā says that Mangū, Tūlī's son, commanded the use of the word *gūngū*.

Ūktāe, when he used to have recourse to drink, and became inebriated, would say that he first took to it in order to divert his thoughts from dwelling on the bereavement he had sustained by the loss of his brother Tūlī.

The authority from which the author of "*Mongols Proper*" draws a version of this little episode, and a very erroneous version, must have been "in a fix"

youngest son of the Chingiz Khān; and it was he who destroyed the cities of Khurāsān, as has been previously recorded respecting him, in the account of the downfall of the city of Hirāt. He had four sons, the eldest being Mangū Khān, the second, Hulā'ū, the third, Irtuk Būkah, and the fourth, Kublā.

When Kyuk went to hell, the sons of Chaghatāe demanded the sovereignty; and they, having a great number of horsemen and dependents, did not consent to the sovereignty of Mangū Khān. The beginning of this matter was in this manner. When Kyuk departed from this world, all the great chiefs of the Mughal armies turned their faces towards Bātū [son of Tūshī] saying: "It becometh that thou shouldst be our sovereign, since, of the race of the Chingiz Khān, there is no one greater than thou; and the throne and diadem, and the rulership, becometh thee best." Bātū replied: "I and my brother, which is Barkā, possess [already] so great a sovereignty and empire in this part,<sup>1</sup> that to rule over it, together with

to translate it, and has consequently made it ridiculous:—"Tulu in Mongol means 'murder,' and the Turkish synonym of the word, viz, *gucugru*, was eradicated from the language," etc. So *gucugru* was eradicated so that "Tulu" might be perpetuated!

Tūf Khān was known by the titles of the Yakah or the Unique Nū-yīn and the Ulugh or Great Nū-yīn, but certainly he was not referred to—at least, by Mughals—as the "Great Novan."

<sup>1</sup> Our author forgets to say where The Dasht-i Kūchāk, and the vast territories farther west, are referred to. See under the account of Bātū, page 1165

On the death of Kyūk Khān, again disorder arose in the affairs of the empire. The Khātūn of the late Khān, Ūkūl-Kūtmish, or Ūghūl-Kūtmish, as the name is also written, according to previous usage, in concert with, and by the advice of, the ministers and Amīrs present in the great urdū, or yūrat, assumed the direction of affairs. The routes, too, had become closed, as each of the Shāh-zādahs, Nū-yīns, and Amīrs, with his followers, were on their way to the urdū, but, when they became aware of Kyūk's decease, they halted then and there, and delayed in expectation of the accession of a Khān; and each of the Shāh-zādahs was beginning to plot sedition, and stir up dissension, particularly the sons of Ūktāe Kā'an, who entertained ideas of their rights to the succession, after the promise made to Kyūk by those present at his accession.

Bātū Khān, son of Jūfī, was the real head of the family of the Chingiz Khān, and of the Mughal Ī-māk, was acknowledged as such by the whole family, and all the different Mughal tribes, and was looked up to and held in great reverence in consequence. He had, however, in 639 H., been stricken with paralysis, in one or both legs, which the historians term *dard-i-pīr*, literally

possession of, and away over, the states of **Chīn**, **Turkistān**,

signifying, "pain, ache, or affliction of the foot or leg," which some modern translators interpret as gout; but gout is temporary, as far as moving about is concerned, while Bātū's affliction was permanent, and precluded his undertaking a long journey. He was, consequently, unable to proceed from the **Dasht-i Khushchāk** to the ancient *yūrat* and *yūrat* of the **Chingiz Khān**, as was usual on such occasion, but he sent out envoys, by virtue of his position, to the different **Shāh-zādahs**, and **Amīrs**, saying "Let each one get ready to come into **Khushchāk**, so that we may hold a *kūriltāi* of the different brothers, and brothers' sons, and consult as to whom we shall choose to succeed to the **Khān**-ship, since, on account of my paralysis, I am unable to proceed to **Kalūr-ān**, which is the original *yūrat* and the seat of sovereignty of the **Chingiz Khān**."

The agents of Bātū in due course delivered their message, but **Qarā Aghūl**, son of **Chaghatai**, and the sons of **Kyūk**, declined to obey, saying: "The ancient *yūrat* and seat of sovereignty of the **Chingiz Khān** is **Ū-tāk** or **Ū-tāgh** and **Kalūr-ān**, and it is not at all necessary for us to go into **Khushchāk** to hold a *kūriltāi*," and **Khawājah**, the **Nū-yīn**, **Qarklūkār**, and the **Nū-yīn**, **Timūr**, who were the **Amīrs** of **Qarā-Quram**, they therefore sent to act as their deputies, and to sign anything that might be agreed upon among the **Shāh-zādahs** **Sūr Kūktbi-Bigī**, the mother of **Mangū**, however, having heard that the sons of **Ūktāi Kā'ān**, **Chaghatai Khān**, and **Kyūk Khān**, refused to comply with Bātū Khān's request, advised her sons, particularly **Mangū**, her eldest, to lose no time in proceeding to the presence of their **Ākā**, and paying homage to him; and **Mangū** and his brothers set out without loss of time. Having reached the **Dasht-i Khushchāk**, and the presence of Bātū Khān, he received them with great favour, and paid **Mangū** great attention. Bātū stated to the other **Shāh-zādahs** present at the *kūriltāi* then assembled, that he had already remarked **Mangū**'s fitness for the **Khān**-ship, and, besides, reminded them that he had already experienced the good and evil, the sweet and bitter, of life, and the affairs of the world, had several times commanded armies, and had been held in estimation by **Ūktāi Kā'ān**, the **Shāh-zādahs** and **Amīrs**, and the soldiery. Bātū added, "The **Kā'ān** sent him along with me, and my brothers, **Ūrdah**, **Shahbān**, and **Tingkūt**, and others of the family of **Jūyī**, accompanied by his brother **Korkān** [**Būchak** is mentioned as having gone. See note on page 1164], and **Kyūk**, into the territory of **Khushchāk**, and other countries, where he greatly distinguished himself. After that, when the **Kā'ān** commanded that the **Shāh-zādahs** [that is, other than those of **Jūyī**'s family, whose appanage was the territories of **Khushchāk**, and other western countries] should return, before they reached the **Kā'ān**'s presence he was dead. The **Kā'ān**'s will was, that **Shirāmūn**, his grandson, should succeed him, but **Tūrā Kīnnh Khātūn** set aside his commands, and set up her own son, **Kyūk**, in the place of his father, **Ūktāi**. Now it is proper that **Mangū Khān** should succeed, and he is worthy of succeeding, and there is none other so fitting and capable of directing the affairs of the empire and of the army. More than this, **Mangū** is the son of my uncle, **Tūltū Khān**, the youngest son of the **Chingiz Khān**, and to whom appertained the charge of the great *yūrat*, and as, according to the ordinances and usages of the **Mughals**, the dwelling-place of the father belongs to the youngest son, therefore the sovereignty belongs to **Mangū**." The others present acquiesced, and, the right of **Mangū** having been determined, Bātū Khān despatched envoys to the **Khātūns** and sons of **Ūktāi**, and to **Sūr Kūktbi-Bigī**, **Mangū**'s mother, and the other **Shāh-zādahs** and great **Amīrs**



and 'Ajam, would be impossible. It will be advisable

of the Dast-i-Rāst, and Dast-i-Chap [i.e. who, in the assemblies of the Chingiz Khān, and his son, Ūktāe, used to sit on the right and left, and who belonged to the Hazārah's of the right and left wings. See note at page 1093], saying, that "by the Shāh-zādahs who, with their eyes, had seen the Chingiz Khān, and who, with their ears, had heard his laws and ordinances, the Shāh-zādahs present in this *kūriltāe*, it was deemed advisable, on the part of the *ulūs*, the army, and the people generally, to raise Mangū to the sovereignty."

Having thus selected Mangū, Bātū Khān directed his brothers Ūdah, Shaibān, and Barkāe, or Barkah, as he is also called, the Shāh-zādahs of the Dast-i-Rāst, the whole family of Jūji, Karā Hülākū, and others of the sons of Chaghatāe, and the Shāh-zādahs of the Karā Bilād [صلا ١٢], to prepare a great banquet in honour of the occasion, and to seat Mangū on the throne, but Mangū made some hesitation [for form's sake, probably?], when his brother, Mūkāe, or Mūkā Aghūl, got up, and said: "Have we not all stipulated and signed our hands that we would not act contrary to the command of the Šā-in Khān, Bātū, how therefore can Mangū hesitate to accede to his commands, and neglect to give ear to his words?" All present applauded this speech of Mūkāe's, and Mangū therefore signified his willingness. Then, as was customary, Bātū Khān arose, seated Mangū on the throne, and saluted him as Kā'an, and all present, following his example, did the same. Bātū then held the goblet to him, and, followed by the others, bent the knee to him nine times, opened his girdle, doffed his cap, and acknowledged his fealty to him.

It was then determined that a great *kūriltāe* should be summoned to meet at Kalūr-ān to confirm this decision, and, accordingly, all those who attended this one departed for their own *yūrats*, and the accession of Mangū became noised abroad in all parts. Bātū then directed his brothers, Baikāe and Būkā Tīmūr—the Fanākātī says Ūdah and Shaibān also went—to accompany Mangū, with a large army, to the *khargāh* of Kalūr-ān [referring to the *urdu* of the Chingiz Khān], and, in the presence of the Shāh-zādahs, to seat him on the throne there likewise. Mangū's mother used all her influence, which was very great, to induce the adverse party to attend, and most of the Shāh-zādahs and others signified their approval of the choice of Mangū, all save a number of the sons of Ūktāe and Kyūk, and Yassū-Mungā, Karā Aghūl, and Būrfī, sons of Chaghatāe, who were using all sorts of stratagems to prevent the installation of Mangū, and our author was wrong in supposing that only the sons of Chaghatāe were plotting against him. They despatched an envoy to Bātū Khān, notifying their dissent from the succession of Mangū, and stated that it had been previously determined that the sovereignty should continue in Ūktāe's family, and demanded why, such being the case, he had set up another. Bātū replied that he had done so by virtue of his position as head of the tribe, and amily, and because he and others deemed Mangū best fitted to rule a vast empire; and that no one else among them was capable of ruling it—a work which could not be entrusted to boys. He exhorted them to think better of the matter.

In this discussion the time prescribed by Bātū for the installation of Mangū on the throne in Kalūr-ān passed, and the next year [647 H.] came round, and still the affairs of the empire remained without order or splendour. All his efforts of Mangū and his mother to propitiate and persuade the hostile party were of no avail: the more she and others endeavoured to do so, the

that we should raise to the sovereignty Mangū Khān,

more obdurate the others became. This year coming to a close also, Mangū, in accord with Bātū's brothers, sent envoys to all his kinsmen, requesting them to assemble in Kalūr-ān; and despatched Shālāmūn, the Bitik-ghī—a writer, or secretary, from the Turkish etc.—to Ughūl Kūīmish, the chief Khātān of Kyūk Khān, and her sons, Nākū and Khwājah, and another Bitik-ghī to Yasū-Mangū [also written Mangū], saying: "Most of the members of the *urdū* of the Chingiz Khān have here assembled, and the *ḡūriltāe* is entirely delayed, through your non-attendance, for a long time. If you are of one mind, and desire to see the affairs of the empire disposed of, amicably and in accord, attend; but, understand, that nothing will be left in abeyance for you any longer." They saw there was no help but to appear, and therefore Nākū Aghūl set out, and the Nū-yīn, Qadāk, and several other Amirs of Kyūk Khān, and Yasū Mangū, and Būrl, sons of Chaghatāe Khān, proceeded from their *urdūs*, and went to the presence of Shīrāmūn, grandson of Ūktāe, and all these Shāh-zādahs met together at an appointed place. Afterwards, Khwājah, son of Kyūk, joined them; and, under the supposition that the *ḡūriltāe* would not, and could not, be held without them, they proceeded very leisurely. It so happened, however, that Barkā Khān had previously written to his brother, Bātū, saying, that it was now two years since the sons of Ūktāe, Kyūk, and Chaghatāe, had been summoned to attend, and they would not, and were constantly occupied in their ambitious and seditious designs. In reply, Bātū gave orders, saying: "Place ye Mangū on the throne, and, if they or either of them do anything contrary to the *yāsā* of the Chingiz Khān, let their heads pay the forfeit."

On receipt of this command, Barkā and his brother assembled together all the Shāh-zādahs then present in the *urdū* of Kalūr-ān, and the great Amirs, among whom was Amīr Harḡashūn, or Harḡa-ūn, and of the Shāh-zādahs of the Dast-i-Rāst, Qarā Hulā'ū [or Hulākū; the name is written both ways, and both are correct], son of Chaghatāe, of Ūktāe's sons, Qadān, and his grandsons, Mūngard and others, and the brothers of Mangū, Qubīlā, or Qubīlāe, Hulākū, Mūkā, and Irṭuḡ Būḡā. Of the Shāh-zādahs of the Dast-i-Chap, the sons of Jūyī Kavār, Nako [?], and Yasū Mungā, Iljīdāe or Ilchīkdāe, son of Kājūn, and Mājār, son of the Nu-yīn, Ūljī, the sons of Mankūtī, and a few other, of the family of lesser note.

Having chosen a propitious hour, approved by the augurs, they met together, confirmed the decision of the Āḡā, Bātū Khān, and placed Mangū Qā'ān upon the throne with the usual ceremonials. One of the most auspicious signs of the glory of his reign, according to the pro-Mughal Historians, was, that for several days previously, the atmosphere of those parts became so overcast that the face of the sun was completely hidden, and incessant rain fell; but it so happened that, at the very moment chosen by the astrologers for Mangū's seating himself on the throne, the world-enlightening luminary burst forth from his veil of clouds, and filled the universe with his effulgent brightness. All present in that great assembly, Shāh-zādahs, Amirs, and people, thereupon arose, doffed their caps, unloosed their girdles and cast them over their shoulders, and bent the knee nine times. I cannot here enter into farther details, which are highly interesting, space forbids. It took place at the ancient *yūrat*, within the limits of Qarā-Quram, the *urdū* of Kalūr-ān, in the year of the Hog, in the month of Zī-Kadah—the eleventh month—of the year 648 H., or February, 1251 A.D.

son of Tūlī, the youngest of the Chingiz Khān's sons, who was removed from the world in the day-time of youth, and never enjoyed dominion ; and, whereas, I, Bātū, shall place him on the throne, in reality I shall be the sovereign." All ratified this opinion.<sup>2</sup>

When they were about to place Mangū Khān on the throne, Barkā, the Musalmān, said : "The empire of the infidels hath departed, and the dominion of every pagan monarch who ascends the throne of sovereignty will not endure. If ye desire that the rule of Mangū shall continue, and be prolonged, let him pronounce the [Musalmān] confession of faith, in order that his name may be inscribed in the register of the Islāmīs, and then let him ascend the throne" This was concurred in, and Mangū repeated the confession of faith.<sup>3</sup> Then Barkā, taking him

In 649 H., Mangū Ka'an lost his mother, Sūr-Kūktī Bigī, by some written Sūr-Kūktī Bigī—being, I believe, a mistake of : for which often occurs in MS. She was a Christian, but favoured the Musalmāns, and was exceedingly liberal towards them. She gave 1000 *bātish* of gold for the purpose of erecting a khānqah or monastery over the tomb of the Shaikh, Saif-ud-Dīn, the Bākhūrī, at Bukhārā, and ordered villages to be purchased wherewith she endowed it.

<sup>2</sup> Previous to Mangū's having been raised to the throne of sovereignty, and during the four years his confirmation remained in abeyance, some events of importance happened in the countries, and to several persons, mentioned by our author

In the year 643 H. Malik Rukn-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bikr, the Kurat, repeatedly mentioned by our author, the maternal grandfather of Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad [who is considered the first of the Kurat dynasty], died at Khāēsār of Ghūr, a notice of whom will be found farther on.

On the 23rd of Muḥarram, 644 H., Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, died, or, rather, was put to death, in prison at Dihlī, and was succeeded by his uncle, Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, who, soon after, at the advice of his Ḥājib, Ghayās-ud-Dīn, Balban [subsequently raised to the office of Lieutenant of the kingdom, with the title of Ulugh Khān], advanced towards the Indus to expel the Mughals from the Sind-Sāgar Do-ābah, where they had established themselves after the unsuccessful attempt upon Uchchah mentioned at page 1154.

In 645 H., the Amīr, Arghūn Aḳā, having obtained the government of I-rān-Zamīn, entered upon his office. He had obtained it, by Kyūk Khān's command after the I-ghūr Nū-yīn, Kūrkūz, had been put to death. Some say that Turā-Kīnah Khātūn, Kyūk's mother, had removed Kūrkūz, and appointed Arghūn Aḳā, before Kyūk succeeded to the sovereignty, as has been previously mentioned, in note 7, page 1149

<sup>3</sup> If so, how is it that other Musalmān writers do not say so? I fear "the wish" of our author "was parent to the thought"

Barkā Khān had already become a Musalmān, because, at the great feast

by the arm, seated him on the throne; and all the Mughal rulers paid homage unto him, with the exception of the tribe and dependents and sons of Chaghatāe, who began to act in a contumacious manner, and showed a rebellious spirit. They were desirous of acting in a perfidious manner, and of falling unexpectedly upon the camp of Mangū Khān, to capture him, and put him to death.

They [the sons of Chaghatāe] despatched confidential persons to the presence of Mangū Khān, saying: "When thou ascendest the throne we propose to come to thy presence for the purpose of tendering our congratulations and observing the custom of felicitation." With this pretence they issued forth from their place of abode, with a host of horsemen well organized and armed; and their determination was to make a night attack upon Mangū Khān, slay him and Bātū also, and overcome their adherents, and seize upon the sovereignty: "man proposes, but God disposes." It was the decree of Heaven that a camel-man, from the camp of Bātū and Mangū Khān, who had lost his camel, set out towards the open country in search of it, and was roaming about in every direction, when, suddenly, he fell among the army of the sons of Chaghatāe. On becoming aware of the circumstances of this army, to every one who inquired of him to whose following or retinue he belonged—as the appearance and dialect of the camel-men of the army of Chaghatāe's sons was the same as his own—he made himself out to be a camel-man of one of their Amīrs, until night came, when, seizing the opportunity, the camel-man got away from among the forces of the sons of Chaghatāe, and returned to the camp of Bātū and Mangū Khān, and made them acquainted with the matter.<sup>4</sup>

held on this occasion, sheep were allowed to be killed for him, according to the prescribed Musalmān usage, which was contrary to that of the Mughals. Qadān Aghūl, and his brother's son, Malik Aghūl, and Karā-Hūlā'ū, tendered to the Kā'n their congratulations according to the custom of the Mughals.

<sup>4</sup> While Mangū Kā'n, and the Shāh-zādahs, or Princes, were engaged in these festivities just referred to, and the Bādshāh was expecting the arrival of the other Shāh-zādahs, who had delayed by the way instead of attending the *kūrillū*, as already stated, when no living soul expected that hostility, much less treachery, would break out in the family of the Chingiz Khān, and at a

## When that information reached the hearing of Mangū

time when all was jubilee, and there was no suspicion of such treachery, and no precaution taken, *Shirāmūn*, grandson of *Üktāe*, and son of *Kochūe*, *Nākū* or *Nākūe*, son of *Kyūk*, and *Künükū*, son of *Karaghār*, son of *Üktāe*, combined together, and arrived near unto the *urdu* of Mangū *Kā'an*. Along with them were a great number of carts full of arms, and in their hearts they meditated treachery and perfidy towards Mangū. It so happened, however, that a *koṣh-chī*—that is to say, a camel-man, whose name was *Kashak*, a *Kānkūlī*, in the immediate service of the *Kā'an*—had lost one of his camels. In search of this animal he was wandering about the open country, when, suddenly, he found himself in the midst of an army, and saw a countless number of carts. As he proceeded onwards, pretending to take no notice, he came upon a boy seated before a broken cart. The boy, thinking he was one of the followers of the force, asked him to aid him in mending it. *Kashak* dismounted from his horse for the purpose, when, to his great astonishment, instead of drinkables and other necessities for a banquet, he found implements of war and arms concealed in the cart, under other things. He inquired of the boy: "What are these?" He replied: "Only arms, such as are contained in all the other carts," and, on further inquiry, *Kashak* discovered that this force consisted of the followers of *Shirāmūn*, *Nākūe*, and others, who were proceeding towards the *Kā'an's urdu* to offer their congratulations, and to hold a banquet. Being aware that banquets were not furnished from carts full of arms, nor congratulations offered, he, after helping to mend the cart, and obtaining other information, got out of the camp of *Shirāmūn* and the other *Shāh-zādahs*, and performed a three days' journey in one. Without waiting to ask permission, he rushed into the presence of Mangū *Kā'an*, and before all those there assembled cried out: "Here are ye all occupied in amusement and mirth, while foes have arisen against ye, and are close at hand!" and he related what he had beheld and heard. Mangū would not believe it; and the *Shāh-zādahs* and *Amīrs* present thought *Kashak* must be exaggerating; nevertheless, the *Nū-yīn*, *Mūngusār*, or *Mungusār*, the principal of Mangū's *Nū-yīns*, was despatched, with 2000 or 3000 horse, to gain information. When the next morning broke, *Mūngusār* pushed on, at the head of 500 chosen horse, nearer to the position where the camp of the rebels was situated, and while he was reconnoitring a large body of horsemen were observed approaching. It was *Shirāmūn* and his party, issuing from their camp. *Mūngusār* was soon joined by the *Shāh-zādah*, *Mūkā*, and the *Gürgān*, *Jokāl*, the *Karāyit*, and an additional force despatched by Mangū to his support, and they completely surrounded *Shirāmūn*, *Nākū*, and *Künükū*.

The *Fanākati* says Mangū, on becoming aware of this, despatched the *Nū-yīn*, *Mūngusār*, with 3000 men, to meet them, and that he met *Shirāmūn* at the head of 500 horse, despatched by the conspirators in advance.

The *Nū-yīn* said to him: "They say ye are coming with evil designs in your hearts. If this is not true, pass on without fear or hesitation to the presence; otherwise I am directed to arrest thee and take thee prisoner thither." *Shirāmūn* denied all evil intentions, and asserted that they were all only attended by their usual retinues. As the others arrived, they and their followers were disarmed, as the party of *Shirāmūn* had been already, and the Princes and their *Amīrs* were divided into nine—the number venerated by the *Mughals*—and, in that manner were allowed to enter the audience-tent or *khaṣṣanah*, and, soon after, the *Amīrs* with them were admitted to make their obeisances. An

**Khān**, after taking ample care and caution, he caused the

entertainment was given, which lasted three days, and nothing whatever was said to them, nor was a question asked.

On the fourth day, however, command was given that all the followers of the disaffected Princes and their partisans should depart each to their own *yūrats*, under pain of death if they should be found to remain after that order. A body of troops was detailed to guard the disaffected Princes and Amīrs, and Mangū, in concert with his chief Nū yīns, Amīrs, and Ministers, on the sixth day, proceeded to inquire into their conduct. The Atā-Bak of Prince Shīrāmūn was closely questioned about the plot. He at first denied all knowledge of it, but, on being bastinadoed, he confessed, and immediately stabbed himself, and Shīrāmūn also confessed. The seven Nū-yīns directed to try the Princes declared them guilty, and, moreover, the conspirators themselves now confessed their plot. Mangū is said to have been inclined to pardon them, but this his Nū-yīns and Amīrs strongly opposed. He therefore directed that they should all be imprisoned until he had time to consider what should be done with them. After a few days, Mangū again summoned his Counsellors, and asked their advice upon the matter. Some said one thing, some another, but in such wise as not to satisfy the Kā'ān. Then his Wazīr, Maḥmūd, Yal-wā, related the anecdote respecting Aristotle's reply to Alexander, about rooting up all the old trees in the garden, and replacing them with young saplings, which story has done duty in scores of instances, and is applied by *Firūshīah*, the Dakhanī Historian, to the Turk chiefs in the Panjāb in the reign of Ghīyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Balban—the Ulugh Khān of this History, the father-in-law of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, and his successor on the throne of Dihlī.

After hearing the anecdote, Mangū Kā'ān understood the necessity there was for completely crushing this faction, and he gave command for them to be put to death.

As some of the conspirators had not yet been brought to justice, such as Ūghūl Kūīmish, the chief Khātūn of Kyūk Khān, and Khwājah Aghūl, her son, Mangū Kā'ān was not yet safe from their designs, and he therefore despatched troops to compel the disaffected to submit. One army, said to have contained ten *tomāns*, probably two, was despatched to the Ulugh Tak and to Tūlkāe and تۇلكاي which lie between Bish-Baligh and Karā-Kuram, with orders to join the Nū-yīn Aghū, who was in the district of Kāzālīk, and to advance as far as the border of Utrār, and act in concert, and the Nū-yīn, Būkā, with two *tomāns*, was despatched to Kurkīr or Kurākīr and Kum Kum-jūi. The Chinese say that in the year 1250 A.D. [commencing on the 4th of April, 648 H.], in the year of his accession to the throne, and "about the same time," as he put down the rebellion, "Mengko ordered Holutay, one of his generals, to enter Tikhāt, and to put to death all who refused to submit to the Mughals" [to himself?]. The Bīrk-chī, Shalāmūn, was despatched to summon Ūghūl Kūīmish Khātūn, and her son, Khwājah. He proposed to put the envoy to death, but one of his Khātūns persuaded him against committing such an act, and advised his presenting himself, without delay, in the presence of the Kā'ān. Ūghūl Kūīmish Khātūn refused to obey the command of Mangū, and abused and upbraided him before his envoy. Mangū was much enraged when he heard of it, and commanded that she should be brought, with hands bound, to his mother's *urdū* to be tried.

In due time Ūghūl Kūīmish, the Khātūn of Kyūk, and Kadākā, the Khātūn of Kochūe, son of Čhīae, the mother of Shīrāmūn, and Tūlkāshī, the Khātūn

forces to be got ready, and moved out to meet and engage

of Yassū-Mungā, two sons of the Nū-yīn, Ilchikdāe, and the Christian, Qadāq, the chief minister of Kyūk Khān, among others, were brought in, tried, and their guilt established. Shirāmūn's mother and other Khātūns were sent to the *urdū* of Sūr Kūkbī Bigt, Mangū's mother, to be dealt with; and they were rolled up in felts, and drowned. The Shāh-zādahs, Nū-yīns, and Amīrs, were beaten on their mouths with stones until they died. That they "were choked by having earth or stones forced into their mouths," as we are informed in the "*Mongols Proper*," is merely a wrong translation from some "muddy stream" Persian author [or an incorrect translation from the foreign rendering of the Persian], in which در دهان کوهد or در دهان کوهد has been mistaken for در دهان کوهد.

Būrī, and some others, were sent to the presence of Bātū Khān to be dealt with, and, their crime having been proved, they too were put to death. The Nū-yīn, Ilchikdāe, the destroyer of Hirāt, and slayer of its inhabitants, was likewise seized at Bādghāns, and subsequently put to death.

No less than seventy-seven or seventy-eight members altogether of the family of the Chingiz Khān, Nū-yīns, and Amīrs, perished on this occasion, and, in consequence of these executions, enmity arose among its members, which was never afterwards extinguished.

Rubruquis, who reached Mangū's *urdū* in January, 1254 A. D.—the last month of 651 H.—and was present during these executions, says that three hundred lords, besides ladies, perished. He describes Mangū Khān as being of middle stature, flat-nosed, and about forty-five years old. "He sat on a bed [couch], and was clad with a robe of spotted fur, which shined like seal-skin. His wife [one of his wives], who was a little pretty woman, sat by him, and, on another couch near, sat one of his daughters [by his chief Khātūn], named Shirīn, grown up, but exceedingly hard favoured, and several little children, for that being her [Shirīn's] mother's *urdū* (a Christian lady whom the Khān was very fond of), she was mistress of it. On the 14th of January, the Khān's chief wife Kotola Katen [the name of the Khān's chief wife was Kanākāe Khātūn—کناکا] attended the Christian chapel with her children."

Mangū having now put down all sedition, the natural goodness of his heart disposed him to show kindness to his remaining kinsmen. He directed that Shirāmūn, Nakū, and the Nū-yīn, Chaghān, should accompany his brother, Kūkbīāe Khān, into Khitā, and Khwājah Aghūl, son of Kyūk Khān, received an appanage in the territory of Salingah, or Sālingāe, "which is near unto Karā-Kuram;" and, in the same manner, he assigned appanages to others of his kinsmen, wherein they might pass their days in affluence.

The loyal Shāh-zādahs were now also dismissed to their different *urdūs*, and also Bātū Khān's brothers, Barkāe, and Būkāe Tīmūr, who had rendered such good service, and had the longest distance to go. They were dismissed with rich presents, and bore along with them befitting offerings for the Akā, Bātū, the Šā-in Khān. The sons of Kūtān, Qadān [Qadghān?] Aghūl, and Malik Aghūl, were also rewarded, and allowed to depart to their stations, and on Karā-Hülākū, son of Mitūkāe, son of Chaghātāe, his father's appanage, which his uncle, Yassū-Mungā, had usurped, was conferred, but when he reached Alāe—الای—death overtook him.

Kashak, the kosh-chī, or camel-man, was rewarded, raised to high rank, and made a Tarkhān. The administration of the revenue affairs of the eastern part of the empire was conferred upon the Šāhib, Maḥmūd, Yalwā, who had, of old, done such good service, and who had reached Mangū's *urdū* previous

the army of the sons of Chaghatāe, and repel th  
Before they could reach the camp of Mangū Khān,  
with his own forces, and the troops of Bātū, fell upon t  
array, wielded the sword among them, and despatch  
about ten thousand Mughals of rank and reno  
leaders of armies [!], to hell, and extirpated all who  
longed to the army or were dependents of Chaghatāe  
sons; and set his mind at ease. Mangū Khān now beca  
firmly established in the sovereignty, and ascended  
throne of Chīn and Upper Turkistān, and carried out  
measures so that not a trace of the tribe of Chagha  
remained upon the face of the earth, with the except  
of one or two of Chaghatāe's sons who proceeded towa  
Chīn, to the presence of the Altān Khān of Tamghāj.<sup>5</sup>

Sub sequently to that, Mangū Khān despatched for

to his being raised to the throne. Turkistān and Māwarā un-Nahr v  
entrusted to his son, Mas'ūd Bak, and the Amīr, Arghūn Ākā, who, on acc  
of the immense distance he had to come, could only reach the Court after  
*khūshī*, was confirmed in the administration of the revenue affairs of all  
countries west of the Jihun, as far as Halab, Arman, and Rūm. 'Alī M  
was sent with him to make a new assessment in the countries of Ī rān-Zau  
under the sway of the Mughals. Mangū also resumed all grants not confer  
by the Chingiz Khān, Ūktāe Kā'ān, or Kyūk Khān. This was done beca  
the Shāh-zādehs had, for their own purposes, during the long interreg  
been bestowing fiefs upon their partisans in all directions. Mangū issued v  
regulations on this, and many other subjects, for which I have no space h  
A fresh assessment likewise was made in Khūṭāe, and the only exempti  
from taxation were made in favour of such persons as had been also exe  
during the reigns of the Chingiz Khān and his son, Ūktāe Kā'ān, nam  
Sayyids, Shaikhs, and 'Ulamā, of the Musalmāns, the priests, monks,  
ascetics, of the Christians, the chief Tūfān of the Idol-worshippers, and  
persons as, by reason of infirmity, sickness, or old age, were unable to wo  
and all outstanding claims for cesses were likewise remitted.

I must, however, briefly mention one especial good regulation instituted  
Mangū Kā'ān. A number of scribes were employed at the Court, convers  
with the Fārsī, I-ghūrī, Khūṭāe-ī, Tibbatī, Tingkūt, and other languages,  
that, whenever they might have occasion to write *farman*s, they might be a  
to do so in the language and character of the particular tribe or people to wh  
such *farman*s might be addressed. This contradicts the statement made,  
the authority of Klaproth, quoted in the *Journal Re As Soc.*, vol v [n  
series], page 33.

It is curious to read of "Professor" Tatatonggo, "installed by *Genghis*  
Professor of the *Ougour* language and literature"—in the University of *Ulu*  
*Yarat* perhaps.

<sup>5</sup> The final downfall of the Altān Khāns, the Kim of Chinese authors, coi  
not have occurred as early as Ūktāe's reign from this statement, which i  
Pro-Mughal writers do not even hint at.



## IRRUPTION OF THE INFIDELS INTO ISLĀM.

to the *Ḳuhistān* of the *Mulāḥidahs*; and, during several years, the *Mughals* overran that territory, pitched camps therein, and took up their quarters in that country. The inhabitants of the *Ḳuhistān* became thereby reduced to misery and wretchedness; and the *Mughals* gained possession of their fortresses and cities, and demolished their strongholds, and the *Mulāḥidahs* fell. The account of them is as follows.

### ACCOUNT OF THE FALL OF THE MULĀḤIDAHs—ON THE WHOLE OF WHOM BE GOD'S CURSE!

The reason for despatching forces into the territory against the fortress of *Mulḥidistān*\* was this. At the outset of the career and time of *Ḥasan-i-Ṣabbāh*†—(

\* Not intended to be understood otherwise than as a nick or by-name. Heretic land, from *Mulḥid*, heretic, etc.

† The Printed Text turns this name into *صاع*—*ṣabbāgh*—which is Arabic for a dyer!

It is very amusing to notice the errors made with regard to the name of the person, and the plunges made respecting it; and it is surely time such should be corrected. The latest notice of this kind occurs in a lately published, by Major R. D. Osborn, of the Bengal S. C., a book, "*Islam under the Khalifs of Baghdad*," in which we are told [p. 345] that the "first Grand Master of the Assassins" was "*Ḥasan ibn* [i. e., son of, at the same time, his father's name is *Alī*] *Saba*," but, afterwards, a little on, he is styled "*Ḥasan Saba*" only. The author of the above work never merely follows in the beaten road of others who cannot read the original histories for themselves, and have to depend on translations often incorrect and who call him by such incorrect names—it is merely error stereotyped to say—such as "the old man of the mountain" for example, another error. Yet such is the force of habit that there are editors of periodic reviews who, if they saw an attempt to correct such blunders, would probably say, "in the case of a journal intended for general readers, we are more forced to adopt the usual conventional spelling, partly because readers desire partly to secure uniformity," while others would consider the correction such errors "want of taste," and "very offensive."

The first *Di'ī*, the literal meaning of which is an apostle or missionary who invites or stimulates others—of the *Ismā'ilīs* or *Mulāḥidahs* of whom was 'Alī-ud-Dīn, *Ḥasan*, son of 'Alī, son of Muḥammad, son of Ja'far of *Husain*, son of Muḥammad, who claimed descent from 'Uṣ-Ṣabbāḥ *Hannari*, mentioned at page 7 of this Translation, but by some he is supposed to be descended from *Ismā'il*, son of *Ja'far-uṣ-Ṣādiq*.

By 'Arab writers he was styled the *Shākh-ul-Jibāl*—شيخ الجبال—which one, long ago, probably, translated without recollecting, or without knowing, that *Shākh* has other meanings besides "an old or venerable old

curse upon him!—who instituted the rules of the Mulāḥidah sect, and founded the canons of that heresy, he restored and strengthened the fortresses of Alamūt which he purchased, along with the fortress of Lanbah-Sar, which was [afterwards became, and was at this time] the capital<sup>a</sup> of the chief Mulhid [heretic], whom that sect used to

and that *jibāl* is the plural of *jabal*, “a mountain,” and at once jumped at the conclusion that his title was the “Old Man of the Mountain,” more especially as his stronghold was on a mountain likewise, and so he has continued to be wrongly styled “The Old Man of the Mountain” down to the present day.

The terms *Shāikh-ul-Jibāl*, however, signify, the Patriarch, Prelate, High-Priest, etc., of, or dwelling in, the tract of country south of the Caspian, called Jibāl, the Mountains of Dīlam in the MASALIK WA MAMĀTIK, and also Kohistān, consisting of a belt of mountains running along the frontiers of Gilān, Māzandarān, and Irāk-i-ʿAjam—ancient Parthia. It was from this tract known as “the Jibāl,” that Ḥasan-i-Šabbāh, the first *Shāikh* of the eastern Ismāʿīlīs or Mulāḥidahs, received the name, because, in this tract, he began his mission.

There is a Jibāl of Ghūr also, mentioned at pages 335 and 338, but that is a mere local name, while “the Jibāl” referred to is well known, and is called by that name.

<sup>a</sup> Thus stated in the text, but Alamūt was the capital of the Mulāḥidahs, during the greater part of their rule, and hence they are sometimes styled Alamūtīs.

A pretty jumble has been made, too, of the name of this well-known place, in every copy of the text collated—but some other works are almost as bad—through the carelessness or ignorance of the copyists. What European writers make of it I shall presently show. Only one copy of the text has anything approaching the correct name, but the various modes of writing cannot all be rendered by Persian types. Some have لهر-سر-لهر and لهر. The Calcutta “Official Text”—which is very defective at this particular part—has لهر in the page and لهر in a note, and whenever this name occurs it is vitiated in the way above mentioned.

Von Hammer styles it Lamsir, which is not very far wide of the mark, but, when he styles Gird-koh by the impossible name of Kirdkuh, it is not to be wondered at that the other is not correct. D’Ohsson, to judge from the “*Mon gols I roper*,” appears to call it Lamsir and Lamhessir, Quatremere alone is correct. This place is called Lambah-Sar لاه-سر—which may be written in one word لهر-سر. *Lambah* signifies anything round or circular, such as an apple, an orange, or the like, and *Sar* means, summit, top, head, etc. It is the name of a mountain in the territory of Māzandarān, near Gird-Koh, which signifies the Round or Circular Hill or Mountain, also in Māzandarān, and on each of these mountains the Mulāḥidahs had erected a strong fortress. The latter place, which will be again referred to, lies a short distance from Damghān, but neither place is to be found in the large map of Persia lately published by the India Office, nor were they, apparently, known to the most recent travellers in that part of the Persian empire, and I beg to suggest that some of those who may travel that way in future should pay both Lambah-Sar and Gird-Koh a visit, both sites being well known in those parts.

style "The Maulānā"—God curse them all!—from the Dīlāmīs for a large sum of money.

Having brought there a pregnant female slave of his own, he represented to people, saying: "She is pregnant by Mustanṣir, the Miṣrī, [the Ismā'īlī Khālīfah of Egypt], and, flying from enemies, I have brought her to this place, for, from the lineage of this burden [which she bears] will spring the Imām-i-Ākhir-i-Zamān and Mahdī-i-Awān,"\* accompanied with vain and impotent words, the like of which no sensible person would allow to pass in his imagination, or enter his heart. God curse him!

After he purchased those fortresses, he repaired the fortress of Alamūt, and expended incalculable wealth in the restoration of, and providing that stronghold with stores and provisions. It is situated on a mountain in the vicinity of the city of Qazwīn. The inhabitants of that city are all orthodox Sunnīs, of pure faith, and unsullied belief; and, through the Bāṭīniyah and Mulāḥidah heresy, continual fighting and contention used to go on between them [and those heretics].

Trustworthy persons have narrated that all the people and inhabitants of the city of Qazwīn had entire sets of arms ready, and implements of warfare in preparation, to such degree, that all the *bāzār* people were used to come completely armed to their shops; and conflicts used to take place daily between the Qazwīnīs and the Mulāḥidahs of Alamūt, up to the period when the outbreak of the Chingiz Khān took place, and the domination of the Mughals over 'Irāk and the Jibāl. Qāzī Shams-ud-Dīn, the Qazwīnī, who was a sincere Imām and truly learned man, upon several occasions, travelled from Qazwīn towards Khitā, and suffered the distress of separation from country and home, until this time, during the sovereignty of Mangū Khān, when he again set out, and proceeded to his presence. In such manner as was feasible he endeavoured to obtain aid, and gave an account of the

\* The Director or Guide, the last of the twelve Imāms, Muḥammad-i-Abū-l-Qāsim, the son of Ḥasan-al-Askarī, the eleventh of the Imāms, born in 255 H., whom the Shi'ahs believe to be still alive, and whose manifestation, according to the Qur'ān, is one of the signs of the Judgment Day.

wickedness of the Mulāhidah and their sedition in the Muḥammadan states.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In the year 654 H., but Ḥāfiṣ Abrū, and some others, say in 653 H., 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Ḥasan, son of Muḥammad, the seventh *Dā'i* or Apostle, or Missionary, of the Mulāhidahs, died at the end of the month of Shawwāl. He was the only son of the Nau Musalmān [referred to in note <sup>4</sup>, page 265—*nau*, in the Persian of the East, signifies "new," "fresh," etc., but Von Hammer's "*Neu*" is very *nau* indeed], and, when he grew up, his brain, it is said, was affected, and he refused, in consequence, to attend to any instructions brought by his own envoys from the Mughal sovereigns, so the Pro-Mughal writers say, but the correct reason was that he thought himself strong enough to preserve his independence, but he was mistaken. In his reign, the Muḥtaṣhim [Preceptor], Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, who held the chief authority over the Kūhistān, which tract of country has been repeatedly mentioned before, seized the Khwājah, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, the Tūsī—the celebrated Ṣūfī poet—and compelled him to proceed along with him to the presence of 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, and the Khwājah continued with him, in his stronghold of Maīmūn [duj], until the arrival of Hulākū in Ī-rān Zamīn. There he composed his celebrated work, the *Akhṣāk-i-Nāṣirī*, which, the *Rauzat-us-Ṣafā* says, was dedicated to the Muḥtaṣhim Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, who nevertheless threw him into prison, at the instigation of the traitor Warīr of the Khalīṣah, mentioned farther on. There are other versions of this, however, and the Khwājah is said to have gone thither of his own free will and accord, and to satisfy his feelings of revenge, as will be subsequently mentioned.

After Mangū Kā'an had determined upon sending forces into Ī-rān-Zamīn, to guard the Mughal conquests therein, he despatched the Nū yin, Tānjū [تاجو] It is sometimes written تاجو—but incorrectly so] thither. Soon after his arrival there he became so much grieved—disinterested creature!—at the conduct of the Ismā'īlī heretics, and the Khalīṣah of Baghdād, towards the people generally, that he despatched an agent to the presence of the Kā'an to complain of them both. How history repeats itself! We might read Bulgaria for Ī-rān, and the 'Uṣmānī Sulṭān for the 'Abbāṣī Khalīṣah.

At this juncture, likewise, the great Kāzī, Shams-ud-Dīn, from Ī-rān-Zamīn, presented himself in Mangū Kā'an's *ardū*, and was graciously received. As the Kāzī, out of terror of the Ismā'īlīs, was in the habit of wearing mail under his clothes, one day Mangū Kā'an, having observed it, asked him the reason of such an unusual dress for an ecclesiastic. He replied "It is now several years since I, out of fear of the Ismā'īlī Fīdā'īs, who like unto 'Azrā'il—the Angel of Death—however much a person may guard himself, still contrive to reach and destroy him, began to wear this mail as a protection." Von Hammer makes a muddle of this matter also, and says that "the judge of Kaswin, who was at the Khan's court, went in armour to the audience, fearing the daggers of the assassins," as though they were there. The Ḥabīb-us-Siyar says the Kāzī, through fear of the Ismā'īlī's daggers, used to wander about the country in the scales of his armour, like a shell-fish in its shell, and by his importunities at last impelled Mangū to send a numerous army into Ī-rān-Zamīn. The author of the "*Mongols Proper*," however, who appears to have taken the story from D'Ohsson, puts a piece upon it, and states, that such was the terror of the "*federnes*," that "*the chief officers and more prominent men of its [Western Asia's] various courts*" wore coats of mail under their clothes as a precaution," etc.

They [the trustworthy persons] also related in this wise,

To return to Mangū and the Kāfī. He related to the Kā'an—or manufactured for him—such atrocities on the part of the heretics—as might be expected from one so orthodox as himself—that Mangū was amazed; and he resolved in his mind that he would utterly destroy that sect. Having observed indications of capacity and fitness for sovereignty on the brow of his brother, Hulākū, he determined to nominate him to carry out his intention, and at the same time to take possession of, and secure, the territories to the west of Ī-rān-Zamīn—the real object in view, of course—namely, Shām, Rūm, and Arman. Hulākū having been nominated, he was informed that the forces along with the Nū-yīn, Tānjū, and those lately under Jūrmāghūn, which had been previously despatched into Ī-rān Zamīn, all appertained to him, and likewise, in the same way, those which had been sent into Hindūstān under the Bahādur, Tā-īr, after his death, came under the command of the Tāttār Nū-yīn, Sālī. Sālī, according to the Pro-Mughal writers, had subdued the country of Kashmīr, and several thousand Kashmīrī captives had been sent by him to the Kā'an's urdū. There is still a Sālī ki Sarāe on the route from Rāwal Pindī to Khānpūr, an old place, and formerly of some importance. See page 844, where Sālī is mentioned, and page 1135 for Tā-īr's death.

Vast preparations were made for Hulākū's movement, and, besides the armies already in the countries of Ī-rān-Zamīn, Mangū commanded that, out of all the forces of the Chingiz Khān, that is, the various *hasārūhs* already mentioned at page 1093, which he had assigned to and divided among his brothers, his sons, and brothers' sons, out of every ten persons two should be selected [they had vastly increased, too, since the time of the Chingiz Khān] and sent to serve under Hulākū. The numbers are variously mentioned at from 120,000 to 180,000 horse. Besides these, a thousand families of Khitā-i Manjanīk-ghīs [catapult workers], Naft-Andāz [naphtha-throwers], and Charkh-Andāz [shooters of fiery arrows worked by a wheel] were to accompany him, and they brought along with them such a vast amount of missiles and stores appertaining to their peculiar branch of the forces as cannot be enumerated. They had with them also Charkhī Kamāns [wheeled arbalists], worked by a wheel in such wise that one bow-string would pull three bows, each of which would discharge an arrow of three or four ells in length. These arrows or bolts, from the notch for the bow-string to near the head, were covered with feathers of the vulture and eagle, and the bolts were short and strong. These machines would also throw naphtha. The bolts [نابذ] of the catapults were made of ash, very tough and strong, and covered with the hides of horses and bullocks [to prevent their being burnt], like a dagger in its sheath; and each catapult was so constructed as to be capable of being separated into five or seven parts, and easily put together again. These catapults and mangonels were brought from Khitā-e on carts into Turkistān, under the direction of skilful engineers and mechanists, but there is no evidence whatever to show that they had any knowledge of gunpowder, but quite the contrary.

As soon as the expedition had been determined on, agents were despatched in order that wheresoever the passage of the great host should be, from Kārā-Kurām to the Āmuiah, all the available pasture-lands and grazing tracts should be laid under embargo [the word used is *kurūk*, the same that is used with reference to the site of the subterranean chamber in which the Chingiz Khān was buried, but signifies enclosed as well as prohibited. The word is quite

that, in the presence of Mangū Khān, the Kāzī, according

common in our district Law Courts in India] for the use of the forces. Strong bridges were also constructed over the different rivers by the way to enable the great host to cross with ease and facility. Throughout the whole empire [east of the Sīhūn probably] orders were sent so that, for the use of the army, at the ratio of a *taḡhār* [an earthen vessel of capacity, also a saddle-bag for holding corn or meal, which is probably meant here, and, of course, filled. Some authors state that a *taḡhār* is equivalent to 100 *manns* of Tabriz, others to 10 *manns* of Tabriz, equal to one *kharwār*] of meal, and a *khiḡ* [a skin or leather bottle of liquor—*kumis*] for each man, should be collected.

The Nū-yīn, Tānjū, and his army, together with the troops which had previously been sent into Ī-rān Zamīn under Jūrmāghūn, now received orders to move towards the frontiers of Rūm.

All things being prepared, and the different Shāh-zādahs and Nū-yīns, and the Hazārah, and Sadhahs [leaders of thousands, and hundreds], having been nominated, the Nū-yīn, Kaibūkā, the Nāemān, was sent at the head of 12,000 horse, as the advance or van of Hulākū's forces, in Jamādī-ul-Ākhir, 650 H. Kaibūkā—“Kitubuka” is not correct—crossed the Āmūsiāh in the beginning of Muḥarram, 651 H. [early in March, 1253 A.D.], entered Khurāsān, which he reached in Rabī'ul-Awwal, and occupied himself in the reduction of the Kūhistān.

His first attempt, with 5000 horse and 5000 foot [Tājīk levies from the conquered states], was against the strong fortress of Gird-Koh, already referred to, but he found it a much more difficult matter than he expected. He surrounded it with a wall, furnished with a ditch inside, towards the fortress, and raised another wall, with a ditch outside, and between these two walls placed his forces, more like one besieged than a besieger, to guard his force from the sallies of the Fidā'īs. All his efforts were useless, so he left a force there under Būrī, to watch that fortress, and moved himself towards Mihrīn-duḡ—another stronghold of the sect. He invested that likewise, placed catapults in position against it, left several Amīrs with troops to carry on the siege, and proceeded himself, with the rest of his forces, which, no doubt, had been greatly increased in point of numbers by the levies and contingents of those places in Khurāsān under the Mughal yoke, against the fort of Shāh-duḡ, which he reached on the 8th of Jamādī-ul-Awwal, and slew a number of people outside, and then made towards the districts of Tāram and Rūd-bār, between Gīlān and Karwīn. He then appeared with his forces before the fortresses of Manṣūriāh and Ālāh-Baḡhīn, and for eighteen days tried his utmost to take them, but all his efforts were of no effect. He then faced about and moved into the Kūhistān again, drove off the flocks and herds of the people of Tūn, Turshīz, and Zar-Koh, slaughtered a vast number of people, and carried away a great number of captives. On the 10th of Jamādī-ul-Ākhir, he gained possession of Tūn and Turshīz, these being the first places that fell into his hands. On the 1st of Sha'bān he took Marīn-duḡ, and, on the 27th of Ramazān, the Duḡ-i-Kamālī also fell.

On the 9th of Shawwāl, the Fidā'īs of Gird-Koh made a sally at night upon the Mughals, destroyed their circumvallation, and slew the greater number of them, including their leader, Būrī. At this time a pestilence had broken out within Gird-Koh, and, as soon as 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, the Maulānā of the Mulāḡudahs, had intimation of it, he at once despatched Muḥariz-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, Sarābhānī, and Shujā'ud-Dīn, Ḥasan, Tūrānī, with 110 picked men, to

to the practice of Musalmān dignity and religion, used

Gird-Koh, with directions that each man should carry with him one *mann* of *hinnā* and two *manns* of salt [in all, about 21 or 24 lbs.]—the Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh says two of *hinnā* and three of salt—because *hinnā* had lately been discovered, accidentally, to be the antidote for the pestilence

The author of the "*Mongols Proper*" has, or his authorities, perhaps, have, made a very amusing story out of the above—for the source is evidently the same. He says, p. 194: "One of the garrison [of *Girdkūh*—i. e., "the Round Mountain"—so "*kjuk*" is a mountain, perhaps—the same which Von Hammer turns into "*Kirdkuh*"] escaped, and sent to Alaeddin, the *Grand Visier*, to ask for help. He sent two leaders, each with 110 troopers; one to escort three *mens* of salt, the other three *mens* of *heuna*," etc.—equal to about one ounce of salt and *hinnā* each, even if only 400 people were within the walls.

At this place, in Alfī, an anecdote is related respecting the discovery of *hinnā* as a remedy for the disease which affected the defenders of several great fortresses, as our author relates, and which, from his account at page 1124, appears to have been scurvy or something very much like it. It is that the daughter of the Amīr of that fortress was going to be married, and, on the night of the consummation of the marriage, the custom was to dye the bride's hands and feet with *hinnā*. This was done, and, those who applied the dye having afterwards washed their hands, some of the pestilence-stricken people, on account of the scarcity of water, drank that water, and recovered in a wonderfully short time. This seems but another version of our author's account of the cure wrought by *hinnā* in his description of the investment of Ūk of Sīstān, at the page above mentioned.

I must now return to the movements of Hulākū. Before setting out for Ī-rān-Zamīn, he took leave of his brother Mangū, and his nephews, in order to return to his own *urdu*, where his wives and children were. Mangū Kā'ān, before parting with him, gave him much wise counsel for his guidance. He enjoined him to observe the laws and ordinances of the *Chingiz Khān*, and, from the Jihūn of Āmūīah, to the extreme frontier of Mīṣr, and Maghrib, to protect and cherish all who submitted to him, but to exterminate all those who did not, and to trample them into the dust of destruction, women, children, and all [in "the true Circassian style"], and to commence with the fortresses of the *Mulāhidahs* in the *Khūstān*. He was then to march into 'Irāk, and remove off the face of the earth the *Lurs*—a tribe of nomads so-called—and the *Kurds*, whose misdeeds [in not submitting to the ameliorating *Mughals*, and which hardy race have, in these days, given offence, in the same way, to another "ameliorator," and are to be exterminated as early as practicable] never ceased, then to call upon the *Khalifah* of Baghdād to submit, and, if he should do so, not to molest him in the least, but, if he showed arrogance, and refused, to send him to join the others. He was further advised to make judgment and sense his guide and model; to be prudent and watchful, to be mindful of the deceit and treachery of enemies; to give tranquility to the people generally, and make them happy [by killing them], to cause ruined places to be restored, to subdue the contumacious, so that he might have plenty of places wherein to make his summer and his winter quarters; and always, in all things, to consult and advise with *Dūkūz Khātūn*. This name is also written *Tūkūz*, *d* and *t* being interchangeable. She was a *Karāyat* and a Christian, the daughter of *Aighū* or *Aikū*—written *Ā-yaghū*—[in Alfī—a son of the *Āwang Khān*. Hulākū greatly favoured the Christians on her

stern language, in such manner that the wrath of sove-

account; and throughout his dominions churches were allowed to be built. At the entrance of the *urdū* of this *Khātūn*, a *kalisa*—church or chapel [felt tent]—was always pitched; and they used to sound the *nākūs*—a thin oblong piece of wood, so called, suspended by two strings, and struck with a flexible rod, called *wahīl*, used by Eastern Christians to summon the congregation for divine service.

Mangū Kā'an assumed that his brother Hulākū would take up his residence, permanently, in Ī-rān-Zamīn; nevertheless, he told him that, after he had accomplished all these things, he should return to his *urdū*.

Mangū now dismissed him, along with two of his wives, his sons, and Amīrs; and sent along with him their brother, Turṣūtāe Aghūl, and some of their nephews to serve under him. Mangū, it is said, was greatly affected at parting with Hulākū, for he considered him the jewel in the diadem of the empire, and that both shed copious tears. He reached his own *urdūs* at the end of the year 650 H. The *Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr* and the *Rauzat-us-Safā* say that he returned to his *urdūs* in the third month of 651 H., to make his preparations, but the *Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh* says in Zī-Ḥijjah, 650 H.

He set out from his *urdūs* for Ī-rān-Zamīn on the 24th of Sha'bān, 651 H.—the *Rauzat-us-Safā* says he began his march in Ramaẓān, while the *Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh* says it was in Zī-Ḥijjah, 651 H.—having made his son, Balghā Aghūl, his representative there during his absence, as that son's mother was the greatest in rank among his wives, two of whom, and two sons, went with him. The *Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh*, in one place, says Jūmkūr, or Jūmghūr, was left in charge, and, in another place, that it was Ajāe who was left.

A vast army accompanied him, and in due time he reached Ālmālīgh, where the *Khātūn* Urghanaḥ, one of Chaghatāe's widows, received and entertained him.

Having moved from thence, on the frontier of Turkistān and Māwarā-un-Nahr, the Sāhib, Mas'ūd Bak, and several other Amīrs, received him. He passed some months of 652 H. in those parts, and, in Sha'bān, 653 H.—about October, 1253 A.D.—reached Samrḳand, having been just two years on the road. He encamped in the mead of Kān-i-Gul, where Mas'ūd Bak had a great tent pitched for him of *masīḥ*—a species of silken fabric woven with gold—and passed forty days there, happily, but for the death of his brother, Turṣūtāe Aghūl, who had been long ailing, and who was there buried. Hulākū, after this stay, marched to Kash, afterwards known as Shahr-i-Bab, at which place he remained a month, and there the Amīr, Arghūn Āḳā, the administrator of Ī-rān-Zamīn, from Fūs [in the previous year, when Rubruquis returned to Europe, the Amīr, Arghūn Āḳā was at Fāris, who, as he remarks, collected the tribute], as in duty bound, waited on him to give up charge of that region, after which he was to return to the presence of the Kā'an, and there, also, came Malik Ḥamṣ-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, the Kurat from Hurāt—some say he presented himself to Hulākū at Samrḳand.

Whilst at Kash, Hulākū issued a *farmān* to the Sultāns and Rulers of Ī-rān-Zamīn, pretending that the object of his coming was to destroy the strongholds of the *Mulāhidahs* for the sake of the people of those parts, "who," he said, "have sought the protection of the Kā'an, and made complaint unto him," "the people," in this case, being *one kāri*. The object stated was as specious and illusive as an invasion of the same nature in these days—it was to appropriate the territories of the weak. "If ye present yourselves in person," he said, "and render assistance, your services will be



reignty overcame Mangū Khān; for the Kāzī applied the

appreciated, and your territories, forces, dwellings, and property will be spared to you; but if ye show negligence or indifference to the purport of this *farmān*, when, with God's help [history repeats itself again], we shall have finished with the Ismā'īlīs, we shall turn our face towards you; and the same will befall you as befalls them."

When the news of Hulākū's arrival became spread abroad, "the Sultāns and Maliks" are said to have poured in, among whom was Sultān Rukn-ud-Dīn of Rūm—he, however, was not Sultān of Rūm at all, but merely the envoy of his brother, Sultān Kai-Kā'ūs, and acted treacherously towards him for his own ambitious ends; see page 164—and 'Izz-ud-Dīn, the son of the Aḡ-Bak, Muḡaffar-ud-Dīn, and others from 'Irāq, Aḡarbāijān, Ārān, Sherwān, Gūrjistān, and various Maliks, Ṣadrīs, and other great men. On reaching the Jīḡūn of Amūīah, orders were given to lay all the vessels and boats on the river under embargo. With these a strong bridge was constructed; and, on the 1st of Zī-Hijjah [the Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr says Shawwāl, two months before], 653 H.—31st December, 1255 A.D., but see under—Hulākū crossed with his army, at what point is not stated, but at the Turmid ferry, in all probability; and, for the first time, set foot in Ī-rān-Zamīn. As a reward to the boatmen for their services, he remitted the collection of tolls from them, and that tax afterwards entirely ceased. Next day, "several lions were seen—the word *gher* is applied to the tiger also, but, considering the high latitude, we may assume that some other less formidable animals are referred to, since a real lion hunt on two-humped camels, as stated, would be a sight indeed—and, they having been enclosed by a circle of men, Hulākū mounted, and two of them were "caught in the toils." The next day's march brought him to Shīwarghān, or Shīwarkān [*vul* Shibbergan].

His intention was to stay but one day there, but it so happened that, on the following day, which was the 'Id-i-Aḡḡā—the 10th of Zī-Hijjah—[such being the case, he must have crossed on the 8th, or remained from the 1st to the 8th] the snow and sleet began to fall, and continued for seven consecutive days and nights, and a great number of cattle perished through the excessive cold. He had no choice but to winter there. Our author's statement, that he made the territory of Bādghās his headquarters is much more probable, or rather the whole tract between Shīwarghān and Bādghās, considering the number of his troops. See note <sup>1</sup>, p. 1226. In the spring, Arghūn Ākā set up a vast audience-tent of silk and gold, fitted with furniture and utensils befitting, of gold and silver studded with precious stones, and worthy of a mighty monarch. It was pitched at an auspicious hour by Hulākū's command, and, at a felicitous conjunction of the stars, he mounted the throne set up therein, and received the congratulations of all the Khāns, Shāh zādehs, Amīrs, Maliks, and Hākims of all parts around then assembled there. After the ceremonial, the Amīr, Arghūn Ākā, set out for the presence of the Kā'an, as commanded by him, leaving his son, Gīrāe Malik, with Aḡmad, the Butk chī [Secretary], and the Ṣāḡīb [Wazīr], 'Alā-ud-Dīn, 'Aḡā Malik, for the administration of the civil and revenue affairs, with which Hulākū had nought to do, at that time. The latter moved to Khowāf and Zāwāh, where he was taken ill, and consequently he despatched Kaibūkā and Kūkā-I-yalkā, at the head of a force, to complete the conquest of the Kūhstān.

Early in 654 H., Hulākū sent Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḡammad, the Kurat, to the Muḡtaghīm, Nāsīr-ud-Dīn, one of the chief Dā'īs of the Ismā'īlīs, who

words feebleness and infirmity to his government and power. Mangū Khān said: "What weakness hath the Kāzī observed in our kingdom that he gives utterance to such like alarming words as these?" Kāzī Shams-ud Dīn replied: "What greater feebleness can there be than that the sect of Mulāhidah has made several forts its asylum, notwithstanding that the creed of that sect is contrary to the Musalmān faith, and also to the Christian and Mughal belief? They parade their riches and they wait in expectation of this, that, if your power should sustain any decline or reverse, the sect will rise in the midst of those mountains and in those fortresses, and overthrow the remainder of the people of Islām, and not leave the trace of a Musalmān."

This reality influenced and roused the mind of Mangū Khān to the reduction of the fortresses and territories of Mulhidistān, and the Kuhistān of Alamūt. A mandate was accordingly issued so that the forces which were in the countries of I-rān and 'Ajam, from Khurāsān and 'Irāq turned their faces to the territory of the Kuhistān and the tract of Alamūt; and, during a period of ten years or more, they took the whole of the cities and fortresses, and put the whole of the Mulāhidah to the sword, with the exception<sup>2</sup> of the women and children, all the remainder

had grown old and feeble, and called upon him to submit. He appears to have ruled the district of Tūn and its dependencies, in which was the fortress apparently that mentioned by our author above—*Sar-i-Takht*. Nāsir-ud-Dīn came on the 17th of Jamādī ul-Awwal, bringing presents, and Hulākū demanded why he had not brought the garrison of the fortress along with him, and was told that they would obey no orders but those of their Bādshāh, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Khūr Shāh. This appears to have satisfied Hulākū, who conferred upon him the government of Tūn and its districts, and sent him thither; but he died soon after. Hulākū now advanced to Tūs, the seat of government of the Amīr, Arghūn Ākā, and then moved to Kadakān, where he stayed some time, and Khābūshān [there is no place called "Kabuskan"], which the Mughals call Kūchān. He directed that this *karbāh* [town] should be restored, and that the means should be furnished from the treasury. The *lāhrees*—subterranean aqueducts—were repaired [he "ordered" no "canals to be dug"], and the Wazīr and Secretary of the province, Saif-ud-Dīn, Ākā, used his utmost endeavours, as a Musalmān, to bring the works to completion, especially the Jāmi' Masjid, which he himself endowed. Workshops were erected, and gardens laid out; and Amīrs and prominent men were directed to build dwellings for themselves, which they subsequently did.

<sup>2</sup> He possibly means, not even excepting the women and children, for even the Pro-Mughal writers say that *all* were exterminated.

being sent to hell ; and the potency of the verse—"Thus do we cause one oppressor to overcome another"—was made manifest.

This votary, who is Minhāj-i-Sarāj, the writer of this TABAḤḤAT, and author of this history, upon three different times, had occasion to travel into that part [the Ḥuhistān] on a mission. The first occasion was in the year 621 H., from the fortress of Tūlak, after Khurāsān had become cleared of the Mughal forces, on account of the scarcity of clothing, and dearth of some requisites, which had run out in consequence of the irruption of the infidels ; and people were distressed for necessaries of life. At the request of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Ḥasan-i-Sālār, Khar-post, the author proceeded from the fortress of Tūlak to Isfirār, in order to open the route for *kārwāns*. From thence he proceeded towards Ḳā-in, and from that place to the fort of Sar-i-Takht,<sup>3</sup> and Jowārsher, and Farmān-dih of the territory of the Ḥuhistān. At that time the Muhtashim [of the Mulāhid-ah] was Shihāb-i-Manṣūr, Abū-l-Faṭḥ. I [the author] found him a person of infinite learning, with wisdom, science, and philosophy, in such wise, that a philosopher and sage like unto him there was not in the territory of Khurāsān. He used greatly to cherish poor strangers and travellers ; and such Musalmans of Khurāsān as had come into proximity with him he was wont to take under his guardianship and protection. On this account his assemblies contained some of the most distinguished of the 'Ulamā of Khurāsān,<sup>4</sup> such as that Imām of the Age, Aḡḡal-ud-Dīn, the Bāmiānī, and Imām Shams-ud-Dīn, Khusrāu-Shāhī, and other 'Ulamā of Khurāsān, who had come to him ; and he had treated all of them with honour and reverence, and showed them much kindness. They stated to this effect, that,

<sup>3</sup> Written مرگفت with slight variation in two of the oldest, and two other good MSS. Subsequent writers mention a stronghold of the Mulāhidahs in the Ḥuhistān, in the district of Tūn, under that name. Three of the most modern copies of the text, the best Paris MS., and the Calcutta Printed Text, have مرگفت which may be read Marikhat, Marbakht, or Maranjat, and in a note to the Printed Text what may be read Rikht or Zikht. It lay in one of the common caravan routes. The same place, in the Rangat-uz-Ṣafā, is written مرگفت or مرگفت.

<sup>4</sup> Most copies of the text are deficient here.

during those first two or three years of anarchy<sup>6</sup> in Khurāsān, one thousand honorary dresses, and seven hundred horses, with trappings, had been received from his treasury and stables by 'Ulamā and poor strangers.

As the kindness and benefactions towards, and association and intercourse of this Muḥtashim, Shihāb, with the Musalmāns became frequent, the Mulāhidah sect sent accounts to Alamūt saying: "Very soon the Muḥtashim, Shihāb, will give the whole of the property of the Da'wat-Khānah [General Bounty Fund] to the Musalmāns;" and, from Alamūt, a mandate came for him to proceed thither; and the government of the Kuhistān<sup>7</sup> was conferred upon the Muḥtashim, Shams [ud-Dīn], Hasan-i-Ikhtiyār.

When this servant of the victorious government returned from the presence of the Muḥtashim, Shihāb, he proceeded, for the purpose of purchasing the necessary clothing, to the city of Tūn, and from thence returned to Ḳā-in,<sup>8</sup> Isfirār, and Tūlak again. After some time, it happened that, in 622 H., the author chanced to proceed from Tūlak to the presence of Malik Rukn-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-'Usmān, the Maraghani<sup>9</sup>—may he rest in peace!—at Khāesār of

<sup>6</sup> The Printed Text is lamentably out here, and has مدت for وقت but the former makes the sentence totally unintelligible. The second word, *fīrat*, refers to the Mughal invasion and distraction prevailing in those parts consequent on their being without a sovereign or settled government.

<sup>7</sup> This shows that the power of the sect was still very great; and that the Mughal domination was but nominal at this period.

<sup>8</sup> At this period Ḳā-in was noted for the manufacture of very fine linen, hair-cloth, and similar fabrics.

<sup>9</sup> This Malik, so often mentioned by our author, was the founder of the Kurat [This word, which is said to signify greatness, magnificence, grandeur, and the like, is written by some, كارت—كارت—and by others كورت—كورت—and كورت—كورت—and this last mode is apparently the most correct] dynasty, respecting which European writers generally, and some Musalmān writers of Hindūstān likewise, appear to entertain very erroneous ideas.

Their descent is traced to Sultān Sanjar, the Saljūk, on the father's, and to the Ghūrī Sultāns on the mother's side, according to several authors, while others say that he was the son of one of the *uncles* of the Sultān of Ghūr and Ghaznī—the brothers, Ghuyās-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, and Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām. A sister of those Sultāns certainly did marry a Saljūk—Malik Kızıl-Arsalan, nephew of Sultān Sanjar, and Kızıl-Arsalan's son, Malik Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Alb-i-Ghāzī, received the investiture of the fief of Hirāt early in 599 H. When the Khwārazmī Sultān invested Hirāt the second time, he was its ruler, and had to surrender it. See note<sup>2</sup>, page 257. What relationship existed, or whether any, between him and the

**Ghūr**, and, at the request of that august Malik, consented

preceding feudatory of Hirāt, 'Izz-ud-Dīn, 'Umr, the Maraghani, who is styled Malik of Khurāsān at page 193, is not, I fear, to be discovered, but the Ghūrī Sultāns were certainly related in some way to the Maraghani Maliks.

Nāsir-ud-Dīn, 'Uṣmān-i-Harab, ruler of Siyistān and Nimroz, son of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Harab, married Āyishah Khātūn, daughter of this 'Umr-i-Maraghani. Much respecting Nāsir-ud-Dīn, 'Uṣmān's descendants, by that lady, will be found at pages 193—202. See also note 3, page 967.

Guzidāh says 'Izz-ud-Dīn, 'Umr, was Sultān Ghuyāṣ-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām's Wazīr, and held in great estimation. The Maraghani's are said, by our author, to be Gharijās, that is, natives of Gharjistān. 'Izz-ud-Dīn, 'Umr the Maraghani, held the sief of Hirāt when Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, invested it in 598 H [see note 7, page 257], and had to surrender that stronghold to him at the close of the year.

While holding the sief of Hirāt, 'Izz-ud-Dīn, 'Umr, had entrusted his two brothers with the viceroyship of two important fortresses, under his government—Rukn-ud-Dīn [his Musalmān name is not given, but it was, probably, Muḥammad-i-Abī-Bikr, from what follows] with that of Nigristān, according to Aḥf, which name is doubtful, and is never once mentioned by our author, but one of the great fortresses of Gharjistān is evidently meant, and Tāj-ud-Dīn, 'Uṣmān, with that of Khāesār of Ghūr. Tāj-ud-Dīn was Sar-i-Jāndār to Sultān Ghuyāṣ-ud-Dīn's son, Sultān Maḥmūd, and played an important part during the investment of Firūz-koh by the Khwārazmīs. See page 410. Tāj-ud-Dīn, 'Uṣmān, having died—the date is not given, but it must have been subsequent to 607 H —'Umr gave Khāesār, and a portion of Ghūr, to his other brother, Rukn-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad[-i-Abī-Bikr?], who, some say, "was the maternal grandfather of Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad," the founder of the Kurat dynasty, to whom Mangū Kā'n gave the sief of Hirāt and its dependencies, with some other territory.

Now, as 'Umr's brother, Rukn-ud-Dīn, had already been provided for, it is evident to me that instead of reading, as in some copies of the original, that 'Umr gave Khāesār of Ghūr, and some other territory, to his *brādar*—brother, we should read *brādar-sādah*—brother's son, for it is certain, from the names given by our author above, that 'Uṣmān is the name of the father of the chief of Khāesār of Ghūr to whom he refers, and whose agent our author was, and that the chief was himself called Rukn-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, as was his father's brother; and, moreover, the period named—622 H—makes this view the more certain, because the Chingiz Khān died in 624 H, and Rukn-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-'Uṣmān, during the Mughal troubles, made interest with the Nū-yīn, Ilchikdāe—and, from what our author says this Malik appears to have been unmolested while all other parts of Ghūr, and territories around, were invaded by the Mughals—and the Chingiz Khān confirmed him in the possession of his territory.

The similarity of names has apparently caused confusion in some of the accounts of the Kurat dynasty, and I think I can show how. Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, 'Umr, the Maraghani, had two brothers, as already stated—one Tāj-ud-Dīn, 'Uṣmān, the other Rukn-ud-Dīn, Abī-Bikr. When Tūlī Khān obtained possession of Hirāt, he left there, it is said, as nominal governor, under the Mughals, along with the Mughal Shāhnaḥ, Mangatāe, "Abī-Bikr, the Maraghani," without giving his title; and this person is, according to my theory, the same who tendered submission to the Mughals, and the brother of 'Izz-ud-

to go on a mission towards the territory of the *Ḳuhistān* a

*Dīn*, 'Umr, and of *Taj-ud-Dīn*, 'Ugmān. *Abī-Bikr*,—that is *Rukn-ud-Dīn*, *Muḥammad-i-Abī-Bikr*—the *Maraghānī*, was put to death soon after, along with *Mangutāie*, the *Mughal Shāhnah*, when the *Hirātīs* threw off the yoke, leaving, as I suppose, among other children probably, a daughter, who was given in marriage to *Rukn-ud-Dīn*, *Muḥammad*, son of *Tāj-ud-Dīn*, 'Ugmān, our author's chief of *Khāesār* of *Ghūr*, who thus married his cousin. The *Malik Shams-ud-Dīn*, *Muḥammad*, the first of the dynasty, is the son of the said *Rukn-ud-Dīn*, *Muḥammad-i-'Ugmān*, our author's patron, who died in 643 H.

Most of the works which give an account of the *Kurat* dynasty, including *Alfi*, state that "*Malik Rukn-ud-Dīn* was the maternal grandfather of *Malik Shams-ud-Dīn*, *Muḥammad*, while *Faṣīḥ-i* states distinctly, in several places, that *Shams-ud-Dīn*, *Muḥammad*, was *Rukn-ud-Dīn*'s son, and *Rukn-ud-Dīn*, *Abī-Bikr*'s son. Both statements, according to what I have mentioned above, would be quite correct—*Rukn-ud-Dīn*, *Muḥammad-i-Abī-Bikr*, would be the maternal grandfather, and *Rukn-ud-Dīn*, *Muḥammad-i-'Ugmān*, of our author, would be *Shams-ud-Dīn*'s father, and, at the same time, nephew and son-in-law of the first-mentioned *Rukn-ud-Dīn*, but even then the *Saljuḳī* descent does not appear. It is said that, "when *Malik Rukn-ud-Dīn* used to attend the camp of the *Chingiz Khān*, and *Üktāie Kā'ān*, and the *Mughal Nū-yīn*, he used to take *Shams-ud-Dīn*, *Muḥammad*, along with him, so that he became acquainted with the *Mughal* usages and regulations." This too is not incompatible. When taken to the *Chingiz Khān*'s camp, he went with his maternal grandfather, *Rukn-ud-Dīn*, *Muḥammad-i-Abī-Bikr*, and, when he attended at *Üktāie*'s, he accompanied his father, *Rukn-ud-Dīn*, *Muḥammad-i-'Ugmān*.

A member, apparently, of the same family, *Amir Muḥammad*, the *Maraghānī*, was killed in the fortress of *Ashyār* of *Gharjstān*. He had done good service against the *Mughals* [see page 1077]. In 643 H., *Malik Rukn-ud-Dīn* [*Ugmān*] died, and he, previous to his death, nominated his son, *Shams-ud-Dīn*, *Muḥammad*, heir and successor to his fief. In 646 H., *Malik Shams-ud-Dīn*, *Muḥammad*, proceeded into *Turkistān*, to the *urdu* of the *Kā'ān*, for the purpose of being confirmed in the fief, and, during one of the affairs in which the *Kā'ān* was engaged against his enemies, *Mangū*'s notice was drawn to *Malik Shams-ud-Dīn*, *Muḥammad*, who was greatly distinguishing himself. The *Kā'ān* inquired who he was; and, when he was informed, he caused a *yarḡā* to be issued confirming him in his father's fief of *Ghūr*, and added thereto that of *Hirāt*, *Gharjstān*, *Sāwah*, *Farāh*, and *Sijstān*, subject, of course, to the *Mughal* authorities in *Īrān-Zamīn*.

In that same year, previous to proceeding to the *urdu* of the *Kā'ān*, *Malik Shams-ud-Dīn*, *Muḥammad*, is said to have slain *Malik Nusrat-ud-Dīn*, 'Alī, the *Suffārī*, son of *Bahrām Shāh*, ruler of *Nimroz*, whose maternal grandfather was 'Izz-ud-Dīn, 'Umr, the *Maraghānī*, and *Shams-ud-Dīn*, *Muḥammad*'s great uncle on both the father's and mother's side, but our author was unacquainted, seemingly, with the facts respecting *Malik Nusrat-ud-Dīn*, 'Alī's death. See pages 193 and 197. When *Shams-ud-Dīn*, *Muḥammad*, appeared before *Mangū Kā'ān*, he inquired of him "Wherefore didst thou slay *Malik 'Alī*?" He replied "I slew him for this reason that the *Kā'ān* might make the inquiry of me, 'Wherefore didst thou kill him?' and not inquire of *Amir* why he had killed me." *Shams-ud-Dīn*, *Muḥammad*, likewise obtained possession of the fortress of *Bakar*—*Ḥ*—which, from the time of *Nūghirwān*, no one

second time, in order that the route for *karwāns* might be

had been able to possess himself of by force. It is the name of a fortress of Sijistān.

Subsequently, in 647 H., he slew the Malik of Gharijstān, Saif-ud-Dīn—who he was is doubtful, but a kinsman probably—within the territory of Hirāt. The reason is obvious. After his return from the *ardū* of the Kā'an, with the investiture of these different tracts, in which were situated several of the great fortresses mentioned previously by our author, he had to gain possession of them *if he could*; and the chiefs in possession of them were not inclined to give them up, and submit to the Kurat, like as the Hākims of Tāl-kān, Sāwah, and Tūlak, had done. No further particulars are given of these events.

Our author probably may not have known from personal observation that Malik Rukn-ud-Dīn, Muhammad-i-'Usmān, had become a feudatory of the Mughals, for he left his native country and retired into Hind in 623 H., but he could scarcely have failed to hear of it afterwards. However, he does not say the Malik was not a feudatory: he is only silent on the subject. There is no mention of Khāesār being a strong fortress, although it is most probable that it was such. Yet we cannot fail noticing, that, when all other places were assailed by the Mughals, captured, or compelled to submit, Khāesār of Ghūr was left unmolested. The reason is palpable—Rukn-ud-Dīn, Muhammad-i-'Usmān, had made his submission to the Mughals through the Nū-yīn, Ilchikīdāe, who was a nephew of the Chingiz Khān to boot.

We are told, at page 1006, that the Chingiz Khān conferred upon Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Habashī-i-'Abd-ul-Malik, Sar-i-Zarrād, the territory of Ghūr, with the title of Khusrāu of Ghūr. In this case Rukn-ud-Dīn, Muhammad-i-'Usmān, must have been subordinate to him, or the territory of Khāesār must have been distinct, by virtue of its Malik being also subject to the Mughal yoke, but he soon threw it off, and, fighting against them, was killed.

Nine years after the Nū-yīn, Mangūtah [Mr Dowson's "Mangū Khān" See page 809], abandoned the siege of Ūchchah, as has been recorded, and at whose appearance on the Sind or Indus in the year 644 H., Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Hasan, the Kārūgh, had fled from Multān, Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, the Kurat, son of Rukn-ud-Dīn, Muhammad-i-'Usmān, accompanied the Nū-yīn, Sālī, into Hind. Having entered it, "Sālī despatched Malik Shams-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, to Multān, in 654 H., on a mission to that Shaikh of Shaikhs, Bahā-ud-Dīn, Zakariā—commonly styled, at this day, Bahā-ul-Haqq, whose tomb we had to batter so much during the siege of Multān in 1848—9—and an accommodation was agreed upon. The sum of 100,000 *dīnārs* was paid to secure this accommodation, and probably to save Multān from being sacked, and a Mamlūk of Shams-ud-Dīn, Muhammad's, named the Chingiz Khān, was [made?] Hākīm at Multān." See pages 711, 784, 792, and 844.

"From thence the Nū-yīn, Sālī, with Shams-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, the Kurat, proceeded towards Lūhāwūr—Lāhor—where, at that time, was Kurit or Kurat Khwān—[sic. كرتوان. There was a Kuret Khān among the Maliks of Dihlī, No. XV., but he was never feudatory of Lāhor, and was dead before this period]." He was probably no subject of the Dihlī kingdom, for, at this time, Lāhor had been lost to it, and the Khokhars are said to have occupied the ruins of Lāhor after its sack by the Mughals in 639 H. "Sālī entered into an accommodation with this person," whoever he might have been, "on the payment of 30,000 *dīnārs*, 30 *karwāns*—loads sufficient to load an ass with—of soft fabrics, and 100 captives."

reopened. From **Khāesār** he [the author] proceeded

"After this, the subordinates of the Nā-yīn, Sālī, plotted against Malik **Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad**, upon which he retired from Hind, and set out to return to **Ghūr**. On the way he was arrested and detained by Malik 'Imād-ud-Dīn, the **Ghūrī**. **Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad**, on this, despatched a trusty agent to the **Bahādur**. **Tā-ir**, then commanding the troops in those parts [and, consequently, if this be true, this **Tā-ir** could not have been killed at **Lāhor** in 639 H., as our author states at page 1135], telling him of his seizure and detention while on his way to his, **Tā-ir's**, province. **Tā-ir** directed his release, and he came to **Tā-ir's urdū**, and, after that, he retained **Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad**, near his own person."

In a book published at the commencement of this **Afghān** crisis, entitled "*History of Afghanistan from the Earliest Period*," by Colonel G. B. Malleson, C.S.I., we are told, at page 114, with reference to the year 1249, that .—

"In that year, **Shīr Khān**, the governor of the Panjāb for the King of **Dehlī**, **Nāsir-ud-Dīn Mahmūd**, invaded **Afghānistān**, seized upon **Ghazni** and **Kābul**, and annexed them to the **Dehlī** monarchy. It is probable that they were speedily recovered, for not only, in subsequent years, do we find the **Moghols** making repeated incursions into India, but in the year 1336 traces appear of a new **Afghān** dynasty seated on the throne of **Ghazni**, owning subordination to, and acknowledging the suzerainty of, the **Moghols** of Central Asia."

Now the text above translated—**The Tabakāt-i-Nāsirī**—was dedicated to, and named after the **Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd Shāh**, who is referred to in the above extract, and in no work extant will such details be found respecting that reign in particular, and also the history of the **Ghūrīs**. Indeed all later historians obtain their information from this **Tabakāt**, for there was no other contemporary writer but its author, that we know of, who gives such details. **Shēr Khān**, i.e. the Lion **Khān**—**Shēr** signifying Lion, but "*Sāir*," as in the work above referred to, signifies "*Milk*"—The **Milk** [and Water?] **Khān**—is no other than the great **Malik**, the cousin of **Ulugh Khān i-A'zam**, a memoir of whom is given at page 791, and who was living when our author finished his work, and was personally known to him.

Nothing of the above romantic statements as to "the throne of **Ghazni**" and "**Kābul**" will be found recorded in the text, for the reason that they never happened, and nowhere will such be found save in **Dow, Briggs**, and **Furhtah**. See notes 4, page 690, and 1, page 794, para. 7.

The events of the year 647 H.—1249 A.D.—will be found at pages 685 and 820. The following year, **Shēr Khān** i-Sunkar re-took **Multān** from the **Mughals**, and, in the year in question, ousted a rival **Malik** of the **Dehlī** Court, who was disaffected, and intriguing with the **Mughals**, from **Ūchchah**, and, soon after, he actually had himself to retire to the **urdū** of **Mangū Kā'ān**, while his rival went to **Hulākū**. The reason of this will be found fully explained by our author respecting the disorders in the **Dehlī** kingdom. This re-capture of **Multān** and seizure of **Ūchchah** is what the **Dakhani** compiler, **Furhtah**, made **Ghazni** of, but even he and his translators only make "*Sherre, the emperor's nephew* [which he was not], *take Ghurni*;" not **Kābul** too.

Col. Malleson then adds .—

"This **Afghān** dynasty, like that which preceded it, came from **Ghor**. Probably [?] it was the chief of the **Afghān** tribe [sic tribe !] in the **Ghor** mountains to whom the **Moghols** suzerain delegated his authority. They



towards Farāh, and from thence to the *Ḳala'-i*-[fort of *Kāh* of *Sīstān*, then on to the *Ḥiṣār* [fortified or walled town] of *Karah*, and to *Ṭabas* and the fort of *Mūmin ābād*, and thence to *Ḳā'in*. At *Ḳā'in* the author saw the *Muhtashim*, *Shams*, who was a man of the military profession. From this latter place the author returned to *Khāesār*.

When the year 623 H. came round, the writer of this who is *Minhāj-i-Sarāj*, determined to undertake a journey into *Hindūstān*; and, as a requirement for the journey into that country, with the permission of *Malik Rukn-ud Dīn*, *Muhammad-i-'Usmān*, the *Maraghani*, of *Khāesā* [of *Ghūr*], he proceeded to *Farāh*, in order that a little silk might be purchased. On his arriving in the neighbourhood of *Farāh*, *Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn*, *Bināl-Tigīn*, the *Khawārazmī*, mention of whom has already been made in the Section containing the account of the *Maliks* of *Nimroz* was ruling the country of *Sīstān*. Hostility had arisen between him and the *Mulāhidahs* on account of the for-

ruled from 1336 to 1383. The first sovereign, *Shams-ud-Dīn Ghorī*, and his two immediate successors, *Rukh-ud-Dīn* [sic], and *Fakhr-ud-Dīn* [sic] *Ghorī*, etc., etc.

I beg to differ entirely from Col. Malletson with regard to this latter statement, as well as the former ones. These errors all emanate from the same source, of Dow and Briggs making *Tājik Ghūrīs* the "Afghan dynasty (Ghor)," and turning the people of *Ghūr* into *Afghāns*, who at that period, as far up to comparatively modern times, were settled in *Afghānistān*, that is, east of *Ghaznīn*, and not in *Ghūr*. The "first sovereign, *Shams-ud-Dīn*," of this so-called "Afghan dynasty"—this "chief of the Afghan tribe in the Ghor mountains," is, of course, no other than *Malik Shams-ud-Dīn*, *Muhammad*, the founder of the *Kurat* dynasty, referred to above. On the father's side he was of *Saljūq Turk-mān* descent, and on the mother's, of *Ghūrī*, and also *Maraghani*, that is of *Gharjī* descent, and if this mixture composes an "Afghan of the Ghor mountains" I need not say anything more. See note 1, page 508.

His capital and that of his successors in their fiefs, for they were mere feudatories, was *Hirāt*, and *Ghaznīn* never belonged to them.

It is a pity that such statements should be disseminated, because they mislead. I do not for one moment suppose but that Col. Malletson imagined that what he was writing was strictly correct, or that he was aware what error he was putting his name to. These he would have avoided had he been able to consult the original historians; and he would have saved himself from falling into terrible errors had he consulted even that small portion of this *Ṭabaq*, which is contained in Vol. II of *ELLIOR'S HISTORIANS*, in which the even of the year 1249 A.D. will be found, as well as a portion of the history of the *Ghūrī* dynasties.

of Shāhan-Shāhī, which is adjacent to the town of Neh,<sup>1</sup> and he had retired defeated before them, and came to Farāh. Fear [of them] had overcome him; and, of the men of note who were along with him, among those on whom he was relying to proceed into the Ḳuhistān to effect an accommodation, and make terms between him and the ruler of the Ḳuhistān, the Muḥtashim, Shams, not one of them, the notables of his Court, was equal to undertake the journey, until they acquainted him [Bināl-Tigīn] with the news of the arrival of this votary, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, in the vicinity of Farāh.

Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bināl-Tigīn, despatched a led horse, and a deputation of persons of note to receive him, and call him.<sup>1</sup> When the author reached his presence, the Malik made a request, saying: "It behoveth thee to do the favour of effecting a peace, and to proceed into the Ḳuhistān. The son of Malik Rukn-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-'Uṣmān,<sup>2</sup> will accompany thee in this important enterprise—thou [wilt go] under the designation of an envoy, and he, under the name of a mediator." In conformity with this solicitation, the author proceeded towards the Ḳuhistān. The Mulāhidahs were then before the town of Neh; and, after having reached the confines of the Ḳuhistān, it was necessary to come back again; and the author proceeded to Neh, and the accommodation between Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bināl-Tigīn, and the Mulāhidah Muḥtashim, Shams, was effected.

When the author had returned from that journey, and had again reached the presence of Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bināl-Tigīn, the latter said: "It is necessary for thee to go a second time, and demand war from the Mulāhidah," but this servant of the state did not consent to set out on a second journey, as he had determined upon undertaking a journey into Hindūstān, and entertained a very great predilection for this journey. This refusal on the part of his votary did not meet with the approval of Malik Tāj-ud-

<sup>1</sup> The Calcutta Printed Text, as usual, makes a pretty hash of this well-known name.

<sup>2</sup> See the account of the Rulers of Sijstān and Nimroz, pages 196 to 201.

<sup>3</sup> The son here referred to is, doubtless, Shams-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, referred to in the previous note.

Dīn, Bināl-Tigīn, and he commanded so that they detained him [the author] for forty-three days in the fort of Ṣafhed of Sīstān,<sup>5</sup> and prohibited his going beyond the walls, until Malik Rukn-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-'Uṣmān, of Khāesār—may he rest in peace!—despatched letters from Ghūr to Malik Tāj-ud-Dīn, Bināl-Tigīn. The author, likewise, composed a poem conformable with the case of his confinement; and, by the favour of the Most High God, he obtained his liberation from that fortress. Five verses of that poem are here given that they may come under the august observation of the SULTĀN OF THE SULTĀNS OF ISLĀM, whose sovereignty be long prolonged! Āmin.

"How long shall my crystal tears on the amber [like] face,  
To the emerald spheres the coral hue impart?  
Since like unto smoke from Kumārī wood<sup>6</sup> are my sighs,  
It would not be astonishing were ye distilling rose-water, O tears!  
In disposition, neither am I vicious, nor is evil found in me;  
Why then am I a captive on the Ṣafhed mount?  
I am not the Sī-murgh,<sup>7</sup> nor is this the mountain of Kāf—  
For ever pleasing to the parrot captivity will not be.  
Minhāj—The Straight Road<sup>8</sup>—is best on the open highway:  
The straight road he findeth not, through restraint the fortress within!"

The intermediate [portion of the] poem, and the entire copy of it, is not in existence, and hence it is thus abridged.<sup>7</sup> May the Almighty preserve the Nāṣirī dominion to the utmost bounds of possibility!

I now return to the subject of the history.

In the territory of the Mulāḥidah there are one hundred and five forts—seventy forts in the Kuhistān territory,<sup>9</sup>

<sup>5</sup> The Calcutta Printed Text, which is "so much to be depended on," merely turns this into the fort of Ṣaf of Hindūstān—*قلعہ صاف ہندوستان* instead of *قلعہ صاف سیستان*.

<sup>6</sup> Wood brought from Kumār or Kumārūn [Anglicised Comorin] used for fumigation, also aloes, and gum benzoin.

<sup>7</sup> The fabulous bird of eastern romance—the *'unkū* or griffin. Its home is the Koh-i-Kāf, which is supposed to surround the world.

<sup>8</sup> Which Minhāj signifies—a play on his name.

<sup>7</sup> Its loss is scarcely to be regretted, judging from the above specimen.

<sup>9</sup> In Khurāsān west of Hirāt. The word comes from Kohistān, signifying a mountainous tract of country. Our author has plainly indicated its whereabouts. Kāf-in was, and is, its chief town. Respecting Alamūt see note <sup>5</sup>, page 363. In the MASĀLIK WA MAMĀLIK it is said there is not any river water throughout that tract, but this assertion is not quite correct, unless a great change has taken place since that work was written. It is scarce,

and thirty-five in the hilly tract of 'Irāk, which they call Alamūt. After the Mughal forces had occupied their territory some time, and a great number of captives of that sect had been slaughtered, the Maulānā<sup>1</sup> of the Mulāhidah, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd, son of Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Hasan-i-Nau Musalmān, was assassinated by one among his personal slaves,<sup>2</sup> in the fortress of Lanbah-Sar,<sup>3</sup> and the son of 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd, came out of that stronghold and proceeded to the Mughal camp. They despatched him, along with his dependents and followers, to the presence of Mangū Khān, and command was given to put him to death on the way. All the forts of Mulhidistān were destroyed, and the Mughals took their cities and towns and demolished them, with the exception of the fort of Gird-Koh<sup>4</sup> which

certainly. These parts were, at the period in question, very populous and flourishing.

<sup>1</sup> The head of the sect who held both the temporal and spiritual power over the Mulāhidah, as previously mentioned at page 1189.

<sup>2</sup> Hasan, the Māzandarānī, at the end of Shawwāl, in the year 653 H. 'Alā-ud-Dīn, Mahmūd's son, was the Khudāwand, Rukn-ud-Dīn, Khūr Shāh, who was quite a youth, mention of whom will be found in another note. Our author is quite wrong here, and has, in his brevity, confused events. Lanbah-sar was not taken possession of until long after Khūr Shāh came out of Maimūn-dag, and went to Hulākū's camp, the details of which will be found farther on.

<sup>3</sup> Here the Printed Text turns this name into *سهر* for *سهر*.

<sup>4</sup> A few miles west of Damghān. Having marched from Kūshān [Khabūshān], Hulākū turned his face towards 'Irāk, and moved to Busfām and Khurkān, and reached Busfām on the 10th of Shat'bān. The Korcht, Bak-timish, the Bitik-chī, Zahir-ud-Dīn, and Shāh Mir, who had been sent on a mission to Rukn-ud-Dīn, Khūr Shāh—with a copy of the *farmān*, probably, issued at Kash—rejoined him on the 29th of Jamādī ul Aḥir, on which same day some of the fortresses were reached, and raids made upon the country round. From Busfām, the Shāhnaḥ or Intendant of Hirāt, Margatāc, along with Bak-timish [the Bak-Timūr of Alfī, Takalmish of the Panākati, and Mankalmish of the Jāmi'ut Tawārikh] and the Raupat-uṣṣafā were again despatched to Khūr Shāh with promises, stipulations, and menaces.

At this time, the Maulānā-i-Sa'īd, the Khwājah, Naṣīr-ud Dīn, the Tūfī, and several other learned doctors, such as the Ka'is-ud Daulah, and the Muafik-ul-'Adal [-ud Daulah?], and their sons, were detained by Khūr Shāh, against their will, according to the Shī'ahs, but the Khwājah, Naṣīr-ud Dīn, was with Khūr Shāh for his own seditious purposes, as will be hereafter plainly manifested, and, influenced by him, the Khudāwand, Rukn-ud-Dīn, Khūr Shāh, who was quite a boy, and had only recently succeeded his father, and had been advised by those traitors to submit, treated the envoys well; and, on dismissing them, sent with them his younger brother, Shāhan-Shāh, with the Khwājah Asīl-ud-Dīn, the *Zauzani*, and other great men of his

lies between **Khurāsān** and 'Irāk. Up to this time, now

kingdom, to tender his submission, and to acknowledge the suzerainty of the Mughal **Kā'n**. Hulākū received them, and treated them with honour, but despatched **Zaḥīr-ud-Dīn**, the **Bitik-chī**, and two other men of note, to intimate to **Khūr Shāh** that, if he, **Khūr Shāh**, spoke truly with respect to his obedience and subjection, it behoved him to demolish his fortresses, and present himself in the audience tent of Hulākū. **Khūr Shāh's** reply, on dismissing them, was, that, whatever opposition his father may have displayed with regard to the Mughal Court, he had himself evinced naught save servitude and obedience; and he gave orders, in the presence of the agents, to dismantle several fortresses, such as **Humāyūn-duj**, **Alamūt**, **Lanbah-Sar**, and others, to throw down the battlements, carry away the gates to a distance, and begin to tear down the walls; but, for himself, he requested a delay of one year, after which he would present himself.

Hulākū perceived it was useless to send envoys again, and he therefore directed all the Mughal troops that were in 'Irāk and other parts to advance, and close in upon the **Mulāḥudah** territory. Those on the right [**Buṣṭām** being the centre], in **Māzandarān**, were under **Būḳā** **Timūr** and the **Nū-yūn**, **Kūkā** **I-yalkā**, while those on the left, under **Nikūdar Aghūl**, and the **Nū-yūn**, **Kaibūka**, were to advance by way of **Khwār**—the name of a district or tract of country in the neighbourhood of **Rai**—which signifies low or sloping ground, but not necessarily "salt"—and **Simnān**, while Hulākū himself, with one *tomān* of picked troops, advanced from **Buṣṭām** on the 10th of **Sha'bān**, 654 H. I would here remark, for geographical accuracy, that the name of this place is written بستان and that the name "**Bostan**"—i.e. بوستان—signifying "a flower garden," under which name this place, famous in Persian history, appears in Colonel J. T. Walker's map and Major O. B. St. John's, is not correct.

Hulākū, notwithstanding he had said he would send no more envoys, again had recourse to negotiation, but, with the treachery inherent in the Mughal, and in some other northern barbarians, sent to **Khūr Shāh** saying: "Although our standards have advanced, and notwithstanding all the misdeeds he has been guilty of, if **Khūr Shāh** presents himself, he will be received, the past will be forgotten, and he will be exalted." After the Mughals had passed **Jirūz-koh**, the envoys again returned, accompanied by **Khūr Shāh's** **Wazīr-i-Khāṣ**—Prime Minister—**Kaī-Kūbād**, to intimate that his master had agreed to demolish all the fortresses. **Khūr Shāh** made, however, a special request, that **Alamūt** and **Lanbah-Sar** should be left to his offspring, since they were the ancient homes of his family, and that he should be allowed a year's grace, to prepare certain presents and offerings worthy of the Mughal sovereign's acceptance, that the **Muhtashim** of **Gird-Koh** and the **Kuhistan** had been directed to present themselves, and that, in the mean time, all the other fortresses should be demolished. This temporizing was no match for the duplicity and wiles of the Mughal barbarian, who was aware what a difficult task he would have in order to capture the chief strongholds. Hulākū, still moving forward towards **Lār** and **Damawand**, passed, by the way, **Shāh-duj**, which was captured in two days; and, once more, he despatched his envoys. **Khūr Shāh** still refused to appear, but he notified that he would send his son, with a body of 300 *mūltā* [as a contingent?] and demolish all the fortresses. His son came—a child of seven years old, whose mother was a concubine, but Hulākū, who waited at 'Abbās-ābād of **Rai** to receive him, would not allow

that the year 658 H. has drawn to its close, it will be a

an infant to remain in his camp, and sent him back. Then, to carry out his proposed treachery, Hulākū, in reply to Khūr Shāh, intimated that, in case there should be further delay in appearing himself, he had better send another of his brothers to relieve Shāhan-Shāh, who had been so long in the Mughal camp. Khūr Shāh then despatched another brother, Shahrān-Shāh—some call him Sherwān Shāh—along with the Khwājah, Aḡl-ud-Dīn, the Zauzanī, and 300 soldiers; and, on the 5th of Shawwāl, 654 H., they reached his camp within the limits of Rai. On the 9th, they were sent back bearing a safe-conduct for Khūr Shāh himself, with a message to the effect that, in consequence of the submission, and show of obedience of Khūr Shāh, the misdeeds of his father had been forgiven, and, as no improper conduct had been shown by himself, since he had succeeded his father, if he destroyed the fortresses as promised, he might expect the royal favour. After sending off this—the bearer, filled with delight at the terms—Hulākū issued orders for the Mughal troops to form a cordon round about Maimūn-duḡ, the residence of Khūr Shāh, which was carried out particularly on the part of Būkā Tīmūr and Kūkā I-yākā, who approached it very closely, from the side of Astādār—or Astādārah—the same place as is mentioned in Jabah [Yamah] and Sahūdāh's [Swīdāe's] raid.

As soon as Khūr Shāh became cognizant of this suspicious proceeding, he sent a person to the Mughals, saying "Since we have submitted, and are occupied in demolishing our fortresses, what is the object of your advancing into these parts?" By way of mockery they replied "Because we are friends now, and there is no disagreement between us, we have come into your grazing lands, in order that our horses may enjoy a few days' rest, after which we again depart." On the 10th of Shawwāl, the Mughals entered the Rūd-bārāt or Rūd-bārān (a district and town, between Gilān and Kāzwīn. It is the plural of *rūd-bār*, and signifies a tract of many streams) by the Yaḡhkal or Baghal Dava'h or Pass, on the road to Tāl-kān, and commenced plundering and devastating the country round. On the 18th, the audience tent of Hulākū was pitched facing Maimūn-duḡ on the northern side, and, the next day, he reconnoitred the place preparatory to an attack, and, the following day, the troops completely encircled it, although the mountain, on which it is situated, is six farsakhs in circuit. Hulākū, however, when he beheld that impregnable fortress, saw that, to take it by storm, was utterly impossible, and that nothing else than reduction by famine was possible, and that that might not be effected for many years. He therefore held counsel with the Shāh-zādahs and Amīrs whether to invest it, or retire, and return next year, as the season was far advanced. Most of them were for retiring, as winter was come—it was Shawwāl, 654 H.—November, 1256 A.D.—the horses were emaciated, and forage was scarcely obtainable, and would have to be brought from the frontier districts of Kirmān or Arman; but Būkā-Tīmūr, the Butik-chī, Saif-ud-Dīn, and Amīr Kaibūkā, the Nāemān, on the contrary, urged, that to retire now would be a show of weakness, and that, as a matter of necessity, they ought to remain until the affair assumed some tangible shape or other. So Hulākū again had recourse to duplicity, while traitors in the stronghold of the inexperienced Khūr Shāh helped its success. He despatched another envoy to Khūr Shāh, with a message tending to seduce him, by hopes of favour, to come down. The envoy said "O Khūr Shāh! if, like a man, you come down and present yourself, you not only preserve your own life, but also the

period of ten years that the investment of that fortress has

lives of all who are in this place with you. If, in the course of five days, you do not come, then make your fortress strong, and expect an assault, for this is the last time that any one will come to you." Rukn-ud-Dīn, Khūr Shāh, seeing the state of affairs, held counsel with his chief men; and no way appeared left open to him other than to surrender. On the same day that this was determined on, he despatched, in advance of himself, another brother, Shāh Kiyā, along with the traitor—as I shall presently show—the Khwājāh, Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, the Tūstī, and other officials and leaders of his forces, to the presence of Hulākū, bearing presents and offerings befitting. On Friday, the 27th of Shawwāl, they reached his camp, and, on Sunday, 1st of Zī-Ḳa'dah, 654 H.—12th November, 1256 A.D.—the Khudāwand, Rukn-ud-Dīn, Khūr Shāh, having taken a last farewell of his ancestral home of two hundred years, accompanied by Aḡī-ud-Dīn, Zauzanī, Mu'ayyid-ud-Dīn, the Wazīr, and the sons of the Ra'īs-ud-Daulah, and Muṣṭafī-ud-Daulah, the same day presented himself in the camp of Hulākū, the Mughal. So, "the strongly fortified town of Meimundūz" was neither besieged, nor was "the attack prosecuted with vigour," because no attack was ever made, neither did "Rokn-ud-din propose terms to Khulagu," as we are informed in the "*Mongols Proper*," but quite the contrary.

The traitor, Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, the Tūstī, composed a verse on this event, the first half of which, not quite correctly rendered, is given by Von Hammer, who, in his account of the Ismā'īliān, makes sad havoc among the names of persons and places. The verse is as follows, literally rendered —

"When the 'Arab year six hundred, fifty, and four, came round,  
On Sunday, the first of the month Zī Ḳa'dah, at morning dawn,  
Khūr Shāh, Bādshāh of the Mūlāḥḥah, from his throne arose,  
And, in front of the throne of Hulākū [Khān], stood up."

When Khūr Shāh presented himself, Hulākū beheld a mere youth of inexperience and indiscretion, and, therefore, according to the pro-Mughal accounts, he treated him kindly, and gave him hopes of the Kā'ān's favour. Khūr Shāh, at Hulākū's request, despatched one of his chief men entitled Ṣadr-ud-Dīn, in order that all the fortresses which his father and forefathers had obtained possession of, in the Ḳuhistān, the Rūd-bārāt, and Ḳūmis—a district, or rather province, between Khurāsān and 'Irāk-i-'Ajam—full of military stores, magazines of provisions, and other valuable property, might be delivered up to the Mughal officials, and, by Hulākū's command, they are said to have been levelled with the ground—subsequently perhaps, as this would be a work of time only: Hāfiḡ Abū says they amounted to some three hundred, all but Lambah-Sar and Gird Koh—but the number was only a little over a hundred—which the governors refused to give up, and which held out, particularly the latter, for twenty years after, as already mentioned. Pestilence at last broke out in Lambah-Sar, and most of its people perished. The rest abandoned it, and the Mughals destroyed it.

The day after Khūr Shāh reached the Mughal camp, he gave orders to his dependants to leave Maimūn-dup, and his ancestral treasures, other valuable property, and library, he presented [perforce] to Hulākū as a *peṣh-kash*, the whole of which Hulākū is said to have distributed among his officers. After this the latter turned his face towards Alamūt. On reaching the foot of the stronghold, Khūr Shāh was sent forward to request the senechal to come

been going on.<sup>4</sup> Within it about 100 or 200 men have

<sup>4</sup> Not in "the third year of the siege," as Von Hammer states: it held out for nearly twenty years, and only then fell because pestilence had destroyed nearly the whole of its defenders.

down and give it up, but that Sipah-Sālār refused to listen to his words, and gave him a rough and stern reply. Hulākū left a numerous force there to invest it, but, after holding out for three or four days, the Sipah-Sālār agreed to surrender it, on the lives and property of all within being guaranteed. On Monday, the 26th of Zi-Ka'dah, 654 H., it was given up. The people asked, according to the terms of surrender, for three days' grace to enable them to remove their effects; and, on the fourth day, the Mughals poured in, and commenced to sack the fortress. The catapults on the walls were thrown down and destroyed, the gates removed to a distance, and they began to demolish the defences. On the following day Hulākū came up to inspect the place, and much was he astonished at beholding that fortress and the mountain on which it stands. "Alauūt is a mountain, which they have likened unto a camel kneeling, with its neck stretched out upon the ground [between a camel—*شمر*—and a lion—*شمر*—there is, in MSS., but the difference of a couple of points over and under, but there is a very material difference in their significations, whatever Von Hammer may have said, for he must have read it incorrectly or from a poor MS.] On the summit thereof, which has but one path leading to it, a fortress was built of such prodigious strength that the like of it has never yet been described. Within had been excavated several reservoirs for storing vinegar, honey, and other drinkables—the word *sharīb*, in the original, does not necessarily mean wine or intoxicating drinks—so that, after obtaining possession of that stronghold, the Mughals were diving into them—and must have come out in a very 'sweet' state from the reservoirs of honey—and finding various articles of property, which the people, in their first alarm, had thrown into them," but the Mughals "in the subterranean chambers and cellars, searching for treasure, did not fall into the wine and honey," *without knowing what was there*, as erroneously stated by Von Hammer, from a wrong reading probably. The greater part of the contents of these magazines, which had been laid in during the time of Hasan-i-Šabbāh, remained unchanged, and his followers, the Ismā'īlīs, attribute this to the sanctity of his blessing.

The subsequent fate of Khūr Shāh may be related in a few words. By the early part of 655 H., all the Mulāhidah strongholds in the Kūhistan and 'Irāq-i-'Ajam, with the exception of Lanbah-Sar and Gird-Koh, were in the hands of the Mughals, but those in Shām had yet to be gained possession of. Hulākū, consequently, continued to treat Khūr Shāh well, and induced him to send his messengers along with Mughal officials into Shām, to request the governors to give them up, whereby they would obtain favour, or otherwise bring down ruin upon the whole of the sect. Khūr Shāh had also become enamoured, it is said by 'he orthodox Musalmāns, the enemies of the sect, of a base-born Mughal's daughter, and, the matter becoming notorious, Hulākū, on the occasion of the great Shī'ah festival of the 'Ashūrā, bestowed favours upon Khūr Shāh on the last day of the festival, the 10th of Muḥarram, 655 H., and, among these favours, made him a present of the Mughal damsel. The idea that "*Khalaja*," would not have scrupled to have put him to death



taken refuge, but, up to this time, it has not fallen into the hands of the Mughals.\*

\* The I. O. L. MS., No. 1951, the Ro. As. Soc. MS., and the Bodleian MS.—all three—have an interpolation here relating to the death of Mangū Kā'ān in Chīn, the same as occurs at page 1223, thus showing that they are copies of the same original, or that the two last are copies of the first MS.

"because he had lately married a Mongol woman of low extraction," is absurd, and also that a "*solemn marriage* was ordered." The round-faced, ugly wench was bestowed upon him in the same way as a horse or a slave would be given, but some say that Khūr Shāh actually asked Hulākū for her.

Hulākū had solemnly promised not to harm Khūr Shāh, hence he was well pleased when the latter, who found his promises of favour were all empty ones, asked to be sent to the presence of Mangū Kā'ān, still, as the fortresses of Shām had not yet been secured, he would have kept him in play a little longer. However, as Khūr Shāh was desirous of going, he despatched him, but took care to detain his offspring, females, and dependants, at Kāzwīn, and only the Mughal concubine was allowed to accompany him. He was desired to obtain the surrender of Gird-Koh by the way; and, although Khūr Shāh, outwardly, in the presence of his Mughal guardians, did request its commander to surrender, he had before sent secretly to tell him on no account to give it up, as it had been prophesied that in, or by means of, that fortress, their sect would again flourish. The commandant, consequently, refused to surrender, and gave a fierce answer, so the Mughals had to proceed on their road unsuccessful. Khūr Shāh is said to have quarrelled with his conductors after passing the Āmūshāh, and it is added that they came to fisticuffs, and this want of dignity on his part made him very contemptible in the sight of the Mughals. His death is differently related. Some say he reached Mangū's presence, but the Fanākatī and Hāfiz Abū say that the truth is that, when he had arrived in the vicinity of Karā-Kuram, Mangū Kā'ān commanded that he should be put to death. This, the Jānu' ut-Tawārīkh states is the truth, but Rashīd-ud-Dīn does not say that Mangū was at Karā-Kuram. These writers, however, appear to have forgotten that the Kā'ān was in Chīn at this time, and never returned to Karā-Kuram again.

Mangū's instructions to his brother were, not even to spare a child of a year old of the race of Kiyā i-Buzurg-Umīd, so, during the absence of that unfortunate Prince, Hulākū gave orders to slay the whole of them, and "neither young nor old were spared, and, of a family, which, for one hundred and seventy odd years, had reigned in Īrān-Zamīn, not a vestige or trace remained."

In Alfī, however, it is stated that a number of Khūr Shāh's offspring and relations were made over to Salghān Khātūn, Chaghātāi Khān's daughter, that she might, according to the law of retaliation, shed their blood, in order to avenge her father who had been killed by Ismā'īlī Fīdā'īs. See note 4, page 1148.

After this Hulākū—with the treachery inherent in the Mughal race—issued commands to the Amīrs in Khurāsān to assemble together, by stratagem, the whole of the Kūhistānī Ismā'īlīs, and extirpate them, so that not a trace of them might be left. Under pretence of a general levy of fighting men, for the purpose of invading Hindūstān, numbers came in from all the towns and

AN ACCOUNT OF THE MISFORTUNE WHICH HAPPENED  
TO THE MUḤTASHIM, SHAMS-UD-DĪN.

This account is derived from a recluse among the recluses of Islām, who is worthy of credit, and is here recorded in order that it may come under the observation of the Sultān of Islām.

This servant of the victorious empire, Mīnhāj-i Sarāj, who is the author of this ṬABAḲĀT, on the first occasion that he chanced to undertake a journey into the Kuhistān, and saw the Muhtashim, Shihāb, the Ḥakīm, the friend of the Musalmāns, saw, in his presence, a recluse, an aged man of Nishāpūr, who was one among the esteemed of Sultān Muhammad, Khwārazm Shāh, and his mother, the Malīkah-i Jahān—on whom be the Almighty's mercy!—and, during the time of that monarch and his mother, he enjoyed their intimacy and esteem. This recluse used clandestinely to take care of the interests of the Muhtashim, Shihāb, before the Sultān's throne,\* and was wont to show honour towards his emissaries; and, such of their important affairs as used to be before the Court, he would get brought to a successful termination.

When the misfortunes [attending the irruption] of the Chingiz Khān arose, and the people of Khwārazm, of the

\* The later Mulāḥidah were tributary to the Sultāns of this dynasty, and had been for some time. See note 4, page 254.

villages of that territory, and the Mughals thus succeeded in trapping 12,000 Imā'illah, the whole of whom were massacred. Towāchīs [Pursuivants or Tipstafis] were also sent out into every part of the Kuhistān with instructions to kill the heretics wherever they could be found, and all who might aid or shelter them, and they are said to have been "wholly exterminated."

They were not however, for, in 674 H., twenty years after Khūr Shāh surrendered, in the reign of Hulūkū's successor, a body of Mulāḥidah, having combined with a son of the late Khūr Shāh, and assigned him the title of "the Nau Daulat," seized the fortress of Alamūt; and their outbreak assumed a serious aspect. Abāḳā Khān sent an army against them, which overthrew them, and the fortress of Alamūt was razed to the ground.

In the present day we hear of a claimant to the spiritual office of this sect, as a descendant of the last of the Mulāḥidah, and, I believe, Magazine articles have even been written on the subject.

Hulūkū's mind being now entirely set at rest respecting the Mulāḥidah, he turned his attention to further "ameliorations"—the capture of Baghdād, our author's account of which will be found farther on.

capital, and of Khurāsān, became dispersed, this recluse, for those reasons [above referred to], threw himself into the Kuhistān; and, on account of previous obligations, the Muhtashim, Shihāb, the Hakīm, was under towards him, this recluse obtained great favour with him, and received abundant honour and reverence. On the Muhtashim, Shihāb, being removed from the government of the Kuhistān, and his proceeding to Alamūt, when the Muhtashim, Shams, arrived, this recluse did not obtain the same respect from him; and, as he was not on terms of intimacy with the Muhtashim, Shams, the absence of Shihāb greatly affected the heart of the recluse. He desired, in order to perform the debt of gratitude [he owed] to the Muhtashim, Shihāb, to take vengeance upon this Muhtashim, Shams, who was the displacer of the former, and thereby attain, for himself, the felicity of martyrdom, and also perform an act of holy warfare [upon an infidel].

One day he entered the place of audience of the Muhtashim, Shams, and represented, saying: "It is necessary to give me a private audience. I have important business, which I will communicate in private." The Muhtashim, Shams, had his audience hall cleared, but the recluse said: "I am not satisfied to proceed lest it should so happen that I might be in the middle of my statement and an interloper might enter, and the matter be interrupted. If the Muhtashim will direct that I may fasten the door of the audience hall on the inside, my heart will be freed from that fear." The Muhtashim replied: "It will be well: it is necessary to put the chain across the door of the audience hall on the inside." The honest [!] recluse got up, and fastened the door on the inside, and came and seated himself down in front of the Muhtashim. It was an habitual custom with that Muhtashim constantly to have a finely-tempered *palārak*<sup>7</sup> poniard in his hand. Sometimes he would place it at his side, sometimes before him, and sometimes he would take it in his hand.

The recluse turned his face towards the Muhtashim, and said: "I suffer tyranny in thy city and territory. Why

<sup>7</sup> A species of Damascened steel held in great estimation also the damasked water of a sword.

have they placed this poniard in thy hand? [Is it not] this purpose that thou shouldst ward off tyranny violence from the weak and oppressed? Give the weapon into my hand that I may see whether it be sharp or not. The Muḥtashim, inadvertently, the recluse being an old man, and thinking that from him no mischief would arise, gave the poniard into the Darwesh's hand. The latter seized it, struck at the Muḥtashim, and inflicted upon him several severe wounds, in such a manner that his body was wounded in several places. It was winter season, and the Muḥtashim wore two garment hairs [cloth], one over the other; and, the recluse being old and infirm, the wounds proved not so very deep. If the recluse been young, and had it been the summer season, without doubt, the Muḥtashim would have gone to hell. Notwithstanding he was wounded, he got up, seized the wound-inflicting recluse, and cried out for assistance. A number of Mulāhidahs were in the vestibule of the palace of audience, and they burst open the door, and came and martyred the recluse—the Almighty reward him!

A cry now arose in the city of Tūn,<sup>a</sup> and the Mulāhidahs conspired against the Musalmāns to put those poor unfortunates to death, but the Muḥtashim promptly directed so that they issued a proclamation, to the effect that no Musalmān should be hurt in the least, since it would not be right to slay all the Musalmāns through the fault of one individual. During that short period of time, however, an eminent Imām, and learned man, whom they used to call Imām Najm ud-Dīn-i-Sarbānī, the Rūḥi attained martyrdom, because a Mulhid was at enmity with him, but of the rest of the Musalmāns not one suffered molestation. Subsequently, command was given so that they impaled the Mulhid who had killed the Imām.

The object in [relating] this incident was this, that it is essential that sovereigns should ever be circumspect and vigilant, and should never leave [their] arms out of their own possession, and should not place confidence in any one.

<sup>a</sup> At page 1197, he says he saw him at Kā-īn, which was the seat of government, but this, it appears, took place at Tūn. It is not contained in all copies only in the best ones.

I now return to the thread of this History.

When they placed Mangū Khān upon the throne, he conferred the dominion of Ī-rān and 'Ajām upon his younger brother, Hulākū; and another younger brother, named Kubilān,<sup>3</sup> after he had returned from the conquest of 'Irāk,<sup>4</sup> he installed over the tribes of Turkistān, and a third brother, Artuk<sup>5</sup> Būkah, he placed as his deputy over the kingdoms of Tamghāj.<sup>6</sup> He [Mangū] then assembled a numerous army, and marched into the country of Chīn,<sup>7</sup> and reached a place where the horses of his forces,

<sup>3</sup> At page 1177, our author styles him Kubilā—كوبلای—and here Kubālān—كوبلآن—as above, the letter 'n,' apparently, being nasal, as in many other words. The Calcutta Printed Text here turns him into Kīlān—كیلان. The name is written rather differently by other authors, as with many other names, particularly with the addition of a final ی often found in these words—Kubīlāe. The letter 'k'—ک—which is the first in his name, is turned into 'Kh' in the book so often referred to herein, which is equivalent to چ or ک but any one who understands a single letter of Oriental tongues knows that "Khubilai" is as impossible as "Khulagu" for Hulākū, and is incorrect, whatever the "Mongol" Professors may say. The Chinese, who spoil all foreign proper names, style him "Hā-pi-lay."

<sup>4</sup> This is a great mistake: we should read Khūāe for 'Irāk. Kubīlāe was never sent into 'Irāk on any expedition, and was never in that country in his life. He is said to have been in Kīschāk in Ūktāe's reign. The services on which he was sent in Mangū's reign have been already mentioned.

<sup>5</sup> The Printed Text mistakes this name too, and has Irāk or Arāk—ارک—for Irūk—ارتوک—and sends Irūk, sometimes written Artuk, Būkā into Chīn, whereas he was left in charge of the great *ardās* at Kārā-Kuram of Kalūr-ān.

<sup>6</sup> Tamghāj has already been referred to in a previous note.

<sup>7</sup> As I have briefly referred to the principal events in the lives of the preceding Mughal sovereigns, I will here relate, even at the risk of being considered rather too diffuse, the other chief events in Mangū Khān's reign, in order to complete the notice of him, and will compare it with the Chinese accounts, as the names of countries, places, and persons, are so widely different, and as, in other matters, considerable discrepancy occurs, and numerous errors exist.

In the year 651 H., which commenced on the 2nd of March, 1253 A.D., Mangū, being well established on the throne, determined upon making fresh conquests in the east and west, or rather, to speak more correctly than the Oriental chronicles of these events, to secure possession of the countries which had been but partially subdued. Accordingly, in this, the second year of his accession, Mangū made a great feast or banquet at the ancient *yūrat* of the Chingiz Khān. After it was over he nominated his youngest brother, Hulākū, to march into Ī-rān-Zamīn, some of whose proceedings have been already described, and his middle brother, Kubīlāe, into the countries of the east, and the Ko-yāng, Mūkalī, the Jalā-īr, was despatched along with him [as his guide and preceptor]. This well-known leader's title is not "Guyaneg" Ko-yāng, the name the Khūāe is called him by, signifies great and trustworthy.

After they had set out from Kārā-Kuram, with the army, by the direct route,

through the insalubrity of the climate, and want of forage,

apparently, they found grain and forage excessively scarce. They accordingly despatched information to the Kā'ān, stating that it would be impossible to proceed by that route, and asked permission to march by another road into Kārā-jāng [کارا چانگ]. This is the tract of country which Raghīd-ud-Dīn, quoting Al-Bīrūnī, mentions. After noticing Dīw-gīr and the Ma'abar in the Dakhan of Hind, he says: "There is also another large territory which is Gandhār, and called by the Mughals Kārā-jāng or Hāmil [حامل], and its people are descended from Hindī and Khujā-i [parents]. In the reign of Kubi-lāe Kā'ān it was subdued by the Mughals. On one side it joins Tibbat, on another, the frontier of Khujāe, and on the third, Hind. Learned men have said that the people of three different countries are particularly celebrated for three different things: Hind for its numerous armies, the territory of Gandhār for its elephants beyond computation, and the Turks for horses."

I have previously narrated the Fanākātī's account of the geography of some of these parts [see note \*, page 912], and the names of various countries of Khujāe, Chīn, and Mahā-Chīn, but it will be well to mention what refers to this very tract under discussion again, as great discrepancy exists with regard to the mode of writing the name of it. The Fanākātī says: "To the S W of Khujāe is another country, which they—the people of it—style Dāe-līlū [دایلو]—in one MS. written 'Dāe-kū—[دایکو], and the Mughals call it Gandhar [گندمر]—another MS. has Gandah har—[گندمر]. This country with us—the writer's native country, Māwarā-un-Nahr, and Turkistān—is known as Kāndhār [قندهار]. It lies between Hind and Tibbat, and in one half of it the people are black [dark], and in the other half, white [fair]. The Mughals call all this white half Chaghān-jāng [چان چانگ], and the other Kārā-jāng."

It is doubtful what the meaning of jāng is, in fact it is very doubtful what is the correct word, for it is written چانگ—چانگ—چانگ—چانگ—and چانگ which may be read in various ways, but if one take the first form—چانگ—in which perhaps it is chiefly written, it may be read, in the absence of vowel point, Jānak, Jānag, Jānk, or Jāng, and from its being used with chaghān and kārā, which are Turkish words for white and black, it must, without doubt, be Turkish likewise. I am doubtful, however, whether the last form given above—چانگ—Jāmak, is not, after all, the correct word. I have taken some trouble to search it out in several works, and am sorry that there should still remain any doubt upon it.

But, from comparison, we arrive at some other facts. The Fanākātī and some others say, that, east of Khujāe, the Chīn of the Hindūs, and Jākut of the Mughals, inclining south-east, is an extensive country called Manzī [منزی]—it is also written in some MSS منزی and منزی—and sometimes, by the Fanākātī also, منزا [منزا] by the Chinese, Mahā-Chīn by the Hindūs, and تنگاش—Tingnāsh by the Mughals.

This latter name too, as I have previously remarked, is written in so many different ways that it is difficult to determine which is the most correct. It is written تنگاش—Tingnāsh—in several very correctly and carefully written MSS, also تنگاش—Tingbāsh—تنگاش—Biktāsh, تنگاش—Tingtāsh, تنگاش—Tingnās, and the like, but I believe, after all, that the way in which it is written in the "Nuhzat-ul-Kulūb" is the correct one, namely, تنگاش—Ningtās, or تنگاش—Ningāsh. This country is said, by the Fanākātī and others, to be separated from Khujāe or Chīn by the Kārā Mūr-ān or Black River, that its capital was Khūnsāe [خونسای] or Khunsāe [خونسای], that it is also called Kārā-

were perishing. He despatched swift messengers into Tur-

Jāng by the Mughals, and Dāe-lū in the language of *Khittāe*—that is, by the Chinese. Consequently, from these various statements, Ningāsh or Tingnāsh is the Karā and Chaghān Jāng and the Candhār of the Mughals, which constitute the Manāf and Dāe-lū of the Chinese, the Mahā-Chīn of the Hindūs, and Kandhār of the Musalmāns of Turkistān and Māwarā-un-Nahr.

I now return, after this necessary digression, to the request of the Ko-yāng, Mūkālī, to enter this territory of Karā-Jāng, or whatever it may be. His request was complied with, and he entered that territory with his forces, plundered it, and obtained what his troops were in want of. I notice, in ELLIOT, vol. 1, page 63, that "Wahind, capital of Kandahār, west of the *Sind*," is said to be called "Karājāng" by the "Moghals." This is a little out of the way, and must be an error certainly.

This army under Kublāe and Mūkālī was "to enter *Khajāe* [which nearly all historians say was finally subdued in Ūktāe's reign, and that the Āltān Khān disappeared or hung himself. See note at page 1139], Karā-Jāng, Tibbat [تبت—doubtful: the word is written توت—توت—and بوت], Tingkūt, Solfā or Sülfā [سولفا], Koli [کولی], and parts of Hind which adjoin Chīn and Mahā-Chīn."

The Chinese say that "Mengko," as they style Mangū, made his brother Hū-pi-lay, governor of all the territories south of the great Kobi or Desert, that is, Tartary bordering on the Great Wall of China, Lyan-tong, and the conquered provinces of China. In Decr., 1252 A.D. [Shawwāl, the tenth month of 650 H.], Hū-pi-lay was directed to attack Tai-li-Fā in Yun-nan, and took along with him the general Hū-lyang-hotay [Mūkālī?], and Yanahī [Maḥmūd, Yalwā?].

About the same time envoys arrived at the *urdū* from Intū or Hintūs [Hind], to render homage. This was about the very time that Malik Sher Khān-i-Sunkar, the cousin of Ulugh Khān-i-A'gam, left his fief of Tabarhindah, withdrew from Hind, and proceeded to the presence of Mangū Khān. See pages 695, 784, 792, 798, and note <sup>1</sup>, page 1223.

In the same year—650 H.—Mangū Khān began to consider in what direction he should himself lead an army, and, therefore, he held another great feast at which the Shāh-zādahs and Amīrs appeared. This was held at a place called *Qortūqūq Jīwan* [قورتوقوق جیوان]—the Jīdan [جدان] doubtless, referred to in note <sup>2</sup>, page 912, para. 4—which is situated in the middle of Mughalstān. This is the place where, according to tradition, Kublāh Khān, the eighth of the Buzanjār dynasty [see the note on the descent of the Turks, Tāttārs, and Mughals, page 896, para. 6], and his followers, danced so much in the hollow of a tree, after he had obtained success over the Tāttārs, and the Āltān Khān's forces, when he avenged his brother, Ūkīn-Barkāk's death.

At this feast, Mangū was advised by Dārkāe, the Gurgān [one of the sons-in-law of the Chingiz Khān], an Amīr of the tribe of Angīrās-Kungkūr-āt Mughals, to invade Tingnāsh or Biktāsh [Ningāsh]. Dārkāe added, as a reason for invading it, that it was near by, was *bāghī*, that is to say here, unreduced and independent, and that it had hitherto been disregarded by them. This was not correct, however, if, as previously mentioned, the Mughals call this Tingnāsh or Biktāsh by the name of Karā-Jāng, for that was invaded and plundered by the Mughal troops under Kublāe and Mūkālī, the Ko-yāng, just before.

Mangū Khān, in reply to this advice, remarked, that each of his uncles and

kistān and Māwarā-un-Nahr, and called for horses for his

brothers had subdued some country or other, and he would do the same [he had already done so in the campaigns in the west under Bātū Khān, but before he succeeded to the throne], so, in the sixth year of his reign, in Muḥarram, 652 H.—February, 1254 A.D.—he determined to go to war with Tehukan [possibly, Tehūkang], the Faghūr—the particular title given by Muḥammadan writers to the ruler of Chīn, but what language it is, is not said. Mangū accordingly left Artūk—or Ariūgh—sometimes written Irtūk and Irtūgh—Būkah, his next younger brother, in charge of the *ulises* and *urdūs*, and associated with him his eldest son, whose name is written in many ways equally uncertain—اورمکتاش—Aormaktāsh, اورنگش Aorangtāsh, and اورنگی—Aorangtās, but, as he makes no figure whatever in history, it is immaterial.

Respecting these events, the Chinese say that, in February, 1253 A.D. [the last month of the year 650 H. The year 651 H. commenced on the 2nd March, 1253 A.D.], “Mengko” assembled the Princes and Grandees at the river Onon, and determined upon sending armies to make further foreign conquests, “one into India and Kashmīr, another into Korea, and a third against the Khālifah,” which was to be the most numerous, under his brother “Hü-le hū” [Hülākū]. Among the generals was “Kakan [th. Manjanīk-chī],” son of Ko-chey, son of Ko pan-yu,” who were generals of the Chingiz Khān, a native of Ching, dependent on Wha-chew, in the district of Si-gan-Fū, capital of Shen-si, a very learned man.

“Hü-pi-lay” [Kubilāe] had assembled his forces the previous year [1252 A.D.—649-50 H.], at Lin tau-fū, in Shen-si, entered Sew-chwen, and, by difficult roads, through mountains, and by precipices, reached the river Kin-sha or Kyang. At this period, great part of Yun-nan was ruled by Princes independent of China. Tali had a king of its own, and he was taken, with that city, in December of that year. “Hü-pi-lay” subdued several neighbouring Princes, and reached Tibhat, where several others submitted to him. After this he returned to his government, leaving Hü-lyang-hotay [the Ko-yāng, Mūkalī?] in command.

Again, in 1254 A.D. [652 H., which commenced on the 20th Feby., 1254], the Chinese writers state that “Mengko” again assembled the Princes and Grandees at the source of the river Onon, made many new regulations, and ordered the commanders of troops in China to lay in great magazines of provisions in such parts of Hu-nan as had walled cities. Hitherto the Mughals had only made incursions into Sew-chwen to pillage, and had often to retreat, and, many times with loss, for want of subsistence [as in Kubilāe’s case, to which this evidently refers], and “Mengko” directed the general Wang-te-ching, son of Wang-shi-hyen, to inclose several towns, and lay in stores of provision.

In June, 1256 A.D. [this would be the beginning of Rajab, the seventh month of the year 654 H.], another great feast was held, and “Mengko” received the homage of several Princes of Yun-nan, as well as of neighbouring Princes and Sultāns, of the west.

Then it is related that “Mengko considered the *urdū* at or near Karā-Kuram was inconvenient for holding *kunīlūes* and keeping his Court, and so he directed a Chinese Bonza, named Lyew-ping-chong, to select a place in Tartary, which might henceforth be the capital of his dominions. Ping-ching, who was a man of great learning and of scientific attainments, made choice of a place, to the east of the city of Whan-chew, called Long-kang; and there a city was



army. Trustworthy persons related, on this wise, that his

built, which was called Kay-ping-Fū, and, afterwards, Shang-tū : yet Kārā-Kuram [although neither a city nor town] still continued to enjoy a jurisdiction of greater extent"—it was still the *asīl yūrat* of the Čingiz Khān.

The foundation of this place therefore has been wrongly ascribed to Kubilāe, who founded Khān-Hālīgh, instead of to "Mengko," but that it was more convenient, as to position, than the vicinity of Kārā-Kuram, and Kalūr-ān, is absurd, unless for the convenience of his *eastern* subjects and dominions alone. There may have been another reason, and an important one. Kārā-Kuram depended a great deal on provisions brought from a long distance, and, should supplies, by any chance, have been cut off, famine would have arisen, as was subsequently proved.

This new capital, "Kay-ping-Fu," afterwards "Shang-tū," is apparently the Shandu, and Ciandu of Polo, "Xandu" in Ramusio, and "Ions" of Hayton. "It stood," it is stated, "in the country of Karchin on the river "Shan-tū," N. N. E. of Pekin, and "seems to be," says a writer in ASTLEY'S "COLLECTION," "*Chau-nayman-suma*, which is one of three ruins marked in the Missioners' map, on the river Shangtū" Hayton calls it Ions. "Passing out of the gate, Hi-fong-kew in Pe-che-li, you find yourself in Karchin, Ohan, Naman [Näemān], and Korchin. It is divided into ten standards, and the country of the Mughals of Korchin extends to the *Sira Mūr-ān*—the great river *Sira Mūr-ān* in the Mughal language signifies a great river, and *Pirah* a smaller one."

To continue the Chinese accounts before returning to the Mughal records quoted by the Musalmān writers, in whose time the Mughals had to a considerable extent become Musalmāns likewise, they say that, in 1257 A. D. [the year 655 H. began on the 18th January, 1257 A. D.], "Mengko" sent orders to his generals in Se-chwen, Hu-quang, and Kvang-nan, to prepare to attack the Song [empire] on all sides, resolving to begin himself with the first, that is to say, Se-chwen, which therefore is equivalent with Tingnāish [Ningāish] of the Musalmān writers, Mahū-Chīn of the Hindūs, and Manzi of the Chinese, as described by the Fanākatī and others. After the month of July [the seventh month of 655 H.] he appointed his brother, Alipū ko [Irtūk or Irtūgh Būkah], in charge at Kārā Kuram. There is some discrepancy between the Musalmān and Chinese dates, because he was appointed in the first month of 652 H., as before mentioned. "*In the same month*, Mengko" set out, reached the mountain of "Lewpan in Shen si," where the Čingiz Khān died [which place, as stated before at page 1087, was situated on the frontier of Tingnāish, or Ningāish, and Khūrjah]. He was scarcely arrived there when he understood his brother Hū-pi-lay, with his family, and without any attendance, in the manner of a criminal, had come, in order to submit himself to the Kā'ān. This news so affected "Mengko" that the suspicions he entertained against him were removed and he was completely forgiven." I shall refer to this matter presently.

"Hū-pi-lay" was directed by "Mengko" to return to his government, and prepare for the siege of Yu-chang-Fu, the capital of Hū-quang, then to march to Hang-chew, the metropolis of Che-kwang, and the empire of the Song; and the general Chang jau was nominated to command under him.

I will now return to the Mughal accounts from where I left off, when, early in 652 H.—about March or April, 1254 A. D.—Mangū appointed Irtūk Būkah to remain in charge of the great *arduc* and *ulūs*, along with his eldest son, but some say his son Serkī

lieutenants and governors, who were in Turkistān and Mā-

To enumerate all the names, and give all the details, respecting those Shāh-zādahs, Amīrs, and troops, which accompanied him, and the preparations made, would occupy far more space than can be afforded here : at some future time I hope to do so. Suffice it to say that they included a great number of Shāh-zādahs, Amīrs, and forces, both of the Dast-i-Chap—the left hand—and Dast-i-Rāst—the right hand—which latter they style [i.e. the territory they occupy] Jāūkūt or Jākūt, which signifies the forces of Khūāe, Tingkūt, Khūrajah, and Sūkankā [سوکا], because the Mughals, in their dialect, used to call those parts Jāūkūt or Jākūt. The army of Mangū Kā'an amounted, it is said, to the immense number of 600,000, one half of which belonged to the Dast-i-Chap, and whose leader was the Shāh-zādah, Taghachār [there is no such name as "*Thugachur*"], son of Ū-Tigīn, the younger brother of the Chingiz Khān.

As Mangū issued forth on his way, he received the news of the death of the Nū-yīn, Belkūtāe, half brother of the Chingiz Khān, who had attained the age of 110 years, and who had done good service in the latter's time. Mangū also received an account of his brother Kūbilāe's movements with his forces ; and that, as Kūbilāe, at this time, was indisposed—he was afflicted with gout, or *dard-i-pae*—if he were allowed to take repose for a time, it would be well. Kūbilāe was permitted, accordingly, to return to his *urdū*, as a temporary measure, to get better.

This evidently is what the Chinese histories refer to as a disagreement between the brothers, and Kūbilāe's being suspected, and forgiven, but the Musalmān writers never so much as hint at anything of the kind, and the two accounts are wholly contrary to each other. Although Kūbilāe had permission to retire to his *urdū* he did not do so, but again returned to his post. It was at this time likewise, that Shīrāmīn, who was not to be trusted, was put to death before Kūbilāe departed. Perhaps it is this incident that the Chinese writers got hold of.

Having set out, in the summer of 653 H.—about June, 1255 A.D.—Mangū reached the boundaries of the territories of Tingkūt and Tingnāsh or Biktāsh [Ningāish], at the place named Afwān or Afūān Shān [افوان شان—it was Lewak Shān—لوق شان before. See note, page 1088], within the confines of Tingnāsh or Biktāsh [Ningāish], which is the place where the Chingiz Khān died.

Towards the latter part of the year he moved forward for the purpose of attacking the Masūl [مسول] Kahlukah or Pass, and forced it. With little effort he subsequently captured twenty fortresses, and subdued a territory known as Khān-Sindān [خان سندان—in one copy of Alfī the first word is Jān—جان], and, having taken possession of the whole of it, turned his face towards a great fortress [a fortified city] called Mūlī Sāng [مولی ساه]

There is considerable discrepancy with regard to the name of this place, caused by the careless copying of scribes, and the facilities which the Arabic characters offer for making mistakes when carelessly written. In the best written copies of Alfī and the Fanākātī, respectively, it is Mūlī-Sāng, as above, and Doli-Shāng [دولی شاه], while in other copies of the former, and in other works, it is مولی ساه—مولی ساه—without point. The place in question is the Ho-chew of the Chinese historians, and Ho-chew or Ko-chew of the Jesuits' map.

Before setting out into those parts, he had despatched the Nū-yīn, Taghachār, with a numerous army, by way of the great river called Kā'an Lang [کان لنگ]

warā-un-Nahr, in a very short space of time—less than

that he might reduce to submission the fortified cities of Fang-ch'ing [فانگ چینگ]—the words are without points, and may be meant for Māng[芒]-ch'ing—and Māng-Fūn [芒汾]. Taghachār reached the foot of that fortress [the last mentioned place], and invested it for a week, but, during that time, having obtained no sign of success, he marched away, and returned to his own *urdiis*. Mangū Kā'an was excessively wroth at this proceeding, and vowed he would punish Taghachār in such a way that others should take example therefrom, but he did not live to do so.

The place before which Mangū Kā'an sat down in 654 H., was, according to the Ḥabīb-us-Siyar, "a fortified mountain of prodigious height and circuit, and furnished with all things necessary to withstand an enemy." Winter came and passed, and spring set in, and the summer of 655 H. arrived [the summer of 1257 A.D.]. The excessive heat brought on a pestilence among the troops, and most of his army perished. Mangū, who, for a long period, had been investing this strong place, took to drinking deeply, in order to ward off the danger of catching the disease, but his health gave way in consequence, and he was taken ill, and died eight days after, in Muḥarram—the first month—of 656 H. [about the middle of January, 1258 A.D.] on the banks of the Kōbīghah Mūr-ān [کوبیغاه موران], after a reign of eight years." The circumstances related by our author, although very brief, contain some interesting particulars respecting these events, which no authors I have been quoting mention.

There is considerable discrepancy, too, and some doubt, concerning the date of Mangū's death.

Alfī, and its authorities, the Raṣaṭ-uz-Ṣaṣā, the Fanākātī, and the Muntakhab ut-Tawārikh, say it happened in 655 H. The Ḥabīb-us-Siyar says it took place in 654 H., while Guzidah and Faṣīḥ-i say it was in 657 H., and that he reigned nine years, and was forty-eight—some say forty-six—when he died. The Fanākātī says his reign was six years and two months.

The last of these dates—657 H.—is undoubtedly correct, because his brother, Hulākū, in Rabi' ul-Awwal, 655 H., sent Khūr Shāh, Bādsāh of the Mulā ḥidah, to his camp, after obtaining possession of Alamūt, and, by Mangū Kā'an's command, he was put to death by the way. Mangū, therefore, could not possibly have died in 654 H., nor in the first month of 655 H. Another proof is that Hulākū sent the news to Mangū of the capture of Baghdād, and the murder of the last Khalīfah, together with an account of events which had happened in 'Irāk in 656 H., and which news reached him. Therefore, allowing for the immense distance which separated the brothers, the first month of 657 H.—January, 1259 A.D.—is, evidently, the more correct date. Our author, who finished his history in the fifth month of 658 H.—about the end of February 1260 A.D.—appears to have very recently become aware of his death by report.

I must now give the Chinese version of these events for the sake of comparison. "Hū-lyang-hotay" having made conquests in the country bordering on "Yun-nan," subsequent to his subjugation of Tibbat in 1255 A.D.—653 H.—penetrated as far as "Tong-king," and "Kochin-China," then comprehended under the name of "Gan-nan," ruined its capital, and plundered the country. He was returning to "Tali," when "Mengko" ordered him to join "Hū-pt-lay" in the siege of Vū-chang-Fū [capital of the province of Hū-quang].

"Mengko's" forces entered "Se-chwen" in three bodies, each in a different direction. As soon as the army passed the mountain of "Lū-pān" [this

one week—purchased 80,000 horses from Samrḳand and

the Chinese name for the place where the *Chingiz Khān* died], "Po-li-cha," a great Tartar [Mughal] lord, was appointed to command the first body, Mu-ko, the Kā'ān's brother, the second, while "Mengko" commanded the third, and took the route of Han-chong-Fū in Shen-si. He was vigorously opposed by the troops of the Song in Se-chwen. "Mengko" now sent on, in advance, Nyew-lyen of the Chanchu tribe, whose father and grandfather were greatly renowned in the army, in the beginning of the year 1250—656 H—to obtain information. He learnt that Ata-hū, the Mughal general in Chung-tū-Fū, was in great extremity, being invested on all sides by the Song. He, Nyew-lyen, having reached Ho-chew, resolved to succour Ata-hū, but his efforts were of no avail, for the Song took it, and Ata-hū died. Nyew-lyen, now grown desperate from want of success, posted himself between the Song army and Ching-tū, to which he immediately marched, and soon after succeeded in gaining possession of it. Finding that the Kā'ān had reached Kang-chong-Fū, he left the city in charge of another officer, moved to Mahū, and sent forces to facilitate "Mengko's" passage of the river Kyan-lin by a bridge of boats. The other two bodies of troops having rejoined him, Long-gan-Fū was captured, and Lan chew [now Pau-ning-Fū] surrendered. The general Hū-lyang-hotay entered China, on his return from Gan-na, by Tung-quan, moved forward to Quang-si, and seized Quey-lin-Fū, the capital of that province. The Chinese were surprised to find him penetrate as far as Chang-sha, a city of Hū-quang, which he invested in the beginning of 1259 A D, equivalent to the first month of 657 H, which ended on December 16th of that year, and which completely agrees with the year given in Guẓidah.

On the first day of the same year, 1259 A D—the 28th of December began the year 657 H—"Mengko" reached the mountain Chong-quey, where the Chalar [Jalā-ir], To-whan, affirmed that the war in Se-chwen would turn out unfortunate from heat and moisture, which would destroy the troops, and advised a retreat. Pa-li che, the Orla [Arlāt], said that To-whan spoke thus through fear, and advised the Kā'ān to continue the campaign; so "Mengko" determined to continue the war, and to invest Ho-chew, which he accordingly did in February. Nyew-lyen advanced to co-operate with him, and constructed a bridge of boats near Fū-cheu-Fū, while another leader went and took up a position near Quey chew, on the borders of Hū-quang. An attack was repulsed on Ho-chew in February, another in March, while, in April, there was thunder and rain for twenty days. One day, however, the Mughals succeeded in scaling the walls, and made great slaughter among the defenders, but they were finally repulsed. A Chinese general attacked the raft bridge, at Fū-cheu-Fū, and got to Kon-chin-Fū, eight leagues S. S. E. of Ho-chew, collected 1000 barques to ascend to Kya-ling [Kyan-lin?], but was attacked by a Mughal force, and pursued to Chong-king. The Mughals went, however, still much harassed by disease, want, and sallies. In July "Mengko" resolved to assault it with his best troops, and carry it at any cost. On the 10th of August the Kā'ān visited the works, and gave orders for scaling the walls the following night. The Mughals gained the top of the walls, but were repulsed with great slaughter, and even pursued. "Mengko," in desperation, now ordered a general assault, and went in person to direct it. A storm arose at the time, and during the attack several ladders were blown down. On this, a fearful carnage ensued, vast numbers of the Mughals perished, and among them was the Kā'ān, whose body was found pierced with many wounds.

Bukhārā, and, adding them to those which they had purchased in Upper Turkistān, despatched them [to Mangū Khān's army].

They also related, that, after some time, the king of Chīn brought such an immense army, as cannot come within the compass of number or computation, and, in the end, Mangū Khān, and his army, were overthrown, and reached a mountain [range] round about [nearly] the whole of which range was the sea, and morass; and, in that mountain [range], Mangū Khān, with the whole of the Mughal army, perished from famine.

The reign of Mangū Khān was nine years.\*

Thus fell "Mengko," at the age of fifty-two, after a reign of nine years. Such is the Chinese account, which is very different from that of the Mughals.

To return to the Mughal accounts. Mangū's son, Asūtāe Aghūl, leaving the Nū yīn, Kānd-kāe—قندکاي—in command of the troops, took up the coffin of his father, and conveyed it to his *urdū* [the *urdū*s of his four wives]; and, for four days successively, they made mourning for the late Kān. The first day in the *urdū* of Kunkāe [قنکاي] Khātūn, who was also called Kōludī [کولدي], and Kōludī [کولدي], the daughter of the Gurgān or son-in-law of the Chingiz Khān, Ūldāe, son of Bartū, of the Angirās tribe. This Khātūn had born Mangū two sons, the eldest, Būltū, and the youngest [he is said previously to have been Mangū's eldest] Aormaktāgh, Aorangtāgh, or Aorangtās, and one daughter, Māyālūn by name.

The second day, the corpse was removed to the *urdū* of Tawāw-chīn [تاوراجين], who is also called Tānāw-chīn [تاناراجين], and Tūrā-chīn [توراجين], but all these names are more or less doubtful, of the tribe of Bāyātū. She bore him a son, Sherkī, also written Sherkī, previously alluded to.

On the third day it was conveyed to the *urdū* of Ūghūl-Kūmīsh Khātūn, the Cīr āt, who had accompanied him on this expedition. She was of the family of his mother, Sūn-Kūqībī Bīgī, and was a woman of strong mind and force of character. At first she had been betrothed to Mangū's father. She used to style Kūbīlāe and Hulākū, her husband's brothers, "*furzands*," or sons, and they paid her great respect. She bore no son, but had two daughters.

On the fourth day the corpse was taken to the *urdū* of Kasā [کسا] Khātūn. She was of the tribe of Ījīkīah or Ījīkīn, an offshoot of the Kungū-ūr-āt, and bore him a son named Asūtāe, previously mentioned.

The first and third Khātūns were free born—the two others were handmaids, but there were many others of lesser note. On each day, in each *urdū*, the coffin was placed upon a throne, and they made lamentation over the corpse. After the mourning ceremonies, the body of the Kān was buried at the place called Būlkān or Būrkān—'l' and 'r' being interchangeable—Kāldūn, which is styled the Yakah Kūrūk, that is to say, "the exclusively prohibited [spot]," at the side of the Chingiz Khān, and Tūlū or Tūh Khān, his grandfather and father.

\* Our author has forgotten to notice, or would not notice, a remarkable

### May Almighty God prolong the reign of the present

matter concerning the Dihlī kingdom, which happened in the reign of his patron, and during the reign of Mangū Kā'an.

Early in 646 H., Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, the *elder brother*, it must be remembered, of Sulṭān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, who had hitherto been feudatory of Kinnau, was made feudatory of Sanbhal and Budā'un, this last being one of the most important fiefs of the Dihlī empire, but, without proceeding thither, he became frightened at something which our author conceals, and fled, by way of Sūnur, towards Lohor [see pages 684 and 818]. His flight may have been caused through fear or suspicion of Ulugh Khān, in whose hands the whole power now centred, and who very shortly after married his daughter to the Sulṭān. What Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, subsequently did, or whither he went, is also made a profound mystery of. Lohor, too, is mentioned at this period in connexion with him, after its never being once mentioned since its capture and sack by the Mughals, in 639 H., when it was lost to Dihlī.

A few months after this Prince's flight, in the eighth month of the same year, we find the Sulṭān moving with his forces as far as the river Bīāh—which then flowed in its old bed—and his marching back again, but why he marched, and what his army did, is not mentioned anywhere by our author, but it was, without doubt, connected, in some way, with his brother's flight.

Again, in 650 H., the Sulṭān set out, intending to march to Ūchchah and Multān [pages 692 and 825], but only reached the banks of the Bīāh when the Rayḥānī plot broke out [pages 693 and 826], and Ulugh Khān was banished to his fief. This was in 651 H. Nothing more is mentioned about Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, until 652 H., when we find him, in combination, with Ulugh Khān, and other Malikis, advancing towards the capital, in order, it would seem, merely to upset the Rayḥānī faction; and then our author says [page 830], that the Sulṭān's brother "came from the side of Lohor," but where he had been all this time, from 646 to 652 H., is not allowed to transpire. In another place [page 700], however, it seems that more than the upsetting of the Rayḥānī faction was intended, for we are told that "a party of Amirs now interposed *between the two personages*"—the Sulṭān and his brother—and after, that "Lohor became the fief—not that the Sulṭān conferred it—of Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh." In another place [page 793], we are told that Malik Sher Khān-i-Sanḡar, who had left Hind and gone into Tūrkiṣtān, to the *urdu* of Mangū Kā'an [see note <sup>6</sup>, page 1198], returned with honour from thence, and went to Lohor, and joined the Prince [Jalāl-ud-Dīn] there, but that disagreements arose between them, and the Prince "retired in disappointment, and his dependents and followers fell into the hands of Malik Sher Khān's train." From this time Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, disappears from the scene, and is heard of no more.

Fortunately a few others throw some light on what our author keeps so dark. Among them the Fanākātī says, that several of the great Mamlūks of the late Sulṭān, I-yā-tumsh, rebelled against his son, Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, and set up another in his place, as though he had been actual *y* reigning. He says, in fact, that Razīyyat was set up by Ulugh Khān, but the date he, afterwards gives, which is quite correct, shows that he has confused the names a little, and refers to Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, whom he afterwards mentions as having been set up by Ulugh Khān. Then he continues,—"Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn fled from Hind, and, in 651 H., presented himself in the *urdu* of

ān of Islām to the end of the existence of mankind, preserve the Khān-i-A'zam, Ulugh Khān, in power authority, to the end of the world ! Āmin.<sup>6</sup>

—HULĀKŪ, SON OF TŪLĪ, SON OF THE CHINGIZ KHĀN.

Ḥulākū' is the brother of Mangū Khān, and Tūlī [his

Ḥū Kā'in, and Kutlugh Khān [this may be Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd's step-father who afterwards caused such trouble, as he was in Hind up to the close of 655 H.], and Sunḡar (Sher Khān-i-Sunḡar. He did leave his and retire into Turkistān at this very time, in 649—650 H. See pages 695 '98], out of fear of Ulugh Khān, followed Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn. Mangū commanded that a befitting grant should be assigned to the latter, and a pā was issued to the Nā-yīn, Sālī, then in those parts [in the tracts on the E. and as far east as the Bīāh—the present Panj-āb], to aid him with his troops. Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn returned therefore, and he was permitted to take possession of the districts of Lahāwūr [Lahor], Kūchah [also written Kūjah—کوکھ] and as mentioned in connexion with Banfān. See pages 627 and 750], and Arabah, which parts were then subject to the Mughals, and thus he contented himself with a little out of much."

bruquas, curiously enough, confirms the above. He says that about the of June, 1254 A.D.—about the fourth month of 653 H.—when the Kā'in a great assembly at Kārā-Kuram, at which a number of ambassadors died, he noticed the ambassador from the Sultān of India. This could be other than Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, and his party, or Sher Khān-i-Kar, for it is quite certain that no ambassador was ever sent from India by Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh. They brought with them, as a present eight leopards, and ten hounds for coursing, which were taught to sit on horses' buttocks. The same traveller also says he returned for six weeks the same road westward, along with this very ambassador, and then he struck to the left—the east. It is a pity he has not mentioned the ambassador's name.

That this account is correct is without doubt, from what our author allows to us of him. Well might he say that Malik Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Mas'ūd Shāh, "advanced from the side of Lohor," that "some of the Amīns interposed between the two personages," and that "Lohor became his fief." The early history of the kingdom of Dillī has yet to be written. The history of a country is not to be rendered correctly from the accounts of a single author, but is to be gleaned from two or three authors merely. See also pages 793, 862, 863.

I hope this is a sufficient proof to show that this work was written in the reign of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn's reign, and not in that of his successor, although, like many more, it is not contained in the Calcutta Printed Text.

I need not tell the Oriental scholar, who can read the letters of the Persian alphabet for himself, that the first letter of this name is simple *Ḥ*—*هـ*—Hu, the only variations of which are—*هولاکو*—*Hulākū*—*هلاکو*—*Hulākū*, and *Hulā'ī*, as our author sometimes writes it; but, for the information of those who cannot read the original for themselves, and have to trust to transcripts, second-hand, or mere compilations from the works of foreign translators

father] was the youngest of the Chingiz Khān's sons. When the Chingiz Khān crossed the Jihūn into Khurāsān, he despatched Tūlī towards Nishāpūr, Hirāt, and Marw; and Tūlī took all those cities, and destroyed them. Trust-worthy persons related, that Tūlī was a good-looking youth; and, when he returned from Khurāsān to Turkistān, he died, leaving four sons,\* as has been previously recorded.

When Mangū Khān, son of Tūlī, ascended the throne, he despatched Hulākū into the countries of Ī-rān and 'Ajām, and assigned those territories to him; and the armies which were in 'Irāk, and the troops which were in Turkistān, Khatlān, Tāe-kān,<sup>9</sup> and Ḳuṇduz, and the forces which were in the territories of Ghūr, Khurāsān, Hirāt, and the Garmsīr, were all directed to obey the command of Hulākū. On Hulākū's entering Khurāsān he chose Bādghais<sup>1</sup> as his head-quarters, and the Maliks of the different parts of 'Ajām presented themselves before him.

The Mughal army of Jurmāghūn, which was in 'Irāk, was continually fighting and carrying on hostilities with the troops of the Lord of the Faithful, but, on no occasion, and in no wise, was it able to gain the superiority over the forces of the Khalifah's capital; and the infidels used continually to be defeated, more particularly in their attempts to take the city of Ṣafahān [Iṣfahān]. It occupied the infidels fifteen years before they were able to gain possession of that city. If the Kāẓī of Ṣafahān had not attained

of various nationalities, whose meanings and words too may have been misunderstood, I must remark [for none one to explain to them] that to produce "*Khulagu*" the word must be written خولاگو or خولاوگو or خولاگو or خولاگو which no one has ever yet seen written—not even a Schiefner in "*Mongol*" Quartre-mère spells it Houlagu, and Von Hammer, Hulaku. How D'Ohyson may spell it I am unaware, as I have not seen his work, but, however it may be, the first two letters are ku, and not kh. See also "*Mongols Proper*," page 193.

He left eight sons, but Mangū, Ḳubīlāe, Hulākū, and Artuḳ Būkā, were the best known among them.

<sup>9</sup> Tāe-kān of Tukhāstān is undoubtedly meant here, which is in the same territory as Ḳuṇduz.

<sup>1</sup> The Pro-Mughal writers say—as previously mentioned—that he was obliged to remain all the winter of 652 H. in the district or territory of Shiwarghān, a tract of country then in a much more flourishing condition than now. Bādghais too was a flourishing district, and within a short distance of Hirāt and its fruitful and formerly populous, but recently devastated, territory, of which it was, as a dependency. Our author's statement here is the more likely of the two.



When, in the year 655 H., the Amīr-i-'Alam [Lord of the Standard]<sup>3</sup> of the rightful Khalīfah, Al-Musta'ṣim 'B'illah, the Lord of the Faithful—God reward him!—whose name was Sulīmān Shāh, the Aiyūbī Turk-mān—on whom be the mercy of the Almighty!—entered 'Irāk with the troops of the Khilāfat, he defeated the Mughal forces which were in the territory of Āzarbāijān, and in 'Irāk, and sent great numbers of Mughals to hell, so that the Mughal troops were unable to stand before Sulīmān Shāh, and the forces of the Khalīfah's dominions.<sup>4</sup> They [the Mughals]

<sup>2</sup> Lord of the Standard, equivalent to the Gonfalonier under the Popes, in the middle ages. The Amīr-i-'Alam commanded the troops of the Khulāfat

<sup>5</sup> After Hulakū had finished with the Ismā'īlīs in the Kūhustān and Alamūt, he set out towards Lanhāh-Sar, but, finding it was not likely to be soon taken, left a considerable force to invest it, under Jā-ir Būkā, and marched towards Kāzwin, whither his and other families had been sent, and encamped within seven leagues of it, on the 27th of Ẓi Ḥijjah, 654 H. Subsequently, in Rabi'ul-Awwal, 655 H., he moved from the vicinity of Kāzwin, and marched to Hamadān, where the Nā-yin, Tānjū, the Kusūt, from Āzarbāijān, presented

despatched swift messengers to Hulākū, in Khurāsān, and sought aid from him. Hulākū got ready the forces of Khurāsān, both Mughal and others, and determined to march into 'Irāk, and set out towards it.

#### ACCOUNT OF THE FALL OF THE CAPITAL OF THE KHILĀFAT.

When Hulākū set out towards 'Irāk, the Malik of Mausil, whom they were wont to style Badr-ud-Dīn-i-Lū-lū—on whom be the Almighty's curse!—had consented to receive a Mughal Shāhnah [Intendant]. The Atābak, Abū-Bikr,<sup>7</sup> son of Sa'd, ruler of Fārs, likewise had a Shāhnah, and had agreed to pay tribute to the Mughals ;

himself Hulākū was not well disposed towards that great leader, on account of some reflection he had made, and he had therefore summoned Tānjū to his presence. He said to him : "Since thou hast been occupying the place of Jurmāghūn, what hast thou done? what ranks hast thou broken? what rebel hast thou reduced to submission? and what enemy hast thou made a friend?" Tānjū bent the knee, and replied "During this period of time I have committed no fault, and what was in the power of my hand to do, in that I have not been sparing of myself. Among other things I have taken a certain fortress and a certain town, and cleared all the tracts between Kai and Rūm and Shām, but, in consequence of the difficulty of the road to Baghdād, and the great number of the troops of the Khilāfat, in the neighbourhood of that city the Mughal troops have been guarded from disaster, and now the sovereign has the option and power of commanding whatever he may please." The fire of Hulākū's ire cooled on his hearing these words, and he said to Tānjū "It becometh thee to proceed towards the frontiers of Shām and Rūm, and that thou shouldst subdue them, as far even as the sea of Maghrib [some say, to the sea of Yūnān]." Tānjū accepted this task, and, the very same day, set out towards Rūm, into which he carried slaughter and devastation. Farther on it is stated that he was recalled, and, while on the march, directed to move against Baghdād. Early in Rabi-ul-Awwal, 655 H.—April, 1257 A.D.—Hulākū prepared to invade 'Irāk-i-'Arab, and attack Baghdād. He first turned towards Tabriz, and reached it on the 12th of Rajab. Having remained there one month and a half, during which the Mughals carried fire and sword into Kurdistān, he again turned towards Hamadān, which—the neighbourhood of which—he reached on the 10th of Ramazān. His camp was formed in the open country about Hamadān, near to Khānah-ābād, "which is a verdant plain of Kurdistān," and there he began to get ready his forces for the coming struggle. It was from this place that he despatched his envoys with an insolent message to the Khālifah, which will be referred to farther on.

<sup>6</sup> Amīr Badr-ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Fazā'il-i-Lū-lū, who was originally an Arman [Armenian] slave.

<sup>7</sup> See page 180.

and from both of these rulers bodies of cavalry arrived to the assistance of the infidel army. The infidel forces gathered around Hulākū in 'Irāk, and turned their faces towards Baghdād.

The Lord of the Faithful, Al-Musta'şim B'illah, had a Wazir, a *rāfi'i* [a *shī'ah* heretic] of bad religion, and his name was Aḥmad, the 'Alkamī.\* Between him, the Wazir, and the eldest son of the Lord of the Faithful, who

\* 'Alkamah is the name of a city in Afrīkah, or Mauritania, and the name of a man. It is also the colloquial, and is used to signify anything very bitter. 'Alkamī here refers to a native of 'Alkamah.

Mu'ayyid-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of 'Abd-ul-Malik, the 'Alkamī, at the time of Al-Musta'şim's accession to the *Khilāfat*, held the office of Ustād-i-Dār, and was suspected, by many, but not by the *Khālifāh* himself, of being much against his accession, and of wishing to have set up the *Khālifāh's* brother instead. In 642 H., the Wazir, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, a very aged man, was removed from office, and Ibn 'Alkamī was installed as his successor, a most unfortunate act, and the chief cause of the downfall of the *Khilāfat*.

The new Wazir was an eloquent man, of vast attainments, and who, in the composition of poetry and prose, had no equal. He was generous and liberal, and clever in the administration of state affairs. In this office he had no partner or associate, and the government was under his entire control; but he was a *Shī'ah* in faith, and thus an enemy to the house of 'Abbās. He did not consider that the other officials of the Court paid him that respect and attention which he thought he was entitled to; and, by insendo, they were wont to reproach and rail at him as a heretic. The *Khālifāh* was cognizant of all this, and used to prohibit them from behaving in such a way towards the Wazir; nevertheless, he nourished in his heart hatred towards the *Khālifāh*, his family, and the rest of his Court, but he took good care to conceal it so that not a soul suspected what was contained within his heart. Matters went on in this manner until the eldest son [by some writers, the brother] of the *Khālifāh*, the Amīr, Abū-Bikr, who, through his father's weakness of character, had been permitted to assume to himself the protectorship of the orthodox Sunnis, with more zeal than was perhaps advisable, despatched a body of troops to the suburb of Karkh of Baghdād, which was known as the *mahallah* of the *Shī'ah's* of the Ahl-i-Bait, to quell a serious disturbance which had broken out there between the *Shī'ahs* and Sunnis, the *Shī'ahs* having killed a number of the Bani Hāshim dwelling in the same suburb. In doing this, the Amīr, Abū-Bikr, was severe, and allowed his men to treat the *Shī'ah* women as though they were the women of infidels captured in war, carrying them seated before them on their horses, through the bāzars of Baghdād, bare-headed and bare-footed. When the Wazir became aware of this, the bridle of his heart's secret nearly escaped his grasp, and, in his rage, he vowed within himself, that, even if he perished in the attempt, he would wreak revenge upon all Sunnis for this act of the *Khālifāh's* son.

Day and night he pondered the matter in his mind, and communed within himself, and deliberated how best he could bring about the destruction of his benefactor, his family, and the Sunni people. At this time he discovered that

was named Amīr Abū-Bikr, enmity had arisen on account

Hulākū Khān, after having completed the downfall of the Mulāhidahs, had been commissioned to invade 'Irāk-i-'Arab, and reduce the Khālīfah. Considering this a great piece of good luck, the Wazīr resolved to profit by it. He forthwith set to work to render the design of the Mughals successful, and enable them to gain possession of Baghdād without trouble and without delay, by opening communication with Hulākū, and giving him all the information he could.

He accordingly represented to the Khālīfah saying: "Thank God, the Lord of the Faithful this day is at peace with all the different rulers. All of them are loyal and subservient to him; and, at all times, they pray for his prosperity and security, and in no way desire to encounter the forces of the Khilāfat. In truth, the Khālīfah is without rival and without adversary. Now it seems contrary to forethought and prudence, under these circumstances, that such an expenditure should go on every year from the treasury for the payment of so many troops; and, if the Lord of the Faithful will permit, I will despatch the various officers of the troops to different localities in the Khālīfah's dominions on civil duties, and the troops may be disbanded, whereby a great advantage will accrue to the finances, and a vast deal of treasure be saved." This sounds like modern stump-oratory.

At this time, 124,000 efficient cavalry were kept up by the Khālīfah, and paid out of his treasury, without counting the contingents of the vassals of the Khilāfat, and the unfortunate Khālīfah, in his love of wealth, considering all this was for his advantage, permitted the traitor to carry out his scheme. After a short time this was completed, and the capital almost denuded of troops. The traitor now communicated again with Hulākū, and despatched an agent secretly, expressing his sincerity and loyalty, and urging upon him that he should, on no account, give up the attempt to subdue 'Irāk-i-'Arab, and capture Baghdād, which could easily be accomplished, and that his services were at his entire disposal. Notwithstanding the proof and arguments he gave in his communication, Hulākū, for some time, did not place much faith in the traitor's words, but, when Ibn 'Alkamī continued to send communications, and to importune him on the subject, Hulākū consulted with another traitor—the Khwājah, Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, the Tūsi, who had, by this time, gained complete ascendancy over him, and a high position in Hulākū's confidence and service. He, being one of the great 'Ulamā of the Shī'ah sect, and having his own private revenge to satisfy by the downfall of the 'Abbāsids, entered into the conspiracy with zeal, especially after Ibn 'Alkamī had communicated direct with himself also. The Khwājah pretended that it was necessary to consult the aspect of the stars before determining on the campaign, and thus he was directed by Hulākū to do. His report may be imagined: he stated that he had carefully carried out his observations, that the result was favourable, and that it was predicted that the time was at hand for the Khālīfah, Musta'ṣim, to be made captive, and that Baghdād and 'Irāk-i-'Arab would be subdued by his servants, without much trouble or difficulty.

Hulākū's first move was to despatch his envoys to the Court of the Khālīfah with an insolent and arrogant message, on the 10th of Kannaṣān, 655 H., upbraiding him for not having rendered aid, which he accused the Khālīfah of having promised, in the operations against the Mulāhidahs, and of falsehood in consequence. His insolence was, no doubt, the greater, knowing that the Khālīfah's own Wazīr was his friend and ally. The threats of the barbarian

of the despoiling of the *rāḥīḳs* who inhabited Karkh, and

and his demands were, among other matters, that the *Khalīfah* should beware of manifesting impotent rage, and should neither strike his fist against an iron spike, nor attempt to plaster over the sun with mud mortar, otherwise he would deeply regret it, and sovereignty would turn away its face from him. "Our advice is," he said, "that thou shouldst demolish the defences of Baghdād, fill up the ditch, make over the direction of state affairs to thy son, and present thyself before us, in order that thou mayest dwell in safety from the wrath of God. If thou art not coming thyself, send thy Wazīr, the Sar Dīwat-Dār, and Sulīmān Shāh—the two latter, especially the last, were the mainstay of the state, and chief obstacle in the traitor's way—in order that our messages, without detriment or addition, may reach thee; for, if thou dost not give thine ear to our friendly exhortations and advice, get thy forces ready, and prepare for war, for we have girded up our loins to fight with thee, and are ready. Further understand, that, when we shall reach Baghdād, whether thou art in the heavens above or in the earth beneath, they will bring to thee our preeminent command, which is like unto fate's."

The *Khalīfah's* reply, transmitted through his own envoys, a mixture of admonition, boasting, and defiance, concluded: "Listen, young man, therefore, to the admonition we have given thee, and retain it in thy mind; and go back again whence thou camest, otherwise prepare for war and come." The Mughal envoys, on their return, were met outside the city by a great mob, who insulted and reviled them, and even spat upon them, in hopes that the Mughal envoys might do or say something which they might turn into a pretext for laying violent hands upon them. Here again was an opportunity for the Wazīr, hearing of the disturbance, he, at once, despatched a body of his household slaves to guard the envoys, and conduct them safely out of the danger, and they, on their return to Hulākū's camp, related all the good offices of the Wazīr on the occasion.

The *Khalīfah's* envoys, on the other hand, were angrily dismissed, with fresh threats, from the halting-place of Panj-Angusht, and their report of what they had seen and heard made the *Khalīfah* feel anxious and downhearted. He consulted with his Wazīr, whose traitorous conduct was, of course, wholly unknown to him. He advised that the *Khalīfah* should make use of the great wealth he possessed, and endeavour, by means of it, to ward off this calamity, and that liberal presents should be sent. For the *Khān*, a thousand bales of the finest fabrics, such as silk, fine linen, cloth, and other valuable wares and commodities, a thousand *baḥārt* [larry, double-humped] camels, and a thousand fine Arab horses caparisoned befittingly, and, for the Mughal Shāh zādaḥ and great Amīra, presents suitable to their rank and degrees.

The Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh puts a piece upon this, in order to flatter his Mughal patron no doubt, and says that the Wazīr—who, according to his account, was an innocent lamb—advised that the *Khalīfah*, his master, "should make apologies" to the barbarian, Hulākū, "insert his name in the *Khuṭbah*, and stamp the coin with his name;" that the *Khalīfah* was willing to do this, but that Mujāhid-ud-Dīn, and others, with whom the author of that work associates all the knaves and vagabonds of Baghdād, "out of animosity to the Wazīr, prevented it." That city, however, is not the only place where traitors have taxed patriots, who would not sacrifice "their countries' interests," with owing their influence to the support of knaves and villains, which terms were, at the same time, alone applicable to themselves.

the *Maḡh-had*<sup>2</sup> of *Mūsā-i-Ja'far*—God reward him!—and the son of the Lord of the Faithful, the *Amīr*, *Abū-Bikr*, had slain some of them, and despoiled them. Out of revenge for this, the *Wazīr* of the *Khalīfah's* Court, who was a *rāfiṣ* of bad religion, showed hostility towards the Lord of the Faithful; and, in secret, and clandestinely, he wrote a letter to *Hulākū*, and entered into collusion with him, and besought the infidels to advance. The *Kurd* troops, and forces of *'Irāk*,<sup>3</sup> by way of dismissing them, he [the *Wazīr*] sent away from *Baghdād*, in different directions, and represented on this wise to the Lord of the Faithful, saying—"A peace has been entered into with the infidels, and we have no need of troops." After *Baghdād* became denuded of troops, suddenly, the infidel *Mughals* arrived in its environs.

They had taken forcible possession of a bridge [of boats from the *Malik* of *Mauṣil*, and fixed it so as to command *Baghdād*, and then passed the *Dijlah* [*Tigris*]. The fortress [fortified town] of *Takrīt* [above *Baghdād*] was ar

At first, the *Khalīfah* was inclined to follow the *Wazīr's* advice, and gave him instructions to prepare the presents, but, had they been sent, no good result would have arisen. The *Sar Dāwat-Dār* [Head or Chief Ink-bearer, or Chief Secretary, as he may be called, and, by some writers, styled the *Dāwat-Dār-i Kūchak*, or Under-Ink-bearer, or Secretary], *Mujāhid-ud-Dīn*, *I-bak*, was hostile to the *Wazīr*, *Ibn 'Alkamī*—he knew the *Wazīr* was a traitor—and represented to the *Khalīfah*, saying, "Between the *Wazīr* and the *Khwājah Naṣīr-ud-Dīn*, *Tūsī*, the chief adviser of *Hulākū*, the most perfect understanding exists, and he, in consequence of identity of religious belief, always desires the ruin of the house of *'Abbās*. Now the *Wazīr* wishes, for his own purposes, to make it appear to *Hulākū* that he is, personally, loyally inclined towards him, and so he gives this advice, and also in order to cast the other *Amīrs* and the soldiers of the *Khalāfat*, into trouble and calamity." A number of other officials, who were not well inclined towards *Ibn 'Alkamī*, also supported the *Sar Dāwat Dār* in this view, and they influenced the *Khalīfah* against adopting the *Wazīr's* advice. The *Sar Dāwat-Dār* further advised that the disbanded troops should be forthwith recalled and concentrated, and the defences of the city made secure. It was now too late, however; and the weak and unfortunate *Khalīfah* was still unconvinced of the diabolic wickedness of the *Wazīr*.

<sup>2</sup> *Maḡh-had*—a tomb, a place of martyrdom. The city in *Khurasān*, which appears in the maps under the meaningless name of *Meshed*, is the *Maḡh-had* of another of the *Muḥammadan* saints.

<sup>3</sup> The Calcutta Printed Text invariably turns the *Kurds* into *جک* and here instead of the *Kurd* troops and forces of *'Irāk*, we have "*lashkar-hāe gird-i-'Irāk*" [which is redundant] *gird-i-'Irāk*—the forces which were round about *'Irāk*."

excessively strong place; and the holy-warriors of Takrīt issued forth, and set fire to the bridge of boats, but, the following day, the Mughals again repaired the bridge, and martyred the Musalmāns.<sup>2</sup>

The son of the Lord of the Faithful, Amīr Abū-Bikr, and the Amīr-i-'Alam [Lord of the Standard] of the Khilāfat, Sulīmān Shāh, the Aiyūbī Turk-mān—who for a period of thirty years had wielded the sword against the Mughal infidels, and had achieved many holy expeditions [against them], as by the canons of the faith enjoined—these two [personages], in concert, on several occasions, had attacked the infidels, and overthrew the Mughal troops.<sup>3</sup> On the first occasion, they drove the Mughals from the environs of Baghdād, and pursued them as far as Şafahān [Isfahān], and despatched many of the infidel army to hell. This Amīr-i-'Alam of the Khilāfat, Sulīmān Shāh,

<sup>2</sup> Part of the garrison of Takrīt: the fighting men of the city and fortress. This affair is again referred to farther on.

<sup>3</sup> This is quite true, notwithstanding the note by the learned Sub-Editors of the Calcutta Printed Text, noticed at page 711. On this subject the Tārīkh-i-'Alfi, Rauzat-us-Şafā, and others, say that it is quite correct, for, in the beginning of the reign of Ūktāe Kā'ān, Jurmāghūn, who was one of the Mughal Shaiḡāns [Devis], twice attempted to push on to Baghdād, and, on both occasions, was defeated, and his Mughals fled before the 'Arab, Kurd, and Turk, troops of the Khilāfat. On this account the Mughal soldiery did not evince much alacrity or valour in fighting against the Baghdādīs, and were really afraid of them—in truth, it appears that, on all occasions, when energetically opposed by the Musalmāns, and sedition did not help them, and where their stratagems and treachery were not successful, the Mughals were beaten by anything like equal numbers; but the Musalmāns, unfortunately for them, were a divided people, and, when the people of one religion, or of one country, are divided in their counsels, nothing but evil and ruin can ensue.

The fact that the Mughals did not, at the period in question, very eagerly desire to encounter the Khalīfah's forces, may be gathered from the reply of the Nū-yūn, Tānjū, to Hulākū, when he demanded of him what he had effected since he had succeeded Jurmāghūn in his command, previously narrated. At that time, the Khilāfat used to keep up a large force of efficient cavalry, at, and around his capital, and these the traitor Wazīr managed to disband and disperse to their homes.

It was on account of the success hitherto of the Baghdād troops that Hulākū found it was necessary, for Mughal prestige, or even for their safety, to attempt the conquest of 'Irāk-i-'Arab, but it is probable he would not have attempted it so soon, had not the traitor entered into secret communication with him, and made known his plans. For, previous to these communications, Hulākū is said to have been in some anxiety respecting the upshot of a campaign in that quarter.

the Aiyūbī, was a Malik of the tribes of the Anboh,<sup>4</sup> and they are a sept of the Turk-māns, and exceedingly spirited and warlike; and the left wing of the Khalifah's forces was their post. During a period of thirty years, from the time of Jurmāghūn's [first] entering 'Irāk,<sup>5</sup> up to this period, he [Sulīmān Shāh] was wont to engage in conflict like as Rustam-i-Dastān<sup>6</sup> had done in the age of ignorance—the Almighty be gracious to him!—and 'Alī-i-Murtaẓā in the [early?] days of the true faith—May God reward him!<sup>7</sup>

Hulākū,<sup>7</sup> having been overthrown the first time, on the second occasion gathered together troops from all Khurāsān and 'Irāk, both horse and foot, consisting of infidels, renegade Amīrs, and captives;<sup>8</sup> and, at the solicitation of the *rāfi'i* Wazīr—God's curse upon him!<sup>9</sup>—turned his face towards Baghdād. That accursed *rāfi'i* minister, since he entertained in his heart and disposition treason and apostacy, had dispensed with the Kurd forces which were in the Madinat-ul-Islām, Baghdād, and the Christians<sup>9</sup> likewise, in secret, having taken measures with Hulākū, had written letters to him, and had solicited the

<sup>4</sup> The best copies of the text have اوج as above, others اوج. There is a kaṣbah of the first name, on the top of a mountain range, a dependence of Dīlam, in Gī'ān. It is probable that the Anboh tribe of Turk-māns were in some way connected with the 'Usmānī Turks, and then, as now, a stumbling-block in the path of hordes of northern barbarians.

<sup>5</sup> In the year 628 H. See page 1115, and note <sup>3</sup>, para. 5.

<sup>6</sup> See note 7, page 422.

<sup>7</sup> This is a mistake. Hulākū had not been overthrown, because he had never encountered the Baghdād forces, but the other Mughal leaders had, Jurmāghūn in particular, as already noticed. He may mean some portion of Hulākū's force.

<sup>8</sup> Infidels refer to the Mughals, but there were contingents in Hulākū's army which the Muhammadan subject states had to furnish—contingents from Kirmān, from Abū-Bikr, the Atā Bak of Fārs, from Mauṣil—Badr-ud-Dīn, Lūlū, its ruler, is said by some to have joined his camp at this time—and the troops of other subordinate rulers. Captives refer to those prisoners pressed into the Mughal service.

<sup>9</sup> Our author uses the word *Tarāw*, which is generally applied to the Christians, but it likewise signifies an unbeliever, an infidel, a Gahr, a worshipper of fire, a pagan. None of the authors I have been quoting accuse the Christians of any hand in the treason, and the only time in which they are indirectly mentioned by a few of them is, when the Patriarch of the Nestorians, as one of the Khalifah's envoys, proceeded to the Mughal camp to seek for peace.



appearance of the infidel hosts. The Maliks and slaves of the Khalifah, who have been [styled] Sultāns,<sup>1</sup> had become aware of the Wazir's machinations, and once had shown to the Khalifah a letter which the Wazir had written to Hulākū, and they denounced the nature of his designs. The reason was this, that between the Wazir and the Sar Dawāt-dār [Chief Secretary], Sultān Mujāhid-ud-Dīn, I-bak, there was dissension and enmity, and he [the Sar Dawāt-dār] was cognizant of the hostility of the Wazir towards the Khalifah's son, Amīr Abū-Bikr, on account of his slaying the *rāfisīs* [previously mentioned]; and this fact he was wont to bring to the blessed hearing of the Khalifah. When the Wazir became aware of the purpose of the Sar Dawāt-dār, he represented to the Khalifah in this way, saying "The Sar Dawāt-dār desires to remove thee from the Khalāfat and to raise Amīr Abū-Bikr to that position,"<sup>2</sup> and, as the Lord of the

<sup>1</sup> The word Sultān here does not mean a sovereign prince—it is a mere title given by the Khalifahs to great vassals, and to governors of provinces, and some of the household slaves, under the last Khalifahs. After Burāk, the Hājib, had murdered his master and benefactor, sent his head to the Mughals, and possessed himself of Kirmān, as usual with up-starts, he wanted a title, so tendered his allegiance to the Khalifah as well as the Mughal ruler, and solicited the title of Sultān from the former. The reply he received was, that it was not usual, with the Khalifahs, to grant that title, except to a Bādghāh, or a vassal who entertained not less than 30,000 efficient cavalry in his own immediate pay. Subsequently, however, Burāk obtained it. BARON DE TÖRİ, in his work, which contains much useful information on the Turks, Tātārs, and Mughals, says, with respect to its application in recent times, that the word Sultān is only used as a title of birth appropriated to the Ottoman Princes born on the throne, and to those of the Chingiz Khān's family, in the same way as Mīrzā is applied to the house of Timūr. See note to page 898, where Iḥdam-chī or Iḥdam-chī, the equivalent of Mīrzā, is referred to, and the reason for this title is explained.

<sup>2</sup> This was a mere ruse on the part of the traitor Wazir.

I wrote the whole of these notes *before* going through this portion of the *Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh*, because I suspected, from what I knew of other portions of "the great Raschid's" History, and from its being dedicated to Hulākū's great grandson, that the events respecting Baghdād, and the fall of the Khalāfat, would *not be faithfully* related; and I am not mistaken in my suspicions. There is not a word—not a hint even—about the notorious treason of the Wazir, and he is made to appear a very lamb-like and innocent person, while a loyal servant of the Khalifah, like the Sar Dawāt-dār, is made out to be a traitor, who, surrounded by a considerable force, consisting of all the knaves, and villains, and scum of Baghdād, whom he is said to have taken into his pay, intended to dethrone the Khalifah, and set up another member of the

Faithful had become aware of the endeavours on both sides, he used not to pay any attention to the words of either party in their efforts against each other.

When therefore the Malik's laid before the Khalīfah the letters which the Wazīr had written to Hulākū, he replied : " These must be the doings of I-bak, the Dawāt-dār : besides, the Wazīr would not act in this way." The Malik's were disheartened at this reply, until, when Hulākū had arrived within ten *kuroh* [about twenty miles] of Baghdād, Sulīmān Shāh, the Amīr-i-'Alam, and Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, son of Faḥ-ud-Dīn, the Kurd, who was the champion of the Dār-ul-Khilāfat, and who led the right

house of 'Abbās, which plot the innocent Wazīr having discovered made known to the Khalīfah ! The writer then, unintentionally perhaps, lets the cat out of the bag. He says the Sar Dawāt-Dār was sent for, taxed with the crime, and admonished, but he replied : " If any crime shall be *proved* against thy slave, here is his head, and here is a sword, but it is the Wazīr who is a traitor, who has been in constant communication with Hulākū, whose spies are continually passing to and fro, and, in order to lead us away from his own treason and screen himself, has falsely accused me " This statement, in the eyes of Rashīd-ud-Dīn, is a proof of the Sar Dawāt-Dār's wickedness !

Rashīd-ud-Dīn then goes on to assert that the Sar Dawāt-Dār still continued to entertain his army of knaves and villains, and the Khalīfah, being afraid of him, gave orders to assemble troops to put him down ! Then he tells us that the affair was peaceably settled, and that " the Dawāt-Dār's name was *inserted* in the Khuṭbah next after that of the Khalīfah, which statement I should not credit if all the " great Raschids " under the sun had said so. He is careful not to mention the Wazīr's letters to Hulākū—these proceedings are kept close, as well as the constant communication by other means, and the dispersion, by that traitor, of the Khalīfah's forces. Our author shows what the facts were, as to the so-called plot to dethrone the Khalīfah, as known in his day, and he is a contemporary writer.

The meaning of the Perso-Arabic word Dawāt Dār has been already explained—its literal signification is bearer of the ink-case, which contains ink, pens, and seals, but what a " *little Devil* " may be among " Mongols Proper," who can tell ?

The garbled accounts of these events show, that, however learned and talented he was, Rashīd-ud-Dīn's statements, where his Mughal patrons and his own interests are concerned, are not to be trusted, and dishonesty in an author, when apparent, ought to be pointed out. He was a Wazīr too, and had plotted against a rival who was put to death, and was himself put to a most cruel death, by Abū Sa'īd, the great great grandson of the very Mughal Prince whose perfidy and barbarity he glosses over, and whose success was chiefly, if not wholly, owing to the aid he received from the arch traitor Ibn 'Alkamī, the Wazīr of the unfortunate Khalīfah. Rashīd-ud-Dīn was accused of having administered poison to Uḡāitū Sultān, and it is very probable that he was a Shī'ah as well as the traitor Ibn 'Alkamī, and Nasīr-ud-Dīn, the Tūṭī, and hence his concealment of facts.

wing of the Khalifah's troops, held counsel upon the state of affairs with Sultān Mujaḥid-ud-Dīn, I-bak, the Sar Dawāt-dār, the Mustanşiri,<sup>3</sup> saying: "Matters have gone too far, a potent enemy is close at hand, and an adverse Wazir has plotted with the foe. It is necessary that it be communicated to the Lord of the Faithful in order that he may devise some expedient to repel the infidels." Mujaḥid-ud-Dīn, I-bak, replied: "I have said everything that was possible on this subject, but it has made no impression upon the blessed ear of the Khalifah. I can do no more than to request permission for a private audience for you. Do you make a representation to the effect [you have mentioned]." Malik Sulīmān Shāh, the Aiyūbī Turk-mān, and Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, son of Faṭḥ-ud-Dīn, the Kurd, represented to the Khalifah the arrival of the enemy, and solicited that means might be devised for his repulsion. The Khalifah replied: "The Wazir hath been spoken to: it behoveth ye to request a reply from him." Both withdrew from the audience-hall of the Khalāfat despairing.

The Nū-īn, Tājū [Tānjū],<sup>4</sup> with 80,000 infidel cavalry, from the side of Ārān and Āzarbāijān, obtained a bridge [of boats] belonging to the Malik of Mauṣil [Badr-ud-Dīn-i-Lūlū], and, in order to command Baghdād, fixed it near to Takrīt. The holy-warriors of Takrīt sallied out of the town and fortress, and entirely consumed the bridge<sup>5</sup> constructed by the Mughals, and despatched great numbers of the infidels to hell, while a few Musalmāns attained martyrdom. The following day, the Mughals repaired the bridge, as has been previously recorded, passed over,<sup>6</sup>

<sup>3</sup> That is to say he had held the office during the Khalāfat of Al-Mustanşir B'illah

<sup>4</sup> Written Tājū in one of the oldest and best copies of the text, and in others, as previously noticed, Bājū, Bājūn, Nājū, Bākhū, and Mājūn, but as to the correctness of Tānjū there is no doubt whatever. In his account of the Saljuks of Rūm our author, or his copyists rather, also style him Tājū. See page 162.

<sup>5</sup> How could it be repaired, if totally or entirely burnt?

<sup>6</sup> Here the Printed Text, as well as the I O L MS, No 1952, and the Ro. As Soc. MS have كبر—"one another"—instead of ماتت—"they passed over or crossed," and make, as may be imagined, an unintelligible jumble of the sentence. The Printed Text also has Dylah for Hūlah—a river for a town! The town lies on the west bank of the Dylah, facing the supposed site of ancient Babylon

and pushed on towards Kūfah, Ḥillah, and Karkh, and martyred the people. Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, son of Fath-ud-Dīn, the Kurd, and Mujāhid-ud-Dīn, the Sar-Dawāṭī, with 20,000 horse from Baghdād, crossed the Dijlah [Tigris], and summoned all the men of Karkh and other towns to aid them, and fought a battle with the infidel army. As the forces of Islām contained a great number of infantry,<sup>7</sup> they stood firm, and received the attack of the infidels, fought valiantly, and forced them back. The army of the infidel Mughals sustained an overthrow, and great numbers of them went to hell.<sup>8</sup> Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, son of Fath-

<sup>7</sup> The Hamilton *MS* of the Text abruptly ends here, and contains no more than when and where the *MS* was copied. It is minus just twenty-six pages. I notice it again in my Preface.

<sup>8</sup> The Pto-Mughal writers materially differ with respect to some of these events, but, with others, their statements tend to illustrate what our author says, and make his accounts stand out more clearly, and therefore I must give a few extracts.

Having dismissed the Khulīfah's envoys, who brought the reply to his insolent message to the Khulīfah, from his camp at Panj-Angusht, Hulākū's next move was to get possession of the fortresses in the difficult and mountainous tract between Hamadān and the Siwād of Baghdād. He accordingly began to enter into communication with another traitor, on a smaller scale than the Wazīr, whose name was Husām-ud-Dīn, 'Akah, the Hākim of the fortress of Dar-i-Tang, which, from its name—the difficult or narrow passage—refers to some fort guarding a pass leading into the plain of Baghdād. He had some cause for discontent against the Khulīfah's government, and at once complied with Hulākū's summons to attend him. Husām-ud-Dīn was received with distinction, and many favours were conferred upon him, including the strongholds of Wurūdah-Duz and Warah-Duz, and several other forts, which did not belong to the Mughals to give. He was allowed to return to Dar-i-Tang, where he had left his son, the Amīr-i-Sa'd, in command; and, at once, proceeded to send bodies of his retainers to obtain possession of the forts in question, and put garrisons of his own in them. The forts appear to have belonged to the Amīr-i-'Alam, Sulīmīn Shāh, because Husām-ud-Dīn is said "to have gathered about him the soldiers of Sulīmān Shāh, and in that way hopes, long nourished, were fulfilled." Husām-ud-Dīn, having now effected his purpose, asked the Hākim of Arbīl, Ibn Salāyah, the 'Alawī, to make his peace with Baghdād and the Khulīfah's *dīwan*. He stated that he had been peace against all Hulākū's offers, and that, if the Khulīfah "would make his heart strong by encouragement, and would detach a body of cavalry to support him, he would raise a force of 100,000 infantry among the Kurds and Turkmāns around, occupy all the routes in front of Hulākū, and prevent a single Mughal from approaching Baghdād." The Wazīr is said to have acquainted the Khulīfah with this offer, but no further notice was taken of it. It would not have suited Ibn 'Alkāmi's plans, and, therefore, he doubtless was the cause of the offer not being accepted. He, without doubt, communicated it to Hulākū, for the latter, soon after, despatched the Nū-yīn, Karbūkū, with

ud-Dīn, the Kurd, earnestly urged the pursuit of the Mughals, saying: "It is requisite to pursue the routed

30,000 men, against Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, and had recourse to the usual perfidious measures in order to get him into his power. Kaibūkū sent a message to Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, saying that he was on his way towards Baghdād, that expedition having been determined upon, and that Ḥusām-ud-Dīn's presence was required in order to consult with him. Unaware of the snare laid for him, Ḥusām-ud-Dīn fell into it. After Kaibūkū had got him into his camp, he told him, "in order to show his sincerity," to muster all his family, dependents, and retainers, from the forts and elsewhere, so that they might be enumerated, and the amount of revenue, to be paid for them, fixed. Still did Ḥusām-ud-Dīn comply, unaware that Hulākū knew all. His family, dependents, and soldiers, with the exception of such as were in some of the forts with his son, being secured, Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, now that it was too late, found that his secret was known; and he gave up all hope of life. He was further called upon to give orders for the fortresses to be destroyed, as "an undoubted proof of his loyalty," and, being hopeless, he complied, after which, he and the whole of his people were massacred, with the exception of those with his son. Kaibūkū returned triumphant to his master's camp. The Amīr-i-Sa'īd, Ḥusām-ud-Dīn's son, refused to give up the forts in his possession, and held them for some time. At last, he evacuated them, and retired to Baghdād. He was received with much favour, and subsequently was killed in defending the city against the Mughals.

This feat accomplished, Hulākū, after he had been again in communication with the traitor Wasīr, and with the Khwājah, Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, the Tūsi, at his elbow—I have not space for all the prophecies of the Court Astrologer, Ḥusām-ud-Dīn, of calamities to happen, in case of attacking Baghdād, but the Tūsi was in favour of advancing, and the Mughal augurs and astrologers declared all portents favourable for it—gave orders to make preparations for the campaign, and the Bahādur, Sūnjāk, was directed to cross the Dīlah, to the northward of Baghdād, in order to effect a junction with the Nū-yīn Tānjū, who, as already mentioned, with the Amirs and troops previously under Jurmāghūn's command, was marching, on the right hand, through Āzarbāijān, for the purpose of invading the territories of Shām, Ḥalab, and Rūm, but whose march had been stopped, and he had been directed to turn to his left, move by way of Arbīl and Mausi, where there was a bridge, and effect a junction with Sūnjāk. The Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh says Tānjū's *yūrat*, at that time, was in Rūm, and that he had lately defeated the Saljūk Sultān at Kūshah-Dāgh, but this is somewhat different from the statements of others already briefly mentioned.

The Shāh-zādahs, Bulghān or Bulghā, Tūtār, and Kūli, all grandsons of Jūjī Khān, and Būkā Timūr's forces, were also directed to advance on the right, from the district of 'Abbās-ābād [west of Hamadān—in some Histories, Avad-ābād], and join Sūnjāk. These junctions having been effected, this combined force was to approach Baghdād from the west, through the tract afterwards called the "Gariwah of Sūntāe, the Nū-yīn." The Nū-yīn, Kaibūkū, Qadsūn, and Ilkāe, or Ilkā, or Ilkān, as he is also named, were to move towards Baghdād through Khūzistān, and approached it from the south-east, while Hulākū, himself, with the centre, advanced towards the city from the eastward, by way of Khānkīn.

The Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh states that Hulākū reached Dīnādr, which is three

infidels, so that, with this victory even, the remainder of them may be brought under the sword ;" but Mujāhid-ud-Dīn, the Sar-Dawāṭī, delayed in pursuing ;<sup>9</sup> and, that night, the Musalmāns encamped upon that same spot.

days' journey from Hamadān, on the route to Baghdād, with the intention of marching thither, as early as the 9th of Rabī'ul-Ākhar—the fourth month—of 655 H., but returned from thence to Hamadān again, and reached it on the 12th of Rajab—the seventh month—of that year ; and that, on the 12th of the latter month, he despatched his agents to Baghdād with threatening messages for the Khalīfah. Why Hulūkū should have made this retrograde movement is not said, but, in all probability, it was because the traitorous Wazīr's schemes, which "the great Raschid," so glaringly, conceals, were not quite ripe for execution, and in order to put the loyal servants of the Khalīfah off their guard.

Early in Muḥarram—the 11th, according to some accounts—656 H., but Zī-Ḥijjah, the preceding month, and twelfth month of the preceding year—655 H., appears to be the most correct—within the period prescribed, Tānjū, by way of Dajayl [lit 'branch'] or Dajaylah [the district of Dajayl, at present, lies on either side of the old bed of the Dijlah above Baghdād. Dajayl is also the name of the Little Tigris], crossed the Dijlah, and reached the Nahr-i-'Isā [the canal or rivulet of Jesus]. The MASĀLIK WA MAMĀLIK states that "Karkh [which is a suburb of Baghdād] is very well inhabited, and considerable traffic is there carried on . . . On the western side is a canal or stream called Nahr-i-'Isā, a branch of the Furāt, which, passing by Baghdād, falls into the Dijlah."

When the Khalīfah became aware of this, he nominated Faṭḥ-ud-Dīn, son of Alankū, with Mujāhid-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak, the Sar Dawāt-Dār, the Mustanṣirī, and Karā Sanḡur, who were the leaders of the Khalīfah's troops [the Dawāt-Dār was a civilian, not a soldier—the names given by our author, who was the contemporary of these persons, are far more trustworthy], with 20,000 horse, which the Fanākati magnifies into 30,000 men, fought a battle with Sūnjāk, and Būkā Tīmūr's forces within the limits of Anbār, before the Kūghh [castle] of Manṣūr, above Madrūkah, on the east bank of the Furāt, within nine farsakhs of Baghdād. Alfī says the Mughals in the first charge turned their backs and fled before the Khalīfah's troops. The Fanākati, to flatter the Mughal pride, says they "fell back" as far as Shīrīyah, in the district of Dajayl, when they were joined by Tānjū and his troops, and then compelled the Baghdād troops to fall back.

<sup>9</sup> The Pro-Mughal writers make out quite the contrary, but I prefer our author's version. Their statements are to the following effect :—

Faṭḥ-ud-Dīn [This is incorrect. Faṭḥ-ud-Dīn is the father's name. 'Izz-ud-Dīn is the son's, as our author mentions], Alankū, who was a man of experience, on whose head the dust of the battle-field had fallen, when he saw that the Mughals, without having had many men killed, turned their backs and fled, suspected some stratagem on their part, and therefore forbade the Baghdādīs to go in pursuit, but Mujāhid-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak, the Sar Dawāt-Dār [poor fellow] the Pro-Mughal writers put all faults upon him], who, besides being without any experience in such matters, was in the revenue department of the state, thinking this proceeding on the part of ['Izz-ud-Dīn, son of] Faṭḥ-ud-Dīn arose from fear of the Mughals, said to him : "Dost thou consider that

In the vicinity of that place there was a stream, which they [the inhabitants] call the Nahr-i-Sher [the Lion's Canal].<sup>1</sup> It is cut from the river Furāt [Euphrates], and the land through which it flows is somewhat elevated, while the place in which was the Musalmān encampment was low ground. During that night, the accursed *rāṣī* Wazīr despatched a body [of men], and turned the water of that

debts of gratitude towards the Amīr-ul-Mūminīn are to be paid in this way, that thou shouldst hold back thy hand when the enemies of the Khālīfah have been beaten and overthrown? It is advisable, before the infidels shall have received assistance, and they regain strength, to pursue them, and give tranquillity to the mind of the Amīr-ul-Mūminīn respecting them." Hearing this foolish speech, [ʿIzz-ud-Dīn, son of] Faṭḥ-ud-Dīn gave orders to follow in pursuit of the Mughals. When the Baghdādīs had passed beyond the margin of the suburbs [the scene of the action was some distance from the suburbs] into the open country, the Mughals faced about, and the engagement was renewed, and continued until the 'Abbāsī mantle of darkness [the 'Abbāsī colour was black] covered the opponents, when the battle ceased, and both sides bivouacked for the night, opposite each other. During that night the Mughals, by cutting a dyke, let in the water of the river Furāt, so that the whole of the plain where the Musalmāns were encamped became flooded with water, and the greater number of them were drowned in their sleep. They were attacked in overwhelming numbers in the morning, and [ʿIzz-ud-Dīn, son of] Faṭḥ-ud-Dīn was killed in the engagement, and Mujaḥhid-ud-Dīn returned to Baghdād with three persons. The Fanākātī says the Mughals cut the dyke of a considerable river—*أبي* in rear of the Khālīfah's troops, and the whole plain was laid under water. Our author's statement here is preferable, no doubt. The Pro-Mughal writers take away the credit of this act from their ally, the traitor, but it is evident that some one, who knew the locality, and who was well aware how easily the country might be laid under water, must have had the principal hand in the matter—the Mughals probably helped.

The next morning, which was the 'Ashūrā—the 10th of Muḥarram, 656 H.—according to the Fanākātī—but Alfī mentions these events as taking place a month earlier—the Mughals threw themselves upon the Baghdādīs—the few which survived—and overthrew them. [ʿIzz-ud-Dīn, son of] Faṭḥ-ud-Dīn, son of Alankū, and Kara Sunḡar, and 12,000 men, besides those drowned and smothered in the mud, perished on that occasion, and the Sar Dawāt-Dār, Mujaḥhid-ud-Dīn, I-bak, with only a few persons, reached Baghdād in safety.

<sup>1</sup> This word may be *shūr*—the Canal of Milk—according to the vowels used with it, but I have no means of pronouncing which of the two names is right, but the above is the more probable. The Calcutta Printed Text has *shūr*—*shūr*—"city," "of lion" or "milk" twice, because the word *nahr*—canal, rivulet, etc.—is something like *شور* in *MS*, and yet "*shūr*" and "*ī* uat" is used with it. The account of the canals in the neighbourhood of Baghdād by Captain John Jones, I N., in the "*Pemsey Geographical Transactions*," may contain some information on this subject, but, in ancient times, the Dhyah or Tigris, north of, or above, Baghdād, flowed farther west than at present.

canal upon the encampment of the Musalmāns; and the whole was flooded with water, and their arms and armour were all spoiled, and they became quite powerless. The next morning, at dawn, the army of the infidels returned, and another battle ensued; but the Musalmāns, from the extreme misery and affliction of the preceding night,<sup>2</sup> were

<sup>2</sup> Here too, the Printed Calcutta Text contains a great blunder, and has *zaḥmat-i-nipāh*—affliction, trouble, etc., of the soldiers—instead of *zaḥmat-i-shabānah*, as above

Respecting the investment, and final operations against Baghdād, and the downfall of the *Khilāfat*, there are many conflicting accounts, especially in the matter of detail, and according as the writer was a *Sunni*, a *Shi'ah*, or an Official under the *Mughal* sovereigns or otherwise; but all materially differ from our author, who wrote at the very time the events happened, and whose valuable account they either never saw, or would not consult or quote. The subject is an important one in the history of *Islām*, and, therefore, I shall give some extracts from the various Histories I have mentioned at the beginning of this Section, for the information of those who may not have access to all the works referred to. I also do so because there are some accounts, lately given to the public, extracted from foreign histories of the "Mongols," which are, without doubt, partially, and after a manner, compiled from some of the Histories I have quoted, but which, apparently, to judge from the very fantastic manner in which the events, the names of persons, and places, have been metamorphosed, have not been properly understood by the foreign translators, owing, possibly, to incorrect or defective *MSS.*, or have suffered by translation at second hand.

Subsequent to the defeat of the *Khilāfah's* troops, after the inundation of their camp, and the rendering of most of their weapons useless in the month of *Zi-Hijjah*, 655 H [the *Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh* says the 11th of *Muharram* 656 H, a month too late], the audience tent of *Hulākū*—equivalent to the "Head-Quarter Camp" in military parlance—was pitched opposite *Baghdad* on the east side. The appearance of the *Mughals* filled the city with consternation, and sleep forsook the eyelids of the inhabitants, in their anxiety respecting the issue, and the prospect of their deliverance. The *Khilāfah* directed that the gates should be closed, and the ramparts and bastions guarded and secured. The *Amirs* and confidential officers of the *Khilāfah*, such as the *Amir-i-'Alam*, *Sulīmān Shāh*, and *Mujāhid-ud-Dīn*, the *Say Dawāt-Dar*, and the household slaves, and, in fact, the men of the city, generally, came forth on the walls and towers prepared for action. Next day [the *Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh*, contrary to all others, keeps *Hulākū* inactive from 11th to 22nd of *Muharram*, which is not correct], early in the morning, the standard of *Hulākū* was raised, and, during the whole of that day to evening, a fire of arrows, flasks of combustibles, stones from catapults and slings, and a storm from other missiles, continued, during which a great number were killed and wounded on either side. Each party maintained its position during the night, and began the fight the following morning. In this manner the fighting went on with little intermission for a space of *fifty days* [the *Fanākatī*, who says, twelve days, only begins the operations in the middle of the following month], when a number of the *Sayyids* [*Shi'ahs*] of *Hillah*, such as *Majd-ud-Dīn*, *Muhammad*, son of *Hasan*, son of *Tā-ūs*, *Sadīd-ud-Dīn*, *Yūsuf*, son of *Muṭahhar*, and others, despatched a spokesman of their own people, with a letter to *Hulākū*, the purport of which



defeated ; and the Maliks of Islām, broken and discomfited, retired across the Dijlah, and took up their position

was, that it had become known to them, from the sayings of their forefathers, more particularly from the Amīr-ul-Mūminīn, and Imām ul-Murtakīn, 'Alī, son of Abū-Tālib—on whom be peace—that, during this year [656 H.], Hulākū would become predominant over 'Irāk-i-'Arab ; and that the Hākīm of that territory, which was to say, the 'Abbāsī Khālīfah, would fall into his hands ; that they tendered their fealty and submission, would carry out such commands as he might be pleased to issue, and would not place foot out of the pale of obedience to him.

The effect of such sedition, at such a crisis, may be imagined. Rather than not destroy their co-religionists of the rival sect, they would sacrifice anything. What did they care for the massacre of hundreds of thousands of innocent people by the Mughal barbarians, or the slavery of their country? was not Hulākū "a divine figure from the north"? and was not his sole object the "amelioration" of the condition of the Musalmān people? Hulākū was overjoyed. He treated the bearer of the letter and his companions with great honour, and sent back along with them a person of his own retinue, named Tūklah, as Shāhnaḥ of Hillah, along with the Amīr Yaḥyā, the Naḥḥyūānī. By this means the Sayyids of Hillah escaped all the misery and affliction of this troublous time, and "remained safe," to quote the words of one writer, "under the protection of the Most High."

A body of 100 Mughal infidels was sent to Najaf to act as a guard to the tomb of the Khālīfah 'Alī, by way of flattering the Shī'ahs.

According to other accounts, after the Nu-yīn, Tānjū, and the Bahādur, Sūnjāk, became victorious over the forces of Ilaghādā, after flooding their camp, they, having crossed the Dijlah, advanced towards the city, and took up a position on the river banks, on its western side, about the middle of the month of Muḥarram, 656 H.—and the date of the letter, given in note 1, page 1261, proves its correctness—but the Rauzat-uṣ-Ṣafā and Alfī have the month of Zī-Ḥijjah, 655 H., and the latter, by way of making it more certain, adds, "which is 645 of the Rīḥlat." In the direction of Naḥāsīyah and Ṣar-sar, Karbūkā, and the other leaders along with him, also pushed forward towards the devoted city. Hulākū, leaving such of the families—for the Mughals took their families with them—and heavy materials, as he had brought with him, at Khānkīn [Lat. 34° 21', Long. 45° 22'], now advanced by quick marches, and took up a position on the east side, where, on the 15th of Muḥarram—but other accounts, already referred to, say in Zī-Ḥijjah—the last month of 655 H.—his audience tent was set up ; and, like ants or locusts, the Mughal forces [including Musalmān contingents from Kirmān, Fārs, and the other parts of the Khwārazmī empire which had fallen under the Mughal yoke, who were, consequently, forced to aid against the head of their faith and co-religionists] gathered round the city. On the left, or south side of the city, opposite the Burj-i-'Ajamī—or 'Ajamī bastion, the Nū-yīn, Kūkā Ilkān, the Amīrs, Tūtār and Kūfī, took up their position facing the Kul-wāḥī gateway, while Bulghā, Arktū, and Shīrāmūn, occupied the open space before the gateway of the Sūḳ-i-Sultān—the Sultān's Market-place. Bulāq Tīmūr was on the side of the Kal'ah, near the place called the Dolāb-i-Baḳul, while Tānjū and Sūnjāk held a position on the west side, at the place where the 'Uḍāī hospital was situated.

A simultaneous attack was commenced on Wednesday, the 23rd of Muḥar

and encamped at Baghdād, at the place where the great Sanjarī *masjid*\* and *kasr* [castle] are situated. On the army of the accursed infidels reaching that place, Sulīmān Shāh, the Aiyūbī Turk-mān, Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, the Kur

ram, 656 H [the Fanākātī says, Tuesday, the 22nd, but those dates were Wednesday and Thursday, unless counted as terminating at noon], when the sun was in the constellation of Aries. The fighting went on for a considerable time, until most of the walls and ramparts were destroyed by the discharge of stones from the catapults—a “bombardment” by means of catapults, as is termed in the “*Mongols Proper*,” is certainly something new in the art of war—and great anxiety arose in the mind of the Khalīfah, seeing that he had not the power sufficient to resist the invaders.

The Fanākātī also says, but his statement is not correct—he has greatly “compressed” events here—that the fighting continued for twelve days during which the Mughals were occupied in slaughtering and pillaging, but this could only possibly refer to the suburbs, for the Mughals were not yet in possession of the place. That writer also says that, during this period, Sulīmān Shāh, the leader of the Khalīfah's troops, and his dependents and followers, were slain, and that the Mughals also slew the Amīr-i-Hāj—the Superintendent and Conductor of the Pilgrims—the eldest son of the Sar Dawūd-Dar, and that their heads were sent to Mausi, thus showing that he had anticipated events.

To return to the account in Alfī and others. Finding himself powerless, the Khalīfah is said to have sent out the Wazīr, Ibn 'Alkamī—and the Jānī or Patriarch of the Christians [Nestorians], according to the Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīq—with a message to Hulākū saying, that he hoped he would keep his former promise. Hulākū, in reply, said: “I made that agreement at Hamadān. Now that I have reached Baghlād, and the sea of discord, sedition, and tumult, has become lashed into waves, how can I possibly content myself with one Wazīr? The recompense required is this, that the Khalīfah should likewise send to me Sulīmān Shāh, and both the Dawūd-Dār-i-Kūchak and Buzurg—the Chief and Under Secretary, and keeper of the seals.”

The Khalīfah's envoys returned to the city with this reply, and, the next day a deputation of illustrious and learned men [according to Rashīd-ud-Dīn the traitor Wazīr was included] proceeded to Hulākū's camp to endeavour to obtain favourable terms of peace, but he sent them away, and the flames of war again blazed up, and continued for another six days. The fighting was obstinate, and great numbers, on both sides, were killed. On the seventh day, Hulākū, consequent on the arrival in his camp of the deputation above referred to, and the stubborn defence, caused seven *farmāns* to be written out which were fastened to as many arrows, and discharged into as many quarters of Baghdād, the purport of which *farmāns* was: “Sayyids, Kāzīs, 'Ulamā, Officials, Merchants, and persons who do not fight against us, will be safe and secure from our rage and vengeance.”

Consequent on the receipt of these *farmāns*, a great number of seditious patriots among the Baghdādīs deserted their posts, and gave up fighting, and, by this means, the Mughals were enabled to approach the Burj-i-'Ajam and drive out of that important post the weak number now left to defend the walls on that side.

\* The masjid and castle erected by Sulṭān Sanjar, the Saljūq.

## IRRUPTION OF THE INFIDELS INTO ISLĀM.

and Mujāhid-ud-Dīn, the Sar-Dawāfī, presented themselves in the Khalifah's presence, and represented, saying: "The enemy has reached the city gate, and we have a few horsemen along with us in Baghdād, while the number of the infidels is 200,000 or more. It will be that the Lord of the Faithful should embark on board a vessel, and give directions for placing his treasures, his family, on ship-board; and we will likewise attend the Lord of the Faithful in the vessel, and push down the Dījlāh as far as the limits of Baṣrah; and, in those islands we will take up our abode until such time as deliverance cometh from Almighty God, and the infidels be vanquished."<sup>4</sup>

The Khalifah mentioned this matter to the Wazīr; that accursed minister represented to the Lord of the Faithful, saying: "I have entered into a peace with the Mughals, and there is no necessity for leaving [Baghdād]. They [the Mughals] are going to present themselves before the Lord of the Faithful. If my word is believed, it is necessary that the Amīr, Abū-Bikr [Khalifah's son], should be sent out in order that he may understand the inclination of Hulāū." This counsel, with the approval of the Khalifah, and he sent out his son. The accursed Wazīr secretly despatched a confidant of his own to Hulāū, saying: "Treat the Amīr, Abū-Bikr, with great consideration, and pay him much reverence and respect, and send out and receive him, in or

<sup>4</sup> The islands in the deltas, near the mouth of the combined rivers which fall into the Persian Gulf, are referred to here.

This is what the Pro-Mughal writers turn into the Dawāt-Dār's self deserting his benefactor in his straits. They say, that, when the Dawāt-Dār saw that there was no other way of escape than instant flight, he, without knowledge of the Khalifah, embarked with his dependents—some even go so far as to say that 10,000 men were with him—and dropped down the river. When the boats arrived opposite the Karyah-ul-'Ukāb [village of the En called by some the Karyah-ul-Ghaffār, a body of the Il-Khān's [Hulāū] troops, under Bākū Tīmūr, which had been detached to guard the road to Baṣrah, and the Madāyin, and prevent the passage of vessels, discovered them. With discharges of stones from catapults, and flasks of burning naphtha, the Mughals compelled him to turn back, after they had succeeded in capturing three boats, all on board of which they slew, and plundered the property of, and the Sar Dawāt-Dār, after a thousand stratagems, succeeded in re-entring Baghdād again. The Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh asserts that this act caused the Khalifah to determine to submit, as he could not trust his own Amīrs!

that the **Khalifah** may have reliance, and thy object will be gained." \*

\* At this time, the **Khalifah**, who had become resigned to loss of country and possessions, despatched **Fakhr-ud-Dīn**, the **Dāmghānī**, and **Ibn Darwesh**, with a few rarities, as offerings to **Hulākū**, saying - "We will acknowledge dependency, and submit," but he paid no attention to the message; and they returned repulsed and disappointed.

Next day, the 27th of **Muharram**, the **Khalifah's** son, **Abū-Bakr-i-Abū-l-Faṣl**—called **Abū-l-Faṣā'il** by some—with a body of grandees, the chief men of the **Khalifah's** Court, proceeded to **Hulākū's** camp, bearing presents of great value, by way of *ṣadaḥ-kash* or tribute, but they also had to return without being received; and the traitor **Wazīr** returned with them to the city. The same day [the **Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh** says, the first day of **Safar**, which was on a Thursday] **Hulākū** despatched another traitor, the **Khawājah**, **Nasir-ud-Dīn**, the **Tūsi**, in company with one of the **Mughal** officers, to communicate with the **Wazīr**, urging that the latter, along with **Ibn Jauzī** and **Ibn Darwesh**, should, by all possible means, pacify the minds of **Sulmān Shāh**, and **Mujāhid-ud-Dīn**, the **Sar Dawāt-Dār**, because they were the cause of the **Khalifah's** resistance. The **Amir**, **Sulmān Shāh**, was, indeed, and had been, the bulwark of the faith of **Islām** against the infidel **Mughals**, which they did not lose sight of. The **Rauzat-uṣ-Ṣafā** says, that, to complete the usual system of **Mughal** perfidy, "Hulākū even sent to them a deed of immunity and a safe conduct; and, *volentes volentes*, they were induced to proceed to the **Mughal** camp." The author of the **Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh** also details this shameful act of **Mughal** treachery without the least remark, as though it were a mere every-day affair, and a very pious action.

**Hulākū**, however, wanted more victims—the cup of treachery on the part of the barbarian monster was not quite full—so he despatched **Sulmān Shāh** and the **Sar Dawāt-Dār**, into the city again, in order that they might bring out, along with them, their families, kinsmen, dependents, and retainers, pretending that he was going to despatch them, along with some of his own forces, against **Mīr** and **Shām**. This further duplicity appears to have thrown them off their guard, and made them trust to the word of a **Mughal** prince. They returned, and brought out their people, and a great number of the soldiery of **Baghdād** and other persons, in hopes of saving themselves, came out along with them to **Hulākū's** camp. On their arrival there, they were all distributed among the different bands of *Sadaks* and *Dakkas*, and, shortly after their return thither, an arrow from the city—for hostilities do not seem to have been suspended during these negotiations—struck a **Hindū** [probably a native of **India**, but not necessarily, although possibly, a worshipper of idols, is here meant] **Bitukhī**, in the eye, and destroyed it [Von Hammer, by some error, turns this upside down, and says that an *Indian* struck out the eye of one of the principal emirs!]. As this man was one of **Hulākū's** chief officials, he was so enraged that he ordered his troops to the assault, and to strain every nerve to capture the city. He then directed the massacre of the **Sar Dawāt-Dār**, and his family, connexions, and kinsmen, and all the fugitives who had accompanied him and **Sulmān Shāh** from the city, while the **Amir-i-'Alam**, **Sulmān Shāh**, the **Turk-mān**, who had so often overthrown the **Mongols**, was brought fettered, together with his family, kinsmen, and personal dependents, to the foot of the barbarian's throne. He demanded of the **Muslimān** warrior: "Thou art an astrologer [doubtless the **Tūsi Khawājah**,

On the Amīr, Abū-Bikr's, coming forth [from Baghdād], and reaching the camp of Hulāū, a throng<sup>6</sup> of people, infidels and Musalmāns, went forth to receive him, and observed the usages of service. When he reached Hulāū's place of audience, the latter advanced about four paces to receive him, treated him with due ceremonial, conducted him to, and seated him in, his own place, and himself reclined on the knees of reverence<sup>7</sup> in his presence, and said: "I am come to present myself [before the Khalīfah], and will pay homage [to him]. My uncle, Barkā, has become a Musalmān at the hands of the Shāikh, Saif-ud-Dīn, the Bākhurzi, and I was, then and there, going to become a Musalmān likewise, but I inquired among my Amīrs: 'who is the greatest among the Musalmāns?' and they directed me to the Court of the Khilāfat, in order that, at the hand of the Lord of the Faithful, I might become a Musalmān."

also an astrologer, had furnished this information], and art acquainted with the propitious and unpropitious aspects of the heavenly bodies, the degrees and minutes, the rising and setting of the stars, and the like, how was it that thou didst not perceive thine own inauspicious day, and wherefore not warn thy benefactor, so that he might have acted accordingly, and not have become so shattered and broken?" The unfortunate Sulimān Shāh replied "Alas! it was the misfortune of the Lord of the Faithful that he gave not ear to the words of his faithful servants, but listened to those of a traitor." In short, after some taunting on the part of the Mughal, and words of proud defiance on the part of Sulimān Shāh, he and his family, kinsmen, and personal dependents, were also massacred, to the number of seven hundred persons. These events are said to have happened on Friday, the 2nd of Ṣafar

After the murder of the Amīr-i-'Alam, Sulimān Shāh, and the Sar Dawāt-Dār, Mujaḥid-ud-Dīn [some say the Dawāt-Dār-i Kūchak, and the Shārāh-Dār, or Purveyor of Drinkables, were also massacred on this occasion], their heads were sent, by Hulākū's command, to Mauṣil, to Malik Badr-ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Faẓāl i Lūlū—the "diplomatic and wily old gentleman" of the "*Mongols Proper*"—by the hands of the latter's son, Malik Ṣāliḥ, who was then in the Mughal camp, because great love and friendship existed between Sulimān Shāh and his father. The Mauṣil ruler was directed to have the heads suspended from the gates of Mauṣil. Badr-ud-Dīn-i-Lūlū, was greatly afflicted, and wept involuntarily, but, as he had submitted to the Mughal yoke, he was obliged to comply to save himself from destruction

<sup>6</sup> The printed text leaves out the word جماعت and so turns out the whole of Hulākū's host

<sup>7</sup> This is not unlikely, as part of the treachery at which the Mughals were such adepts, in order to throw dust into the eyes of the Khalīfah's son, and so make sure of trapping his father. Most of the Pro-Mughal historians, and particularly Rashīd-ud-Dīn, only seem anxious to conceal how much the success of Hulākū and his hordes was owing to the traitor Wazīr.

Having introduced these sweet expressions into the discourse, the Amīr, Abū-Bikr, placed credence on these deceitful, poisoned, words ; and returned from thence, well pleased, to the presence of the Lord of the Faithful, and related all that he had seen and heard. The cursed Wazīr now said : " It is advisable that the Lord of the Faithful, himself, should move out, in great state and solemnity, surrounded by the cavalcade of the Khilāfat, in order that Hulāū may be able to observe the ceremony of receiving him, and perform the rites of homage " Notwithstanding the Maliks of Islām—God reward them!—exhorted the Khalifah, saying : " It is not well to show such confidence ; " still, as the decree of destiny, and divine mandate, had come down, the dissuasions and exhortations of those Musalmān holy-warriors were of no avail, and, in the end, fate was using the whip of wrath behind the horse of the Khilāfat, until the Lord of the Faithful went forth, on horseback, accompanied by twelve hundred distinguished and eminent persons of the city, consisting of Maliks, Ṣadrs, 'Ulamā, Grandees, Merchants, and the officials of the State. When they reached the camp of Hulāū, the accursed Mughal, the Khalifah and the train with him were stopped, the whole [of the latter] were separated from each other ; and they [the Mughals] seized the Lord of the Faithful. He [Hulāū] commanded him, so that, in his own handwriting, the Khalifah was compelled to issue his commands to the rest of the eminent men who had remained behind at Baghdād, in such wise, that they came out from the city [to the Mughal camp], until the whole were seized, and the Mughals martyred the whole of them.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>6</sup> The investment having now continued for *nearly two months*, the difficulties of the Khalifah increased, and the simple minded Musalmān Pontiff again turned for counsel to the traitor within his own house, and snake within his own bosom, who was bringing destruction upon himself, his race, and the Muḥammadan people. He inquired of the traitor Wazīr what had best be done to escape from this calamity. He replied that the Mughal troops and Tāttār soldiers were already very strong in point of number, and that reinforcements were continually arriving, while the weakness of the servants of the Khilāfat daily became greater, and that there were not forces enough in Baghdād to defend it and repulse the Mughals, and that therefore it was advisable " that the Khalifah should abandon hostility and resistance, and proceed to the presence of Hulākū ; open his hoards of treasure and valuables,

Here, respecting the putting to death of the Amir, Abū-Bikr, the son of the Khalifah, there are several statements ;

and, by means of them, guard his honour and good name from hurt and injury, since the object of Hulākū, in coming to Baghdād, was to obtain wealth." Further, the arch-traitor stated that, by some means or other, after the Khalifah should have entered into "terms of concord and amity, this dissension might be changed into friendliness ; in fact, into connexion and relationship, by a pearl out of the family of the Chingiz Khān being strung on the string of matrimony with the Khalifah's eldest son, and another pearl from the Khalifah's family being united to the son of Hulākū, which connexion would be, as it was in the time of the Saljūks, of immense advantage to the state and to religion, a source of dignity, strength, and grandeur [?], and, at the same time, would save very many people from slaughter and pillage."

The Mujāmi'-ul-Khiyār states that it was the pretence that he had arranged all this with Hulākū, and only required the Khalifah's presence to confirm the alliance, that induced the unfortunate Mustā'sim B'illah to trust himself in the barbarian camp.

When the Khalifah, who had now become so lost in amazement, and so stupefied by his misfortunes, as to be incapable of distinguishing villainy from goodness, and could not calmly consider what these words contained, perceived that all hope was gone, he resolved on going out to the Mughal camp, contrary to the prayers and exhortations of his faithful subjects, and accordingly, on Sunday, the 4th of Safar, 656 H.—the 9th of February, 1258 A.D.—accompanied by three sons (but some say, two, and some, four—Abū-Bikr-i-Abu-l-Faḡā'il, 'Abd-ur-Rahmān, 'Abd-ul-Manāḡib-i-Mubārak, and 'Abd-ul-Manāzil, called, by some, Abū-l-'Abbās-i-Aḡmad), and a body of about 3000 persons, consisting of Sayyids, Ecclesiastics, Kāḡis, Philosophers, Doctors of the Law, Amirs, and other Grandees and Officials, in short, all the most distinguished personages of the centre of Islām, he moved out of the city. On reaching the canvas curtain before the entrance of the audience tent of the barbarian, Hulākū, the Khalifah, with his sons, and four or five attendants, were permitted to pass in, but the rest were forbidden, and were distributed among the soldiery.

"When the sight of the Mughal, Hulākū," writes one of my authorities, "fell upon the Khalifah, Al-Mustā'sim B'illah, as is the custom with the perfidious, he did not look crossly upon him, but made the usual [complimentary] inquiries with warmth, in such wise that the Khalifah and his sons were hopeful of good treatment therefrom. After these inquiries, Hulākū turned his face towards the Khalifah, and said 'Send a person into the city so that the men may throw down their arms, in order that we may have them numbered.' The Khalifah, accordingly, despatched a person, in order that a proclamation might be made, in his name, to the effect that whoever wished to save his life should lay down his arms, and set out for the camp of the Il-Khān, Hulākū." Consequent on this having been done—and, doubtless, at the suggestion of the traitor Wazīr—the greater number of the people laid down their arms, and set out for the Mughal camp, and all who proceeded thither fell under the ruthless swords of these infidels.

Such infatuation as marked these last events is scarcely conceivable, after so many proofs of Mughal treachery, but the Musliman people were now without a head.

but God knows the truth. One statement is this, that they martyred him, and the Amir-i-'Alam, Sulimān Shāh,

Hulākū having got the Khalifah into his power, sent him to Kai-būkhā's camp, at the Kul-wāḡ gate, where a tent was pitched for him, and he was placed in charge of a guard, and the Mughal leader gave orders, at dawn the following day, to make a general massacre of the people of Baghdād. The broad and deep ditch was speedily filled up, part of the walls thrown down, there being no opposition whatever, and the Mughals, soon after, began to pour into the city, and the work of slaughter, violation, pillage, and destruction, began. This was ruthlessly carried out; and the Haram-Sarāe—the private dwelling—of the Khalifahs, which, for five hundred years, had been the place of prostration of the Musalmān peoples, was so utterly demolished that no one would have imagined that a habitation had ever existed there. The other buildings of Baghdād—the masjids, mansolea of Musalmān saints and Khalifahs, the palaces, hospitals, colleges, and libraries—were all given to the flames; and places adjacent, constituting a vast extent of suburbs, were completely sacked and devastated.

Guzidah states that, during the massacre, a Mughal named Miānjū, in one small street of the city, found upwards of forty motherless sucking-babes; and, thinking to himself, that without mothers' milk they would perish, *put them to death* to deliver them from their suffering.

I pass over the accounts given by some Oriental writers respecting the hoards of treasure, to get at which the rack was freely used, but I cannot pass over, without comment, the statement that "*Mustasim*," who had given up all hope of life, and who did not know at what hour the order for his murder might be given, "*begged to be allowed to keep 700 wives* [Musalmāns can only have four at one time, but concubines are unlimited] upon whom neither sun nor moon had shone, and *was allowed to select 100*," as we are told in the "*Mongols Proper*." What could he do with 100 wives, when he and his sons were kept in a tent under a Mughal guard, and allowed but four or five attendants for himself and them? Was he to leave his 100 wives for the sun and moon to shine upon in the camp among the brutal Mughals?

This is a specimen how History may be travestied, and of "taking up the mattock" to "complete the work which the pioneer can only begin." This little episode is taken from some foreign translation of "the great Raschid's," Jāmī-ut-Tawārikh, but the meaning of Rashīd ud Dīn was either not caught by the translator, or the author of the "*Mongols Proper*" misunderstood it. The words of Rashīd ud Dīn, after his mentioning that directions were given to number the Khalifah's *haram*—the exact meaning of which word should be duly weighed—it is not solely the place wherein wives and concubines dwell, but the home of mothers, grandmothers, aunts, daughters, and female relatives as well, including sons families, and sometimes daughters—and that it was found to contain 700 *females* and concubines, and 1200 domestics, are "When the Khalifah [who had been conducted to his own palace on the 9th of Safar, according to Rashīd-ud-Dīn] found what was going on, he implored saying, 'The inmates of the *haram*, on whom neither sun nor moon has shone, spare unto me' [بسپاریه من] 'I e. pardon or spare them for my sake.'" Hulākū said "Out of the 700, choose 100, and give up the rest." The unfortunate Khalifah chose 100 females, consisting of his relatives and kinswomen [including his mother, aunt, sisters, wives, and female children,



the Aiyūbī, Malik 'Izz-ud-Dīn, son of Fath-ud-Dīn,\* the Kurd, and Mujāhid-ud-Dīn, I-bak, the Sar Dawātī, all four of them; and some [persons] narrate, that, when the Amīr, Abū-Bikr, returned to the presence of his father on coming back from the camp of Hulāū, at the time the Lord of the Faithful was setting out [to proceed thither], the Amīr, Abū-Bikr, did not accompany him, and that he [subsequently] left Baghdād, and proceeded into Shām [Syria] by way of the desert. Others again state, that he was martyred, after he had, in the presence of Hulāū, uttered harsh and taunting words; and the words are [said to have been] these: The Amīr, Abū-Bikr, said: "It was supposed by us that, as thou hast high birth, thou mightest be an honourable man, and that thou wouldst be a high-minded monarch; and we placed reliance on thy word. Now it is obvious that thou art neither a monarch nor a man, since thou hast acted thus perfidiously, for kings commit not perfidy" Hulāū commanded so that they martyred him. On the other hand, some state, that the Amīr, Abū-Bikr, commanded one of the great Sayyids that they should take him towards Āzarbāijān, and said that he would remain there some time, until, in freedom and in honour, after Baghdād became tranquil, command would be issued<sup>1</sup> [as to what it would be advisable to do]. When that venerable Sayyid had taken the Amīr, Abū-Bikr, some stages on the way towards Āzarbāijān, a number of renegades represented to Hulāū, saying: "Thou hast made a

and the families of the families of his sons), who were allowed to issue forth with him when he was removed, and were thus to be saved from slavery to those barbarians, but what subsequently happened to them, with one or two exceptions, has not transpired. The fate of the remaining 600 may be easily conceived—much the same as, but certainly not worse than, helpless Turkish women have suffered, and are still suffering, in these days of "crusaders," "amchors," Bulgarians and Cossacks.

\* The Cikkutta Printed Text, and the MSS., from which it has been printed, kill the father, Fath-ud-Dīn, who, in the former, is styled "*Gird*"—گرد—again, while the name of his son, who was killed, is left out altogether. The father probably had been dead half a century, after the manner of the father of Muḥammad, the 'Arab conqueror of Sind, namely, Kāsum, whom some translators and compilers make the conqueror instead of the son, and without being conscious of the blunder, in the same manner that Bakht-yār-ud-Dīn, the Khālī Turk, has had the credit of being the conqueror of Lakhnawātī, instead of his son, Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad. See note<sup>1</sup>, page 548.

<sup>1</sup> Respecting the future affairs of the Khulāfat, he meant.

mistake. If the Amīr, Abū-Bikr, should reach Āzarbāijān in safety, all the forces of Rūm, Shām, and Maghrab, will flock round him; and, undoubtedly, he will take his revenge." Hulāū [on this] despatched people of his own in pursuit of the Amīr, Abū-Bikr; and they brought him back, and Hulāū martyred him, but God knows the truth. The Almighty reward him [Abū-Bikr] and the whole of his family! Amin.

ACCOUNT OF THE MARTYRDOM OF THE LORD OF THE  
FAITHFUL, AL-MUSTA'ŠIM B'ILLAH—THE ALMIGHTY  
REWARD HIM!

For some time, the infidel Mughals desired to detain the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Musta'šim B'illah. There were a great number of Musalmāns among the Mughal forces, and they declared. "If Hulāū should pour out the blood of this Khalifah<sup>2</sup> on the ground, both he, and the Mughal army will be swallowed up in an earthquake; and therefore it behoveth not to slay him." The object of these Musalmāns was this, that the Lord of the Faithful should remain alive; for, among all, hesitation arose about putting the Khalifah to death. The Malik of Mausil, Badr-ud-Dīn-i-Lūlū—God's curse upon him!—and other infidels,<sup>3</sup> represented to Hulāū, saying: "If the Khalifah continues alive, the whole of the Musalmāns which are among the troops, and other [Musalmān] peoples who are in other countries, will rise, and will bring about his liberation, and will not leave thee, Hulāū, alive." The accursed Hulāū was frightened at this, saying. "If the Khalifah continues to live, an outbreak of the Musalmāns may take place, and, if he is slain, with the sword, when his blood falls upon the ground, an earthquake will take place, and people will be destroyed;" so he proposed to put the Khalifah to death after a different fashion. He gave orders therefore so that they enfolded him in a [leather] sack for holding clothes, and kicked his sacred

<sup>2</sup> Instead of Khalifah, some copies of the text have *tabalah*—dynasty

<sup>3</sup> Referring to the Musalmān contingents from the subject states in the Mughal camp.

person until he died—May the Almighty reward him and bless him !<sup>4</sup>

<sup>4</sup> Some Historians affirm that the *Khalifah* died of starvation, while others say—as our author stated a century before any Pro-Mughal author wrote—that Hulākū consulted with his confidants and chief officers about putting him to death. Some said that, if he should escape from the present danger, assistance would reach him from the whole Musalmān world, and that troops would gather round him from every part of Islām, and great sedition and trouble would arise. This advice Hulākū considered was given out of loyalty to him, and he determined to have the *Khalifah* put to death. Husām-ud-Dīn, the Astrologer [this is the “Hossam ud din,” who is “*probably* a Muhammedan,” of the “*Mongols Proper*”]; but did any one ever hear of any Husām-ud-Dīn who was not a Musalmān?], who was allowed admission to the presence of Hulākū, caused it to be made known, that, if the *Khalifah* should be put to death by the Mughals, the world would become over-spread with darkness, and that the portents of the judgment day would appear, and many other similar things be stated, which filled the superstitious mind of Hulākū with fear and dread. He therefore consulted with the *Khwājah*, Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, the Tūfī, the Shīfah, and ally of the traitor Waṣīf, who also laboured for the downfall of the ‘Abbāsīs, and he replied, saying: “No such portents arose when Yahya [St. John the Baptist], the Innocent, was put to death, when the Prophet, Muhammad, died, and when the Imām, Husain, was unjustly martyred, and, if Husām-ud-Dīn asserts that such as he states will arise if an ‘Abbāsī is put to death, it merely shows his excessive simplicity.” Others said that no sword could possibly be dyed with the *Khalifah*’s blood.

The *Khalifah* left the city, and came to the Mughal camp [Guridah says, contrary to others, that he was put to death *two* days after he came out], on Sunday, the 4th of Ṣafar, 656 H.—9th of February, 1258 A.D.—as previously mentioned. Of this date there is no doubt whatever, but there is some discrepancy with respect to the date of the last act in this tragedy. Some say that, on the following Wednesday, which would be the 7th, the *Khalifah* was summoned to the presence of Hulākū, while others say it was the 6th. The Fanākātī says the 10th, without mentioning the day, which was Saturday, while some say Tuesday, the 16th of Ṣafar, but the 16th was on a Friday, and others again say it was Tuesday, and others Wednesday, the 14th of that month, equal to the 18th of February. As, in the east, the date commences after noon, as in nautical time, it is evident that the date was the 14th of Ṣafar, and that it was Wednesday, as I shall afterwards show. That same day Hulākū had moved his camp from near the city to a position close to the Dih-i-Wakf, and the Dih-i-Jalābiāh; and thither the *Khalifah* was conducted from the tent, in which he had been under a guard at the gate of Kul-wāzī, to the camp at Dih-i-Wakf. Giving up all hope of life, and expecting speedy martyrdom, he asked permission to be allowed to go to the bath, that he might perform his ablutions anew. Hulākū directed that five Mughals should accompany him, but the *Khalifah* objected to “the society of five of the infernal guard,” referring to the XCVI. Chap. of the KUR’ĀN, verse 18.

On that same day, the *Khalifah*, with his four sons [the *Ro As Sac MS* of the Fanākātī merely says “his eldest son”], together with their servants, were ordered to be put to death. Notwithstanding the assurances of the *Khwājah*, Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, the Tūfī, the superstitious mind of the barbarian feared lest what

The Amīr, Abū-Bikr, the Khalifah's son, and the Amīr-i-'Alam, Sulīmān Shāh, the Aiyūbī, they likewise martyred,

had been predicted might come to pass if the blood of the Khalifah should be shed. He therefore directed that he should be rolled up in felts, and that, in the same manner as the felt-makers beat the felts in making, he should be beaten to death, and every bone in his body broken. This mode of punishment, from what has been already stated, was not unusual among the Mughals [see note at page 1185]. The Mujāmi'-ul-Khiyār says, like our author, that the Khalifah, and his sons, were sewn up in bullocks' hides, and kicked to death.

Thus was the thirty-seventh and last of the Khalifahs of Baghdād, of the house of 'Abbās, martyred at the village of Waḳf—there never was such a place as "*Vacuf*"—towards the close of the day, on Wednesday [our Tuesday afternoon or evening], the 14th of the month of Ṣafar, 656 H., at the age of forty-seven, but some say forty-six years and three months, and others forty-three years and three months. His reign occupied sixteen years and nearly three months; and the Khilāfat of the house of 'Abbās had lasted 523 years, eleven months, and one day. His sons, and other offspring, and the whole of his family and kin were also massacred, two days after, and utterly exterminated according to the generality of the Pro-Mughal writers, but our author, who, evidently, had correct information respecting these events, gives an interesting account of the subsequent death of the Khalifah's daughter farther on; and he likewise states that a son, a mere infant, also survived. We also know that fifteen Khalifahs of the house of 'Abbās, subsequently, filled the office of Khalifah, in Mīsr. See note 2, page 1259.

The author of the Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh, with great apparent glee, asserts that the youngest son of the Khalifah, Mubārak Shāh, so called, was given to Ūljāe Khātūn, one of Hulākū's Khātūns, who accompanied him into Ī-rān-Zamīn, and that she sent him to Marāghah that he might be with the Khwājah, Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, the Tūḡ, and that she [subsequently?] gave him a Mughal wife, who bore him two sons.

The third day after the above tragedy was enacted, on Friday, the 16th of Ṣafar [the third day before Friday would be Wednesday, for the date of the Khalifah's death], Hulākū commanded that the massacre, pillage, and devastation, should cease [Von Hammer, who has reversed the events, says the sack and pillage commenced *four* days before the Khalifah's death, and continued for *forty* days after '], and he came to view Baghdād. The Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh differs here again considerably from other Histories. It states that the massacre began on the 7th of Ṣafar, and terminated on the 9th, on which date Hulākū entered the city, and that he moved from near Baghdād and encamped at Dih-i-Waḳf and Dih-i-Jalābiyah on the 14th of Ṣafar, the same date as that on which the Khalifah was put to death.

Nearly all the inhabitants of Baghdād had been massacred, but the few which remained now began to appear in the bāzārs and the shops; and command was issued to remove the dead from the streets, and bāzārs, and for them to be buried.

Ibn 'Alkamī imagined, up to this time, that the good offices he had performed for Hulākū, and the aid he had rendered him in destroying his benefactor, and the people of Baghdād, would have been rewarded with the government of that city and its territory, but Hulākū had now made as much

until the whole of the Amīrs and Maliks of the Court of the Khilāfat, with the exception of the little son<sup>a</sup> of the Lord of the Faithful, were made martyrs of.

Hulāū seized all the treasures of Baghdād, the enumeration of, and amount of which wealth, the pen of description

use of the traitor as he required, and took no farther account of him otherwise than to despise him for his base ingratitude, and to be convinced that no faith could be reposed in one who had betrayed his benefactor. The Bahādur, 'Alī, a Turk or Tāttār Musalmān, was made Shāhnāh or Intendant of the city and territory, as a reward for his untrepidity, because, out of the whole of Hulākū's army, he was the first to place foot within the walls of Baghdād. Fakhr-ud-Dīn, the Dāmghānī, was made Sāhib-i-Dīwān, but Ibn 'Amrān, another traitor, was made Hākīm or Governor of the Baghdād territory, which Ibn 'Alkāmi hoped to have obtained as his reward. During the investment, Ibn 'Amrān had helped the Mughals by supplying them with grain and forage from the neighbouring district of Ya'kūbah, where there were immense quantities stored. He was a man of the very lowest class, and was the menial servant of the 'Aml or Revenue Officer of Ya'kūbah, and, among other duties, he used to shampoo his master's feet—I have not space for a full account of him here—and the learned Ibn 'Alkāmi was placed in a subordinate position as Wazīr, under this boor. Now that it was too late, the late Wazīr became a prey to shame and remorse; and, bitterly regretting his misdeeds, lived, for a short time, brooding over his disappointment, shunned, and treated with contempt and disdain by the people of Baghdād, notwithstanding his utmost endeavours to get any one to notice him. He was soon after laid on the bed of sickness, brought on by the state of his mind; and he died in less than two months after the martyrdom of the Khālifāh, on the 11th [Rashīd-ud-Dīn says the 2nd] of Rabī'ul-Ākhir, 656 H. His son, Sharaf-ud-Dīn, was afterwards installed in the subordinate office to which his father had been nominated, under Ibn 'Umran.

But why need any one, who can read the originals for himself, say so? Are we not told in the "*Mongols Proper*" [p. 201], that "*Khulagu appointed governors to take charge of the captured city,*" and that "*Ibn Alkamīn, the vizier, retained his post. He is accused of treachery by the majority of the Moslem historians*" ["the majority" which the writer has seen in translation probably. What Musalmān author does not accuse him of treachery, except the partial historian, "the great Raschid"?]. *Of the sect of Rafis, it was natural that he should delight in the overthrow of the Abbasid dynasty and the reinstatement of that of Ali* [Where and when, and who was the first person of the dynasty of "Ali" reinstated?] . . . *He [Ibn ul Alkamīn] died three years after the capture of Bagdad,*" etc., etc. Such is history!

The number of people, who fell during these massacres, has been omitted by several authors. Some say 800,000 perished, but the number generally quoted is the enormous amount of 1,800,000, which includes not only the ordinary inhabitants of the city, but also those of the extensive and populous suburbs, and the unfortunate people from the country round, who, in a similar case, as we have witnessed, lately, having been stripped of house, home, and property, fled to the capital city of their country for refuge from the barbarian invaders.

<sup>a</sup> See note <sup>a</sup>, page 1259.

could neither record, nor the human understanding contain, and conveyed the whole—money, jewels, gold and gem-studded vases, and elegant furniture—to his camp. Such of these as were suitable for Mangū Khān [Kā'ān],\*

\* There is, as previously mentioned, some discrepancy among the *Histories* and *Historians* I have been quoting in these notes, respecting Mangū Kā'ān's death, but it seems strange that such discrepancy should exist. There is no doubt whatever that Baghdād fell in Safar, 656 H., but the Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr and Hāfiṣ Abrū state that Mangū Kā'ān died in Kamazān, 655 H., just six months before that event took place. Yet in Guṣṣidāh, Faṣīḥ-i-Ī, the *Rauṣat-us-Safā*, Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh, and in other works, it is recorded that "the Il-Khān [Hulākū], after the capture of Baghdād, despatched a vast quantity of the best of the plunder, and other valuable things of 'Irāk-i-'Arab, and 'Irāk-i-'Ajam, to his brother Mangū—which our author had already stated the best part of a century before any Pro-Mughal author wrote—under the charge of the Nū-yīn, Shikṭūr [the Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh, referring to his departure, styles him Hūlājū, but, when mentioning the receipt of the news of Mangū's death, calls him Shikṭūr also], with the good news of the fall of Baghdād, and a full account of his proceedings, and informing him that he intended to march towards Miṣr and Shām. When his envoys reached the throne of Mangū Kā'ān, and delivered their message, Mangū was overjoyed, exalted Hulākū of his royal favour, and permitted the envoys to set out on their return." These two statements are widely different from each other, and the only way to reconcile them is, as is stated in the *Lubb ut-Tawārikh*, and some other *Histories*, that Mangū Kā'ān died early in 657 H., and not in 655 H., as in the *Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr* and *Hāfiṣ Abrū*, for the news reached him in the last month of the year 656 H.; and, if we only consider the immense distance that separated the brothers, and the time it must have taken to convey the news from the Yangt'si to the Euphrates—to Ḥalab, where Hulākū then was—we can pretty clearly arrive at the correct date.

I must now, however, say a few words on another remarkable event which happened in the middle of 656 H.—the year before Mangū's death, and which, correctly, belongs to Mangū's reign—the erection of the Observatory on a high hill north of Marāghah, more particularly, because his ferocious brother, merely because he happened to have carried out his sovereign's instructions, has had the chief, if not the sole credit, among European writers and translators especially, of the good work, and the love of scientific research, while Mangū's attainments are unknown. Hulākū, however, is said to have had a great passion for alchemy, and expended vast sums in its pursuit. We are informed, in the "*Mongols Proper*," in almost every page of which D'Osson's History is drawn upon, that "Mangu" had sent, with his brother, "Khulagu," an astrologer styled "Hossam-ud-din, who had been sent as his adviser," and that "Hussam was probably a Muhammedan." Farther, that "Nassir ud din, a famous astronomer, was ordered by Khulagu to build a 'observatory,'" etc., and that *he* "had impressed upon Khulagu the necessity of forming new astronomical tables," etc.

The facts are these—and I quote my authorities almost in their own words—that, out of the whole of the sovereigns of the Chingiziah dynasty, Mangū was the only one who nourished a great and sincere love of science, more particularly of mathematics. His study was Euclid, several of whose problems

with some of the females of the *Khalifah's haram*, together with a daughter of the *Khalifah*, he [Hulāu] despatched towards Turkistān; some [things?] were sent, as presents, and as his portion, to Barkā, the Musalmān, and some Hulāu himself retained.

Trustworthy persons have related, that what reached Barkā he refused to accept, and that he slew the emissaries of Hulāu; and, on this account, enmity became established between Barkā and Hulāu.<sup>7</sup> With respect to such things as he [Hulāu] sent to Mangū *Khān*, when that property, and money, reached the city of Samr-

he had solved; and, from the great interest he took in astronomy, he earnestly desired that, during his reign, an observatory should be erected. He had, previously, commissioned Jamāl-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Tāhir, son of Majd-ud-Dīn, Al-Bukhārī, to carry out some important observations, but, on account of the paucity of appliances and instruments, and the defective acquaintance with the subtilties and metres of mathematics, several important astronomical matters still remained doubtful.

At this period, the eminent acquirements of the Tūsī *Khwājah*, Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, were famous even in those parts—in Turkistān and Tamghā. The *Khwājah*, at this time, used to dwell in the fastnesses of the Mulādudāhs: he had been long and liberally patronized by the last few *Khudāwands* of the sect, had composed his famous work on ethics the *Akhḥāk-i-Nāṣirī*—in the fortress of Maimūn-dugg, and dedicated it to one of the Multashūms of the order. When Mangū *Kā'ān* despatched Hulākū into Īrān-Zamīn, at the time of taking leave of each other, he said to Hulākū, "No doubt you will meet with the *Khwājah*, Naṣīr-ud-Dīn of Tūs, who is now among the Ismā'īlīs [some writers say that he was among them against his will, but, as I have already shown, this is erroneous]. Treat him with honour and favour, and send him to me." When the Tūsī reached Hulākū's presence, the latter, on account of the great distance which separated him from his brother, who had left his *rudū* for the territory of Manrī, put off, from time to time, sending the *Khwājah* to the *Kā'ān's* presence; and, by degrees, he became so much taken up with him himself, and found him so useful, in combination with his brother Shī'ah, the traitor Wazīr of Baghdād, as already narrated, that, at last he determined to retain him about his own Court, and in his own service. Hearing from Hulākū the objects of the *Kā'ān*, the *Khwājah* himself proposed to Hulākū to carry them out in Āzarbāijān, and he was furnished with a mandate accordingly. Four other astronomers and mathematicians were associated with him in the erection and furnishing of this observatory—Mu'ayyud-ud-Dīn, 'Arzī, Fakhr ud-Dīn, Marāghī, Fakhr ud-Dīn, Akhlāṣī, and Najm-ud-Dīn, Karwīnī, and, in the 57th year from the accession to sovereignty of the Chingiz *Khān*, the Raṣād-i-Il *Khānī* was erected, and important observations began to be carried out. I have no space for farther details here. Hereafter, if time permits, I hope to enter more fully into these subjects.

<sup>7</sup> For some account of these matters, see the notice of Barkā's conversion, farther on.

kand, the daughter of the Khalifah—God reward her!—requested permission from the authority sent in charge of them, saying: "The mausoleum of one of my ancestors is situated in the city of Samrḳand, namely, that of Ḳuṣam, son of 'Abbās: permit me to go and visit his tomb." The intendant in charge acceded to her request; and that innocent [creature] proceeded to the mausoleum of Ḳuṣam, son of 'Abbās,\* and celebrated the usual rites observed on paying a visit to a tomb, performed a prayer of two genuflexions; and, bowing her face to the ground, prayed, saying: "O God! if this Ḳuṣam, son of 'Abbās, my ancestor, hath honour in Thy presence, take this Thy servant unto Thyself, and deliver her out of the hands of these strange men!" The door of compliance was opened; and, then and there, in that act of adoration, she transmitted her pure soul to the Most High God. God reward her and bless her, and her ancestors, and all martyrs of the true faith!

The author of the Tārīkh-i-Mukaddasī, in the Section [entitled] "Kawā'in," and in the mention of the outbreak of the Turks, quotes a tradition from 'Abd-ullah-i-'Abbās—on whom be peace! He says: "'Abd-ullah, son of 'Abbās,' took oath and said, 'the Khilāfat of my posterity

\* Ḳuṣam, son of Al-'Abbās, accompanied Sa'īd, son of the Khalīfah 'Uṣmān, who held the government of Khurāsān, and who had been despatched, at the head of an army, into Māwarā-un-Nahr. Ḳuṣam died in that territory, and was buried, at Samrḳand.

Muḥammad Ḥusain Khān, otherwise Mīr ā Haidar, the Dughlātī Mughal, says in his History respecting the names of certain cities mentioned in previous Histories as formerly existing in parts of Central Asia, referred to in note at page 889, para 4, that he himself visited a well-known place in Mughalīstān, which is known by the name of یومغال—Yūmghāl—where there was a cupola still standing, with part of an inscription remaining, which he read—"Shāh Jalīl, son of Ḳuṣam, son of 'Abbās"—the rest was wanting, and indicated that that was the tomb of the son of the very Ḳuṣam above mentioned.

† Here occurs a very good example of the use of the izāfat instead of, or for, bin, son of. The late Mr W H Blochmann, M A, in his "Contributions to the Geography and History of Bengal," says that "the use of the izāfat, instead of bin or pisar (son), is restricted to poetry, and does not occur in prose," and took exception to my use of it. At page ۳۳۱ of the Printed Calcutta Text, line second from the bottom, are the following words: ارعد . . . روایت میکند . . . عبداللہ بن عباس where the izāfat is understood for son of, and in line three from the top of the following page are these words: عبداللہ بن عباس . . . سوکند یاد کرد. Now, as "Mawlawī Khadīm Hosain and Abd Al-Hai" are



will continue up to such time as Turks of ruddy countenances, whose faces will be broad like unto a buckler, shall overcome their dominion and grandeur.'” Therefore, 'Ulamā have all [from time to time] given an interpretation respecting this prediction. Some have said that they might be Musalmān Turks, and others have said that they might be from the tribes of the Turks<sup>1</sup> of the empire of Chīn, who would subdue the land of I-rān, 'Irāk, and Baghdād; but unto all the sages of the world, and 'Ulamā of the race of Adam—God reward them!—it [now] became manifest that the latter interpretation was the correct one, and that the downfall of the seat of the Khilāfat would be wrought at the hands of the infidels of Chīn<sup>2</sup>—the curse of the Almighty be upon them!—because the Lord of the Faithful, Al-Musta'ṣim B'illah—God reward him!—attained martyrdom at the hands of that race.

May the Sultān of Sultāns, who, up to this present time, continues as usual to read the Khuṭbah in, and adorn the coin with, the name of that lawful Imām and Khalifah,<sup>3</sup>

the editors of that Printed Text, under the supervision of Colonel W. N. Lees, LL.D., and it comes from Calcutta, where the “Turaan idiom” is so much cultivated, one must give these learned men credit for knowing something of that idiom, and that, if the text, as it stands, was not considered right by them, they would not have allowed the words to remain as they are. I may add that the Calcutta Printed Text agrees, in this instance, with several MSS. copies of the text, and that the only variation is that a few copies leave out the *bin*, intending *khilāfat* to be used in both instances.

<sup>1</sup> That is to say the descendants of Turk, which, according to their own traditions, the Mughals are. This prophecy seems different from that which the Sayyids of Ḥillah referred to. See last para. of the note at page 900.

<sup>2</sup> Our author continually styles the Mughals infidels of Chīn.

<sup>3</sup> It appears to have been considered necessary to do this until such time as a successor—a Khalifah and Imām—should be installed.

This is a pretty good proof that, at Dihli, they were not quite so “singularly ignorant,” nor “strangely indifferent,” as appears to have been supposed:—“While the throne of the Khalifa became an idle symbol, and the centre of Islām was converted into a ghastly camp of Nomads, the latest Muhammadan conquest ‘in partibus infidelium’ must have been singularly ignorant of, or strangely indifferent to, the events that affected their newly-conceded allegiance [?], as the name of the martyred Must'asim [sic] was retained on the Dehli coinage for some forty years after his death.”—Thomas: “PATHĀN KINGS OF DEHLI,” page 255.

After the capture of Baghdād, those of the 'Abbāsī family who escaped the sanguinary Mughals fled into Mīr; and there, the ruler, Malik Tāhir-i-Band-kādār, acknowledged Aḥmad, son of Tāhir, brother of the late Khalifah, as his successor to the Khilāfat, at a great meeting assembled for that purpose,

be long preserved and maintained upon the throne of sovereignty, for the sake of the honour of the martyrs of the family of 'Alī and of 'Abbās, and the souls of the Lords of the Faithful, through the mercy of Him who is the Most Merciful of the Merciful !

After Hulāū had sacked Baghdād, and had caused the people to be martyred, he made over those that remained to the Wazīr,<sup>4</sup> and assigned him a Mughal Shahnal [Intendant] that he might cause them to be collected together. When the accursed Wazīr returned again to Baghdād, and had collected some of the people, and located them therein, some of the servants of the Khalifah who had retired into the *Wādī*,<sup>5</sup> and remained alive, to the number of about 10,000 horsemen,<sup>6</sup> collected, and, suddenly

and then and there did homage to him, on the 9th of Rajab, 659 H. He assumed the title of AI-MUNTASIR. The ruler of Mīr furnished him with a army and all things befitting his position, and despatched him, at his own particular request, towards Baghdād, which the new Khalifah hoped to recover. He however encountered a Mughal army within the limits of Anbā and was slain; after an obstinate battle, in 660 H. Some say he disappeared and was no more heard of. He was succeeded on the 26th of Safar, 660 H. by Abū-l-'Abbās-i-Aḥmad, son of Ḥasan, son of Abū-Bikr, son of 'Alī, who was with him in the battle, and escaped into Mīr. He took the title of AI-ḤAKIM, and filled the office of Khalifah for upwards of forty years. He died at Kāhīrah, in 701 H. Thirteen successive Khalifahs of the same family filled the office; and the last, AL-MUTAWAKKIL-'ALĀ-ŪILAH, was taken prisoner by Sulṭān Salīm, the first of that name, of the 'Uṣmānī sovereigns when he defeated the Mīrīs in 922 H. The Khalifah was taken away to Constantinople, where he was allowed a pension, and was treated, as long as he lived, with all possible respect. With him the family of 'Abbās became extinct—at least, as far as could be discovered—and from that time, down to the present day, the 'Uṣmānī Sulṭāns claim the office of Khalifah—the spiritual as well as the temporal authority—and as being the guardians of the holy places, and all Muḥammadan sects but the Shī'ah acknowledge this authority.

<sup>4</sup> Not according to the Pro-Mughal writers. Father on our author says Hulākū had him put to death.

<sup>5</sup> Low-lying ground or valley, the valleys of the Tigris and Euphrates, also the channel of a river, marshy ground near rivers abounding in canes or reeds.

<sup>6</sup> In some copies 2000. Nothing of this is mentioned by the Pro-Mughal writers, as may be easily imagined. Rashīd ud-Dīn however states that the Nū-yīn Ilkā and Qarā Bukā were left at Baghdād, with 3000 [30 000?] Mughal horse, as a garrison, but, certainly, two months after, from some reason or other Ilkā, "with several Amīrs" along with him, reached Hulākū's camp in the neighbourhood of Hamadān. The son of the Sar-Dawāt-Dīn, who succeeded in gaining Hulākū's confidence, subsequently served him after the perfidious

and unexpectedly, crossed the Dijlah and attacked Baghdād, captured the accursed Wazīr, and the Shahnah [Intendant] whom the infidel Mughals had installed there and cut them both to pieces. As many of the dependents of those accursed ones as fell into their hands, and the whole of the Christians of Baghdād they seized, and despatched all of them to hell, and wreaked as much vengeance upon those accursed ones as they [the Musalmāns] were capable of, and withdrew with all speed. When information of this reached the camp of the Mughals, a body of cavalry was despatched to Baghdād. The remnant of the Musalmāns had departed, and with expedition; and not one among those holy-warriors of Islām was taken.

Some persons relate, that Hulāū, after he had finished the affair of Baghdād and the slaughtering of the Musalmāns, inquired of the Wazīr, saying: "Whence was thy prosperity?" The Wazīr replied: "From the seat of the Khilāfat." Hulāū said: "Since thou didst not observe the rights of gratitude towards thy benefactors, thou art, indeed, not worthy of being in my service;" and he gave commands so that they despatched the Wazīr—God's curse upon him!—to hell.<sup>7</sup>

fashion of the Mughals, which may have some reference to the events our author refers to, but the particulars are much too long for insertion here. Suffice it to say that he succeeded in raising a large Musalmān force, for a particular service, with Hulākū's consent, at Baghdād [according to Rashīd-ud-Dīn, but we must take at their value the partial statements of that writer], with which he escaped safely into Mīsr.

<sup>7</sup> After the capture and sack of Baghdād, Būkā Tīmūr, brother of Ūljāe, one of Hulākū's wives, was despatched, at the head of a considerable army, to the southward; and, on his reaching the Furāt, opposite Hīllah, the traitor Sayyids, before referred to, went forth to receive him, constructed a bridge over the river for him and his army to cross, and received the Mughals with delight. Finding them firm in their loyalty [?], in a few days, he marched from thence, and advanced against Wāsiṭ, and reached it on the 17th of Rabi' ul-Awwal, 656 H. The people refused to surrender, and defended the place, but, after considerable opposition, it was captured by assault, and 40,000 persons were put to the sword. Shūstar opened its gates; and Basrah, and other places in that part, also submitted to the Mughal yoke. On the 12th of Rabi' ul-Akhar, Būkā Tīmūr rejoined the main army; and on the 19th of the same month, the envoys of Hīlah, who had come to Baghdād, were sent off, bearing the insolent letter, concocted by the Shī'ah confidant and counsellor of the Mughal barbarian—the Khwājah Naṣīr-ud-Dīn, the Tūsi. The letter is as follows:—"We reached the camp before Baghdād in the year 656, and the noise of the unsparing men was terrible. We challenged the sovereign of that

### ACCOUNT OF THE MARCH OF HULĀŪ TOWARDS ḤALAB AND SHĀM.

Hulāū, the Mughal, after he had satisfied his heart on the matter of Baghdād, moved towards Ḥalab, Mayyā-

city, but he refused to come; and upon him is verified the saying: 'We seized it with a frightful violence' [ḲUR'ĀN: lvi, 88] We said to him, 'We have pressed thee to submit thyself to us. If thou wilt, then wilt thou find peace and happiness' [Ibid. lxxiii, 16]: 'if thou refusest, thou wilt experience shame and misfortune. Do not act like the animal which, with his feet, discovered the instrument of his death [and heeded not], or as he, who, with his own hand, cut the partition of his own nose. Thou wilt then be of the number of those whose works are vain, whose efforts in this present life have been wrongly directed, and who imagine they do the work which is right' [Ibid. xviii., 103-4]. Nothing is impossible to God. 'Peace be with the man who follows the way whither God directs'!" [Ibid. xxxv. 18]

Soon after the events related above Arbīl was invested

After the capture of Baghdād, on account of the excessive heat and thirstiness of that territory, Hulākū, without making any longer stay there, marched from his camp at the *Ḳubbah-i-Shaikh-ul-Mukārim*, on the 23rd of Ṣafar, and returned to *Khānqīn*, where he had left a part of his *urdū* and heavy war materials. By this time, the treasures of Baghdād, and the valuables taken in the fortresses of the Muḥāidah, and such other plunder as had been carried away from the frontiers of Rūm, Arman, Karkh, and other parts, had been collected there, in the royal treasury, which, along with his adviser, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, son of 'Alā-ud-Dīn, the Ṣāḥib or Wazīr of Rai, Hulākū despatched towards Āgarbāijān. Malik Majd-ud-Dīn, the Tabrizī, who was one of the ingenious and skilful men of that country, was directed to construct a strong fortress on a mountain on the shore of the little sea of Ūrumī and Salmās—the Lake Ūrumīah—and to melt down all this treasure into *ḥāḍiqā* or ingots—the only thing in the nature of coin ever mentioned in the accounts of the Mughals at this period—and place them for safe keeping in the new stronghold.

Hulākū then marched from *Khānqīn* on his return to his *urdū* near Hamadān, and, after some time, marched into Āgarbāijān. After he reached *Marāghah*, Badr-ud-Dīn-i-Lūlū, ruler of Mausi, presented himself at the end of Rajab, 656 H. —July, 1258 A D.—being then over ninety years of age, to pay homage. He was favourably received, for he also had acted a traitorous part in aiding—under compulsion, as a vassal of the infidels—the enemies of his faith. He was allowed to depart, shortly after, on the 6th of Sha'bān. On the 7th, Sulṭān 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Kai-Kāūs of Rūm arrived—the *Rauzat-ush Ṣafā* says he joined the *Khān's* camp at Tabriz before the advance to Baghdād—and, next day, was followed by his brother, Rukn-ud-Dīn. 'Izz-ud-Dīn had exasperated Hulākū, because he had ventured to oppose the Nū-yin, Tānjū, and his forces, but, by a simple stratagem of his own, which flattered the vanity of Hulākū, and the countenance of the latter's Christian *Khātūn*, Dukūz or Dūkūz, he was forgiven. On the 14th of the same month, the Atā-Bak, Sa'd-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bikr, the Ṣalghūrī ruler of Fārs, also presented himself in the *Khān's* camp, "to congratulate him on the capture of Baghdād."

fāriḳīn, and Āmid.\* This territory they style the Diyār-i-

About this time command was given to construct the Raḡad-i-Īl-Khānī, or Īl-Khānī Observatory, referred to in a previous note.

When Hulākū proposed to move against Baghdād, he detached the Nū yīn, Arḳtū, with a considerable force, against the exceedingly strong fortified town of Arbīl [Arbela of European writers, some fifty miles W. of which the Macedonian Alexander defeated Dārī the Persian], held by Tāj-ud-Dīn, son of Ṣalāyah, styled the Lord of Arbīl. He, on being summoned, came down, and submitted, but, although he attempted to induce the Kurds, who inhabited and garrisoned it, to submit, they would not hear of it, and reviled him for proposing it. All Arḳtū's endeavours to take it were fruitless. He sought aid from Badr-ud-Dīn-i-Lūlū, but, before his help came, the Kurds sallied out, burnt the Mughal catapults, and slew a great number of the enemy Badr-ud-Dīn-i-Lūlū, having arrived to his aid, advised him to retire, and give up the attempt to take it then; but to wait until the heat compelled the Kurds to retire to the higher hills before any further effort was made, as it would be impossible to take it by force, though it might be obtained by stratagem. Arḳtū accordingly gave up the attempt, and retired to Tabriz, leaving Badr-ud-Dīn-i-Lūlū to gain possession of it, when the Kurds should have retired to the higher ranges from the excessive heat, after which he was to destroy the defences. This was subsequently done; and the Kurds retired into Shām. The unfortunate Tāj-ud-Dīn was made the victim of the refusal of the Kurds to surrender the place, and he was taken to Hulākū's presence, and, by his orders, was butchered.

\* The envoys having returned from Shām with unfavourable replies from the Amīrs and Hākīms of that territory, Hulākū determined to march against them. Previous to his entering Ī-rān-Zamīn, the Sultān of Halab, the Malik Un-Nāṣir, had despatched his Wazīr, Zayn-ud-Dīn, Hāḡgī, to the *urūd* of Mangū Kā'ān, tendering his homage, and in return received a *farmān* couched in conciliatory and favourable words—the Fanākātī says a *yarlīgh*, confirming him in his dominions, and a *pārah* of exemption from tribute. When Hulākū entered Ī-rān-Zamīn, Un-Nāṣir still continued to express his loyalty and submission, but, secretly Nevertheless, his proceedings became known to the other rulers in Shām, and they conspired against him; and he was forced to seek aid from Hulākū, and fled to his camp. These facts urged the latter still more in his determination to reduce those rulers to submission. Before setting out, he informed Malik Badr-ud-Dīn i-Lūlū, that he should excuse him from accompanying him on this expedition, on account of his great age, but that his son, Malik Ṣalīḥ, should be sent in his place [with a contingent, as a hostage for his father]. His son arrived in due time, and Turkān Khātūn, daughter of the unfortunate Sultān, Jalal ud Dīn, Khwārazm Shāh, who had been brought up, from an infant, in the Hīram of one of the Mughal Khātūns, and who had been sent along with Hulākū, by Mangū's command, in order that he might bestow her in marriage on some suitable person in Ī-rān-Zamīn, was united to him.

Hulākū now put his troops in motion from Āzīrbāījān. The Nū-yīn, Kaibūḳā, was despatched at the head of a strong force, forming the van; the troops under the Nū-yīn, Sūnjīk, formed the right of his army, while the Nū-yīn Tānjū led the left [Rashīd-ud-Dīn says Tānjū and Sangkūr led the right], and, on the 22nd of Ramazan, 657 H.—20th September, 1258 A.D., Hulākū set out with the centre, or main body, towards Shām.

Bakr; and this is the country of the son of Shihāb-ud-

On reaching the Ālā-Tāk, or Tāgh, or Dāgh, all three of which forms are correct, he was much pleased with the pasture thereabouts, and gave it the name of Lanba [also written Labnā]—Sāghūt [لبا ساعوت or لب], and, in a place therein, built a Sarāe for himself. It lies a few miles to the west of Bāyazīd, a place often mentioned of late, and near the N shore of the Lake Wān [ول Van], near the head waters of the eastern branch of the Furāt, [Euphrates], and, by way of Akhālāf, he entered the territory of the Kurds. They were particularly obnoxious to the Mughals, for they had, under the banner of the later Khalifahs, routed them on several occasions, and wherever they were found they were mercilessly butchered. On reaching the Diyār-i-Bakr, Hulākū first de-spached his son, Yūghmūt, with the Nū-yīn, Sūntāe, against Mayyā-fārikin [Martyropolis], and Mārdīn, while Malik Ṣālih was sent against Āmid [Amadia], but certainly not without a Mughal, and a Mughal force, to look after him. Our author, however, distinctly states, that Malik Ṣālih was with the Shāh-zādah, Yūghmūt, at the investment of Mayyā-fārikin. Hulākū then proceeded to reduce Rūbah, and, after little fight, gained possession of it. He then attacked Danīsur, Harrān, and Ṣisibīn, took them by storm, massacred the people, and sacked the places. He then crossed the Furāt, and, suddenly and unexpectedly, appeared before Halab. The inhabitants, aware of the strength of the place, resolved to defend it. It was closely invested, and held out for a week, but, after that time, it was assaulted and captured in Zi-Hijjah, the Mughals having effected lodgment at the Bāb-ul-'Irāk, or 'Irāk Gateway. The citadel held out for thirty days after that. Fakhr-ud-Dīn, Sāqī, who was acquainted with the act, was put in charge of the city and fortress, and the Bakhshī, Tūkal, was made Shahnah [Intendant]. The Ḥabīb-us-Siyar, however, states that Hulākū, after promising the people of Halab safety for their lives and property to induce them to surrender, made a general massacre of them, and sacked the city during seven days. The capture of the strong fortress of Sam, west of Halab, next followed; and the inhabitants, although their lives had been solemnly promised them, were all massacred. On leaving Halab, however, a general complaint was made against Fakhr-ud-Dīn's tyranny, and was put to death; and the Wazīr of the Malik-un-Nāzir, Zam-ud-Dīn, Isfī, before referred to, was put in charge of the administration. After this, Hulākū prepared to attack Damashk, but the authorities there, having taken warning from the fate of Halab, made overtures, on the arrival of the van of the army, through certain Bulghārī merchants, and submitted. With the capitulation of Damashk, all Shām came under the sway of the Mughals. It was at this juncture that the Nū-yīn Shiktūr or Shiktūr, who had been de-spached by Hulākū to his brother's presence after the capture of Baghdād, ashid-ud-Dīn, when mentioning the de-spach of Mangū's share of the India, says the Nū-yīn, who was in charge of it, was called Hūzūjū, arrived in the camp, near Halab, having come with all possible speed, bringing him the tidings of Mangū Kā'ān's death. Hulākū's sorrow was great, but he kept it secret within his own breast, and suddenly resolved to return into Āgarbāhājān, in expectation that troubles would arise respecting the succession. He set out without further delay, leaving the Nū-yīn, Kaibūkā, the Nāemān, to guard his conquests in Shām; and reached Akhālāf, 24th of Jamādi-ul-Ākhar, 658 H. In a "History of Persia," by Sir John Malcolm, the author, quoting Desguignes, states [p. 423, vol. I] that "Hulakoo" was "desirous of returning

Din-i-Ghāzī-i<sup>2</sup> Malik-ul-'Ādil, of Shām, and his [the son's] title is Malik-ul-Kāmil. He is a man of great godliness and sincere piety.

The cause of Hulāū's proceeding into that territory was his. The son of Malik Shihāb-ud-Din-i-Ghāzī was Malik of Mayyā-fārikin, Mārdīn,<sup>1</sup> and Amid, and these three owns [cities] and fortresses of that territory appertained to him. When the army of Jurmāghūn, and the Nū-in, [Ājū [Tānjū], who subdued Arrān, Āzarbāijān, and 'Irāk, carried their incursions to the frontiers of this territory, the Maliks on those confines all requested Mughal Shāh-iahs [Intendants], and this son of Malik Shihāb-ud-Din-i-Ghāzī—the Malik-ul-Kāmil [Muhammad]—determined to proceed and reach the presence of Mangū Khān, [and did so,] and, from him, he obtained a special honorary dress.<sup>3</sup> The reason of his obtaining it was this, that, at a drinking party, Mangū requested the son of Malik Shihāb-ud-Din-i-Ghāzī to drink wine, and he refused, and did not drink it.<sup>4</sup> Mangū Khān inquired of him the reason of his refusal.

to Tartary to take possession of the government of his native country," now become "vacant," but that "the defeat of his general by the prince of the lamelukes [Mamlūks?] compelled him to abandon the design," etc., etc. This however is as far from being correct as the statement at p. 382 of the same volume, that "Hulakoo" was "*the son of Chenghiz*." See last para. of note <sup>2</sup>, at page 1279.

<sup>1</sup> It I did not put an *isāfat* here, which stands for "son of," I should make a great blunder. The person referred to is styled Al-Malik-ul-Muḡaffar, Shihāb-ud-Din—by some entitled, Taḡī-ud-Din-Al-Ghāzī—son of Al-Malik-ul-'Ādil, Abu l-Ik, son of Ayyūb, son of Shāfi, Al-Kurdī, and, consequently, Shihāb-ud-Din-Al-Ghāzī was a nephew of Sulṭān Ṣāliḥ-ud-Dīn, Yūsuf. The Malik-ul-'Ādil, during his lifetime, entrusted the government of the different parts of his kingdom to his sons, of whom he had several, but this particular branch ever ruled over Shām or in Miṣr. The Malik-ul-Kāmil, Muḡammad, succeeded his father as ruler of Mayyā-fārikin and its dependencies, in 642 H. see page 1226. See also Calcutta Text, page 122, line 11.

<sup>2</sup> Mārdīn was under a different ruler at this period, but he may, previously, have been subject to Shihāb-ud-Din-i-Ghāzī. See note <sup>3</sup>, page 1275, para. 13.

<sup>3</sup> It is stated in Alfī that the Malik-ul-Kāmil was the first of any of the rulers of those parts to proceed to the presence of Mangū Khān, in consequence of which he was received and treated with great honour. He subsequently received a *yarligh* confirming him in his territory, and a *pīrāh* or exemption from all taxes and public burdens. The *pīrāh* was not peculiar to the Mughals.

<sup>4</sup> The word used is "*sharāb*," not necessarily wine, but drink of any sort. Here, however, intoxicating drink is referred to, probably the Mughal beverage, fermented mare's milk.

He replied : " Because it is forbidden by the Musalmān religion ; and I will not act contrary to my faith." Mangū Khān was pleased with this speech, and, in that very assembly, invested him with the tunic he had on, and showed him great honour. From this incident it appears that the dignity inherent in the Musalmān faith is, everywhere, advantageous, both unto infidel and Musalmān.

In short, when Hulāū was appointed to proceed into the land of I-rān, Mangū Khān commanded that the Malik-ul-Kāmil should return towards 'Ajam along with Hulāū, and they reached the territory of 'Irāq. Hulāū determined to molest Baghdād, and had directed the Malik-ul-Kāmil, son of Malik Shihāb-ud-Dīn-i-Ghāzī, that, from his territory, he should bring 7000 horse and 20,000 foot to Baghdād, and render assistance. The son of Malik Shihāb-ud-Dīn-i-Ghāzī replied : " The extent of my forces is not so great that it is possible to furnish such a number : more than about 2000 horse and 5000 or 6000 foot I am unable to bring." Hulāū importuned him in demanding a larger number of cavalry, and the Malik-ul-Kāmil persisted in his reply, and Hulāū, in secret, said to his Wazīr,<sup>4</sup> who was a Musalmān, an eminent man of Samrkand : " It seems to me that Kāmil meditates rebellion in his mind, and that he will not join with us, and it is necessary to put him to death." The Samrkandī Musalmān Wazīr was fond of the Malik-ul-Kāmil, and he, secretly, acquainted him with this idea and design. The next day, the Malik-ul-Kāmil went to Hulāū and asked permission to go out hunting. He set out from that place [where they then were], accompanied by eighty horsemen of his own ; and, with the utmost expedition, got out of the Mughal camp, and pushed on towards his own country, so that, in the space of seven days, he reached it, and gave orders to put to death all the Mughal Shāhnahs [Intendants]<sup>5</sup> in his territory, by pinning them against the

<sup>4</sup> The Calcutta Printed Text leaves out Hulāū here, and so, as that text stands, the Malik-ul-Kāmil said this to his Wazīr : not Hulāū to his Minister ! The Editors must have been much enlightened from their own version. The same text is defective a few lines farther on.

<sup>5</sup> Located in his cities and territory. The text is defective here, in all copies, respecting these Shāhnahs. Here the best British Museum Text ends, all the rest being wanting.



walls by means of five spikes—one mortal one being driven into the forehead, and four others into the feet and hands.

When three days passed, since his disappearance, Hulāū became aware of the fact of his flight; and despatched horse and foot in pursuit of him, but they did not find him, and again returned.

The Malik-ul-Kāmil, son of Malik Shihāb-ud-Dīn-i-Ghāzī, when he reached his own territory, despatched emissaries to the presence of Zahīr, the Malik-un-Nāṣir,\* and solicited his assistance, and that he would assemble his troops and come [along with him] to the seat of the Khilāfat, Baghdād. The Malik-un-Nāṣir agreed to aid him; and the son of Malik Shihāb-ud-Dīn-i-Ghāzī [i. e. the

\* The Calcutta Text is deplorably bad here again, indeed throughout this Chapter.

When it became known that Hulākū meditated hostility towards the Khālīfah, and had prepared to move against Baghdād, the Malik-ul-Kāmil, Muḥammad, as might naturally be expected, could not look on calmly with folded arms and see the successor of his Prophet, and head of the Musalmān faith, assailed, and the seat of the Khālīfah's power, and centre of Islām, captured, and sacked by infidels. He therefore had gone to the Malik-un-Nāṣir, ruler of Shām, and endeavoured to induce him and others to join him with their forces, and march to the Khālīfah's support, as our author also states, but the Malik-un-Nāṣir showed carelessness, selfishness, and negligence, in the matter until it was too late, and the opportunity lost.

This ruler must not be confounded with the Malik-un-Nāṣir, Dā'ūd, son of the Malik-ul-Mu'azzam, Sharaf ud-Dīn, 'Īṣā, who was a grandson of the Malik-ul-'Ādil, Saif-ud-Dīn, Abū-Bikr [brother of Sulṭān Ṣalāḥ ud-Dīn, Yūsuf]; the titles of these Kūrānī Princes are so much alike that they are liable to be confused. The ruler of Ḥalab and Shām, here referred to, is the Malik-un-Nāṣir, Ṣalāḥ ud-Dīn, Yūsuf [not Zahīr, he was named after his great grandfather], son of the Malik-ul-'Azīz, son of the Malik-uz-Zahīr, Ghīyāṣ ud-Dīn, Abū Manṣūr-i Ghāzī, third son of Ṣalīḥ ud-Dīn, Yūsuf. The Malik-ul-'Azīz died in 634 H., and was succeeded by the Malik-un-Nāṣir. Rubruquis saw the envoy of the Malik-un-Nāṣir at Mangū Kā'ā's Court. See note 1, page 221.

We are informed, in the "*Mongols Preps*" [page 205], from D'Ohsson, apparently, that "Syra was at this time ruled over by *Nasir Saladin Yussuf*, a great grandson of the great Saladin," while a little farther on [pp 205-208] we are likewise informed, that his name was "Prince Nasir Saif ud din ibn Yagmur Alai ud din el Kaimari." This strange jumble of names, probably, is the several ways in which "the embossed bowl" is made by those "specially skilled in their various crafts," but the above, with some other specimens which I have given, seem more after "the case of the western farmer whittling his own chairs and tables with his pocket knife," as we are told at p. vii of that book. Saif-ud Dīn, Al-Kaimari, also written Kaimari was one of the Malik-un-Nāṣir's Amīrs.

Malik-ul-Kāmil, Muḥammad], with the whole of his troops, horse and foot, marched towards Baghdād [to aid the Khalifah]. On the way he received information of the downfall of Baghdād, and the martyrdom of the Lord of the Faithful. He turned back again with the utmost expedition, strengthened his fortresses and cities, and gave intimation to the nomads of his territory, so that the whole of them sought shelter in places of strength, whilst he himself entered and took up his quarters in the fortress of Mayyā-fāriḳin, and prepared for holy warfare against the infidels.

Mayyā-fāriḳin is a small city and strong fortress; and to the north of it is a mountain of considerable height, and within the city<sup>7</sup> is a monastery [of Christian priests] which they call Markūmah, and that Markūmah is a place of sanctity. From the foot of that mountain a large stream flows, and, in the *tag-āb* [low ground where water collects<sup>8</sup>] in which the city stands, much water collects; and, to the south of the city are gardens, and, to the east of it, are tombs. The place has a fortified hill, and walls with ramparts [of stone], and a parapet.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>7</sup> The Calcutta Printed Text is deplorably bad here, and places the *markūmah* on the top of the mountain, which is contrary to fact.

<sup>8</sup> See note <sup>4</sup>, page 334, for an explanation of *tag-āb*. Some copies of the text, instead of *foot* of the mountain, have *top* of the mountain. This stream is one of the tributaries of the Diyālā or Tigris.

<sup>9</sup> It is said to have been surrounded with a strong wall of stone, and to have possessed two strong castles. "Mayyā-fāriḳin is a celebrated city in the Diyār-i-Bahr, near a feeder of the Diyālā or Tigris. There was a church of the Christians there from the time of the Masiḥā—on whom be peace!—and some of its walls still remain. They relate that there was a physician whose name was Marongā or Marūnšā, of the kindred of Konṣtanṭīn, the Lord of Kūmīsh-ī-Kibri [Rome], and a daughter of Shāpūr-ī Zū-l-Aktāf [that is "Shāpūr of the Shoulder-Blades," because he caused every Arab who fell into his power to be deprived of his shoulder-blades. Such is well known from the Persian historians, but GIBBON, in his History, assures us, on the authority of D'HÉRIBELLOT, that "*Doulacnaf*," as he terms it, signifies "*protector of the nation*"<sup>1</sup>] had fallen grievously sick, even unto death, and the physicians of Fārs were totally unable to cure her. Some of Shāpūr's courtiers—lords of his Court—suggested that it was advisable to send for Marongā, whose skill was famous, and so Shāpūr sent to Konṣtanṭīn, saying: "Send Marongā," and Konṣtanṭīn did so. When Marongā arrived he set about curing the daughter of Shāpūr, and the remedies he administered had the desired effect, and her cure was brought about.

"This good service was duly appreciated by the King, and he said to Marongā:

After Hulāū had released his mind from the affair of Baghdād, he despatched his son, with the whole of the

"Ask of me whatsoever [boon] thy heart desireth." Marongā made a request soliciting that the King would make peace with Konstantīn, and Shāpūr acceded to his request. Up to this time hostilities were constantly going on between the two rulers.

"When Marongā presented himself to take leave on his returning to Rūmīah, Shāpūr said: "Name yet another wish in order that the royal beneficence may be extended towards thee personally." Marongā replied: "A vast number of Christians have been slain [during the late wars]: grant me permission to collect their bones." Shāpūr granted this request likewise; and a vast quantity of the bones of the slain Christians were collected together, and Marongā carried them away with him into his own country.

"Konstantīn ratified the terms of accommodation, and was greatly pleased at peace being concluded, and also joyful because of the collection of these bones; and he said to Marongā: "Ask some boon of us likewise." Marongā said: "I pray that the King will afford me help and assistance in founding a place suitable [to receive these bones] in my own city and place of abode." Konstantīn acceded to his wishes; and gave command that all those dwelling near by Marongā's city should help him with the necessary funds.

"Marongā returned to his usual place of abode [which is not referred to by name], and founded a city [sic in MSS.]; and the bones, which he had brought back from the territory of Shāpūr, were deposited in the midst of the walls of the defences which surrounded it, and it was styled مَدْرَسَا [? Madrusā qāla], which signifies Madinat-ush Shahīd—Martyropolis or City of the Martyrs. A holy man once prophesied respecting it, that it would never be captured by force, on account of the sanctity which the bones of these martyrs had conferred upon it, which has proved true.

"The defences surrounding the place have eight gates, one of which is called the Bāb-ush-Shahwat, or Gate of Desire. Another gate is called the Bāb ul-Farah wa ul-Ni'am, or Gate of Gladness and of Benefits; and over the gateway are two statues carved out of stone—one in the form of a man, who, with both hands, is making signs of gladness and joy, and that they call the statue of Gladness. The other figure is that of a man with a mass of rock on his head, which is the statue of Benefits [received]. In Mayyā-fārīn no afflicted or sorrowful person will be found, but, on the contrary [sic in MSS.], all that is good and excellent.

"On the summit of a tower which they call the Burj-i-'Alī bin Wahab, facing the west, to indicate the *kublah* [the direction to which people turn to pray], Bar-i-Mukaddas—Jerusalem—a large cross is set up, and on the Church of the Holy Sepulchre is another cross like unto it; and it is said that the same person designed both crosses.

"Marongā founded a church—our author's monastery—in the midst of the city, which he dedicated to Baſanus [?] and Baris—بطرس و بارس—and that church remains to this day, in a *mahallat* or quarter, which is known as the Rafāḥ-i-Yahūd, and in it is a shrine of black marble, and in the shrine is a vessel of glass, in which is contained some of the blood of Yūsha' [يوشع—Joshua] the son of Nūn, and that blood is a cure for every disease. When any leprous person is anointed with it, it removes the disease. They say that Marongā brought this blood away from Rūmīah, a gift from Konstantīn, at the time of obtaining permission to depart on his return home."

Mughal army,' into the territory of the Malik-ul-Kāmil; and a host of infidels advanced to the gate of the fortress of Mayyā-fāriḳīn, and invested it, and commenced an attack upon it. For a period of three months or more they sat down before that fortress and besieged it arduously, and great numbers of the Mughals were killed and sent to hell, and wounded; but God knows the truth.<sup>2</sup>

ACCOUNT OF THE MIRACLE [WHICH HAPPENED IN BE-HALF] OF THE MUSALMĀNS OF MAYYĀ-FĀRIḲĪN.

Trustworthy persons of 'Arab and 'Ajam have related on this wise, that, during the period of three months that the son of Hulāū carried on hostilities before the gate of the fortress of Mayyā-fāriḳīn,<sup>3</sup> [the contents of] every catapult discharged against that fortification from the infidel army came back again, and fell upon the heads of the infidels themselves, until they brought a famous catapult from Mauṣil. On the first day [after it was brought], they prepared within the fortress fire of *naft*<sup>4</sup> [naphtha],

Such, in a very brief form, is the account contained in an old geographer of Mayyā fāriḳīn. European writers, quoting Greek and Syrian authorities, say Martyropolis was called Nephugard in the Armenian language, and Maṣfakat in the Syrian, and style Maronḡā, by the name of, *Marutha*, and make a bishop of him.

<sup>1</sup> A considerable army, but not the whole by any means.

<sup>2</sup> Even the Pro-Mughal writers state that it held out nearly two years. When Hulāū Khān set out to invade Shām, he despatched, from the Diyār-i-Bakr, his son Yūshmut, along with the Nū-vīns, Ilkā and Sūntāe, and a considerable army, to invest the town and fortress, or fortified town, of Mayyā-fāriḳīn, sending at the same time, envoys, calling upon the Malik ul-Kāmil, Muḥammad, the ruler of its territory, to submit. This ruler had already witnessed enough of Mughal duplicity, treachery, and bad faith, and he replied "Thy words are not to be believed, and no trust is to be placed in thee. It is useless to beat cold iron. I am not going to be deceived by thy words; and while life lasts I will never submit." When the agents returned with this answer, the Shāh-zādah, Yūshmut, and his Amīrs, prepared for hostilities. The Malik-ul-kāmil likewise got ready to encounter them, and he succeeded in making his people as determined as himself to resist the Mughals to the last. Next day, after the arrival of the enemy in his territory, he issued forth at the head of a gallant force, and attacked them, both sides sustaining some loss, and the Musalmāns retired within the walls again.

<sup>3</sup> This is the correct way of writing this word according to the vowel points, and not 'Mā-fāriḳīn,' as in note 7, at page 726.

<sup>4</sup> The words are in the original *انف*. An "essay on the early use of

and discharged it [the composition] along with the stones of their catapults, and burnt that other catapult.

During this period of several months that fighting went on before the gate of the fortress, every day, according to one statement, by the omnipotence of the Creator, the Most High and Holy, seven horsemen—according to another, six, and according to a third account, less than

gunpowder" might be interesting here, but it would be perfectly out of place. Attempts have been made to prove that gunpowder was known, and artillery and fire-arms were used some centuries before their recognized date of approximate introduction. One of the supposed proofs is, that the "Canunj-Khand" is said to contain the following.—"The *calvers* and *cannons* made a loud report, when they were fired off, and the noise which issued from the ball was heard at a distance of ten coss"! Another imaginary proof is, that, in the 416th Chhand of the same poem, it is said.—"The *Zanbūr* lodged in his breast, and he fainted away :—thus fell Rāi Govind the strength of Dehli." Zanbūr, and another form of the word, here mean a cross-bow, and what struck Rāi Gobind was a cross-bow bolt, but, because, at the present time, and since the invention of gunpowder probably, a small swivel carried on a camel's back is called by the same name, the word is supposed to be a proof that gunpowder must have been known in remote times. The literal meaning of *Zanbūr* is a wasp or hornet, and *Zanbūrak* is the diminutive form of the word—a little hornet. An inflammable composition was often attached to the head of the bolts, and hence, probably, the expressive name, or from the noise they made in mid-air.

The Dakhand historian, Firāhtah, too, is supposed to have proved the existence of artillery as early as the year in which our author's History was finished, because he had the effrontery to state, according to Briggs's Revised ed. of his History [Vol. I., p. 128]—and the same is contained in Dow's version—as rendered in ELLIOT'S INDEX, Vol. I., p. 353, that "The Wazir of the king of Dehli went out to meet an ambassador from Halākū [I have already shown the error respecting the "ambassador," so called, at page 859], the grandson of Chāngiz Khān, with 3000 *carriages of fire-works—Atuhbāsi*." Firāhtah saw guns and fire arms in the Dakhan, and, without taking the trouble, apparently, to consider, at once concluded that gun-powder and fire-arms were nothing new.

The fact is that the previous names of the different missiles, and machines for discharging them, were retained after the invention of gun-powder, as may be seen from the statements of numerous Arabian and other writers, and hence all these ideas have arisen as to the knowledge of gun-powder among the ancients, and their use of artillery.

As to Firāhtah's assertion respecting the "3000 carriages of fire-works," it is strange that our author, who is the sole authority for the events of that period, and who was present on the occasion of the arrival of some emissaries from Khurāsān, and the return to Dehli of another, and describes the preparations in detail [page 856], did not see these "3000 carriages of fire-works," which, *four hundred years* after, Firāhtah, who derives his information respecting the period in question from him, or rather from the *Tabakāt-i-Akbari*—could give an account of. See note <sup>3</sup>, page 631.

these—clothed in white garments, and with turbans [on their heads], were wont to sally down from the fortress and attack the Mughal forces. They used to despatch about a hundred or two hundred infidels to hell, while no arrow, sword, or lance of the infidels used to injure those white-clad horsemen, until about 10,000 Mughals had been sent to hell by that band.<sup>5</sup> Hulāū despatched Ilkā Khān<sup>6</sup> to the presence of his son, saying: "I captured Baghdād in less than a week [!], and thou art not able to take a small fortress [like this] in this long period of time." His son sent reply, saying: "Thou didst capture Baghdād through perfidy, whilst here it is necessary to me to wield the sword, and every day so many men are killed. It behoveth not to judge of this place by Baghdād." When

<sup>5</sup> This number, of course, is pure exaggeration. They slew a great number, and among them many of the Mughal champions, as well as others.

Among the troops of the Malik-ul-Kāmil were two valiant horsemen, one of whom they used to style Saif-ud-Dīn, Arkālī [سيف الدين ارکالی]—in some MSS Arkālī—[الركلي], and the other Kamr-i-Habash (? The first word of this name is also written Kamīr—کامير—and also 'Anbar-i-Habashī—عمر حبشي—or the like, but both are doubtful], and, on this occasion, they each slew ten Mughals; and continued to keep the fray alive. The second day, the same two cavaliers issued forth, and slew several notably brave horsemen among the Mughals; and the third day they did the same thing, and hurled a number of the enemy in the dust of contempt. The Mughals began to be terrified of them. On the fourth day, a Gurjī [Georgian], named, by some, Azmādarī, and by others Azmāwārī, who was a famous champion, and used even to defeat an army by his prowess, and who, among the Mughals, was a pattern of valour, resolved to encounter them. Notwithstanding all this, on his going out, he was killed, after a short resistance, and his loss filled the Shāh-zavlah, Yūshmut, with sorrow. Next day, the Malik-ul-Kāmil placed a very powerful catapult on the walls of the city, and a number of Mughals were killed by it. The Mughal Amīrs, from the force of that mischievous catapult, were quite powerless, and at a loss what to do, until they found that Badr-ud-Dīn i-Lūlū, the Ḥakīm of Mausi, had a catapult more powerful even than this one. They had it produced, and planted it equally high with, and opposite to, that of the fortress. It so happened, one day, that both catapults were discharged at the same time, and, as we hear of cannon shot, at times, meeting in the air, stones from the coffer or bowl of either catapult, in which the stones or stone is placed—I do not recollect the technical term—met in mid air, and were dashed to atoms, to the astonishment of the spectators on both sides. The catapult worked on the Mughal side however was burnt in the night by a sally from the garrison of Mayyāfarīkin, and their onslaughts on the Mughals reduced them to helplessness.

<sup>6</sup> The Calcutta Printed text here has, *il-khān*—envoys, etc., instead of the name of the Mughal leader—the Nū yīn, Ilkān, or Ilkā, but it was Arktū who was sent with the reinforcements, according to other accounts, for the Nū-yīn, Ilkān, was already with Prince Yūshmut's army.

this message reached Hulāū he commanded : " Say ye to my son, ' take care to keep out of my sight, otherwise I will undoubtedly slay thee ; ' " and Hulāū took oath and vowed : " I will capture this fortress in three days." Then, with the utmost expedition, he proceeded towards Mayyā-fāriḳīn, and set to to attack the place.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>7</sup> Hulākū did not do so, according to Pro-Mughal accounts. Hulākū, on becoming aware of the state of affairs, despatched the Nū-yīn, Arktū, with a large force, to the assistance of his son, Yūghmūt, with directions that he should cease his attacks upon the city and fortress, and merely blockade it, and allow famine to do the rest, as it was not necessary to give over his troops to be slaughtered uselessly. Just as Arktū arrived, and had delivered his message, these two cavaliers from Mayyā-fāriḳīn issued from the fortress as usual, and caused confusion among the Mughals. As Arktū had a little wine in his head at the time, he, without discretion, turned his face towards them to encounter them ; and they [one of them probably] confronted him. At this crisis, the Nū-yīn, Ilkā or Ilkān, went forth to the assistance of Arktū, but he was almost immediately unhorsed by the champions [by the disengaged one ?] and hurled to the ground. The Mughals, whose ideas of a fair fight seem to have been peculiar, now rushed in on all sides, and succeeded in rescuing the two Nū-yīns, and, having remounted Ilkān, brought them out of the fight.

In short, these champions continued to sally forth daily, and used to kill several of the Mughal soldiers. In this manner, a considerable time passed—over two years, it is said—the Jāmi'-ut-Tawāriḳh says, until a whole year expired—until the defenders were reduced to famine ; and, after having eaten all their cattle, they ate dogs, cats, and rats, and were, at last, reduced to eat human flesh, by which means they managed to hold out another month. At length, they resolved to issue forth, fall on the enemy, and sell their lives dearly, but the Malik-ul-Kāmil, Muḥammad, would not permit them to do so, being resolved to hold out to the last breath. Some few of those within now sent a letter to the Mughal Shāh-zādah, Yūghmūt, to this effect : " Within this place no one remains of those who had the power to offer resistance, and nought but a few with breath remaining, but body dead, exist, and they are about to eat each other—the father to eat the son, and the son his parent—to prolong their misery a little longer. If the Shāh-zādah should now move against the city and fortress, there is no one to resist him." Yūghmūt at once despatched Arktū with a force to attack it. On reaching the place he found the whole of the defenders dead, with the exception of 70 or 80 half dead persons, who remained concealed in the houses. The Malik-ul-Kāmil, with his brother, they also found, and conveyed them to the presence of Yūghmūt. The Mughal troops set to to plunder, when the two champion cavaliers appeared on the roof of one of the houses, and were killing with their bows and arrows all who attempted to approach them. Arktū now despatched a strong party of his troops to endeavour to capture them alive, and they came upon them in all directions. Seeing this, these lion-hearted men descended from the house-top, and, with their shields over their faces, threw themselves upon the Mughals, and fought until they were slain. The persons found within Mayyā-fāriḳīn were subsequently put to the sword, but the Malik-ul-Kāmil was sent to Hulākū's presence, at the Tal-i-Bāghir, a strong fort and small town on a *tal* or hill or mound, two

Every day, as on the previous occasions, several men in white garments, with turbans,<sup>8</sup> were wont to come down, and used to despatch more than two or three hundred infidels to hell. For a period of three days conflicts were fought, and, subsequently, for three days more, Hulāū continued there, and directed such severe attacks to be made that 10,000 more infidels went to hell.<sup>9</sup> Hulāū then intimated [to the defenders], saying: "This fortress belongs to Tigrî, and therefore I have absolved you, but I have one request to make, and it is this. Show me those white clad horsemen, that I may look upon them, and see what sort of men they are."

When this message reached the people of the fortress, they with one accord swore the most solemn oath, [saying]: "In the same manner that they are unknown to you, we likewise know not that band, and know not who they are." Hulāū replied: "On this account, for the sake of Tigrî, I present unto you, as a propitiatory offering, a thousand horses, a thousand camels, a thousand cattle, and a thousand sheep. Send out your confidential people that they may take possession of them." The people of the fortress replied: "We have no want of any offerings of thine, neither will we send any one out. If thou hast anything to send indeed, send it here, otherwise send the whole to hell," so that they [the narrators] relate, that Hulāū left there that number of cattle, horses, camels, and sheep, and that he raised the investment,<sup>1</sup> and went towards a place,

days' journey N of Halab, on the great caravan route from the latter city to Iṣfahān through Mesopotamia and Assyria.

<sup>8</sup> They were Musalmāns our author means.

<sup>9</sup> Our author is rather too liberal in slaughtering here.

<sup>1</sup> This was the rumour, probably, which reached our author at Dihlî, about the time he completed his History, and when no authentic accounts could have been received. When the unfortunate Malik-ul-Kāmil, Muḥammad, was brought before Hulākū, the latter began to enumerate all his misdeeds, the greatest of which, doubtless, was that of defending his own, and said: "My brother showed goodness to thee, and treated thee with royal favour, and the return for all this is what thou hast now done." After that he commanded that he should be put to death under the most frightful tortures. They first starved him nearly to death, and then cut the flesh from his limbs, and compelled him to eat of it, until, after he had lingered in this manner for some time, death came to relieve him. The Malik-ul-Kāmil, Muḥammad, was a devout and abstinent man—a recluse almost—and supported himself by the needle and making garments. These events happened in 657 H.



a verdant plain, which they call the *Ṣaḥrā-i-Mugh̃*<sup>2</sup> [the Rat's Plain], where there is soft mud and stagnant water, and sank in it; while some have related that he encountered the army of Shām in battle, and was vanquished, and annihilated along with all his army, and went to hell.

Others again relate that the Malik-un-Nāṣir of Ḥalab sought help from all the forces of Shām, and from the Farangs [Franks]; and that, numerous forces having collected about him, Hulāū, the accursed, is, up to this date, occupied with them, and has, once, sustained a severe defeat; so that, what may be the issue of the matter who shall say? Please God, that it may be victory and success to the Musalmāns.<sup>3</sup>

The Pro-Mughal writers would not mention such a matter as this, because when they wrote, their Mughal masters were Musalmāns, and naturally ashamed of such brutal proceedings.

<sup>2</sup> A town of this name appears in the maps, in this same locality, near the banks of the eastern branch of the upper Euphrates, about fifty miles west of the Lake of Wān. The valley of the Furāt, N. of the Ālā Dagh, mentioned in note<sup>1</sup>, page 1263, para. 3, is referred to. The city of the Mugh̃ lies to the west.

<sup>3</sup> It was Kaibōkā's defeat, no doubt, which our author heard of. News did not travel fast in his day, and people at Dihlī were in doubts, at the time he finished his work, as to Hulākū's subsequent proceedings. It is curious to read the reports which reached our author; certainly there was *some* little truth in them, and, therefore, I will, before closing the subject, give a few details respecting the events in question.

That our author, at such a distance, may have been partially misled, is not surprising, but what can one think of Ibn Rafūḡah, who, having travelled into Shām, and other countries, some seventy-six years *afterwards*, could write such utter nonsense as the following: "Jengiz [but Chingiz in the original] Khān got possession of Māwarā El Nahr, and destroyed Bokhāra, Samarkand, and El Tirmidh; killed the inhabitants, taking prisoners the youth only, etc., etc. He then perished, having appointed *his son*, Hulākū, to succeed him. Hulākū (soon after) entered Bagdad, destroyed it, and put to death the Calif El Mostassem [Khallīḡ Al-Musta'ṣim, in the original] of the house of Abbās, and reduced the inhabitants. He then proceeded with his followers to Syria, until divine Providence put an end to his career: *for he was defeated by the army of Egypt, and made prisoner!*" LAR'S Translation.

Hulākū had called upon the ruler of Mīṣr to submit and acknowledge fealty to the Mughals. At that time, the ruler was a Turk-mān. The first of these rulers was 'Izz-ud-Dīn, Ī-bak, a Turk-mān, who, after the termination of the dynasty of the Banī Aiyūb [See Section xv, page 203], in the latter part of Rabī'ul-Ākḥīr, 648 H, obtained predominance over Mīṣr. He set up Ṣālḡh-ud-Dīn, Khallīḡ, son of the Malik-ul-Kāmil, of the Aiyūbī dynasty, who was then only ten years old, while he himself conducted the affairs of the kingdom, but the young Prince was set aside, and is no more referred to. On several

One among the comers from those parts has stated to

occasions, hostilities arose between 'Izz-ud-Dīn, I-bak, and the Malik-un-Nāsir of Shām. After reigning seven years, 'Izz-ud-Dīn, I-bak, had returned home one day from playing at the game of *Chaugān*, and on reaching his palace ordered the bath to be prepared. He entered it, and, while he was at the bath, Muḥsin-i-Jauharī, one of his retainers, accompanied by a slave, entered, and slew him. This happened on the night of Wednesday [our Tuesday night], the 11th of Muḥarram—but some say the 25th, and others that it was the 25th of Rabi'-ul-Awwal—655 H. The following day, Wednesday, the assassins were taken and hung. 'Izz-ud-Dīn, I-bak, was a man of talent and valour, but a blood-shedder. The Amīrs and Ministers of the kingdom of Miṣr, on this, set up I-bak's son, the Malik-ul-Manṣūr, Nūr-ud-Dīn, 'Alī; but in Rabi'-ul-Akhir, 655 H., Saif-ud-Dīn, Kudūz, a Turk-mān, became his Atā-Bak and Amīr-ul-Umra, and soon after set aside Nūr-ud-Dīn, 'Alī, and under the title of Malik-ul-Muṣaffar, usurped the sovereignty of Miṣr for himself.

A number of the leaders and soldiery of the rulers of Miṣr and Shām, at this period, had been formerly in the service of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Khwārazm Shāh. After the battle at Akhlāṭ they had retired into Shām, under their Sardārs, Barkat Khān, Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn Khān, son of Baltarak or Yaltarak, Malik Saif-ud-Dīn, Šadūk Khān, son of Mangūk or Mangūkū, Malik Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Kaghli Khān, son of Bek-Arsalān, Aḡlas Khān [in some I-yal-Arsalān], and Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Fushamūrī [فشموری—also written Kaimūrī, and even Kuḡhairī—قوغیری], and others. See pages 230 and 766.

When Hulūkū moved towards Shām, they kept out of the way, but, after he left and returned towards Āzarbāijān again, they assembled, and turned their faces towards Miṣr and Kāhirah [vul. Cairo], and stated their distress to Saif-ud-Dīn, Kudūz. He treated them generously and liberally, and took them all into his service, and they became the bulwark of his kingdom. When the Mughal envoys reached the presence of Kudūz, he consulted with the Khwārazmī Amīrs. It appears that they had news of the death of Mangū Kā'n by the time these envoys arrived, and they exhorted him to resist the Mughals, particularly as Kaibūkā had been left in those parts [in Shām—in Ḥaleb and Damaḡh]. Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Fushamūrī or Kaimūrī, urged that it was "far better to die fighting honourably than trust to the good faith of Mughals, who never fulfilled their most solemn promises and compacts, as witness the case of Khūr Shāh; the Lord of the Faithful, the Khalīfah; Husām-ud-Dīn, 'Alah; and the Šāhib of Arbīl." Kudūz approved of this, and thought it best, since the Mughals had carried their devastations into so many parts, even as far as the territory of Rūm, in such wise that neither seed remained to sow, nor oxen to plough the land, to be beforehand with them, and attack them, and so save Miṣr from invasion, or perish honourably.

The principal of the Amīrs of Miṣr, Bandkādār, advised that the envoys should be treated in Mughal fashion and put to death, and that they should fall unawares upon Kaibūkā. The emissaries accordingly were put to death one night, and, the following morning, the troops of Miṣr set out. A Mughal Amīr, Pāedār by name, who, with a force of Mughals, formed the advanced post towards Miṣr, as soon as he became aware of this movement, sent a courier to Kaibūkā, who was then at Ba'albak, warning him of their coming. Kaibūkā directed him to hold his ground firmly, and expect his speedy arrival. It so happened, that Kudūz drove Pāedār back as far as the banks of the river of 'Aṣī—the Orontes—and then, with much military skill, disposed of the greater part of

this effect, that Hulūkū has gone to hell, and that his son

his troops in ambush, and, with the remainder, took up his position on a hill near the 'Ayn-i-Jālūt—Golath's Spring—to act on the defensive, Kaibūkū having arrived near by with a great army. The Mughals, seeing but a small force posted on a hill, proceeded to attack it, upon which, Āudūz, after a slight opposition, faced about, and pretended to fly. The Mughals, on this, became still more daring, and pursued them, inflicting some loss on the troops of Āudūz; but, when they were fairly drawn into the ambuscade, the troops of Miṣr attacked them front and rear, and on both flanks, throwing them into confusion. The engagement lasted from early morning to noon; and Kaibūkū was charging the Miṣris in person, in all directions, and endeavoured to restore order, although advised to fly, to which he replied: "Since death cannot be escaped, better to meet it in fame and honour. If a single man out of this army is able to reach the presence of the Khān, let him say to him that his servant, Kaibūkū, did not wish to return ashamed. Tell him not to take this reverse to heart: let him merely imagine that the wives of his soldiers have not become pregnant this year, and that his mares have not foaled." At this juncture he was brought from his horse to the ground and made captive. After the capture of Kaibūkū, the Nāemān, the remnant of the Mughal army that remained, concealed themselves in a cane forest, in the Wādī, near by the scene of the battle, and Āudūz gave order to fire it in all directions, which was done; and they were all burnt.

After this, Kaibūkū, the Nāemān, was brought with his hands bound, before Āudūz, the Turk-mān, who said to him: "Kaibūkū! because that thou hast shed a vast deal of innocent blood unjustly, hast destroyed chiefs and great men after getting them into thy power by false and treacherous promises, and hast ruined numbers of ancient families, thou hast now to answer for all this, and suffer the punishment such acts call for." Kaibūkū boldly replied, according to the Pro-Mughal writers: "If, at thy hands, I am killed, I hold it to come from the Great God, not from thee; and, when Hulūkū Khān hears of my death, the sea of his wrath will rise into such a storm, that, from Āzarbāijān to Miṣr's gate, the ground will be levelled beneath the hoofs of the Mughals' horses, and they will carry away the sands of Miṣr in their horses' nose-bags. He has 300,000 [some have 600,000] horsemen like unto me: account them one the less." Āudūz answered him [here again was the hereditary enmity between Turks and Mughals: Āudūz was a Turk-mān, and Bandkādār, his Wazīr, a Khūfshāk Turk]: "Boast not so much, perfidious man, of the powers of the horsemen of Tūrān. They effect their purposes by treachery, perfidy, and fraud: not manfully and openly like the hero, Rustam." After a few more taunts on either side, Āudūz had the head of the Nū-yīn Kaibūkū struck off and sent to Miṣr. He then pushed on with his forces, as far as the Furāt, plundered the Mughal *ardās*, made captives of their women and children, and "carried them away into the house of bondage;" slew the whole of the Mughal *Shahnaḥs* and officials located in Shām [Syria] by Hulūkū, with the exception of the *Shahnaḥ* of Damashk, who fled the very night the news of the defeat of Kaibūkū reached him. The "horsemen of Tūrān" did not "carry away the sands of Miṣr in their nose-bags," as Kaibūkū vainly boasted, but they carried off defeat again and again.

The overthrow of Kaibūkū, the Nāemān, is not to be found in the Fanākātī: these defeats are ignored, and victories only chronicled.

Bandkādār above referred to, who was a Turk of Khūfshāk, under the style and

has been set up at the city of Rai in his father's place ; but God knows the truth.

title of Malik-*u*-*T*âhir [called *Saltân Fîrîz*, by *Gusdadh*] dethroned the Malik-*al*-*M*uṣṣar, *Salt*-*ud*-*D*în, *Kudâz*, and succeeded to the sovereignty of *M*îṣr, in *Zî*-*K*â'dah, 658 H. To him *Aḥmad*, son of *Muḥammad*, son of *Ibrâhîm*, son of *Abî*-*B*îkr, son of *Khallikân*, a native of *Arbal* [*Arbela* of Europeans], near *Manṣûl*, known generally as *Ibn Khallikân*, dedicated his celebrated biographical work. He went into *M*îṣr in 654 H. *Faṣṣâ*, also written *Fuṣṣâ* of *M*îṣr, was *Bandkadar*'s capital.

I must go back a little. On the approach of *Hulâkû* towards *Shâm*, the Malik-*un*-*N*âsir, *Ṣâliḥ*-*ud*-*D*în, *Yûsuf*, son of the Malik-*ul*-*'A*ẓîz, fled from *Ḥalab*, and, taking his family with him, sought safety in the desert of *Karak*. Subsequently, after *Hulâkû* retired from *Shâm*, *Kaibûkā* was desirous of investing him therein, but the Malik-*un*-*N*âsir agreed to submit, on his safety being promised ; and he came down, and delivered up that fortress. *Kaibûkā* sent him to the presence of *Hulâkû*, who treated him well, and promised to restore him to the sovereignty over *Shâm* when he, *Hulâkû*, should have subdued *M*îṣr. How *Mughal* promises were fulfilled the following will show.

The very day before the news of the *Nû*-*y*în *Kaibûkā*'s overthrow on the 27th of *Ramâṣân*, 657 H., reached *Hulâkû*, near the *Âlâ Tagh*, on his way back into *Âḡarbâijân*, he had conferred on the Malik-*un*-*N*âsir the rulership of *Damaghk*, and had permitted him to set out thither, escorted by 300 *Sâḥd*—*Shâmi*?—horse. On the news of the disaster, a great change came over *Hulâkû* ; and, at this juncture, a *Shâmi*, who was an old enemy of the Malik-*un*-*N*âsir, influenced the mind of *Hulâkû* against him. He insinuated that he was not loyally disposed, and related matters which produced such an effect, that 300 *Mughal* cavalry were forthwith despatched in pursuit of him. The advance party of that force, having overtaken the Malik-*un*-*N*âsir, stated that they had orders, from the *Bâdgâh*, to give him a feast, wherever they might meet him ; and, with this plea, got him to alight. They began to ply him with wine, at this entertainment ; and, when he was sufficiently intoxicated [and his escort too, probably], the *Mughals* fell upon him, and slew him, and every one of his party, with the single exception of one man, a *Maghrabî*, a pretended astrologer, whom they allowed to escape. This happened at the close of the year 657 H., but there is another account in which it is stated that the Malik-*un*-*N*âsir was put to death in 658 H. [early in the year—which is much the same], on receipt of the news of *Kaibûkā*'s defeat, together with his son, the Malik-*u*-*T*âhir, and all who belonged to them, and that, thereby, that branch of the *Ayubî* *Kurdî* dynasty terminated.

After this act, the *Nû*-*y*în, *Ilkân*, with a numerous army was despatched into *Shâm* to recover what had been lost, and take vengeance for this defeat. *Rashîd*-*ud*-*D*în says, *Hulâkû* intended to have done so himself, but was prevented through the disturbances which arose consequent upon the death of *Mangû Kâ'an*.

In the year 658 H., the *Shâh-zâdah*, *Yûghmût*, accompanied by the *Amîr*, *Sûntâe*, after the affair of *Mayyâ-farikîn*, by command of his father, proceeded to subdue the territory of *Mârdîdîn*. When *Yûghmût* and his forces appeared before that fortified city, they were amazed on beholding its strength. It is described in the *MASÂLIK WA MANÂLIK*, and in *IBN HAUḤAL*, as an impregnable

ANOTHER MIRACLE [WROUGHT IN BEHALF] OF THE  
MUSALMĀNS.

Trustworthy persons related in this manner, that the son of Malik Badr-ud-Dīn-i-Lū-lū, the Mauṣilī, was along with the son of Hulāū, and used to witness those conflicts, the overthrow of the Mughals, and the triumph of the holy warriors of Mayyā-fāriḳīn [as already recorded]. He used to be filled with wonder at the circumstance, and was wont to extol the Divine assistance, until, one night he saw in a dream the sacred beauty of the sun<sup>4</sup> of the universe, Muḥammad, the Apostle of God—the blessing of the Almighty be upon him and guard him!—who,

fortress on a mountain, which produces *biṣaur* or crystal, and measures, from the bottom to the summit, two *farṣakhs*. Yūghmūt despatched the Nū-yā Arṣṭā, to the Malik-us-Sa'īd, the Šāhib, or Lord of Mārdīn, to induce him to submit. He, too, refused, saying, that he had always contemplated doing so, but found that not the least reliance could be placed on Hulāū's most solemn promises, as might be judged of from the murder of Khūr Shāh, the Khāifāh, and many others, and that to die sword in hand was far preferable to being put to death under brutal torments. Further, that his fortress was strong, and he intended to defend it. It held out for eight months, during which the other parts of his territory of Mārdīn, Danṣur, and Arran, near by, had fallen into the hands of the Mughals, when a pestilence broke out, and famine arose, and the Malik-us-Sa'īd fell ill. He had two sons. The eldest, Muḡaffar-ud-Dīn, wished his father to surrender, who would not hear of it. Muḡaffar-ud-Dīn then determined, in order to save the lives of the remaining people, it is affirmed, to administer poison to his sick father, and sent a message to Arṣṭā, saying: "The person who opposed you is no more: if you wish me to come down and submit, cease hostilities, and withdraw your troops farther off." This was done; and Muḡaffar-ud-Dīn came down along with his brother, and their family, and dependents. They were sent to Hulāū's presence; and he, at first, required restitution of the son for poisoning his father—what a conscientious champion of justice! what a chivalrous warrior!—but, when Muḡaffar-ud-Dīn said that he had done it to save the lives of thousands, after all his entreaties were of no avail, and when his father was sick unto death, and would have died in a few days more, Hulāū's sensitive conscience was satisfied; he treated the parricide with much favour, and conferred upon him the territory of Mārdīn as his vassal. Muḡaffar-ud-Dīn was living up to the year 695 H.

Sir John Malcolm, in his *History of Persia*, crowds the capture and investment of Baghdād, the murder of the "Caliph," together with the "conquest," as he styles it, "of the remainder of Persia, Mesopotamia, and Syria," all into one year—656 H.!

<sup>4</sup> In the Calcutta Printed Text, and one modern *M.S.* copy, Khwājah—a man of distinction, etc., is used instead of Khūrghed—the sun! In some copies the word Mihr is used instead of the latter word.

standing on the summit of the ramparts of the fortress of Mayyā-fārikīn, and having drawn the hem of his blessed garment around that fortress, was saying: "This fortress is under the protection of Almighty God, and under the apostolic guardianship of me who am Muḥammad." The son of Malik Badr-ud-Dīn-i-Lū-lū, through the fear inspired by this dream, awoke; and was all the [next] day in this reflection: "This is an astonishing dream: what may be the manner of its interpretation?" The second night, and the third night, he saw the same vision; and the awe and terror in consequence of this overcame him both internally and externally. On the third day, accompanied by his own personal attendants, he mounted, under the plea of going to the chase, and separated from the camp of the infidels, and proceeded towards his own country. When his father [Badr-ud-Dīn-i-Lū-lū] became aware of this, he sent him his commands, saying: "Me and my territory thou hast plunged into death and ruin! Why didst thou commit suchlike conduct and opposition? I will not, in any manner, allow thee to come before me." The son of Badr-ud-Dīn-i-Lū-lū penned a message to his father, saying: "I cannot war with Muḥammad, the Apostle of God—The Almighty bless him and guard him!—and such was my condition;" and he wrote out a statement of the matter, and related all the vision; and he departed into some other part; and, up to this date, the condition of him and of his father is not known. God knows the truth.\*

\* Malik Badr-ud-Dīn, Abū-l-Faḡā'il-i-Lū-lū, died at Maṣṣīl, at the age of ninety-six—some say he was over a hundred—in the year 659 H., after ruling fifty years. Hulākū Khān confirmed his son, Malik Šāliḥ-i-Isma'īl, in his father's territory, but, after a short time, unable any longer to endure the yoke of the Mughal, he left Maṣṣīl, and retired into Miṣr, preferring to serve there rather than be a slave to the Mughals. At this time the Mughals had been overthrown by the Miṣrīs on two occasions, and the wife of Malik Šāliḥ—Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn's daughter—gave intimation of her husband's flight, to Miṣr, to the Court of Hulākū.

Malik Šāliḥ was paid great attention to by Bandḡadār, who had now become ruler of Miṣr, and had subjected Damashḡ, and who sent him back, with an escort of 1000 Kurd horsemen, in order to bring away his treasures and valuables from Maṣṣīl to Miṣr. This having become known to the Mughals, an order was given to the Mughal forces in the Diyār-i-Bakr to occupy all the routes by which he could leave Maṣṣīl, and the Nū-yīn, Shidāghū or Shidāghū, with 10,000 cavalry, set out to aid in his capture, and Malik Šāliḥ

[Here our author brings in a *ḥaṣidah*, several pages in length, composed in 'Arabic, by Yahyā, the son of A'ḳab,

ud-Dīn, the Tabrizī, with a *ḥumās* of Tājik levies, was also sent for the same purpose.

Malik Šālih, who had come down to Joḡhak—a suburb probably—and given himself up to pleasure, was speedily brought to his senses by the danger; and the people of Mausiḷ also became terrified. Malik Šālih now shut himself up within the walls, and enlisted all the fighting men he could collect—Kurds, Turk-māns, and Shūla. The Mughals soon after completely invested Mausiḷ, but were opposed with valour and obstinacy by the Kurds and Turk-māns, who made frequent sallies. Fighting went on in this manner for about a month, when eighty Mughal champions made an attempt to surprise the citadel, but they were killed to a man, and their heads falling into the camp of the Mughals announced their fate. Šadr-ud-Dīn, Tabrizī, commander of the Tājik *ḥumās*, was badly wounded during the investment, and was allowed to return home invalided. At Ālī Tāgh, on his way to Tabriz, he reached the presence of Hulākū, and acquainted him with the state of affairs at Mausiḷ, and he, without farther delay, despatched a considerable force to the assistance of the Nū-yīn Shidāghū.

When Handḳadār became acquainted with Malik Šālih's danger, he detached a force from Miṣr to his aid, under Aghūsh, the Arpalū, who, on reaching Sanjār, wrote a despatch to Malik Šālih, announcing his arrival there, and, fastening it to the wing of a carrier pigeon, despatched the bird to Mausiḷ. It so happened that the tired pigeon came and perched on a catapult belonging to the Mughals, and the catapult workers caught it, and brought it, with the despatch, to the Nū-yīn, Shidāghū. He had the letter read; and, considering this incident a sure prognostic of success for the Mughals, set the pigeon free to continue its journey. He then, without delay, despatched a force of 12,000 men to fall unawares upon the troops of Miṣr under Aghūsh, which they did, slaughtering the greater number of them. Then, donning the clothes of the slain Shāmīs, and endeavouring to make themselves look like Kurds, they moved back towards Mausiḷ, and gave intimation to their leader, Shidāghū, saying that they had gained a complete victory, and the following morning, laden with plunder, in the disguise of Shāmīs, they would arrive as though proceeding to Mausiḷ. Next day, when they approached, a number of the people of Mausiḷ, under the supposition that they were the Shāmīs from the ruler of Miṣr, coming to their deliverance, issued forth to receive them, with great glee, for, to facilitate matters, Shidāghū had withdrawn his other forces to the opposite direction. The people of Mausiḷ fell into the trap, and were surrounded, and massacred to a man, but Malik Šālih succeeded in entering the city again. After remaining for a space of six months longer, in Ramaḥān, 660 H.—Faḥr-ī says, in 661 H.—the city was taken, and the remainder of the inhabitants were put to the sword, not a soul being left alive who fell into their hands. After some time, about 1000 persons crept out of holes and corners and assembled there, and for some time were the only inhabitants of Mausiḷ. Malik Šālih fell into the hands of the Mughals, and was conducted to the presence of Hulākū [in Āgarbāljān]. The ferocious barbarian, exasperated at the defeats the Mughals had sustained, directed the Nū-yīn, Ilkā, to have him enveloped—not simply *kammarīd* with fat—in fat tails of the *duḥkāl*, or fat-tailed sheep, sewn up in felt, and then exposed to the

who was the disciple of the *Khalifah*, 'Alī, and, subsequently, the tutor of Ḥasan and Ḥusain, his sons. This *ḥasidah* prophesies the irruption of the Turks,\* the sedition of the *Chingiz Khān* in *Chīn* and *Ṭamghāj*, and the fall of the *Muḥammadan* empires; and also the total annihilation of the Turks. Our author gives a Persian translation of the poem, and argues, and draws his own conclusions, from what has happened, up to his own time, that the period of their total and complete annihilation was close at hand—it was to happen in 659 H. or in 661 H.—since he left *Hulāū* and his *Mughals* in *Shām*, a few pages back, where their destruction was to take place. There he relates that it had even then been reported to have happened, but “the wish is parent to the thought,” and, like other prophecies, this one has never come about. As the *ḥasidah* itself, and our author's commentary thereon, which is very diffuse, are of no historical value whatever, and as the former is very similar to others omitted at the beginning of this Section, I see no occasion for burdening the translation with it.]

Having recorded the prediction respecting the extinction of the power of the infidel *Mughals*, I desired that this *ṬABAḲĀT-I-NĀṢIRĪ* should not conclude with the sedition and calamity of the infidels; and, since one person of that race, and a *Khān* among them, has attained unto the felicity of conversion to the true faith and bliss of *Islām*, an

burning heat of the summer sun, until, after a week, the tails became putrid, and swarming with maggots—which was the object in view—which began to attack the wretched victim, who for one month lingered in this *Mughal* torment. It was such devilish doings as these that *Kudūz*, ruler of *Mīqr*—who was himself a Turk-mān—referred to when he taunted *Kalbāḳā* that they could do nothing like men.

*Malik Ṣāliḥ* left a son, a babe of two or three years of age, who was taken back to *Maṣṣūl*, and cut in twain, one half of the child's corpse being suspended on one side of the *Dijlah*, and the other on the *Maṣṣūl* side, and left there to rot, as a warning of *Mughal* vengeance. What became of *Sulṭān Jahīl-ad-Dīn*'s daughter, *Malik Ṣāliḥ*'s wife, has not transpired.

\* He means the *Mughal Ī-māḳ* as descendants, along with the *Tātār Ī-māḳ*, and the other Turks, of the common parent. [See note to page 873.] Our author was not otherwise so ignorant as to class his master and sovereign, and his great patron, the *Uluḡ Khān*, who both belonged to the Turk tribes of *Khūshchāk*, of whom more anon, among Turks, or to style *Mughals* Turks, save with this distinction.



account of his conversion shall be committed to writing, and, with it, this book shall, please God, conclude.

ACCOUNT OF THE CONVERSION OF BARKĀ KHĀN, SON OF TŪSHĪ KHĀN, SON OF THE CHINGIZ KHĀN, THE MUGHAL.<sup>7</sup>

Trustworthy persons related after this manner, that the nativity of Barkā Khān,<sup>8</sup> son of Tūshī, son of the Chingiz Khān, [who] was [ruler over] the land of Saḡsīn and Khifchāk, and Turkistān, [took place] at the time that his father, Tūshī, captured Khwārazm,<sup>9</sup> and marched forces into the country of Saḡsīn,<sup>1</sup> Bulghār, and Suḡlāb.

When this Barkā Khān was born of his mother, his father said: "This son of mine I have made a Musalmān. Find a Musalmān nurse for him, that his navel-string may be cut by a Musalmān, and that he may imbibe Musalmān milk, for this son of mine will become a Musalmān." In accordance with this intimation, a nurse severed the navel-string [of the child] according to Musalmān custom; and, at the breast of a Musalmān nurse, he imbibed milk.

<sup>7</sup> This portion is wanting in some copies of the text, and is imperfect in others to the extent of several pages.

<sup>8</sup> The I. O. L. MS., No. 1952, and the best Paris MS., invariably give him the name of Balkā—*I* is certainly interchangeable with *r*, in Turkish names, as in the case of the Nā-yū, Sāī, also written Sāīr, but I have never seen this name written save with *r*, although I have seen others, as in the case of Balkā-Tigā.

The text is particularly defective here. Nearly every copy has: "the birth or nativity—*ووليد*—of Barkā Khān, etc., took place in [or was in] the land of Chīn, Khifchāk, and Turkistān," which, of course, is sheer nonsense. One or two copies have *ووليد*—"kingdom" or "sovereignty"—instead of *ووليد*—"birth"—which makes the passage no better, but gives something of a clue to a more correct reading of it. As it stands in the text it is unintelligible, and therefore, I have, as will be noticed, taken a slight liberty with it, as shown by the words between brackets, which is conformable with the statements of other writers, in order to make sense of it.

<sup>9</sup> Along with Ūtkle and Chaghatai.

<sup>1</sup> The author of the *Tārīkh-i-Rashīdī* says "Saḡsīn, also written Saḡsīn [in error, I should suppose], is the name of a territory in Turkistān;" but, in connexion with the other names mentioned, the former word appears to refer to a territory in Europe. The two latter are what Europeans call Bulgaria and Slavonia.

His father intended Jāī should invade those parts, and commanded him to do so, but, as already mentioned in note <sup>2</sup>, page 1101, para. 4, he did not do so.

When the boy reached the period of instruction and edification, he [Tūshī] assembled a number of Muḥammadan priests together, and selected one among them, who instructed his son in the Qur'ān.<sup>2</sup> Some among the trustworthy relate that Barkā studied the Qur'ān in the city of Khujand, with one of the pious 'Ulamā of that city. When he attained unto the period for circumcision, his circumcision was carried out. On his attaining unto puberty, as many Musalmāns as were in Tūshī's army were directed to be attached to Barkā's following; and, when his father, Tūshī, departed from this world, from having been poisoned by the Chingiz Khān, and his [Barkā's] brother, Bātū, succeeded his father, Tūshī, on the throne, he [Bātū] continued to support Barkā in the same exalted position as before, and confirmed him in his command, fiefs, vassals, and dependents.

In the year 631 H., a party of agents of Barkā Khān came, from the land of Khifchāk,<sup>3</sup> to the presence of the august Sulṭān, Shams-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn [I-yal-timish]—may he rest in peace!—and brought with them presents and rarities, but, as that august monarch used not to keep the gates of intercourse and friendship with the Khāns of the Mughals open, in any way, he used not to admit their envoys to his presence, and was wont to turn them back in a courteous manner. These envoys from Barkā Khān<sup>4</sup> the Sulṭān sent to the preserved fortress of Gwāliyūr.<sup>5</sup> They were a party of Musalmāns; and, every

<sup>2</sup> Khwārazm was taken in 618 H., and Jūṭī died in the third month of 624 H., and, consequently, Barkā must have been in his seventh year when his father died, according to this account, but, from what follows, Barkā, even by our author's own account, must have been older.

<sup>3</sup> Some copies of the text have "the land of Chīn and Khifchāk," which cannot be correct. At this time, Barkā, Barkāe, or Barkah, had not succeeded to the throne—he did so nineteen years after the above date.

<sup>4</sup> The most modern St. Petersburg copy of the text ends here.

<sup>5</sup> Here was a Musalmān sending his agents to a brother Musalmān, but the one was a Turk of the Mughal Ī-māk, the other a Turk claiming descent from the elder branch, namely, from the Ilbarī tribe of Khifchāk, which had been ousted from, and compelled to leave, their native country by the Mughals about twelve years before I-yal-timish, however, had been sold by his own brothers, and some of the tribe had been before displaced: still we here see the natural hatred existing between Tāitār Turk and Mughal Turk, which even Islāmism could not quench, and never has quenched, I believe: but, on the other hand, I-yal-timish behaved no better to the envoy of Sulṭān

Friday, they used to be present in the *Jāmi' Masjid* of Gwāliyūr, and used to repeat their prayers behind the *Nawwāb*<sup>6</sup> of the writer of this *ṬABAQĀT*, Minhāj-i-Sarāj, until, in the reign of the Sultān, Raḡiyyat—The Almighty's mercy be upon her!—the author of this book, after a period of six years, returned to the illustrious capital, Dihlī, from Gwāliyūr.<sup>7</sup> In the end, this sovereign was put in seclusion; and the agents of Barkā Khān likewise were ordered to be removed from Gwāliyūr to Kinnauj, and they were restricted to the limits of that city; and there likewise they died [in captivity].

When Barkā Khān attained unto greatness, he came from the land of Khifchāk for the purpose of making a pilgrimage to the surviving illustrious men and 'Ulamā of Islām, and arrived at the city of Bukhārā. He performed his pilgrimages, and went back again [into Khifchāk], and despatched confidential persons to the Capital of the Khilāfat. A number of trustworthy persons have related on this wise, that, on two occasions or more, Barkā Khān was honoured with dresses of honour from the Khalīfah's Court, even during the lifetime of his brother, Bātū Khān. The whole of his army,<sup>8</sup> about 30,000 horse, were all Musalmāns, and the orthodox ceremonies [of the *Sunnī* sect] were established. Trustworthy persons have also related that, throughout his whole army, it is the etiquette for every horseman to have a prayer-carpet with him, so that, when the time for prayer arrives, they may occupy themselves in their devotions. Not a person in his whole army takes any intoxicating drink whatever; and great 'Ulamā, consisting of commentators, traditionists, theological jurists, and disputants, are in his society. He has a great number of religious books, and most of his receptions and debates are with 'Ulamā. In his place of audience debates on moral science and eccle-

Jalāl-ud-Dīn, Khwārazm Shāh, who was a Turk like himself [but not descended from the "Gusses"], for his envy was poisoned

<sup>6</sup> Substitutes, deputies—the plural of *نائب*—those who officiated for our author as Imāms during his absence.

<sup>7</sup> This was in the latter part of 635 H. These unfortunate men had then been under detention four years. See pages 643-44.

<sup>8</sup> His own contingent troops

siastical law constantly take place ; and, in his faith, as a Musalmān, he is exceedingly sound and orthodox.\*

\* Having become a Musalmān he was naturally inclined towards the people of that faith ; and, as the representative of his brother, Bātū, the head of the family of the Chingiz Khān, who was instrumental to Mangū's succession to the Khān-ship, Barkā, under instructions from Bātū, had been actively engaged in establishing him therein, as already related. Barkā therefore was naturally inclined to assume a superiority over Hulākū, his cousin, who was the servant of Mangū, his brother ; for, since Bātū's death, Barkā had himself been regarded as the head of the family ; and now that so many Musalmān sovereigns had been sacrificed, and their dominions annexed, but, more particularly, since the cruel treatment and martyrdom of the innocent head of the Muḥammadan religion, all ties between them were broken ; and Barkā vowed vengeance against Hulākū in consequence.

Hulākū died at No-shahr of Āgarbāijān, on the night of Sunday—our Saturday night—the 19th of Rabī-ul-Ākhīr, 663 H., aged forty-eight, after ruling over Ī-rān-Zamīn nine years and three months. He was buried on the mountain of Shāhū, which is opposite the village of Khwārkān, according to the Fanākatī and Rashīd-ad-Dīn, but the Tārīkh-i-Jahān-gīr says Shāhāntalah, the mountain north of Tabriz, the same place, probably, under a different name.

Rashīd-ad-Dīn, who was Wasīr to Hulākū's great grandson, as a matter of course is politic enough to view everything from the Hulākū point of view, and puts all the fault upon Barkā. He, however, acknowledges that Barkā Khān was considered the Āpā, or head of the family, but, that Hulākū had determined not to endure Barkā's threats, whereas it was Barkā who promptly followed his threats with acts. One of the chief causes of complaint on Barkā's part was, that Hulākū had made no distinction whatever between friend and foe ; and had put the innocent Khālfah to death, without consulting himself in any way, whom, by right of his position, it was necessary Hulākū should have referred to, especially as he was a Musalmān.

At the time Hulākū retired from Halab, on the news of his brother's death reaching him, Balghā or Balghān, also written Balḡā and Balḡān with ḡ, son of Shāibān, son of Jūjī, who was one of the Shāh-sādahs sent to serve under Hulākū, died suddenly at an entertainment. Soon after, another Shāh-sādah, Tūtār Aghūl, another kinsman of Barkā Khān's, was accused of having caused Balghā's death by sorcery, and he was put to death on the 17th Šafar, 658 H. [The Fanākatī says he was sent to Barkā, as head of the family, to be dealt with, under the escort of the Nā-yīn, Sūnjāk, and Alfi says Barkā sent him back again, but, in such case, how could Barkā make the execution of this Shāh-sādah a pretext for making war on Hulākū ?] The Šadr, Sāghī, was also executed by Hulākū's order, because he was said to have written a charm for Tūtār. Soon after these events, Kollī, another Shāh-sādah of Jūjī's house, serving with the Mughal forces under Hulākū, also died, upon which, his retinue, and dependents, made their escape from Hulākū's camp, and fled by way of the sea of Gīlān [the Caspian], and the Dar-Band, and made for the Dašt-i-Kībchāk, or Khūshchāk, the territory of Barkā Khān.

When the death of his three kinsmen became known to Barkā, he despatched a message to Hulākū breathing vengeance ; and sent Būḡāe, a near kinsman of the deceased Tūtār, at the head of 30,000 horse, to extort restitution ; and

ANECDOTE RESPECTING BARKĀ KHĀN'S ZEAL IN THE  
MUSALMĀN FAITH.

In the year 657 H., a reverend and holy Sayyid of Samrġand came to the illustrious capital, the city of

he, having passed the Dar-Band, took up a position in sight of Shīrwān. Hulākū, who, at this time, was encamped near the sources of the river Arġs, on his way towards the Koh-i-Kūf, or Kakāsus, on this despatched the Nū-yān, Shīrāmūn, and other Amīrs, to oppose Būkle; and, in Zī-Hijjah, 660 H., they reached Shamākhī. Barkā's army fell upon Shīrāmūn and his troops, and defeated them with great slaughter. Subsequently, at the end of the same month, the Nū-yāns, Abūtāz and Shimāghū, with another force, on the part of Hulākū, renewed the fighting, and surprised the troops of Barkā, which had retired towards Shāburān in Shīrwān, and, within a league of that place, defeated them, in their turn, with great slaughter, at the end of Zī-Hijjah, of the same year; and Būkle, with the remainder, fled.

On the 6th of Muḥarram of the next year, 661 H., Hulākū put his troops in motion for the purpose of pursuing them, and invading Barkā's territory, and advanced from the frontier of Shamākhī. On Friday, the 23rd of Muḥarram, Hulākū encountered the forces of Barkā at the Bāb-ul-Abwāb, captured the Dar-Band, and defeat again befell them. A large force under Ābākā Khān, Hulākū's son, was subsequently despatched in pursuit of Barkā's troops. Ābākā Khān crossed the river Tarak [vul. Terek], entered the Daht-i-Kībchāk, and reached their camp, which his troops found abandoned. Three days after, on the 1st of Rabī'ul-Awwal, when totally off their guard—Guzidāh says Hulākū's forces behaved most infamously in Barkā's territory—Barkā, in person, attacked Hulākū's forces unawares, and drove them back with great loss. The river Tarak was frozen over at the time, and it gave way under the fugitives, the greater number of whom perished. Ābākā Khān, with the remnant, succeeded in reaching Shāburān. Barkā's forces then retired within their own frontier. Hulākū, on the 11th of Jamādī-ul-Akhir, reached Tabriz, filled with rage and despondency at the upshot of affairs. He ordered great preparations to be made for a renewal of the war, in order, as soon as his preparations should be complete, to wipe out the disgrace, but death prevented him.

Other operations subsequently took place after Hulākū's death, but can have no place in this work. For the date of Barkā's succession, however, see note 6, page 1291.

It may not be amiss to mention here why Hulākū is known as the Īl-Khān, and his dynasty as the Īl-Khānī. Hulākū was subject to his brother Mangū, and the headings of all *yar-nāmas* and other documents bore the name and title of Mangū Khān. Hulākū had nothing whatever to do with the revenues of the countries west of the Āmūsiāh, which department pertained to Arghūn Ākā—Guzidāh says his brother was Dīwān of the revenue—and consequently Hulākū became renowned by the name of the Īl-Khān, Īl [the plural form when used is *ilā*] signifying, in Turkī, people, a society, assemblage, an array, race, tribe, etc., and Khān, a chief, but, among the Mughals, Khān is applied to a sovereign, as our author also mentions at page 862.

The Amīr, Arghūn Ākā, who for a period of thirty years had held the administration of the revenue affairs of Ī-rān, died, in his camp, in the plain of Rādakān of Tūn, in 673 H.

Dihlī, to trade. In the audience hall of the sovereign the asylum of Islām and Sultān of the seven climes<sup>1</sup>—May God long preserve his rule and sovereignty!—he received kindness and encouragement; and was distinguished by the reverence, and princely benefits of the Sultān. The grandees of this illustrious capital, every one of whom is a bright constellation in the firmament of Islām, and light-diffusing star in the sphere of the Faith, all deemed it right likewise to confer favours and benefits upon that illustrious Sayyid, who was [named] Ashraf-ud-Dīn, the son of the Sayyid, Jalāl-ud-Dīn, the Ṣūfī, and unto whom appertains the service of the khānkhā [monastery] of Nūr-ud-Dīn-i-A'mā [the Blind]—on whom be the Almighty's mercy!—in the city of Samrḳand. From this eminent Sayyid two statements were heard [by the author] respecting the firmness of Barkā Khān in the Muḥammadan faith. May God protect him and increase his blessings!

#### FIRST STATEMENT.

That eminent Sayyid thus related, that one of the Christians<sup>2</sup> of Samrḳand attained unto the felicity of Islām; and the Musalmāns of Samrḳand, who are staunch in their faith, paid him great honour and reverence, and conferred great benefits upon him. Unexpectedly, one of the haughty Mughal infidels of Chīn, who possessed power and influence, and the inclinations of which accursed one were towards the Christian faith, arrived at Samrḳand. The Christians of that city repaired to that Mughal, and complained, saying: "The Musalmāns are enjoining our children to turn away from the Christian faith and serving 'Isā—on whom be peace!—and calling upon them to follow the religion of Muṣṭafā [the Chosen one—Muḥammad]—on whom be peace!"—and, in case

<sup>1</sup> The Qur'ān copying puppet, Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd Shāh, his sovereign and patron, to whom this work is dedicated.

<sup>2</sup> Tarsāyān is used here again.

<sup>3</sup> All the later copies of our author's work copied in India are more unctuous and diffuse in their glorification of the Muḥammadan faith, and in their praises of their Prophet, than copies made in other parts of Islām, and they despatch all and everybody else "to hell" much oftener.

that gate becomes unclosed, the whole of our dependents will turn away from the Christian faith. By [thy] power and authority devise a settlement of our case.<sup>4</sup>

That Mughal commanded that the youth, who had turned Musalmān, should be produced; and they tried with blandishment and kindness, and money and wealth, in order to induce that sincere newly-converted Musalmān to recant, but he did not recant; <sup>5</sup> and that garment of freshness—the Musalmān faith—he did not put off from his heart and spirit. That Mughal ruler then turned over a leaf in his temper, and began to speak of severe punishment; <sup>6</sup> and every punishment, which it was in his power to inflict, or his severity to devise, he inflicted upon that youth, who, from his vast zeal for the faith of Islām, did not recant, and did not, in any way, cast away from his hand the *sharbat* of religion through the blow of infidel perverseness. As the youth continued firm to the true faith, and paid no regard to the promises and threats of that depraved set, the accursed Mughal directed so that they brought that youth to public punishment; and he departed from the world in the felicity of religion—God reward him and requite him!—and the Musalmān community in Samrḳand were overcome with despondency and consternation in consequence.<sup>7</sup>

Ashraf-ud-Dīn related on this wise: "A petition was got up, and was attested with the testimony of the chief men and credible persons of the Musalmān religion dwelling at Samrḳand, and we proceeded with that petition to the camp of Barkā Khān, and represented [to him] an account of the proceedings and disposition of the Christians of that city. Zeal for the Muḥammadan religion was manifested in the mind of that monarch of exemplary faith, and the defence of the truth became predominant in his disposition. After some days, he showed honour and reverence to this Sayyid, appointed a body of Turks

<sup>4</sup> With this sentence the best St. Petersburg copy of the text ends.

<sup>5</sup> The following three pages and a half are not contained in the Haileybury, the Bodleian, or the Ro. As. Soc. copies of the text. The two latter begin and end with precisely the same words.

<sup>6</sup> In one good copy of the text—'punishment with the sword.'

<sup>7</sup> The second British Museum copy is defective of the remainder of the text from this place.

and confidential persons<sup>1</sup> among the chief Musalmāns, and commanded that they should slaughter the Christian sect who had committed that dire oppression, and despatch them to hell.

"Having obtained that mandate, it was preserved until that wretched sect assembled together in the *kalīsā* [church] and they seized them all together, and despatched the whole of them to hell, and reduced the church again to bricks."

This vengeance was [obtained] through the auspiciousness of that monarch<sup>2</sup> towards the faith of Muḥammad—the blessing and peace of Almighty God be upon him, and favourably regard among those of the true faith the Ḥanafī sect!

#### SECOND STATEMENT.

This same Sayyid, Ashraf-ud-Dīn, related, that, when Bātū Khān departed from this world, a son survived him Surtāk<sup>3</sup> [by name]. He determined to proceed to the

<sup>1</sup> The Calcutta Printed Text has *مردان*—rebels, seditious persons—for *مردان* here!

<sup>2</sup> Barkā Khān ruled over the Daḡht-i-Kūbchāk, and its dependencies farther west, according to the Pro-Mughal authors, who wrote after our author; and according to them, his authority did not extend to Samarkand; for the territories immediately east of the Jīhūn or Āmulāh pertained to the descendants of Chaghatāi Khān. See note<sup>1</sup>, page 1292.

Rubruquus mentions a city on the Ātul or Wolga, which he reached on his return homewards, under the name of Samarkant, which, he says, is encompassed like an isle with the river, when it overflows, that the Tartars [Mughals] were eight years besieging it before they could take it, and that it was inhabited by Ālāns and Muḥammadans. Whether such a city or town ever existed under that name, is doubtful, but some have supposed it to be the city afterwards called Hājī-Tarkhān, Europeanized Astrakhan. The founder of this place has been mentioned however elsewhere.

<sup>3</sup> His name is incorrectly given, in the remaining copies of the text available as Surtāk—سرتاک—a dot having been omitted from the last letter. The Calcutta Text makes it Surnāk—سرناب. Not only did Surtāk survive him, he also Ūlghchī, another son, mentioned in a subsequent note.

On his way back from Mangū Kā'an's court, Rubruquus and his party were two months and ten days travelling from the *urdū* at Karā-Kuram to Bātū's *urdū*, in which space they found neither town, nor habitation, except one poor village [of felt tents probably], where they could not get even bread, and from time to time graves of the inhabitants. After he had travelled twenty days from Mangū's *urdū*, he heard that the king of Armenia had passed by, and at the end of August he met with Surtāk and his family, his flocks, and herds going to the presence of Mangū Kā'an—the very journey referred to by our author above. Rubruquus paid his respects to that Prince, who sent him two habits—dresses of honour—one for himself, and another for King Louis. The final reached [the late] Bātū's *urdū*, at Sarāe, on the 16th September, 1254.



presence of Mangū Khān, from the country of Khifchāk and Saksin, that, through the means of Mangū Khān, he might succeed to his father, Bātū's, position. On reaching the presence of Mangū Khān in the country of Tamghāj, he [after receiving him] sent him back with honour. As Surtāk shunned coming to the presence of his uncle, Barkā Khān, and altered his route, and did not come near his uncle, Barkā Khān despatched persons unto him, saying: "I am unto thee in the place of a father: why dost thou pass by like a stranger, and not come near me?" When the persons despatched delivered the message of Barkā Khān, Surtāk, the accursed, gave answer, saying: "Thou art a Musalmān, and I follow the Christian faith; to look upon the face of a Musalmān is unlucky"—The Almighty's curse be upon the whole of them [the Christians]!"

When this unworthy remark reached that sovereign of Musalmāns, Barkā Khān, he entered into his khargāh<sup>3</sup> alone, fixed a rope round his own neck, firmly secured the door of the khargāh with a chain, and stood up; and with the most entire humility, and most perfect submission, he began to weep and groan, and say: "O God! if the Muḥammadan faith<sup>4</sup> and the laws of Islām are true, do me justice against Surtāk." For the space of three nights and days, after having performed his religious duties, he continued, in this manner, to groan and lament, and to supplicate, until, on the fourth day, when Surtāk, the accursed, arrived at that place of encampment,<sup>5</sup> the hour of his death came. The Most High God afflicted him with bowel complaint; and he went to hell.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>3</sup> All are accursed who are not of his own faith: the same failing exists everywhere, no matter what the faith may be, but we might hope for something better from Christians, in these, so-called, "enlightened" days.

Rubruquis, who knew Surtāk, did not think much of his Christianity.

<sup>4</sup> A large round tent constructed of *mamads* or felts, such as are used by the Turkish nomads.

If Barkā was alone, it is strange that the very worthy Sayyid knew what he did, or what he said. This shutting himself up is more after the fashion of his ancestor, the Chingis Khān, when he cried out to Tugri, than of a Musalmān. See page 954.

<sup>5</sup> Here the imperfect copies, previously referred to, begin again.

<sup>6</sup> The place where death overtook him, probably, as just above we are told that Surtāk would not come near Barkā.

<sup>7</sup> On the death of Bātū Khān, his eldest son, Surtāk, was in the camp of

Some [persons] related on this wise, that, on Mangū Khān perceiving signs of sedition upon the brow of Surtāk, he despatched confidential persons, secretly, so that they administered poison to the accursed Surtāk, and he departed to hell.

Barkā Khān took the wife [wives?] of Bātū Khān to wife; and there were fifteen sons and grandsons of the generation of Tūshī Khān,<sup>2</sup> all of whom departed to hell. The possessions of the whole of them passed under the sway of Barkā Khān; and, through the auspiciousness [attendant on his embracing] the Muḥammadan faith, the whole of the territory of Khifchāk, Saksin,<sup>3</sup> Bulghār, Saqlāb, and Rūs, as far as the north-east [boundary] of Rūm, and Jund, and Khwārazm, came into his possession. In the year 658 H., which is that of the conclusion of this TABAKĀT, parties of persons coming from the territory of Khurāsān state that Mangū Khān has departed to hell, and that, in all the cities of the east and west, and in the countries of 'Ajam, Māwarā-un-Nahr, and Khurāsān, the Khuṭbah is read for Barkā Khān; and that they have

Mangū Khān. He was held in great estimation by the latter, who despatched him to his father's *yāras*, to succeed to the sovereignty over his dominions. He never reached it, however, but died on the road in 651 H. Ulāghchī, another son, succeeded to the sovereignty, but he too died very soon after, in the same year. Some writers do not enter the names of these two brothers in the list of sovereigns of the house of Jūzī, and put Barkā, Barkah, or Barkīc, which is written in as many different ways, immediately after Bātū, his brother. Barkā ascended the throne in 652 H. Sir John Malcolm, in his History of Persia, among many other grave errors, says [p 425, vol. I.] that "Barkah" was a descendant of "Chaghatāi!"

<sup>2</sup> A custom among the Mughals

<sup>3</sup> The I. O. L. MS., No 1952, the best Paris MS., the Ro As Soc MS., and the Bodleian MS., all have any name but the correct one here, namely, *زبجان*—*زبان*—*زبان*. The Printed Calcutta Text follows the first named copy, but there ought not to have been any doubt as to who is undoubtedly referred to

<sup>4</sup> For Saksin and Rūs the Calcutta Text has "Safin" and "Wur"

<sup>5</sup> Our author appears to have been well informed upon most matters which happened about his own time especially, and he may be correct here too, and, no doubt, the above is what he heard. The Pro-Mughal authors, who began to write nearly a century after, under the patronage of the sovereigns of the houses of Hulākū and of Chaghatāi, and whose officials they were, out of policy, refrained from setting down anything likely to be unpalatable to their masters, as is amply proved by their writings. It is evident too that Bātū exercised authority in Khurāsān long before this time, for he appointed a governor to Hirāt in 638 H., and again in 641 H., as already mentioned, in

assigned to that Sultān the title of Jamāl-ud-Dīn, Ibrāhīm ; but God knows the reality.

In this same year, likewise, one of the great men among the 'Arabs, whom they style the Imām, Shams-ud-Dīn, the Maghrabī, has been despatched from the presence of his Lord,<sup>2</sup> on a mission to the presence of the Asylum of the Universe, the Sultān of Sultāns, NĀSIR-UD-DUNYĀ W/ UD-DIN, MAHMŪD SHĀH—God perpetuate his sove reignty!—and, having dedicated services, which will be worthy of this Court, has caused himself to be strung upon the thread of the servants of this sovereign, the Asylum of the World, which felicity is, to him, the most excellen of all happiness.

May the Most High God prolong the happiness and felicity of the Monarch of the Universe to the extreme limit of possibility, and may He keep it uninterrupted and increasing ; and grant that this TABAKĀT may be deemed worthy of acceptance in the Sublime Audience-Hall, and that this author, in the garment of prayer, may thereon, pronounce its conclusion<sup>4</sup> with this verse :—

“ Be Khīr, with the bowl of immortality, the Shāh's cup-bearer !  
Be the portuco of his gate like unto the nine-vaulted sphere !  
May it continue in the world as long as the world continues—  
The name of the TABAKĀT of MAHMŪD SHĀH-I-NĀSIR-UD-DĪN.”

note<sup>2</sup>, page 1126 It is therefore clear, from these facts, that, in the interreg num which occurred on the death of Mangū Kā'ān, the parts above referred to must have come under the rule of Barkā, temporarily, or, as head of the family, until the time when, after the submission of Artuk-Būkā, also called Irut-Būkā, and death of Alghū, Kublāe became established in the Kā'ān-ship, and, at which time, he assigned all Ī-rān-Zamīn, as far east as the Āmūfah, to Hulākū.

<sup>2</sup> No other writer mentions this title, but it is doubtless correct, for it was usual with the subsequent Mughal sovereigns, who became converts to Islām, to take a Musalmān name and title, as in the case of Nikūdār Aghūl, Hulākū's son, who was styled Sultān Ahmad : in fact, it is incumbent on a convert to take a Musalmān name.

<sup>3</sup> Shāhib : some have Khwājah. The four MSS. before mentioned, and the Printed Text, leave out the word Lord, and thus make the Imām come from the presence of himself ! Who his Lord was, does not appear.

This was just sixty-seven years before the Maghrabī, Ibn-i Baṭūṭah, set out on his travels.

<sup>4</sup> The I. O. L. MS, No. 1952, and Printed Text are defective here again : even the verse is imperfect.

## CONCLUSION.

As much as was possible to, and lay in the power of, and came within the circle of the hearing of, and was related to, this votary, has been written and recorded. Should the observation of the ruler of the people of Islām—God perpetuate his sovereignty!—or of the Khākān-i-Mu'azzam, Ulugh Khān-i-A'zam—may his prosperity endure!—or of the Maliks, or Nobles, or Grandees, or Šadrs, or Pillars of the State, or Eyes of the Faith, during the lifetime of the author, or subsequent to his decease, notice, in this ṬABAKĀT, an error, mistake, deficiency, or redundancy, may they veil it with the skirt of the robe of kindness and forgiveness, which will be the extreme of favour, and perfection of benevolence.

Praise be unto Thee, O God, the all-sufficient helper in every respect! By Thy mercy, O Thou Most Merciful of the Merciful, have pity upon us! May God bless the best of His creation—Muḥammad, the chief of the prophets, the noblest of the dwellers in earth and in heaven, and all the prophets and divine messengers, and their descendants, every one of them!

The frailest of the servants of the Divine, MINHĀJ-I-SARĀJ, the Jūrjānī, who is the author of this ṬABAKĀT—Almighty God protect him!—thus states, that, when this History was submitted by him to the SULTĀN, NĀSIR-UD-DIN, MAḤMŪD SHĀH—God prolong his reign!—he ordained him a royal dress of honour, and the waṣḥaḥ<sup>5</sup> [marten] pelisse [trimmed] with fine ermine, which was on his own blessed shoulders. He likewise bestowed upon the author an allowance of 10,000 *jittals* yearly, and the grant of a village;<sup>6</sup> and, when a transcription of this History was transmitted to the KHĀKĀN-I-MU'AZZAM

<sup>5</sup> Not one of the four now remaining copies of the text has this word correct. The Printed Text too is as defective and incorrect here as elsewhere. The waṣḥaḥ is described as an animal something similar to the fox, of the skins of which they make *perkins* or pelisses; and it is said that whoever wears one will not be troubled with hemorrhoids.

<sup>6</sup> The revenue arising from the village, without prejudice to the proprietary rights of the landholders.

ULUGH KHĀN-I-A'ẒAM—may his prosperity endure!—he sent [to the author] 20,000 *jītals* in ready money,<sup>7</sup> a Māhi Subāhi,<sup>8</sup> a bundle of ermine, and another of fox [skin]. This strophe, out of gratitude for those gifts, was pronounced [by the author] and inscribed upon the back of the Khān's copy. Strophe:—

"To the Shahr-yār of the universe, Ulugh Khān, he  
Who is Khān of the Ilbarī, and Shāh of the Yamak.<sup>9</sup>

Whosoever found acceptance in his presence  
Never more turned face towards the heavens.  
Before him [indeed] who is Hātim-i-Tā-i?  
Near unto him what is Yaḥyā-i-Barmak?<sup>1</sup>  
The dust from the tablet of the heart of Minhāj—  
The cares of the world—he with kindness wiped away.  
Listen to this assertion from me, all people,  
By the way of certainty, not by the road of doubt.—  
Ninety and nine shares of [his] generosity belong to me  
Of it, all others have but one out of a hundred.  
Every prayer I may offer up from the heart for him,  
The angels, with sincerity, say, Āmīn! thereto."

The book of MINHĀJ-I-SARĀJ,<sup>2</sup> the JÜRJĀNĪ, on the 5th

<sup>7</sup> The Printed Text has محسوب—established, fixed, etc., while the MSS. copies have محسوب—counted, numbered, etc., and ready-money, which must have been sufficiently apparent from the context.

Our author was much more fortunate than some authors of the present day, who, in many cases, find their writings transferred to another man's book, who appropriates your labours as his own work, trades upon the fruit of your brains, gets honours for them, and probably abuses the work he pirates.

<sup>8</sup> Certain emblems of rank and honours conferred upon and carried before princes and great men, denoted by the figure of a fish—*māhi*—and other insignia, also styled Māhi-Marāub, or something of a similar kind.

<sup>9</sup> See page 1097. And yet this Ilbarī Turk is one of many other Turks whom compilers of Indian History turn into "Afghāns," and "Patāns," which words are synonymous. See pages 599 and 796.

<sup>1</sup> The paragons of Oriental liberality and generosity. A good anecdote of Yaḥyā-i-Barmak is contained in Lane's "*Arabian Nights*," Vol. 2.

<sup>2</sup> The I O L MSS, No. 1952, Ro. As. Soc., and Bodleian MSS, all have *bin* here, while the Printed Text omits it, an *uṣṣat* being understood. Here is an illustration, and a very good one, taken in connexion with the Khālifāh's words, announcing the death of our author's father, at page 244, as well as in many other places herein, which demolishes the theory put forth by the late Mr W H Blochmann, M A, in "*The Journal of the Bengal Asiatic Society*" for 1876, page 325, that "Minhāj i Sarāj does not mean in prose 'Minhāj the son of Sarāj,' but 'Minhāj who writes under the name of Sarāj,'" that "*his name is not Minhāj ud Din, the son of Sarāj ud Din,*" and that "*the uṣṣat is never used in prose in place of Arabic bin,*" while, at the same time, the

of the month of Rabi'-ul-Awwal, in the year 658 H.,<sup>3</sup> was brought to its

#### CONCLUSION.

Calcutta Printed Text has actually "*Mināj-ad-Dīn, his Sarāj-ad-Dīn,*" on its title-page! Our author's own words, too, in the body of the work, completely disprove these rash statements. See the Memoir of the author, page xix, and APPENDIX, page xviii.

<sup>3</sup> This would be about the 17th February, 1260 A. D. At page 865, he says he finished it in *Shawwāl*—the tenth month—while, at page 799, he states that he completed it in *Rajab*—the seventh month<sup>1</sup>

## APPENDIX A.

*On the year of the occupation of Dihlī by Malik, afterwards Sultān, Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, and the inscription on the minārah of Kutb Sāhib, page 621.*

MR H. BLOCHMANN, M.A., in Part III., of his "Contributions to the History and Geography of Bengal," in the *Bengal Asiatic Journal* for 1875, criticises the date given by our author, and by me, for the occupation of Dihlī by Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, at page 515, and would, instead, fix upon the year 587 H. for that event. He says:—"Mr. E. Thomas fixes it at 587 H. as consistent with the best authorities." But who are these best authorities? Two pages farther on, Mr. Blochmann states that "the Tabaqāt is the only authority we possess for this period."

Now I will just give a specimen of Mr. Thomas' "best authorities." At page 11 of his "PATHÁN KINGS OF DEHLI," he says: "In 587, in a more extended expedition into Hindustān, Muhammad Ghori was totally routed on the memorable field of Thaneswar. \* \* \* After a year's repose \* \* \* on the self-same battle ground, he again encountered his former adversary \* \* \* This time fortune favoured the Ghories \* \* \* By this single victory the Muhammadans may be said to have become the virtual masters of Hindustān," &c. &c.

I will take it for granted that *a year after 587* means 588 H., but turn to the foot-note at page 23 of the same work. There Mr. Thomas, forgetting, apparently, what he wrote a few pages before, says:—"As regards the historical evidence to the date 587 A. H. for the capture of Dchli by the Muslims, it is complete and consistent with the best authorities!"

Mr Thomas adds "and Minhāj-us-Sirāj repeats in various forms, while treating of the life of Aibeg, the confirmation of the same date." In this I cannot agree with him. Let us turn to page 171 of the Calcutta Printed Text, the foot-note, and also to this Translation, page 515, in both of which we find (leaving out the first defeat by the

Hindūs, but again referring to Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn's being taken captive], he "took possession of that place—Mīraṭh—in 587 H. [see note 5, page 515 of this Translation]. From Mīraṭh likewise *he issued forth in the year 588 H., and captured Dihlī.*"

These are the actual words in the different MSS. collated. It is not actually said that Dihlī was taken in 588 H., merely that Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, in 588 H., marched from Mīraṭh, and it must have been towards *the close* of that year, as will be shown farther on, for, according to the Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir [see page v of this] he had to start to relieve Hānsī in the *ninth* month of that year, and only took Mīraṭh after that. It is evident, therefore, that Minhāj-ud-Dīn did not intend it to be understood that Dihlī was taken and made the seat of government in 588 H., unless he stultifies himself by upsetting his previous statements at pages 248, 378, 456, 457, and 464, which see.

I will now leave the "best authorities" and go to facts.

Minhāj-ud-Dīn states [pages 456—477] that troubles arose in Khawārazm in consequence of the outbreak of Sultān Shāh, the Khawārazmī, in 587 H.; that, subsequently [but in the *same* year], Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muhammad-i-Sām, advanced into India, took Tabarhindah, left a garrison there with orders to hold out for *six months*, and was preparing to retire [in consequence of the hot season, it being the third or fourth month, at latest, of 587 H.—April or May, 1191 A.D.]; was defeated by Rāe Pithorā; and had to retire, leaving the garrison still there. In the cold season of that year—five or six months after—instead of being able to return as he intended, he was under the necessity of preparing to attend his brother, Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Muhammad-i-Sām, along with other dependent Princes and their troops, against Sultān Shāh, the Khawārazmī Prince, who threatened Ghiyās-ud-Dīn, Muhammad's dominions in Khurāsān. Besides, Mu'izz-ud-Dīn had been badly wounded in the first battle, and it must have taken him some time to recover. This campaign, Minhāj-ud-Dīn states, at pages 248 and 378, took place in 588 H., and occupied *six months*. Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn accompanied his master, and was taken captive by the Khawārazmīs, but, after a battle, and defeat of the enemy, he was re-captured. "This victory," says Minhāj-ud-Dīn, "was achieved in the year 588 H."

I also take it for granted that Mr. Blochmann will allow that this capture of Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn must have taken place *before he captured Dihlī*. But what will totally overturn any theories on this matter, unless people *will not* be con-



vinced, is the fact that Minhāj-ud-Dīn's relative, Kāzī, Muḥammad, the Tūlakī [Mr. Dowson's "Kāzī Tūlak"], was left with a body of troops to hold Tabarhindah for the space of *six months* [that is to the next cold season—the ninth or tenth month of 587 H.—September or October, 1191 A.D.]. Why did he do this, it may be asked? and the answer is plain enough: he could not remain in India any longer with safety. The hot season was close at hand, and he would have been unable to return if he stayed much longer, for, besides the heat, the six mighty rivers in his rear would have *all been unfordable*, and would have to be crossed by boats, even if boats were procurable, a dangerous matter with regard to most of those rivers at that season, witness the strong Railway Bridges washed away in these days. The Sultān, having been defeated immediately after he placed the Kāzī in Tabarhindah, and having subsequently to accompany his brother towards Marw, where they were occupied *six months*, could not return as he intended, and the Kāzī, having held out *over thirteen months* [see Translation, page 464], the Sultān still not having come, had to give it up to the Hindūs.

Now if we calculate, say, fourteen or fifteen months from the first defeat, for the Sultān's return [i. e. from the setting in of the hot season—the *ninth* month of 587 H.], we shall come to the *last month* of 588 H.; and, in the same way, if we calculate six months of 588 H. for the operations in Khurāsān, we must allow some little time for the Sultān to reach Ghaznī, and he would then even require a month or two to prepare for a campaign in India; and besides, *even if he were ready before*, he could not move towards India during the height of the *hot season*. There were the same six mighty rivers to be crossed, and all unfordable at that period; and, all these things being thought of, it was utterly impossible for Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, to have entered India, at the earliest, before the middle of September or October—the end of the ninth or tenth month of 588 H., previous to which period no man in his senses, would have attempted to march from Ghaznī, to cross the six rivers, and advance into India.

Then followed the battle with Rāc Pithorā, Kuṭb-ud-Dīn is left in charge at Kuhrām, and the Sultān prepared to return home again.

These being the facts, how is it possible, on Mr. Thomas's "best authorities," that Kuṭb-ud-Dīn could have occupied Dīhlī in 587 H.?

I am glad also to find that General Cunningham, on his visit to Dīhlī in 1862, considered that 589 H. and not 587

H. was the correct date on the *Minārak*—not of "Qutbuddin Aibeg," about which so many reams of paper have been written, but of a wholly different *Ḳuṭb*. I refer to the date on this *Minārak* about which "doctors disagree," and with regard to which Mr. Thomas would fix on 587 H. for the occupation of Dihlī, and so all other dates must be made to suit it, and Mr. Blochmann too prefers 587 H. I suppose, however, that all the "best authorities" never considered *how it could be possible* for Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn to be defeated by Rāe Pithorā just before the hot season of 587 H., to take "*a year's repose*" [Thomas], again enter India, be occupied some time even then against Rāe Pithorā before finally overthrowing him [according to the Tāj-ul-Ma'āsir also], leave *Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn* at Mirāth, retire again from India, for *Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn*, subsequent to all this, to occupy Dihlī, build a great Mosque, upon which [notwithstanding the address of the President of the Archaeological Section at the Oriental Congress of 1874] Musalmān artisans brought from different parts of Asia were employed, and all these events *to have happened* in the *one* year of 587 H.! The idea is simply preposterous.

It occurs to me, on considering this subject further, that the inscription on the fourth circlet of the lower story of the *Minārak* as given in Thomas [PATHAN KINGS, page 21-22] refers not to Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Sām, if the *name* given is correct, but to his elder brother. It will be found at pages 368 and 370 of this Translation, and in the corresponding places in the original, that the elder brother and suzerain of Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Sām, was first called Muḥammad and his title was *Shams-ud-Dīn*, and that the younger brother *was also called Muḥammad*, and his title was *Shihāb-ud-Dīn*. The first brother, after he came to the throne, assumed the titles of "*Ghiyās-ud-Dunyā wa ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of [Bahā-ud-Dīn] Sām, Ḳaṣīm-i-Amīr-ul-Mūminīn,*" and after the successes in *Khurāsān*, in 588 H., the younger brother, Muḥammad, who, up to that time, bore the title of *Shihāb-ud-Dīn*, *received the title of Mu'izz-ud-Dīn*, so that, when defeated by Rāe Pithorā, he bore the title of *Shihāb-ud-Dīn*, but afterwards, on his return the second time, *Mu'izz-ud-Dīn*. This may account for the subsequent Indian Muḥammadan writers calling him *Shihāb* and *Mu'izz* indiscriminately.

At the period in question, when these inscriptions *are said* to have been recorded [I fancy they were recorded subsequently. See note 6, page 621, of this Translation], the elder brother and *suzerain* was still living, and lived for *ten years after*; and, I imagine, it will be allowed, that the

two sovereigns, and both the brothers, *at the same identical time*, could not bear the title of *Ḳaṣīm-i-Amīr-ul-Mūminīn*, or *Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn*, and, therefore, leaving out the additional titles, the work of the artist probably, the title in the said inscription is,—“SULTĀN-US-SALĀṬĪN, *GHIYĀṢ-UD-DUN-YĀ WA UD-DĪN*, MUHAMMAD, BIN SĀM, *ḲASĪM-I-AMĪR-UL-MŪMINĪN*,” and throughout the inscription [given by Thomas] the name of *Mu'izz-ud-Dīn*, or *Shihāb-ud-Dīn* even, *never once occurs*.

The *Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir* is quoted as an authority, and a sufficient authority, to upset the statements of *Minhāj-ud-Dīn*, whose father, *Sarāj-ud-Dīn*, was *Ḳāṣī* of *Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn*'s army, and whose kinsman, the *Ḳāṣī* of *Tūlak*, was present on the spot; but I do not place trust in the statements contained in that inflated work, unless they are corroborated or confirmed by some other contemporary writer.

In ELLIOT [page 211, vol. ii.] it is stated that the *Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir* is *rare* in Europe. I have had *four* copies to compare with the extracts from it given in that work, and I find that the date mentioned there—587 H.—for the *Sultān*'s victory [it totally ignores his *defeat*] over *Rāe Pithorā*, is written ع ٨٧ [which may be either ع or ع] without any points in two copies of the four MSS., in the third ع with one dot over and one under, and in the fourth ع. It is, therefore, evident that that date may be either 7 or 9, just as one chooses to read it; but, as the first battle, *according to every other author who has written on the subject*, took place in 587 H., the same year, 587 H., cannot, for reasons already stated, be the same in which the *Sultān* defeated *Rāe Pithorā*, and the former's slave occupied *Dihlī*. See note 6, page 521, para. 3 of this Translation.

If the “best authorities” had looked at the *Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir* attentively however [see also ELLIOT, vol. ii., page 217], they would have found that, even according to that work, in *Ramaṣān*, the *ninth month* of 588 H.—the middle of October [1192 A.D.]—*Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn* had to march from *Kuhrām* to relieve *Hānsī* [see also note 2 to page 516 of this Translation], and that, *subsequently*, “When” [according to ELLIOT, page 219], “the chief luminary threw its shade in the sign of *Libra*, and temperate breezes began to blow, after putting to flight the army of heat, *Kutbu-d-din* marched from *Kahram* and took *Mirath*,” and *subsequent to that* “he then encamped under the fort of *Dehlī*, which was also captured.” This means 587 H. I suppose?

These events are very briefly, but most clearly and

unmistakeably recorded in *Faṣīḥ-i*, in which it is stated :—  
 “ 588 H. a battle between Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Sām, son of Ḥuṣāin, Lord of Ghaznīn, and the Rāe of Dihlī; the Rāe is slain in the battle; Dihlī [territory] subdued; Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, locates Malik Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, in the fort of Kuhrām, assigns him the government of Dihlī [territory], and retires from Hind. 589 H. Malik Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, marches from Kuhrām towards Dihlī [the city], captures Dihlī with its dependencies.”

If Mr. Blochmann had looked at “that excellent work” the *Haft-Iklim*, he would have seen therein stated, that the defeat of Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, took place in 587 H., his victory in 588 H., and that Dihlī was occupied, as the seat of government, in 589 H.

The *Ṭabakāt-i-Akbarī*, the author of which “*must have had the good MSS. older than*” mine, also says, “defeated 587 H., victorious 588 H., Dihlī occupied and made the seat of government by Kutb-ud-Dīn, in 589 H.”

The *Tazkarat-ul-Mulūk* also says, first battle and defeat of Mu'izz-ud-Dīn 587 H., his victory 588 H., Dihlī taken 589 H., and, next year, 590 H., Mu'izz-ud-Dīn came again on an expedition to Kinnauj.

The *Tārīkh-i-Alfi* says that the Sultān gained the victory over Rāe Pithorā in the year 578 of the *Riḥat*, that is 588 H.

The *Zubdat-ut-Tawārikh* also says that Dihlī was made the seat of government in 589 H., and that, in the following year, 590 H., the Sultān returned on the expedition against Kinnauj.

The *Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh* likewise says that Dihlī was made the seat of government in 589 H.

*Budā'ūnī* and *Firishtah* also will be found to agree with the *Ṭabakāt-i-Akbarī*, and, to crown the whole, and put the finishing touch to the picture, “the A'in,” so often quoted by Mr. Blochmann, says that the first battle and defeat of the Sultān took place in 587 H., the second and victory in 588 H., and that in the same year his slave took Dihlī, but nothing is said of his making it the seat of government; and this agrees with the *Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir*, where nothing is said of making Dihlī the capital in that year; but that, “from Dihlī,” after staying some time there, “he marched forth against Kol, in 590 H.”

I need not say more on this head, I think, and do not doubt but that Mr Thomas is open to conviction

## APPENDIX B.

*On the name of Malik, afterwards Sultān, Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak-i-Shīl—of the Powerless Finger, page 513, and the use of the Isāfat in Persian.*

IN the "*Contributions*" previously referred to, the correctness of the name, and by-name of this Turkish slave-king is criticised.

Mr. Blochmann "thought" the name of "Qutbuddīn of the Paralyzed Hand," [see BRIGG'S translation of Firishtah, referred to in note at page 519 and 521 of this Translation, which makes a very energetic warrior of him, considering his "Paralyzed Hand"], had been "set at rest" by Mr. Thomas—but in this I cannot agree any more than in the date 587 H for the occupation of Dihli, and 599 and 600 for the conquest of Bengal—and he says that my different MSS. "have clearly the same words as the Bibl-Indica Edition of the *Ṭabaqāt*" but I assert to the contrary: my MSS. run thus:—

بظاہر جمالِ بداشت و انکشفِ حمر او شکستکی داشت

but, in the Calcutta Text, after the word *او* the words "of a" or "the hand"—occur, and the Hamilton MS., the worst of the whole number collated, has the same, but the other two MSS. from which the Printed Text is taken have not those words, and another MS. has *او پا*—"of a" or "the foot"—but all the rest of the MSS. are as I have given it above, and translated it.

I fail to see much difference in Mr. Blochmann's "literal translation:—" "*Outwardly* he had no comeliness, and *his* little FINGER [of one hand] *possessed an infirmity*. For this reason they called him *Aṣbak i-Shāl* [*Aṣbak* with the paralyzed HAND]" and my: "He possessed no outward comeliness, and the little *finger* [of one hand?] *had a fracture*, and on that account he used to be styled *I-bak-i-Shīl* [the powerless-fingered]." The only difference is that where I translate *داشت* *had*, Mr. Blochmann translates it *possessed*—a mighty difference truly—and that I translate

the word *تصدی*—*guṣṭandī*—which is the *imperfect* tense of the verb, used also to imply *continuity* or *habitude*, and is *not* the PAST tense, and that I give to *شکلی* the meaning of a concrete noun. I see no reason to alter my translation, as lexicographers, who are supposed to know something of the meanings of words, render *شکلی* a rupture, a fracture, defeat, as well as *breaking, brokenness, &c.*

Mr. Blochmann calls the *Haft-Iklīm* "an excellent work," and in this I quite agree with him. Let him look at it however, and he will find with respect to *Ḳutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak-i-Shīl*, that, in it, are the following words—*چون انگشت حصار او شکسته بود او را ایبک میخواندند*—which I defy any one to translate otherwise than—*from, or on this, that his little FINGER WAS BROKEN they used to call him I-bak.*" Which hand is not stated.

The author of the *Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, Budā'ūnī*, and even *Firishtah*, all of whom Mr. Blochmann states ["Contributions," page 138], "*MUSI HAVL HAD very good MSS. of the 'Tabaqāt-i-Nāṣirī,'*" have *THE VERY SAME WORDS*, copying one from the other, as are contained in the *Haft-Iklīm*, the *Tazkarat-ul-Mulūk* has the same, and also the *Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh*. Some others say the same, but I need not name them here, as those I have mentioned are easily obtained for reference, but all leave out the *جل* without which *ایبک*—finger, is meaningless. Mr. Blochmann quotes the *Shams-ul Lughat*: let him look at it for the word *ایبک* and he will see these words—*ایبک تکریمی انگشت*—"*I-bak with kasr means FINGER,*" as well as the other meanings mentioned in the "*Contributions.*"

The *Tārikh-i-Majāmi'-ul-Khiyār*—not the work even of a resident in India—*چون انگشت حصار او شکسته بود او را ایبک میخواندند*—"*As his little finger was broken they called him I-bak-i-Shīl.*" The *Zubdat-ut-Tawārikh*, which copies *Minhāj-ud-Dīn*, has the same words as given in this Translation, and it is satisfactory to know that those authors; who say his little finger *was broken*, read the word *شکلی* as I have read it. Of course, neither *Minhāj-ud-Dīn*, nor any other who writes *I-bak-i-Shīl* which even, on Mr. Blochmann's own showing, is in the Calcutta Printed Text as in other copies, is right in putting *جل* whether it be *shil* or *shall* LAST, and it ought, according to Mr. Blochmann, to be *inverted* into "*Shall Aibak,*" otherwise it is "*un-Persian.*" None of these authors who write *I-bak-i-Shīl* therefore, according to this theory, could have known their own language! He also, in his literal translation, renders the passage "*and his little finger [of one hand] possessed an infirmity,*" and yet he turns him into "*Aibak with the*

paralyzed HAND." Because one finger was broken, or "possessed an infirmity," it does not follow that the whole hand was paralyzed. Mr. Blochmann could not have thought of these matters when he proceeded to criticise the correctness of my rendering.

I have never said that I-bak alone meant *I-bak of the broken finger*, but, with *shil* added to it—I-bak-i-Shil—as I have already stated in note 1, page 513-14 of this Translation, and I have also stated that, in *Turkish*, I-bak "means finger" only: *not* broken or fractured-fingered, or the like. Mr. Blochmann could not have read the notes through, or failed to see what I said of I-bak-i-Lang in the same note. Nor have I said that I-bak was not Turkish, for he was a *Turk*, and so bore a Turkish name.

Neither have I ever hinted, much less stated, that his *real name* was Kutb-ud-Din: to have said so would have been absurd. That is his Musalmān titular name only, as Shams-ud-Din was the Musalmān title of his slave, I-yaltimish. In my note 1, page 513, I have said that Kutb-ud-Din could *not have been his real name*, nor I-bak either, which I looked upon as a nick-name or by-name. So Mr. Blochmann here, unknown to himself probably, has come to the same conclusion. I should not write his name however under any circumstance "Qutbuddin," any more than I should translate it *The polestar of the faith*, but Kutb-ud-Din—The Pole-star of [the] Faith.

There is not the least cause for "the *izāfat*" to be cancelled in I-bak-i-Shil. to do so would be contrary to the primary and simplest rules of the Persian Grammar—the Irānī I mean—of the "Tūrānī" dialect I know nothing. In *Shil* I-bak an adjective precedes the noun, and the *izāfat*—*izāfat*—does not take place; but, when the adjective or qualifying word follows the noun, the *kasrah* of *izāfat* is required. See the "A'in," page 629 for an example, where Mr. Blochmann himself writes "A'ZAM KHAN, vide KHAN-I-A'ZAM." Any Persian Grammar, however simple, will show this, as well as Lumsden, or Sir W. Jones, Forbes, &c. The following is given as an example, and is very pertinent to the subject.—

"The last letter of every Persian word is quiescent, or un-accented—i. e. اسب *asp*, a horse; دست *dast*, a hand; مرد *mard*, a man. But, in composition, when such word is either the *muṭāṣṣaf*, or governing noun, or the *muṭāṣṣaf*, or substantive noun, the last letter must be accented with the *kasrah* of *izāfat*: as for example—اسب *asp-i-jald*—a swift horse, دست *dast-i-Zaid*—the hand of Zaid; مرد *mard-i-nek*—a good man, راک *rah-i-rāst*

—a true or right way, the *kasrah* being the sign of the governing noun, or the antecedent of the relative adjective."

Again: "When the adjective follows the substantive, the latter must be accented with the *kasrah*; as اسب سياه *asp-i-siāh*—a black horse, but, on the contrary, when the adjective precedes the noun, the *kasrah* must not be used, as سياه اسب *siāh asp*—a black horse. The same rule is likewise applicable to the governing and the governed nouns substantive; as بادشاهار روس *bādshāhān-i-samin*—kings of the earth; شاه جهان *shāh-i-jahān*—king of the world; جهان شاه *jahān-shāh*—world-king," &c.

When I learned these simple rules just *thirty years since*, I did not expect I should have to quote them again. *Shil* I-bāk therefore and I-bak-i-*Shil*, and I-bak-i-Lang, as he is styled in the *Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh*, and in *Fanākati*, come under these rules, but no writer who pretended to elegance of style would prefer the former to the latter. In *میر* which Mr. Blochmann himself translates ["*Contributions*," page 136] *mīr-i-māh*, "Lord of the Moon," why is he so *un-Persian*, and why does he not "cancel the *isdāfat*," and write *ماه میر* *māh-mīr*—Moon Lord? and without an *artificial* *izāfat* whence comes "*of the*"?

I do not know that any one has said that Mr. Thomas is *not* quite correct in looking upon *ماه* as "the original name." I, certainly, have not said so. I only write I-bak what Mr. Thomas writes *Aibeg* and Mr. Blochmann *Aibak*, but I think Mr. Blochmann would have some difficulty in showing me the word written with a *madd*, viz.: *ماه*. He certainly cannot show it to me in any copy of the *Ṭabaḳāt-i-Nāgiri*, and I never saw it anywhere else so written.

As to what is given as the legend on coins he is said to have issued, and his being merely called I-bak therein, which Mr. Blochmann deems quite sufficient to refute me by my own remarks, it is evident that, before Mr. Blochmann had calmly read my statements, he penned this portion of his "*Contributions*." I read in the legend given at page 525 of this Translation the words—Sultān Kutb-ud-Dīn, I-bak, as plain as it is possible to print. He would scarcely have put *shil* or *shall* upon his coins. Did Tīmūr add the word *Lang* to the legend on his? Of course not. See the ADDITIONAL NOTE to this Translation, on the subject of the legends on these coins: end of Nāsir-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd *Shāh*'s reign, page 717.

I do not consider that Mr. Thomas or any one else has "set this question at rest" with respect to "*Aibeg*;" and had Mr. Blochmann not been quite so hasty he might have



read a note in this Translation [note <sup>4</sup>, page 729], where I have remarked upon the number of other Maliks styled **ایک**—some five or six or more, including Ulugh-Khān's brother.

As to there being no such word as *shil* in Persian meaning limp, weak, soft, paralyzed, &c. ["Contributions," page 136] I do not agree with Mr. Blochmann. It is not "Tūrānī," and may be Irānī, or possibly local, and peculiar to the Fārsi-wāns of Afghānistān, but is commonly used; and another Persian word—*shul*—is used with it in the sense mentioned. As to Mr. Blochmann's "rare Arabic word *shal* or *shall* [which "rare" word I have also referred to in my note, page 513], he says it means "having a withered hand," but I say it means a *hand or foot* paralyzed or powerless, &c., on the authority of an excellent Lexicon in Persian, which explains it thus:—

ویرسی دست و پای را گویند که ارکار بار مانده باشد

I think I may venture to assert that Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Din, Muhammad, son of Sām, was rather unlikely to have purchased a slave with the whole of one *hand* paralyzed: a finger broken or paralyzed would have been no very great detriment, but how could a one-hand paralyzed man fight on horseback? See too the wonderful feats DOW and BRIGGS—not Firishtah—make him perform. As to its being "a rare Arabic word" I beg to say that it is a *most common* one among the Afghāns: in fact, they rarely ever use another word, except by adding **دل** *shull* to it—"shall-o-shull." See my Pushto Dictionary, page 656.

In the following page [137] of his "Contributions" Mr. Blochmann, referring to my mentioning in a note to my Translation, that Arām Shāh, said to be the son of I-bak, and, by some, the adopted son, is called I-bak's brother by Abū-l-Faẓl, says he takes "the opportunity to justify Abul-Faẓl, and that, in his [own] A'in text, Abul-Faẓl states twice distinctly that Arām Shāh was Aibak's son." Mr. Blochmann's A'in may, but in my A'in—the MS. I quoted, and which is now before me—a "good old copy"—has these words, in which *may be* a clerical error:—

در چوگان بازی نقد زندگان در باغچه امرا آرام شاه برادر او را بر مستند مراد می نشانند

At page 137 of his "Contributions" Mr. Blochmann considers the word **ای** *ai* "a moon" in the word **ایک** to occur in other names of Indian History, and in what he calls "*Ai-tigīn*" or *Ētigīn* [he is not certain which perhaps: **ای** can be written *Ē* in "Tūrānī" pro-

bably], and in "*Āi-lititmish*, the emperor *Altamsh*," but unfortunately *ای* with *madd* over the *i* does not occur in either of those names nor will Mr. Blochmann show them to me so written even in the *Bibl. Indica* edition of the "*Tabaqāt*."

If "*Āi-lititmish*" be the name of the so-called "emperor" [but why not write also the "emperor" *Maḥmūd*, son of *Sabuk-Tigin*, the "emperor" *Mu'izz-ud-Dīn*, and the "emperor" *Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn*? They were *Sultāns* by title as well as "*Āi-lititmish*" was] and if "*Āi-lititmish*" be right why style him "*Altamsh*" still? Such must be "behind modern research." If *ای* be contained in the words *ایکشی* and *ایکشی*—there are no *madds* here—and entirely separate from the *تکشی* and *نکشی* of those words, how does Mr. Blochmann account for the words *کشی* *Ḳal-timish*, *تکشی* *Tak-timish*, and *سکشی* *Sal-timish*? These are names often occurring as well as *ایکشی*—*I-yal-timish*, elsewhere than in Indian history, because they are Turk names, but the last part of these compound words is sometimes written *تمشی* and *تکشی* and the first part *ای* and *ی* respectively, and not *ای* at all. After this same fragile theory, *I-yal-Arsalān*—*ای* *arsalān* and *I-yal-dūz*—*ای* *dūz* which latter the author of the *Ṭabakāt-i-Nāsirī* and some others write *یال* *Yal-dūz* [where is the "*āi* 'a moon'" here? *ای* *dūz* is said to mean *a star* in Turkish], those names must be written *Āi-larsalān* and *Āi-lidūz*. I should like to know the titles of these "oldest Dictionaries" which give the pronunciation "*Āi-lititmish*." No, no, the "*āi* 'a moon'" in these last names is all *moonshine*.

In the *Farang-i-Rashīdī*—a Dictionary published in the *Bibl. Indica* Series, among the meanings assigned to *ایکشی* is *six-fingered*. This is something new. In that work also *ای* signifying *moon*, is not written *ای* with *madd*.

Since the above was written I also find that the same Dictionary contains the word *خُل* but that form of it which signifies, soft, ductile, lax, feeble, relaxed, weak, &c., is written with short *u*—*shul*, which is evidently the same word as used by the *Afghāns* referred to at page xi of this.

## APPENDIX C.

*On the correct name of the conqueror of Bihār and Lakhanawast, Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, son of Bakht-yār-ud-Dīn, the Khaj, and others of his tribe, and the use of the kasrah of izāfat for bin, son of, &c., &c.*

THE name of this Malik is also criticised in the "*Contributions*," page 137. Mr Blochmann says:—

"The only thing we knew hitherto (and I believe it is all we know now) is that the conqueror of Bengal was called

Muhammad Bakhtyār,  
and the name of his paternal uncle was  
Muhammad Mahmūd.<sup>1</sup>

"The names of these two persons Major Raverty breaks up, by introducing an artificial *izāfat*, or sign of the genitive [see *ante* on the use of the *izāfat* and the *تَوْصِيفِي* كَرَمَ and any Grammar on the subject], into four names, viz. Muhammad-i-Bakhtyār, and Muhammad-i-Mahmūd \*\*\*\*

Major Raverty says in explanation that "in his older MSS" the word *bin*, or son, is inserted between the words Muhammad and Bakhtyār in the heading of Chapter V, which contains the biography of the conqueror of Bengal; hence the conqueror of Bengal was Muhammad, and "the father's name, it appears, was Bakhtyār, the son of Mahmūd." It is not stated in how many MSS. this *bin* occurs, but, though it occur in the heading, it never occurs in the text.

The name of Muhammad Bakhtyār occurs more than thirty times in Major Raverty's Chapters V. and VI. (pages 548 to 576); but in every case Major Raverty gives Muhammad-i-Bakhtyār, i.e. the *Izāfat*. Hence his MSS. have no *bin* in the text. In the heading of Chapter VI, there is no *bin*, though Major Raverty puts it in; he tries even to do so in the heading to Chapter VIII., in the name

<sup>1</sup> See page 549 and note <sup>4</sup>.

of Husámuiddín 'Iwaz, and "one or two authors" get the credit of it."

"Nor does the word *bin* occur in the MSS. of the Tāj-ul-Ma'āsir, in Firishtah, the Tabaqāt-i Akbarī, Badaonī, and later writers, though the authors of these histories *must have had* very good MSS. of the Tabaqāt-i Naṣirī, some of which, in all probability, were older than those in Major Raverty's possession. Hence I look upon the correctness of the solitary *bin* as doubtful."

My answer is, I "put" nothing "in": the Tāj-ul-Ma'āsir has no *Arabic headings* like the Tabakāt-i-Nāṣirī, and does not use the word *bin*, but, that work not being written in the "Tūranī idiom," the *Kasrah* of *izāfat*, where necessary, is understood. The author of the Tāj-ul-Ma'āsir, which work Mr. Blochmann has, of course, examined, could not possibly have had a "good" or "old copy" of the "Tabaqāt" seeing that it was not written until more than *thirty years after*, the Tāj-ul-Ma'āsir was finished. Neither has the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī Arabic headings, Budā'ūnī says he copies from his patron's work. I have already shown, in my notes 6 and 4 to pages 697 and 711, and in many other places of this Translation, what the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī is. The Author in all probability *saw* the Tabakāt-i-Nāṣirī, but, as I suppose, he did not take the trouble to collate different copies, or devote a year or two to that task alone, as I have done, and contented himself with one—for example say the I O L MS 1952, "a good old copy" too, which one person, at least, styles an "autograph"—the short comings of the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī may be accounted for. Firishtah contains *nothing whatever*—not a *single event*—respecting the Turk Sultans of the Mu'izzi and Shamsi dynasties, but what is contained in the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, even to the poetical quotations and the blunders also.

I do not *propose* to change the name of the "conqueror of Bengal": I do more. I *do* change it without the least hesitation on the authority of the best extant copies of the text of the "Tabaqāt," which, as Mr. Blochmann most correctly observes, "*is the only authority we possess for this period*," and it will require positive proof to the contrary to make me give up the point. Because a name has been written incorrectly before, on wrong assumption, or on mere theories, and because the two names Muhammad and Bakht-yār have been handed down and repeated from one writer to another as that of *one* man only, is there any reason why such error should be obstinately stuck to through thick and thin?

But at the same time I must state that I have naught to

gain or lose by the change: I have no object in changing it, and only do so on the "undoubted authority" of my author. The matter lies in a nut-shell: either the father was called Bakht-yār, or he *was not*. If he *was* so called, then *he* has hitherto had the credit for *what his* son performed.

As to Muḥammad with the *kasrah* of *izāfat* being correct, I fancy Mr. Blochmann, even in a Muḥammadan "School Register," [a great authority certainly,] never found one person called Muḥammad Mahmūd without the last referred to his father—certainly not if a Musalmān in his senses wrote it down. But with regard to the "conqueror's" name, Muḥammad, and Bakht-yār—that is to say Bakht-yār-ud-Dīn—his father's name, the word *bin*—son of—I first noticed in the oldest British Museum copy, one of the three best I have had for my translation, and Professor Rieu, on whose words, opinion, and experience in such matters, I place implicit confidence, considers it a *M.S.* of the 14th century—or about a century after the time that Minhāj-ud-Dīn wrote. The word *bin* also occurs in the other British Museum *M.S.*, and in the best St Petersburg copy, which is another of the three I refer to, and in the very old copy I have—which apparently looks, but may not be, much older than either of the other two—the whole of the headings are pointed, and in this last *M.S.* the word *bin* does not occur, for at this particular place, as well as in a few other instances where *bin*, as in the case of Muḥammad *bin* Sūrī, of whom more anon, is, subsequently, given, the *bin* has clearly been left out, accidentally, by the copyist. Mr. Blochmann's "solitary *bin*" also occurs in the best Paris copy. So *bin*—"son of"—occurs in four *M.S.S.* in three of the best and oldest copies, the *izāfat* in a fourth *which often uses the izāfat for BIN in other instances where son of is undoubtedly meant*, and *bin* in a fifth, considered to be a precious "autograph" of the author's. In the other *M.S.S.* vowel points are not marked, but the *izāfat* is, without doubt, meant there, as in other places where not marked. The "one or two authors" seems to be disapproved of—I had an object in not stating all my author's names at the time.

I can give hundreds of such like instances of *bin* and an *izāfat* being used indiscriminately. But just look at the Calcutta Printed Text for example—the first page that meets the eye—page 44, the heading is "Al-Amir Muḥammad, *bin* 'Abbās," and immediately under, second line, are the words:—*هو* • • • • • *بن* محمد عباس *بن* محمد and, as rendered in my version, page 332, "He made over

the kingdom of Ghūr to Amīr Muḥammad-i-'Abbās," and which Mr. Blochmann, according to his theory, would have written "Amīr Muḥammad 'Abbās," and so have made *one person of the plural*. There is another good example at pages 112 and 113 viz : — *غياث الدين محمد بن محمود سام* — Ghīyās-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd *bin* Muḥammad-i-Sām. Here *bin* is used for one person—the son, and an izāfat understood and required for a third person—the grandfather : there is no izāfat marked, but it *must* be used, because Muḥammad, the father, was not called Sām, but he was the son of Sām—that is Bahā-ud-Dīn, Sām. Ghīyās-ud-Dīn, Maḥmūd's father's name, is written in full in the headings with *bin*, but under, *غياث الدين محمد سام* — Ghīyās-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, and likewise his brother's, *مير الدين محمد سام* — Mu'izz-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad-i-Sām, but, by the theory put forth in the "Contributions," and the system followed in the translation of the "A'in-i-Akbarī," they would both be turned into Sām, which alone refers to their father, and not to them, as the headings as well as the text—including the printed text—most undoubtedly show, and many other examples are to be found in the work. The names in the headings are written in Arabic, in every copy, throughout the whole book, and in the body of the work, according to the Persian idiom, the izāfat for *bin* is understood, as is also the case with the name of Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad *bin* Bakht-yār[ud-Dīn], the Khalj, and others.

Another matter tending to prove that Bakht-yār is the father's titular name, is the fact that the author of the *Ṭabaqāt-i-Akbarī*—one of those "who must have had" the good old MSS—styles him "Malik Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār-ud-Dīn." Muḥammad *could* not possibly, be called Bakht-yār-ud-Dīn, and Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn *too*. The same author, by the bye, at the head of the chapter, styles the "conqueror" of Bengal IKHTIYĀR-UD-DĪN, MUḤAMMAD, *only* Why? Because he understood that Bakht-yār-ud-Dīn was his father's name.

"Further," says Mr. Blochmann, "supposing *bin* to be correct, is it not strange, nay totally un-Persian, to speak continually of Muḥammad-*bin*-Bakhtyār, or Muḥammad-i-Bakhtyār, instead of using the single name of Muḥammad? This would be Arabic usage. Thirdly, if Maḥmūd were the grandfather, it would have been extraordinary on the part of the author to have left out the grandfather in the heading, and in the beginning of the chapter, when Muḥammad Bakhtyār's descent is spoken of and merely incidentally to mention it in connexion with the paternal uncle."

It certainly would be *un-Persian* to speak continually of

Muhammad-bin Bakht-yār, hence, after the Arabic heading, as in other places throughout the whole work of Minhāj-ud-Dīn, the Persian *izāfat* is understood. Scores of examples in the text also show that a man's single name, such for example as Muhammad would be here, is unusual except in the case of some slaves whose fathers' names appear to have been unknown. So engrafted is the custom of using the father's name with the son's [but not the grandfather's], that in our Indian Courts we find *bin* and *walad* always used, and even in Bombay we find low caste Hindūs, Dehṛs, &c., styled, for example—"Lakhsman *walad* Nursia," and "Pāndū *bin* Santo," &c. A grandfather's name is very seldom put in the headings of the *Tabakāt-i-Nāsirī*—it is not usual to do so. Had the paternal uncle's name occurred in a heading the word *bin* would have been written no doubt; but, as I have before noticed, did any person ever hear one man called Muhammad Mahmūd? I know, however, that one of the sons of Mahmūd of Ghaznī is styled Muhammad-i-Mahmūd, and that his uncles are styled, Naṣr-i-Sabuk-Tigin, and Yūsuf-i-Sabuk-Tigin respectively. What a nice thing for a translator to make one man of them!

"Lastly," writes Mr. Blochmann, "the use of the *Izāfat*, instead of *bin* or *pisar* (son), is restricted to poetry, and does not occur in prose [see note †, page 138]. I see, therefore, no reason to change the name of the conqueror of Bengal, as proposed by Major Raverty."

This is a matter of such vital importance that I must give two examples, out of very many, of what may be caused through a translator not knowing where to place the *izāfat* so much objected to by Mr. Blochmann as "never occurring" in Persian *prose* in place of *bin*, son of, which is so "un-Persian."

A careful and conscientious writer like ELPHINSTONE says, in book v., chap. 1, of his "History of India," that "Mahommed Cásim" invaded Sind, and, page after page, and paragraph after paragraph, it is said that "Cásim" did this, and "Cásim" did that, and that "the Mohametan arms ceased with the death of Cásim."

In ELLIOT also, vol. 1, page 138, the extract from the *Chach-Nāmah* commences with the death of Rāc Dāhir "at the hands of Muhammad Kásim Sakifi." These names—for they are used as that of one person—"Muhammad Kásim" occur in scores of places throughout the extract, but, at page 157 we also have "Imādu-d-dīn Muhammad Kásim bin Abi 'Akil Sakifi."

"Muhammad Kásim," as though it were the name of one

man, duly appears in vol. vi. of the same work, as conqueror of Sind.

Now "Cásim" or "Kásim" *had nothing whatever to do* with Sind or its conquest. He was *dead* before his son, *Muhammad*, was appointed by his uncle to lead the 'Atabs into Sind, and so the *father, who was in his grave at the time*, has had credit, up to this moment, in our so-called Histories of India, *for what his son performed*, in the same manner that Bakht-yār-ud-Dīn, the *Khalj*, has had the credit for what his son, Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, performed in Lakhanawati.

From Tabarī downwards, the name of the conqueror of Sind is 'Imād-ud-Dīn, Muhammad, *son of Kásim, son of Muhammad, son of Hakam, son of Abū-Uḡail, and Al-Bilādūrī*, an extract from whose work is given in Elliot, says the same as Tabarī, but, because the author of the *Chagh-Nāmah* headed his chapters in Persian instead of Arabic, the necessary *izāfat* indicating *son of*, which is declared *never to occur* for that purpose, was not recognized, and hence this lamentable and absurd error. Such is History.

I have already given examples of this; but turn to page \*—40 of the Calcutta Printed Text, which is the same as other copies in these instances, and the fourth line from the heading are these words *چون تخت فرس نامر محمود سکن رسيد*—*chūn takht-i Ghaznīn ba Amīr Mahmūd-i-Sabuk-Tigin rasīd*. Does Mr Blochmann mean to assert that Sabuk-Tigin is not the father's name? So much for the random assertion that "the *izāfat* instead of *bin* or *pīsar* [which last I have not used] is *restricted to poetry*, and does not occur in prose," and according to the footnote that it "*is rare in poetry, and poets do not like to use this Izāfat*" If Mr Blochmann met with the following in Indian History — *شهاب الدوله دارون هرا الهه حسن*—I wonder what he would think of it: he would write it "*Shihābuddaulah Hārūn Bughrā Ilak Khān*," and make one person of it I, however, read it—"Shihāb-ud-Daulah, Hārūn-i-Bughrā-i-I-lak-Khān," because I know for certain that Hārūn who is entitled Shihāb-ud-Daulah is the son of Bughrā, who is the son of the I-lak Khān, who is named Mūsā, who were Khāns in Māwar-un-Nahr—of the Afrāsiyābī dynasty.

Next, in the same footnote ‡, page 138 of the "*Contributions*," Mr Blochmann says that "*Minhāj-i-Sirāj*" [I write *Sarāj*] does not mean in prose, '*Minhāj, the son of Sirāj*,' but Minhāj who writes under the name of Sirāj. That the father's name was Sirāj has nothing to do with it."

Mr Blochmann would find it difficult to show me where



he "writes under the name of Sirāj." I suppose it will be allowed that our Author *knew his own name*, and his father's, and if that be allowed, he calls himself repeatedly Minhāj-ud-Dīn-i-Sarāj, and he further says that his father was the Maulānā Sarāj-ud-Dīn, whose father was the Maulānā Minhāj-ud-Dīn, 'Uṣmān, whose father was the Imām, 'Abd-ul-Khāliq, the Jūrjānī. For these reasons ABŌ-'UMR-I-'UṢMĀN, who is also called MINHĀJ-UD-DIN, sometimes styles himself in this work—MINHĀJ-I-SARĀJ-I-MINHĀJ—referring to father and grandfather also. Here are two *izāfats*, in prose too. See also note 7, page 727 of this Translation.

I have already shown Mr. Blochmann's theory of "artificial" *izāfats*, as he calls them, to be "*un-Persian*," but, to prove that another statement here made is likewise incorrect, I must prominently notice another *izāfat*. It refers to the article "*Who were the 'Patān' or 'Pathān' Sultāns of Duhlī*"—the paper in the JOURNAL A. S. BENGAL, for 1875, page 31. Mr. Blochmann says in the same footnote 1, page 138, of his "*Contributions*," para. 2, "The form of the name of Muhammad-i-Sūrī, on whose name Major Raverty has built a hypothesis, is doubtful for this *Izāfat*."

Mr. Blochmann, apparently, did not notice that the matter of the *kasrah* of *izāfat*, at page 31 of the JOURNAL, has reference *solely* to FIRISHTAH and his translators. If he will take the trouble to refer to this Translation, page 316, and to the corresponding place page 38 of the Calcutta Printed Text, he will find the heading, "SŪRĪ, *bin* MUHAMMAD," showing that here Sūrī is itself a *Ghūrī* name. Then let him turn to page 320 of the Translation, and he will find the heading "MALIK MUHAMMAD *bin* SŪRĪ," but in the corresponding place in the printed text, page 40, merely ملاك محمد سوری. If I chose to be guided by Mr. Blochmann's theory on that heading alone, and did not know that the *kasrah* of سوری or description was required, and was in any doubts respecting the persons I was writing about, I might have called him, as Mr. Blochmann would, and as Mr. Dowson, in ELLIOT [vol. II, p. 285], has done—Muhammad Sūrī, as though the two names belonged to *one* man, and have turned *two* men into *one* accordingly. The printed text also mentions him as محمد سوری *twice in the same page*, but a third time, in the last line of that page, when speaking of Malik Muhammad having made over *Ghūr* to his *eldest* son, his name is given with his father's and grandfather's name—امیر ابو علی بن محمد بن سوری viz.—Amir Bū 'Alī, *son of* Muhammad, *son of* Sūrī.

Look again at the following heading in the Printed Text—page 41, and there it is again confirmed, and we have *ابو علی بن محمد بن سوری*—Abū-'Alī, son of Muḥammad, son of Sūrī, but, in the ninth line, the father is again called *محمد سوری* the *isāfat* being understood. The next heading also refers to Muḥammad being Sūrī's son, viz :—'Abbās, son of Shīṣ, son of Muḥammad, son of Sūrī.

If my long note on this subject, 7, page 321, had been read before taxing me with building up a doubtful "hypothesis," it might have been seen that in the Kitāb-i-Yamīnī, the author of which was contemporary with this very Muḥammad, son of Sūrī, who, it is pretended [merely because Dow and Briggs so rendered it and made a "Panthān" of him], was called *Muḥammad Sūrī*, he is never once referred to as Muḥammad but as *ابو سوری*—the son of SŪRĪ. The *Tārīkh-i-Alfī*, *Faṣīḥ-i*, *Jahān-Ārā*, *Rauḡat-us-Ṣafā*, *Habīb-us-Siyar*, *Mir'āt-i-Jahān-Numā*, and *Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh*, call him son of SŪRĪ only; and in the account of Maḥmūd-i-Sabuk-Tigīn's raid upon the Ghūrīs in the *Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh* he is also merely called son of SŪRĪ: never Muḥammad. The Bengal A. S. Library contains a copy [No. 14] of this work, and Mr. Blochmann can refer to it. He will find, if the portion copied for me has been correctly copied, that in the first two places this Ghūrīān chief is called *شوری* Shūrī—a mistake of *ش* for *س* but, four or five lines from the end of the paragraph, he is styled *پسر شوری*—*pīsar-i-Shūrī*—that is the son of SHŪRĪ, and it is clear that Raṣhīd-ud-Dīn followed the Kitāb-i-Yamīnī and styled him son of SŪRĪ likewise, but that, in two instances, the copyist of that M.S. No. 14, or the Calcutta *kātib*, left out the word *پسر* before the name, in the first two instances.

If the two words 'Alī Mardān alone mean 'Alī who was as valiant as many Men, and if Muḥammad Sherān alone also mean Muḥammad who was equal to many Lions, and his brother is also "equal to many Lions" [rather strange that both brothers should be so], whence come these five or six "artificial" words, since, without artificial means being adopted, the words 'Alī Mardān are—'Alī men—and Muḥammad Sherān—Muḥammad Lions? These words would, without the *kasrah* of description, be much the same as *Shāh Jahān—King World*—referred to in what I have said on the *izāfat*, and which is a complete answer also to these questions. Muhammadan "School Registers" have nothing to do with it. The *Khalj* Turks of Garmsīr did not keep any Registers.

As this answer to Mr. Blochmann's criticisms may fall under the notice of readers not acquainted with the Irānī

dialect of the Persian, and as he constantly refers me to his A'fn, I must point out how inconsistent he is himself about these *izāfats*—I do not think I can be taxed with inconsistency—and how often his *izāfats* are used *when they are not required*, and *wanting when not used*. These inconsistencies, which I take from his translation of the *A'fn-i-Akbari*, may be seen at a glance; he appears to have no *fixed* system:—"Mīr Sharīf-i-Āmul" requires the *izāfat* according to his theory, but, as Mīr Sharīf was a native of Āmul, the *yā-i-nisbat* or of relation affixed to Āmul—*یـا*—i. e. of Āmul—as it is written in the *MS.* from which it is taken, was sufficient, as *Fārs*—Persia, *Fārsī*—Persian or of Persia; and Panj-āb—Panj-ābī; Afghān, Afghānī, &c.

The same occurs in "Shaikh Farīd-i-Bukhārī," which last word containing the *yā-i-nisbat* means OF Bukhārā, or the Bukhārīān. As it now stands it is "Shaikh Farīd of or the *Bukhārī*. Again, in the words "Alauddīn-i-Khiljī," although, at the very first page of Part III. of the "*Contributions*" referred to, the word Khiljī is called *an adjective*.

In another place, I find, "A'zam Khān" vide *Khān-i-A'zam* [see example of *izāfat* previously given], and we find "Khān-i-A'zam" accordingly, but Mīr-i-'Adl [as I should write it] is not correct according to Mr. Blochmann's theory: it must be "*Mīr 'Adl*." For example, I will give a list of some of the titular names and patronymics, and Mr. Blochmann's *different ways* of writing them.—

"Chingiz Khān" in histories called "Qaān i Buzurg"; Čadr Jahān Muftī requires no *izāfat*, but "Muftī-i-Ma-malik" and "Umarā-i-Kibār"; "Khān Khānān" and "Khān-khānān" require none "Khān-i-Kalān" and "Khān-i-A'zam" require it, "Khān 'Ālam Fīrūzjang," "Nuğrat-jang" and "Khān Zaman" require none "Rustam-i-Zamān," Tūzak-i-Jahāngirī, and Farang-i-Jahāngirī want it; but Bahār-i-Dānīsh from me would be a dangerous innovation too, and *my* "*Shāh-i-Jahān*" is dangerous and *un-Persian*, but "*Malikah i Jahān*" is not!!; "A'caf Khān 'Abdul Majīd" requires no *izāfat*, but *the same person* "Abdul Majīd-i-A'caf Khān" requires it; Sulaimān Kararānī [by-the-bye, there is *no such name*] requires no *izāfat*, but, a little farther on, it requires to be written "Sulaimān-i-Kararānī"!

I could multiply these examples *ad infinitum*.

"Burdan-kot may be due north of Bagura (Bogra) in Long. 89° 28', Lat. 25° 8' 25", close to Govindganj, on the Karataya River," but I fail to find it in the 119th Sheet of the Indian Atlas; but great changes must have taken

place since Minhāj-ud-Dīn wrote, when "a river" flowed in front of *his* Burdan-koṭ, "of vast magnitude, the name of which is Bag-matī; and, *when it enters the country of Hindūstān*, they style it, in the Hindūī dialect, Samund (ocean) and, in magnitude, breadth, and depth, it is three times more than the river Gang" [see page 561], and the Karataya must therefore have grown "small by degrees and beautifully less."

I did not "*identify* Maksadah:" My words [note 4, page 576] are "the Maxabad *probably* of the old Maps," &c.

Mr. Blochmann at page 142 kindly recommends me to Mr. Thomas's "INITIAL COINAGE OF BENGAL," regarding the reigns of "Muhammad Bakhtyār's" immediate successors; but as I have the account of "Minhāj-ud-Dīn," "*the sole authority for the period*," and some others, I can dispense with it, and have already done so in my Translation. Perhaps some coins of Muḥammad bin Bakht-yār may yet come to light.

I beg further to notice here, now that I am on the subject of coins, that, although the Shansabānī rulers, and some of their freed-men after them, used the title of "KASIM-I-AMIR-UL-MOMININ," it did not follow that they "*shared their property*" with the "Commander of the Faithful," as Mr. Blochmann imagines from his remarks on Thomas's readings of rare Bengal Coins, at page 203 of the Society's *Proceedings* for 1872. Our author's derivation of the title will be found at page 315 of this Translation. See also page 368, and the Shams-ul-Lughat wherein the word is also explained, but it is evidently of Arabic derivation.

## APPENDIX D.

*On the date of the capture of the city of Adwand Bihār by Malik Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn, Muḥammad, son of Bakht-yār-ud-Dīn, the Khalj, page 551.*

THE next matter is the conquest of Bihār by Muḥammad, bin Bakht-yār, the Khalj, which Mr. Thomas fixes at 599 H. on the authority, Mr. Blochmann "believes," of the Tāj-ul-Ma'āşir [ELLIOT'S version probably], which states that Kuṭb-ud-Dīn took Kālinjar in that year; but the MSS. of the Tāj-ul-Ma'āşir examined by me, unfortunately, have that same stubborn سبع و خمسين and what makes the date still more doubtful سبع و خمسين—viz. : سبع و خمسين which, from the want of diacritical points, may be 577, 579, 597, or 599, just as the reader chooses to render the words.

At page 523 of this Translation [note, para. 2] I have noticed that "it is astonishing that the Musalmāns remained quiet for *six years*," assuming that 599 H. was the correct year in which Kālinjar was taken, which, I add, "was the same year in which Sulṭān Ghīyāş-ud-Dīn died," but, from the examination of these four MSS. of the Tāj-ul-Ma'āşir again, I am in doubt whether 597 H. is not the most correct according to that work. Minhāj-ud-Dīn says the Sulṭān died in 599 H., but, as I have noticed in note 4, page 383, some authors give 597 H., and some 598 H. as the date of his death.

Those who suppose that "Bengal was conquered" [the surprise and capture of Nūdiāh I refer to] in 599 H. do not consider how Muḥammad, bin Bakht-yār, could have "reigned," as he is said to have done, "*twelve years*," seeing that he was assassinated in 602 H.

I am told that I am mistaken, according to my own authorities, in connexion with the very doubtful date in the Tāj-ul-Ma'āşir above referred to. Mr. Blochmann says, page 134, Part III. of his "*Contributions*":—

(1) That Muḥammad Bakhtyār appeared before Qutbuddin in *Dihli*, and was rejected by reason of his humble condition.

According to Major Raverty, Dihlī was occupied in 589 H.<sup>1</sup>, hence Muhammad Bakhtyār must have been rejected in or after 589 H.

(2) After his rejection, Muhammad Bakhtyār goes to Badāon where Hizabr gives him a fixed salary.

(3) *After some time*, Muhammad Bakhtyār goes to Audh, where he obtains certain fiefs near the Bihār frontier. He now undertakes plundering expeditions, which continue, according to the printed text, for *one or two years*.

In a foot-note is added, "Major Raverty has left this out."

(4) He invades Southern Bihār<sup>2</sup> and takes the town of Bihār. He then goes to Dihlī, where he remains for some-time at Qutb's court.

(5) The second year after his conquest of Bihār, he sets out for Bengal, and takes Nadiya.

Now how is it possible, with these five chronological particulars, that Muhammad Bakhtyār could have left Bihār, as Major Raverty says, in 589 H.? [A foot-note has, "Major Raverty says that Muhammad Bakhtyār presented himself to the *Sultān* at *Lāhor*, but the text has Dihlī (page 549).] It would, indeed, be a close computation if we allowed but five years for the above events, *i. e.* if we fixed the conquest of Bengal as having taken place in 594 H., or A.D. 1198."

To this my reply is that "the text [page 549] says *not one word* about "Muhammad Bakhtyār" presenting himself before "*the Sultān* at *Lāhor*" ["*the Sultān*" in this instance was a *slave*, continued a slave during his master's lifetime, and did not obtain his freedom and the title of Sultān until 605 H.—only *about fifteen years after this time!* See page 389 of Translation, and corresponding place in the original]. The words in the Translation, and in the Text, are, that "Muhammad-i-Bakht-yār presented himself *before the Muster-Master at Dihlī*," and so, the probability is, that Malik Kutb-ud-Din was at Lāhor, as I have stated in note 6, page 550, *on the authority of another writer*, and Muhammad, *bin Bakht-yār*, straightway went to Husām-ud-Dīn, Ughul-Bak

If looked at in a different light, although the time seems very short, it is not so utterly impossible for Muhammad, *bin Bakht-yār*, to have waited on Kutb-ud-Dīn at Lāhor, or gone to Ughul-Bak, as the case may be, proceeded to Awadh, have been sent to Bhiūli and Bhagwat, have taken

<sup>1</sup> Early in 589 H. the second month probably.

<sup>2</sup> It should have been stated above that his fiefs were *close* to the frontier of South Bihār, as in this Translation.

Bihār which only required a party of 200 horse-men, in fact, it may be said Muḥammad *bin* Bakht-yār took it alone, and might have occupied him a couple of weeks, or even say a month from his fiefs, a distance of under 200 miles as the crow flies, have gone to Dihlī to Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn in 589 H., or to Mahobah, as the case may be, and have invaded Bengal the following year, for "*the second year*" means the following year—I quote my authors as I find them. That in the *following year after* 589 H., he took Nūdiāh, agrees with the statement of Shīām Parshad, whose work Mr. Blochmann, of course, has referred to; but he appears not to have noticed the statement of Minhāj-ud-Dīn at page 556 of this Translation [page 10. of the printed text], that when Muḥammad *bin* Bakht-yār returned from the presence of Ḳuṭb-ud-Dīn, *he* subdued Bihār, thus contradicting his previous statement.

The only thing I can blame myself for in this matter is, that I did not mention in a note, that the printed text, which at one time is so utterly "untrustworthy," and then so trustworthy, contained the words "*matters went on in this way for one or two years*" after the words "and ravaged that territory," at page 551 of this Translation. The reason why I did not do so is, that, in all probability, I did not look at the printed text here, or that it escaped my attention, otherwise I certainly should have done so: I think I have noticed the printed text pretty often, when *right* as well as when *wrong*. I had no object not to do so: I had built up no theory or made statements anywhere else that I wished to support. I might also have added that the two MSS. on which that printed text is based—two of the three worst of those collated—contain the same words, and that other collated MSS. *had no such words*.

I would, however, remark here that I did not profess to translate the Calcutta Printed Text, but to translate the work from MSS., and as advertised on the covers of the Society's publications.

Why the expression "some years before 601 H." can make it clear ["Contributions," page 135] that Nūdiāh "*must have been taken about 594 H. or 595 H. i. e. in A.D. 1198 or 1199,*" any more than *about 591, 2, 3 or even 596 or 7*, I am at a loss to understand. But one thing, at least, is very clear—that the year 599 H. for the conquest of Bengal, even "as consistent with the best authorities," is utterly impossible.

Another theory is then raised. Although it is clear to Mr. Blochmann that Nūdiāh "*must have been taken in 594 or 595 H.,*" the statement contained in the Tāj-ul-Ma'āṣir

[*Firishtah*, who merely copies from his immediate predecessors, more particularly, is a *very* trustworthy authority to quote], that Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār waited on Kutb-ud-Dīn at Mahobah, in 599 H.—a doubtful date in that work, as before stated, which may be 597 H., and *four or five years after* Mr. Blochmann says Bengal was conquered—“involves no contradiction as far as chronology is concerned.” No, not in the least, even though our author, Minhāj-ud-Dīn states, that Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār waited on Kutb-ud-Dīn *before* he surprised Nūdiah! With that city Bengal—or rather Lakhanawati—fell. There is no mention of any fighting after; and so, if it is correct according to the Tāj-ul-Ma‘āsir, that Muhammad-i-Bakht-yār only waited on Kutb-ud-Dīn at Mahobah, in 599 H., not from AWADH and BIHAR as incorrectly rendered, in ELLIOT’S version [page 232, vol. ii.], but from نودیه—the points are thus given, according to the text of the Tāj-ul-Ma‘āsir, I now have before me—that city could only have been taken *after* that time—599 H. See also foot-note page 134, of the “Contributions,” in which it is contended that نودیه—as Minhāj-ud-Dīn writes it—cannot be correct, because the Calcutta Text has نودیه!

The author of the Tabakāt-i-Akbarī, like some others, takes Muhammad, son of Bakht-yār, from the presence of Mu‘izz-ud-Dīn *direct* to Husām-ud-Dīn, Ughal-Bak, and says, that Muhammad-i-Bakht-yār, when subsequently he came to Kutb-ud-Dīn’s presence, “was deputed to conquer Lakhanawati.” The Tazkirāt-ul-Mulūk also takes Muhammad-i-Bakht-yār *direct* from Ghaznīn to Ughal-Bak, and states that he took Bihār before he went to Kutb-ud-Dīn. See page xxiv of this.

“The time fixed upon by Mr. Thomas for the conquest of Bengal is 599 H., that is, *four or five years after* the time assumed by Mr. Blochmann, while I have stated, according to my author, that it was the year following 589 H., that is 590 H.—but *three or four years before* Mr. Blochmann’s chosen time. Mr. Thomas is only “a little too late:” mine is “impossible as being *too early*.” Probably Mr. Blochmann did not notice that at page 340 of the *Ro. As. Journal* vol. vi. for 1873, Mr. Thomas has again changed his opinion, and says that “the first occupation of Bengal by Muhammad Bakhtyār Khilji,” was “in 600 A.H.” As Muhammad-i-Bakht-yār is said to have held the territory of Lakhanawati for *twelve years*, and was assassinated in 602 H., how is it possible that the conquest of Bengal could have taken place in either 599 H. or 600 H.?



# INDEX

## IN TWO PARTS.

### PART I, HISTORICAL AND BIBLIOGRAPHICAL.

(b stands for *ibn*; n for *footnote*).

#### A.

- Ahākāe Khān** b **Hulākū Khān**, 1212 n, 1287 n  
**Ahar Khān**, the Ilbari, 800 and n 7  
**Abars**, tribe of the, 961 n.  
**Abātāe**, the Nūyin, 1287 n.  
**'Abbās II**, the Ṣafawī, **Shāh**, ix.  
**'Abbās** b **'Abd-ul-Mughalib**, Progenitor of the Abbasides. 1260.  
**'Abbās Sarwārī**, 537 n  
**'Abbās** b **Shīq** b **Muhammad i-Sūri**, 322 n, 329, 330, 331 and n 3, 332 and n 3,—app xx.  
**'Abbās** b **Shams-ud-Dīn Muḥammad**, 429 n 1, 434 n, 436 n 5  
**Abbasides**, the, House or Family of **'Abbās**, xxxiii, 1, 11, 55 n 1, 160, 209, 215, 217 n, 218 and n, 219 n 7, 365 n 4, 311 and n 2, 312 and n 1, 316 n, 354 n 5, 893 n 1100 n 1, 1229 n 8, 1230 n, 1232 n, 1246 n, 1241 n, 1243 n, 1253 n 4, 1254 n, 1255 n, 1259 n 3, 1260 n, 1275 n 3  
**Abbott**, 76 n.  
**Abdālī Afghāns**, the, 1022 n.  
**'Abd ul-'Aziz** b **Nūḥ** b **Naṣr**, **Sāmānī**, 45  
**'Abd-ul-Ghaffar**, the Historian, 334 n, 328 n.  
**'Abd-ul-Haṣ**, **Maulawī**, 1258 n 9.  
**'Abd ul-Hakk**, author of the **Akḥbār-ul-Akhyār**, xxx.  
**'Abd ul-Kāsim** b **Sallām**, **Imām**, 14.  
**'Abd ul-Khālīq** the **Jarjānī**, **Imām**, xix, 104,—app xix  
**'Abd-ul-Kulī** b **Marrad**, of the **Tabatabāh**, 7  
**'Abdu'l-lāh**, **Khwārazm Shāh**, 232 n.  
**Abdu'llah** b **'Abbas**, 1258  
**Abdu'llah** b. **'Abdu'llah** b **Tāhīr**, 14 n 4  
**'Adn'llah** b **Ashkūn**, **Khwārazm Shāh**, 38 and n 6, 23 n  
**'Abdu'llah-i-Khurdād bīh**, See under **Ibn Khurdād bīh**.

'Abdu'l-lah-i-Sāliḥ, *Shijzi*, 16.  
 'Abdu'l-lah b. Tāhir, 10 n 5, 12 n 3,  
 13 and n 8 and 9, 14 and n 4,  
 27 n 6, 28 and n 7.  
 'Abdu'l-lah b. Ziyād, 901 n.  
 'Abdu'l Malik b. Marwān, 337 n 6  
 'Abdu'l Malik b. Nūḥ b. Maṣṣūr,  
 Rāmīnī, 29, 44, 50 and n 3 and  
 4, 52 and n and n 8 and 1, 54,  
 80 n, 908 n.  
 'Abdu'l Malik b. Nūḥ b. Naṣr, Rāmī-  
 nī, 29, 38, 40 and n 2, 41 and n 6  
 and 8, 54, 70.  
 'Abdu'l Manāṣir b. Musta'ym  
 'Abbāsī, 1249 n.  
 'Abdu'l Manāṣir b. Musta'ym  
 'Abbāsī, 1249 n.  
 'Abdur-Raḥīm b. Muḥammad b.  
 Sultān Maḥmūd Ghaznawī, 90 n  
 4, 91.  
 'Abd-ur-Raḥmān, administrator of  
 Khitāo, 1140 n 7, 1152 n.  
 'Abd-ur-Raḥmān Jafarī'nī, *Shakh*:  
 299 n.  
 'Abd-ur-Raḥmān b. Muḥammad b.  
 Sultān Maḥmūd Ghaznawī, 91.  
 'Abd-ur-Raḥmān b. Musta'ym 'Ab-  
 bāsī, 1249 n.  
 'Abd-ur-Rashid, 'Izz-ud-Daulah b.  
 Sultān Maḥmūd Ghaznawī, 68,  
 98 and n 5, 6 and 8, 99 and n and  
 n 1, 100 and n 5, 132 n 6 901 n  
 'Abd-ur-Razzāq, Matizī, *Shakh*,  
 xvi.  
 'Abd-ur-Razzāq b. Sultān Maṣ'ūd,  
 95 n 7.  
 Abel, of Scripture, 596 n 1. See  
 also Hābil.  
 Abghā Khān b. Hulāku Khān, xlvii,  
 163 n 3.  
 Abhyantara-Charya, the, 691 n  
 Abīkah, See Anīkah Bigi

Abī b. Shāliḥ, 5.  
 Abkah, the Nā-in, 1047, 1074.  
 Abraham, ul-Aghram b. Hasan-aḡ-  
 Şabbāḥ, 7.  
 Abraham-i-Zu'l Manār b. Hārīq of  
 the Tabābī'ah, 6.  
 Abraham, the Patriarch. See under  
 Ibrāhīm.  
 Abū 'Alī, general of Sultān Ghiyā-  
 ud-Dīn Maḥmūd, 434 n.  
 Abū 'Alī b. 'Abdu'l-lah, al-Bal'amī,  
 42 n 9, 44 n 4, 58 n 3  
 Abū 'Alī-i-Hasan, Dilamī, 55 n 1,  
 61 n 4, 63 and n 6.  
 Abū 'Alī b. Ilyās, Amīr, 87 n, 56  
 and n 2.  
 Abū 'Alī-i-Kas-Khusrau b. 'Izz-ul-  
 Mulk, 66 n 7.  
 Abū 'Alī-i-Lawīk, 73, 166 n, 320 n 3.  
 Abū 'Alī b. Mémūn, al-Farighānī, 64  
 n 8, 233 n.  
 Abū 'Alī b. Muḥammad-i-Sūrī, 322 n,  
 324, 325, 329, 330,—app ris, xx.  
 Abū 'Alī-i-Simjūr, 79 n 1, 45 and n 8,  
 46 and n 4, 47 and n 8, 48 and n  
 n 2 and 4, 74 n 2, 75 n 4, 902 n,  
 903 n.  
 Abū Bakr; Eaverty writes Abū  
 Bīkr in all instances. \*  
 Abu-Bīkr aḡ-Şiddīq, the 1st Khali-  
 fah, 223 and n 3.  
 Abi-Bīkr i-'Abd-ul-Karīm, Ut-Tā-  
 -i'n-L'illah, 61  
 Abu-Bīkr-i-Lawīk, 71 and n 5, 72 n 6.  
 Abu Bīkr-i-Maraghānī, Amīr, 1067  
 n, 1039 n 7, 1042 n 6, 1049 n 2,  
 1062, 1064 n, 1199 n. See also  
 under Rukn-ud-Dīn  
 Abū-Bīkr b. Muḥammad, Atā-bak,  
 172 n 3, 173, 249 and n 3  
 Abū Bīkr b. Musta'ym 'Abbāsī,  
 Amīr, 1239 n 3, 1230, 1232, 1233,

- 1233, 1245, 1246 n 5, 1247, 1248, 1249, and n, 1251, 1252, 1254.
- Abū-Bikr b. Sa'd b. Zangī, Atā-bak, 177, 178 and n 7, 179, 180 n 5 and 6, 239 n 2, 295 and n 6, 296 n, 299, 1116 and n 9, 1119 n 1, 1228, 1234 n 8.
- Abū-Bikr-i-Šālih, Khwājah, 102 n 4.
- Abū Dakur, 434 n, 502 n 6, 526 n.
- Abū-Hanifah an-Nu'mān b. Šābit, Imām, 190 and n 2, 237 and n 1, 264, 513, 646.
- Abū Hasan Agh'ari, 613 n 2.
- Abū Ibrāhīm, Sāmānī, 37 n.
- Abū Ibrāhīm-i-Ismā'il b. Nūḥ, Sāmānī, lvii, 51 n 6, 52 n 1 See also under Al-Muntaḡir, Sāmānī.
- Abū Ishāq, the Isākhurī. See Al-Isākhurī.
- Abū Ishāq Ibrāhīm b. Ismā'il Sāmānī, 33.
- Abū Ishāq i-Tāhir, 4 n, 71 n 5.
- Abū Ja'far Fāriḡhūnī, 233 and n 7.
- Abū Ja'far Muḥammad al-Bāḡir, 32 n 6.
- Abū Kālīnjār Šamsām-nd-Daulah, Al-Marzabān, 64 n 1. See also under al-Marzabān.
- Abū Kālīnjār b. Sulṭān-nd-Daulah, Dīlāmī, 93 n 8.
- Abū Kurrah, Šābit b. Sinān, aṣ-Šābi, 60 n 7.
- Abū Lahab, 1159.
- Abū Maṣṣūr b. 'Abd-uz-Razzāq, 40 n 4, 42, 71 n 5.
- Abū Maṣṣūr-i-'Azīs, the Wasir, 48 and n 5, 49.
- Abū Maṣṣūr-i-Jihānī, 36 n 9.
- Abū Maṣṣūr Muḥammad ibn-ul-Azīs, 40.
- Abū Muḥammad b. Abū Naṣr, the Shār, 80 n 5, 341 n 6.
- Abū Muḥammad Maṣṣūr-i-Ismā'il, Sāmānī, 33.
- Abū Mūsā Agh'ari, 613 n 2.
- Abū Mūsā-i-Hārūn, Shihāb-nd-Daulah Bughrā Khān, 46 and n 8, 903 n, 903 n See also under Bughrā Khān.
- Abū Muslim, the Marwasi, 311 and n 1 and 2, 693 n, 694 n, 915 n. Also called Abū Muslim al-Khurāsānī.
- Abū Naṣr, Farāhī, 125 n 4.
- Abū Naṣr b. Abū-i-Hūr, Fāriḡhūnī, 233 n.
- Abū Naṣr-i-Aḥmad, Khwājah, 123 n.
- Abū Naṣr-i-Aḥmad, Sāmānī, 33 and n 3, 34, 35, 54, 185 n.
- Abū Naṣr-i-Aḥmad b. 'Alī, the Ilak-Khān, 902 n.
- Abū Naṣr-i-Muḥṭān, Khwājah, 86 n, 89 n, 92 and n 3, 93, 106 n, 116 n 2, 120 n 5, 131 n 7.
- Abū Naṣr b. Rāshid, the Shār, 80 n 5, 341 n 6.
- Abū Rihān al-Birūnī, 77 n, 78 n, 34 n 8, 231 n 2, 232 n, 451 n, 1046 n 3, 1216 n.
- Abū Sahlān, tribe of, 1003 and n 4.
- Abū Sa'id, Prince, 1236 n.
- Abū Sa'id-i-'Abd-ul-Hayy b. Zuhāk, the Gardozī, 301 n, 302 n, 304 n, 305 n, 1043 n 1.
- Abū Sa'id-i-'Abu'l Khayr, Shaikh, 142.
- Abū Sa'id-i-'Abd'ullah of Baiḡā, Kāgi See under al-Baiḡāwī.
- Abū Sa'id-i-'Aḡ-Sauḡur, 303 n 1, 204 n.
- Abū Sa'id-i-Bakir b. Al-Malik, Al-Farḡhānī, 40.
- Abū Sa'id b. Hāiyah, 536 n.

- Abū Ṣalīb b. 'Abd-al-Malik, Sāmānī, 41 n 8, 42  
 Abū Ṣalīb-i-Manṣūr b. Ishāq, Sāmānī, 83, 84 and n 7, 186 n.  
 Abū Ṣalīb Naṣr-i-'Isma'īl, Sāmānī, 83  
 Abū Shajān b. Marzubān, 8.  
 Abū Sulimān-i-Dā'ūd, al-Fanākatā.  
     See al-Fanākatā  
 Abū Sulimān-i-Dā'ūd-i-Jaghar Beg  
     See Dā'ūd-i-Jaghar Beg.  
 Abū Yaṣīd, Banjāmī, Shaiḫh, 419, 420, 703 n 6.  
 Abū Zakariyā Yahyā-i-'Isma'īl, Sāmānī, 33, 37 n.  
 Abū Zakar, See Abū Dekur  
 Abū Zanjar, See Bū-Zanjar  
 Abū'l 'Abbās-i-Aḥmad b. Ḥasan b. Abū Bīkr b. 'Alī, 1200 n  
 Abū'l 'Abbās : Aḥmad b. Musta'ṣim, 'Abbāsī, 1240 n  
 Abū'l 'Abbās al-Faḡl al-Iṣfahānī, 73 n 9  
 Abū'l 'Abbās b. Māmūn al-Farighūnī, 84 n 8, 85 n, 120 n 8, 232 n  
 Abū'l 'Abbās Muḥammad ibn al-Jarrah, 37 n  
 Abū'l 'Abbās-i-Shih, the Sipāh Sālār, 318, 366, 367, 369, 371 and n 4, 413 n 1, 425 n 9, 447 n 8  
 Abū'l 'Abbās-i-Tāgh, 44 and n 2, 45 n 7.  
 Abū'l 'Alā-i-Aḥwal, 116 n 3, 117 n  
 Abū'l Farah, poet, 912 n  
 Abū'l Faraj 969 n 1, 1010 n, 1017 n, 1018 n  
 Abū'l Faḡh of Multān, 85 n  
 Abū'l Faḡh Muḥammad b. Sum, Sultan, 301  
 Abū'l Fawāris i-Makan, 57, 63 and n 4  
 Abū'l Faḡl i-'Alamī, li, 73 n 8, 79 n, 294 n 2, 295 n, 455 n, 466 n, 529 n, 4, 538 n, 540 n, 554 n 2, 559 n 2, 565 n 1, 568 n, 582 n 6, 605 n 8, 890 n, 893 n, 894 n, 895 n, 896 n, 897 n,—app xi  
 Abū'l Faḡl i-'Aziz, Siyāsi, 26 n 8.  
 Abū'l Faḡl Baihaḡi, See Baihaḡi.  
 Abū'l Faḡl al-Bal'amī, 33 n 1, 38 n 5.  
 Abū'l Faḡl Kirmānī, Khwājah, 120.  
 Abū'l Faḡl Muḥammad b. 'Alī, 243 n.  
 Abū'l Faḡl Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥākim Sarakhsī, 26.  
 Abū'l Faḡl Sūrī, 122 n 3, 123 n.  
 Abū'l Fidā, 94 n 2, 535 n, 920 n, 922 n, 966 n 6, 984 n, 996 n, 1009 n.  
 Abū'l Ghāṣi Bahādur Khān, 525 n, 540 n, 806 n, 869 n 2, 870 n, 872 n, 873 n, 875 n, 876 n, 877 n, 879 n, 880 n, 881 n, 883 n, 884 n, 888 n, 890 n, 892 n, 893 n, 894 n, 895 n, 896 n, 897 n, 899 n, 943 n, 944 n, 945 n, 946 n, 949 n, 950 n, 952 n, 956 n, 972 n, 981 n, 983 n, 987 n 2, 993 n, 1020 n, 1028 n, 1049 n 2, 1086 n, 1088 n, 1089 n, 1091 n, 1097 n 6, 1140 n, 1142 n.  
 Abū'l Ḥasan i-'Abī Shujā', Dīlāmī, b. Fanā Khawāra, 65  
 Abū'l Ḥasan i-'Alī b. al-Aḡir, See Ibn al-Aḡir  
 Abū'l Ḥasan-i-'Alī 'Imād ud-Dawlah, 55 n 1, 58 n 2, 59 n 5  
 Abū'l Ḥasan-i-Buwāh, 40, 47, 49 n 4, 56, 59 See also under Fakhr-ud-Dawlah  
 Abū'l Ḥasan i-Haṣam b. Muḥammad i-Nabī See Ibn Haṣam  
 Abū'l Ḥasan Ilak i-Naṣr, 51, 902 n, 903 n  
 Abū'l Ḥasan-i-Ḥalaf, 325 n, 327 n, 328 n  
 Abū'l Ḥasan-i-Naṣr, Sāmānī, 85 and n 5 and 6.

- Abu'l Hasan-i-Simjūr, 41 n, 42 n 3,  
 44, 45, 71 n 3, 75 and n 4  
 Abu'l Hasan b 'Umro al-Fāriḥī, 42  
 n 3, 71 n 5.  
 Abu'l Hayjā, 59 and n 4  
 Abu'l Hifā b Khālaf, 186 n.  
 Abu'l Husain i-Aḥmad, Mu'izz-ud-  
 Daulah, Dihlī, 53 n 1, 58 and n  
 9, 59 and n 5, 60 n 8.  
 Abu'l Kāsim-i-Abd'allah b Khur-  
 dādib. See Ibn Khurdādib.  
 Abu'l Kāsim-i-Nūh, Sāmānī, See  
 Nūh b Manṣūr b Nūh Sāmānī  
 Abu'l Kāsim b. Ballāh, Imām, 14  
 and n 2.  
 Abu'l Kāsim-i-Simjūr, 49 and n 9,  
 50 n 4, 50 n 5, 51 n.  
 Abu'l Khair, 960 n, 964 n 2  
 Abu'l Ma'ālī Kulī-i-Tamghā, 907 n.  
 Abu'l Ma'ṣhar-i-Munajjim, 1  
 Abu'l Muṣaffar Nāṣir-ud-Dīn  
 Maḥmūd Shāh b Iyāl-timish, See  
 under Nāṣir-ud-Dīn  
 "Account of Caubul," Elphinstone's,  
 574 n  
 'Account of Zila Dinajpur," 559 n.  
 Achār Diw, 691 n  
 'Ad b 'Aq, 303  
 Adam, of Scripture, 1, 2, 303, 304 n  
 2, 590 n 1.  
 Adamish, the slave, 171.  
 Adisur, 568 n 1  
 Aḥ Khān b Aghūz Khān, 890 n, 891 n  
 Actkin, of the Tātar, 1, 493.  
 Actkin of Hīrat, Malik, 373 n.  
 Afghāns, the, v, xii, xiii, xiv, xv, 1r,  
 74 n 2, 86 n, 120 n 5, 187 n 3, 304 n  
 3, 314 n 6, 317 n 5, 321 n 4, 322 n,  
 333 n 7, 337 n 6, 352 n 3, 397 n 1,  
 435 n, 439 n 4, 443 n 449 n 9, 463 n  
 466 n 1, 477 n, 499 n, 506 n 1, 509 n,  
 511 n, 512 n, 528 n 3, 533 n, 538 n,  
 540 n, 548 n 3, 622 n, 736 n 5, 858  
 and n 4, 873 n, 876 n, 885 n, 1043 n  
 1, 1075 n, 1078 n 3, 1132 n, 1132 n,  
 1171 n, 1203 n, 1208 n, 1295 n 9,—  
 app xi, xii.  
 "Afghān Grammar," Raverty's, 187  
 n 3.  
 Afghān Kutb, the, 632 n.  
 "Afghānistān and the Afghāns,"  
 Bellew's, 1016 n 3, 1061 n 7.  
 Afranj, See Farang.  
 Afrāyāb, 3, 105 n, 117 n, 309 n, 561  
 n 9, 883 n, 901 and n, 905 n, 910 n,  
 914 n, 919 n, 923 n  
 Afrāyābī Malik, the, 1, 116, 260 and  
 n 7, 264 n, 480, 900 and n 4, 901 n,  
 906 n, 907 n, 908 n, 909 n, 910 n,  
 912 n, 914 n, 915 n, 916 n, 918 n,  
 919 n, 923 n, 923 n, 924 n, 925 n,  
 930 n, 932 n, 935 n 3, 943 n, 965 n,  
 —app xviii.  
 Afridūn, 3, 305, 306 and n 5, 307  
 and n, 308 and n 2, 309 and n,  
 506, 883 n.  
 Afrikiā b Abrahāh, of the Tabābī'ah  
 of Yaman, 6.  
 Afzal Khān, Khatak, 632 n  
 Afzal-ud-Dīn, the Sāmānī, Imām,  
 1197.  
 Aghri, signification of, 1041.  
 Aghrūh, the slave, 996 n.  
 Aghūl, the Hājib, 1030 n.  
 Aghūl Shāhibb Muḥammad-i-Takīh,  
 286 n 6.  
 Aghūh, the Arpalā, 1231 n.  
 Aghūh, the slave, 996 n.  
 Aghūz, the Ghīnī, 907 n.  
 Aghūz Khān, Sovereign of the  
 Mughal Imāk, 871 n, 873 n, 876 n,  
 877 n, 878 n, 879 n, 890 n, 891 n,  
 892 n, 893 n, 901 n, 892 n, 914 n,  
 896 n, 951 n.

- Agha Malik**, 1118 n 9.  
**Ahl-i-Bait**, the, 1229 n 8.  
**Ahmad**, another name of **Muhammad**, 1161.  
**Ahmad of Khujand**, the merchant, 371 n.  
**Ahmad, Khwajah**, a Muslim saint of Turkistan, 932 n.  
**Ahmad, Sayyid**, author of *Asar-us-Sanadid*, 718.  
**Ahmad b. 'Abdu'llah Khujistani**, 23 n 1.  
**Ahmad b. 'Ali b. Nugh-Tigin**, 98 n 8.  
**Ahmad al-'Alkani**, Wasir of al-Musta'min, 1229 and n 8 See also Ibn-'Alkani.  
**Ahmad b. Asad Samani**, 24, 27 and n 6, 28, 29 and n 9, 54.  
**Ahmad**, the Bitikchi, 1195 n.  
**Ahmad-i-Harun** general of Ismail b. Asad Samani, 32 and n 7.  
**Ahmad b. Hasan**, Wali of Kashghar, 907 n.  
**Ahmad b. Hasan al-Maimandi**, *Khwajah* 92 n 3, 120 n 5.  
**Ahmad b. Ismail Samani**, 33, 34 and n 6, 35 and n 6 916 n.  
**Ahmad-i-Kamaj**, 156 n 9, 375 n.  
**Ahmad Khan**,—Sultan Sikandar of Delhi, 511 n, 591 n.  
**Ahmad Khan b. Jafar Khan**, of Samarkand, 119 n.  
**Ahmad Khan b. Khur Khan**, 106 n.  
**Ahmad Khan b. Sulman Khan**, 147 n 9, 906 n.  
**Ahmad Khujandi**, *Sayyid* xviii, 270 n 7.  
**Ahmad b. Muhammad Kazwini**, 152 n 2.  
**Ahmad b. Muhammad b. Khalaf**, *Sayyid* 185 n.  
**Ahmad b. Muhammad b. Sultan**, *Mahmud*, 91, 95 n 6, 96 n 1.  
**Ahmad, Nikudar Agha**, Sultan, 1293 n 2.  
**Ahmad-i-Sa'd**, the *Salar*, 651 n 7, 751.  
**Ahmad b. Sahl**, 185 n.  
**Ahmad**, the *Salar*, ruler of Kalinjar 1074 n.  
**Ahmad b. Salih Sijzi**, 16.  
**Ahmad-i-Simjur**, *Dawati*, 35 n 4.  
**Ahmad-i-Shoran**, 573.  
**Ahmad b. Tahir**, 'Abbasi, 1259 n 8.  
**Ahmad-i-'Uman**, *Nisawi*, See under *Jalal-ud-Din-i-Majd-ul-Mulk*.  
**'Ali Khan b. Agha Khan**, 880 n, 881 n.  
**Agha b. Awang Khan**, 1193 n.  
**'Ali-i-Akbari**, the, xvi, 73 n 8, 79 n, 455 n, 535 n, 554 n 9, 568 n, 592 n 6, 587 n 4, 592 n, 603 n, 618 n, 6, 650 n 1, 694 n 4 698 n 8, 858 n 4,—app vi, ix, xi, xvi, xxi.  
**'Ali-ul-Mulk**, *Musavi-i-Agha'i*, 613 and n 2, 631.  
**'Ali-ul-Mulk Muhammad Junaidi**, 603 and n 2, 604 n 4.  
**'Ali-ul-Mulk Saruni**, 390.  
**Al-yatim**, *Nasir ud Din*, 612 and n 6 and 9, 627 and n 4, 647.  
**Al-yah b. Shadi**, *Malik al-Afari*, *Nasir ud Din*, *Abu Lashkar* i, 207 and n 9, 209 and n 9 and 1, 215 and n 9.  
**Al-yah**, the *Turkman* n *Darwesh* 657.  
**Al-yah**, *Sayyid* the, 203, 230 n, 1275 n 3 1278 n.  
**Ayub b. Balak**, 1194 n.  
**Ayub b. Daw**, 521 n.  
**Ayub b. Dawlat**, 912 n.  
**Akbarah**, *dynasty of Ajam*, 1, 5.  
**Akbar**, 174 n 70 n 81 n, 95 n 4, 449 n 9, 465 n 5, 468 n 3, 609 n 1.

- 597 n, 551 n, 559 n 2, 593 n, 598 n,  
601 n 6, 625 n 6, 645 n 2, 604 n 4,  
606 n 2, 715 n 1, 735 n 2, 663 n,  
1002 n 5.
- Akbar-Nāmah, of Fāṣi the Sarhindī,  
the, xvi, 889 n 2, 890 n, 883 n,  
885 n, 889 n, 894 n.
- Akhās Malik b. Khān Malik, 291 n.
- Akhbār-i-Shihābi, the, 391, 392 n.
- Akhāj, the. See under Khalj.
- Akhāk-i-Nāṣiri, the, 1190 n 1, 1267  
n.
- Akhān, the Atā-bak, 146 and n 2.
- Akhūnd of Suwāt, the, 1062 n 2.
- Āk Malik, a chief, 1034 n.
- Akrān Khān of Kīschak, xlvii, 240,  
See also Kadr Khān of Kīschak
- Akrān b. Shamar b. Afriḳis, of the  
Tabūbīn, 7
- Āk-Sankar b. 'Abdu'llah, the Hājib,  
173 n 4, 203 n 1, 204 n
- Āk Shunkār, a bird, 951 n
- Āk Sultān b. Muhammad-i-Takūsh,  
254 and n 3, 280 n 1, 283 and n 7,  
284, 286 n 6
- Āk-Sunkar, Amīr, 606 n 4, 636 n, 610  
and n
- Āk-Sunkar, seneschal of Lohor, 1134  
and n 1 1135
- Akt', Muḥammad-Daulah al-, 90 n 6.
- Āl-i-Tamghiy the, 115 n and n 3.
- Āl-i-Ziyār, the, 55 n 1.
- Ālāk, the Nuṣayn, 972 n, 974 n, 975 n  
5, 977 n
- Ālākush, Tazim Kurm See Chakush  
Tirm 945 n
- Ālān Kuwā, 892 n 593 n, 894 n, 902  
n, 903 n, 916 n.
- Ālamans, the, 999 n, 999 n, 1290 n 0
- Ālanji b. Taghlar, 233 n
- Ālanjik, title of Kabal Klān the  
Mughal, 890 n
- 'Alā-'ud-Daulah, Atā-bak, governor  
of Yand, 206 n.
- 'Alā-'ud-Daulah, Al-Bayānki, na-  
Simnāni, Shaiḫ, 299 n.
- 'Alā-'ud-Daulah, the Hamadāni, Say-  
yid, 995 n, 997 n
- 'Alā-'ud-Dīn Abū 'Alī b. Shujā'ud-  
Dīn, 345 346 and n 8.
- 'Alā-'ud-Dīn 'Alī b. Mardān Khalji,  
Malik, See 'Alī-i-Mardān, the  
Khalji.
- 'Alā-'ud-Dīn, the Asfahed of the  
Kabūd Jāmah, 1131 n.
- 'Alā-'ud-Dīn 'Atā Malik, the Shūb,  
1195 n
- 'Alā-'ud-Dīn Ayāz, the Zunjāni,  
xxviii, 709, 829, 821 n 6.
- 'Alā-'ud-Dīn Bahrām Shāh b. Nāṣir-  
ud-Dīn Kabachah, xxvi.
- 'Alā-'ud-Dīn Hasan b. 'Alī n 3 Sabbāh,  
1187 n 7 See also under Hasan  
aṣ-Ṣabbāh.
- 'Alā-'ud-Dīn Husain Jahān Soz b.  
'Izzud-Dīn al-Husain Ghūri, 110  
n 5, 111, 112 n 3 and 5, 113 n, 149  
and n 2, 150, 155 n 3, 237 n 8, 238  
and n 5, 301, 323 n, 333 n 6, 336 n 4,  
337 and n 8, 339, 340 and n 2, 343  
and n 3 344 and n 7, 347 and n 2,  
348 n, 349 and n, 350 and n 351  
and n, 352, 353 and n 5, 354 and n  
1, 355 and n, 356 and n 2, 357 and n  
7, 358 and n 2 and 3, 359 and n,  
360 361 and n 7, 362 and n 3, 363  
and n 4 364 and n 1, 365, 366 n 4,  
368 n, 369 and n 7, 376 and n 2, 377  
n 1 378 n 3 391, 395 n 4 413 417,  
421, 422 423 n 4, 426 n 4, 438, 439 n  
4, 442 n 443 n, 444 n, 445 and n,  
446 447 n 6 448 and n 4, 449 n.
- 'Alā-'ud-Dīn Jūnī, Malik 618 and n,  
620, 629, 633 n 5 634, 635 640

- 726, 731 and n 9, 735, 771 n, 772 n, 775 n, 776 n, 778 n, 779, 847 n 1, 910 n.
- 'Alā-ud-Dīn Kai-Kubād, the Khokhar-chief, 610 n.
- 'Alā-ud-Dīn Kai-Kubād, Sultān of Bām, ix, 298 n.
- 'Alā-ud-Dīn-i-Khulji,—app. xxi.
- 'Alā-ud-Dīn Khūr Shāh, Bādshāh of the Mulāshidāh, 1196 n.
- 'Alā-ud-Dīn Kīmāj, 371, 372, 373.
- 'Alā-ud-Dīn Maḥmūd b Jalāl ud-Dīn Hasan-i-Nau Musalmān, 1306 and n 1.
- 'Alā-ud-Dīn Mas'ūd Shāh b. Ruku-ud-Dīn Firās Shāh, of Dihli xvii, 625, 640 and n 9, 661 and n, 662, 664, 665, 666 and n, 667, 668, 669, 676, 737, 744 n 6, 747, 755 and n 3, 756, 762 and n 3, 780, 787, 790, 792, 798, 812 n 9, 813 n 5, 814 and n 2, 815 n 5, 1153, 1156, 1181 n 2.
- 'Alā-ud-Dīn Mas'ūd b. Shams ud-Dīn Muḥammad, of Bāmian, 434 and n 8, 435.
- 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad b Bahā'ud-Dīn Sām, 401 n, 414, 432 n 1 and 3, 433 and n, 434 n, 435, 437 n 7, 477 n, 493 and n, 494, 495 and n 4, 496.
- 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad b. Hasan b Muḥammad, 1190 n 1, 1192 n, 1193 n.
- 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad b Ibak Kachhi Khan, 713 and n 5.
- 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad the Khat-anī, Shahh, 984 n.
- 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad, the Malik-ul-Hūji, i, ii, 346 n 8, 391 and n 2, 392, 393, 394 and n and n 3, 395, 396, 397 and n 5 and 3, 399 and n 3, 412, 415 n 6, 417 and n 5 and 6, 418 and n 2, 419 n 5, 420, 463 n 472 n 7, 460 n 8, 492, 525 n, 100 n 9 Same as Malik Ziyā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad, Durr-i-Qhūr or the Pearl of Qhūr.
- 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad, of the Mulāshidāh of Alamūt, 1151 n.
- 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Takī Khwārazm Shāh, See under Muḥammad i-Takīsh.
- 'Alā-ud-Dīn Utas b. 'Alā-ud-Dīn al-Husain Juhān-sar, Sultān, 231 295 and n 4, 296, 299, 402 n, 404 411 n, 412 and n, 413 and n 1, 414 415 and n 4 and 8, 416 n 9; 417 418 n 2, 419 n 5, 490, 496, 626 7, 1002 n 7, 1071 n 1.
- 'Alā-ul-Mulk of Knnduz, 1023 n.
- 'Alawī of Egypt, the, 203 and n 209 and n 6, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214.
- Alb, signification of, 40 n 7.
- Alb-Armālān i-Qhāzī b. Dā'ūd-i-Jaḡhar Beg. Saljuḳi, 66 n 7, 99, 100 102 n 1 and 2, 103, 126 n 2, 12 and n 2, 123 and n 3 and 4, 12 and n 9, 125 and n 2, 126 and n 137 and n 3 and 4, 156, 174 n, 19 and n, 242 and n 1, 205 n, 206 n 914 n, 921 n.
- Alb-Armālān i-Qhāzī b. Kizil Armālā Saljuḳi, 290, 472 and n and n 9.
- Alb-Armālān b. Sultān Maḥmūd i Muḥammad Malik Shāh Saljuḳ 204 n.
- Alb i-Qhāzī of Hirat, 257 n 2.
- Alb-Tigra, Amir of Ghazna, slave of the Samanids, 27, 37 n 2, 40 n 4, 42 and n, 1 and 3, 43 and 4, 44 and n 2, 49 n 7, 51 n 5, 70 n 71 and n 3, 72 n 6, 73 n 7, 232 n 320 n 3.



- Ab-Tigin**, *Hiſt. of Abu'l 'Abbas-i-Māmūn Farqānī*, 222 n.  
**Albari**, See the **Albari** tribe, 1169.  
**Alexander, the Great**, 261 n, 295 n, 354, 378 n, 680 and n 7, 906 n, 1044 n, 1064 n 2, 1184 n, 1263 n.  
**Alexius Comnenus**, 157 n.  
**Alghu**, the **Nāyin**, 1184 n, 1293 n.  
**'Alī b. Abī Khālid**, 10 n 4.  
**'Alī b. Abī Tālib**, 7, 9, 22 n 6, 54 n 1, 81, 104 n 2, 222 and n 2, 203 and n 6, 206 n 2, 207 n, 212 n 2, 406, 506, 984 n, 995, 1125, 1224, 1243 n, 1255 n, 1260, 1282.  
**'Alī**, the **Arghūn**, **Sakān**, 1123 n.  
**'Alī**, the **Bahādur**, **Shah-nāb** of **Beghdād**, 1255 n.  
**'Alī al-Bal'amī**, See **Abū 'Alī b. 'Abd-ullāh**, **Muḥammad**, **al-Bal'amī**.  
**'Alī Bostābādī**, **Khvājah**, 723.  
**'Alī Qhatrī** or **Jatrī**, **Wālī** of **Hīrāt**, 237 and n 2, 246 n, 258 n 2, 278 n 2, 426 n 4.  
**'Alī**, the **Qhā-ūgh**, **Amir**, 150, 152.  
**'Alī**, the **Darghamī**, the **Pahlawān**, 1098 n.  
**'Alī b. Farrukh-sād b. Mas'ūd-i-Karīm**, 107.  
**'Alī**, the **Ghasnawī**, **Imām**, 1141.  
**Alī**, the **Hājib**, **governor** of **Akhlat**, 297 n, 298 n.  
**'Alī b. 'Isā-i-Māhān**, 10 and n 2 and 7, 11 n 9.  
**'Alī-i-Isma'īl**, **Sipah-Sālār**, 529 n 4, 605 and n 1.  
**'Alī b. Iyāl-Armālān**, 89 n 2.  
**'Alī Jatrī**, See **Alī Qhatrī**.  
**'Alī Karīb**, 89 n 9.  
**'Alī-i-Karmākh**, the **Sipah-Sālār**, xxi, 114 n, 454 n, 456.  
**'Alī-i-Khar-post**, See **Malik Muḥammad**, **'Alī i-Khar-post**.  
**'Alī Khweshāwand**, the **Hājib**, 88 n 7, 89 n 2 and 9, 91 n 8.  
**'Alī Kurbat**, the **Hājib**, 89 and n 9, 90.  
**'Alī-i-Laiq**, **Suffārī**, 19.  
**'Alī b. Mahmūd-i-Zangī**, **Malik-ut-Shāh**, 205 and n 6.  
**'Alī Malik**, 1186 n.  
**'Alī-i-Mardān**, the **Khaj**, 572 and n 6, 574 and n 2 and 5, 575 and n 9, 576 and n 5 and 6, 577 n, 578 and n 9, 579 and n 4 and 6, 586 and n 7, 581 n 5, 587 n 2, 610 n 7 771 n,—app xx.  
**'Alī b. Mas'ūd-i-Karīm Ghasnawī**, 107.  
**'Alī**, the **Mej**, 560, 561, 562 n, 569 n 5, 571.  
**'Alī Nāg-awri**, 549 and n 4.  
**'Alī Shāh b. Bahrām Shāh Ghasnawī**, 111.  
**'Alī Shāh b. Takīsh-i-Khwārazm Shāh**, 249 n 2, 252 and n 2 and 4, 263, 265 and n 7, 280 and n 1, 281 n 2, 400 and n 1, 401 n, 403, 405, 407 n 5 and 7, 408, 409 and n 5, 410 and n 2 and 6, 411 n, 412, 413 n 1.  
**'Alī Sher**, **Amir**, 404 n 1.  
**'Alī b. Shuja'ud-Dīn**, **Abi 'Alī Ghūrī**, 1003 n.  
**'Alī b. Sultān Ibrāhīm Ghasnawī**, 105.  
**'Alī b. Sultān Mas'ūd**, 95, 97 and n 4, 98 n 5, 6 and 8.  
**'Alī b. Tāhūr b. al-Husain**, 13 n and 8, 293 n.  
**'Alī Tigin**, **ruler** of **Bukhārā**, and one of the **Afrāsiyābī Khūna**, 121, 123 n, 904 n, 914 n.  
**'Alī-i-Zāhid**, **Amir**, 199 and n 7.  
**Alin Taichū**, **Badahah** of the **Ūrāt** tribe, 944 n.

- Alhajjah Khān b. Kiwak Khān, 678 n, 674 n.
- Alhajjah (Alminjah) b. Turk, 672 n, 673 n.
- Alipā-Ko, chinese for Artāk Bākā, 1219 n.
- Aljaktā, Nū-in, xlvii, 164, See Iljī-kdāe.
- Almās, the Hājib, Malik of Balkh, 418.
- Almeric, king of Jerusalem, 210 n, 212 n 1.
- Alminjah b. Turk b. Yāsq, 672 n, 673 n, 691 n.
- Altamsh, anglicised form of Iyāl-Timsh, which see.
- "Altān Daftar," or Golden Record, the, 691 n, 1093 n.
- Altān Khān, sovereign of Khitāe, the, 890 n, 897 n, 937, 940 n, 943, 953 and n, 954, 955 and n, 956 n, 957 n, 958 n, 959 n, 961, 962, 965, 966, 960 n 1, 1092 n, 1095, 1137 n, 1138 n, 1139 n, 1144 and n 4, 1186, 1217 n.
- Altān Khāns, sovereigns of Khitāe, the, 913 n, 936, 955 n, 1138 n 9, 1139 n, 1186 n 5.
- Altī Fakmān, the Hājib of Dā-ūd-i-Jaghar Beg, 128 n, 129 n.
- Altūn Khān, See Altān Khān
- Altun Khān of Tamghij, 270, 271.
- See also the Altān Khan, sovereign of Khitāe
- Altun Tush, the Hājib, 85 n, 120 and n 5, 121 n, 123 n, 232 n, 321 n 7.
- Altur (Atsuz) b. Hey, 87 n
- Alwand āsp, father of Luhr āsp, 303 n 9
- Amin, al, 9, 10 and n 8
- Amunjah b. Buka Khān, sovereign of the Tāttar Imak, 675 n.
- Amin Khān, governor of Bengal 772 n, 776 n.
- Amin Malik, Amin ul Malik, See under Malik Khān Yamin-ul-Malik.
- Amir-i-'Alam, the, 1227 and n 2.
- Amir-i-'Alim, the 'Ajami, 217 n.
- Amir-i-Dād, the, 476 n, 482 n, 529 n 4, 606 n 1.
- Amir-i-Hajj, the, 1244 n.
- Amir-i-Hamid, the, title of Nāḥ b. Naḥ Sāmāni, 40.
- Amir-i-Māsi, the, title of Ismā'il b. Ahmad Sāmāni, 32.
- Amir Mu'azzi, Poet-Laureate of Sultān Sanjar, 158.
- Amir-i-Sa'd b. Husām-ud-Dīn 'Akah, 1238 n 8, 1239 n.
- Amir-i-Sa'id, the, title of Naḥ b. Ahmad b. Ismā'il Sāmāni, 37, 38, 902 n.
- Amir-i Sa'id b. Sultān Mas'ūd, Ghasnawī, 95 n 7.
- Amir-i-Sadid, the, title of Manḥūr b. Nāḥ Sāmāni, 41 n 8, 44.
- Amir-i-Shahid, the, title of Abū-Naḥr-i-Ahmad b. Ismā'il Sāmāni, 34 35
- Amir Shāh b. Sultān Ibrāhīm Ghasnawī, 106
- Amir ul Umarā, the title, 56 n 1, 642 n 2.
- 'Amlek b 'Ad, 303.
- 'Amlek b Turk b Yāsq, 672 n.
- Anand pal J Jaipāl, ruler of Hind, 81 n
- Anang-pal Tun Rājah, 599 n 8
- Anbin, the Naḥ n, 1126 and n 7.
- 'Anbar-i-Habashī, 1272 n 5.
- Anboh tribe, the, 1234 and n 4.
- "Ancient History," Philip Smith n, 586 n.

Angels, the, 940 n, 943 n, 1008 n,  
1217 n, 1223 n.

Ankī-Juk Chā-ir Khān, See under  
Chā-ir Khān

Anīkah Bigi Khātān, 1003 n, 1143,  
1143 n.

Anāri, the poet, 308 n 2, 407 n 8.

Anahar b. Shaid-āp, 9.

Anāi (Iley) b. Aminjah, 875 n.

Antonia da Silva Meneses, 583 n 6.

Anwān b. 'Amīk, 308.

Anwār-i-Suhaili, the, 109 n 9.

Aoktāy, See Uktāo Kā'n.

Aolbarlang, the, a tribe or people  
of Kīfchāk 1169 n.

Aor Khān, the Khwārazmī Amir,  
1118 n 9.

Aor Khān of Lakhsawati, 736, 737.

Āor Khān b. Mughal Khān, 875 n.

Aor Khān of Rūm, 164.

Aorangiās or

Aorangiāsh or

Aormaktāsh b. Mangū Kā'n, 1318 n,  
1223 n.

Aormazd, or Hormuz, of the Sāsā-  
nīan dynasty, 4.

Apollonius of Tyana, 78 n.

Arabian Nights, the, 603 n 7, 790 n  
7, 1295 n 1.

Arabs, the, xx, xlvii, 139 n, 231 n 2,  
303 n 7, 304 and n 3, 305, 309, 329  
n, 333, 899 n, 915 n, 1003 n 4, 1021  
n 8, 1043 n 1, 1081 n 7, 1117, 1233  
n 8

Arām Shāh b. Kutb-ud-Din Ibak,  
503 n 9, 506 n 9, 528, 529 and n 4,  
530 n and n 7, 606 n 3, 608 n 8,  
614 n 8, — app. xi

Arash, the Archer, 721 and n 3,  
1058 and n 5.

Arbas, chief of the Karā Khūqān,  
911, 912 n, 927 n.

Archaeological Report, Cunnings-  
ham's, 1129 n 1, 1131 n.

Arda-Shar b. Hormuz b. Narai, Sā-  
sāni, 5.

Arda-Shar b. Sherwāsh, of the  
Akāsirah, 5.

Arda-Shar Bābakān, 4, 6.

Ardaghīr-i Dirās-Dast, 2.

Ardawān-i Akbar, of the Ashkīnīan  
dynasty of 'Ajām, 4.

Ardawān-i Asghar, of the Ashkī-  
nīan dynasty of 'Ajām, 4.

Arđā b. Atāiz, sovereign of the  
Tāttār Imāk, 875 n.

Arfakhshīd b. Sām, 6, 308 n 7, 304  
n 2.

Arfa'wā, See under Ashk, 4.

Arghūn Ākā, the Ūir-āt, Amir, 1123  
n, 1149 n, 1151 n, 1152 n, 1181 n 2,  
1196 n, 1194 n, 1195 n, 1196 n,  
1287 n.

Arboga for Irtaḡ Būkā, 1161 n 4,  
1163 n.

Aristotle, 678 n, 1184 n.

Arjāsh b. Afrīsyāb, King of Tārān,  
861 n 9.

Arjifān or Jifān b. Chingīs Khān,  
1092 n.

Arkanah, the Kūmāi concubine of  
Uktāo Kā'n, 1143 n.

Arktū, the Nūyin, 1243 n, 1263 n,  
1272 n 6, 1273 n 7, 1279 n.

Arlāta, the, 1095 n.

Armān, the Urus Amir, 1170 n.

Armanūs, Kānqar of Rūm, 134 n 9,  
136 n

Armenians, the, 1161 n 4, 1162 n.

Arrian, 1055 n

Arsalān-i Arghū b. Alb-Arsalān b.  
Da-ud-i Jagghar Beg, 143 n 2

Arsalān-i Bāiū, Officer of the Sām-  
-āniā, 81 n.

- Arsalān-i-Hājib** or  
**Arsalān-i-Jāsh**, governor of Khur-  
 -āsan, 80 n 5, 81 n, 117 n, 118 and  
 n 5, 119, 221 n 7.  
**Arsalān Khān** Abu-l-Muḡaffar, the  
 Afrāsyābi Khān, 85 n, 304 n.  
**Arsalān Khān** b. Qadr Khān, 91 n 3,  
 305 n.  
**Arsalān Khān** of Kātilīq, 1004 and n  
 9, 1007 n 2, 1053, 1054, 1055, 1061  
 n 7, 1066 n 8, 1112 n 8, 1122 n.  
**Arsalān Khān**, the Kāriūgh, 963 n,  
 969 n 1, 985 n, 986 n, 990 n.  
**Arsalān Khān** Muḥammad b. Sulīmān,  
 See Muḥammad-i-Arsalān Khān.  
**Arsalān Khān** Sanjar-i-Dhāt, Malik  
 of Awadh, 673, 695 and n 9, 699,  
 700 n 8, 703 n 7, 704 and n 5, 713  
 n 2, 766, 767, 768 and n 4, 769,  
 770, 771 n, 775 n, 776 n, 777 n,  
 779 n, 784 n, 798 and n 6, 830, 838  
 n 7, 839 n 4, 847 and n 9 and 4,  
 848 and n, 849.  
**Arsalān Malik** b. Sulṭān Malik b.  
 Maʿūd-i-Karim, 107.  
**Arsalān Shāh**, Amir, 251 n 9.  
**Arsalān Shāh** b. Maʿūd-i-Karim  
 Ghaznawī, xvi, 107 and n 7 and  
 8, 108 n 5, 147 n 8, See also Ma-  
 lik Arsālan.  
**Arsalān Shāh** b. Sulṭān Ibrāhīm  
 Ghaznawī, 108.  
**Arsalan Shāh** b. Taghril b. Muḥam-  
 mad b. Malik Shāh Saljūqī, 165  
 and n 2, 166 n 7, 170 n 8, 171 n 9,  
 175 n 8.  
**Arsh**, the Pahlawān, 1002 and n  
 3, 1025 n 2.  
**Artaxerxes Longimanus**, 2.  
**Artuk Būkhā** b. Tuli b. Chingiz Khān,  
 1092 n, 1215 and n 2, 1218 n, 1219  
 n, 1226 n, 1293 n.
- Artāq**, Muḥammad-i-Dīn, ruler of De-  
 -maḡh, 207 n 2.  
**Artāqshāh**, same as above.  
**Arwand Shāh**, 308 n 9.  
**Arwand-āsp**, father of Inhr-āsp,  
 303 n 9.  
**Arwand-āsp** b. Tūh, 303, 304, 305.  
**Arwand-āsp** b. Zankabā, 303 and n  
 7, 304, 305.  
**Aryans**, the, 300 n, 1075 n, 1076 n.  
**Arsalāq Shāh** b. Muḥammad-i-Tak-  
 iḡh, 254 and n 3, 279 and n 6, 280  
 and n 1 and 2, 281, 282 n 7, 285  
 and n 6.  
**Arsalā Shāh**, See Arsālāq Shāh.  
**Arwā-maad-Dukht**, daughter of  
 Khuzra Parwis, 6.  
**As**, tribe of, 1169 n.  
**ʿAs** b. Iram, 308.  
**Asad** b. Aḥmad Sāmāni, 29.  
**Asʿad** b. Bādīn, 9, 11 and n 2.  
**Asʿad** b. Rādwiāh, 9 n 1, 11 and n 2.  
**Asad** b. Sāmān-i-Khaddāt, 27 and n  
 5, 28.  
**Asad** b. Shaddād, 312.  
**Asad-ud-Dīn Mankali**, 748.  
**Asad-ud-Dīn Sher-i-Koh** b. Shādī,  
 the Kurdi, 304 n, 207 and n 8, 208  
 n and n 1, 3 and 4, 209 and n 6,  
 210 and n, 211 and n 9, 212 n, 213  
 and n and n 3 and 5, 215 and n 9,  
 216 and n 3 and 4, 221 n 6, 225  
 n 4.  
**Asad-ud-Dīn Sher** Malik Wajiri, 461  
 and n 6.  
**Asad-ud-Dīn Toz Khān-i-Kaṭṭi**,  
 627.  
**Asaf Khān** ʿAbd-ul-Majid,—app.  
 xxi.  
**Asir-nʾl-Bilād**, the, xvi, 14 n 1, 28 n  
 8, 70 n 6, 295 n 9, 1010 n.  
**Asir-un-Nuzari**, the, 43 n 9.

- Agha-mu-Sanā'idī**, the, 715.  
**Assasur**, anglicized form of **Āṣ**-**Sanṣur**, Malik of Haleb, 173 n. 4, 203 n. 1.  
**Aṣṣahed**, a title, 203 n.  
**Aḡhar**, Arab tribe, 613 n. 2.  
**'Aḡharah-i-Mabashirah**, the, 1.  
**Aḡhari**, **Sharaf-al-Mulk**, the, 634 and n.  
**Aḡhariān**, the, 613 n. 2.  
**Aḡha'yā** (Imiab) the Prophet, 3.  
**Aḡht Arfa'wā**, lat of the **Aḡhkāniān** dynasty, 4.  
**Aḡhkān b. Aḡht**, of the **Aḡhkāniān** dynasty of 'Ajam, 4.  
**Aḡhkāniān** dynasty of 'Ajam, the, 1, 4.  
**Aḡhrāf** the 'Alawi, 'ayyid, b. Muḥammad-i-**Ā bi-Shujā'**, the Samar-**-kandī**, 906 n., 907 n.  
**Aḡhrāf-ud-Dīn b. Sayyid Jalāl-ud-Dīn**, the Ṣūfī, Sayyid, 1288, 1289, 1290.  
**Aḡhraṣ b. Iḡham**, 9.  
**Aus** Polyglotta, Klaproth's, 665 n.  
**Asiatic Journal**, the, 692 n.  
**Asiatic Society of Bengal**, Proceed-  
 ings of the, 639 n., 774 n.  
**Āṣif Khān**, 588 n.  
**Āṣil-ud-Dīn**, the **Nishāpūri**, 1008, 1061.  
**Āṣil-ud-Dīn**, the **Zawzani**, **Khawājah**, 1206 n. 3, 1208 n., 1209 n. [n. 7]  
**Assasur**, the, 263 n. 6, 651 n. 7, 1167  
**Astr** (Ataz) b. Iley, 875 n.  
**Astley's Collection**, 920 n., 938 n., 1219 n.  
**Asūtāe Aḡhūl b. Mangū Kā-ān b. Tūli**  
 b. **Chingiz Khān**, 1223 n.  
**Atā-bak**, meaning of, 168 n. 2.  
**Atā-baks**, the, 168 n. 2, 169, 170 n., 172 n. 2, 282.  
**Atā-baks of Aḡarbājān** and 'Inṣ, 168 n. 7, 169, 172 n. 2.  
**Atā-baks of Fārs**, the, 148, 169 and n. 7, 172 and n. 4 and 5, 174 n., 180 n. 6.  
**Atā-baks of Maupil**, the, 149, 169, 203 and n. 1, 205 n. 6.  
**Ata-kū**, the Mughal general in **Ching-tu-fū**, 1222 n.  
**Āt-Khān**, the **Kari Khitāi** general, 164 n. 2, 165 n., 237 n. 2, 908 n., 919 n., 926 n.  
**Atkinson, Dr.**, 1012 n. 4.  
**Atkinson, Mr. T. E.**, 683 n.  
**Atais b. Iley**, Sovereign of the **Tāttār Imāk**, 875 n.  
**Aurangzeb**, emperor of **Dihli**, 589 n. 2, 596 n. 9, 592 n., 593 n.  
**Avril**, Father, 567 n. 4.  
**Āwang Khān Tughril Tigin**, So-  
 vereign of the **Kariyat Mughals**, 470 n., 566 n., 936 n. 6, 939 n., 940 n., 941 n., 943 n., 943 n., 944 n., 945 n., 946 n., 969 n., 1069 n., 1091 n., 1108 n., 1176 n. 9.  
**Awān-Kāra**, a tribe of **Jāṭa**, the, 499 n., 537 n., 538 n., 1182 n.  
**Awāna**, the, 1130 n., 1131 n. See also the above.  
**Āwar Khān b. Mughal Khān**, 875 n.  
**Awes**, the **Gabari Sultān**, 1044 n.  
**Awḡad-ud-Dīn Bukhārī**, Imām, 190, 191  
**Aw-Tigin b. Yassūkā Bahādur**, 899 n., 1094 n., 1105 n.  
**Āyaghū** or **Aighū**, Son of the **Āwang Khān**, 1193 n.  
**Āyat the Burāk**, 877 n.  
**Ayāz**, **Abū Najm**, **Uimāk** or **Imāk**, slave of **Sultān Maḡmūd of Ghaz**, -nin, lvin, 89 n. 8, 102 n. 4, 145 n. 4.

Ayūz-i-Husnā Mardān, — Kabir Khān  
-i-Maḡirai, 725, 900 n.

Aydy Öt, See Yiddi Kūt.

'Ayyūsh Khātūn, daughter of  
'Issūd-Dīn 'Umr the Marāghānī,  
Malik of Hirāt, 193, 1199 n.

Aymin the servant, 303.

Ayyūbi dynasty, the, See under  
Aiyūbi.

Asid Qhīr b. Sultān Ibrūhīm Ghās-  
nawī, 105.

Asid Malik b. Sultān Ibrūhīm Ghās-  
nawī, 105.

Asid-Mīr b. Sultān Ibrāhīm Ghās-  
nawī, 105.

A'ḡam Khān, — app ix, xxi.

A'ḡam Malik b. 'Imīd-ud-Dīn of  
Balḡh, Amir, 540 n, 1016, 1023 n,  
1023 n.

A'ḡam-ul-Mulk, the, 1015 n, See also  
A'ḡam Malik.

Asar-sab b. Tūh, 9.

'Asīd, Abū Muḡammad-i-'Abd'ullāh,  
al-, 212 n, 218 n, 215 n 9, 216 n  
4, 217 n, 218 n 6.

'Asis of Egypt, the, 597.

'Asiz-bi'llāh Maḡār-i-Nisār, al-, the  
Mīrī Khālīfah, 47 n 7.

Askanaḡ Khātūn, 1143 n.

As-Kullī Dād-Bak, See Malik Saif-  
ud-Dīn, Iḡak-i-Shamāi, 'Ajāmī.

Asmādari, the Gurjī, 1272 n 5.

Asmān, the Urus Amir, 1170 n.

Asnīwari, the Gurjī, 1272 n 5.

Asri-il, 1190 n 1.

'Aḡud-ud-Daulah, See 'Uḡd-ud-Dau-  
lah.

## B.

Bābā Kotwāl the Ṣafahānī, 574, 575  
and n 9.

Bābak-i-Khurrāmī, 13 and n 9.

Bābakān b. Bābak b. Sāsān, of the  
Sāsānīan dynasty, 4.

Bābar, 75 n 5, 78 n, 81 n, 285 n 5,  
288 n 3, 373 n, 374 n, 390 n, 1044  
n, 1094 n, 1130 n, 1131 n, 1132 n,  
1145 n.

Bahar-ud-Dīn, governor of Hirāt,  
375 n.

Bādā, the Jākambū, 1022 n, 1176  
n 9.

Bādā or Bātā, the Tarḡhān, 941 n,  
942 n.

Bādā Tarḡhān, the, 943 n.

Bādān b. Māc Khāsra, 9

Badrah, signification of the word,  
18 n 2.

Badr-ud Dīn, Sayyid, xiviii.

Badr-ud-Dīn 'Alī Kidānī, Malik,  
390, 460.

Badr-ud-Dīn, the chief Diwān, of  
Sultān Muḡammad, Khwārasm  
Shāh, 27 n 7, 276 n, 963 n 3, 968 n.

Badr-ud-Dīn Ja'far, Governor of  
Sarakhḡ under Sultān Shāh, 248 n.

Badr-ud-Dīn Jā'luḡ. Governor of  
Balḡh under Muḡammad Khwā-  
rasm Shāh, 402 n.

Badr-ud-Dīn-i-Khīr, 481 n 2.

Badr-ud-Dīn of Kidān, 342, 366.

Badr-ud-Dīn Lālu, Malik of Masḡd,  
1151 n, 1223 and n 6, 1234 n 3,  
1237, 1247 n, 1252, 1262 n, 1263  
n, 1272 n 5, 1279, 1280 and n 5.

Badr-ud Dīn Sanḡar, the Rūmī, 546,  
661, 662, 663 n 3, 654 662 n 6, 709

n 8, 714 n 2, 732, 733 and n 3, 737, 806, 807 n.  
 Badr-ud-Din Tughril, Slave of Sultān Sanjar, 374 and n 5, Same as Bahā-ud-Din Tughril, which see.  
 Badr-ul-Mulk 'Ajami, Wazir of Sultān Sanjar, 145 n 6.  
 Bāe Sunḡar b. Kaḡdā, of the Bāsan-jar dynasty of the Mughal Imāḡ, 895 n, 896 n.  
 Baghater, 898 n.  
 Bagh-rash, Amir, 863 n 5.  
 Bagjadi, See Bahjadi.  
 Bagura, mispronunciation of the name Bughrā, 905 n.  
 Bagnūm b. Abrahāt-ul-Aghram, 8.  
 Bahādur, the title, 898 n.  
 Bahādur, Amir of Tingḡāt, 1115 n 5.  
 Bahādur, Tā-ir, See Tā-ir Bahādur.  
 Bahār-i-Dāniḡh, the,—app. xxi.  
 Bahā-ud-Daulah Ḥusrau Firāz, 57, 63 n 8.  
 Bahā-ud-Din 'Alī b. Sultān Mas'ūd, 97 n 4, 98 n 6.  
 Bahā-ud-Din Bulād-i-Nasīrī, 626.  
 Bahā-ud-Din Ḥasan-i-Aḡh'ari, 635, 761.  
 Bahā-ud-Din Ḥilāl, the Sūriāni, 668 n 8, 737.  
 Bahā-ud-Din Iḡak, the Khwājah, 685, 819.  
 Bahā-ud-Din Muḡammad, Amir-i-Hāyib, 491 n 9.  
 Bahā-ud-Din Muḡammad, the Jū-īni, 1121 n.  
 Bahā-ud-Din Muḡammad b. Mas'ūd-i-Karīm, 107.  
 Bahā-ud-Din Rān, Sayyid, xlviii, 370 and n 7, 271, 963, 964 and n 2, 965 and n 5.  
 Bahā-ud-Din, Ṣa'lūk, Malik, 1120 n 2, 1131 n.

Bahā-ud-Din Sām b. Ghīyāḡ-ud-Din Maḡmūd, Sultān of Ghār, 407, 408, 409, 412, 413 n 1, 414 n 3.  
 Bahā-ud-Din Sām b. 'Isa-ud-Din al-Ḥusain, Sultān of Ghār, xlix, 337, 339, 340 and n, 341 and n 6 and 7, 342, 343 and n 3, 347 and n 3, 348 n, 349 n, 353 n 5, 357 and n 9, 360, 423, 423 n 8, 439 n 4, 440, 473 n 6, 478 n 6, 480 n, 1061 n 3, 1063,—app. xiv.  
 Bahā-ud-Din Sām b. Shams-ud-Din Muḡammad, Bāmiāni, xxii, 342, 390, 413, 414, 426, 428 and n 1, 429 n and n 4, 430, 431 and n 7, 432 and n 5, 433 and n, 435, 436, 480, 493 and n 7, 498 and n, 494, 501 n 4 and 5.  
 Bahā-ud-Din Tughril, governor of Hirāt, 248, 249, 374 and n 5, 379 and n 5, See also under Tughril of Hirāt.  
 Bahā-ud-Din Uḡhī, Imām, 512.  
 Bahā-ud-Din Zakariyā of Multān, Imām, 492, 717 n, 1201 n.  
 Bahā ul-Ḥaḡḡ, See Bahā-ud-Din Zakariyā.  
 Bahā-ul-Mulk b. Najib-ud-Din, 1023 n, 1029 n, 1030 n.  
 Baḡtam, xiv, 68 and n 4, 69 n.  
 Bahlāl Lūdi, Sultān, 610 n, 611 n.  
 Bahman b. Isfandiyyār b. Guḡtānib, 3, 7.  
 Bahr-ul-Anrār, the, xvi, 1184 n 9.  
 Bahrām b. 'Alī, Governor of Kirmān, 93 n 8.  
 Bahrām b. Bahrām, of the Sāsāniān dynasty, 4.  
 Bahrām Gūr b. Yasdajurd, 231 n 2, 423 n 8, 598.  
 Bahrām b. Ḥajash, 312.  
 Bahrām Ḥashunah, 63 n 6

**Behrām b. Hurmuz**, of the Sāsānīan dynasty, 4.

**Behrām the Jahāngīrīan**, Sultān, 1044 n.

**Behrām b. Rasān Mārīt**, 9.

**Behrām b. Shāpūr**,—Kirmān Shāh, of the Sāsānīan dynasty, 5.

**Behrām Shāh b. Khuzrau Malik**, Ghaznawī, 115, 379 n 6, 456 and n 2, 457, 1063 n 7, 1072 n 5.

**Behrām Shāh b. Mas'ūd-n-Karīm**, Ghaznawī, xlv, xlix, 107, 106 and n 1, 2 and 5, 109 and n 9, 110 and n 1 and 5, 111 and n 6, 113 n 5, 113 n, 148 and n 5, 149 n 2, 236 n 6, 323 n, 338 n 2, 340, 341 n 7, 347 n 2, 348 n, 349 n, 350 n and n 3, 351 and n and n 1, 353 and n 5, 357 and n 6 and 7, 358 n 2, 439 and n 4, 440, 441 and n 6, 442 n, 443 n, 444 n, 445 n, 446 n 4.

**Behrām Shāh b. Nāsur-ud-Dīn Kabājah**, 532 and n 2, 541 n 8, 542, 543 n, 544, 613 n 7, 614.

**Behrām Shāh b. Sultān Ibrāhīm Ghaznawī**, 106.

**Behrām Shūbīn**, 27 and n 4, 29, 53 n 6.

**Bahrūz**, prefect of Baghdād, 207 n 8.

**Baldār b. Chaghātās b. Chingiz Khān**, 1165 n.

**Bāidū b. Ardū**, Sovereign of the Tāttār Imāk, 876.

**Baihaqi**, al-, xlix, 67 and n 2, 69 n, 70, 75 n 5, 76 n 8, 77 n, 78 n, 82 n 2, 84 n 9, 85 n, 87 n, 89 n 9, 91 n 6, 93 n 9, 94 n 3, 95 n n 5, 7 and 8, 97 n, 100 n 5, 102 n 2, 105 n, 107 n 6, 117 n, 119 n, 120 n 1, 121 n 7, 122 and n 3, 121 n 4, 126 n n 3 and 5, 127 n 7 and 1, 128 n, 129 n, 130 n 6, 131 n 7, 132 n 8, 134 n 6,

231 n 2, 235 n 2, 218 n 1, 219 n 3, 220 n 4, 221 n 7, 224 n, 225 n, 414 n 6, 426 n 6, 448 n 4, 536 n, 801 n, 1009 n, 1017 n, 1018 n, 1043 n 1.

**Baikara**, mispronunciation of the name Bughrā, 905 n.

**Bain b. Munghī**, 812.

**Bāisū**, a chief of the Mughal Imāk, 936 n 6, 952 and n 2.

**Baisūkū Akā b. Jūjī Kasār**, 1086 n.

**Bansūt**, tribe of, lxiii, 988 n, 1094 n.

**Bant-ul-Māl**, the, 62 n 5.

**Bawāwī**, Kāfī, al-, xvi, 75 n 7, 97 n 4, 99 n, 107 n 7, 112 n 5, 113 n, 120 n 3, 349 n, 452 n 1.

**Baymān**, an Amīr of the Aolbarlang tribe, 1169 n.

**Baj-ūki**, the, 879 n, Same as the Bardz-ūki, which see.

**Bāl**, signification of the word, 40 n 7.

**Bakan b. Kokar**, the Hindū, 482 n, 484 n.

**Bak-chak**, the Mughal leader, 288 n 3, 1023 n.

**Bekhtriān** coins, 1122 n.

**Bekhtyār b. al-Hasan b. Buwāh**, 'Izz-ud-Daulah, Abū Maṣṣūr the Dilamī, 43, 60 and n 8, 61 and n 4, 62, 63.

**Bekhtyār or Bekhtyār-ud Dīn b. Maḥmūd**, the Khān, 548 n 1, 1231 n 9,—app xiii, xv, xvi, xviii.

**Bākīr**, Abū Ja'far Muhammad, al-32 n 6.

**Bakjādī b. Yal-dūz Khān**, the Mughal Chieftain, 892 n.

**Bak-Taghdī**, the Hājib, an officer of the Yaminiah dynasty, 49 n 7, 88 n 7, 124 and n and n 4.

**Bak-tam or Bak-Tamūr-i-Aor Khān**, the Ruknī Malik, 703 and n 9, 759 n 6, 760, 837 n 6, 867 n.



- Bak-timugh, the Korchi, 1206 n 8.  
 Bak-Tuzün, slave of the Sāmānī dynasty, 49 and n and 9, 50 and n 4, 51 n 7, 80 n 5.  
 Balā, the Nūyin, 535 n, 1047 n 4, 1075 n.  
 Balabān, 865 n.  
 Balāl Sen, 558 n 1, 559 n 2.  
 Bal'umī, Abū-'Alī b. 'Abd'ullah, 42 n 9, 44 n 4, 58 n 3.  
 Bala-nath, Jogī, 537 n.  
 Balās al-Ashghānī, 4.  
 Balāsh b. Furūz b. Yazdajird, of the Sāsānīan dynasty, 5.  
 Balban-i-Buzurg, —'Izād-Dīn Bal-ban-i-Kashlū Khān, 678 n 8.  
 Balban-i-Khurḍ, —Ulugh Khān i-Balban, 661 n, 678 n 8.  
 Bal-Diw, the Chohān, 400 n 3.  
 Baldwin IV King of Jerusalem, 101 n 8, 220 n 3.  
 Balghā Aghūl b. Hulūkū Khān 1194 n.  
 Balghā b. Shurbān b. Jūyī, b. Qhin-giz Khān 1296 n.  
 Balghūr, a Mughal leader, 288 n 3.  
 Balikto Inānāj, the Tayānak Khān, 945 n.  
 Bāligh, value of a, 1110 n 6.  
 Bālighī, signification of the word, 962 n 7.  
 Balā, signification of the word, 94 n 7.  
 Balkā Khān b. Tūchī b. Chingiz Khān iv, 644 n.  
 Balkū Malik-i-Husām-ud-Dīn 'Iwaz, the Khālī, 617 and n 5, 618 n, 730, 773 n.  
 Balkū Tigīn, slave of the Sāmānī dynasty, 87 n, 49 n 7, 72 and n 6, 73 and n 7, 76, 232 n, 233 n, 320 n 3, 1283 n 8.  
 Balkū, daughter of Hailād, Queen of Sheba, 6, 7, 303 n 7.  
 Bāltū b. Mangū Kā-ān, 1228 n.  
 Balūgh, the,—a nomad tribe of Kirmān from whom the Balūghis are descended, 60 n 8.  
 Balūghis, the, 60 n 8, 334 n, 1131 n.  
 Bampālin the,—a branch of the Sūl-dūs tribe of Mughals, 1094 n.  
 Band Kadar, a Turk of Khifchāk, became sovereign of Mīr under the title of Malik-ut-Tāhir, 1276 n, 1277 n, 1278 n, 1280 n 5, 1281 n.  
 Bandiyas, the, 691 n.  
 Bani 'Abbās See the Abbasides.  
 Bani Hāshim, the,—family of the 'Abbāsī Khalīfahs, 1229 n 8.  
 Bani Isrā'īl, the, 3, 7, 314 and n 6, 318 n 7.  
 Bani Rāsib, the,—a name by which the Ghūris are styled, 307 n.  
 Bani Umamīyah, (Umayyah) the, xxxiii —1.  
 Bānīko of Tarāz, leader of the Ghūr Khān's army, 261 n and n 8, 262 and n 1, 264 n, 263 n 9, 402 n, 411 n, 474 n, 908 n 911, 912 n, 930 n, 931 n, 932 n, 934, 1118 n 9. His full name is Jai-Timūr-i Bānīko, son of Kaldūs, chief of Tarāz.  
 Banji = Nahārān, Shansabī, Malik of Ghūr, 311, 312 and n 1, 313, 314, 315, 316 n and n 2, 326 n 368.  
 Barakh (Tārāj) b. Yāfā 870.  
 Bārakzis, the, a tribe of Afghāns, 332 n 3.  
 Barani, See Ziryā-ud-Dīn Barani.  
 Baranknah, the Sipah Salās, officer of Sultān Sanjār, 358 n 3, 426 n 4.  
 Barber de Meynard, Mr. 962 n.

- Barda-ūhī**, the, the three eldest sons of Aghās **Khān**, 879 n, 880 n, 896 n, 1006 n.
- Bārīn** Mughals, the, 1093 n.
- Barkā** or
- Barkah** b. **Tūshī** b. **Qhngiz Khān**, liv, 163 n 5, 884 n, 1103 n, 1103, 1104, 1105 n, 1129 n 1, 1165 n, 1170 n, 1171 n, 1179 n, 1180 n, 1181 and n 3, 1185 n, 1247, 1257 and n 7, 1283 and n 8, 1284 and n 2 and 3, 1285, 1296 n, 1287 and n, 1288, 1295, 1291 and n 3 and 5, 1292 and n, 1293 n.
- Barkat Khān**, an officer of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn **Khwarazm Shāh**, 1276 n.
- Barkārūk** Rukn-ud-Dīn Abu'l Muṣṭafā b. Sultān Malik Shāh Saljūki, 143 n 2, 144 n and n 3, 145 n 4, 146 n 6, 147 n 8, 233 n, 689 n 7.
- Barlās**, title of Irādanghi b. Kā-jālī, which see, 896 n
- Barlās** tribe, the, 939 n, 1093 n, 1094 n.
- Barmās** or **Barmiās**, the Mughal Daroghah in Marw, 1033 n, 1034 n de Barros, 582 n 6.
- Barṣān** b. Jūrak, 9
- Barṣanjān** b. Yazdejird-i-Shahryār, 70 and n 1.
- Barṣanjār** or
- Barṣanjūr** b. Turk b. Yāsa, 872 n
- Bar-Sipās Khān**, chief of the Kan-ghuli Turks, 979 n
- Bartān** Bahādur b. Kabal **Khān**, sovereign of the Bū-sanjar dynasty of the Mughal Imāy, 897 n, 898 n.
- Bartās**, the, 1170 n.
- Bartās** b. Gumārī b. Yāsa, 872 n.
- Bartasinah Khān**, chief of the Mughals, on their issuing from Irghānah-Khūn, 688 n.
- Bartū** [or **Britū**], a Hindū chief, 628, 629 n 5.
- Basāsiri**, al,—the celebrated Mam-lūk of Bahā-ud-Daulah son of 'Aḡud-ud-Daulah, Buwaib, 126 n.
- Bāsh-ghird**, the, 1103 n, 1166 n
- Bāshghrūān**, or **Bāshkrūān**, the, 873 n.
- Bāshkurs**, the, 872 n.
- Bastāniyah** dynasty of 'Ajām, the, 1, 2, 1058 n 5.
- Bat**, etymology of the word, 326 n, 327 n.
- Bat Tingrī**, Kokjā, son of the Nūyān Manglik, of the Olkhūt Kang-kūr-āt Mughals, 1080 n 5
- Bātāe** or **Bādāe**, the Tarkhān, 941 n, 942 n.
- Batani** Afghāns, the. See under **Patāna**.
- Bāthus**, mispronunciation of the name of Bātu **Khān**, 1167 n
- Batikin**, the Zamin-Dāwarī, governor of Zamin Dāwar on the part of Maḥmūd of Ghazni 324 n
- Bātiniah**, the,—a sect of Muham-madan schismatics, 74, 215, 1189
- Bātū Khān** b. **Tūshī** b. **Qhngiz Khān**, 1102 and n, 1105 n, 1128 n, 1140 n, 1149 n 7, 1150 n, 1151 n, 1164 and n and n 9, 1165 n, 1166 n, 1167 n, 1170 n, 1171 n, 1172 and n 2, 1173 n, 1177 and n 1, 1178 n, 1179 n, 1180 n, 1181, 1182, 1185 n, 1186 n, 1218 n, 1284, 1285, 1286 n, 1290 and n, 1291 and n 6, 1292 and n and n 1.
- Bātū Khān** b. Jūjī **Khān**, 974 n, same as above.

- Bārahīk, ruler of tribes of I-ghāra, 951 n.
- Bāyāt the : a Moghal tribe, 1222 n.
- Bāyasid, Shaiikh. See Shaiikh Abū-Yasid, Buzānī.
- Bāyasid, the Byāt, author of memoirs of Humāyūn Bādshāh xvi.
- Bāyasid, the 'Usmānī Sultān, 864 n.
- Bāsān of the Tabābī 'ah, 8.
- Beames, 1181 n.
- Bodā, a Hindū chief, 86 n.
- Begdali or Bekdali tribe of I-ghāra, the, 233 n.
- Beghū, Chief of the Ghuzz, 903 n.
- Beghū Khān, Chief of the Kariuks, 909 n.
- Beghū b. Ghuzz b. Mang b. Yāfā, 871 n, 878 n.
- Beghū b. Saljūk, 87 n, 99, 102 n 2, 117 n, 122, 123 and n, 124 n, 125, 129, 132 and n 9
- Beghū, the,—so the Turkmāns style themselves, 1, 433 and n 6, 494, 871 n, 909 n.
- Beghū Kārūgha, the, 909 n
- Beghūn, another way of writing Beghū, 871 n.
- Beg Tigin Salāhī, a general of Sultān Muḥammad Khawārazm Shāh, 895 n
- Bejdah, signification of the word, 421 n 2.
- Bekdali or Begdali tribe of I-ghāra, the, 233 n
- Bela IV, King of Hungary, 1166 n, 1167 n, 1168 n.
- Bela Noyan, See Balā, the Nūyān.
- Beikūtāe, the Nū-yin, half brother of the Qhngiz Khān, 1220 n.
- Bellow, Surgeon-Major, 901 n, 912 n, 917 n, 932 n, 933 n, 940 n, 952 n, 965 n 5, 968 n 6, 1016 n 3, 1022 n, 1043 n 1, 1044 n, 1045 n, 1078 n 1081 n 7, 1106 n.
- Bengal Asiatic Journal, the, 563 n, 591 n, 622 n, 697 n 5, 743 n 4.
- Bentinet, 981 n, 1089 n.
- Beresine, 897 n.
- Bhaghīālā, the, 1122 n.
- Bhanehra, the, 1122 n.
- Bhānu Dīw Rāo, 592 n.
- Bhaṭī tribe of Jāṭa, the, 79 n, 226 n, 451 n, 795 n.
- Bhukhus, the, 691 n.
- Bhim Dīw Rāo, of Nahrwālah, 451 and n 8, 452 n 7, 516, 519 n, 520 n.
- Bhum Narāyan, chief of Bhim-nagar, 85 n.
- Bhim-pāl, 86 n.
- Bhīpā Rāo, chief of the tribe of Birār, 84 n 9, 85 n.
- Bhirāj, or Bhūrāj, brother of Rāṣ Pithorā, 617 n, 619 n
- Bhūtawārī Turka, the, 1046 n 8.
- Bigī Sūjī See Sūjī the Bigī.
- Bigī Kolūkah See Kolūkah the Bigī.
- Bigī Tūktā. See Tūktā the Bigī.
- Bihār Museum, the, 743 n 4.
- Bihād b. Sultān Ibrāhīm Ghasnawī, 105.
- Bij or Bijayī Dīw, Rājah, of Jamān, 454 n, 466 n 1.
- Bikramaditya, 453 n 4, 454 n, 506 n 8, 622 n.
- Biqtūmish Kūchin, daughter of Bādao the Jakambū, and Khātān of Jūji b. Chingiz Khān, 1092 n.
- Bilādūrī, al,—app xviii.
- Bilkadāo or Bilgadāo, b. Yaldēs Khān the Mughal chieftain, 892 n.
- Bilkūti b. Yassūkā Bahādur, 899 n, 1106 n.
- Bin 'Abdallatif, See Ibn 'Abdallatif.

- Bināi Tigin**, Tāj-ud-Din, the Khwa-  
-rasmi, Malik, 109 and n 7, 300  
and n 8, 305 n, 1062 and n 4  
and 5.
- Biqār**, tribe of, 85 n
- Bir Māhi Diw**, Rāe, 592 n.
- Birūni**, Abū Raihān. See under Abū  
Rihān.
- Biwar-asp**, the infidel, V. of the  
Bastāniyah dynasty of 'Ajām, 2.
- Biwar-asp** b. Arwand-asp, who is  
styled Zuhāk, 303 and n 7, 305 n 5.
- Black Tatars**, the, 885 n.
- Black Wolf**, designation of Sebuk-  
Tigin's father, 69 n
- Blochmann**, 554 n 9, 568 n, 585 n 6,  
587 n 4, 591 n, 592 n, 603 n 6, 650  
n 1, 694 n 4, 698 n 8, 718, 720 n 2,  
727 n 7, 737 n 8, 739 and n 6, 741 n  
2, 744 n, 770 n 9, 771 n, 772 n, 774  
n, 776 n, 777 n, 779 n, 793 n 2,  
810 n, 858 n 4, 866 n, 880 n, 1003 n  
4, 1258 n 9, 1295 n 2.—app i, ii,  
iv, vi, vii, viii, ix, x, xi, xii, xiii,  
xiv, xv, xvi, xvii, xviii, xix, xx, xxi,  
xxii, xxiii, xxv, xxvi.
- Bombay Geographical Journal**, the,  
78 n, 95 n 4, 452 n 8, 705 n 7
- Bombay Geographical Transactions**,  
the, 1241 n 1.
- Boroldāe**, the Nū-yin, General of  
Bātū Khān, 1166 n
- Bortakin**, See Yorkin.
- Boston**, the, 179 n 1.
- Bosto** or
- Bostugo Khān**, Prince of the Kal-  
ruks, 1167 n
- Boulger**, Mr. D C, 1045 r.
- Brāhmayas**, the, 691 n
- Eriggs**, xi, xii, xiii, 96 n 2, 110 n 4,  
312 n 6, 404 n 9, 441 n 2, 442 n, 444  
n, 446 n 5, 448 n 2, 450 n, 454 n,  
459 n 7, 461 n, 463 n, 464 n 7, 465 n  
467 n, 472 n, 475 n 2, 478 n 6, 480  
n, 484 n, 487 n, 498 n 6, 501 n, 504  
n 2, 508 n, 510 n, 511 n, 513 n 8,  
515 n and n 7, 518 n, 519 n, 520 n,  
521 n, 524 n, 537 n, 542 n 9, 546 n 7,  
591 n, 633 n 8, 635 n 9, 640 n 3, 641  
n 6, 642 n 3, 645 n 9, 655 n 9, 656 n,  
664 n 4, 678 n 7, 680 n, 683 n, 691  
n, 694 n 4, 699 n 2, 705 n 7, 794 n 1,  
874 n, 885 n, 1130 n, 1132 n, 1203  
n, 1203 n, 1271 n,—app vii, xi, xx.
- British Association**, the, 1090 n
- British Museum**, the, 326 n, 351 n 1.
- Brita**, [or Bartū], a Hindū chief, 628,  
629 n 5.
- Browne**, the Rev J Cave, 1062 n 2
- Bū Rihān**. See Abū Rihān [1178 n]
- Būghak** b Tuli Khān, 1165 n, 1171 n,
- Buchanan**, 560 n 4, 565 n 5
- Budāūni**, 'Abd'ul Kādir,—author of  
Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh, xvi, 82  
n 1, 85 n, 113 n, 449 n 8, 452 n 1 and  
2, 461 n, 471 n, 523 n, 533 n, 543 n,  
545 n 5, 551 n, 559 n 2, 566 n 9,  
569 n 3, 570 n, 571 n 2, 578 n 3,  
580 n 7, 591 n, 592 n, 601 n 6 and  
9, 603 n 6, 609 n 1, 611 n 3, 612 n 4,  
613 n 7, 616 n 2, 623 n 8 and 1,  
624 n 3, 635 n 9, 643 n, 645 n 4, 646  
n 6, 651 n 7, 666 n 8, 716 n 6, 776  
n, 791 n 1,—app vi, viii, xiv.
- Buddha** Sakyamuni, 893 n
- Buddhists**, the, 570 n 9, 933 n, 933 n,  
950 n, 961 n, 963 n, 1043 n 1, 1068  
n 6, 1076 n.
- Budziak**, name of a people on the  
banks of the Borysthenes, W of  
the Black Sea, 906 n
- Būe-Rūḡ**, brother of the Tayānak  
Khān, ruler of the Naṣmān tribe,  
940 n, 941 n, 946 n, 947 n, 949 n.

Bughrā Khān b. Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn Balban. See under Bughrā Khān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Maḥmūd.

Bughrā Khān b. Qadr Khān, X. of the Afrāsyābi Malik, 905 n.

Bughrā Khān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Maḥmūd b. Ulugh Khān-f. Balban, iv, 716 n 5, 778 n.

Bughrā Khān Shihāb-ud-Daulah, Abū-Mūsā-i-Hārūn, the Afrāsyābi Malik, 45 n 8, 46 n 4, 74, 84 n 9, 138 n 8, 239 n, 360 n 7, 901 n, 902 n, 903 n, 905 n, 910 n, 916 n.

Bughrā Khān b. Yūsuf b. Bughrā Khān-i-Hārūn, the Afrāsyābi Malik, 904 n.

Bughrā Tigin, 85 n. See also Arsalān Khān, Abu l Muẓaffar.

Bughrā Khān, an Officer of Sultān Maḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh's army, 976 n.

Bughrājāq, uncle of Sultān Maḥmūd b. Sabak Tigin, 80 n 5, 186 n.

Buj-kum, the Amīr-ul-Umarā of Baghdād, xlv.

Būkā or Bukāo Khān b. Bū-zanjar, sovereign of the Mughal Imak, 894 n.

Būkā Khān b. Tāttār Khān, sovereign of the Tāttār Imak, 874 n.

Būkā Khān, the Turkman Chief, 1029 n.

Būkār, the Nū-yin, 972 n, 975 n 5, 1184 n, 1286 n, 1287 n.

Būkah, a Saljūki Chief, 120.

Būkān, [possibly Yūkān], Bādshāh the Charkas, 1170 n.

Būkā Timūr b. Tushī b. Chingiz Khān, 1179 n, 1185 n, 1207 n, 1208 n, 1239 n, 1240 n, 1243 n, 1215 n 4, 1261 n 7.

Bukhāra Hujj, the merchant

who purchased Shams-ud-Dīn Iyāl-Timish, 601.

Bukhārs.—People of the towns are so called, 879 n.

Bukht-un-Naṣṣar, (Nabuchodonosor) Malik of Bābil, 3.

Būkia b. Bū-zanjar, See Būkā or Būkāo Khān. [Tāttār Khān.]

Būkū Khān. See Būkā Khān.

Būlān (Poles?), the; See under Būlo.

Bulgarians, the, 1251 n. See also under the Bulgārs.

Bulghān b. Bātū b. Tūshī (Jōji) Khān, 1239 n, 1243 n.

Bulghār b. Gumāri b. Yāsā, 872 n, 880 n.

Bulghārs, the, 870 n, 872 n, 959 n, 1032 n, 1251 n.

Būlo, the, name of a people, 1165 n, 1166 n, 1167 n.

Būrā Kuchin the chief Khātūn of Cktāe Kā'an, 1141 n.

Burab, adopted son of the Nūyān Jifān, 1092 n.

Burak, the Ghuzz Chief,—master of Ghaznin, 112 and 44.

Burāk, the Hāyb, Malik of Kirmāu, 199, 200 and n 7, 261 n, 293 n 9, 244 and n, 285, 295 n, 297 n and n 9, 610 n, 933 n, 934 n, 976 n, 1062 n 4, 1118 and n 9, 1119 n, 1235 n 1.

Barāndagh, See Nuriddagh.

Burānghār or Right Wing of an army, 1093 n, 1095 n.

Burghūts or Burkūts, the,—a tribe of Mughals, 931 n.

Burhān i-Kāfi, the, 60 n 8 64 n 1, 74 n 1, 103 n 7, 128 n, 138 n 8, 155 n, 169 n 6, 201 n 4 339 n 8.

Burī II Chaghātāi b. Chingiz Khān, 1165 n, 1170 n, 1171 n, 1179 n, 1180 n, 1185 n, 1192 n.

Bürjin the Ariät, the Nü-yin, 1093 n, 1095 n.

Bürki, the Bawürghi, of the Dürbän tribe, 1093 n.

Bürhüts, the. See the Būrhüts

Burns, 115 n 5

Bürtah Kūchūn, mother of Uktāe Kā-an, 1087 n, 1091 n, 1092 n, 1093 n, 1102 n, 1105 n

Bustām b. Mihghād, b. Narimān, Mahk of Hind and Sind, 305, 306 and n 9 and 5, 307 and n, 308 and n 2, 309.

Bustām-i-Zahāk, 331, same as above

Buwiah, family of, xxiii, 40, 43 and n 6, 45, 56 n 1, 57, 59 and n 6, 61 n 9 and 4, 66 n 7, 87 n, 98 n 8, 136 n, 174 n, 296 n

Buwiah b. Fanā Khwaran, Dīlami, 55 n 1, 56, 57.

Būzābah, or Fūzābah, Atā-bak, Governor of Fārs on the part of the Saljūki, 174 n.

Bū-sanjar Kā'an, Sovereign of the Mughal Imāk 893 n, 894 n, 903 n, 938 n, 1105 n, 1207 n.

## C.

Canon, of Scripture, 590 n 1.

Calcutta Review, the, 590 n, 812 n 3

Canun, Khand, the, 1271 n.

Carpini, John de Plano, 1060 n 6, 1151 n, 1171 n.

Carrier-pigeons, transmitting letters by, xlv, 37 n 9, 101 n 8.

Castanneda, 582 n 6.

Cato, 1014 n 2.

Censor, office of, 430 n 2. [xviii.]

Qhagh Nāmāh, the, xvi,—app xvii.

Qhaghan, or white,—an epithet given to civilized countries and peoples, 912 n.

Qhaghān, the Nü-yin, 1152 n, 1185 n

Qhaghāniāns, the, 423 n 8

Qhaghātāe Khān b. Qhūngiz Khān, 280 n 9, 535 n, 953 n, 956 n, 970 n 2, 975 n 5, 1024 n 2, 1026, 1073 n 4, 1074 n, 1075 n, 1082 n, 1083 n, 1084 n, 1087 n, 1091 n, 1093 n, 1094 n, 1097 and n 7, 1099 n, 1101 and n 1, 1102 n, 1103 n, 1104 n, 1105 n, 1107, 1108, 1109, 1110, 1111, 1114, 1137 n, 1142 n 2, 1144

and n 7, 1145 n, 1146 and n, 1147, 1148 and n 4, 1149 n 7, 1152 n 1157 and n 1, 1170 n, 1172, 1176 n 9, 1177, 1178, n, 1179 n, 1180 n, 1182, 1186, 1194 n, 1211 n, 1233 n 9, 1290 n 9, 1292 n and n 1.

Qhaghātāe b. Tūshī b. Qhūngiz Khān, 1102.

Qhaghātāe, the; the four tribes of Qhaghātāe, second son of the Chūngiz Khān, 1093 n, 1146 n.

Qhaghtay Khāns, the, 803 n

Qhaghtae tribe, the, 1094 n See the Qhaghātāe

Qhāhādā Diwā, a Hindū Rājāh, 690 n 1.

Chāhar, the Ajār, Rāe, 691 and n, 733, 735 n 9, 818 n 5, 824 and n 8, 825

Chahār I-māk, the, 874 n, 876 n, 1076 n

Qhāhī tribe, the, 79 n.

Chast Singh, 551 n.

Chanah, 987 n 3, mispronunciation of the name of Jahāh, the Nā-in.

**Qhanchu** tribe of Mughals, the, 1222 n.

**Qhand**, the Hindū Bard, 327 n, 459 n 9.

**Qhāndā**, the poet,—same person as above 486 n.

**Qhand-pāl Shūd**, Hindū sovereign of Aśi, 67 n.

**Qhand Poondir**, a vassal chief of Lahore, 467 n.

**Chang-jau**, general of "Mengko" Khān, 1219 n.

**Chāpār** tribe of Mughals, the, 1143 n.

**Qhār-chin** b. Kāidū. See under Jārohin

**Qhār-gānah**, the; a name of four tribes of Mughals, 1164 n 9.

**Qharkas**, the; name of a people, 1170 and n 3 and 4.

**Qhar-khī**, Maulānā-i-, a Muḥammad-an saint, 73 n 8

**Qhangān**, description of the game, 41 n 8

**Qhaupān**, Amīr, 939 n.

**Chepe**, mispronunciation of the name of Jabah.

**Cheremis**, the, 1103 n, 1165 n, 1170 n 3 and 4.

**Chigal** or **Qhikal** (Jinkal) b. Turk b. Yāfā, 872 n.

**Qhihlgāni** Mamlūks, the, 643 n, 645 n 9. See also next

**Qhihl-ganiān**, the,—forty slaves of Sulṭān Shams-ud-Dīn Iyāl-timish, 794 n 1.

**Qhikal** or **Qhigal** (Jinkal) b. Turk b. Yāfā 872 n.

**Chillogies**, a mispronunciation of the name **Kheljīs**.

**Qhīn**, second son of Yāfā b. Nūh 870 n, 871 n.

**Chinese**, the, iv. 885 n, 898 n, 907 n, 912 n, 920 n, 921 n, 922 n, 940 n, 947 n, 958 n, 981 n, 985 n, 1058 n, 1085 n 3, 1088 n, 1105 n, 1108 n, 1136 n 9, 1141 n, 1184 n, 1215 n 9 and 4, 1217 n, 1218 n, 1219 n, 1220 n, 1221 n, 1222 n, 1223 n.

**Chinese language**, the, 956 n.

**Qhingis Khān**, the,—**Tamurghī** b. **Yasākī**—, xlviii, xlix, 94 n 3, 155 n 6, 180 n 5, 196 and n 3, 220, 229 n 9, 260 n 7, 265 n 4, 268, 269 and n, 270 and n 6 and 7, 271 and n, 272 and n 1 and 2, 273 n and n 5, 274, 275, 276 n, 277, 278 n, 280 and n 9, 284 and n, 285 n 3, 286 and n 6, 287, 288 and n 3, 289 n, 290 n and n 4, 291, 292 n, 293 n 5, 294 n, 295 n, 297, 344, 427 n, 470 n, 481 n 8, 487, 534 and n 1, 535 n, 536 n, 537 n, 538 n, 540 n, 544 n, 609, 612 n 4, 663 n 9, 665 n 8, 666 n, 668 n, 740 n 8, 800 and n 2, 879 n, 882 n, 883 n, 884 n, 885 n, 886 n, 888 n, 889 n, 890 n, 891 n, 892 n, 893 n, 894 n, 895 n, 896 n, 898 n, 899 n, 903 n, 913 n, 917 n, 918 n, 922 n, 929 n, 930 n, 931 n, 932 n, 933 n, 935, 936 n 6, 937, 938 n, 942, 946 n, 949, 949 n, 950 n, 951 n, 952 n, 953 and n, 954, 955 n, 956 n, 957 n, 958 n, 959 n, 960 and n, 962, 963 and n 8, 964 n 2, 965 and n 5, 966, 967, 968 and n 6, 969 and n 1, 970 n 2, 971 n, 972 n, 974 and n, 975 and n 5, 976 n, 977 n, 978 and n, 979 n, 980 n 1, 981 n, 982 n, 985 n, 986 n, 987 n and n 3, 988 n, 989 n, 990 and n, 991 n, 992 and n 5, 993 n, 994 n, 995 n, 998 n, 999 n, 1000 n, 1001, 1004 and n 1, 1005 and n, 1006 and n 6, 1007, 1008 and n 5, 1009, 1010 n, 1011

- and *n*, 1012, 1013, 1015 *n*, 1016 *n* 3, 1017 *n*, 1018 *n*, 1019 and *n*, 1020 *n*, 1022 and *n*, 1023 and *n*, 1024 *n* 2, 1025 *n*, 1026, 1027 *n* 8, 1028 *n*, 1030, 1035 *n*, 1037 *n*, 1040 and *n* 2, 1042, 1043 and *n* 1, 1044 *n*, 1045 and *n*, 1046 *n*, 1047 and *n* 4, 1048, 1049 *n* 2, 1050 *n*, 1051 *n*, 1054 and *n*, 1057 *n* 3, 1058 *n* 6, 1059, 1063 *n* 1, 1071, 1073 and *n* 4, 1075 *n*, 1077 *n* 6, 1078, 1079 and *n* 9, 1080 and *n* 5, 1081 and *n* 1, 1082 *n*, 1083 *n*, 1084 and *n*, 1085 *n* 3, 1086 *n*, 1087 *n*, 1088 and *n*, 1089 *n*, 1090 *n*, 1091 and *n*, 1092 *n*, 1093 *n*, 1094 *n*, 1095, 1096, 1097 and *n* 7, 1099 *n*, 1100 *n*, 1101, 1102 *n*, 1103 *n*, 1104 and *n* 5, 1105 *n*, 1106 *n*, 1107, 1108 *n* 9 and 1, 1110 *n* 5, 1111, 1113, 1114, 1115 *n* 5, 1116 *n*, 1117 and *n* 6, 1118 *n* 9, 1120 *n* 2, 1126 *n* 6, 1128 *n* 7, 1131 *n*, 1132 *n*, 1133 *n* 9, 1137 *n*, 1138 *n*, 1140 *n*, 1142 *n* and *n* 2, 1143 and *n*, 1144, 1145 *n*, 1146, 1149 *n* 7, 1150 *n*, 1151 *n*, 1152 *n*, 1153, 1164 and *n* 9, 1165 *n*, 1170 *n*, 1173 *n* 1, 1177 and *n* 1, 1178 *n*, 1179 *n*, 1180 *n*, 1181, 1182 *n* 4, 1183 *n*, 1186 *n*, 1189, 1191 *n*, 1193 *n*, 1199 *n*, 1200 *n*, 1201 *n*, 1215 *n* 4, 1217 *n*, 1218 *n*, 1219 *n*, 1220 *n*, 1222 *n*, 1223 *n*, 1226, 1235 *n* 1, 1249 *n*, 1256 *n* 6, 1257 *n*, 1265 *n*, 1271 *n*, 1275 *n* 3, 1282, 1284, 1286 *n*, 1291 *n* 3,—app *xxi*
- Chingiz Khān**, Mamluk of Shams-ud-Din Muhammad the Kurat, *lv*, 1201 *n*
- Chinkāe**, the Grand Wazir of Cktāe Kā'n, 1149 *n* 7, 1160 *n* 8
- Chin-Timūr** See *Jai-Timūr*.
- Christ** 1162 *n*
- Christians**, the, *lv*, 567 *n* 4, 927 *n*, 933 *n*, 961 *n*, 983 *n*, 1112 *n* 9, 1145 *n*, 1159 *n* 6, 1160 and *n* 8, 1161 *n* 4, 1162 *n*, 1167 *n*, 1186 *n*, 1193 *n*, 1194 *n*, 1234 and *n* 9, 1261, 1268 *n* 9, 1269 *n*, 1288, 1289, 1291.
- Christie**, 188 *n* 7
- Christopher Columbus**. See under *Columbus*.
- Chronicles of the Pathān Kings of Dehli**. See *Thomas's "Pathān Kings of Dehli"*
- Chugtar tribe**, the, 1094 *n*. See the *Chagtae tribe*
- Circassians**, the, 1163 *n*
- "Coins of the Kings of Ghaznin,"** Paper on the, 71 *n* 5, 72 *n* 6, 114 *n*
- "Coins of the Pathān Kings of Dehli,"** 390 *n*, 424 *n* 6, 469 *n* 9
- "Coins of the Salātin-i-Hind,"** Treatise on the, 718
- Columbus, Christopher**, 292 *n*, 422 *n* 3.
- Conolly**, 878 *n*
- Comad**, the Emperor, 221 *n*.
- Contributions to the Geography and History of Bengal**, Blochmann *n*, *xviii*, *xix*, *xxi*, *xxiii*, *xxv*, *xxvi*, 565 *n* 5, 587 *n* 4, 714, 727 *n* 7, 737 *n* 8, 739 *n* 6, 741 *n* 2, 744 *n*, 770 *n* 9, 771 *n*, 772 *n*, 776 *n*, 777 *n*, 779 *n*, 795 *n* 2, 810 *n*, 840 *n*, 1003 *n* 4, 1258 *n* 9,—app. *i*, *vii*, *x*, *xiii*, *xvi*
- Corporalets** or *Mujassamian*, a subdivision of the *Sifati* sect, the, 394 *n* 5
- Cossaks**, the, 1251 *n*
- Crusaders**, the, 101 *n* 8, 140 *n* 2, 143 *n* 2, 144 *n*, 219 *n* 9, 225 *n*, 326 *n*
- Crusades**, the, *xliii*, 221 *n* 5, 225 *n*
- Cumani**. See the *Khmans*



Cunningham, Major-Gen. A., 511  
n, 520 n, 556 n 3, 680 n, 578 n,  
1004 n 1, 1129 n 1, 1130 n, 1181  
n,—app. III.

Qashwaha (Kashwāhah Rajpūts),  
the, 691 n.

## D.

Dabkūll-i-Tughān Khān b. Kart  
Khān, 906 n.

Dādan Khān, a Khokhar chief, 537 n.

Dād-Bak or Amīr-i-Dād, definition  
of the term, 786 n 2.

Dāo, the Nū-yin, Bādshāh of the  
Kungkur-āt Mughals, 1091 n.

Dāgh (Tāq or Tāgh) b. Aghūs Khān,  
880 n

Daghstāni, the author of a Tay-  
-kirah, xxi, xxx.

Dahaks or

Dabchaks, or Tens one of the four  
degrees of the Mughals, 918 n.

Dahmā Rājputs, the, 459 n 9

Dahr, Rār,—app xvii

Dahr, the 'Ajami, of the Tabā-  
-lu'ah, 8.

Df, meaning of, 1187 n 7.

Dā'ila 'l Hukū, ad., Muḥammad b  
Zaid-ul 'Alawī, 32 n 6.

Dā-ir. See Tā-ir Asūn.

Dakīkī, the poet, 308 n 2

Dalaki of Malaki, 817, 850 n 3  
Same as Dalki

Dālān, Tughachār; the Mughal  
general, 956 n.

Dalki, or Dhalki, the Hindū Rānah  
of Malki or Mhalki, 680 and n 2,  
681 n, 682 and n 5, 683 n.

Dalton, 563 n, 566 n 3, 705 n 7

Dāng, signification of, 141 n 9

Dār-i-Akbar b Bahman, of the

Kai-iakh dynasty of 'Ajam, 2, 4,  
1263 n.

Dār-i-Aqghar, of the Kai-iakh  
dynasty of 'Ajam, 4.

Dārī b. Shams-ul-Ma'ālī Khān-i-  
Washmgir, governor of Gurgān,  
47, 51, 81 n.

Dār-i-Akbar, 3, 4. Same as Dār-  
-i-Akbar.

Dārābars or Rārābars, a general of  
the Rāo of Gujarāt, 522 n.

Darak, signification of, 99 n 9.

Dard-i-pāo, determination of the  
disease, 1177 n 1.

Darhim b. Uz-Naṣr Kanānī, govern-  
or of Sijistān, 19 n 1, 22 n 5.

Dārītāo Ūn-ghūki Tamur-chi, the  
Chingis Khan's paternal uncle,  
945 n.

Darius, 697 n.

Dārkhō, the Gurgān, one of the  
sons-in-law of the Chingis Khān,  
1217 n.

Darwesh Ahmad Afandi, 915 n,  
920 n.

Darwesha, the, 657 n.

Darwezah, the Akhūnd, 1044 n.

Dasartha, father of Rāmā, 548 n 2,  
585 n 6.

Destān, a name of Zāl-i-Zar, father  
of Rastam, 422 n 7.

Da'ūd, the prophet; David of Scrip-  
-ture, 1161.

- Dā'ūd Amīr. See Amīr-i-Dād.
- Dā'ūd, claimant to the sovereignty of Gurgistān, 1151 n, 1152 n.
- Dā'ūd-i-Jaghar Beg, Saljūki, xvii, 99, 100, 103 and n 9, 104, 116 n 3, 117 n, 119 n 7, 120 n 3, 122 and n 8, 123 and n, 124 n, 125, 126 and n 2 and 3, 127, 128 n, 129 and n, 130 and n 6, 132 and n 9 and 1, 136 n.
- Dā'ūd b. Kabār Malik, ruler of Gurgistān, 988 n, 1151 n, 1152 n.
- Dā'ūd-i-Siyāh, 10 n 7.
- Dā'ūd b. Sulimān-i-Kil-timish, of the Rūmī dynasty of the Saljūks, 159 n.
- Dā'ūd Shāh b. Bahrām Shāh b. Mas'ūd-i-Karīm Ghaznawī, 111 and n 7.
- Daulat Shāh, author of a Taṣṭarāt, 609 n 6.
- Daulat Shāh, Wālī of Balkh, 147 n 8.
- Daulat Shāh b. Bahrām Shāh b. Mas'ūd-i-Karīm Ghaznawī, 110, 111, 352, 353 and n 4.
- Daulat Shāh-i-Balkā. See Ikhtiyār-ud-Dīn-i-Balkā.
- Daulat Shāh b. Sultān Ibrāhīm Ghaznawī, 105.
- Daulat Yār-i-Taghri-i, Ikhtiyār-ul-Mulk, the Malik-ul-Kuttab of Sultān Muḥammad, Khwārazm Shāh, 1003, 1058 and n 6.
- Dayālimah, the. See under Dīlamah.
- Decebalus, 887 n.
- Degun Dāmbū, a Tibbati title, 1092 n.
- Dehrs, the,—app. xvii.
- De Plano Carpini, 899 n. See also under Carpini.
- De Sacy, Silvestre, 87 n.
- Des Guignes, 886 n, 938 n, 1264 n.
- D'Herbelot, 884 n, 1268 n 9.
- Dīlamah (Dayālimah), dynasty of the, 40 n 2, 45, 49 n 7, 55, 57, 60 n 8, 63, 65, 174 n, 296 n.
- "Diary of a march"..., Raverty's, 95 n 4.
- Dib-bādūe b. Alminjah, chieftain of the Turks, 873 n.
- Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities, the, 886 n.
- Dictionary of Greek and Roman Biography, the, 886 n.
- Dictionary of Greek and Roman Geography, the, 886 n.
- Dihgān, the; name of a people, 1043 n 1.
- Dīlamān, the, 92. See also the Dīlamah.
- Dilasāk Afghāns, the, 352 n 3, 1043 n 1, 1096 n.
- Dinār, 'Imād-ud-Dīn, the Ghaz Chief, 246 n 8, 378 n 8.
- Dīn-dār Muḥammad, the Amīr-i-Ākhur of Lohor, 1135.
- Dīnwāj Rāe, ruler of Sunār-gāw, 890 n.
- Divination by means of the shoulder-blades of sheep, 1078 and n 8.
- Diwān-i-'Arīṣ-i-Mamālīk [Muster-Master of the Kingdom], the, 709.
- Dīws, the, 187. [889 n.]
- Doghlati tribe of the Mughals, the, D'Oheson, 535 n, 510 n, 884 n, 896 n, 910 n, 913 n, 916 n, 917 n, 947 n, 1001 n 9, 1021 n 8, 1086 n, 1090 n, 1121 n, 1183 n 6, 1190 n 1, 1236 n, 1256 n 6, 1267 n n.
- Doi-ūn-Byān, 892 n. See under Doyūn Byān.

Dera, 822 n.

Dern's "Afghān," 180 n. [988 n.]

Do-ghāhāh, signification of the term,  
Dostān b. Barakān, 9.

Dow, xi, xii, xiii, 41 n, 87 n, 205 n,  
319 n 6, 323 n, 404 n 9, 431 n 7,  
441 n 9, 443 n, 446 n 5, 448 n 3,  
450 n, 451 n, 459 n 7, 461 n, 464 n  
7, 467 n, 473 n, 475 n 2, 478 n 6,  
479 n, 480 n, 484 n, 498 n 6, 500 n  
2, 504 n 3, 508 n 1, 509 n, 510 n,  
511 n, 513 n 3, 515 n and n 7, 517  
n, 518 n, 519 n, 520 n, 521 n, 523 n,  
524 n, 537 n, 548 n 3, 561 n, 633 n  
3, 638 n 1, 640 n 3, 641 n 6, 643 n 3,  
645 n 9, 649 n 7, 655 n 9, 656 n, 657  
n 5, 658 n 3, 654 n 4, 678 n 7 and  
8, 680 n, 691 n, 705 n 7, 874 n, 885  
n, 1130 n, 1133 n, 1203 n, 1203 n,  
1271 n,—app xi, xx.

Dow's "Hindustān," 87 n.

Dowson, xxxiv n 4, xlv, xlx, li, lii,  
liii, liv, 77 n, 78 n, 90 n 1, 91 n 1,  
94 n 3, 98 n 3, 98 n 7, 101 n 3, 102  
n 9, 108 n 3, 104 n 3, 108 n 4, 110  
n 4, 459 n 7, 545 n 6, 557 n 3, 600  
n 4, 807 n 3, 809 n 1, 819 n 3, 1076  
n, 1093 n, 1153 n, 1201 n,—app.  
iii, xix.

Doyān Byān, grandson of Yūldūs  
Khān, sovereign of the Mughal  
Imāh, 892 n.

Dubay Nāyia, 536 n.

Duffah, the, 566 n 3.

Duklah, the Atā-bak, 143. See also  
Tuklah b. Salghur.

Dūkūz, the Christian Khātān of  
Hulākā, daughter of Aighū, son of  
the Awang Khān, 1193 n, 1263 n.

Dūral-gin or Dūria-gin, the; descen-  
dants of Naqūz, 888 n, 891 n,  
892 n, 893 n, 895 n, 940 n, 951 n,  
1095 n.

Dūrtās, agent of the Chingis Khān  
to the Yiddī-Kāz, 953 n.

Dūrbān tribe, the, 1093 n.

Dēr-Bāgh, signification and descrip-  
tion of, 607 n 5

Durgāwati, Rānī, 586 n.

Dur-la-gin, the, 888 n, —Dūral-gin,  
which see.

Dārmāns, the; a Mughal tribe, 939  
n, 940 n, 944 n.

Durr-i-Ghūr, or Pearl of Ghūr; de-  
signation of Ziyā-ud-Dīn Muham-  
mad, also called 'Alā-ud-Dīn Mu-  
hammad, Malik-ul-Hajj, 346 and  
n 1.

Durrānīa, the; a tribe of Afghāns,  
352 n 3.

Dzāxis, the, an Afghān people,  
499 n.

## E.

Earl of Crawford and Balcarres,  
ix.

Earl of Leicester, Simon de Mont-  
fort, 548 n 7. [n 1.]

"Early Travels in Palestine," 1173

Eastwick, 109 n 9.

Elliott, Sir, H, x n 2, xiii, 77 n, 84  
n 3, 87 n, 90 n 1, 444 n, 477 n, 481  
n 1, 508 n 1.

Elkott's Biographical Index, 508 n  
1, 1271 n.

Elliott's India, xxxiv n 4, xlv, xlv,

xhz, ii, lii, liii, liv, 69 n, 72 n 6,  
76 n 2, 77 n, 78 n, 8 n, 85 n, 86 n,  
87 n, 90 n 1, 94 n 3, 96 n 2, 104 n  
3, 107 nn 6 and 7, 110 n 4, 120  
n, 291 n, 292 n, 318 n 9, 351 n 9,  
352 n 3, 355 n 4, 363 n 3, 446 n 5,  
461 n, 466 n 1, 469 n 7, 469 n 9,  
471 n 5, 485 n 3, 519 n, 524 n, 526  
n, 530 n 7, 531 n 8, 533 n, 534 n 1,  
536 n, 537 n, 539 n 2, 541 nn 7 and  
8, 542 n 9, 544 n 5, 550 n 5, 554 n 6,  
555 n 1, 556 nn 9 and 1, 560 n, 565  
n 4, 566 n 8, 568 n, 570 n 9, 572 n 7,  
573 n 2, 574 n 3, 575 n 1, 577 n 8,  
579 n 4, 580 nn 8 and 9, 581 n 2,  
582 n 6, 583 nn 9 and 1, 585 n 6,  
586 n 8, 587 n 3, 588 n 5, 594 n 9,  
596 n 8, 600 n 4, 601 n 7, 603 n 7,  
604 n 1, 606 nn 2 and 3, 607 n 5,  
608 n 8, 609 n 5, 611 nn 9 and 3,  
613 n 2, 615 n, 616 n 3, 620 nn 1  
and 3, 621 n 5, 623 nn 8 and 9,  
622 nn 3 and 5, 634 n 3, 635 n 9,  
637 nn 7 and 9, 638 nn 2 and 3,  
639 n 6, 640 nn 1 and 2, 641 n 6,  
647 n 8, 650 n 1, 651 n 6, 654 n and  
n 8, 655 n 9, 656 n 3, 658 nn 9 and  
1, 662 nn 4 and 5, 664 nn 2 and 3,  
666 n, 667 nn 2 and 4, 670 n 3, 675  
nn 5 and 7, 676 n 2, 677 n 6, 678  
n 7, 679 nn 3 and 6, 683 nn 6 and  
7, 684 nn 8 and 9, 685 nn 1 and 4,  
686 n 7, 687 n 1, 688 nn 2 and 3,  
689 n and n 7, 691 n, 692 nn 2 and  
3, 693 nn 8 and 9, 694 n 2, 698 nn  
7 and 8, 699 n 5, 700 n 6, 701 n 9,  
702 n 4, 705 n 7, 706 n 1, 708 nn 9  
and 2, 709 n and n 4, 711 n 4, 714

n 3, 715 n 2, 753 n 1, 759 n 5, 800  
n 5, 801 n 2, 806 n 7, 807 nn 8 and  
9, 809 nn 5 and 1, 810 n, 811 n 7,  
812 n and n 3, 813 n and n 4, 814,  
n 1, 815 n 3, 816 n 5, 817 n 3, 819  
n 3, 821 n 7, 824 n 1, 825 n 5, 826  
nn 9 and 1, 827 n 7, 828 nn 2 and  
5, 829 nn 7 and 2, 830 nn 6 and 7,  
832 n 3, 834 nn 5 and 6, 836 n 5,  
837 nn 3 and 5, 839 n 8, 841 nn 4  
and 7, 843 n 1, 844 nn 4 and 1,  
845 n 3, 846 n 6, 849 n 7, 850 nn 4  
and 5, 851 nn 7 and 2, 852 n 4, 853  
n 9, 854 n 4, 856 nn 6, 7 and 9, 859  
n 6, 864 n 4, 869 n 1, 1010 n, 1022  
n, 1023 n, 1093 n, 1153 n, 1203 n,  
1217 n,—app. v, xvii, xviii, xix,  
xxii, xxvi.

*Elliott's Races of the North-West  
Provinces*, 1131 n.

*Elphinstone*, 380 n 9, 442 n, 445 n,  
454 n, 456 n 2, 459 n 7, 462 n, 465  
n, 467 n, 479 n, 511 n, 513 n 2, 515  
n and n 5, 516 n 2, 519 n, 521 n,  
522 n, 546 n 7, 589 n, 595 n 2, 610  
n 7, 623 n 9, 642 n 3, 647 n 9, 666  
n, 669 n 8, 690 n 8, 674 n, 1010 n,  
1043 n 1, 1058 n 6, 1076 n,—app.  
xvii.

*Erdmann*, 897 n, 939 n, 977 n, 983 n,  
985 n, 996 n, 1021 n 8, 1033 n, 1084  
n, 1090 n, 1095 n.

*Essay on the Geography of the  
Oxus*, Col. Yule's, 1010 n

*Ethnology of Bengal*, Dalton's, 560  
n 8, 705 n 7.

*Euclid*, 1258 n 6.

*Eve*, 596 n 1.

## F.

- Fadlallah**, 1000 n, 1010 n, 1016 n, 1019 n, = **Rashid-ud-Din**, **Faṣl-ul-lah**, which see.
- Faghāni** the **Qhaghāniān**, ruler of **Tukhārīstan**, 423 n 8.
- Faghūr**, the title of the rulers of **Qhān**, 1218 n.
- Falākūs**, (Philip of Macedonia, father of Alexander the Great), King of **Yūnān**, 4.
- Faiḡī**, the **Sachindi**, author of the **Akbar Nūmah**, xvi, 587 n 4.
- Fakhr-ud-Daulah** **Abu'l Ḥasan-i Bawīah**, 46 n 4, 57, 58.
- Fakhr-ud-Daulah** 'Alī b ul-Ḥasan b. **Rukn-ud-Daulah Bawīah**, 57, 59, 61 n 4, 232 n.
- Fakhr-ud Din** 'Abd-ul 'Aziz-i-Kūfi, **Kāvi**, 513.
- Fakhr-ud-Din** 'Abd-ur-Rahmān, **Khawājah**, the 'Ibrānī Banker, 1048 and n 1, 1049 n 2.
- Fakhr-ud-Din**, **Abū Sulimān-i-Dā'ūd al-Fanākati**. See under **al-Fanākati**.
- Fakhr-ud-Din Akhlāfi**, astronomer and mathematician, 1257 n.
- Fakhr-ud-Din**, the **Dabir**, **Amir**, 635.
- Fakhr-ud-Din**, the **Dāmghāni**, 1246 n 5, 1255 n.
- Fakhr-ud-Din**, the **Kāfi-i-Kuṣāt** of the **Dār-ul Khilāfat**, 1151 n.
- Fakhr-ud Din** **Khālid Fūshanji**, 459 n 4.
- Fakhr-ud-Din Kāfi**, 640.
- Fakhr-ud-Din**, of the **Kurat** dynasty, 1208 n.
- Fakhr-ud-Din Marighi**, astronomer and mathematician, 1257 n.
- Fakhr-ud-Din Mas'ūd b. 'Alī-ud-Din Utsuz**, **Malik**, 416.
- Fakhr-ud-Din Mas'ūd b. 'Isa-ud-Din al-Ḥusain**, **Shansabi**, **Malik** of **Bāmian**, 337, 338, 340, 358 n 3, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373 and n 8, 374, 375 n, 379, 421, 422, 423 and n 8, 424 and n 6, 425 and n 3, 426 n 6, 427, 431 n 7, 447 and n 7.
- Fakhr-ud-Din Mubārak Shāh Farrukhi**, the **Farrāsh**, 659 and n 4, 660, 747, 761.
- Fakhr-ud-Din Mubārak Shāh** of **Marw-ar-Rūd**, **Maulānā**, author of a history of the **Ghūrīs** in verse, 300, 301 and n 2, 302, 317 n 3, 386 and n 4, 397 n 2, 509 n.
- Fakhr-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Arāz-gar**, 1067.
- Fakhr-ud-Din Muhammad b 'Umr Rāsi**, **Imām** xix, 385 n 9, 429 and n 4, 485 n 3. [dealer, 744.]
- Fakhr-ud-Din** the **Safahāni**, a slave.
- Fakhr-ud-Din Saḡi**, governor of **Halab**, 1264 n.
- Fakhr-ud Din Sūlari**, governor of **Sindūstān**, 294 n.
- Fakhr-ul-Mulk 'Isāmi**, **Wazir** of **Baghdād**, 617 n.
- Fakhr-ul-Mulk Karim-ud-Din Lāgh-ri**, feudatory of **Lakhaṇ-or**, 739 and n 7.
- Fakhr-ul-Mulk Nizām-ud-Din** **Abu'l Ma'ālī**, the **Kātib**, **Wazir** of **Sultān Muḥammad Khwārazm Shāh**, 990 n, 1035 n.
- Fakhr-ul-Mulk Sharaf-ud-Din Wadāri**, **Wazir** of **Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Sām**, 389.
- Fakhr Muḥammad**, author of the **Jāmi'-ut-Tawārīkh**, xvi, 592 n.
- Fanākati**, **al**, 19 n 2, 31 n 3, 41 n 5, 53 n, 61 n 3, 66 n 7, 75 n 6, 77 n, 70

- n, 97 n 4, 98 n 5, 99 n, 107 n 7, 108 n 5, 113 n, 117 n, 125 n n 8 and 1, 126 n 2, 146 n 5, 155 n 6, 249 n, 358 n n 2 and 3, 439 n 4, 446 n, 514 n, 522 n 6, 569 n 2, 870 n, 873 n, 876 n, 890 n, 882 n, 888 n, 894 n, 896 n, 912 n, 934 n, 938 n, 948 n, 976 n, 1008 n 5, 1019 n, 1120 n 2, 1121 n, 1122 n, 1136 n 9, 1138 n, 1144 n 5, 1160 n 8, 1164 n, 1168 n, 1179 n, 1183 n, 1206 n 3, 1211 n, 1216 n, 1219 n, 1220 n, 1221 n, 1224 n, 1240 n, 1241 n, 1242 n 2, 1244 n, 1253 n 4, 8263 n, 1277 n, 1286 n,—app. x.
- Fannā Khurasan, 43, 61 and n 3, 62, 63, 64. See also 'Uḡd-ud Daulah.
- Farang, or Afranj, i. e., Franks, the, 189 n, 144 n and n 3, 157, 158 n, 159, 160, 161 and n, 162 and n 3, 163, 171, 204 n, 209 and n 6, 210 and n, 211 and n 8, 212 n 1, 214, 217 n, 218, 219 and n 9, 220 n 4, 221, 224, 226, 1151 n, 1166 n, 1167 n, 1275.
- Farāwwal b. Sīf-mak, 304. [app. xxi.]
- Farhang-i-Jahāngiri, the, 64 n 1,—
- Farhang-i-Rashīdī, the,—app. xii.
- Farid-i-Bukhārī, Shahkh,—app. xxi.
- Farid,—Sher Shāh, the Afghan or Patān sovereign of Dihlī, 511 n.
- Faridūn. See Afridūn.
- Faridūn, the Ghūri, an officer of Sultān Muḥammad, Khwarezm Shāh, 1098 n.
- Farighūnī family, the, rulers of Khwarezm, under the Samānī sovereigns, 232 n, 233 n 7.
- Farmā or Farmāe Aḡa, husband of the third Gūr Khān, 927 n, 928 n.
- Farrāshīs, the; a class of servants, 669 n 5.
- Farrukh b. Bīdān b. Mīa Khurasan, 11.
- Farrukh Shāh, one of the principal Mu'izziah Amirs in Hind, 607 n.
- Farrukh Shāh b. Bahrām Shāh Ghaznawi, 111.
- Farrukh Shāh b. Sultān Ibrāhīm Ghaznawi, 106.
- Farrukh Shāh b. Sultān Maḥmūd b. Muḥammad-i-Malik-Shāh Sal-jūki, 204 n.
- Farrukh-Zād b. Khurasan Farwīs, of the Akāsrah, 6.
- Farrukh-Zād b. Mas'ūd-i-Karīm, Ghaznawi, 107.
- Farrukh-Zād b. Sultān Mas'ūd Ghaznawi, 95, 99 n, 100 and n 5, 101 and n n 6 and 8, 102 n n 1, 2 and 4, 103, 301 n.
- de Faryas y Souza, 582 n 6.
- Farzand Khān Saighūr b. Atā-bak Sa'd, 296 n.
- Fasīḡi. See under the Mujmal-i-Fasīḡi.
- Fatḡ-i-Karmākh, Muḥayyid-ud-Din the Shisani; Champion of the Ghūri forces, 316 and n 1.
- Fatḡ ud Din b. Alankū, a leader of the Khalifah's troops, 1240 n and n 9, 1251 n 9.
- Fatimah, daughter of Muḥammad, 104 n 3, 265 n 4.
- Fatimah Khatūn, the Tājīk hand-maid of Tūrī-kinah Khatūn, 1149 n 7, 1152 n.
- Fatimites or Ismā'īlīans of Egypt, the, 309 n 5 [next]
- Fāyīk-i-Bak-Tūsūn, 44 n 1. See the Fāyīk i Khafāsh, an officer of the Samānī dynasty, 44 and n 1, 46, 48 and n 2, 4 and 8, 49, 50 and n 4, 51, 74 n, 75 n, 302 n, 303 n.

Ḥaṣī ḥ. Ḥamm, governor of Fārs on the part of the Seljāq sovereigns, 174 n.

Ḥaṣī ḥ. Ḥabl, Wasir of al-Ma'mūn, 10, 13 n. 6.

Ḥaṣī-i-Ḥalīḡ, Ḥijāṡ, officer of the Ṭāhirī dynasty, 16.

Ḥaslawiāhs, the: a people of Fārs, 175 n. 7.

Ḥaṣī-ullāh, 535 n. See also under Fadlallāh and Rashīd-ud-Dīn.

Ḥarner, General, 1057 n. 4.

Ḥidā'i, application of the term, 485 n. 3.

Ḥidā'i, meaning of, 1147 n. 2, 1148 n. 4.

Ḥidā'is, the, 305 n. 4, 351 and n. 7, 1190 n. 1, 1193 n., 1211 n.

Ḥiṡu Nūyān, son-in-law of the Ḥhīn-gis Khān, 287 and n. 2, 289 n., 1006 and n. 3, 1007 n. 3, 1019 n., 1020 and n., 1022, 1034 n., 1069 and n. 1, 1000.

Ḥir'awn of Miṣr, the, 303 n. 7.

Ḥirdaus, the slave, 10 n. 8.

Ḥirdaus [Philaretos], Ḥāmi, governor of Antākiyah, 158 n.

Ḥirdausi, author of the *Shāh-Nāmah*, 1, 306 n. 2.

Ḥirāhtah, xi, xii, xiii, 78 n., 81 n., 94 n. 3, 96 n. 2, 113 n., 118 n. 5, 312 n. 6, 380 n. 9, 404 n. 9, 431 n. 7, 441 n. 9, 442 n., 443 n., 444 n., 445 n., 446 n. 5, 448 n. 3, 449 n. 3, 1 and 2, 450 n., 452 n. 9, 453 n. 3 and 4, 454 n., 456 n. 1, 459 n. 7 and 9, 460 n. 3, 461 n., 463 n., 463 n., 464 n. 7, 466 n. 9, 467 n., 469 n. 9, 470 n. 2, 475 n. 2, 476 n., 477 n., 479 n., 480 n., 484 n., 496 n., 497 n., 498 n., 498 n. 6, 500 n. 2 and 3, 501 n., 504 n. 2, 508 n. 1, 509 n., 510 n., 511 n., 513 n. 5, 515 n., 516 n.

2, 517 n., 518 n., 519 n., 520 n., 531 n., 532 n., 533 n., 534 n., 535 n., 536 n., 537 n., 541 n., 542 n. 9, 544 n. 1, 545 n. 5, 546 n. 7, 547 n., 548 n. 3, 564 n. 2, 591 n., 592 n., 603 n. 6 and 7, 604 n. 3, 605 n. and n. 1, 606 n. 4, 607 n. 5, 611 n. 2, 616 n. 3, 619 n. 7, 623 n. 3 and 1, 630 n. 1, 631 n. 5 and 8, 632 n. 1, 633 n. 3, 634 n. 2, 635 n. 9, 636 n. 1, 640 n. 2 and 3, 641 n. 6 and 8, 642 n. 2 and 3, 643 n., 645 n. 3 and 4, 646 n. 6, 647 n. 9, 648 n. 2, 649 n. 7, 650 n. 3, 551 n. 7, 653 n. 5, 654 n., 656 n., 657 n. 4 and 5, 658 n. 3, 1 and 2, 659 n. 6, 661 n. and n. 2, 664 n. 4 and 5, 665 n. 3, 666 n. and n. 9, 668 n. 5, 670 n. 1, 678 n. and n. 7 and 8, 679 n. 2, 680 n., 683 n., 685 n., 689 n., 690 n. 3, 691 n., 692 n. 4, 693 n. 2, 695 n. 9, 697 n., 698 n., 699 n. 2 and 5, 703 n. 7, 705 n. 7, 707 n. 3, 711 n. 4, 713 n. 2 and 4, 715 n. 5, 722 n. 3, 773 n., 776 n., 777 n., 778 n., 735 n., 801 n., 802 n., 1130 n., 1131 n., 1184 n., 1203 n., 1271 n.—app. vi, vii, viii, xi, xiv, xix, xxvi.

Ḥirūz Sultān, of the Bahmanī dynasty in the Deḡhan, 592 n.

Ḥirūz-i-Bam-sinjān or Ḥarāḥ Ḥirūz, 70 and n. 8

Ḥirūz,—Bandḡdār, Sultān of Miṣr, 1278 n.

Ḥirūz, Iyāl-timīsh, the Sālār, Malik-sādaḥ of Ḥhūwārazm, one of the Maliks of Shams-ud-Dīn Iyāl-timīsh, 190, 625 and n. 6, 743 and n. 7

Ḥirūz-i-Iyāl-Timīsh ḥ. Sālār, Malik, 235. See the above.

Ḥirūz ḥ. Yasḡajurd, ḥ. Bahram-i-Gūr, 5, 421, 422 n. 3.

Firūzi College, of Uchahah, 541 and  
n 8.

Firūz Shāh-i Abū'l Muḡaffar, Shāh-  
i-Jahān, the Habaahi, Sultān, 582  
n 6, 588 n, 590 n, 591 n, 592 n, 621  
n 6, 717 n.

Firūz Shāh b. Sultān Ibrāhīm  
Ghaznawī, 106.

Firūz Tughlak, Sultān, of the Tugh-  
lak dynasty in Hind, 93 n 9.

Fonetic Nuz, the, 874 n.

Fo. ben, 1090 n.

Forsyth, Sir T. D., 633 n.

Franklin, Major William, 558 n 7.

Franks. See Farangs.

Fraser, 394 n 2.

Frössart, 1134 n.

Fūlād Akā, grandson of the Bāwūr-  
-chī Bārki, of the Dürhān tribe,  
1093 n.

Fūr, = Forus, which see.

Fūsūbah, Atā-bak, governor of  
Fārs, 174 n.

## G.

Gabari Afghāns a sept of the Shal-  
mānis, the, 1044 n.

Gabr, application of the term, 630  
n 2, 1112 n 9.

Gabra, the, 620 and n 2, 1044 n, 1112  
n 9, 1136.

Gaheps, the, 1132 n.

Gahrāla, the, 1132 n.

Gahtī, or Gatī, the Crā-ūt, the Nū-  
yān, 1092 n.

Gaiu mart, or Gil-Shāh, surnamed  
Fesh-Dād or Irān Ghīh, first king  
of 'Ajām, 1, 2, 872 n 879 n

Gajz-lak, etymology of the name,  
865 n

Gakars, the, 1043 n 1, 1130 n

Gakhars, the, 465 n, 477 n, 637 n,  
647 n 9, 1132 n, 1136 n 7.

Gāo-i-Khūta'i, the, 69 n.

Gardezi, the. See Abū Sa'īd-i-Abd-  
-ul-Hay.

Garghāmb b. Zau, 561 n 9.

Gasbil, Father, 566 n, 1066 n 3, 1066  
n, 1090 n.

Gauḡhiyās, the, or

Gauḡriyās, the, 569 n 2.

Gazetteer of Central Asia, Mac  
Gregor's, 1118 n 6.

Gazlak Khān, an officer of the  
Khwārazmī dynasty, 381.

Geographical Magazine, the, 678 n,  
891 n, 915 n, 916 n, 917 n, 918 n,  
919 n, 966 n 1, 981 n, 1081 n.

"Geographical Memoir of the  
Persian Empire," MacD. Kin-  
neir's, 61 n 1

George Serodolits, grand Duke of  
Russon, 1171 n

Georgians, the. See under the  
Gorgis

Gerbultm, 961 n, 1167 n.

Germans, the, 1168 n.

Ghā'ir Beg, the Kariugh, an officer  
of Sultan Iyāl Arsalān, Khwā-  
-zsm Shāh, 927 n

Ghā'ir Baka Khān, the I-ghār ruler,  
242 n 6, 250 n 4.

Ghā'ir Khān Anāl-Jak, the Kan-  
-buli, governor of Utrār on the  
part of Sultan Muḡammad Khwā-  
-zsm Shāh, 271 n, 273 n 2, 275 n  
3, 986 n 1, 971 n, 986 n.



Ghaja-Ghāo, [the Bos Grunniens], or Wild Yāk, xiv, 68 and n 4, 69 n, 922 n, 946 n.

Ghakbars, the, 294 n.—also written Gakhars, which see.

Ghalsān, the,—a tribe of Afghāns, 327 n 6, 510 n, 548 n 3, 556 n 7, 1016 n 3, 1022 n, 1058 n 6.

Ghalsi b Shāh Husain, son of the Ghūri chief who settled among the Afghāns, 510 n.

Ghar-ghau, 68 n 4, 69 n. See the Ghaja-Ghāo.

Gharib-ul Hadīq, the, 14.

Ghassān b. 'Ubbād, governor of Khurasān on the part of al-Ma'mūn, 11, 27 and n 6, 28.

Ghatī or Mirghatī, the Crā ūt,—the Nūyin to whom the Chingiz Khān gave in marriage his Khātūn Anīkah Bigi, 1092 n, 1143 n. The name is also written Gahtī or Gati.

Ghāzi, signification of, 70 n 2

Ghaznawī dynasty, the, v, xiv, 26 n 1, 99 n, 186 n, 231, 323 n, 332 n 4, 334 n 8, 338 n 2, 357 n 1, 407 n, 614 n 8, 631 n 7. Also called the Yamīniyah dynasty.

Ghazzālī, Imam, Ahmad,—the Sultan of Mashhā'ikh, 142, 149 n 2, 386 n 4, 359 n.

Ghirdrah, meaning of, 1027 n 8

Ghiyās ud Din Aḳ Sultān b Muhammad i Takīgh Khwārazm Shāh, 934 n, 1118 n 9. This name seems to be an error for Ghiyās ud Din Pir Shāh. See under Aḳ Sultān.

Ghiyās ud Din Balban, xii, xxvii, xxix, xxx, xxxiv n 4, lv, 589 n, 601 n 6, 620 n 4, 652 n 8, 661 n, 667 n 1 668 n, 674, 685 n 4, 695 n

2, 696 n, 699 n 1, 716 n 5, 717 n, 776 n, 778 n, 794 n 1, 800 n, 801 n, 806 n, 807 n 8, 810 n 4, 820 n 3, 865 n, 1181 n 2, 1184 n. See also Uluḡ Khān-i-Balban.

Ghiyās-ud-Din 'Iwaz, the Khalj, fourth Khalj ruler of Lakhnawati, lxv, 489 and n 7, 563 n. See also under 'Iwaz.

Ghiyās-ud-Din Muhammad i-Sam, Ghūri, xxii, xxiii and n 2, 1, li, 112 and n 5, 113 n, 114 n, 115, 182, 189 n 1, 193 and n 6, 240 n, 243, 244 n, 245, 246 n and n 8, 248, 249, 252 and n 6, 253, 255 n 7, 256, 257 n 2 258 n, 265 n 4, 267, 301, 302, 342, 346 n 1, 349 n, 357, 366, 368 and n, 369, 370, 371 and n 4, 372, 373 and n 8, 374 and n 3, 375 n, 376 n and n 3, 377 and n 4, 378 and n 8, 379, 380 and n 9, 381 and n 5, 392, 393, 394 and n 5, 395 and n 9, 397, 398, 399, 399 and n 9, 392, 393 and n 7 and 8, 396, 397, 404, 405, 405 n 5, 411, 412, 413, 414 and n 9, 417, 419, 424 and n 6 and 7, 425 n 3, 426, 427, 428 and n 1, 429 n, 430, 431, 438 n 2, 440, 446 and n 5, 447 and n 6 and 1, 448 and n 3, 449 and n 8, 456 and n 2, 457 n, 471, 472 and n, 479 n 6, 479 n, 480 n, 482 n, 487, 488 n 1, 490 n, 501, 510 n, 519 n, 522 n 3 and n, 523 n, 603 n 7, 614 n 8, 622 n, 1063, 1127 n, 1198 n 4, 1199 n,—app u, iv, v, xvi xxiii. Before his accession to the throne his title was Ghams-ud Din.

Ghiyās ud Din Muhammad Shāh b Sultan Shams-ud Din Ival-Timugh, 625, 633, 639 n 7, 735.

Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn Fir Shāh b. Muḥammad-i-Takīsh, Khwārazm Shāh 254 n 3, 277 n 5, 281 n 5, 283 n 9, 284 and n, 285 n 2, 295 n, 290 n, 297 n 9, 276 n, 290 n, 1118 n 0  
See also Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn Ak Sul-tān.

Ghulām, in what sense understood 168 n 2

Ghūri Shalmatī, Amīr, an officer of the Ghūri dynasty. 410

Ghūri Shānastī b. Muhammad-i-Takīsh, Khwārazm Shāh, 254 and n 2 and 3, 281, 480 n. See also under Rukn-ud-Dīn Ghūri Shānastī

Ghūri Tāzika, the, 511 n

Ghūrīān Sultans, the.—See under the Ghūrīs

Ghūrīs, the, xiii, xiv, xvi, xvii, 106 n 3, 110, 111, 113 n, 149 n 2, 150, 192, 199, 217 n, 251 n 1, 252 n 4 and 7, 253 and n 9, 255 n and 7, 256 n, 257 n, 258 n, 262 n and n 9, 264 n, 307 n, 312, 313 n 4, 315 and n 5, 320 n 4, 321 n 7, 322 n, 323 n, 325 n, 326 n, 327 n, 328 n, 332 n 1, 333, 334, 335, 338 n 2, 341 n 7, 348 n, 352 n 3, 357 n 7, 358, 361, 364, 369, 372, 374 n 5, 376, 377 and n 4, 379 n, 381 n 2 and 5, 382 and n 9, 383 n 2, 384 n 6, 397 n 2, 400 n 3, 401 n, 403 n, 411 n, 414 n 9, 419 n 5, 420, 421, 425, 427, 439 n 4, 449 n 9, 473 n 2, 474 and n, 480 n, 481 n, 482 n 7, 493 n, 495, 505 n, 509 n, 510 n, 511 n, 537 n, 538 n, 539, 540 n, 544 n 1 and 3, 606 n 3, 624 n, 750 n 7, 924 n, 929 n, 930 n 9, 940, 1002 n 7, 1011 n 2, 1015 n, 1016, 1022 n, 1023 n, 1053 n 7, 1056, 1051 n 7, 1099 n,

1133, 1198 n 8, 1202 n,—app. i, xv.

Ghuzz, the tribe of,—descendants of Ghuzz b. Mang or Mansag b. Yāfā, 28 n 8, 81 n, 111 and n 1, 112 and n 3, 113 n, 114 n, 144 n, 149 and n 2, 150, 155 and n 6, 156 and n 8, 180 n 7, 189, 237 n, 245, 246 n and n 8, 348 n, 349 n, 350 n, 357 n 7, 359 n, 361, 363 n 8, 367 and n 9, 368 n, 369, 374 n 2, 3 and 5, 375 n, 376, 377 and n 4 and 6, 378 and n 8, 438 n 6, 447 n 6, 448, 449 and n 8, 450 n 3, 495 n, 499 n, 570 n, 571 n, 579 n, 591 n, 597 n, 603 n, 607 n, 608 n, 609 n, 610 n, 611 and n 7, 616 n, 623 n, 601 n, 662, 1016, 1022 n, 1245 n

Ghuzz b. Mang or Mansag b. Yāfā, 870 n, 471 n

Ghuzzan, the, 661 n. See the Ghuzz tribe

Gibarīs or Gabariīs, the,—one of the three divisions of the Shalmāniīs, 1044 n

Gibson, 117 n, 133 n 4, 144 n, 162 n 3, 173 n 4, 506 n 1, 686 n, 1268 n 9.

Girace the, 903 n

Gil Ghāh, or Gau mart, surnamed Frsh Dād or Iran Shāh, 1st of the Bastānī dynasty of 'Ajām, 2

Gil wānīn dynasty, also named the Frsh Dādīn and Bastānī dynasty, the 2

Gimāl or Gimāl (Gumāl) b. Yāfā, 870 n

Gurū Malik b. Arghūn Akā, administrator of Irīn-Zamīn, 1195 n

Gur—one of the ancient heroes of Iran, 561 n 9

Gobind or Gobindah Rāo, Rājā of  
Dihli,—brother of Pithorā Rāo of  
Ajmir, 459 and n 2, 460 and n, 461  
n, 466 n 1, 468, 469 n 2, 516 n 2,  
1271 n.

Godfrey, King of Jerusalem,—who  
commanded the first Crusade,  
101 n 8.

Goes 421 n 2, 969 n 1.

Gog and Magog, See under Yājūj  
and Mājūj

Gohar Malikah, Tāj-ud-Dunyā wa'd  
Dīn, daughter of 'Alā ud Dīn al-  
Ḥusain Jahān-sūz, the Ghūrī, 376.

Golah, signification of, 455 n 6 517  
n, 524 n

Golah Pithorā, Rāo, See under  
Kolah Pithorā Rāo.

Golden Record the,—the Altān  
Daftar 891 n [1119 n]

Goldsmid, Major-General, Sir F J,  
Gomānik Khātun See under Konik  
or Konayik Khātun

Gomer (Gumari) b Yāfā, 870 n.

Gon chor, chief of the Yong-ku  
tribe, 955 n

Gonds, the, 587 n 4.

Gonfalonier, the, 1227 n 3.

Goths the, 687 n

Gradus ad Aernon, Abbott's 78 n.

Grant Duff, Mr, 520 n

Greeks, the, 3, 69 n, 211 n 7, 300 n,  
814 n 6 886 n.

Grigoren, Professor V, 915 n, 920 n

Grihantha āsram, 691 n.

Grose, 1131 n

Grote, Arthur, vi, 865 n

Grown, F. L., Mr, 687 n 5

Gudarz,—one of the ancient heroes  
of Irān, 561 n 9

Gudarz-i-Akbar b Shāpur, of the  
Ashkāniān dynasty of 'Ajām, 4

Gudarz-i-Aqbar b. Gūdars-i-Akbar  
of the Ashkāniān dynasty of  
'Ajām, 4.

Gūjars, the,—name of a people in  
Koh-i-Jūd, 1131 n.

Gukars, the, 1076 n. See the  
Gakhars

Gulātān, the, 179 n 1.

Gumārī b. Yāfā —Gomer of Scrip-  
ture, 670 n, 871 n, 872 n.

Gūr or Kūr (Kiwak) b. Alminjah,  
chieftain of the Turks, 873 n.

Gūr, Gūr or Gawuz Khān b. Mughal  
Khān, the first ruler of the  
Mughal Imāk, 875 n.

Gur Khān, the, sovereign of the  
Korū-Khutāis, xlvii, xlviii, 134 n 8,  
155 n, 181 n 9, 200 n 7, 237 n 2, 244  
n 3, 261 n 7, 261 n, 262 n 1, 263 and  
n, 264 and n, 402 n, 473 n 2, 474  
n 479 n, 490 n, 907 n, 908 n, 909 n,  
901 n, 911 and n 8, 912 and n, 913  
n, 914 n 915 n, 917 n, 918 n, 923  
n, 925 n, 926 n, 927 n, 928 n, 929 n,  
930 n, 931 n, 932 n 933 n, 934 n,  
935, 940 n, 951 n, 952 n, 955 n, 959  
n, 961 n 2, 980 and n 1, 981 n, 982  
n, 983 n, 984 n, 985 n, 1001 n, 1116  
n, 1118 n 9, 1141 n

Gur Khans of Karū-Khutāis, dynasty  
of the, 801 n 907 n, 908 n, 909 n,  
912 n 922 n, 930 n 931 n, 984 n.

Gurjis the, 170 n 8 296 and n 7, 297  
n, 906 n, 908 n same as the Geor-  
gians

Gushasab b. Luhrisab of the Kar-  
aniyah dynasty of 'Ajām, 3, 7, 561  
and 4 9, 596 n 9, 764 and n 7.

Gushat-asab b Ashraf, 9

Guzār, a mirror—how the word  
came into use 1176 n 9, 1177 n

## H.

- Habashah** dynasty, the,—in al-Ya-man, 8.
- Habashi-i-Nesah-war**, Amīr,—governor of the fortress of Tūlak on the part of Sultān Muḥammad Khwarasm Shāh, 1004 and n 6, 1057, 1058, 1059 and n 2, 1060, 1061, 1067.
- Habīb-us-Siyar**, the, 14 n 1, 113 n, 287 n 9, 323 n, 333 n 6, 363 n 8, 403 n, 407 n n 5 and 7, 411 n, 413 n 1, 439 n 4, 540 n, 869 n 2, 870 n, 872 n, 913 n, 941 n, 946 n, 949 n, 957 n, 958 n, 959 n, 960 n, 975 n 5 987 n 3, 989 n, 1008 n 5, 1012 n 9, 1019 n, 1032 n, 1048 n 1, 1090 n, 1190 n 1, 1221 n, 1264 n.—app. xx
- Hābīl** (Abel) b Adam, 1.
- Hādā'ik** u's **Sīpr** fi **Dakā'ik** r'ah **Sh'r**, the, 238.
- Hāfi** **Abrū**, 79 n, 940 n, 941 n, 955 n, 957 n, 958 n, 960 n, 1036 n 1, 1087 n, 1108 n, 1190 n 1, 1209 n, 1211 n, 1256 n 6.
- Haft Iklim**, the, 363 n 8, 440 n 8, 469 n 9, 545 n 5, 582 n 6, 584 n 2, 593 n, 603 n 6, 622 n 1.—app vi, viii.
- Hāhir** **Diw**, 691 n—See **Rae Chāhar**, the **Ajār**.
- Haibat**, **Mahk**,—chief of the tribes of Jūd, round about the river **Sūhan**, 1131 n.
- Haidar**, another name of 'Alī b Abī **Tālib**, 490
- Hailād** b. **Sarakhīl**, of the **Tabābrī'ah**, 6, 7
- Hain** [**Hin** or **Hunain**] b **Bahrām**,—ancestor of Amīr **Banjī**, 312.
- Hajar-ul-Majar**,—the rain-producing stone, 670 n.
- Hajash** or **Khajash** b. **Ibrāhīm**, ancestor of Amīr **Banjī**, 312.
- Hājī** **Hasan** **Saknāki**, 971 n.
- Hājī**, the **Tarkhān**,—founder of **Astrakhan**, 943 n.
- Hakam** b 'Umr,—one of the generals of Mu'āwīyah, 901 n.
- Hākīm**, al,—Abu'l 'Abbās-i-**Aḥmad**, 2nd of the 'Abbāsi **Khālifahs** in **Egypt**, 1260 n
- Hākīm**, **Abu'l Faḥl** **Aḥmad** b **Muhammad**,—Wazīr of Amīr **Nūh** b. **Naṣr**, **Sāmānī**, 39 n 5, 39 n 1.
- Hakīm-i-Šanā'ī**, the 138.
- Halā Khān**. See the next.
- Halahān**, or **Halā Khān**, chief of the **Urūs** (Russians), 1171 n.
- Hālupa**, the,—name of a people, 1132 n.
- Hām** b. **Nūh**, 3, 304 n 1. **Ham** of **Scripture**
- Hamadis**, the,—the **Qhūrīans** became so styled after they had embraced **Islām**, 313 and n 4
- Hamankā** or **Hamanghā** b **Jirḡah-Langūm** b. **Kāidū Khān**, 895 n, 897 n, 938 n, 955 n.
- Hamawiyah**—the **Sipah-Sālār** of Amīr **Naṣr** b. **Aḥmad** the **Sāmānī's** forces, 36.
- Hamdu'llah**, the **Mustaufi**, 15 n 1, 964 n 2.
- Hamid** b **Amīr** **Aḥmad** b. **Asad** **Sāmānī**, 29 [713.]
- Hamid-ud-Din** of **Mārighalah**, **Imām**, **Hamilton**, **Col J. W**, ix, x and n 2, 560 n 4, 568 n, 585 n 6, 586 n 2, 589 n, 554 n 2.

Hamir, 517 n. See under Bhīrjī.  
 Hamlet, 128 n 8, 722 n 6.  
 Hamsah b. 'Alī,—one of the chiefs of Amir Naṣr b. Aḥmad the Sāmānī's forces, 36.  
 Hamsah, the Khārījī,—the rebel of Sijistān, 12.  
 Hanafis, the,—followers of the Imām Abū Hanīfah, 994 n.  
 Hannay, 562 n.  
 Hannibal, 690 n.  
 Hans, the,—a tribe, 626 n 2.  
 Harab,—some persons are so designated, 191 n 6.  
 Hardab, the Hindū Rājā of Mathura, 85 n.  
 Hārīq-ar-Rā-īq. 1st of the Tabābi'ah, 6, 7.  
 Hariz the 'Ajāmī, of the Tabābi'ah of Yaman, 8.  
 Harjā Diw, 691 n. See Rāo Chābar, the Ajar.  
 Harīshūn or Harīasūn, the Mughal Amir, 1160 n.  
 Harus Shāh b. Muḥammad-i-Takīsh, 264 and n 2.  
 Harṣamah b. A'yūn,—general of al-Ma'mūn, lvi, 10 and n 3.  
 Hart, Captain, 1012 n 1.  
 Hart's "Character and Costume of Afghanistan," 331 n 1.  
 Rārūn b. Altān-Tīgh the Ḥajīb, governor of Khurāsān under the Ghaznawīah, 121, 123 n, 232 n.  
 Harun-ar-Rashīd, 312 and n 1, 313, 315, 316 n and n 9.  
 Hasan-i-'Abd-ul-Malik, Sipāh-Sālār—of the Ghurī forces, 394.  
 Hasan b. 'Alī b Abī Tālib, Imām, 1262.  
 Hasan b. Buwīah, 43, 45. His correct name is Abū'l Husayn i-

Aḥmad, Mu'izz-ud-Daulah,—which see.  
 Hasan b. ul-Husain,—brother of Tāhūr ibn u'l Husayn, 16 n 6.  
 Hasan, the Karlūgh. See under his title of Saif-ud-Din.  
 Hasan, the Māzandarānī,—the slave and assassin of 'Alā-ud-Dīn Maḥmūd, the Maulānā of the Mulāḥidāh, 1206 n 1.  
 Hasan, grandson of Muḥammad-i-Sūri, ruler of Ghūr, 316 n 2, 322 n, 325 n, 333 n 6.  
 Hasan Niṣāmī,—author of the Tāj-ul-Ma'āzīr, 466 n 1, 469 n 2, 539 n 5, 540 n.  
 Hasan b. Ribāl,—Alb-Tigin's deputy in Hirāt, 41 n, 71 n 5.  
 Hasan-i-Ṣabbāḥ,—the head of the sect of Mulāḥidāh, 129 n, 145 n 4, 263 n 6, 1187 and n 7, 1188 n, 1210 n.  
 Hasan b. Sabak-Tigin of Ghaznī, 76.  
 Hasan, the Sarhang,—an officer of the Yāmīnīah dynasty, 108.  
 Hasan, al-, b Sultān Malik b. Mas'ūd-i-Karīm, 107.  
 Hasan-i-Wā'iz-ul-Kāghīfī, Mullā,—author of the Anwār-i-Subailī, 100 n 9. [16]  
 Hasan b Zaid-ul-'Alawī, Amir, 15.  
 Hasan-Tigin b. 'Alī b 'Abd-ul-Mumīn, of the Afrasiyābī Khānah,—famous under the name of Abū'l-Ma'ālī Kulij-i-Famghāj, 207 n, 225 n.  
 Hasnak, the Shakh-ul-Khaṭīr, Wasir of Sultān Maḥmūd of Ghaznī, 92 n 3.  
 Husayn b. Husayn, of the Tabābi'ah, 7.

- Hasān b. Tubba'**, Zū **Hasān**,—of the **Tabābri'ah**, 7.  
**Hātim Tā-i**, 506, 512, 555, 598, 630, 636, 721, 1295  
**Hayātīlah**, the,—name of a people, 423 n 8, 1010 n.  
**Hayton**, the Armenian monk, 1162 n, 1219 n.  
**Hasārah Mughals**, the, 874 n.  
**Hasārahs**, or **Thousands**,—the second of the four degrees of **Mughals**, 948 n  
**Hasārahs**, the, 674 n, 1075 n, 1076 n, 1093 n, 1094 n, 1095 n, 1132 n, 1179 n, 1191 n.  
**Hazrat Sātuk**,—a **Muhammadan** saint,—See **Sātuk Kujah**  
**Henry III** of England, 346 n 7.  
**Herodotus**, 265 n 4, 887 n  
**High Priest** of the **Parsis**, the, x and n 2  
**Hijzabr Shāh b. Ulugh Khān-r-Abi Muhammad**, 235 and n 3  
**Kimartequen**, 1098 n, for **Khumār Tigin**.  
**Humyari Malike** of **al-Yaman**, the, xxxiii, 7  
**Hindū Khān b. Malik Khān b. Takīsh-r-Khwārazm Shāh** 251 and n 1, 252, 256 n, 393 n 8, 619 n 8  
**Hindū Khān**, **Mihtar-i Muhtak**, the **Khāsin**,—one of the **Maliks** of **Shams-ud-Din Iyāl Trnash**, 744 and n 9, 745, 746, 1153 and n 9  
**Hindūs**, the, 81 n, 486 n, 509 n, 516 n 2, 520 n, 521 n, 522 n, 524 n, 552 and n 1, 570 n 9, 619 n 6, 639 n 8, 642 and n 1, 644 n 3, 652, 663 n 9, 680, 696, 715 and n 7, 706, 712 n 1, 728, 734, 738 and n 3, 743, 749, 764 n 5, 765 n 6, 766, 806, 809, 816, 817 n 7, 818 n 5, 821 and n 6, 836, 838, 839, 846 and n 6, 847, 848, 850, 852, 855, 893 n, 912 n, 1034 n, 1074 n, 1186 n 9, 1217 n, 1319 n.—apq. ii, iii, xvii.  
**Honnā**,—the antidote for scurvy, 1124, 1193 n.  
**Hiouen Thsang** See **Hwen Thsang**.  
**Histoire des Mongols**, **D'Ohason's**, 916 n See also under **D'Ohason**.  
**History of Afghanistan**, **Malleson's**, 1027 n 8, 1045 n, 1202 n. See also under **Malleson**.  
**History of Bengal**, **Stewart's**, 666 n, 732 n 1, 762 n 9, 770 n 7, 776 n, 905 n See also under **Stewart**.  
**History of Gauṛ or Lakṣapawāṭi**, of **Shām Parahud**, xvi  
**History of 'Genghizcan the Great'**, [the **Chingiz Khān**], **Petit de la Croix's**, 1010 n, 1093 n  
**History of the Germans**, **Mascou's**, 670 n  
**History of India**, **Elphinstone's**—app xvii See also under **Elphinstone**  
**History of India**, **Marshman's**, 445 n See also under **Marshman**  
**History of Keshghar**, **Dr. Bellew's**, 931 n See also under **Bellew**.  
**History of the Khashti Afghans**, **Khwaju the Matriz's**, xvi  
**History of Khurawān**, the,—of **Maulāna Mu'in-ud-Din Sabawari**, 10 n 1  
**History of the Mughals**, **Rashid ud-Din's**, 891 n See also under **Rashid ud-Din**  
**History of the Mughals**, **Wolfe's**, 1107 n  
**History of Persia**, **Malcolm's**, 1264 n 1279 n, 1292 n

History of the Rājās of Jammū,  
xvi, 79 n, 455 n, 459 n 7, 480 n 2,  
486 n 1, 488 n 4, 488 n.

History of Timūr, the Gūrgān, 866  
n, 889 n, 1025 n.

History of the Turks, Moguls and  
Tatars, the, 635 n, 883 n—a  
translation of the work of Abu'l  
Qhāsi Bahādur Khān.

Hizabr-ud-Din Hasan-i-Adīb, the  
Sipah-Sālār,—holder of the Sef  
of Badā'ūn, 549, 551 n.—app.  
xiv.

Hizabr-ud-Din Muḥammad b.  
Mubārak,—the Amir of Tūlak,  
1062 and n 5.

Hocotam Cham, for Ūktāc Kā-  
ān, 1167 n, 1168 n.

Hodgson's Sketch of Buddhism,  
691 n.

Holāk and Kulīn, the,—name of a  
people whose garments and caps  
were all red,—1137 n.

Holṭay,—one of "Mengko"'s  
generals, 1184 n.

Hoshang b. Siāmāk b. Kaūmurt,—  
2nd of the Bāstāniyah dynasty of  
'Ajam, 2, 303 n 7, 304 and n 2

Hoshang, Sulṭān of Mal'wah, 589 n

Hoshin tribe of Mughals, the,  
1093 n.

Hospitaliers, the, 101 n 8, 212 n 1.

Howorth, Mr H H,—author of the  
"Mongols Proper,"—891 n, 898 n,  
910 n, 911 n 8, 916 n, 919 n, 924  
n, 926 n, 928 n, 933 n, 942 n, 944  
n, 947 n, 950 n, 956 n 1, 971 n,  
977 n, 985 n, 1086 n.

Hubba, mispronunciation of the  
name Jabah

Hūk-i-Ḳarā Bahkam, name of Sabuk  
Tigin's father, xiv, 68, 69 n, 70.

Hūk here is an error for Jūk,—  
See xiv.

Hūlājū, the Nū-yin, 1264 n. [n 7.]

Hulakoo, for Ūklān the Jaubī, 1056

Hulākū Khān b. Tālī b. Qhingis

Khān, 164 and n 9, 180 n 5, 696 n,

706 n 3, 711 and n 4, 712 n, 716

n 4, 764 and n 5, 786 and n 5,

796 n 9, 840 n 2, 846 n 6, 851

and n 7, 857 n 8, 859 and n 8,

861, 863 and n 1, 863, 936 n 8,

1063 n, 1084 n, 1094 n, 1148 n 4,

1176 n 9, 1177, 1180 n, 1190 n

1, 1191 n, 1192 n, 1193 n, 1194 n,

1195 n, 1196 n, 1202 n, 1206 n n

1 and 3, 1207 n, 1208 n, 1209 n,

1210 n, 1211 n, 1213 n, 1215 and

n n 9 and 4, 1218 n, 1231 n, 1233 n,

1225 and n 7, 1236 and n, 1237 n 5,

1238 and n, 1239, 1230 n, 1231 n,

1232 and n, 1233 n 3, 1234 and n

7 and 8, 1235 and n 2, 1236 and

n, 18, 238 n 1239 n, 1240 n, 1243

n 2, 1243 n, 1244 n, 1245 and n 4,

1246 n 5, 1247 and n and n 6

and 7, 1248 and n 8, 1249 n,

1250 n, 1252, 1253 n 4, 1254 n,

1255 n, 1256 n 6, 1257 and n, 1260

and n n 4 and 6, 1261 and n and

n 7, 1263 and n, 1263 n, 1264 n,

1265 and n, 1266 and n 4, 1267

and n 6, 1269, 1270 and n 2, 1271

n, 1272, 1273 and n 7, 1274 and

n 1, 1275 and n 3, 1276 n, 1277

and n, 1278 n, 1279 and n, 1280

n 5, 1281 n, 1282, 1286 n, 1287 n,

1292 n 1, 1293 n and n 2.

Hulākū b. Mitukūc b. Qhaghātāc  
Kā-ān, 1148 n 4.

Hulā, same as Hūlākū

Hu-lyang-hotay, general, 1217 n,  
1218 n, 1221 n, 1222 n.

- Hamde*,—the bird of happy omen, 404 n 7.
- Humā-i* [also *Hamāe*], daughter of Bahman,—VIIth of the Karāniah dynasty of 'Ajām, 3
- Humāyūn*,—emperor of Hindustān, 559 n 2, 582 n 6, 1132 n
- Hume*, 309 n.
- Hungarians*, the, 959 n, 1167 n, 1168 n
- Huns*, the, 966 n.
- Kuns*, the White, 1058 n 6.
- Hū-pi lay*,—Chinese pronunciation of the name *Kublāe*, 1215 n 9
- Hūr Mahkah*, daughter of the *Shār*, *Shāh*. Malik of *Gharjstān*, 363.
- Hormas* or *Aormas*d, 3rd of the *Sāsāniān* dynasty, 4
- Hormas* b *Narsi*, 7th of the *Sāsāniān* dynasty, 4
- Hormas* b *Nūshirwān*, of the *Ākāsirah*, 5, 8, 27 n 4, 53 n 6
- Hormus* b *Yasdayrd* b *Bahrām Gūr*, 423 n 8
- Horrah-i-Jalālī*, the,—daughter of *Bahā-ud-Din Sām Ghuri*, 342
- Husain* b 'Alī b Abī Talīb, Imam, 64 n 1, 265 n 4, 1253 n 4, 1242
- Husain* b 'Alī Marw-ar-Rudī, general of Abū Naṣr i Ahmad, *Sārsāni*, lv, lx, 35, 36, 185 n [404 n 1]
- Husain Bahādur Khān*, Sultan,
- Husain* b. Hasan b Muhammad-i *Sūrī* See under *Husain* b *Sām*.
- Husain-i-Kharmil*, 'Izzud-Din,— See under *Khar-mil*
- Husain-i-Kharmil*, Naṣir ud-Din,— See under *Naṣir ud-Din*
- Husain Mirza*, Sultān, 1122 n
- Husain-i-Muhammad Hasan*, Amir-i-Hājib of Sultān Mu'izz-ud Din Muhammad-i *Sām*, 491 and n 8.
- Husain* b. Maṣ'ab, Wālī of *Fāgh-anj*,—father of *Tāhir* ibn u'l *Husain*, 9, 11, 12 n 6.
- Husain* b *Ribāi*,—Alb-Tigin's deputy in *Harāt*, 41 n, 71 n 5.
- Husain* b. Sabuk-Tigin, of *Ghaznin* 75.
- Husain* b. Sām b. Hasan b. Muḥammad-i-Sūrī, who was made Malik of *Ghūr* by Sultān Ma'ad-i-Karīm of *Ghaznin*, under the title of 'Izzu d Din, 106 n 3, 149 n 2, 228 n 5, 313 n 4, 322 n, 328 n, 333 n 5, 338 n 6, 335 and n 2, 336 n 4, 337 n 6 and 7
- Husain*, Sultān, of the House of *Timūr*, 109 n 9
- Husain-i-Turkh*, Amir-i-Hājib, of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Sām, 491 and n 9.
- Husain* b. *Tāhir*, ruler of *Sijistān*, 186 n.
- Husām-ud-Daulah Tāsh*, 44, 45 n 7. See also under *Tash* the *Hājib*.
- Husām-ud-Din Aghūl-Bak*, Malik of *Awadh*, 627 and n 5
- Husām-ud-Din 'Akab*, Hākim of *Dar-i Tang*, 1238 n 8, 1239 n, 1276 n
- Husām-ud-Din 'Alī* b. Fakhr ud-Din Ma'ad, the Malik of *Hamian*, 425
- Husām-ud-Din 'Alī* i-Karmākh,— one of the Maliks of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Din Muḥammad i-Sām, 460,— See also under 'Alī i-Karmākh.
- Husām-ud-Din*, Amir,—governor of *Kāl-yān* and *Fiwar*, for Sultān *Ghiyās-ud-Din* Maḥmūd *Ghūrī*, 602 n 6
- Husām-ud-Din*, the Astrologer, 1253 n 4, 1256 n 6.



**Ḥusām-ud-Dīn Ḥamid-i Būr**, the **Ḳarā-Ḳhitā'i**,—brother of **Burāk** the **Hājib**, 934 n, 1118 n 2.  
**Ḥusām-ud-Dīn Ḥusain-i-'Abd-ul-Malik**, **Sar-i-Zarrād**, **Malik**, 417 and n 2, 1002 and n 7, 1006 n 9, 1079 and n 2.  
**Ḥusām-ud-Dīn 'Iwaz**, b. **Husain Khajji**, **Sultān of Lakḥapawātī**, 490 n, 575 and n 2, 576 n 3, 577 n 8, 578 and n 2, 590 and n 8, 591 and n 5, 592 n 6, 593 See also under '**Iwaz**.  
**Ḥusām-ud-Dīn b. Kharmīl**,—one of the **Maliks** of **Sultān Mu'izz ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sām**, 490.  
**Ḥusām-ud-Dīn Kutluḡ Shāh**,—the

**Amir of the black standard**, 831 and n 2.  
**Ḥusām-ud-Dīn Muḥammad i-Abī 'Alī**, **Jahān Pahlawān**, **Malik**, 409, 412  
**Ḥusām-ud-Dīn Ughūl Bak**, the **Sipah-Sālār**,—**Malik of Awadh**, 518 n, 519 n, 549, 550 n 6, 551 n,—app. xxiv, xvi.  
**Hūshang** b. **Gauḡ-mart** 579 n. See **Hushang** b. **Sisṡmak**.  
**Hwen Tsaang**, the **Chinese traveller**, 22 n 4, 306 n 3, 426 n 6, 680 n, 1011 n.  
**Hylander's Ibn-ul-Wardi**, 1000 n.  
**Hyo-lo-hū**, **Chinese** for **Hulākū** 1214 n.

## I

**Ibak**, signification of, 513 n 1, 729 n 4, 862 n.  
**Ibak**, the slave of **Ḳutb-ud-Dīn Ibak**,—afterwards **Tam-ghū**, **Amir of Tabarhindah**, 601, 603 and n 6  
**Ibak-i-Aor Khān**,—eulogatory of **Lakḥapawātī-Lakhanor**, 736, 737, 739 n 7.  
**Ibak-i-Laḡ**,—nick-name of **Ḳutb-ud-Dīn I-bak**, 514 n,—app. ix, x.  
**Ibak-i-Nā Pak** or **Ibak-i-Bak**,—the **Turki** slave who became master of **Multān**, 476 n, 477 n, 484 n.  
**Ibak**, **Sannū-i**, **Amir**, 749 and n 4  
**Ibak-i Shūl**,—byname of **Ḳutb-ud-Dīn I bak**, 514 n [969 n 1]  
**Ibn 'Abd-ul-Laṭīf**, the **Historian**,  
**Ibn 'Abd-ur-Razzāḡ**, governor of **Nihāpur** for the **Samānīs**, 42.  
**Ibn 'Alḡamī**, the **Wazir of al-Mus-ṡim**, the last of the 'Abbāsī

**Khulifas**, iv, 1229 and n 8, 1230 n, 1232 n, 1236 n, 1238 n 8, 1244 n, 1254 n, 1255 n.  
**Ibn 'Amrīn**, governor of the **Bagh-dād** territory under the **Mughals**, 1255 n.  
**Ibn Aḡir**,—author of "**Kāmil-ut-Tawāriḡh**," xvi, xlv, 217 n, 223 n 2, 936 n 6.  
**Ibn-ul-Athīr**. See under **Ibn Aḡir**.  
**Ibn-ul-Baḡā**, **Abu'l Faḡl Muḥammad** b. 'Alī, **Wazir of an-Nāḡir**, the 'Abbāsī **Khulifah**, 243 n.  
**Ibn Batūṭah**, 179 n 3, 468 n 3, 648 n 5, 669 n 8, 678 n 8, 681 n 4, 687, 800 n 8, 802 n 1, 1040 n 3  
**Ibn Darwesh**,—the envoy of the **Khulifah** to **Hulākū**, 1246 n 5.  
**Ibn Daṡtah**,—author of a geography, 909 n. [history, 56 n 3  
**Ibn Ḥanṡam-i Faryābī**,—author of a

Ibn Haṣṣam-i-Nābi, or Ṣānī,—author of a history, 11 19, 26, 31, 56 and n 3, 116 and n 1, 320

Ibn-i-Hājib, 203 n 1.

Ibn Hauḳul, 23 n 8, 31 n 3, 91 n 3, 295 n, 370 n, 378 n 1, 925 n, 962 n, 1008 n 5, 1009 n, 1018 n, 1024 n 2, 1025 n, 1278 n.

Ibn-ul-Jarrāh, Abu'l 'Abbās Muḥammad, 37 n

Ibn Janzī,—an officer of al-Musta'ḥsin, 1216 n 5.

Ibn-ul-Kaṣāb, Mu'ayyid-ud-Dīn, Wazīr of the Dār-ul-Khilāfat, 242 n 6, 248

Ibn-i-Khallikān, 151 n 6, 205 n 4, 1010 n 1278 n

Ibn-ul-Khaṭīb,—the envoy of the Khalifah an-Nāṣir to Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Muḥammad i Sam, xxii, 243, 244 n, 383

Ibn Khurdādhbih See the next

Ibn Khurdādhbih, Abu'l Kaṣim i 'Abd-ullāh, Khurāsānī,—author of the Masālik wa Mamālik, 292 n, 295 n, 423 n 8, 869 n 2, 870 n, 871 n, 922 n, 961 n, 962 n

Ib-ur-Rabī',—the envoy of the Khalifah an-Nāṣir to Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sam, xxii, 243, 244 n, 383

Ibn Salāyah, the 'Alawī, Hukim of Arbīl, 1238 n 8 See under Tāj-ud-Dīn.

Ibn-i-Shaddād—author of the history of Salāḥ-ud-Dīn al-Ayyubī 218 n

Ibn-al-Wardī, the historian and geographer, 1009 n

Ibrāhīm, the Patriarch, (Abraham of Scripture). 3, 274 n 6, 303 n 7 620 n, 1163 n 5.

Ibrāhīm b. Aḥmad b. Asad Sāmānī, 29.

Ibrāhīm b Aḥmad-i-Isma'īl Sāmānī, 33, 39 n 8.

Ibrāhīm b Bughrā Khān-i-Qadr Khān,—the Afrāsyābī Malik, 905 n

Ibrāhīm, the Ghuzr chieftain, 156.

Ibrāhīm ibn ul Husain, governor of Sijstān, on the part of the Tāhīrīs, 19 and n 2

Ibrāhīm b Imām 'Abd ul-Khālik, the Juḡānī, xix, xlvii, 103

Ibrāhīm Ladh b Shāh Husain. See under Ladh.

Ibrāhīm b. Mu'addil, ancestor of Amīr Banjī, 312

Ibrāhīm b Naṣr, of the house of Afrāsyāb, 905 n

Ibrāhīm b Nī al, (or Nialab), the Saljuḳī, 125 and n 7.

Ibrāhīm b Nuh-i-Manṣūr Sāmānī, 52 n 8

Ibrāhīm b Sūfī Marwazī,—an officer of the Tahirīs, 16, 17

Ibrāhīm b Samjor, governor of Hirāt for the Sāmānīs, 38 n 10

Ibrāhīm b Sulṭān Mahmūd Ghaznawī, 54

Ibrāhīm i Sulṭān Mas'ūd Ghaznawī, Sayyid us Sultān, xix 95, 99 n, 101 and n 6 102 and n 2 and 3, 103 and n 4, 104 and n 2 and 4, 105 and n and n 6, 106, 133 143 n 2 324 n, 330 332 and n 3 and 5, 337 n 7, 354

Ibrāhīm Sar Sulṭān, of the Afghan house of Lodī 511 n

Ibrānī Hunker, the,—Khawājah Fakhr-ud-Dīn i 'Abd ur Rahmān, 1014 and n 1 [86 n.

Idol-temple of Mathura, the, 85 n

**Iftikhār-ud-Din**, Amīr of **Kapah**,  
Malik-ul-Umārī of **Shams-ud-Din**  
**I-yal-Timish**, 626 and n 8.

**Ighrak**, tribe of, xlix, 1016 and n 3,  
1021, 1023 n, 1043, 1081.

**Ighūri** language, the, 806 n.

**I-ghūra**, tribe of the, 233 n, 242 n  
6, 870 n, 876 n, 877 n, 881 n, 883 n,  
888 n, 889 n, 890 n, 909 n, 910 n,  
919 n, 920 n, 922 n, 932 n, 933 n,  
938 n, 950 n, 951 n, 952 n, 953 n,  
955 n, 959 n, 961 n, 969 n 1, 970 n  
2, 975 n 5, 981 n, 985 n, 1083 n,  
1007 n 6, 1101 n 1, 1115 n, 1131 n,  
1142 n, 1157 n 1.

**Ikbāl Naniāh-i Jahāngiri**, the, xvi  
**Ikhṭiyār-ud-Din** Aetkin, the **Karā-**  
**khtān**, of the Maliks of **Shams-ud-**  
**Din I-yal-Timish**, 642 and n 2, 648,  
649 and n 7, 650 651 and n 7, 653  
n 5, 661 n, 748, 749, 750, 751 and  
n 4, 752, 780, 821.

**Ikhṭiyār-ud-Din** Altūniāh of **Tabur**  
**kundah**, of the Maliks of **Shams-**  
**ud-Din I-yal-Timish**, 645 and  
n 9 and 3, 647 and n 9, 648 and  
n 3 and 4 651 n 7, 652, 748, 749  
and n 1, 750 n 8 753 807 n

**Ikhṭiyār-ud-Din** i **Balka** the **Khalj**,  
of the Maliks of **Shams-ud-Din**  
**I-yal-Timish**, 596 and n 1, 598 n 1,  
618 n, 626, 774 n.

**Ikhṭiyār-ud-Din** **Buktam-i Aor**  
**Khan**, Malik, 673

**Ikhṭiyār-ud-Din** i **Chust-Kaba,—a  
dealer in slaves, 731 and n 8.**

**Ikhṭiyār-ud-Din** **Husain**, of the  
Maliks of **Shams-ud-Din I-yal-**  
**Timish**, 626.

**Ikhṭiyār-ud-Din** **Kata-Kush Khan-**  
**i-Aetkin**, of the Maliks of  
**Shams-ud-Din I-yal-Timish**, li,

645, 647, 746, 747, 1133, 1134,  
1136.

**Ikhṭiyār-ud-Din** **Khān** b. **Baltarak**  
or **Yaltarak**, Malik,—an officer of  
**Sulṭān Jalāl-ud-Din Khwārazm**  
**Shāh**, 1276 n.

**Ikhṭiyār-ud-Din** **Khar-wār**, of the  
Maliks of **Mu'izz-ud-Din Muḥam-**  
**mad-i-Sām**, 491 and n 5

**Ikhṭiyār-ud-Din** i **Karez**, Malik,—  
retainer of Malik **Kher Khān-i-**  
**Sunkar**, 668 and n 4, 669 n, 690 n  
8, 695 n 9, 782, 792 and n 9

**Ikhṭiyār-ud-Din** **Muhammad** b. 'Alī-  
i-**Khar**-post, the **Ghūrī**, Malik of  
**Jalāl-ud-Din Khwārazm Shāh**, lx,  
286, 491, 1002, 1013, 1014 and n  
2, 1015 n.

**Ikhṭiyār-ud-Din** **Muhammad** b.  
**Bakhtiyār-ud-Din** the **Khalj**, 517  
and n 4 See also **Muhammad-i-**  
**Bakhtiyār**

**Ikhṭiyār-ud-Din**, the **Turkmān**,  
**Hakīm** of **Amūniāh**, 1030 n, 1031 n.

**Ikhṭiyār-ud-Din** **Yüz-bah-i-Tughril**  
**Khān**, Malik of **Lakhnawati**,  
634 n 9, 659 n 4 and 5, 673,  
701 n 1, 747, 761, 762 and n  
9, 763 and n 3, 764, 765 and n 8,  
766, 771 n, 772 n, 774 n, 776 n,  
777 n, 778 n, 779 n.

**Ikhṭiyār-ud-Din** **Nishapuri**, the  
Amīr i **Haji**,—an officer of **Sulṭān**  
**Muhammad Khwārazm Shāh**, 177,  
170

**Ikhṭiyār-ud-Din** **Daulat Yār-i-**  
**Tughrā-i**. See under **Daulat-Yār**.

**Ikhṭiyār-ud-Din** **Rashid-ud-Din**  
**Abū-Bikr**, the **Habash**, 766, 796  
and n 3, 797.

**Iḥadd gaz**, the **Atābak**,—one of  
**Sulṭān Sanjar's** slaves, 147 and

- n 1, 166, 166 n, 168, 169 and n 7, 170 and n 8, 171 n n 9 and 2, 801 n.
- I-lāk or I-lāgh,—summer station, 876 n.
- I-lak, title of the rulers of Yaghmā or Turkistān, 902 n.
- I-lak of the Turkān or Tarākumah, the, 909 n, 910 n, 919 n.
- I-lak Khān, Abū Naṣr-i-Aḥmad, the,—of the Afrāsiyābi Khāns, 901 and n, 902 n, 910 n.
- I-lak Khān Abū'l Ḥasan-i-Naṣr,—of the Afrāsiyābi Khāns, lvi, 45 and n 8, 46 n 4, 48 n 2, 49, 51 and n 6, 52 and n and n n 8 and 1, 84 n 9, 85 n, 116, 186 n, 902 n, 903 n, 904 n.
- I-lak-i-Māxi, the,—of the Afrāsiyābi Khāns, 901 and n, 902 n 5, 912 n.
- I-lam or Yilam Khān,—father of Shams-ud-Dīn I-yal-Timish 599 and n 10.
- Ilbārī or Albārī tribe,—of Turkistān, the, 598, 599 n 10, 791 and n 5, 798, 800 and n 5, 884 n, 961 n, 1197 n 9, 1199 and n 1, 1284 n 5, 1295 and n 9.
- Ilgidāe b. Kājūn,—Kājūn, a brother of the Qhāngiz Khān, 1094 n, 1180 n, 1185 n, 1199 n, 1201 n.
- Ilgikdāe, the Nū-in, xlvii. See Ilji, the Nū-in.
- Ilgikdāe b. Kājūn. See under Ilgidāe.
- I-loy b. Aminjah, sovereign of the Tattār I-mūk, 875 n.
- Il-Itār,—title of the Bashlighs or Chiefs of the Ch-Ighūr, 951 n, 1097 n 5.
- Il-Irkū,—title of the Bashlighs or Chiefs of the Tūtān Ighūr, 951 n, 1097 n 6.
- Ilji, the Nū-in, 1046, 1049 n 2, 1050 n, 1051 n, 1115 n 5, 1126 n 6, 1137 n, 1143 n, 1152 n.
- Iljidāe. See the above.
- Iljikish or
- Iljikin tribe, the,—an offshoot of the Kungūr-āts, 1223 n.
- Ilkās, read I-yalkās, lxiv.
- Il (I-yal) Khān b. Tingiz Khān, 891 n. See under Iyal Khān.
- Il-Khān, the,—title of Hulūkū Khān, 1287 n.
- Il-Khāniān dynasty, the,—the Mughal sovereigns of Persia, 1006 n 5, 1287 n.
- Ilrūs,—so the Yānāis style Gaiūmart, the first king of 'Ajām, 2.
- Ilyās b. Asad Sāmānī, 27 and n 6, 28.
- Ilyās Hāgi, [Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn,] ruler of Bangālāh, 590 n, 591 n.
- Ilyās b. Ishāq b. Aḥmad b. Asad Sāmānī, 30. [Sāmānī, 54.
- Ilyās b. Naṣr b. Aḥmad b. Asad Imā, chief of the Ḳarū-Khūṭāis, 154, 911, 912 n, 924 n 925 n.
- 'Imād-ud-Daulah Abū 'Alī-i-Simjūr, 45. See also under Abū 'Alī-i-Simjūr,
- 'Imād-ud-Daulah Abū'l Ḥasan-i-'Alī,—the first sovereign of the family of Rawiāh, 55 n 1, 58 n 9, 59 and n 4, 61 n 4.
- 'Imād-ud-Daulah Ḳimāj, Amīr of the troops of Khurasān under Sultān Sanjar, 336 n 4, 359 n.
- 'Imād-ud-Dīn, the 'Abbāsī dependant, 217 n.
- 'Imād-ud-Dīn of Balḫ, 1015 n, 1016.

- 'Imād-ud-Dīn, the Qhāri, Malik, 1202 n.
- 'Imād-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Kāsim b. Abi 'Aḳīl Ṣāḳafī, 1261 n 9,—app. xvii, xviii.
- 'Imād-ud-Dīn Muḥammad, the Shah-fūrkhāni, Kāṣi, 682.
- 'Imād-ud-Dīn-i-Rayḥān,—one of the Amirs of Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Maḥmūd Shāh of Dillī, xxviii, 685 and n 1, 692 n 3, 693 and n 2, 694 and n 4, 695 n 5 and 2, 696 n, 698 n 7, 700, 702 n 3, 703, 717 n, 754 n 1, 767 n 9, 778 n, 784 n and n 3, 792 n 1, 826, 827, 828, 830 and n, 832, 833 and n 9, 834, 835 and n 4, 836 and n 9, 1224 n
- 'Imād-ud-Dīn 'Umr Fiwārī, Malik, Governor of Balḳh on the part of the Sultāns of Bāmian, 280 and n 6, 401 n
- 'Imād-ud-Dīn Zangī b. Aḳ Sankar, Malik of Maṣūl, 204 n, 207 n 8, 208 n 1.
- 'Imād-ud-Dīn Zangī Ba'lami, Malik, 1056 and n 2 1057
- 'Imād-ul-Mulk, Wazir of Muḥammad Khvārazm Shāh, 276 n
- 'Imād-ul-Mulk Tāj-ud-Dīn, the Jāmi, the Dabir,—one of the Ministers of State of the Khvārazm Shāhi dynasty, 968
- 'Imādī, Imam Muḥammad 'Alī, Abul Kāsim,—author of the Tūrikh-i-Majdūl, 69.
- Imāk or Imāgh tribe, the, 873 n
- Imām-i-Nāṣiri, of Dillī, the Poet, Amur, 647.
- Imam-i-Rabbāni, the,—Shahh Aḥmad Ghazzālī, 350 n
- Imām-Zādah, Rukn-ud-Dīn. of Bu-khārā, 274
- Imlāgh or Imlāk b. Turk b. Yāsa, 872 n.
- Imperial Academy of Science of St. Petersburg, vii, viii.
- India Office, the, v, 991 n, 1188 n 8.
- Indian Atlas, the, 550 n 5 and 6, 551 n, 691 n, 690 n, 698 n 4, 697 n 5, 728 n 3, 760 n 7, 837 n 4,—app. xxi
- Indo-Seythiana, the, 878 n, 1004 n 1, 1129 n 1, 1130 n, 1131 n, 1132 n.
- Initial Coinage of Bengal, Thomas', 772 n 773 n, 774 n,—app. xxi.
- Ināi (I-ley) b. Aminjah, sovereign of the Tattār Imāk, 876.
- Ionians, the, 872 n
- Iradamchi. See Iridamchi.
- Iraj b. Afridūn, of the Bāstāniāh dynasty of 'Ajām, 3, 308 and n 2.
- Iram, Garden of, 386 and n 1.
- Iram b. Sām [Shem] b. Nūḥ [Noah], 303 and n 7
- Irān Malik b. Farrukh-zād b. Mas-ūd-i-Karim, 107.
- Irān Malik b. Sultān Ibrāhīm Ghas-nawī, 105
- Irān Shāh, 1st of the Bāstāniāh dynasty, 2.
- Irāni dynasties, the, xiv.
- Iranis, the, 879 n, 1076 n.
- Iridamchi b. Kijūli b. Tūminā-i-Khān,—leader of the Mughal troops, 698 n, 939 n, 1235 n 1.
- Irkah Qarā, or Q'ah-Qarā,—brother of the Awang Khān, 940 n.
- Irkanah, or Arkanah, the Qūmāi concubine of Chitāo Kā-ān, 1142 n.
- Irnaz chief of the Karā-Khātāis. See under Arbaz
- Irtuk Bukā b. Tūli Khān son of the Chingiz Khān, 1161 n 4, 1176 n 9, 1177, 1180 n

- 'Isā (Jesus), Mihtar, 4, 7, 983 n,  
 1161, 1288.  
 'Isā b. Taf-Kāy Khān the Afrāsiyābi,  
 906 n.  
 Isaac, [Ishāk], the Patriarch, 274 n  
 6, 620 n.  
 Isaiah, 3.  
 Isfandiyār b. Gūshāsib,—Shāh of  
 ancient I-rān, 285 n 3, 561 n 9.  
 Isfarā'ini Abu'l 'Abbās al-Faḡlī-  
 Aḥmad, al-, Wazīr of Sabuk-  
 Tigin, 73 n 9.  
 Ishāk b. Aḥmad b. Asad Sāmāni,  
 29, 36.  
 Ishāk b. Aḥmad-i-Isma'il Samāni,  
 39 n 8.  
 Ishak b. Alb-Tigin, governor of  
 Ghazni, 43 n 4, 71 and n 5, 73  
 and n 6, 73 n 7, 186 n  
 Ishāk b. Ibrāhīm b. Hasan,—Hasan,  
 brother of Tāhūr ibn al Husain,  
 15 n 6  
 Ishāk b. Ibrāhīm b. Maṣ'ab, Tahir  
 ibn-at Husain's cousin, 13 n 9.  
 Ishāk b. Sultan Ibrahim (ghaznawi),  
 105  
 Ishāk-i-Tāhiri,—Alb-Tigin's deputy  
 in Hirat, 41 n, 71 n 5  
 Isham b. Turak, 9.  
 Iskandar b. Faulakas, 4 = Alexander  
 the Great, which also see  
 Islam under the Khāḡis of Bagh-  
 did, Osborn's 1187 n 7  
 Islam [Salim] 'Alab, Sur, ruler of  
 Delhi, 511 n  
 Isley (Iley) b. Aminjah,—sovereign  
 of the Tattar Imāk, 875 n.  
 Isma'il (Ismael of Scripture),  
 620 n  
 Isma'il b. Aḥmad b. Asad Sāmāni,  
 Amir, 23 n 9, 25 and n 7, 9 and  
 2, 29, 30, 31 and n 3 and 4 32  
 and n and n 7, 33 and n 1, 53, 54,  
 184 n, 308 n 2, 916 n, 941 n.  
 Isma'il b. Altān Tāsh, Khwārazm  
Shāh, 232 n.  
 Isma'il b. Ja'far ṣ-Ṣādiq, the  
 'Alawi, 1187 n 7.  
 Isma'il b. Naṣr b. Aḥmad b. Isma'il  
 Sāmāni, 38.  
 Isma'il b. Nūr-ud-Dīn, al-Malik-ṣ-  
 Ṣāliḥ, 205 and n 6. See also under  
 al-Malik-ṣ-Ṣāliḥ  
 Isma'il b. Sabuk-Tigin, 50 n 3, 51  
 n 6, 75 and n 6  
 Isma'il b. Sīāni b. Lādī b. Shāh  
 Husain, 510 n  
 Isma'il b. Sultān Muḥmūd (Ghas-  
 nawi, 84  
 Isma'il Khālifahs, the, 141 n.  
 Isma'ithans of Egypt, the, 209 n 5  
 and 6, 212 n 215 n  
 Isma'ithans of Alamut, the, 1187 n 7,  
 1188 n, 1190 n 1, 1195 n, 1209 n,  
 1210 n, 1211 n, 1212 n, 1227 n 5,  
 1257 n  
 Israel of Scripture, 314  
 Isra'il, Amir, the general of Ghīyā-  
 ud Din Mahmūd, Sultan of Ghur,  
 403 n.  
 Isra'il b. Beghā b. Saljuḡ 87 n, 94  
 n 2, 117 n, 118 and n, 119, 120  
 and n 3, 126 n 2, 904 n, 1074 n.  
 Istakhr, al-, the Geographer, 94 n  
 3 205 n, 1075 n  
 Itaghharush,—slave of Atabak Mu-  
 ḥammad b. Pattariz, 171.  
 Itakh Iley, b. Aminjah, sovereign  
 of the Tattar Imāk, 875 n  
 Itmas or  
 Itmas, the Nu yin, lxiv, 116 n  
 Itaz See Isaz.  
 Itaz-ut or Fir-at tribe of Mughals,  
 the 910 n.

Twaṣ, Sultān Ghīyāṣ-ud-Dīn, the Khālī, ruler of Lakḥnawātī, 469 and n 7, 490, 586 and nn 9 and 1, 587 and n 2, 592, 593 n 7, 594 and n 1, 595 and n 2, 610 and n 7, 617 n 5, 618 n, 620, 770 n 9, 771 n, 772 n, 773 n, 774 n,—app xiv Before he was raised to the sovereignty his name was Malik Husām-ud-Dīn.

Iyāl-Arsalān b Jalāl-ud-Dīn Utanz, Khawārazm Shāh, 148, 234 n 8, 238 and n 8, 280 n and nn 9 and 1, 597 n 4, 908 n, 909 n, 927 n,—app vii.

Iyāl dūz, meaning of, 496 n 2.

Iyāl-dūz (Yaldūz) b Āl Khān, sovereign of the Mughal I māḥ, 681 n.

Iyāl-dūz or Yāl-dūz b Aghuz Khān, 680 n.

Iyāl-dūz or Yāl dūz Khān b Mangāl Khān b Timur Tash—chief-tain of the Mughals, 888 n, 891 n, 894 n.

Iyāl dūz Taj ud Dīn, Sultān,—slave of Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Muhammad i-Sām, 265 n 4, 267 and n 7, 371, 372, 473, 374, 375 n, 398 and nn 6, 7 and 1, 399 n and n 2, 401 n, 402 n, 415 and n 8, 416 n 2, 418 and n 2, 419 n 5, 424 and nn 4 and 6, 433 n 9, 434 n, 436 n 5, 438 and n 2, 475 n 2, 476 n, 477 n, 484 n, 489, 492 n 7, 493 and n, 494 and n 1, 495 and n 5, 496 and n 2, 497 n 3, 498 and nn 6 and 7, 499 and n, 500 and n 3, 501 n and n 5, 502 n and n 6, 503 and nn 8 and 9, 504 and nn 2 and 4, 505 n and n 8, 506 and n 9, 518 n, 522 n 5, 526 and n 8, 527 n, 530, 531 n 8, 532 n 2, 533 and n, 534 n

5, 543 n, 547 n, 575 n 9, 577 and n, 578 n 9, 597 n 4, 603, 607 and n 5, 608 and nn 7, 8 and 9, 609 n 5, 614 n 8, 627, 725 n 5, 774 n, 1131 n,—app xii

Iyāl kae the Nū-yin, 717 n, 1239 n, 1260 n 6, 1270 n 2, 1272 and n 6, 1273 n 7, 1276 n, 1281 n.

Iyāl Khān or Il Khūn b Tingis Khān, sovereign of the Mughal I māḥ, 841 n, 883 n.

Iyāl taku, governor of Fanīkat, 972 n.

Iyāl Tūz Khān,—a general of the Khwarazmīq, 978 n.

Iyāl-Timūch Shams ud-Dīn, Sultān of Dihli,—slave of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn I-bak, xxvi, xxxiii, li, lii, 91 n 9, 158, 204, 267 n 7, 263 n 9, 292 n, 293 n 5, 294 n, 310 n 5, 345, 418 n 2, 430 and n 4, 440 n, 497 n 3, 503 n 9, 505 and nn 7 and 8, 518 n, 520 n, 527 n, 528 n 3, 529 n 4, 530 n and nn 5 and 6, 531 and n 8, 533 n, 534 and n 8, 535 n, 538 n, 539 n, 540 n, 541 n 7 and 8, 542 and n 9, 543 n, 544, 545 n 4, 546 and n 1, 547 n 2, 590, 592, 593 and nn 6 and 7, 594 and n and n 1, 597 and n 1, 598 and n 3, 599, 601 and nn 6 and 8, 602, 603 and n 8, 604 and n 5, 605, 606 and n 3, 607 and n 5, 608 and nn 8 and 9, 609 and nn 1, 4 and 5, 610 and n and n 7, 611 and n 3, 612 and nn 1 and 6, 613 and nn 4 and 7, 614 and n 8, 615 n 1, 616 n, 617 and n 5, 618 and n, 620 n 1, 621 n 6, 622 n, 623 nn 9 and 1, 624 and n and n 3, 626 n 3, 627 n and n 5, 628 and n 2, 630 and n 2, 631 and n 9, 632 and nn 5 and

- 6, 633 n 6, 634 n 1, 635 and n 1, 636 n 5 and 6, 638 and n 1 639, n 4, 5 and 6, 642 n 9, 644 n, 649, 656 n 2, 661 and n, 663 n 9, 669 n 8, 670 and n 1, 677 n 6, 680 n 1, 716 n 5, 719, 722, 723, 724, 725 and n 5 and 6, 727, 728 and n 1 and 2, 729, 730 and n 7, 731 and n 8 and 9, 732, 733 n 5, 735 n 9, 736, 742 and n 7, 744 and n, 745, 746, 748, 752 and n 8, 754 and n 3, 757 and n 7, 758, 759, 761, 762 n 7, 766, 767 and n 6, 770 n 9, 771 n, 772 n, 773 n, 774 n 775 n, 777, 779, 780, 781 n 2, 767, 790, 791 and n 5, 793, 794 n 1, 795 n 2, 796 n 3, 797 and n, 800 n 5, 801 and n, 802 n 1, 815 n 5, 824, 831 n 2, 842 n 6, 847 n 1, 878 n, 880 n, 881 n, 910 n, 934 n, 961 n, 1045, 1046 n, 1056 n 1, 1073 n 4, 1074 n, 1126 n 6, 1129, 1130 n, 1131 n, 1169 n 1, 1234 n, 1284 and n 5,—app xxii.
- xiv.
- İyâz, Amir, read Ayâz, lvii
- İzîd-yâr b Sultân Mas'ûd, of Ghaznin, 95.
- İzkanah. See under Irkanah
- 'İzz-ud-Daulah Bakhtiyâr b al-Hasan b Buwaih, Dilamî, 57, 60 and n 8, 61, 62, 63 n 8, 65 n 5, 73 n 9
- 'İzz-ud-Dîn-i-'Abd-ul Jalîl,—one of the Malikhs of Shams-ud Dîn Iyâl-Timûsh, 626 n 8.
- 'İzz-ud-Dîn 'Alî-i-Mardân, the Khaj, 603 n 8. See under 'Alî-i-Mardân, 6
- 'İzz-ud-Dîn 'Alî Nigawr. Siwakhî, one of the Malikhs of Shams-ud Dîn I-yâl-Timûsh, 627
- 'İzz-ud-Dîn, Amir, 212 n, 213 n
- 'İzz-ud-Dîn Bakhtiyâr, the Khaj, Malik, 626 and n 8.
- 'İzz-ud-Dîn Balban-i-Kashîd Khân, the Shamsî Malik, 634 n 9, 640 n 1, 648 n 3, 650 n 5, 660 n 1, 661 and n, 662, 668 n, 673 n 5, 674 and n 3, 678 n 6, 684 n 9, 685 n 4, 698 and n, 699 and n and n 6 and 7, 692 n 3 and 4, 698, 700 n 8, 707 and n 6, 7 and 8, 708, 709 and n and n 6, 710 and n 7 and 1, 711 and n 4, 713 n 4, 714 n 9 716 n 6, 775 and n, 777 n, 778 n, 779, 780, 781, 782 and n 3, 783 and n and n 7 and 9, 744 and n and n 3, 785, 786, and n 6, 787, 782 and n 8, 794 and n 9, 795 n 798, 802 n 1 822 n 1, 823, 825, 827 n 9, 840 and n 2, 841 n 5, 842, 843 and n 3, 844 and n 4, 8 and 1, 845 n, 859 n 8, 860, 861 and n and n 4, 863 n 3, 867 n
- 'İzz-ud-Dîn Balban : Yuz-baki, feudatory of Lakhaṣawati, 769, 770 and n 7, 775 n, 776 n, 777 n, 778 n, 779 n, 827 and n 9, 832, 833, 849 and n 1.
- 'İzz-ud Dîn b Fath-ud-Dîn, the Kurd, Malik,—champion of the Dîn-ul Khilafat, 1236, 1237, 1239, 1240 n 9, 1241 n, 1244, 1251
- 'İzz-ud Dîn, the Harawî,—the Mukaddam of the guild of weavers of Harat, 937 n, 1127 n
- 'İzz-ud Dîn Hassan : Kharmîl, Ghurî, Malik, 526, 250 See also under Kharmîl
- 'İzz-ud Dîn Hussain b Kutb-ud Dîn Hasan, Malik of Ghur, 332 n, 335 and n 2, 336 and n 4, 337 and n 7, 338 and n 2, 339 and n 7, 344 n, 347 n 2, 348 n, 349 n, 356 n 3



- and 2, 388 n, 428 n 3, 421 n 7, 647 n 7, 1002 n 2.
- 'Isa-ud-Din Itak, the Turk-mán, ruler of Mizr, 1275 n 3, 1276 n.
- 'Isa-ud-Din Jāni, Malik,—one of the Malikis of Shams-ud-Din Iyāl-Timish, 594 and n 1. See also 'Alā-ud-Din Jāni.
- 'Isa-ud-Din b. Kawām-ud-Din Abi-Bikr b. 'Alī, the Malik of Zaw-san, 251 n 5.
- 'Isa-ud-Din Kabir Khān-i-Ayās, al-Mu'izzi, Malik, 626 and n 8, 633 and n 2, 634 n 9, 639, 640, 641, 644 and n 7, 645, 655 n 2, 656 n, 663 n 9, 724, 725, 726, 727, 746, 747, 810 n, 1133 and n 5.
- 'Isa-ud-Din Mas'ūd b. Mandūd b. Zangī, Malik of Manṣūr, 206 n 7, 225 n.
- 'Isa-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Bālārī, Mahdī,—Malik of Nāṣir-ud-Din Maḥmūd Shāh of Dihlī, 613, 626 n 7, 633, 634, 639, 640, 647, 673, 723, 726.
- 'Isa-ud-Din b. Muḥammad-ud-Din, the Atā-bak, 1195 n.
- 'Isa-ud-Din of Nisā the Sayyid, 1033 n.
- 'Isa-ud-Din Raṣī-ul-Mulk, Darma-ghī,—Malik of Nāṣir-ud-Din Maḥmūd Shāh of Dihlī, 697 and n and n 6.
- 'Isa-ud-Din Taghril Kutbi [Rahā-i], Malik,—of Shams-ud-Din Iyāl-Timish, 626.
- 'Isa-ud-Din Taghril-i-Tughān Khān, Malik,—of Shams-ud-Din Iyāl-Timish, 618 n, 626 and n 2, 641 n 2, 662, 663 and n 3, 664 and n 6, 665 n 8, 666 and n 9, 667, 673, 726, 737, 739 and n and n 7, 740, 741 n 9, 2 and 3, 742, 743, 744 and n, 747 763, 771 n, 774 n, 775 n, 778 n, 809, 866 n.
- 'Isa-ud-Din 'Umr, the Maraghānī, 192, 257, 1190 n.
- 'Isa-ul-Mulūk Muḥammad b. Tāj-ud-Din Abul Fath, Malik of Nimroz, 20, 189, 192.

## J

- Jabah, the Nū-yin, 945 n, 956 n, 982 n, 985 n, 986 n, 987 and n 2, 988 n, 989 n, 990 n, 991 n, 993 n, 994 n, 995 n, 996 n, 997 n, 998 n, 999 n, 1000 n, 1001 and n, 1014 n 2, 1027 n 8, 1028 n, 1030 n, 1033 n, 1102 n, 1116 n, 1203 n.
- Jadah or Ajah Diw,—Wakīl or minister of the Rās of Kalinjār, 523 n.
- Jādān,—one of the Āwāng Khān's chiefs, 941 n.
- Ja'far, Khwājah,—a Muslimān in the service of the Qhāngī Khān, 954, 955 n, 957 n. [Khalifah, 23 n 8.
- Ja'far b. al-Mu'tamid, the 'Abbāsi
- Ja'far-Tigin, son of the Xth Afrāsiyābi Khān, the Bughrā Khān b. Kadr Khān, 905 n
- Jagatai, mispronunciation of the name of Qhaghatai
- Jaghar Beg, Abū Salīmān-i-Dā'ūd, b. Mikā'il Saljūki, 86 n, 94 n 2, 97 n 2 and 4, 98 n 8, 102 n 3, 103 and n 9, 122 n 8 See also under Dā'ūd-i-Jaghar Beg

**Jahān Arā**, the.—See the *Tārīkh-i-Jahān Arā*.

**Jahān Pahlawān**, **Muḥammad b. Hadd-giz**, the *Atā-bak*, 166 n 7, 171 and n 9, 172 n 3, 242 n 6, 296 n, 395 n. See also under **Muḥammad**, **Jahān Pahlawān**.

**Jahān Pahlawān**, **Irbak**, an officer of **Sultān Jalāl-ud-Din Khwārazm Shāh**, 294 n, 297 n.

**Jahān Shāh b. Khusrāu Malik Ghaznawī**, 116.

**Jahān Shāh b. Sultān Ibrāhīm Ghaznawī**, 106.

**Jahāngīr**, Emperor of India, ix, 593 n, 621 n 6.

**Jai Chandra**, Rājā of **Kunaw**, 402 n, 466 n 1, 467 n, 469 n 9, 470 and n 2, 491, 516, 518 n, 519 n, 742 n 9.

**Jaidān**, the tribes of.—See under **Jidān**.

**Jai-pāl**, the Hindū,—**Bādshāh** of Hind, 74 and n 2 and 3, 79 n, 81 n, 82, 86 n.

**Jai-Timūr b. Kaiduz**, chief of **Tarāz**, 281 n, 933 n, 934 n, 972 n, 1116 n, 1117 n, 1118 n 9, 1120 n 2, 1121 n, 1141 n. Same as **Bānko** of **Tarāz**, which also see.

**Jājar-āts**, the, 939 n. See under the **Jūri-āts**.

**Jajees** or **Dzazia**, the,—an **Afghān** people, 499 n.

**Jājūr Khātūn**, of the **Kungūr-āt** tribe,—fourth wife of **Čktāo Ka'ān**, 1142 n.

**Jākambū**, the,—signification of the title, 1092 n.

**Jakr (Chakr) Diw**, Rājā of **Jamūy**, 453 n 4, 454 n.

**Jala-ir** tribe, the, 682 n, 894 n, 896

n, 896 n, 898 n, 929 n, 940 n, 1094 n, 1148 n.

**Jalāl-ud-Din 'Alī b. Bahā-ud-Din Sām Ghāri**, 1, 287, 401 n, 403 n, 422 and n 1, 423 and n, 424 and n, 425 and n and n 4, 426, 427 n 7, 493 and n, 494, 495 and n 5 and 6, 500 n 9, 502 n 6.

**Jalāl-ud-Din 'Alī b. Hasan Tigin**, the **Afrāsiyābi Khān**. See under his title of **Khīr Khān**.

**Jalāl-ud-Din Buzāmī**, **Shāikh**,—**Shākh-ul-Jalām** of **Diblī** under **Shams-ud-Din Iyāl-Tīmish**, 623 n. **Jalāl-ud-Din Diw-Shāri** or **Diw-Shāhī**, Wasir of **Ghiyās-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Sām**, 390.

**Jalāl-ud-Din Ghaznawī**, **Kāzi** of **Shams-ud-Din Iyāl-Tīmish**, 625.

**Jalāl-ud-Din Hasan of Alamūt**, 266 n 4. [**Firūz-Koh**, 568.]

**Jalāl-ud-Din H. Jamāl-ud-Din**, the **Ghaznawī**,—an **Imām-Zādash** of **Jalāl-ud-Din Jani**. See under **Jalāl-ud-Din Kulūch Khān**.

**Jalāl-ud-Din Kesani**, **Kāzi-i Mamālik** of **Dihlī**, 652, 654 and n, 664, 666, 689, 739, 823.

**Jalāl-ud-Din Kulūch Khān Mawūd Shāh b. 'Alā-ud-Din Jani**, **Malik** of **Lakhnawati**, under **Naṣir-ud-Din Maḥmūd Shāh**, 673, 712 and n 9, 769 n 5, 771 n, 775 n, 776 n, 777 n, 778 n, 847 n 1 and 4. See also under **Kulūj Khān b. 'Alā-ud-Din Jani**.

**Jalāl-ud-Din Majd-ul-Mulk**, **Aḥmad i-'Urmān Naṣwī**, **Kāzi**,—**Hakīm** of **Tulak**, 1060 and n 5.

**Jalāl-ud-Din Malāni**,—one of the chief men among the weavers of **Hurat**, 1127 n.

Jalāl-ud-Dīn Mang-Barni b. Sultān Muḥammad Khwāram Shāh, xix, 1, 162 n and n 3, 173 n 3, 178 n 7, 200, 228 n 4, 230, 231 n 1, 254, 267, 269 n, 275 n, 277 n 5, 278 and n, 279 and n 3, 280 n 1, 281 n 5, 283 n 9, 284, 285 and n n 3 and 3, 286 and n n 6 and 7, 287 and n 1, 288 and n 3, 289 n, 290 n and n 4, 291 n, 292 n, 293 and n 5, 294 n, 295 n, 296 n and n 7, 297 and n, 298 n and n 1, 299 and n, 291 n 8, 409 n 6, 417 n 2, 419 n 5, 505 n, 527 n, 533 n, 534 and n and n 1, 535 n, 536 n, 537 n, 538 n, 539 n 5, 540 n, 609 and n n 4 and 5, 610 n and n 6, 625 n 6, 703 n 5, 934 n, 988 n, 989 n, 993 n, 994 n, 997 n, 1007, 1008 n 5, 1010 n, 1011 n, 1012, 1013, 1015 n, 1016 and n 3, 1017 and n, 1019 n, 1020 n, 1021 and n 8, 1023, 1024 n 2, 1025 n, 1033 n, 1036 n 1, 1037 n, 1042, 1046 n, 1047 n 4, 1049 n 2, 1050 n, 1059 n 1, 1065 and n 5, 1071 n 1, 1073 n 4, 1074 n, 1075 n, 1081, 1082 n, 1087 n, 1093 n, 1116 n, 1118 n 9, 1120 n 2, 1129 n 1, 1227 n 2, 1263 n, 1276 n, 1280 n 5, 1282 n, 1285 n.

Jalāl-ud-Dīn Mas'ūd Shāh b. 'Alā-ud-Dīn Jāni. See under Jalāl-ud-Dīn Kulugh Khān.

Jalāl-ud-Dīn Mas'ūd Shāh b. Shams-ud-Dīn Iyāl-Timugh, 625, 661, 665, 683, 684 n 8, 696 n, 699 and n 2, 700 and n 8, 793 and n 5 and 7, 815 n 1, 830 and n n 4 and 5, 831, 1224 n, 1225 n.

Jalāl-ud-Dīn Warsak,—Shaiikh-ul-Islam of Balkh, 429 and n 5.

Jalinzah b. Buḡa Khau, sovereign of the Tāttār Imāk, 875 n.

Jalnah b. Tūnak b. Turk b. Yūḡ 872 n, 873 n.

Jamāl-ud-Dīn, the Armourer, 729.

Jamāl-ud-Dīn Abīah,—an officer of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad, Khwāram Shāh, 997 n.

Jamāl-ud-Dīn 'Alī, the Khālī,—the Hājib-i-Ajall of Ulugh Khān-i-Balhan, 850, 861, 862.

Jamāl-ud-Dīn of Baṣrah, Khwājah, 800.

Jamāl-ud-Dīn the Bustājī, Imām, 1143 and n 1.

Jamāl-ud-Dīn, the Bustāmī, Shaiikh-ul-Islam of Dihlī, under Sultān Nāṣir-ur-Dīn Mahmūd Shāh, 702 and n 6, 707, 708, 712.

Jamāl-ud-Dīn Haṣiri, Imām, 327.

Jamāl-ud-Dīn Ibrāhīm: the Marul-mān name of Barkū Khān b. Tūshī, son of the Chingis Khān, 1293 and n 2.

Jamāl-ud-Dīn, Imām, of Marw, 1032 n.

Jamāl-ud-Dīn the Khāsīnchī, the Khwājah and Imām, 1060 and n n 3 and 5.

Jamāl-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Ghust-Kabā, of the Tight Tunic,—the merchant, 601, 602, 731 n 9.

Jamāl-ud-Dīn Muḥammad b. Tāhir b. Majd-ud-Dīn, al-Bukhārī, 1257 n [jah, 756.

Jamāl-ud-Dīn-i-Nadīmān, Khwā-

Jamāl-ud-Dīn the Nishāpuri, the Ulugh Koṭwāl-Bak of Dihlī, 709.

Jamāl-ud-Dīn, the Shabūrghāni, Kari, 685.

Jamāl-ud-Dīn Yāḡut, the Habashī, the Amīr-i Akhar of Sultan Bag-rivah, 612 and n 2, 643 n, 645 and n 3, 719, 750.

Jamshīd b. Balāgh b. Firūz, of the Bāstānīn dynasty of 'Ajām, 6.  
 James's Attilla, 404 n 7.  
 Jāmi'-ul-Hikāyat, the,—a book of anecdotes, 543 n.  
 Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh of Faḳīr Muḥammad, xvi.  
 Jāmi'-ut-Tawārikh of Rashīd-ud-Dīn, 17 n 6, 24 n 3, 49 n 7, 77 n, 78 n, 85 n, 86 n, 91 n 6, 94 n 3, 117 n, 138 and n 8, 139 and n, 142 n 1, 288 n 3, 294 n, 305 n, 307 n and n 9, 308 n 7, 307 n, 308 n 2, 309 n, 348 n, 400 n 3, 407 n 5, 409 n 6, 411 n, 419 n 5, 439 n 4, 457 n, 473 n 2, 474 n, 476 n, 482 n, 483 n, 484 n, 485 n 3, 493 n, 505 n, 514 n, 526 n 8, 535 n, 538 n, 540 n, 548 n 3, 592 n, 614 n 3, 618 n, 869 n 2, 892 n, 907 n, 908 n, 909 n, 924 n, 926 n, 928 n, 991 n, 1008 n 5, 1015 n, 1020 n, 1046 n, 1047 n 4, 1074 n, 1097 n 6, 1193 n, 1194 n, 1206 n 3, 1211 n, 1231 n, 1235 n 3, 1239 n, 1243 n 2, 1244 n, 1245 n 4, 1246 n 5, 1250 n, 1254 n, 1256 n 6, 1273 n 7,—app x, xx.  
 Jāmi'-i-'Uḡm, the,—name of a book, 870 n, 872 n [879 n]  
 Jamshed, IVth of the Bāstānīn dynasty of 'Ajām, 2, 303 n 7, 305.  
 Jamshed b. 'Alā-ud-Dīn Uṭus, son of 'Alā-ud-Dīn al-Ḥusain Jahān-sor of Ghūr, 417  
 Jamshed Malik b. Mas'ūd-i-Karīm, Ghaznawī, 107  
 Jāmūkah, the Sājān, styled also Jajan and Jachan,—Bīsh ligh or chief of the Jajarīn Mughals, 939 n, 940 n, 941 n, 944 n, 945 n, 946 n  
 Jamūn-wāl [Jamūn dynasty], the, 453 n 4, 454 n.

Jān-dār, signification of the title, 602 n 7.  
 Jān-Jang,—a Chinese word signifying Governor General, 923 n.  
 Janjuhah or Janjhūhī, the,—name of a tribe on the Koh-i-Jūd, 1130 n, 1131 n, 1132 n.  
 Janjuhah, the,—See the above.  
 Jānkabū, See Jākambū.  
 Jannābī, al,—name of an author, 363 n 5.  
 Jaochin b. Kāidū the Mughal chieftain, 695 n.  
 Jār-ghīn or Jār-jīn b. Kāidā the Mughal chieftain, 695 n.  
 Jarkas, the, 1103 n. [ghūn.  
 Jarmaghūn, the Nāyīn, See Jarmā-Jarrāh, Abū 'l 'Abbās Muḥammad, Ibn-ul, 37 n.  
 Jaḥmān b. Tamghān,—ancestor of Sāmān-i-Khaddāt, 29.  
 Jas-Pāl Sīhrā, Rānāh of the Jād Hills, 1130 n.  
 Jats, the, xlii, 326 n, 464 n, 469 n, 609 n, 516 n 2, 647 n 2, 795 n, 1131 n, 1132 n.  
 Jātwa, general of Bhīm Dīw, Rāo of Nahrwālah, 516 n 2, 519 n.  
 Jāwidiān-Khīrad, the,—a work composed by Arfakhshād b. Sām, 304 n 2  
 Jāwī [or Ghāwī], the Aḡ-bak, governor of Fārs on the part of the Seljūk sovereigns, 174 n.  
 Jenghis Khān,—wrong spelling of the name of the Chīngis Khān.  
 Jerusalem, the Russian prince, 1171 n.  
 Jesuits' map, the, 876 n, 900 n 6, 961 n, 1046 n, 1046 n, 1107 n 6.  
 Jhat Rāo,—general of Bhīrāj [or Hamīr], Rāo of Ajmīr, 819 n.

- Jidān** or **Jaidān** tribe, the,—known to the **Mughals** by the name of **Kart-Khātān**, 912 n, 913 n.
- Jiñ Būkh Khān**,—See **Jiñ** the **Nū-yān**.
- Jiñ**, the **Nū-yān**,—of the **Tingūt** tribe, adopted son of the **Qhngiz Khān** and **Bāgh-ligh** of the **Khās** Ming, 1002 n, 1003 n, 1188 n.
- Jiñ** or **Arjiñ**, son of the **Qhngiz Khān**, 1003 n.
- Jigal b. Turk b. Yāfā** [Japheth], 872 n.
- Jihāni**, al-, **Abū 'Abd-ullāh**,—the Regent during the minority of **Amir Naṣr Sāmāni**, 86, 87.
- Jihāni**, al-, **Abū Maṣṣūr**,—governor of **Hirāt** under the **Sāmānis**, 86 n 9.
- Jihāni**, al-, **Muḥammad** son of **Muḥammad**, **Wazīr** of **Amir Naṣr Sāmāni**, 87 n.
- Jikal b. Turk b. Yāfā** [Japheth], 872 n.
- Jingis**,—wrong spelling of the name of the **Qhngiz Khān** [872 n].
- Jinkal b. Turk b. Yāfā** [Japheth],
- Jirḡah-Laṅgūm** or **Jirḡah Likūm b. Kāidū**, chieftain of the **Mughals**, 895 n.
- Jital**, a coin, 584 n 2, 603 n 6.
- Joan** of Sicily, Princess, xlvii.
- Joḡal** the **Kariyit**, the **Gūrgān**, 1188 n.
- Jones**, Captain **Felix**, 1241 n 1.
- Jones**, Sir **W.**, xvi, —app. ix.
- Joshua**, son of **Nun**, 1269 n.
- Journal Asiatique**, 10, 962 n.
- Journal of the Bengal Asiatic Society**, xiii n 5, xxiii n 2, 78 n, 922 n, 1003 n 4, 1034 n, 1296 n 2 —app. i, xix.
- Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society**, 22 n 4, 71 n 5, 78 n, 79 n, 81 n, 268 n 3, 424 n 6, 508 n 1, 772 n, 915 n, 918 n, 924 n, 925 n, 926 n, 928 n, 933 n, 1011 n, 1186 n.—app. xxvi.
- Journal of the Royal Geographical Society**, 1129 n 1.
- Journey to the Source of the Orns**, **Wood's**, 1009 n, 1010 n.
- Jūd** tribe, the,—in the **Koh-i-Jūd**, 1181 n.
- Jū-inah** or **Qhābinah b. Iyāl-dūs Khān**, chieftain of the **Mughals**, 892 n.
- Jūji**, son of the **Qhngiz Khān**, 941 n, 944 n, 945 n, 956 n, 959 n, 964 n 2, 969 n 1, 970 n and n 2, 971 n, 972 n, 973 n, 977 n, 982 n, 988 n, 989 n, 1000 n, 1001 n, 1004 n 8, 1026, 1082 n, 1083 n, 1084 n, 1087 n, 1091 n, 1092 n, 1093 n, 1097 n 7, 1099 n, 1101 n n 1 and 2, 1102 n, 1103 n, 1105 n, 1164 n 9, 1107 n, 1168 n, 1176 n 9, 1178 n, 1179 n, 1239 n, 1283 n 1, 1284 n 2, 1286 n, 1292 n.
- Jūji** is the **Irāni** spelling of the name of **Tūshī**, which also see.
- Jūji Kasir** is **Yasūka Bahādur**,—brother of the **Qhngiz Khān**, 898 n, 943 n, 945 n, 949 n, 1094 n, 1180 n.
- Jūji Ughlān**,—See **Jūji**, son of the **Qhngiz Khān**.
- Jūk**, Turkish name of **Sabak-Tigin**, xiv, 1.
- Jāk**, the,—or **Left Wing** of an army, 1093 n.
- Julian**, 135 n 1 [1194 n].
- Jumkūr** or **Jumghūr b. Hulākū Khān**,
- Junnad**, 10th of the **Ākāsirah** dynasty of **'Ajām**, 6.

Junaïd, governor of Khurāsān, 915 n.

Jūrak b. Guahṭ-šap,—ancestor of Tāhir ibn-ul-Ḥusain, 9.

Jūri-šā, the,—a tribe of Mughals, 939 n, 940 n, 941 n, 944 n, 946 n, 1094 n.

Jūrjin, son of the Chingis Khān, 1093 n.

Jurmāghūn, or Jūrmāghūn, the Nū-yin,—of the Mangkūt tribe of Mughals, 298 n 1, 1109 and n 3, 1115, 1116 n, 1117 and n and n 6,

1118, 1120 n 2, 1121 n, 1123 n, 1152 n, 1191 n, 1193 n, 1223, 1227 and n 2, 1236 n, 1233 n 2, 1234 and n 7, 1259 n, 1265 n.

Juwaini, al,—author of the Tārīkh-i-Jahān Nughā, 869 n 2, 889 n, 917 n.

Juwāghār or Left Wing of an army 1095 n, 1096 n,—Also called the Jāk.

Juzbī, signification of the term, 979, 1080 n 5.

## K.

Kā'an, the title, 1105.

Kābachah, See Kabājah

Kābah [or Kāyāh], son of Nūh [Noah], 308.

Kabājah, Nāṣir-ud-Din,—the Mu-'izzī Sultān in Hind, 474 n 6, 489, 500, 503 n 8, 505 n, 526 n 8, 527 n, 529 n 4, 530, 531 and n 8, 532 and n 2, 533 n, 534 n and n 6, 6 and 8, 535 n, 537, 538 n, 539 and n 5, 540 and n, 541 and n, 542 n 9, 543 n, 544, 549 n 4, 607, 608 n 7, 609 and n 1 and 5, 610 n, 612 and n 4, 613 and n 7, 614 and n 8, 615 n 9 and 1, 622 n, 623 n 9, 627, 631, 724, 728 n 2, 773 n, 1073 n 4, 1074 n, 1131 n.

Kābal or Kābalī Khān b. Tumānā i, VIIth sovereign of the Buzanjar dynasty of the Mughal I māk, 896 n, 897 n, 1067 n.

Kābal Khawājā, Wazīr of Aghūz Khān the IIIrd sovereign of the Mughal I māk, 880 n.

Kā'chāq, the,—name of a Turkish

tribe, which is also written Khaf-chāk and Kafchāk, 877 n, 899 n, 1101. [1, 2.

Kābil b. Adam [Cain of Scripture], Kabir Khān-i-Ayās, Malik, 1133 and n 5. See under his title of 'Iss-ud Din.

Kabir Khān-i-Man-girni,—the title of Malik 'Iss-ud-Din Kabir Khān-i-Ayās, 725 and n 7, 865 n.

Kabir-ud-Din, Kāṣi of the Army of Sultān Shams-ud Din I-yal-Timish, 625, 652, 654 and n, 712.

Kabus b. Waṣṣam-gir, Wālī of Gurgān under the Sāmāniā, 44, 51 n 6. See also under his title of Shams-ul Ma'ālī.

Kachwāhah Rājputā, the, 691 n.

Kādān Ranko or Rango, the Khittā-i-general, 1137 n.

Kadāk, the Christian Atā-bak of Kyūk Khān, sovereign of the Mughals, 1100 n 8, 1185 n.

Kadāk the Nu-yin, 1180 n. See the above.

- Ḳadīšij**, the **Khātān** of **Koghān**, son of **Uktān**, son of the **Qhingis Khān**, 1184 n.
- Ḳadān** [**Ḳadghān** ?] **Aghūl** b. **Kūtān**, son of **Uktān**, son of the **Qhingis Khān**, 1185 n.
- Ḳadān Aghūl** b. **Uktān** **Kā'in**, son of the **Qhingis Khān**, 1142 n, 1165 n, 1168 n, 1170 n, 1171 n, 1180 n, 1182 n. [b. **Kūtān**, 1185 n.
- Ḳadghān Aghūl**. See **Ḳadān Aghūl**
- Ḳādir** **bi'llāh**, al,—the 'Abbāsi **Khalifah**, 80 n 5, 81, 232 n.
- Ḳādir Khān**, governor of **Utrār**, 267 n 9, 272, 266 and n 1. This is an error for **Ghū-ir Khān Anīāl Jāk**, which see
- Ḳadkā in Ughlān**,—one of the **Mughal** royal family, 974 n.
- Ḳadr Khān**, invader of **Mā-warā-n-Nahr**, 906 n, 907 n
- Ḳā'ir Khān** of **Kisfchāk**, xlvii, 254, 267 n 9, 272 n 9, 279, 229 n. This was his **Musalmān** title, his **Turkish** name being **Akrān** or **Ikrān**.
- Ḳadr Khān** b. **Ṣafaktān-i-Yamak**, xlviii, 981 n, 983 n n, 982 n. 1076. See also **Ḳadr Khān** b. **Yūsuf**, the **Tatār**. [**Khāns**, 900] n.
- Ḳadr Khān** b. 'Umr **Khān** b. **Ahmad Khān**, XVIIth of the **Afrāsiyābi**
- Ḳadr Khān** b. **Yūsuf**, the **Tatār**, xlviii, 263 n, 267 and n 9, 268, 272 n 9, 260 n 8, 261 n. See also **Ḳadr Khān** b. **Ṣafaktān-i-Yamak**.
- Ḳadr Khān** b. **Yūsuf** b. **Bughrā Khān-i-Harūn**, VIIIth of the **Afrāsiyābi Khāns**, 84 and n 9, 86 n, 87 n, 116 and n 2, 118, 122 n 8, 204 n, 205 n, 214 n.
- Ḳadsūn** the **Nū-yin**,—General of **Hulākū Khān**, 1239 n.
- Ḳās-mās**, the **Rāmī**,—an Officer of **Sultān Ḳaṭb-ad-Dīn Itak of Dīhī**, 575 and n 9 and 1, 576 and n 2, 577 n.
- Ḳafchāk**, the,—same as the **Ḳab-chāk**, which see.
- Ḳāhīr** **Bi'llāh**, al,—the 'Abbāsi **Khalifah**, 37.
- Ḳāptān** b. 'Abīr [**Heber of Scripture**],—Father of the **Arabs of Yaman**, 6.
- Ḳahtars**, the,—name of a people in **Koh-i-Jūd**, 1122 n. See the **Ḳahtars**.
- Ḳahūn Jats**, the,—name of a people in **Koh-i-Jūd**, 1122 n.
- Ḳaiān** b. **Iyāl Khān**,—one of the only two males who escaped the general massacre of the **Mughal** people, 881 n, 882 n, 883 n, 885 n, 887 n, 888 n, 890 n, 892 n, 893 n, 895 n, 937 n 9, 940 n, 1089 n.
- Ḳai-āniān dynasty** of 'Ajām, the, 1, 3, 183 n 2, 309 n.
- Ḳaiat** tribe of **Mughals**, the, 888 n, 889 n, 890 n, 891 n, 892 n, 893 n, 894 n, 931 n, 940 n, 951 n, 1093 n, 1094 n, 1095 n.
- Ḳaiat** **Kungkur-āt** tribe of **Mughals**, the, 1091 n
- Ḳaibukū** the **Nācūmān**, the **Nū-yin**, 1192 n, 1195 n, 1207 n, 1208 n, 1238 n 8, 1239 n, 1243 n, 1250 n, 1263 n, 1264 n, 1275 n 3, 1276 n, 1277 n, 1278 n, 1283 n.
- Ḳāidū Khān** b. **Zūtūmūn**,—IVth sovereign of the **Bū-Zanjār** dynasty of the **Mughal Imāk**, 894 n, 895 n, 896 n, 938 n
- Ḳāidū** b. **Kyūl Khān**, son of **Ḳitlās** **Kā'in**, son of the **Chingiz Khān**, 1144 n 6

Kāshān Shāh b. Sultān Ibrāhīm Ghassawī, 106.

Kai-Kāūs 'Izz-ud-Dīn b. Kai-Khusrau b. Kulij Arsalān,—of the Saljūkiyah dynasty of Rūm, 161 n.

Kai-Kāūs b. Kai-Khusrau b. Kai-Kubād, of the Saljūkiyah dynasty of Rūm, 163 and n 5, 164, 1151 n, 1195 n, 1262 n. [187, 598.]

Kai-Kāūs b. Kai-Kubād, of the Kai-āniyah dynasty of 'Ajam, 3, Kai-Kāūs b. Kulij Arsalān, of the Saljūkiyah dynasty of Rūm, 161

Kai-Khusrau, grandson of Kai-Kāūs,—of the Kai-āniyah dynasty of 'Ajam, 3, 561 n 9.

Kai-Khusrau, Abū 'Alī b. 'Izz-ul-Muluk,—last of the dynasty of the Buwaihīs, 66 n 7.

Kai-Khusrau b. 'Alā-ud-Dīn Kai-Kubād, of the Saljūkiyah dynasty of Rūm, 163 and n and n 1 and 2, 163 and n 4 and 5, 1151 n.

Kai-Khusrau b. 'Izz-ud-Dīn Kulij Arsalān, the Rūmī Saljūq, 161 n

Kai-Khusrau b. Khusrau Shāh b. Bahram Shāh Ghaznawī, 113

Kai-Kubād 1st of the Kai-āniyah dynasty of 'Ajam, 3, 317 n

Kai-Kubād, Wazīr-i-Khāṣ of Rukn-ud-Dīn Khūr Shāh of Alamūt, 1207 n

Kai-Kubād b. Rughrā Khān b. Ulugh Khān [Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn Balban], iv, 717 n

Kai-Kubād b. Kai-Kāūs of the Saljūkiyah dynasty of Rūm, 161

Kai-Kubād b. Kai-Khusrau, of the Saljūkiyah dynasty of Rūm, 163 n 5

Kai-Kubād b. Kulij-Arsalān, of the Saljūqs of Rūm, 161 n, 163 n and n 3, 298 n.

Kai-Lahitash, the Tyrant, of the Kai-āniyah dynasty of 'Ajam, 2, 4.

Kā'im Bi'amrillah, al,—the 'Abbasī Khalīfah, 125 n 3, 123 n 2, 124 and n 3, 125 n 2, 126 and n.

Kaimas, of the Dahima race of Rājputa, Lord of Bīāsah and minister of Pirt'hwi-rājā, 459 n 9.

Kaiqar of Rūm, the,—defeated and taken prisoner by Shāpār-i-Zu'l-Aktāf, 4.

Kaiūmurt, 303 n 7, 304. Same as Garū-mart, which see.

Kajie-Tigin b. Muḥammad-i-Takhiḡ Khwārazm-Shāh, 286 n 6.

Kājbas or Kājun b. Yassukā Bahādur,—brother of the Qhingis Khān, 839 n, 1040 n 2, 1094 n.

Kājir Olūkah, the Amir of the Aa, 1169 n

Kājun b. Yassukā Bahādur. See under Kājūn

Kājuli or Kaghuli b. Tumina i, leader of the Mughal troops, 896 n, 897 n, 898 n, 1057 n

Kokan b. Kuchey b. Kopanyu, one of the generals of Hulakū, 1218 n

Kokars, the,—an Afghan tribe, 1048 n 1, 1067 n

Kalar, Badshah of the Bulun, 1165 n [634 n 3

Kalāb, signification of the term, Kalbed,—an officer of Jūrmaghūn the Nuyin's army, 1116 n, 1117 n, 1120 n, 2, 1121 n.

Kalid i Afghani, the,—name of a book, 1061 n 7.

Kalilah wa Dimnah, the, 100 n 9

Kalimāsh, the,—not the name of the people, but their nickname,



989 a, 990 a, 993 a, 999 a, 999 a,  
1000 a, 1140 a, 1167 a.  
Kaltadjes, the, 1081 a 3; mispronunciation of the name *Khalj*.  
Kalmik, the, 999 a. See the *Kālimāks*.  
Kalmuks, the,—Europeanised name of the *Kālimāks*, 923 a.  
Kaltimish [also written *Kāltimish*] b. Isrā'il b. Saljāk, 123 a 2, 507 a 4.—app. xii.  
Kamāl-ud-Daulah Sher-nid b. Mas'ūd-i-Karīm Ghassawī, 107 and a 7.  
Kamāl-ud-Dīn 'Alī Samakrāmī, the Wasir of Sulṭān Maḥmūd b. Muḥammad b. Malik Shāh Saljūki, 170 a 3.  
Kamal-ud-Din Arsalān Khān b. Maḥmūd, the Wālī of Jund, 908 a, 927 a.  
Kamāl-us-Zamān, the minstrel of Sulṭān Banjar, 153.  
Kamar Takodar or Tagodar, the *Khutai* general, 1137 a.  
Kam-ghak or Bak-ghak, the Mughal general, 286 a 2.  
Kamil-ut-Tawarikh of Ibn a'l Asir, the, xvi, 619 a.  
Kamr-i-Habash or 'Anbar-i-Habashī, a horseman in the army of the Malik-ul-Kāmil of Shām, 1272 a 5.  
Kamr-ud-Din Karmānī, ruler of the district of Banbān, 536 a, 1131 a.  
Kamr-ud Din Kir-ān-i-Tamur-Khān, Malik of Awadh and Lakhaṇawati, 662, 665 a 3, 666, 667, 678, 742, 743, 747, 771 a.  
See also under *Kiran* and *Tamar*.  
Kandwaz, a kind of silk made in Herāt, 1037 a.

Kand Rō,—See under *Khānd* or *Khāndī Rō*.  
Kand-Rō, the Nā-yin, 1233 a.  
Kanghali, the. See under the *Kanḡali*.  
Kangit, the,—a tribe of Mughals, 1093 a.  
Kanglis, the, 985 a,—same as the *Kanḡulis*, which see.  
Kankō Khātūn, Mengū Khān's chief wife, 1185 a.  
Kantūd, a general of the *Unggis Khān*, 290 a.  
Kanḡal, signification of the word, 577 a.  
Kanḡulis or Kanḡūlis, tribe of the, 332, 335, 368 a 4, 290 a, 577 a, 579 a, 909 a, 914 a, 923 a, 972 a, 979 a, 982 a, 984 a, 985 a, 1021 a 3, 1022 a, 1091 a, 1169.  
Kānūn-i-Mas'ūdi, the,—a work by Abū Ma'ghar-i-Munajjim, 1, 2.  
Kans ul-Mabpūr, the,—name of a book, 78 a.  
Kārā Aghūl b. Mitūkō b. Ughagh-tā, son of the *Unggis Khān*, 1148 a 4. He is also called *Kārā Hulāka*, which see.  
Kārā Alb, the Arsalān Khān,—a leader of the army of the *Khwarazmis*, 979 a.  
Kārā Arsalan Beg b. Jaghar Beg, of the family of Saljāk, 93 a 3.  
Kārā Arsalān b. Ḥara Mallat, grandfather of Sabuk-Tigin, 70.  
Kārā Bēh-kam,—nick-name of Sabuk-Tigin's father, 68, 69 a, 70.  
Kārā Beg, the *Khutā-i*,—general of the *Gūr Khān*, 479 a, 480 a.  
Kārā Buj-kum, the,—the correct nick-name of Sabuk-Tigin's father, xlv.

**Ḳarā Bākī**, the Nū-yin, 1200 n 6.  
**Ḳarāghah**, Amīr of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn, **Khwārazm Shāh**, 1116 n, 1117 n, 1120 n 2, 1123 n, 1126 n 6.  
**Ḳarāghah**, the Nū-in, 1003.  
**Ḳarāghār** the Nūyān b. Sūghā-jūan or Sūghaj-ghī, b. Irdam-ghī, the Barlās,—leader of the Mughal troops, 899 n, 938 n, 980 n, 941 n, 944 n, 945, 1027 n 8, 1073 n 4, 1087 n, 1105 n, 1145 n, 1148 n 4, 1149 n 7, 1153 n.  
**Ḳarāghār** b. Uktāo Ḳi-ān, son of the Chingis **Khān** 1142 n.  
**Ḳarā Firis** b. Yasdijurd-i-Shahr-yār, 70 n 11.  
**Ḳarā Hulākū** b. Mitākō b. **Qhaqhatā**, son of the Chingis **Khān**, 1148 n 4, 1149 n 7, 1179 n, 1180 n, 1182 n, 1185. He is also called **Ḳarā Aghū**.  
**Ḳarājah**, the **Khāṣ** Ḥajīb,—an officer of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad **Khwārazm Shāh**, lx, 273 n 5, 971 n.  
**Ḳarājah**, the Bākī or cup-bearer, Atā-bak,—Banjar's slave, 151, 152, 158 n, 159, 174 n, 207 n 8.  
**Ḳarā-Jamāk**, the Sipah-Sālār,—a personal slave of Uloḡh **Khān**-i-Balban, 831 and n 1, 832, 867 n.  
**Ḳarā Kash** or **Ḳarā Kūsh Khān**-i-Aetkin,—one of the **Shamsiah** Maliks in Hind, 644 n 7, 645, 647, 655 and n 1 and 2, 650 n, 659 n 4, 661, 674, 679 n 5, 741, 761 and n 3, 762 and n 6, 866 n. See also under his title of **Iḳhtīār**-ud-Dīn.  
**arā Khān** b. Mughal **Khān**,—sovereign of the Mughal Imāk, 876 n, 876 n, 890 n, 951 n.

**Ḳarā Khitā-is**, the, 220 n, 487 n, 809 n, 900, 904 n, 908 n, 909 n, 910 n, 911, 912 and n, 913 n, 915 n, 917 n 1 and n, 918 n, 919 n, 923 n, 924 n, 925 n, 930 n, 930 n, 931 n, 933 n, 933 n, 934 n, 951 n, 1001 n, 1003 n, 1126 n 2.  
**Ḳarā-Kūsh Khān**-i-Aetkin. See under **Ḳarā-Kash**.  
**Ḳarā-Kūsh**,—the celebrated engineer from Egypt, liv.  
**Ḳarā Mā**, chief of the **Ḳulij** **Ḳarā** branch of the **Khālij** tribe, 944 n.  
**Ḳarā Mallat** or Millat b. **Ḳarā Na'mān**, ancestor of Sabuk-Tigin, 70.  
**Karamitah**, the,—a sect of Muḥammadan heretics, 40, 46, 47 and 7, 48 n 4, 60, 130, 209, 215, 218, 365 and n 3, 449 and n 2, 401, 646, 647.  
**Karamzin**, 1000 n.  
**Kāran**, an ancient Diālmah King and champion, of the Gil race, 998 n.  
**Kāran**, or Kurnah Rāo—a leader of the troops of the Rājah of Gujarat, 621 n, 522 n.  
**Ḳarā Na'mān** b. Firis-i-Bamsinjān,—ancestor of Sabuk-Tigin, 70.  
**Kārāniān** Maliks, the,—styled the Bastanian Maliks, 2.  
**Karār Bir**,—a demon killed by Rājah Ham Qhand, 93 n 9.  
**Ḳarā Sanḡur** or Sanḡar,—a leader of the **Khālifah**'s troops, 1240 n, 1241 n.  
**Ḳarā Sanḡar**-i-Nāṣiri, Malik,—of the Maliks of **Shams**-ud-Dīn Iyal-Timugh, 627.  
**Ḳarā Tigin**, a slave of Abū Ibrāhīm Sāmāni,—made governor of Hirāt, 37 n, 38 n 6.

**Karāyat** or **Karāyī** tribe of **Mughals**, the, 837 n, 874 n, 940 n, 941 n, 943 n, 943 n, 944 n, 956 n, 1076 n, 1098 n, 1153 n, 1176 n 2, 1198 n.

**Karbūghā** or **Karbūghā**, the **Tūtār** chief, 898 n.

**Karghā**, tribe of, 876 n, 963 n, 1112. See also the **Īrghā**.

**Karīm-ad-Dīn Hamsah**, **Malik**,—governor of **Nāgawr** of **Siwālīk**, 200 and n 3 and 3.

**Karīm-ad-Dīn-i-Zāhid**,—a **Tajsik** official of **Rukn-ad-Dīn Firūz Shāh** of **Dihli**, 635, 761.

**Kārlūkh**, **Khwājā**, the **Nū-yin**, **Amir** of **Kari-Kuram**, 1178 n.

**Kārlughā**, the, 1129 n 1,—See under the **Kārlughā**.

**Kārlūka**, the,—See the **Kārlughā**.

**Kārlūgh Shāhshāh** of **Hirāt**, the, 1128 n.

**Kārlūgh Turka**, the, 750 n 5, 781 n 2, 907 n, 925 n, 963 n, 1004 n 9, 1130 n, 1132 n.

**Kārlughsh Turk-māns**, the, 874 n 5, 448 n 7, 953 n.

**Kārlughā**, or **Kārlughā**, the, 1, 375 n, 686 n, 689 n, 727 and n 7, 730 n 7, 783 and n 3, 792, 877 n, 878 n, 879 n, 907 n, 908 n, 909 n, 910 n, 914 n, 919 n, 923 n, 925 n, 926 n, 953 n, 959 n, 960, 965 n, 1004 n 9, 1023 n, 1129 n 1, 1130 n, 1131 n, 1132 n, 1155 n 6.

**Kārlūki Huzārā**, the, 1130 n.

**Kārlūka** or **Kārlūka**, the,—See the **Kārlughā**.

**Karmākh**, governor of **Multān**,—See under 'Alī-i-Karmākh.

**Kargh-shp**, ancestor of **Basām i Zai**, 306 n 2, 309 n. [494.

**Kārūn**,—the **Korah** of **Scripture**,

**Kārmah**, name of an article of defence, 363 and n 3.

**Kasī Khātān**, of the tribe of **Iljikin**,—wife of **Mangh Kā'in**, 1228 n.

**Kashak**, the **Kanūli Kosh-chīr** camel-man, 1183 n, 1185 n.

**Kashghar Mission**, **History** of the, 901 n, 912 n, 917 n, 940 n, 950 n, 953 n, 964 n, 968 n 6, 981 n, 1044 n, 1069 n 4, 1075 n, 1091 n, 1108 n.

**Kāshī** or **Kāshā**, the **Tingyāt**, 1143 n.

**Kāshī b. Uktāe Kā-in**, son of the **Qhngiz Khān**, 1142 n.

**Kashia**, the,—a **Ghūrian** people in the territory of **Kashī** or **Kasī**, 361 and n 1, 362, 395 and n 7.

**Kashkab**, **Kashili** or **Kashiki**,—one of the champions of **Khwarazm Shāh's** army, 177 and n 5.

**Kashlik**, the **Tarkhān**,—one of the two boys who apprised **Tamurghī**, the **Qhngiz Khān**, of his danger, 941 n, 942 n.

**Kashlik Tarkhān**, the, 943 n.

**Kashlā** or **Kashli Khān**, the **Amir-i-Akhar** of **Sultān Muḥammad Khwarazm Shāh**, 976 n, 977.

**Kashlū Khān**, the **Tatār**,—See **Koshlak Khān**, son of the **Tayānak Khān**.

**Kashlū Khān-i-Sanḥur**,—same as the above.

**Kāsim b. 'Abd'ullāh**,—**Wasir** of the 'Abbāsī **Khālifah al-Muktafi**, 83 n.

**Kāsim b. Muḥammad b. Hakam b. Abū 'Aḥl** the **Ṣakāfi**, father of 'Imād-ad-Dīn **Muḥammad**, the **Conqueror** of **Sind**,—app. xvi, xviii.

- Kāsim-i-Amir-ul-Mu'minin,—a title given to some Sultāns by the Khalifahs, 316 and n, 368 n 2, 609 n 7, 772 n,—app. iv, v, xxii.
- Kāsr, meaning of the word, 331 n 2, 651 n 6.
- Kassur Jāt, the,—name of a people in the Koh-i-Jūd, 1132 n.
- Kat-gan tribe of Mughals, the, 893 n.
- Katghin or Katkin tribe of Mughals, the, 940 n, 944 n. See the above.
- Kāthars, the,—a tribe, 537 n. See the Kuhtars.
- Katrin tribe, the, 1142 n.
- Katula,—mispronunciation of the name of Kūbilah Khān b Qabal Khān, 897 n.
- Kawūm-ud-Din, the Mahk of Zawman, 268 n, 281 n 5.
- Kawām-ud-Din, Zawzani, Imām, 190.
- Kāwurd b. Alb-Arsalan-i Ghāsi b Dā'ūd-i-Jaghar Beg,—founder of the Kirmān dynasty of the Saljūks, 138 n 8.
- Kayā Khān b. Yūsuf b Bughrā Khān-i-Hārūn—of the Afrāsiyān family, 906 n.
- Kazil, one of the Mihtars or chiefs of the Saljūks, 120. [1070]
- Kazil Manjuq, the Mughal Chief Keene, H. G., 1094 n.
- Kelilat,—wrong name of Kalbād which see,—1121 n.
- Kezān, one of the chiefs of Kisfchik, 1170 n.
- Khādjah, daughter of Dā'ūd-i-Jaghar Beg,—espoused by the 'Abbāsi Khalīfah al Ka'im, 186 n.
- Khadijah, Muhammad's first wife, 302 and n 3.
- Kādim Humān, Maslawi, 1208 n 9.
- Khafchik tribe, the,—See under the Kabchak.
- Khaimā, the Nā-yin, 1237 and n 2.
- Khān,—application of the title, 720 n 1.
- Khākān of Turkistān, the, 27 n 4.
- Khakhi division of the Afghān nation, the, 1044 n.
- Khak-ras of Hirrit,—an artificial mound of earth surrounding the city, 1039 and n 8, 1040 n.
- Khalaf b. Ahmad,—ruler of Sijistān, 43 n 4, 76 n 8, 81 n, 86 n, 183 n 2, 185 n, 186 n, 187 n.
- Khalaj, the,—See the Khalj tribe.
- Khalīfah, the office of, 1260 n.
- Khalīfah Shabānī, of Tukhāristān, 375 n.
- Khalīfahs, the, xxxiii, 540 n, 887 n, 1117 n 7.
- Khalīl'ullah,—the Friend of God,—one of the titles of Ibrāhīm [the Patriarch, Abraham], 1163 and n 5.
- Khalj or Khalaj,—progenitor of the Khalj tribe, 878 n.
- Khalj the,—a Turk tribe, h, 28 n 8, 397 and n 1, 439 n 4, 443 n, 480 n and n 2, 463 n, 477 n 5, 480 n, 509 n, 529 n 4, 539 n and n 3, 540 n, 541, 542 n 9, 547 and n 9, 548 and n 3, 549 n 4, 550 n 6, 551 and n 7, 556 n 9, 574 n 7, 575 and n 1, 576 and n 3, 578, 579 n 4, 591 n, 595, 614 n 8, 615 n 1, 629, 757 n 7, 772 n, 870 n, 878 n, 916 n, 944 n, 980, 996 n, 1015 n, 1016 and n 3, 1023 n, 1023 n,—app. xx.
- Khalj b Yafiz [Japheth], 870 n.
- Khān, the title, 862.
- Khān-i-A'zam,—app. ix, xxi.

**Khān-i-Bazurg**, the,—or the great **Khān**, 52.

**Khān-i-Khānā**, the,—the Persian translation of the title "**Gūr Khān**," 911 and n 3, 912 n,—app. xxi.

**Khān 'Alam Firūzjang**,—app. xxi.

**Khān Malik**,—officer of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn **Khwārasm Shāh**, 291 n.

**Khān Malik**, daughter of 'Alī-ud-Dīn Muḥammad **Khwārasm Shāh**,—wife of Sultān 'Uṣmān the last of the Afrasiyābi **Khāns**, 910 n.

**Khān Malik**, Amir-i-Hājib,—of the Malikhs of Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sām, 401

**Khān Zamān**,—app. xxi.

**Khaui Rāe**,—See the next.

**Khānd** or **Khāndī Rāe**, ruler of Dihli,—brother of Pithorī Rāe of Ajmir, 459 n 2, 460 n and n 3, 461 n, 462 n, 463 n, 466 n 1, 467 n, 468 n, 469 n 2, 516 n 2. See also Gobind Rāe

**Khāns** of **Kīschāk**, the, 289.

**Khāns** of **Krim** [the **Krimīā**], the,—lineally descended from Jūji **Khān**, 1102 n.

**Khārbāsah**,—signification of the word, 404 and n 9

**Khārāsh**,—a nick-name or by-name, 410 and n 2

**Khārgah** or tent, description of, 1060 and n 4.

**Khārijis**, the,—a sect of Muslim schismatics, 13 and n 8, 14, 2 n 1.

**Khār-jam** or **Khār-Qhām**, the **Sipah-Sālār**,—champion of the **Qhūri** forces, 926, 929, 930 n 6.

**Khārkh Langūm**,—See under **Jirkh Langūm**.

**Khār'Jap**, the,—name of a people, 477 n.

**Kharmīl**,—a nick-name or by-name, 410 n 2.

**Kharmīl**, 'Izz-ud-Dīn **Husain**, the **Qhūri**,—Wālī of **Harūt**, 256 and n, 259 and n 3, 264, 297 n 3, 401 n, 402 n, 403 n, 410 n 6, 411 n, 433 n 7, 434 n, 433, 454 n, 455 n 5, 468 n, 474, 475 and n 1 and 2, 480, 483 n, 501 n 5, 403, 504 n 3, 516, 518 n, 602 n 3.

**Kharmīl**, **Nāsir-ud-Dīn Husain**,—See under **Nāsir-ud-Dīn Husain**.

**Kharmīl-i-Sām Banjī**,—Pahlawān of the Kingdom of **Qhūr**, 351, 444 n, 445 n.

**Kharmīl-i-Sām Husain**,—Pahlawān of the Kingdom of **Qhūr**, 351, 444 n, 445 n [410 n 2].

**Kharnak**,—a nick-name or by-name, **Kharnak**, Amir,—of the **Qhūri** tribes of **Wajiristān**, 335 and n 3.

**Kharnak b Bain**,—ancestor of Amir **Banjī**, **Shaneabi**, 312 and n 8.

**Kharcāhtī** or **Kharcāhī**, the **Sipah Sālār** of the **Qhūrian** army, 423 and n 4, 403

**Khār-Zor Maliki**, the **Qhūri** Malik, 990 and n 6

**Khāz Khān**,—an officer of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn **Khwārasm Shāh**, 294 n.

**Khāz Ming** or **Hasarah**,—the personal troops of the **Qhingis Khān**, 1092 n, 1093 n, 1094 n, 1095 n.

**Khāsh-bardār**, application of the term, 802 n 1.

**Khāsh**, sept of the **Afghān** nation, the, xvi.

**Khāzā'is**, the,—an error for the **Khāzā'is**, see lx.

- Khatāk** tribe of Afghāns, the, 511 n, 1044 n.
- Khāṭir-ud-Din Muḥammad b Bahā-ud-Din b. Maṣ'ūd-i-Kāsim, Ghaz-nawī**, 107.
- Khātrini Afghāns**,—a wrong name of the Kihtrān Afghāns, which see.
- Khawṣ-i-Khifāṣ**,—name of a fabric, 966 and n 8
- Khifchāk** or **Kīfchāk**,—name of a tribe of Turks, 233 and n 6, 235, 254, 998 n, 999 n, 1000 n, 1109.
- Khing But**,—Grey Idol,—name of an idol or figure in Bāmiān, 1058 n 6
- Khitrāns**, the, lix, 154 and n 2, 155 and n 3, 244 n 4, 246 n 4, 261 and n, 477 n 4, 478 n 6, 479 n, 482 n, 882 n, 894 n, 895 n, 899 n, 917 n, 908 n, 911, 912 n, 921 n, 924 n, 925 n, 926 n, 928 n, 929 n, 934, 935, 936 n 6, 955 n, 959 n, 957 n, 958 n, 959 n, 960 n, 975 n 3, 1073 n 4, 1134 n, 1139 n, 1215 n 4
- Khitans**, the,—name of a people 885 n.
- Khur, Mihtar**, 287, 1293
- Khizr Khān b Ibrahim i Tamghā**  
**Khān**,—one of the **Khans** of Turkistān, 908 n
- Khizr Khān, Jalāl ud-Din 'Alī b Hasan-Tigin**, XXIIInd of the Afrasiyābi **Khāns** of Turkistān, 909 n, 910 n
- Khizr Khān b Taṣṭāj Khān** XIVth of the Afrasiyabi **Khans** of Turkis-tan, 906 n
- Khokhar Bae**, King of Multan, ?
- Khokhars**, the,—a tribe of Hindus, li, 294 n, 453 n 1, 451 n, 455 and n, 476 n, 477 n, 481, 482, 483 n, 484 n, 485 n 3, 486 n, 491, 521 n, 526 n, 526 n, 537 n, 539 n 5, 604, 605, 647 n 9, 648 n 2, 656 n, 678, 679 n 2, 795 n, 815 n 6, 823 n 9, 1074 n, 1130 n, 1132 n, 1136 and n 7, 1201 n.
- Khūb Qhihr b. Sulṭān Ibrāhīm Ghaznawī**, 105.
- Khudā Kuli**, governor of the fort of Lash, 1122 n
- Khudāwand-Zādah of Manṣi**, the, 169, 204, 205.
- Khudāwāndah-i-Jabān**,—title of the mother of Sulṭān Muḥammad **Khwarazm Shāh**, 241, 256, 280
- Khulagu**, 1083 n,—wrong name of Hulaku **Khān**
- Khulīṣat ul-Akhbar**, the,—a book of history, xvi, 34 n 3, 41 n 8, 136 n, 155 n 7, 266 n, 404 n 1, 407 n 8, 419 n 4, 470 n, 639 n 7.
- Khulnāt ul Tawarikh of Sujān Rao**, xvi, 419 n 8, 453 n 2, 469 n 9, 524 n, 537 n, 582 n 6, 587 n 4, 593 n, 640 n 6, 623 n 1
- Khumar-Tigin**, Amir,—governor of Fars on the part of the Seljuḡ sovereigns, 174 n
- Khumar Tigin**, chief of the **Kanqā-lis**,—chosen to direct the administration of **Khwarazm** with the title of Sulṭān, 1005 n, 1006 n
- Khursh Hasanrah** the,—one of the **Hasarans** constituting the **Juwān-gīr** or Left of the Mughal army, 1003 n
- Khur Khurasan**, 27th of the **Taba-lis** of Yemen, i
- Khur Shāh**, last of the **Mulabudah** dynasty of Alamūt—the under his title of **Bukhā ud Din**

**Khurshid** b. Jamshid Malik b. Mas'ud-i-Karim **Ghasnawi**, 107.

**Khurshid** Malik b. Sultan Ibrahim **Ghasnawi**, 106 and n 7.

**Khura**, the 3rd son of Yâfiq [Japheth], 870 n, 871 n.

**Khush-bâl Khân**, the Afghan chief and poet,—of the **Khatâk** tribe, 611, 1044 n.

**Khush-nawaz**, King of the Hayâtî-lah, 423 n 8.

**Khuran**, signification of the title, 1006 n 1.

**Khurrau Malik** b. **Khurrau Shâh Ghasnawi**,—last of the Yaminiah dynasty, xxi, 67, 111 n 6, 112 n 5, 113 and n, 114 and n, 115, 240 n, 371 n 4, 376, 379 and n 6, 425 n 9, 447 n 6, 448 n 4, 449 and n 6, 452 and n 9, 453 n n 3 and 4, 454 and n, 455 and n and n n 6 and 7, 456 and n 2, 457, 631 and n 7, 1072 n 5.

**Khurrau Parwiz** b. **Hurmoz**,—111 of the Akâsirah dynasty of 'Ajam, 6, 6.

**Khurrau Shâh** b. **Bahrâm Shâh Ghasnawi**, xlvii, 111 and n 6, 112 and n n 3 and 5, 113 n, 114 n, 246 n, 248 n, 350 n and n 3, 357 n 7, 376 and n 2, 377 n 4, 444 n, 447 n 6, 448 n, 449 and n 8.

**Khurrau Shâh** b. **Khurrau Malik Ghasnawi**, 115.

**Khurrau Shâh** b. Sultan Ibrahim **Ghasnawi**, 106.

**Khushlah**, explanation of the term, 12 n 9.

**Khutali**, the (Ghasn) chieftain, 158.

**Khwâjah** i-'Amid, Abu Nafr-i-Mihkân az-Zausani,—See Abu Nafr-i-Mihkân.

**Khwâjah** of Zausan, the,—governor of Kirman, 262 and n 8.

**Khwâjah** 'Abd-ullah Asqari, 46 n 6.

**Khwâjah** Abû Sabî,—minister (Amir) Muhammad b. Mahmûd (Ghasn), 89 n 8.

**Khwâjah** Aba'l Faql Kirmâni, 194.

**Khwâjah** Aghâl b. Kyûk b. Ôktî son of the Chingis Khân, 116 n, 1184 n, 1185 n.

**Khwâjah** Ahmad the Wakhsî,—a merchant, 973.

**Khwâjah** 'Alî the Bukhârî,—in charge of Bukhârâ under the Mughals, 972 n.

**Khwâjah** Kutb-ud-Din Bakhtyî Kaki,—See under Kutb-ud-Din.

**Khwâjah** Ghayâs-ud-Din,—Wasî of the Atâbak Sa'd b. Zangî, 17 n 7.

**Khwâjah** Ismâ'îl, the officer in charge of the Ghasnî treasury, 487.

**Khwâjah** Muzhir, the merchant, 216.

**Khwâjah** Tâsh slaves, the,—signification of the term, 666 n 1, 699 n 2, 717 n.

**Khwâjû** the Matizi,—author of History of the **Khashi** Afghan, xvi.

**Khwârazm Shâh**,—Rulers bearing this title 232 n, 233 n.

**Khwârazm Shâh**, Kutb-ud-Din Muhammad b. Nûh-Tigin-i **Ghasn**, 148, 171 and n 1, 234 n 8.

**Khwârazm-Shâhi** dynasty, the xxxii, 38 n 6, 138 n 8, 162 n, 171, 179 n 2, 182 n 1, 231, 282, 296 n 1, 299, 377 n 5, 382 n 9, 399 n 6, 40 n, 527 n, 538 n.

- Khwarazmī Sultān**, the, 879 n, 917 n 1, 960 n 6, 963, 965, 1056 n 1.
- Khwarazmī**, the, xxiv, 540 n, 543 n 9, 887 n, 889 n, 901 n, 931 n, 932 n, 934 n, 971 n, 978 n, 993 n, 995 n, 1021, 1022 n, 1097 n 7, 1098 n, 1199 n, 1276 n.—app. ii.
- Kid Rāj** or **Koda-raja**,—name of a Hindu king, 509 n.
- Kiḍī Rāo**, 461 n.—same as **Khāndī Rāo**, which see
- Kihṛan Afghān**, the, 1043 n 1
- Kil-tamīsh** or **Kat-lamīsh** b **Isrāʾīl** b **Saljūk**,—governor of **Damashk**, 158 n.
- Kimāj**, 'Alā-ud-Dīn, ruler of **Balkh**—a Malik of the **Sanjari** dynasty, 371, 372, 373 and n 9, 374 n 5, 375 n, 390, 424 and n 4, 6 and 7, 926 n
- Kimāj**, 'Imād-ud-Daulah,—Amir of the troops of **Khurāsān**, 336 n 4, 359 n.
- Kimāl** (**Gumārī**) b. **Yāsā** [**Japheth**], 870 n
- Kim**, the,—name of a people who conquered Northern China, 877 n, 885 n, 921 n, 1068 n, 1136 n 9, 1186 n 5
- Kim Khān** b. **Mughal Khān** the first ruler of the **Mughal** **Imāḡ**, 875 n, 877 n.
- Kinner**, Mac D, 64 n 1. [n 4]
- Kiosk**, derivation of the word, 405
- Kirāmī**, the,—also called **Mujasamīān** one of the subdivisions of the **Shīʿī** sect, 344 and n 5, 385, 402 n
- Kirān-i-Tamur Khān**, Malik, 774 n, 866 n See also under his title of **Kamr ud Dīn** and also under **Tamur**
- Kiroher**, 1140 n
- Kirghis tribe**, the, 899 n, 923 n, 1 n, 969 n. 1091 n See also under the **Karghīn**.
- Kīṣar-i-Sānī**, the,—See **Tārīkh Ibn Haṣam**.
- Kīsh lāḡ** or **Kīsh-lāḡ**,—wint station, 876 n
- Kīarā-ul-Aghghānī** b. **Narī**, VII of the **Ashkānīān** dynasty 'Ajam.—He is also called **Arḍ wān-i-Akbar**, 4.
- Kīrā** b. **Mīhr-Jaṣṣh**, IXth of the **Akāsīrah** dynasty of 'Ajam, 6.
- Kitāb-i-Mas'ūdi**, the,—a book ecclesiastical jurisprudence, 41
- Kitāb-i-Nāji** of **Nābī-i-Dabīr** [the Secretary], 60 n 7
- Kitāb-i-Yamīnī** of **al-'Utbi**, the, x 44 n 4, 56 n 3, 73 n 7, 75 n 5, 80 87 n, 321 n 7, 341 n 7, 509 n, 536 —app. xx.
- Kiwak** or **Kyūk** b. **Almīnjab**, grandson of **Tark** b. **Yāsā**, 878 n.
- Kiwak Khān** b. **Hamīd-i-Bār**, the **Karā Khānā** i,—governor of **Bkhārā**, 976 n, 977 n, 1118 n 2.
- Kiwak** or **Kyūk Khān** b. **ʿAlī** b. **ʿAlī**, 1064 n. See under **Ky. Khān**.
- Kīya-i-Buzurg Umīd**,—extermination of his race, 1211 n.
- Kīzīl Arsalan** b. **Atabak** **Iladd-g** became sovereign of **Azarbaijā** 166 n 7, 171 n 9, 172 n 3
- Kīzīl Arsalan**,—brother's son **Sultān Sanjar** the **Saljuḡī**, 11 160, 312, 1198 n 8.
- Kīzīl Bashī**, the, ix.
- Kīnaproth**, 884 n, 895 n, 1186 n.
- Koghāy**, signification of the word 60 n 8.



Kochi b. Uktae Kî-an, son of the Qhingis Khân, 1141 a, 1142 a, 1149 a, 1150 a, 1184 a.

Kodâ, brother of the Tâkâ Bigi sovereign of the Makrit tribe of Mughals, 980 a, 981 a, 982 a, 983 a.

Kohistanîa, the, 334 a.

Kojlak b. Tâc-nâk,—See Koghak son of the Tayânak Khân.

Kokar, Chief of the Khokhara, 482 a, 483 a, 484 a.

Kokjâ, the Bat or But Tingri, son of the Nû-yin Manglik, of the Ulkânût Kungkurât Mughals, 1080 a 5.—See also under Kâkjâ.

Koktâc or Kûktâc, the Nû-in, 1115 a 5, 1160 a. [1006 a.

Kol or Centre of an army, 1093 a.

Kol-Irkin,—title of the Bâghlighs or chiefs of the Tâkûz I-ghâre, 981 a, 1097 a 6.

Kolah or Golah b. Pithorâ or Prithî-Râj, the Râc of Ajmir, 458 and a 6, 459, 460.

Kolah Pithorâ, Râc,—See the above.

Koli,—a Shâh-sidah of Jâji's house, 1286 a 9.—See also under Kâlî.

Kolkan b. Qhaghâtâc, son of the Qhingis Khân, 1165 a, 1170 a.

Kolkân, son of the Qhingis Khân, 1170 a.—See also under Kûlakân.

Kolûdi, also called Kunkâc, daughter of Uldâc b. Bartâ,—Khâtân of Mangû Kî-an, 1223 a.

Kolâkah or Kûnukah, the Bigi,—of the Mughal tribe of Uir-ât, 960 a.

Kolên Khâtân, 927 a.—See Konik Khâtân.

Komên or Kûmân, the Gâr Khân of Khâtâc, 928 a, 929 a.

Roman Kapchak, the,—the people of Valania, 1168 a.

Komânîk or Gomânîk Khâtân, 927 a.—See Konik Khâtân.

Komîn or Kûmîn Tâc-ghî or Tîya-ghî. See under Kûmîn.

Konayik or Konik Khâtân,—the third Gâr Khân, 927 a, 928 a.

Konch, the,—name of a tribe,—See under the Kûnch.

Konik or Konayik Khâtân,—the third Gâr Khân, 927 a, 928 a.

Konjâ Khâtân, daughter of the Altân Khân of Khâtâc,—one of the wives of the Qhingis Khân, 958 a, 1092 a.

Konstantîn (Constantin),—of Râmiah, 1268 a 9, 1269 a.

Ko-pau-yu,—a Chinese general in the Mughal army, 985 a.

Kor-Bâc or Kâr Bâc Khâtân,—widow of the Tayânak Khân,—marries the Qhingis Khân, 945 a, 946 a 1091 a, 1092 a.

Korkân b. Tûli, son of the Qhingis Khân, 1178 a.

Korundevi, a princess of Patna, mother of Kurua, Prince of Chastore, 520 a.

Koshaki, the Hakim, 155.

Koghak Khân, son of the Tayânak Khân, the Niemân ruler, 280 a 7 261 a, 263 a, 264 a and a, 269 a, 273 a, 267 a, 280 a, 281 a, 282 a, 284, 246 a, 249 a, 250 a, 251 a, 252 a, 264 a 2, 260 and a 8 and 1, 261 a, 262 a, 263 a, 264 a, 265 a, 266 a, 267.

Koshots, the, 1091 a.

Koshîn or Kushîn Tâc-Kâ or Tâya-Kâ,—See under Kûmîn.

Kosmeli,—one of the great chiefs of the last of the Kitan dynasty, 985 a.

- Ketola Katan** 1195 n.,—wrong name of **Kanlık Khātūn**, which see.
- Ke-yang** or the Great **Khān**, the,—surname of the Nūyin Mūkalī, the Jalā-ir, 1093 n.
- Koyūnik Khātūn**, 927 n. See **Kouik Khātūn**.
- Kozān**,—one of the leaders of **Kifchāk**, 1170 n.
- Kubāghah**, governor of Sind, 294 n.
- Kubād**, 421, 598,—See **Kai-Kubād**, of the Kai-ānīn dynasty.
- Kubād b. Bahāsh**, of the Sāsānīn dynasty of 'Ajām, 5.
- Kubilāe** or **Kubilān Khān** b. Tuli son of the **Chingiz Khān**, 1063 n., 1064 n., 1094 n., 1135 n. 5, 1165 n., 1171 n., 1176 n. 9, 1177, 1180 n., 1185 n., 1215 and n. 9, 1 and 4, 1216 n., 1217 n., 1218 n., 1219 n., 1220 n., 1221 n., 1223 n., 1226 n., 1229 n.
- Kubilah** or **Kubilah Khān** b. **Kabal Khān**,—of the Būvanjar dynasty of the Mughal Imāk, 997 n., 998 n., 1217 n.
- Kubilān** See under **Kubilāe Khān** b. Tuli.
- Kūbūr**, one of the generals of the **Chingiz Khān**, 289 n.
- Kūgh**, the,—a nomad tribe of Kir-mān, 60 n. 8.
- Kugh**, the, 560 n. 6—Same as the **Kūugh**, which see.
- Kūghah** b. **Kulakān**, son of the **Chingiz Khān**, 1092 n.
- Kūchin Bigi**, daughter of the **Chingiz Khān**, 941 n.
- Kūldār Sajan**, the Nū-yin,—chief of the Mangūt Naurin Mughals, 945 n.
- Kūj-Būka Khān**,—a general of Sul-tān Muhammad Khwārazm Shāh, 996 n.
- Kūk** or **Kuk**, fourth son of **Aghās Khān**, the IIIrd sovereign of the Mughal Imāk, 980 n.
- Kūkā I-yalka**, the Nū-yin, 1196 n., 1207 n., 1208 n., 1243 n.
- Kūkghah** or **Kūkghu** or **Kūkjah**, the Tab-Tingri. See the next.
- Kūkjā**, son of Minglik Ighakah, the **Kanak Karmār**,—styled the Tab or Tab-Tingri, 945 n., 946 n., 955 n. See also under **Kokjā** the Bat Tingri.
- Kūktāe** or **Koktāe**, the Nū-yin, 1115 n., 1169 n.
- Kūk-Tāgh**,—one of Mihtar or chiefs of the **Saljuks**, 120.
- Kūkū**, the Tab-Tingri. See under **Kukjā**.
- Kūlakān** or **Kālākān**, son of the **Chingiz Khān**, 1091 n., 1094 n. See also under **Kokkha**.
- Kulān Khātūn**, daughter of Tā-ir Azmān,—one of the wives of the **Chingiz Khān**, 947 n., 1091 n., 1142 n.
- Kūli** or **Koli**, grandson of Jāji **Khan**, son of the **Chingiz Khān**, 1229 n., 1243 n., 1296 n. 9.
- Kulij Arsalān** 'Isa-ud-Din b. Mas-'ad, V of the **Saljuks** dynasty of Rūm, 161 n.
- Kulij Arsalān** 'Isa-ud-Din b. Salī-mān Shāh, VII. of the **Saljuks** dynasty of Rūm, 161 n.
- Kulij Arsalān** b. **Kūli Arsalān**, of the **Saljuks** of Rūm, 160.
- Kulij Arsalān** [called **Salimān** by some] Rukn-ud Din b. **Chirāq-ud Din Kai-Khusraw**,—XII of the **Saljuks** dynasty of Rūm, 163 n. 5.

124, 1195 a.—See also under **Baku-ad-Din, Kufij Arsalān**.  
**Kufij Arsalān** b. Salīmān b. Kīl-tūgh.—III. of the Saljūq dynasty of Rām, 100 n.  
**Kufij Karī**,—a branch of the **Khafj** tribe, 244 n.  
**Kufij Khān** of **Khifā**, xlviii, 260, 261 n, 229 n.  
**Kufij** or **Kulich Khān**, Jalāl ud-Din Mas'ūd b. 'Alā-ud-Din Jāni, 708 n 4, 769 n 3, 847 and n 1 and 4, 848, 849 and n 5. See under Jalāl-ud-Din **Kulich Khān**; and also under **Kutlugh Khān-i-Mas'ūd**.  
**Kūmān** or **Komān**, the **Gūr Khān** of **Khifā**, 225 n, 229 n.  
**Kūmāns** [Cumani], the,—a Sarmatian nation, 1167 n, 1168 n.  
**Kūmkin** or **Komkin Tāo-gū** or **Tāyagū**,—name of the family of the **Gūr Khān** of **Khifā**, lxiii, 918 n.  
**Kun** or **Kūn Khān** b. **Aghūs Khān**, IV sovereign of the **Mughal Imāk**, 880 n, 881 n.  
**Kūnch**, the,—a race of people in the mountains between Tibet and **Lakhanawat**, 560 and n 4 and 6, 562 n, 571  
**Kūndās**, explanation of the word, 966 and n 9.  
**Kūndūs Khān**, 147 n 3, 908 n,—same as **Kadr Khān** b. 'Umr **Khān**, XVII of the **Afrāsiyāb Khāns**, which see.  
**Kungkarāt** or **Kungharāt** tribe of **Mughals**, the, 890 n, 939 n, 940 n, 943 n, 988 n, 1091 n, 1092 n, 1102 n, 1142 n, 1164 n 2, 1223 n.  
**Kūnshār Khātūn**,—one of the wives

of **Mangī Kā-in**, 1223 n. See under **Kāshā Khātūn**.  
**Kūnūkah**, the **Bigi**. See under **Kōl-kah**.  
**Kūnūsh** b. **Karaghār** b. **Urtā**, son of the **Qlingis Khān**, 1188 n.  
**Kūr** (**Kiwak**) b. **Almīnjab**,—grandson of **Turk** b. **Yāq**, 873 n.  
**Kūr** or **Gūr Khān**, fourth son of **Mughal Khān**, 875 n.  
**Kurādagh**,—one of the **Amirs** of **Ula-Kāgh-Tigin**, the **Bādghāh** of the **Turkish** tribe of the **Ungghāts**, 945 n.  
**Kūrak-Lūk Bigi**, daughter of **Kosh-lūk**, the **Bādghāh** of the **Nāmāns**, 1165 n.  
**Kur'an**, the, 62 n 5, 103 n, 126 n 4 and 6, 140 n 4, 301, 313 n 4, 380 n 6, 351 n 7, 355, 413 n 3, 451 and n, 473 n 2, 597 n 2, 600 n 2, 606 n 9, 625 n 4, 830 n 9, 826 n 7, 881 n 8, 935 and n 3, 962 n 7, 906 n, 976 n, 1011, 1136 n 6, 1142, 1161 n 9, 1, 2 and 3, 1163 n 6, 1171 n 5, 1175 n 6, 1199 n 9, 1252 n 4, 1263 n, 1284, 1288 n 1.  
**Kurat** dynasty, the, xxv, 1037 n, 1039 n 7, 1078 n 2, 1182 n 2, 1196 n 3, 1200 n, 1203 n.  
**Kūr bānū Khātūn**. See under **Kor Bānū Khātūn**.  
**Kūr Būkā**, the **Nū-yin**, 1149 n 7.  
**Kurbuz**, **Malik**, 265 n 4. See under **Kuriz**.  
**Kurdish** **Maliks** of **Shām**, the, xxxiii, 203 and n 1, 208 n 1.  
**Kurds**, the, xlv, 60 n 8, 184 n, 293 n 1, 317 n 5, 996 n, 1117, 1193 n, 1232 and n 1, 1233 n 3, 1234, 1263 n, 1264 n, 1291 n.  
**Kurgharat**, the **Ghuz** chieftain, 156.

- Kāri Sabāijā**,—one of the Amirs of the Tayinak Khān, 946 n.
- Kurūde**, or general assembly of the Mughal tribes, 948 n.
- Kuriz** [possibly Kurbuz], the Khān-sālār,—Malik of Ghazna under Sultān Muḥammad Khwārazm Shāh, 267, 285.
- Kurjā Tigin b. Muḥammad-i-Takush Khwārazm Shāh**, 264 n 3.
- Kürkūs** or Kurkūs, the Nū-yin,—an Ighūr official of Chin-Timūr, the governor of Irān-Zamin, 1121 n, 1122 n, 1123 n, 1141 n, 1181 n 2.
- Kūrlās** tribe of Mughals, the, 940 n, 1034 n.
- Kurna** b. Samarsāi, Prince of Chechore, 520 n.
- Kurnah Rāc**, 321 n. See under Rāc Karna.
- Kurāk**, or Kurāk, signification of, 1143 n.
- Kuvān**, son of al Abbās [uncle of Muḥammad], 1258 and n 8.
- Kūzhā**, meaning of the word, 331 n 2, 661 n 6.
- Kūzhak Khān** b. Tae-nak,—See Koshlak, son of the Tayanak Khān.
- Kūshlīn** or Koeshlīn Tae ku or Tayakū See under Kumkin.
- Kūtā Mangu** b. Čktāc Kā'an, 1112 n,—Same as the next.
- Kūtān** b. Čktāc Kā'an, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1084 n 1143 n, 1143 and n 6, 1149 and n and n 7, 1151 n, 1185 n.
- Kutās**, the, xlv. See the Chaja Chāc.
- Kutb-i-Afghān**, the,—title of Khwājah Kutb-ud-Din Bahkt-yar Kākī, which see, whom the Afghans claim as their peculiar saint, 632 n.
- Kutb** b. Nimrūd, the tyrant, (Nimrod of Scripture), 2.
- Kutbi** dynasty, the, 639 n.
- Kutb-ud-Din**, Malik,—one of the Amirs of Sultān Firiz Shāh, the Habashī, 691 n.
- Kutb-ud-Din**, Sayyid,—the Shaiikh-ul-Islām of Dihlī, 669 and n, 707, 708, 786 n 9.
- Kutb-ud-Din** Abū Bīkr, Kāsi of the kingdom, for Sultān Ma'uz-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Sām Ghūrī, 689.
- Kutb-ud-Din** Abū'l Fath b. Jai-Timūr-i-Bāniko, chief of Tarās, 1117 n 9, 1119 n.
- Kutb-ud-Din** Bakht-yar Kākī, the Cāhi, Khwājah,—the Kutb Afghān, a celebrated Muḥammadan saint, 632 n, 658 n 2, 669 n.
- Kutb-ud-Din** Hasan the Ghāri, 1135 n 3. See under Kutb-ud-Din Hasan.
- Kutb-ud-Din** Hasan b. Muḥammad b. 'Abbās b. Shīc,—chieftain of Ghur, 322 n, 333, 334, 336.
- Kutb-ud-Din** Hasan b. 'Alī b. Abī 'Alī, the Ghūrī Amir,—one of the Amirs of Sultān Muḥammad Khwārazm Shāh, 140, 416 and n 9, 693 and n 7, 642 and n 9, 654 n 3, 667 and n 6, 658 and n 1, 661, 673, 701 n 1, 702 and n 3, 709 n 3, 753, 764 n 5, 762, 798, 832, 833, 836 n 2, 1002, 1008 n, 1066 and n 1, 1080 and n 6, 1081 and n 9, 1083, 1084, 1086, 1087, 1088, 1070, 1071 and n 1.
- Kutb-ud-Din** Ibnak, Sultān of Dihlī, xxi, 1, 11, 41 n 6, 248 and n 1, 310 n 5, 348 and n 6, 7 and 9,

404 n 2, 412 n 2, 436 n 1, 466 n 2, 467 n, 467 n, 469 and n n 6 and 9, 470 n and n n 2 and 3, 471 n and n 4, 482 n, 484 n, 469 and n 6, 460 n, 401 n 2, 407 n 2, 500, 501 n 5, 502 n 6, 508 and n n 8 and 9, 506 n and n 8, 506 n and n 9, 507, 508 n 1, 510 n, 512 and n n 4, 5 and 6, 513 n and n n 5 and 1, 514 n and n 4, 515 n and n n 7 and 8, 516 and n 2, 517 n, 518 and n, 519 n, 520 n, 521 n, 522 n 5 and n, 523 n, 524 n, 525 n and n 7, 526 n and n 8, 527 and n, 528 and n n 2 and 3, 529 and n 4, 530 n and n 5, 532 and n 2, 533 n, 534 n 5, 545 n 5, 546 and n 7, 547 n and n 8, 549 n 4, 550 n 6, 551 n and n 7, 552 and n 4, 553 n 5, 554 and n 7, 555, 556 and n 6, 558 n 7, 560 and n, 573 n 9, 575 and n 9, 576 n 6, 577 and n, 578, 579 n 4, 580 n 7, 587 n 2, 594 and n 8, 601 n b, 602 and n n 1 and 2, 608 and n 6, 604 and n 5, 605, 608 n 8, 610 n 7, 614 n 6, 619 n 6, 621 n 6, 622 n, 627 n 5, 628 n 2, 631 n 4, 636 n 6, 638 n 1, 643 n, 663 n 9, 669 n 8, 718, 722, 729 n 4, 731 n 8, 745, 767, 866 n, 1181 n, —app. i, ii, iii, iv, v, vi, vii, viii, ix, x, xi, xii, xiii, xxiv, xxv, xxvi.

Ḳuṭb-ud-Din Muḥammad b. 'Isa ud-Din al Ḥusain, Malik-ul-Jilāl, of the Ḥamabāniyah dynasty of Ghur, 337, 338 and n n 1 and 2, 339, 340, 343 n 2, 346, 347 n 2, 348, 349 n, 354, 422, 439 and n 4, 442 n, 443 n.

Ḳuṭb-ud-Din Muḥammad b. Nuḡh-Tigin, Khwārazm Shāh, 221, 232 n, 233 and n, 234 and n 3, 235 n,

236 n 5, —wrongly called Ḳuṭb-ud-Din Iḡak by the author.

Ḳuṭb-ud-Din Muḥammad b. Shams-ud-Din Iyal-Timiḡh, Malik, 325, 633 and n 6, 670 n 1.

Ḳuṭb-ud-Din Yūsuf Timrānī, Malik, — one of the Maliks of the brother Sultāns of Ghūr, 260, 408, 490.

Ḳutlaḡh Inānā, son of the Atā-bak Jahān Pahlawān Muḥammad, 167 n 8, 172 n 3, 242 n 6, 243 n, 247 n, 249 n 3, 457 n.

Ḳutlaḡh Khān, title of the Atā-bak Abū Bīkr b. Sa'd b. Zangi, which see, 180 n 5.

Ḳutlaḡh Tigin, —slave of Mu'izz-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Sām and Amir-ul-Umarā of Tāj-ud-Din Iyal-duz, 504 n 4, 526 n 8.

Ḳutlah, —mispronunciation of the name of Ḳūbilak Khān b. Ḳabal Khān, 897 n.

Ḳutlaḡh, signification of the title, 865 n.

Ḳutlaḡh Khān, Ḥakīm of Jand, 972 n.

Ḳutlaḡh Khān, step-father of Suṭhān Nāṣir ud-Din Mahmud Shāh of Dihli, 692, 701, 702 n 3, 703, 704 and n 5, 706, 707 and n 6, 708, 710 n 1, 759 and n 6, 768 and n 4, 769 n 8, 777 n, 778 n, 784 n, 785 and n 7, 825, 827, 833 n n 9 and 4, 834 and n 7, 835 and n 4, 836 and n 9, 837, 839 n 7, 839, 840 and n 2, 841 and n 6, 842, 844 and n 4, 847 n n 1 and 4, 1225 n.

Ḳutlaḡh Khān-i-Mas'ūd b. 'Alī-ud-Din Jāmi, 768 n 4, 769 and n 5, 775 n. See also under Ḳutly Khān Jalāl-ud-Din Mas'ud.

Ḳutlaḡh Mas'ud b. Jāmi, Malik, 712 n 9. See the above.

**Kutugh Shāh** b. Sultān Ibrāhīm **Qasnawī**, 106.

**Kutugh Sultān**, title of **Burāk** the **Bijib**, which see, 1118 n 0.

**Kutūkū**, the **Nūyān**, one of the generals of the **Qhngiz Khān**, 1019 n, 1020 n.

**Kutūkū**, a **Shāh-zādah** of the family of the **Qhngiz Khān**, 1141 n.

**Kūs** or **Gūs Khān**, fourth son of **Mughal Khān**, 875 n.

**Kyāk Khān** b. **Ukile Kī-lān**, son of the **Qhngiz Khān**, xiv, 1008 and n 6, 1105 n, 1115 n 5, 1125 n, 1137 n, 1142 n, 1144 and n 2, 1146 and n 4, 5 and 6, 1149 and n 7, 1160 and n, 1151 n, 1152 n, 1157 and n 2, 1158, 1159, 1160 and n 2, 1162, 1163 and n 7, 1164, 1165 n, 1170 n, 1171 n, 1172 and n 0, 1177 and n 1, 1178 n, 1179 n, 1180 n, 1181 n 2, 1184 n, 1185 n, 1186 n.

## L.

**Lāghin**, the **Khāṭā ī**,—an army officer of **Kubāghah** in **Sindustān**, 294 n.

**Lā-ghin Beg**,—a chief of the **Karlūghs** in **Māwarā-un-Nahr**, 909 n.

**Laddah**, son of the **Rāc** of **Qhand-wāl** [**Qhand wār**], 743.

**Lailat-ul Kadr**, [the night of Power],—the 27th of the month of **Ramazān**, 31 and n 8.

**Lais**, the **Ṣuffār**,—head of the **Braziers** of **Sijistān**, 19 and n 1, 163 n 2.

**Lais** b. 'Alī b. **Lais**, the **Brazier**,—of the family of the **Ṣuffārīāns**, 34 n 6, 164 n, 165 n.

**Lak**, the,—a sept of nomad **Kurds**, 317 n 3, 616 n.

**Lakan** the **Lak**, **Amir** of **Aytkin-ānād**, 317 and n 5.

**Lak Bakhsh**,—the giver of **laks**, a title given to **Kaṭb ud-Dīn Ibak**, 512 n 4.

**Lakhi**, son of **Jundharah**,—of the **Bhati** tribe of **Hindus**, 79 n, 80 n.

**Lakhā Hazārāns**, the,—name of a tribe, 921 n 2.

**Lakhman Sen**,—of the **Hindū** dynasty of **Nālish**, 658 n 1.

**Lakhtmans** or **Lakshmans**, son of **Dasarata**,—half-brother of **Rām Chandra**, 544 n 2, 545 n 6.

**Lakhmanis Rāc** see under **Rāc** **Lakhmanis**.

**Lama**, the,—pontiff of the **Buddhists** 1058 n 6.

**Lamaists**, the, 951 n.

**Lamak** [**Lamach** of **Scripture**], 308.

**Landez**, signification of the word, 273 n 4.

**Lane**, xxi, 603 n 7, 829 n 2, 1205 n 1.

**Lāt**, the,—name of an idol, 1064 n 6.

**Lāṭif ī** (**Ḥayyāṭī**), the,—of **Imām Fakhr-ud-Dīn Rāzī**, 365 n 0.

**Lāwad** b. **Sām** [**Shem**] b. **Nūḥ** [**Noah**], 306.

**Lawik**, **Abū 'Alī ī**, ruler of **Qhasnīn**, 72, 185 n, 320 n 3. He seems to be the same person as the next.

**Lawik**, **Abū Bīkr ī**, **Amir** of **Qhasnīn**, 71 and n 5, 72 n 6.

Layan the,—a title.—See under Lirān. [n 3.  
 Lee, 648 n 5, 678 n 2, 800 n 2, 1275  
 Lees, Colonel W. H., 2, 67 n 2,  
 1250 n.  
 Lessor, 984 n.  
 Lessorque, 884 n.  
 "Life of Genghiscon [Chingis  
 Khān] the Great," Pétis de la  
 Croix's, 890 n, 896 n.  
 Life of Yakub Beg, Amest of  
 Kashgar, Boulger's, 1045 n.  
 Lik-Tāi or Lok-Tāi, the rebel slave  
 of Sultān Mu'izz-ad-Din Muḥam-  
 mad-i-Sām, 476 n, 477 n, 482 n,  
 484 n.  
 Likhām Khātūn,—daughter of Kosh-  
 luk, son of the Tayīnak Khān,  
 946 n.  
 Lingard, 309 n.  
 Lion of the Mountains, the, 213 n 5.  
 See Amed ad-Din Sher-i-Koh.  
 Li-wān [the Layan of Europeans],  
 —title of the Bādshāh of Kāghin.  
 1086 n 2.

Lodi.—See under Lādi.  
 Loo-dney,—the proper spelling of  
 the name Lodi or Lādi, 106 n.  
 Louis VII. of France, 221 n.  
 Louis IX of France, 1290 n 1.  
 Lubb-ut-Tawārikh, the, 41 n 2, 94  
 n 2, 97 n 4, 117 n, 125 n 2, 142 n 1,  
 262 n 2, 407 n 5, 440 n 2, 469 n 9,  
 522 n, 526 n 2, 589 n, 623 n 1, 651  
 n 7, 668 n 2, 1256 n 6.  
 Lādi or Lodi, surname of Ibrahim  
 b. Shāh Husain, Ghāzi, 510 n.  
 Lādi or Lodi tribe of Afghāns, the,  
 220 n 4, 511 n.  
 Lādiah dynasty in India, the, 510  
 n, 511 n.  
 Lahr-isp, 308 n 9. See Kai-Lahr-  
 sib, the Tyrant.  
 Lamedon, Mathew,—app ix.  
 Lārs, the,—a tribe of nomads in  
 'Irāk, 1193 n.  
 Lyow-ping-chong, the Chinese  
 Boosa, 1218 n.  
 Ly-Hyen, Bādshāh of Kāghin, 1086  
 n 2.

## M.

Macedoniana, the, 1045 n.  
 Mac D. Kinneir's "Geographical  
 Memoir of the Persian Empire,"  
 64 n 1.  
 Macgregor, Colonel C. M., 1115 n 5.  
 Mā-Chin b. Chin b. Yāq [Japheth]  
 871 n.  
 Mā-Chin b. Tāh b. Bā-majar  
 sovereign of the Mughal I-māk.  
 894 n, 896 n.  
 Ma'dan i-Akhtār-i-Ahmadi, the,—a  
 historical work, xvi, 557 n 4, 739  
 n 6.  
 Madhob Sen b. Rāo Lakshmaniah,—

of the Hindū dynasty of Nādiāh,  
 558 n 1.  
 Māo Khawar b. Bahrām,—ancestor  
 of Tāhir ibn al-Husain, 9.  
 Māhā-kāi Dīw,—the idol temple of,  
 621 n 6, 622, 623, 629.  
 Māhān-i-Khāsī b. As'ad,—ancest-  
 or of Tāhir ibn al-Husain, 9 n 1.  
 Mahl-pāik,—the Rājah of Gwāhyār,  
 619 n 7.  
 Mahd-i-'Irāk [or the 'Irāki spouse],  
 sister of Sultān Sanjar Saljūki,  
 107 and n 6, 108.  
 Mahdī, al-, [the Director or Guide],

—the last of the twelve Imāms of the Shī'ah, 1189 and n. 2.  
**Mabdi**, al.—the 'Abbāsi Khalīfah, 374 n. 5, 1189 and n. 9.  
**Māhi Marātib**, signification of the term, 1295 n. 8.  
**Māhi Subāhi**, signification of the term, 1295 and n. 8.  
**Māh Malik**, daughter of Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Sām, xxii, 301, 391.  
**Mahmūd of Ghaznī**, Sultān Yamīn-ud-Daulah Nū'm-ud-Din Abū'l-Kāsim, son of Sabuk-Tigin, xxiii, 20 n. 3, 41 n. 44 n. 8, 47 and n. 9, 48, 49 and n. 8, 50 and n. 8 and 4, 51 and n. 6 and 7, 53 n. 57 and n. 1, 68, 74 n. 8, 75 and n. 6 and 7, 76 and n. 8 and 1, 78 n. 79 n. 80 n. and n. 5, 81 and n. 82 n. 7, 83, 84 and notes, 85 n. 86 n. 87 and n. 88 and n. 3 and 7, 89 n. 8, 91 n. 9, 93 and n. 3 and 4, 93, 96, 99 and n. 102 n. 4, 104, 105 n. 107, 112 n. 5, 116 and n. and n. 3, 117 n. 118, 119, 120 and n. 5, 129 n. 2, 186 n. 232 n. 285 n. 5, 293 n. 308 n. 2, 316 n. and n. 2, 320 and n. 4, 321 and n. 7, 323 and n. 323 n. 324 n. 329 and n. 339 n. 7, 341 n. 6, 354 and n. 6, 419 n. 5, 448, 452 n. 8, 453 n. 4, 487 n. 6, 509 n. 510 n. 538 n. 537 n. 903 n. 904 n. 905 n. 1132 n.—app. xii, xvii, xviii, xx.  
**Mahmūd the Patas King of Guzerat**, 511 n.  
**Mahmūd the Tārāni**,—his rebellion in Bukhārā, 1128 n., 1145 n.  
**Mahmūd-i-Ātash Kh'ir** [the Fire-eater], *Shāikh*, 1146, 1147, 1148.  
**Mahmūd b. Ghiyāṣ-ud Din Muḥam-**

**mad-i-Sām**, *Ghansabī Saljūq* of Ghūr, xxiii, 1, ii, 383 n. 8, 388, 394 and n. 395, 396, 397 and n. 6, 8, 9 and 5, 398 and n. 6 and 7, 399 n. and n. 2, 8 and 7, 400 and n. 2, 401 n. 403 n. 403 and n. 404 and n. 1, 406, 406, 407 n. 5 and 7 408, 409, 410 n. 3 and 6, 411 n. 412, 414 and n. 8 and 2, 415, 418 n. 2, 421 n. 7, 432, 438 n. and n. 7, 484 n. 470 n. 2, 472, 476 n. 478 n. 6, 480 n. 490, 492 n. 7, 498 n. 494 n. 1, 497 n. 2, 498 n. 501 and n. 5, 503 n. and n. 6, 508 and n. 2, 519 n. 522 and n. 6, 523 n. 524 n. 525 n. 526 n. 8, 527 n. 528 n. 2, 607 n. 5, 1199 n.—app. xvi. His title was *Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din*.  
**Mahmūd-i-Irān Shāh** b. 'Alī-ud-Din Muḥammad the Pearl of Ghūr, 394 n. 395, 396, 399, 408.  
**Mahmūd b. Iyāl Armaḷān**, Sultān Shāh-i-Jalāl-ud Din, *Khawāram Shāh*, 239, 245 and n. 5. See also under Sultān Shāh, Jalāl-ud-Din.  
**Mahmūd b. Khusrāu Shāh** b. Bahrām Shāh, *Ghaznawī*, 113.  
**Mahmūd b. Malik Shāh** b. Alb-Armān-i-Ghāzi, the Saljūki, 138 and n. 7, 143 n. 2, 144 n. and n. 3, 157 and n. 4, 158 and n. 159. His title was *Mughu-ud-Din*.  
**Mahmūd b. Mas'ūd-i-Karīm**, *Ghaznawī*, 107.  
**Mahmūd b. Muḥammad b. Malik Shāh Saljūki**,—nephew of Sultān Sanjar, 146 n. 6, 147 n. 8, 151 n. 6, 168 n. 7, 170 n. 8, 204 n. 375 n.  
**Mahmūd b. Muḥammad-i-Sām**, *Ghūrī*, Sultān, 256 and n. 9, 258 n. See also under Mahmūd b. *Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din*



**Mahmūd b. Sulṭān Ibrāhīm Ghaznawī**, 106 and n. 6.

**Mahmūd b. Sulṭān Maudūd Ghaznawī**, 97.

**Mahmūd-i-Warrāq**, of Nishāpūr, 17, 18.

**Mahmūd Yalwāj**, the Bakhār, the 'Aziz and Shāhib-i-A'zam of the Qhingishiah dynasty, 1076 n, 1119 n, 1138 n, 1141 n, 1149 n 7, 1162 n, 1184 n, 1185 n, 1217 n.

**Mahmūd Khān**, XVth of the Afrāsiyābi Khāns of Māwarā-un-Nahr, 906 n.

**Mahmūd Khān b. Muḥammad-i-Armān Khān**, son of the Bughrā Khān,—the XXth of the Afrāsiyābi Khāns of Turkistān, 180 n 7, 239 n, 906 n, 917 n, 908 n, 926 n, 998 n. His title was Rukn-ud-Din.

**Mahmūd Shāh b. Khusrāw Malik b. Khusrāw Shāh, Ghaznawī**, 115.

**Mahmudi dynasty**, the, 26 and n 1, 98 n 8, 100 n 4, 111, 112 n 5, 113 n, 114 and n, 115, 127, 132, 184. Also called the Ghaznawī and Yuminiyah dynasty.

**Mahmūdī** [of Mahmūd of Ghaznin] family, the, 340, 342, 343 n, 350 n, 354 and n 6, 355 and n 7, 358 n 2, 377, 422, 440, 448, 452, 455, 1062 n 7, 1072 n 5.

**Mahmūdī Mahka**, the. See the Mahmudi dynasty.

"Mahommedan History," Price's, 444 n.

**Mahrattas**, the, 601 n.

**Māh-Bāz**, 'Amil or governor of the district near Casand, on the part of Sulṭān Mahmūd of Ghaznin, 53 n.

**Maimandi**, al,—Khawājah-i-Fayl Ahmad b. Hasan,—Wazir of Sulṭān Mas'ūd b. Mahmūd of Ghaznin, 92 n 8, 120 n 1.

**Main**, the Rev. Robert, 268 n 3.

**Mairs or Mors**, the,—name of a Hindū people, 520 n.

**Majmū'ul-Khiyār**, the,—name of a historical work, 889 n 2, 890 n, 894 n, 1020 n.

**Mājār**, son of the Nū-yān Ūjl, 1180 n.

**Majd-ud-Daulah Buwiah**,—last of the Buwiah dynasty in 'Irāq, 57 n.

**Majd-ud-Daulah b. Sayyid 'Alī-ud-Daulah** the Hamadāni, of the race of 'Alī, 995 n.

**Majd-ud-Din**, the Kāi yāni, Malik,—governor of Hīrāt under the Mughals, 1128 n.

**Majd-ud-Din**, the Model, Kāzi,—of Ghiyās-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Sām Ghūrī, 393.

**Majd-ud-Din Muḥammad b. Hasan b. Tā'us**,—one of the Sayyids of Hillah, 1242 n 2.

**Majd-ud-Din Mūsawī**, Sayyid,—Wazir of Sulṭān Saif-ud-Din Sarī, 355, 440, 442, 445.

**Majd-ud-Din** the Tabrizi, Malik, 1262 n.

**Majd-ud-Din Tālaki**, Kāzi,—maternal uncle of Minhāj-i-Sarāj, 458, 1060 n 5.

**Majd-ul-Mulk**, Khawājah Saif-ud-Din, Wazir of Ghiyās-ud-din Muḥammad i Sām Ghūrī, 390, 414.

**Majd-ul-Mulk 'Umr-i-Bāji**, the Kāfi—one of the Wazirs of Sulṭān Muḥammad Khwārazm Shāh, 990 n, 1027 n 3.

- Majdūd b. Sultān Mas'ūd b. Maḥmūd of Ghazni, 96, 125 n 5.
- Majir-ud-Din Fakhr-ul-Mulk. See under Fakhr-ul-Mulk Nuḥm-ud-Din.
- Majir-ul-Mulk Sheraf-ud-Din Muḥṣafar,—one of the Amirs of Sultān Maḥammad Khwārasm Shāh, 1028 n, 1029 n, 1030 n, 1031 n, 1032 n.
- Majur ul-Mulk 'Umr-i-Rāji, the Kāfi, one of the Wasirs of Sultān Muḥammad Khwārasm Shāh, 990 n, 1027 n 8.
- "Maḥmūd-ut-'Amid-i-Abū Naḡr-i-Mughkān,"—of Abū-l-Faṣl-i-Muḥammad Al-Bashāfi, 87 n, 105 n.
- Mākīn b. Kāki, Dīlāmī,—of the Āl-i-Ziyār dynasty, sovereign of Gurgān, 87 n, 55 and n 1, 56 and n 2.
- Mukhdūm-i-Jahānū-i-Jahān,—a Muḥammadan saint, 541 n 6.
- Makhsan-i-Afghāni, the,—a historical work, xvi, 622 n.
- Makrit tribe, the,—of the Kasūt division of Mughals, xlviii, 273 n, 931 n, 940 n, 941 n, 944 n, 945 n, 946 n, 947 n, 949 n, 950 n, 951 n, 964 n 2, 960 n 1, 981 n, 982 n, 983 n, 1091 n, 1102 n.
- Malcolm, Sir John, 442 n, 1264 n, 1279 n, 1292 n.
- Māl Diw,—the Rāo of Gwāliyar, 619 and n 7.
- Malik of Kābul, the,—put to death by Hulūkū Khān 717 n.
- Malik, the son of Du ar,—'Aziz of Myr, 596.
- Malik b. Uktāo Kā'n, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1142 n, 1168 n.
- Malik-ul-'Adil Abū Bīkr b. Malik-ul-Kāmil, Nāṣir-ud-Din, al-Aiyūbi, 220 n 5, 230 n.
- Malik-ul-'Adil al,—Abū'l-Kāsim Nūr-ud-Din Maḥmūd, son of 'Imād-ud-Din Zangī, 204 n.
- Malik-ul-'Adil Saif-ud-Din Abū Bīkr i-Muḥammad b. Aiyūb, son of Shādī, al-Kurdī, xvii, 208 and n 9, 219, 222 and n 8, 223 and n 5, 224 and n 2, 225 and n 4, 226 and n 8, 227 and n 9, 228 n 4, 1265 n 9, 1267 n 6.
- Malik-ul-Afṣal Abū-l-Ḥasan-i-'Alī Nūr-ud-Din b. Shāh-ud-Din al-Aiyūbi, 219, 221 and n 7, 222 and n 8 and 9, 223 n and n 2, 4 and 5, 224 and n 8.
- Malik-ul-Afṣal Najm-ud-Din Abū Laṣṭkar-i-Aiyub See Aiyūb b. Shādī.
- Malik-ul-Amjad b. Malik-ul-'Adil Saif-ud-Din Abū Bīkr-i-Muḥammad al-Aiyūbi, 226.
- Malik ul-Ashraf b. Malik-ul-'Adil Saif-ud-Din Abū Bīkr-i-Muḥammad al-Aiyūbi, 226 and n 7, 229 n 4, 297 n, 298 n.
- Malik-ul-Awṣad b. Malik-ul-'Adil Saif-ud-Din Abū Bīkr i-Muḥammad al-Aiyūbi, 226 and n 7.
- Malik ul-'Aziz b. Malik-ul-Zāhir Ghayās-ud-Din b. Shāh-ud-Din Yusuf al-Aiyūbi, 1267 n 6.
- Malik-ul-'Aziz, 'Imād-ud-Din, Abū-l-Fath, 'Utmān b. Ḥabīb-ud-Din Yusuf al-Aiyūbi, 219, 222 and n and n 8 and 9, 223 n and n 4 and 5, 224, 225 n.
- Malik ul-'Aziz Zāhir-ud-Din Saif-ul-Islām, son of Aiyub b. Shādī, al-Kurdī, 208 and n 9.

**Malik-ul-Fa'iz** *Shihab-ud-Din Ibrāhīm b. Malik-ul-'Adil Saif-ud-Din Abū Bīkr-i-Muḥammad al-Aiyūbi*, 236 and n 5, 238 n 4.

**Malik-ul-Ḡhāsi** b. *Malik-ul-'Adil Saif-ud-Din Abū Bīkr-i-Muḥammad al-Aiyūbi*, 236 and n 6. See also under *Shihāb-ud-Din-i-Ḡhāsi*.

**Malik-ul-Hajjāb**, [Head of the Chamberlains],—name of a title, 230 and n 4.

**Malik-ul-Jawād** *Muḥaffar-ud-Din Yūnas, son of Shams-ud-Din, Mawdūd, al-Aiyūbi*, 229 n 5.

**Malik-ul-Jibāl**, title of *Kutb-ud-Din Muḥammad b. 'Izz-ud-Din al-Husayn Ghuri*, which see.

**Malik-ul-Kāmil** b. *Malik-ul-'Adil Saif-ud-Din Abū Bīkr-i-Muḥammad, al-Aiyūbi*, 223 n 5, 226 and n 7, 227 n 4, 228 and n 4, 229 and n 5.

**Malik-ul-Kāmil Muḥammad** b. *Shihāb-ud-Din Ḡhāsi, al-Aiyūbi*, iv, 1265 and nn 9 and 2, 1266 and n 4, 1267 and n 6, 1268, 1270 and n 2, 1272 n 5, 1273 n 7, 1274 n 7.

**Malik-ul-Mamdūd** b. *Malik-ul-'Adil, Saif-ud-Din Abū Bīkr-i-Muḥammad al-Aiyūbi*, 226.

**Malik-ul-Manṣūr** b. *Malik-ul-'Aziz b. Ṣalāḥ-ud-Din Yūsuf al-Aiyūbi*, 222 n, 224, 225 n.

**Malik-ul-Manṣūr Nūr-ud-Din 'Alī** b. *'Izz-ud-Din Iḥāk, the Turkmān, sovereign of Mīṣr*, 1276 n.

**Malik-ul-Maw'ūd** b. *Malik-ul-'Adil, Saif-ud-Din Abū Bīkr-i-Muḥammad al-Aiyūbi*, 226 n 7.

**Malik-ul-Mu'azzam**, *Shams-ud-Daulah, Tārān Shāh, son of Abū*

*Laghfar-i-Aiyūb b. Shāfi al-Kurdī*, 208 n 9, 214 n 6, 217 n, 229 n 5, 230 n.

**Malik-ul-Mu'azzam-i-'Isā** b. *Malik-ul-'Adil Saif-ud-Din Abū Bīkr-i-Muḥammad al-Aiyūbi*, 226 and n 7, 227 and n 9, 228 and n 4, 1267 n 6.

**Malik-ul-Muḥsin** b. *Ṣalāḥ-ud-Din Yūsuf al-Aiyūbi*, 222 and n.

**Malik-ul-Muḥtammir** b. *Ṣalāḥ-ud-Din Yūsuf al-Aiyūbi*, 222 and n.

**Malik-ul-Muṣaffar**, *Saif-ud-Din Ḥudās, the Turkmān, sovereign of Mīṣr*, 1276 n, 1278 n.

**Malik-ul-Umarā** [Chief, or Noble of Nobles], a title, 235.

**Malik-un-Nāṣir**, title of *Ṣalāḥ-ud-Din Yūsuf al-Aiyūbi*, 217 n, 218 and n 6.

**Malik-un-Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-ud-Din-i-Dā'ūd** b. *Malik ul-Mu'azzam-i-'Isā al-Aiyūbi*, 227 n 9, 228 n 4, 230 n 5, 1267 n 6.

**Malik-un-Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-ud-Din Yūsuf** b. *Malik-ul-'Aziz b. Malik-un-Zāhir Ḡhiyāṣ-ud-Din, al-Aiyūbi, Sulṭān of Ḥaleb and Ḥam*, 1263 n, 1264 n, 1267 and n 6, 1275, 1276 n, 1278 n.

**Malik-un-Nawwāb**, *Iḥāk*,—one of the Maliks of Nāṣir-ud-Din Maḥmūd *Shāh* of Dihlī, 718.

**Malik ur Raḥīm-i-Abū Naṣr**, son of *'Imād-ud-Din, son of Sulṭān-ud-Daulah, Buwiah*, 135 n 2.

**Malik-us-Sa'id**, the *Shāhib*, or Lord of Mārdīn, 1279 n.

**Malik-us-Sā'is**, *Shams-ud-Din Muḥammad*, 180 and n 9. See also under *Shams-ud-Din Muḥammad the Malik-us-Sā'is* b. *Tāj-ud-Din Abū l-Faṭḥ*

- Malik-uz-Şalîh-i-İsmâ'il** 'Imâd-ud-Dîn b. Malik-ul-'Adil Saif-ud-Dîn Abû Bîkr-i-Muhammâd al-Aiyûbi, Lord of Ba'albak, 226, 229 n 5.
- Malik-uz-Şalîh İsmâ'il**, son of Sultân Nûr-ud-Dîn Mahmûd-i Zangî, 205 and n 6, 206 and n 7, 207. In the text he is called 'Alî
- Malik-uz-Şalîh Najm-ud-Dîn Aiyûb** b. Malik-ul-Kâmil b. Malik-ul-'Adil Saif-ud-Dîn al-Aiyûbi, 229 and n 5
- Malik-uz-Şalîh** b. Şalâh-ud-Dîn Yûsuf al-Aiyûbi, 222 and n
- Malik-ut-Tâhir**, Bandkadhîr, 127 n
- See under Bandkadhîr
- Malik-ut-Tâhir Ghîyâs-ud-Dîn Abû'l Mansûr i-Ghâzî** b. Şalâh-ud-Dîn Yûsuf al-Aiyûbi, 222 n, 225 n, 1267 n 6
- Malik-ut-Tujâr**, signification of the term, 790 and n 7
- Malik-uz-Zâfir al-Muhtammir**, Muza'ffer-ud-Dîn, Abû l-Kâ'im, son of Şalâh-ud-Dîn Yûsuf al-Aiyûbi, 223 n
- Malik-uz-Zâhid** Majir-ud-Dîn, Abû Sulimân-i-Dâ'ud b. Şalâh-ud-Dîn Yûsuf al-Aiyûbi, 222 n
- Malik-uz-Zâhir**, son of Şalâh-ud-Dîn Yûsuf al-Aiyûbi, 221, 222 n and n 8
- Malik Aghûl** b. Kûtân b. Çktâe Kâ'an, son of the Chingiz Khân, 1145 n
- Malik Aghûl** b. Malik b. Çktâe Kâ'an, son of the Chingiz Khân, 1182 n.
- Malik Arsalân** b. Mas'ûd i-Karim Ghaznawi, 107
- Malik Qhîr** b. Mas'ûd i-Karim Ghaznawi, 107
- Malik Qhîr** b. Sultân Ibrâhîm Ghaznawi, 106 and n 8.
- Malik Dâd** b. Sultân Ibrâhîm Ghaznawi, 106.
- Malik Khân** the Khajî, — a general of Sultân Jalâl-ud-Dîn Khwârazm Shâh, 539 and n 5, 540 n.
- Malik Khân** b. Takîsh-i-Khwârazm Shâh, 249 n 3, 250 and n 4, 5 and 6, 251 n 9 and 1, 254
- Malik Klân**, Yamin-ul-Mulk, ruler of Hîrât, ix, 287 and n and n 9 and 1, 289 n, 290 n, 291 n, 409 n 6, 412, 415, 417, 471 n 5, 540 n, 940 n, 1000 n 1, 1013, 1014 n 2, 1015 and n, 1016, 1017 n, 1018, 1019 n, 1020 n, 1021 n 8, 1022 n, 1023
- Malik Shâh**, of Wakhsh, — one of the Mahks of Sultân Mu'izz-ud-Dîn Muhammad i-Sâim, Ghuri, 436, 490
- Malik Shâh** b. Alb Arsalân i-Ghâzi, son of Dâ'ud-i-Jaghur Beg, the Seljuks 105 n and n 6, 106 n 5, 136 n, 147 and n 5 and 6, 138 n and n 5, 139 n 1 n, 140 and n 5, 141 and n, 142 and n 1, 143 and n 2, 144 n 140 and n 6, 148 n 6, 158, 159 n, 168 n 2, 169 n 7, 173 n 1, 180 and n, 232 n, 906 n, 914 n.
- He was styled Jalâl-ud-Dîn
- Malik Shâh** b. Barkurak b. Sultân Mu'izz Shâh, Seljuks 141 n, 145 n 4.
- Malik Shân** b. Khusrâu Malik, son of Khusrâu Shâh Ghaznawi, 115, 152 n 2, 456 n 1
- Malik Shâh** b. Mahmud b. Muham-mad son of Sultân Malik Shâh Seljuks, 151 n 6 174 n
- Malik Shâh** b. Nâsir-ud-Dîn 'U-mân, son of Tâ'ud-Dîn i-Harab, 194

Malik Shāh b. Sulṭān Ibrāhīm Ghaznawī, 106.

Malik Shāh b. Tughril-i-Arsalān Shāh Saljūki, 173 n 2

Malik Sher, the Ghūrī Hākim of Kābul, 1015 n.

Malik Sher b. Sulṭān Ibrāhīm Ghaznawī, 106.

Malik-Zād b. Mas'ūd-i-Karīm Ghaznawī, 107.

Malik-Zād b. Sulṭān Ibrāhīm Ghaznawī, 106.

Malikah of Kidān, the, wife of Sulṭān Bahā-ud-Dīn Sām Ghūrī, 342

Malikah-i-Hāji, the, daughter of Kuṭb-ud-Dīn, the Malik-ul-Jibal, Malik of Ghūr, 347

Malikah-i-Jahān, the, mother of Sulṭān Muḥammad Khwarazm Shāh, 1212

Malikah-i-Jahān, the, mother of Taj-ud-Dīn Zangi, of Bāmiān, 342 and n 9

Malikah-i-Jahān, Jalāl-ud-Dunyā wa'd Dīn, the,—mother of Naṣir-ud-Dīn Mahmūd Shāh, of Dhlī, 676, 677, 701, 710, 785.

Malikah-i-Jalāl, the, daughter of Ghuyas-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sām Ghūrī, 182 and n 2, 412, 419 and n 6, 497.

Malikah-i-Khurasān, the, mother of Alb-Arsalān-i-Ghāzi, son of Malik Kāsi-Arsalān, 343

Malikah-i-Ma'asamāh, Jalāl-ud-Dunyā wa'd Dīn, the, 389. See under Malikah-i-Jalālī.

Malikah-i-Ma'izziah, the, daughter of Malik Taj-ud-Dīn of Timūrān, 406.

Malikah Turkān, the, mother of Sulṭān Shāh Mahmūd, son of Iyal

Arsalān Khwarazm Shāh, 339 n 2.

Malir Japa, the,—name of a tribe in the Koh-i-Jād, 1132 n.

Malikā, the Hindū,—leader of the rebels of the Koh-pāyah of Ma-wā, 860.

Malkirab b. Tubba', of the Tabā-bī'ah of Yaman, 7.

Malleson, Col. G B. 1022 n, 1037 n 8, 1046 n, 1046 n, 1068 n 6, 1202 n, 1203 n

Mamišk, in what sense understood, 168 n 2.

Ma'mūn, al.—the 'Abbāsī Khali-fah, 9, 10, 11 and n 9, 12 and n 6 and 3, 13, 14, 27.

Ma'mūn b. Muḥammad al Farighūnī,—Lord of Jūrjāniāh of Khwā-rasm, 84 n 8, 232 n, 233 and n 7.

Man, a weight, 1064 n 2.

Manāt,—one of three chief idols of the pagans of Makkah, 82 and n 5, 1068 n 6.

Mandahara, the,—name of a people, 795 n.

Mandara, the,—of the Khak'hi division of the Afghan nation, 1044 n.

Manderiville, Sir John, 1173 n 1.

Maug or Maneug b. Yāsa [Japheth], 870 n, 871 n.

Mangal Diw, son of Māl Diw, Rājah of Gwāliyār, 619 and n 7, 620

Mangali Khān [styled also Mangali Khwājah], son of Timūr-Tāsh, the Mughal chieftain, 888 n

Mangali Khān b. Yal-dūz,—VII sovereign of the Mughal Imāh, 881 n.

Mangasāc, the Mughal Darogah of Hirāt, 1129 n

- Mangatai** or **Mangā**, the **Mughal** **Shahnah** of **Hirāt**, 1087 n, 1089 n 7, 1049 n 2, 1054 n, 1199 n, 1200 n, 1206 n 2.
- Mang-baras-i-Zard** or **Mangūras-i-Zūd** suwār, **Amir**,—one of the **Turkish** slaves of **Ghiyās-ud-Dīn** **Mahmūd Ghūrī**, 395 and n 9, 396 and n.
- Mangirāk**,—one of the **Amīrs** of **Sultān** **Mahmūd** of **Ghazni**, son of **Sabuk-Tigīn**, 91 n 8.
- Mangit** tribe, the, 665 n.
- Mangkūt** **Narūn** **Mughals**, the, 945 n, 1094 n, 1116 n.
- Manglik** the **Nūyān**,—who married the **Chingiz Khān's** mother, 1080 n 5. See **Minglik Ichakab**.
- Mangū** or **Mangus**, b **Karājah** the **Atābak**, governor of **Fārs** on the part of the **Saljūq** sovereigns, 174 n.
- Mangū Khān**, son of **Tuli**, son of the **Chingiz Khān**, xlvii, 164, 667 n 4, 696 n, 699 n 2, 700 n 8, 784 n 5, 786 and n 6, 792, 809 n 1, 1078 n 8, 1088 n, 1089 n, 1093 n, 1094 n, 1119 n, 1135 n 5, 1140 n, 1141 n, 1152 n, 1153 n, 1157 n 1, 1162 n, 1163 n, 1169 n, 1170 n, 1171 n, 1172, 1176 and n 9, 1177, 1178 n, 1179 n, 1180 and n, 1181 n and n 2, 1182 and n 4, 1183 and n, 1184 n, 1185 n, 1186 and n, 1189, 1190 n 1, 1191 n, 1192, 1193 n, 1194 n, 1195, 1196, 1200 n, 1202 n, 1206, 1211 n 5 and n, 1215 and n 1 and 4, 1217 n, 1218 n, 1219 n, 1220 n, 1221 n, 1222 n, 1223 and n, 1224 n, 1225 and n, 1226 and n, 1250 and n 6, 1257 and n, 1263 n, 1264 n, 1265 n and n 2, 1266, 1267 n 6, 1276 n, 1278 n, 1286 n, 1287 n, 1290 n 1, 1291, 1292 and n, 1293 n.
- Manguli** **Bag**,—slave of **Mu-ayyid-i-A'īnah-dār**, 182 n 1, 246 n 8, 247 n.
- Mangūtah** the **Nūyān**,—one of the generals of the **Chingiz Khān**, 656 n, 667 and n 4, 727, 807 and n 1, 810 n, 812, 813, 1088, 1109, 1126 n 6, 1152, 1153 and n, 1154, 1201 n.
- Māni** [**Manichæan**] religion, the, 927 n.
- Manichæan** Christians, the, 567 n 4.
- Mānsk**, the surname of the rulers of **Blātah** or **Bhatī**, 593 n.
- Manjauk**, or **Aire**, definition of, 1133 n 9.
- Manjha**, the,—name of a people, 899 n.
- Mankadhū** or **Mankadhah**, the **Jus**—bi the **Nūm**, 1047 and n 6.
- Mankalmish**,—one of the emissaries of **Hulaku** to **Ruka** and **Dīn Khur** **Rah**, 1200 n 3.
- Mankati**, the **Nūyān**, 1180 n.
- Manang** or **Manah**, b **Yasq** [**Ja-pheth**], 870 n.
- Manar** b 'Alī al **Malik** b. **Nūb** **Sāmānī**, 29, 41 and n 5 and 8, 42 n 1, 43 and n 4, 71 and n 4, 185 n, 186 n.
- Manar** b **Abmad** b **Asad** **Sāmānī**, 29, 54.
- Manar** b 'Alī,—governor of **Hirāt** for the **Rāmānī**, 37 n.
- Manar** i **Fatal** **Gutun**, of the family of **Buwah**,—brother of the **Dīlāmī** sovereigns in **Fārs**, 174 n.
- Manar** b **Ishak** b **Ismā'il**, **Sāmānī**, 30.

- Manşūr b. Ismā'īl b. Aḥmad b. Aḥad Sīmānī, 33, 54.  
 Manşūr b. Naṣr b. Aḥmad b. Ismā'īl, Sīmānī, 54.  
 Manşūr b. Nūḥ b. Manşūr Sīmānī, *iviii*, 44, 48, 49 and n 8, 50 and n 1, 52 n 8 and 1, 54, 72 n 6.  
 Manşūr b. Nūḥ b. Naṣr b. Aḥmad, Sīmānī, 29, 38, 41 n 8, 42, 43 and n 4, 44 and n 4, 54, 71 and n 4, 73 n 8, 185 n. He was called Abū Ṣāliḥ-I-Manşūr.  
 Manşūr b. Sulṭān Maḥmūd, *Ghasnawī*, 97.  
 Manşūr Shāh b. Bahrūn Shāh *Ghasnawī*, 111.  
 Manūchīr b. Iraj, Xth of the Hīstākīyah dynasty of 'Ajām, 3, 6, 9, 1088 and n 8.  
 Manūchīr b. Shams-ul-Ma'ālī Kābū, son of Waḥmīr, 81 n.  
 Manulūn Khātūn. See under Matulūn Khātūn.  
 Maraghani family, the, 1089 and n 7, 1199 n.  
 Mārāj (Tārāj) b. Yāsā [Japheth], 870 n.  
 Marco Polo, 953 n, 960 n 6, 1089 n, 1140 n, 1145 n, 1219 n.  
 Mardān Shāh b. Sulṭān Ma'ād, of *Ghasnīn*, 95.  
 Mardīwān, —general of the Sāmānī forces, 55 n 1, 901 n, 908 n.  
 Margatā, the Mughal Shāhnaḥ of Hīrāt, 1206 n 3.  
 Marghasī, the, —name of a tribe, 1029 n.  
 Marnā, Marnā or Marnā, son of Zabāḥ the Malik, 306.  
 Marongī or Marḡāna, the Roman Physician, 1266 n 9, 1269 n, 1270 n.  
 Marḡad b. 'Abd-ul Kullī, of the Tabābī'ah of Yaman, 7.  
 Maraden, W., 718.  
 Marashman, 41 n, 445 n, 462 n, 465 n, 467 n, 479 n, 524 n, 527 n, 553 n 5, 569 n 8, 690 n 8.  
 Marathā, a Bishop, 1270 n. See under Marongī.  
 Marashān, Shams-ud-Daulah b. 'Uḡd-ud-Daulah Fanā Khawān, Dilāmī, 57, 64 and n 1, 65.  
 Marzabān b. Hariz, the 'Ajāmī, of the Tabābī'ah, of Yaman, 8.  
 Masālik wa Mamālik, the, —name of a geographical work, xvi, 20 n 3, 28 n 8, 70 n 6, 94 n 3, 188 n 7, 186 n 2, 300 n 6, 301 n 3, 232 n 5, 236 n 8, 296 n, 305 n 7, 423 n 8, 426 n 6, 674 n 3, 922 n, 994 n, 1008 n 5, 1009 n, 1018 n, 1021 n 2, 1025 n, 1031 n, 1036 n 1, 1061 and n, 1123 n, 1188 n, 1305 n 8, 1240 n, 1278 n.  
 Mascon's History of the Germans, 870 n.  
 Māshkrūān, —probably the Bāshkrūān, —name of a people, 872 n.  
 Masrūk b. Abrahah-al-Aḡham, of the Tabābī'ah of Yaman, 8.  
 Masson, 339 n 7, 427 n, 1058 n 6.  
 Ma'ūd b. Kulij Arān, Sulṭān of Rum, of the Sa'jūk dynasty, 160 n.  
 Ma'ūd b. Maḥmūd of *Ghasnīn*, Sulṭān, vii, xx, xxi, 76 n 8, 85 n, 87 n, 88 and n 4 and 7, 89 and n 8, 90 and n 1 and 4, 91 and n 6 and 1, 92 and n 3 and 4, 93 and n 8 and 9, 94 and n 3, 95 and n 6, 7 and 8, 96 and n 1, 99 n and n 1, 100 n 4, 101, 116 n 3, 119 n 8, 120, 121 n, 122 and n 8 and 3, 123 n, 124 n and n 4, 125 and n

- 5, 6 and 8, 126 and *nn* 2 and 3, 127, 128 *n*, 129 *n* and *nn* 2 and 3, 130 and *nn* 6, 131 and *n* 7, 132 *n* 9, 232 *n*, 319 *n* 5, 324 *n*, 325 *n*, 326 *n*, 327 *n*, 328 *n*, 329, 332 *n* 4, 354, 904 *n*, 905 *n*, 1009 *n*, 1043 *n* 1. He was styled *Nāṣir-ud-Dīn U'llah*.
- Mas'ūd b. Maḥmūd b. Saltān Malik Shāh Saljūki, 157 *n* 4, 158 *n*, 159, 160.
- Mas'ūd b. Maḥmūd b. Muḥammad b. Saltān Malik Shāh, Saljūki, 161 *n* 6, 160 *n* 8, 174 *n*.
- Mas'ūd b. Malik-ul-Kāmil b. Malik-ul-'Adil Abū Bakr, 218 *n* 4.
- Mas'ūd b. Maundūl, son of Sultān Mas'ūd, *Ghaznawī*, 97 and *n* 4.
- Mas'ūd b. Muhammad, son of Saltān Malik Shāh Saljūki, 146 *n* 6, 147 *n* 8, 160, 151 *n* 6, 152, 174 *n*, 207 *n* 8.
- Mas'ūd Bak b. Maḥmūd Yalwā, — the Jamlat ul-Mulk, [Minister of State] of *Chaghatai Kān*, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1141 *n*, 1147 and *n* 3, 1152 *n*, 1186 *n*, 1194 *n*.
- Mas'ūd i-Karīm 'Alā-ud-Dīn, b. Saltān Ibrāhīm *Ghaznawī*, 103 and *n*, 106 and *nn* 2 and 5, 107 and *n* 7, 108 *n* and *n* 5, 109, 148, 313 *n* 4, 323 *n*, 332 *n* 5, 337 *nn* 6 and 7, 348 *n*.
- Mas'ūd Shāh b. Bahrām Shāh, *Ghaznawī*, 111.
- Mas'ūd Shāh b. Khusrāw Malik *Ghaznawī*, 115 [1002 *n*].
- Mathi Daulah, a Tiubat title.
- Matūlur, the Khātun of Zātumin, the Ilird of the Bu-zanjar dynasty of the Mughal I-māk, 806 *n*.
- Maundul, Shihab-ud-Daulah Abū Sa'd b. Sultān Mas'ūd of *Ghaznawī*.
- Saltān, 90 and *nn* 4 and 5, 95 and *nn* 8 and 9, 96 *n* 2, 97 and *n* and *nn* 3 and 4, 98 *n* 8, 100, 125 and *n* 5, 131 *n* 7.
- Maulānā i Qharkhī, — a Muḥammadan saint, 73 *n* 8.
- Maurice, 445 *n*, 463 *n*, 467 *n*.
- Mayālūn Khātūn, daughter of Mangū Khān, son of Tāli, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1223 *n*.
- Megh, Me) or Megh tribe, the, 560 and *n* 4, 563 *n*, 571.
- Memoirs of Bābar, emperor of Hindūstān, the, 1131 *n*, 1132 *n*.
- Memoirs of Humāyūn Bīdahāb, the, xv [19.
- Meng tribe of Mughals, the, 1164.
- Meng Koung, — a Chinese general and historian, 445 *n*.
- Mers or Mairs, the, — name of a Hindu people, 520 *n*.
- Messias the, 1162 *n*.
- Mewrās, the, or
- Mewa, the, — a race of people, 706 *n* 7, 715 and *n* 1, 755 *n* 9.
- Miān a term abridged from Miānji, which see, 454 *n*.
- Miān, title of the Jamuq-wāi (the Jamun dynasty), 463 *n*, 454 *n*.
- Mi 50, the Mughal, — the killer of Baber, 1250 *n*.
- Miānjuk, the Atā bak and commander of troops of Yanas Khān, son of Takūsh. Khawarizm Shāh, 242 *n* 6, 249 *n* 3.
- Michell, Mr. Robert, 916 *n*.
- Mīhrab Shāh, of the race of Zuhāk, the Tāi, — the tributary ruler of Kūbal, 309 *n*.
- Mīhr-gūn, title of Afrīdūn, the Fifth of the Hāstaniyah dynasty of 'Ajami 3.



Mihghid, Mighhid or Mamghid, son of Narimān b. Afrīdūn, Bādghāh of 'Ajām, 206.

Mihtr Jattā, the Farrāgh, slave of Khwājah Muḥaggaḥ-ad-Dīn, the Wasir, 787.

Mik'īl b. Saljūḥ b. Luḡmān, the Turkman, 117 n.

Mīlā, 1056 n 7.

Military Antiquities, Grose's, 1184 n.

Mill, 462 n.

Minār of Kutb Shāh, the, 520 n, 622 n.

Minglik Ighatak, the Kṣanakumār or Kṣanakumār, 949 n. See Manglik the Nayan.

Minhāj-i-Sarāj, Maulānā, vii, xix and n 1, xix, xivi, 104, 106, 108 n 3, 150, 160, 188, 194, 197, 201, 219 n 2, 233, 255, 344, 361 n 8, 398, 469 n 9, 496, 509 n, 541, 611, 615, 620, 643 and n 4, 649, 659, 662, 663, 667, 677 n 6, 679, 690, 698, 701, 716 n 5, 732, 740, 745, 754, 773 n, 783 n 7, 787, 789, 808, 821, 827, 831, 834, 835, 845, 883 n, 896 n, 963, 967, 967 n 3, 1006, 1007, 1039, 1060, 1061, 1079, 1140, 1156, 1174, 1197, 1203, 1204, 1285, 1294, 1295 and n 2, 1296 n,—app 1, ii, iii, v, viii, xv, xvii, xviii, xix, xxii, xxiii, xxv, xxvi.

Minhaj ud-Din 'Uḡmān-i-Ibrāhīm, Maulānā xix, xivi, 105, 190, 191, 192 n 2,—app xix.

Minia, the,—name of a Hindū tribe, 795 n.

Mir 'Abd-ul-Karīm Bukhārī, the historian, 1091 n.

Mir Haidar, the Gabari,—governor of the fort of Gībarī, 1044 n.

Mir Khāwind, the historian, 904 n 2,

984 n, 1010 n, 1017 n, 1019 n, 1024 n 2.

Mir Khusrat 'Alī Khān, Munshi, 633 n 8.

Mir-i-Mīh, the,—app. x.

Mir Ma'ṣūm the Bakhari,—author of the Tārīkh-i-Sind, xvi, 548 n, 613 n 2, 614 n 6, 615 n 1, 616 n, 623 n 1.

Mir Nūḥ b. Sulṭān Malik b. Mas'ūd-i-Karīm Ḥasanawī, 107.

Mir Sharif-i-Āmulī,—app. xxi.

Mirān Shāh b. Sulṭān Ibrāhīm Ḥasanawī, 106.

Mir'āt-ul-Afāghānāh, the,—a history, 622 n.

Mir'āt-ul-'Ālam, the,—name of a book, xvi, 22 n 6.

Mir'āt-i-Jahān Namā, the,—name of a historical work xvi, 79 n, 84 n 2, 146 n 5, 323 n, 363 n 8, 368 n, 403 n, 407 n 5, 449 n 8, 451 n, 453 n 3, 526 n 2, 534 n 5, 545 n 5, 559 n 2, 603 n 3, 611 n 3, 619 n 7, 824 n 8,—app xx.

Mirconde, the Europeanized name of Mir Khāwind, which see.

Mirghati the Crā-ūt See Ghati the Nū-in, 1143 n.

Mirzā, application of the title, 1235 n 1.

Mirzā Abū-Bikr,—makes Yārḡand his capital, 923 n.

Mirzā Haidar, the Dughlāstī Mughal,—author of the Tārīkh-i-Raḡhidī, xvi, xix, 876 n, 883 n 889 n, 890 n. See also Mirzā Muḥammad Ḥasan Khān.

Mirzā Khān,—one of the Šāfi poets of Afghānistān, 1078 n 8.

Mirzā Malawī, the Kārīk, 1130 n, 1132 n.

- Mirā Mughal Beg**, the surveyor, 79 n, 450 n 7.
- Mirā Muḥammad Ḥasan Khān**, the Dughlāt Mughal, author of the *Tārīkh-i-Rashidi*, 922 n, 913 n, 1258 n 8. See also *Mirzā Ḥanlar Mirzā Shāh Rukh*. Sultān 1147 n 1.
- Modern Universal History**, the, 1171 n.
- Mokul**, the Panhar Prince, —ruler of Mandawar, 611 n 3.
- Mongolians**, the,—one of the four races of Skythians, 88 n, 887 n, 890 n.
- Mongols**, the,—name of the *Mughals* as spelt by Europeans.
- "**Mongols Proper**," Howorth's, 898 n, 911 n 8, 918 n, 924 n, 930 n, 942 n, 943 n, 944 n, 947 n, 948 n, 950 n, 955 n, 969 n 1, 970 n 2, 971 n, 976 n, 983 n, 984 n, 993 n, 994 n, 998 n, 1000 n, 1001 n, 1021 n, 1024 n 2, 1028 n, 1035 n, 1047 n, 1046 n, 1074 n, 1075 n, 1083 n, 1084 n, 1086 n, 1088 n, 1091 n, 1092 n, 1095 n, 1097 n 7, 1102 n, 1121 n, 1143 n, 1150 n, 1170 n 9, 1185 n, 1188 n 4, 1189 n 1, 1193 n, 1200 n, 1226 n, 1236 n, 1244 n, 1247 n, 1250 n, 1253 n 4, 1255 n, 1256 n 6, 1257 n 6.
- Montenegrians**, the, 1032 n.
- Moorecroft** 1058 n 6, 1115 n 5.
- Moore's** " *Lalla Rookh*," 374 n 3.
- Morley**, Mr., 77 n, 124 n, 325 n, 326 n.
- Moses**, of scripture, 314.
- Mu'addil b. 'Alī al-Lai**, of the dynasty of the *Saffāri* 31, 185 n.
- Mu'addil b. Lais**, the *Brāzār*, of the dynasty of the *Saffāri*, 19, 185 n.
- Muḥṣī ul 'Adal** or **Muḥṣī-ul-Daulah**, —a learned doctor, 1200 n 3, 1200 n.
- Mu'allaqāt**, the,—or the suspended poems, 86 n 6.
- Muḥṣaf of Khwājah Ahmad b. Ḥasan al Maimandi**, the *Wazīr*, the, 92 n 3.
- Mu'īnyah**, the *Khālīfah*, of the House of *Umayyah*, 901 n.
- Mu'ayyid al-Amārah**. See **Mu'ayyid al-Dīn al-Sanjari**.
- Mu'ayyid al-Daulah Dawlah**, son of *Rukn ud Daulah*, 57, 59.
- Mu'ayyid al-Dīn**, *Wazīr* of *Rukn ud-Dīn Khur Shāh*, the *Bādshāh* of the *Mulāḥḍah*, 1200 n.
- Mu'ayyid al-Dīn 'Arqū**, the astronomer and mathematician, 1257 n.
- Mu'ayyid al-Dīn Ḥudā Khān**, *Malik*, —holder of the *ḥif* of *Chahchah*, 641 n 4, 645 n.
- Mu'ayyid al-Dīn Mas'ud**, —one of the *Maliks* of **Mu'izz al-Dīn Muhammad i-Sām**, (*Shir*), 461.
- Mu'ayyid al-Dīn Mas'ud Timrān**, —one of the *Maliks* of the brother Sultān of (*Shir*), 390, 462.
- Mu'ayyid al-Dīn Muhammad b. 'Abd al-Malik the 'Alḥam**, 1225 n 4. See under *Im al-Aḥam*.
- Wazīr of al-Musta'ḥsin Billah**.
- Mu'ayyid al-Dīn al-Sanjari**, *Malik* of *Nishāpur*, 130 and n 7, 141 and n, 232 n, 241 n, 245 n 7, 251, 375 n 377 n 5, 419 n 6, 908 n, 924 n.
- He was known by the name of **Mu'ayyid al-Amārah**.
- Mu'ayyid al-Mulk Muhammad i-'Abd-Allah Samān**, the *Wazīr*, of **Mu'izz al-Dīn Muhammad i-Sām**,

- Chūri**, 415 and n 5, 435 n 2, 439, 439 n 7, 439 and n, 441, 502 n 6, 505, 526 n 8, 524, 608 n 8.
- Ma'ayyid Shāh b. Sultān Ibrāhīm Qhannawī**, 106. [the, 180 and n 7]
- Ma'ayyidiyah dynasty of Nighāpūr**, **Mu'azzi**, Amīr,—Poet-Laureate, of Sultān Sanjar, 158 and n 7.
- Mubārak**, the Kurd,—Pahlawān of Sultān Muhammad **Khawārazm Shāh**, 1003.
- Mubārak Shāh b. al-Musta'īm**, the last of the 'Abbāsī **Khalīfahs**, 1254 n
- Mubārīz ud Din 'Alī**, Sarāshkī,—an officer of 'Alā'ud-Din Muhammad, the Maqānā of the **Mulūdabā**, 1192 n
- Mubārīz ud Din Muhammad 'Alī i-Utaq**,—one of the **Malikā** of **Mū'izz ud Din Muhammad-i-Sam Chūri**, 490.
- Mubārīz ud Din Sahawāri**,—governor of **Fīrīz koh** under the **Khawārazm Shāhīs**, 285 1004 and n 5, 1045 1049 n 2, 1050 and n, 1066, 1067.
- Mubāhīr** or **Mushbī b. Karamrā**, son of **Adīm**, 304
- Mu'ddīf Ma'add** or **Ma'dīf Ma'add b. Shādān** ancestor of **Amir Banū**, 813
- Mughal dynasty of Dīhlī**, the,—founded by **Bābar**, 1145 n.—is incorrectly styled the **Chaghātāi** dynasty
- Mughal I mīk**, the, 866 n, 867 n 874 n, 875 n, 876 n 877 n, 879 n, 881 n, 882 n, 883 n, 884 n 885 n, 886 n 887 n, 888 n, 891 n, 895 n 899 n, 900 n, 901 n, 906 n 917 n 918 n 944 n, 951 n 959 1004 n 1091 n, 1100 n 2, 1177 n 1, 1222 n 6, 1264 n 5.
- Mughal** or **Mughūl Khān b. Alifojah Khān**,—first sovereign of the **Mughal I-mīk**, 873 n, 875 n, 877 n, 881 n, 887 n, 906 n, 951 n
- Mughal Turks**, the, 1100 and n 9.
- Mughals**, the, xiv, xxiv, xxv, xxvii, xlix, liii, 154 n 2, 155 n 3, 162 and n 2 and 3, 163 and n 5, 164 and n 7, 178, 180 and n 6, 196, 197, 198, 201 and n 4, 202, 239 n 9, 243 n 7, 264 n, 267 n 9, 268 n 4, 269 n, 270, 272 n 1, 275 n, 276 n, 277 and n 5, 278 n 279 280 n 1, 282 n and n 7, 283, 286 nn 6 and 7, 287 n, 288 and n 3, 290 n, 290 n, 291 n, 292 n, 294 n, 297 n and n 9, 298 n and n 1, 317, 345 n 5, 370, 391 n 8, 392, 412 and n, 416 n 9 and 3, 417, 426 n 6, 437 n, 473 n 2, 477, 511 n, 533 n, 55 n, 584 n, 589 and n and n 2, 590 n, 593 n, 597 n 4, 599, (M), 610 n 6, 642 n 9, 644 n and n 7, 653 and n 2, 656 n, 657 and n 7, 663 n 9, 665 n 8, 666 n, 667 669 n, 670 n 9, 677 and n 6, 681 n n and 9, 689 and n 4, 690 n, 690 n 8, 691 n 692 n 3, 696 n, 700 n 8, 711 and n 4, 712 n and n 6, 713 n 2, 714 n 9, 715 n 4, 716 n 5, 717 n, 724 n 3, 728 n 3, 727, 732 n 4, 740 n 8 747, 754 n 9, 768 n 4, 780, 784 n 4, 786, 792, 793 n 5, 794 n 1, 795 n, 796, 810 and n, 811 and n 8, 812 nn 2 and 3, 814, 815 and nn 5 and 8, 816 and n 2, 822 n 9, 830 n 5, 840 n 2, 844, 845 n, 846 and nn 5 and 6, 847 and n 8, 850 and n 2 and 8, 851 n and n 5 862 and n 8 863 n 3, 867 n, 869 and n 2, 870 n 871, 873 n, 874 n,

876 n, 877 n, 878 n, 880 n, 881 n,  
882 n, 883 n, 884 n, 885 and n,  
886 n, 887 n, 888 n, 889 n, 890 n,  
891 n, 892 n, 893 n, 894 n, 895  
and n, 896 n, 897 n, 898 n, 899 n,  
900 n and n 1, 910 n, 912 n, 913 n,  
917 n, 918 n, 920 n, 934 n, 935, 936  
and n 6, 937, 938 n, 939 n, 943 n,  
943 n, 945 n, 946 n, 947 n, 948 n,  
949 n, 950 n, 952 n, 953, 954, 955 n,  
956 n, 957 n, 958 n, 959 n, 960 n,  
961 n, 963, 964 n 2, 965, 968,  
969 and n 1, 970 n and n 2, 971 n,  
972 n, 973 n, 974 n, 975 n 5, 976  
and n, 977 n, 978 and n, 979 and n,  
980 and n 7, 981 n, 982 n, 983 n,  
985 n, 986 n, 987 and n and n 3,  
988 n, 989 n, 990 n, 991 n, 992  
and n 8, 993 n, 995 n, 996 n, 997 n,  
998 n, 999 n, 1000 n, 1001 n, 1004  
and n 5, 1005 and n, 1006 and n 7,  
1007 and n 4, 1008 and n 5, 1010 n,  
1011 and n, 1012, 1014 n 2, 1015 n,  
1016, 1017 n, 1018 n, 1019 n,  
1020 n, 1021 and n 9, 1022 n, 1024  
and n 2, 1025, 1026, 1027 n 8, 1029 n,  
1029 n, 1030 n, 1031 n, 1032 n,  
1033 n, 1034 n, 1035 n, 1036 n 1,  
1037 n, 1038 n, 1039, 1040, 1042,  
1043 n 1, 1045 n, 1047, 1048, 1049  
n, 1051 and n, 1053 and n 9,  
1054, 1056, 1057 and n 4, 1059  
1061 and n 9 and 1, 1062 n 5,  
1063, 1064, 1065, 1066, 1067, 1068,  
1069 and n 3 and 4, 1070, 1071  
and n 2, 1072, 1074 n, 1075 n,  
1076 n, 1077, 1078 n 8, 1079, 1080  
n 6, 1081 and n 7, 1082 n, 1083 n,  
1084 n, 1085 and n 3, 1086 n, 1088 n,  
1089 n, 1090 n, 1091 n, 1092 n,  
1095 and n, 1097 n 6, 1098 and n,  
1099 n, 1100 and n, 1101, 1102 n,

1104 n 5, 1105 n, 1106 n, 1107  
1108 n 2, 1112, 1114 and n 2, 1115  
n 5, 1116, 1117, 1118 and n 9, 1119,  
1120 and n 2, 1121, 1122 n, 1123,  
1125, 1126, 1127 and n, 1129 n 1,  
1130 n, 1131 n, 1132 and n 3, 1132,  
1134, 1135 and n 3 and 5, 1136  
and n 9, 1137 n, 1138 n, 1139 n,  
1140 n, 1142 and n, 1143 and n,  
1144, 1145 and n, 1149 n 7, 1150,  
1151 n, 1152 and n, 1153 and n,  
1154 and n 1 and 2, 1155 and n 6,  
1156, 1157, 1158, 1159, 1162 n,  
1166 n, 1167 n, 1168 n, 1169 n,  
1170 n, 1171 n, 1172, 1173 and n 2,  
1175, 1176, 1177 and n 1, 1178 n,  
1181 n 2, 1183 n, 1183 n, 1184 n,  
1186 and n, 1187, 1189, 1192 n,  
1193 n, 1197, 1198 n 5 and 6,  
1199 n, 1200 n, 1201 n, 1202 n,  
1203, 1207 n, 1208 n, 1209 n,  
1210 n, 1211 and n, 1212 n, 1215 n,  
1217 n, 1218 n, 1219 n, 1220 n,  
1222 n, 1223 and n, 1224 n, 1225 n,  
1227, 1228 and n, 1230 n, 1232, 1233  
and n 2, 1234 n 8, 1235 n 1, 1237,  
1239 and n 4, 1239, 1240 n and  
n 9, 1242 n 2, 1243 n, 1244 n, 1245  
and n 4, 1246 n 5, 1247 n 7, 1249  
and n 8, 1250 n, 1252, 1253 n 4,  
1254 n, 1255 n, 1259 n 1, 2 and 3,  
1261 and n and n 7, 1262 n, 1264 n,  
1266 n 2, 1270 and n 2, 1273 and  
n 5, 1274 n 7, 1275 n 2, 1276 n,  
1277 n, 1278 n, 1279 and n, 1280  
n 5, 1281 n, 1282 and n 6, 1284  
and n 5, 1287 n, 1290 n 9, 1292 n 7,  
Mughā, the, or Fire-worshippers,  
975 n 5.

Mughī ad-Dīn Mahmūd b. Malik  
Shah Saljūqī. See under Mah-  
mūd b. Malik Shah.

- Mughī-ud-Dīn Malik Shāh.** See **Malik Shāh b. Maḥmūd b. Muḥammad Saljūki.**
- Mughī-ud-Dīn, Sulṭān,** 771 n.,—title of **Iḥtīyār-ud-Dīn Yūsuf-i Tughril Khān** on his attaining to sovereignty.
- Mughī-ud-Dīn 'Umar b. Malik-ul-'Adil b. Malik-ul-Kāmil al-Ayyūbi,** 220 n.
- Mughūl Khān,** 573 n. See under **Mughal Khān b. Alinjāh.**
- Muḥallab,**—one of the early 'Arab governors of **Māwarā-un-Nahr,** 916 n.
- Muḥammad, the Prophet.** 1 5, 6 11 n 3, 12 n 9, 104 n 3, 147, 180 218, 243, 313 n 4, 348 n, 384, 506 n 1, 694 n 4, 710, 717, 820, 855, 935, 975, 1041, 1161 and n 1 and 4, 1253 n 4, 1270 n, 1280, 1298, 1290
- Muḥammad b. 'Abbās, son of Shīr,** son of **Muḥammad i-Suri,** the Amir of **Ghur,** 322 n, 332, 333,—app xv, xvi
- Muḥammad i-'Abd ullaḥ, Amir,**—an officer of the **(Ghurī)** dynasty, 410
- Muḥammad b. 'Abd ullaḥ b. Tāḥir ibn al-Muḥsin,** 14 n 4
- Muḥammad b. Abi 'Alī, Amir,**—governor of the province of **Lāhor** and **Multān** for **Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i Sam,** 1, 476 n, 482 n
- Muḥammad b. Abu Sa'īd Junaidī, Khwājah,**—Wazīr of **Sulṭān Shams-ud-Dīn Iyāl Timūgh,** 425 n 9, 544, 613.
- Muḥammad-i-'Abu-l-Kāsim b. Ḥasan al-'Aukari,**—known as **al-Mahdi** the last of the twelve Imāms of the **Shī'ah,** 1160 n 9.
- Muḥammad b. 'Alī b. Laḡ, of the** **Sufiārīn** dynasty, 34 n 6, 185 n.
- Muḥammad-i-Armalīn Khān b. Salīmān,**—XVIII of the **Afrāsiyābi Khāns** of **Māwarā-un-Nahr,** 906 n, 907 n 9, 914 n, 923 n, 924 n, 925 n.
- Muḥammad-i-Bakhtiyār,**—the **Malik-ul-Ghāzi, Iḥtīyār-ud-Dīn** the **(Khān),** ruler of **Lakhanawāḡ,** 489 n 7, 508 n 6, 517 and n 3 and 4, 519 n, 524 n, 548 and n 1, 549 and n 4, 550 n 5 and 6, 551 n and n 7, 552 and n 4, 553 and n 5, 554 and n 6, 556 and n 6, 557, 558 and n 7, 559 n and n 2, 560 n and n 4, 561 and n 9, 562 and n, 563 and n, 564 and n, 565 n and n 4, 567 n 1, 568 and n 8, 569, 570 and n and n 9, 571 and n 1 and 2, 572, 573 and n 9 and 2, 574 and n 3 and 6, 575, 576 n 5 and 6, 581, 610 n 7, 627 n and n 5, 666 n, 764 n 6, 771 n, 1091 n 9, 1111 n, 1251 n 9—app. xii, xiv, xv, xvi, xvii, xviii, xxi, xxiii, xxiv, xxv, xxvi
- Muḥammad i-Baḥr,**—Hājib and general of 'Umr, son of **Laḡ Sufiārī,** lvi, 25
- Muḥammad-i-Baḥr,**—Hājib of **Sulṭān Muḥammad Khwārazm Shāh,** 411 n
- Muḥammad b. Buzurg-Umid,**—third **Bādshāh** of the **Mulūdudāh** of **Alamūt,** 363 n 8
- Muḥammad b. Al-Ḥakīm, Sarakhsai,** the **Imām,** 36 and n 5.
- Muḥammad b. Ḥarun,**—an officer of **Amir Ismā'il, son of Aḥmad Rāmāni,** 32 n 7.
- Muḥammad b. Ḥasan b. Isḥāq,**—

- governor of Hīrūt under the Sāmānīs, 37 n.
- Muhammad b. al-Ḥasan b. Mus'ab, Aḡ-Ṭāhirī,—governor of Khurāsān, 11, 12.
- Muhammad b. Idrīs, Ush Shāfi'i, See under Shāfi'i
- Muhammad b. Ja'far,—general of the Khalīfah of Baghād, 184 n.
- Muhammad Jāhū Pahlawān b. Iladd-giz, the Atabak of 'Irāk and Azarbaijān, 146 171 and n 9, 1 and, 172 n 3 See also under Jāhū Pahlawān Muhammad
- Muhammad Jinnādī, the Wazīr, See under Nuzam-ul Mulk Kamāl ud-Dīn.
- Muhammad b. Kāsim b. Muhammad as Ṣakafī, Amir,—the conqueror of Sind, 1231 n 9—app xvii, xviii
- Muhammad-i Kharrak, chief of the Amīrs and champions of Ghur, 255 n 7, 257 n 2 257 and n 1, 420 471 n 5, 472 n 173 n 1 180 n, 927 See also under Shīrīz ud-Dīn Muhammad, 'Alī-i-Kharrak
- Muhammad b. Kirām,—head of the Kirāmīsect called also the Mujassimīān, 384 n 5, 395
- Muhammad b. Maḥmūd, the Khālīj,—feudatory of Kashghar, 540—app xiii, xv, xvii.
- Muhammad b. Mahmūd of Ghaznī, Amir—of the Yaminīah dynasty xxi, 85 n, 85 and n 4, 89 and n 8, 91, 91 and n 8, 92 and n 3, 94 n 2, 95 and n 6 96 and n 1 and 2, 319 n 3 324 n, 325 n 905 n He was styled Jalāl ud Daulah w. ud Dīn
- Muhammad b. Malik Shāh, son of Alb Arsalān-i-Ghāzi, the Saljūki, Sultān, 108 n 5, 143 and n 2, 144 and n and n 3, 145 and n 4, 149 and n 6 and 7, 147 n 6, 151 n 6, 157 n 1, 169 n 7
- Muhammad b. Mas'ud b. Sultān Mahmūd, Ghaznawī, 95.
- Muhammad b. Maudūd b. Sultān Mas'ud, Ghaznawī, 97 and n 4.
- Muhammad b. Muhammad al-Jibālī, —Wazīr of Amir Naṣr Sāmānī, 37 n
- Muhammad b. Muzaffar—a general of Amir Abu Naṣr i-Aḥmad Sāmānī 195 n.
- Muhammad i-Nābi [Al-Bāḡī],—father of Ibn Ḥaṣan, the Historian 11, 320 and n 3
- Muhammad b. Naṣr b. Aḥmad b. Ismā'īl, Sāmānī, 38.
- Muhammad b. Nuh b. Manṣūr b. Nuh Sāmānī, 44.
- Muhammad al-Shāmī [the Syrian] Shāikh—one of the Saḍrs or chief men of Dīblī, 662, 654 and n
- Muhammad i-Sharan,—the Khālīj, Malik of Lakhawānī, 573 and n 1 and 2 574 and n 3, 5 and 7 575 n and n 9 and 1, 576 and n 3 and 5, 577 n, 610 n 7, 1005 n 4—app xx He was styled 'Isa ud Dīn.
- Muhammad b. Sārī, Malik of the Shansabānīah dynasty of Ghur, 316 n 2, 317 n, 320 and n 4, 321 and n 1, 322 and n, 324 and n, 325 n, 329, 333 n 5, 337 n 7, 432 n 4, 500 n 510, 540 n 1.—app xv, xix, xx.

Muhammed : The [or Nio], Wasir  
of the Qar Khān of the Kark  
Khiti-ig. 924 a. 980 a.

Muhammad b. Tahir b. 'Abd-Allah  
son of Tahir ibn-ul-Husain,—  
fifth of the Tahir dynasty of  
Khurasan, 10 = 5, 15 and = 1, 16,  
17, 18, 19, 22 and = 6 and 7, 32,  
34.

Muhammad-i-Takizh, Khwārm  
Shāh, Sultan, 148, 155 n, 173, 176,  
177 and n 6, 179, 182 and n 1, 197,  
198, 199 n 3, 200 n 7, 225, 240,  
242 n 6, 244 and n 4 249 n 3, 260  
n 6, 261 and n 1, 262 and n 3, 265  
and n 1, 265 n and n 5 and 7, 266  
and n, 267 and n 258 n, 269 and  
n 5, 290 n 7, 261 n and n 6, 262  
and n 1, 263 n, 264 and n, 265 and  
n 4, 266 and n, 267, 268 n 3 and  
4, 270, 271 and n, 272, 274, 275,  
276, 277, 278, 279 and n 6, 280  
and n 2, 281, 282, 455 n 5, 470 n 3,  
472 n, 473 and n 2, 474 n, 476 n,  
479 n, 480 n, 481 n 3, 486 n 3, 495,  
496, 501 n 5 502 n 6, 503 and n 6,  
501 n n 2 and 4, 505 and n, 506,  
518 n, 519 n, 523 n, 526 n 3, 527 n,  
525 n 6, 584 n, 596 n, 510 n, 514 n,  
525 n, 526 n, 531 n, 532 n, 533 n,  
534, 560 n 6, 563, 566, 567, 568  
n 6, 569 n 1, 570 n 2, 573 n, 577  
and n 579 and n, 580 n n 8 and 1,  
582 n, 584, 586 n, 587, (588) n,  
591 n 592, 593 n, 594 n, 596 n,  
1001 and n 1004, 1012, 1013,  
1014 n 2 1028 n, 1038 n, 1041,  
1012, 1052 1053, 1057, 1058  
1059, 1063 1066 1067, 1100, 1101,  
1102 n, 1109 n, 1212 — Before he  
came to the throne his title was  
Kutb-ad Din, but on his accession

tion he assumed that of 'Alī-ud-Dīn, the title borne by his father. Muḥammad-i-Zaid-ud-'Alawī, Ud-Dā'i-Ilā-i-Haqq,-- ruler of Tabaristān and Gurrān. 32 and a 9.

Muhammad Afzal Khan Khatak,—  
author of the 'Tārīkh-i-Murāsān',  
xvi.

Muhammad, the Aghri or robber,—  
the Qhngis Khān so called Sul-  
tān Muhammad Khwārasm Shāh,  
1041, 1042.

Muhammed 'Alī Abū' Kāsim  
'Imidī, Imām,—author of the  
Tārīkh-i-Majrūl, xxxii n 2, 69.

Muḥammad 'Alī Ghāzī, the Amir-i-Hājib of Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sām Ghūrī. 491

Muhammad Arsalān Tātār Khān,  
son of Arsalān Khān-i-Sanjār,—  
governor of Lakhawāṣṭī, 771 a.  
772 a. 776 a. 779 a.

Muhammed Bahām,—ruler of Hindūstān. 110.

Muhammad Bakā,—author of the  
Tārīkh-i-Mir'āt-i-Jahān Nauis,  
79 a.

Muhammad al Bāhī [Nābī],—father  
of Ibn Haṣṣam, the Historian, 11,  
320 and 22

Muhammad Chari,—governor of  
Bengal 511 n

Muhammad Hasan Khān,—other-  
wise Mirza Haidar, the Doghlātī  
Mughal, which see

Muhammad Husain Dughlāti,—  
father of Mirza Haidar the  
Mughal Historian, 483 n. [227.

Muhammad Husam Sh bani, Imam  
Muhammad Khan of Samarkand,  
117 and c. See under Maham-  
mads-Arden Khan

- Muhammad the Maraghani, the Gharjah chief, Amir, 1078 and n 2, 1077, 1082 n, 1200 n. He was the ancestor of the Kurat dynasty. See also under Rukn-ud-Din Muhammad-i-'Umayn.
- Muhammad Murad b. 'Abd-ur-Rahmāq,—translator of the Asār-ul-Bilād in Persian, 14 n 1.
- Muhammad Shāh b. Bahram Shāh Ghasnawi, 111.
- Muhammad Shāh b. Humāyūn,—of the Bahmani dynasty in the Dakhan, 592 n.
- Muhammad Sharif b. Mullā Muhammad Sharif b. Mullā Muhammad Tāhir, Hajī, 12.
- Muhammad Tīr, see Muhammad b. Malik Shāh, the Saljūki.
- Muhammad the Tūlaki, Kāfi,—appm, v. See under Zayn-ud-Din Muhammad-i-'Abd us-Sallām Nisāwī.
- Muhammad Yalwāj,—minister of the Chingiz Khān, 265 n 4. See Mahmūd Yalwāj.
- Muhammad Yūsuf,—author of a history entitled Muntakhab-ut-Tawārikh, 614 n 6.
- Muhammad Zeerak, Prince of Harw, 472 n, 474 n.
- Muhammad-ud-Din Muhammad-i-was Mostaufi, Khwajah,—Wazir of Sultan Rāziyyat of Dhilli, xxvi, xxvii, 641 and n 6, 650 and n 1, 651 and n 7, 652, 653 and n 5, 654 n, 656 n, 657, 658 and n 1, 659, 661, 662, 663 and n 1, 751, 752, 753, 756 n 3, 757, 790, 797.
- Muhammad-i-Jahāri, one of the retainers of 'Izz-ud-Din Ibak, ruler of Mīsr, 1276 n.
- Mahmūd of the Malāhidah, the,—signification of the term, 1262 n 2.
- Mu'in-ud-Din Qhāti, the Ughī,—the celebrated Muhammadan saint, 465 n 2.
- Mu'in-ud-Din Muhammad, Khwā-i-Jahān, the Jahāngiri, [of the Household of Jahāngir], ix, x.
- Mu'in-ud-Din Sabzwāri, Maulānā,—author of a history of Khurāsān, 19 n 1.
- Mu'in-ud-Din Tēhī, 465 and n 8. See under Mu'in-ud-Din Qhāti.
- Mu'izz-ud-Daulah, Abu'l Husain Ahmad, son of Buwiah, son of Fānā Khusrān, Dīlāmī, 55 n 1, 57, 58 and n 9, 59 n 5, 60 n 5, 61 n 4.
- Mu'izz-ud-Din Bahram Shāh b. Shams-ud-Din Iyāl-Tīmūsh, Sultan of Dhilli, xxvi, 639 n, 625, 647, 649 and n 2, 649 and n 6, 650 and n 9, 661 and n 7, 654 n, 656, 666 and n, 657, 659 n, 680 and n 1, 727 n 7, 737, 746, 747 and n 1, 749 and n 9, 750, 751 and n 3, 753, 755, 759, 761, 780, 790, 798, 1128, 1136 n 7, 1153 n 9.
- Mu'izz-ud-Din Bahram Shāh b. Sultan Nāsir ud-Din Mahmūd Shāh, of Dhilli, 672.
- Mu'izz ud-Din Harawī, Kāfi of Sultan Qhāti (Qhāti ud-Din Muhammad-i-ham of Qhār), 349.
- Mu'izz ud-Din Kāi Kubād, Sultan of Dhilli, 634 n 2.
- Mu'izz-ud-Din Muhammad-i-Sām Qhārī, Sultan, xxiii and n 2, 11, 112 and n 5, 113 n, 114 n, 115 and n 6, 149 n 1, 214, 214 n, 245 and n 1, 252, 255 n 7, 256, 257 n 2, 240 n 7, 261, 262 and n 9, 265 n 4, 267, 261, 290 n 4, 302 n 5, 307, 310,



343, 344, 345 n 9, 349 n, 357 and n 7, 368, 368, 369, 370 and n 9 and 1, 371 and n 4, 372, 373, 374 n 2, 375 n, 376, 377 and n 6, 378, 379 and n 4 and 6, 380 and n 9, 381 n 5, 382, 384, 385 n 9, 390, 391 and n 9, 393 and n 7, 394 and n, 396, 397 n 3, 398 and n 1, 399 n 2, 400 and n 3, 401 n, 402 n, 403 n, 404, 405 and n 3, 408, 413, 414 and n 8 and 9, 415 n 5 and 8, 419 n 5, 424, 425 n 1 and 3, 426, 427 and n 9, 428 and n 1, 429 n and n 4, 431, 432 and n 9, 438 and n 2, 440, 445 and n 3 and 5, 447 and n 6, 448 n 2, 449 and n 8 and 2, 450 n, 451 and n, 452 and n 7, 453 n 4, 454 n, 455, 456 and n 1, 457 n, 458 n 6, 460 n 3, 461 n, 462 n, 463 n, 464 and n 7, 465 n and n 8, 466 n 1, 467 n, 469 n 9, 471 n and n 5, 472 and n, 473 n 2, 474 n 5, 475 and n 2, 476 n, 478 n 6, 479 n, 480 n and n 7, 481 n and n 8 and 1, 482 n, 483 n, 484 n, 485 n 3, 486 and n, 487 n 6, 488, 489 n 7, 490 n, 491 n 5, 492, 496 and n 9 and 1, 497 n 2, 498, 499 n, 500 and n 3, 501 n, 503 n 8, 504 n 4, 508 and n 1, 510 n, 512 n 3, 513 and n 4, 514 and n, 515 and n, 516 n 2, 518 n, 519 n, 520 n, 521 and n, 522 n 5 and n, 523 n, 524 and n, 525 n, 526 n 8, 527 n 2, 531, 532, 533 n, 537 n, 544 and n 4, 545 and n 5, 546 n 7, 547 n and n 8, 548 and n 3, 550 n 6, 552 n 4, 553 n 5, 559 n and n 3, 560 n, 572, 573 n 9, 583 n, 601 and n 8, 602, 603 n 7, 604 and n 1, 605, 607 n 5, 608 n 8, 611 n 9, 614 n 8, 617 n, 622 n, 627 n 4 and

5, 628 n 2, 643 n, 679 n 2, 724 n 4, 737, 738, 742 n 9, 761 n 1, 773 n, 910 n, 929 n, 933, 935, 1032 n 7, 1059 n 9, 1060 n 5, 1063, 1155 n 6, 1198 n 2.—app. i, ii, iii, iv, v, vi, xi, xii, xiv, xvi, xxvi. His title was at first Malik Shihāb-ud-Din, which afterwards became Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Din even before he came to the throne.

Mu'izziah dynasty, the,—the slaves of Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Sām, of Ghūr, who attained sovereignty, xxxi, 496 n 9, 539 n, 737

Mujahid-ud-Din Asad i Sher-i-Koh, Lord of Himṣ, 229 n 5.

Mujāhid ud-Din I-bak, the Sar-Dawāt-Dār, of Al-Mustanṣir B'il-lah the 'Abbāsi Khālifah, 1231 n, 1232 n, 1235 and n 2, 1236 and n, 1237, 1238, 1240 and n and n 9, 1241 n, 1242 n 2, 1244 n, 1245, 1246 n 5, 1247 n, 1251, 1260 n 6.

Mu'jam-ul-Buldān of Yāqūt, the, 26 n 2.

Mujāmi'ul Khayār, the,—a historical work, 117 n, 1204 n, 1254 n.—app viii. See also under the Majāmi'-ul-Khayār

Mujammān or Corporealists, the,—name of a Muḥammadan sect, 384 n 6.

Mujmal-i-Faṣīḥi, the,—a historical work, xxix, xxx, xlv, xlvii, 10 n 8, 12 n 3, 15 n 1, 23 n 9 and 1, 24 n 3, 31 n 3, 34 n 5, 35 n 5 and 6, 37 n 3, 38 n 6, 39 n 1, 40 n 4, 41 n 7 and 8, 42 n 1, 43 n 4, 46 n 4, 47 n 8, 48 n 4 and 5, 50 n 1, 53 n and n 6, 58 n 2, 60 n 7, 61 n 9, 63 n 8, 71 n 5, 72 n 6, 73 n 9, 75 n

- and *n* 6, 70 *n* 9, 80 *n* 5, 81 *n* 7  
and 9, 85 *n*, 89 *n* 8, 97 *n* 3 and 4,  
98 *n* 6, 99 *n*, 100 *n* 5, 102 *n* 2, 103  
*n* 9, 105 *n*, 106 *n* 3, 107 *n* 7, 108  
*n* 5, 109 *n* 7, 110 *n* 3, 112 *n* 5, 113 *n*,  
114 *n*, 117 *n*, 120 *n* 3, 121 *n*, 126  
*n* 2, 132 *n* 9 and 1, 136 *n*, 142  
*n* 1, 143 *n* 3, 144 *n*, 145 *n* 4, 146  
*n* 6 and 7, 147 *n* 8, 151 *n* 6, 158 *n*,  
163 *n* 4, 170 *n* 8, 181 *n*, 185 *n*, 191  
*n* 0, 199 *n* 7, 217 *n*, 218 *n* 5, 237  
*n* 8 and 2, 243 *n*, 261 *n*, 266 *n*, 273  
*n* 5, 316 *n* 2, 336 *n* 4, 337 *n* 7, 347  
*n* 2, 346 *n* 8, 358 *n* 2 and 3, 359 *n*,  
363 *n* 8, 370 *n*, 374 *n* 3, 377 *n* 5  
and 6, 401 *n*, 403 *n*, 404 *n* 1, 407  
*n* 5 and 7, 411 *n*, 449 *n* 8, 450  
*n* 3, 451 *n* 5, 470 *n*, 496 *n* 9, 525 *n*,  
527 *n*, 528 *n* 2, 535 *n*, 600 *n* 2, 623  
*n* 1, 656 *n*, 717 *n*, 809 *n* 2, 894 *n*,  
904 *n*, 905 *n*, 906 *n*, 976 *n*, 987 *n* 3,  
989 *n*, 1090 *n*, 1116 *n*, 1164 *n*,  
1200 *n*, 1221 *n*, 1256 *n* 6, 1261 *n*  
—app. vi, xi
- Mūki or Mūkie, of the Kacrin tribe,  
—third Khātun of Uktai Ka'an  
son of the Chingiz Khān. 1142 *n*,  
1149 *n* 7
- Mūki Aghūl b. Tūh, son of the Chingiz  
Khān, 1179 *n*, 1190 *n*, 1183 *n*,  
1222 *n*.
- Mukah or Muki, the Nuyin, of the  
Kariyt tribe of Mughals, 574 *n*,  
1076 *n*.
- Mukali the Nuyin, of the Jaki or  
tribe of Mughals,—surnamed the  
Ko-yang, signifying the Great  
Khān, 1093 *n*, 1215 *n* 4, 1217 *n*,  
1219 *n*.
- Mukannas'-i-Mit, the false prophet,  
374 *n* 5.
- Mukinū or
- Mukutū Nū-in,—one of the generals  
of Uktai Ka'an, son of the Chingiz  
Khān, 1219 *n* 6.
- Mukhlis-ud-Din, the Kotwāl-Bak  
[Seneschal] of the fortress of  
Cehmah, 669 *n*, 610, 1153 *n* 9.
- Mukhtasir-i-Kāfi, the,—a work by  
the Imām Abu-l-Faḡl Muḥammad  
son of Al Hākim, Sarakhs, 38.
- Mukṭadī B'illah, al., the 'Abbāsi  
Khālifah, 106 and *n* 3.
- Mukṭadir B'illah, al., the 'Abbāsi  
Khālifah, 35 *n* 6, 37, 185 *n*.
- Mukṭafī B'illah, al., the 'Abbāsi  
Khālifah, 32 *n*, 83, 34, 89.
- Mulhidah, the,—a heretic sect of  
Muhammadians, xiv, 46, 139 *n*,  
145 *n* 4, 172 *n* 3, 201 and *n* 1 and 2,  
244 *n* 4, 245 *n*, 255 *n*, 265 *n* 4,  
363, 365 and *n* 2, 381 *n* 5, 394 *n* 1,  
405 and *n* 3, 623 *n* 2, 624, 646, 647,  
706 *n* 3, 1039 *n* 7, 1061 *n* 1, 1062  
*n* 2, 1117 *n* 2, 1145 *n* 4, 1167 and  
*n* 7, 1196 and *n* and *n* 8, 1199, 1199  
and *n* 1, 1193 *n*, 1193 *n*, 1194 *n*,  
1196, 1197 and *n* 3, 1198, 1203,  
1204, 1205, 1206 and *n* 4, 1207 *n*,  
1210 *n*, 1212 *n* 6 and *n*, 1214,  
1221 *n*, 1230 *n*, 1257 *n* 1262 *n*.
- Mulḥimāt, meaning of the word,  
671 *n* 7.
- Mumali Afghans, the,—one of the  
three sects or divisions of the  
Shamania, 1044 *n*.
- Mumtaz ud Daulah Mufakkkhar-al-  
Maik, Husam-i-Jang, ix.
- Mundaz Zai Afghar b. Abraham,  
of the Tabatabah dynasty of  
Yaman, 6.
- Mungard Khān,—grandson of Uktai  
Ka'an son of the Chingiz Khān,  
1180 *n*.

- Māngūār**, the *Mū-yān*,—the principal of *Mangū Khān's Nūyās*, 1188 n.
- Māniā-i-Khādīm**,—general of the *Khalifah* of *Baghdād*, 184 n.
- Mūnshī b. Wajsan**, ancestor of *Amir Banjī*, 812 and n 9.
- Mūnshī Shīām Farhūd**,—author of an account of *Gaur*, 558 n 7.
- Muntakhab-i-Tārīkh-i-Nasiri**, the, 130, 140 n 5, 141, 307
- Muntakhab-ut-Tawārīkh** of *Budā-ūni*, the, xvi, 22 n 5, 25 n 2, 26 n 3, 41 n 8, 91 n 8, 99 n, 100 n 5, 102 n 2, 113 n, 117 n, 135 n 2, 146 n n 5 and 6, 147 n 8, 151 n 6, 154 n 3, 155 n, 162 n 3, 163 n 4, 175 n n 7 and 9, 178 n 4, 177 n 6, 178 n 7, 312 n 6, 316 n 2, 322 n, 338 n 2, 363 n 9, 407 n n 5 and 7, 411 n, 418 n 2, 427 n, 429 n 4, 434 n 8, 436 n 5, 449 n 8, 498 n 6 601 n n, 613 n 7, 623 n 1, 669 n 2, 1221 n —app vi, vii, x
- Muntakhab ut-Tawārīkh** of *Muḥammad Yūsuf*, the, 614 n 8
- Muntaṣir B'llah al.**, *Ahmad b. Tahir*, 1st of the 'Abbāsi dynasty in *Egypt*, 1259 n 3, 1260 n
- Muntaṣir B'llah**, *Abū Ibrahim i Is-mā'il* son of *Nuh Sāmānī*, the last of the dynasty, 52 n 1, 81 n, 903 n
- Muntaṣir B'llah**, al., the *Imā'iliān* or *Fāṭimite Khālifah*, in *Egypt*, 209 and n n 5 and 6.
- Murji** (*Procrastinators*), the,—name of one of the heretical sects of *Muḥammadans*, 646 and n n 6 and 7.
- Murray**, 462 n.
- Mūsā**, (*Moses* of scripture) 3 1161
- Mūsā-i-Beghū b. Saljūk**, son of *Luk-mān*, the *Turkmān*, 117 n.
- Mūsā-i-Ja'far** [*Mūsā al-Kāsim*, son of *Ja'far as-Sādiq*],—of the descendants of 'Alī, 1232.
- Mūsā b. Saṭuk-Kūjah**,—second ruler of the *Afrāmyabi Khāns* of *Turkistān*, 902 n
- Muṣ'ab b 'Abd-ullāh b Tāhir ibn-ul-Ḥusain**,—governor of *Niḡhā-pūr*, 15
- Muṣ'ab b. As'ad**,—grandfather of *Tāhir ibn-ul-Ḥusain*, 11.
- Muṣ'ab b. Talḡah**,—ancestor of *Tāhir ibn-ul-Ḥusain*, 9 n 1, 10 n 5, 11
- Muṣ'abb Zarnik**,—ancestor of *Tāhir ibn-ul-Ḥusain*, 9, 10 n 5, 11
- Muṣ'ab Shāh**,—ancestor of *Tāhir ibn-ul-Ḥusain*, 10 n 5.
- Muscova**, the, 1037 n 2
- Mushrif-i-Mamalik** [*Secretary of the State*], the,—name of an office, 635, 638 and n 3
- Musta'in B'llah**, al., the 'Abbāsi *Khālifah*, 15
- Mustakfi B'llah**, al., the 'Abbāsi *Khālifah*, 56 n, 58.
- Mustanṣir B'llah**, al., the 'Abbāsi *Khālifah*, 218 n 5
- Mustanṣir B'llah**, al., the 'Abbāsi *Khālifah*, 15 616 n 2, 617 n, 662 n 7, 1117, 1237 n 3
- Mustasur B'llah**, al., *Abū-Tamīm-i Sa'd*,—the eighth *Khālifah* of the *Imā'iliān* or *Fāṭimite* in *Egypt*, 47 299 n n 5 and 6, 1189.
- Mustarshid B'llah**, al., the 'Abbāsi *Khālifah*, 204 n.
- Musta'rim B'llah**, al.,—last of the 'Abbāsi *Khālifahs* of *Baghdād*, 682 n 7 711 712 n, 1237 and n 4,

- 1229 and n 8, 1230 n, 1240 n,  
1250 n, 1252, 1259 and n 3, 1275  
n 3.  
Mustauf, meaning of the word,  
650 n 1.  
Mustaghfir B'illāh, al-, of the 'Ab-  
bāsi Khalifahs, 106.  
Mustafī B-nūrillāh, al-, of the  
'Abbāsi Khalifahs, xx, 217 n, 218  
and n 5, 383  
Mu'tamad-ud Daulah,—a vassal of  
Muḥammad-i-Bakht-yār, the  
Khalj, 565 and n 4.  
Mu'tamad 'Ala-llāh, al-, of the 'Abbāsi  
Khalifahs, 22 n 7, 23 n 9, 29 n 9.  
Mu'tasim B'illāh, al-, of the 'Abbāsi  
Khalifahs, 14  
Mutawakkil 'Ala-llāh, al-, of the  
'Abbāsi Khalifahs, in Baghdād 15  
Mutawakkil 'Ala-llāh, the last of  
the 'Abbāsi dynasty in Egypt,  
150 n  
Mu'tazid, al-, of the 'Abbāsi Khalifahs, 23 n 9, 24, 25, 31 and n 3,  
32 and n, 33  
Muḥ'n-L'illāh, al-, of the 'Abbā  
Khalifahs, 59 and n 2, 59, 60, 61  
and n 2.  
Mutriwi Afghān, the,—one of 11  
three aspts or divisions of th  
Shalminia, 1044 n.  
Muttakī, al-, of the 'Abbāsi Khalifahs, 37, 38, 55 n 1, 58  
Muwaffak, al-,—the brother of th  
'Abbāsi Khalifah al-Mu'tasim  
22 n 7, 23 and n 9  
Muḥaffar, Malik,—governor of Akh-  
lā, 396 n 1.  
Muḥaffar b. Yikūt, governor of  
Fars,—a slave of the 'Abbāsi dy-  
nasty, 55 n 1.  
Muḥaffar-ud Din b. Mahk-us-Sa'i  
the Shāh or Lord of Mārdīr  
1279 n. [Ardabil, 997 n  
Muḥaffar-ud Din Gargari, ruler of  
Muḥaffar-ud Din Yuzbak b. Jahān-  
Pahlawan, the Atabak, ruler of  
Āzartabān, 995 n. See also  
under Yuzbak b. Muḥammad  
Jahān Pahlawan.

## N.

- Nabati, a son of Adam (of Scrip-  
ture), 1, 2.  
Nadir Shāh of Persia, 276 n.  
Nāmān, the, 250 n 7, 923 n, 930 n,  
931 n, 932 n, 940 n, 944 n, 945 n,  
946 n, 949 n, 950 n, 955 n, 962 n,  
965 n, 987 n, 1091 n, 1092 n,  
1094 n, 1165 n.  
Naguz,—one of the only two males  
who escaped the general massacre  
of the Mughal people by the  
Tatars, 861 n, 862, 863 n, 865 n,  
867 n, 868 n, 890 n, 893 n, 894 n,  
895 n, 937 n 9.  
Naguz, the,—descendants of the  
above, 951 n, 999 n, 1000 n  
1095 n  
Nabarau b. Warmerh, son of War-  
merhān,—ancestor of Amīr  
Bānj, 312 and n 6.  
Nabar Diw, Rao of Rantabbūr,—  
the greatest of the Rāos of Hin-  
dustan, 819 and n 6, 824 n 8,  
828 and n 3

Nâsir-ud Din i-Aetamur, Malik  
foundatory of Tchchah, li, 531  
532.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn of Bindār [or Pindār], the Qhā-nāh,—one of the Maliks of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sām, of Ghūr. 626, 763 and n 7.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn, the Muhtashim, ruler of the Kūhstān, 1190 n 1, 1195 n, 1196 n.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn-i-Tughān, Feoffee of Bud'ūn,—one of the Maliks of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sām, of Ghūr, 626 and n 2.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn the Tusi Khawājāh,—the celebrated mathematician and Sūfī poet and chief adviser of Hulūkū Khān 1200 n 1, 1206 n 3, 1209 n, 1230 n, 1232 n, 1236 n, 1239 n, 1246 n, 1253 n, 1254 n, 1256 n 6, 1257 n, 1261 n 7.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn b. Ali-ud-Dīn, the Salṭan Wazīr of Rū,—adviser of Hulūkū Khān, 1262 n.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Abū Bīkr son of Malik Saif-ud-Dīn Kūrī,—one of the Maliks of Sultān Ghīyas-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sām, of Ghūr, 344, 345, 390.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Aṭ Yūm-ul-Bahār Malik,—feudatory of Lohor and r Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn I-yāl Timugh of Dillī 727, 728, 789, 866 n.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Alb-i-Ghazī b. Kāzī Arsalān, Saljūki,—nephew and Malik of the brother Sultans of Ghūr, 390, 472 and n, 474 n 6, 480 n, 490, 1198 n 8.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Fushanirī or Kāmūrī,—officer of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn Khwārazm Shāh 1276 n.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Husam the Amīr-i Shikār,—one of the Maliks of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Muḥam-

mad-i-Sām, of Ghūr, 415 and n 8, 416, 417 and n 8, 490, 504 and n 8, 506, 724, 725.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Husain-i-Kharmīl b. Kharmīl i Sām Husam, Malik, 351, 602 and n 3.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Husam b. Muḥammad Madīnī,—one of the Maliks of Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sām of Ghūr 310 n 314 and n, 361 and n 9, 362, 364 and n 1, 365, 366 and n 4, 490 and n 3, 496 n 1, 626.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Iwaz son of Sultān Ghīyas-ud-Dīn Iwaz, the Khāy of Lakhnawati, 1st, 586 n 1, 595 n 2, 618 n, 771 n.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Kāwajāh, Malik, xxvi, 200. See under Kutūjah.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Kāshū Khān b. Bek Arslan Malik,—officer of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn Khwārazm Shāh 1276 n.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Kāshū Kāzī,—one of the Court Kāzīs of Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn I-yāl Timugh of Dillī 625.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Kāzī—f. but in law of a sister of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Bahram Shāh of Dillī 650.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Māmūd Bughrī Khān, son of Ulugh Khān-i Balṭan 17, 716 n 6.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Mahmud Shāh, Malik of Lakhnawati, elder son of Shams-ud-Dīn I-yāl Timugh, Sultān of Dillī, 534 n, 586, 594 and n and n 1, 595, 617 and n 5, 618 n, 625, 626, 629, 630, 631, 633 n 6, 639 n 4, 773 n.

Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Mahmud Shāh, Sultān, younger son of Shams-ud-Dīn I-yāl Timugh, Sultān of Dillī,

xxvii, xxi, xxx, xxxi, xxxii, xxxiii and n 3, xxxiv n 4, lv, 20 n 1, 70 and n 9, 183, 231 and n 1, 310 and n 4, 388, 431, 534 n, 539 n, 547 n 9, 567 n 6, 623, 626 n 7, 630, 635 n 6, 639 n 4, 641 n 5, 644 n 5, 661, 664 n 3, 665, 666 and n 8, 670 and n 1, 671, 672 n and n 2, 675 and n 5, 676, 677 n 6, 681 and n 10, 684 and n 9, 685 n 4, 690 n 8, 695 n 2, 696 n 1, 701 n 1, 716 n 5, 717 and n, 721 n 5, 723, 731 and n 2, 744 n 6, 747, 754 n 5, 758 and n 2, 769 and n 6, 790 n n b and 9, 762 n 8, 767, 769 n 9, 770 n 9, 772 n, 773 n, 775 n, 776 n, 777 n, 778 n, 781, 782 n 4, 783 n n 7 and 1, 785, 787, 789, 790, 793 n 7, 794 n 1, 795 n, 797 n 5, 798, 799, 800 n 4, 804 and n 4, 813 n 5, 814 and n 7, 816 n 2, 818 and n 4, 819 and n 8, 820, 823 and n 4, 824, 831 and n 2, 842, 845, 846 n 5, 847 n 4, 849 n 9, 853, 855 n 5, 856, 862, 863 and n 2 and 3, 881 n, 900, 1056 n 1, 1077, 1104, 1125, 1130 n, 1131 n, 1170, 1181 n 2, 1181 n, 1202 n, 1224 n, 1225 n and n 6, 1288 n 1, 1293, 1294 — app x

Nāṣir-ud-Din Mahmud Tughrl-i-Alh Khan,—one of the Maliks of Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Din Mahmūd Shāh of Dillī, 673.

Nāṣir-ud-Din Mardān Shāh, Muhammad-i-Ghāṣṣah, —one of the Maliks of Sultān Shams-ud-Din I-yal-Timish of Dillī, 625 and n 1.

Nāṣir-ud-Din Miran Shāh, son of Muhammad-i-Ghāṣṣah, the Khalji, —one of the Maliks of Sultān Shams-ud-Din I-yal-Timish of Dillī, 626 n 1.

Nāṣir-ud-Din Muhammad, the Wazir of the Dār-ul-Khāṣat, 1220 n 8.

Nāṣir-ud-Din Muhammad b. 'Alī-ud-Din Utanz b. 'Alī-ud-Din Husain Juhān-naw, Ghūrī, 417

Nāṣir-ud-Din, Muhammad, Haris-i-Mardān Shāh, —one of the Maliks of Sultān Shams-ud-Din I-yal-Timish of Dillī, 626 n 1.

Nāṣir-ud-Din Muhammad b. 'Izz-ud-Din Husain, Malik of Mādīn of Ghūr, 339 and n 1, 340 n, 343 n 5, 344 n, 497. See also under Shihāb-ud-Din Muhammad Khar-nak, for which it seems to be a mistake

Nāṣir-ud-Din Muhammad-i-Khar-nak, Malik of Marw, 381.

Nāṣir-ud-Din Muhammad, Malik, —son of Malik Saif-ud-Din Hasan, the Karluḡ, 699 n, 782 n 3, 786 n 6, 850 and n 8, 860, 861 and n 5, 863 n 3, 1129 and n 1, 1130 n, 1131 n.

Nāṣir-ud-Din Muhammad Shēr-i-Koh, entitled al-Malik-al-Kabir, ruler of Huny, 213 n 5

Nāṣir-ud-Din Muhammad b. Shihāb-ud-Din Muhammad Khar-nak b. 'Izz-ud-Din al-Husain Ghūrī, 344 n

Nāṣir-ud-Din Sabuk Tigin, 46 and n 4. See under Sabuk Tigin.

Nāṣir-ud-Din Timurani —one of the Maliks of the brother Sultāns of Ghūr, 390, 400.

Nāṣir-ud-Din 'Uqmān-i-Harab, son of Malik Tāj-ud-Din i-Harab, Malik of Sijistān and Nimroz, 193 and n 5, 194 n 7, 195 n 6, 199, 200, 961 n 3, 1199 n.

- Naṣiri Malika, the**,—the Turkish Slave dynasty of Dihli, 28 and n 1.
- Nāṣiri Nāmāh, the**, of Minhāj-i Sarāj, xxvii, 681, 682, 818.
- Nāṣiriyyah College of Dihli, the**, xxvi, xxvii, 644, 667.
- Naṣr, the Hājī, the merchant of Bukhārā**, 70.
- Naṣr, the Tūlākī, Amīr**,—governor and feudatory of Tūlak, 1058 and n 7.
- Naṣr b. Aḥmad b. Asad, son of Sāmān-i Khaddāt**,—second of the Sāmānī dynasty, 29 and n 2, 30 and n, 31, 54.
- Naṣr b. Aḥmad, son of Tahir Sufari**,—governor of Sijistān under the Sāmānīs, 35 n 2.
- Naṣr b. Aḥmad-i Ismāʿīl Sāmānī, Amīr**, Vth of the dynasty, 33, 35, 36, 37 and n and n 3 and 3, 54, 56 n 2, 185 n.
- Naṣr b. Aḥmad Khān i-Khīr Khān**, of the family of the Afrāsiyābi of Turkistān, 906 n.
- Naṣr b. Darhim, son of Un-Naṣr**,—governor of Sijistān under the Tahirīs, 19 n 1, 23 n 5.
- Naṣr b. Ibrāhīm, son of Sultān Masʿūd, Ghaznawī**, 105.
- Naṣr b. Ismāʿīl, son of Aḥmad Sāmānī**, 54.
- Naṣr b. Mahmūd of Ghazni**, Amīr, 88.
- Naṣr b. Muḥammad Arsalan Khān**,—of the family of the Afrāsiyābi of Turkistān, 906 n, 907 n.
- Naṣr b. Sabuk Tigin**—commander of his brother Mahmūd's army, xvii, 50 n 6, 51 and n 6, 75, 81 n 86 n, 186 n.
- Naṣr-i-Shīr or Alā-Naṣr-i-Shīr, son of Rabiʿī, the Khārījī**, 12 and n 7.
- Naṣr, the Khākān, Shams-ul-Mulk son of Taf-kā; Khān**, XIIIth of the Afrāsiyābi Khāns of Turkistān, 905 n, 906 n.
- Naṣru'llah b. Muḥammad b. 'Abd al-Majid**, translator of Kalilah and Dimnah into Persian, 109 n 2.
- Nau Daulat, the**,—title of the son of Rukn-ud-Din Khūr Shāh of Alamūt, 1212 n.
- Nau Musalmān, the**,—Jalāl-ud-Din Hasan of Alamūt, the Muḥibbidah heretic who turned orthodox, 265 n 4, 1190 n.
- Naubat**, signification of the term, 363 and n 3.
- Naunk**, signification of the word, 1135 and n 4.
- Nestorians, the**, 961 n, 984 n, 1234 n 2, 1244 n.
- Newport, Captain Christopher**, 295 n.
- Nialis, the**,—the adherents of Nial Tigin, the rebel viceroy of the Panjab, 121 and n 7, 123 n 3, 129.
- Nial Tigin**,—chamberlain of Abu'l-'Albās i-Mamun al-Farighānī, 86 n, 120 n 5, 232 n,—some call him Alb Tigin.
- Nial Tigin**,—the rebel viceroy of the Panjab, 121 n 7.
- Nih-Firuzah b. Sultān Ibrāhīm (Ghasnawī)**, 105 and n 2.
- Nikudar Aghal, son of Hulākū Khān**,—he became a convert to Islam and was styled Sultān Aḥmad, 1207 n, 1293 n 2.
- Niku-dar, Nu m.**,—one of the Nūyins of the Chingiz Khān, 1123.



**Nihāriya**, the, name of a people, 574 n.

**Nīmat-ullah**, the historian, 622 n.

**Nimrod**, the Tyrant, [Nimrod of Scripture], 2.

**Ninkianu**,—the name of Shūdal-Shā-o-shā, the Altān Khān, as spelt by some European writers, 955 n, 1136 n 2.

**Nisāwī's Life of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Din Khwārazm Shāh**, 1017 n, 1018 n, 1019 n.

**Nisīb-i-Nisābiān**, the,—a lexicographical work, by Imām Abū Naṣr Faṣāḥi, 195 n 4.

**Nisām** of the Deccan, the, 811 n.

**Nisām Shāh**, of the Bahmani dynasty, 592 n.

**Nisām-ud-Din**, Shaukh, the celebrated saint of Dihli, xxx and n 5, xxxi.

**Nisām-ud-Din**, of Farghānah,—a Janbas in the service of Sultān Muḥammad-i-Bakhtiyār, the Khālī, of Lakhnawati, 652

**Nisām-ud-Din Aḥmad**, Khwājah,—author of the *Tabaqat-i-Akbari*, xii, 623 n 8, 665 n 8.

**Nisām-ud-Din Muḥammad**,—an officer of Sultān Kāṭib-ud-Din I-bak of Dihli, 398, 533 n, 602

**Nisām-ud-Din Shafarūkāni** or **Shaburghani**,—one of the Amirs of Sultān Shams-ud-Din I-yal-Tīmūgh of Dihli, 635 and n 7, 761

**Nisām-ul-Mulk**, Wasir of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din Takūgh-i-Khwārazm Shāh, 244 n 4

**Nisām-ul-Mulk Kamāl-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Abū Sa'id Junaidi**,—Wasir of Sultān Shams-ud-Din

**I-yal-Tīmūgh** of Dihli, 635, 634 and n 1, 636, 640, 641, 724.

**Nisām-ul-Mulk Tāsi**,—the Wasir of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Din Malik Shāh, Saljūki, 129 and n, 141, 142, 143 n 2.

**Nisām-ut-Tawārikh**,—of the Kūṣī Abū Sa'id-i-'Abd-ullāh of Baiṣī, xvi, 25 n 3, 97 n 4, 99 n, 118 n, 187 n 5, 143 n 1, 146 n 5.

**Nogay**,—the vulgar spelling of the name of the Nagūs, which see.

**Noghay**, the, name of a people, 609 n.

**Noruz-i-Jalāli**, the,—the first day of spring, named after Sultān Jalāl-ud-Din Malik Shāh, Saljūki, who reformed the Calendar, 143.

**North**, Lieut., 1063 n 6.

**Noṣhed b. Bahrām**,—ancestor of the Sāmāniya, 29. [Sāmāniya, 29.

**Noṣher b. Noṣhed**,—ancestor of the "Notes on Afghanistan," Raverty's, xlv, xlix, i, liv, lv, 1043 n 1.

**Nūh** [Noah of Scripture], 2, 3, 303 and n 7, 870 n, 882 n.

**Nūh**, the Jan-dār,—a Khālji chief in the service of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Din Khwārazm Shāh, 540 n, 1022 n, 1023 n

**Nūh b. Asad b. Sāmān-i-Khaddāt**,—governor of Samṛṇand, 27 and n 6, 28, 29, 53

**Nūh b. Mansūr b. Nūh Sāmāni**, IXth of the dynasty, 29, 33 n 1, 44, 45 and n 5 and 8, 46 and n 4, 47 and n 8, 48 and n 2, 3 and 4, 53 n 8, 54, 74 n 3, 186 n, 233 n, 292 n, 293 n, 296 n.

**Nūh b. Naṣr b. Aḥmad Sāmāni**, VIIth of the dynasty, 29, 36 and n 5 and 6, 39 and n 1, 40, 54.

**Nāṣa**, signification of the word, 164 and n 6.

**Nāṣia**, the, 567 and n 8, an error for the *Tūnis*, which see.

**Nār-ud-Din**, the *Khwārazmī*, *Imām*, 1160, 1161.

**Nār-ud-Din**, the Turk, styled *Nār*, the Turk,—head of the *Mulāḥidāh* heretics of *Hindustān*, 646 and n 5.

**Nār-ud-Din-i-A'mā** [the Blind], a *Muḥammadan* saint of *Samarkand*, 1326.

**Nūr-ud-Din Maḥmūd al-Malik-ul-ʿAdil**, son of *ʿImād-ud-Din Zangī*, *Sultān* of *Shām*, 140, 169, 308 and n 1, 304 n, 305 and n 4 and 6, 306 and n 7, 307 n 8, 308 and n and n 4, 309 and n 6, 210 and n, 212 n, 213 n and n 2 and 5, 215, 216, 217 n, 218 n.

**Nūr-ud-Din Muḥammad**,—governor of *Sind* for *Sultān Shams-ud-Din I-yāl-Tīmūgh* of *Dihli*, 616 n.

**Nūrīdāsh**, *Burāndāsh* or *Kurīdāsh*—one of the *Amīrs* of *Chā-Kūsh Tigin*, the *Bādghān* of the *Turkish* tribe of the *Ungghūts*, 945 n.

**Nūrkā**, the *Nūrān*,—one of the generals of the *Chingiz Khān*, 1027 n 8 [Naurūn Mughals.

**Nūrūn Mughals**, the. See under the *Nusakh* i: *Jahān Arā*, the,—name of a book, 195 n 4.

**Nūshād**, son of *Bahrām Qhābīn*, son of *Bahrām Jash-nash*,—ancestor of the *Sāmānīs*, 53.

**Nūshir**, son of *Nūsha* i, son of *Bahrām Qhūbīn*—ancestor of the *Sāmānīs*, 53 and n 5.

**Nūshirwān** b. *Kubād*, the *Just*, first of the *Akāsurah* dynasty of

*ʿAjām*, 5, 6, 8, 19 n 1, 498 n 8, 622 n, 624 n.

**Nūsh-Tigin-i-Qharjah**, founder of the *Khwārazm Shāhi* dynasty, 188 n 8, 169 n 7, 232 n, 233 n, 602 n.

**Nūsh-Tigin**, the *Khāqān Khādim* of *Sultān Maʿūd* of *Ghassnīn*, 194 n 4.

**Nūsh-Tigin**, the *Silāh-dār*,—a Turk who slew *Tughril*, *al-Malʿūn*, the usurper of the throne of *Ghassnīn*, 100, 101.

**Nūsh-Tigin** or *Kūsh-Tigin*, the *Pahlawān*,—an officer of *Sultān Muḥammad-i-Takūsh Khwārazm Shāh*, 1084 n.

**Nusrat-ud-Din Abū Bīkr** b. *Jahān Pahlawān* *Muḥammad*, the *Atābak* of *Azerbāijān*, 172 n 3, 173, 240 and n 3.

**Nusrat-ud-Din ʿAlī** b. *Yamīn-ud-Din Bahrām Shāh*, *Malik* of *Sijistān* and *Nimroz*, 196, 197 and n 1, 198, 1200 n.

**Nusrat-ud-Din Hazār-Asp**, also styled

**Nusrat-ud-Din Hazār-Şaf**, the *Atābak* of *Lar*,—one of the greatest of the ancient *Maliks* of *Sultān ʿAlī-ud-Din Muḥammad Khwārazm Shāh*, 980 n, 991 n.

**Nusrat-ud-Din Kutlagh Shāh** b. *Ulugh Khān-i-Abi Muḥammad*, *Khān* of *Guzarwān*, 225.

**Nusrat-ud-Din Selari**,—governor of the tract of *Hansi*, on the part of *Sultān Kutb-ud-Din Ibrak* of *Dihli*, 517 n.

**Nusrat-ud-Din Sher Khān Saṅkar-i-Saghaleus** the *Malik-ul-Kabir*,—one of the *Maliks* of *Sultān Nāṣir-*

- ud-Din Mahmūd Shāh of Dihli, 672, 674 n 2, 684 n 2, 687 and n 9 and 1, 688 and n and n 2, 689 n and n 6 and 7, 690 n 2, 692 n 2, 695 and n 9 and 1, 696 n, 699 n 2 and 5, 700 n 2, 704 n 5, 712 and n 2, 1202 n.
- Nusrat-ud-Din Tāyāsī, Malik and feudatory of Awadh under Sultān Bāghiyat of Dihli, liv, lv, lxiii, 633 n 7, 639, 640 n 1, 723 and n 2, 732, 734, 735, 743, 824 and n 2, 825 and n 2, 866 n.
- Nusrat Khān Bads-ud-Din Sanjar-i-Sūfi, the Hāmī,—one of the Maliks of Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Din Mahmūd Shāh of Dihli, 672 n 5, 700 n 5, 712 n 2, 714 n 2, 737, 738 and n 2, 794.
- Nusratjāng,—app. xli.
- Nushat-ul-Kulūb, the name of a book, 1216 n.
- Nyaw-lyen, of the Chanchu tribe, one of the generals of "Mengko" Kā'an, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1222 n.

## O.

- Odo de St. Amand, the Master of the Temple at Jerusalem, 230 n 2.
- Ogotai,—mispronunciation of the name of Chtāo, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1104 n 4.
- Ohsaon, D'. See under D'Ohsaon.
- Oldjaitu, a Mughal title corresponding to the Turkish *Katılgah* and the Arab *Mubārak*, 865 n.
- Oriental Congress, the, 511 n, 835 n, 1094 n—app. iv.
- Oriental History, Hayton's, 1162 n.
- Osborn, Major R. D., 1197 n 7.
- Osmali, the. See under the 'Ugmānli Turks.
- Osetas, the,—the Europeanised name of the tribe of As, 1165 n, 1169 n.
- Ossian, 506 n 1.
- Ottoman Turks, the, 874 n, 875 n, 1235 n 1. See also under the 'Ugmānli Turks.
- Ouseley, 94 n 2, 1008 n 5.

## P

- Paderin, M., 916 n.
- Pādār,—a Mughal Amīr in the army of Hūlakū Khān, 1276 n.
- Pārsah, 1263 n 8.
- Pakhal, Sultān—the Jahāngirīān Sultān, 1044 n.
- Palārak,—a species of Damascused steel, 1212 and n 7.
- Pali-cha, the Orla [Arlüt],—an officer of "Mengko" Kā'an, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1222 n.
- "Panjāb and Dehli, in 1857," Rev. J. Cave Browne's, 1032 n 2.
- Panjāb Survey Maps, the, 537 n.
- Parāchaba, the, 511 n.
- Pardon, the dress of, 37 and n 1.

- Paris National Library, the, viii.  
 Pārsia the, 630 n. 2.  
 Parwes b. Parwes, son of Shansab,  
 —ancestor of Amir Banjī, 312  
 and n. 7.  
 Parwis b. Yazdajird-i-Shahr-yār,  
 the last of the Akāsirah dynasty  
 of 'Ajām, 70 n. 1.  
 Pashm, signification of the word,  
 939 n.  
 Pathān Kings of Dehli, Thomas's  
 Chronicles of the, xxvi n. 3, iv,  
 666 n, 668 n, 669 n. 3, 679 n. 6, 685  
 n. 4, 686 n. 2, 690 n. 1, 699 n. 1, 730,  
 779 n, 791 n. 4, 795 n. 2, 800 n, 818  
 n. 6, 857 n. 8, 878 n, 1108 n. 1, 1129  
 n. 1, 1259 n. 3,—app. i, iv. See  
 also under Thomas's "Chronicles  
 of the Pathān Kings of Dehli."  
 Patāns or the Batāni Afghans, the,  
 xii, xiii, xxxii n. 2, 320 n. 4, 334 n,  
 352 n. 3, 397 n. 1, 497 n. 3, 503 n. 1,  
 509 n, 511 n, 513 n, 528 n. 3, 528 n,  
 786 n. 5, 852 n. 4, 873 n, 885 n,  
 1132 n, 1295 n. 3,—app. xix.  
 Paynton, 295 n.  
 Pemberton, 508 n.  
 Pesh Dad, surname of Gaiū-mart,  
 or Gil-Shah, 1st of the Bastā-  
 niyah dynasty of 'Ajām, 2.  
 Pesh-dād b. Hoshang, ancestor of  
 Zuhāk-i-Tāzi, 303 n. 7.  
 Pesh-Dadān, the 1st of the five  
 dynasties of 'Ajām, the, 1,—also  
 called the Bastaniyah.  
 Peta, son of Hocotam Cham, son of  
 the Genxis Cham,—wrong name  
 of Bātū Khān, son of Tūghī [Jūji]  
 Khān, son of the Qhāngiz Khān,  
 1167 n.  
 Pêus de la Croix,—author of a Life  
 of the Qhāngiz Khān, 535 n, 890 n,  
 938 n, 934 n. 2, 939 n. 1, 971 n,  
 984 n, 998 n, 999 n, 1000 n, 1010 n,  
 1017 n, 1019 n, 1034 n. 2, 1035 n,  
 1038 n, 1034 n, 1039 n.  
 Petreus, 1171 n.  
 Philaretus, 158.  
 Philip Augustus,—Philip II. of  
 France who undertook with  
 Richard Cœur-de-Lion the third  
 Crusade, 225 n.  
 Philip Smith, 386 n.  
 Ping-ohing. See Lyew-ping-ohong,  
 1218 n.  
 Pir-i-Boshān, the, or  
 Pir-i-Tārik, the, 1073 n. 8.  
 Pir Muḥammad, grandson of Amir  
 Timūr, 1155 n. 6.  
 Pir Shāh, son of Saifān 'Alī-ad-  
 Din Muḥammad-i-Takīsh Khwā-  
 rasm Shāh, 254 n. 2, 262 n. 7, 283  
 n. 2. See also under Ghayrād-  
 Din Pir Shāh.  
 Pirey, the slave of Alb-Tigin,—  
 ruler of Qhaxnia, 78 and n. 7, 74  
 n. 2, 320 n. 2.  
 Pithorā Bā of Ajmir, xxiii, 346 n. 9,  
 393, 410 n. 5, 432 n. 9, 456 n. 2, 458  
 and n. 6, 459 n. and n. 9, 460 n. and  
 n. 2 and 4, 463 n, 463 n, 464 and  
 n. 7, 466 n. 1, 467 n, 468, 469 n. 5  
 and 9, 470 n. and n. 2, 486 n, 489  
 n. 2, 491, 516 n. 2, 517 n, 518 n,  
 519 n, 540, 566 n. 6, 606 n. 2, 621 n. 6,  
 632 n, 635 n. 4, 761 n. 1, 779 n. 2,  
 1059 n. 9, 1060 n. 5,—app. ii, iii,  
 iv, v, vi.  
 Plowden, Captain T. C., 1061 n. 7.  
 Poetry of the Afghāns, Raverty's,  
 xxxi, 511 n, 1078 n. 6, 1147 n. 2.  
 Poles, the,—the people of Poland,  
 1166 n.  
 Po-li-cha,—a great Tatar [Mughal]

lord, general of "Mengko" Kī-  
ka, 1222 a.  
Polo, Marco. See under Marco  
Polo.  
Poondir, of the Dahma race of  
Rājputa, 400 a. See also under  
Chand Poondir.  
Popes, the, 1297 a. 2.  
Portakin, Bortakin or Bortikin.  
See under Yarkin.  
Poras, the Indian Prince who came  
to battle with Alexander the  
Great, 536 a, 537 a.  
Pottinger, 188 a 7.  
Pramārah race of Hīndūs, the,  
523 a.  
Frānki b. Sūni b. Lādi,—ancestor  
of Sultān Bahlūl, the founder of  
the Lūdiyah dynasty in India,  
510 a.

Prejevalsky, the Russian Colonel  
and explorer, 951 a, 951 a, 1085 a.  
Price, Mr., 155 a 7, 442 a, 584 a 2,  
1045 a 1.  
Prithi Rāj or Pirt'hvirāj, of  
Ajmir. See under Pithorī Rāj.  
Prithu, Bartā or Britā,—a Hīndū  
chief, 529 a 5.  
Proceedings of the Asiatic Society  
of Bengal, 683 a, 774 a,—app. xxii.  
Procopius,—the Greek historian of  
the Vith century, 171 a.  
Pulād or Fālād, son of Malik Shan-  
sab, son of Kharnak,—Amir of  
Ghūr, 306 a 9, 311 and a 2.  
Pālān,—one of the Maliks of Sultān  
Shams-ud-Dīn I-yal-timish of  
Dihli, 529 and a 7.  
Purhars, the,—name of a Hīndū  
people, 511 a 2.

## Q.

Qān-i-Bazurg,—title of the Chin-  
gis Khān,—app. xxi.  
Quatremère, 1168 a 6, 1236 a.  
Queen of Sheba [Sabbā], Balkis, of  
the Tabābr'ah of Yaman, 6, 303  
a 7.  
Queen Roussudas, daughter of

Queen Thamar, sovereign of  
Georgia, 1001 a.  
Queen Thamar, sovereign of Geor-  
gia, 1001 a.  
Qutb aldyn Baktyar Kāky, 523 a.  
See under Kutb-ud-Din Bakh-  
tyār Kāki.

## R.

Rādwiah,—ancestor of Tāhir ibn  
al-Husain, 9 a 1.  
Rāc of Chand-wāl [Chand-wār],  
the, 743.  
Rāc of Dihli, the,—defeated by  
Mu'izz-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Sām  
Qhūri, Sultān of Ghazni, 379 a 4.

Rāc of Gujarāt, the, 521 a.  
Rāc of Gwāhyūr, the, 546 a 7.  
Rāc of Jāj-nagar, the, xxvii, 585  
a 6, 589 a, 592 a, 666 a, 738, 739,  
762, 763 and a 3.  
Rāc of Jāj-nagar-Qāsiyah, the, 592 a.  
Rāc of Kālinjar, the, 523 a, 524 a,

- 735, 734, 735 and  $\approx 9$ , 777  $\approx$ , 824  $\approx 8$ .
- Rāo of Nahrwālah, the, 516  $\approx 2$ , 519  $\approx$ , 520  $\approx$
- Rāo of Thangir [or Thankir], the, 543.
- Rāo of Uḍisah, the, 593  $\approx$ .
- Rāo Kokār or Kokar,—an error for the Khokhar Rāo, 294  $\approx$ .
- Rāo Lakhmaq, 554  $\approx 9$ .
- Rāo Lakhmaniah, of the Hindū dynasty of Nūdiāh, 512  $\approx 4$ , 534 and  $\approx 9$ , 555 and  $\approx 1$  and 4, 556, 557, 558 and  $\approx 7$  and 1, 559 and  $\approx 2$ , 574.
- Rāo Lakhmiah. See the above.
- Rāo Mān, 637 and  $\approx 6$ .
- Rāo Pathorā of Ajmir, 346  $\approx 9$ . See also under Pithorā Rāo.
- Rāo Sāl, the Hindū chief of the Jibāl-i-Jūdī [the Jūd Hills], 432  $\approx$ , 484  $\approx$ .
- Rāi' b. Haramah,—deputy of Amir Muḥammad, son of Tāhir [the last of the Tāhiri dynasty], in the government, of Khurāsān, 23, 24 and  $\approx 3$ , 30, 32  $\approx 7$
- Rāi' b. Hāsham,—the rebel governor of Māwarā-un-Nahr, 12  $\approx 3$ .
- Rāfiq, the,—the name given by the Sunnis to the Shī'ahs, 1255  $\approx$ .
- Rahup, the Rājput prince of Mandawar and Chetore, 611  $\approx 2$ .
- Rā'is-i-Bat or Tab, chief of Zarīn, 326  $\approx$ .
- Rā'is-ud-Daulah, the,—a learned Mohammedan doctor, 1206  $\approx 2$ , 1209  $\approx$ .
- Rājah of Jamān, the, 453  $\approx 4$ , 454  $\approx$ , 460  $\approx 2$ .
- Rājah of Kāmrad, the, 562  $\approx$ , 563  $\approx$ , 564, 570  $\approx$  and  $\approx 9$ , 764.
- Rājah of Sankarah, the, 591  $\approx$ .
- Rajasthan, Tod's, 530  $\approx$ .
- Rājputa, the, 459  $\approx 9$ , 463  $\approx$ , 465  $\approx 1$ , 516  $\approx 2$ , 530  $\approx$ , 531  $\approx$ , 511  $\approx 2$ , 514  $\approx 3$ , 601  $\approx$ , 604  $\approx 6$ , 553  $\approx 6$ , 1043  $\approx 1$ , 1075  $\approx$ .
- Ralph Fitch, 570  $\approx 9$ .
- Rām Chand [Rāmā], Rājah, 93  $\approx 9$ , 548  $\approx 2$ .
- Rām Diw,—brother of Jakr [Chakr] Diw, ruler of Jamān, 455  $\approx 4$ .
- Ramish-i-Bat or Tab, chief of Zarīn, 326  $\approx$ .
- Rampoldi's Annali Musalmanni, 535  $\approx$ .
- Ramusio, 1219  $\approx$ .
- Ranā Lakhi, son of Jūdāhara, of the Bhaṭṭi tribe, 79  $\approx$ , 80  $\approx$ .
- Rānah of Ajār, the, 690  $\approx 1$ , 691 and  $\approx$ , 733 and  $\approx 6$ . See also under Chāhar, the Ajār.
- Rānah of the Jūd Hills, the, 515.
- Rantakā or Zantakā, son of Tāho-barud,—ancestor of Zafāk the Taxi, 303.
- Ranjit Singh, the founder of the Sikh Kingdom, 302  $\approx$ .
- Raṣ-pāl [Raṣ-pāla], the Hindū Rānah, 339 and  $\approx 7$ , 340.
- Rārāhars or Dārāhars, a general of the Rāo of Gujarāt, 532  $\approx$ .
- Rasād-i-Il-Khāni, or Il-Khāni, the,—the observatory erected in Astarbāijān by command of Hāk-kā Khān, 1257  $\approx$ , 1263  $\approx$ .
- Rāghid, the Shīr of Ghazistān, 341  $\approx 6$ .
- Rāghid-ud-Dīn, author of the Jāmi'-ut-Tawarikh, 336  $\approx 4$ , 336  $\approx 2$ , 369  $\approx$ , 613  $\approx$ , 699  $\approx 2$ , 691  $\approx$ , 692  $\approx$ , 693  $\approx$ , 694  $\approx$ , 695  $\approx$ , 696  $\approx$ , 697  $\approx$ , 698  $\approx$ , 699  $\approx$ , 694  $\approx 2$ , 695  $\approx$ , 696  $\approx$ .

1000 n, 1018 n, 1019 n, 1020 n,  
1046 n, 1066 n, 1069 n, 1155 n 6,  
1211 n, 1216 n, 1235 n 2, 1236 n,  
1240 n, 1244 n, 1247 n 7, 1250 n,  
1255 n, 1260 n 6, 1261 n, 1262 n,  
1264 n, 1278 n, 1286 n,—app. xx.  
Raghid-ud-Din, the Hakim, Khwā-  
jah,—a merchant of Balkh. 1174  
and n 2.  
Raghid-ud-Din-i-'Abd-al-Majid,  
Imām, 184.  
Raghid-ud-Din 'Alī, the Sipah-  
Sālār,—an officer of Sultan Shams-  
-ud-Din Iyāl-Timish, of Dihli,  
xxvi, 620, 643 n 4.  
Raghid-ud-Din 'Alī, Hanafi, the  
Sharaf-ul-Mulk,—the Ulugh-i-  
Khān Hājib [Chief Royal Cham-  
berlain], of Sultan Nasir-ud-Din  
Mahmūd Shāh of Dihli, 823.  
Raghid-ud-Din Mālikāni or Mālkāni,  
Khwājah,—a Tājuk official of Sul-  
tān Rukn-ud-Din Firuz Shāh of  
Dihli, 635 and n 8.  
Raghid-ud-Din Watwāt, Imām,—a  
lineal descendant of the Khalifah  
'Umar and author of the *Madāyik-  
us-Sifr fi Daḡayik-ugh-Shi'r*, 236  
and n 4.  
Rantbel or Rantbel,—title of the  
King of Kābul who opposed the  
first Mussalmāns when they in-  
vaded his territory, 22 n 5.  
Rantbel or Rantbel, the Shāh of  
Kābul,—to whom the sons of  
Darbim, Governor of Sijistān,  
 fled after their defeat by the  
Qaffāri, 19 n 1, 22 n 5.  
Rāthas, the,—name of a people in  
the Koh-i-Jūd, 1123 n.  
Rātibah, the slave girl of Mahmūd-  
i-Warrāk of Nishāpūr, 17, 18.

Rausat-uz-Zafī, the, name of a his-  
torical work, 113 n, 116 n 2, 145  
n 4, 149 n 2, 162 n 2, 199 n 7  
and 8, 264 n, 266 n, 287 n 9, 290 n,  
297 n, 305 n 5, 306 n 2, 318 n 2,  
322 n, 323 n 6, 328 n 2, 343 n 2, 373  
n 9, 404 n 1, 467 n 5 and 7, 411 n,  
432 n 1, 434 n 8 and 9, 436 n 5,  
449 n 8, 531 n 8, 540 n, 559 n 2,  
560 n 4, 572 n 4, 576 n 5, 615 n 1,  
623 n 1, 645 n 2, 656 n 1, 659 n 6,  
665 n 8, 669 n 2, 906 n, 909 n, 933 n,  
940 n, 951 n, 959 n, 960 n, 983 n,  
984 n, 987 n 2, 995 n, 998 n,  
999 n, 1008 n 5, 1013 n 9, 1019 n,  
1020 n, 1035 n, 1038 n, 1029 n,  
1031 n, 1032 n, 1034 n, 1036 n 1,  
1038 n 3 and 6, 1042 n 5, 1046 n 1,  
1050 n, 1053 n 9, 1074 n, 1083 n,  
1087 n, 1137 n, 1138 n, 1141 n,  
1148 n 4, 1159 n 6, 1190 n 1, 1194 n,  
1197 n 3, 1206 n 2, 1221 n, 1227  
n 4, 1232 n 2, 1243 n, 1246 n 5,  
1256 n 6, 1262 n,—app. xx.  
Rausat-uz-Zāhirin, the,—name of  
a book, xvi, 306 n 2, 423 n 8, 451  
n 6.  
Ravenstein, 909 n 1.  
Raverty, Major, lii, 718 n, 1021 n 6,  
—app. xiii, xiv, xvi, xix, xxiv.  
Rayḡān, application of the term,  
694 n 4.  
Rayḡān, 'Imād-ud-Din. See under  
'Imād-ud-Din Rayḡān.  
Rayḡānī, signification of the term,  
820 n 9.  
Rasūn Mūrī, —ancestor of Tāhir  
ibn-al-Ḥusain, 9.  
Rāqī Bī'illāh, ar., the 'Abbāsī Khali-  
fah, 27, 55 n 1.  
Rāqī-ul-Mulk, 'Izz-ud-Din Durma-  
ghī [Darmaghānī],—one of the

- Malik** of Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Dīn Maḥmūd Shāh of Dihlī, 697 and  $\pi$  6 and  $\pi$  6.
- Raṣī-ul-Mulk Tirmisī**, who became the director of the affairs of Ghazna at the time of the Mughal invasion, 1015  $\pi$ , 1016.
- Raṣīyyah**, Sultān, daughter of Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn Iyāl-Tīmish of Dihlī, xxvi, 624  $\pi$ , 625, 631  $\pi$  4 and 9, 632  $\pi$  5, 633  $\pi$  7, 635 and  $\pi$  9, 636, 637 and  $\pi$  8, 638  $\pi$  1, 639  $\pi$  7 and 8, 640 and  $\pi$  1 and 2, 641 and  $\pi$  8, 643 and  $\pi$  4, 644 and  $\pi$  and  $\pi$  7, 645 and  $\pi$  and  $\pi$  9 and 3, 646, 647 and  $\pi$  9, 648 and  $\pi$  3, 3 and 5, 649, 651  $\pi$  7, 652, 656  $\pi$ , 669  $\pi$  8, 726 and  $\pi$  3, 731  $\pi$  9, 735, 737, 743, 745, 746, 748, 749  $\pi$  and  $\pi$  1 and 3, 750 and  $\pi$  9, 752, 753, 754, 761, 767, 779, 780, 782  $\pi$  3, 790, 796, 806, 818  $\pi$  5, 860  $\pi$ , 884  $\pi$ , 1129 and  $\pi$  1, 1153  $\pi$  9, 1224  $\pi$ , 1265.
- Re-bāl** or Ban-bāl, a Hindū Chief in the Koh-i-Jūd, 482  $\pi$ , 484  $\pi$ . See also under Rāo-sāl.
- Reinaud**, 1046  $\pi$  8.
- Reiske's Geography of Abu'l Fida**, 94  $\pi$  2.
- Remusat**, 912  $\pi$  9.
- Rennel**, 585  $\pi$  6, 588  $\pi$ .
- Retrospect of Mahomedan History**, Price's, 584  $\pi$  2.
- Reynold**, 73  $\pi$  7, 76  $\pi$  2, 87  $\pi$ .
- Riāz-ṣ-Ṣalāṭīn**, name of a historical work, 777  $\pi$ .
- Richard Cœur-de-Lion**, xlvii, 220  $\pi$  3, 225  $\pi$ , 470  $\pi$ .
- Rion**, Prof., vi, viii, xvi, 326  $\pi$ ,—app. xv.
- Ripkāwar** b. Sākurah, son of Tāg, —ancestor of Zubāk, the Tāst, 208  $\pi$  7.
- Risālah-i-Bahā'iah**, the,—of Fakhr-ud-Dīn Muḥammad, Riṣī, 429.
- Ritter**, 622  $\pi$ , 916  $\pi$ .
- Risā**, Imām, descendant of 'Alī b. Abī Tālib and one of the twelve Imāms of the Shī'ah, 11  $\pi$  9.
- Risā**, ar., title of Nūh b. Maṣṣār son of Nūh, son of Naṣr Sāmānī, 44  $\pi$  9.
- Romans**, the, 135 and  $\pi$  3, 136  $\pi$ , 139  $\pi$ , 672  $\pi$ . See also under the Rūms.
- Romanus** [Armēnūs the Kaṣar of Rūm], 134  $\pi$  9, 136  $\pi$ .
- Royal Asiatic Society**, Transactions of the, 601  $\pi$ .
- Rubruquis**, 900  $\pi$  and  $\pi$  2, 1078  $\pi$  8, 1080  $\pi$  4, 1110  $\pi$  7, 1140  $\pi$ , 1157  $\pi$  9, 1161  $\pi$  4, 1162  $\pi$ , 1165  $\pi$ , 1168  $\pi$ , 1173  $\pi$  1, 1185  $\pi$ , 1226  $\pi$ , 1267  $\pi$  6, 1290  $\pi$  9 and 1, 1291  $\pi$  2.
- Rūdaki**, Farīd-ud-Dīn, Abū 'Abdullāh Muḥammad, the famous poet, 153  $\pi$  7.
- Rukn-ud-Daulah**, Abū 'Alī-i-Ḥasan, son of Buwaih, son of Fanā Khurau, Dīlāmī, second of the dynasty, 55  $\pi$  1, 57, 59, 61  $\pi$  4, 62  $\pi$  6.
- Rukn-ud-Dīn**, Abū-Bikr, the Karat, Malik,—the maternal grandfather of Malik Shams-ud-Dīn Muḥammad, founder of the Karat dynasty, 1181  $\pi$  2, 1203  $\pi$ . Same as Rukn-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Abū Bikr the Maraghani.
- Rukn-ud-Dīn** Abū' Muṣaffar Bar-kīrūk, son of Sultān Malik Shāh, Saljūki, 143  $\pi$  2. See under Bar-



- kürük. Rukn-ud-Din Abu'l Muqaffar.**
- Rukn-ud-Din b. 'Ala-ud-Din Muhammad, 392.**
- Rukn-ud-Din 'Alī b. Ibrāhīm, of Nighāpūr, the Kāsi-i-Mamālik, 1035 n.**
- Rukn-ud-Din Firūs Shāh, Malik, b. Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Din Maḥmūd Shāh, son of Shams-ud-Din Iyāl-Tīmish, of Dihli, 672, 695, 827 n 8.**
- Rukn-ud-Din Firūz Shāh, Sultān b. Sultān Shams-ud-Din Iyāl-Tīmish of Dihli, 625, 630 and n 2, 631, 632, 633 and n 6 and 8, 634 and n 9, 635 and n 9, 636, 638 n 1, 667 n, 670 n 1, 703 n 9.**
- Rukn-ud-Din Ghūrī Shānastī b. Sultān 'Ala-ud-Din Muhammad -i Takāsh Khwārasm Shāh, 235, 266 and n, 273 n, 275 n, 276 n 6, 281 and n 5, 282 and n, 281, 399 n 6, 940 n, 992, 1075 n. See also under Ghūrī Shānastī**
- Rukn-ud-Din Hamaah, Kiyām-ul Mulk, the Sadr-i-Kabir,—Kāri of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Din Muhammad-i-Sām, of Ghūr, 466 n 1, 469 n 3, 517 n.**
- Rukn-ud-Din Hamaah-i-'Abd-ul-Malik,—one of the Maliks of Sultān Shams-ud-Din Iyāl-Tīmish, of Dihli, 626**
- Rukn-ud-Din Khār Shāh, son of 'Ala-ud-Din Maḥmūd,—the last of the Muhiyudah rulers of Alamūt, 706 n 3, 1148 n, 1206 n 1 and 3, 1207 n, 1208 n, 1209 n, 1210 n, 1211 n, 1212 n, 1221 n, 1276 n, 1279 n.**
- Rukn-ud-Din Kulij Arsalān [called Sulimān by some] b. Ghiyās-ud-Din Kai Khurasan,—XIIth of the Seljūkiyah dynasty of Rūm, 163 n 5, 164, 1151 n, 1152 n, 1195 n, 1232 n.**
- Rukn-ud-Din Maḥmūd, son of Yamin-ud-Din Bahrām Shāh, grandson of Taj-ud-Din-i-Harab, Malik of Sijistān and Nimroz, 197 and n 7 and 8, 198.**
- Rukn-ud-Din Maḥmūd Khān b. Muhammad-i-Arsalān Khān, the Afrasiyābi. See under Maḥmūd Khān b. Muhammad-i-Arsalān Khān.**
- Rukn-ud-Din Mubārak-i-Khwājah Jūk, son of Burūk, the Hājib,—sovereign of Kirmān, under the vassalage of the Mughals, 1119 n.**
- Rukn-ud-Din Muhammad-i-Abi Bīkr, the Maraghani, Malik, 1037 n, 1039 n 7, 1042 n 6, 1049 n 2, 1052, 1064 n, 1199 n, 1200 n. Same as Rukn-ud-Din Abū Bīkr, the Kurat**
- Rukn-ud-Din Muhammad-i-Uṣmā, the Maraghani, Malik,—chief of Khānsār of Ghūr and father of Shams-ud-Din Muhammad, founder of the Kurat dynasty, xxiv, xxv, xlvii, 201, 223, 967 and n 3, 1039, 1061 and n 1, 1198 and n 8, 1199 n, 1200 n, 1201 n, 1203, 1204, 1205**
- Rukn-ud-Din Sulimān b. Ghiyās-ud-Din Kai Khurasan. See Rukn-ud-Din Kulij Arsalān**
- Rukn-ud-Din Sūr, of Kidān,—one of the Maliks of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Din Muhammad-i-Sām, of Ghūr, 491 and n 7.**
- Rukn-ud-Din, title of Tughril Beg, son of Mikā'il, son of Saljūk, 136 n.**

Rūmī dynasty of the Saljūks, the, 157 and n 4, 158, 235 n.  
 Rūmīān, the, 872 n. See also under the Romans.  
 Rūmīs, the, xxxiii, 139 n. See also under the Romans.  
 Rūms, the, 69 n, 211 n 7, 226. See also under the Romans.  
 Rūs, the, 870 n, 999 n, 1103 n, 1151 n, 1169 and n 2, 1170 n. See also under the Russians.  
 Rūs, fifth son of Yāfiṣ [Japheth],—from whom the Russians are descended, 870 n, 871 n, 887 n.  
 Rū-ghed b. Manūghīhr,—ancestor of Tāhir ibn al-Ḥusain, 9  
 Rūsīāns, the See under the Russians and also under the Rūs

Ramians, the, 474 n 5, 870 n, 871 n, 929 n, 981 n, 999 n, 1000 n, 1051 n, 1171 n. See also under the Rūs.  
 Rustāk, signification of the word, 927 n.  
 Rustam-i-Dastān or  
 Rustam-i-Zāl,—the famous hero of ancient Irān, 3, 91, 184 n, 285 n 3, 308 n 2, 318, 422 and n 7, 480, 471 n 5, 510 n, 561 n 9, 681, 721, 972 n, 1135, 1234,—app xxi.  
 Rustam b. as-Saddīd, ancestor of Tāhir ibn al-Ḥusain, 9.  
 Ruzak b. Mūhān-i-Ḥazā'ī, ancestor of Tāhir ibn al-Ḥusain, 9 n 1.  
 Ruzdan, daughter of Queen Thamar, sovereign of Georgia, 1001 n.  
 Ruzutan See the above.

## S.

Salā, the 'Arab tribes of, 613 n 2.  
 Sāban-tar [Sāwan-tara], leader of the forces of Jāy-nagar, 768.  
 Sabtāh al-Ḥimyarī, as,—of the Tabābī'ah dynasty of Yaman, 7, 187 n 7  
 Šābi-i-Dabir [the Secretary], author of the Kitāb-i-Nāji, 60 and n 7.  
 Sabit b. Sinān, son of Šābit b. Ḳarraḥ, surnamed Abū Ḳarraḥ as-Šābi, 60 n 7. See the above.  
 Sabtāo, the Nūyīn, 276 n. See under Swidāo, the Bahādur.  
 Sabak-Tigin, founder of the Ghasnawīyah dynasty, xxxii n 2, xxxiii, xiv, 1, 27, 41 n, 45 n 8, 46 and n 1, 2 and 4, 47, 48 and n 3 and 4, 49, 51 n 5, 61, 62, 67, 68, 69 and n, 70 and n 8, 71, 72 n 6, 73 and n 7 and 9, 74 and n and n 2

and 3, 75 and n, 76, 80 n 5, 84 n 8, 105 n, 115, 232 n, 320 and n 3, 324 n, 329, 435, 509 n, 552 n 4, 1016 n 3,—app xviii.  
 Sa'd b. Zangī, son of Maudūd, the Atā-bak,—ruler of Fārs under the Saljūk sovereigns, 148, 172, 176 and n 1, 177 and n 6, 178 and n 7, 179, 265, 266 n, 268 n 9, 296 n and n 6, 396 n.  
 Sa'd-ud-Daulah, the Shāhnaḥ or agent of Alb-Armalān-i-Ḥāsi, son of Dā'ūd-i-Jeghar Beg, the Saljūki, at Baghdād, 134 n 9.  
 Sa'd-ud-Din Abū Bīkr the Salghūri, Atā-bak, ruler of Fārs, 1202 n. See under Abū Bīkr b. Sa'd b. Zangī  
 Sa'd-ud-Din Gardāisi, Kāqī,—one of the Court Kāzīs of Sulṭān

- Shams-ud-Din I-yal-Timish**, of Dihli, 628.
- Se'd-ud-Din Tirmizi**, **Khawjah**,—defender of Hirat against the **Khwarazmis**, 288.
- Sedaks** or Hundreds,—one of the four degrees of Mughals, 948 n.
- Sadakhah**,—one of the officers of Malik Shah, son of Rukn-ud-Din Barkiaruk, the Saljuqi sovereign, 145 n 4.
- Saddid b. Dostan**, *ap.*, ancestor of Tahir ibn ul-Husain, 9.
- Sa'di**, **Shaykh**, author of the *Gulistan*, 179 n 1, 407 n 8.
- Sa'di** the Jushi,—one of the *Nayims* of the **Chingiz Khan**, 1006, 1047, 1051, 1053 and n 9.
- Sadd ud-Din Yusuf b. Nutahtar**,—one of the *Sayyids* [**Shi'ahs**] of Hilla, 1242 n 2.
- Sadr-i-Jahan**, a title given to Minhaj-i Saraj, by Sultan Nafir-ud-Din Mahmud Shah, of Dihli, xviii, 695 and n 8.
- Sadr-i-Jahan**, application of the title in Akbar's reign, 696 n 8.
- Sadr-i-Jahan** of Bukhara, the, 601 n 8.
- Sadr Jahan Mufti**,—*app* xxi.
- Sadr-ud-Din**,—one of the chief men of Rukn-ud-Din **Khar Shah**, Bakhsh of the Mulkbidah of Alamut, 1208 n.
- Sadr-ud-Din**, the Tabrizi, Malik,—commander of the Tataric toman of the Mughal troops, 1260 n 5, 1281 n.
- Sadr-ud-Din 'Ali Haiman**, the Figh-puri, Imam, of the sect of the Kuramis and the head of the Afghan college, 385.
- Sadr-ud Din Mas'ud**, Barawi, Wazir of Sultan 'Ala-ud-Din Tukish, son of I-yal-Arsalan **Khwarazm Shah**, 251 n 1.
- Sadr-ul-Mulk**, the Sayyid, Taj-ud-Din 'Ali, Musawi, the Mushrif-i-Mamalik of Dihli, 652 and n 1, 658 and n 8, 654 n, 663, 711. See also under Taj-ud-Din, 'Ali, Musawi.
- Sadsin**, son of Yafiq [Japheth], son of Nuh [Noah], 870 n.
- Safaqtan**, of the Turkish tribe of Yamak, father of Qadr **Khan** of Turkistan, xviii, 961 n, 968 n 8, 1097 and n 6. His Musalmun name was Yusuf.
- Safah-i-Mahyarah**, the,—the most sacred place within a Masjid, 976 n.
- Safi**, an officer of the 'Abbasi **Khalifah** al-Mu'tasid, 32 n.
- Safi** or **Sabi**, the Historian. See under Sabat b. Sinan.
- Safi-ud Din Mahmud**, **Khawjah**,—one of the Wazirs of Sultan Ghiyath-ud-Din Muhammad-i-Sam, of Ghur, 388, 390.
- Saghalsu**,—a word attached to the name of Malik Nasrat-ud-Din Sher **Khan**, Samkar, which see, 969 and n 3.
- Saghnak Tegin**, son of Uzar, the Kanakuli, the chief of Almaligh, 969 n 1, 966 n.
- Sag-lab** [**Saklab**], fourth son of Yafiq [Japheth], 870 n, 871 n.
- Sahib**, *ap.*, title of ibn-i-'Abbād,—Wazir of Fakhr-ud-Daulah, Abu'l-Hasan-i-Buwah, 48 n 4.
- Sahind** or **Samind**, son of Sifandasp, descendant of Zabak, the Tatar, 806.

- Sāhrah b. Tājs**,—ancestor of **Ẓāḥk** the **Tāsi**, 303 n. 7.
- Sahūdāh**, the **Bahādur**. See under **Swiddā**, the **Bahādur**.
- Saḥbī b. Altān Tāh-i-Khwarasm Shāh**, the **Hājib** of **Sultān Maḥmūd of Ghazni**, 131 n.
- Sa'id Bādghaisi**,—one of the chief men among the weavers of **Hirāt**, 1127 n.
- Sa'id**, son of the **Khalifah 'Ugmān b. 'Affān**, 1268 n. 8.
- Saif b. Ẓi-Yazan**,—of the **Tabābi'ah** of **Yaman**, 8. [Justin, 1301 n.
- Saif-ud-Din**,—the **Malik** of **Ghar**.
- Saif-ud-Din**, **Malik**,—one of the **Amīrs** of **Ghūr**, 1070.
- Saif-ud-Din**, the **Bākhursi**, **Shankh**,—a **Muḥammadae** saint, 1181 n., 1347.
- Saif-ud-Din** the **Batik-chi**,—an army officer of **Halikā Khān**, son of **Tāli**, son of the **Chingiz Khān**, 1308 n.
- Saif-ud-Din al-Kamari** or **al-Kamiri**,—one of the **Amīrs** of **Malik-un-Nasir**, the ruler of **Halab** and **Shām**, 1267 n. 6.
- Saif-ud-Din Abū Bīkr b. Malik-ul-Kamil**, son of **Malik-ul-'Adil Saif-ud-Din Abū Bīkr-i-Muḥammad al-Aiyūbi**,—his father's **Lieutenant** in the **Diār-i-Misriah**, 228 n. 4.
- Saif-ud-Din Abū Bīkr-i-Muḥammad b. Aiyūb**, son of **Shadi**, **al-Kurdi**, the **Malik-ul-'Adil**. See under **Malik-ul-'Adil Saif-ud-Din**.
- Saif-ud-Din Aḡā**,—the **Wazir** and **Secretary** of the **Province** of **Tus**, 1196 n.
- Saif-ud-Din Askali** or **Arkali**,—a horseman of the **Malik-ul-Kamil**, of **Shām**, 1272 n. 5.
- Saif-ud-Din Baṭ Khān-i-Ibak**, the **Khān-i**, **Malik** of **Kuhram**,—one of the **Maliks** of **Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Din Maḥmūd Shāh**, of **Dihli**, 1xi, 673, 699, 706, 757, 768 and n. 9, 830, 832, 833, 848 n.
- Saif-ud-Din Ghāsi**, son of **'Imād-ud-Din Zangī**, ruler of **Manṣūr**, 304 n., 306 n. 7, 307 n. 8.
- Saif-ud-Din Hisan** the **Karlogh**, **Malik**,—governor of **Maltān**, 633 n. 6, 644 n. 7, 645 n., 668 n., 689 n., 730, 781 and n. 8 and 2, 782 and n. 3, 1074 n. 9, 1108 n. 1, 1119, 1128 and n., 1129 and n. 1, 1130 n., 1131 and n., 1153, 1154 n. 1, 1201 n.
- Saif-ud-Din Ibak**, the **Shamsi**, the chief **Dād-Bak**,—one of the **Maliks** of **Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Din Maḥmūd Shāh** of **Dihli**, 673 n. 6, 786, 789 and n. 3, 790.
- Saif-ud-Din Ibak-i-Balkā Khān**, **Sarā'i**,—one of the **Maliks** of **Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Din Maḥmūd Shāh** of **Dihli**, 673, 749, 774 n.
- Saif-ud-Din Ibak-i-Bihak**, the **Kut-Ing** **Khān**,—commander of the army under **Sultān Rāṣṣiyah**, daughter of **Sultān Shams-ud-Din I-yal-Timur** of **Dihli**, 641.
- Saif-ud-Din Ibak-i-Kashli Khān** **Mubarak** : **Barbak**,—one of the **Maliks** of **Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Din Maḥmūd Shāh** of **Dihli**, 674, 685 n. 4, 694 and n. 3, 702, 709 n., 713 and n. 2, 778 n., 781 n. 9, 795 and n. 2, 796, 798, 799 n. 4, 802, 820, 827, 840, 841, 847 n. 9.
- Saif-ud-Din Ibak-i-Coghghah**, **Malik**,—one of the **Maliks** in **Hand** of **Sul**.

- the Shams-ud-Din I-yal-Timish, of Dihli, 617 n 5, 633 n 6, 729, 730, 731.
- Saif-ud-Din Ibak-i-Yughān-Tat, the Khiti-i Turk,—one of the Maliks in Hind of Sultān Shams-ud-Din I-yal-Timish of Dihli, 618 n, 731, 732 and n 1, 736, 744, 762 n 9, 770 n 9, 771 n, 774 n, 778 n, 866 n.
- Saif-ud-Din Ighrāk, Malik of the I-ghūre,—who joined Sultān Jalāl-ud-Din Khwārasm Shāh in the early part of his campaign against the Mughals, 287 n 9, 289 n, 290 n, 291 n 3, 409 n 6, 540 n, 1015 n, 1019 n, 1020 n, 1021 n 8, 1022 n, 1023 n, 1129 n 1.
- Saif-ud-Din Kudus, the Turkmin,—Amir-ul-Umarā of Mīr, who under the title of Malik-ul-Muṣaffar, usurped the sovereignty of that country, 1276 n, 1277 n, 1282 n.
- Saif-ud-Din Kuji, Malik, feudatory of Hansi,—one of the Maliks of Sultān Shams-ud-Din I-yal Timish, of Dihli, 633, 634, 639 640, 726, 735, 779.
- Saif-ud-Din Muḥammad, son of Saltān 'Alā-ud-Din al-Husain, XVth of the Ghaurabāniyah dynasty of Ghūr, 361, 365, 366, 367, 368 and n, 369, 370, 371, 375 n, 377 n 4, 413 n 1, 446, 447.
- Saif-ud-Din Sadiq Khān b Mangūṭā or Mangūṭā, Malik,—one of the Sardars of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Din Khwārasm Shāh, 1270 n.
- Saif-ud-Din Sūri b 'Isa-ud-Din al-Husain Ghuri, Sultān, 1st of the Shansabāniyah dynasty of Ghazna, 112 n 5, 113 n, 149 n 2, 316 n 9, 327, 336 n 1 and 2, 339, 340, 341 and n 7, 342, 343 and n 2 and 3, 347 n 2, 348 and n, 349 n, 350 n, 351 n, 353 n 5, 354, 355, 356 n, 358 n 2, 423 n 5, 428, 429 and n 3 and 4, 440, 441, 442 and n, 443 n, 445, 446 n 3.
- Saif-ud-Din Sūri, son of Shihāb-ud-Din Muḥammad Kharnak, son of 'Isa-ud-Din al-Husain Ghuri, Malik, 344, 472 n, 496 n 1.
- Saif-ud-Din Timrāni, the Khudāwand-Zādeh,—one of the Amirs of Ghūr, 395.
- Saif-ul-Islām, Malik-ul-'Asis, Zahir-ud-Din, son of Aiyūb, son of Shādi al-Kurdī, 208 and n 9.
- Sā'in Khān, the,—title of Bātū, son of Tuchī, son of the Changis Khān, 1165 n.
- St John, the Baptist, 1253 n 4.
- St. John, the Evangelist, 1161 n 1.
- St John, Major, 991 n, 1119 n, 1207 n.
- St Louis, 895 n, 896 n.
- St Petersburg's Journal, the, 72 n 6.
- Sair-ul-Bilād, the,—a Persian translation of the Asār-ul-Bilād, an Arabic geographical work, xvi.
- Sajan b Murzabān b Hariz, of the Tabābā'ah of Yaman, 8.
- Sāyukah. See under Simūkāl, the Bahādur.
- Saklāb or Saklāb, the fourth of the eight sons of Yāfi [Japheth], 870 n, 871 n, 886 n.
- Saklāb or Saklāb, the,—descendants of Saklāb, son of Yāfi [Japheth], 870 n, 872 n, 1032 n.
- The Slavs or Slavs of Europeans.
- Saknāk, son of Tuchī, son of the Chuguz Khān 1166 n.

- Saktār, the Nū-yin,—one of the Nū-yins of the Chingiz Khān, 972 n, 975 n 5.
- Sakya-muni, the Buddha,—story of his incarnation, 892 n.
- Salāh-ud-Din, the Nisā-i, Kotnāl [Seneschal] of the city of Chanzun,—under Sultān Muhammad Khwārazm Shāh, 1013, 1014 and n 2, 1015 n.
- Salāh-ud-Din Khalīl, son of Malik al-Kāmil Nāṣir-ud-Din,—the last of the Aiyūbi dynasty in Egypt, 1275 n 3.
- Salāh-ud-Din Yūsuf, son of Aiyūb b Shādī-al-Kurdī, Sultān,—Vth of the Kurdish Mahks of Shām, 101 n 8, 204 n, 205 nn 4 and 6, 206 and n 7, 207 and n 8, 208 n and nn 9 and 1, 209 n 6, 210 and n, 211, 212 n, 213 and n, 214 n and nn 6 and 8, 215 and n 9, 216 and nn 3 and 4, 217 and n 21 n and n 6, 216 and n 9, 220 and nn 1 and 3, 221 n and nn 6 and 7, 222 and n and n 8, 224 and n 8, 225 n 229 n 5, 470 n, 1265 n 9, 1267 n 6.
- Sālār Zaffar. See under Zaffar, the Sālār.
- Sale, General Sir B., 97 n.
- Sale's, "Defence of Jalālābād," 231 n 1, 1012 n 4, 1025 n [19, 833 n 3.
- Sale's Kur'an, 365 n 3, 646 n 7, 820.
- Salghāu Khātūn,—daughter of Chaghatai Khan, son of the Chingiz Khān, 114 n 4, 1211 n.
- Salghur, the Turkman Chief,—progenitor of the Atā-baks of Fars, 174 n.
- Salghur Shāh, son of the Atā-bak Sa'd b Zangī, ruler of Fars, 295 n 6.
- Salghur Sultān, Abū Bīkr-i-Sa'd, ruler of Fars, 1118 n 9. See under the Atā-bak Abū-Bīkr b. Sa'd b. Zangī.
- Sālī Sārī or Sālīn, a Tattār tribe, 1135 n 5.
- Sālī, the Nūyin. See under Sālīn the Tattār Nūyin.
- Sāhib, Khwājeh, the Kot-wāl [Seneschal], deputy of Hindū Khān Muktār-i Mubārak in the fort of Chahab, 1163 and n 9.
- Sāhib-i Ismā'il, Malik, b Badr-ud-Din Abū'l-Faṣā'il i-Lūtū, ruler of Maugūl, 1247 n, 1263 n 8, 1264 n, 1270 n 5, 1281 n, 1283 n.
- Sāhib b Darhim, governor of Sijistan, 19 n 1, 22 n 6.
- Sāhib al-Nār, Kanānī,—governor of Nizār under the Talmis, 10 and n 1, 21.
- Salim, Sultan, first of that name, of the 'Ummahī sovereigns,—deposes the last 'Abbasī Khālifah in Egypt, 1290 n.
- Salim [Isam] Shāh, Sur, ruler of Dabī, 311 n.
- Saln. See or Sārī, the Tattār Nūyin,—one of the Nū-yins of Mangū-Ka-an, son of Tūti, son of the Chingiz Khān, 711 and n 4, 786 n 6, 740 n 1, 844 and n 8, 850 n 2, 862, 1135 n 5, 1191 n, 1201 n, 1202 n, 1235 n, 1243 n 4.
- Saljūq tribe of Mughals, the,—descendants of the second of the Nūrin sons of Alan-Kawā, 863 n, 849 n, 941 n.
- Saljūq b. Luṭmān, the Turkman, founder of the Saljūqī dynasty, 85, 116 and n 3, 117 n, 118 and n, 120, 903 n, 914 n.

Saljūk dynasty of Irāk, the, 160 n, 166, 167 n 8.

Saljūk dynasty of Kirmān, the, 98 n 8, 138 n 8, 158 n, 167 n 8.

Saljūk dynasty of Rūm, the, 157 and n 4, 158 n, 164 n 7, 166 n 2, 235 n, 1237 n 4.

Saljūk dynasty of Shām, the, 144 n 8, 167 n 8.

Saljūk: Shāh, son of Maḥmūd b Muḥammad b. Malik Shāh, Saljūki, 207 n 8.

Saljūk Turkmāna, the, 1028 n.

Saljūki Sultāna, the, 108 n, 126 n 2, 182 n 9, 145 n 4, 167 n 2, 168 n 2, 172 n 8, 189 n 8, 208, 234 n 8, 235, 236 and n 4.

Saljūka, the, vii, xxxiii, 68 n 7, 93 n 8, 94, 96 n 1, 98 and n 8, 100, 102 n 1, 104 n 1, 106 n, 108 n 5, 116 n 8, 117 n, 119 n n 7 and 8, 120 and n 1, 121 and n, 122 and n n 8 and 3, 123 n, 124 and n and n 4, 125 and n n 6 and 8, 126 n n 2 and 3, 127, 129 and n and n 2 and 3, 130, 131 and n 7, 132 n 9, 138 n 8, 141 n, 167 and n 4, 167 n 8, 172 n 3, 174 n, 184 n, 185, 232 n, 236, 244 n, 252 n 4, 274 n 5, 476 n 6, 867 n, 891 n, 901 n, 903, 905 n, 1006 n 5, 1009 n, 1239 n, 1249 n.

Salm b. Afrīdūn, sovereign of Ī rān, 208 and n 2.

Sal-Timish.—a Turkish name,—app xi.

Sām, the Serhang [standard-bearer],—an army officer of Sultān Muḥammad Khwīrazm Shāh, 1008, 1025 n 3.

Sām b. Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn Maḥmūd, Sultān of Qhūr. See under his title of Bahā-ud-Dīn.

Sām b. Ḥasan b. Muḥammad-i-Sūrī the chief of Qhūr, 222 n, 233 n 6.

Sām b. 'Isa-ud-Dīn al-Ḥusain, Sultān of Qhūr. See under his title of Bahā-ud-Dīn.

Sām b. Narīmān, grandfather of Rustam-i-Zāl, 309 n, 510 n, 972 n.

Sām [Shem], son of Nūḥ [Noah] 6, 170 n 8, 208 and n 7, 204.

Sām b. Ḥama-ud-Dīn Muḥammad Bāmīni. See under his title of Bahā-ud-Dīn.

Sām, the Sipah-sālār, son of Ṣaḥāb the Tāzi, 207.

Sāmān-i-Khaddāt, founder of the Sāmānī dynasty, 26 and n 3, 27, 28, 29, 53 n n 3 and 8.

Sāmānīa, dynasty of the, xxviii, 25 n 2, 26, 27 and n 6, 28, 29 and n 9, 31 n 3, 32 n, 42, 50 n 2, 51 and n 6, 52 and n 1, 53 and n, 55 n 1, 63, 71 n n 4 and 5, 72 n 6, 73 n 7, 74, 75 n, 80 n, 81 n, 84 n 9, 118, 232 n, 241 n 6, 291 n, 295 n, 296 n, 922 n.

Sāmānīa, Genealogical tree of the, 53.

Samarai, the Rājput Prince of Cheetore, 520 n.

Sāmīrosh, ruler of the descendants of Ḳābil and Nabaṭī, the sons of Adam, 3.

Samoydea, the,—the peoples inhabiting Northern Russia, who probably are the descendants of Yayuj and Mājūj, 872 n.

Samān-ud-Daulah Marzabān, son of 'Uṣd-ud-Daulah Fanā Khusrāw, of the Buwīah dynasty, 57, 64 and n 1, 65.

Samān-ud-Dīn of Farghānah, a soldier in the service of Muham-

- mad-i-Bakhtiyār, the *Khālī*, 552 and n. 8.
- Šimūkh Bahādur, the Šāljiūt, —one of the Nū-yins of the Qhngis *Khān*, 958 n.
- Sanbēghī, the Hājib. See under Subāghī, the Hājib-i-Buzurg.
- Sandera, Captain, 1052 n. 5
- Sang-i-Yadah, the rain-producing stone, 870 n., 941 n.
- Sangar *Khān*, the Janghūbah. See under Sankar *Khān*.
- Sangar *Khān*, Kailūki. See under Sunkar *Khān*.
- Sangkūr, the Nū-yin, —one of the Nū-yins of Hulūkū *Khān*, son of Tūhī, son of the Qhngis *Khān*, 1033 n.
- Sengün, also styled Shangün, son of the Awang *Khān*, 941 n., 942 n., 944 n.
- Senjan Rāo, author of a historical work, 85 n.
- Sanjar, Sultān, son of Malik *Shāh*, son of Alb-Aralān-i-Ghāsi, Saljūki, 105 n., 107, 108 and n. 5, 109 and n. 8, 110 and n. 1, 111 and n. 2, 112 n. 3, 139 n., 143 n. 2, 144 n. and n. 3, 146 and nn. 5, 6 and 7, 147 and n. 8, 148 and nn. 4 and 5, 149 and n. 2, 150, 151 and n. 6, 152, 153 and n. 7, 154 and n. 2, 155 n. and n. 3 and 6, 156 and n. 8, 157 and n. 1, 2 and 3, 158 n., 159 and n., 163 and n. 6, 166 n., 168 and n. 2, 169 and n. 7, 170, 171 and n. 2, 173 and n. 5, 174 and n., 180 and n. 7, 181 n., 187 and n. 4, 188, 189, 204 and n., 206, 223 n., 234 n. 8, 236 nn. 4, 5 and 6, 237 n. and nn. 7 and 8, 238 n. and nn. 3, 5 and 8, 239 and n., 242, 260 n. 7, 261, 264 n., 296 n., 323 n. 6, 336 and n. 4, 337, 342, 344, 347 n. 2, 348 n., 349 n., 350 n., 357 and n. 7, 366 and nn. 2 and 3, 359 and n., 360, 361 and n. 7, 362, 368 n. 8, 364, 374 and n. 5, 375 n., 378 n. 3, 436 n. 4, 427, 439 n. 4, 600 n. 4, 806 n., 907 n. 908 n., 900 and n., 910, 911 and n. 7, 919 n., 923 n., 924 n., 935 n., 938 n., 1198 n. 8, 1244 n. 3.
- Sanjar Malik, the usurper of the government of Bahārā, 260 n. 7, 930 n.
- Sanjar *Shāh* b. Tughān *Shāh*, son of Mu-ayyid-i-A'inah-dār, —of the Sanjariyah Maliks of Nishāpūr, 182 and n. 1, 246 n. 8, 247 n., 250, 251 n. 9, 391 n. 3.
- Sanjari: [of Sultān Sanjar Saljūki] dynasty, the, 168, 203, 221, 245, 248, 250, 336 and n. 4, 367, 371, 424.
- Sanjārth, Malik of Bābil, [Sennacherib of biblical history], 2.
- Sanjariyah Maliks of Fārs, the, 173
- Sanjariyah Maliks of 'I-rāq and Āzarbaijan, the, 169 [180]
- Sanjariyah Maliks of Nishāpūr, the, Sanjūti, a friend of Kābal *Khān* son of Tūminā-i, chieftain of the Mughals, 267 n.
- Sankar or Sangar *Khān*, the Janghūbah, —chief of the Janghūbah, tribes of the Koh-i-Jūd, 1181 n.
- Sankghār, the Nū-yin, —one of the Nū-yins of the Qhngis *Khān*, 1020 n.
- Sankar b. Salghar, the Atā-bak, progenitor of the Atā-baks, of Fārs, 148, 162, 169 and n. 7, 173 and nn. 4 and 5, 174 n., 175 and n. 7. See also under Ak-Sankar b. 'Abdu'l-lah, the Hājib.



ak̄ar Shāh b. Sa'd b. Zangī, the Atā-bak of Fārs, 179.

ak̄ar or Sankur Tigis b. Maḥdād b. Zangī, the Atā-bak of Fārs, 174 n.

ak̄arāna, the, a sept of the Ghuzs tribe, 114 n, 377 n 6, 423 n 6, 460 and n 1, 461, 469 n.

anafah-at-Tarikh, the,—of Sābis, son of Sīnā, Abu Ḥarrāsh-Ḥabī, 30 n 7.

r Dāwat-Dār, [Head or Chief Ink bearer, or Chief Secretary], the, 1232 n. See Mujaḥhid-ud-Din I. ak, the Sar Dāwat Dār

—Jāndār [chief of the Jan dars or Guards].—title of a class of officers, xix, 370, 603 and n 7

āj ud-Din—Abu Bīkr, the Amir-Ḥajib,—one of the Maliks of Sultan Mu'izz ud Din Muḥam mad i-Sam, of Ghur, 483 n, 491 9

āj ud Din b. Muḥajj ud Din, 'Iḥbah-i-Zaman, father of the author, xix and n 1, xxi, xxii, 22, xli, 105, 102, 103 n 4, 211 83, 429 and n 4 and 6, 456, 469 3,—app v, xix

aj ud-Din 'Alā-i Kharūsh, Kharaj or Kharūsh, Malik.—one of the Maliks of Ghur, 1070 and 6, 1071.

ak̄hā, Abu'l Faṣl Muḥammad al-Ḥakīm, Imām,—author of the Maḥṭatah: k̄āfi, 38 and 5. 1501.

ak, Rao, Rājah of Sankarah, bang, signification of the word, 61 and n 7

ak, Sali or Sālin, a Tattār tribe, 130 n 5.

Sāri, the Nū-yin. See under Sālin, the Tattār Nū-yin.

Sārīk or Sārigh,—a term applied to the Tājiks by the Turks, 679 n.

Sarkah, son of Kōkar, the chief of the Khokhara, 462 n, 464 n.

Sarligh Khān or

Sarsigh Khān,—one of the Sardars of Sultan Muḥammad Khwārazm Shāh, 978 n, 979 n.

Satis, the,—a term by which the Tājiks are styled, 678 r, 679 n.

Sarwari b. Shih Hūmam, son of the Ghur chief who settled among the Afghans, 510 n

Sāsaniān dynasty, the,—fourth of the five dynasties of 'Ajām, 1, 4. Sassanian coins, found in the city of Uk, 1123 n

Satuk-Karachar, or

Satuk Kujah, or Satuk Kujah, first of the Afghani Khāns of Turkistan,—becomes a convert to Islam and is known as Hazrat Satuk, 901 r, 902 n, 923 n

Sauri, the Sadr,—an officer of Hulaku Khān, executed by his order, 1296 n

Sawan tara or Suban-tar—leader of the forces of Jay-nagar, 763.

Sayyid 'Alā-ul-Mulk or 'Alā-ud-Din, of Tirmid, a lineal descendant of Imām Husain acknowledged as Khālfah by Sultan Muḥammad Khwārazm Shāh, 265 n 4, 266 n

Sayyid Ashraf the 'Alawi,—heads a rebellion in Samkand, 501 n

Sayyid Hasan, a celebrated poet of Ghazni 109

Sayyid Saḥab Bukhari,—a Muḥam

- madan saint, buried in Uchahah-i-Sharīf, 541 n 8.
- Sayyids, dynasty of the, in Dihlī, xii, 509 n, 511 n.
- Scandinavians, the,—their custom of presenting the cup or bowl, 1108 n.
- Schiefner, 1296 n.
- Schnyder, Mr Eugene, 917 n, 919 n, 1031 n.
- Slaves, the, 870 n See under the Saklūs
- Scythians, the, 750 n 7, 866 n, 887 n, 1013 n 1, 1076 n, 1091 n 7
- Sekuri, the,—a small tribe of the Afghān people, 181 n
- Semenof, M., 918 n
- Sen dynasty, of Gaur and Lakhawati, the, 559 n 2
- Sennacherib* (*Sennacherib*), the clay stamped annals of, 423 n 4
- Sergius, the monk,—an Armenian priest in the *urda* of Irtuk Būki, son of Tūli, son of the Chingiz-Khān, 1161 n 4, 1162 n.
- Serki or Sherki, son of Mangū Khān, son of Tūli, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1219 n, 1223 n.
- Shabānkārāh, the,—name of a people in Fārs, 174 n
- Shabāsī, usurper of the government of Hirāt, 37 n.
- Shabki Kotū,—one of the Nu-yins of the Chingiz Khān, 299 n See also under Shiki Kutūku
- Shaddād b 'Ad, King of the early 'Arabs, 303 n 7, 386 n 1
- Shaddād b. Zubāk, ancestor of Amir Banji, 312.
- Shādī b Marlān, the Kurdī, father of Aiyūb, the founder of the Aiyūbi dynasty of Shām, 207 n 8.
- Shāfi'i, Imām, Muhammad, son of Idris—founder of the Shāfi'i sect of Muhammadans, 182, 218 n, 227, 228 n 4, 394 and n 5, 385, 646.
- Shāfi'i Sect, the,—one of the four orthodox sects of Muhammadans, 284, 904 n.
- Shāh, Malik or Chief of Jund, 120, 121.
- Shāh b Ibrāhīm b Ardshir, the Shāh of Gharjistan, 263.
- Shāh-i-Jahān or Shāh Jahān, fifth Mughal emperor of Dihlī, ix, x, 631 n 6.
- Shāh-i-Zamān, daughter of the 'Abbāsī Khalifah at-Tā'i'-u-L'illah, —given in marriage to 'Izz-ud-Din Bakhtiyār, son of Mu'izz-ud-Daulah, Buwaih, Dilami, 61 n 1
- Shāh Husain, son of a chief of Ghūr, who settled among the Afghāns, —ancestor of the Ghazis, 337 n 6, 510 n
- Shāh Jalāl b. Kasim b. 'Abbās,— 'Abbās, the uncle of Muhammad, 1258 n 8.
- Shāh Kiyā b 'Alī-ud-Din Mahmūd, brother of Rukn-ud-Din Khūr Shāh, Bād-shāh of the Mulāshidāh of Alamūt, 1309 n
- Shāh Mahmūd, 200 n 8 See under Shihāb-ud-Din Mahmūd i-Harab.
- Shāh Malik, ruler of Khwārazm under Sultān Mas'ūd of Ghaznin, 232 n.
- Shāh Malik b Ya'qūb son of Laiz, Saffari, 36 n 9, 185 n
- Shāh Mir,—an officer of Hulākū Khān, son of Tūli, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1206 n 3
- Shāh Nūmah of 'Irdsai, the, 1, 721 n 3, 1058 n 5.

**Shāh Niẓām-ud-Dīn**, the Badā'uni,  
—a Muhammadan saint, 634 = 2.

**Shāh Rukh**, son of Timūr, Sulṭān,  
1038 = 1.

**Shāh Shujā'**, son of Shāh Jahān, the  
fifth Mughal emperor of Dillī,  
1627 = 1.

**Shāh Turkān**, mother of Rukn-ud-  
Dīn Firūz Shāh, son of Sulṭān  
Shams-ud-Dīn I-yal-Tīmish of  
Dillī, 630 and = 2, 632, 670 = 1.  
Also styled **Khudšwandah-i-Jahān**,  
**Shāh Turkān**.

**Shāh 'Ugmān**, grandson of Niẓir-  
ud-Dīn 'Ugmān-i-Harab, Malik of  
Sijistān and Nimroz, 199 and = 7,  
200 = 8, 201, 207 and = 3. Also  
styled **Nusrat-ud-Dīn 'Ugmān**.

**Shāh Wakhshī**,—one of the Malika  
of Sulṭān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Dīn Muḥam-  
mad-i-Sām Ghūrī, 390

**Shāh Zād b. Farrokh-Zād b. Mas'ūd-  
i-Karīm**, **Ghassawi**, 107.

**Shāh-an-shāh** [King of Kings],—a  
title first assumed by Bahrām, son  
of Bahrām, Vth of the Sāsānīan  
dynasty of 'Ajam, 4.

**Shāhan-Shāh b. 'Alī-ud-Dīn Mah-  
mūd**,—brother of Rukn-ud-Dīn  
**Khūr Shāh**, Bādshāh of the Muḥ-  
hidah of Alamūt, 1206 = 2, 1208 = 1.

**Shāhan-Shāh b. Bahrām Shāh**, **Ghas-  
sawi**, 111.

**Shāhan-Shāh**, **Nūr-ud-Daulah b. Abū  
Laghṭar-i-Aiyāb**, son of Shādi al-  
Kurdī, 206 and = 9, 219 = 9.

**Shahnah**, signification of the term,  
733 = 4.

**Shahrān-Shāh b. 'Alī-ud-Dīn Mah-  
mūd**,—brother of Rukn-ud-Dīn  
**Khūr Shāh**, Bādshāh of the Muḥ-  
hidah of Alamūt, 1208 = 1.

**Shahr-irīc** or

**Shahr-yār**, the Wasir of Arda-Shar,  
son of Sherwāsh,—he ascended  
the throne of the Akisirah by  
usurpation, 5, 1295.

**Shāhū Khel** tribe of Lādi, the,—a  
division of the Afghān nation, 510 = 1.

**Shāibān**, son of Tūghl [Jūji] Khān,  
son of the Qhāngiz Khān, 1102 =  
1105 = 1, 1165 = 1, 1166 = 1, 1170 = 1,  
1178 = 1, 1179 = 1.

**Shāibāni Khān**,—ancestor of Abū-l-  
**Qhāsi Bahādur Khān**, the histo-  
rian, 672 = 1.

**Shāid-isp b. Asar-nah**,—ancestor of  
Tāhir ibn al-Humayn, 2.

**Shāid-isp b. Sūmak**,—descendant of  
Zuḥr the Tāzi, 206.

**Shāikh Khān**,—an officer of Sulṭān  
Muḥammad **Khawāram Shāh**,  
1030 = 1 [901 = 1].

**Shāikh Najm-ud-Dīn**, the historian,  
**Shāikh-ul-Jibāl**, the, Chief of the  
Assassins,—title of Hasan-i-Shā-  
bāb, the head of the sect of Muḥ-  
hidah, 651 = 7, 1187 = 7, 1188 = 1.

**Shajarat-ul-Atrik**, of Abū'l **Qhāsi  
Bahādur Khān**, the, 648 = 2, 806 = 1,  
809 = 2, 804 = 1, 1056 = 7.

**Shaker Khātūn**, daughter of Hāc-  
Siras, Rājah of Sankarah,—adopt-  
ed by Sulṭān Firūz Shāh, the He-  
bahshī, 591 = 1.

**Shalmān**, the **Hitik-shī**,—secretary  
of Mangū Khān, son of Tūli, son  
of the Qhāngiz Khān, 1180 = 1,  
1184 = 1.

**Shālikh b. Arfakhshād b. Sām**  
[Shem], 6.

**Shalmānia**, the,—a Tsjuk race  
along the banks of the river of  
Kābul, 1043 = 1, 1044 = 1.

- Shaméd.** Shād or Shihād, son of Narimān b. Afrīkān, King of Irān, 306.
- Shamar** b. Afrīkān b. Abrahāb, the Ra'īsh, of the Tabābī'ah of Yaman, 7.
- Shamgīr** [Washmgīr], son of Ayār,—governor of Rai, 56. See also under Washmgīr.
- Shams**, Sultān,—one of the Jahān-gīriān Sultāns of Pagh, 1044 n.
- Shams Khān**,—one of the Sardārs of Sultān Muḥammad Khwārazm Shāh, 978 n, 979 n.
- Shams** Mahkah Khātūn, daughter of Sultān Tughrl Saljūki,—and wife, first of the Atā bek Yūbak of Aḥrābāyān and then of Sultān Jalāl-ud-dīn Khwārazm Shāh, 206 n, 297 n, 298 n.
- Shams-i-Sirī**,—author of the Tārīkh-i-Firūz Shāhi, xvi, 590 n, 692 n.
- Shamsiāh** [of Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn I-jal-Tīmūsh of Dihli] dynasty, the, 310 and n 5, 677 n 6, 698 n, 746, 746, 748, 789.
- Shams-ud-Daulah 'Alī**, son of Sharaf-ud-Daulah, son of 'Uḍ-ud-Daulah, Dīlami, 66 n 5.
- Shams-ud-Daulah**, the Ilak Khān of the Turks,—reconquers Māwarān Nahr, 915 n.
- Shams ud Daulah Turan Shāh**, son of Abu Lashkar-i-Aḥyab b. Shadī al-Kurdī See under his title of Malik ul Ma'asam.
- Shams-ud-Dīn**, Amīr of Yamīn-ud-Daulah Bahram Shān, son of Tāj-ud-Dīn-i Herab, Malik of Shustān and Nimroz, 196.
- Shams-ud-Dīn**, the 'Ajami', Khwā-jah, the Malik-ud-Tajār [Chief of the Merchants], 789 n 3, 790 and n 7.
- Shams-ud-Dīn**, the Ba'khi, Kāsi,—one of the Court Kāsi of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sām Ghūri, 489.
- Shams-ud-Dīn**, of Bhar'ij,—Kāsi of the Kingdom of Sultān Nasir-ud-Dīn Maḥmūd Shāh of Dihli, 694, 707, 708, 837.
- Shams-ud Dīn**, the Kaswini, Kāsi,—incites Mungī Kā'n against the Mulāshidāh, 1189, 1190 n 1, 1196.
- Shams-ud-Dīn**, the Maghrabi, Imām,—envoy of the Khalīfah of Baghdād to Nasir-ud-Dīn Maḥmūd Shāh, of Dihli, 1293.
- Shams-ud Dīn** of Mihir, Kāsi—put to death by Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Bahram Shāh of Dihli, 667 and n 4.
- Shams-ud-Dīn**, the Muḥtashim,—envoy of 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad, Bēdāshāh of the Mulāshidāh of Alamut, to the Kāritān of the Mughals, 1181 n.
- Shams-ud Dīn**, Kāsi,—governor of Sarakhs under the Mughals, 1030 n.
- Shams-ud-Dīn**, the Turk, Imām,—envoy of Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sām of Ghūr to the Court of the Khalīfah of Baghdād, xxii.
- Shams-ud-Dīn 'Alī**,—seneschal of the fort of Ša'ut in Gilān, 1029 n.
- Shams-ud-Dīn-i-Arghad**, Imām,—an ecclesiastic of the fortress of Kāwik, 426.

**Shams-ud-Din Hārīd**, the **Shāh-n-Iskām** of Marw, 1029 n.

**Shams-ud-Din Hasan-i-Ikhtiyār**, the **Mubtashim**,—governor of the Kūhistān, xrv, 1196, 1202, 1204, 1212, 1212.

**Shams-ud-Din Iyāl-Timish**, **Sultān** of Dīhlī, 210 n. See under I-yāl-Timish.

**Shams-ud-Din Khusrāw-Shāhī**, **Imām**,—one of the 'Ulamā of **Khurasān**, 1197.

**Shams-ud-Din Kidāni**, **Malik**,—one of the **Malik**s of **Sultān Ma'iss-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Sām**, of **Ghūr**, 460.

**Shams-ud-Din Mandūd**, son of **Malik-al-'Adil**, **Saif-ud-Din Abū Bīkr-i-Muḥammad al-Aiyābi**, 229 n. 5.

**Shams-ud-Din Muḥammad**, of **Bāmān**, **Sultān**, 242, 240. See under **Shams-ud-Din Muḥammad b. Fakhr-ud-Din Mas'ūd**.

**Shams-ud-Din Muḥammad**, the **Jūzjāni**,—one of the **Malik**s of **Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Takish Khwārazm Shāh**, 1003, 1036 n. 1, 1038 n.

**Shams-ud-Din Muḥammad**, son of **Bahā-ud-Din Sām**, son of 'Izz-ud-Din al-Husain, **Ghūrī**,—after his accession to the throne of **Ghūr** his title was changed to **Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din**, 370. See under **Sultān Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Sām Ghūrī**.

**Shams-ud-Din Muḥammad b. Fakhr-ud-Din Mas'ūd** of **Bāmān**, son of 'Izz-ud-Din al-Husain, **Malik** of **Ghūr**,—**Sultān**, 242, 240, 242, 258 n. 3, 275 and n. 3, 279, 300, 405

n. 3, 425 and n. 3, 426 and n. 4, 427, 428 n. 1, 429 and n. 7, 427 n., 472 n. 9, 481 n. 8.

**Shams-ud-Din Muḥammad b. Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din Maḥmūd**, son of **Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Sām**, **Ghūrī**, 406, 412.

**Shams-ud-Din Muḥammad b. 'Izz-ud-Din**, the **Hirawī**,—the **Mukaddam** of the guild of weavers of **Hirāt**, 1128 n.

**Shams-ud-Din Muḥammad b. Majd-ud-Din**, the **Kāl-yūnī**,—governor of **Hirāt**, 1128 n.

**Shams-ud-Din Muḥammad**, son of **Rukn-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-'Uḡmān**,—the founder and first of the **Kurat** dynasty, xrv, 199 n. 7, 764 and n. 4, 1181 n. 2, 1194 n., 1196 n., 1199 n., 1200 n., 1201 n., 1202 n., 1203 n., 1204 n. 2.

**Shams-ud-Din Muḥammad b. Tāj-ud-Din Abū'l-Faṭḥ**, the **Malik-us-Sā'is**, **Malik** of **Sijistān** and **Nimroz**, 189, 190, 191 and n. 5, 192, 447 and n. 2.

**Shams-ud-Din 'Uṣmān**, the **Tughrān**,—one of the chief 'Ulamā of **Tabriz**, 297 n.

**Shams-ud-Din Uṣmā**, the **Hājib**,—one of the **Turkish Malik**s of the **Khwārazm Shāhī** dynasty, 399, 414, 1003.

**Shams-ul-Ayimma Abū'l-Faṭḥ Muḥammad**, son of al-Hakim, **Sarakhsai**,—author of the **Mukhtapari-Kāfi**, and **Wazīr** of **Amir Nūḥ**, son of **Nasr**, son of **Aḥmad**, **Sāmānī** 35, 39 and n. 1.

**Shams-ul-Lughāt**, the,—a lexicographical work, 49 n. 7, 138 n. 6, 200 n. 2,—app. viii, xxii.

- Shams-ul-Ma'ālī Kābās**, son of **Wahungir**,—ruler of **Jurjān**, 51 n 6, 50, 51 n.
- Shams-ul-Mulk 'Abd-ul-Jabbār Kīdānī**,—one of the Wasirs of the brother Sultāns of **Ghūr**, 380 and n 3 and 4, 430.
- Shams-ul-Mulk**, the **Khāṣān Naṣr** b. **Taṭkāj Khān**, XIIth of the **Afrāsiyābī Khāns** of **Turkistān**, 905 n, 906 n [**Ghaznawī**, 105.
- Shams-ul-Mulk** b. Sultān **Ibrāhīm**
- Shams-ul-Mulk**, **Shihāb-ud-Dīn**, the **Wasir**. See under **Shihāb-ud-Dīn-i-Alb**, **Sarakhsī**.
- Shangū**, son of the **Āwang Khān**. See under **Sangū**.
- Shankal**, sovereign of **Hind**,—slain by **Rustam-i-Zāl**, 561 n 9.
- Shansab** b. **Kharnak** b. **Bain**,—ancestor of **Amir Banjī** and progenitor of the **Shansabāniāh** dynasty of **Ghūr**, 302 and n 6, 306 n 9, 307 n, 311, 312 and n 2.
- Shansabāniāh**, the,—the royal family of **Ghūr**; descendants of **Shansab**, xiii, xxvii, 115, 300, 302, 310 and n 4, 312, 316, 318, 335, 340, 368, 386 n 4, 416 and n 2, 421, 494 and n 1, 608, 609 n 7, 694 n, 1011 n, —app. xxi
- Shansabi family**, the, 340 and n 3, 430. See the **Shansabāniāh**.
- Shāpār** b. **Arda-Shar-i-Bābakān**, son of **Bābak**,—IIrd of the **Sāsāniān** dynasty of 'Ajam, 4.
- Shāpār** b. **Aghkīn**, son of **Aghk**,—IIrd of the **Aghkīniān** dynasty of 'Ajam, 4.
- Shāpār** b. **Shāpār-i-Zu'l Aktāf**,—Xth of the **Sāsāniān** dynasty of 'Ajam, 5, 1268 n 9, 1269 n.
- Shāpār Zu'l Aktāf** b. **Hurmt Narsi**,—VIIIth of the **Sāsānī** dynasty of 'Ajam, 4, 5.
- Shār**, title of the rulers of **Ghātān**, 80 n 5.
- Sharaf-ud-Daulah**, **Abu-l Fawz i-Shir-Zail**, son of 'Uṣd-ud-Da **Faṣā Khusrāw**, **Dīlāmī**, 57 n 8, 65 and n 4, 5 and 6.
- Sharaf-ud-Dīn** **Abū Bīkr**,—**Sadr-i-Sa'īd**, son of the **Ṣaṣ Shahid**, **Nizām-ud-Dīn**,—one the **Court Kāpis** of Sultān **Mu'ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sām**, **Ghūr**, 469.
- Sharaf-ud-Dīn Adīmī**, **Imām**,—of the 'Ulamā of **Khurāsān** : **Māwarī-un-Nahr**, 227.
- Sharaf-ud-Dīn** **Aḥmad** **Far Imām**,—one of the **Court poet** **Yamin-ud-Dīn** **Bahrām Sh Malik** of **Stjstān** and **Nimū**, 195, 196.
- Sharaf-ud-Dīn 'Alī**,—author of history, 732 n 2.
- Sharaf-ud-Dīn**, the **Amir-i-Maj**—governor of **Nishāpūr**, 1027 n.
- Sharaf-ud-Dīn 'Aṭṭār**, **Imām**,—learned doctor, 190.
- Sharaf-ud-Dīn**, the **Belkhi**, (**Imām** and poet, 742.
- Sharaf-ud-Dīn**, the **Khāṭib**, **Milānī**,—a native of **Hirāt**, 11 n 6, 1127 n.
- Sharaf-ud-Dīn** **Mu'ād-i-Ḥasan**, **Malik**,—commander of the force of **Khawāram**, 354.
- Sharaf-ud-Dīn** b. **Muḥammad**, n of 'Abd-ul-Malik, the 'Alṭān the **Wasir** of al-Musta'ṣim, II last of the 'Abbāsi **Khalīfahs** : **Baghdād**, 1255 n.

**Sharaf-ud-Din Muhammad**, the Yandi,—Wasir of **Qāin-Timūr**, ruler of **Khurāsān** under the **Mughals**, 1121 n.

**Sharaf-ud-Din Musaffar**, the **Majir-ul-Mulk**, 1028 n. See under **Majir-ul-Mulk Sharaf-ud-Din Musaffar**.

**Sharaf-ul-Mulk al-Agh'ari**,—envoy of **Tughril-i-Tughān Khān** to **Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Din Mas'ūd Shāh**, of **Dihli**, 664 and see 4 and 6, 738, 739 and n.

**Sharaf-ul-Mulk Rashid-ud-Din 'Alī Hanafi**,—the **Ulugh-i-Khāṣ** **Hājib** [Chief Royal Chamberlain], of **Sulṭān Nāṣir-ud-Din Maḥmūd Shāh**, of **Dihli**, 838.

**Sharif of Makkah**, the, 365 n 4.

**Sharḥi** dynasty of **Jāupār**, 589 n.

**Shārs** of **Gharjistan**, the,—submit to the suzerainty of **Sulṭān Maḥmūd**, of **Ghazni**, 341 and n 6.

**Shāh-kam**, the **Mughal Shahnah** of **Bih-Baligh**, capital of the **Yiddi-Kūt**, 952 n.

**Shā'ar**, **Wasir** of the **Isma'īlian** or **Fāṭimite Khalifate** of **Misr**, 209 n 6, 210 and n, 211 n 2, 212 n, 213 and n.

**Shā'ar** or **Sār Bahādur**,—one of the **Nā-yins** of the **Chingiz Khān**, 1042 and n 7.

**Shaw's** "**High Tartary**," 960 n, 970 n 2, 1084 n.

**Sher Khān**, of the **Sherā Khel**, of the **Sār** subdivision of tribe the **Lūdi** of the **Batani Afghāns** or **Paṭāns**, 511 n. See under **Sher Shāh**.

**Sher Khān**, feudatory governor of **Lakhanawati**, 772 n, 776 n.

**Sher Khān**,—uncle's son of **Sulṭān**

**Ghiyāṣ-ud-Din Balban**, 794 n. Same as the next, which see.

**Sher Khān-i-Sunkar**, **Malik Naṣra-ud-Din**,—one of the **Shamsia** **Maliks** in **Hind**, 714 n 9, 767, 76 and n and n 2, 782, 783 and n 7 and 9, 784 and n and n 2, 71 n 5, 788 n 9, 791 and n 2, 71 and n, 793, 794 and n 1, 795 799 n 4, 800, 818 n 4, 841, 849 n n 8, 865 n 5, 867 n, 1217 n, 1224 1225 n. Uncle's son of **Ulugh Khān-i-Balban**.

**Sher Khān-i-Surkh**, son of **Mal Nāṣir-ud-Din Husain**, the **Amir-Sultār** of **Ghazni**, 725.

**Sher Malik** b. **Sulṭān Ibrāhīm**, **Ghanawi**, 106.

**Sher Shāh**, the **Afghān**, **Governor** of **Bengal**,—sets up as emperor of **Dihli**, 510 n, 511 n, 538 n, 56 n 6, 757 n 5.

**Sher Zād** b. **Ma'ud-i-Karim**, **Ghanawi**, 107 and n 7.

**Sherā Khel**, the,—of the **Sār** subdivision of the **Lūdi** tribe of the **Batani Afghāns** or **Paṭāns**, 511.

**Sherān**, the '**Amid**, [chief of the tribe] of the **Abū Sahlān**, 10 n and n 1.

**Sher** is the **Khaly**, **Malik**, 627 n. See **Muhammad i-Sherān**, the **Khaly**.

**Sherk** or **Sorki**, son of **Mangū Khān**, son of **Tāli Khān**, son of the **Chingiz Khān**, 1223 n.

**Sherwān** is **Kheeraw Parwī** IVth of the **Aksharah** dynasty of **Ajun**.

**Sher wān**, one of the chiefs on the frontier of **Ghūr** and **Gūrginān**, 325 n, 327 n, 328 n.

- Shervān Shāh** b. 'Alā-ud-Dīn Maḥmūd,—brother of Rukn-ud-Dīn **Khūr Shāh**, Bādshāh of the Malāḥidāh of Alamūt, 1208 n.
- Shī'ahs**, the,—the sect of 'Alī b. Abī Tālib, 846 n, 904 n, 1189 n, 1206 n, 1229 and n, 1230 n, 1242 n, 1243 n, 1260 n.
- Shīam Parshād**, author of a history of Gauṛ or Lakhnāwātī, xvi,—app. xxv
- Shidāghū** or **Shidāghū**,—one of the Nū-yins of Halākū **Khān**, son of Tūli, son of the **Qhngiz Khān**, 1280 n, 1281 n.
- Shidarḡū** or **Shidāskū**, ruler of the country of Tīngkūt, 949 n, 950 n, 952 n, 1081 n, 1085 n, 1086 n, 1087 n, 1088 n, 1089 n.
- Shihāb-i-Manṣūr** Abu'l Fath, the Muḥtaṣim of the Malāḥidāh, 1197, 1198, 1212, 1213
- Shihāb-ud-Daulah** **Bughrā Khān** Abū Mūsā-i-Hārūn, son of Salīmān, son of the Ilak **Khān**,—IVth of the Afrasiyābi **Khān** of Turkistān. See under **Bughrā Khān**, **Shihāb-ud-Daulah**.
- Shihāb-ud-Daulah** **Harun** **Bughrā Khān**, 46 n, 4,—app. xviii See under **Bughrā Khān**, **Shihāb-ud-Daulah**
- Shihāb-ud-Dīn**, two Muḥtaṣim,—envoy of 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad, Bādshāh of the Malāḥidāh of Alamūt, to the *Kasīdas* of the Mughals, 1151 n.
- Shihāb-ud-Dīn** i. **Alb**, **Sarakhsī**,—one of the Wazīrs of Sultan Muḥammad **Khwarazm Shāh**, 246, 1013, 1014 n, 1017 n
- Shihāb-ud-Dīn-i-Qhāsi**,—Wālī, of Nārdīn in the territory of Diyār-i-Bakr, 1152 n.
- Shihāb-ud-Dīn-i-Qhāsi** b. Malik-ul-'Adīl Saif-ud-Dīn Abū Bīkr-i-Muḥammad, al-Aiyābi, Malik of Shām, 1264, 1265 and n, 9 and 1, 1266, 1267. See also under Malik-ul-Qhāsi.
- Shihāb-ud-Dīn** 'Alī, Malik, son of Malik Naṣīr-ud-Dīn 'Uḡmān, son of Malik Taj-ud-Dīn-i-Harab, of Sijstān and Nimroz, 194.
- Shihāb-ud-Dīn** 'Alī b. Saif-ud-Dīn Sūri. See under **Shihāb-ud-Dīn** Muḥammad 'Alī-i-Kharak.
- Shihāb-ud-Dīn** **Harṁawādī**, **Kāsi**,—one of the **Kāsis** of Sultan **Qhiyāz-ud-Dīn** Muḥammad-i-Sām, **Qhūri**, 389 and n, 2.
- Shihāb-ud-Dīn** **Mādmī**, Malik. See under **Shihāb-ud-Dīn** Muḥammad 'Alī-i-Kharak.
- Shihāb-ud-Dīn** Maḥmūd, son of Naṣīr-ud-Dīn 'Uḡmān, son of Malik Taj-ud-Dīn i. Harab,—IXth of the Maliks of Sijstān and Nimroz, 198 and n, 5, 199 and n, 7.
- Shihāb-ud-Dīn** Muḥammad, son of Bahā-ud-Dīn Sām, son of 'Izz-ud-Dīn al-Husain, **Qhūri**,—his title was afterwards changed to Ma-'Izz-ud-Dīn, xlviii, 369, 370 See under Ma-'Izz-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sām **Qhūri**.
- Shihāb-ud-Dīn** Muḥammad 'Alī-i-Kharak, son of Malik Saif-ud-Dīn Sūri, son of Shihāb-ud-Dīn Muḥammad **Kharak**, Malik of Mādmī of **Qhūr**, 344, 372 n, 406, 460 See also under Muḥammad i. **Khūr-nak**



- Shihāb-ud-Dīn Muḥammad**, [Khar-nak], son of 'Isa-ud-Dīn al-Ḥamīd **Qhūrī**, Malik of Mādīn of **Qhūr**, 337, 339 and n 4, 340 n, 343 and n 3, 344 n, 345 n 6, 473 n, 496 n 1.
- Shihāb-ud-Dīn Muḥammad**, Malik, son of Sultān Ḥame-ud-Dīn Iyāl **Timīsh**, of Dihlī, 625.
- Shihāb-ud-Dīn Muḥammad Shūh**, Malik, son of Sultān Nāsir ud-Dīn Maḥmūd Shāh, son of Sultān Ḥame-ud-Dīn Iyāl-Timīsh, of Dihlī, 672.
- Shihād** or **Shihādan**, son of Narīmān b Afrīdūn, the Bādshāh of Irān, 306
- Shikī Katūkū**, adopted son of the **Qhngis Khān** and co-vander of the Tattār Ming or Hasārah, 1093 n
- Shiktār** or **Shiktūr**, the Nū yin,—one of the generals of Hulāku **Khān** son of Tuli, son of the **Qhngis Khān**, 1256 n 6, 1364 n He is called Hulūju by some
- Shimāghu**, the Nū yin,—one of the generals of Hulāku **Khān**, son of Tuli, son of the **Qhngis Khān**, 1237 n.
- Shirāmūn** b. Koghū b Uktāc Kā-ān, son of the **Qhngis Khān**, 1160 n, 1181 n, 1178 n, 1180 n, 1183 n 1184 n, 1185 n, 1230 n, 1243 n, 1247 n
- Shirin**, daughter of Mangū Kā-an, son of Tuli, son of the **Qhngis Khān**, 1186 n.
- Shirley**, Sir Robert, 395 n.
- Shurwān Shāh**, the,—title of the rulers of the Dar-band or Bāb-ul-Abwāb, 396 n.
- Shū**, name of a tribe in the territory of **Qhūr**, 315 n 3. [1, 2.
- Shū** b. Ādam, [Seth of Scripture],
- Shū** b. Bahrām, Amir,—Mihtar or chief of the tribe of the **Shūnīān**, 313 and n 5, 315.
- Shū**, youngest son of Malik Muḥammad, son of Sūri, Amir of **Qhūr**, 321, 322 and n, 323.
- Shūn** or **Shūnīān**, the,—name of a people in the territory of **Qhūr**, 313 and n 3, 313, 316, 367
- Shūdai-Shū-o-Shū** or **Shūdai-Shū-o-sū**, [the "Ninkians" of some European writers], the Altān **Khān** of **Khūā**, 955 n, 1136 n 9.
- Shujā'** b. Sultān Ma'ūd, son of Sultān Maḥmūd **Qhaznawī**, 96, 101 n 6.
- Shujā'-ud-Dīn Abū'l Kāsim**,—governor of Kirmān for Malik **Ghiyā-ud-Dīn Aḥ** Sultān, son of Sultān Muḥammad i-Takrah **Kh** wārazm Shāh, 293 n 9, 294, 295 n.
- Shujā'-ud-Dīn 'Alī** b 'Isa-ud-Dīn al Ḥamīn,—of the **Shansabānī** family of **Qhūr**, 338, 339 and n 4, 345 and n 6, 346, 391, 393 n 9, 417 n 5, 1002 n 9
- Shujā'-ud-Dīn Hasan** Tūrānī,—one of the officers of 'Alā ud-Dīn Muḥammad, the Maulānā of the Malāhidah, 1192 n
- Shūls**, the,—name of a people, 1281 n.
- Sial**,—name of a tribe of Jāt, dwelling at and around Jang-i-Sāī, 454 n
- Siamak** b. Ksmūmurt, the first King of 'Ajām, 304 n 2.
- Siamak** b. Marnīās, son of Zuhāk the Malik, 306.

- Sāmaak** b. Mubāhī, son of Kāf-mung, son of Adam, 304.
- Sāmāi** b. Ibrāhīm Lūdī, son of Shāh Husain, of Ghūr, 510 n.
- Sāfand-isp** b. Zuhāk, son of Suhrah, son of Shaid-isp, 306.
- Sajinā** or **Sijinā** slave of 'Umro, son of Laīq Shūfārī, the, 34 n 6, 184 n, 185 n.
- Sajizis** or **Sijizis**, the,—name of a people in Sijistān, 184 n.
- Sikandar**, Sultān,—who was first called Ahmad Khān, the last of the eight Afghān or Patān sovereigns of Dīhli, 511 n.
- Sikandar** b. Ilyās Hājī, [Salṭān Shams-ud Dīn], ruler of Bangālah, 591 n.
- Sikandar Hāmī**, 598, 652. See also under Alexander the Great.
- Sikandar-i-Ṣā'ī** Karmān, Alexander Biorana, not the Macedonian, descendant of the fourth son of Tārāj, son of Yāfē [Japheth], 670 n.
- Sinjār-i-Dawāṭī**,—governor of Sijistān on the part of Amir Abū Naṣr-i-Ahmad, Sāmāni, lvii, 25 and n 4, 26 n 9, 185 n.
- Simon** de Montfort, Earl of Leicester, 646 n 7.
- Sinurgh**, the,—the fabulous bird of eastern romance, 1206 and n 5, nourishes Zāl-i-Zar, 318.
- Sinās-ud-Dīn Qhatī-car** [or Jati-car], the Sāmrah chief of Dibal, 614 and n 8, 615 n 1.
- Sindīlūn**, the, inhabitants of Sind, 696 n 9.
- Sūr Kūhībī Bigī**, daughter of Badāc the Jākumbā, brother of the Awang Khān, and wife of 'alī, son of the Qhāngis Khān, 1092 n, 1143 n, 1164 n, 1176 n 9, 1178 n, 1181 n, 1185 n, 1223 n.
- Sijah-ra**, signification of the term, 913 n. [691 n.
- Sketch of Buddhism**, Hodgson's, Slavonians, the,—See under the Slavs.
- Slavs**, the, 371 n, 373 n, 386 n, 387 n. See also under the Šaklābs and the Solavay.
- Solākh Pāl**, Rāc of Gwāliyūr, 545 n 5, 619 n 7.
- Somnath**, the idol of,—destroyed by Sultān Maḥmūd of Ghaznī, 82, 83.
- Song**, the,—the people of Malā-Qhīn or Southern China, as styled by the Chinese, 1136 n 2, 1219 n, 1223 n.
- Sosan-gar**, the, definition of the term, 1003 and n 1.
- Sosani**, flowers worked of silk and thread, 1003 n 1.
- Sprenger**, Prof. Alois, xvii, xxii.
- Seauang Setzan**, 938 n, 1056 n 3, 1091 n.
- Stewart**, vii, 503 n, 535 n 6, 606 n, 732 n 1, 763 n 2, 763 n 3 and 4, 765 n 6, 770 n 7, 776 n, 777 n, 793 n 5, 906 n.
- Strabo**, 1055 n.
- Strangford**, Lord, liii.
- Student's Manual of Indian History**, the, 370 n 9, 445 n, 467 n, 478 n 6, 479 n, 487 n 6, 510 n, 557 n 5.
- Stupnagel**, Mr. C. R., xxiii, n 2.
- Subāshī** or **Subāsi**, the Hājīb-i-Buzurg of Sultān Maḥmūd of Ghaznī, 124 n 4, 125.
- Subāshī-Tiqin**, chief of the Turks of Māwarā-un-Nahr, 903 n.

**Buffārīn**, dynasty of the, xxxiii, 19 and n 1, 21, 22, 25, 26, 183 n 2, 184 n, 186 n, 216 n 2, 217, 220.—So called after Ya'qūb and 'Umro, the sons of Laig, the Buffār, or Brasier.

**Bugātū**, the Jasbī. See under Sūkātū.

**Būghū-ghī** or **Būghū-jījan**, son of Iridam-ghī the Barlās,—chieftain of the Moghal troops, 808 n, 809 n, 828 n.

**Buhrāb**, son of Rastam-i-Zāl, the hero of ancient I-rān, 681.

**Buhrāb** b. **Shaid-āsp**, son of Sūk-mak,—descendant of Zupāk, the Tāsī, 306.

**Bulda Bahādur**. See under Swidās the Bahādur.

**Bulān Bāo**, author of the *Khulāṣat-ut-Tawārikh*, xvi

**Buji**, the Bigī, of the tribe of Barlās, of the progeny of Iridam-ghī, 939 n.

**Bujiūt**, the, a tribe of Moghals,—one of the Hasārāhs of Jūji, son of the Qhngis Khān, 1003 n

**Būkātū** or **Bugātū**, the Jasbī,—an *Clkūnūt* Kungār āt Moghal, and commander of the *Clkūnūt* Miug or Hasarab, 1000 n 2.

**Bukhāb**, the,—name of a people, 861 n 2. See under the Baklība.

**Bulaimān Karārāni**,—app xxi **Saldās** or

**Saldās**, the, a tribe of Moghals,—one of the Hasārāhs of Qhagh-tāo, son of the Qhngis Khān, 909 n, 1008 n, 1004 n.

**Bulimān**, Mīhtar, [*Solomon of Scripture*], 2, 187 and n 2, 640, 640 n 2, 1161.

**Bulimān**,—one of the Amīrs [nobles] of Halaḥ, 225 n 4.

**Bulimān**, the Sipah-Sālār,—an officer of Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sāw, Ghūrī, 482 n.

**Bulimān** b. 'Abd-allah b. Tāhir ibn al-Ḥamān,—governor of Tabaristān, under his nephew Muḥammad, son of Tāhir, 15.

**Bulimān**, b. Ghīyāṣ-ud-Dīn Kai-Khusrau. See under his title of Ruku-ud-Dīn.

**Bulimān** b. Ibrāhīm b. Sulṭān Maḥmūd, Ghaznawī, 88.

**Bulimān**, son of the Ilak Khān, the third of the Afrāsiyābi Khāns of Turkistān, 901 n.

**Bulimān** b. Jaghar Beg-i-Dī'ūd, son of Mikā'il, son of Saljūq, the Turkman, 133 n 2.

**Bulimān** b. Kai-Khusrau b. Kai-Kubād, of the Saljūqī dynasty of Rūm, 162 n 2, 163 n 5.

**Bulimān** b. Ḥakīmīnī, son of Larā'ī, Saljūqī,—ruler of Rūm under Sulṭān Malik Shāh, Saljūqī, 139 n, 156, 159 n.

**Bulimān** b. Maḥmūd of Ghaznī, 88 and n 3

**Bulimān** b. Maḥmūd b. Sulṭān Maḥmūd of Ghaznī, 97.

**Bulimān** b. Shīr, the Amīr-i-Dīd,—one of the Maliks of Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sāw, of Ghūr, 216, 266, 432, 491, 493 and n 2.

**Bulimān Khān**, ruler of Samarḥand, under Malik Shāh, son of Sulṭān Alb-Arslān-i-Ghāsi, Saljūqī, 127 n 2, 128 n and n 2.

**Bulimān Shāh**, the Aiyābi Turkman,—the Amīr-i-'Alam [Lord

- of the Standard] of al-Musta'zim B'illah; the last of the 'Abbāsi Khalifas, 712 n, 1227, 1231 n, 1233, 1234, 1236, 1237, 1238 n 3, 1242 n 2, 1244 and n, 1246 n 5, 1247 n, 1250, 1254.
- Sulimān Shāh b Jalāl-ud-Din Utsuz Khwārazm Shāh, son of Tāj-ud-Din Muḥammad, son of Ibak, the Turk, 236 n 6.
- Sulimān Shāh b Muḥammad b. Malik Shāh, son of Sultān Alb-Arsalān-i-Ghāsi, Saljūki,—ruler of Khwārazm under Sultān Sanjar, 236 n 6.
- Sulimān Shāh, Rukn-ud-Din b 'Is-ud-Din Kalij Arsalān, the Rūmi Saljūk, 161 n.
- Sultān, application of the title, 1235 n 1.
- Sultān Malik b Mas'ūd-i-Karim, Ghasnawi, 107.
- Sultān Shāh b Bahram Shāh b Mas'ūd-i-Karim, Ghasnawi, 111.
- Sultān Shāh b. Ibrāhīm b. Sultān Mas'ūd, Ghasnawi, 106
- Sultān Shāh, Jalāl-ud-Din Mahmūd b. Iyāl Arsalān, son of Jalāl-ud-Din Utsuz Khwārazm Shāh, son of Tāj-ud-Din Muḥammad, xiv, 115, 181 n and n 9, 239 and n 1 and 2, 240 n, 245 and n 5 and 7, 246 and n 8, 247 n, 248 and n, 249, 250 n 6 and 7, 260 n 7, 274 n 5, 277 n 5, 278 and n 8, 279 and n 5, 287, 291, 427, 456 and n 2, 457 n, 469 n 5, 514 n 4, 515 and n, 917 n 1, 927 n, 928 n,—app 11.
- Sūmrāh dynasty, the,—Rājput rulers of Lower Sind, 614 n 8, 615 n and n 1
- Sūmrāh tribe, the,—a tribe of Rāj-
- pūt descent in Lower Sind, 614 n 8. [Khān, son of Bāldā-Sānds Khān. See under Sūnj Sāngar Khān, Kārīlūki. See under Sunkar Khān.
- Sūniat, the, a tribe of Mughals,—one of the Hasārahs of Chaghatāi Khān, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1093 n.
- Sūnj, father of Afrāsiyāb, the Turk, sovereign of 'Ajām, 882 n.
- Sūnj Khān.—one of the Sardārs of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Takish Khwārazm Shāh, 976 n, 1118 n 9.
- Sūnj Khān or Sūnds Khān, son of Bāidū,—VIIIth of the chieftains of the Tātār I-māk, 875 n, 881 n, 882 n, 883 n, 887 n.
- Sūnjāk, the Bahādur,—one of the Nū-yins of Hulākū Khān, son of Tūli, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1239 n, 1240 n, 1243 n, 1263 n, 1280 n.
- Sunkam, one of the chiefs of Khilā, 154, 911, 912 n, 921 n, 925 n.
- Sunkar or Sūngar Khān, Kārīlūki,—one of the chief men of Kārīlūk, 1130 n, 1132 n.
- Sunnis, the,—the orthodox sect of Muḥammadans, 648 n 6, 994 n, 1229 n 6, 1242 n 2, 1285.
- Sūntān the Nū-yin,—one of the Nū-yins of Hulākū Khān, son of Tūli, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1280 n, 1264 n, 1270 n 2, 1278 n.
- Sūntān, the Bahādur, 937 n 8. See under Swidān, the Bahādur.
- Sūntān, the, a tribe of Mughals,—one of the Hasārahs of Jāfi [Tush] Khān, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1093 n.

**Sāz**, a subdivision of the Lādī tribe of the Badāni Afghāns or Pāfāns, 320 n 4, 309 n, 510 n, 511 n.

**Sār** dynasty of the Pāfān Kings of Dihlī, the, 511 n.

**Sār** b. Ismā'īl b. Sīnī b. Lādī,—founder of the Afghān tribe of Sār, 510 n.

**Sār** or **Sās**, son of Zuhāk, the Tāzi, sovereign of 'Ajām, 307 and nn 6 and 8, 308.

**Sarbāghī** or **Surpāghī**, the Hājib. See under **Subāghī**, the Hājib-i-Buzurg.

**Sārghān** or **Sarghān** Shirah, of the Sūldūs tribe of Mughal, 939 n.

**Sārī**, Abu'l Faṣl or Bū-Faṣl, Diwān of Nishāpūr, under Sultān Mas'ūd of Ghaznī, 123 n 3, 123 n.

**Sārī** b. Muḥammad, son of Amīr Banjī,—third of the Shansabānīah dynasty of Ghūr, 84 n 7, 316 and nn 1 and 2, 317, 318, 320 n 4, 321 n, 336 n 4,—app xix.

**Sarkā bat**—Red Idol,—name of an idol or figure in Bāmān, 1054 n 6

**Sarkh-rū**, signification of the term, 918 n.

**Surpāghī** or **Surbāghī**, the Hājib. See under **Subāghī**, the Hājib-i-Buzurg.

**Sārāk Khātūn**, daughter of the sovereign of the Kangkur-it tribes,—and one of the wives of Jēji, son of the Qhngis Khān, 1102 n, 1140 n.

**Sartaḡ** b. Bātā, son of Tūshī, son of the Qhngis Khān, 1173 n, 1220 and n 1, 1291 and nn 2, 5 and 6, 1292.

**Surtāgh**, an officer of the Khwārazmī dynasty, 381.

**Sā Sen** b. Madhob Sen,—the last ruler of the Hindū dynasty of Nādiab, 556 n 1.

**Sūs** or **Sūr**, son of Zuhāk the Tāzi, sovereign of 'Ajām, 307 and nn 6 and 8, 308.

**Swatis**, the,—the people styled the Shalmāni by the Afghāns, and the Dihgān by the Tājiks, 1043 n 1.

**Swidāc** or **Sahudāh**, the Bahādur,—one of the Nu-yins of the Qhngis Khān, 277, 976 n, 981 n, 983 n, 987 and n 3, 988 n, 989 n, 990 n, 991 n, 994 n, 995 n, 996 n, 997 n, 998 n, 999 n, 1000 n, 1001 and n, 1014 n 2, 1027 n 8, 1028 n, 1030 n, 1083 n, 1102 n, 1115 n 5, 1116 n, 1152 n, 1165 n, 1168 n, 1169 n, 1206 n.

## T.

**Tabābī'ah** of Yemen, dynasty of the, xxxii, 6, 7.

**Tabakāt-i-Akbarī**,—name of a historical work, the, xli, xvi, 78 n, 113 n, 440 n 8, 458 n 2, 461 n, 469 n 9, 476 n, 477 n, 478 n 6, 486 n, 500 n 2, 518 n, 528 n, 533 n, 536 n.

541 n, 542 n 9, 545 n 5, 557 n 3, 559 n 2, 571 n 2, 575 n 2, 576 n 4, 577 n, 578 n 3, 590 n, 591 n, 592 n, 593 n 7, 594 n, 609 n, 610 n 8, 611 n 3, 612 n 4, 613 n 7, 616 n 3, 619 n 7, 623 n 1, 631 n 5 and 8, 632 n 1, 633 n 8, 635 n 9, 638 n 1, 640

- no 2 and 3, 641 n 6, 642 n 7, 643 n, 645 no 2 and 4, 646 n 6, 647 n 9, 648 no 2 and 3, 651 n 7, 653 n 5, 654 n, 657 n 4, 658 no 8, 1 and 2, 659 n 6, 661 n, 664 no 4 and 5, 665 n 8, 666 n and n 9, 667 n 1, 668 n 5, 671 n 9, 675 n 5, 677 n 6, 678 no 7 and 8, 680 n, 681 n 2, 682 n 5, 688 n, 689 n, 690 n, 691 n, 692 n 4, 693 n 2, 695 no 8 and 9, 696 n 4, 697 n 6, 698 n, 699 n 5, 705 n 7, 707 n 8, 711 n 4, 716 n 5, 776 n, 777 n, 778 n, 802 n 1, 1271 n,—app. vi, viii, xiv, xvi, xxvi.
- Tabakāt-i-Nāqiri of Minhāj-i-Sarāj, vii, xxx, xxxiv, liv, 67 n 3, 508 n, 912 n, 1045 n, 1202 n,—app. i, vii, viii, x, xiv, xvi.
- Tabari, at,—Imām Muḥammad b Jarir, the Historian, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and n 8, 10 n 3 and 6, 13 n 9, 42 n 9, 58 and n 8, 203 n 7, 204 n 1, 205 n 6,—app. xviii See also under the Tārīkh-i-Tabari.
- Tab or Tab Tingri, the, 948 n, 955 n. See under Kükjü, son of Minglik Ighakak, the Kunakkumār.
- Tābūr, son of Farāwwal or Karāwal,—ancestor of Zuhāk the Tāzi, 204,—also called Tāzio-barzad.
- Tacitus, 871 n.
- Tae b Shā'ūr, the Wazīr of the Ismā'īlīan Khālifah of Egypt, 209 n 6.
- Taf-ḥāj Khān, Abu'l Muzaffar, son of Ibrāhīm, son of Naqir,—XIIth of the Afrāsyābī Khāns of Turkistān, 905 n.
- Taghachār or Toṣhājār, the Bahādur,—one of the Nū-yins of the Qhāngiz Khān, 931 n, 988 n, 989 n.
- Taghachār, the Gūrgān b. Saghū jan or Saghāj-nhi b. Iridam-nhi, the Barika,—one of the Nū-yins of the Qhāngiz Khān, 1027 n 8, 1028 n 9, 1035 n.
- Taghachār b. U-Tigia b. Yassūkā Bahādur,—brother's son of the Qhāngiz Khān, 1220 n, 1221 n.
- Taghās Khān,—one of the Sardārs of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Takīsh Khwārasm Shāh, 978 n, 979 n.
- Taghājār, the Nū-yin, 276 n. See under Taghachār or Toṣhājār, the Bahādur.
- Taghār, an earthen vessel of capacity, 1192 n.
- Taghar Khānān, the,—title of the rulers of the Ghuzs tribe, 961 n.
- Tahamtam Shāh b. Sultān Ibrāhīm, son of Sultān Mas'ūd, Ghaznawī, 105.
- Tāhūr, the Dabir [secretary], of Sultān Mas'ūd, son of Sultān Mahmūd of Ghaznāin, 92 n 3.
- Tāhīr b. 'Abd-ullāh b. Tāhīr ibn al-Husain,—fourth ruler of the Tāhūrī dynasty, 10 n 5, 14, 15.
- Tāhīr ibn al-Husain,—general of al-Ma'mūn and founder of the Tāhūrī dynasty, 9 and n 1, 10 and n 3, 5, 7 and 8, 11 and n 9, 2 and 4, 12 and n 6, 15 n 6 and 1, 27 n 6, 28.
- Tāhīr ibn al-Husain, son-in-law of Khālaf b. Aḥmad, governor of Sijistān, 185 n, 186 n.
- Tāhīr b. Khālaf b. Aḥmad,—ruler of Sijistān, under the Sāmānīs, 81 n, 186 n.
- Tāhūr b. Muḥammad b. Tāhīr b. Khālaf,—ruler of Sijistān, 184, 186 n, 187.

**Tāhir b. Muḥammad b. 'Umro, Ṣaffārī**,—governor of Shijātān, under the Sāmānids, 25 n 2, 104 n, 185 n.

**Tāhir b. 'Umro**, son of Laiṣ at-Ṣaffār [the Brander], of the family of the Ṣaffārīn, 34 n 2.

**Tāhir-i-Band-Ḳadār**, Malik, ruler of Mīr, 1259 n 2. See also under Band-Ḳadār.

**Tāhiria**, dynasty of the,—So called after the founder, Tāhir ibn al-Hammān, rulers of Khurāsān, xxxiii, 9, 10 and n 5, 14 n 1, 16 n 4, 17, 19, 22 n 6 and 7, 23, 26 and n 2, 29, 232 n, 915 n.

**Tāijūt**, the, 899 n,—read the Tāijūt [Tānjūt ?]. See ixu.

**Tāimāni Imāk**, the,—one of the Qhābār I-māk, 874 n.

**Tā-ir**, the Bahādur,—one of the Nū-yīns of the Qhingiz Khān, 656 n, 727, 976 n, 1119, 1120 n 2, 1126 and n 6, 1132, 1135 and n 5, 1191 n, 1202 n.

**Tā-ir Asūn**,—chief of the Urbār Makrit tribe, 917 n, 947 n, 1091 n, 1151 n, 1142 n.

**Tā-ir Buḳā**, the Nū-yīn,—one of the generals of Hulāku Khān, son of Tuli, son of the Qhingiz Khān, 1227 n 5.

**Tāishī**, signification of the word, 866 n, 927 n.

**Tāishī**,—the envoy of the Ḳarā Khitā—is to Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Takish Khwārazm Shāh, 929 n. Tāishī is probably his title.

**Tā'it'u L'ilāh**, at,—the 'Abbās Khalifah, 44, 61, 62, 64, 65.

**Tāj-ud-Daulah Abū Sa'ūd**, surnamed

Tutish, son of Alb-Armālān-i-Qhānī b. Dā'ūd-i-Jaghar Beg, the Saljuḳī, 204 n. See under Tutish, Tāj-ud-Daulah, son of Alb-Armālān-i-Qhānī.

**Tāj-ud-Daulah-i-Tutish**, see the above.

**Tāj-ud-Dīn**, the Jūzjānī,—one of the Khwārazmī Maliks in Hirāt, 1096 and n 2.

**Tāj-ud-Dīn**, the Khālji,—an officer of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Takish Khwārazm Shāh, 471 n 5.

**Tāj-ud-Dīn**, of Makrān, Malik,—one of the Maliks of the brother Sultāns of Qhūr, 390, 400.

**Tāj-ud-Dīn**, Zawzani, Ḳāṣi of Sultān Bahā-ud-Dīn Sōm, son of Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn Muḥammad, Bāmianī, 429.

**Tāj-ud-Dīn b. Ṣalāyah**, the 'Alawī,—styled the Lord of Arbīl, 1238 n 8, 1263 n.

**Tāj-ud-Dīn Abū Bīkr**, son of 'Iss-ud-Dīn Kabīr Khān-i-Ayīs, feodatory of Multān, 656 n, 663 n 9, 668 n, 727 and n 7, 758 n 9, 810 and n.

**Tāj-ud-Dīn Abū'l Faṭḥ b. Tāhir**, son of Muḥammad,—second of the Maliks of Sijstān and Nim-roz, 187 and n 4, 188 and n 5, 189, 225 n.

**Tāj-ud-Dīn Abū'l Faṭḥ-i-Nasr**, son of Tāhir. See the above.

**Tāj-ud-Dīn 'Alī**,—one of the Amirs of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Takish Khwārazm Shāh, 461 n 8.

**Tāj-ud-Dīn 'Alī Mūsawī**, Sayyid, the Mushrif-i-Mamālik of Dībli, 652, 653 n 5, 654 and n, 753. See

- also under his title of Şadr-ul-Mulk.
- Tāj-ud-Din 'Alī Shāh b. Takish, son of I-yal-Arsalān Khawāram Shāh, 244 n 4
- Tāj-ud-Din Arsalān Khān, Sanjar-i-Qhast, Malīk of Awadh. See under Arsalān Khān Sanjar-i-Qhast.
- Tāj-ud-Din Azabar Shāh, son of Ulugh Khān-i-Abī Muhammad, the Khān of Gazarwān, 235 and n 3
- Tāj-ud-Din Bināl-Tigin, of the family of the Khawāram Shāhis,—tenth ruler of Sijstān and Nimroz, xxv, 199 and n 7, 200 and n 8, 201, 202 and n 6, 232, 233, 235, 626 n, 1119, 1123 n, 1124, 1125, 1203, 1204, 1205. See also under Bināl Tigin
- Tāj-ud-Din Habashī-i-'Abd-ul-Malik, Sar-i-Zarrād, the Sipah-Sālār of Ghūr, 1006 and n 9, 1007, 1059 n 2, 1079 and n 2, 1201 n
- Tāj-ud-Din Habashī-i-Nezah-war, Amir. See under Habashī-i-Nezah-war.
- Tāj-ud-Din-i-Harab, the Malīk us-Sa'id, son of Shams-ud-Din Muhammad,—the fourth ruler of Sijstān and Nimroz, and one of the Malīks of the brother Sultāns of Ghūr, 20, 191 and n 6, 192, 193, 194 and n 7, 249, 373, 390, 457 n, 490, 502 n 6, 504, 1149 n
- Tāj-ud-Din Hasan-i-Sālār, Khar-Post, Malīk,—governor of the fort of Tūlak under the Khwarazmīs, xxiv, 1197
- Tāj-ud-Din Ibrāhīm Shāh, son of Sultān Nāṣir ud-Din Mahmud Shāh, of Dihli, 672.
- Tāj-ud-Din, 'Imād-ul-Mulk, the Jimī,—one of the Ministers of State of the Khawāram Shāhī dynasty, 863, 864.
- Tāj-ud-Din Iyal-dūs, [styled Yal-dūs and Yal-dus by some],—slave of Sultān Ma'izz-ud-Din Muhammad-i-Sām Ghūri,—Sultān of Ghaznī, See under Iyal-dūs, Tāj-ud-Din.
- Tāj-ud-Din Muhammad Timrānī,—one of the Malīks of Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Din Muhammad-i-Sām, Ghūri, 390, 408.
- Tāj-ud-Din Muhammad b. Ḳutb-ud-Din Husain b. 'Alī b. Abī 'Alī, the Ghūri Malīk, 1060.
- Tāj-ud-Din Muhammad b. Ḳutb-ud-Din Ibak, the Turk,—ruler of Khawāram, 234 and n 9, 235 and n 1
- Tāj-ud-Din Sanjar, the Sihwas-tānī, Malīk,—one of the Malīks of Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Din Mahmūd Shāh, of Dihli, 103 and n 7, 835 n and n 4, 836 n 6. He is also called Tāj-ud-Din Sanjar-i-Māh-poghānī, which also see.
- Tāj-ud-Din Sanjar-i-Gasiak or Gajr-lak Khān,—one of the Malīks of Sultān Shams-ud-Din Iyal-Timish, of Dihli, xxvi, 612 n 6, 613, 616 n, 618 n, 626, 643 n 4, 661 n, 722, 723 and n 1, 724, 725 n 6, 730.
- Tāj-ud-Din Sanjar-i-Gurak Khān, Malīk of Awadh, 663 n 9. See also under Tāj-ud-Din Sanjar-i-Kurek Khān.
- Tāj-ud-Din Sanjar-i-Kīk-luk, the feudatory of Sadā'ūn,—one of the Malīks of the Shamsah



dynasty of Dihli, 648 n. 4, 661 n., 662 and n. 6, 663 n. 9; 754, 756, 756, 750, 867 n.

Tāj-ud-Din Sanjar-i-Kurāt or Guralā Khān, Malik of Awadh,—one of the Malikis of Sulṭān Nāṣir-ud-Din Maḥmūd Shāh, of Dihli, 663 n. 9, 674, 708 n. 7, 756, 800, 867 n., 1201 n.

Tāj-ud-Din Sanjar-i-Māh-paghāni, Malik,—one of the Malikis of Sulṭān Nāṣir-ud-Din Maḥmūd Shāh, of Dihli, 708 n. 7, 761, 825 n. and n. 4, 836 and n. 6 and 9. He is also called Tāj-ud-Din-i-Sanjar, the Sihwandani, which also see.

Tāj-ud-Din Sanjar-i-Tas Khān, Malik of Awadh,—one of the Malikis of Sulṭān Nāṣir-ud-Din Maḥmūd Shāh of Dihli, 674, 708 n. 7, 704 n. 5, 714, 759, 760, 820, 861 n. 9.

Tāj-ud-Din Taghān, governor of the fortress of Kāran-duja, on the part of Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Takīsh Khawāram Shāh, 990

Tāj-ud-Din 'Urmān, the Maraghani, —seneschal of the fortress of Ghūr, under his brother, 'Isa-ud-Din 'Umr the Maraghani, 1199 n., 1200 n.

Tāj-ud-Din Zangī h. Fakhr-ud-Din Mas'ūd, son of 'Isa-ud-Din al-Buzurg, —Malik of Bāmiān, and one of the Malikis of the brother Sulṭān of Ghūr, 348, 361, 360, 404 and n. 3, 425 and n. 2, 473 n. 9, 481 n. 5, 490.

Tāj-ud-Din Naṣīr, the,—name of a historical work, xvi, 448 n. 2, 458 n. 6, 460 n. 1, 469 n. 8 and 9, 470 n. 471 n. 476 n. 477 n., 480 n. 482 n.

484 n., 505 n., 516 n. 2, 517 n., 518 n., 519 n., 520 n., 521 n., 522 n. 5 and n., 523 n., 524 n., 525 n., 526 n. 2, 529 n., 534 n. 5 and 6, 539 n. 5, 542 n. 2, 543 n., 545 n. 5, 605 n. 2, 608 n. 2, 609 n., 611 n. 9, 615 n. 1, 617 n., 619 n. 7, 626 n. 4,—app. ii, iv, v, vi, xiv, xvii, xxv, xxvi.

Tāj-ul-Mulk Maḥmūd, the Dabir [Secretary], the son of the Muḥarrif-i-Mamālik,—one of the Tājik officials of Sulṭān Rukn-ud-Din Firās Shāh, of Dihli, 625, 626, 761.

Tāj-ul-Mulūk Majd-ud-Din, son of Abū Lashkar-i-Aiyūb, son of Shāhī al-Kurdī, 308 n. 9.

Tājī, name by which the 'Ajamis call the 'Arabs, 304 n. 2.

Tājik-Mājik, the Afghāns or style Persian-speaking people who are neither Turks nor 'Arabs, 304 n. 2.

Tājiks, the,—the descendants of 'Arabs, born and grown up in 'Ajām, xii, xv, xxv, 304 n. 2, 410 n. 9, 750 n. 7. See also under the Tājiks.

Tājā or Tānjā, Nāyān,—one of the Nāyins of Holākū Khān, son of Tuli, son of the Qhāngis Khān, xlvii, 162 n. 2, 1237 n. 4. See also Tānjā, the Nū-yin.

Tājik Ghūrī, the, xii, xiii, 873 n., 1058 n. 6. See also under the Tājik Ghūrī.

Tājiks, the, xii, xv, xxv, 878 n., 879 n., 883 n., 972 n., 973 n., 978 n., 980 n., 1003 n. 1 and 2, 1004, 1016, 1039 n., 1033 n., 1043 n. 1, 1076 n., 1081 and n. 7, 1103 n., 1131 n., 1167 n., 1168 n., 1192 n., 1231. See also under the Tājiks

**Tik**, the,—a sept of **Eljāits**, 511 n.

**Tik**, **Tigh** or **Digh**, fifth son of **Aghās Khān**, the third sovereign of the **Mughal I-māh**, 860 n.

**Tak-sh** or **Tug-sh**, definition of the term, 334 n 8.

**Takalmish** or **Mankalmish**,—one of the emissaries of **Hulākū Khān**, son of **Tūli**, son of the **Qhngiz Khān**, to **Rukn-ud-Din Khūr Shāh**, the **Bādshāh** of the **Mulā-ḥidāh** of **Alamūt**, 1206 n 3.

**Tak-sh** or **Tug-sh**, definition of the term, 334 n 8.

**Takī-ud-Din Al-Ghāsi**, son of **al-Malik-ul-'Adil Abū Bīkr**, son of **Aiyūb**, son of **Shāhī al-Kardī**. See under **Shihāb-ud-Din-i-Ghāsi**, son of **Malik-ul-'Adil**.

**Takish** [**Tughān Shāh**], son of **Alb Arsalān-i-Ghāsi**, son of **Dā'ud-i-Jaghghar Beg**, **Saljūki**, 138 n 3, 143 n 2.

**Takish** i-**Khwarazm Shāh**, son of **Iyāl-Arsalān**, son of **Jalāl-ud-Din Utruz Khwarazm Shāh**, **Sultān**, xxi, 148, 165, 167 and n 8, 172 n 3, 181 n and n 9, 182 and n 1, 235, 239 and nn 1 and 2, 240 n, 241 and n 4, 242 n n 5 and 6, 243 n and n n 7 and 1, 244 and n n 3 and 4, 245 n and n 7, 246 n 3, 247 n, 249 n, 249 and n 3, 250 n n 4 and 6, 251 n n 9 and 1, 254, 255 n 7, 260 n 7, 265 n 4, 279, 280 n 7, 281, 286 n 6, 346, 377 n 5, 378, 382 and n 9, 383 n 2, 400 n 2, 457 n, 927 n, 928 n, 929 n, 934 n, 1118 n 9. He was styled '**Imād-ud-Din Takish Khān**' and '**Alā-ud-Din**' by others.

**Taknā Khan**, 273 n,—wrong name of **Tik fughān** the **Makrit**, which

see

**Tak-Timish**,—app. xii.

**Talbah** b. '**Abd-Allah**,—one of the Prophet's companions, 9 n 1, 11 and n 3,—styled **Talbah-i-Talabāt**.

**Talbah** b. **Maḥammad an-Nisā'i**,—governor of **Hirāt** under the **Sāmāni**, 42 n 2, 71 n 5.

**Talbah** b. **Tāhir-i-Ḥa'ī Yamīnān**,—second of the dynasty of the **Tāhiris**, 10 n 5, 12 and n 2, 12, 36 n 7.

**Talbah-i-Talabāt**, title of **Talbah** b. '**Abd-Allah**, the Prophet's companion, 9 n 1.

**Tamashas** b. **Se'd** b. **Zangi**, the **Atā-bek** of **Fārs**, 179, 180 n 5.

**Tamghāj**, a dynastic name of the sovereigns of **Tibbat** and **Yughzān**, 909 n, 935 n 3.

**Tamghāj**, the Turk, **Amīr** of **Tabarhindah**,—slave of **Ḥuṭb-ud-Din Ibak**, 603 and n 6. He was at first called **I-bak**.

**Tamghāj Khān** b. **Maḥammad Khān**, **XXist**, of the **Afrāsiyāb**: **Khān** of **Turkistān**, 908 n.

**Tamghāj** or **Taghmaj Khān** **Ibrāhīm** b. **al-Ḥusain**,—one of the **Khāns** of **Turkistān**, 908 n, 935 n 2.

**Tamghān** b. **Nuḥḥar**,—ancestor of **Samān i-Khaddāt**, 29.

**Tamghūr**, **Yamghūr** or **Yūghūr**,—one of the leaders of the **Mughal** army, 293 n 3.

**Tamū-chi**. See under **Tamur-chi**, the ruler of the **Tātiār I-māh**.

**Tamūchin**, 155 n 6. See **Tamurochi**, the **Qhngiz Khān**.

**Tamur Khān**,—one of the **Qhūl-gānās** or forty slaves of **Sultān Shams ud Din Iyāl-Tamgh**, of

- Dhli,—fledatory of Sunnim, 794 n.
- Tamur Khān-i-Kirān, Malik of Awadh and Lakhanawati, 685 n 7, 689 n 8, 696 n, 740 and n 8, 741, 742. See also under his title of Kamr-ud-Din and also under Kirān-i-Tamur Khān.
- Tamur Khān-i-Sunkar, the 'Ajami, Malik of Kehrām,—one of the Maliks of Sultān Naṣir-ud-Din Mahmūd Shāh, of Dhli, 672.
- Tamur-shi, the Jasbi, the Turk,—one of the leaders of the Chingis Khān's army, 979 n.
- Tamur-shi or Tamurchin, the Chingis Khān, son of Yasūka Bahādur, 892 n, 896 n, 899 n, 936 n, 939 n, 940 n, 941 n, 942 n, 943 n, 944 n, 945 n, 946 n, 947 n, 948 n, 949 n, 956 n, 1102 n. See also under the Chingis Khān.
- Tamur-shi or Tamurchin, ruler and chief of the Tātār I-māk,—made captive by the Bahādur Yasūka, father of the Chingis Khān, 896 n, 936, 936 n.
- Tānaw-shin Khatūn, of the Bāyāt tribe,—one of the wives of Mangu Kā'ān, son of Tālī, son of the Chingis Khān, 1223 n.
- Tand-pāl, son of Jai-pāl, ruler of Hind, 81 n [n 2]
- Tangah, definition of the term, 584
- Tangahan horses, definition cf. 567 and n 6
- Tānjūt, the Izil,—See under the Tānjūt.
- Tāniko of Terās, leader of the Gūr Khān's army, 154, 200 n 7, 261 and n, 234 n. See also under Beniku of Terās.
- Tānjūt tribe of Mughals, the, Izil, 899 n, 936 n, 939 n, 940 n.
- Tānjū or Tājū, the Nā-yin,—one of the Nā-yins of Hulūkā Khān, son of Tālī, son of the Chingis Khān, 1190 n 1, 1191 n, 1192 n, 1237 n 5, 1238 n, 1238 n 2, 1237 and n 4, 1239 n, 1240 n, 1243 n, 1262 n, 1263 n, 1265 n. See also under Tājū Nāyin.
- Tarah b. Kāyah, son of Nūh,—ancestor of Zābāk, the Tūsi, 308 n 7.
- Tāraj or
- Tārakh, eighth son of Yāfē [Japheth], 870 n, 872 n.
- Tarākimah or Turkān, the I-lak of the, 909 n, 910 n.
- Targāh, a description of woven silk of a red colour, 272.
- Tārīkh-i-Abu' 'Alī-i-Aḥwal, or the "Squinter," the, 116 n 2.
- Tārīkh-i-Abu' Faṣl-i-Baihaḳī, the, xvi, 77 n, 82 n 2, 101 n 7, 107 n 6, 110 n 8. See also under al-Baihaḳī.
- Tārīkh-i-Abu' Ghāsi, Bahādur Khān. See under Abu'l-Ghāsi, Bahādur Khān.
- Tārīkh-i-Āl-i-Sabak-Tigin, of Abu' Faṣl-i-Baihaḳī, the,—entitled Tārīkh-i-Yamīni; called also the Tārīkh-i-Nāqiri, 106 n.
- Tārīkh-i-Aḥfi, the, 112 n 6, 113 n, 117 n, 124 n 4, 129 n and n 8, 129 n, 142 n 1, 230 n 3, 236 n 6, 267 n 9, 294 n, 246 n, 374 n 6, 401 n, 402 n, 403 n, 407 n 5, 427 n, 434 n 8, 436 n 3, 439 n 4, 449 n 2, 457 n, 467 n, 471 n, 474 n, 476 n, 477 n, 481 n 1, 482 n, 484 n, 486 n, 490 n 8, 501 n 5, 502 n 6, 504 n 4,

505 n, 520 n, 535 n 8, 535 n, 535 n,  
540 n, 545 n 5, 590 n, 592 n, 614  
n 5, 631 n 6, 655 n 2, 778 n, 809  
n 2, 876 n, 901 n, 906 n, 907 n,  
923 n, 925 n, 927 n, 934 n, 941 n,  
945 n, 946 n, 956 n, 970 n 2, 976 n,  
978 n, 979 n, 983 n, 987 n 3, 993 n,  
995 n, 998 n, 999 n, 1005 n, 1009 n,  
1020 n, 1024 n 2, 1027 n 8, 1035 n,  
1037 n, 1047 n 4, 1082 n, 1087 n,  
1088 n, 1098 n, 1100 n, 1115 n 5,  
1122 n, 1126 n 6, 1127 n, 1135 n 3,  
1139 n, 1140 n, 1148 n 4, 1166 n  
1167 n, 1193 n, 1199 n, 1200 n,  
1206 n 3, 1211 n, 1220 n, 1221 n,  
1233 n 2, 1241 n, 1243 n, 1244 n,  
1265 n 2, 1266 n.—app. vi, xi.

*Tārīkh-i-Fanākati*, the, 19 n 2, 31  
n 3, 35 n 5. See also under al-  
Fanākati.

*Tārīkh-i-Faqīhī*, the, See the *Muj-  
mal-i-Faqīhī*.

*Tārīkh-i-Firāhtab*, the, xi See  
under *Firāhtab*.

*Tārīkh-i-Firūz-shāhi* of *Shams-i-  
Sirāj*, the, xvi.

*Tārīkh-i-Firūz-shāhi* of *Ẓiyā-ud-  
Dīn Baranī*, the, xvi, xxi, 563  
n 6, 564 n 2, 590 n, 634 n 3, 677  
n 6, 678 n 8, 716 n 5, 776 n, 778 n,  
794 n 1, 795 n. See also under  
*Ẓiyā-ud-Dīn Baranī*.

*Tārīkh-i-Ghāzānī*, the, 669 n 2,  
693 n, 692 n.

*Tārīkh-i-Guzīdah*, the, xlviii, 24  
n 3, 25 n 2, 29 n 9, 32 n 6, 34 n 5,  
37 n 3, 41 n 8, 44 n 4, 45 n 8, 49  
n 7, 53 n 2, 54 n 7, 60 n 7, 64 n 1,  
86 n 5, 94 n 3, 96 n 1, 97 n 2 and 4,  
98 n 5, 100 n 5, 101 n 6 and 7,  
102 n 2, 103 n, 108 n 5, 109 n 7,  
112 n 5, 113 n, 117 n, 119 n, 119

n 7, 124 n 4, 126 n 2, 122 n 9 and 1,  
134 n 2, 138 n 9, 142 n 1, 142 n 2,  
147 n 8, 151 n 6, 154 n 2, 155 n  
and n 3 and 7, 157 n 1, 158 n, 163  
n 2, 163 n 4, 173 n 4, 174 n, 175 n 7,  
185 n, 217 n, 222 n, 236 n 4, 240 n,  
254 n 2 and 3, 264 n, 266 n, 270  
n 7, 297 n, 303 n 7, 350 n, 407 n 5,  
439 n 4, 447 n 6, 452 n 1, 473 n 2,  
474 n, 476 n, 478 n 6, 485 n 3,  
578 n, 599 n 2, 908 n, 941 n, 981 n,  
1009 n, 1144 n 5, 1199 n, 1221 n,  
1222 n, 1250 n, 1253 n 4, 1266 n 6,  
1278 n, 1287 n.

*Tārīkh-i-Hāfīz Abrū*, the, 941. See  
also under *Hāfīz Abrū*.

*Tārīkh-i-Haft Iklim*, the, xvi, 25 n.

*Tārīkh-i-Hamīd-ullah*, the *Mustaʿfi*,  
964 n 2 See also under *Hamīd-ul-  
lah the Mustaʿfi*.

*Tārīkh-i-Ibn Haṣam*, the, 11, 19,  
26, 31, 54 and n 3, 60, 116 and n 1,  
317, 320 n 2

*Tārīkh-i-Ibrāhīmī*, the, 26 n 2, 31  
n 3, 35 n 4 and 5, 37 n 2, 41 n 3,  
44 n 1, 49 n 7, 96 n 1, 99 n 5, 109  
n 5, 155 n, 308 n 7, 317 n, 320 n 2,  
358 n 3, 361 n 6, 407 n 5 and 7,  
523 n, 528 n 2, 569 n 2, 1020 n.

*Tārīkh-i-Jahān Arā*, the, 36 n 2, 31  
n 3, 35 n 5, 41 n 6, 97 n 4, 117 n,  
137 n 5, 147 n 8, 151 n 6, 163 n 2,  
176 n 4, 199 n 7, 222 n, 254 n 2,  
303 n 6, 308 n 1, 312 n 6, 316 n 2,  
320 n 4, 322 n, 326 n 2, 355 n 3,  
362 n 3, 407 n 5 and 7, 411 n,  
412 n, 416 n 2, 423 n 3, 424 n 3,  
427 n, 429 n 4, 432 n 1, 434 n 3,  
436 n 5, 449 n 3, 452 n 2, 456 n 2,  
466 n 4, 466 n 6, 574 n 5, 599 n 3,  
1176 n 9—app. xx.

*Tārīkh-i-Jahāngīr* the, 349 n 2.

- 803 n, 808 n, 831 n, 845 n, 867 n,  
867 n 2, 1000 n, 1010 n, 1023 n,  
1033 n, 1036 n 1, 1039 n, 1096 n,  
1116 n, 1189 n, 1148 n 4, 1166 n,  
1194 n, 1195 n, 1256 n 6, 1286 n.
- Tārīkh-i-Jahān Nughā**, the, of  
the Jāwānī, xlix, 485 n 2, 525 n,  
540 n, 549 n 2, 589 n, 979 n, 987  
n 2, 1014 n 2, 1015 n, 1016 n 2,  
1019 n, 1020 n, 1021 n 2, 1021 n,  
1022 n, 1023 n, 1129 n 1
- Tārīkh-i-Khān-i-Jahān**, the Lūdi,  
xvi
- Tārīkh-i-Khurāsān**, the,—of Mau-  
lānā Ma'in-ud-Dīn, Sabzwāri,  
19 n 1, 1086 n.
- Tārīkh-i-Majdāl**, the,—of Imām  
Muhammad 'Alī Abū'l Kāsim  
'Imādī, xxix n 2, 60
- Tārīkh-i-Ma'yūmī**, the,—of Mir  
Ma'yūm-i-Bhakhari, 618 n 2
- Tārīkh-i-Mirāt-i-Jahān Numā**, the,  
—a general History by Muham-  
mad Bakā, 79 n See the Mirāt-  
i-Jahān Numā.
- Tārīkh-i-Mubārak Shāhi**, the, xvi,  
665 n 8, 691 n, 716 n 5
- Tārīkh-i-Muḥaddasī**, the, 6, 303 n 7,  
305 1234
- Tārīkh-i-Murayyā**, the,—of Muḥam-  
mad Afzal Khān Khatak, xvi,  
622 n.
- Tārīkh-i-Nāqirī**, the, 84, 103 n, 119  
123 and n 1, 317 See the Tārīkh-  
i-Āl-i-Sabuk Tigin.
- Tārīkh-i-Nisbat-i-Afaghānah**, the —  
of the Shāhkh 'Abd ar-Razzāk,  
Matizī, xvi
- Tārīkh-i-Rājshāhe Jammu** the,  
xvi
- Tārīkh-i-Rashidi** the, of the Mir  
as Muḥammad Haidar the
- Dughlātī Mughal**, xvi, 913 n,  
1283 n 1.
- Tārīkh-i-Sind of Mir Ma'yūm**, the  
Bakhari, the, xvi, 548 n.
- Tārīkh-i-Tabarī**, the, xvi, 83 n 1,  
36 n 5, 42 n 9, 44 n 4, 53 n 2, 208  
n 2, 597 n 2 See also under at-  
Tabarī.
- Tārīkh-i-Yīfā'i**, the, 9 n 1, 10 n 8,  
11 n 4, 12 n 8, 41 n 8, 42 n 9, 60 n 8,  
94 n 8, 97 n 4, 98 n 6, 99 n, 102 n 2,  
107 n 7 and 8 112 n 5, 113 n, 117 n,  
118 n, 130 n 1, 132 n 9, 133 n 3,  
136 n, 143 n 2, 146 n 3, 167 n 8,  
178 n 7, 204 n, 209 n 6, 212 n, 222  
n 1, 223 n 3, 224 n 8, 228 n 5  
and 6, 235 n 2, 236 n 6, 239 n 2,  
240 n, 244 n 3, 248 n 2, 251 n 1,  
254 n 3, 264 n 266 n, 268 n 3, 274  
n 9, 281 n 5, 285 n 2, 298 n 2,  
299 n, 370 n, 380 n 9, 381 n 2, 393  
n 8, 400 n 3, 401 n, 402 n, 403 n,  
407 n 5 and 7, 411 n, 419 n 3,  
473 n 2, 486 n 9, 526 n 8, 532 n 4,  
540 n, 569 n 2, 948 n, 926 n, 968 n,  
1129 n 1
- Tārīkh-i-Yamunī of Bahakī** the,  
105 n See under the Tārīkh i-  
Āl-i-Sabuk Tigin
- Tārīkh-i-Yamunī of al-'Uṭbī**,—See  
the Kitāb i-Yamunī.
- Tarins**, the —name of a people, 1016  
n 3
- Tarkhān**, explanation of the word,  
942 n
- Tarkhān** one of four Mughal tribes  
styled the ulus-i-Qhārgānah,  
1164 n 9
- Tarkhūn** Mahk of the people of  
the Sughd of Samarkand 915 n
- Tar*—a application of the word 867  
n 4 1234 n 9.

- Tartars, the, 874 n, 880 n, 1018 n, 1019 n, 1080 n, 1167 n, 1171 n.  
See also the Tătárs, of which word Tartars is the European spelling.
- Tascheran, 189 n 7
- Tasdar [Naro] Jai-pál, ruler of Hird, 86 n
- Tash, Husám-ud-Daulah, Abu'l 'Abbás, the Hájib,—commander of the forces of Amir Nüh. son of Manpür, son of Nüh Sámání, 44 and n 2, 46 and n 7.
- Tasuo, 189 n.
- Tasúkán or Yasúkán Khātūn the Tătár,—third wife of the Chingis Khán, 1092 n
- Tata, the,—the Chinese name for the Tătárs.
- Tátár, the Gakbar, habitation of, 1133 n.
- Tátár Khán, Muhammad Arsalán, son of Arsalán Khán-i-Sanjár,—governor of Lakhnawāji, 771 n, 772 n, 776 n, 779 n
- Tátárs, the, 691 n See under the Tătárs
- Tatatonggo, a master of the I ghuri language, 1186 n.
- Tatris, the, also called the Rārhhs, —one of the tribes of the Koh-i Jūd, 1132 n.
- Tátár I māk, the, 874 n, 875 n, 876 n, 877 n, 881 n, 882 n, 884 n, 885 n, 887 n, 891 n, 897 n, 898 n, 899 n, 900 n, 937 n 1, 938 n, 940 n, 999 n, 1041 n 3, 1092 n, 1282 n 6
- Tătár Khán b Alinjah Khán, son of Kiwak,—first ruler of the Tattar I māk, 873 n, 874 n, 885 n, 887 n, 900 n, 951 n
- Tătár Ming or Hazarah, the,—one of the divisions of the Chingis Khán's army, 1098 n.
- Tătárs, the,—descendants of Tătár Khán, son of Alinjah Khán, son of Kiwak, 866 n, 869 n 2, 873 n, 875 n, 877 n, 883 n, 884 n, 885 n, 886 n, 887 n, 891 n, 894 n, 895 n, 898 n, 899 n, 900 n, 913 n, 936 n 6, 937 n 7, 940 n, 944 n, 946 n, 949 n, 961 n, 980, 1001 n, 1014 n 3, 1036 n 1, 1041 n 3, 1076 n, 1093 n, 1094 n, 1106 n, 1109 n 2, 1137 n, 1185 n 3, 1151 n, 1167 n, 1168 n, 1217 n, 1235 n 1, 1246 n 6, 1284 n 5, 1300 n 9.
- Tavernier, 860 n 9, 1119 n.
- Tawārikh-i-'Ajam, the,—name of a historical work, 1.
- Tayānak Khān, also written Tayān and Tayānak, the,—Tūbukū or Taibukū, son of Bahktó Inānej,—sovereign of the Turkish tribe of the Némēšs, 940 n, 944 n, 946 n, 946 n, 947 n, 949 n, 966 n, 1091 n, 1092 n
- Taylor, Meadows, author of the Student's Manual of Indian History, 445 n, 462 n, 467 n.
- Tāsbā or Tāsbūr, son of Farāwwal or Kārīwal,—ancestor of Tābāk the Tāzi, 304 He is also called Tābūr and Tāzio-barsed, which see [Persians, 304 and n 3
- Tāzi, name of the Arabs among Tāzik Chūris, the, 510 n, 511 n
- See also under the Tāzik Chūris
- Tāzio-barsed, son of Farāwwal or Kārīwal,—father of all the 'Arabs and brother of Hoshang Malik, 303 and n 7, 304 He is differently called Tābūr, Tāsbā and Tāzbūr

- Tislo-baraid, Tislo-barahed or Tislo-narnad. See the above.
- Tashirah of the Daghistāni, the, xxx.
- Tashirah of Daulat Shāh, the, 609 n 6.
- Tashirat-ul-Abrār, the,—of the Akhānd, Darwezah, xvi.
- Tashirat-ul-Mulūk, the,—of Yahyā Khān, xvi, 89 n 3, 90 n 4, 99 n, 102 n 1, 112 n 3, 113 n, 440 n 8, 461 n, 523 n, 546 n 7, 557 n 3, 563 n 7, 603 n 6, 609 n 1, 613 n 7, 619 n 7, 623 n 1, 639 n 4, 641 n 8, 647 n 9, 691 n.—app. vi, viii, xvi.
- Tehukan, possibly Tehūkang, the Paghūr, ruler of Qhān, 1213 n.
- Templars, the religious military order of the, 101 n 8.
- Terry's "Voyage," 535 n 7, 598 n.
- Tamar, Queen, sovereign of Qhar-jistān 1001 n.
- Thamirān-i-Diw-Band,—third of the Bāstāniyah dynasty of 'Ajām, and grandson of Hoshang, the second of the dynasty, 3.
- Tharoo caste, the, 560 n 4. See under the Tihārū.
- Thiqār Diw, Rāo of Nahrwālah, 516 n 1.
- Thomas, E, author of the "Chronicles of the Patān Kings of Dehli," x, xxi, xxiii, xvi and n 3, iv, 71 n 5, 72 n 6, 91 n 9, 114 n, 298 n 3, 309 n 5, 399 n, 434 n 6, 436 n 6, 469 n 9, 483 n 1, 497 n 3, 510 n, 514 n, 520 n, 525 n, 53 n 3, 561 n, 558 n 7, 560 n, 573 n 9, 580 n 6, 584 n 3, 596 n 8, 603 n 6, 615 n, 622 n, 623 n, 637 n 8, 638 n 1, 642 n 3, 644 n, 657 n 6, 661 n, 686 n 6, 688 n, 689 n, 679 n 6, 680 n, 685 n 4, 686 n 2, 690 n 1, 699 n 1, 730 n 6, 771 n, 772 n, 774 n, 779 n, 791 n 4, 795 n 2, 800 n, 818 n 6, 850 n 3, 861 n 5, 878 n, 1011 n, 1103 n 1, 1129 n 1, 1259 n 3.—app. i, iii, iv, vi, vii. See also under the Fathān Kings of Dehli.
- Thornton, 462 n, 706 n 7. [xxi.
- Thousand and one Nights, Lane's, Thugatahur, wrong spelling of the name of Taghāghār, son of U. Tigin, which see.
- Tigin, a Turkish title borne by Turks and Töktürs, 944 n.
- Tigin-i-Buzarg, a name incorrectly given to Malik Balban-i-Buzurg 'Isa-ad-Din Kahlū Khān, of the Maliks of Sulṭān Shams-ad-Din I-yal 'Imsh of Dihli, 661 n.
- Tihārū, the,—a race of people dwelling in the mountains between Tibbat and Lakhaṣawati, 560 and n 4, 562 n, 567 n 1.
- "Times" newspaper, the, 599 n, 1027 n 3.
- Timūr, the Gurgān, Amir, [the celebrated Tamerlane], xiv, lviii, 109 n 9, 291 n, 450 n 3, 499 n, 584 n, 599 n, 593 n, 596 n, 598 n, 913 n, 926 n, 938 n, 1027 n 3, 1035 n, 1073 n 4, 1145 n, 1153 n 6, 1235 n 1—app x.
- Timūr, the Nā-yin, Amir of Karā-Kuram,—one of the Nā-yins of the Qhngis Khān, 1178 n.
- Timūr Malik, governor of Khujand, under Sulṭān 'Alā-ad-Din Muḥammad-i-Takish Khwārasm Shāh, 972 n, 973 n, 974 n, 1118 n 9.
- Timur Malik b Sulṭān 'Alā-ad-Din Muḥammad-i-Takish Khwārasm Shāh, 234 n 3, 298 n 6.

- Timār Nāmah**, the,—a history of Amir Timār the Gurgān, 887 n.
- Timār Tāgh**,—of the race of Kālān, chieftain of the Maghale, 888 n.
- Timūriah dynasty**,—another name of the Mughal dynasty founded at Dillī, by Bābar Bādshāh, 1146 n.
- Tingis**, the sixth son of Aghūz Khān, the third sovereign of the Mughal I-māk, 880 n.
- Tingis** or **Tinjis Khān** b. Mangali Khān, son of Yal dūs,—VIIIth sovereign of the Mughal I-māk, 881 n. [1092 n, 1138 n.
- Tingūt**, the, a tribe of Maghale
- Tingūt**, son of Jūji [Tūshī] Khān, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1105 n, 1165 n, 1178 n
- Tingūt language**, the, 1095 n 3.
- Tingri Khān**, the Shidarkū or Shidarkū, the Bādshāh of the territory of Tingūt or Kāshin, 1085 and n 3 1090, 1095, 1096
- Tinjis Khān**, See under **Tingis Khān** b. Mangali Khān.
- Tipā's Library**, vii
- Tir Muḥammad** b. Malik Shāh son of Sulṭān Alb Arsalān-i-Ghāzi, Saljūki, 144 and n 3 See under Muḥammad b. Malik Shāh, the Saljūki
- Tod's Rajasthan**, 459 n 6, 469 n 9, 467 n, 517 n, 519 n, 522 n, 611 n 3, 691 n, 728 n 3, 828 n 3.
- Tokashī**, name of a ruler whose territory was subdued by Bātu Khān, son of Tūshī, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1170 n
- Tokuz-I ghura**,—those of the I ghura who dwell on the tokuz or nine rivers, 889 n, 951 n, 1007 n 6.
- Tondar** or **ten Thousands**,—the first of the four degrees of Maghale, 946 n.
- Tonghi**, **Tūngi** or **Tūshī**,—envoy of the Kārā-Khātī-is to Sulṭān 'Alī ud Din Muḥammad Khwārazm Shāh, 929 n.
- Toris**, the, 400 n,—read the Tāria, see Izi
- Toshājār**, See under **Taghshār**, the Bahādur.
- Tott**, Baron de, 1235 n 1.
- To-whan**, the Chelar (Jālī-ir),—one of the officers of "Mengke" Kā-ān, son of Tūli, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1232 n.
- Traditionists**, the,—the four orthodox sects of Muḥammadans, 884 and n 6, 365
- Travels of Father Avril**, in Tartary, 567 n 4.
- Travels**, Maḥmūd's, 330 n 7, 427 n, 1058 n 6.
- "**Travels in the steppes of the Caspian Sea**, the Crimea, the Caucasus, etc., by Xavier Hommaire de Hell 884 n.
- Tachermas**, the,—an ancient people dwelling between the Volga and Tanais or Don,—the modern Charkas probably, 1170 n 3
- Tubba'-i-Akbar** b. Akhrān, of the Tabābī'ah dynasty of Yaman, 7
- Tubba'-ul-Aghar** b. Haseen, of the Tabābī'ah dynasty of Yaman, 7
- Tubba'-ul-Anasir**, of the Tabābī'ah dynasty of Yaman, 7.
- Tubba's**, the,—the royal tribe of Arabia Felix, 303 n 7. See also under the **Tabābī'ah**.
- Tubba' Yawa**, the incorrect spelling of the word **Tabābī'ah**



**Tub** or **Tub Tugri**,—title of the Mughal saint, Kākā, son of Minglik Ishakah, 946 n, 955 n.

**Tubukā** or **Talbukā**, the Tayānak Khān, son of Balikto Ināaj,—sovereign of the Niamūs, 944 n. See also under the Tayānak Khān.

**Tughā Tigin**, the Hājib—one of the generals of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din Mas'ūd-i-Karim, son of Sultān Ibrāhīm, Ghaznawi, 107.

**Tughanbār**, also styled Dālān,—one of the Nāyins of the Qhingiz Khān, 956 n.

**Tughā-Timūr**, son of Tughī [Jūji], son of the Qhingiz Khān, 1103 n, 1164 n 2, 1165 n.

**Tughān-i-Sunqar**,—one of the Amirs of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Din Mang-barni, son of Sultān Muḥammad-i-Takīsh Khwarazm Shāh, 1116 n.

**Tughān Khān**, Sharaf-ud-Din, son of 'Alī, son of Mūsā, son of Satuq-Būyah,—Vith of the Afrāsiyābi Khāns of Turkistān, 85 n, 904 n.

**Tughān Shāh** [Takīsh], son of Alb-Arsalān-i-Ghāzi, son of Dā'ūd-i-Jaghar Beg, son of Saljuq, the Turkman, 138 n 8.

**Tughān Shāh** b. Ibrāhīm, Sayyid-us-Salatin, son of Sultān Mas'ūd, Ghaznawi, 105.

**Tughān Shāh** b. Mu'ayyid-i-'Ā'inah-dār,—second of the Sanjariyah Maliks of Nishapur, 151 and n 9, 182, 245 n 7, 246 n 8, 419 n 6.

**Tughlak** dynasty of Dīblī, the,—founded by Ghīyās-ud-Din Tughlak, 510 n. [Ghush Khān.

**Tughmākh Khān** See under Lam-

**Tughril**, signification of the word, 805 n.

**Tughril**, governor of Banglāh under Sultān Ghīyās-ud-Din Balban, 580 n, 590 n, 778 n.

**Tughril II**,—Amir Khān's Nā'ib in the governorship of Bengal, 772 n.

**Tughril**, al-Mal'ūn, or the excommunicated,—the usurper of the throne of Ghazni, 98 n 8, 99 n and n 2, 100 and n 4, 101, 132 n 9.

**Tughril**, Bahā-ud-Din, al-Mu'izz al-Sultāni,—one of the Mu'izziah Sultāns of Hind, 471 n, 518 n, 520 n, 544 and n 4, 545 and n 5, 546 and n 7, 547 and n, 549 n 4, 619 n 3, 627 n 4, 704 n 5, 727 and n 3, 732 n 3, 787 and n 6.

**Tughril**, Bahā-ud-Din [styled by some Badr-ud-Din], the Sanjari,—governor of Hīrāt, 248, 249, 374 and n 5, 375 n, 377 and n 6, 379 and n 5, 391, 427.

**Tughril** b. Arsalān Shāh b. Tughril b. Muḥammad b. Malik Shāh, son of Sultān Alb-Arsalān-i-Ghāzi, Saljuqi, Sultān,—last of the Saljuqiyyah dynasty, 91 n 2, 165 n 2, 166 n and n 7, 167 and n 6, 171 n 9, 172 n 3, 242 and n 5, 247 n, 249 n 3, 250, 296 n.

**Tughril** b. Isrā'il b. Saljuq, son of Luṭmān, the Turkman, 126 n 2.

**Tughril** b. Maḥmūd b. Muḥammad b. Malik Shāh, son of Sultān Alb-Arsalān-i-Ghāzi, Saljuqi,—governor of 'Irāq-i-'Ajam under Sultān Sanjar, 146 n 6, 151 n 6.

**Tughril** b. Mas'ūd b. Muḥammad b. Malik Shāh, son of Sultān Alb-Arsalān-i-Ghāzi, Saljuqi,—gover-

- nor of 'Irāk-i-'Ajam under Sultān Sanjar, 161 n 6
- Tughril b. Muḥammad b. Malik Shāh, son of Sultān Alb-Arsalān-i-Ghāsi, Saljūki, —governor of 'Irāk-i-'Ajam under Sultān Sanjar, 161 n 6, 170 n 8, 171 n 9, 242
- Tughril b. Sanḡur, son of Maūdūd, son of Zangī, son of Ak-Sanḡur, the Atā-bak of Fārs, 176 n 8
- Tughril-i-Tughlān Khān —one of the Malikhs of Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn I-yāl-Timigh, of Dihlī, xvii See under his title of 'Is-ud-Dīn
- Tughril b. Tughril, Saljūki, —last of the dynasty, 165 and n 2. See under Tughril b. Arsalān Shāh, which is his correct name.
- Tughril Beg b. Mikā'il, son of Saljūk, son of Luḡmān, the Turk-mān, —the first of the Saljūkiyah dynasty, 86 n, 94 n 2, 103 n 9, 116 n 3, 117 n, 119 n 7, 122 and n 8 and 9, 123 and n, 124 n, 125 and n 7, 8 and 1, 126 and n 3 and 3, 129 and n 3, 130, 132 and n 9 and 1, 133 n and n 3, 135 n 2, 136 n, 174 n, 232 n His correct name is Abū Tāhib, Muḥammad, and his title, Rukn-ud-Dīn Tughril Beg, Yamin-i-Amir-ul-Mu'minin.
- Tughril Shāh b. Ibrāhīm, Bayyid-us-Sulātin, son of Sultān Mas'ūd, Ghaznawi, 106
- Tughrul, —name of a bird used in field sports, 936 and n 3
- Tughrul Iqin, —surname of Tamur-shi, the Tattār, afterwards known as the Awang Khān,

- which see, 936 and n 3, 939 n, 940 n.
- Tūh or Tawah, son of Kābah, son of Nūh, —ancestor of Shūkh, the Tisi, 308.
- Tūh, son of Rū-shed, —ancestor of Tāhir ibn ul-Husain, 9.
- Tuhfat-ul-Kirām, the, —name of a historical work, xvi. [niān. Tāiniān, the See under the Tū-Tūjs or Tūj, son of Afridūn, the Bādshāh of 'Ajam, 306 and n 2. Tūjs, son of Farāwal, —brother of Hoḡhang, Bādshāh of 'Ajam, 308 n 7.
- Tūk, son of Maḡlaḡ, —governor of Kirmān, 317 n 5
- Tūkā, Tūkā or Tūkiā, son of Bā-sanjar, the first ruler of the Bā-sanjar dynasty of the Mughal I-māk, 894 n
- Tūkaḡhār or Tūkūhār, the Nā-yān 933 n, 939 n See also under Taghachār, the Bahādur.
- Tūkājār, the Gūrgān, son-in-law of the Qhngis Khān, 1037 n 8, 1120 n 2 See also under Taghachār, the Gūrgān
- Tūkal, the Bahshī, —the Mughal Shahnah [Intendant] of Halab, 1264 n.
- Tūkal, son of Tuli Khān, son of the Qhngis Khān, 1169 n, 1170 n.
- Tūkhāshi, the Khātan of Yassū Mungā, son of Qhngis Khān, son of the Qhngis Khān, 1164 n.
- Tūkhar See under Taghachār, the Bahādur.
- Tūka or Tūkā, son of Bā-sanjar, the first ruler of the Bā-sanjar dynasty of the Mughal I-māk, 894 n

**Tākā-Tigā**, called also **Saghatī**-**Tigīn**, son of **Umr**, the **Kanḡuli**, chief of **Almāligh**, 909 n 1, 936 n.

**Tūklah**, the **Mughal** **Shahmah** [Intendant] of **Hillah**, 1243 n.

**Tuklah** or **Duklah**, son of **Maudūd**, son of **Zangī**, son of **Āḡ-Sanḡur**, **Atā-bak** of **Fārs** under the **Saljūkiā**, 174 n, 175 n 7.

**Tuklah** or **Duklah**, son of **Salḡūr**, mistaken for **Tuklah**, son of **Maudūd**, which see.

**Tuklah** or **Duklah**, son of **Sanḡur**, mistaken for **Tuklah**, son of **Zangī**, which see.

**Tuklah** or **Duklah** son of **Zangī**, son of **Maudūd**, the **Atā-bak** of **Fārs**, 175 and n 8 and 9, 176 and n 1.

**Tāk-ū** or **Tagh-ū** sheep, 968 and n 7.

**Tūktā**, the **Bigi**,—the **Bādshāh** of the **Makrit** tribes, of the **Mughals**, 940 n, 941 n, 945 n, 946 n, 947 n, 949 n, 950 n, 951 n, 952 n, 951 n, 953 n, 953 n.

**Tūk-Tughān**, the **Amir** or **Chief** of the **Makrit** **Mughals** of the **Karāt** division of the **Mughals**, 264 n 4, 269 n, 273 n, 281 n, 281 n, 270 n 2, 281 n, 282 n, 283 n, 286 n, 1067 n 6.

**Tākūlku** or **Tūkūlkuḡh**, the **Jashī**,—one of the **Nū-yins** of the **Qhngis Khān**, 1137 n, 1128 n, 1129 n.

**Tūḡus** or **Dūḡus**, daughter of **Aḡhū**, son of the **Awang Khān**,—the **Christian** **Khātan** of **Ilulaku**, son of **Tūli**, son of the **Qhngis Khān**, 1193 n, 1262 n.

**Tūḡus-I-ḡhūrū**, the,—those of the **I ḡhūrū** who dwell on the **Tūḡus** or **nine** rivers, 959 n, 951 n, 1107 n 6.

**Tūlūn** or **Tūlūn**, the **Jashī**, the **Talaugūt Mughal**,—one of the **Nū-yins** of the **Qhngis Khān**, 289 n, 1004, 1022, 1054, 1055, 1061 n 7, 1080 n 5.

**Tūli**, **Tūlai** or **Tūlū Khān**, son of the **Qhngis Khān**, xlviii, 280 n 9, 535 n, 939 n, 940 n, 941 n, 944 n, 946 n, 970 n 2, 975 n 5, 976 n, 988 n, 1000 n, 1004 n 1, 1012 n 9, 1017 n, 1018 n, 1020 n, 1026, 1027 n 8, 1028 n, 1031 n, 1032 n, 1033 n, 1034 n 9, 1035 and n, 1036 n 1, 1037 n, 1038 and n 5 and 6, 1039 and n 7, 1040, 1049 n 2, 1054 n, 1056 n, 1057 n, 1059 n, 1061 n, 1092 n, 1094 n, 1095 n, 1104 n 5, 1106 n, 1106 n, 1115 n 5, 1127 n, 1127 n, 1138 n, 1143 n, 1152 n, 1164 n, 1165 n, 1176 and n 9, 1177 n, 1178 n, 1181, 1199 n, 1223 n, 1225, 1226.

**Tūli**, a **Mughal** word signifying mirror, eradicated from the language of the **Mughals** in favor of **gusḡ**, 1176 n 9, 1177 n.

**Tūlū Khān**, son of the **Qhngis Khān**. See under **Tūli Khān**.

**Tūmā**,—one of the chiefs of the **Karā Khitā-is**, 911, 912 n.

**Tumāda**, the,—or

**Tumāts**, the,—a tribe of **Mughals**, 931 n, 981 n.

**Tumghash** [also written **Taghmāsh**] **Khān**,—a descendant of **Buḡrā Khān** of **Turkistān**, and father of **Turkān Khātun**, the consort of **Mahk Shāh**, son of **Sultān Alb-Arsalān-i-Qhān**, **Saljūki**, 123 n 9.

**Tumūnāc** or **Tumina**, also written **Tumūnah** or

**Tumūnah**, son of **Bāc Sanḡur** or

- Bis-Sunggar**,—sixth of the Baisamjar dynasty of the Mughal I-māk, 896 n, 1097 n.
- Tānag** or  
**Tānak**, first son of Turk, son of Yāf, [Japheth], 872 n, 873 n, 879 n.
- Tungani**, the,—name of a people, 899 n.
- Tungusian** race, the,—one of the four great races into which the Scythians are divided, 886 n.
- Tūniān** or **Tā-inān**, the,—the priestly class of the Mughal idol-worshippers, 1110 and n 7, 1111 n, 1157 and n 2, 1158, 1160, 1162 n. Also called the **Tānis**.
- Tūnis**, the, li, 1110 and n 7, 1111 n. See the above.
- Tunish**, wrong name of **Tutiḡh**, son of Sultān Alb-Arsalān-i-**Qhāzi**, **Saljūki**.
- Tunur Bājah**, the, 890 n.
- Tūr** b. **Faridān**, the sovereign of 'Ajām,—ruler of Māwarā-un-Nahr and Turkistān, 881 n, 883 n, 885 n.
- Tūrā-shin Khātūn**, of the Bīyāt tribe,—one of the wives of Mangū Kā'an, son of Tūli, son of the Qhingiz Khān, 1233 n.
- Tūrak** b. **Anghar**,—ancestor of Tāhir ibn al-Husain, 9
- Farākinah Khātūn**, of the Chāt or Ūrhār Makrit tribe,—second of the four Khātūns of Ūktās Kā'in, son of the Qhingiz Khān, 953 n, 1141 n, 1142 n, 1144, 1149 n 7, 1150 n, 1151 n, 1152 n, 1176 n, 1181 n 2.
- urān Dukht**, daughter of Khawrazm Farwiz, son of Hurmuz, son of Nughirwān,—Fifth of the Akh-sirah dynasty of 'Ajām, 5.
- Tūrān Malik** b. Jamshēd Malik b. Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din Mas'ūd-i-Karīm, **Qhaznawī**, 107.
- Tūrān Shāh**, son of Abū Lashkar-i-Aiyāb, son of Shādī al-Kurdī. See under Malik-ul-Mu'assam Shams-ud-Daulah, Tūrān Shāh.
- Tūrān Shāh** b. Sultān Ibrāhīm **Qhaznawī**, 105.
- Tūrāniān** race, the,—known to the Greeks as Scythians, and in modern times as Tatārs, 886 n, 890 n.
- Turbē**, the Mughal,—one of the leaders of the Qhingiz Khān's army, 1084 n. See also under **Turtāe**.
- Turgut**, the,—name of a tribe, 1091 n.
- Tūris**, the,—a people reckoned among the Afghāns, but who claim other descent, li, 499 n.
- Turk**, the first of the eight sons of Yāf, [Japheth], progenitor of the Turks, 870 n, 871 n, 872 n, 873 n, 875 n, 879 n, 881 n, 882 n, 887 n, 900 n, 1106 n, 1140 n, 1259 n 1.
- Turk Ili**, Amir,—chief of the Angirās Kunghurūt Mughals, 943 n.
- Turk Imak**, the,—one of the **Qhahār** I-māk, 874 n.
- Turkān Khātūn**, daughter of Sultān Alb-Arsalān i-**Qhāzi**, son of Dā'ūd-i-Jaghār Beg, son of Mikhā'il, son of Saljūk, son of Luṭmān, the Turkman, 906 n.
- Turkān Khātūn**, daughter of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Din **Khawrazm Shāh**, given in marriage by Mangū

- Khān's** command to Malik Shāh, son of Badr-ad-Din Lūlā of Maupil, 1203 n.
- Turkān Khātān**, daughter of Tamghāsh Khān, a descendant of Baghrā Khān of Turkistān,—one of the wives of Sultān Maḥk Shāh, the Saljūki, and mother of Sultān Sanjar, 120 n. and n. 2, 120 n., 143 n. 2.
- Turkān Khātān**, mother of Sultān Rasiyyah, the daughter of Sultān Shams-ad-Din I-yā-Timish of Dihli, 696.
- Turkān Khātān**, wife of Sultān Takiah, and mother of Sultān 'Alī-ad-Dīn Muḥammad Khwārazm Shāh, 279 n. 6, 280 n. 7, 929 n., 930 n., 932 n., 938 n., 1032 n., 1098 n.
- Turkān Khātān**, the Malikah-i-Jahān, chief consort of Sultān Sanjar, son of Malik Shāh, son of Sultān Alb-Arslān i-Chāsi, Saljūki, 154 and n. 2, 155, 156 n. 8, 238 n. 6, 311, 936 n.
- Turkīn-i-Khwājah-Tish**. 699 n. See under the **Khwājah Tish** clause.
- Turkān Shāh b. Sultān Ibrahim Ghazawi**, 108.
- Turkish race**, the,—one of the four great races into which the Scythians are divided, 896 n.
- Turkish Slave dynasty of Dihli**, the, 36 n. 1, 41 n. 6, 156, 510 n., 511 n., 537 n., 635 n. 6.
- Turk-manind or Turk-mān**,—why the Turkmāns became so named, 879 n.
- Turkmāns**, the,—one of the Qhābār I-mah, 671 n., 674 n., 675 n., 679 n., 830 n., 905 n., 909 n., 952 n., 1015 n., 1021 n. 6, 1022 n., 1023 n., 1030 n., 1081 n., 1234 and n. 4, 1231 n.
- Turks**, the,—descendants of Turk, the first of the eight sons of Yāfiq [Japheth], xii, xiii, 31 n. 4, 41 n. 6, 46, 58, 62, 65, 69, 70, 119 n. 8, 231, 232 n., 423 n. 8, 477 n. 5, 482 n., 496 n. 2, 497 and n. 2, 509 n., 511 n., 536 n., 546 n. 8, 556 and n. 7, 564 n., 607 n. 4, 608 and n. 3, 607, 536, 609 n. 2, 670 n., 671 n., 673 n., 674 n., 676 n., 679 n., 680 n., 682 n., 683 n., 644 n., 685 n., 686 n., 687 n., 691 n., 692 n., 699 n., 900 and n., 901 n., 903 n., 904 n., 905 n., 907 n., 909 n., 912 n., 913 n., 914 n., 915 n., 916 n., 922 n., 923 n., 925 n., 926 n., 934 n., 935, 936 and n. 6, 937 n. 1, 940 n., 941 n., 944 n., 946 n., 948 n., 949 n., 953 n., 955 n., 956 n., 962 n., 973 n., 980, 983 n., 999 n., 1001 n., 1004, 1014 n. 2, 1016 and n. 3, 1021, 1022 n., 1029 n., 1030 n., 1032 n., 1041 n. 2, 1045 n., 1076 n., 1082 n., 1087 n., 1091 n., 1094 n., 1097 n. 6, 1100 n. 9, 1106 n., 1117 and n. 7, 1120 n. 1, 1131 n., 1132 n., 1139, 1187, 1188 n., 1151 n., 1167 n., 1169 n., 1216 n., 1217 n., 1233 n. 2, 1235 n. 1, 1277 n., 1282 and n. 6, 1254 n. 5.
- "**Turks in India**," the,—by Henry George Keene, M. R. A. S., Judge of Agra, 1004 n.
- Tur Kaghah or Tur-Kaghah**, the name given by the Turks to the Great Wall of China 956 n.
- Turkutan or Turghutan Karituk**, great-grandson of Himanka, son of Kāidu Khān, the fourth of

- the Bā-sanjar dynasty of the Mughal I-māk, — Bādabāh of the Tānjāt Mughals, 238 n.
- Tūrmati, the Nū-yin. See under Tūrtā or Tūrti.
- Turner, 563 n.
- Turātā Aghūl, son of Tūli Khān, son of the Qhingis Khān, 1104 n.
- Tūrtā or
- Tūrti, the Mughal Nū-in, — one of the leaders of the Qhingis Khān's army, 293 n 5, 297, 534 n 1, 535 and n, 536 n, 539 n 2, 540 n.
- Turtiāh, — the lieutenant of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Takīh Khwārazm Shāh, in Samarkand, 981 n.
- Tūsāl or Usāl, Amir, — governor of Irān Zamīn under the Mughals, 1121 n, 1122 n, 1141 n
- Tūghī Khān, son of the Qhingis Khān, 268 and n 4, 269 and n, 272 n 5, 280, 281, 960 n 6, 961 n, 963 n 8, 1004 n 8, 1026 and n 6 and 7, 1096, 1097, 1100, 1101, 1102 and n, 1108, 1104, 1146, 1164, 1172, 1263, 1264, 1292. See also under Jūji which is the Irāni spelling of the name.
- Tūtag or
- Tūtak, first son of Turk, son of Yāfū [Japheth], 872 n, 873 n, 879 n.
- Tūtār Aghūl, son of Bātū Khān, son of Tūghī [Jūji] Khān, son of the Qhingis Khān, 1229 n, 1248 n, 1286 n.
- Tutagh, son of Sultān Alb-Arsalān-i-Qhāsi, son of Dā'ūd-i-Jaghar Beg, son of Mikhā'il, son of Saljūk, the Turkman. See under Tutigh, Tāj-ud-Daulah.
- Tūti, — one of the Chieftains of the Ghuzz tribe, 156.
- Tutigh, Tāj-ud-Daulah Abā Sa'id, son of Sultān Alb-Arsalān-i-Qhāsi, son of Dā'ūd-i-Jaghar Beg, son of Mikhā'il, son of Saljūk, the Turkman, 139 n, 144 n 2, 204 n.
- Tutimāy, signification of the word, 141 n 7
- Tutmār-i-Qhūbin, the Bahādur, — one of the leaders of the Qhingis Khān's army, 981 n.
- Tawāw-qhūn Khātūn, of the Bā-yāūt tribe, — one of the wives of Mangū Kā'n, son of Tūli Khān, son of the Qhingis Khān, 1223 n.
- Tūzak-i-Jahāngiri, the, — app xxi.
- Tāz, signification of the word, 63 n 9.
- Tāzi, name of an expensive and fine fabric, 63 and n 9.
- Tuzūk-i-Bābari, the, — name of a historical work, xvi.
- Tūsūn b. Abu'l Wafā, the Amir-ul-Umarā, chief of the Turks of Baghdad, in the Khilāfat of al-Muttaḥi Billāh, 55 n 1, 55
- Tymancee, wrong spelling of the Tāmāni Imāk, which see.

## U

- Uḥaid'allah b. Tāhir — deputy of 'Umro, son of Lāw, Saffari, at Baghdad, 23 n 9
- 'Uḥaidi Ismā'il dynasty in Egypt, the termination of. 217 n, 616 n 2.

- Udāsh or Udī Sah, ruler of Jālor, 807 n.
- Udāshū, the,—one of the sept of the Makrit tribe of Mughals, 947 n, 968 n.
- Udā-ūī, the,—the three youngest sons of Aghās Khān, the third sovereign of the Mughal I-māk, 879 n, 880 n, 896 n, 1095 n.
- Ughāl-Kāimish or Ughāl Kīmish, the chief Khātān of Kyāk Khān, son of Uktās Kā'ān, son of the Chingis Khān, 1177 n 1, 1180 n, 1184 n, 1222 n.
- Ughāl Malik, or Aghāl Shāh, son of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Takīsh Khwārasm Shāh, 254 n 2, 286 n 6.
- Ughās Khān b. Kārā Khān, son of Mughal Khān, third sovereign of the Mughal I māk, 876 n, 880 n, 882 n, 891 n, 894 n. See also under Aghās Khān.
- Ugrian race, the,—one of the four great races into which the Sogthians are divided, 886 n
- Uhat Makrita, the, 1141 n See under the Cbār Makrit.
- Uhd Crmānghāt, the,—a Mughal tribe of the race of Kānān, 1089 n
- Uimāḡ or Uimāgh tribe, the,—descendants of Alimjah Khān, son of Kiwāḡ, 873 n
- Uin Kūn, the name given by the Mughals to the Great Wall of China, 956 n
- Uin-kūt tribe, the, 956 n See under the Ung kuts.
- Uir-āt or Iur-āt tribe of Mughals, the,—one of the Hazārahs constituting the Barānghār or Right Wing of the Mughal army, 940 n, 944 n, 950 n, 1093 n, 1184 n 9.
- Ujār, son of the Chingis Khān, 1092 n.
- Ujāsh or Akhās Malik b. Khān Malik—maternal uncle of Sultān Jalāl-ud-Dīn Khwārasm Shāh, 291 n.
- Uj-ūī, the, 879 n, same as the Uds-ūī, which see.
- Ukah-Kārī or Irkah Kārī,—brother of the Awang Khān, the sovereign of the Karīyat Mughals, 940 n.
- Uktās Kā'ān, 1106 n. See under Uktās Kā'ān, son of the Chingis Khān.
- Ukin or Ukain-Barṭāḡ, also written Ukin-Barṭā, son of Kābal Khān, the VIIIth of the Bū-sanjar dynasty of the Mughal I-māk, 897 n, 955 n, 1217 n.
- Uktān or Ughān, the Jusbi, son of the Nū-yān Manglik,—of the Ulkūnūt Kungtūr-āt Mughals, 1006, 1007, 1056, 1080 and n 5.
- Uktās or Uktās Kā'ān, son of the Chingis Khān, xlviii, 162 n, 180 n 5, 260 n 9, 284 n, 889 n 913 n, 917 n, 932 n, 934 n, 953 n, 956 n, 970 n 2, 974 n, 975 n 5, 996 n, 1001 n, 1026, 1042, 1047 and n 4, 1048 and n 3, 1051 n, 1057 and n 3, 1073 and n 4, 1075 n, 1076 n, 1077 n 6, 1082 n, 1083 n, 1084 n, 1086 n, 1087 n, 1088 n, 1091 n, 1092 n, 1093 n, 1094 n, 1096, 1097 n 7, 1099 n, 1101 n, 1102 n, 1103 n, 1104 and n n 4 and 5, 1105 n, 1106 and n, 1107, 1108, 1109, 1110 and n 6, 1111, 1112, 1113, 1114 and n 3, 1115 and n 5,

- 1116 n, 1117 n 6, 1118 n 9, 1120 n 2, 1121 n, 1122 n, 1123 and n 6, 1127 n, 1128 n, 1130, 1137 n, 1138 n, 1139 n, 1140 n, 1141 n, 1142 and n and n 2, 1143 and n, 1144 and n 5 and 6, 1145 n, 1146, 1148 and n 4 and 6, 1149 n and n 7, 1150 n, 1151 n, 1164 n, 1165 n, 1168 n, 1171 n, 1172 n 8 and 9, 1176 n 9, 1177 n 1, 1178 n, 1179 n, 1180 n, 1186 n and n 5, 1200 n, 1217 n, 1223 n 2, 1228 n 9.
- Ülāl-Kūimish**, the chief **Khātūn** of **Kyūk Khān**, son of **Uktāe Kā'an**, son of the **Chingis Khān**, 1177 n 1 See under **Cghūl Kūimish Khātūn**.
- Ülghāghī**, son of **Bätü Khān**, son of **Tāghī [Jāji]**, son of the **Chingis Khān**, 1290 n 1, 1292 n.
- Ümji Bigi**, daughter of **Uktāe Kā'an**, son of the **Chingis Khān**, 953 n.
- Ülāk Khān**,—one of the **Sardārs** of **Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Takīsh Khwārazm Shāh**, 978 n, 979 n.
- Ül-Kūsh Tigin** or **Alāshūsh Tigin Kūrin**,—**Hādshāh** of the **Ungghāt** tribe of **Turka**, 944 n, 945 n, 956 n, 957 n.
- Ülä-timūr**, [**Vladimir**, son of the **Grand Duke George of Russia**], ruler [**Hākūm**] of **Makār**, 1170 n.
- Üldāe**, son of **Barta**, of the **Angirās** tribe,—a son-in law of the **Chingis Khān**, 1223 n.
- Ülchō Khātūn**,—one of the **Khātūns** of **Hulaku Khān**, son of **Tut**, son of the **Chingis Khān**, 1254 n, 1261 n 7.
- Üljān Sultān**,—poisoned by **Ra-shid-ud-Dīn**, the **Mughal** historian, 1296 n.
- Üjlī**, the **Nā-yin**,—one of the **Nā-yins** of the **Chingis Khān**, 1180 n.
- Ülḡnūt**, the,—one of the tribes of the **Mughal I-māk**, 898 n, 1094 n.
- Ülḡnūt Kunghur-ūt** or **Kunghūr-ūt Mughals**, the, 945 n, 1080 n 5.
- Uluḡ** or **Great Nā-yin**, the,—title of **Tālī Khān**, son of the **Chingis Khān**, 1177 n.
- Uluḡ Bār-Bak** [**Chief Master** of the **Ceremonies**], one of the high officers of a court, 694 and n 2.
- Uluḡ Khān-i-Abī Muḥammad**, **Khān** of **Ganzarwān**, and **Atā-bak** of **Sultān Rakn-ud-Dīn Ghāri Shāhastī**, son of **Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Takīsh Khwārazm Shāh**, 225, 236, 261, 298, 414, 1002.
- Uluḡ Khān-i-Balban**, of the **Ilbari** tribe, who afterwards became sovereign of **Dhili** under the title of **Sultān Ghīyās-ud-Dīn Balban**, xlii, xxvii, xxviii, xxi, xxx, xxxiv n 4, lv, 528 n, 539 n, 634 n 2, 662 n 2, 661 n, 663 n 2, 664 and n 2 and 3, 667 and n 1 and 2, 668 n, 672 n 2, 674 n 4, 675 n 5, 677 n 6, 678 and n 7, 8 and 1, 680 and n and n 9, 681 and n 10, 1 and 4, 682 n 5, 683 and n, 684 n 8 and 9, 686 and n 2, 3 and 4, 686 and n 5, 6 and 7, 687 and n 2, 688 n 2, 3 and 4, 689 n 5, 691 and n, 692 n 2, 693 and n 2, 9 and 2, 694 and n 2, 4, 5 and 6, 695 n 5 and 2, 696 n and n 4, 698 and n 7, 699 and n 1, 2 and 5, 700 n 6 and 7, 702 and n 2, 703 and n 7, 704 and n 2, 705 n 2, 7 and 8,



706 and n 1, 2 and 4, 707 and n 5, 7 and 8, 708 and n 1, 709 n and n 5 and 6, 710 and n 9, 711 n 4, 712 n 6 and 9, 713 n 2 and 5, 714 n 7 and 9, 715 and n 4, 716 n 5, 717 n, 720 and n 1, 721 n 5, 722 n 3, 723 n 5, 6 and 7, 735 n 9, 758 n 9 and 1, 759 and n 4 and 6, 760 and n 9, 762 and n 5, 766 n 9, 767 and n 8 and 1, 768 n 8 and 4, 775 n, 777 n, 778 n, 781 and n 9, 782 n 3, 783 n and n 1, 784 n and n 3, 785 and n 2, 786 n 6, 787 n, 788 and n 9, 791 and n 4, 5 and 6, 792 and n 1, 794 n 9, 795 n and n 2, 796 and n, 797 and n 5, 798, 799 and n 4, 800 and n 5, 6 and 8, 801 and n, 803 and n 1, 805, 806, 807 and n 2, 808 and n 4, 809 and n 6, 810 and n 4, 811, 813 and n 5, 814 and n 9, 815 and n 8, 816, 817, 818 and n 8 and 6, 819 and n 8, 820 and n 1 and 2, 821, 822, 823, 824 and n 6, 825, 826, 827, 828 and n 3, 5 and 6, 829, 830 and n 4, 831 and n 1, 832, 833, 834, 835 and n 3, 836, 837, 838 and n 7, 839, 840, 841 and n 6, 842, 843 and n 3, 844 and n 5, 845 and n 3, 846 and n 6 and 6, 847 and n 4, 848, 849 and n 9, 850, 851 and n 9, 852, 853, 854 and n 3, 856, 857 and n 3, 858, 859 and n and n 7, 860 and n, 861, 862 and n 8, 863 and n 2 and 3, 864, 864 n, 861 n, 1071 n 1, 1077 n 5, 1131 n, 1156, 1169 n 1, 1181 n 2, 1181 n, 1202 n, 1217 n, 1234 n, 1235 and n, 1228 n 6, 1294, 1295, —app xi.

Ulugh Khan, son of Sultan Ghiyâ-ud-Din Tughlak, — of the Tughlak dynasty of Dhilli, 589 n

Ulugh-i-Khâs Hâjib [the Chief Royal Chamberlain], one of the high officers of a court, 588 and n 2.

Ulugh Katlugh, signification of the title, 720, 865 n.

Ulân Ânkah or Ângah, of the Çikânût tribe of Mughals, — Khâtûn of Yassûkâ, the Bahâdur and mother of the Chingis Khân, 606 n, 1094 n.

Ulân Kûjin, of the Ulkânût tribe of Mughals, — Khâtûn of Yassûkâ, the Bahâdur, and mother of the Chingis Khân, 606 n. Also called Ulân Ânkah.

Umayyah [Umayyah], the Khalifah of the House of, 1, 311.

'Umar, this name is written 'Umr by Kavery.

'Umaro b Tabba', XIVth of the Tabâbi'ah dynasty of Yaman, 7.

'Umdat-ul-Mulk of Tirmiz, — administrator of the affairs of Ghazni, 1015 n.

'Umdat-nu-Niswân, — title of Sultân Raziyyah, daughter of Sultân Shams-ud-Din I-yâl-Timur of Dhilli, 637 n 6.

Um Khân, the name given by Marco Polo, to the Awang Khân, 1089 n.

'Umr, the Bawardi, Amir, — one of the Malikis of Sultân 'Alâ-ud-Din Muhammad-i-Takîsh Khawîrazm Shâh, 1002.

'Umr, son of al-Khattâb, — second of the four early Khalifahs 238 n 4, 721.

'Umr, the Maraghani 'Izz-ud-Din, — governor of Herat on the part of the brother Sultans of Ghur, 193, 267 n 2, 1199 n.

- 'Umr-i-Bajī, the Kāfi, the Majd or Majir-al-Mulk,—one of the Wazirs of Sultān 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Takīsh Khwārazm Shāh, 990 n., 1027 n. 6.
- 'Umr-i-Sarāj, a poet of Tūlak, 362.
- 'Umr-i-Shahmatī, Amīr, the Sipah-Sālār of the forces of Ghūr, 395, 396, 410, 415.
- 'Umro, son of Khalaf, son of Aḥmad, the ruler of Bijstān, 186 n.
- 'Umro, son of Lāq, aq-Ṣuffār, or the Brāser,—second of the Ṣaffārīūn dynasty of Khurāsān, 19, 30 n. 2, 22, 23 and n. 9, 24 and n. 3, 25 and n. 1 and 2, 31 and n. 5, 24 and n. 6, 153 n. 2, 184 n., 185 n., 186 n.
- 'Umro, son of Muḥammad, son of Ya'qūb, son of Lāq, aq-Ṣuffār, or the Brāser, governor of Bijstān, 35 and n. 9.
- 'Umro, son of Ya'qūb, son of Lāq, aq-Ṣuffār, governor of Bijstān, 34, 35, 185 n.
- 'Umro, son of Ya'qūb, son of Muḥammad, son of 'Umro, son of Lāq, aq-Ṣuffār,—governor of Bijstān, 185 n.
- Ungḥi-Tigin or Unji-Tigin, son of Yassūkā, the Bahādur,—brother of the Chingiz Khān, 899 n., 1105 n. See also under C-Tigin or Aw-Tigin.
- Ung Khān, sovereign of the Karāyat Mughals, 470 n. See under the Awang Khān.
- Ungkut or Cin-kūt, the,—a Turkish tribe who had charge of the Great Wall of China,—one of the Hazaraks constituting the Burān ghar or Right Wing of the Mughal army, 944, 945 n., 948 n., 956 n., 959 n., 1098 n.
- Ungū, the name given by the Khitāis to the great Wall of China, 886 n.
- On I ghūra, the,—those of the I-ghūra who dwelt on the On or Ien rivers, 889 n., 951 n., 1097 n. 6.
- "Universal History," the, 292 n.
- University of Calcutta, 445 n., 537 n., 550 n. 6, 553 n. 5, 556 n. 7.
- Unji-Tigin or Ungḥi-Tigin, son of Yassūkā the Bahādur,—brother of the Chingiz Khān, 899 n., 1105 n. See also under U-Tigin or Aw-Tigin [Ung-kūts.
- Unkut Turks, the. See under the Unnūgh, son of Shīr, son of Adam, [Ance of Scripture], 1.
- 'Unpuri, the poet,—one of the court poets of Sultān Maḥmūd of Ghazna, 82.
- Urad Kalangḥūts, the,—one of the tribes of the Mughals, 1094 n.
- Urākāc or Urkās-Qhūn, the Bahādur,—emissary of Tamur-qhī, the Chingiz Khān to the Awang Khān, 943 n.
- Urānān, the,—a tribe of Turks, 275 n. 2, 929 n.
- Urāut or Crus Ināl, Bādeḥāh of the Kirghis tribe, 961 n., 970 n.
- Urdah, son of Tūghī [Jūyī] Khān, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1102 n., 1152 n., 1164 n. 9, 1170 n., 1176 n., 1179 n.
- Urdah or Ardash or
- Urdu or Ardu son of Atais, son of Iley,—sixth of the sovereigns of the Tatar I-mak, 875 n.
- Urghānah Khātun,—one of the Khātuns of Chingiz Khān,

- son of the **Qhingiz Khān**, 1140 n 7, 1194 n.
- Urhār Makrit, the,—one of the tribes of the **Mughals**, 917 n, 947 n, 1091 n, 1141 n. Also called the **Uhlāt Makrit**.
- Uri-angkt Kūngtur-āta, the,—one of the tribes of the **Mughals**, 961 n, 1094 n.
- Urkhāor Urkhāe **Qhān**, the Bahādur,—emissary of Tamar-qhī, the **Qhingiz Khān** to the **Awang Khān**, 948 n.
- Urū Rūa,—a leader of the troops of the Rājā of Gujarāt, 521 n.
- Urūa, the,—descendants of Rūa, son of Yāfa, [Japheth] See under the Rūa and the Rūmans.
- Urūa I-niāl or Urūaut, Bādāshāh of the **Kirghiz** tribe, 961 n, 970 n.
- Urūt tribe of **Mughals**, the,—one of the **Hasārahs** constituting the **Jawānghār**, or Left Wing, of the **Mughal** army, 1093 n.
- Urulā Shāh, son of Uluḡ **Khān** i. Abi Muḥammad, **Khān** of **Guzarwān**, 236 n 3 Also called **Tāj-ud-Din**, **Azabar Shāh**.
- Usāl or Tusāl, Amir,—governor of **Irān Zamin** under the **Mughals**, 1121 n, 1122 n, 1141 n.
- Ushin or Hoehin tribe, the,—one of the four **Hasārahs** of **Jūji Khān**, son of the **Qhingiz Khān**'s contingent, 1093 n.
- Ushūn tribe, the,—one of the four tribes styled the ulūs i. **Qhār-gūnah**, 1164 n 9.
- 'Uqmān, son of 'Aḡḡan, third of the four early **Khalifāhs**, 70 and n 8, 223 and n 3.
- 'Uqmān, son of Jalāl-ud-Din 'Alī, son of Ḥaṣan Tigin of the **Bughrā Khān**'s family,—XXIIrd of the **Afrāsiyābi Khāns** of **Turkiṣtān**, **Sultān** of **Samarḡand**, 260 n 7, 261 n, 262 n 1, 268 n, 401 n, 473 n 2, 475 n, 478 n 6, 479 and n, 480 n, 481 n, 485 n 2, 604 n 1, 909 n, 910 n, 911 n, 923 n, 929 n, 930 n, 931 n, 932 n, 979 n.
- 'Uqmān-i-Kharfash,—one of the **Amirs** of **Qhūr**, 410 and n 2.
- 'Uqmān-i-Maraghānī, the **Sar-i-Jāndār** to **Sultān Qhiyās-ud-Din** **Mahmūd**, son of **Sultān Qhiyās-ud-Din** **Muḥammad-i-Sām**, of **Qhūr**, 410. See also under **Tāj-ud-Din** 'Uqmān, the **Maraghānī**.
- 'Uqmān, Shāh,—of **Sistān**, grandson of **Nāḡir-ud-Din** 'Uqmān-i-Kharab, ruler of **Sijistān** and **Nimroz**, 201, 267 and n 3.
- 'Uqmānī **Sultāns**, the,—why they claim the office of **Khalifāh**, 1260 n.
- 'Uqmānī [val Ottoman] **Turks**, the,—they trace their descent from **Aḡhūs Khān**, son of **Karī Khān**, the third sovereign of the **Mughal** **I-māk**, 874 n, 878 n, 899 n, 909 n, 955 n, 1165 n, 1171 n, 1190 n 1, 1234 n 4.
- Usūd i-Rās-bān, the,—one of the officers of a court, 315 n 7.
- 'Uṭarid [Mercury], also called **Munghī**, 312 n 9.
- 'Uṭbā or 'Uṭbī, al., author of **Tārīkh-i-Yamīnī**, 44 n 4, 76 n 2, 67 n, 321 n 6 and 7, 322 n, 324 n, 341 n 6 and 7, 536 n.
- 'Uṭlā or 'Uṭbī, al., **Abū Ja'far**, **Wazīr** of **Amir** 'Abd n-Malik, son of **Nūḥ** son of **Naḡr**, **Sāmānī**, 40 n 2.

- '**Uthā** or '**Uthi**, al-, Abu'l Hasan-i-  
'**Abd'ullah**, son of **Aḥmad**,—**Wasir**  
of **Amir Nūh**, son of **Manṣūr**, son  
of **Nūh**, **Sāmāni**, 44.
- Utiqhin**, son of **Bartān**, brother's  
son of the **Qhingis Khān**, 942 n.  
Also called **U-Tigin**.
- Utiqhin**, son of **Yassūkā**, the  
**Bahādur**,—brother of the **Qhingis**  
**Khān**, 899 n., 1105 n. See also  
under **U-Tigin** or **Aw-Tigin**.
- U-Tigin** or **Utiqhin**, son of **Bartān**,  
—brother's son of the **Qhingis**  
**Khān**, 942 n.
- U-Tigin** or **Aw-Tigin**, the **Nū-yin**,  
son of **Yassūkā**, the **Bahādur**,—  
brother of the **Qhingis Khān**,  
899 n., 1094 n., 1105 n., 1144 and  
n 3, 1149 n 7, 1150 n., 1151 n.,  
1152 n., 1154 n 9
- Utmān Khel**,—one of the indepen-  
dent **Afghān** tribes, 352 n 3
- Utsuz**, the **Hājib**,—one of the  
officers of **Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Din**  
**Muḥammad-i-Takīsh Khwārazm**  
**Shāh**, 992.
- Utsuz**, the **Nū-in**,—one of the **Nū-**  
**yins** of the **Qhingis Khān**, 1063  
and n 1.
- Utsuz**, son of '**Alā-ud-Din al-Ḥusain**  
**Jabān Soz**, **Sulṭān** of **Chūr**, 229,  
295 and n 4 See also under  
'**Alā-ud-Din Utsuz**, son of '**Alā-**  
**ud-Din al-Ḥusain**.
- Utsuz** or **Itaz**, **Jalal-ud-Din Khwā-**  
**razm Shāh**, son of **Kuṭb ud-Din**  
**Muḥammad**, son of **Nūsh Tigin-i-**  
**Gharjah**, 254 n 2, 169 and n 6, 224  
n 5 and 9, 225 n 1, 226 and n 4,  
5 and 6, 227 n and n 7 and 8, 228  
n and n 6, 229 n 2, 232 n 2, 238 n,  
227 n.
- Usir**, the **Manḡuli** or **Manḡuli**,—  
takes possession of **Ālmāligh**,  
984 n., 985 n., 986 n.
- Us-bak**, another spelling of the  
name **Yūs-bak**.
- Uzbaks**, the,—name of a people,  
870 n., 874 n., 879 n., 890 n., 899 n.,  
921 n., 923 n., 947 n., 952 n., 1091 n.
- '**Uḡd-ud-Daulah Abū Shujā'** **Fanā**  
**Khusrān**, son of **Buku-ud-Daulah**,  
**Abū 'Alī-i-Ḥasan**, son of **Burwiah**,  
**Dilamī**, 45 and n 5, 57, 59 n 6, 60  
n 3, 61 and n 4, 62 n 3, 64 and n 1.
- '**Uḡd-ud-Daulah wa'd Din**, **Amir**,—  
governor of **Hindustān** on the  
part of **Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Din**  
**Mas'ūd-i-Karīm Ghaznawī**, 106  
and n 6.
- '**Uḡdi Hospital**, the,—at **Baghdād**,—  
founded by '**Uḡd-ud-Daulah Abū**  
**Shujā'** **Fanā Khusrān**, son of  
**Buku-ud-Daulah Abū 'Alī-i-**  
**Ḥasan**, son of **Burwiah**, **Dilamī**,  
1243 n.
- Uzjak**,—one of the leaders of **Kil-**  
**chāq**, 1170 n.
- Uz Khān**,—one of the officers of  
**Sulṭān Jalal-ud-Din Khwārazm**  
**Shāh**, 290 n 4, 291 n., 294 n., 297  
n 9, 298 n 1.
- Calāq Shāh**, son of **Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-**  
**Din Muḥammad-i-Takīsh Khwā-**  
**razm Shāh**, 253 n 2, 279 n 6. See  
also under **Arnalāq Shāh**.

## V.

**Vākya-charya**, the, 691 n.  
**Vairāgi karam**, 691 n.  
**Vajra Achārya**, the, 691 n.  
**Vakil [Wakil]**, signification of the term, 694 n. 4.  
**Valani**, the,—the name given by the Germans to the Koman Kap-chak, the people dwelling in the country between the Danube and the Atil, 1166 n.  
**Vambéry**, Professor, 722 n. 2, 866 n, 866 n, 977 n.  
**Vambéry's Bokharah**, 977 n.  
**Vasef [Wapf]**,—name of an author, 866 n.  
**Vasir [Wasir]**, signification of the term, 694 n. 4.

**Vertot**, 217 n.  
**Vicar of Bray**, 578 n. 2.  
**Vizata**, the,—vul. for the Ul-rāta, which see, 1028 n.  
**Vladain**, 919 n, 923 n, 933 n, 936 n.  
**Vladimir**, son of the Grand Duke George of Russia, the ruler of Makār, 1170 n.  
**Von Dorn**, 72 n. 6.  
**Von Hammer**, 1167 n, 1168 n. 6, 1190 n. 1, 1193 n, 1209 n, 1210 n. 4 and n, 1236 n, 1246 n. 6, 1254 n.  
**Voyage**, Terry's, 538 n.  
**Voyages and Transactions** of the Portuguese, the, 532 n. 6.  
**Vüllers**, 694 n. 4.

## W.

**Webil**, signification of the word, 1194 n.  
**Wahid-ud-Din**, the Bughanji, Kāsi and Imām of Khurāsān, 1089  
**Wahid-ud-Din Marwasi**, Kāsi,—one of the Court Kāsis of Sultān Ghiyās-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Sām of Ghūr, 384 385.  
**Wajsan**, Waan or Wasas, son of Hain, son of Bahrām,—ancestor of Amīr Banji, 312.  
**Wakil**, signification of the term, 694 n. 4.  
**Wakil-i-Dar**, the,—one of the high officers of a court, 694 n. 4, 698 n. 7.  
**Walaks**, the,—name of a people, 369 n.  
**Walan**,—a leader of the troops of the Rājah of Gujarāt, 522 n.

**Walker**, Colonel, 919 n, 920 n, 921 n, 929 n, 932 n, 950 n, 970 n. 2, 987 n, 1008 n. 5, 1009 n. 7, 1016 n, 1096 n, 1207 n.  
**Walta'ab**, son of Marḡad,—of the Tabābi'ah dynasty of Yaman, 7.  
**Wamtah Porto**,—Amīr of the country of Karīklā, 1170 n.  
**Wang Khān**, the Chinese name of the Āwang Khān, 959 n.  
**Wang te-chung**, son of Wang-shi-hyen,—general of Mangū Khān, son of Tūli Khān, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1216 n.  
**Warat**, Darrat or Dirat, son of Hain, son of Bahrām,—ancestor of Amīr Banji, 312.  
**War-heshāu**, son of Farwez, son of Faraz, son of Shansab,—ancestor of Amīr Banji, 312.

Warmaghān or Dar-maghān, son of Parwez, son of Parwez, son of Shansab,—ancestor of Amir Banji, 312.

Warmesh-i-Bat,—chief of the district of Jarūs or Kharūs, 328 n, 328 n.

Warmesh, son of Shis, of the family of the Shisānīs, the Sipah-Sālār and champion of Ghūr, 366 and n 4, 367, 413 n 1.

Warmesh or Wir-mesh, son of Warmeshān, son of Parwez, son of Parwez, son of Shansab,—ancestor of Amir Banji, 312 and n 6.

Warmeshān, Warmaghān or Warmaghān, son of Parwez, son of Parwez,—ancestor of Amir Banji, 312. [17 n 7]

Warrāk, signification of the word,

Wiqīḡ B'illāh, al., the 'Abbāsī Khalīfah, 14, 15, 23.

Wahm-gir, son of Ayāz,—ruler of Rai, 56.

Wapf, —name of an author, 866 n.

Wazir, signification of the term, 694 n, 698 n 7.

Wazir of Lādān or Lāwān, the 1170 n

Wazn or Wasan, son of Hain, son of Bahram,—ancestor of Amir Banji, 312.

Westmacott, 590 n, 591 n.

White Tatars, the,—a division of the Tāttār, 864 n.

Wilford, 559 n.

Wolf, 939 n, 953 n, 994 n, 996 n, 1000 n, 1021 n 8, 1075 n, 1167 n.

Wood, Captain, 292 n, 1009 n, 1010 n, 1115 n 5

## X.

Xavier Hommaire de Hell,—author of "Travels in the Steppes of

the Caspian Sea, the Crimea, the Caucasus," etc., 884 n.

## Y

Yadah-tāgh,—the rain-producing stone, as called by the Turks, 870 n, 1138 n. [i-Yafa'i

Yafa'i, 207 n 8. See also the Terikh-Yāfā, son Nūh, [Japheth of Scripture], 869 n 2, 870 n, 871 n, 872 n, 873 n, 874 n, 881 n, 896 n, 899 n, 955 n.

Yāfā Ughlān, or the Younger Yāfā [Japheth],—the title given to

Turk, the eldest son of Yāfā when chosen head of his people, 872 n.

Yaghan Shāh b Sultān Ibrāhīm, son of Sultān Mas'ūd, Ghannawi, 106 and n 1

Yagh mu, Yaghmūr or Yagh-mur, the Tarkmān,—one of the Miltars or chiefs of the Saljūqs, 116 n 3, 119 n 8, 120 and n 9, 121 and n 6, 122, 123 n

Yagh-rash or Bagh-rash, Amir,—whose son was the Shahnah [intendant] of Hīrāt, under the Mughals, 863 and n 9.

Yaghū, the,—the Arabic name of the Khing But or Grey Idol of Bāmīān, 1058 n 6.

Yagūm, son of Abrahāt-ul-Ashram, of the Tabābī'ah dynasty of Yaman, 8.

Yahyā, St. John the Baptist 1258, n 4.

Yahyā, the, Nakhjāsāni, Amir,—governor of Hīllah, on the part of Hulūkā Khān, son of Tūlī, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1243 n.

Yahyā, son of Aḥmad, son of Asad, son of Sāmān-i-Khaddāt, 29, 54.

Yahyā, son of Aḥmad, son of Ismā'īl, son of Aḥmad, son of Asad, son of Sāmān-i-Khaddāt, styled Abū Zakariyā, 33, 37 n.

Yahyā, son of A'ḥab,—disciple of the Khālīfah 'Alī and tutor of Husein and Husein, his sons, 1281.

Yahyā, son of Asad, son of Sāmān-i-Khaddāt,—governor of Shīsh and Isfajāb, 37 and n 6, 28.

Yahyā-i-Bermak,—the paragon of Oriental liberality and generosity, 1296 and n 1.

Yahyā, son of Ismā'īl, son of Aḥmad, son of Asad, son of Sāmān-i-Khaddāt, 33, 54.

Yahyā, son of Naṣr, son of Aḥmad, son of Asad, son of Sāmān-i-Khaddāt, 54.

Yahyā Khān,—author of the Tazkirat-ul-Mulūk, xvi, 84 n 2, 449 n 8.

Yā-jū and Mā-jū) (Ug and Ma

gog], descendants of Gumārī [Gomer], son of Yīfā, and the probable ancestors of the Samoyedes, 872 n.

Yāk, [Boa Grunniens], the Khīṣ-i bull, 69 n.

Yakab or the Unique Nū-yin, the,—title of Tūlī Khān, son of the Chingiz Khān, 1177 n.

Ya'kūb, son of Abū Naṣr-i-Aḥmad, son of Ismā'īl, son of Aḥmad, son of Asad, son of Sāmān-i-Khaddāt, 54.

Ya'kūb, son of Aḥmad, son of Asad, son of Sāmān-i-Khaddāt, 29, 54.

Ya'kūb, son of Lais, the Ṣuffār, or the Brazier,—founder of the Ṣuffārīūn dynasty, 10 n 5, 16, 17, 19 and n 1, 20 and n 3, 21, 22 and n 7 and 8, 23 and n 1, 24, 185 n, 186 n, 317 and n 5.

Ya'kūb, son of Muḥammad, son of 'Umro, son of Lais, the Ṣuffār, of the family of the Ṣuffārīūn, 184 n.

Ya'kūb, son of Nūh, son of Manṣūr, son of Nūh, son of Manṣūr, Sāmāni, 52 n 8.

Ya'kūb, son of 'Umro, son of Lais, the Ṣuffār, of the family of the Ṣuffārīūn, 34 n 6.

Ya'kub, son of Yusuf, son of Nāṣir-ud-Din Sabuk-Tigin,—commander of the forces of Sulṭān Maḥammad, son of Sulṭān Maḥmūd of Ghaznīn, 89 n 8.

Yāḳūt, a slave of the 'Abbāsi dynasty,—governor of Fāru for the Khālīfah, 55 n 1.

Yāl-būr, another name of Ibak-i-Nā-Pāk, the Turk: slave who

- became master of Multān, 476 n.
- Yal-dūs, another way of writing the name, Iyal-dūs.
- Yal-dūs or Yüldüz, son of Āo Khān, —Vith sovereign of the Mughal I-māk 881 n.
- Yal-dūs, Yüldüz or Yüldüz, third son of Āghūs Khān, son of Kārī Khān, the third sovereign of the Mughal I-māk, 880 n.
- Yal-dūs, Yüldüz, Yüldüz or I-yal-dūs Khān, son of Mangali Khān, son of Timūr-Tāsh, —chief of the Mughals on their issuing from Irgānah-Kūn, 888 n., 891 n., 892 n.
- Yalwāj, the Šāhūb See under Mahmūd Yalwāj
- Yamah Nūyān, 276 n., 277, 278 n., another name of Jabah, the Nūyīn, which see
- Yamak or Yamāk, the,—name of a part of the Ilbari tribe of Turks, 961 n., 1097 n. 6, 1169 and n. 1, 1295.
- Yaman, the Malika of,—the dynasty of the Tāhuris, 26 and n. 2.
- Yam-gūr or Yīghūr,—one of the leaders of the Qhngis Khān's army, 288 n. 3
- Yamin-ud-Daulah Niẓām-ud-Dīn, Abū'l Kāsim Maḥmūd, Sultān of Ghaznīn, 67 and n. 1, 75, 80 n. 5 See also under Sultān Maḥmūd of Ghaznīn.
- Yamin-ud-Daulah or
- Yamin-ud-Dīn Bahrām Shāh, son of Malik Naṣīr-ud-Dīn 'Uṣmān, son of Tāj-ud-Dīn-i-Harab, Malik of Sijistān and Nimroz, 20, 193 and n. 5, 194 and n. 7, 195, 196, 197, 198, 402 n.,
- Yamīnī, the. See the Kitāb-i-Yamīnī of al-'Uthfī.
- Yaminīah dynasty, the,—founded by Sultān Yamin-ud-Daulah Maḥmūd of Ghaznīn, also called the Maḥmūdīah dynasty, which see, and the Ghaznawī dynasty, which see, 67.
- Yamkālīn, or Bamkālīn, the,—a branch of the Sūldūs tribe, and one of the four Hasārahs of Cktā, Kā ān son of the Qhngis Khān, 1094 n.
- Yanḥī, probably the Chinese name of Maḥmūd Yalwāj, the Wasir of the Qhngisīah dynasty, 1217 n.
- Ya'rib, son of Kāptān, son of 'Ābir [Heber of Scripture],—first King of Yaman, 6.
- Yarkand Mission [to the ruler of the State of Kāshghar], the, 899 n., 942 n.
- Yarūgh, 1263 n.
- Yāsā or Yāsah, the name applied to the Code of the Qhngis Khān, 1108 and n. 2.
- Yasah, signification of the word, 1108.
- Yasā-Mangā or—Mangā or
- Yasū-Mangā or Mangah, son of Qhaghātān, son of the Qhngis Khān, 1148 n. 4, 1179 n., 1180 n., 1185 n.
- Yasūkā or Yasūktān, the Bahāddar, son of Bartān,—father of the Qhngis Khān, and Kih of the Bā-zanjar dynasty of the Mughal I-māk, 826 n., 829 n., 925 n., 926 n., 940 n.
- Yasūktā Mungah, son of Qhaghātān, son of the Qhngis Khān, 1148 n. 4. See under Yasā Mangā.



- Yasákín or Yasákhin, a Títtár Rdy,—third of the Khátáns of the Qhngis Khán, 1092 n.
- Yasáki, the Bahádur, 808 n. See under Yasáká, the Bahádur, son of Bortán.
- Yasálán, sister of Yasákhin,—fifth of the Khátáns of the Qhngis Khán, 1082 n.
- Yasú Báki, the Tá-ighí, of the Uhúd Urmángkút tribe of Mughals,—the Korphí or guardian of the sepulchre of the Qhngis Khán, 1080 n.
- Yasú Mungá, son of Jáji Kaskr, son of Yasáki, the Bahádur,—nephew of the Qhngis Khán, 1180 n.
- Ya'ák, the,—the Arabic name of the Surá But or Red Idol of Bámián, 1088 n. 6.
- Yasadjird-al-Asim [Evil-doer], also styled Káwhash [morose], XIIth of the Sástanian dynasty of 'Ajem, 5.
- Yasadjird b. Bahrán Gor, son of Yasadjird-al-Asim, XIVth of the Sástanian dynasty of 'Ajem, 6.
- Yasadjird-i-Shahryár, son of Khusráw Parwiz,—last of the Aká-sirah dynasty of 'Ajem, 6, 70 and see 8 and 1.
- Yellu Taishi, the,—the name of the Gár Khán of the Kára Khitá-ia, according to D'Ohaeson, 913 n.
- Yiddi-Kát,—title given to the rulers of the I-ghár tribes, 963 n.
- Yiddi-kát, the,—ruler of the I-ghár tribes, whose capital was Bish-Bálig, 943 n., 951 n., 952 n., 948 n., 955 n., 961 n., 969 n. 1, 970 n. 2, 985 n., 1083 n., 1097 n. 6, 1101 n. 1, 1116 n., 1141 n., 1157 n. 1, 1188 n.
- Yighár or Yám-ghár,—one of the leaders of the Qhngis Khán's army, 268 n. 3.
- Yong-ku, the Chinese name of a tribe of West Tartary, 985 n.
- Yorkis, Portakin or Bortakin,—chief of the Yorkis tribe of Mughals, 940 n.
- Yorkin, the,—one of the tribes of the Mughals, 940 n.
- Yaghán-Tat,—title given to Saif-ud-Din I-bak, of the Shamsiah Maliks of Hind, 618 n., 968 n. See under Saif-ud-Din I-bak-i-Yaghán-Tat.
- Yughán Tigin,—title given to Kadr Khán b. Yúsaf b. Bughrá Khán-i-Hárán, the VIIth of the Afrásiyábi Kháns of Turkistán, which see, 905 n. He afterwards took the title of Bughrá Khán.
- Yáhan or Báhan, Bádháh of the Qharkas, 1170 n.
- Yül-dús, another way of writing the name Iyal-dús.
- Yül-dús Kalmáka, the,—a branch of the Kálimáka, 1091 n.
- Yulo, Colonel, 912 n., 916 n., 917 n., 918 n., 1010 n.
- Yünánian [Ionians], the, descended from Gumári, son of Yálg, [Gomer of Scripture], 872 n.
- Yünánia, [the Greeks], the, 2. See the above.
- Yúna, son of Saljúk, son of Lukmán, the Turkman, 117 n.
- Yúna Khán, son of Sultán 'Alá-ud-Din Takish, son of I-yal Arsalán Khwárazm Sháh, 248

- 26, 249 and 23, 250 and 24, 251 2. [875 n.  
 Yarat, signification of the word, Yürish-i-Haft Saläh, or "Seven years' Campaign," the, 1165 n.  
 Yüsha', son of Nün, [Joshua of Scripture], 1269 n.  
 Yüsh-müt, son of Hulakü Khän, son of Tüli, son of the Qhingis Khän, 717 n, 1264 n, 1270 2, 1272 n 5 and 6, 1273 n 7, 1278 n, 1279 n.  
 Yüsuf, [the Patriarch Joseph], 596, 597 and 23, 598, 599, 600, 910 n.  
 Yüsuf, the Khwärazmî, governor of the fortress of Barsam,—the murderer of Sultän Alb-Araälän-i-Ghäsî, son of Dä'üd-i-Jaghar Beg, Saljuqi, 137 n 4.  
 Yüsuf, the Tütär, whose Turkish name was Safaktän of the tribe of Yamak, 267. See also under Safaktän-i-Yamak  
 Yüsuf, son of Altün-Täsh, the Häjib, the ruler of Khwärazm on the part of Sultän Mahmüd of Ghasnin, 121 n.  
 Yüsuf-i-Kadr Khän, 904 n,—the Gardesi so calls Kadr Khän, son of Yüsuf, son of Bughrî Khän-i-Härän, which see.  
 Yüsuf, son of Nâsir-ud-Din Sabak-Tigin, of Ghasnin, 75, 89 n 8, 324 n.—app. xvii.  
 Yüsuf, son of Saljuq, son of Lük-män, the Turkmen, 117 n.  
 Yüsuf b. Sultän Ibrähim, Ghasnawi, 106.  
 Yüsuf Shäh, Sultän,—ruler of Gaur or Lakha-pawati, 583 n 6.  
 Yüsufziz, the,—of the Khä'r'hi division of the Afghän nation, 78 n, 353 n 3, 1044 n.  
 Yüs-bak b. Muḥammad Jahän Fahlawän b. Iladd-giz us-Sanjari, the Atä-bak, ruler of Äzärbäijän, 172 and 23, 173, 176, 265, 266 n, 296 n, 996 n, 997 n.  
 Yüs-bak-i-Tughril Khän, Malik of Lakha-pawati, 561 n 2. See under his title of Ikhuyär-ud-Din.  
 Yüz-Täsh, the Häjib of Amir Abä Ibrähim al-Muntaḥir, the last of the Sämänis, 81 n.

## Z.

- Zafar Namah, the,—name of a historical work, xvi, 278 n, 288 n 3, 289 n, 1131 n  
 Zafir Khän, 591 n.  
 Zafir, the Sälär,—one of the Khälj Amirs of Sultän Täj ud-Din Iyal-düz, 577 and 23, 579 and 23  
 Zafir, az-. See under Malik-uz-Zafir, son of Saläh ud-Din Yüsuf al-Aiyübi.  
 Zagatay, mispronunciation of the name of Qhaghataa, son of the Qhingis Khän, 1145 n  
 Zähid-i Ähü Pogh, the,—a holy man in the time of Sultän Sanjar, son of Sultän Malik Shäh, the Saljuqi, 237 n  
 Zähid, az-. See under Malik-uz-Zähid, son of Saläh-ud-Din Yüsuf al-Aiyübi.

**Zāhir**, *az*-. See under **Malik-az-Zāhir**, son of **Ṣalāḥ-ud-Dīn Yūsuf**, al-Aiyūbī.

**Zahir-ud-Dīn**, the **Bitik-shī**,—one of the emissaries of **Hulākū Khān**, son of **Tālī**, son of the **Qhngiz Khān**, to **Rukn-ud-Dīn Khūr Shāh**, the **Bādshāh** of the **Malāhidah** of **Alamūt**, 1206 n. 3, 1207 n.

**Zahir-ud-Dīn Fāryābī**, **Manīkū**, the **Khujājah**,—the **Malik-nah-Shu'arā'** [Prince of Poets], 243 and n. 8.

**Zahir-ud-Dīn Fath-i-Karmāshk**,—one of the **Maliks** of **Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sām**, of **Ghūr**, 400.

**Zahir-ud-Dīn Muḥammad i-Karmāshk**,—one of the **Maliks** of **Sulṭān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sām**, of **Ghūr**, 400.

**Zāhir-ud-Dīn Saif-ul-Islām**, son of **Aiyūb**, son of **Shādi al-Kurdi**, See under **Malik-ul-'Asiz Zāhir-ud-Dīn**.

**Zāhir-ul-Mulk 'Abd'ullah Sanjari**,—one of the **Maliks** of **Sulṭān Ghīyās ud Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sām**, of **Ghūr**, 399.

**Zaid**, son of **Muḥammad-i-Zaid-ul-'Alawi**, the ruler of **Taberistān**,—taken prisoner by **Amir Ismā'īl**, son of **Aḥmad**, son of **Amd**, **Sāmāni**, 82.

**Zaidī**, deputy of **Husain-i-Kharāmī**, See under **Zaydī**.

**Zain-ud-Dīn 'Alī**, the **Sayyid** and **Imām**, 785 n. 2.

**Zain-ud-Dīn Hāfiq**, **Wasir** of the **Malik Un-Nāṣir**, the **Sulṭān** of **Halab**, 1263 n., 1264 n.

**Zain-ul-Akhbār**, the,—name of a

historical work by **Abū Sa'īd**, son of **Ḥafiyah**, the **Gardaisi**, xvi, 536 n.

**Zain-ul-Ma'āqir**, the,—name of a historical work, 468 n.

**Zainab**, daughter of **Sulṭān Maḥmūd** of **Ghasnin**,—given in marriage to the **Bughrī Khān**, son of **Kadr Khān**, the **Xth** of the **Afrāsiyābi Khāns** of **Turkistān**, 906 n.

**Zāi b. Sām**, son of **Narimān**,—father of **Rustam-i-Dastān**, 309 n., 318, 423 n. 7.

**Zambār**, signification of the word, 1271 n.

**Zanbār**, the agent despatched by **Tālī Khān**, son of the **Qhngiz Khān**, to the inhabitants of **Hirāt**, 1036 n. 1.

**Zanbār**, signification of the word, 1271 n.

**Zanburak**, signification of the word, 1271 n.

**Zangī-i-Abi Hafs**, **Amir**,—chief of the troops of **Sistān** and governor of the fortress of **Tirmid**, 1002.

**Zangī**, son of **Ak-Sanḥur**, the **Malik** of **Mausl**. See under his title of **'Imād-ud-Dīn**.

**Zangī**, **Ba'lami**, **Mahk**,—uncle's son of **Malik Kutb-ud-Dīn Husain Ghūri**. See under his title of **'Imād-ud-Dīn**.

**Zangī**, son of **Fakhr-ud-Dīn Mas'ūd**, **Mahk** of **Bāmian**. See under his title of **Tāj ud-Dīn**.

**Zangī**, son of **Khālīfah Shaibāni**, **Amir**,—the **Wālī** of **Tukhāristān**, 376 n.

**Zangī-i-Khar-Jam** [or **Khar-Qham**],—one of the **Ghūri** **Maliks** of **Sulṭān 'Alā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-**

- Takīsh Khwārasm Shāh, 280 and n 6.
- Zangī b. Maudūd, son of Zangī, son of Ak Sanjur,—the Atā-bak of Fārs, 175 and n 7 and 8, 176 and n 1.
- Zangī b. Sa'd, son of Zangī, son of Maudūd, the Atā-bak of Fārs, 266 n.
- Zangī b. Sanjur, son of Maudūd, son of Zangī, son of Ak Sanjur, the Atā-bak of Fārs, 148, 178.
- Zangis Khān, wrong spelling of the name of the Chingis Khān, 1068 n 6.
- Zankabā b. Tāzi-barsud, son of Farāwāl or Karāwāl,—ancestor of Zuhāk, the Tāsi, 303 and n 7, 304.
- Zar'ab, Zu'ī Nawāsh of the Tabā-bi'ah dynasty of Yaman, 7.
- Zarnīk b. As'ad,—ancestor of Tāhir ibn al-Husain, 9.
- Zartusht, founder of the Zoroastrian religion, 8.
- Zau b. Thamāsib, son of Manū-qhīr,—Xiltā of the Bāstāniyah dynasty of 'Ajam, 3.
- Zaydī, a steward or deputy in the employ of Husain-i-Kharmīl,—takes possession of the fortress of Hurāt till defeated by Sultān Muḥammad-i-Takīsh Khwārasm Shāh, 259 n 3.
- Zeeruk, Mahomed, Prince of Murv, 472 n, 478 n,—wrong name given by Briggs to Muḥammad-i-Khar-nak.
- Ziā-yi,—author of a history, 60 n 7.
- Zireek, Mahommed, prince of Murve, 472 n, 478 n,—wrong name given by Dow to Muḥammad-i-Khar-nak.
- Zirghām, the Wasir of the Ismā'īlian or Fāṭimite Khalīfah of Egypt, 200 n 6.
- Ziyā-ud-Dīn 'Alī, Amīr,—appointed governor of Marw, his native city, by Tūli Khān, son of the Chingis Khān, 1083 n, 1084 n and n 9.
- Ziyā-ud-Dīn Barani, author of the Tārīkh-i-Firūz-Shāhī, xvi, xxi, 690 n, 662 n, 716 n 5, 717 n, 771 n, 776 n, 779 n, 794 n 1, 795 n. See also under the Tārīkh-i-Firūz-Shāhī of Ziyā-ud-Dīn Barani.
- Ziyā-ud-Dīn Junaidī, the Majd or Malik-ul-Umarī,—the Amīr-i-Dād of Gwāhyār, for Sultān Shams-ud-Dīn I-yāl-Tīmūsh of Delhi, 620, 643 n 4, 644.
- Ziyā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-'Abd-us-Sallām Nisāwī, Kāsi of Tūlak, son of the Kāsi Majd-ud-Dīn Tūlakī,—governor of Tabar-hindah on the part of Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sām, of Ghūr, xxiu, 281 n 5, 458, 461 n, 463 n, 464, 1060 n 5.
- Ziyā-ud-Dīn Muḥammad b. Abū 'Alī, Ghansabī, the Durr-i-Ghūr or the Pearl of Ghūr, l, 252 and n 6, 255 n 7, 246 and n 8, 361 and n 4, 390, 391 n 2 and 3, 393 and n 8 and 9, 394 n, 397 n 5, 399 n 3, 400 n 3, 417, 418 n 4, 419 n 6, 468 n 4, 472, 478 n 6, 490 n, 498, 490 and n 8, 525 n, 1002 n 9. His title was changed to that of 'Alī-ud-Dīn when the throne of Firūz-koh was conferred upon him by Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Dīn Muḥammad-i-Sām. See also under 'Alī-ud-Dīn Muḥammad, the Malik-ul-Hājī.

**Ẓiyā-ul-Mulk**, son of the **Niẓām-ul-Mulk** **Muḥammad Jannīdī**,—one of the **Tājik** officials of **Sultān Rukn-ud-Din Firūz Shāh** of **Dihli**, 685.

**Ẓiyā-ul-Mulk**, the 'Asir, the **Zawzani**,—one of the **Wasirs** of **Sultān 'Alā-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Takish Khwārazm Shāh**, 990 n, 1027 n 8.

**Ẓiyā-ul-Mulk Darmashāni** or **Darmashī**,—one of the **Wasirs** of **Sultān Mu'izz-ud-Din Muḥammad-i-Sām**, of **Ġhūr**, 489 and n 4.

**Ẓiyā-ul-Mulk Tāj-ud-Din**,—appointed **Wasir** of **Sultān Nāṣir-ud-Din Maḥmūd Shāh** of **Dihli** under the title of **Niẓām-ul-Mulk**, 710.

Zotenberg, M. H., viii, xvii.

**Zu'l Karna'in**, See under **Sikandar-i-Zu'l Karna'in**.

**Zu Shānkār**, of the **Tabābi'ah** dynasty of **Yaman**, 7.

**Zu'l Nawās**, of the **Tabābi'ah** dynasty of **Yaman**, 7 n 1

**Zu'l Nawāsh**, of the **Tabābi'ah** dynasty of **Yaman**, 7 and n 1

**Zu'l Yaminain**,—title of **Tāhir ibn al-Husain**, the general of **al-Ma'mun** the 'Abbāsi **Khalifah**, and founder of the **Tahiri** dynasty in **Khārazm**, lvii, 9 n 1, 11 and n 9.

**Zu-n-Nās Arghūn**, **Amir**,—brother of **Sultān 'Alī** the **Arghūn**, the governor of the territory of **Sijistān**, 1122 n.

**Zubdat-ut-Tawārikh**. the,—name of a historical work xvi, 449 n 8, 552 n 2, 556 n 2, 557 n 3, 559 n 3, 561 n 8, 566 n 7, 567 n 1, 568 n n 7 and 9, 569 n n 3 and 6, 572 n n 4, 6, 7 and 8, 575 n 1, 576 n 5, 577 n 580 n 9, 606 n 3, 611 n 3 618 n, 619 n 7, 623 n 1, 643 n, 647 n 9, 648 n 3, 659 n 6, 665 n 8, 669 n 6, 716 n 5, 778 n.—app. vi, viii.

**Zuhāk**, son of **Arwand-asp**, called the **Tāzi**,—Vith of the **Bastāniyah** dynasty of 'Ajam, 3, 301, 302, 303 and n 7, 304 and n 1, 305 and n 5, 306 and n n 9 and 5, 307, 308 n 2, 309 and n, 331, 340 and n 3, 509 n.

**Zuhāk**, son of **Suhrāb**, son of **Shaad-asp**,—ancestor of **Amir Banji**, 306.

**Zūtūmin** or **Zūtū-manin**, son of **Bukās**, son of **Bū-sanjar**,—111rd of the **Bu-sanjar** dynasty of the **Mughal I-naq**, 694 n, 695 n, 804 n

**Zuzi**,—wrong spelling of the name of **Juzi Khān**, son of the **Chingiz Khān**, 1167 n.

## PART II, GEOGRAPHICAL.

(n. stands for *footnote*).

— 243 —



Āb-i-Bārīni, the,—the upper portion of the Kābul river, 288 n 3, 289.

Āb-i-Fanākat, the, which is also called the Sīhūn, 987 n. See also the river Fanākat.

Āb-i-Khujand, the,—another name of the river Sībān, 921 n.

Āb-i-Lakhanawāṭi, the,—a branch of the Ganges, 763 and n 1.

Āb-i-Shudāh, the,—for the river Sindh, 76 n 2, 77 n.

Āb-i-Sind, the, 77 n, 78 n, 96 n 1, 541 n 5, 1020 n. See also "the Indus" and "the Sind."

b-i-Sugūn,—name of an island in the sea of Khurs, 276 n, 286 n 6, 994 n.

b-i-Sugūn,—name of the sea of Khurs, 276 n.

b-i-Sugūn, the,—name of a considerable river falling into the sea of Khurs, 276 n

> i-Tang, description of the term, 334 n 6, 335 and n 9

Abalik-Chāk, 937 n 8,—for Balik-Chāk, which see. [Sind.

Abā-Sind, the, 78 n.—See the Āb-i-'Abbās ābād,—a town in the district of Rai, 1207 n.

'Abbās-ābād,—a district west of Hamadān, 1239 n

Āb gūn,—name of an island in the sea of Khurs, 278 n.

Āb Istādāh, in the territory of Wajiristān, 334 n 8

Abiward,—a city and district of Khurāsān, 13 n 8, 51 n 6, 116 n 8, 117 n, 119 n 7, 248 n, 471 n 5, 481 n 8, 1038 n, 1081 n, 1037 n. See also Bāward.

Ābū or Ālu gadh, fort of, 521 n, 522 n, 706 n 7.

A'bu, mountain of, 522 n.

Abū-Bakr pūr or Bū Bakr pūr,—a district in Hindūstān, 285.

Abā-gadh or Ālā-gadh, hills of, 522 n.

Abuher,—a town of Hindūstān, 687 and n 9, 823 n 3

Aburdhan-koṭ, 582 n. See under Bardhan-koṭ.  
 Aḡḡrīah or Aḡḡrīah, 732 n 6, 824 n 8. See under Aḡḡr.  
 Acro, liv, 215, 235 n 4, the 'Akkah of Arab geographers.  
 'Adan [Anglicised Aden], 766 and n 1.  
 Aden, the 'Adan of Arab geographers, 766 n 1.  
 Adwād Bihār, 491 and n 5, 524 n. —app. xxiii.  
 Afghān-Shāl, the place where Babuk-Tigin was buried, 75 n 5.  
 Afghānistān, xi, xiv, xvi, xlix, l liv, lv, 79 n, 80 n, 288 n 3, 304 n 3, 331 nn 1 and 2, 334 n 8, 363 n 6, 483 n, 538 n, 548 n 3, 822 n, 874 n, 876 n, 901 n, 1016 n 3, 1027 n 8, 1043 n 1, 1045 n, 1046 n, 1032 n 5, 1064 n 2, 1078 n 8, 1081 n 7, 1115 n 5, 1202 n, 1203 n, —app xi.  
 Afrikah —a district of Mauritania, 1229 n 8. —the present Tūnis  
 Afshin, —capital of the Shārs of Qharjstān, 369, 370 n, 385.  
 Afshān Shān or  
 Afwān Shān, 1220 n, —called elsewhere Liwak-shān  
 Agra, 546 n 7, 742 n 9, 1094 n.  
 Agrah, = Agra  
 Agria, —a town of Hungary, 1167 n.  
 Aḡḡang, the, —a river flowing past the city of Qhaznin, 321 n 6  
 Aḡḡangarān, a Dih or village near Qhaznin, 321 n 6.  
 Aḡḡangarān, —one of the fortresses of Qhūr, 321 and nn 6 and 7.  
 Aḡḡmad-ābād, —a town of Hindustān, 455 n.  
 Aḡḡrawāt or Aḡḡrawāt, —a Ḳaṣbah or town of Hindustān, 613 and n 7.

Aḡḡrat, —a Ḳaṣbah or town of Hindustān, 613 n 7.  
 Ahwās, written also Ahwās, 10, 22 n 8, 24, 53 n 6, 58, 61, 62, 65.  
 Head Ahwās in all cases, see lvii.  
 Aimin-ābād, —a town in Khurāsān founded by Sulṭān Ibrāhīm Qhānawī, 104.  
 Aī-Tigin-ābād, —a more correct way of writing the word "Ayt-kin-ābād, xlix.  
 'Ajām, territory of, xxviii, 1, 2, 6, 8, 9, 11, 14 and n 3, 15 and n 3, 23, 28, 56, 84 and n 6, 132, 153 n 7, 183, 203, 227, 231 and n 1 and 2, 243, 304 n 3, 329 n, 333, 388, 409 n 6, 421, 429 and n 4, 456, 509, 750 n 7, 764, 790, 872 n, 881 n, 1040, 1079, 1081 n 7, 1099, 1111, 1112 and n 8, 1117, 1128, 1158, 1179, 1196, 1215, 1229, 1266, 1270, 1292  
 Ajār or Ajāri, territory of the Rāe Qhāhar, 735 and n 6, 824 n 8, 825  
 Ajārki or Ajārnah, —See the above.  
 Ajmeer, for Ajmir, which see.  
 Ajmere, for Ajmir, which see  
 Ajmir, 246 n 9, 323, 404 and n 9, 463 n 6, 463 n, 465 n, 468 n 1, 467 n, 468, 469 nn 8 and 9, 491, 516 n 2, 517 n, 518 n, 519 n, 520 n, 521 n, 522 n, 611 n 3, 627, 661 and n 2, 728 and n 3  
 'Akā See under 'Akkah.  
 Aḡḡābar or Aḡḡābūr, —a place in Turkistān, 1083 n. —Also called Aḡḡūr.  
 Akāir or Akūr, —a place in Turkistān, 1083 n. —also called Aḡḡābar.  
 Akar, —a fortress on an island in the riverd Sinh, 294 n.

- Akarrak**,—an ancient city in ruins, in the Banū district, 538 n.
- Akshin**,—the name of the city of Kāshin, which see, as given by Abu' Qhāsī Bahādur Khān, 949 n.
- Akdālah**, also written Akdalah,—one of the fortifications of Ban-gālah, 582 n 6, 590 n, 591 n.
- Akhlat**, also written Khalāt.—a fortified town in Armenia, 134 n 9, 170 n 8, 228 n 4, 297 n, 298 n and n 1, 299, 1264 n, 1276 n.
- Akshī**, [the Aksi of maps],—a city in the territory of Farghānah, 921 n
- Akhsikat**,—a city in the territory of Kāshghar [Little Bukhara], 922 n
- Akhsak**. See the above.
- 'Akkah** or **'Akā** [Acra],—a city of Syria, 215, 225 n 4
- Āk Masjīd**,—one of the ferries of the river Sihān, 970 n 2
- Ākū** or **Aghū Bāligh**, See Kū or Qhū-Bāligh.
- 'Ākū**,—a small town or village in the Manai territory, 62 and n 7
- Akn**, 991 n. See under **Akshī**.
- Aksū**,—a city in the territory of Kāshghar [Little Bukhara], 899 n, 922 n, 969 n 1.
- Ala**,—a station in Mughūstān, 1185 n.
- Ālah-Baghī**,—a fortress in Khurāsān, 1192 n.
- Ālamātū** or **Almātū**,—a town in Mughūstān, 921 n. See also under **Almātū**
- Ālamūt** or **Ālamut**,—the stronghold of the Mulāhidah sect, 145 n 4, 265 n 4, 263 and n 8, 265, 706 n 8, 1010 n, 1181 n, 1187 n 7, 1188 and n 8, 1189, 1196, 1198, 1205 n 8, 1206, 1207 n, 1209 n, 1210 n, 1212 n, 1213 n, 1221 n, 1227 n 8.
- Ālān**, territory of the, 998 n, 1102 n, 1167 n
- Ālanjān canal**, in the district of Hirāt, 1128 n.
- Ālarjūk**,—a fortress in Āzarbāijān, 296 n.
- Al-Aak**,—a town in the province of Māsandarān, 993 n
- Ālā Tāq**, **Tāgh** or **Dāgh**, the,—a mountain in Armenia, 1284 n, 1275 n 2, 1278 n, 1281 n. Hulūkā Khān gave it the name of Lauba or Lahnā Sāghūt
- Al-a'uz**, 962 n, an error for **Al-Qhūr**, which see.
- Albania**, 1001 n
- Alahr** or **Lalehr**,—a town of Hindustān, 627 and n 8.
- Aleppo**, 162 n 3 See also under **Halab**.
- 'Ālfin**,—a village in the district of Damaghk, 226 n 7.
- Al Qhūr**,—the country of Qhūr as called by the Arabs, 962 n
- Alha**,—a fort in the territory of Kanauj, 680 n
- Al-Hasā**,—a district and town of Arabia, 179 n 3.
- 'Ālī-Ābād**,—a town in the district of Balkh, 129 and n
- 'Ālī-garh**, otherwise **Sābit-garh**,—a town of Hindustān, 699 n 1, 796 n 2, 796 n.
- 'Alkamah**,—a city of Afrikah or Mauritania, 1229 n 8
- Ālahabad**, 683 n
- Altygurh**,—Anglicized form of 'Ālī-garh, which see.



Almalig, 917 n, for Ālmāligh, which see.

Ālmāligh or Ālmāligh,—a town in Mughūlistān, 154, 890 n, 919 n, 920 n, 921 n, 924 n; 999 n 1, 984 n, 985 n, 996 n, 1141 n, 1163 n, 1194 n. [920 n.

Almāti,—a town in Mughūlistān.

Almātū,—a town in Mughūlistān, 890 n, 921 n, 970 n 2.

Almūt,—the stronghold of the Mulāhidah sect. See under Alamūt.

Alpine Panjāb, the, 483 n 4.

Alpe, the, 890 n.

Altāe, the, [now the Siba],—a river in the territory of Kān-gakīā, 945 n.

Altāe mountains, the, 1102 n.

Altāe Sōning, the,—the name given by Abū'l-Ghāsi Bahādur Khān to the Altāe river, 945 n.

Altai Mount, the, 920 n. See under the Āltān mountains.

Altā-karā,—name of a place in Khūfā, 1128 n.

Āltān or Golden Mountains, the northern boundary of Tāghānā, 890 n, 920 n, 961 n.

Altān-J-mil, the, 919 n.

Altān Kol or Golden river, the,—a river of Kok Nāwar, 961 n.

Alten-imel, the, 919 n.

Alū gadh, fort of, 522 n. See also the fort of Ābū.

Ālū-gadh or 'Abūgadh, hills of, 522 n.

Alās or Alūsh Arki or Argī,—a tract of country in Mughūlistān, 895 n.

Alwar,—one of the Rājput states, 853 n 6.

Alwar, the hills of,—in Hindūstān, 519 n. [Āmid.

Amadīn, 1264 n. See also under Amar-kantak or Amar-kantaka,—in the Jāj-nagar state, 598 n.

Amber,—a town in Rājputānā, 521 n.

Āmid, capital of the Diyār-i-Bakr, 1262, 1264 n, 1265.

Amin-ghar,—a village of Hindūstān, 459 n 7.

Amroha,—a town in Hindūstān, 539 n 4.

Āmū, the,—another name of the river Jihūn, 154, 426 n 6, 917 n 1, 1030 n. See also under the Āmūsh, Jihūn and Oxus.

Āmūd, probably Āmū or Āmūsh, which see, 917 and n 1.

Āmūdān,—one of the principal towns of Kādhak Katanak, 587 n 4, 598 n.

Āmū,—or

Āmūsh,—a town on the banks of the Jihūn [Oxus], 917 n 1, 1030 n, 1195 n.

Āmūsh, the,—another name of the river Jihūn, 25 n 8, 81 n 9, 247 n, 578 n, 901 n, 903 n, 904 n, 917 n 1, 921 n, 927 n, 930 n, 955 n, 1024 n 2, 1044 n, 1109 n 3, 1115 n 5, 1116 n, 1127 n, 1138 n, 1141 n, 1174 n 4, 1191 n, 1192 n, 1193 n, 1195 n, 1211 n, 1287 n, 1290 n 9, 1293 n. See also under the Āmū, Jihūn and Oxus.

Āmul,—a town and district in the province of Māzandarān, 45, 46, 278 n, 991 n, 994 n, 1058 n 5,—app. xxi.

Āmūn, the,—another name of the river Jihūn, 917 n.

- 'Anah,—a fortress of the Diyār-i-Bakr or Mesopotamia, on the east bank of the Furāt [Euphrates], 138 n 1, 186 n
- A'nak or l'nāk or Ighnāk, fortress of, 263 n
- Anbār or Felugia,—a town on the Euphrates, 135 and n 1, 363, 1240 n, 1260 n
- Andar-āb,—a town in the district of Tukhristān, xlix, 389 n, 390 n 4, 1019 n, 1020 n
- An-des the Upper,—or Urnā-desa, 663 n 8, 737
- An-desah-i-Bilā-tar, or the Uppermost Andes, 737 and n 9
- Andeshah,—for Andesah or the Andes, 737 n 9
- Andigān,—a strongly fortified place in the territory of Farghānah, 919 n, 921 n, 922 n, 923 n
- Andijān,—the name given by the Arabs to Andigān, which see
- Andkhūd,—a town in the territory of Khurāsān, 361, 378, 474 and n and n 6, 476 n, 477, 478 n 6, 491, 501 n 5, 532 and n 9, 604 and n 1, 910 n, 927 n
- Anasāie,—or
- Anksāie,—a mountain country adjoining Khitāie, called also Tinghūt and Kīshin, 947 n
- Antā-e or Intā-i,—another name of the city of Taining, the Pien-lyang of the Chinese, called also Nanking, 958 n
- Antarbed, the Do-āb of,—the country immediately east of Dihli, 607 n 6, 629 n 6, 682 n 5, 732 n 5, 816 n 4, 847 n 3
- Antarbed Do ābah, the See the above
- Antākiab of Shām, 138 n 8, 140 n 5, 153 n, 161 n. See also under Antioch
- Antioch, 144 n 3. See also under Antākiab
- Aobah,—a place near Hirūt, and also the name of one of its gates, 149 n 1, 155 n 3, 258 n 3, 426 n 4, 1061 n
- Arabia, 670 n 5, 974
- Arabia Felix,—the district of al-Yaman, 903 n 7
- Aral, city of,—the capital of the Taghar Khākān, 961 n
- Aral, Lake or Sea of, 916 n, 921 n, 963 n, 970 n 2
- Aral Nāwar, the See the above
- Arān or Arān. See under Arrān
- Arangul, now Warangul,—a town in the Dakhan, 589 n
- Aria, the,—the river Araxes of the maps, 1267 n
- Arāvalli mountains, the. See the next
- Arawali mountains, the, 521 n, 705 n 7
- Arbela, the Arbil of the Arabs 1263 n, 1278 n. See also under Arbil of Mesopotamia
- Arbil,—a town in Āzarbāijān, 995 n, 1001 n
- Arbil,—a town of Mesopotamia, 1238 n 8, 1239 n, 1263 n, 1276 n, 1278 n
- Arctic Sea, the, 1171
- Ardebil, the capital of Āzarbāijān,—Ardebil of the maps, 997 n
- Ardaban,—a place in the Kurdish mountains between Kermanshāh and Baghdād, 993 n
- Ardas, fortress of,—in the territory of Khwarazm, 276 n

- Ardibīl.** See under **Ardabīl**
- Ardīsh** or **Artīsh**,—a country to the S. W. of **Tibbat**, **lxiii**, 949 n, 950 n, 964 n 2, 980 n 1, 970 n 2, 1102 n, 1103 n, 1143 n.
- Ardīsh**,—a fortress on the frontiers of the **Makrit** and **Nisēan** territories, 950 n.
- Ardīsh Pass**, the, 970 n 2.
- Ardīsh river**, the, 960 n 1, 1143 n. See under the river **Artush**.
- Ardukend**,—another name of **Kāshghar**, [**Little Bukharia**], the capital of **Tūrān**, 915 n.
- Arg**, fortress of,—an error of the copyists for **Uk**, which see, **xiv**.
- Arghān**,—a district of **Khurāsān**, 1121 n.
- Arghand**, the,—a river in the country of **Ghūr**, 1061 n 9, 1070 and n 8 and 9.
- Arghand-āb**, the, 1070 n 9. See the above.
- Arjatū** or **Irjatū**, the '**Uḡbah** or **Pass** of, 919 n.
- Ark**, fortress of,—an error of the copyists for **Uk**, which see, **xiv**.
- Arkenekom**,—name of a mountain of **Mogolistan** as given by **Pétus de la Croix**, 890 n.
- Arkey**,—another name of **Iriki** or **Irikiā** the capital of **Kāshin**, which see, 953 n.
- Arkhnāk**,—a country to the N. and S. of **Bangalāh**, [turned into **Arracan** by Europeans], 593 n.
- Armalik**, 917 n, for **Ālmālīgh**, which see.
- Arman**,—the country of the **Armenians**, 137, 144 n, 298 n, 1186 n, 1191 n, 1206 n, 1263 n. See also under **Armenia**.
- Armardan** or **Urmardan**. See under **Umūrdan**.
- Armenia**, 1162 n, 1290 n 1. See also under **Arman**.
- Arpān**,—a city in the country of the **Urū** or **Russians**, 1170 n.
- Arracan**, 593 n. See under **Arkhnāk**.
- Arrān**,—a district of **Āzarbāijān**, 143 n 2, 147, 173, 891, 996 n, 1117, 1195 n, 1237, 1265.
- Arsūf**,—a town in **Palestine**, 220 n 3.
- Arşuf**,—the chief town in the district of **Bāmīān**, **xlix**, 1025 n. Also called **Rāşif** or **Raşif**, which see.
- Arūmī** or **Urūmī**,—a city in the territory of **Tinghūt** or **Kāshin**, 1085 n 3.
- Artash**, correctly written **Ardīsh** or **Artīsh**, which see.
- Artoah**, correctly written **Ardīsh** or **Artīsh**, which see.
- Artush**,—a city and district on the frontier of the **Kāshghar** state, 950 n, 970 n 2, correctly written **Ardīsh** or **Artīsh**, which also see.
- Artush**, the,—a river watering the **Artush** district, 950 n. See also under the **Ardīsh** river.
- Artush Pass**, the, 970 n 2.
- Artyah**, correctly written **Ardīsh** or **Artīsh**, which see.
- Arwīsh**, correctly written **Ardīsh** or **Artīsh**, which see, 964 n 2.
- Arzan**,—a town in the territory of **Mārdīn**, 1379 n.
- Arz-Rām**, the modern **Eraroom**, 161 n.
- As**, country of the, 1102 n, 1164 n 2, 1165 n, 1169 n.

**Aad-ibād**,—a town in the district of Hamadān in the 'Irāk-i-'Ajam, 342 n 6, 366 n, 1239 n.

**Aḡal Yūrat**, or the original Yūrat of the **Qhingis Khān**, 1140 n.

**Asān**,—a city in the neighbourhood of Kāshghar [Little Bukhara], 985 n.

**Ascalon**, 225 n 4,—the 'Asḡalān of Arab geographers.

**Asdār**,—a town in Tabaristān, 278 n, 291 n. Also called **Astadār** and **Astawā**, which see.

**Ashām**, 565 n, 586 n 9, 593 n,—the Indian province of Assam.

**Ashiyār**,—a fortress of **Gharjstān**, 394, 395, 398, 415, 418, 1011 n, 1048 and n 7, 1072, 1073, 1076, 1077 and n 6, 1200 n.

**Ashnā**,—a city in the neighbourhood of Tāshkand, 971 n.

**Ashuk**, the,—a mountain in the district of Timrān, 319.

**Āsi**,—a fortress in the Kinnauj state, 86 n, 519 n.

'**Āsi** [Orontes], the,—the river of Antioch, 1276 n.

**Asa**, 244 n 4, 309 n 2, 567 n 4, 568 n, 916 n, 964 n 2, 986 n, 987 n, 994 n, 1008 n 4, 1010 n, 1019 n, 1028 n, 1043 n 3, 1045 n, 1046 n, 1078 n 3, 1110 n 6,—app iv.

**Asia Minor**, 935 n 6, 996 n.

**Asir Darah**,—a pass on the way between Dajzak and **Gharjstān**, 369.

**Asjānk** or **Sajāng**,—the *Sakrā* or Steppe of, 1141 n.

'**Askalān** [Ascalon],—a town of Palestine, 220 n 3, 225 n 4.

**Asni**,—the stronghold of the Rājah of Kinnauj and Banaras 470 n 2.

**Assam**, 586 n 2,—the **Ashām** of native geographers, which see.

**Assyria**, 135 n 1, 1276 n.

**Astadār**,—or

**Astadārah**,—a town in Tabaristān, 991 n, 1208 n. Also called **Asdār** and **Astawā**.

**Astarābād**,—a town in the district of Jurjān, 378 n, 578 n, 991 n 994 n, 1121 n, 1127 n.

**Astarah**, same as **Asdār**, **Astadār** and **Astawā**.

**Atāsh**,—a city in the neighbourhood of Tāshkand, 972 n.

**Astawā**,—or

**Astawah**,—a town in the province of Tabaristān, 296 n 6, 991 n. Also called **Asdār**, **Astadār** and **Astadārah**, which see.

**Astiah**,—a fortress in the country of **Qhūr**, 1006.

**Astiyā**,—a town in the district of Karmān, 499 n.

**Astrakhan**, 943 n, 1000 n, 1290 n 2, the **Hajī Tarikhān** and **Haqhtar Khān** of Oriental geographers, which see.

**Astūrah**,—a country or city in the **Karā-qhal** or **Karā-qhāl** mountains 1046 n 2. {1043 n 1.

**Ātak**, 79 n, 95 n 4, 388 n 2, 535 n.

**Ātl**, the,—the river Volga or Volga, 870 n, 871 n, 872 n, 943 n, 1000 n, 1168 n, 1169 n, 1172 n 9, 1173 n, 1290 n 9.

**Āt-pāshī**,—a city in the territory of **Kashghar** [Little Bukhara], 922 n.

**Atrar**, capital of the Province of Farab, 932 n, 969 n 1.

**Atrawli**,—name of a place in **Hindustān**, 809 n 7.

**Attak.** See under **Atak**.

**Attak-Banāras**, 78 n.

**Andh**, app. xxiv. = **Awadh**, which see.

**Austria**, 1168 n.

**Awadh**,—the present Province of Oudh, xxiv, 491 and n 5, 524 n, 548, 550 n 6, 551 n, 558 n 7, 575 and n 1, 576, 577 n, 593 n 7, 594 and n and n 1, 608, 617 n, 627, 628 and n 8, 629, 633 and n 7, 639 and n n 7 and 8, 662, 663 and n n 8 and 9, 664, 666 n, 673, 674, 686, 700 n 8, 701 and n 1, 703 and n n 7 and 8, 704 n 5, 714 n 9, 735, 737, 739 and n 4, 739, 740, 741 and n 2, 743, 744, 757 and n 7, 759 and n n 5 and 6, 760, 762, 763, 764, 767 n 4, 768 and n n 3 and 4, 770 n 9, 772 n, 773 n, 793, 816 n 4, 830, 834, 835, 836 and n n 7 and 9, 837, 838 and n 7, 847 and n 4, 851 n 9,—app. xxiv, xxvi.

**Awā; Tāk** or **Tāgh**,—a mountain in the Nāmān country, 949 n.

**'Ayn-i-Jālūt**,—Goliath's Spring,—in Syria, 1277 n

**Aytkin-ābād**,—a district in the territory of Bust, xlix, 218 and

n 6, 448 n 4. See under **Al-Tigin-ābād**.

**Āzād**,—name of a hill in Firūz-koh, 409.

**Āzarbāijān**, 53 n 6, 61 n 4, 134 n 9, 143 n 2, 141 n, 147, 152, 164, 166 n 7, 168, 169 and n 7, 170 and n 8, 171 and n 9, 172 and n 3, 173, 176, 207 n 8, 247 n, 265, 266 n, 296 and n, 298, 717 n, 801 n, 861, 881, 902, 905 n, 996 n, 1117, 1119, 1151 n, 1159 n, 1195 n, 1227 and n 5, 1237, 1239 n, 1251, 1252, 1257 n, 1262 n, 1263 n 8, 1264 n, 1265, 1276 n, 1277 n, 1278 n, 1281 n, 1286 n.

**Azdāk** [**Azof**], also called **Sūdāk**, which see, 1165 n.

**Azorbaidjan**, 996 n,—for **Āzarbāijān**, which see.

**A'zim-ābād-i-Talāwari**, 459 n 7, 779 n 3 See also under **Talāwari**, formerly called **Tarā'in**.

**Azmardān** for **Uzmurdān**. See under **Umrudan**.

**Azmurda** or **Uzmurda**. See under **Umrudan**.

**Azof**, the **Sūdāk** of Oriental geographers, 1165 n

## B.

**Ba'albak**,—a town of Syria, the Baalbec of maps, 204 n, 207 n 8, 208 n 1, 229 n 5, 1276 n

**Bāb-ul Abwāb**, or Gate of Gates, 680 n 7, 995 n, 1287 n. = **Darband**, the Derbend of the maps, which see

**Bāb-ul Farāḥ wa'n Ni'am**, or Gate of Gladness and of Benefits, of **Mayyāfariqin**, 1269 n.

**Bāb-ul-'Irāk**, or 'I-rāk Gateway of **Mayyāfariqin**, 1264 n

**Bāb-un-Naṣr** [the **Naṣr Gate**], of **Kāhrah**, 215 n 9

**Bāb ugh Shāhwat**, or Gate of Desire, of **Mayyāfariqin**, 1269 n.

**Bābal** or **Babil**, the ancient **Babylon**, 304 n 2 See also under **Bābil** and **Babylon**

- Bābal**, the name of the district of Pāyal or Pāyil as given by Firūsh-tah, 640 n 3.
- Bābil**, the ancient Babylon, 2, 3, 304 n 2 See also under Babylon.
- Babool**, the name of the district of Pāyal or Pāyil as given by Briggs, 640 n 3.
- Bābul**, the name of the district of Pāyal or Pāyil as given in Elliott, 640 n 3.
- Babylon**, 140 n 2, 1237 n 6 See also under Bābil.
- Babylonia**, 1016 n 3.
- Badakhshān**,—a tract of country in Turkistān, 390, 423 n 8, 424, 426 and n 6, 494, 909 n, 921 n, 923 n, 987 n, 1009 n, 1010 n, 1044 n, 1053 n 6, 1145 n.
- Badā'un**, 524 n See under Budā'un
- Bādghais**,—a district of Khurāsān about Hirāt, lvi, 22, 28 n 1, 36 n 9, 374 n 3, 479 n, 490 n, 580 n 9, 874 n, 1076 n, 1120 n 2, 1132, 1185 n, 1195 n
- Badi-Loṭ**,—a district of Hindūstān, 838 and n 1
- Bādakhisor** or **Badgheis**, wrong spelling of **Badghais**, 1120 n 2
- Badshāhān** or **Badshān**,—a halting-place near Hirāt, 325 n
- Badwān**, fortress of, 115 n 6. See **Balarwān** of Gharjistan.
- Bādwati** [*Padmawati*],—South Bihār probably, 592 n
- Bāc kol**, the,—a Kol or Lake between Mughūlistan and Tzbaikistan [the Baikal Lake of our maps], lxiii, 890 n
- Bāgh-i Jūd**, the Jūd Garden,—near the capital city of Dihli, 606 n 3, 627, 708 and n 2, 709 and n, 782 and n 2, 786, 854 and n 1.
- Bāgh-i Jūn**, the name of **Bāgh-i Jād** in the Tāj-ul-Ma'āzīr, 606 n 3.
- Bāgh-i Khurram**,—the Pleasant or Delightful Garden,—near the capital city of Khwarazm, 1006 n.
- Bāgh-i Shāhmār**,—a garden some distance W. of the Old city of Dihli, 709 n.
- Bāgh-i Sultān**,—the Sultān's garden—near the city of Balkh, 128 n.
- Bāgh-i Wazīr**,—a Ribūt on the frontier of Qhūr, 325 n
- Baghe-Eram**,—wrong name given by Pétis de la Croix to the **Bāgh-i Khurram**, which see
- Baghdād**, the Dār-ul-Khilāfat, xxi, xiv, 10 and n 3, 11, 13 n 9, 14 and n 4, 15 n 6, 18, 22 n 7, 23 n 9, 24 and n 3, 25, 27, 32 n, 34 n 6, 35 n 6, 39, 43, 55 and n 1, 56 and n, 58 and n 3, 59, 60 and n 8, 61 n 4, 62, 63 and n 8, 64 n 1, 65 and n 6, 66 n 7, 73 n 9, 76, 87, 91, 125 n 8, 134 and n 9, 135 n 4, 136 n, 138 and n 8, 139 n, 142 n 1, 143 n 2, 144 n, 145 n 4, 146, 147, 167 n 8, 184 n, 185 n, 193 n 4, 204 n, 207 n 8, 218, 223, 243, 244 and n, 250 n 4, 265 n 4, 266 n, 277 n 5, 278 n, 296 n, 299 n, 463 n, 488 n 1, 616 n 2, 617 n, 622 n, 629, 658 n 3, 662 n 7, 668 n, 711, 712 n, 759 n 3, 774 n, 786 and n 3, 797 n and n 4, 800, 936 n 6, 969 n 6, 991 n, 993 n, 1117, 1187 n 7, 1190 n 1, 1193 n, 1212 n, 1221 n, 1226 and n 1, 1228 n, 1229 and n 8, 1230 n, 1231 n, 1232, 1233 and n 3, 1234 and n 7, 1235 n 2, 1236, 1237, 1238 and n 6, 1239 n, 1240 n, 1241 n

- and  $\pi 1$ , 1242  $\pi 2$ , 1260 and  $\pi$  and  $\pi 6$ , 1261 and  $\pi$  and  $\pi 7$ , 1263 and  $\pi$ , 1264  $\pi$ , 1266, 1267 and  $\pi 6$ , 1268, 1269, 1272, 1275  $\pi 2$ , 1279  $\pi$ .
- Bagh-dād, the,—a river in the Baghd near the capital city of Samarkand, 209  $\pi$ .
- Baghshor,—a district between Qharjistan and Fārs, 275 and  $\pi 6$ , 276  $\pi$ .
- Baghsan,—the chief town of the Dzais, 409  $\pi$ .
- Bag-madi, the,—or
- Bug-mati the,—a river flowing in front of the city of Burdhan-koṭ, 561  $\pi 1$ , 567  $\pi 1$ , 571  $\pi 1$  and 2, 784  $\pi 6$ ,—app. xxi. See also under the Beg-mati.
- Bugrām,—the original name of the city of Peshāwar which was so called up to Akbar's time, 81  $\pi$ , 285  $\pi 5$ , 452  $\pi 8$ , 1002  $\pi 5$ .
- Bugra [Bogra],—app xxi
- Bahand, 76  $\pi 2$  See under Bahind and Waihind
- Bahawalpur, the State of, 723  $\pi 1$ , 812  $\pi 2$
- Bahawan or Bhāwan,—a fortress in Hindustān, 96  $\pi$ .
- Bahind,—a city on the bank of the river Sind, 76 and  $\pi 2$ , 78  $\pi$ , 79  $\pi$ , 80  $\pi$ , 293  $\pi$ . See also under Waihind
- Bahindah, fortress of, 79  $\pi$  See also under Baṭhindah.
- Bahr i-Khurs, the, 140  $\pi 5$ ,—the Caspian, which see.
- Bahr i-Zulmat, [sea of Darkness], the, 1170 [706  $\pi 7$ .
- Bahrāich, for Bharāj, which see,
- Bahrain,—a district of Arabia, the Bahrain of the maps, 179  $\pi 2$ , 180.
- Baldān, 228  $\pi 4$ .
- Balhak,—a city and district in Khurāsān, 131  $\pi 7$ , 1121  $\pi$ .
- Balhak,—a small town in Zāwulistan, also called Mukir, 67  $\pi 2$ , 87  $\pi$ .
- Baikal Lake, the, 886  $\pi$ , 890  $\pi$ . See under the Bāe-Kol.
- Bailkān, a town in Azarbāijān, 997  $\pi$ .
- Baisūc,—a town of Karā Khitā on the river Tū, 956  $\pi$ .
- Bait-ul-Mukaddas, the Holy City, [Jerusalem], 1269  $\pi$ .
- Baiṣā,—a town in Fārs, also called Nasā, 178  $\pi 7$ .
- Bājawr,—a country north of the Kābul river, xlv, 1043  $\pi 1$ .
- Bakar,—a fortress of Sijistan, 1200  $\pi$ .
- Bakar, a fortress on an island in the river Sind, 294  $\pi$  See also under Bhakar.
- Bakarhā, for Nagrahār or Naagrahār, which see, 96  $\pi 2$ .
- Bakhrālā, for Bak-rālah, which see, 96  $\pi 2$ .
- Bakht-ibād, the name given by Humāyūn to the city of Ganj or Lakhanawāṭi, 559  $\pi 2$ , 589  $\pi 6$ .
- Bakhturan Oxyartes, stronghold of the, 1054  $\pi 2$ .
- Bakhturas, the,—another name of the river Jihūn or the Oxus, 25  $\pi 8$ .
- Bikhurz,—a city and district in Khurāsān, 22, 131  $\pi 7$ , 181, 247  $\pi$ , 401  $\pi$ .
- Baklā,—or
- Baklānah,—a town in Lakhanawāṭi, 565  $\pi 5$ .
- Bak-mati, the See under the Bag-mati and the Bog-mati.

- Bak-yīlah**,—a place east of the Mārgalah Pass, 96 n 2, 97 n.
- Bakr Khel**, the darah of, south of the Kurmah, 499 n.
- Balālah**,—a place near the city of Lāhor, 294 n.
- Balameen**. See under Balimīn.
- Balārām** or **Balarām**,—a district in the province of Awadh, 712, 714 n 9, 767 and n 4, 788 n 9, 794 and n 8, 849 n 8.
- Balarwān**,—a fortress and district in Gharjātān of Khurāsān, 115 and n 6, 396, 415, 429 and n 8, 456, 1072 and n 5.
- Balarwān of Bāmīān**, 429 n 8.
- Bilāsāghūn**. See under Bilāsāghūn.
- Balaagun** or **Bala Sagun**, 915 n, for **Bilāsāghūn**, which see.
- Bilāsāghūn**, 912 n, for **Bilāsāghūn**, which see.
- Balbia**,—a town in the Diyār-i-Muriah, 212 n 1, 229 n 5.
- Balc**, for **Balkh**.
- Baldjuna**,—a desert of Turkistān, 942 n.
- Balgasun**, 916 n, for **Bilāsāghūn**, which see.
- Balghassun**, 916 n, for **Bilāsāghūn**, which see.
- Bāhjūnah**, the,—a lake or spring in Turkistān, 942 n.
- Bālīk-Qhāk**,—a spring of water in Kalur-ān of Turkistān, 937 and n 8.
- Balimīn** [vulg. Balameen],—a town in the district of Kaymān, 499 n.
- Bāljiūnah Lake**, the,—in Turkistān, 942 n.
- Bāljiūnah Būlāk**, **Būlāgh** or **Balīk**, the,—a spring of water in Turkistān, 941 n, 942 n, 943 n.
- Bāljiūnah Nāwar**,—a Lake in Turkistān, 942 n, 943 n.
- Bālkaah**, the Tin-ghis or Din-ghis, —a Lake in Mughūlīstān, 930 n, 969 n.
- Balkh**,—a city and district of Khurāsān, 22 and n 4, 26, 26 n 2, 27 n 4, 31, 35 n 6, 43, 46, 47, 48, 50 and n 4, 51 n 6, 73 n 6, 74, 75, 80 and n 5, 85 n, 86 n, 94 n 3, 95 n 9, 113 n, 120 n 5, 125 and n 5, 126, 127, 128 n, 129 and n, 133 and n 9, 147 n 3, 184 n, 258 n, 260 and n 6, 275 and n and n 2, 280, 286 n 3, 289 n, 306 n 5, 324 n, 367 n 9, 368 n, 371, 372, 373 and n 9, 375 n, 378, 399, 401 n, 402 n, 412, 413, 424, 426 and n 6, 427 n, 429, 431, 433 n 7, 474, 481 n 8, 610 n, 874 n, 904 n, 907 n, 916, 920 n, 921 n, 985 and n 2, 987, 989 n, 1002 n 4, 1008 n 5, 1009 and n, 1010 n, 1011 n, 1014 n 2, 1015 n, 1018 n, 1019 n, 1020 n, 1023 n 9, 1024 n 2, 1025 n, 1027 n 8, 1032 n, 1046 n, 1050 n, 1053 and n 8, 1059, 1063, 1076 n, 1082 n, 1097, 1115 n 5, 1145 n, 1174.
- Balkhān Koh**, the,—or the
- Balkhān mountains**,—on the north-east of Khurāsān, 123 n, 131 n 7.
- Balrām**,—a district in Awadh. See under Balārām.
- Baltādah**,—a territory in Hindustān. See under Baltārah.
- Baltāe**,—a city in the country of Khitao, 1129 n.
- Baltārah**,—a territory in Hindustān, 713 n 2, 714 n 2, 794 and n 8, 849 n 8.



Balāṭ,—a town in the district of Karmān, 499 n.

Balwān, for Balawān of *Charjistān*, which see, 429 n 6

Bālyās,—the ancient name of the province of Kandahār, 1018 n.

Bam,—a fortress in Kirmān. See under Bamm.

Bāmi,—another name for the city of Balkh, 1024 n 2.

Bāmīān,—a district of *Khurāsān*, xxi, xlvii, xlix, 1, 74, 149 n 8, 245, 248, 249, 252, 260, 267, 283 n 3, 289 n and n 4, 304 n 1, 306 and n 5, 310, 320 n 3, 337, 338, 342, 358 n 3, 362, 369, 371, 372, 374, 375 n, 378, 379, 399, 401 n, 402 n, 405 n 3, 413, 414 and n 8, 421, 422, 423 n 8, 424 n 3, 425, 426 and n 4, 427 and n, 428 n 1, 429 and n 8, 430, 431 and n 7, 432, 433 and n, 434 and n, 435 n, 436 and n 5, 447 and n 7, 456 n 9, 457 n, 472 n 9, 490, 492 and n 7, 493 and n, 494 and n 1, 495, 496, 500 n 9, 501 and n 5, 502 and n 6, 503 n 4, 514, 922, 1002, 1011 n, 1017 n, 1018 n, 1019 n, 1020 n, 1021 n and n 8, 1023 n 9, 1024 n 2, 1025 n, 1042 and n 5 and 6, 1047 n 4, 1050 n, 1058 n 6, 1071 n 2, 1072 n 9, 1081 n 1, 1082 n

Bamm, a fortress in Kirmān, 34 n 6, 184 n

Banākat,—a city in *Māwarā-un-Nahr*. See under Fanākat.

Banāras, the Benares of the maps, 470 and n 2, 491, 516, 518, 519 n, 545 n 5, 551 n, 562 n, 567 n 1, 592 n, 606, 627, 742 n 9, 743 n 3.

Banārsi or Bārāni, capital of the Rās of Jāj-nagar, 592 n.

Banbān,—a tract of country in Hindustān, 536 n, 541 n 7, 623 n 8. See also under Banīān.

Band-i-Amir, the,—the embankment over the river Kur, founded by 'Uḡd-ud-Daulah Buwiah, 64 n 1.

Band-i-Kāfirān or the Infidel's Dyke,—a place in Balkh, 128 n.

Bandīārān, mountains of, [the Kumā'ūn mountains], 799 and n 2.

Bang,—that part of Lakhnawāṭi which is liable to inundation being the western side of the river Gang, 585 n 7.

Bang, territory of, 554, 557 and n 3, 558 and n 1, 584 n 4, 585 n 7, 586 n 9, 587, 590 n, 592 n, 594 and n 1, 595, 618 n, 639, 782, 789, 770 n 9, 773 n, 776 n.

Bangāl, v, xiii n 5, xiii n 2, 93 n 9, 203 n 1, 511 n, 553 n 5, 559 n, 563, 570 n 9, 586 n 9, 589 n, 595 n, 610 n 7, 666 n, 762 n 9, 764 n 8, 771 n, 772 n, 773 n, 774 n, 777 n, 878 n, —app vi, xiv, xx, xxi, xxii, xxiv, xxv, xxvi See also the next.

Bangālāh, 529 n 4, 554 n 9, 559 n and n 2, 562 n, 568 n, 582 n 6, 584 n 2, 585 n 7, 588 n, 589 n, 590 n, 591 n, 592 n, 593 n, 665 n 8. See also the above.

Bangūh, Sarkār of,—the province of Karmān, 1.

Bangāwn or Sagāwn. See under Bekānwah

Bang-mati, the. See the Bag-mati and the Beg mati

Banbān or Banbān,—a tract of coun-

- try in Hindūstān, xvi, liv, 536 n, 541 and n 7, 612 n 5, 633 and n 8, 631 and n 8, 633 n 6, 645 n, 677 and n 6, 689 n, 730 and n 6, 750 n 8, 782 and n, 861, 862, 863 n 3, 1126 n 6, 1128, 1129, 1130 n, 1131 n, 1235 n.
- Banj-rūt,—for Wanj-rūt, the territory in the Multān province, 723 n 1.
- Bānki, otherwise Tarās,—a territory of Turkistān, 905 n, 931 n, 970 n 2. See also under Tarās.
- Bannū, l. See Banū.
- Banū,—a town in the province of Kaymān, 498 n 7, 538 n, 541 n 7
- Banyān,—a tract of country in Hindūstān. See under Banīn
- Bār or Pār,—a place between Hirāt and Ghūr, 325 n.
- Bar Nadi, the,—a river in Kāmrūd, 564 n.
- Bārīb, 399 n 7,—another name of Fār-yāb, which see.
- Bārah,—a Parganah of Allahabad, 663 n.
- Bārān,—another name of Barwān, the town between Ghaznīn and Balkh, which see, 283 n 3.
- Baran,—a town east of Dihlī, 604 and n 8, 645 n and n 9, 660 n, 723, 730, 745, 748, 754, 758, 759, 779, 791, 1029 and n 1. Afterwards called Bulandshahr
- Bārāni or Banārī, capital of the Rāe of Jāy-nagar, 592 n.
- Bārāni, for Barwān, the town between Ghaznīn and Balkh, which see, 1020 n
- Bāras, 342, 398 n 5. Another name of the district of Fāras, which see.
- Barbind, 585 n 7, for Barind or Barindah, which see.
- Barde',—a town of Āsparbājān, 997 n.
- Bardār, mountains of,—in Hindūstān, 696.
- Bardasir,—a town in the territory of Kirmān, 295 n. Also called Gawāghir, which see.
- Barilli, the Bareilly of the maps, 470 n 1.
- Barendra, that side of Lakhanawati which is not liable to inundation, being the eastern side of the river Gang, 585 n 7.
- Bar-ghund, an error for Bar-Ghund, a fortress in the territory of Ghaznīn. See p lviii.
- Barhamūn,—or
- Barhamūn,—a town in Hindūstān, 779 and n 2.
- Bārī Do-āh, the,—in the Panjāb, 696 n 3.
- Barīān,—a place between Hirāt and Ghūr, 325 n.
- Bārīh,—a district in the Panjāb, 456 n.
- Barīhūn,—a district of Hindūstān, 764.
- Barind,—or
- Barindah,—that wing of the territory of Lakhanawati which is on the eastern side of the river Gang, 585 and n 7, 618 n, 737.
- Barjanid,—or
- Barjunid,—a fortress of Hindūstān, 79 n.
- Barmal-Madrūs, or Madrū-mūs,—a village on the frontier of Balkh, 75 n 5
- Barmān or Jarmās,—a district of Ghūr, 338 n 9.

**Baroghil Pass**,—a Pass leading to Kishghar, 1045 n.

**Barokhîn**,—a place between I-rân and Tûrân, 981 n.

**Barghîbûr**,—a town in Sindh, 76 and n 2, 225 n 5. See also under Barghîwar.

**Barghîwar** or **Parghor**,—a town in Sindh, 77 n, 291 n, 293 n, 540 n. See also under Barghîbûr.

**Bârûl**,—a town in Lakhapawâti, 874 n 2.

**Bar-tar**,—a fortress in the territory of Ghûr, 336 n.

**Barâis**, the territory of, 1167, 1170 n.

**Bartaki**,—a place in Gujarrât, 521 n.

**Barûl**,—a place in Gujarrât, 521 n.

**Bârûtab**,—a halting-place in the vicinity of Dihlî, 851 and n 8.

**Barwâlah**,—the Barwala of the Indian Atlas, 732, 837 and n 4, 851 n 8.

**Barwan**,—a town or city between Ghaznî and Balkh, on the banks of the Âb-i-Bârânî, 288 and n 3, 289 n, 490 n 6, 540 n, 1019 n, 1020 n, 1021 and n 7 and 8, 1042 and n 5, 1019 n 2, 1129 n 1.

**Barwân**, for Balarwan of Ghar-jutân, which see, 429 n 8.

**Barwân** or **Parwan**,—a place north of Kabul, 268 n, 1020 n. See the Parwân Pass.

**Bâr-yâb**, 399 n 7,—another name of Fâr-yâb, which see

**Barzam**,—a fortress on the river Jihûn, 137 n 4.

**Basan-kot**,—a fortress in Lakhapawâti, founded by Sultân Ghîyâs ud-Dîn 'Iwâs, lii, 532 and n 6, 629, 737, 773 n.

**Baghgal** or **Yaghkal**, Dara'k or Pass of,—on the road to Tûl-kân, 1208 n.

**Bâghghird**,—or

**Bâghghir**, territory of, 1165 n, 1166 n, 1167 n.

**Bas-kot**, fortress of, 582 n 6. See under Basan-kot.

**Basrah**, 65, 800, 1245 and n 4, 1261 n 7.

**Bastâbâd** or **Bust-âbâd**, 723 and n 9.

**Bastâm** or **Bustâm**,—a town of, Khurâsân, 702 n 6. See also under Bustâm

**Bathindah** or **Bhatindah**, fortress of,—capital of Jai-pâl, the Bâdgghh of Hind, 79 n, 80 n, 458 n, 462 n, 491 n 1, 533 n, 645 n 4, 794 n 1

**Bâward**,—a city and district in the territory of Khurâsân, 119 and n 7, 129 n, 491. See also under Abiward

**Bay of Bengal**, the, 559 n, 592 n.

**Bayabân** of Ka'b, the,—an uncultivated plain between Tûl-kân and Balkh, 1008

**Bâyzid**,—a place near the N shore of the Lake Wân [Van of the maps], 1204 n

**Bâzâr-i-Farod**,—a place to the south of the city of Sistân, 195

**Baz-Ghünd**,—a fortress in the territory of Ghaznî, xlv, 101 and n 7, 103

**Baz Kishk-i-Sultân**,—a Qasr at the capital city of Firûz-koh, 403 and n 5, 405 n 4, 418

**Bazûl**, 521 n, for Nadûl of Gujarrât, which see

**Begânwah** See under Bekûnwah.

**Begâwân** See under Bekûnwah.

Beg-hati, the. See the Bag-mati and the Beg-mati.

Beg-mati, the,—a river flowing in front of the city of Burdwan-koṭ, 561 and n 1, 562 n, 570 n, 764 and n 6. See also the Bag-mati.

Behār. See under Bihār.

Behob,—a town on the western bank of the Indus, 78 n

Bekānwah,—a city in Lakhanawati, 565 and n 5.

Bekāwāu. See under Bekānwah.

Belasaghun, 916 n, for Bilāsāghūn, which see.

Belasagun [Balgassun], 916 n, for Bilāsāghūn, which see.

Beloochistān, 1021 n 8, 1043 n 1, 1075 n.

Bengal. See Bangal

Bengala. See Bangālāh

Bern, the city in Switzerland, xv n.

Bhagwat or Bhagwat,—a town and district between the Ganges and the Karam-Nāshah, 549, 550 n 5, 551 n,—app. xxiv.

Bhagwat or Bhugwat, parganah of, 550 n 5.

Bhakar,—a fortress on the Parj-āb, 294 n, 529 n 4, 542 n 9, 543 n, 544 and n 1, 613 and n 2 and 7, 614, 615 n 1, 616 n, 628, 724 and n 3

Bhakhar, 613 n 2 and 7. See under Bhakar

Bharah,—a district to the south of the Jūd mountains [the Salt Range], 1131 n, 1132 n

Bharā'ij, on the eastern bank of the river Sar'ū, 665, 676, 577, 694, 703, 705 n 7, 707, 708, 827, 834 and n 7 and 9, 835 n and n 4, 836 and n 8 and 9.

Bharat-pār, territory of, 790 n 9, 862 n 6.

Bhāṭah or Bhāṭi,—a tract of country adjoining Bihār and Bangālāh, 587 n 4, 598 n, 593 n.

Bhatgong, anglicized name of Bhatighūn.

Bhaṭh-Ghorah. See Bhaṭi-ghor.

Bhāṭi. See under Bhāṭah.

Bhāṭiāh,—a fortress near Multān, 85 n

Bhaṭi-ghor or Bhaṭi-Ghorā,—the tract lying on the left bank of the Son, east of Banāras, 743 and n 3.

Bhātighūn or Bhaṭi-ghūn,—a city and territory in the Nipāl valley, 367 n 1, 639 n 8.

Bhaṭi-koṭ,—a city in the district of Burhōr or Parahāwar, 1022 n.

Bhatindah, fortress of,—capital of Jan-pāl, the Bādshāh of Hind, 79 n, 80 n, 794 n 1. See also under Bhatindah

Bhaṭnir,—a town in Hindūstān, 80 n, 439 n 7.

Bhūwan or Bahāwan,—a fortress in Hindūstān, 86 n

Bhawāni or Pīrwati, temple of, in Amarkantak of Jāj-nagar, 548 n.

Bhawāni,—a town in Hariānah, 791 n 1

Bheoles, anglicized name of the town of Bhūli, 550 n 5

Bhiṇnah or Biānah, formerly called Thankur or Thangir, 520 n, 542 n 9, 544 n 1, 545, 546 n 7, 547, 659 n 4, 692 and n 4, 709 n 6, 712, 713 n 2, 714 n 9, 732, 747 and n 1, 767, 784 n, 787, 788 and n 9, 794, 824, 825, 849, 850. See also under Biānah.

**Bhilmān**,—a fortress and city in Mīlāh, 621 n 6, 632, 638, 733 n 5, 735 n 2.  
**Bhim**, also called [tān, 85 n.  
**Bhim-nagar**,—a fortress of Hindūs.  
**Bhirah**,—a town of Hindūstān, 491 and n 2.  
**Bhiālī**, pargana, 550 n 5.  
**Bhiālī** or **Bhiwālī**,—a town and district between the Ganges and the Karam-Nānah, 550 and n 5, 551 n,—app. xxiv.  
**Bhiwālī**. See **Bhiālī**.  
**Bhugwat**. See **Bhagwat**.  
**Bhūllī**, 550 n 5. See **Bhiālī**.  
**Bhūplī**, the Bhopal of the maps, 600 n 1.  
**Bhūtān** [Bootan], hills of, 562 n, 568 n, 570 n 9.  
**Bih**, the,—the Bias of Europeans, xxviii, 533 n, 547 n 9, 550 n, 558 and n 8, 567, 568 n, 574 n n 3 and 9, 597 and n 9 and 1, 598 n, 599 n, 693 n 3, 693, 695, 696 and n 3, 704, 705 n 7, 707 and n 6, 714 n 9, 723 n 1, 758 n 9, 760, 783 n 7, 784 and n, 786 and n 9, 793 n 7, 795 n, 811 and n 8, 812, 813 n, 818 and n 4, 826 and n 6, 826, 840 n 4, 840 and n 2, 845 n, 846 n 6, 851, 862 n 6, 1131 n, 1136, 1152 n, 1156 and n 7, 1224 n, 1225 n.  
**Biana** or **Biāna**, for **Biānah**, 459 n 9, 546 n 7.  
**Biānah** or **Bhiānah**, formerly called **Thankir** or **Thangir**, 459 n 9, 471 n. See also under **Bhiānah**.  
**Bias**, the,—the river Bias as called by Europeans, 533 n.  
**Bidr**,—a fortress in Taling [Talin gānah], 599 n.

**Bihand**, 76. See under **Bahind** and **Wahind**.  
**Bihār**, province of, 489 n 7, 519 and n, 520, 524 n, 550 and n 5, 551 and n and n 7, 552 and n 3, 553 n 5, 554, 556 and n 6 and 8, 557 and n 5, 558 n, 580 n, 591 and n, 592 n, 593 n, 594 and n 1, 610 n 7, 626 n 3, 627, 643 n 9, 731, 736, 737 n 8, 743 n 4, 757 and n 7, 772 n, 773 n, 775 n,—app. xiii, xxiv, xxiv and n 2, xxv, xxvi. Also called **Wihār**.  
**Bihat**, the,—or the **Jhilam**, 454 n, 535 n, 536 n, 587 n, 697 n. Also called the **Wihat**.  
**Bihatah** or **Wihatah**, the. See the **Bihat**.  
**Bihra**,—a dependency of **Nighā-pūr**, 181 n 3.  
**Bijaspūr** [**Wijayāpūr**],—district of, 500 n 4.  
**Bija-nagar**, 511 n. See under **Bijayā-nagar**.  
**Bijand**, also called **Wāchāl Kārghān**,—a stronghold in the country of the **Makrits**, 947 n.  
**Bi-jayā-nagar**,—in **Bellary** district, **Madras**, capital of the **Vijaya-nagar** Kings, 511 n.  
**Bijnor** or **Bijnor** [the **Bijnour** of the **Indian Atlas**], 696 and n 4, 697 n.  
**Bijnour**. See the above.  
**Bikāur**,—a district of **Hindūstān**, 723 n 1.  
**Bikrām pūr** or **Wikrām-pūr**,—capital of **Bahā Sen** of the **Hindū** dynasty of **Nadīah**, 558 n 1.  
**Bikāsh** country of, 1068 n, 1216 n, 1217 n 1220 n. Same as **Ting-nāsh** which see

- Bilād-i-Dāwar**, 267. See under **Zamīn-i-Dāwar**.
- Bilād-i-Jibāl**, in the country of **Qhūr**, 835 and n 3, 839 n 7. See also the **Jibāl** of **Qhūr**.
- Bilād-ul-Hind**,—the country immediately north of **Manṣūrah**, 674 n 3.
- Bilād-us-Sind**,—the country S.-E. of **Manṣūrah**, 674 n 3.
- Bilādsi-ghūn**, 900 n 2, for **Bilāsi-ghūn**, which see.
- Bilārām**, 714 n 9. See also under **Balārām**.
- Bilāsi-ghūn**,—a city of **Māwarā-an-Nahr** near **Kāshghar** and the capital of the **Afrāsiyāhi Khāna**, 134 and n 3, 135, 154, 155, 261, 264 n, 289 n, 900 and n 2, 905 n, 907 n, 913 n, 913 n, 914 n, 915 n, 916 n, 917 n, 918 n, 919 n, 920 n, 921 n, 923 n, 924 n, 925 n, 926 n, 931 n, 933 n, 952 n, 960 and n 7, 963 n.
- Bilāsi-ghūn**, 919 n, for **Bilāsi-ghūn**, which see.
- Bilaur Mountains**, in the direction of **Turkistān**, 423 and n 1, 424 n, 922 n 1046 n 3.
- Bilaur** [also written **Billaur**] **Tāgh**, 922 n. See also the above.
- Bilā**,—a fortress in the **Mālwah** province, 623 n 9.
- Bindār** or **Pindār**,—a fortress in **Gharjistan**, 342, 417, 626, 762, 1072.
- Birah**,—a fortress in the territory of **Sīwālkh**, 110.
- Birār**,—a province of Central India, 588 n, 592 n.
- Birbhūm**,—a district of the **Bardwān** division in Bengal, 585 n 6, 592 n.
- Birgoni**,—a place on the western or **Mīrwār** side of the **Arawalli** mountains, 531 n.
- Bironan**, 1019 n, for **Barwān**, the town between **Ghannin** and **Balkh**, which see.
- Birwān**, fortress of, 1072 n 5. See under **Balarwān** of **Gharjistan**.
- Bishbalig** or **Bish-Balig**, 918 n,—for **Bish-Bāligh**, which see.
- Bish-Bāligh**, capital of the **I-ghūr**, 918 n, 920 n, 923 n, 980 n, 961 n, 962 n, 969 n 1, 970 n 2, 985 n, 1106 n, 1127 n, 1140 n, 1141 n, 1145 n, 1157 n 1, 1164 n, 1184 n.
- Bisrām** or **Bisrām**,—a fortress on the way from **Uchobah** to the **Salt Range** hills, 294 n.
- Bisrām-pār**, 294 n. Same as **Bisrām** or **Bisrām**.
- Biṭṭandah**, fortress of, 458 n, 680 n. See also under **Baṭṭandah** or **Bhaṭṭandah**.
- Bitanda** or **Bitahnda**, 458 n, 680 n, the name of **Baṭṭandah** or **Bhaṭṭandah** in **Brigge**.
- Biyāh**, the, 667 n 1. See under the **Biāh**.
- Biyūr Nāwar**, the,—the **Lake** of **Biyūr**,—in the country of **Khijās**, 940 n.
- Black River**, the,—the **Karī Murān**,—a river between **Khijās** and **Mughūstān**, 862 n, 1216 n.
- Black Sea**, the, 606 n.
- Boada**,—a town on the bank of the **Mahā-nadi**, 588 n.
- Bocara**, for **Bukhārā**.
- Bogra**,—a district in the **Rāj-shāhi** division of **Bengal**, app. xxi.
- Bohema**, 1167 n.
- Bokhāra** or **Bokharah**, for **Bukhārā**.
- Bolan Pass**, the,—a mountain pass

- from Baluchistān into Afghānistān, 463 n.
- Belo [Poland], country of, 1168 n.
- Bombay, x, xiii, 95 n 4, 452 n 5, 1242 n 1,—app. xvii.
- Bom-Laba or Laba,—a country on the northern boundary of Mughūlistān, 639 n.
- Booloondahubār, anglicized name of Bulandshahr, 630 n.
- Boost, for Bust.
- Bootan, Anglified name of Bhū-tān, which see.
- Borki-i-Buzurg,—great Borki,—a city in the country of the Urūs, 1170 n.
- Borysthene, the,—a river west of the Black Sea, 896 n.
- Bosnia, 1168 n.
- Bostan, 1207 n, for Buzām, which see.
- Brāhmanābād,—subsequently styled Dībal or Dīwal and Thāṭhab, 295 n.
- Brahmā-putr,—or
- Brahmā-putra, the, 562 n, 564 n, 566 n, 586 n 9.
- Brāmab,—a fortress in Hindūstān, 86 n.
- Bramizy, the,—a river running to the W of Gang-pār, 586 n. Also called Soank.
- Bram-Talā,—a town in the territory of Jāy-nagar, 592 n.
- Brinda, 585 n 7, for Barind or Barindab, which see.
- Bā-bikrpar or Abū-Bikrpar,—a district in Hindūstān, 285.
- Budāṣūn, district and city of, 755 n 8 See under Budāṣūn.
- Budāṣūn,—one of the two most important fiefs of the kingdom of Dīlī, 419 n 5, 491, 505 n 3, 508, 524 n, 529 n 4, 530, 545 n 5, 549, 561 n, 604 and n 9 and 5, 606, 608 and n 9, 609 n and n 5, 626 and n 2, 637, 638 n 2, 681, 683, 664, 682, 683 n 9, 684 and n 8, 685, 690 and n 8, 693 n 3, 698, 696 n, 697 n, 698, 700, 703 and n 7, 704 n 5, 729, 736, 743, 750, 752, 753, 756 and n 8, 756, 757, 759, 760, 784 and n and n 3, 818 n 4, 825, 830, 832, 833, 834 n 9, 1224 n,—app. xiv.
- Bughlān or Bughlān,—one of the divisions and districts of Balḡh, 290 n 4, 426 n 6, 1000 n, 1046 n, 1061 n 1, 1062 n.
- Bū-Kais,—a mountain near Mak-kah, 670.
- Buka Sochiku,—a place in Mughūlistān, 1063 n.
- Bukhara See Bukhārā.
- Bukhārā, 25, 29, 30, 32, 34, 36, 41, 43 and n 4, 45, 46 and n 4, 47, 48, 49, 50 and n 4, 51 and n 6, 52 and n and n 8, 53 n, 71, 73 n 6, 74, 117 n, 118 and n 4, 120 and n 1, 121, 123 n, 152, 153 and n 7, 154, 185 n, 186 n, 192, 200 n 7, 267, 268 n 3, 269 n, 273 n and n 5, 274 and n 9, 275 n 2, 276 n, 280 n 9, 412, 423 n 8, 600 and n 3 and 4, 601 and n 8, 602, 800 n 8, 801 n, 877 n, 902 n, 903 n, 904 n, 906 n, 909 n, 914 n, 915 n, 916 n, 918 n, 922 n, 930 n, 932 n, 964 n 2, 970 n 2, 972 n, 975 n 5, 976 and n, 977 n, 978, 979, 1011 n, 1032 n, 1033 n, 1034 n, 1062 n, 1083 n, 1097 n 7, 1118 n 9, 1128 n, 1141 n, 1142, 1145 n, 1181 n, 1222, 1275 n 3, 1295,—app. xxi.

- Baḡlān** or **Baḡhlān**, district of  
See under **Baḡhlān**.
- Baland Khel**,—a town in the province of **Kāp̄mān**, 490 n.
- Bulandesh**, 308 n 9,—another name of **Nandesh**, which see.
- Bulandshahr** [anglicized into **Booloondeshwar**], 680 n.
- Bulār** [**Bulghār**], territory of, 1103 n.
- Buldān Kā-ir**, the mountain range of,—where **Uktāe Kā'an** is buried, 1148 n.
- Bulgaria**, 1168 n, 1190 n 1, 1283 n 1.  
See also under **Bulghār**.
- Bulghāk-pūr** [place of great sedition],—a by-name acquired by **Lakhanawāḡi** from the rebellious spirit of its governors, 582 n 6.
- Bulghār**, territory of the, 234, 870 n, 871 n, 872 n, 886 n, 902 n, 1102 n, 1115 n 5, 1165 n, 1166, 1168 n, 1283, 1292. See also under **Bulgaria**.
- Būlkān** or **Būrkān Kāldūn**, styled the **Yakah Kūrūk**,—the place where the **Qhngis Khān** was buried, 1089 n, 1223 n.
- Būlo** [**Poland**?], 1165 n, 1166 n, 1167 n.
- Bund-Emeer**, the. See the **Band-i-Amir**.
- Bundelcund**, 777 n. See under **Bundēlkand**.
- Bundēlkand**,—a district of **Hindūstān**, 546 n 7, 777 n.
- Bundi**—a territory of the **Hindūs**, 728.
- Būr**,—a strong fortress in the territory of **Chūr**, 328 n.
- Būr-Bilaur**,—the Hill territory of, 424 n.
- Burdhan**, 561 n 8. Same as **Bardhan-kot**, which see.
- Burdhan-kot** or **Aburdhan-kot**,—a city of **Hindūstān**, 561 and n 6, 562 n, 565 n, 566 n 2, 570 n,—app. xxi, xxi.
- Burhānpūr**,—a town in **Kāndes** of **Hindūstān**, ix.
- Burnawah**, Anglicized **Burnawa**,—a town of **Hindūstān**, 779 n 2.
- Barin**, the,—the high tract of country N-W. of **Kām-pūr**, in the **Rāj-Shāhi** district, 585 n 7.
- Barj-i-'Ajnmi**,—a tower in the city of **Baghdād**, 1244 n.
- Barj-i-'Alī bin Wahab**,—a tower in **Mayyāfāriqin**, facing the west, 1260 n.
- Barj-i-Kārlūgh**,—a tower in **Hirāt**, 1126 n.
- Būrkān** or **Būlkān Kāldūn**, styled the **Yakah Kūrūk**,—the place where the **Qhngis Khān** was buried, 1089 n, 1223 n.
- Barnawa**, anglicized from **Burh-nawah**, 779 n 2.
- Burning Mound**,—**Pozhtah Afros**,—the, in **Bādghais**, 580.
- Burogil Pass**,—a Pass leading to **Kāshghar**, 1046 n.
- Burshor**, **Furshor** or **Furshor** [**Pozhtawar**?], 81 n, 285 and n 5, 291, 453 and n 8 and 2, 453 n 4, 467 n, 491, 501 n 5, 525 n, 1002, 1013 and n 7, 1016, 1022 n, 1043 n 1.
- Burshor**,—a place between **Kandahār** and the **Indus**, 285 n 5.
- Burwala**, 837 n 4. See under **Bar-wālah**.
- Būshanj**, also written **Fūshanj**,—a tract of country in **Khurāsān**, 23.  
See also under **Fūshanj**.



**Bast**,—a district and town in **Khurāsān**, 21, 74 and n 3, 94 n 3, 99, 111, 132 n 9, 194, 267, 317 and n 5, 318 n 6, 319 n 5, 330 and n 3, 334 n, 350 n 4, 355, 362, 392, 394, 397, 412 and n 8, 415, 422, 472, 480 n, 492 n 7, 502 n 6, 525 n, 1105 n, 1018 n.

**Bast-ābīb** or **Bastābād**, 722 n 9.

**Bastām** or **Bastām**,—a celebrated town in the territory of **Khurāsān**, 243 n, 255 n 7, 419, 420, 703 n 6, 1206 n 3, 1207 n.

**Butān**,—a district about the **Hindū-Koh**, 1044 n.

**Buz-Ghūnd**, fortress of. See under **Bas-Ghūnd**.

## G.

**Gabul**, 509 n, for **Kābul**, which see.  
**Cairo**, 101 n 8, 140 n 2, 1276 n. See also under **Ḳāhirah**.

**Calcutta**, v, 445 n, 527 n, 534 n 1, 541 n 7, 542 n 9, 550 n 6, 553 n 5, 556 n 7, 559 n, 590 n, 665 n 8, 666 n, 684 n 8, 686 n 7, 687 n 1, 692 n 3, 693 n 5, 711 n 5, 730 n 6, 735 n 8, 737 n 9, 767 n 5, 771 n, 773 n, 774 n, 783 n 8, 785 n 2, 788 n 2, 789 n 6, 800 n 5, 807 n 2, 809 n 5, 812 n 3, 814 n 3, 816 n 5, 818 n 6, 826 n 1, 829 n 7, 831 n 1, 836 n 6, 838 n 1, 843 n 3, 844 n 1, 846 n 6, 849 n 7, 851 n 8, 852 n 3, 856 n 8, 860 n 2, 862 n 6, 908 n 5, 6 and 8, 1043 n 1, 1047 n 4, 1111 n, 1130 n, 1148 n 5, 1154 n 5, 1158 n 4, 1159 n 5, 1188 n 8, 1197 n 3, 1204 n 9, 1215 n 9, 1225 n, 1232 n 1, 1233 n 3, 1241 n 1, 1242 n 2, 1251 n 9, 1258 n 9, 1259 n, 1265 n 9, 1266 n 4, 1267 n 6, 1268 n 7, 1272 n 6, 1279 n 4, 1290 n 8 and 1, 1292 n 9,—app 1, vii, viii, xviii, xix, xx, xxv, xxvi.

**Calinger**, 523 n, for **Kālinjar**, which see.

**Callinger**, 777 n, for **Kālinjar**, which see.

**Campion**,—a vitiated name of **Ḳāshin** given to it by the old European travellers, 950 n.

**Candahar**, 41 n, 509 n, 1017 n, 1018 n, 1025 n. See also under **Ḳanda-hār**.

**Caracotay**, 969 n 1, for **Ḳarā-Ḳhitā**, which see. [964 n 2.]

**Carcoq**,—a town in **Ḳarā-Ḳhitā**, which see.

**Carisme**, 969 n 1, for **Ḳhwārasm**, which see.

**Carmania**,—ancient name of the Persian province of **Kirmān**, 518 n.

**Caruāl** or **Karuāl**,—a town in **Hindūstān**, 459 n 7.

**Caschgar**, 984 n, for **Kāshghar**, which see.

**Cashmir**, the name of **Ḳāshin**, as given in the **Kāshghar Mission Report**, 950 n.

**Caspian gates**,—the **Dar-band** or **Bāb-al-Abwāb**, as known to classical writers, 998 n, 1117

**Caspian**, the, 140 n 5, 162 n 3, 276 and n, 879 n, 884 n, 886 n, 902 n,

- 910 n, 938 n, 991 n, 992, 994 n, 996 n, 998 n, 1001 n, 1029 n, 1117, 1188 n, 1236 n 2.
- Castle of Zuhāk, at the foot of the mountains of Zār-i-Murgh, 331 n 1.
- Caucasus, the, 884 n, 886 n. See also under the Kaukasus and the Kakāsus.
- Central Asia, xi, 69 n, 474 n 5, 878 n, 886 n, 890 n, 899 n, 919 n, 1001 n, 1106 n, 1115 n 5, 1202 n, 1258 n 8.
- Central Perma, 933 n, 939 n
- Chachan,—a route of Kārus in the Kāshin territory, 950 n
- Chāch, Chāj or Shāsh,—a city in the territory of Farghānah, in Māwarī-n-Nahr, 921 n
- Chāch Hazārah,—a tract of country in Northern India, 1132 n.
- Chachoh,—a district along the banks of the Indus, 1123 n
- Chaghān Sarāo, or 'white hostelry,' in the Kūnar valley, 1044 n, 1045 n
- Chaghānīān,—a dependency of Khūrāsān, 89 n 2, 232 n, 374 n 5, 423 n 8, 426 and n 6, 923 n
- Chaghan-Jāng,—the name given by the Mughals to half the country of Gandhar, where the people are white, 1216 n, 1217 n.
- Chāj, Chāch or Shāsh,—a city in the territory of Farghānah, 28 n 8, 921 n
- Chanoah,—a village on the bank of the river Biūh, 533 n
- Chānd gateway in Lakhanawati, erected by Sultan Firuz Shāh-i-Ahmad Muzaffar, Shāh-i-Jahān, the Mahrāshī, 582 n 6
- Chandanpār, 470 n 1. See under Chandpār.
- Chandāwar, 470 n 1, 518 n. See under Chandwār.
- Chandirī,—a territory in Hindūstān, 639 n 5, 690 and n, 691 n, 733, 824 n 7.
- Chandpūr,—a town in the district of Farrukhābād on the route from Bareilly to Fath-ghar, 470 n 1.
- Chand-wāl, or Jandwāl,—a place a few miles S.-E. of Itāwah, 470 n 1, 516 and n 9, 518 n, 743 and n 9, 743. Synonyms with the next.
- Chandwār or Chandāwar, 470 and n 1, 518 n, 743 and n 9. See also the above, with which it is synonymous.
- Chang or Ching-Khū, the,—a river passing by the city of Taining in Khūtie, 958 n.
- Chang-sha,—a city in the Chinese province of Hu-quang, 1222 n.
- Charamuin, the,—or Liao Ho,—a river in the country of the Khitauns, 885 n.
- Chārloār,—a town in Western Kāmrūd, 563 n.
- Charizul, for Khawārazm
- Charkas,—the territory of the Cheremis, 1163 n
- Charkh,—a place a few miles from the right or east bank of the Luhgar river, 73 and n 8.
- Chashān or Chushan,—a station on the road between Hirāt and Chur, 325 n [459 n 7.
- Churang,—a village of Hindūstān, Chutgānw (Chittagong),—a port of Bangālāh, 392 n, 593 n.

- Chan-nayman-soma**,—ruins in the country of Karohin on the river Shan-tü, 1219 n.
- Cheestore**,—a tract of country in Hindüstân, 520 n, 611 n 3
- Che-kyang**,—a province of China, 1219 n.
- Chenáb**, the, 1130 n. See under the **Qhináb**.
- Qhâr Kanê or Jhâr-kundah**,—a tract of country lying on the right bank and upper part of the Soa, 587 n 4, 588 n.
- Qhotañ Nâg-pür**, 588 n.
- Qhigal or Qhikal**,—a small tract of country in Turkistân, 872 n
- Qhilâs**,—a city or country in the Koh-i Karâ Qhal, a range of the Himâlayah, 1046 n 3.
- Qhin**, *Id.*, 29, 154, 155 n 5, 180, 183, 197 and n 9, 214, 227, 230, 244, 268, 269, 270, 271 and n 1, 272, 273, 310, 383, 412, 496, 516 n 3, 534, 535 n, 561 and n 9, 677, 720 n 1, 764, 790, 817 n 7, 876 n, 877 n, 890, 891 n, 900, 933 n, 904 n, 907 n, 911 n 7, 912 n 9, 916 n, 922 n, 923 n, 924 n, 935, 961 n, 962 n, 963 and n 1, 966, 967, 968, 983 n, 1046, 1081, 1084, 1095, 1108, 1107, 1109, 1111, 1112, 1115 n 5, 1130 n, 1144, 1147, 1151, 1157, 1158, 1159, 1178, 1186, 1211 n 5 and n, 1215 and n 2, 1216 n, 1217 n, 1218 n, 1223, 1259 and n 2, 1281, 1283 n 8, 1284 n 3, 1288. See also under China
- Qhin-i-Buzurg**, or Great **Qhina**, 912 n 9 See under Maha **Qhin**
- China** 564 n, 794 n 1, 796 n, 877 n, 886 n, 911 n 7, 912 n 9, 923 n, 924 n, 940 n, 950 n, 955 n, 959 n, 1022 n, 1148 n, 1147 n 1, 1217, 1218 n, 1222 n. See also under **Qhin**.
- Qhináb**, the,—a river falling into the Indus, 76 n 2, 538 n, 536, 541 n 6, 678 n 1, 687 n 9, 816 n: 1130 n, 1154 n 1, 1155 n 6.
- Ching**,—a town in the district of Si-gan-fô, 1218 n.
- Ching Ching**,—a Chinese province 685 n
- Ching-dâ or Qhingtû**,—capital of the Altân Khân and metropolis of Khûâ, 957 n, 958 n, 959, 1186 n 9, 1137 n, 1222 n
- Ching-Khû or Qhang**, the,—a river passing by the city of Taimin, in Khûâ, 958 n
- Qhingtû**, 957 n. See also under **Qhing-dâ**
- Ching-tû-Fu**, the Chinese province of, 1222 n.
- Qhinistah Do-ibah**, the,—lying between the **Qhinab** and the **Bihatah**, 535 n, 536 n.
- Qhirkah or Jirkah**,—a city in the country of the Urûs [Russians], 1169 n, 1170 n, 1171 n.
- Qhirkah or Jirkah**, the,—a river in the country of the Urûs [Russians], 1169 n.
- Chittagong**, 592 n. See under **Châtganw**.
- Chitral**, state of, 1044 n
- Chitral**, valley of, 1044 n, 1045 n
- Chitral**, the. See the next
- Chitral or Qhital**, the. (also called the Kamah),—a tributary of the Kâbil river, 79 n
- Chitral**, for **Khûâ**
- Ching King**,—a province in the country of **Qhin**, 1222 n.

Chong-quey,—a mountain in the country of Chin, 1232 n.

Chorāsān, 1009 n, for Khurāsān

Chorassan, for Khurāsān.

Chorienes [Kāl-yūn], the rock fortress of, 1054 n 2.

Chū, the,—a river of Mughalīstān, 918 n, 919 n, 983 n

Chūl [uncultivated or desert tract] of Jarūk, in Hindūstān, 293 n 5.

Chū-i-Jalālī,—a name of the Chūl of Jarūk, so called after Jalāl-ud-Dīn Khwārazm Shāh, 293 n 5, 587 n.

Chūnār-garh,—a hill and fortress of Hindūstān, 530 n 5, 551 n

Chūng-dū See under Ching-dū or Ching-tū

Chūrī-garh,—capital of the country of Kadhah-Katankah or Gndhah-Katankah, 587 n 4, 588 n

Chushān or Chashān,—a station on the road between Hurāt and Chūr, 325 n.

Chandu, the capital city of Shang-tū as called by Marco Polo, 1219 n.

Cobalek, 917 n, for Chū-Bālīk or Bālīgh, which see.

Cobalic, 917 n, for Chū-Bālīk or Bālīgh, which see.

Comoria, anglicised name of Kumār or Kumārūn, 1205 n 4.

Constantinople, 139 n, 161 n, 560 n 9, 999 n, 1260 n. [Bibār.

Cooch Bahar, See under Kūgh-Corassan, 964 n 2, for Khurāsān, which see.

Corea, the name of Khūrjah, which see, as known to Europeans, 956 n

Crimea, the, 884 n See under Krim and Krimes.

Croatia, a country of Eastern, Europe, 1168 n

Cubāgh, 912 n, for Chū-Bālīk or Bālīgh, which see.

Cumania, 1168 n.

## D.

Dabūs,—See the next.

Dabūsh, also called Dabūs and Dabūsi,—a fortified town about midway between Bukhārā and Samrkand, 977 n, 978 n.

Dabūsi,—See the above

Dās-kān,—a town of Khurāsān in the district of Marw, 94 and n 3, 99 n 1, 125 n 8, 127 n 8, 130  
An error for Tāl-kān, see page 94 n 3

Dās-kū,—See the next

Dās-lū or Dās-kū,—a country to the S.-W. of Khītāc, it is called

Gandhar by the Mughals, 1216 n, 1217 n

Dāghstān, country of the Alāns, 999 n

Dahānah-i-Shēr,—the Lion's Jaws, —a Pass of Sarakhs, 387 and n 6

Dahind, 77 n. See under Bahind and Wahind.

Dajayl or Dajaylah,—a district lying on either side of the Dijlah above Baghdād, 1240 n.

Dajayl, the, [the Little Tigris], 1240 n.

Dajlah [Tigris], the, 242 n 6, read the Dijlah, see page lix.

Dajsaḡ,—a town in the territory of Khurāsān, 248, 367, 309, 378

Dakhan, the, viii, 511 n, 537 n 4, 589 n, 592 n, 1216 n, 1271 n.

Dalmatin,—a province of Austria-Hungary, 1188 n.

Damascus, the Dimaṣḡk or Damaṣḡk of the Arabs, 162 n 3 See under Damaṣḡk.

Damaṣḡk [Damascus], capital of Myria, 158 n, 204 n, 205 and nn 4 and 6, 206 and n 7, 207 and n 8, 208 n, 209 n 6, 214 n 6, 218 n, 219 and n 9, 221 n, 222 and n 8, 223 n 5, 224 and n 9, 225 n 4, 226 n 8, 227 n 9, 228 and n 1, 229 n 5, 1264 n, 1276 n, 1277 n, 1278 n, 1280 n 5

Damawand,—a mountain in the 'Irāk-i 'Ajam, ix, 305, 1046 n 3, 1207 n

Damduma,—a place in the paraganah of Diwkot or Dib kot between Lakhanawati and Dinajpur, 591 n

Damghān, the capital of Kūmis, a district between Khurāsān and 'Irāk-i 'Ajam, 133 n 3, 154 n, 266 n, 991 n, 992, 1188 n 8, 1200 n 3

Damotta, the Dimyāt of the Arabs, 226 n 8. See under Dimyāt

Damuk, 480 n 5 The correct name of this place is Dam-yak, which see.

Damow or Damū,—a place east of Saugor [Sāgar] in Hindustān, 824 n 9.

Damrilah,—a town in the country of Sind, 394 n, 641.

Damū. See under Damow.

Damūh,—a town in the country of Kaḡbah-Katankah 'between the capital Qhūrā-gaḡh and Āmūdah, 586 n.

Dam-yak,—a place west of the Jhilam, on the route to Ghaznin, 432 and n 2, 484, 486 and n and n 5, 492.

"Dandanekan,"—a small town in Khurāsān, 94 n 3. Same as Dandānkan, which see.

Dandānkād or Dāndaukāḡ,—a small town in the district of Marw in Khurāsān, 94 n 3, 99 n 1, 125 n 5 and 8, 127 n 8 See also the next.

Dandānkan or Dāndānkan, 94 n 3, 125 n 8, 905 n Same as the above, which also see

Dangah,—a hilly tract in the Salt Range, 1130 n

Danaur,—a town in the territory of Mārdin, 1261 n, 1279 n

Danube, the, 1168 n

Dā-nu i,—a dependency of Āmul, the capital of Tataristān, 991 n.

Dār-ul-Khilāfat, Baghdad. See under Baghdad

Dār-ul-Khilāfat, Delhi, 525 n

Dār-i-Sarr-ḡān, or Gate of the Saddlers, in Marw, 1029 n.

Dār-i-Ta'ām,—a place to the south of the capital city of Sistān, 20 and n 3, 195.

Dār-i-Tang,—a fortress on the frontier of Baghdad, 1238 n

Darah-i-Gaz —a valley near the city of Balkh, 126 n

Darah-i-Karḡmān,—a small darah in the province of Karḡmān, I.

Darah-i-Khisht-Āb, the,—in the

- district of *Harīw-ar-Rūd*, 417 and n 4.
- Durah-i-Mandrop*,—in *Afghānistān*, 79 n.
- Darah-i-Nūr*,—valley of the river *Nūr*, xlvī.
- Dārī-nagar*,—a town of *Hindūstān*, 611 n 3.
- Darangawān* [*Daran-gā-on*],—a district in *Hindūstān*, 746 and n 5.
- Dar-band*, the *Bāb-ul-Abwāb* of the Arabs and the *Derbend* of the maps, 994 n, 998 n, 1117, 1286 n, 1287 n.
- Dar-band-i-Rūm*, [the *Caspian Gates*], 1117 See the above.
- Darbār* or *Dar-bor* See under *Dar-gūn*.
- Darghān*,—a place in the neighbourhood of *Samarkand*, 120 and n 4.
- Dar-gūn*,—a hill tract of *Tukhāristān*, 423 and n 1.
- Dar-gūr* or *Dar-gor*. See under *Dargūn*.
- Dar-gūt*, *Dar-kūt* or *Darkot*. See under *Dar-gūn*.
- Darkūfah*, 424 n. See under *Dar-gūn*.
- Darīah*, the,—a river of *Kāmrūd*, 764 n 6.
- Darmash*, 698 n. See also under *Durmashān*.
- Darūnah* or *Darūstah*, 77 n. See the next.
- Darūnthā*,—a place at the point of junction of the rivers of *Nūr* and *Kirāt*, xlv, xlvī, 77 n, 79 n.
- Darwāz*, 424 n See under *Dar-gūn*.
- Darwāzah-i-Bārs* [*Fārs*],—one of the five gates of the capital city of *Sistān*, 20 n 3.
- Dasht-i-Chul*, the,—a desert in *Khurāsān*, 1009 n 7.
- Dasht-i-Kābchāk*, the, 163 n 5. See under the *Dasht-i-Kābchāk*.
- Dasht-i-Khufchāk*, the, 992. See under the *Dasht-i-Kābchāk*.
- Dasht-i-Khurz*, the,—a desert of *Turkistān*, 117 n, 1030 n.
- Dasht-i-Kābchāk* or *Khufchāk*, the,—a desert of *Turkistān*, 163 n 5, 233 n 6, 943 n, 992, 994 n, 998 n, 1000, 1082 n, 1083 n, 1084 n, 1087 n, 1101 n 1, 1103 n, 1108 n, 1105 n, 1150 n, 1164 n 9, 1165 n, 1168 n, 1171 n, 1177 n 1, 1178 n, 1266 n, 1287 n, 1290 n 9.
- Dasht-i-Khufchāk*, the See under the *Dasht-i-Kābchāk*.
- Dasht-i-Kābchāk*, the, 233 n 6. See under the *Dasht-i-Kābchāk*.
- Dasht-i-Qhap*,—the left hand—a territory of *Mughūlstān*, 1179 n, 1180 n, 1220 n.
- Dasht-i-Rast*,—the right hand—a territory of *Mughūlstān*, 1179 n, 1180 n, 1220 n.
- Datoli*,—a place in the *Do-āb* of the *Jūn* and the *Gang*, 809 and n 7.
- Dāwar*,—a district in *Khurāsān*, 21, 74, 201 n 2, 267, 287, 317, 319 and n 5, 355, 362, 386, 389, 390, 472, 1018 n See also under *Zamīn-i-Dāwar*.
- Dawar* the, *Darah* of,—south of the *Kurmah*, 499 n.
- Dāwari*,—a district of *Khurāsān*, 201 and n 2.
- Dazak*,—a town in the territory of *Khurāsān*, 248. See also under *Dajzak*.
- Debekote* [*Diw-koṭ* or *Dib-koṭ*], *parganah* of, 591 n.

Decan, the, 511 n. See under the Dakhan.

Dehli. See under Dihli.

Dahly,—for Dihli.

Dekaka,—one of the chief cities of Banglāh, 596 n.

Denmark, 138 n 8, 727 n 6.

Deo-kali [Deva Kala],—a place S.-E of Kanauj, 680 n.

Deokot, 574 n 3, for Diw-koṭ, which see

Depūr,—a place between Ghaznī and the Murgalah Pass, 96 n 2.

Deva Kala 680 n See under Deo-kali

Dewal, 531 n 1. See under Diwal and Dibāl.

Dhukah, capital of Bang, lxi, 558 n, 546 n 9

Dhuragarh, in the Dakhan, 569 n. Also called Diw-gir

Dharam-gā-on, 746 n 5.

Dharam pattan, the ancient name of Bhātughūn in the Nipal valley, 567 n 1

Dholpur,—a district of Hindūstān, 653 n 6.

Dhūtalī, 521 n, for the town of Pālī in Gujarāt

Diar-i-Bakr, the See under the Diyar-i-Bakr

Diār-i-Rabī'ah,—a district in Mesopotamia, 996 n

Dibāl or Diwal,—one of the chief cities of Sind, 294 n, 295 n, 452, 491 n 5, 614 n 8, 615 n 1, 628 See also under Diwal.

Dibāl pūr,—a district in Hindūstān, 795 n

Dib-koṭ, of Lakhaṇawāṭī See under Diw-koṭ

Didankān, 94 n 3 Same as Dan-

dānpād and Dandānpān, which see.

Digārchah, or Tishā Lāmbā,—a Buddhist monastery on the bank of the Sānpā river, 570 n 9.

Dih of Ahangarān,—a village near Ghaznī, 321 n 6.

Dih-i-Jalābiāh,—a village of Baghdād, 1253 n, 1254 n.

Dih-i-Wakf,—a village of Baghdād, 1253 n, 1254 n.

Dihustān,—a district in the territory of Khurāsān, 123 n, 124 n, 125 and n 8, 240 n.

Dihli or Dehli, x, xiii xxi, xxxiii n 2, xxvi, xxvii, xxviii, xxix, xxx, l, 26 n 1, 41 n 6, 79 n, 91 n 9, 168 n, 168 n 2, 204, 205, 231 n 1, 243 n 1, 283 n 9, 293 n 5, 294 n, 317, 322 n, 345, 369 n 5, 379 n 4, 388 n 7, 399 n, 418 n 2, 459 n 7, 460 and n 3, 462 n, 463 n, 467 n, 468, 469 and n 9, 470 n, 488 n 1, 490 n 6, 491, 497 n 3, 506 n, 508 n, 509 n, 510 n, 511 n, 514 n, 515, 516 n 2, 517 n, 515 n 5, 519 n, 520 n, 522 n, 523 n, 524 n, 525 and n, 527 n, 528 n, 529 n 4, 530 and n and n 5, 533 n, 534 n, 535 n, 537 n, 538 n, 539 n, 542 n 9, 543 n, 549 and n 4, 550 n 6, 551 n and n 7, 552, 553 n 5, 562 n, 573 n 9, 575 and n 9, 576 n 6, 577 n, 579 n 4, 583 and n, 584 n 2 and 3, 589 n, 591, 594 n 1, 598 and n 8, 602 and n 4, 604 n 9, 605 and n 1, 606 and n 3, 607 n and n 6, 608 and n 8 and 9, 609 and n and n 3 and 5, 610 n 7, 611, 612 n 6, 614 n 8, 615 and n 1, 617 n, 618 n, 619, 620 and n 4, 621 n 6, 622 n, 623, 624 n and n 3, 625, 627 n 5, 629 and n 3, 629,

- 630 and n 2, 631, 634 nn 9, 2 and 3, 635 and n 9, 636 and n 3, 637 n 8, 639, 640 and n 3, 644 and n, 645 and n, 646, 647 and n 9, 648, 649 and n 6, 652, 655, 656 and n, 659 and n and n 4, 660 and n 9, 662, 666 n, 667, 668 n, 670 n 2, 672 n, 675, 676, 677 and n 6, 679, 680 n, 683 and n 7, 684 and nn 8 and 9, 686, 687 and n 9, 688 and n and nn 3 and 4, 690 n 8, 691 n, 692, 693 n 2, 695 and n 9, 696 n, 698, 700 and n 8, 701 and n 1, 703, 704, 705 and n 7, 706, 707 n 6, 708 and n 1, 709 and n 710, 711 and n 4, 712 n 6, 715 716 n 5, 717 n, 718 n, 720 n 1, 722 and n 6, 724, 725 and n 5, 727 n 7, 728, 730 n 7, 735 738, 741 and n 2, 745 n 2, 747, 749 n 2, 753, 756 and n 3, 757 n 5, 758 n 9, 761, 763, 767 n 1, 768 n 4, 769, 771 n, 772 n, 773 n, 774 n, 775 n, 776 n, 777 n, 778 n, 779, 780 and n 5, 782 n, 783 and n 9, 784 n and n 6, 785, 786 and n 6, 788 and nn 9 and 1, 789, 790, 791 n 1, 792 n 9, 793 nn 3 and 7, 794 nn 9 and 1, 795 n, 796, 797 and n 5, 801, 806, 809, 811 n 8, 812 nn 2 and 3, 814, 815 n 8, 816 and n 4, 817 n 7, 821 n 6, 823 n and n 3, 825, 830 and n 5, 834, 837 and n 2, 838 n 7, 839, 840 and n 2, 841 and n 5, 844 and n 4, 845 and n, 846 nn 5 and 6, 847 n 2, 848, 849 and n 7, 850 n 6, 851 n 8, 855, 857 n 3, 860, 861 and n, 862 n 8, 863 n 3, 864, 878 n, 884 n, 910 n, 912 n, 932 n, 934 n, 936 n 6, 948 n, 961 n, 1002 n 6, 1045 n, 1129 and n 1, 1131 n, 1135 n 3, 1136, 1145 n, 1155 n 6, 1166, 1174 and n 2, 1181 n 2, 1184 n, 1201 n, 1208 n, 1224 n, 1235 n, 1259 n 3, 1271 n, 1274 n 1, 1275 n 3, 1285, 1286,—app. i, ii, iii, iv, v, vi, vii, xix, xxiii, xxiv, xxv.
- Dijlah [Tigris], the, lx, 64, 242 n 6, 712 n, 1232, 1237 n 6, 1238, 1239 n, 1240 n, 1241 n 1, 1243 and n, 1245, 1261, 1268 nn 8 and 9, 1282 n See also under the Tigris.
- Dilam, territory of, 15, 55 n 1, 58, 59, 94 n 3, 137, 996 n, 1158 n, 1234 n 4
- Dilem, 996 n, for Dilam, which see.
- Dilün-Yıldük or Dilün Yüldük,—a place in Mughūlistān, 938 n, 944 n
- Dimashk See under Damascus
- Dimāwand, an error for Damawand See page lx
- Dimyār [Damietta].—a town in the Diyāl-i-Misriyah, 226 n 8, 228 n 4, 229 n 5.
- Dinājpūr,—a district in the territory of Lakhanawut, 559 n, 562 n, 563 n, 591 n.
- Dināl pūr, 795 n, for Dibāl-pūr.
- Dinaur, 1239 n, or
- Dinawar, 990 n, or
- Dinawr,—a town in the 'Irāq-i-'Ajam, 13, 151 n 6, 242 n 6, 996 n, 1239 n
- Din-ghiz or Tin-ghiz [Lake] Bāl-kash,—a lake of Mughūlistān, 920 n [see page lx]
- Dinjā-pūr, an error for Dinājpur.
- Dinkot,—a town on the bank of the Indus, 291 n
- Dinūr,—a place between Ghaznia and the Mārgalah Pass, 97 n.
- Diul,—a city in the mouth of the river Sindh, 295 n See under Dibāl and Diwāl



**Diwah**, the,—a river of Lakhaṇawati, 586 n 9.

**Diwal** or **Dibal**,—one of the chief cities of Sind, 294 n, 295 n, 452 and n 2, 491 n 5, 532, 534 and n 1, 614 n 8, 615, 641, 608 n, 1154. See also under Dibal.

**Diwgir** [Dharigash], in the Dakhn, 589 n, 1216 n

**Diw-koṭ** or **Dib-koṭ**,—a city of Lakhaṇawati on the eastern side of the river Gang, 502 n, 563 n, 564 n, 565, 571 n 2, 572 and n 4, 574 and n 3 and 7, 575 and n, 576 and n 3, 578 and n 2, 585 n 6, 586, 591 n

**Diṽr-i-Bakr**,—a district in Mesopotamia, 136 n, 137, 169 n 7, 204 n, 206, 210, 222, 224, 298, 383, 396 n, 1141 n, 1151 n, 1152 n, 1263, 1264 n, 1268 n 0, 1270 n 2, 1280 n 5

**Diṽr-i-Miṣriah**, 140 n 2, 209 n 6, 210 n, 212 n 1, 217 n, 216 n and n 5, 222 n 8 and 9, 226 n 7, 228 n 4, 229 n 5, 230 n. See also under Egypt and Miṣr

**Do-āb** or **Do ābah**, the,—of the

**Bīkh** and the **Bāwi**, 550 n 6, 603 n 9, 679, 706 n 7, 740, 811 n 8, 1131 n, 1155 n 6, 1156 n 7.

**Do-ābah**, the,—of the Gang and the Jūn, 816.

**Dolāb-i-Bakal**,—a place in Baghdād, 1243 n

**Doli Shāng**,—a fortified city in the country of Tanguash, 1220 n

**Don**, the, 1000 n, 1001 n, 1170 n 8 and n.

**Dooshak**, or **Jalālabād**, capital of Sijistān, 188 n 7.

**Doub**, 921 n

**Dufflah**, 506 n 8

**Du-in**,—a city of Āzarbāijān, 170 n 8

**Daj-i-Kamālī**,—a fortress in the Kūhistan of the Mulāhidah, 1192 n

**Du-mandesh**,—a place in the country of Ghūr, 306 n 9

**Dantoor**, 96 n 2, wrong name of **Depūr**, which see.

**Dardhan**, 561 n 8, for **Burdhan-koṭ**, which see

**Durmanhān**, 392 n 6. See also under **Darmash**

## E.

**Eastern Khurāsān**, 403 n

**Eastern Mongolia**, 886 n

**Eastern Iersa**, 1119 n

**Ecbatana**, the ancient name of **Hamadān**, 396 n

**Edessa**,—a town of Mesopotamia, the **Ruhā** of Arab geographers, 225 n 4

**Egrigān**,—the name given by Marco Polo to **Iriki** or **Irikiā**, the

capital of **Iingkūt** or **Kāghin**, 952 n

**Egypt**, hr, 13 n 6, 101 n 8, 139, 140 n 2 and 5, 209 n 5 and 6, 212 n 1, 215 n 9, 220 n 2, 221 n 6, 225 n 4, 226 n 8, 601 n 7, 766, 829 n 9, 1159, 1275 n 3. See also under the **Diṽr-i-Miṣriah** and **Miṣr**.

**Ekdālāh**,—Europeanized form of **Akdālāh**, which see, 590 n.

England, 309 n, 718 n  
 Erbil, 1001 n See under Arbīl of  
 Āzarbāijān.  
 Eski Baghra, 1100 n  
 Euphrates, the, 135 and n 1, 140  
 n 2, 1241, 1256 n 6, 1260 n 5,

1264 n, 1275 n 2. See also the  
 Furāt.  
 Europe, vi, 157 n 3, 214 n 9, 886 n,  
 1028 n, 1194, 1283 n 1,—app. v.  
 Ezine, the, 886 n. See also under  
 the Black Sea.

## F

Fādas, 875 n 6 another name of  
 Fāra, which see  
 Fai-fong-fu, the ancient Taiming  
 and the Pian-kin of Europeans,  
 1136 n 9  
 Faj Hanisār,—a Pass in the moun-  
 tains of Ghūr, xlix, 319 n 8, 441  
 n 7.  
 Faj of Khūnār,—a Pass in the  
 mountains of Ghūr, 319  
 Fallen Minār,—Pratah Minārīah,—  
 the, a fortress on the western  
 bank of the Indus, 78 n  
 Fanākat,—a city of Māwarā-un-  
 Nahr, also called agh-Shūsh, now  
 known as Tāshkand, 19 n 2 28  
 n 8, 261 n, 932 n, 1083 n, 1084 n  
 Fanākat, the, [the Sīhūn or Jaxartes],  
 268 n, 931 n, 932, 972 n,  
 973 n, 975 n 5, 987 See also  
 under the Sīhūn and Jaxartes  
 Fang-ching or Māng-ching,—a  
 Chinese province, 1221 n  
 Fār-āb or Fār-yāb,—a territory and  
 city of Turkistān, 399 n 7, 915 n,  
 920 n, 921 n, 962 n, 969 n 1 Also  
 called Utrār, which see See also  
 under Fāryāb  
 Farāh or Farāb,—a city of Sistān  
 or Sijistān, xxv, 195, 201 and n 2,  
 233, 397, 472, 480 n, 1122 n,  
 1200 n, 1203, 1204.

Fāras or Bāras,—a district in the  
 territory of Khurasān, 342, 375  
 and n 6, 390 and n 7, 398 and n 5.  
 Fār-āw, 399 n 7, another name of  
 Fār-yāb and Fār-āb, which see.  
 Farāwah,—a district and city in  
 the territory of Khurasān, 122,  
 123 n, 124 n, 125, 129 n  
 Farghānah,—a district in Māwarā-  
 un-Nahr, 27 and n 6, 28, 29, 43,  
 52, 260, 105 n, 880 n, 890 n, 903 n,  
 914 n, 915 n, 916 n, 919, 921 n,  
 923 n, 970 n 2, 980, 1146.  
 Farhad-gird,—a place at a short  
 distance of Nishāpūr, 16 and  
 n 5  
 Farmān-dih,—a place in the terri-  
 tory of the Kuhistān, 1197  
 Farrokhābid,—a district of Hindūs-  
 tān, 470 n 1  
 Fāra, province of, 23 and n 9, 24,  
 31 n 3, 84 n 6, 55 n 1, 56 n, 61 n 4,  
 62, 63, 65, 66 n 7, 84 and n 6, 133,  
 137, 148, 153 n 6, 169 and n 7, 173  
 and n 4 and 5, 174 and n, 175  
 and n 8, 176 and n 1, 177 and n 6,  
 178 and n 7 and 8, 179 and n 9,  
 180 n, 183 n 2, 184 n, 185 n, 187,  
 265, 266 n, 277 n 5 283 n 9, 294,  
 295 and n 6, 296, 299, 304 n 2,  
 882, 934 n, 931 n, 1011 n, 1110,  
 1118, 1119, 1151 n, 1229, 1234

- 1248 n, 1262 n, 1266 n 9,—  
 app. xxi.  
**Fārus**, 367 n 7, another name of  
 Fāras, which see.  
**Farwān**,—another name of Barwān,  
 the city between Ghaznin and  
 Balkh, which see, 268 n 3  
**Farwān** or **Parwān**,—a town on the  
 Panj-hir river, 284 n 3.  
**Fāryāb** or **Fārāb**—a territory and  
 city of Turkistān, 56 n 3 128 v,  
 243 n 8, 378, 391 399 and n 7,  
 920 n, 1009 n, 1128 n See also  
 under Fārāb  
**Fastāt** or **Fustāt**, another name of  
 Miṣr [Cairo], 1274 n  
**Fath-ābād**,—a place between Ghaz-  
 nin and the Margalah Pass,  
 founded by Sultan Mahmūd, son  
 of Sultan Masūd of Ghaznin,  
 97 n  
**Fath-ghar**,—a town of Hindūstan.  
 470 n 1  
**Fath-i-Jang**—a district in the  
 Rāwal Pindi Division of the  
 Panjth 537 n  
**Fīlūm** or **Anbar**—a town on the  
 Euphrates, 135 n 1  
**Feraber**,—a town of Bakhrā, 961  
 n 2  
**Ferozakoh**, for **Firuz koh**, which  
 see  
**Filistin** [Palestine], 215, 224 See  
 also under Palestine.  
**Firbad**,—or  
**Fubay**—a fortress of Khwārazm  
 on the river Jihun, 137 n 4  
**Firūz ābād**,—now called the Koti-  
 lah of **Firuz Shāh**, one of the  
 suburbs of Dillī, 590 n  
**Firuzābād**, a town on the site of  
 the ancient city of Chānd-wān,  
 on the banks of the Jūn or  
 Yamunā, 742 n 9.  
**Firūz-ābād** or  
**Firūzi gateway**,—one of the quar-  
 ters of Hirāt, 1036 n 1  
**Firūzi Bāgh**,—a garden of Ghaznin,  
 97 n.  
**Firuz-koh**, capital of the Bilād-ul-  
 Jibāl of Ghur, xxi, xvi, i, 115,  
 150 212 n 6, 241, 245, 253, 282 n,  
 285, 310, 337, 339 n 1, 330 and  
 n 7, 340, 341, 344, 348 n, 349 n,  
 350, 356 and n 2, 357, 358, 361,  
 362, 364, 365, 369 370, 371 and  
 n 3, 372, 377, 386, 389 393, 394  
 and n and n 3, 395, 396 397 and  
 n 5 and 5, 398, 399 400 and n 3,  
 402 n, 403 and n, 404, 405 and  
 n 1, 406, 407 and n 5, 408 409,  
 411 and n, 412 n, 413 n 1 414,  
 415, 417, 418, 419 n 5, 421, 429,  
 431 447 456, 461 n, 472 and n 7,  
 480 n, 487, 490, 501 and n 5, 502,  
 523 n 525 n, 581 and n 8, 772 n,  
 1002 n 7, 1004 1006 1007, 1047,  
 1048, 1055 1056 1057 and n 4,  
 1073, 1109 n, 1207 n  
**Firuz koh**, 874 n  
**Firuz pur**,—a town of Hindūstan,  
 740 n 9  
**Firuz**—a district and town be-  
 tween Ghaznat and Fāras, 260,  
 342, 375, 376 n 390, 409, 502 n 6,  
 1003, 1026 1053, 1054, 1055,  
 1060 1061 n 7.  
**Fū chen Fu**,—a town in the Chinese  
 province of Se chwen 1222 n  
**Fulād**—a town in the Hāk-i-Ajam,  
 991 n  
**Fulād-Sum**,—a city in the Kāsh-  
 ghar territory, 922 n, 986 n.  
**Fur Fur** or **Forus** country of,—

- a territory in Hindūstān, 536 n, 537 n.
- Furāt [Euphrates], the, 135, 136 n, 1240 n, 1241 and n 1, 1261 n 7, 1264 n, 1276 n 2, 1277 n. See also under the Euphrates
- Furshor, —same as Buishor, which see.
- Fūshanj, also written Būshanj, —a tract of country in Khurāsān near Hirāt, lxiii, 11 and n 4, 22, 36 n 9, 49 n 9, 81 n, 185 n, 186 n, 247, 377, 391, 901, 992, 1027 n 8, 1039.
- Fustāt or Fastāt, —another name of Mīr [Cairo], 1278 n
- Futtehahad, incorrect spelling of Fath-shād, which see.

## G.

- Gabar, —a town in the country of Bājawr, 1043 n 1
- Gabari, an error for Gibari, see page iv.
- Gabar-kot or Gibar-kot, —a fortress in Bājawr, xlvii, 1044 n.
- Gadbeh-Katankah or Kadbeh-Katankah, also called Gondwānah, —a territory of Hindūstān, 587 n 4, 591 n.
- Gadhī, —a town of Bangālāh, 592 n 593 n.
- Gah or Kāh, —a Kala' or fortress in Sijstān, 35 n
- Galwā-i or Kalwā-i, —or
- Galwā-in or Kalwā-in, —a district of Hindūstān, 576 n
- Gandah-har, 1216 n, for Gandhar, which see
- Gandhār, —a town or city on the banks of the river Siad, 77 n, 78 n
- Gandhar, —the name given by the Mughals to the country between Hind and Tibbat, 1216 n, 1217 n Called Kandhār by the Musalmāns and Mahā-Qhūn by the Hindus.
- Gāndhārāh, the ancient name given by the Hindūs to the hilly country on the frontier of Hindūstān, 537 n
- Gang [Ganges], the See under the Ganges
- Ganges, the, 86 n, 107, 465 n 4, 469 n, 524 n, 550 n n 5 and 6, 551 n, 559 n 2, 561, 562 n, 564 n, 582 n 6, 585 and n 6, 586 n, 589 n, 593 n 6 and n, 611 n 3, 618 n, 629 n 6, 639, 646, 667 n 3, 696 n 3, 697 and n, 737 n 7, 739 n 5, 710 n 8, 763 n 1, 809, 816, 838, 1021 n 8, —app xvii
- Gang pur, —a district of Bhātāh or Bhāti, 538 n
- Gangūtā or Kankūri, —a district of Hindūstān, 573 and n 2.
- Ganjah, —a town of Gharjstān, in Khurāsān, 141 n, 170 n 8, 998 n.
- Ganj-rūt, for Wanj-rūt, the territory in the Multān province, 723 n 1
- Gan-nan, the former name of Kō-chūn-Chūn, 1221 n, 1222 n
- Garānah or Gārānah, the, —a river bounding the Gwahyūr territory

- on the east and falling into the Jān or Yamunā, 723 n 7, 825.
- Gardais**,—a district and town in the Ghaznia territory, 435 n 2, 449 and n 9, 491, 496 n 7, 505, 518 n, 536 n, 598 n, 901 n.
- Gardaz**, lv, 901 n. Same as Gardais, which also see.
- Gari Kapura'h**, the Afghan name of the fortress of Giri near the Sind or Indus, lv.
- Gariw or Kariw**,—a district in the territory of Ghūr, 344 n 1
- Gariwah** of Sūntās the Nū yin, —a tract of country to the west of Baghdād, 1239 n.
- Garmair**,—a tract of country in the territory of Khurāsān, xlv, lx, 16 n 3, 107, 108 n, 144, 253, 341, 342, 350, 374 and n 3, 392, 395, 397, 398, 448 and n 3, 472, 501, 540, 548 and n 3, 580, 878 n, 1006, 1014 n 2, 1015 n, 1016, 1075 n, 1133, 1226,—app. xi
- Garwa**—a place near Sheorājpūr in Pargana Bah of Allahabad 683 n
- Gasguri or Kaskuri**,—a district of Hindustan, 575 n 2
- Gandah or Gauz**,—a division of the country of Bangalah, 558 n 7 559 n 2, 592 n. See also under Gauz
- Gauz or Gandah**,—a division of the country of Bangalah, 558 n 7 and 8, 559 n 2, 564 n, 576 n 5, 582 n 6, 585 n 6, 588, 590 n, 592 n, 596 n 2, 617 n, 618 n, 778 n
- Gawāshir**, also called Bardasir, —a town in the territory of Kumān, 281 n 5, 283 and n 9, 284 and n 1, 286 n 2, 295 n, 934 n, 1119
- Gas**, Darah of,—a valley near the city of Balgh, 128 n.
- Gasiw or Kasiw**,—a district in the territory of Ghūr, 344 and n 1.
- Gasmīn**, 1020 n, wrong spelling of Ghaznia.
- Genon**, 1000 n.
- Georgia**, 296, 996 n. 1001 n. See also under Gharjstān and Gur-jstān
- Gelas**, Europeanized name of Jatab, which see, 959 n.
- Ghaghar**, the,—a tributary of the Indus, 80 n.
- Gharā**, the,—a river of Hindūstān, 533 n, 541 n 6, 723 n 1, 813 n, 1155 n 6
- Gharchistān**, same as Gharjstān, which see
- Gharishtān**, same as Gharjstān, which see
- Gharjah**,—a place in the vicinity of Samrkand, 238 n
- Gharjstān** [Georgia],—a district or province of Khurāsān, xxi, 80 n 5, 95, 113 n, 115, 398 n, 341 and n 6, 342, 343, 350, 363, 367, 369, 370 and n 372, 374 n 3, 376, 385, 390, 391, 394, 396, 397, 398, 415, 418, 417, 418, 419 n 5, 423 n 8, 424 n 3, 427 n, 429 n 8, 431, 456, 877 n, 918, 1003, 1008, 1011 n, 1020 n, 1029 n, 1036 n, 1038 n 6, 1048 and n 7, 1055, 1056 n, 1071 n 3, 1072 and n 7 and 1, 1077, 1199 n, 1200 n, 1201 n. See also under Gurjstān
- Ghorghuz** [Jaghar 1-Ghuzz],—a territory of Turkistān, 962 n.
- Ghezistān**, for Ghizistān, which see, 1071 n 2

Ghasnah, same as Ghasnīn, which see.

Ghasnī, another way of writing the word Ghasnīn

Ghasnīn, vii, xii, xiv, xix, xx, xxi, xxii, xxiii n 3, xxiv, xxvi, xxviii, xlii, xlix, l, 22, 27, 41 n, 13 and nn 4 and 5, 46, 49, 50 n 3, 71 and n 5, 72 and n 6, 73 and nn 7 and 8, 74 and nn 2 and 3, 76, 79 n, 82 and n 2, 85 n, 86 n, 87 n, 88 and n 2, 89 and n 8, 90, 91 n 8, 92 n 3, 93, 95 and nn 7 and 9, 96 and nn 1 and 2, 97 and n, 98 and nn 5 and 6, 99, 100, 102 n 1, 104, 105 n and n 6, 107, 108 and n and nn 2 and 5, 109, 110 and n 5, 111, 112 and nn 3 and 5, 113 n 114 n, 115, 117 n, 124 n 4, 130 132 and n 9, 133, 139, 143 n 2, 148 and n 5 149 and n 2, 166 n 189, 190, 231, 236 n 6, 243, 244 n, 248 and n 1, 252, 253, 255 and n 7, 256 and n, 257 n 2, 258 n, 265 n 4, 267 and n 7, 275 n, 285 and n 5, 286 and n 7, 287 and n 9, 288 n 3, 289 n, 290 and n and n 4, 291 n, 307, 308 n 2, 310, 313 n 4, 316 n and n 2, 317 n and n 5, 319 n 5, 321 and n 6 323 n, 324 n, 326 n, 329, 330, 331 n 2, 332 and n 4, 333, 337 and n 7 338 nn 1 and 2, 339 and nn 7 and 8, 340, 341 and n 7, 342 343 and n 3, 344, 345, 346, 347 and n 2, 348 n 349 n 350 and n, 351 n, 353 n, 354, 355 and n, 356 and n and n 2, 357 n 7 358 n 2, 361 n 6, 369 n 470 n 2, 374 n 2, 376 and n 2, 377 and nn 4, 5 and 6 378 379 and nn 4 and 5, 380 and n 9 382, 384 390, 391 and n 8, 392 and n 6 394 395 396 and nn 7, 8 and n 990 and n

401 n, 408 n, 409 n 3, 412, 413 and n 1, 415, 416 and n 3, 417, 418, 419 n 5, 421, 422, 423 n 8, 427 and n, 428 n 1, 429, 431, 432 and n 1, 433 and n, 434 and n, 435 and n 2, 438 and n 2, 439 and n 5, 440 and n 6, 441 and n 7, 443 and n, 446 n and n 3, 447 n 6, 448 and n 3, 449 and n 8, 450 n, 451 n, 453 n 4, 454 n, 456, 458, 460 n 3, 461 n, 462, 464 n, 467 n, 469 n, 470, 471 n and n 5, 473, 474, 475 n 2, 476 n, 480 n, 481, 482 n, 483 n, 484 and n, 486 and n and n 5, 487, 488, 489 and n 2, 492 and n 7, 494 and n, 494, 495 and n 4, 498 n and n 6, 499 n 8, 500 and n 3, 501 and n and n 5, 502 and n 6, 503 and n 8, 504 and n 4, 505 and n and n 5, 506 and n 9, 509 n 510 n, 513 and n 8, 514, 515, 516 n 2 517 n, 518 n, 519 n, 520 n 521 n 522 n, 523 n 5 and n, 524 n 8, 527 and n 528 n 2, 532, 533, 534 and n 5, 536 n, 537 n, 538 n, 541 n and n 7, 545 n 5, 546 n 7, 548, 549, 550 n 6, 553 n 9, 576 n 6, 577 and n 578, 601 602 and n 4 604 607 and n 5 612 n 5, 614 n 8 624 n 8, 627 n 5, 631 n 7, 633 n 6 655, 659 n, 680 n 5 682 n 3 725 and n 5, 790, 795 n, 874 n, 881, 901 n 904 n, 905 n, 926 n, 936 n 6, 964 n 2, 989 n 1002 and n 6, 1005, 1006 1010 n, 1011 n, 1012, 1013, 1014 n 2 1015 n, 1016 and n 3, 1017 n, 1018 n, 1019 n, 1020 n 1021 and n 8 1022 n, 1023, 1042 and n 5, 1043 1047 and n 4, 1050 n, 1057 and n 4, 1060 n 5, 1062 n 7, 1065, 1071 and n 2, 1072 and n 5 and n 1073 and n 4 1075 n, 1081 n 1082 1104 1105 1110, 1120,

1128, 1129, 1131, 1132 n, 1133, 1145 n, 1152, 1155 n 6, 1198 n 8, 1202 n, 1203 n,—app iii, vi, xvii, xviii, xxvi  
 Ghocserai, 971 n, for Kiwak Sarae, which see  
 Ghiyâr pûr or Shahr-i-Zaghan,—one of the suburbs of Dihli, 598 n 8  
 Ghizni, for Ghazni, which see  
 Ghuzny, for Ghazni, which see  
 Ghograh, the,—a river of Hindustân, 700 n 7  
 Ghoor, for Ghûr, which see  
 Ghor, for Ghûr, which see  
 Ghofâ Trap, or the Horse's Leap,—a place on the west bank of the Indus, 292 n  
 Ghore, for Ghûr, which see  
 Ghori, for Ghûr.  
 Ghû-Baligh, the name given to the city of Balâ-ghaur by the Mu ghals, 13m, 261 n 917 n, 918 n, 940 n 7  
 Ghu-Bâlik, same as Ghu-Bâligh, which see  
 Ghulghulah, 105 n 6 Same as Gulghulh, which see.  
 Ghur, xii, xiii, xx, xxi, xxii, xxiii n 2, xxiv, xxv, xxvi, h, 74 n 1 and n 7 106 n 3, 110 and n 5, 111, 112 and n 5, 113 n, 117, 149 and n 8, 150, 155 n 3, 181 and n 9 182 192 and n 1 197 199 203, 211, 237 n 8, 248 249 n, 243 and n 9 244 n, 245 and n 6 and 7 246 and n 8 248 252 254, 255 and n 7 256 and 257 and 2 258 n 265 n 1, 269, 267, 274 and 9 276, 282, 283, 287 n 9 300 302, 305 n 7, 306 and n 9 and 5 307 n, 308 and n 2, 309, 311 and 2 312

313 and n 4, 314, 315, 316 and n and n 2, 317, 318 and n 9 and 1, 319 and n 5, 320 and n 3 and 5, 321 and n 6 and 7, 322 n, 323 and n, 324 and n, 325 n, 326 n, 327 n, 328 and n 8 and n, 329 and n, 330, 331 and n 1, 332 and n 5, 333 and n 6 334, 335 and n 3, 336 n 4 and 5, 337 and n 6 and 7, 338 and n 1 and 2, 339 n 7, 341 and n 7, 342, 343 and n 3, 344, 345, 346, 347 and n 2, 348 n, 349 and n, 350 and n, 351, 352, 355 and n 7, 358 and n 2 and 3, 359 and n, 361 and n 6 and 7, 362, 363 and n 6, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369 and n 5, 370, 371 and n 3, 372, 374, 375 n, 376, 377 and n 5 378, 379 and n 6, 380, 382, 385, 387, 388 389, 390, 391 n 2, 392, 393 and n 8, 394 and n, 395, 396, 397 and n 3, 398, 399 and n 3, 400 n 1 and 3, 402 n, 403 n, 407 n 6 408, 409, 410 n 5, 411 n, 413, 414, 415, 416 and n 9 and 2, 417 and n 9, 418, 419 n 5, 420, 421, 422 421 and n 3, 425, 427, 431 and n 7, 432, 439 and n 4, 440 and n 6, 441 n 7, 442 n, 443 n, 446 and n 5, 447, 448 and n 3, 449, 456, 465 n, 471 n 5, 472 and n 7, 473 and n 2, 474, 480 n 480, 491 and n 8, 492 and n 7, 493 n, 494 n, 496 498 n, 502, 503, 504 n 2, 509 n, 510 n, 514 515, 519 n, 522 n, 525 n 531 539 and n 2, 548, 550 n 578, 580 581 582 n, 612, 626 and n 7, 612 n 9 725, 750 n 7, 873 n 877 n 878 n, 881, 894 n, 918, 922 925, 926 n 928 n, 929 n, 936 n 980 1002 and n 9, 1003 and n, 1004, 1005 1006 1007, 1008,

- 1010 n, 1018 and n 6, 1017 n, 1018 n, 1019 n, 1020 n, 1029 n, 1036 n, 1039, 1045 n, 1047, 1048, 1051 n 4, 1055, 1056 and n and n 1, 1058 and n 6, 1059 n 2, 1061 n 2, 1062, 1063 and n 8, 1065, 1070 and n 7, 1071, 1072 n 5, 1073, 1075 n, 1076 n, 1079, 1106, 1108 n 1, 1109, 1119, 1126, 1128, 1132 and n, 1133, 1188 n, 1198 n 8, 1199 and n, 1201 n, 1202 n, 1203 and n, 1206, 1226,—app xvi, xix
- Ghūzak**, 'Uḡbah of,—a pass in a lofty mountain of Northern India, 87 n.
- Ghuzz**,—a country bordering on Turkistān, 962 n.
- Ghuznatān**, country of the **Ghuzz** tribes, 980, 1071 n 2
- Gibari**,—a tract of country north of the Kābūl river, between the Kamān and the Landey Sind, iv, 1043 and n 1, 1044 and n, 1045, 1047, 1073, 1081
- Gibar-koṭ** or **Gabar kot**,—a fortress in Bājawr, xlv, 1044 n
- Gilān**,—a province south of the Caspian, 15, 278 n, 991 n, 1029 n, 1117, 1188 n, 1192 n, 1208 n, 1234 n 4, 1286 n 9.
- Gilgit**,—a city or country in the Koh-i-Karā-ghal, in the Himālayah, 1046 n 3
- Gilū-Khari**,—one of the suburbs of Dīhli, 598 n 8, 622 n, 634 and n 2, 636 and n 2, 709, 856, 857
- Gūā**, 95 n 5, for **Giri** or **Giri**, which see
- Gird-gān** or **Kodakān**,—kasbah or town of, 1013 and n 1
- Girdkjuh**, 1193 n, for **Gird Koh**, which see
- Gird-Koh**,—a strong fortress in the
- Kuhistān of the Muliāhidah**, 991 n, 1188 n 6, 1193 n, 1193 n, 1206 and n 3, 1207 n, 1209 n, 1210 n, 1211 n, **Girefte**, 1119 n, for **Jirāft**, which see.
- Giri** or **Giri**,—a fortress near the Sind or Indus, xlv, 78 n, 95 and n 5, 1043 n 1
- Go-balig**, for **Ghū-Baligh**, which see, 918 n.
- Gobi** or **Ghāmo** desert, of Turkistān, 951 n, 981 n See also under the **Kobi** Desert
- Godagān** or **Kodakān**,—kasbah or town of, 1013 n 1.
- Golden River**—**Altān Kol**,—the, 981 n
- Gohith's Spring**—'Ayn-i-Jālūt, in Syria, 1277 n.
- Gondwānah**, another name of **Kadhah** or **Gadhah-Kutaukah**, 587 n 4, 588 n
- Goolgoolah**, 1025 n Same as **Gūl-gūlh**, which see
- Goonahad**,—**Junahad** or **Gunnāhād**, as written in the maps, 394 n 2
- Goahah i-nab**,—a place between **Firuz koh** and **Hirāt**, 851 n 6
- Gour**, for **Gaur**, which see.
- Gonr**, for **Ghūr**, which see
- Gonro**, 562 n 6, for **Gaur**, which see.
- Gorindganj**, a town on the **Karataya** river,—app xxi.
- Gowahati** or **Gowahāṭṭy**,—a town in Western Kāmrūd, 563 n, 564 n, 565 n.
- Gowk**,—a district in the territory of **Kirman** 200 n 6.
- Gran**—a town of Hungary, 1168 n.
- Grandhak** the,—a name of the river **Ing matī**, which see, 561 n 1.
- Great Armenia**, 1001 n.



- Great Borki,—Borki-i-Buzurg,—  
1170 n.
- Great Bukharia, 920 n, 921 n. The  
Māwarī-un-Nahr of Oriental  
Geographers.
- Great Russia, 1167 n.
- Gubalik, for Ghū-Bālīgh, which see,  
917 n, 918 n.
- Gūdāwūrī, the,—the southern  
boundary of Jāj-nagar, 588 n.
- Gūjah or Kūjah,—a district of  
Hindūstān, lxii, 627, 750 n 6.
- Gujarāt, 82, 88 n 2, 517 n, 519 n,  
521 n, 522 n, 592 n, 602, 646, 723  
n 1, 800 n 3. See also under  
Guzerāt.
- Guzzarwān, the correct name of  
Guzarwān, which see, xlvii, 235  
n 2.
- Gūlgūh,—a town of Bāmīān, 427 n,  
1025 n, 1058 n 6.
- Gumal, the,—a river south of Kar  
mān, l, 498 n 7.
- Gumbaz i-Balūch, Balūj or Balūt,—  
a place on the east side of Sistān,  
194 and n 8.
- Gum-rahān,—a place between Dam-  
yak and Bāmīān, 192 n 7.
- Gumul, the, l. See under the Gu-  
mal.
- Gūnābīd or Janābīd,—a town in  
the kuhistān between Tabas and  
Hīst, 394 n 2. See also under  
Junābīd.
- Gūnah or Kūnah-waz,—a place in  
the country of Ghūr, 351 n 8.
- Gungārām-pūr,—a town between  
Lakhnawāfi and Dināj pūr,  
591 n.
- Gur-i-Wāsiht,—a stronghold on  
the route between Ghaznā and  
Mūshah, 319 n 5.
- Gurbat or Kurbat,—a fortress in  
the district of Hamadān, in the  
'Irāq-i-'Ajam, 597 n.
- Gurdwān, 235 n 2, for Guzarwān,  
which see.
- Gurgān or Gūrgān,—a district and  
town east of the Caspian, 22, 23,  
22, 33, 43, 44, 45, 48, 51, 56, 104,  
123 and n 3, 278 n, 296 n, 963 n.  
Called Jurjān or Jārjān by the  
Arabs, which see.
- Gargāniāh or Jarjāniāh, chief city  
of Khwārasm, 84 n 8. See also  
under Jarjāniāh.
- Gur-gānj, the capital city of  
Khwārasm as called by the 'Aja-  
mi, xlviii, 903 n, 1097 n 7. It  
is the Ūrganj of the Turks and  
the Jurjāniāh of the Arabs.
- Gurjistān [Georgia],—a district  
or province of Khurāsān, 144 n,  
296, 297 n, 996 n, 1151 n, 1152 n,  
1195 n. See also under Ghar-  
jistān.
- Gurmeccer, 16 n 3, wrong spelling  
of Garmair, which see.
- Gurmechl, 16 n 3, wrong spelling of  
Garmair, which see.
- Gūrwan, 235 n 2, for Guzarwān,  
which see.
- Guzar, the chief town of the terri-  
tory of Fārah in Turkistān,  
921 n.
- Guzarwān, up the valley of the  
Murgh-ab river, xlvii, 235 and  
n 2, 398, 402 n, 433 n 7, 475 n 2,  
917, 1003. The Juzarwān of the  
Arabs, which see.
- Guzerāt, 511 n, 522 n, 1074 n. See  
also under Gujarāt.
- Guz gān or Jūrjān,—a district on  
the north-west frontier of Ghūr,

xx, xxi, xlviii, 1008 n 2. See also under Jūzjān.  
 Gūz-gānān or Jūzjānān,—a tract of country to the north of Ghūr,  
 xx, xxi, xlviii, 325 n. See also under Jūzjānān.  
 Gūarūd,—a town in the 'Irāk-i-'Ajam, 995 n  
 Gwalior, for Gwāliyūr, which see.  
 Gwāliyūr, xxvi, xxvii, liii, 470,

471 n, 491, 521 n, 545 and n 5, 546 and n 7, 547 n, 604 and n 8, 619 and n 7, 620 and n 1, 622 n 9, 627, 631, 636, 639 n 8, 643 and n 4, 644 and n, 667, 690, 712, 713 n 2, 714 n 9, 732, 733 and n 7, 734, 735 n 9, 743, 745, 752, 754, 755, 761, 779, 788 n 9, 794, 824 and n 7 and 1, 849, 884 n, 1284, 1285.

## H.

Haidar-ābād, the city in the Dakhsa, vii [Sind, 540 n  
 Haidar-ābād, in the province of Hajar,—a district of Arabia, 179 n 3 Now called the Bahrain  
 Hāji-nagar or Jāji-nagar,—a town of Hindūstān, 590 n  
 Hāji-Turkhān, afterwards called *Hashtar Khān*,—a city on the Atil [the Volga] river, 913 n, 1000 n, 1290 n 9 The Astrakhan of Europeans.  
 Hakat or Jakut,—a town of Tur-kistān, 961 n  
 Hakra, the,—a river separating between Wanj-rūt and Bikānūr, now the Sathij or Ghārā, 723 n 1, 861 n 8  
 Halab [Aleppo],—a city in the Diyār-i-Shāmiah, 169 n 7, 173 n 4, 204 n, 205 n 6, 206 and n 7, 207 and n 8, 222 n 8, 225 n 4, 1151 n, 1152 n, 1166 n, 1239 n, 1256 n 6, 1261 n 7, 1262, 1263 n 8, 1264 n, 1267 n 6, 1274 n, 1275, 1276 n, 1278 n, 1296 n 9  
 Halmand, the,—the Helmand of the maps, 441 n 7.

Hamadān,—a district and town in the 'Irāk-i-'Ajam, 10, 59, 61 n 4, 89 n 7, 93, 143 n 2, 151 n 6, 166, 170 n 8, 174 n, 242 n 6, 250 n 4, 251 n 9, 266 n, 994 n, 995 n, 996 n, 997 n, 1227 n 5, 1228 n, 1238 n 8, 1239 n, 1240 n, 1244 n, 1260 n 6, 1262 n  
 Hamāh,—a town in nagh-Shām [Syria], 204 n, 206 n 7  
 Hāmīl or Kairā-Jang,—a territory between Tibbat, *Khutā* and Uind, 1216 n  
 Han, the,—a mountain west of Pekin, 1090 n  
 Han chong-Fū,—a town in the Chinese province of Shen-si, 1222 n  
 Hang-chew,—the metropolis of Che-kyang and the empire of the Song, 1219 n  
 Hānli,—a ferry over the river Jhī-lam, 465 n 3.  
 Hensi,—a province of Hindūstān xxvii, 93 n 9, 124 n 1, 468 and n 4, 469 n 9, 491, 517 n, 520 n, 611 n 3, 626, 634, 664, 674, 681, 687, 688, 693 and n 8, 694, 695, 699,

- 708, 720, 732, 767 n 3, 798 n 3, 807, 826 and n 3, 827 and n 5 and 8, 831, 832, 837, 850,—app. ii, v.
- Hariwat**,—a *qaṣbah* or town in Hindūstān, 612 n 7.
- Hardwār** [*Brad-wār*],—a town of Hindūstān, 799 n 2
- Hari**, another name of the district and city of *Hirāt*, which see.
- Hari**, the, 372, 441 n 7. See under the *Hari-rūd*
- Hariānah**,—a district of Hindūstān, west of *Dihli*, 791 n 1, 850.
- Hari-rūd** or *Hariw*, the,—the river of *Hirāt*, 258 n, 259 n 3, 358 n 3, 407 n 6. See also under the river *Hari*.
- Hariw**, the,—the river of *Hirāt*, 358 n 3. See also under the *Hari-rūd*.
- Hariw-ar-Rūd**, valley of the *Hari* river, 358 and n 3, 372, 417
- Harmis** or *Jarmās*,—a district of *Qhūr*, 338 n 9.
- Harrān**,—a town in *ash-Shām* [*Syria*], 225 n 4, 1153 n, 1264 n.
- Harrāb**,—the vulg. name of the *darah* of *Iri āb* in the province of *Karman*, 499 n
- Harrūs**,—a district in the territory of *Qhūr*, 326 n. Also called *Kharūs* and *Jarūs* [*Arabia*, 179 n 3
- Hasi**, *Al-*,—a district and town of *Hasan Abdi*,—a town of Hindūstān between *Rāwal Pindī* and *Attak*, 95 n 4.
- Hashūne**,—a place outside the city of *Sistān*, 192 and n 8
- Hajjar Khān**, the *Astrakhan* of Europeans 943 n. See *Haji Tar-khān*.
- Hasht-nagar** *Do ībah*, near the *Kābul* river and the *Sind*, 536 n.
- Hashūe**, same as *Hashnūe*, which see.
- Hasirah**,—a halting-place in Hindūstān, 693 and n 7, 826 and n 1.
- Hasūe**, same as *Hashnūe*, which see.
- Hasr-rāni**,—name of a plain in Hindūstān, 641 n 6
- Haytāl**,—the territory of *Khatlān*, a dependency of *Badr-khshān*, 423 n 3, 1144 n 6
- Hizam**,—a strong fortress west of *Malab*, in the *Dayār-i-Shāmiah*, 264 n.
- Hasārah-i-Kārlūk** or *Kārlūgh*, the,—a territory in Northern India, 1132 n.
- Hasār-asp**,—a district and town of *Khwarazm*, on the *Khurāsān* side, 155 n, 236 n 6, 237 n, 473 n 3, 973 n, 1101 n 1.
- Hasār-Qhashmah** [the thousand springs],—a district in the mountains of *Qhūr*, 306 and n 5
- Hasār-Darakht**,—or
- Hasār-Darakhtān**,—a place north-east of *Ghaznin*, 1, 433 and n 2.
- Hasār-Darakhtān**,—a place between *Ghaznin* and *Garniaz*, 1, 435 and n 2
- Hasār-Saf**,—another name of *Hasār-asp*, which see, 473 n 2
- Hasrat i-Turkistān**, the *Turkistān* [*Hazret*] of the maps, 932 n.
- Hejakān** or *Jejakān*,—a place in the country of *Marim*, in the country of the *Urās*, 1170 n.
- Herat**, for *Hiāt*, which see.
- Hin**,—the name given by the Chinese to the country of *Tingkut* or *Kā-shin*, 1147 n.

- Hi-fong-kew**,—a town in the Chinese province of Fo-che-li, 1219 n.
- High Tartary**, 950 n.
- Hijāz**,—a district of Arabia, 24, 133, 138, 190, 203, 314, 326, 328 and n 4
- Hillah**,—a town of al-'Irāk, on the bank of the Euphrates, 1237 n 6, 1238, 1242 n 3, 1243 n, 1250 n 1, 1261 n 7.
- Himālayah mountains**, the, 468 n 4, 522 n, 611 n 3, 705 n 7, 706 n 9, 707 n 6, 737 n 9, 838 n 9, 1046 n 3.
- Himār**,—a fortress of Kurdistan, 204 n.
- Hims**,—a town in agh Shām [Syria], 162 n 3, 204 n, 208 n, 214 n, 229 n 6
- Himyar**, dominions of, 7.
- Hind**, xxi, xxiii, xxv, xxx, xxxiii, I, li, lxi, 31 n 3, 73 n 7, 74 and nn 2 and 3, 81 n, 82, 85 n, 86 n, 105 n, 113 n, 114 n, 115, 117 n, 131 n 7, 132 n 9, 178 n 7, 201, 305 and n 7, 306 n 3, 309 n, 322 n, 347 n 2, 348 n, 377 n 5, 383, 419 n 5, 421, 438, 440, 445 n, 446 n 5, 457 n, 459, 470 n 3, 463 n, 465 n, 466 n 1, 476 n, 482 n, 483 n, 485 n 3, 486 n 1, 489, 492, 493 n, 500, 501 n 5, 502 n, 503 n 8, 505 n, 513 n, 519 n, 522 n 5, 524 n, 525 n, 527 n, 537 n, 538 n, 545 n 5, 550 n 6, 555 n 5, 556, 560 and n 7, 561 n 9, 581 n 3, 595 n 2, 599, 601 n 8, 610 n, 611, 614 n 8, 622 n, 627 n 5, 630, 646, 649, 673, 674 and n 3, 696 n, 718 n, 754 n 5, 732 n 1, 829, 853, 862, 879 n, 882 n, 904 n, 905 n, 963 n 1, 992 n 8, 1047, 1061 n 9, 1062 n 4 and 5, 1073 n 4, 1074 n, 1126 n 6, 1144 n 6, 1201 n, 1202 n, 1216 n, 1217 n, 1224 n, 1235 n, 1246 n 5,—app. vi. See also under Hindūstān and India
- Hindoo Koosh**, the. See the **Hindū Kūsh**
- Hindustan**, for **Hindūstān**.
- Hindū-koh**, the, 1044 n, 1075 n. See also under the **Hindū-Kūsh**
- Hindū-Kūsh**, the, 74 n 2, 286 n 3, 318 n 7, 436 n 6, 1045 n, 1153 n. See also under the **Hindū-Koh**
- Hindūn**, 779 n 2, for **Barhamān**, which see
- Hindūstān**, xxi, xxiv, xxv, xxx, xxxii, li, 31 n 3, 60 n, 79 n, 82, 84 n 9, 85 n, 86 n, 93 and n 9, 95, 96 and n 1, 102 n 4, 106, 107, 109, 110 111, 112 and n 3, 115, 123, 145 n 4, 148, 170 n, 189 n 1, 199, 204, 214, 219 n 9, 235, 248, 267, 275 n, 283 n 9, 287 and n 1, 290 n 4, 293, 305, 308 and n 5, 310 and n 5, 316 n 3, 322 n, 324 n, 348 n, 350, 383, 396 and n 7, 416 n 9, 432, 440, 445 n, 432 n 2, 455, 456, 457 n, 458, 460 n 3, 462 n, 464, 470, 481 n 8, 482 and n, 483 n, 484 n, 485 n 3, 488 n, 499 and n and n 4, 499, 503, 504, 505, 506 and n 9, 507, 509, 512 and nn 5 and 6, 516, 518 n, 522 n 5, 524 n, 525 n, 526 n 8, 527 n, 528, 530, 532 n 3, 535 n, 536 n, 537 n, 545, 547, 548 n 3, 549, 551 and n 7, 553 n 5, 560 n 4, 561 and n 2, 562 n, 577 n 578 and n 9, 581, 582 n 6, 583, 584 n 2, 594 and n 1, 597, 599, 602, 604, 607 and n 8, 609 and n 5, 610, 611, 614 n 8, 616 n, 617 n, 618 and n, 623 and n 9, 626 n,

628, 629 and n 6, 633, 646, 657, 676, 679, 687 n 9, 703, 704, 705 n 7, 725, 731, 734, 739, 759, 760, 764, 795 n, 797 n, 800, 802, 816, 818, 823, 825, 830 and n 3, 836, 837, 838, 839, 847, 863, 869 n 1, 873 n, 874, 934 n, 1015 n, 1046, 1081, 1070, 1081, 1129, 1135 n 5, 1151, 1152 n, 1153, 1156, 1174 and n 5, 1191 n, 1196 n 8, 1203, 1204, 1205 n 3, 1211 n,—app. i, xii.

See also under Hind and India

**Hirā**,—a mountain of Makkah in Arabia, 670

**Hirāt**,—a district and city in the territory of *Khurāsān*, xii, xx, xxi, xxv, xlvii lxi, li n 4, li n 6, 22, 23 and n 1, 27 and n 6, 28, 36 and n 9, 37 n, 38 n 6, 40 n 4, 41 n, 42 n 3, 44, 45 n 8, 46 and n 4, 47, 48, 50, 51 n 6, 71 n 5, 74 n 3, 81 n, 85 n, 89 n 8, 90, 91 n 8 and 2, 93, 102 n 2, 104, 122 n 8, 129 n and n 3, 130 and n, 132 n 9, 138 n 6, 140, 153 n 7, 180 n 7, 185 n, 198, 237 and n 8, 246 n 8, 247, 249, 249, 255 n 7, 256 n, 257 and n 2, 258 and n, 259 and n n 3 and 5, 260 n 6, 264 n, 267 and n and n 1, 324 n, 325 n, 326 n, 328 n, 339 n 8, 341 and n 7, 342 and n 1, 346, 349 n, 358 and n 3, 362, 363 n 8, 364, 370 n 2, 371, 372, 373 and n 9, 374 and n 5, 375 n, 377 and n 6, 378, 379 n 5, 381 n 5, 383, 384 n 5, 390, 391, 393 n 8, 394 n 2, 397 n 3, 401 n, 402 n, 404 and n 1, 407 and n 8, 409 and n 6, 410 n 6, 411 n, 412, 415, 417, 419 n 5, 424, 427, 447 n 6, 455 n, 471 and n 5, 472 and n, 475 n 1, 480 n, 493 n, 502 n 6, 503, 504 n 2, 540 n,

578 n, 574 n, 903 n, 969 n, 990 n, 991 and n, 1003, 1014 n 5, 1006 n 1, 1011 n, 1012 n 9, 1013, 1014 n 2, 1015 and n, 1016, 1017 n, 1018 and n, 1019 n, 1020 n, 1021, 1022 n, 1023, 1027 n 6, 1036 and n 1, 1037 n and n 2, 1038 and n 6, 1039 and n n 8 and 9, 1042 n 6, 1046 n, 1048, 1049 and n 2, 1050 n, 1051 n, 1052 and n 5, 1053 n 9, 1054 n, 1056 n, 1057 and n 4, 1059 n 9, 1070 and n 8, 1073 n, 1119, 1120 n 2, 1126 n 6, 1127 n, 1128 n, 1132, 1137 n, 1143 n, 1154 n 2, 1177, 1185 n, 1194 n, 1198 n 6, 1199 n, 1200 n, 1201 n, 1203 n, 1205 n 8, 1206 n 3, 1220 and n 1, 1292 n 1

**Hirāt**, river of. See the *Hari* and the *Hari-rūd*.

**Hirmand**, the,—a river of Central Asia, 104, 309 n, 355 n 6, 1030 n.

**Hijār of Andkhūd**, 478 n 6

**Hijār of Karah**, in the territory of *Khurāsān*, 1203

**Hijār of Lohor**, 1183 and n 7.

**Hijār of Sīāl-kot**, 453

**Hijār of Tāk**, 1029 n [Dihli, 646.

**Hijār-i-Nau** [the New Citadel], of

*Hijāri*,—a tract of country in *Turkistān*, 233 n 5

**Ho chew**,—the name given by the Chinese to the capital of the *I-chūrs*, 920 n, 985 n, 1220 n, 1222 n  
The *Ho-chew* or *Ko-chew* of the *Jesuits'* map.

**Hohang-Ho**, the,—a river of China, 921 n, 951 n, 981 n, 1138 n. Also called the *Karī-Marūn*, which also see

**Hok**, wrong name of the fortress of *Uk*, 1122 n.

**Hoñāi Nūkāt**,—a place in the mountain range of Mū āwand or Mū-āwandur, in Turkistān, 942 n

**Ho lin**,—the name given by the Chinese to the Uluḡ Yūrat, 1105 n.

**Ho-nau**, the Chinese province of, 1218 n.

**Ho Si**, the ancient name of the country of Tingkūt or Kāshin, 947 n

**Hrad-wār [Hardwār]**, a town of Hindūstān, 799 n 2.

**Hajrah i-Shāh Mukim**,—a town on the bank of the Bāh, 531 n

**Huk and Kmik**,—a district in the territory of Kumān, 200 n 6

**Hulwān**,—a district and town in

the territory of 'Irāk, 10 n 3, 32 n 7, 55 n 1.

**Huiwān Pass**, the "gate" of 'Irāk, 251 and n 8, 266 n, 1117.

**Hurāyūn-dujs**,—a fortress in the Kūhistān of the Mulkhidah, 1207 n.

**Hungary**, 1166 n, 1167 n, 1168 n.

**Hū-quang**, the Chinese province of, 1219 n, 1221 n, 1222 n

**Hormūz**,—an island in the sea of Fārs [the Persian Gulf], 179 n 3, 180 and n, 363.

**Hughuñdi**, same as Heshnās, which see.

**Hūtalī or Dhūtalī**,—a place in Gujarāt, 521 n [see

Hyarcān, 984 n, for Yārkand, which

## I

**'Id gāh**,—name of a gate of Samarkand, 979 n

**Idar**,—a town of Hindūstān, on the road from Ajmīr to Nahrālah, 521 n [of, 263 n

**I-ghnāk**, I'nāk or A'nak,—fortress

**Ighrāk**—name of the territory held by the Ighrāk tribe of Turkmāns, called after them, xix, 391 and n 8

**I-ghūr country**, the, 876 n, 889 n, 920 n, 933 n, 952 n, 960 n 6, 981 n, 1140 n, 1145 n See also under I-ghūrā and I-ghūrīstān

**I-ghūrā**, or country of the I-ghūrs, 984 n See also under the I-ghūr country and I-ghūrīstān

**I-ghūrīstān**, 952 n, 1141 n. See also under the I-ghūr country and I-ghūrā

**Ihrāwat**,—a kashah or town in Hindūstān, 612 n 7

**I-kah**,—a city in the country of the Urus [Russians], 1170 n

**I-kū Murān**, the,—another name of the river Chang or Ching-Khū, which see, 953 n.

**I lah**, the,—a river of Mughūlistān, 990 n See also under the river Ibh

**I lak**,—a fortress in Māzandarān, 993 n, 996 n.

**I-lal or I-lal**,—a fortress of Māzandarān, 277 n 5, 278 n, 993 n, 994 n,—also called Lāl.

**I-lāmūsh**, plain of See under I-lāsh [993 n.

**I-lān**,—a fortress in Tabaristān, I-lāsh or I-lāmūsh,—a plain of Turkistān, lv, 932 n.

I-līh,—a town in the territory of Kāshghar [Little Bakharia], 922 n.

I-līh or I-līh, the,—a river of Muḡhūlātān, 919 n, 920 n, 969 n 1.  
See also under the I-lāh.

'Imādiāh,—a fortress of Kurdistān, founded by 'Imād-ud-Dīn Zangī, 204 n.

I-mīl or I-mīl,—the territory on the river I-mīl of Muḡhūlātān, 890 n, 913 n, 930 n, 931 n, 982 n, 1105 n.

I-mīl, the,—a river of Muḡhūlātān, 890 n, 913 n, 916 n, 1083 n.

I'nāk' or Iḡnāk' or A'nāk,—fortress of, 203 n.

In Chan mountains, the,—in Muḡhūlātān, 855 n.

Inda-khūd, an error for Indda-khūd. See page 1x.

Inddakhūd or Andkhūd— a town in the territory of Khurasān, 532 n 9, 604 n 1, 929 n. See also under Andkhūd.

India, v, vii, viii, x and n 2, xi, 41 n, 60 n, 72 n 6, 76 n 2, 78 n, 79 n, 80 n, 84 n 8, 87 n, 90 n 1, 93 n 9, 94 n 3, 96 n 1, 104 n 2, 107 n 6 and 9, 110 n 1, 128 n, 131 n 7, 309 n, 312 n 6, 318 n 9, 323 n, 327 n, 351 n 9, 352 n 3, 355 n 4, 303 n 8, 340 n 9, 431 n 7, 441 n 9, 445 n, 446 n 5, 451 n, 456 n 1, 458 n 5, 459 n 7, 465 n, 469 n, 470 n and n 2, 471 n 5, 485 n 3, 501 n, 505 n 8, 508 n, 511 n, 515 n 2, 517 n 3, 519 n, 523 n, 524 n, 525 n, 526 n, 527 n, 530 n 7, 531 n 8, 532 n 3, 534 n 1, 535 n, 536 n, 537 n, 538 n, 539 n, 541 n 7 and 8, 542 n 9, 545 n 5, 546 n 7, 550 n 5 and

6, 553 n 5, 554 n 6, 564 n, 564 n 2, 589 n, 577 n 6, 723 n 1, 800 n 8, 801 n, 878 n, 913 n, 964 n 2, 991 n, 1010 n, 1017 n, 1019 n, 1028 n, 1043 n 1, 1045 n, 1046 n 2, 1056 n 1, 1064 n 2, 1071 n 1, 1081 n 1, 1094 n, 1129 n 1, 1131 n, 1143 n, 1154 n 2, 1155 n 6, 1174 n 6, 1192 n, 1203 n, 1225 n, 1288 n 3,—app. ii, iii, iv, vii, xvii, xviii. See also under Hind and Hindustān.

Indian Desert, the, 812 n 3, 823 n 3.  
Indian Ocean, the, 1075 n.

Ind-khu, for Indda-khūd.

Ind khūd, for Indda-khūd.

Indra pra-tha,—an ancient Hindā town near Dīhli, 598 n 8.

Indus, the, iv, 74 n 2, 76 n 2, 78 n, 79 n, 80 n, 95 n 7, 96 n 1 and 2, 285 n 5, 288 n 3, 290 n 4, 291 n, 202 n, 203 n 5, 204 n, 295 n, 297 n, 391 n 9, 403 n, 416 n 9, 453 n, 457 n, 462 n, 471 n 5, 495 n 3, 496 n 5, 498 n 7, 499 n, 533 n, 534 n 1, 535 n, 540 n, 541 n 7, 543 n, 615 n 9, 644 n 7, 668 n, 674 n 3, 678 n 7, 657 n 1, 809 n 1, 816 n 2 and 3, 1015 n, 1017 n, 1021 n 6, 1043 n 1, 1044 n, 1045 n, 1048 n and n 3, 1047 n 4, 1049 n 2, 1050 n, 1057 n 3, 1074 n, 1075 n, 1129 n 1, 1130 n, 1131 n, 1132 n, 1144 n 6, 1145 n, 1154 n 1, 1155 n 6, 1181 n 2, 1201 n, 1225 n. See also under the Sind.

Infidel's Mount, the, [Kāpir di Girī], 78 n.

Intā-i or Autā o,—another name of the city of Taming, the Pyen-lyang of the Chinese, which is also called Nanking, 958 n.

Ions, the name given by Hayton to

- the capital city Kay-ping Fu, afterwards Shang-tū, 1219 n.
- Irāk**, xlv, lvi, 10, 22, 23, 31 n 3, 33, 39 n 9, 43, 45, 55 and n 1, 56 n, 59, 61 n 4, 63, 66 n 7, 84 and n 6, 87 and n, 88 and n 7, 89, 93, 107 n 6, 108 n 5, 121, 130 and n 6, 132 n 2, 133, 137, 144 n, 146 n 6, 147, 149 n 8, 150, 151 and n 6, 152, 157 n 4, 158 n, 159, 165, 166 and n and n 7, 167 and n 8, 169, 171 and n 9, 172 n 3, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177 n 6, 181, 204 n, 235, 239 n 9, 242 and n 5 and 6, 243 and n and n 7, 244 n 4, 247 n, 249 and n 8, 250 and n 4 and 6, 251 and n 6 and 9, 252 n 3, 253, 265 and n 4, 266 and n, 268 n 4, 273 n, 275 n and n 2, 276, 277 n 5, 279, 281 and n 5, 282 and n, 283 n 9, 284, 285, 295 n, 296 n, 297 n, 305, 377 n 5, 381 n 2, 382 and n 8, 383, 392, 439 n 4, 457 n, 578, 610 n 8, 711, 786 and n 5, 790, 801 n, 851 and n 7, 861, 878 n, 881, 927 n, 963 n 3, 990 n, 992, 994 n, 995 n, 996 n, 997 n, 1001, 1014 n 2, 1016 n 3, 1074 n, 1105, 1109, 1115, 1117, 1119, 1151 and n, 1152 n, 1158, 1189, 1198 n, 1199 n, 1190, 1203 and n 3, 1207 and n, 1215 and n 1, 1221 n, 1226, 1227, 1248, 1229, 1232 and n 1, 1234, 1259, 1264 n, 1265, 1296.
- Irāk-i-'Ajam**, 132 n 9, 151 n 6, 308 n 2, 974 n, 996 n, 1000 n, 1117, 1188 n, 1209 n, 1210 n, 1256 n 6.
- Irāk-i-'Arab**, 204 n, 308 n 2, 1228 n, 1230 n, 1233 n 3, 1243 n, 1256 n 6.
- Irākanah-Kūn** See under **Irgānah-Kūn**
- Iram**,—the famous garden of Shaddād, son of 'Ad, 386.
- I-rān**, ix, xiv, lvi, ix, 3, 4, 5, 19 n 1, 29, 115, 116, 118, 134 n 9, 137, 163, 167 n, 230, 231, 271 n, 280, 284, 302, 306, 309 n, 362, 423 n 8, 454 n, 561 n 9, 579 n 4, 696 n, 717 n, 720 n 1, 784 n 5, 797, 870, 882 n, 888 n, 917 n 1, 938 n, 961 n, 964 n 2, 990 n, 1011 n, 1087 n, 1107, 1111, 1112, 1188, 1151, 1163, 1172, 1190 n 1, 1196, 1215, 1236, 1259, 1266, 1267 n.
- I-rān Zamin**, 877 n, 1082 n, 1094 n, 1116 n, 1121 n, 1152 n, 1164 n, 1181 n 2, 1186 n, 1190 n 1, 1191 n, 1192 n, 1193 n, 1194 n, 1195 n, 1200 n, 1211 n, 1215 n 4, 1254 n, 1267 n, 1293 n 8, 1296 n 9, 1293 n.
- Irish** or **Irish**,—a county to the S-W of Tibbat, lxiii, 890 n.
- See also under **Ardīsh** or **Artīsh**
- Irgānah Ku** or **Kūn**,—a range of mountains in Mughūlātān, 582 n, 868 n, 890 n, 891 n, 893 n, 894 n, 895 n, 937 n 9, 939 n, 1091 n.
- Iri-āb** [vulg. Harriab],—a *darah* in the province of Kaymān, 499 n.
- Irikī** or **Irkī**, the capital of **Kāghin** in the **Tinghūt** language, 952 n, 1085 n, 1086 n.
- Irkā** or **Irkūh**, the capital of **Kāghin** or **Tinghūt**, as called by the **Mughals**, 1043 n, 1086 n, 1089 n.
- Irjatū** or **Aijatū**, the **'Uqbah** or **Pas** of, 919 n [Kūn]
- Irkanah-Kūn** See under **Irgānah-Kūn**
- Irkī** See under **Irikī**
- Irkā** See under **Irkūh**
- Irmūnīn**,—a town of **Armenia**, 298 n 1



- Iron Gate Pass, the,—a place between two mountains, through which lay the route between Turkistān and Qhān, 1147 = 1.
- Irtākū or Irtākū, the capital of Tinghūt or Kāghin, 1068 =.
- Irtigh or Irdigh, 800 =. See under Ardigh or Artigh.
- Irtigh, the,—a river of Mughālistān, 920 =, 950 =, 970 = 2.
- Irtigh-Jālik, the,—a river of Mughālistān, 900 =.
- Istāhān,—a district and town in the 'Irāk-i-'Ajām, 23 = 9, 23 = 8, 55 = 1, 88 = 3 and 7, 89 and = 8, 93 = 6, 137 = 5, 138 = 8, 143 = 2, 144 =, 145 = 4, 170 = 8, 173, 176, 244 = 4, 249 = 2, 251 = 9, 252 = 2, 253, 282 =, 296 =, 297 = 9, 298 =, 496 = 5, 579 and = 4 and 6, 906 =, 995 =, 1116 =, 1117, 1236, 1237 and = 2, 1238, 1274 =. Also called Şafāhān.
- Istānd,—a town in the district of Nishāpūr in Khurāsān, 121 = 7.
- Istānjāb,—a town of Māwarī-un-Nahr, 27, 28 and = 8, 49 and = 6, 903 =, 905 =, 916 =, 962 =. Also called Sīfānjāb and Sifānjāb.
- Istārī'n or Istārīyā,—a town in the district of Nishāpūr in Khurāsān, 276 =, 480 =, 990 =, 991 =, 1121 =.
- Istārīyā. See under Istārī'n.
- Istār or Isfār, fortress of,—in the territory of Khurāsān, xiv, 201, 397 = 7, 1197, 1198. See also under Isfār.
- Istār or Isfār,—a district and town in the territory of Khurāsān, the present Sabzwār, xiv, xiv, 397 and = 7, 472, 490 =, 1051 =, 1068 = 4, 1070 and = 8. See also under Isfār.
- Ighrūsān,—a district and town of Māwarī-un-Nahr, 962 =. See also under Iarughān.
- Iakandariah or Sikandariah,—the Alexandria of the maps, 210 = 224.
- Iarughān or Sirughān,—a district and town of Māwarī-un-Nahr 27 = 6, 962 =. Also called Ighrūsān.
- Isigh Lake, the,—same as the Isigh-Kol, which see.
- Isigh-Kol or Isigh-Kol, the,—a little sea or great lake in Mughālistān, 570 =, 579 =, 890 =, 919 =, 923 =, 970 = 2.
- Isik-Kol, the,—same as the Isigh-Kol, which see.
- Isik-kūl, the, for the Isigh-Kol, which see.
- Isi-kol, the,—same as the Isigh-Kol, which see.
- Istākhar or Istakhar,—a district and town in the territory of Fārs, 94 = 2, 174, 176 = 1, 178 = 7, 266 =, 304 = 2.
- Istānbāl,—another name of Constantinople, 161 =, 163 = 5.
- Istāwā or Astawā, same as Astār, Astādār and Astawā.
- Istiā,—one of the mountains of the range between Ghaznīn and Hirāt, 339 = 3, 370 = 2.
- Istān,—a district between Ghaznīn and Hirāt, 339 and = 8, 370 and = 2, 448.
- Istiyā, same as Istiā and Istān, which see.
- Itāwān,—a town of Hindūstān, 518 =, 742 = 9.

## J.

- Jāh**,—a tract of country in Ghuzistan, 990 and n. 9.
- Ja'bar**,—a fortress in the territory of Rām, 204 n.
- Jadār**, the,—or
- Jadārah**, the,—a river of Māwarān-Nahr, 434 and n. 9. See also under Jašār.
- Jadidah Masjid**,—in Manḡuriyah of the Diār-i-Miṣriah, 229 n. 5.
- Jagdespūr**,—a town of Hindūstān, 851 n. 8.
- Jage-nagur**, for Jāj-nagar.
- Jagnāth**,—a province of eastern Bang, 557 n. 3, 558 n. 8.
- Jāh-kūt**,—another name of Khittā or Qhīn, 912 n. 9. See also under Jākūt or Jāḡkūt.
- Jāik**, the,—a river of Turkistān, 870 n.
- Jailam**, the, 815 n. 8, for the Jhilam, which see.
- Jaipūr**, the Rājput State of, 853 n. 6.
- Jāj**,—another name of the district of Shāsh in Māwarān-Nahr, 28 n. 3, 921 n.
- Jājī-nagar** or Hājī-nagar,—a town of Hindūstān, 590 n.
- Jāj-nagar**, territory and State of, xxvii, liv, 573 and n. 2, 574 n. 2, 585 n. 6, 587 and n. 3 and 4, 588 n., 589 n., 590 n., 591 n., 592 n., 623 n. 2, 663 n. 9, 664 n. 6, 665, 666 n., 701 n. 1, 738, 739 and n. 6, 740 n. 3, 762, 763 and n. 3 and 4, 779 n.
- Jāj-nagar-Uḡiah**, 592 n. See under Jāj-nagar and Uḡiah.
- Jāj-nagur**, for Jāj-nagar.
- Jāj-pūr**,—a town or city in the Jāj-nagar State, 587 n. 4.
- Jā-jurm**,—a city and district in the territory of Khuzistān, 161, 1087 n., 1131 n.
- Jākaḡhmīn** or Jāḡhmīn,—a tract of country W. of Kāshghar, 922 n.
- Jāḡhmīn**, same as Jākaḡhmīn, which see.
- Jakut** or Hakat,—a town of Turkistān, 961 n.
- Jākūt** or Jāḡkūt,—the name given by the Mughals to the country of Khittā or Qhīn, 912 n. 9, 1216 n., 1220 n. Also called Jāh-kūt.
- Jalālabād**,—a town of Afghānistān, 79 n., 381 n. 1, 1012 n. 4, 1035 n.
- Jalālabād** or Donghak, capital of the country of Nimroz and Sijistān, 188 n. 7.
- Jalandar** or Jalhandar,—a town in the Panjāb, xxvii, 679 and n. 3, 746.
- Jalandhar** See under Jalandar or Jalhandar. [see.]
- Jalhandar**, same as Jalandar, which
- Jalīsar**,—a territory in Hindūstān, 713 n. 2, 714 n. 9, 794, 849 and n. 8.
- Jāligh**,—a tract of country south of Mughūlstān, 889 n.
- Jālor**,—a ḡaphah or town of Hindūstān, 607 n., 627.
- Jām**,—a city and district in the territory of Khurāsān, 22, 181, 247 n., 900 n., 931 n.
- Jam**, the, same as the Jam Murān, which see.
- Jam Murān**, the,—a river flowing from the Altān mountains, 961 n., 981 n., 983 n. See also under the Kham Murān.
- Jaman**, the, 634 n. 2. See under the Jamna and the Jān.

- Jamna**, the,—the *Jamuna* of the maps, 470 n 2, 524 n, 709 n. Also called the *Jān* or *Yamunā*, which also see.
- Jamā**,—a territory of Hindūstān, 524 and n 9, probably an error for *Damow* or *Damū*.
- Jamū**, the Hindū State of,—in *Kashmir*, 79 n, 722 n 5. See also under *Jamūp*.
- Jamūp**, the Hindū State of,—in *Kashmir*, 453 n 4, 454 n, 455 n, 460 n 3, 466 n 1, 467 n. See also under *Jamū*.
- Janābād**, an error for *Junābād*, see page lxi.
- Jānā**, the,—a river in the country of *Solo*, 1168 n.
- Jand** or *Jund*,—a territory of *Māwari-un-Nahr*, 927 n, 971 n, 972 n, 973 n, 983 n, 983 n, 1023 n. See also under *Jund*.
- Jand-i-Shapūr**,—a town of *Ahwiz*, 22 n 8.
- Jande-Shapūr**, same as *Jand-i-Shapūr*.
- Jandwāl**,—a place a few miles S.-E. of *Itāwah*, 470 n 1. See also under *Qhand-wāl*.
- Jāng**, *Qhaghan*-. See under *Qhaghan Jāng*.
- Jāng**, *Kārī*-. See under *Kārī-Jāng*.
- Jāng-i Siāl**,—a town in the *Panjāb*, 454 n.
- Janinah** mountain of *Tālpān*, the, 1012 and n 2.
- Janiah** mountain, for *Janinah* mountain [*Hindūstān*, 627].
- Janjer**,—a town in the country of *Janjhūi* or *Janjhūi*,—another name of the *Jūd* mountains or the *Salt Range*, 597 n, 1131 n.
- Jannat-ibād**,—name of the *tāmdn* or district in which *Gan̄y* is situated, 582 n 6.
- Jannat-ul-Bilād**,—*Bangālah* is sometimes so styled, 559 n 2.
- Jān-Sindān**. See under *Khān-Sindān*.
- Jār**,—a district in the country of *Ghūr*, 1070 and n 7.
- Jarāli**,—a place in the *Do-āb* of the *Jān* and the *Gang*, 809.
- Jarī-lūm**,—a canal in *Mughūlistān*, cut by *Kāidū*, the fourth *Khān* of the *Būzanjar* dynasty of the *Mughal-I-māk*, 393 n.
- Jarmā**,—a district in the country of *Ghūr*, 326 and n 9, 346. Also called *Harmās* and *Barmās*.
- Jarmūn**, mountains of, 1.
- Jarūk**, the *Qhūl* [uncultivated or desert tract] of, 291 n 5. Afterwards called the *Qhūl-i-Jalāli*, which see.
- Jarām**, the district of *Garmāir* in the territory of *Khurāsān*, 16 and n 3, 267, 343, 362, 376 and n 9, 391, 426.
- Jarān**,—a district in the territory of *Ghūr*, 326 n. Also called *Khārūs* and *Hārūs*.
- Jasalmir**,—a territory of *Hindūstān*, 80 n.
- Jasūdah**,—a *pargana* between *Uḡmāh* and *Bangālah*, 593 n. Turned into *Jessore* by Europeans.
- Jatah**,—another name of *Mughūlistān*, 889 n, 959 n. Called *Getes* by Europeans.
- Jāt-nagar**,—a district of *Bangālah*, 592 n, 729 n 6.
- Jatr-ābād**,—a town of *Khurāsān*.

- founded by Sultān Ibrāhīm Ghasnawī, 104
- Jatwān,—a district and town of Hindūstān, 409 n. 9.
- Jāḡūt or Jāḡūt, 1220 n. See under Jāḡūt and Jah-ḡūt.
- Jawzjān or Jurjān, 1011 n. See under Jusjān or Gāngān.
- Jawzjānān—a tract of country in Khwārazm, 232 n.
- Jaxartes, the, 28 n. 8, 76 n. 3, 916 n, 970 n. 3, 1094 n. See also under the Sībūn.
- Jasī'ir, the, 204 n, probably the Jasirah, which see.
- Jasr, the,—a river of Māwarā-un-Nahr, 267 and n. 6, 434 n. 9. Also called the Jadār and the Jadārah.
- Jasirah, the, [Mesopotamia], 135, 204 n, 228 n. 4, 882.
- Jasurān,—a town of Khurāsān, on the way between Balkh and Hirāt, 255 n.
- Jeḡāḡān or Heḡāḡān,—a place in the country of Marim, 1170 n.
- Jem, the, 968 n. Same as the Jam Murān, which see.
- Jend, 978 n. See under Jand and Jund.
- Jennessi, the,—a river of Mughūlistān, 983 n.
- Jericho,—the Arīḡā of Arab Geographers, 393 n. 8.
- Jerusalem, xvii, lix, 3, 4, 101 n. 8, 105 n. 5, 143 n. 2, 204 n, 209 n. 6, 210 n, 220 n. 3, 221 n, 1269 n. Called Bait-ul-Muḡaddas by the Arabs.
- Jessore, 593 n. The Jasūḡah of the natives, which see.
- Jezdoun,—a dependency of Hirāt, 237 n.
- Jhajhar,—a town of Hindūstān, 714 n. 2, 788.
- Jhanjhānah,—a district in the country of Hindūstān, 759.
- Jhār-Kunḡah or Qhhār-Kunḡ,—a tract of country in Hindūstān, lying on the right bank and upper part of the Gop, 537 n. 4, 538 n, 591 n.
- Jhīlam, the,—the Jhelum of the maps, xxiv, liv, 97 n, 403 n, 454 n, 463 n, 485 n. 3, 486 n. 5, 535 n, 536 n, 537 n, 538 n, 604 and n. 6, 678, 686 n. 3, 697 n, 815 and n. 8 and 1, 822, 923 n, 1130 n, 1181 n, 1154 n. 1, 1155 n. 6. Also called the Būhat. See also under the Jihlam and the Jīlam.
- Jhind. See under Jind.
- Jibāl, the,—or Mountains of Dīlam, the tract of country south of the Caspian, 1188 n. Also called the Kohistān.
- Jibāl, the,—the mountain tract of the north of Ghūr, 149 and n. 8, 343, 358 n. 3, 364, 365, 366, 371 n. 3, 459 n. 4, 1196 n.
- Jibāl of Hirāt, the, xx, xxi
- Jibāl, the,—or the Highlands of 'Irāk, called also the 'Irāk-i-'Ajam, lvii, 39 and n. 9, 137, 173, 1117, 1139.
- Jibāl of Khurāsān, the, 232.
- Jibāl-i-Jūdi, the, 482 n. See the Jūd Hills.
- Jihlam, the, same as the Jhīlam and Jīlam, which see.
- Jihūn, the, xxiv, lvi, lxiii, 24, 25, 31, 35 n. 6, 46 n. 4, 76 n. 3, 84, 86, 116 and n. 3, 117 n, 118, 119, 120 and n. 1, 121, 123 n, 124 n. 4, 154 and n. 9, 155 n. 6, 156 n. 8, 281 n,

- 262 n, 274 n 1, 275 n and n 2, 276 n, 277, 280, 291 n, 292 n, 299 n, 345, 382, 410 n 6, 412, 414 n 8, 426 n 6, 472 n 2, 474, 480 n, 485 n 2, 879 n, 882 n, 890 n, 904 n, 909 n, 911 n 7, 914, 915 n, 916, 917 n 1, 921 n, 926 n, 931, 932 n, 962, 973 n, 987, 988 n, 989 and n, 990 n, 1001, 1002 n n 4 and 1, 1005 n, 1008, 1009, 1027 n 8, 1082 n, 1084 n, 1086 n, 1097, 1099 n, 1109 n 2, 1127 n, 1141 n, 1145 n, 1186 n, 1192 n, 1195 n, 1226, 1290 n 9. See also under the "Oxus."
- Jilam or Jilam, the,—the Jhelum of the maps, 98 n 1, 97 n, 483 n, 604, 678, 815, 822. See also under the Jhilam.
- Jih,—a ferry over the Jhilam river, 485 n 2.
- Jind [Jhind],—a district of Hindūstān, 782, 822, 887.
- Jirāft,—a district and town in the province of Kirmān, 283 n 9, 934 n, 974 n, 1118 n 9, 1119 n
- Jirfat, an error for Jirāft, which see.
- Jirjān,—a tract of country south of Kāshghar, 922 n.
- Jirkah or Qhirkah,—a city in the country of the Urūs, 1169 n, 1170 n, 1171 n.
- Jirkah or Qhirkah, the,—a river in the country of the Urūs, 1169 n.
- Jit-pār, 705 n 7. See under Santūr, which is the correct name of this place.
- Jitūr, 705 n 7. See under Santur, which is the correct name of this place.
- Jodpar,—a town of Hindūstān, 611 n 2, 705 n 7.
- Jodhpur, same as Jodpar, which see.
- Jogī Bīla-nāth, hill of,—in the district of Nandanah, 587 n.
- Jogh-i-Āb-i-Garm, [the jet of hot-water],—a place near to Tigīn-Ībāb, 353.
- Joghbak,—a suburb of the city of Maupīl, 1231 n.
- Joonpoor. See under Jūnpūr.
- Jowār, the, 267 n 6. See the Jasār and the Jadārah.
- Jowārsher,—a fortress in the territory of the Khusiān, 1197.
- Jūd Bagh, the, 709 n. See under the Bagh-i-Jūd
- Jūd Hills the,—the Salt Range of our maps, 294 n, 481, 482 n, 484 n, 527 n, 528 n, 678, 815, 1120 n, 1131 n, 1132 n. See also under the Koh-i-Jūd
- Jūd,—a plain before the city of Dibli, 529 n 4, 606 and n 2, 786 n 2.
- Juden, 101 n 8
- Jūs Injil,—name of a canal in Hirāt, 1128 n.
- Jū-in,—a district of Khurāsān, 1121 n.
- Jūjāhū Kāshīn,—a city of Mughūstān on the banks of the Kārā-Mār-ān, 1127 n.
- Jūk and Kūk See the next.
- Jūk and Lūk,—a district in the territory of Kirmān, 200 n 6
- Jūlk,—one of the ferries of the river Sīhūn, 970 n 2.
- Jumna, the, 709 n. See under the Jamna and the Jūn.
- Jūn or Yamunā, the,—the Jumna of the maps, 470 n 2, 518 n, 629 n 6, 634 n 2, 640, 646, 667 n 2,

682 n 5, 698 and n 6, 696 n 2, 708, 709 n, 733 n 7, 742 n 2, 806, 816, 817, 821 and n 6, 850 n 2. See also under the Jamna.

Junābād or Gūnābād,—a town in the Kuhistān, between Tabas and Hirāk, lxi, 381 n 5, 394 and n 2, 491.

Jund, or correctly Jand,—a territory of Māwarān-n-Nahr, xlviii, 120, 121, 233, 237, 240 n, 242 n 6, 254, 263 n, 269 n, 273 n, 298 n, 299 n, 911 n, 921 n, 1099 n, 1292. See also under Jand.

Jūnpūr [vul. Jounpoo],—a city of Hindūstān, founded by Firūz Shāh Taghlak, 98 n 9, 589 n, 591 n.

Jurjān or Jūrjān,—a district and town east of the Caspian, 31 n 3, 37 n, 45 n 7, 81 n, 104, 151 n 6, 255 n 7, 278 n. Called also Gurgān, which see.

Jūrjānān, capital of Khwārazm, 232 n. See under Jūrjāniāh.

Jūrjāniāh, the capital of Khwārazm on the Khurāsān side, 52 n 2, 84 n 3, 85 n, 232 n, 268 n.

Jurwāli,—a town of Hindūstān, 809 n 7.

Juwain,—a town in the territory of Khurāsān, 990 n.

Juzarwān, up the valley of the Murgh-āb river, xlvii, 235 n 2, 376, 390, 402 n, 475 and n 8 and 2, 917. Called also Gusarwān, which see.

Juzdan,—a fortress in the Kuhistān, 85 n, 186 n.

Jusjān or Gūsgān,—a district on the north-west frontier of Ghūr, xx, xxi, 1011 n. See also under Gūsgān.

Jūsjanān or Gūsgānān,—a district and town of Khurāsān, xx, 75 n 6, 81 n, 186 n, 325 n, 1097 n 7. See also under Gūsgānān.

## K.

Kā'n Ling, the,—a great river of China, lv, 1220 n. Known to the Chinese as the Kyan-lin.

Ka'b, Bayabān of, an uncultivated plain between Tālkān and Balkh, 1009.

Ka'bah, the sacred Temple of Makkah, 8, 178, 190, 192, 243.

Kābul, the,—a river of Turkistān, 970 n 2.

Kabūlik, 154, 918 n, 920 n, 985 n. An error for Kaīlīk, see page xlvii.

Kābghāk, same as Kibghāk, which see.

Kābghāk,—a dasht or plain in Turkistān, 877 n.

Kabūd Jāmāh,—a territory of Khurāsān, 1121 n.

Kābul, territory of, xiv, xlix, l, 19 n 1, 22 and n 6, 31 n 3, 73 and n 3, 74 n 2, 77 n, 78 n, 88 n 2, 97 n, 98 n 8, 267, 283 n 2, 289 n, 306 n 5, 308 n 2, 309 n, 324 n, 334 n and n 8, 376, 391, 434 n, 441 n 7, 503 n 6, 509 n, 717 n, 873 n, 874 n, 881, 1018 n, 1020 n, 1022 n, 1025 n, 1042 n 5, 1044 n, 1047, 1061 n, 1087 n 4, 1115 n 5, 1119, 1131 n, 1144 n 6, 1202 n.

**Kābul**, the,—the river passing through Kābul, xvi, 77 n, 78 n, 79 n, 298 n 2, 538 n, 538 n, 564 n, 1038 n, 1048 n 1, 1044 n.

**Ḳabūlah**,—a town on the bank of the Biāh, 533 n.

**Kabuskan**, 1196 n, for **Ḳhabūshān**, which see.

**Kaghh**, the Rian or desert of,—between Sindh and Gajarāt, 82 n 2.

**Kāghī**, the name given by Abu-l-Ḳāsi Bahādur Ḳhān to Irīkī or Irīkū, the capital of Kāghin or Tingkūt, 1086 n.

**Ḳādas** or **Fāras**,—a district and town of Ḳhurasān, 375 n, 1026, 1054 and n 2. Also written **Ḳādas** and **Ḳādūgh**, which also see.

**Kaḡbah-Katankah** or **Gaḡbah-Katankah**,—a tract of country in Hindūstān, 587 n 4, 588 n, 739 n 6.

**Ḳādas**,—a district and town of Ḳhurasān, 367 n 7, 398 n 5. See also under **Ḳādas**, **Ḳādūgh** and **Fāras**.

**Ḳādūgh**,—a district and town of Ḳhurasān, 376 n, 1054 n 2. See also under **Ḳādas**, **Ḳādas** and **Fāras**.

**Ḳāf**, mountain of. See under the **Koh-i-Ḳāf**.

**Ḳafchāk**, same as **Ḳīqbāk**, which see.

**Kāfiristān**,—a tract of country in the Hindū Kūsh, 1044 n.

**Kāh** or **Gāh**,—a **Kala'** or fortress of Sujistān, 35 n, 1208 n.

**Kuhan**, the,—a feeder of the Wana-Gangā river, 588 n.

**Ḳāhirah**, the capital of Mīr and the Cairo of the maps, li, 101 n 2, 140 n 2, 309 n 2, 212 n 1, 212 n 5, 215 n 2, 217 n, 218 n, 228 n 4, 229 n 5, 1260 n, 1276 n.

**Ḳahūkah** or **Paas** of **Ḳongtāhān**. See under **Ḳongtāhān**.

**Kahlūr**,—a city in ruins on the east side of the Sindh, 538 n.

**Kahram**, 669 n 7,—app. v, for **Kah-gām**, which see.

**Ḳaīlīgh** or **Ḳaīlīgh**, same as **Ḳaīlīk** or **Ḳaīlīk**, which see.

**Ḳaīlīk** or **Ḳaīlīk**,—a territory of Turkistān S of the Ulugh Tāgh and between Turfān and Akāsh, xlvii, 900 and n 2, 924 n, 930 n, 931 n, 969 n 1, 970 n 2, 982 n, 986 n, 989 n, 1004, 1023, 1054, 1055, 1061 n 7, 1066 n 6, 1112 n 8, 1132 n, 1141 n, 1184 n. See under **Ḳabālik** and **Ḳayālik**.

**Kaif** or **Kayif**,—a town in the Diyār-i-Muḡribah, lix, 229 n 5.

**Ḳailar**, the,—a river of Turkistān, 943 n. See under the river **Kalār**.

**Kailā**,—a ridge in the Himālayah mountains, 737 n 9.

**Ḳā'in**,—the chief place of the Ḳuhistān, lixiv, 195 n 3, 394, 1039, 1197, 1198 and n 7, 1203, 1205 n 8, 1214 n 6.

**Kai-song-fū**, the capital of the Chinese province of Honan, 958 n.

**Kathal**,—a tract of country in Hindūstān, 648 and n 3, 692, 697 n, 699 and n 5, 707 n 7, 749 and n 2, 831, 840, 841.

**Kajā**,—a district south of Nang-rāhār, 1022 n.

- Kajlā**,—or  
**Kajlah**,—the name of a place on the route to the Indus by the Pāwār Pass, 220 n 4.
- Kā-jū**,—a city in the territory of Tīngkūt or Kāshin, 1085 n.
- Kajūrān**,—a *ḥaṣr* and territory in the country of Ghūr, 319, 342, 370, 1015 n, 1018 n. See also under the *Ḥaṣr-i-Kajūrān*.
- Kakāūs** or **Koh-i-Kāf**, the, 1237 n, the Caucasus of the maps.
- Kākh**,—a small town in the Kūhistān, a dependency of Janābād, 394 and n 2.
- Kakshāl** mountains, the,—in Muḡhūstān, 970 n 2
- Kala'-i-Kāh** or **Gāh**,—a fortress of Bujistān, 35 n, 1203.
- Kala'-i-Nau**,—a fortress on the Amū, 1030 n.
- Kala'-i-Safid**,—a fortress of Fārs, 175 n 7, 178 n 7.
- Kala'-i-Shūl**,—a strong fortress of Isfahān, 145 n 4.
- Kalāghin**,—a mountain range of Turkistān, 941 n
- Kal'ah** of Baghdād, the, 1243 n.
- Kalah-i-Koh**,—a place near Hurāt, 1126 n 6.
- Kālnir** or **Kāleir**,—a place near the frontier of Tīrhut, 704 and n 2, 838 n 7.
- Kālā Nāwar** the, —a lake of Turkistān, 943 n
- Kalangāe Kadā** or **Ḥad**,—a territory bordering on *Khitā*, 943 n, 945 n [Sind]
- Kālanjī**, 1074 n, for *Kālnjār* of *Kalangūsh*,—or
- Kalankūsh**,—a city in the country of Tīngkūt or Kāshin, 947 n
- Kalir**,—a territory near the country of the Bolo, 1167 n.
- Kalir**, the,—a river of Turkistān, the *Kalir* of our maps, 942 n.
- Kalāt**, an error for *Kal'āt*, see page ix.
- Kal'āt**,—a place near Tās in *Khurāsān*, ix, 276 n.
- Kālbī**,—a territory of Hindūstān, 524 n, 553 n 5.
- Kāler** or **Kālār**,—a place near the frontier of Tīrhut, 704 n 2. See also under *Kālnir*.
- Kālnjar**,—a strong fortress of Hindūstān, in Bhaṭī-Ghorā the tract lying on the left bank of the Son, east of Banāras, 491, 523 n, 524 n, 553 n 5, 603 n 6, 682 n 5, 704 n 2, 733, 734, 735 and n 9, 743 n 3, 755, 737 n 7, 769, 777 n, 817 and n 6, 824 and n 8, 825, 850 n 3, —app *xxiii*.
- Kālnjar**,—a strong fortress in the province of Multān, 75 n 8, 87 n, 88 n 2, 94 n 2, 117 n, 120 n 3, 126 n 2, 905 n, 1074 n,—also called *Talwārah*.
- Kālnjar**,—a territory on the banks of the Sind river, 1074 n, 1075 n.
- Kālūn**,—a fortress of *Khurāsān*, 1003 See under *Kāl-yūn*
- Kāl-yār**,—a few miles north-east of *Rupkī*, 704 n 2
- Kālyūn** or *Kal-yūn*. See under *Kālyūn*
- Kalunjar**, 524 n, for *Kālnjar* of Hind.
- Kalūr ān** or *Kalūr-ān*,—a tract of country north of Turkistān, 937 and n 7, 940 n, 953 n, 1000 n, 1105 n, 1140 n, 1178 n, 1179 n, 1180 n, 1215 n 2, 1219 n.



**Kalār-Ān** or **Lakah**, the,—a river of Turkistān, 892 n, 894 n, 890 n 1.

**Kalwā-i**,—or

**Kalwā'in**,—a tract of country in Hindūstān, 576 n.

**Kāl-yūn** or **Kāhyūn**,—a territory and fortress in the country of **Khurāsān**, 375, 390, 409, 412, 502 n 6, 1003, 1051 and n, 1052, 1053 and n 9, 1054 and n 2, 1055, 1051.

**Kāl-yūh**,—a territory of **Khurāsān**, 502 n 6, for **Kāl-yūn** or **Kāliyūn**, which see.

**Kāimā**, the,—a river in the country of **Bulghār**, 1165 n.

**Kāmab**,—a town in the **Bharat-pūr** territory on the route from **Mathurah** to **Firūz pūr**, 790 and n 9.

**Kāmah**,—a town of **Afghānistān**, between **Jalālabād** and **Peshāwar**, 79 n.

**Kāmah**, the,—another name of the river **Chitrar** or **Chitrāl**, 79 n.

**Kamuj**, the,—a river of Turkistān, 970 n 2.

**Kamūq** the,—the river of **Kunap**, north of the **Kābul** river, 1048 n 1.

**Kāmil**, 1020 n, wrong spelling of **Kābul**.

**Kām jiw**,—a city in the territory of **Tinghūt** or **Kāshān**, 1085 n.

**Kam-Kamjūt**,—a tract of country in Turkistān, 951 n. See also under **Kam-Kumjūt**.

**Kam-Kamjūt**, the,—a river in the country of **Kurkīs** in Turkistān, 960 n 1.

**Kam-Kunghak**,—a tract of country in Turkistān, 951 n, 959 n. See also under **Kam-Kunjak**.

**Kamroop**, 705 n 6, for **Kāmūd**, which see.

**Kāmūd**,—a district and city of Hindūstān, 535 n, 554, 557, 558 n 8, 561 and n 9, 562 n, 563 n, 564 and n, 567, 569 and n 4 and 5, 570 and n and n 9, 573, 587, 593 n, 594 and n 1, 595, 701 n 1, 764 and n 6, 765 and n 8, 768, 770 n 9, 771 n, 773 n, 775 n, 779 n, 1046 and n and n 2, 1051. Also called **Kānw-rā**.

**Kamrup**, 563 n, for **Kāmūd**, which see.

**Kān-i-Gul**,—a mead near **Samar-kand**, 1194 n.

**Kanauj**, same as **Āinnanj**, which see.

**Kandahār**, mistaken for **Gandhār** and **Kaudhār**, the country between **Hind** and **Tibbat**, 77 n, 80 n, 1217 n.

**Kandahār**, the town of **Afghānistān**, ix, xiv, xlix, 33 n, 77 n, 80 n, 285 n 5, 331 n 2, 339 n 7, 335 n 6, 509 n, 713 n, 873 n, 1017 n, 1018 n, 1020 n, 1217 n.

**Kāndes**,—a district of Hindūstān, ix.

**Kandhār** or **Gandhār**, 1216 n, 1217 n. See under **Gandhar**.

**Kānduana**, 588 n, for **Gondwānah**, which see.

**Kanguktāe**,—a territory in Turkistān, 945 n.

**Kang chong Fū**,—a town in the Chinese province of **Shen-si**, 1222 n.

**Kānjar**, 1074 n, for the territory of **Kālmjar** on the river **Sind**.

**Kankūri** or **Gangūri**,—a district of Hindūstān, 575 and n 2.

Kanonj, 467 n, for Kanasaj, which see.

Kanpilab,—a town lying on the southern bank of the Ganges a few miles N. N. W. of Budā'an, 551 n.

Kan-su,—or

Kansuh,—a dependency of the kingdom of Hia, 947 n.

Kāwūrā, 693 n. Another name of Kāmūd, which see.

Kāpir di Giri—the Infidel's Mount,—a place on the western bank of the Indus, 78 n, 1043 n 1.

Kaptshak, for Kibshāk

Kārā-bāgh,—a tract of country in the territory of Tingpūt or Kā-shin, 1140 n.

Kārā Bilād, the,—in Mughūlistān, 1179 n.

Kārā-ghal or Kārā-ghīl, the,—a range of mountains in Northern India, 1046 n and n 2.

Kārī Qhāng, lv.

Kārī-Jāng,—the name given by the Mughals to half the country of Gandhar, where the people are black, lv, 1216 n, 1217 n.

Kārī Khātā-i, an error for Kārī Khātā

Kara-Khelin, for Kārī Kūram.

Kara-Kherom, for Kārī Kūram.

Kārī Khitā,—or

Kārī Khitāe,—a country north of Khitā, xlvii, 154, 236 n 6, 239 and n, 240 n, 245 n 7, 263, 264 n, 270, 283 n 9, 401 n, 402 n, 473 n 2, 474 n, 738 and n 4, 746, 749, 900, 903 n, 911, 912 n 9, 921 n, 924 n, 926 n, 932 n, 933 n, 934 n, 950 n, 959 n, 960 n 6, 967 n, 980, 983 n, 986 n, 1118 n 9.

Karakhitai, 921 n, for Kārī-Khitā, which see.

Kārī Khwājah,—a territory in Ighūristān, 952 n, 1141 n.

Kārī Kol or Black Lake,—of Turkistān, 909 n, 970 n 2.

Kara-Koram, for Kārī Kūram.

Karakorum, 915 n, for Kārī Kūram.

Kārī Kūm,—a tract of country in Turkistān, xlviii, lv, 268 n 4, 982 n, 983 n, 1140 n, 1176 n 8

Kārī Kūram,—a tract of country in Turkistān, xlviii, lv, 154, 268 n 4, 675 n, 889 n, 915 n, 916 n, 917 n, 920 n, 924 n, 940 n, 942 n, 947 n, 956 n, 959 n, 969 n 1, 982 n, 1080 n, 1090 n, 1101 n 1, 1106 n, 1110 and n 5, 1120 n, 1140 n, 1141 n, 1174 and n 3, 1176 and n 8, 1178 n, 1180 n, 1184 n, 1185 n, 1191 n, 1211 n, 1215 n 2 and 4, 1218 n, 1219 n, 1225 n, 1290 n 1. It is always mentioned as the *Apul* or original *yāser* of the Chingia Khān and known also as the Urdū-Bāligh

Kārī Kūram,—a mountain range between the Kārī Tū and the Uqūn-Lūh ranges, 889 n, 920 n, 1140 n

Kārī-Mūr, the, 1095 See the Kārī Mūrān.

Kārī Mūrān or Black river, the,—a river of Mughūlistān and Khitā, lxvi, 882 n, 895 n, 896 n, 920 n, 951 n, 981 n, 1095, 1137 n, 1138 n, 1139 n, 1216 n. The Hohang-Ho of the Chinese.

Kārī-Sū [the Black Water],—an aqueduct drawn from the river Jihēn to the city of Khwārasm, 473 n 2, 474 and n 4.

- Ārā-Tāgh**, the,—a mountain of Turkistān, 970 n. 2.
- Ārā-Tāi**,—on the north of Maghūlistān, 889 n.
- Ārā-tāi**, the,—a river of Turkistān, 919 n.
- Ārā-Tū**, the,—a range of mountains in the country of the Ighūrs, 889 n.
- Karāghī**, the supposed site of Dibal, 295 n. 453 n. 3.
- Karāh**,—a territory of Hindūstān, 591 n, 592 n, 626 and n 8, 663 and n 8, 664, 673, 679 n n 3 and 5, 681 and n 2, 682 n 5, 683, 684, 694 and n 8, 703 and n 4, 704, 737, 738, 739 n, 743, 747, 757 n 7, 768, 769, 777 n, 790, 796 n, 798, 817, 818 and n n 3 and 4, 827, 830, 838 n 7, 847 and n 4, 848, 819 and n 6, 850 n 3.
- Karah**,—a *Ḥiṣār* or fortified town in the territory of *Khurāsān*, 1203. [*Ārā Khitā*]
- Ārāh Khitā**, 736 and n 4. See under *Karābah Darah*,—one of the *Passes* on the route from *Ḥasanin* to *Lāhor*, 505 and n 5.
- Karak**,—a town in the country of *Shām* [*Syria*], 215 n 9, 216 n, 225 n 4, 229 n 5, 230 n.
- Karak** or *Kuruk*,—a place of Hindūstān in the district of *Hariṇah* between *Rot-hak* and *Shawānī*, 791 n. 1.
- Karakh**,—a place [township] in *Māwarā-un Nahr*, 759 and n 3.
- Karam-battan** or *Karam-pattan*, see *Kar-battan*.
- Karam-Nāsah** or *Karam-Nāsi*, the,—a river of Hindūstān, lxi, 550 n 5, 551 n.
- Karam-sin**, 567 n 1. See under *Kar-battan*.
- Karānah** or *Kārānah*, the,—a river of Hindūstān, bounding the *Gwāliyār* territory on the east and falling into the *Jūn* or *Yamunā*, 733 n 7, 826.
- Ārān-dujs**,—a fortress of *Mīsāndarān*, 990 n, 991 n, 993 n, 994 n, see also under *Ārān* and *Ārān-dujs*.
- Karān-pattan**, 567 n 1. See under *Kar-battan*. [*battan*].
- Karān-tan**, 567 n 1. See under *Kar-Ārār*,—a town in the country of *Marim*, 1170 n.
- Karār-kot**,—a fortress of Hindūstān, 93 n 2.
- Karār-battan** or *Karār-pattan*, 567 n 1. See under *Kar-battan*.
- Ārās Murān**, the,—a river of Turkistān, 940 n.
- Karāseh Darah**, for *Karābah Darah*, which see.
- Ārāt**, the,—a river of *Afghānistān*. See the *Ārāt*.
- Karataya**, the,—a river of Hindūstān,—app. xxi, xxii.
- Kar-battan** or *Kar-pattan*,—a city in the country of *Tibbat*, li, 565 n, 567 and n 1.
- Karohin**,—a tract of country in *Mughūlstān*, 1219 n.
- Karandar**, 993 n, for *Ārān-dujs* of *Mīsāndarān*, which see.
- Karhakatanka**, the chief city of *Kandūana* [*Gondwānah*], 585 n.
- Karikhā**,—a city in the country of the *Urūs*, 1170 n.
- Karim-yū**,—a city in the country of *Mahā-Chīn* or *Tingnāgh*, 1141 n.

Kariw or Garîw,—a district in the territory of Ghûr, 244 n 1.

Karkh—a suburb of Baghdâd, 188 n 8, 243, 759 n 3, 1230 n 8, 1231, 1288, 1240 n, 1262 n.

Karkh, 171, 279 n, by mistake for Gurj [Georgia].

Karkîr,—or

Karkis,—a country of Turkistân, 883 n. See also under *Khar-khez*.

Kârlîk or Kârlûk Tâgh, the,—a mountain in Northern India, 1132 n.

Kârlûk Hasârah or Hasârah-i Kârlûgh or Kârlûk,—a district in Northern India, 1132 n.

Kârlûk Tâgh, the, see the Kârlîk Tâgh.

Karmah-nasah, an error for Karam-Nâsah. See page lx.

Kar mân,—a province in southern Afghanistan, l, lv, lx, 286, 290 n, 439 n 4, 476 n, 492 n 7, 493 and n, 494, 495, 498 and nn 6 and 7, 499 and n and n 8, 500, 501 n and n 5, 503 and n 8, 506, 518 n, 526 n 8, 527 n, 538 n, 540 n, 541 n 7, 623 n 8, 683 n 6, 901 n, 1021 n 8, 1022 n, 1108 n 1, 1129, 1131 and n, 1132 n.

Kar mân Darâ'h,—a small darâ'h in the province of Kar mân, l, 499 n.

Karnâl or Carnâl,—a town in Hindûstân, 459 n 7.

Karokol,—a canal in Mughûlistân, 896 n. See under Jarâ-lûm.

Karra, 694 n 8, for Karah of Hindûstân, which see.

Kar mân, an error for Kar mân, see page lx.

Kâr, —a district and town in the territory of Rûm, the Kars of the maps, 161 n.

Karshikh, the capital of the Tîbiri dynasty in Khurâsân, 14 n 1.

Karshî,—a khar near Karâ-Kuram founded by Uktâs Kî'n, 1189 n.

Karshîn, 567 n 1. See Kar-battân or Karpattân.

Kar-Tâgh,—or

Kar-Tâk,—a range of mountains in Mughûlistân, 875 n, 879 n.

Kârân,—a fortress of Mîsanderân, 277 n 5, 278 n. See also under Kârân-dujz.

Kârân dujz,—a fortress of Mîsanderân, 277 n 5, 278 n, 991 n. See also under Kârân-dujz.

Kariyat-ul-Ghaffâr,—a village on the Tigris, 1245 n 4.

Kariyat-ul-'Ukîb,—a village on the Tigris, 1245 n 4.

Kasal Ankah,—a city in the country of the Urûs, 1170 n.

Kâsân,—a town in the country of the Urus, the Kazan of the maps, 652 n 2, 1165 n.

Kasânlîk,—a town in the Turkish Empire, 1100 n.

Kaschin, 947 n, for Kâshîn, which see.

Kâshghar, lvii, 29, same as Kâshghar, which see.

Kash,—a town in the territory of Khurâsân, 46 and n 3, 1194 n, 1206 n 3.

Kashâ, see under Kâshî.

Kâshân,—a town in the 'Irâk-i-'Ajam, 996 n, 1118.

Kâshghar, for Kâshghar, which see.

Kâshghar,—a territory and city in Central Asia, lvii, 29, 46 n 4, 52 n, 74, 134 and n 8, 261, 263 n, 269 n, 424 n 3, 431, 577 n, 882 n, 889 n, 899 n, 901 n, 902 n, 903 n, 904 n,

- 905 n, 907 n, 912 n, 914 n, 915 n, 916 n, 917 n, 919 n, 920 n, 921 n, 922 n, 923 n, 928 n, 940 n, 943 n, 944 n, 950 n, 952 n, 961 n, 964 n 2, 966 n 6, 970 n 2, 971 n, 981 n, 982 n, 983 n, 984 n, 985 n, 986 n, 987 n, 1044 n, 1045 n, 1047, 1080 n 4, 1075 n, 1091 n, 1106 n, 1141 n, 1145 n.
- Kashī** or **Kashā**,—a territory of **Qhūr**, 340, 361 and n 1, 362, 364, 366.
- Kashīf**, 378 n 1, for **Kīlaf** or **Kīhl**, which see.
- Kāshin**, the capital of the country of **Tinghūt**, called also **Kāshin**, 947 n, 949 n, 950 n, 1084 n, 1085 n, 1086 n, 1087 n, 1088 n.
- Kāshkār**, 1044 n, same as **Kāshghar**, which see.
- Kashmandī** or **Kashmandi**,—a district of **Awadh** in **Hindūstān**, 549, 704 n 3, 759 and n 5, 838 and n 2.
- Kashmī-ghāṣūr**,—a place in **Turkistān**, 861 n.
- Kashmir**, State of, 425 n 3, 431 and n 5, 469 n, 533 n, 611 n 3, 693 n, 1044 n, 1046 n 3, 1120 n 6, 1031 n, 1135 n 5, 1191 n, 1218 n.
- Kashmandi** 549, see under **Kashmandi**.
- Kasi**, 361 n 1, for **Kashī** or **Kashā**, which see.
- Kāsilī**,—a town of **Hindūstān**, 728 and n 3.
- Kaskūri** or **Gangūri**,—a district of **Hindūstān**, 575 n 2.
- Kaski**, 728 n 3, for **Kāsilī**, which see.
- Kasmandah**,—or
- Kasmandi**,—a district of **Awadh** in **Hindūstān**, 704 n 3, 759 and n 5, 838 and n 2. Also called **Kasmandhi**, **Kashmandi** and **Kashmandi**.
- Kār-Bagh** [the Garden Castle],—in the capital city of **Dihli**, 609 and n 9.
- Kār-i-Firūzi**, the,—in the capital city of **Dihli**, 661. See also under the **Kūshk-i-Firūzi**.
- Kār-i-Kajūrān**,—a territory in the country of **Qhūr**, 319, 341, 448, 1018 n. See also under **Kajūrān**.
- Kār-i-Sabs** [Green Castle], the,—in the capital city of **Dihli**, 676, 688. See also under the **Kūshk-i-Sabs**.
- Kār-i-Safed** [White Castle], the,—in the capital city of **Dihli**, III, 553 n 5, 554, 661 and n 6 and 7, 656, 661 and n, 685, 751.
- Kār-i-Sultān**, the,—in the capital city of **Dihli**, 657.
- Karak**,—a place in **Hindūstān**, 791 and n 1.
- Kārs** of **Qhūr**,—the fortified villages in the country of **Qhūr**, 831 and n 2.
- Kasagol**, the,—a Lake of **Turkistān**, 983 n.
- Kasulic**, 728 n 3, for **Kāsilī**, which see.
- Kaswin**, 1190 n 1, for **Kaswin** which see.
- Kāt**,—a town on the **Jihūn** in the district of **Hazār-asṭ**, in **Khwārazm**, 973 n.
- Katah-wāz**,—a place in the country of **Qhūr**, 351 n 8.
- Katak** or **Katuk**,—a city in the **pešāw** or **steppe** in the E and S. of **Kāshghar** 922 n.

- Katankah**,—name of a *mouza* in *Kāḡhah*-*Katankah*, of *Hindūstān*, 587 n. 4.
- Katāsin**,—a frontier town on the *Mahā-nadi* river towards *Lakhap-* or of *Lakhanawati*, xxvi, 585 n. 6, 588 n., 664 n. 6, 738 and n. 2, 739 and n.
- Katāsinghah**,—a more correct name of *Katāsin*, which see, 588 n.
- Kāṭhehr**, see under *Kāṭhehr* or *Kāṭher*
- Kāṭhehr** or *Kāṭher*,—a town in the district of *Budā'un* in *Hindūstān*, 627 n. 8, 663 n. 9, 697 n., 698, 699 n. 5, 755
- Kāṭif**,—a tract of country in *Arabia*, 179 n. 3
- Katīf**,—a town in the *Diyār-i-Misriah*, lix.
- Katrān**,—a *Daḡht* or Desert on the frontier of *Samarḡand*, 155 n., 909 n.
- Katak**, See under *Katak*.
- Kaukasas**, the, 998 n., 1287 n., the *Caucasus*, of the maps, also called the *Koh-i-Kāf*
- Kawak**, see under *Kāwik*.
- Kāwik**,—name of a pass and fortress in the range of *Hindū Kush*, called *Kawak* by modern travelers, 436 and n. 6
- Ḳayālīk** or *Ḳayālīk*, 918 n., 920 n., 965 n. See under *Ḳatālik* or *Ḳatālik*.
- Kayīf** or *Kaif*,—a town in the *Diyār-i-Misriah*, lix, 229 n. 5
- Kay-ping-fū**, capital of the *Chingiziah* dynasty in *Tartary*, afterward called *Shang-tū*, 1141 n., 1219 n.
- Kasan**,—a town of *Russia* in *Europe*, 652 n. 2, 967 n. 2, 1090 n., 1096 n.
- Ḳarū-Tāgh**,—a place in *Turkistān*, 941 n.
- Ḳasw** or *Gasiw*,—a district in the territory of *Ḡhūr*, 344 and n. 1.
- Kasvin**, 996 n., for *Ḳaswin*, which see.
- Ḳaswin**,—a district and town in the '*Irāk-i-'Ajam*', 61 n. 4, 98, 125 n. 8, 144 n., 242 n. 6, 277 n. 5, 980 n., 993 n., 994 n., 995 n., 996 n., 1010 n., 1189, 1190 n. 1, 1192 n., 1208 n., 1211 n., 1237 n. 5.
- Ḳaswin Darah**, the, 993 n.
- Kolardjek**, 1046 n. 3, for the *Ḳarāghal*, which see.
- Kem**, the, 993 n., for the river *Jam* in *Turkistān*
- Kouchak**,—a town in *Ḳarā-Khūtā*, 919 n.
- Kerman**, 1021 n. 3, for *Ḳarḡmān* of *Afghānistān*
- Kerman**, 1119 n., for *Kirmān* of *Persia*.
- Kermanshah**,—a town in the *Jibāl* or '*Irāk-i-'Ajam*', 993 n.
- Kesh**, 46 n. 3, for *Kash* of *Khurāsān*, which see
- Kesh**, 180 n., for *Kash* of *Fārs*, which see.
- Ḳhabūshān**,—a town of *Khurāsān*, 991 n., 1196 n., 1206 n. 3. Called also *Kūshān*.
- Ḳhā-e**,—a town on the bank of the *Bīh*, 533 n.
- Ḳhāesār**, *Faj* or *Pass* of,—in the mountain of *Ro'en* in the central part of *Ḡhūr*, 319 and n. 8.
- Ḳhāesār** or *Ḳhaisār*,—a town and district in the country of *Ḡhūr*, xxiv, xxv, lx, 201, 223, 967 and

- n 2, 1062, 1181 n 2, 1196, 1199 n,  
 1200 n, 1201 n, 1202, 1203, 1205.  
**Khafshāk**, same as **Ķibghāk**, which  
 see.  
**Khair Pass**, the, I, 252 n 3, 483 n,  
 533 n.  
**Khair mountains**, the 79 n.  
**Khair-ābād**,—a town of **Kharkhiz**  
 founded by Sultān Ibrāhīm  
**Ghasnawī**, 104.  
**Khaisār**,—a town of **Qhūr**. See  
 under **Khācār**.  
**Khākīstar Burj**,—a bastion in the  
 fort of **Hirāt**, 1050 n.  
**Khālāt**,—a town in Armenia, 226  
 n 4, same as **Akhāt**, which also  
 see.  
**Kham Murān**, the,—a river flowing  
 from the **Altān** mountains, of  
**Turkistān**, 951 n, 952, 961 n. Also  
 called the **Jam Murān**, which also  
 see.  
**Khāmil**,—a province in the country  
 of the **I-ghūr**, 930 n.  
**Khān Bāligh**,—a city a little north  
 of **Pekin** 918 n 958 n, 1219 n.  
 Called **Yen-king** by the Chinese.  
**Khān-Sindān**,—a territory of **Tur-**  
**kistān**, 1220 n  
**Khānah-ābād**,—a place in the 'Irāk-  
 i-'Ajam near **Hamadān**, 1223 n.  
**Khāndah-i-Shāpūr** or **Jand-i-Sha-**  
**pūr**,—a town in the district of  
**Ahwāz**, 22.  
**Khāndān**,—a tract of country on  
 the frontier of **Qhūn**, 155 and n 5,  
 911 and n 7.  
**Khānkin**,—a town in 'Irāk-i-'Ajam,  
 1239 n, 1243 n, 1262 n.  
**Khān-kūs**, see under **Khān-zū**  
**Khūn-kūs**. [1191 n.  
**Khānpūr**,—a town of **Hindustān**,  
**Khān-zū Khūn-kūs**, the name of  
 China as called by the natives,  
 912 n 9.  
**Kharezm**, for **Khwarezm**.  
**Khazim**, for **Khwarezm**.  
**Khar-kher**,—or  
**Khar-khez** 963 n. See under **Khar-**  
**khez Tungūt**.  
**Khar-khez Tungūt**,—a tract of  
 country south of **Mughūlistān**,  
 876 n, 883 n.  
**Kharkhiz**,—a tract of country west  
 of China, 962 n  
**Kharrās**,—a district in the territory  
 of **Qhūr**, 326 n. Also called  
**Jarūs** and **Harūs**  
**Khātā-i**, an error for **Khūtā** and  
**Khītāe**, see page lx.  
**Khatl**,—a tract of country in  
**Turkistān**, 923 n. See also under  
**Khatlān** and **Khutlān**.  
**Khatlān**,—a tract of country in  
**Turkistān**, 911 n 7, 923 n, 1152,  
 1220. See also under **Khutlān**.  
**Khawānīn**,—a tract in the territory  
 of **Qhūr**, 324 n.  
**Khifghāk**, same as **Ķibghāk**, which  
 see  
**Khirkhiz**,—a territory north of  
**Mughūlistān**, 923 n. See also  
 under **Ķirkīr** or **Ķirkiz**  
**Khut-Ab**, **Darab** of,—is the dis-  
 trict of **Hariw-ar-Rūd**, 417 and  
 n 4  
**Khūtā**,—or  
**Khītāe**,—the country of China as  
 known to the people of **Māwarā-**  
**un Nahr**, xlvii, lxx, 140 n 5, 149,  
 154 n 2, 160, 188, 203 n 1, 204 and  
 n 3, 205, 243, 244, 246, 252,  
 258 n, 260 and n 7, 261 and n,  
 262, 263 and n, 264 and n, 283

- n 9, 284, 285, 294 n, 278, 287,  
 442, 474, 475 n 2, 479 n, 480 n,  
 481, 482 n, 483 n, 484 n, 491 and  
 n 5, 532, 593 n, 601 and n 1,  
 676 n, 862, 889 n, 892 n, 896 n,  
 897 n, 909 n, 911, 912 n 9, 928,  
 929 n, 930 n, 931 n, 940 n, 943 n,  
 947 n, 950 n, 955 n, 958 n, 967 n,  
 959 n, 961 n, 965 n 5, 966, 981 n,  
 1073 n 4, 1086 n, 1092 n, 1093 n,  
 1095, 1115 n 5, 1116 n, 1119 n,  
 1136 n 9, 1137 n, 1138 n, 1139 n,  
 1141 n, 1143 n, 1149 n, 1152 n,  
 1157 n 1, 1165 n, 1185 n, 1186 n,  
 1189, 1215 n 1, 1216 n, 1217 n  
Khutā-i, see under Khitā or Khitie.  
Khitāh of Sangah,—a district in  
 the country of Mandesh in Ghūr,  
 331  
Khiva, the modern capital of Khwā-  
razm, 929 n, 1097 n 7, 1098 n,  
 1100 n. See also Khīwāk  
Khīwāk or Kīwāk, capital of Khwā-  
razm, 929 n, 1098 n, 1100 n  
 Anglicized into Khiva  
Khokand,—a city in the territory  
 of Farghānah, 921 n  
Khola or Korin,—name of the  
 ancient capital of the Turks,  
 916 n. [see  
Khorassan, for Khurāsān. which  
Khoṣṭ, the darah of,—south of the  
Karmah, in the province of Kar-  
mān in Afghānistān, 409 n  
Khotan, see under Khutan  
Khowāf,—a city and district in  
Khurāsān, 131 n 7, 238 n, 994 n,  
 1037 n, 1195 n  
Khwarezm, for Khwārazm  
Khwarizm, for Khwārazm.  
Khūo,—a town in Armenia, 144 n,  
 297 n, 997 n.

Khājān,—a dependency of Nishā-  
pūr in the territory of Khurāsān,  
 181.

Khajand,—a city in the territory  
 of Farghānah, 271 n, 905 n, 908 n,  
 921 n, 970 n 2, 972 n, 974 n, 975  
 n 5, 988 n, 1118 n 9, 1284.

Khujistān,—a dependency of Bēd-  
ghais in the highlands of Hirāt,  
 23 and n 1

Khūk and Kūk, see the next

Khūk and Lūk,—a district in the  
 territory of Kirmān, 200 and  
 n 6.

Khūljah,—a city of Turkistān,  
 910 n, 920 n, 909 n.

Khulum,—a town in the district of  
Tukhārīstān of Balkh, 288 n 2,  
 426 n 6.

Khunār,—a darah in the country  
 of Ghazni, 99.

Khūnsāc or Khunsāc, capital of  
 the country of Tingnāsh or Nin-  
gāsh, 1216 n.

Khūrand,—a district of Khurāsān,  
 1121 n

Khuranjah,—a tract in the coun-  
 try of the Ghuzz, 962 n

Khurasan, xxii, xxiv, xxix, xlii,  
 xlix, lxi, 9, 10 and n 5, 11 and  
 n 4, 12 and n 6, 13 and n 8 and 9,  
 14 and n 1, 15 and n 9, 16 and  
 n 4, 19 and n 1, 23 and n 9, 24 and  
 n 3, 25, 27 and n 6, 28, 29, 30, 31  
 n 3, 32, 33, 34 n 6, 35 n 6, 36, 37 n,  
 38, 39, 42, 44, 46 and n 4, 47, 49,  
 50 n 4, 51 n 6 and 7, 52 n, 56, 71,  
 74 and n 3, 75, 81 n, 82, 84, 85 n,  
 86, 88 n 2, 89, 93, 94 and n 3, 96  
 and n 8, 99, 100, 102 n 1 and 2,  
 103, 105 and n 5, 109, 110, 111,  
 115, 116 n 3, 117 and n, 118, 119



and  $\pi$  7 and 8, 120 and  $\pi$  1, 122, 123  $\pi$ , 124  $\pi$  4, 125 and  $\pi$  8, 127, 130 and  $\pi$  6, 122 and  $\pi$  9 and 2, 123  $\pi$ , 128  $\pi$  8, 140, 142  $\pi$  2, 144  $\pi$ , 146 and  $\pi$  6 and 7, 147 and  $\pi$  8, 148  $\pi$  4, 152, 155  $\pi$  6, 156, 157  $\pi$  1, 167  $\pi$  8, 168  $\pi$  2, 169  $\pi$  7, 174  $\pi$ , 180  $\pi$  7, 184  $\pi$ , 189, 190, 192, 193, 195, 197, 198, 231  $\pi$  2, 232  $\pi$ , 233  $\pi$ , 235, 236  $\pi$  8, 239, 240 and  $\pi$ , 241, 242  $\pi$  6, 245, 246 and  $\pi$  and  $\pi$  8, 247  $\pi$ , 250  $\pi$  4 and 6, 251 and  $\pi$  2, 1 and 2, 253 and  $\pi$  8, 255  $\pi$  7, 256, 257  $\pi$  and  $\pi$  2, 268 and  $\pi$ , 269  $\pi$  3, 260  $\pi$  7, 262  $\pi$  1, 263  $\pi$ , 269, 274  $\pi$  1, 275  $\pi$ , 276, 277  $\pi$  5, 280  $\pi$  1, 282 and  $\pi$ , 286, 290, 297  $\pi$  9, 308  $\pi$  9 and 2, 309  $\pi$ , 311, 320, 324  $\pi$ , 329  $\pi$ , 335  $\pi$  4, 342, 344, 345, 346, 349  $\pi$ , 359  $\pi$ , 362, 367, 370, 375  $\pi$ , 377  $\pi$  5, 378, 380, 381, 382  $\pi$  8 and 2, 383, 387, 393, 394  $\pi$  1, 397, 400, 403  $\pi$ , 409, 410, 412, 414, 415, 424 and  $\pi$  6, 426, 448  $\pi$  2, 457  $\pi$ , 465  $\pi$ , 471 and  $\pi$  5, 473  $\pi$  2, 476  $\pi$ , 479  $\pi$ , 480  $\pi$ , 487  $\pi$  7, 489, 493  $\pi$ , 503, 504  $\pi$  4, 514, 515  $\pi$  8, 523  $\pi$ , 534, 541, 545, 546  $\pi$  7, 548  $\pi$  3, 578, 579  $\pi$  4, 606, 612 and  $\pi$  5, 655 and  $\pi$  2, 666, 676  $\pi$  5, 686 and  $\pi$  7, 697, 702  $\pi$  6, 711, 715  $\pi$  4, 725, 753, 786, 821, 822 and  $\pi$  9, 851 and  $\pi$  7, 855 and  $\pi$  7, 867  $\pi$  1, 859, 860  $\pi$  9, 863, 878  $\pi$ , 879  $\pi$ , 906  $\pi$ , 907  $\pi$ , 908  $\pi$ , 915 and  $\pi$ , 916  $\pi$ , 917  $\pi$  1, 920, 923  $\pi$ , 926  $\pi$ , 927  $\pi$ , 931, 933  $\pi$ , 943  $\pi$ , 962, 964  $\pi$  2, 968  $\pi$ , 969  $\pi$ , 980 and  $\pi$ , 992, 993  $\pi$ , 994  $\pi$ , 996  $\pi$ , 1001 and  $\pi$ , 1003, 1004 and  $\pi$  1, 1005, 1006, 1007, 1008 and  $\pi$  5, 1009  $\pi$ , 1010  $\pi$ , 1011  $\pi$ , 1013,

1014  $\pi$  2, 1015  $\pi$ , 1019  $\pi$ , 1021, 1025  $\pi$ , 1026, 1027  $\pi$  8, 1028  $\pi$ , 1031  $\pi$ , 1034  $\pi$ , 1037  $\pi$ , 1039, 1040 and  $\pi$  2, 1042, 1045  $\pi$ , 1046  $\pi$ , 1047, 1048, 1050  $\pi$ , 1051  $\pi$  4, 1052, 1054, 1055, 1056  $\pi$ , 1058 and  $\pi$  6, 1059 and  $\pi$  9, 1061  $\pi$  1, 1065, 1070, 1071 and  $\pi$  2, 1072, 1077, 1079 and  $\pi$  3, 1088  $\pi$ , 1105, 1109, 1110 and  $\pi$ , 1115, 1116  $\pi$ , 1117, 1119, 1120  $\pi$  2, 1121  $\pi$ , 1127  $\pi$ , 1128, 1129  $\pi$ , 1132, 1141  $\pi$ , 1142, 1145, 1149  $\pi$ , 1151 and  $\pi$ , 1152  $\pi$ , 1154  $\pi$  2, 1174 and  $\pi$  2 and 4, 1177, 1192  $\pi$ , 1196, 1197, 1198, 1199  $\pi$ , 1206  $\pi$  8, 1207, 1209  $\pi$ , 1211  $\pi$ , 1213, 1226, 1228, 1232  $\pi$  9, 1234, 1258  $\pi$  8, 1271  $\pi$ , 1292 and  $\pi$  1 —app. ii, iii, iv.

**Khārjah** or **Khūrjat**,—the Corea of Europeans, 956  $\pi$ , 957  $\pi$ , 959  $\pi$ , 1086  $\pi$ , 1088  $\pi$ , 1219  $\pi$ .

**Khūrjat**, see under **Khārjah**.

**Khurṭān**,—a town between **Khurāsān** and 'Irāk-i-'Ajam, 1206  $\pi$  3.

**Khurramābād**,—a town in 'Irāk-i-'Ajam, 995  $\pi$ .

**Khura**, country of,—in Turkestan, 962  $\pi$ , 1102  $\pi$ .

**Khurz**, Sea of, [the Caspian], 140  $\pi$  5, 276 and  $\pi$ , 291  $\pi$ , 1117. See also under the Caspian.

**Khushān**,—a halting place in **Khurāsān**, between **Hirāt** and **Ghūr**, 325  $\pi$ .

**Khush-āb**,—a district in the Panjāb south of the Jūd mountains [Salt Range], 455  $\pi$ , 496, 537  $\pi$ , 538  $\pi$ , 1131  $\pi$ , 1132  $\pi$ . [which see.]

**Khushādi**, 192  $\pi$  8, same as **Haghnūe**.

**Khutan**,—a tract of country in Central Asia, the Khotan of the

maps, 140 n 5, 263 n, 304 n, 305 n, 312 n 9, 315 n, 322 n, 323 n, 344 n, 384 n, 396 n, 397 n, 1115 n 5, 1141 n.

**Khutlän**,—a dependency of Badakhshān in Turkistān, 155 n 5, 231 n 2, 374 n 5, 423 n 8, 923 n. See also under **Khutlän**.

**Khutta**, for **Khijā**, which see.

**Khūnistān**,—a province of Irān, 143 n 2, 174 n, 283 n, 285 n 9, 883, 1239 n.

**Khwar**,—a district or tract of country in the neighbourhood of Bal, 1207 n.

**Khwarasm** or **Khwarizm**,—a territory on both sides of the Jihūn, xlv, 1, li, 24 n 3, 51 n 6, 52 n 9 and n, 84 and n 8 and 9, 86 n, 96 n, 98 n 2, 117 n, 120 and n 5, 121, 128 n, 125 n 8, 132, 133, 137 n 4, 138 n 8, 146, 155 n, 167 n 8, 169 and n 7, 172 n 3, 181, 182, 197, 199, 230, 231 and n 2, 232 n, 233 and n, 234 and n 8, 235 and n, 236 and n 6, 237 and n, 238 and n 6, 240 and n, 242 n 6, 243 n, 244 n 4, 245 and n, 246 n 8, 247 n, 249 n 3, 251 and n 9, 1 and 2, 252, 253, 254, 255 and n, 256 n, 257 n 3, 258 n, 259, 260 and n 6 and 7, 261 n 8, 262 and n 1, 263 n, 264 n, 267, 268 n 3, 274 n 1, 276, 278 n, 279 and n 6, 280 and n 9 and 1, 281, 285 and n 6, 344, 362, 393 and n 8, 394, 399, 400 n 3, 401 n, 402 n, 403 n, 405 n 3, 412, 419, 420, 425 n 3, 456 n 2, 457 n, 471 n 5, 473 and n 2, 4/4 and n, 475, 476 n, 480 n, 481 n 8, 482 n, 485 n 3, 488 n 1, 491, 504, 505 n, 515 n, 527 n, 539 n 3, 604, 609,

625, 678, 725, 790, 793 n 5, 879 n, 908 n, 905 n, 908 n, 909 n, 910 n, 917 n, 919, 921 n, 927 n, 939 n, 932 n, 933 n, 934 n, 942 n, 964 n 2, 969 n 1, 970 n 2, 972 n, 973 n, 980 n 8, 982 n, 986 n, 988 n, 994 n, 996 n, 1000 n, 1004 n 8 and 1, 1013, 1026 and n 7, 1030 n, 1032 n, 1045 n, 1046 n, 1059, 1062 n, 1097 and n 7, 1098 and n, 1100, 1101 and n 1, 1102 n, 1116 n, 1117 n, 1118 n 9, 1120 n 2, 1121 n, 1123 n, 1131 n, 1145 n, 1146 n 8, 1166, 1212, 1233, 1292,—app. ii.

**Khwarism**, see under **Khwarasm**.

**Khwārkān**,—a village of Āzarbāijān, 1286 n 9.

**Khwarasm**, for **Khwarizm**.

**Kibchak**,—a desert of Turkistān commonly called *Dağht-i-Kibchak*, xlvii, lxiii, 233 n 6 234, 237, 239, 240, 254, 261 n 9, 272 n 9, 279, 296 n, 644 n, 742, 754, 756, 761, 775, 789, 790, 877 n, 885 n, 929 n, 930 n, 939 n, 981 n, 983 n, 992, 996 n, 998 n, 999 n, 1000 n, 1026 and n 7, 1097 n 6, 1101, 1115 n 5, 1140 n 7, 1165 n, 1167 n, 1170 n 4 and n, 1172 n 9, 1178 n, 1215 n 1, 1277 n, 1283 and n 6, 1284 and n 3, 1285, 1286 n 9, 1291, 1292.

**Kiblah**, the,—the direction of the Temple of Makkah to which the Moslems turn in prayer, 246.

**Kigh**,—a town in Mukrān on the frontier of Sindh, 233 n 9, 934 n, 1020 n, 1073 n 4.

**Kighah** or **Kingbah**,—a tract of country N. E. of Samarkand, 985 n.

**Kichik Bukhārā** [Little Bukharia],

- the western part of the Kish-ghar territory, 920 n.
- Kidān,—a district in the territory of Ghūr, 817 n, 821, 842, 843, 846, 860, 415, 423 and n 8, 490, 491.
- Kief,—a town in Russia in Europe, 1171 n.
- Kifghāk, same as Kibghāk, which see.
- Kij,—a town in Mukrān, 88 n 2. See under Kigh.
- Kikrah,—a tract of country in Turkistān, 980 and n 9.
- Kilaf or Kilif,—a town on the Oxus, xlix, 378 and n 1.
- Kila Garhi, 588 n 8, for Gülü-Khari, which see.
- Kilif, xlix, see under Kilaf.
- Kimāk,—a tract of country in Turkistān, towards the Caspian, 923 n, 962 n.
- Kinghak, see under Kighah.
- Kinien,—a valley in Mughūlistān, 1143 n. See also under Ki nyen.
- Kinnauj,—a province in Hindustān, lxi, 86 n, 88 n 2, 402 n, 466 n 1, 467 n, 470 and n 2, 491, 518 n, 545 n 5, 625 n 2, 639 n 8, 644 n, 666, 678 n 7, 679, 680 n, 683, 701 n 1, 722 and n 5, 742 n 9, 743, 782, 816 n 5, 818 n 4, 824, 884 n, —app. vi.
- Kinnauj-i-Sher-garh,—a fortress of Hindustān, 627.
- Kin-sha or Kyang, the,—a river of China, 1218 n
- Ki-nyen,—a cave in a mountain to the north of the sandy desert, where the Chingiz Khān was buried, 1090 n. See also under Kinien.
- Kipchak, for Kibghāk, which see.
- Ķirā-ķir, the country of Ķirķir or Ķirķiz, as called by Mirsā Haidar, 876 n, 889 n, 923 n, 1184 n. See also under Ķirķir.
- Ķirā-ķiz, 923 n. See also under Ķirķir or Ķirķiz.
- Ķirāt or Ķarāt, the,—an affluent of the Kābul river, xlv, 77 n, 78 n.
- Kirdkuh, 1193 n, for Gird-Koh, which see.
- Ķirghiz,—see under Ķirķir or Ķirķiz
- Ķirķir or Ķirķiz,—a country north of Mughūlistān, 876 n, 889 n, 923 n, 944 n, 950 n, 952 n, 969 n, 1184 n.
- Ķirķir Nor,—the Ķirķir or Ķirķiz of the Jesuits' map, 876 n.
- Ķirķiz, Ķirķiz or Ķirķiz,—see under Ķirķir or Ķirķiz.
- Kirmān, province of, 23 n 9, 24 and n 3, 31 n 3, 34 n 6, 55 n 1, 60 n 8, 61 n 4, 65 and n 6, 66 n 7, 88 n 3, 98 n 8, 122 n 9, 133, 138 n 8, 155 n 6, 158 n, 167 n 8, 184 n, 189, 190, 200, 232, 246 n 8, 261 n, 281 n 5, 282 n 7, 283 and n 9, 284 and n, 285, 286, 294, 295 n, 297 n, 317 n 5, 378 and n 8, 499 n, 518 n, 610 n, 616 n, 882, 933 n, 934 n, 1001 n, 1075 n, 1109, 1118 and n 9, 1119 and n, 1151 n, 1152 n, 1208 n, 1234 n 8, 1235 n 1, 1243 n.
- Kūh or Kūh —a city on a hill on an island, in the Sea of Fārs, called Hurmūz, 179 and n 4, 180 n.
- Kiwak, 1100 n. See under Khiwak.
- Kiwak Mazār,—a shrine to the north east of Bukhārā, 977 n
- Kiwak Sarāo,—a sarāo near Samar-kand, 971 n, 978 n.

Kizil-kol,—a lake in Turkistān, 876 n. [876 n.]

Kizil-kum,—a place in Turkistān,

Kizil-Tigh,—a range of mountains in Mughūlistān, 876 n.

Kebalik or Kabahk, for Kizilik, which see.

Kobi or Kob, the Great Desert of Turkistān, 920 n, 1217 n. See also under the Gobi Desert.

Kobighah Mūr-ān, the,—a river of Mughūlistān, 1231 n.

Ko-chew, capital of the I-ghūr, 1230 n.—See also under Ho-chew.

Kochin-China,—a country of Eastern Asia, 1221 n.

Kodakān or Godagān, kashah or town of, 1013 n. 1.

Koh-i-Āsād, the,—a hill near the city of Firūz-koh, the capital of Ghūr, 406, 407, 409, 410 and n. 3.

Koh-i-Bālā-nāth, the,—a hill country in Nandanah, 537 n.

Koh-i-Janinah, the,—a mountain of Tālikān, in the territory of Khurāsān, 1013 and n. 2.

Koh-i-Jūd, the,—a range of mountains in Northern India, the Salt Range of the maps, 462 n, 464 n, 491, 537 n, 538 n, 539 n, 627 n 9, 1131 n, 1155 n 6. See also under the Jūd Hills.

Koh-i-Kāf, the,—a mountain supposed to surround the world, 1205 and n. 5.

Koh-i-Kāf or Kākāsus, the, 1287 n, the Caucasus of the maps.

Koh-i-Karā-ghal, the,—a range of mountains in Northern India, 1046 and n and n. 3.

Koh-i-Karlik, the, see under the Kizilik or Kizilik Tigh.

Koh-i-Maldān, the,—a hill near the city of Firūz-koh, the capital of Ghūr, 410.

Koh-i-Nakrah,—a lofty hill in Khurāsān between Marw and Balkh, 1006 n. 5.

Koh-i-Sangin [the Stony Mountains],—in Eastern India, 593 n.

Koh-i-Sher, the,—a hill in the district of Bust in Khurāsān, 446 n. 4.

Koh-i-Silmūr,—the hill tract of Sirmūr, 706. See under Silmūr.

Koh-i-Siwālikh, the Alpine tracts below the higher range of the Himālayah, 469 n, 611 n. 3.

Koh-i-Siyāh, the,—a range of mountains east of Afghanistan, xiv. Also called the Sulimāni mountains.

Koh-i-Surkh, the,—a range of mountains south of Afghanistan, xiv.

Kohāt,—a tract of country between the Darah of Kaymān and Paghāwar, 1.

Kohistān of the Mulāhidah, the,—a mountainous tract of country south of the Caspian, 1168 n, 1205 n. 8. See also under Kūhistān.

Kohistān of Badakhshān,—a mountainous tract of country south of Farghānah, 921 n.

Koh-pāyah, the,—the hill tracts of Mewāt, in Hindustān, 603 n. 6, 649 n. 6, 850, 851, 852, 864.

Koh-pāyah of Gībari, in Sind, 1044, 1045, 1047.

Kokyah-Tingis the,—a lake north of Mughūlistān, 869 n, 890 n.

Kok Nāwar,—a place in Turkistān, 981 n, 1150 n.

Kokonor, 561 n, 1150 n, incorrectly for Kok-Niwar. [Kok Niwar. Kok Niwar, 1150 n. See under Kol,—a territory and fortress of Hindustān, xxviii, 470, 491, 517 n, 518 n, 519 n, 550 n 6, 599 n, 634, 662, 698, 712, 718 n 2, 714 n 9, 787, 788 n 9, 794, 840 —app. vi.

Kol-i-Āb or Kol-Āb,—a dependency of Badakhshān, in Turkistān 423 n 8, 923 n. Another name of Khatlān or Khatlān, which see.

Kolghā Niwar, the,—a lake of Turkistān, 913 n.

Kolghān or Kolghān,—a territory of Turkistān, 1115 n 5, 1137 n.

Koli,—a tract of country in Turkistān, 1217 n.

Kolghān, see under Kolghān.

Kolūgh Arki or Argi,—a tract of country in Mughūlistān, 995 n.

Komak,—a city in the country of the Uris [Russians], 1166 n.

Komatapur, the old capital of Kām-rūd on the west bank of the Darīah river, 764 n 6.

Kon-chin-Fū,—a city S. E. of Hoshew in China, 1222 n.

Kongshān,—a Kahlukah or Pass between two lofty mountains in Khā, 1137 n.

Koniah, see under Kūniah.

Kops, the,—a river of Hindustān, 578 and n 1.

Kopsi, the, see the above.

Kooram, the, 74 n 2, for the Kurmah, which see.

Kopal,—a Russian station in Central Asia, 918 n.

Korohia,—a tract of country in Mughūlistān, 1219 n.

Korea or Gorea, 1218 n. See also under Khārjah.

Korin or Kholin,—name of the ancient capital of the Turks, 916 n.

Kortākh Jiwan,—a place in the middle of Mughūlistān, 1217 n.

Kos, the, see the Kops.

Kosān,—a city in the territory of Kāshghar, 922 n.

Koghah-Dāgh,—a place in the territory of Rām, 1239 n.

Kosi, the,—see the Kops.

Kotah-bās,—a place in the country of Ghūr, 851 and n 8.

Kotiah of Firūz Shāh,—the present name of Firūz-ābād in Dikh, 599 n, 621 n 6.

Kourah,—a city in the territory of Kāshghar, 922 n. [see.

Koylak, 900 n 2, for Kātilik, which Krim, the Crimea of the maps, 298 n, 1102 n, 1165 n. See also under Krimen.

Krimen,—or

Krimia, the Crimea of the maps, 1000 n, 1102 n. See also under Krim.

Kū-Bāligh or Bālīk,—the name by which Bilāsāghūn was known to the Mughals, 913 n, 917 n. See also under Ghū-bāligh.

Kabbah-i-Shakh-ul-Makārim,—a place in the district of Baghdād, 1262 n.

Kugh or Kūj,—a territory to the north of Bangālāh, 568 n, 570 n 9, 593 n.

Kūgh Bihār or Cooch Bahar, 566 n 9. See the above.

Kāphah, see under Kūjah or Kājah.

- Kūghān**,—a town of **Khurāsān**, 1196 n, same as **Khābūghān**, which see.
- Kūghing Ohīw**,—a city in the **Khītāe** territory, 956 n.
- Ku-Ohīw**,—a city in the **Khītāe** territory, 956 n.
- Kuds** [the Holy City], 215. See also under Jerusalem.
- Kudai** [the Holy Land], 214. See also under **Filistīn** and **Palestine**.
- Kūfā** or **Kūfah**,—a town of 'Irāk, 284, 513, 1238.
- Kuhanduj**,—a fortress of **Tukhārīstān**, 268 n 3, 1153 n. Afterwards called **Kunduz**, which see
- Kuhistān** of the **Mulāhidah**, the,—a mountainous tract of country south of the Caspian, xx, xxiv, xxv, lxi, 50 n 4, 85 n, 141, 195 and n 3, 196, 244 n 4, 255 n 7, 381 n 5, 394 and n 1, 496, 1015 n, 1028 n, 1039, 1061, 1062, 1157, 1190 n 1, 1193 n, 1193 n, 1195 n, 1196, 1197 and n 3, 1198, 1200, 1204, 1205 and n 3, 1207 n, 1209 n, 1210 n, 1212 and n, 1213, 1227 n 5. See also under the **Kohistān**
- Kuhnah Urganj**, capital of **Khwārazm**, 929 n, 1098 n.
- Kuhram**,—a district and fortress of **Hindustān**, 457 n, 460 and n 7 and 9, 470 n, 491, 516 n 2, 517 n, 529 n 4, 532, 533 n, 607, 627, 628 n 2, 634 and n 9, 672, 697 n, 699, 723, 758, 780, 785, 830, 840,—app iii, v, vi.
- Kuhstan**, 1028 n, for **Khūstān**, which see.
- Kūiking** or **Kūyūiking**,—a city in the country of **Khūryah** [Corea], 956 n.
- Kāj** or **Kūgh**,—a territory to the north of **Bangālāh**, 568 n, 593 n. See also under **Kūgh**.
- Kujā**,—a tract of country in the territory of **Ohīn**, 961 n.
- Kūjāh** or **Kūjah**,—a district of **Hindustān**, 627 and n 9, 750 and n 9, 1225 n. Also written **Kūghah** and **Gujah**.
- Kūlā Sūe**, the,—or River **Kūlā**, in **Turkistān**, 943 n.
- Kulān Bāzi**,—or
- Kulān Tāsi**,—or
- Kulān Yāsi**,—a place in the vicinity of **Fānākat**, 1082 n, 1083 n, 1108 n.
- Kuldja**, see under **Khūljah**.
- Kulunjur**, 524 n, for **Kālinjar** of **Hind**
- Kul-wāzi** gateway,—at **Baghdād**, 1243 n, 1250 n, 1253 n.
- Kulzum** or **Sea of Khurs**, the,—the Caspian, 991 n.
- Kum**,—a town in the 'Irāk-i-'Ajām, 994 n, 996 n, 1118.
- Kumā**,—or
- Kumārūn**, the **Comorin** of the maps, 1205 n 4.
- Kumā'ūn**,—a range of mountains in Northern India, 799 n 2.
- Kūmia**,—a district or province between **Khurāsān** and 'Irāk-i-'Ajām, 1209 n.
- Kam-Kamjiūt**,—a tract of country in **Turkistān**, 1184 n. See also under **Kam-Kamjiūt**.
- Kām-Kunjak**,—a tract of country in **Turkistān**, 981 n, 982 n. See also under **Kam-Kunjak**.
- Kūnah** or **Gūnah-wāz**,—a place in the territory of **Ghur**, 351 n 8.
- Kunaf**,—a valley north of the

- Kábal** river, 1048 n. 1, 1044 n., 1045 n.
- Kánaun-Kor-kán**,—a fortress in **Mughlístán**, 1047 n. 4.
- Kun-Qhiw**,—a city in the **Khítše** territory, 956 n.
- Kunduz**, **xlvi**, same as **Kunduz**, which see.
- Kundus**,—a fortress of **Tukhárístán** of **Balkh**, in **Khurásán**, **xlvi**, 288 n. 2, 289 n., 809 and n. 2, 1008 n. 5, 1010 n., 1011 n., 1023 n., 1109, 1110 n., 1153 and n., 1226 and n. 9. Formerly called **Kubanduz**.
- Káng-Qhiw**,—a city in the **Khítše** territory, 956 n.
- Káni**, 573 n. 7, for **Náran-go-e** or **Náran-ko-e**, which see.
- Kunia Urganj**, for **Kuhnah Urganj**, which see.
- Kúziáh**,—a city in the territory of **Rám**, called **Koniah** by Europeans, 160 and n. and 9, 161 and n., 162.
- Kuntil**, 550 n. 5 and 6. See under **Kuntilah**.
- Kuntilah**,—a town of **Hindustán** west of the **Karam-Nárah**, the **Kuntil** of the **Indian Atlas**, 550 n. 5 and 6, 551 n.
- Kur**, the,—a river of the **Persian Empire**, 64 n. 1.
- Kúram**, 1115 n. 5.
- Karbat** or **Gurbat**,—a fortress of **Hamadán**, in the '**Irāk-i-'Ajam**', 267 n.
- Kurdish** mountains, the,—between **Kermanshah** and **Baghdád**, 993 n.
- Kurdístán**, 304 n., 1238 n.
- Kuren** or **Ourga**, 595 n. See under **Ulās-i-Aurgah** or **Urgah**.
- Kúrshāh Kīnghān** or **Kīpjan**,—a fortress in the country of the **Makrits**, 947 n.
- Kürkān**, the,—a river of **Turkistán**, 943 n.
- Kurmah**,—a district in the province of **Karmān**, in **Afghānistān**, 499 n.
- Kurmah**, the,—a river watering the **Karmān** province, 74 n. 2, 498 n. 7, 499 n.
- Kurmah Darah** or valley, the,—the upper portion of the province of **Karmān**, **xiv**, 498 n. 7, 499 n.
- Kurrah**, 777 n., for **Karāh** of **Hindustān**.
- Kurram**, the, 498 n. 7, 499 n., for the **Kurmah darah** and river.
- Keruk** or **Karak**,—a place of **Hindustān**, in the district of **Harīśāh**, between **Rot-hak** and **Bhawāni**, 791 n. 1.
- Kurum**, the, 74 n. 2, for the **Kurmah**, which see.
- Kuḡdār**,—a city in the province of **Mukrān**, 74 and n. 2, 88 n. 2, 219 n. 5, 616 n., 1015 n., 1018 n.
- Kūshān**, 1206 n. 3. See under **Khabūshān**.
- Kūshk-i-Akhchak**, the,—or **Kūshk-i-Akhjak**, the,—or **Kūshk-i-Akhjak**, the,—a castle in the capital city of **Khvārazm**, 281, 1100 and n. 8.
- Kūshk-i-Firūzi**, the,—a castle in the capital city of **Dihlī**, 638 and n. 2, 676. See also under the **Kay-i-Firūzi**.
- Kūshk-i-La'ī**, the,—a castle in the capital city of **Dihlī**, 599 n.
- Kūshk-i-Manḡir**, the,—a castle on the bank of the **Furāt** in '**Irāk**', 1240 n.

- Kāghk-i-Nākhād**,—a castle in Afghanistan, 331 n. 2.
- Kāghk-i-Sabz** [the Green Castle],—in the capital city of Dihlī, 356. See also under the **Ḳasr-i-Sabz**.
- Kāghk-i-Safed**,—a castle in Afghanistan, 331 n. 2.
- Kāghk-i-Sultān**,—a fortress in Fīrās-koh the capital of Ghūr, xlv.
- Ḳusāntīah**, 999 n., for **Ḳusāntīnah** [Constantinople].
- Ḳupūr**,—a town on the bank of the Bīāh, 533 n.
- Ḳā-Tāk**,—a tract of country in Turkistān, 1105 n.
- Ḳuṭbī Maṣjid**, the,—in the city of Dihlī, 530 n.
- Ḳutlūgh Bāgh**,—the name given by the **Chingiz Khān** to the town of Zarnūk in Māwarī-un-Nahr, 976 n. 5.
- Kutluk bāgh**, for **Ḳutlūgh Bāgh**, which see.
- Ḳūt-Tāgh**,—a range of mountains south of the country of the Ighūra, 389 n.
- Kū-yang-quan**,—a place in the country of the **Khītā-is**, 958 n.
- Ḳuyāiking**, same as **Ḳūiking**, which see.
- Kya-ling**,—a town in the country of Chīn, 1222 n.
- Kyang** or **Kin-sba**, the,—a river of China, 1218 n.
- Kyang-nan**,—a Chinese town, 1219 n.
- Kyan-lin** the,—a river of China, lv, 1222 n.

## L

- Lacacacoonda**, for **Lakarkūndhab**, which see.
- Ladākiāh**,—a town in the territory of Rām, 140 n. 5.
- Lādān** or **Lāwān**,—a town in the country of the **Urūs** [Russians], 1170 n.
- Lāghri**,—a fortress of **Gharjstān** in the territory of **Khurāsān**, 1072 and n. 6.
- Lāhnor**,—a district and town of Hindustān, 453 n. 3 and 4, 454 n. See also under **Lāhor**.
- Lāhor** or **Lohor**,—a district and town of Hindustān, xxi, xxii, xxx, l, li, 88 n. 2, 96 n. 7, 108 n. 5, 110 n. 1, 112 and n. 3, 113 n., 114 and n., 115, 190, 294 n., 349 n., 391 and n. 9, 398 n. 9, 449 n. 3, 452 and n. 1 and 2, 453 and n. 3 and 4, 455 and n., 456, 457 n., 460 n., 461 n., 462 n., 463 n., 467 n., 476 n., 481 and n. 9, 482 n., 484 n., 489, 491, 499 n. 8, 503 n. 8, 505 and n. and n. 5, 506 n. 9, 523 n., 524 n., 525 and n., 526 and n. and n. 8, 527 n., 528 n. 2, 529 n. 4, 530 and n., 532, 533 n., 534 n. and n. 5 and 6, 536 n., 537 n., 538 n., 539 n., 542 n. 9, 547 n., 550 n. 6, 577 n., 605, 607 and n. 5, 608 and n. 7, 609 and n. 5, 612, 614 n. 8, 627, 628 n. 4, 631, 634, 641, 644 and n. 7, 655 and n. 2, 656 n., 657 and n. 7, 668 n., 674, 676 n. 9, 677 n. 6, 678, 684 and n. 9, 689 n. 6, 692 n. 3, 696 n.,



- 700 and  $\pi$  3, 704, 730 and  $\pi$  2, 737 and  $\pi$  5, 738, 747 and  $\pi$  1, 762, 768, 775  $\pi$ , 782, 794 and  $\pi$ , 798, 798 and  $\pi$  and  $\pi$  7, 795  $\pi$ , 810  $\pi$ , 811 and  $\pi$  3, 812, 818  $\pi$  4, 822  $\pi$  9, 825  $\pi$  6, 830 and  $\pi$  5, 839  $\pi$  4, 850 and  $\pi$  6, 1126  $\pi$  5 and 6, 1129  $\pi$  1, 1132, 1133 and  $\pi$  3, 1135, 1136 and  $\pi$  3, 1138, 1142, 1152, 1155  $\pi$  6, 1201  $\pi$ , 1202  $\pi$ , 1224  $\pi$ , 1225  $\pi$ ,—app. xxiv.
- Lahora.** See under **Lāhor**.
- Lah-ṣā [al-Aḥṣā],**—a tract of country in Arabia, 179  $\pi$  3.
- Lā-ʾir-wāl,** the,—a tributary of the river Sind, 77  $\pi$ .
- Lakartūndhab,**—a city of Hindūstān in the Jīj-nagar State, 535  $\pi$  6.
- Lake Baikal or Bāe-Kol,** the,—see the Baikal and the Bāe-Kol Lake.
- Lake Bāijūnah,** the,—see the Bāijūnah Lake.
- Lake Bāikaah,** the,—see the Bāikaah Lake.
- Lakhaṣawāṭi,**—a Muhammadan State of Hindūstān and its capital, xxvii, liv, lix, lxi, lxii, 489 and  $\pi$  7, 491 and  $\pi$  5, 503  $\pi$  3, 530, 535  $\pi$ , 547  $\pi$  3, 549 and  $\pi$  2, 552, 553  $\pi$  5, 554, 558  $\pi$  7, 559 and  $\pi$  2, 560, 561  $\pi$  9, 562  $\pi$ , 565, 567, 568, 572 and  $\pi$  9 and 2, 575 and  $\pi$  and  $\pi$  9 and 1, 577  $\pi$ , 578, 579 and  $\pi$  4, 591, 593  $\pi$  6, 593 and  $\pi$ , 594 and  $\pi$  2, 595  $\pi$  6 and 7, 598, 597 and  $\pi$  3, 598  $\pi$ , 599  $\pi$ , 599  $\pi$ , 591 and  $\pi$ , 592 and  $\pi$ , 593  $\pi$  3, 594 and  $\pi$ , 595  $\pi$ , 610 and  $\pi$  7, 614  $\pi$  3, 617  $\pi$ , 618 and  $\pi$ , 625, 626 and  $\pi$  3, 627 and  $\pi$ , 628  $\pi$  3, 630 and  $\pi$  1, 633 and  $\pi$  7, 636  $\pi$  3, 641 and  $\pi$  3, 662, 663 and  $\pi$  3, 664, 665 and  $\pi$  3, 666  $\pi$ , 667, 673, 701  $\pi$  1, 712 and  $\pi$  9, 713, 730, 732, 736, 737 and  $\pi$  7, 738, 739 and  $\pi$ , 740 and  $\pi$  3, 741 and  $\pi$  1 and 2, 743, 744, 747, 753, 757  $\pi$  7, 762, 763, 764, 769, 770 and  $\pi$  9, 771  $\pi$ , 772  $\pi$ , 773  $\pi$ , 774  $\pi$ , 775  $\pi$ , 776  $\pi$ , 777  $\pi$ , 778  $\pi$ , 779  $\pi$ , 787, 797  $\pi$ , 808, 809, 827  $\pi$  9, 833  $\pi$  9, 847  $\pi$  4, 848 and  $\pi$ , 849, 878  $\pi$ , 1003  $\pi$  4, 1046  $\pi$ , 1061 and  $\pi$  9, 1111  $\pi$ , 1251  $\pi$  9,—app. xiii, xviii, xxvi. See also under **Lakhanauti**.
- Lakhaṣawāṭi Lakhaṣ-or,**—a name by which Lakhaṣ-or is sometimes styled, 535  $\pi$  7, 736, 737  $\pi$  7.
- Lakhaṣ-or or Lakh-or,**—a city of Lakhaṣawāṭi on the western side of the river Gang, 573 and  $\pi$  2, 574  $\pi$  2, 586 and  $\pi$  6 and 7, 593, 593  $\pi$ , 623  $\pi$  7, 636  $\pi$  3, 736, 737 and  $\pi$  7, 739, 1072  $\pi$  6.
- Lakhi jungle,** the,—in the territory of Bhaṭiṇḍah, 79  $\pi$ .
- Lakhiyah,** the,—a branch of the Brahmā-putra south of Kāmrūd, 562  $\pi$ .
- Lakhmaṣawāṭi,** original name of Lakhaṣawāṭi, 543  $\pi$  2.
- Lakhnāo,**  $\pi$  2,—the Lucknow of the maps.
- Lakhnan,** 759  $\pi$  5,—the Lucknow of the maps.
- Lakhnaur,** 588  $\pi$  5. See under **Lakhaṣ-or**.
- Lakhanauti,** liv, lix, 203  $\pi$  1, 204, 582  $\pi$  6, 585  $\pi$  6, 771  $\pi$ , same as Lakhaṣawāṭi, which see. [see.]
- Lakh-or,** same as Lakhaṣ-or, which
- Lakhwāl,**—a town of Hindūstān, 714  $\pi$  9, 738.

Lakki,—a town, district and range of mountains in Sind, 616 n.

Lakshmapa-watī, original name of Lakhapawāṭī, 548 n. 2.

Lāl,—a fortress in Tabaristān, 280, 993 n. See also under I-lāl.

Lalohr or Alehr,—a town of Hindūstān, 627.

Lalitah-pattan,—a city in the Nipāl valley, near the Beg-madī river, 567 n. 1.

Lamandosh, 308 n. 9, for Mandesh, which see.

Lambah-Sar. See under Lanbah-Sar.

Lamghān,—a territory of Afghānistān, xlvii, 77 n, 79 n.

Lamghīnāt or the Lamghāns, xlviii, another name of Lamghān, which see.

Lambessar, 1188 n. 8, for Lanbah-Sar, which see.

Lampegos,—the name of Lamghān in the classical writers, 72 n. 6.

Lamsher, 1188 n. 8, for Lanbah-Sar, which see.

Lamsir, 1188 n. 8, for Lanbah-Sar, which see.

Lanba or Labnī Sāghūt,—the name given by Halākū Khān to the mountain of Ālī-Tāgh, which see, 1264 n.

Lanbah-Sar,—a fortress in the Khūstān of the Mulāhidah, 1188 and n. 8, 1206 and n. 1 and 2, 1207 n, 1209 n, 1227 n. 5.

Lan-chow,—a Chinese town, 1222 n, now Pan-ning-Fū.

Landsey Sind, the,—a tributary of the Indus, 78 n, 79 n, 1043 n. 1.

Lanṣar, 1074 n, for Kālinjar of Sind.

Lanjar, 1074 n, for Kālinjar of Sind.

Lanj-rūt, for Wanj-rūt, the territory in the Multān province, 723 n. 1.

Lankai,—a fortress in the territory of Tingkāt or Kāghin, 947 n.

Lār or Lāristān,—a province of Persia, 98 n. 7, 990 n, 991 n, 1207 n. See also under Lūristān.

Lāristān,—a province of Persia, 98 n. 7. See also under Lār and Lūristān.

Lār-jān,—a fortress on a mountain in Tabaristān, 993 n.

Lār-jār,—a fortress in Tabaristān, 280 n. 3.

Lāsh,—a fortress in the territory of Sijistān, 1122 n.

Lāth of Kuṭb Shāhib,—name of the Minārat in the city of Dihli, 621 n. 6, 622 n.

Lātkin-ābād, more correctly written Aytkin-ābād, which see, 818 n. 6.

Lāwah,—a town in Rājputānah, 728 and n. 2.

Lāwān or Lādān,—a town in the country of the Urūs [Russians], 1170 n.

La-wir or Lū-ir, on the way between Rūd-bār and Ghazjistān, 289.

Lankoran, 1021 n. 8, for Sanḡurān, which see.

Lewak Shān, 1220 n. See under Liwak-shān.

Lewpan,—a mountain in the Chinese province of Shen-si, 1219 n, 1221 n.

Lhāsā, capital of Tibbat, H.

- Lahrī**,—a fortress in Sind, 542 n 9, now called Rohri.
- Liao Ho** or **Charamun**, the,—a river of China, 986 n.
- Liguits**,—a town of Hungary, 1168 n.
- Lín-tau-Fá**,—a town in the Chinese province of Shen-si, 1218 n.
- Lithuania**, 1167 n.
- Little Bukharis**—**Kichik Bukhārī**, or the western part of the **Kāshghar** territory, 920 n, 922 n.
- Liwak-shān**,—a place within the confines of **Tinguiāh**, 1088 n, 1230 n,—called elsewhere **Afwān-shān**. [**Nāwar**.]
- Lob**, 1084. See also under **Lob Lob Kasal**,—or
- Lob-Katal**,—a city which formerly existed in the territory of **Kāshghar**, 922 n.
- Lob-Nāwar**,—a tract of country on the borders of **Tibbet**, 951 n, 1085 n.
- Logar**, the, 1021 n 7. See under the **Lohgar** river.
- Logurh**, the, 269 n 3. See under the **Lohgar** river.
- Lohāwar** or **Lahāwar**,—a district and town of **Hindustān**, 453 n 3, 483 n, 484 n, 524 n, 533 n, 536 n, 1126 and n 5, 1135 n 3, 1201 n, 1225 n. See also under **Lāhor**.
- Lohgar** or **Logar**, the,—a river of **Afghānistān**, 73 n 8, 288 n 3, 1019 n, 1021 n 7 and 8, 1042 n 5
- Lohor**, same as **Lāhor**, which see.
- London**, 309 n, 352 n 3, 683 n, 884 n, 1078 n 8, 1094 n, 1131 n, 1147 n 9, 1173 n 1.
- Long-ŭhing**,—a city in the **Khāi-i** country, 955 n.
- Long-gan-Fá**,—a town in the country of **Ūhin**, 1222 n.
- Long-kang**,—a place to the east of the Chinese city of **Whan-chow**, 1218 n.
- Loqi**, 670 n 2. See under **Lāni**.
- Lost River** of the **Indian Desert**, the,—the **Hakrī**, 707 n 6, 723 n 1, 811 n 8, 812 n 3, 813 n, 822 n 2, 823 n 3.
- Lowah-wāi**,—a village of **Hindustān** on the banks of the **Bīāh**, 538 n.
- Lower Sind**, 614 n 8, 615 n 1, 1074 n. See also under **Sind**.
- Lower Suwāt**,—a mountain district to the west of **Kashmir**, 1 v.
- Lucknowty**, 777 n, for **Lakhana-waṭi**, which see. [640] n 3.
- Lüdiānah**,—a town in the **Panjab**,
- Luhāwar**, same as **Lohā-war** and **Lāhor**, which see.
- Luhāwār**, same as **Lohā-war** and **Lāhor**, which see.
- Luhri**,—a fortress in **Sind**, 542 n 9, now called **Rohri**.
- Lū-ir**. See under **La-wir**.
- Lūk**,—a fortress in **Lower Sind**, 616 n.
- Lukah**, the,—a river of **Turkistān**, 961 n. Also called the **Kalūr-Ān**.
- Lamghān**, 72 n 6, for **Lamghān**, which see.
- Lāni**,—a town few miles north of **Dihli**, 670 and n 2.
- Lū-pan**, mountain of, 1221 n. See under the **Lewpan** mountain.
- Lūristān**,—a province of **Persia**, 174 n, 277 n 5, 297 n 9, 991 n. See also under **Lār** or **Lāristān**.
- Lyan-tong**,—a territory south of the **Kobi Desert**, 1217 n.
- Lyan**,—the empire of the **Kia**, 921 n.

## M.

- Ma'abar, the,—in the Dakhan of Hind, 1216 n.
- Ma'bar,—a village on the Lā'ir-wāl river, 77 n.
- Māburn-ābād,—a town of Khurāsān, 267 n.
- Macedon, 680 n 7, 1044 n.
- Mā-qhīn,—a country east of Khitā, 871 n, 883, 871 n, 912 n 9. See also under Mahā-Qhīn.
- Madāran or Madārān, Sarkār of,—south of Bangālah, 593 n.
- Madāyin,—a place near Baghdād, 1345 n 4.
- Mādīn,—a district in the territory of Ghūr, 339, 343, 344, 361, 364, 367 and n 7.
- Madinah,—the city where the prophet Muḥammad is buried, 5, 7, 24, 64 n 1, 82, 138, 140 n 5, 218 n 5, 227 n 1.
- Madīnat-nah-Ṣhahīd [Madīnat-nah-Ṣhubadā], or city of the Martyrs [Martyropolis], 1269 n.
- Madrasah-i-sar-i-Hawz,—a place to the south of the city of Sistān, 195.
- Madriwī, for Madrū-mūc, which see.
- Madrūc, for Madrū-mūc, which see.
- Madrū-mūc,—a village on the frontier of Balḫ, 75 and n 6.
- Madrūsā-pālā, or Madīnat-nah-Ṣhahīd [Martyropolis], 1269 n.
- Madrukāh,—a town of 'Irāq on the east bank of the Furāt [Euphrates], 1240 n.
- Mādūn-un-Nahr, 903 n See under Mādūn-un-Nahr.
- Mādūn-un-Nahr,—a term applied to the cis-Amūsiāh or cis-Oxus countries, 903 n 2, 1137 n, 1145 n.
- Maghrab [Mauritania], 2, 7, 208, 209 and n, 214, 1232. See under Maghrīb.
- Maghrīb, the countries in the north of Africa, west of Egypt, 1193 n, 1232 n. See also under Maghrab.
- Mag-madi, the. See under the Bagmati and the Beg-mati.
- Magyar, territory of, 1166 n, the Majār of the Arabs.
- Mahāban,—a place on the western bank of the Indus, 78 n.
- Mahā-Qhīn, the country east of Khitā as called by the Hindūs, 912 n 9, 1136 n 2, 1137 n, 1188 n, 1141 n, 1216 n, 1217 n, 1219 n. See also under Mā-Qhīn.
- Mahamhā-i or Mahanmhā-i Darab,—a pass between Kīmriid and Tirkut, 568 and n 7.
- Mahā-nadī, the,—a river between Lakhaq-or and Jēj-jagar, 588 n, 592 n.
- Mahā-nadri or Mahān-adri, the, 592 n. See under the Mahā-nadī. [the Mahā-nadī.
- Mahān-dari, the, 592 n. See under Mahanmhā-i Darab, the. See under the Mahamhā-i Darab.
- Mahā-pūr, 697 n, 799 n 2. See under Mā-pūr.
- Mahā'un,—a town of Hindūstān, 733, 755. See also under Mahāwan.
- Mahāwan,—a town of Hindūstān, 713 n 2, 714 n 2, 733, 794, 824, 840 n 3. See also under Mahā'un.

**Mahr**,—a place in the Sagar and Narbadah territories, 732, 744 and n 9, 824. See also under **Mihir** and **Mihar**.

**Mahmādābid**,—a town between Tabriz and Hamadān, 997 n.

**Mahobah**, capital of the territory of Kābil, in Hindūstān, 534 n, 552 n 5, 755, 757 n 7,—app. xiv, xvi.

**Mahā**,—a town in the country of Khitā or Qhān, 1222 n.

**Maidān**, the darah of,—south of the Karmah, in the province of Kermān, 400 n.

**Maidān**,—a district near Kābil, 28 n 2.

**Maklū-i-Saba**,—a place in the city of Ghaznī, 267 n 9.

**Maiden's Castle**, the,—in the territory of Ghūr, 240 n 1.

**Maifarbak**, the name of Mayyā-fārūkā [Martyropolis] in the Syrian language, 1270 n.

**Maihand**, 278 n 9, for **Maimand**, which see.

**Maimanah**,—a place in Khurāsān, 129 n 2,—more correctly **Mihanah**.

**Maimand**,—a small town of Ghaznī, 92 n 2, 278 and n 9, 291, 299.

**Maimūn-Dofs**,—a stronghold in the Kūhistān of the Mullāhidah, 706 n 2, 1205 n 1, 1208 n, 1209 n, 1257 n.

**Majār**, territory of, 1165 n, the Magyar of Europeans.

**Makār**,—a city in the country of the Urūs [Russians], 1170 n.

**Makhad**,—a town on the river Sind, 538 n.

**Makhillāh mountains**, or the **Koh-i-Jūd**,—now known as the Salt Range, 462 n 4, 527 n, 528 n, 529 n 2.

**Makkah**, the sacred city of the Moslems in the territory of Hijāz, 5, 8, 24, 82 and n 8, 102 n, 122, 129 n, 140 n 5, 172, 185 n, 190, 192, 227 n 1, 228 n 4, 255 n 4, 246, 264 n 7, 717 n, 757 n 5, 825 n 2.

**Makrān**, 28 n 2, same as **Mukrān**, which see.

**Maksadah** or **Maksidah**,—a town of Hindūstān, 575 and n 4,—app. xxii.

**Maksidah** or **Maksidah**, 576 n 4. See under **Maksadah**.

**Makwānpūr**,—a town of Hindūstān, 560 n 4, 567 n 1.

**Mālān**,—a Daht or desert in the territory of Hirāt, 125 n.

**Malāsah-gird**,—a place in Āsar-bāijān in the vicinity of Akhlāt, 124 n 2.

**Māldah**,—a city in the Bengal Presidency, 590 n.

**Malik-pūr**,—a town in the Panjāb, 526 n, 527 n. See also under **Malkapūr**.

**Malkapūr**,—a town in the Panjāb, 292 n 5, 526 n. See also under **Malik-pūr**. [wah.]

**Mālwa**, 622 n 9. See under **Māl-wah**.

**Māl-wah**,—a territory of Hindūstān, 491, 527 n 4, 528 n, 529 n, 522 n, 622, 622 n 9, 622, 629 n 2, 629 n, 691 and n, 722 n 5, 742, 769, 817 and n 6, 824 and n 7.

**Manbij**,—a fortress in the neighbourhood of Halab, in the Diyār-i-Shāmīah, 204 n.

- Manāsur**,—a province of Hindūstān, 661.
- Manḍawar**,—a fortress within the limits of the Siwālīkh territory, 611 and n 3, 623 n 9, 627, 778 and n 1.
- Manḍīwar**, 611 n 3, for Manḍawar, which see.
- Mandesh**,—a stronghold in **Khurāsān**, 308 n 9.
- Mandesh**,—a district and city in the territory of **Ghūr**, 306 n 5, 308 and n 9, 311 and n 3, 318 and n 1, 319 n 5, 340, 1003 n 3, 1073 n 7.
- Māndhū**,—or
- Māndhūp**,—a district south of **Bangālāh**, 689 n, 693 n.
- Mandānāh**,—a district in the country of Hindūstān, 750.
- Mandror**, the chief town of **Lamghān**, in **Afghānistān**, 79 n.
- Mandror**, darah of,—in **Afghānistān**, 79 n.
- Māndū** or **Mandū**, 611 n 3 633 n 9, for Manḍawar, which see
- Māndūd**, 611 n 3, for Manḍawar, which see.
- Mangali-Sūyah**,—another name of the territory of **Kūshghar**, 922 n.
- Māng-ghing**,—a town in the country of **Khītā** or **Qhīn**, 1221 n.
- Māng-Fūn**,—a town in the country of **Khītā** or **Qhīn**, 1221 n.
- Maugir**, *Sarkār of*,—in the province of **Bangālāh**, 693 n.
- Mangshlak**. See under **Meng-Ḳishlāk**.
- Mauglān**,—a range of Hills in Northern India, 453 n 4.
- Manhārah**,—a village on the east bank of the **Lā'ir-wāl** river, 77 n.
- Mīnīk-pār**,—a district and town of **Bangālāh** south of **Awadh**, 590 n, 591 n, 603 n 3, 704, 737, 738, 757 n 7, 830, 838 n 7, 847, 848.
- Mānigh**,—a town in the territory of **Awadh**, 744 and n 5.
- Manj**, name of the fortress of **Bīr-mah** in **Ḳinnauj**, 86 n.
- Mankas**,—a city in the country of **Būlo** [**Poland**], 1166 n, 1167 n, 1171 n.
- Man-Minārah**,—a fortress on the west bank of the **Indus** above **Aṭak**, 78 n, 1043 n 1.
- Manṣūrah** or **Mansūra**,—the capital of **Sind**, lx, 52, 539 and n 4, 674 n 3, 809, 810 n.
- Manṣūriah**,—a fortress in **Khurāsān**, 1192 n.
- Manṣūriah**,—a town of **Sindūstān**, 533 n.
- Manṣūriyah**,—a town in the **Diyr-i-Murīah**, 229 n 5. It is incorrectly printed **Manṣūrah**, see page lxx.
- Manṣūr-pār**,—a district west of **Dihli** and north-west of **Kaithal**, 635, 707, 749 and n 2, 750, 830.
- Man-Yazid**,—a fortress in **Khurāsān**, 83 and n 6.
- Manzi**,—the country east of **Khītā** as called by the Chinese, 1152 n, 1216 n, 1217 n, 1219 n, 1267 n. It is the **Mahā-Qhīn** of the **Hindūs**.
- Mār-ābād**,—a town of **Khurāsān** ten *farsakhs* from the city of **Hīrāt**, 323 n.
- Marīghah**,—a town in the province of **Āzarbāijān**, 170 n 3, 173, 471 n 5, 997 n, 1001 n, 1254 n, 1256 n, 1262 n.

**Mamāṭ-Dujā**,—a fortress in the mountainous tract between Hamadān and the Siwād of Baghdād, 1298 n.

**Maranjat**, 1197 n. 3, for Sar-i-Takht in the Kūhistān.

**Marīn-nād**,—a place in the Hīrāt district, 258 n. 2.

**Marbakht**, 1197 n. 3, for Sar-i-Takht in the Kūhistān.

**Mārdīn**. See under Mārdīn.

**Mārdīn**,—a town in the Diyār-i-Bakr, 1152 n., 1264 n., 1265 and n. 1, 1278 n., 1279 n.

**Mārgalah Pass**, the, 96 n. 2, 97 n. See under the Mārgalah.

**Marḡ-i-Nūlah**,—a tract in the country of Ghūr, 415.

**Marḡhanīn**,—the Marḡhūlān of the maps, 921 n.

**Marḡhūlān**,—a city in the territory of Farghānah, 921 n.

**Mārgalah or Mārgalah**, the,—a pass in the Panjāb, between Rāwā Pindī and Attak, 90 and n. 1, 95 and n. 4, 96 n. 2, 97 n., 712 and n. 6.

**Marikhat**, 1197 n. 3, for Sar-i-Takht in the Kūhistān.

**Marim**,—a tract in the country of the Urdū, 1170 n.

**Mārjin**,—a town in Māwarī-an-Nahr, 972 n.

**Marḡmah**,—a monastery in the city of Mayyā-fāriḡīn, 1268.

**Marw Malkah**,—a town of Hindūstān, 891 and n. 1.

**Marot**, 812 n. 3, for Marūt, which see.

**Martyropolis**,—the city of Mayyā-fāriḡīn, in the Diyār-i-Bakr, 225 n. 4, 1264 n., 1269 n., 1270 n. See also under Mayyāfāriḡīn.

**Marūt or Mārūt**,—a place on the route from Dihlī to Ughahāh, 688 and n. 2, 812 and n. 2 and 3, 851 n. 8.

**Mārūtah** 851 n. 8, for Hārūtah, which see.

**Marw**,—a district and town in the territory of Khurāsān, 6, 12 n. 2, 17, 22, 27, 28, 29, 50, 51, 70, 94 and n. 2 and 3, 97 n. 3, 120 n. 2, 121, 122 and n. 3 and 3, 124 n. 4, 125, 126, 127, 129, 131 n. 7, 132 and n. 2, 133, 137, 145, 151, 152, 153 n. 7, 156 and n. 8, 232 n., 246 and n. 8, 247 n., 248, 249, 250 n. 4 and 6, 251 n. 9, 255 n. 7, 256 n., 257 n. 2, 311 n. 1, 367, 375 n., 376, 381, 387, 393 n. 8, 399, 400 n. 3, 414, 457 n., 472 n., 478 n., 479 n., 480 n., 481 n. 8, 491, 514 n. 4, 506 n., 596 n., 1009 n., 1010 n., 1011 n., 1021 n. 8, 1027 and n. 8, 1028 n., 1029 n., 1030 n., 1031 n., 1032 n., 1033 n., 1034 n., 1036 n. 1, 1037 n. and n. 2, 1046 n., 1049 n. 2, 1058 n. 5, 1226,—app. in.

**Marw**, the,—a branch of the Oxus, 1030 n., 1031 n.

**Marw-ar-Rūd**,—a district and town in the territory of Khurāsān, 36 n. 2, 247 n., 257 n. 2, 300, 378, 391, 405 n. 2, 457 n., 481 n. 8, 491 and n. 4, 509 n., 1009 n., 1019 n., 1028 n. Now called Murḡāb.

**Marw-ar-Rūd**, the,—a branch of the Oxus, 131 n. 7. Now called the Murḡāb.

**Marw-i-Shāh-i-Jahān**,—a district and town in the territory of Khurāsān, 94 n. 2, 131 n. 7, 146, 152, 281, 397 and n. 2, 1027 n. 8, 1028 n. See also under Marw.

**Mārwa**,—a district in Rājputānāh north of Jodpur, 521 n, 611 n 3.

**Marwat**,—a district in the province of Karmān towards the Sind, 408 n 7.

**Magh-had** of 'Alī,—at Kūfah of 'Irāq, 64 n 1.

**Magh-had** of Mūsā-i-Ja'far,—at the Karh of Baghdād, 1223 and n 3.

**Magh-had** of Tūs,—in Khurāsān, 1140 n, 1223 n 2.

**Maghrik-ar-Rūd**, 491 n 4, for Marwar-Rūd, which see.

**Masūl**, the Kāhūkah or Pass of,—in the territory of Tīngūish, 1220 n.

**Mathān** or Mithān, 541 n 7, for Baniān, which see.

**Matharah**. See under Mathurah.

**Mathurah**,—a city of Hindūstān, 85 n, 790 n 2.

**Maṣ-Biligh**, or the unfortunate city,—the name given by the Mughals to Rāṣīf, the capital of Bāmiān, after its ruin, 427 n, 918 n, 1012 n 3.

**Mauritania**, 1229 n. See under Maghrib and Maghrib.

**Mauro Castrum** [Malāsah-gird],—a place in Āṣarbāijān in the vicinity of Ahlāṭ, 184 n 9.

**Maṣṣil**,—a district and town of Mesopotamia, lviii, 59 and n 4, 62 and n 7, 148, 149, 169, 208 and n 1, 204 and n, 205 n 6, 207 n 8, 225 n 4, 263, 934 n, 1228, 1232, 1234 n 8, 1237, 1239 n, 1244 n, 1247 n, 1252, 1262 n, 1270, 1272 n 5, 1276 n, 1280 n 5, 1281 n, 1282 n.

**Mavrennahr**, 915 n, for Māwarī-un-Nahr.

**Māwar-un-Nahr**, for Māwarī-un-Nahr, see page lviii.

**Māwarī-un-Nahr** [Transoxiana], the countries beyond the Jihān, lvii, 12 n 2, 19 n 2, 24 and n 2, 25, 26 and n 2, 27 and n 6, 28 and n 8, 31 and n 3, 35 n 6, 44, 52 and n 1, 55 n, 56 n, 57 n, 116 and n 2, 117 and n, 120 and n 2, 122 n 8, 123 n, 124 n 8, 127 n 6, 129 n 8, 139 n, 140 n 5, 147 and n 8, 154 n 2, 155 n, 227, 236 n, 246, 260 and n 7, 264 n, 266, 267, 269, 278 and n 5, 275 and n, 280, 281 n 5, 274 n 5, 275 n, 282, 426 n 6, 434 n 1, 759 n 3, 878 n, 880, 881 n, 883 n, 901 n, 902 n, 903 n, 904 n, 906 n, 907 n, 908 n, 909 n, 911 n, 912 n 9, 914 n, 915 n, 916 n, 918, 921 n, 922 n, 925 n, 926 n, 927 n, 928 n, 978 n, 980 and n 8, 998 n, 1007, 1015 n, 1075 n, 1087 n, 1097 n 7, 1137 n, 1142, 1145 n, 1146, 1153 n, 1186 n, 1194 n, 1216 n, 1217 n, 1218, 1220, 1258 n 8, 1275 n 2, 1292,—app. xviii. [576 n 4,—app. xli.

**Marabad**,—a town of Hindūstān,

**Maradabad**,—a town of Hindūstān, 576 n 4,—app. xxii.

**Mayyā-fārikin** [Martyropolis],—a city in the Diyār-i-Bakr, lix, 226 n 4, 226 n 7, 1262, 1264 n, 1265 and n 9, 1268 and n 9, 1269 n, 1270 and n and n 2 and 3, 1272 n 5, 1273 n 7, 1276 n, 1279, 1280.

**Māzandarān**,—a province of Farsia, 45 n 2, 94, 180 n 7, 241, 242 n 6, 261 n, 274 n 1, 277 and n 5, 279, 280, 286 n, 233 n, 290 n, 291 n, 292, 294 n, 1000 n, 1004, 1028 n, 1063, 1117 n, 1120 n 2, 1121 n, 1188 n and n 3, 1207 n.



**Masir-i-Haṣrat-i-Turkistān**, or **Turkistān** [**Haaret**],—name of I-līgh in the territory of **Tarāz**, 632 n.  
**Mecca**, 835 n 3, for **Makkah**, which see.  
**Meemuna**, 878 n 9, for **Maimand**, which see.  
**Megnah**, the,—a river in south-eastern **Bengal**, 589 n.  
**Meimuna**, 878 n 9, for **Maimand**, which see.  
**Meng-Kūghlāk**,—the Winter Station of the **Meng**, the **Mangshlak** of the maps, 1184 n 9.  
**Meimundin**, 1300 n, for **Maimūn-dujs**, which see.  
**Merke**,—a town in the country of **Ḳarā-Khūṭā**, 910 n.  
**Merou**, for **Marw**, which see.  
**Meru**, for **Marw**, which see.  
**Merv**, for **Marw**, which see.  
**Merv-i-Shāh-Jahān**, 94 n 3, for **Marw-i-Shāh-i-Jahān**, which see.  
**Meshed**, 1232 n 9, for the **Mash**-had of **Tūs** in **Khurāsān**.  
**Mesopotamia**, 135, 136 n, 204 n, 921 n, 1274 n, 1279 n. The **Ja-sirah** of Arab geographers.  
**Mewār**,—a city of **Hindūstān**, near the **Arāvalli** mountains, 705 n 7  
**Mewāt**, the hilly tract of,—in **Hindūstān**, 684, 705 n 7, 706 n 9, 760, 818, 837, 846 n 6, 850, 851  
**Miaferqin**, an error for **Mayyā-fāriqin**.  
**Miā-pūr**,—a place on the river **Gang** near **Burki**, 697 and n, 799 and n 2.  
**Miā-pūri**,—an old place a little to the S. W. of **Hardwār**, 799 n 2  
**Mighani**,—a place in the **Khawar** mountains, 79 n.

**Mighni**, for **Mighani**.

**Mihanah**,—a place in **Khurāsān**, 129 n 2,—called **Maimanah** by Europeans.

**Mihar**, 714 n 9, 733. Same as **Mahir** and **Mihir**, which see.

**Mihir** or **Mihir**,—a place in the **Sagar** and **Narbadah** territories, 657, 713 n 2, 744 n 9, 794, 849 n 8.

See also under **Mihar** and **Mahir**.

**Mihrin**, the,—another name of the river **Sind** [**Indus**], 295 n.

**Mihrin-dujs**,—a fortress in the **Khurāsān** of the **Mulāhidah**, 1192 n.

**Minār of Kutb Shāhib**,—in the capital city of **Dihli**, 520 n, 621 n 6, 623 n,—app. iv.

**Mingrelia**,—a country south of the **Caucasus**, 860 n 9.

**Mirat**, 688 n 3, 812 n 3. See also under **Mirath**.

**Mirath** or **Mirat**,—a city east of **Dihli**, the **Meerut** of the maps, 469 and n 9, 491, 515, 516 n 2, 702 and n 3, 799,—app. ii, iv, v. See also under **Mirat**.

**Murwan** or **Nirwān**,—a plain in the territory of **Sind**, 1047 n 4.

**Mūr**, 13, 47 n 7, 55 n 1, 134, 137, 139, 140 and n 2 and 5, 163 n 5, 203, 204 n, 205 n 4, 206, 208 n 2, 209 and n and n 6, 210 and n, 211 and n 9, 212 and n 1, 213 and n 3, 214, 216 and n 3, 217 n, 218, 219, 222, 223 and n and n 4 and 5, 224 and n 8, 225 n 4, 227 n 9, 228 and n 4 229 n 5, 230, 299, 303 n 7, 470 n, 597, 616 n 2, 766, 796, 1152 n, 1193 n. 1246 n 5, 1254 n, 1256 n 6, 1259 n 3, 1260 n, 1261 n, 1265 n 9, 1275 n 3, 1276 n, 1277 n,

- 1378 n, 1380 n 5, 1381 n, 1383 n.  
See also under Egypt and Khilrah.  
[Mīriah.]
- Mīriah. See under the Diyār-i Mithān or Mithan, 541 n 7, 622 n 8, for Banān, which see.
- Mithan-kot,—a place on the Indus, 541 n 7.
- Mogan, plain of, 996 n, 1001 n. See under Mughān.
- Mogholistān. See under Mughalistan or Mughūlistān.
- Mogolistan. See under Mughalistan or Mughūlistān.
- Mongolia, 980 n. See also under Mughalistan or Mughūlistān.
- Montreal,—a town in the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem, 310 n.
- Mooltan, for Multān, which see.
- Morang,—a tract of country in Central Asia, 1044 n.
- Morevia, 1187 n.
- Mosai, for Maupil.
- Mosdok,—the chief city of the Ocherkassians, 999 n.
- Mū-āwand,—or
- Mū-āwandur,—a mountain range of Turkistān, 942 n.
- Mādah, 627 and n 7. See under Māndūdah.
- Mughal-Tāgh,—a mountain in the territory of Fargānah, north of Khujand, 921 n.
- Mughalistan or Mughūlistān [Mongolia], 271 n, 380 n, 381 n, 382 n, 383 n, 389 n, 390 n, 395 n, 396 n, 398 n, 399 n, 401 n 1, 1033 n, 1069 n, 1091 n, 1099 n, 1103 n, 1112 n 9, 1127 n, 1128 n, 1149 n, 1174 n 5, 1217 n, 1256 n 8. Also styled Jatah.
- Mughān, plain of,—on the Caspian in Asarbāijān, 995 n, 996 n, 1001 n.
- Mughūlistān. See under Mughalistan.
- Mukir,—another name of Baihak in Zāwulistān, 67 n 3, 87 n.
- Mukrān,—a territory between Sind and Kirmān, xiii, 38 n 2, 192 and n 4, 244, 263 and n 9, 264, 295 n, 390, 400, 534 and n 1, 616 n, 632, 934 n, 1074 n, 1075 n.
- Mukrānūt or the Mukrān, 296 n. See under Mukrān.
- Mulhidistān,—territory of the Mulhidah, 394 and n 1, 1187 and n 6, 1196, 1206, 1207 n. See also under the Kūhistān.
- Mūli Sāng,—a fortified city in the country of Tinguish, in Turkistān, 1220 n.
- Multān,—a district and town in the country of Sind, xiii, xvi, 1, 35 n, 36 n 2, 91 n 2, 110, 114 n, 117 n, 119, 120 and n 1, 167, 293, 294 n, 297, 321 n 7, 449 and n 1 and 2, 451, 453 n 4, 454 n, 455 n, 456, 466 n 1, 476 n, 477 n, 482 n, 489, 491, 529 n 4, 530, 532 and n 1, 538 n, 535 and n, 536 n, 538 n, 539, 540 n, 541 and n 7, 542 n 9, 543, 610 n, 611, 612, 614 n 8, 622 n, 623 n 9, 628, 633 and n 6 and 8, 634 n 9, 644 n 7, 645 and n, 646 n, 653 n 9, 668 n, 676 n 9, 677 n 5 and 6, 678 n 7, 686 n 7, 687 and n 9, 688 and n and n 8 and 4, 689 and n, 692 and n 3, 695 and n 9 and 2, 696 n and n 3, 707 and n 6, 711 and n 4, 714 n 9, 730 n 1, 723 and n 1, 725 and n 6, 727 and n 5 and 6, 728, 730 n 6, 731, 746, 747, 758,

- 781 and  $\alpha$  9 and 2, 793 and  $\alpha$  3, 793 and  $\alpha$  and  $\alpha$  7, 794 and  $\alpha$  and  $\alpha$  2, 795, 796, 793, 795  $\alpha$ , 810  $\alpha$ , 812  $\alpha$  2, 816  $\alpha$  2, 822 and  $\alpha$  9 and 1, 823 and  $\alpha$  3, 825  $\alpha$  6, 840  $\alpha$  2, 844 and  $\alpha$  1, 845  $\alpha$ , 859  $\alpha$  3, 860, 908  $\alpha$ , 1074  $\alpha$ , 1129, 1130  $\alpha$ , 1133, 1153, 1154 and  $\alpha$  1, 1155  $\alpha$  6, 1156 and  $\alpha$  7, 1174, 1201  $\alpha$ , 1202  $\alpha$ , 1224  $\alpha$ .
- Mūmin-ābād, —a fortress in the Kūhistan of the Mulāhidah, 1303.
- Maudore, 611  $\alpha$  3, for Mandawar, which see.
- Mūdādah or Mūdab, —a town of Hindūstān, 627 and  $\alpha$  1.
- Muner, —a place at the confluence of the Soane [Sop] with the Ganges, 550, 551  $\alpha$ .
- Mīrang, the, —a river of Hindūstān, 560  $\alpha$  4.
- Murdhan, —or
- Murdhan-koṭ, 561  $\alpha$  3, for Burdhan-koṭ, which see.
- Murgh-ih, 1009  $\alpha$ , the later name of Marw-ar-Rād, which see.
- Murgh-ih, the, —a river of Khurāsān falling into the Oxus, xxi, 235  $\alpha$  2, 246 and  $\alpha$  2, 324  $\alpha$ , 363, 379, 394, 467  $\alpha$ , 514  $\alpha$  4, 1010  $\alpha$ .
- Murghah, —a fortress in the district of Marw, 1034  $\alpha$ .
- Murv, —and
- Murve, 472  $\alpha$ , for Marw.
- Mūgh, —a town near the banks of the eastern branch of the upper Euphrates, 1275  $\alpha$  2. [ivill.]
- Mūḡil, an error for Maḡḡil, see page

## N.

- Nāb, —a town between Fīrāz-koh and Hirāt in the valley of the Hariw-ar-Rād, 358.
- Nadiya, —a town in the province of Bengal, —app xiv
- Nadole, in Gujārāt, 523  $\alpha$ . See Nadāl.
- Nadūl, —a town in the territory of Gujārāt, 521  $\alpha$ , 523  $\alpha$ .
- Nāe, —a district in the territory of Bāmīān, 414 and  $\alpha$  6.
- Nāe, —a fortress in the district of Wajiristān, 108 and  $\alpha$  6, 324  $\alpha$ , 357  $\alpha$  1.
- Nilemān country, the, 949  $\alpha$ , 981  $\alpha$ , 1145  $\alpha$ , 1219  $\alpha$ .
- Nagāwān. See under Nakawān or Nakiwān.
- Nāg-awr, —a district and town in the territory of Siwālikh, 200 and  $\alpha$  2, 469  $\alpha$ , 520  $\alpha$ , 549, 611  $\alpha$  3, 616, 668  $\alpha$ , 685  $\alpha$  4, 689 and  $\alpha$  5, 695 and  $\alpha$  2, 696  $\alpha$ , 699, 702  $\alpha$  3, 759, 767, 780, 781 and  $\alpha$  9, 783  $\alpha$  9, 792 and  $\alpha$  1, 796 and  $\alpha$  3, 827  $\alpha$  5, 829, 830.
- Nāghawr, fortress of, 110. See under Nāg-awr.
- Nag-mati, the. See the Bag-mati and the Beg-mati
- Nagoor, 520  $\alpha$ , for Nāg-awr, which see.
- Nagor, 565  $\alpha$  6, for Lakhap-or, which see.
- Nagore, 611  $\alpha$  3, for Nāg-awr, which see.
- Nagrahār, 96 and  $\alpha$  2, 1016. See under Naugrahār.

- Nāḥsiyah**,—a town in the district of Baghdād, 1242 n.
- Nahr-i-'Isā**, the,—a canal or stream in the district of Baghdād, 1240 n.
- Nahr-i-Shēr**, the,—a canal or stream in the neighbourhood of Baghdād, 1241 and n 1.
- Nahrwālah**,—a city in the territory of Gujarāt, 82, 88 n 2, 114 n, 294 n, 451, 470, 491, 516, 517 n, 518 n, 519 n, 520 n, 521 n, 522 n, 545 n 5, 602 and n 2, 1074 n.
- Nahrwān**,—a town in the district of Baghdād, 62.
- Nakhah**, for **Nakhshah**, the station between **Hirāt** and **Ghūr**, which see.
- Nāhūn** or **Nāhun**,—a town in the **Silmūr** or **Sirmūr** territory in **Hindustān**, 839 n 9.
- Najaf**,—a town of 'Irāk where the **Khalifah 'Alī** is buried, 1243 n.
- Najās** or **Nakhās**,—a town in the 'Irāk-i-'Ajām, 995 n.
- Nakawān** or **Nakāwān**,—a village in the district of **Pāyal** in **Hindustān**, 640 and n 4.
- Nakhās**. See under **Najās**.
- Nakhistān**,—a tract of country in **Turkistān**, 70 and n 6.
- Nakhjūr**,—a town in the country of **Ghūr**, xlix.
- Nakhjūān**,—a town in **Ārbaḥjūān**, 296 n, 997 n.
- Nakhshah**,—a town in **Māwarā-un-Nahr**, 46, 274 n 1, 1004 n 1, 1034 n.
- Nakhshah**,—a station between **Hirāt** and **Ghūr**, 325 n.
- Nālah-i-Biāh**, the, 533 n, another name of the **Biāh**, which see.
- Naman**, 1319 n. See under the **Nēmān** country.
- Namān-Karah**, 944 n. See under **Samān-Kaharah**. [**i-Nu'mān**.]
- Namān Pushpa**. See under **Pughshah**.
- Namāz-gūh**,—name of a gate of **Bamarḳand**, 979 n.
- Nāmīān**,—a district in the territory of **Khurāsān**, 401 n, 1030 n, 1021 n 8, 1082 n. Same as **Bāmīān**, which see.
- Nandah Diwī**,—one of the peaks overlooking the **Kumī'ān** mountains, 799 n 2.
- Nandanah**,—a district and fortress in the **Sind-Sāgar Do-ābah** of the **Panjāb**, 85 n, 534 and n 1, 535 n, 536 n, 537 n, 538 n, 539 n, 623 n 2, 637 and n 9, 678 and n 7, 679 n 6, 750, 815 n 6, 816 n 5, 1131 n.
- Nandanah**, the,—a small river in the district of **Fāṭh-i-Jang** in the **Panjāb**, 537 n.
- Nandanpūr**,—a small district north of **Nandanah**, 537 n.
- Nandna**, 678 n 7, for **Nandanah**, which see.
- Nandua-tari**,—a fortress in the territory of **Mukrān**, 534 n 1.
- Nandūnah**, fortress of, 537 n, for **Nandanah**, which see.
- Nang-mati**, the. See the **Bag-mati** and the **Beg-mati**.
- Nanguihār**, 94 n 2, for **Nengrahār** or **Nagrahār**, which see.
- Nangrahār**, originally called **Nek-anhār**,—a district immediately south of the **Kābul** river, 1, 96 and n 2, 540 n, 1015 n, 1016, 1022 n, 1043 n 1, 1044 n, 1103 n. Also called **Nagraiār**.
- Nanking**, 956 n, another name of the city of **Taiming**, which see.

- Narlin**, 459 n 7, 537 n, 635 n 4, for *Tarā'in*, which see.
- Nāran-go-e**,—or
- Nāran-ko-e**,—a district of Hindūstān, 572 and n 7, 577.
- Narbadah**,—a territory of Hindūstān, 744 n 2.
- Narbadah**, the,—a river of Hindūstān, 588 n, 853 n 6.
- Nārdin** [Mārdin?],—a city in the *Diyr-i-Bakr*, 1152 n.
- Nārdin**, 85 n, 86 n, 537 n, 678 n 7, for *Nandanah*, which see.
- Nārīn**, the,—a river of Mughūlistān, 800 n.
- Nārkotī**, 572 n 7, for *Nāran-go-e* or *Nāran-ko-e*, which see.
- Nārūl**,—a town of Hindūstān, 730.
- Naṣībīn**,—a town in Mesopotamia, 1264 n 4.
- Naṣir-koh** of *Tāl-kān*,—or
- Naṣr-koh**,—a fortress of *Tāl-kān* in the territory of *Khurāsān*, 94 n 3, 993 n, 1003, 1005 and n 3, 1006, 1008, 1010, 1012, 1013.
- Nava deva kala**,—a town close to *Rājgir* about four miles S. E. of *Kanauj*, 680 n.
- Neh**,—a district and town in the territory of *Nimroz*, 196, 199, 200, 1062 and n 4, 1204.
- Nehawend**, 996 n, for *Nihāwand*, which see.
- Nek-anbār**, 1, 1022 n, 1043 n 1, the original name of *Naugrahār*, which see.
- Nek-Nihār**, 1, same as *Naugrahār*, which see. [Nipāl.]
- Nepāl**, 737 n 2. See also under *Nephugard*,—the name of *Mayyā-fārīkīn* [Martyropolis] in the Armenian language, 1270 n.
- Nema**, 993 n, for *Nisā*, which see.
- New Cairo**, 140 n 2. See also under *Ḳāhirah*.
- New Khulja**,—a town in Mughūlistān, 920 n.
- Nicaea**, the city of *Nisā* in *Khurāsān*, 1055 n.
- Nigāristān**,—a fortress of *Gharjis-tān*, 1199 n.
- Nihāwand**,—a town in the '*Irāk-i-'Ajam*', 307, 995 n, 996 n.
- Nihāhab**, for *Nakhhāb*, the station between *Hirāt* and *Ghūr*, which see.
- Nikālah**,—a place near *Lāhor*, 294 n.
- Nīl**, the. See under the Nile.
- Nīl-āb**, territory of the *Nīl-āb* or river of *Kābul*, 1182 n.
- Nīl-āb**,—a ferry on the river *Sind*, 291 n, 292 n, 454 n.
- Nīl-āb**, the,—the river of *Kābul*, 78 n, 486 n 5. See also under the *Kābul*.
- Nīl-Āb**, the,—another name of the river *Sind*, 1020 n.
- Nile**, the, 140 and n 2 and 5, 212 n, 228 n 4.
- Nim-ros**,—name by which the country of *Sijistān* is styled, 12 n 5, 16, 20 and n 3, 24, 84, 154 n 2, 183 and n 2, 185 n, 186 and n, 187, 188 and n 7, 189 and n 8, 190, 191, 194, 195, 196 and n 5, 197, 198, 199 n 7, 200, 201, 223, 287, 317, 378, 390 n 6, 391 and n 1, 636 n, 911 n 6, 925 n, 967 and n 3, 1119, 1120, 1199 n, 1200 n, 1203, 1204 n 1.
- Ninduna**, 537 n, for *Nandanah*, which see.
- Ningīsh** or *Nīngtā*,—a country

- adjoining Khiti or Ohin, 1067 n, 1216 n, 1217 n, 1219 n, 1220 n.  
See also under Ting-nih.
- Ming-hya,—the Chinese name of Tingli, a city in the territory of Ting-küt or K'ishin, 1085 n.
- Mingia, 1216 n. See under Ming-i-h.
- Nipāl or Nepāl, valley of, 561 n 1, 567 n 1, 639 n 3, 737 n 9.
- Nirwān or Mirwan,—a plain in the territory of Bind, 1047 n 4.
- Nirwul or Nirwar, 690 n 1. See under Nurwul or Nurwar.
- Nisā,—a district and town in the territory of Khurāsān, 116 n 3, 117 n, 119, 121, 122, 123 n, 124 n, 125, 129 n, 262 n 1, 266 n 6, 391, 458 n 4, 491, 749 n 4, 993 n, 1081 n, 1083 n, 1087 n, 1055 n, 1060 n 5.
- Nisatāh,—the place where the Landsey Sind join the Kābul river, 79 n. [see.]
- Nishābūr, same as Nishāpūr, which
- Nishapoor, 963 n, for Nishāpūr, which see.
- Nishāpor, for Nishāpūr, which see.
- Nishāpūr or Nishābūr,—a district and town of Khurāsān, 13 and n 8, 14 and n 1, 15, 16, 17, 22 and n 7, 23, 36, 42 and n 3, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47 and n 6, 48 and n 4, 49, 50 and n 4, 51 n 6, 59, 70 n 8, 71 n 5, 74 n 3, 76 n 2, 80 n 5, 81 n, 89 n 8, 94 n 2, 119, 122 and n 3, 124 n, 125 and n 8, 128 n, 130 and n, 131 n 7, 132 n 9, 138 n 8, 181, 182, 193, 196, 238 n 8, 240 n, 245 n 7, 250 and n 6, 251 n 9, 252 and n 4, 254, 255 and n 7, 273 n, 276 and n, 277 and n 5, 280, 286 and n 6, 346, 375 n, 380, 381 and n 2, 4 and 5, 385, 391 and n 3, 396 and n 3, 418, 491, 515, 636 n, 908 n, 963 n, 987, 990 n, 990 n, 992, 993 n, 1000 n, 1014 n 2, 1057 n 3, 1028, 1061, 1083 n, 1084 n, 1085 n, 1096 n 1, 1037 n, 1049 n 2, 1053 n 8, 1116 n, 1117 n, 1126 n 6, 1212, 1226.
- Nisibin. See under Nasibin.
- Nebo-dwip, the former name of Nūdiāh, 559 n.
- Nocrocoah,—or
- Nocrocoah, for Nukrah-koh, which see.
- No-po-ti-po-kin-lo, Chinese name of Nava deva kala, which see, 680 n.
- North China, 940 n.
- North Western Provinces, the, 1131 n.
- No-ghahr,—a town in Āserbāijān, 1286 n 9.
- Nūbah, the Nubia of Europeans, 214 n 6.
- Nubia. See under Nūbah.
- Nūdawār, the. See under the Nūd-wār.
- Nuddeah, 553 n 7, for Nūdiāh, which see.
- Nūdiāh or Nūdiā, capital of the Hindā State of Lakhanawāṭi, before the Muhammadian conquest, lxi, 620, 554, 557 and n 4, 558 n 7, 559 and n and n 2 and 3, 574 and n 6,—app. xxiii, xxv, xxvi.
- Nūd-wār or Nūdawār, the,—a river of Khwārazm, 673 n 2.
- Nukrah-koh,—a mountain of Tukhristān of Balkh, in Khurāsān, 1009 n, 1010 n, 1011 n.
- Nu'mān, Pashtāh or mound of,—

in the territory of *Khurāsān*, 1009 and n 7, 1011 n, 1045 n. See also under the *Faḡhān-i-Nā'mān*.  
*Nūr*,—a fortress in the territory of *Qhūr*, 326 n. See also under *Tār*.  
*Nūr*,—a district in the territory of *Bukhārā*, 117 n, 118 and n 4, 120, 978 n. [473 n 2.  
*Nūr*, the,—a river of *Khwārazm*.  
*Nūr*, the,—a stream falling into the *Kābul* river, xiv, 77 n, 78 n.  
*Nūr*, Darah of,—valley of the river *Nūr*, xivi, 78 n.

*Nurokīrūt*, the,—78 n, for *Nūr* and *Kīrūt*, two streams falling into the *Kābul* river.  
*Nurwal* or *Nurwar*,—a place forty miles east of *Bhūpāl*, 690 and n and n 8 and 1, 691 n, 722 n 7, 824 n 7, 885 and n 4.  
*Nurwar*, 690 and n and n 8 and 1. See also under *Nurwal*.  
*Nā-shā*,—a city in the territory of *Khātā*, 966 n.  
*Nurāl*, 631 n, for *Nadāl* in *Gujarāt*, which see.

# O.

*Ohan*,—a tract of country in *Mughālistān*, 1219 n.  
*Ohind*, 78 n, for *Ohand*, a town on the Upper *Indus*.  
*Oke*, wrong name of the fortress of *Ūk*, 1123 n.  
*Old Cairo*,—the *al-Mīr* of the natives, 140 n 2.  
*Old Kaldja*,—a town on the river *Il* in *Mughālistān*, 919 n.  
*O-li-ma-lu*,—the Chinese name of *Ālmāliḡh*, 965 n.  
*Onow*, the,—a river in the country of *Khātā* or *Qhān*, 1218 n.  
*Ooch*,—the name of *Ūchahāh* as spelt by Europeans, 641 n 6.  
*Oocha*, 460 n, for *Ūchahāh*, which see.  
*Oong*,—a town on the western bank of the *Indus*, 78 n.  
*Ordu Balik*, 1189 n, for *Urdū-Bīliḡh*, which see.  
*Orontes*, the,—called *al-'Asī* by the Arab geographers, 1276 n.

*Ossoto*,—the country of the *As* as called by Europeans, 1165 n, 1169 n.  
*Onala*, fortress of, 1019 n. See under *Wāllān* and *Wāllāhtān*.  
*Oncho*,—the name of *Ūchahāh* as spelt by Europeans, 641 n 6.  
*Onde*, 550 n 6, same as *Awadh*, which see.  
*Onkāur*, 1063 n, for *Ākābir* or *Ākāir* of *Turkistān*.  
*Ourga*, 895 n. See under *Ulās-i-Aurgah* or *Urgah*.  
*Ousaneth*,—a fortress of *Qharjistān*, 1001 n.  
*Oxford*, 288 n 2.  
*Oxus*, the, xix, xlix, 25 n 3, 76 n 1, 84 n 2, 123 n, 278 n, 292 n, 428 n 6, 879 n, 882 n, 903 n, 921 n, 995 n, 1009 n, 1010 n, 1017 n, 1024 n 2, 1044 n. See also under the *Jihān*.  
*Oxyartes*,—a *Bākhtrian* stronghold, 1054 n 2.

## P.

**Pachoham**,—a province of Bangālah, on the west side of the river Ganges, 586 n.

**Padmāwati** or **Bādwati**,—South Bihār probably, 592 n.

**Paiwar**,—a town in the province of Karmān, 499 n.

**Paiwar**,—a darah or valley in the province of Karmān, 499 n.

**Paiwār Pass**,—on the route from Ghaznā to the Indus, 290 n. 4.

**Pakkā-kot**,—a place on the route between Khush-āb and Makbaḍ on the Sind, 588 n.

**Paklāṭ**, 1043 n. 1. Same as **Pakli**, which see.

**Pakli**,—a tract east of the Indus, 1043 n. 1, 1045 n.

**Palamāo**,—a district in the territory of Bhātāb, west of Bangālah, 588 n.

**Palestine**, 214 n. 8, 326 n., 470 n. See also under Filistin.

**Palī**,—a town in the territory of Gujarāt, 521 n.

**Palri**,—a place in Gujarāt close to the Aravalli hills, 521 n.

**Paltārah**,—a territory in Hindūstān, 713 n. 2. See also under Baltārah.

**Palwal**,—a place in the Bharat-pūr territory in Hindūstān, 726, 790

**Pamir**, mountains of,—in Central Asia, 426 n. 6.

**Panḍūah**,—a town in the territory of Bangālah, 590 n., 591 n.

**Pānipat**,—a town of Hindūstān, 505 n. 8, 679.

**Panj-Āb**, the,—the five rivers of the Panjāb, 609 n. 1, 614, 811 n. 8, 1155 n. 6.

**Panjāb**, the, xiv, xxiv, xxvii, li, 79 n.

95 n. 4, 96 n. 1, 112 n. 3, 113 n., 114 n., 121 n. 7, 125 n. 5, 290 n. 4, 291 n., 293 n. 5, 326 n., 453 n. 4, 454 n., 455 n., 466 n. 1, 469 n., 477 n., 503 and n. 8, 505 n., 518 n., 526 n. 8, 527 n., 533, 535 n., 537 n., 539 n., 608 n. 8, 609 n. 1 and 5, 610 n. 6, 633 n. 6, 644 n. 7, 645 n., 668 n. 9, 678 n., 687 n. 1, 689 n., 696 n. 3, 713 n. 2 and 6, 716 n. 5, 730, 784 n. 4, 811 n. 8, 823 n. 9, 860 n., 869 n. 1, 905 n., 997 n., 1015 n., 1043 n. 1, 1074 n., 1144 n. 6, 1152 n., 1155 n. 6, 1184 n., 1202 n., 1225 n.,—app. xxi.

**Panj-āb**,—a ford over the river Āmūsh or Jihūn, 988 n.

**Panj-āb-i-Sind**, the,—the five rivers of Sind, 503 n. 7 and 8.

**Panj-Angusht**,—a halting-place in the 'Irāk-i-'Ajam, 1231 n., 1238 n. 8.

**Panj-dih**,—a town in the territory of Khurāsān, 378, 391.

**Panj-hir**, the,—a river of Afghānistān, 288 n. 3.

**Panj-kora**, the,—a river in the Swat country, 1045 n.

**Panj-Nad**, the,—or the five rivers, 1155 n. 6. Same as the **Panj-Āb**, which also see.

**Pāpin**,—a town in the district of Nangrahār, 1044 n.

**Pāror Hār**,—a place in the territory of Khurāsān, between Hirāt and Ghūr, 325 n.

**Pāras**, the,—or

**Pāras-Kol**, the,—east of Mughūlistān, 890 n.

**Pārāyān**,—a place in the territory of Khurāsān, between Hirāt and Ghūr, 325 n.



- Paris, viii, 68 n 4, 189 n 7, 316 n 4, 335 n 9, 340 n 1, 354 n 7, 376 n 2, 410 n 5, 436 n 5, 438 n 1, 438 n 6, 491 n 2, 567 n 2, 568 n 7, 573 n 7, 573 n 2, 581 n, 605 n 1, 625 n 7 and 8, 637 n 9, 672 n 2, 674 n 4, 684 n 2, 695 n 1, 702 n 9, 870 n, 1071 n 2, 1127 n 2, 1262 n 8, 1292 n 8,—app. xv.
- Parbhāwar or Barhābūr,—a city on the bank of the river Sind, 76 n 2, 80 n, 433 n, 523 n, 1015 n, 1022 n, 1042 n 1, 1047 n 4, 1062 n. See also under Barhābūr, Barhāwar and Barhor.
- Parhor, 540 n. See under Barhāwar and Parbhāwar.
- Pārs-kol, the,—east of Mughliṣṭān, 890 n.
- Parthia, 1188 n. Now the 'Irāk-i-'Ajam, which see.
- Parwān,—another name of Barwān, the town between Ghazni and Balkh, which see, 238 n 2.
- Parwān or Farwān,—a town of Afghānistān, on the Panj-hir river, 265 n 2.
- Parwān Pass, the,—a narrow valley north of Kābul, xlix, 265 n 2, 269 n, 290 n, 1020 n, 1042 n 5, 1075 n. Also called Barwān.
- Parwān Pass, the,—over the Hindū-Kūsh, 286 n 2.
- Pārwati or Bhawāni, temple of,—in Amarkantak of Jīj-nagar, 598 n.
- Pār-yāb, of Turkistān, 126 n. See under Fār-yāb.
- Patan [Paghoham],—a province of Bangālah, on the west side of the river Ganges, 536 n. [tah.
- Pateetah, 550 n 5. See under Pati-
- Pathadah, 645 n 4, for the fortress of Tabarhindah in Hindūstān.
- Pathindah, fortress of,—capital of Jai-pāl, the Bādshāh of Hind, 458 n, 462 n, 603 n 6, 645 n 4. See also under Bāthindah and Bhatindah.
- Patāli,—a town on the southern bank of the Ganges, 551 n.
- Patitah,—a town of Hindūstān, between the Ganges and the Karam-Nāmah river, 550 n 5 and 6, 551 n.
- Pau-ning-Fā, 1222 n. The present name of Lan-chew, which see.
- Pāyal or Piyil,—a town on the route from Dihli to Lādīnāh, 640 and n 2.
- Piyil. See under Pāyal.
- Pe-che-li,—a province of Khitā or Chin, 1219 n.
- Pekin,—the capital of China, 920 n, 956 n, 1090 n, 1219 n.
- Pelusion, the modern Balbis in Egypt, 212 n 1.
- Persia, 14 n 2, 70, 68 n 7, 295 n, 309 n, 426 n 6, 442 n, 447 n 9, 694 n 4, 991 n, 1003 n 5, 1010 n, 1011 n, 1064 n 2, 1188 n 6, 1264 n, 1279 n, 1292 n —app. xxi. See also under Irān.
- Persian Gulf, the, 179 and n 2, 1245 n 4.
- Peshāwar, 1, 76 n 2, 78 n, 70 n, 81 n, 285 and n 5, 391, 452 n 4, 465 n, 510 n, 518 n, 535 n, 538 n, 674 n, 1002 and n 5, 1013, 1016 n 2, 1021 n 8.
- Peshawir, for Peshāwar, which see.
- Peshawur, for Peshāwar, which see.
- Pharwāla,—a hilly tract in the Salt Range, 1120 n. [1136 n 9.
- Pian-kun,—a city of Khitā or Chin,

**Pish** or **Pish**,—a country north of the **Kābul** river, 431 n 5, 1044 n.  
**Pleochipali**, 918 n, for **Bish-Bāligh**, which see.  
**Pind-i-Dādan Khān**,—a town in the district of **Nandanaah**, 537 n.  
**Pindār** or **Bindār**,—a fortress in **Gharjistan**, 842 See also under **Bindār**.  
**Pinjan**,—a place near **Turfan** in **Turkistan**, 916 n.  
**Pirāmbur**,—a city in **Assyria** on the **Euphrates**, 135 n 1.  
**Pir-Pinjāl**,—a range of mountains in **Kashmīr**, 1044 n, 1132 n.  
**Pishawar**, 518 n, for **Peahāwar**, which see.  
**Pitan**,—a city in the territory of **Gadhah-Katankah**, in **Hindūstān**, 588 n.  
**Piwar**, 499 n, for the **Piwar darah**, which see.  
**Po-chu**, the,—name of the **Oxus** with the Chinese, 426 n 6.  
**Poland**, 1165 n, 1166 n, 1167 n, 1171 n.  
**Po-la-si**,—name of **Pārs** with the Chinese, 1011 n.  
**Pragiyotisha**,—the ancient name of **Gowahāṭṭy** in Western **Kāmrūd**, 563 n.  
**Pratah Minarah**,—**Fallen Minār**,—a fortress on the western bank of the **Indus**, 78 n, 1043 n 1.  
**Precep**,—a town in the country of the **Urūs**, 1000 n.  
**Pul-i-Ahangaran**,—a place between

**Ghūr** and **Gharnia** near unto **Firūz-koh**, 1047 and n 5.  
**Pul-i-'Ashikān**,—a stone bridge across the river **Hirmand**, 355 n 6.  
**Pul-i-Kārwan**,—a place in the vicinity of 'Alī-ābād of **Balkh**, in **Khurāsān**, 129 n.  
**Pul-i-Yak Tak**,—an One-arch Bridge in the city of **Ghannān**, 445 and n 1.  
**Punjāb**, the, 79 n. See also under the **Panjāb**.  
**Purab**,—a province of **Bangālāh**, on the east side of the river **Ganges**, 586 n.  
**Purb**, 586 n. See under **Purab**.  
**Purhāwar**, 483 n, 533 n. See under **Pārāhāwar** [**Purhāwar**.  
**Purhor** See under **Burhor** and **Posht**,—a name of a dependency of **Bādghais**, in **Khurāsān**, 580 n 9.  
**Pushtah Afros** [the **Burning Mound**], in **Bādghais** of **Khurāsān**, 580 and n 9.  
**Pushtah-i-Nu'mān**, the,—a hill in the vicinity of **Tal-kān** of **Khurāsān**, xlix, 1006 and n 7, 1011 n, 1012, 1013 and n 8, 1020 n, 1023, 1027, 1045 n, 1049 n 2, 1071, 1073, 1079 n 3, 1082 n.  
**Putan**,—the **Rajput State** of **Pītan** (or **Anhilwārā Patlan**) in **Gujarat**, 467 n, 520 n.  
**Pyen Iyang**,—the name of the city of **Taiming** with the Chinese, 95 n.

## Q

Quang-si,—a province in the country of Khâi or Qhîn, 1222 n.  
 Quey-chew,—a Chinese town on the borders of Hâ-quang, 1222 n.

Quey-lin-Fû, capital of the Chinese province of Quang-si, 1222 n.

## R

Rabât-i-Mârah,—a tract of country in the territory of Khwârazm, 121.

Râd, 585 n 5, same as Râl and Râph, which see.

Râdakan,—a plain in the territory of Tûs in Khurâsân, 247 n, 256 n, 991 n, 1196 n, 1287 n.

Râdîân, 991 n, wrong name given to the plain of Râdakan, which see.

Rafûk [Riwâk?] i-Yahud,—a mahal-lat or quarter in the city of May-yîfârîkîn [Martyropolis], 1269 n.

Râgh-i-Wejz,—a plain in the territory of Ghur, 372 n 1.

Râgh-i-Zar,—or

Râgh-i-Zenir,—a plain in the territory of Ghur, 372 and n 8.

Rahab, the,—a river of Hindustân, 697.

Rahî, 521 n, for the town of Pali in Gujarat.

Rai,—a district and town in the 'Ilak-i-'Ajam, 1, 10, 16 and n 2, 33, 43, 47, 53 n 6, 55 n 1, 56, 59, 61 n 1, 62, 81 n, 93, 121, 124 n, 125 n n 4 and 1, 132 n 9, 136 n, 143 n 2, 144 n, 166, 167 n 8, 171 n, 176 n 1, 177 n 6, 180 n 7, 249 n 3, 266 n, 276 n, 277 n 5, 278 n, 283 n 9, 290 n, 297 n 9, 990 n, 991 n,

994 n, 995 n, 996 n, 1207 n, 1208 n, 1228 n, 1262 n, 1278.

Râjah Hoqâsy's castle,—on the western bank of the Indus, 78 n.

Râjgh,—a fortress to the S.-E. of Kanauj, 680 n.

Râj-mandri,—a district of Hindûstân, 592 n.

Râjpûtnah, 728 n 3.

Râj-Shâhi,—a district of Hindûstân, 585 n 7. [see.

Rakah, 12 n 6, for Rakk'ah, which Rakk'ah,—a town in Mesopotamia, 12 and n 6.

Râl [Râph],—one of the two wings of the territory of Lakhapawati, on the western side of the river Gang, 585 and n 5 and 7, 737 and n 7.

Ramhek, 487 n, for Dam-yak, a place west of the Jhilam, on the route to Ghaznin.

Rumûâ,—a town in the Di-yâr-i-Bakr, 1152 n.

Râm pur,—a town in the Râj-Shâhi district, 585 n 7.

Râm Shahr,—a city in the territory of Sijistân in Khurâsân, 20 n 3. See also under Râm-Shahrîstân.

Râm-Shahrîstân,—an ancient city in the territory of Sijistân in

**Khuristān**, 1122 n. See also under **Rām-Shāhr**.

**Rām-takht**,—a town on the western bank of the Indus, 78 n.

**Rang**,—a fortress of **Gusarwān**, in the territory of **Khuristān**, 1003, 1073 and n 4.

**Rangamahat**,—one of the chief cities of **Bangālāh**, 586 n.

**Rangamati**,—or

**Rangamatty**,—a district of **Bangālāh**, 586 n 9

**Rang-pūr**,—a town in the territory of **Bengal**, 570 n 9.

**Rantabbūr** or **Rantabbhūr**,—a fortress of **Hindūstān**, 517 n, 519 n, 543 n 2, 591 n, 610, 611 n 9, 623 n 9, 627, 642, 684, 685, 713, 818 and n 4, 819, 824 n 3, 860.

**Rantabbhūr**, same as **Rantabbhūr**, which see.

**Rāḥ** or **Rāl**,—one of the two wings of the territory of **Lakṣapawati**, on the western side of the river **Gang**, 585 and n 6 and 7, 737 and n 7.

**Rāiūt**, mountains of,—a name given by mistake to certain mountains in **Ghūr**, xlix, 318 n 2, 319 n 3, 441 n 7.

**Rāṣīf** or **Rāṣīf**,—the chief town in the district of **Bāmiān**, xlix, 427 n, 434 n, 435 n, 1025 n. Also called **Arṣuf**.

**Rāsin**,—a fortress in the district of **Māwāh**, in **Hindūstān** 567 n 4, 586 n.

**Ratan-pūr**,—a fortress in **Jhīr-Kundah**, north of **Jāj-nagar**, 567 n 4, 583 n, 591 n.

**Rawā**,—a town in the **Diyār-i-Bakr**, [**Mesopotamia**], 136 n.

**Rāwah** or **Rāwī**, the,—a river of **Lohor** in the **Panjab**, 726 and n 3, 811 and n 3, 1156 n 7. See also under the **Rāwī**.

**Rāwal Pindī**,—a Division under the **Panjab Government**, 96 n 4, 537 n, 538 n, 1191 n.

**Rāwan Hīda**, Lake,—the fountain-head of the **Sutlaḥ**, 737 n 9.

**Rāwī** or **Rāwah**, the,—a river of **Lohor** in the **Panjab**, 460 n 3, 811 and n 3, 1131 n, 1154 n 1, 1155 n 6, 1156 n 7. See also under the **Rāwah**.

**Rayi**, 906 n, for **Rai**, which see.

**Rāz**,—a place near **Sabawīr**, xlix, 385 n 2, 429 n 4.

**Rasān**,—a tract of country in the territory of **Ghūr**, 326 n.

**Red-River**—**Sar-kh-rād**,—the,—a tributary of the **Kābal** river, 79 n.

**Reg-i-Gunjaḥ**,—a place to the south of the city of **Sijistān**, in the territory of **Khuristān**, 20 and n 3. See also the next.

**Reg-i-Rawān**,—a running or flowing sand situated near **Ḳala'-i-Kāh** in **Sijistān**, 35 n.

**Reg-Pal**,—a sand or gravel gale of **Fīrās-koh** leading to **Bust**, 412 and n 3.

**Rhatak**, 457 n, for **Dam-yak**, a place west of the **Jhilam** on the route to **Ghaznia**.

**Rīkt** or **Zakht**, for the fortress of **Sar-i-Takht** in the **Ḳabistān**, 1197 n 3.

**Rim** or desert of **Kacch**, the,—between **Gujarāt** and **Sind**, 82 n 2.

**Rintambūr**, 623 n 9, for **Rantabbhūr**, which see. [**Hindūstān**, 806, 807.

**Riwāpi**,—a tract of country in

- Ro'en**,—a mountain in the central part of **Ghūr**, 319.
- Roh**,—a tract of country in Afghanistan, 510 n.
- Rohrī** or **Lhari**,—a town of Sind, 542 n 9.
- Rohtak**,—a town of Hindūstān, 693 n 7.
- Rohtuk**, 467 n, for **Dam-yak**, a place west of the **Jhilam**, on the route to **Ghaznin**.
- Rome**, 1266 n 9. See also under **Rūmīah-i-Kubrā**.
- Rot-hak**,—a town in the district of **Harīrah** in Hindūstān, 791 n 1.
- Ros-mandesh**, 306 n 9, for **Mandesh**, which see.
- Rūdak**,—a town in the district of **Samarqand**, 153 n 7.
- Rūdbār**,—a district and town between **Gīlān** and **Kāswīn**, 908 n, 996 n, 1192 n. See also under **Rūdbārān** or **Rūd-bārīt**.
- Rūdbār** of **Jirāft**,—in the province of **Kirmān**, 283 n 9.
- Rūdbār**,—a town in the district of **Marw**, 367 and n 8, 369, 378, 379, 399, 427.
- Rūd-bārān**,—or
- Rūd-bārīt**,—a district and town between **Gīlān** and **Kāswīn**, 1208 n, 1209 n. See also under **Rūdbār**.
- Rūe**,—a town in the territory of **Khurāsān**, 471 n 5.
- Ruhī** [**Edessa**],—a town of **Mesopotamia**, 236 n 4, 1264 n.
- Rūhah**, 1264 n, for **Ruhī** [**Edessa**], which see.
- Ruhtās**,—a fortress on the route between **Ghaznin** and **Hind**, 538 n.
- Ruhtās-garh**,—a district of Hindūstān, 538 n.
- Rū-in-dwjs**,—a fortress of **Marīghah** in **Āqarbājān**, 997 n, 1001 n.
- Rurī**,—a town near the hill of **Ābū** in **Gujarāt**, 521 n.
- Rukhsj**,—a small tract of country in the district of **Bust**, 318 and n 6, 350 and n 4.
- Rūm**, the **Bilād** or country of, xlvii, lx, 3, 4, 5, 183, 184 n 9, 185, 137, 138 and n 7, 139 n, 140 n 5, 167 and n 4, 168 n, 159, 160, 161, 162 and n 3, 163 and n 5, 164 and n 7, 168 n 2, 171, 204 n, 211, 214, 215, 219, 226, 229, 235 n, 297, 298 n, 752, 884, 1141 n, 1151 n, 1153 n, 1158, 1160 n 8, 1167, 1186 n, 1191 n, 1192 n, 1195 n, 1223 n, 1237 n 4, 1239 n, 1153, 1262 n, 1276 n, 1292.
- Rūmīah-i-Kubrā** [**Rome**], 1266 n 9, 1299 n.
- Rūmīlā**,—a country in **Turkey** in **Europe**, 575, 752.
- Rurki**,—a town of Hindūstān, 704 n 2, 799 and n 2.
- Rūs** or **Urūs**, country of, 870 n, 887 n, 999 n, 1102 n, 1165 n, 1167 n, 1168 n, 1292 and n 9. See also the next.
- Rusaa**, 696 n, 1166 n, 1167 n, 1169 n 2, 1170 n, 1171 n. See also the above.
- Rustamdār**,—a territory on the shores of the **Baḥr-i-Khura** [the **Caspian sea**], 233 n, 991 n, 1117.
- Ruthenia**, 1168 n.

## S.

- Sabā** [*Sheba*],—a tract of country in the territory of Yaman in Arabia, 6, 303 n 7
- Sabangjī** or **Sabankjī**, 1072 n 8 See under **Sabekjī**.
- Sabegjī**, fortress of, 363. See under **Sabekjī**.
- Sabekh**,—a fortress in the vicinity of **Qhasnīn**, 1072 n 8
- Sabekjī** or **Sabegjī**,—a fortress in the country of **Qhūr**, now western Afghanistan, 363 and n 6, 1072 and n 8.
- Sābit-garh**, otherwise 'Alī-garh,—a town of Hindūstān, 796 n See also under 'Alī-garh
- Sabrās**,—a dependency of **Nihāpūr** in the territory of **Khurāsān**, 181 and n 8.
- Sabrāsh**, 181 n 8, for **Sabrās**, which see.
- Sabzwār**,—a district in the territory of **Khurāsān**, xlix, 247 n, 397 n 7, 491, 1027 n 8, 1037 n,—formerly called **Istīrār**.
- Sadd-i Sikandar** or **Bāb ul-Abwāb**, 680 n 7 See under the next.
- Sadd-i Yājūj-Mājūj** or Barrier of Gog and Magog—the Great Wall of China, 680 n 7, 794 n 1
- Sadhūrā**, the,—an old name of the **Qhūnāb**, 76 n 2, 80 n See also under the **Sūdarah** or **Sūdharah**
- Sadī Kurgān**,—a place in **Mughūlistān**, 940 n
- Sadūsān** or **Sīwastān**,—a city in the province of **Sīwastān** or **Sihwān**, now the Upper Sind, 294 n, 540 n. See also under **Sīwastān**
- Saf**,—a fortress of Hindustān, 1205 n 3.
- Šafahān**, same as **Išfahān**, which see
- Safed Koh**, the. See under the **Safid Koh**.
- Šafhed**,—a fortress in **Sijistān** or **Sistān**, in the territory of **Khurāsān**, xxv, 1205 and n 3.
- Šafhed Koh** or **Sufed-Koh**,—a fortress in the territory of **Sijistān**, in **Khurāsān**, 202 and n 6.
- Safid-Koh** or **Safed Koh**,—a range of mountains in Afghanistan, 74 n 2, 874 n, 1022 n, 1044 n. Also called the **Spin-Ghar**
- Safšin**, 1283 n 1, for **Saksin**, which see
- Sāgar** or **Saugor**,—a territory of Hindūstān, 744 n 9, 824 n 9.
- Sagāwn**,—a town in the territory of **Lakhaṇawātī**, 655 n 5
- Sagher** or **Tagher-i-Ghuzz**,—a tract of country in **Turkistān** 960 and n 6, 961 n, 963 and n 6
- Saghu** or **Sakur**,—a town of **Turkistān** between **Kāshghar** and **Khūtā**, 960 n 6, 961 n
- Sagh-nāk**, xlvii, 908 n. Same as **Sak nāk**, which see.
- Sahāran-pūr**,—a town of Hindūstān, 611 n 3
- Sahārī** See under **Šahārī**
- Sahūt** or **Sihwālī**, 550 n 5, for **Bhi-ūli** or **Bhiwālī**, which see
- Sahl-ābād**,—a place in the territory of **Khurāsān**, on the frontier of **Balkh**, 75 n 5.
- Sāhlat** or **Sahlat**, 550 n 5, for **Bhagwat**, which see.
- Šahrā i-jūd**,—a place in Hindūstān near the capital city of **Dihli**, 758 n 2.

Šahr-i-Mūsh,—the valley of the Farāt [Euphrates], north of the Alā Dagh, 1275 and n 2.

Ša'īd,—a district in the Diyār-i Miṣriah [Upper Egypt], 210 n, 228 n 4

Saldā,—a town in the province of Karṣīn, 499 n

Sa'idān—Upper Egypt—, 228 n 4. See also under Ša'īd.

Saifrud,—a fortress in the territory of Ghūr, 115 and n 6, 375 n, 390, 466, 1062 and n 7, 1064, 1068, 1070 and n and n 8, 1072 n 5.

St Petersburg, vi, vii, viii, 68 n 4, 70 n 6, 72 n 6, 254 n 3, 263 n 3, 516 n 1, 572 n 7, 609 n 2, 619 n 7, 680 n 9, 682 n 5, 791 n 3, 832 n 7, 853 n 5, 900 n 2, 1023 n 9, 1284 n 4, 1289 n 4,—app xv

Saurām or Saurām,—a town of Turkistān S of the Ulugh Tāgh, 877 n, 969 n 1, 970 n 2

Sajing or Aajnak,—a Šahrā or Steppe in Mughūlīstān, 1141 n

Sakab-Māni, (807 n 5, for Tiklah-Bān), in Hindūstān

Sakar,—a fortress on an island in the river Sindh, 294 n, 542 n 2, 543 n

Sakar, 960 n 6 Same as Saghur or Sakur [see

Sā-Khānah, for Siyā Khānah, which Sakit,—a town of Turkistān, 961 n

Saklab,—country of the Slavs or Slavonians, 1167, 1292 See also under Suklāb

Saknak or Saghnak,—a town of Turkistān north of Utiār, xlviii, 908 n, 970 n 2, 971 n.

Saknāi, 557 n 3, 558 n 8 See under Sanknāi

Saksān,—a territory in Turkistān, 284, 1115 n 5, 1263 and n 1, 1391, 1292 and n 9

Sak-Mihr,—a fortress in the district of Zawzan in Khurāsān, 258 n, 263.

Salcot, fort of, 454 n for Siāl-koṭ, which see. [iān, 1090 n.

Salī-chweu,—a place in Mughāha-Sālī kī Sarāe,—a place on the route from Rāwal Pinḍī to Khānpūr, 1191 n.

Sālingāe or Sahngāe,—a tract of country north of Mughūlīstān, 870 n, 889 n, 1185 n.

Salingah. See the above

Sālingah or Sālingāh, the,—a river of Mughūlīstān, 888 n, 889 n, 940 n, 947 n

Salmās,—a town in Āzarbāijān, 997 n, 1262 n

Salomad,—a fortress in the district of Khawāf, in the territory of Khurāsān, 258 n

Salt Desert [Shoristān], the,—in the territory of Khurāsān, between Hirāt, the Kubistān and Siyistān, 1015 n.

Salt Lake, the,—in Rājputānah north of Ajmir, 728 n 3

Salt-Range, the,—a range of mountains in Northern India, 74 n 2, 294 n, 482 n, 498 n 7, 537 n, 541 n 7, 609 n 3, 623 n 8, 727 n 6, 1130 n, 1131 n See under the Makhlāh Hills and the Jād mountains or Koh-i Jād

Šalūk,—a fortress in the province of Gilān 1029 n

Salu-lug-kiw,—one of the entrances in the great Wall of China 955 n

- Sālūrah** or **Aslūrah**,—a place in the territory of **Khurāsān**, on the limits of **Maimand** and **Fār-yāb**, 400 and n. 8.
- Samairam**,—one of the dependencies of **Iṣfahān**, in the 'Irāk-i 'Ajam, 170 n. 8.
- Samāirān**,—a tract of country in **Turkistān**, 880 n.
- Sāmān**,—a place in the territory of **Balkh**, 26 n. 8.
- Sāmān**,—a village in **Māwarā-un-Nahr**, 26 n. 8.
- Sāmānah** or **Sāmānah**,—a district in **Hindustān**, 516 n. 2, 608 n. 8, 707, 708, 768, 785, 830, 840, 841.
- Sāmānd**,—a place of **Hindustān**, 608 n. 8.
- Samān-Kaharah** or **Samān-Karah**,—a place in **Mughūlistān**, 944 n, 948 n, 966 n.
- Sām-Ārām**, the original name of **Samairam**, which see.
- Samarcand**, 1045 n, for **Samrḡand**, which see.
- Samarḡand**. See under **Samrḡand**.
- Samarkant**,—a city on the river **Ātl** or **Volga** [the **Volga**], 1290 n. 9.
- Sambal**, 681 n. 8, for **Sanbhal**, which see.
- Sām-ghar**,—a tract west of **Kāsh-ghar**, 922 n.
- Samisāt**, **Samisāt** or **Šamisāt**,—a town in the **Diār-i-Šāmāniāh**, 223 and n. 5 and 6.
- Samnagān**,—a division or district in the territory of **Balkh**, 426 n. 6.
- Samnakān**,—a dependency of **Nishā-pūr**, in the territory of **Khurāsān**, 181 n. 8.
- Samrī-mū**,—a town in **Hindustān**, 708 n. 1.
- Samrḡand** or **Samarḡand**,—a district and town in **Māwarā-un-Nahr**, xxx, 26, 27 and n. 6, 28, 29, 30, 36, 37 n, 45, 49, 72 n. 6, 117 n, 120 n. 4, 137 n. 6, 138 n. and n. 8, 147 and n. 8, 153 n. 7, 164 n. 2, 155 n, 223 n, 260 n. 7, 261 n, 262 n. 1, 263 n, 265 and n. 3, 268 n. 4, 269 n, 278 n. and n. 5, 274 and n. 9 and 1, 276 n. 2, 277, 280 n. 9, 401 n, 473 n. 2, 478 n. 3, 479 and n, 480 n, 485 n. 2, 604 n. 1, 801 n, 901 n, 903 n, 904 n, 905 n, 906 n, 907 n, 908 n, 909 n, 910 n, 915 n, 918 n, 919 n, 921 n, 922 n, 924 n, 926 n, 929 n, 930 n, 931 n, 970 n. 2, 971 n, 974 n, 977 n, 978 and n, 979 and n, 980 and n. 8, 981, 982 n, 983 n, 985 n, 988 n, 993 n, 1004 and n. 1, 1032 n, 1045 n, 1082 n, 1097 n. 7, 1099 n, 1141 n, 1145 n, 1164 n, 1194 n, 1222, 1258 and n. 8, 1266, 1276 n. 2, 1287, 1288, 1289.
- Samudr**,—or
- Samudra**, 561 n. 2, same as **Samund**, which see,
- Samund**, the,—name of the river **Beg-māti** in the **Hindūi** dialect, 561 and n. 2, 562 n.
- Šanādiān**,—a tract of country in the **Diār-i-Šāmāniāh**, 238 n. 4.
- Sambagji** or **Sanbakji**, 1072 n. 8. See under **Sabekji**.
- Sanbhal**, **Sirkār of**,—a district of **Hindustān**, 468 n. 2, 684 and n. 2, 818 n. 4, 1224 n.
- Sanbhal-pūr**,—a district of **Hindustān**, north of **Jāy-nagar**, 588 n.
- Sanbhar** or **Sanbhal**,—a district



- and town on the Great Salt Lake in Rājputānah, north of Ajmir, 723 n. 2.
- Sanbhar** Namak, 723 and n. 2. Same as Sānbhar or Sanbhal, which see.
- Sang-i-Surākh**,—one of the routes between Ghassnia and Hindūstān, 337, 503 and n. 6, 505 and n. 6, 508, 527 n.
- Sang-i-Surākh**,—a Kotal or pass near the Halmand river, on the route from Ghassnia and Kābul into Ghūr, 441 and n. 7.
- Sang-i-Surākh**,—a strong fortress in the territory of Ghūr, 441 n. 7.
- Sangah**, capital of the district of Mandesh in Ghūr, 331, 340, 341, 417 n. 9, 1002 and n. 3, 1072 n. 7, 1079 and n. 1. [see.]
- Sangān**, 181 n. 3, for Shangan, which see.
- Sangarah** or Sankrah, —a district of Hindūstān, 590 n., 591 n.
- Sanjār**, —a town in Mesopotamia, 146, 1261 n.
- Sankanāt**, —a province in eastern Bang, 557 and n. 3, 558 and n. 3.
- Sankarah**, 591 n. See under Sankrah.
- Sanjarān**, read Sanjūrān. See page lviii.
- Sankāt**, 557 n. 3, for Sankanāt, which see.
- Sankrah**, 591 n. See under Sankrah.
- Sanjūrān**, —a district in the province of Karmān, 290 n., 491, 492 n. 7, 495, 498, 499 n., 540 n., 1021 n. 3. Now called Shalūsān, which also see.
- Sanjūrān**, 115 n. 6, for Sarfrūd, the fortress of Ghūr, which see.
- Sanjūrān**, mountains of, 390 n., 1021 n. 3.
- Sānpō**, the, —or
- Sānpō**, the, —name of the Brahmāputra behind the Himālayas, li, 562 n., 563 n., 570 n. 2.
- Santoo**, —a town S.-W. from Jodhpur, 706 n. 7.
- Santpūr**, —a town near Ābū in Gujarāt, 706 n. 7.
- Santūr** or Santūr-garh, —a town of Hindūstān, 705 and n. 6 and 7, 758, 839 and n. 4, 840.
- Santūr-garh**, 839 n. 4. See under Santūr.
- Santūs**, —a town of Hindūstān, 576 and n. 4.
- Saptari**, plain of, —in Hindūstān, 560 n. 4. [995 n.]
- Sar-i-Āb**, —a town in Āsarbāijān.
- Sar-i-Pūl**, —a town in Māwarā-n-Nahr, 978 n., 1057 n. 4.
- Sar-i-Takht**, —a fortress in the district of Tūn, in the Kūhistān of the Mulāhidah, 1196 n., 1197 and n. 3.
- Sar-i-Ulang Pass**, —one of the passes of the Hindū-Kush, 288 n. 3.
- Sarie**, —a city on the Ātul or Wolga, 1173 n., 1290 n. 1.
- Sarāe-i-Barāṭah**, —a place of Hindūstān, north-west of Dihli, 851 n. 6.
- Sarāe-i-Siāsati**, —a royal palace in Sistān, 189, 195.
- Sarāe-i-Sulṭān**, —a palace at Baghdād, 64 n. 1.
- Sarāe-i-Tāhiri**, —a palace in Sistān, 186 n., 187.
- Sārāh-e-miri**, —a place of Hindūstān, north of Lakhapawāṭi, 582 n. 6.

- Sarakha**,—a district and town in the territory of Khurāsān, 50, 81 n, 94 and n 3, 124 n, 125, 126, 127, 129, 130, 131 n 7, 181 n 9, 246 n 8, 247 n, 390, 471, 472 n, 479 n, 545 n 5, 1000 n, 1028 n, 1029 n, 1030 n, 1031 n, 1032 n, 1037 n.
- Saraswati**, the,—a river of Hindūstān, now the Sursuti, 468 n 3.
- Sar-hadd**,—a tract of country in the Diār-i-Shāmīah, 222 and n 1.
- Sarha-sang**, *alix*.
- Sārī**,—name of Sārī, the Nā-yin, mistaken for a place, 711 n 4.
- Sārigh-i-I-ghūr**,—a tract of country south of Kāshghar, 923 n, 987 n.
- Sarigh-Kol**, the,—a lake in the mountains of Badekhabhān, in Turkistān, iv, 987 n.
- Sarigh-Kol**, darah of,—in the mountains of Badekhabhān, in Turkistān, iv, 987 n.
- Sarigh Pāmīr**, the,—a range of mountains in Central Asia, 987 n.
- Sarik-kul**, the, 987 n See under the Sarigh kol.
- Sariz Pāmīr**, 987 n, for Sarigh Pāmīr, which see.
- Sarjoo**, the, 836 n 8, for the Sar'ū, which see.
- Sarjou**, the, 836 n 8, for the Sar'ū, which see.
- Sarkār of Bangash**. See under Bangash.
- Sar-khad**,—a tract of country in the Diār-i-Shāmīah, 222 n 1.
- Sar-sar**,—a town in the district of Baghdād, 1243 n.
- Sarsuti**, 812 n 3. See under Sursuti.
- Sarsuti**, the, 469 n 7. See under the Sursuti.
- Sar'ū**, the,—a river of Hindūstān, 886 and n 8, 887, 888.
- Satā-Khānah**, for Siyā-Khānah, which see.
- Sāt-gāwā**,—a town in the territory of Lakhanawāṭī, 565 n 5.
- Sangor or Sāgar**,—a territory of Hindūstān, 824 n 9. See also under Sāgar.
- Sāwah**,—a town in the 'Irāk-i-'Ajām, 144 n, 147 n 8, 151 and n 6, 1200 n, 1201 n.
- Sāwah Pass**, 151. See under Sāwah.
- Saygill**, 1018 n, 1020 n, an error for Sugis or Sijis, which see.
- Sayo**, the,—a tributary of the Theiss, in Hungary, 1167 n.
- Sclavonia**, 1283 n 1. See also under Saḥlīb and Suklīb.
- Sea of Darkness**,—the Arctic Sea, 1170.
- Sea of Fārs**—[the Persian Gulf], 179 n.
- Sea of Gilān**—[the Caspian], 1296 n.
- Sea of Khurz**, [the Caspian] See under Khurz.
- Sea of Maghrib**,—the Mediterranean, 1228 n.
- Sea of 'Ummān** [Oman], 903 n.
- Sea of Crumi**,—the Lake Crumīah, in Armenia, 1262 n.
- Sea of Yunān**,—the Mediterranean, 1228 n.
- Se-chwen**,—the Tingnāsh of the Musalmān writers and the Mahā-Chin of the Hindus, 1210 n, 1221 n, 1222 n.
- Sehwān**, 204 n, same as Shwān, which see.

**Saket**, capital of the territory of **Shish**, in **Māwarā-un-Nahr**, 28 n 8.  
**Seluga**, the,—a river of **Mughūlistān**, 283 n. See under the **Sālin-gah**.  
**Sera-Mow**,—a town of **Hindūstān**, 760 n 7. See under **Sihra-mū**.  
**Seraily**, the,—a river of **Hindūstān**, 588 n.  
**Siwastān**, 1154. See also under **Siwastān**.  
**Sow-ehwen**,—a province of **Khiti** or **Qhin**, 1216 n.  
**Sfanjāb**, same as **Istfanjāb**, which see.  
**Shabartā**,—a plain in the territory of **Khurāsān**, near the city of **Hirāt**, 1036 n 1.  
**Shāburān**,—a town in the district of **Shurwān**, in the territory of **Āzarbāijān**, 1287 n.  
**Shaburghān**,—a dependency of **Balkh**, in **Khurāsān**, 128 n, 120 and n, 635 n 7. See also under **Shiwarghān**.  
**Shād-yākh**,—a city of **Nishāpūr**, in the territory of **Khurāsān**, 14 and n 1, 16 n 4, 239 n 8, 242 n 6, 247 n, 250 n 6, 251 nn 9 and 1, 252 n 3, 255 n 7, 256 n, 259 n 3, 286 nn 6 and 7, 381 n 2, 393 n 8.  
**Shafurkān**, 129, 635 n 7, same as **Shuburghān**, which see.  
**Shangān**, 181 n 8, for **Shangān**, which see.  
**Shaghnan**, same as **Shaghnan**, which see.  
**Shāh-ābād**,—a town of **Hindūstān**, 109 n 6.  
**Shāhangshāhi**,—a fortress in the territory of **Nimroz**, 196.

**Shāhantaleh**,—a mountain north of **Tabriz** in **Āzarbāijān**, 1286 n 9.  
**Shāh-duj**,—a fortress in the 'Irāq-i-'Ajam, 1192 n, 1207 n.  
**Shāh-pūr**,—a district of **Rāwal Pinḍī** in the **Panjāb**, 537 n.  
**Shāh-Rūkhiyah**,—the later name of **Fanākat** or **Banākat**, the city in **Māwarā-un-Nahr**, 972 n.  
**Shahr-i-Nau**,—a place in **Gilū-Kharī** near **Dihli**, 634 n 2, 856, 857.  
**Shahr-i-Sabz**,—a town of **Māwarā-un-Nahr**, formerly called **Kash**, 1194 n.  
**Shahr-i-Zaghan** or **Ghiyā-pūr**,—one of the suburbs of **Dihli**, 598 n 8.  
**Shahristān**, the ancient capital of **Sijstān** or **Sistān**, 1030 n, 1120, 1122 n.  
**Shahristānah**,—a town in the territory of **Khurāsān**, 1116 n.  
**Shahristānah Gateway**,—in **Marw**, 1031 n.  
**Shāhū**,—a mountain in **Āzarbāijān**, 1286 n 9.  
**Shāknān** or **Shaghnan**,—a mountainous tract of country in the territory of **Khurāsān**, 306 and n 2, 423 and n 9, 426.  
**Shalūzān**,—a district and *darah* in the province of **Kurmān**, 450 n 3, 491, 492 n 7, 493 n, 499 n, 503 n 8, 526 n 8, 527 n, 1022 n. See also under **Shanūzān** and **San-kurān**.  
**Shalūzān**, the,—a stream falling into the **Kurmāh**, in the province of **Kurmān**, 499 n.  
**Shām** [*Shām*], *xxam*, 2, 55 n 1, 137, 140 n 5, 141 n, 149, 158 n, 167 n 8.

- 169, 171, 203 and n 1, 204 n, 205 and n 6, 206, 207, 208 and n 1 and 2, 209 and n 6, 210 and n, 211, 213 and n 5, 214 and n, 216, 218 n, 219, 222 and n 9, 223, 224, 225, n 4, 226 and n 7 and 8, 227 n 9, 228 and n 4, 229 n 5, 230, 237 and n, 238 and n, 239, 706, 684, 974 n, 1152 n, 1158, 1160 n 8, 1191 n, 1210 n, 1211 n, 1223 n, 1239 n, 1246 n 5, 1251, 1252, 1255 n 6, 1263 n and n 8, 1264 n, 1265 and n 9, 1267 n 6, 1270 n 2, 1275 and n 3, 1276 n, 1277 n, 1278 n, 1282.
- Shamākhī**,—a town in *Āzarbāijān*, 966 n, 1267 n.
- Shamālī Kaṣhī Dō-āb**,—in the *Panjāb*, 696 n 3.
- Shamān Gara** [*Samān Kaharah?*]—a place in *Mughūlistān*, 966 n.
- Shāmīān**, territory of, 126 n 7. See under *Shām* [*Syria*].
- Shāmīlān**,—a range of mountains in the *Himālayah*, 1046 n 3.
- Shamīsiṭ**, 223 n 6. See under *Sami-ṣiṭ*.
- Shāmo** or *Kob*,—the Great Desert of *Turkiatān*, 920 n.
- Shamūm**,—a town in the *Diyār-i Miṣriah*, 229 n 5.
- Shandu**, 1219 n, for *Shang-tū*. See also under *Giandu*.
- Shangān**,—a dependency of *Nishāpūr* in the territory of *Khurāsān*, 161 and n 8.
- Shang-tū**,—the later name of *Kay-ping*, *Fu*, capital of *Chin* under the *Mughals*, 1141 n, 1219 n.
- Shangtū**, the, 1219 n. See under the *Shan-tū*.
- Shan-tū** or *Shangtū*, the,—a river in the country of *Karohān*, in *Mughūlistān*, 1219 n.
- Shanūsān**,—a district in the province of *Kapmān*, in *Afghānistān*, 290 n, 450 n 2, 493 n 7, 499 n, 540 n. See also under *Shalūsān* and *Sanṭurān*.
- Shāristān**,—a wild desert in *Khwārasm*, 286.
- Shāristānah**,—one of the dependencies of *Nishāpūr* in *Khurāsān*, 161, 245 n, 491.
- Shart**, the district of *Baghdād*, 15 n 6.
- Shēsh** or *seh-Shēsh*,—name of a territory, river and city of *Māwarā-un-Nahr* on the *Sihān* or *Jaxartes*, on the frontier of the *Turks*, 27 and n 6, 28 and n 8, 916 n, 921 n, 962 n, 971 n, 973 n, —it was also called *Fanāket* and is now known as *Tiḡhtand*.
- Shatt-i-Nādawār**, the,—or *Shatt-i-Nādwar*, the,—a river of *Khwārasm*, 473 n 2.
- Shoba**,—a country in *Arabia*, 303 n 7. See under *Sabā*.
- Shen-si**,—a Chinese province, 1218 n, 1219 n, 1222 n.
- Sheorājpur**, 683 n. See under *Shīw-rāj-pūr*.
- Sher-bān**,—a gate in the city of *Nishāpūr*, in the territory of *Khurāsān*, 1035 n.
- Sher-Sang**,—a fortress in the mountains of *Hirāt*, 342.
- Shervān**, 1195 n, same as *Shirwān*, which see.
- Shetāb**,—a fort in the city of *Gandhār*, 77 n.
- Shih-Khānah**, for *Siyā-Khānah*, which see.

**Shibborgan**, 1195 n, for **Shiwar-gān** or **Shiwar-kān**, which see.  
**Shigatse**,—a town in the territory of Tibet, li.  
**Shighnan**, 428 n 2, for **Shaghān** or **Shaknān**, which see.  
**Shighnān**,—a territory on the Upper Oxus, 1044 n.  
**Shihāb-ud-Dīn**,—or  
**Shihāb-ud-Dīn-pūr**,—a place in the Panjāb, 467 n.  
**Shikār-gāh** of Sultān Firūs Shih, —in the capital city of Dihli, 621 n 6.  
**Shinā-Khānah**, for **Siya-Khānah**, which see.  
**Shirān**, 181 n 8, for **Sabrās** of **Nighā-pūr**, which see.  
**Shirīn koh**,—a fortress in the 'Irāk-i-'Ajam, 277 n 5, 990 n.  
**Shirās**, the capital of Fars, 25 n 2, 55 n 1, 64 n 1, 206 n, 296 n, 407 n 8, 974 n, 1118 n 9.  
**Shiriyah**,—a town in the district of Dajayl, in the Arabian 'Irāk, 1240 n.  
**Shirwān**,—a district in Āzarbāijān, lix, 170 n 8, 994 n, 996 n, 1162 n, 1196 n, 1237 n.  
**Shiwar-gān** or **Shiwar-kān**,—a tract of country in the territory of **Khurāsān**, 128 n, 1000 n, 1060 n, 1196 n, 1226 n 1. See also under **Shaburgān** which see ]  
**Shiwar-kān**, same as **Shiwar-gān**,  
**Shiwar-kān**, 532 n 2, another name of **Siwastān**, which see  
**Shiwistān**,—the modern **Sihwān** or Upper Sind, 1074 n. See also under **Siwastān**.  
**Shiw-rāj-pūr**,—a town in Parganah Bārāh of Allahabad, 688 n.

**Shiwistān**, an error for **Shiwistān**. See page lxiiv.  
**Shiyā-Khānah**, for **Siya-Khānah**, which see.  
**Shoristān**,—the Salt Desert in the territory of **Khurāsān**, between Hirāt, the **Kahistān** and **Sijistān**, 1016 n.  
**Shustar**,—a city in the province of **Khūzistān**, in Persia, 296 n, 1261 n 7.  
**Shīl-kot**,—a fortress and town in the Panjāb, 463 and n 4, 454 n, 456 and n, 401, 627.  
**Siba**, the,—a river in the territory of **Kangakīān**, in **Mughūlistān**, 945 n.  
**Siberia**, 961 n.  
**Sibir**, the original name of **Siberia**, 961 n.  
**Sicily**, xlvii.  
**Sifanjāb**, same as **Isfanjāb**, which see.  
**Si-gan-fū**, capital of the Chinese province of **Shen-si**, 1218 n.  
**Sigistān**, same as **Sijistān**, which see  
**Sigis** or **Sigizī**,—a mountain range in **Zābulistān**, 184 n, 1018 n.  
**Sigitz**,—a town of Hungary, 1167 n.  
**Sih-Goshah-i-nāh**,—a place in the mountain tracts of **Hirāt**, 149, 351 n 8, 358.  
**Sihnūr**, Hills of,—in Northern India, 684, 1234 n.  
**Sih-rā-mū**,—a town of **Hindūstān**, west of the Ghoghrah river, the **Sera Mow** of the Indian Atlas, 760 and n 7.  
**Sihun** [**Jaxartes**], the, 28 n 8, 76 n 2, 268 n 3, 271 n, 273 n, 877 n,

879 n, 890 n, 894 n, 916 n, 931 n, 922 n, 931 n, 932 n, 968 n 8, 970 n 2, 972 n, 983 n, 985 n, 988 n, 1000 n, 1082 n, 1192 n. See also under the Jaxartes.

**Sihwālī**, 550 n 5, same as **Sahīlī**, which see.

**Sihwān** or **Schwān**,—the present name of **Siwastān** or Upper **Sind**, 294 n, 540 n, 692 n 4, 1074 n. See also under **Siwastān**.

**Sijistān**,—a district or province in the country of **Khurāsān**, xxiv, xxv, xiv, liii, 13, 19 and n 1, 20 and n 3, 21, 22, 23 and n 9, 21 n 4, 25 n 2, 31 n 3, 34 and n 6 and 8, 35 and n, 43 and n 4, 76 n 8, 81 n, 85 n, 134, 183 n 2, 185 and n, 186 n, 187, 188 and n 7, 192 and n 8 and 2, 193 n 5, 198, 199 n 7, 305 n 7, 309 n, 321 n, 376 and n 1, 378, 390 n 6, 391 and n 1, 398 n 4, 402 n, 419 n 5, 423 n 8, 417, 457 n, 490, 502 n 6, 503, 504 and n 2, 510 n, 516 n, 526 n, 882, 911 n 6, 925 n, 967 n 3, 1015 n, 1062 n 3, 1110, 1120 and n 2, 1122 n, 1123 n, 1125, 1126 and n 6, 1127, 1190 n, 1200 n, 1201 n, 1201 n 1. See also under **Sistān**.

**Sijz**, 1018 n. See under **Sigiz** or **Sigzī**.

**Sikandarīah**, same as **Iskandarīah**, which see.

**Sikhim**, State of,—in the Eastern **Himālayah** Mountains, 562 n, 563 n. [Kol, which see.]

**Sī-Kol**, the,—same as the **Leagh-Silesa**, 1166 n, 1167 n, 1171 n.

**Sil Hāko**,—a bridge over a small branch of the **Brahmaputra** near **Gowāhati**, 563, 564 n

**Silmār** or **Sirmār**,—a hilly tract and city in **Hindūstān**, 706 and n 2, 839 and n 9, 840.

**Simnān**,—a town in the district of **Kūmis**, between **Khurāsān** and 'Irāk-i-'Ajam, 991 n, 1207 n.

**Sind** or **Sindh**, li, liii, 23 n 9, 82, 88 n 2, 96 n 2, 115, 200, 283 n 9, 284, 290 n 4, 292 n, 293 n 5, 294 n, 305 and n 7, 306 n 2, 318 n 6, 451 n, 476 n, 491 n 5, 503 n 7, 522 n 5, 524 n, 529 n 4, 530, 532, 534 and n 6 and 1, 537 n, 538 n, 539 n, 540 n, 610 n 6 and 7, 612, 614 and n 8, 615 n 1, 616 n, 623 n 8, 644 n 7, 646, 656 n, 661 n 2, 672, 674 and n 3, 676 n 9, 687 n 9, 695 n 1, 704 n 5, 707 n 8, 722 and n 8, 724, 727 and n 6, 728, 730, 768 n 4, 784, 786 and n 6, 788, 792, 795 n, 800, 810 n, 812, 816 and n 3, 823 n 3, 840, 841, 850, 933 n 9, 939 n 8, 960, 962, 963 n 3, 990 n 1, 997 n, 1023 n, 1073 n 4, 1074 n, 1129, 1131, 1153, 1251 n 9,—app xvii, xviii

**Sind** [**Indus**], the, 77 n, 78 n, 80 n, 297, 299 n 4, 291 n, 292, 294 n, 454 n, 455 n 3, 493 n 7, 534, 535 n, 536 n, 537 n, 538 n, 540 n, 541 n 6, 544, 623 n 8, 631, 674 n 3, 677, 678 n 7, 679, 687 n 1, 695 and n 9, 696 n, 724, 733 n 7, 758, 792, 815, 816 n 2, 993 n, 997 n, 1007, 1020 n, 1023, 1042, 1043 n 1, 1046 n 3, 1073 n 4, 1074 n, 1075 n, 1082 n, 1133, 1135 n 3, 1143 n, 1153, 1154 n 1, 1201 n, 1217 n.

See also under the **Indus**.

**Sind u-B dh**, the, the river of **Bahj**, 687 n 1. See under the **Bahj**.

**Sindh**. See under **Sind**.

- Sindlim-yū** or **Sindlim-yū**,—a city in the country of **Mahā-Qhān** or **Tingnāh**, 1141 n.
- Sind-Sāgar**, the, [the river Sind], 499 n 7, 499 n, 541 n 6.
- Sind Sāgar Do-ābah**, the,—in the **Panjāb**, xxiv, 96 n 2, 455 n, 535 n, 537 n, 539 n, 609 n 3, 623 n 3, 677 n 6, 815 n 5, 816 n n 3 and 5, 1131 n, 1155 n 6, 1181 n 2.
- Sindūstān**,—another name of **Sīwas-tān** or upper **Sind**, 294 n, 532 and n 3, 1154. See also under **Sīwas-tān**.
- Sining**,—a city of **Mughūlīstān**, on the banks of the **Ḳarā Mūr-ān**, 1137 n.
- Sinjāb**,—a town or city in **Māwarā-un-Nahr**, 905 n. See also under **Isfanjāb** or **Sfanjāb**.
- Sipahān**, same as **Iṣfahān**, which see.
- Sira Mūrān**, the,—the river **Sira** of **Mughūlīstān**, 1219 n.
- Sīrām**,—a town of **Turkīstān**, 677 n. See also under **Ṣarām**.
- Sirān**, 181 n 8, for **Sabrās** of **Nighā-pur**, which see.
- Sirauri**, 459 n 7, for **Tarā-in** on the banks of the **Sursuti**.
- Sirguojāb**,—a district of **Hindustān**, 591 n.
- Sirhind**,—a town in the **Panjāb**, 438 n, 533 n, 707 n 6.
- Suhot**,—a town in **Rājputānāh** near the **Arawālī Hills**, 521 n.
- Sūmur**, 706 and n 2, same as **Sil-mur**, which see.
- Sūmur Hardar**, hills of, 641 and n 5. See under **Sūmur** or **Sūmur**.
- Sirr**, the,—another name of the **biḥan** [**Jaxartes**], 970 n 2.
- Sirsutty**, the, 459 n 7. See under the **Sursuti**.
- Sirughah**,—a district and town of **Māwarā-un-Nahr**, 27 n 6. Also called **Ishrūmah** and **Ierughiah**.
- Sistān**,—a district or province in the territory of **Khurāsān**, xlvii, 16, 99, 132, 137, 186 n, 187, 188 and n 7, 189, 190, 192, 193, 194, 195, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201 and n 4, 202, 233, 235, 248, 504 and n 2, 926 n, 967, 988 n, 1002, 1013, 1016, 1037 n, 1047, 1048 and n 2, 1053, 1062 and n 4 and 5, 1065, 1119, 1120 and n 2, 1123 n, 1123 n, 1124, 1193 n, 1203, 1205. See also under **Syutān**. [see.]
- Sitnoor**, 705 n 7, for **Santār**, which
- Siwād**,—the country surrounding the city of **Baghdād**, 1238 n 8.
- Siwālk hills**,—in Northern India, 693 n 8, 637 n 3. See also under **Siwālk**.
- Siwālk**,—a tract of country in Northern India, 110, 300 and n 2, 468 and n 4, 469 n, 608, 611 and n 3, 674, 693 and n 8, 703, 710 and n 8, 728, 781, 786, 830, 837 and n 3, 850.
- Siwas-tān**,—a district or province to the north west of **Sind**, the present **Sihwan**, 88 n 2, 294 n, 520 n 1, 532 n 3, 538 n, 539 n n 4 and 5, 540 n, 610, 614 n 3, 616 n, 628, 631 n 8, 668 n, 1154.
- Siya Khunth**,—a fortress of **Ghar-pūtān** in **Khurāsān**, 116 and n 3, 1072 and n 7.
- Snowy Mountains**, the,—the **Pir Pindl Mountains**, 1132 n.
- Soane**, the,—a river of **Hindustān**, 551 n. See also under the **Sop**.

- Soank, the**,—a river of Hindūstān, running to the W. of Gang-pār, 558 n.
- Sodra, the**, 678 n. 1, for the Sādharah, which see
- Solīkā or Sūlikā**,—a tract of country between Qhīn and Hind, 1217 n.
- Somnāth**,—a town of Gujarāt, 82 and n. 2, 86 n., 88 n. 2.
- Sop, the**,—a river of Hindūstān, 551 n., 558 n., 743 n. 3, 817 n. 9.
- Soorsutty, the**, 459 n. 7. See under the Sursuti
- Southern China, the country called Mahā-Qhīn by the Hindūs**, 1136 n. 9.
- Spin-ghar or Safed-Koh**,—a mountain range in southern Afghanistan, 428 n. 7, 490 n., 1044 n.
- Stony Mountains, the**,—the Koh-i-Sangin, 593 n.
- Strigonia**,—a province of Hungary, 1168 n.
- Sūdāk or Sūdāk**,—a city in the Crimea, 999 n. See also under Sūdāk.
- Šubah of Bangālah**, 592 n. See under Bangālah.
- Šubah of Bihār**, 593 n. See under Bihār.
- Sachur**, 960 n. 6, same as Saghir or Sakir.
- Sucur**, 960 n. 6, same as Saghir or Sakir.
- Sūdāk or Sūdāk**,—a city in the Crimea, 999 n., 1000 n., 1163 n.
- Sūdharā**,—or
- Sūdharā**,—a town to the north-west of Wazirābād, 678 n. 1, 726.
- Sūdarah, the**,—or
- Sūdharah or Sūdharā**, the,—an old name of the Qhmāb, 76 n. 2, 483 n., 536 n., 539 n., 544 n. 7, 656 n., 678 and n. 1, 679, 813, 814, 816 n. 2, 1130 n., 1235 n.
- Sūfi**,—a town in the country of Azarbāijān, 995 n.
- Sufed-Koh, fortress of**. See under Safhed Koh.
- Šūfi-Khānah gate, the**,—one of the gates of the city of Utrār, in Turkistān 971 n.
- Sughd or Sughd**,—a province in Māwarā-un-Nahr, and the country round Samarkand, 117 n., 905 n., 909 n., 916 n.
- Suhān or Sūhān, the**,—a river issuing from the Jūd mountains, 1130 n., 1131 n.
- Šuhārā**,—a tract of country in Turkistān, 233 n. 5. See also under the next.
- Šuhāri or Šahēri**,—a tract of country in Turkistān, xlvii, 233 and n. 5, 237.
- Sujā**,—a place in Turkistān, in the neighbourhood of the Awāj Tāḡ or Tāgh, 949 n.
- Sūjā, the**,—a river of Turkistān in the neighbourhood of the Awāj Tāḡ or Tāgh, 949 n.
- Sujā**,—a city in the territory of Tingkūt or Kāshin, 1085 n.
- Sūk-i-Amir**,—a town opposite Shirāz founded by 'Uḡd-ud-Daulah Buwiah, 64 n. 1.
- Sūk-i-Sultān**,—a place in the city of Baghdād, 1243 n.
- Sūkankā**,—a tract in the country of Jāukūt or Khitā, 1230 n.
- Sūk-Qhiw**,—a city in the country of the Khitā's, 956 n.
- Sukin or Sunkin**,—a city in the country of Khūrjāh [Corea], 956 n.



**Sakkir**, 900 n. 6, 901 n. Same as **Saghir** or **Bakir**.

**Saklāb**,—country of the Slavs or Slavonians, 581 n. 9, 1262. See also under **Saklāb**.

**Sakquir**, 900 n. 6. Same as **Saghir** or **Bakir**.

**Sakuir**, 900 n. 6. Same as **Saghir** or **Bakir**.

**Sālikā**, same as **Solikhā**, which see.

**Sulimān mountains** or **Koh-i-Siyah**, the,—a range of mountains east of **Afghānistān**, xiv, 187 and n. 3. Also called the **Sulimāni mountains**.

**Sulimāni mountains**, xiv. See the above.

**Sulṭāniyah**,—a fortress in al-**Ḳāhirah** [Cairo], 229 n. 5.

**Sulṭān-koṭ**,—a city and fortress in the **Bhīānah** territory in **Hindūstān**, 545, 546 n. 7, 733 and n. 3, 824.

**Sulṭān-pūr**,—the name given by **Ulugh Khān**, son of **Sulṭān Ghiyās ad-Dīn Tughlak** to the town of **Arangul** now **Warangul** in the **Dakhn**, 589 n.

**Sunnām**,—a district of **Hindūstān**, 633 n. 8, 669, 714 n. 9, 736 and n. 9, 730, 738, 796 n., 830. Also called **Sunnām**.

**Sunārgāw**,—a tract of country in **Lakhapawāṭi**, 553 n. 1, 590 n., 591 n.

**Sunārgāw**,—a district of **Hindūstān**, near **Talingānah**, 590 n.

**Suni-pat**,—a town to north-west of **Dihli**, 561 n. 8.

**Sunkhās**,—a dependency of **Nighā-pūr** in the territory of **Khurāsān**, 181 n. 8.

**Sunk'a**, same as **Sūkin**, which see.

**Sunnām**,—a district of **Hindūstān**, 736 n. See also under **Sunnām**.

**Sū.ah**,—a place in the **Ḡhaznā** territory, 1014 n. 2.

**S-raj-garh**,—a pargana west of **Bangālāh**, 593 n. -

**Sūrāt**, **Bandar of**,—in the **Bombay Presidency**, ix.

**Srkh-Ab Kotā**, the,—in **Afghānistān**, 1022 n.

**Surkhābān**,—a fortress in **Māsan-darīn**, 991 n.

**Surkh-Ḡhar**,—a range of mountains in the country of **Ḡhūr**, 318, 319 n.

**Surkh rūd** [Red River], the,—a river of **Afghānistān**, 79 n.

**Sursuti**,—one of the **Makāls** of **Sirkār Saubhal**, in **Hindūstān**, 466 n. 1, 465 and n. 3, 401, 529 n. 4, 532 and n. 4, 533 n., 611 n. 3, 627, 688, 731, 755, 812 and n. 3, 837.

**Sursuti**, the,—a river of **Hindūstān**, 459 n. 7, 463 n., 464 and n. 3.

**Sūs**,—a district in **Khuzistān** or **Ahwāz**, 304 n. 2.

**Sutlaj**, the,—the **Sutlej** of the maps, 79 n., 468 n. 4, 533 n., 611 n. 3, 687 n. 9, 723 n. 1, 739 n. 9, 788 n. 9, 811 n. 8, 823 n., 1155 n. 8.

**Swāt**,—a mountain district to the west of **Kashmir**, iv, 481 n. 5, 1044 n., 1045 n., 1062 n. 2.

**Swat** or **Swāt**. See under **Swāt**.

**Swen-wha-fū**,—a town in the country of **Khūā**, 938 n.

**Sylhet**,—a district in the territory of **Assam**, 763 n. 4.

**Syrn**, 162 n. 3, 766, 1251, 1267 n. 8, 1275 n. 3, 1277 n., 1279 n. See also under **Shām**.

## T.

- Tabarkind**,—or  
**Tabarkindah**,—a district and town of Hindūstān, xxiii, 381 n 5, 457 and n and n 3, 458 n, 460 n 3, 461 n, 464, 466 and n 1, 491 and n 1, 532, 533 n, 543 n 9, 603 and n 6, 607, 612, 613, 627, 645 and n 9 and 4, 647 and n 9, 649, 652, 689 n 6, 695 and n 2, 699, 700 n 8, 704 n 5, 714 n 9, 723, 746, 748, 749, 753, 763, 767, 768 and n 2, 784 and n, 788, 792, 793, 794, 830, 1059 n 9, 1060 n 5, 1217 n,—app. ii, ni.
- Tabarkindh**, same as **Tabarkindah**, which see.
- Tabaristān**,—a province on the Caspian, 15 and n 6, 16, 23, 31 n 3, 32, 33, 43, 63, 81 and n 6, 86 n 2, 93, 133, 137, 263 n, 278 n, 280, 381, 902, 993 n, 1117, 1119
- Tabas**,—a town in the Kūhstān of the Mulāhidah, lxiv, 80 n 5, 125 n 8, 182 n 9, 394 n 2, 406, 1203. Also called **Tabbas**.
- Tābas**, 744 n 5, for **Mānish** of Hindūstān, which see.
- Tabbas**, 125 n 8. See under **Tabas** of the Kūhstān.
- Tabriz**, capital of the Atē-baks of **Āzarbāijān**, 136 n, 170 n 3, 172 n 3, 290 n, 296 n 1, 488 n 8, 492 n 7, 861, 996 n, 997 n, 1192 n, 1228 n, 1262 n, 1263 n, 1281 n, 1286 n 9, 1287 n.
- Tāe-ghān**, fortress of, 1006 n 5. See under **Tāe-kān** of **Tukhārīstān**.
- Tāe-kān** of **Badakhshān**, 1010 n. Same as **Tāe-kān** of **Tukhārīstān**, which see.
- Tāe-kān** of **Kunduz**, 1010 n, 1082 n, 1153 and n. Same as **Tāe-kān** of **Tukhārīstān**, which see.
- Tāe-kān**,—a town in the district of **Tukhārīstān** in **Balkh**, east of **Kunduz**, xlviii, xlix, lxi, lxiii, 32 n 4, 94 n 3, 128 n, 288 n 3, 290 n, 390 and n and n 4, 376 n 7, 426 n 6, 800 and n 2, 1008 n 5, 1009 n, 1010 n, 1011 n, 1082 n, 1109 n 4, 1110 n, 1153 and n, 1236 and n 9.
- Tāfīs**,—a city in the territory of **Gharjīstān**, 906 n, 906 n. See also under **Tiflis**.
- Tag-āb**, the,—or  
**Tag-āo**, the,—a river and valley in **Afghānistān** to the east of **Kābul**, 231 n 8, 1044 n.
- Taghar-i-Ghuzz**,—the **Taghar** or country of the **Ghuzz** tribe, in **Turkīstān**, 923 n, 961 n, 962 n. See also under **Ghuzzīstān**.
- Taghar-gaz**,—a country of **Turkīstān**, probably corrupted from **Taghar-i-Ghuzz**, 962 n.
- Taktāl**, the old capital of the province of **Peshāwar**, 1002 n 5.
- Takhri**, an error for **Tighari**, see page xlv.
- Takt Hazīrah**,—a tract of country along the banks of the **Indus**, 1132 n.
- Tāikān** or **Tālikān**, 1010 n, for **Tāe-kān** of **Tukhārīstān**.
- Tai h-fā**,—a town in the Chinese province of **Yun-nan**, 1217 n.
- Taiming**, the present **Pyen-lyang**,—a city in the Chinese province of **Honan**, 958 n, 960 n, 1136 n 9, 1138 n,—called also **Nanking**.

- Tai-tong-fu, —a city in the country of Khita or Chia, 968 n.
- Tajir-Koh, —a tract of country in the territory of Ghar, xlix, 819 and n 4.
- Tak, —a fortress in the territory of Sijistan, 76 n 8, 81 n, 186 n, 366 n, 1028 n, 1029 n.
- Tak of Zabulistan, 366 n. See under Tak of Sijistan.
- Tak Bridge, the, —in the city of Ghannin, 356 n.
- Tak-ab, —a small district in the territory of Wajiristan, 384 and n 8.
- Tak-ab or Tak-ao, the, 334 n 8 See under the Tag-ab or Tag-ao.
- Takarharud, 94 n 2, 96 n 2, for Nanguihar or Nagrahär, which see.
- Takht-i-Bibi, —a hill north-east of Peshawar, 78 n.
- Takrit, —a town and fortress on the Dijlah [Tigris] above Baghdad, 907 n 8, 1232, 1233 and n 2, 1237.
- Tal-i-Bashir, —a strong fort and small town on a hill, two day's journey north of Haleb [Aleppo], 1273 n.
- Talakän of Juzjän, 1011 n, for Tse-kän of Tukharistan.
- Ta-la-kien, —the Täl-kän of Khurāsān as called by the Chinese traveller Hsuen Tsang, 1011 n.
- Talandah, for the fort of Taleandah, which see.
- Tälän Wasir, —a place in Mughalistan, 1166 n.
- Tälä or Täläh, —a little district immediately north of Lower Sawät, lv.
- Tälä or Täläh, —lv. See under Täläh of Turkistan.
- Tälä or Täläh, —another name of Taria, which see, 923 n.
- Täläh or Tälä, —a city of Turkistan, lv, 877 n.
- Täläh, the, —a river of Turkistan, 879 n.
- Taliwari, —a town of Hindüstan near Panipat, south of Thänäur, 469 n 7, 463 n, 467 n, 486 n, 506 n 8, 537 n, 635 n 4, 761 n 1, —formerly called Tarä'in, which see
- Talbandah, for the fort of Taleandah, which see.
- Talbis, —a place in the Diya-r-i-Misriah, 211.
- Talcun, 1010 n, 1011 n, for Tse-kän of Tukharistan.
- Talcun, 1011 n, for Täl-kän of Khurāsān.
- Talcun, 1011 n, for Tse-kän of Tukharistan.
- Tal-pat or Tal-pat, —a place in Hindüstan, S.-E. of Dihli, 837 and n 2.
- Tali, —a town in the country of Khita or Chia, 1231 n.
- Talikän, —incorrectly for Tse-kän of Tukharistan, which see, 94 n 2, 1010 n.
- Talikän on the Mugh-ab, 1010 n, for Täl-kän of Khurāsān, which see
- Tälkhän, —incorrectly for Tse-kän of Tukharistan, 94 n 2, 1008 n, 1010 n.
- Taling, —or
- Talingänah, —a city in south-eastern Bengal, 588 n, 589 n, 590 n, 593 n. [see.
- Talkah-Bäni, for Tikhah-Bäni, which

Talkah-māni, for Tikhah-Bāni, which see.

Tāl-kān,—a dependency of Kāswīn in the 'Irāq-i-'Ajam, 1009 n, 1010 n, 1206 n.

Tāl-kān,—a city and town in the territory of Khurāsān, between Marw and Balkh, xlviii, alix, lxi, lxii, 22 n 4, 43, 94 and n 3, 257 n 2, 293, 376 and n 7, 378, 390, 393, 399, 426 n 6, 474 n, 478 n 6, 481 n 3, 502 n 6, 609 n 2, 917, 938 n, 1008, 1005, 1006 and n 5, 1009 and n, 1010 n, 1011 n, 1012, 1013, 1015 n, 1019 n, 1020 n, 1023 n, 1025 n, 1027 n 3, 1040 n 2, 1049 n 2, 1071 and n 2, 1079 and n 3, 1082 n, 1099 n, 1101 n 1, 1103 n, 1109 and n 4, 1110 n, 1153 n, 1201 n.

Tāl-kān of Tukhārīstān, 426 n 6, 809 n 2, 1009 n. See under Tīa-kān of Tukhārīstān.

Tal-pat, same as Talb-pat, which see.

Talsandah,—a stronghold within the limits of Kinnauj, xxvii, 679 and n 6, 680 n, 816.

Taiwandī,—name of several places in Hindūstān, 459 n 7.

Talwīrah,—the present name of the fortress of Kālmījar of Multān, 75 n 6, 87 n, 1074 n.

Talwīyah,—a place in Hindūstān, on the road from Dillī to Bhatnair, 459 n 7.

Tāmāk,—a tract of country in Turkīstān, 877 n, afterwards called the Dašt-i-Kāughāk.

Tamghā,—a city and territory of Turkīstān, 154, 270, 271, 300, 309 n, 324 n, 335 and n 2, 330, 354, 355, 357 n, 358 n, 390 and

n 3, 361 and n, 363, 365 and n 3, 366, 367, 368, 374, 1047, 1052, 1084, 1096, 1097, 1103, 1107, 1109, 1111 and n, 1112, 1144 n 4, 1157, 1158 n 3, 1184, 1215 and n 2, 1257 n, 1262, 1291.

Tamīghah, an error for Tūmmīghah, see page ix.

Tamking, capital of the Altān Khān of Khitā, 1138 n, 1139 n.

Tammā, the,—another name of the river Don, 1170 n 2.

Tanśar, 459 n 7, for Thāni-sar, which see.

Tangah-Takū, 991 n, same as Tang-Talū, which see.

Tangāi or Tingāi,—a city in the territory of Tinghāt or Kīghin, 1035 n 2.

Tangan, the,—a river in the territory of Banglāh, 590 n.

Tangutān, or region of tangs or defiles,—the assemblage of mountains which constitutes the territory of Bootan, 508 n.

Tangtābāsh,—another name of the country of Tinguīsh or Nungūish, 1087 n.

Tang-Talū,—a range of mountains between Lūristān and Fārs, 277 n 5, 331 n.

Tangsthan,—the mountains of Bootan, 468 n. See under Tangutān.

Tangut, 947 n, for the country of Tinghāt or Kīghin.

Tanklah-Bāni, for Tikhah-Bāni, which see.

Tanklah-Pāni, for Tikhah-Bāni, which see.

Tannasar, 461 n, for Thāni-sar, which see.

Tarî',—the marshy forest at the foot of the Sub-Himalayah, 826 n 9.

Tarî'n, —a town of Hindûstân, on the banks of the Suruti, south of Thânisar, 423 n 9, 457 n, 459 and n 7, 463 n, 466, 477 n, 486 n, 491, 505 and n 8, 515 n 7, 537 n, 549, 606 and n 8, 635 and n 4, 761 and n 1, 779 and n 3, 802 n 2, 1069 n 9, —now called Talîwari or Tarîwari.

Tarî'n gate, —one of the gates of Firûz-koh, the capital of Ghûr, 410 n 5.

Tarî'n ghar, 460 n 3, same as Tarâ'n, which see.

Tarak [vol. Terek], the, —a river of Âzarbâijân, 1287 n.

Târam, —a territory in the province of Lâr or Lâristân, in Persia, 98 and n 7, 1192 n

Târân, —a village of Mâwarâ un-Nahr, near Bukhârâ, 1145 n

Tarîwari, —a town of Hindûstân, south of Thânisar, 463 n, —formerly called Tarâ'n, which see.

Tarâs, —a territory of Mâwarâ un-Nahr, beyond the frontier of Shâsh, on the side nearest to Turkistân, 154, 200 n 7, 261 and n, 268 n 3, 283 n 9, 402 n, 411 n, 474 n, 889 n, 905 n, 911, 915 n, 919 n, 921 n, 923 n, 924 n, 929 n, 932 n, 934, 970 n 3, 1118 n 9, —called also Bâuki and Talâs or Talâsh

Târbogor, —or

Târbokor, —a tract of country east of the territory of Kâshghar, 922 n.

Targhâ-Bâligh, —the later name of

the Apal Yarat or the original Yarat of the Chingis Khân, in Kalur-ân and Kârî-Kuram, 1140 n.

Tarhind, 466 n 1, for Tabarhindah, which see.

Tarhindah, 466 n, for Tabarhindah, which see.

Tarkân, the, —a river issuing from the mountains of Bûldân Kâ-ir and falling into the river of Ardish in Turkistân, 1148 n.

Tarkû, —the chief city of the Âliân in Daghîstân, 999 n.

Tarmaz, 196 n 2, incorrectly for Tirmuz or Tiruid. [see.

Tarra, incorrectly for Tarâ', which  
Tartary, 567 n 4, 955 n, 1069 n, 1217 n, 1218 n, 1365 n. See also under Tataristân and Tâtîary.

Tâshkand, —a territory and city of Mawarâ un-Nahr, on the Sîhân or Jazartes, on the frontier of the Turks, 23 n 8, 390 n, 919 n, 921 n, 932 n, 970 n 2, 972 n, 973 n, 975 n, —formerly called Shush.

Tataristân, 270. See under Tartary and Tâtîary.

Tâtîary, 920 n. See also under Tartary and Tataristân.

Taulikhaun, 1010 n, incorrectly for Tîo-khân of Tukkharistân.

Tauris, —a town in the territory of Irân Zamîn, 1194 n.

Taxilas, —a town a few miles east of the Indus, 76 n.

Tâyâng-fû, —another name of Ching-dû, the capital of the Altân Khân of Khitâ, 1136 n 9, 1137 n, —the present Fai-fong-fu.

Tâyif, —a town of al-Hijâz in Arabia, 140 n 5.

- Tayming**, 936 n., same as Taiming, which see.
- Tis Muria**, or **River Tis**,—a river of Turkistān, 947 n.
- Terek**,—a river in the province of Āzarbāijān, 1287 n. See under **Tarak**.
- Terki**,—the chief city of the Cherkassians, 999 n.,—the present **Moedok**.
- Tes**,—a seaport in the province of Mukrān, 1075 n.
- Thaigin**,—a castle in Grand Tartary, 1069 n.
- Thaneswar**, app. l. See under **Thāni-sar**.
- Thangir** or **Thankir**,—a fortress of Hindūstān, the present Biānah, 545 and n 5, 546 n 7, 724 n 2. See also under **Thankir**.
- Thāni-sar**,—a city and town of Hindūstān, 458 n., 459 n 7, 460 n 2, 461 n., 463 n., 606 n 8,—app. l.
- Thankir** or **Thangir**,—a fortress of Hindūstān, the modern Biānah, 470 and n 2, 471 n., 491, 516, 520 n., 521 n., 542 n 9, 544 n 1, 545 and n 5, 628. See also under **Thangir**.
- Thaṭṭah**,—a district and town in Lower Sind, 295 n., 452 n 2, 614 n 5.
- Thebes**,—a city of ancient Egypt, 140 n 2.
- Theiss**, the, —a river of Hungary, 1167 n.
- Therapia**,—a quarter of Constantinople, 899 n.
- Thunshan**, or **Ulugh-Tigh** mountains, in Mughūlstān, 920 n., 922 n.
- Thus**, 1028 n., for **Tūs** the city of **Khurāsān**, which see.
- Thung-ling** or **Mountains of Pamir**, the, 426 n 6.
- Thuttes**,—a town about eight miles S. of Kinnauj, 680 n.
- Tibbat**, 517 n 2, 560 and n 4 and 7, 562 n., 563 n., 564 and n., 565, 568 n 7, 572 and n 2, 593 n., 606 n., 737 n 2, 870 n., 889 n., 896 n., 909 n., 922 n., 935 n 2, 944 n., 950 n., 951 n., 981 n., 1046 n., 1084, 1108, 1187 n., 1141 n., 1158 n 3, 1184 n., 1216 n., 1217 n., 1218 n., 1221 n.
- Tiberhind**, 458 n., 461 n., for **Taberhindah**, which see.
- Tiberias**,—the **Tabariah** of the Arabs, 221 n.
- Tibet**, 560 n 4, for **Tibbat**, which see.
- Tiflis**,—a town of **Ġharjistān**, 297 n. See also under **Tafis**.
- Tigharī**, xlv.
- Tigin-ābād**,—a city between **Ġhas-min** and **Ġhār**, xlv., 89 and n 8, 110 n 5, 111, 148, 253, 324 n., 347 n 2, 350, 353, 376 and n 2, 391, 443 and n 3, 449, 1015 n.
- Tigree Burehnee**,—a place of Hindūstān, 697 n 5.
- Tigris**, the, 61, 207 n 8, 1232, 1236, 1240 n., 1241 n 1, 1260 n 5, 1268 n 8 and 9. See also under the **Dijlah**.
- Tiklah-Bami**, for **Tiklah-Bāni**, which see.
- Tiklah-Bāni**,—a town of Hindūstān, 697 and n and n 5.
- Tiklah-Māni**, for **Tiklah-Bāni**, which see.
- Til** or **Til**, the, —a river of **Karī-Khitā**, 956 n.
- Tilak-pār**,—a town of Hindūstān 697 n 5.

Tilak-poor, for Tilak-pār, which see.  
 Tilkah-Bānī, for Tikhah-Bānī, which see.  
 Tillock-poor, for Tilak-pār, which see.  
 Tillok-poor, for Tilak-pār, which see.  
 Tilsindah, for the fort of Talsandah, which see.  
 Tilsurra,—a town of Hindūstān about twelve miles S.-S.-W. of Kinnanj, 680 n.  
 Timmesahah or Timmichah, for Timmichah, which see.  
 Timmichah, darah or Pass of,—in Khurāsān, on the road from Nishāpūr to Māsāndarān, lx, 277, 992 and n 6.  
 Timrād,—a district in the country of Qhūr, 319, 344, 409, 490, 1079.  
 Timūr Kalā'h,—a fortress in the territory of Khurāsān, 1004 n 1.  
 Tingāi or Tangāi,—a city in the country of Tingkūt or Kāshin, 1065 n. [which see  
 Tingbāsh, 1216 n, for Tingnash,  
 Tinghut or Tingū', 917 n. See under Tingkūt.  
 Tingit,—a tract of country in Turkestan, xlviii, 270, 960 and n 6, 983, 1047, 1083, 1084, 1085, 1104, 1106, 1107, 1109, 1111 and n, 1157, 1158  
 Tingkut or Tinghūt,—a mountainous country adjoining Khūto, called Kāshin by the Mughals, xlviii, 944 n, 947 n, 949 n, 950 n, 952 n, 1046 n, 1047 n 4, 1073 n 4, 1084 n, 1085 n, 1088 n, 1092 n, 1115 n 5, 1140 n, 1217 n, 1220 n,—also called Ankāto or Ankatic.

Tingūka, 1216 n, for Tingnash, which see.  
 Tingnash or Ningnash,—the country east of Khūto or Qhūn as called by the Mughals, 1086 n, 1087 n, 1088 n, 1141 n, 1216 n, 1217 n, 1219 n, 1220 n,—it is called Mahā-Qhūn by the Hindūs and Manzi by the Chinese.  
 Tingtāsh, 1216 n, for Tingnash, which see.  
 Tingut, 1111 n,—probably a misprint for Tingit. [kūt.  
 Tinkūt, 952 n. See under Ting.  
 Tiparah,—a district in the province of Bengal, 589 n.  
 Tiperah, same as Tiparah, which see.  
 Tirmari, 459 n 7, for Tarāwari, which see.  
 Tirkūt,—a district and town in the province of Bengal, 563 n, 564 n, 568 and n 7, 588, 627, 630 n 8, 701 n 2, 705 n 7, 737, 830, 838.  
 Turmaz,—a village in the territory of Khurāsān, on the frontier of Balkh, 75 n 5.  
 Turmid or Tirmiz,—a city of Mawarā-un-Nahr, on the Jihūn or Oxus, 154 n 2, 265 n 4, 275 n 2, 375 n, 401 n, 423 n 8, 424 n 3, 426 n 6, 431, 917, 988 n, 1002 and n 1, 1004 and n 1, 1005 and n, 1011 n, 1034 n 2, 1099 n, 1174, 1175, 1176, 1195 n, 1275 n 3. See also under Tirmiz.  
 Turmid, the,—a river falling into the Jihūn, 275 n 2.  
 Tirmidh, 1275 n 3. See under Tirmiz.  
 Tirmiz or Tirmid,—a city of Mawarā-un-Nahr, on the Jihūn

- or Oxus, 147 n 3, 154 n 2, 156 n 3, 196 and n 2, 228, 276 n, 300 n, 326 n, 1003 n 1, 1015 n. See also under Tirmid.
- Tirasa,—a town of Hindūstān, about ten miles S.-W. of Kinnauj, 680 n.
- Tiroury, 459 n 7, 461 n, for Tarī-wari, which see.
- Tür, 391 n, incorrectly for the stronghold of Narwur or Nirwur, which see.
- Tshù Lāmbū or Digārahah,—a monastery in Tibet, the seat of a Lāma, 570 n 9.
- Tistah, the,—a river passing through the country of Sikkim, 561 n, 563 n.
- Tiz or Tes,—a seaport in the province of Mukrān, 1075 n.
- Tocarestan, 1010 n, for Tukhārīstān, which see.
- Tocaristan, 1011 n, for Tukhārīstān, which see.
- To-i of Būshanj [Fūshanj],—a place in the territory of Hirat, 901 and n 1.
- Tokaghi,—a tract in the country of the Urus, 1170 n.
- Tokharistan, 1011 n, for Tukhārīstān, which see.
- Tolak, 1045 n, for the fortress of Tūlak, which see [kāt.
- Toncat, 1083 n. See under Ton-Tong-king,—a province of Khutā or Qhūn, 1221 n.
- Tonkāt or Toncat,—a city of Mī-wari-un-Nahr, 1063 n, 1083 n.
- Tops, the,—a river of Hindustān, 663 n.
- Trāk,—a town in the territory of Khurāsān, 471 n 5.
- Transoxiana, 1010 n, 1058 n 6, 1084 n. See also under Mīwari-un-Nahr.
- Trans Oxus, the equivalent of Mī-wari-un-Nahr, 921 n.
- Tripoli, in Syria, 101 n 8.
- Tschi Li, the Chinese province of, 885 n.
- Tsing-fū-hay,—a province of China, 961 n.
- Tughlak-ābād,—a suburb of the city of Dīhli, 599 n.
- Tukerabad, 448 n 3, for Tigin-ābād, which see.
- Tukhārīstān,—a tract of country in Khurāsān, dependent on Balkh, xii, xli, lxii, 22, 71, 74, 84, 94 n 3, 99, 132, 137, 290, 306 and n 3, 317 n 5, 320 n 3, 337, 362 and n 2, 375 n, 401 n, 405 n 3, 421, 422, 423 and n 4, 424 n 3, 426 and n 6, 427 and n, 429 and n 1, 431, 432 n 1, 436 481 n 8, 505, 800 n 2, 880, 989 n, 1002, 1004, 1006, 1008 n 5, 1009 n, 1010 n, 1011 n, 1016, 1018 n, 1025 n, 1045 n, 1054, 1057 n 4, 1058 n 6, 1061 n 7, 1081 n 1, 1109, 1110 n, 1133, 1152, 1153 n, 1226 n 9.
- Tiku Kahrak,—a place in Mughūlistān, 940 n.
- Talā, the,—a river of Mughūlistān, 1093 n.
- Tūlak,—a district and town in the mountains near Hirat in the territory of Khurāsān, xi, xxi, xxii, xxiv, xv, 201, 362, 381 n 5, 457 n, 459 and n 4, 464 and n 6, 963, 1008 n 2, 1008, 1006, 1007 465, and n 1, 1025 n, 1045 n, 1055 n 6, 1057, 1059 and n 9, 1060 and n 5, 1061 and n 9, 1062 and n 4 and 5,



- 1069, 1070 and n, 1197, 1198, 1201 n,—app. iii, v.
- Tálkín,—a city of Turkistán, between Hsiā-Báligh and Mārī-Karam, 1184 n.
- Tün,—a district and town in the Kúhistan of the Malāhidah, 1193 n, 1196 n, 1197 n 3, 1198, 1214 and n 8.
- Tunganabad, 448 n 3, for Tigin-ābid, which see.
- Tūng Chiw,—a city in the country of the Khitān, 956 n.
- Tung-quin,—a town between Gan-nan and Chin, 1232 n.
- Tungūt or Tūngūt,—a tract of country south of Mughūlstān, 889 n. [Chūr, 328 n.
- Tūr,—a place in the country of Tār,—a city in the *pañd* or steppe in the E. and S. of the territory of Kāshghar, 923 n.
- Tūr,—or
- Tūrān,—the countries east of the Jihūn [Oxus], from the limits of Hind to the frontier of the Turks, lxiv, 29, 84, 116, 118, 123, 137, 280, 561 n 9, 579 n 4, 797, 870 and n, 871, 877 n, 882 n, 902 n, 914 n, 915 n, 917 n 1, 920 n, 901 n, 990 n, 1097 n, 1107, 1277 n.
- Tūrān Zamin,—the tract of country from the Naemān country to the banks of the Jihūn, 1073 n 4, 1075 n, 1145 n.
- Tūrān,—a tract of country south of Mughūlstān, 889 n, 916 n, 920 n, 922 n, 966 n 8, 969 n 1, 985 n.
- Turkey, 694 n 4.
- Turkiah, or country of the Turks, 878 n. See under Turkistán.
- Turkistán, xiv, xvii, liv, lv, 27 n 4, 29, 45 and n 8, 69, 70 and n 8, 84, 85 n, 91 n 3, 94 n 3, 117 and n, 118, 123, 124, 154, 155, 164, 186 n, 223 n 5 and 6, 227, 242 n 6, 244 n 4, 245, 254, 260, 261, 264, 267, 268 n 4, 270 and n 5, 271 n, 273 and n 5, 280, 282, 423 and n 8, 426 n 6, 474, 480, 481, 485 n 3, 512, 532, 560 and n 4, 561 n 9, 562 n, 566 n 9, 594 n 1, 598, 599 and n 10, 618 n, 626, 656 n 2, 696, 698 n, 712 n 9, 731 n 9, 744 n 9, 768, 771 n, 772 n, 774 n, 775 n, 784 and n and n 5, 786 and n 5, 791, 792, 793 n, 796, 800, 809, 815, 816, 847 n 1, 867 and n 1, 862, 863, 870 n, 872 n, 880, 891 n, 894 n, 890 n, 893 n, 896 n, 901 n, 902 n, 903 n, 904 n, 905 n, 906 n, 908 n, 909 n, 910 n, 911, 914 n, 915 n, 916 n, 917 n 1, 918 n, 919 n, 920 n, 921 n, 923 n, 924 n, 925 n, 926 n, 932 n, 933 n, 934, 935 n 3, 937, 943 n, 952 n, 960 n 6, 961 n, 962 n, 963 n, 966 n 6, 968, 969 n 1, 977 n, 980 and n 8, 984 n, 1011 n, 1026, 1035 n, 1044 n, 1046 n 3, 1047, 1073, 1077, 1082 n, 1084 n, 1091 n, 1097 and n 6, 1104, 1107, 1109, 1111, 1112 and n 8, 1114, 1117, 1119, 1127 n, 1128 n, 1133, 1146, 1147, 1149 n, 1152 n, 1157, 1158, 1166, 1172, 1178, 1186 and n, 1191 n, 1194 n, 1200 n, 1215, 1216 n, 1217 n, 1220, 1223, 1224 n, 1225 n, 1226, 1257 and n, 1282 and n 8 and 1.
- Tūr-kūghah or Tūr-kūghah,—name of the Great Wall of China with the Turks, 956 n.
- Turhūn,—a fortress in the Kūh-

Men of the Malikbidah, 244 n 4,  
284 n 4, 1192 n.  
Turught,—a town near Rai in the  
'Irāk-i-'Ajam, 125 n 1.  
Tīm,—city of Nishāpūr in Khurāsān,  
40 n 4, 44, 47, 48, 71 n 5,  
81 n, 130, 131 n 7, 181 n 2, 246

n 8, 247 n, 250 n 6, 255 n 7, 276 n,  
471 and n 5, 472 n, 479 n, 491,  
545 n 5, 591 n, 1027 n 8, 1028 n,  
1080 n, 1087 n, 1046 n, 1117 n,  
1136 n, 1140 n, 1194 n, 1195 n,  
1257 n, 1287 n.  
Tyana, 78 n.

## U.

'Ubaidiān,—a tract of country in  
Arabia, 228 n 4.

Uch, the Europeanised name of  
Uchbah, 300 n 4, 541 n 6 and 9,  
542 n 9, 810 n, 812 n 3. See also  
under Uchbah.

Uchbah,—a city in the Sind pro-  
vince, on the united waters of  
the Ghir̄r and the Ghunāb, xxi,  
xxv, xxvii, li, 300 and n 4, 398,  
394 n, 449 n 2, 450 n, 451 and n,  
459, 461, 530, 531 and n 8, 533  
and n 1, 533 n, 538 n, 539 n, 541  
and n 6 and 7, 542 n 9, 543 n,  
544 and n 2, 608 n 1, 611, 612 and  
n 6, 613 and n 7, 614 n 3, 615 and  
n 1, 617 n, 618 n, 628, 633 n 6, 641  
n ii, 645 n, 656 n, 667, 668 and n,  
668 and n and n 3, 696 and n and  
n 6, 692 and n 3, 696 and n 2, 696  
n and n 3, 707, 711 and n 4, 714  
n 9, 723, 724 and n 3, 727 and n 6,  
728, 730, 731, 746, 753 and n 9,  
780, 781 and n 9, 782, 783 and n,  
784 and n and n 3, 785, 786 and  
n 6, 792, 809, 810 n, 811 and n 8,  
812 n 2, 813 n, 825 n 6, 850 n 3,  
851 n 8, 860, 1074 n, 1153 and  
n 9, 1154 and n 2, 1155 n 6, 1156  
and n 7, 1181 n 2, 1201 n, 1202 n,  
1224 n

Uchbah-i-Jalili,—name by which  
Uchbah is also called, 541 n n.

Uchbah-i-Mahdūm,—one of the  
quarters of the city of Uchbah,  
541 n 6.

Uchbah-i-Mughal,—one of the  
quarters of the city of Uchbah,  
541 n 6.

Uchbah-i-Sharif,—one of the  
quarters of the city of Uchbah,  
541 n 6.

Uch-Ughul Ulūdūr,—a city in the  
country of the Urūs [Russians],  
1171 n.

Udal,—a fortress of Hindūstān,  
about four miles S. E. of Kanauj,  
680 n.

Udipūr,—a town to the east of the  
Aravali mountains, 521 n.

Uḡṣah,—a territory adjoining Jēh-  
nagar, 593 n, 593 n.

Uḡṣah-Jag-nāthh,—a district of  
Bangālāh, 588 n.

Uhand,—a fortress above the junc-  
tion of the Nil-āb or river of  
Kābul with the Indus, 78 n.

Uiguria, 918 n, for I-ghuriā, or coun-  
try of the I-ghurs, which see.

Un-Kun,—the Turkish name of  
the Great Wall of China,  
956 n.

- Ujān,—a town in the territory of Fāra, 184 n.
- Ujān, 633 n. 2, for Ujjain, which see.
- Uji-Khel,—a town in the province of Kapurth, in Afghanistan, 409 n.
- Ujjain, the ancient capital of Māli-wah, 617 and n. 3, 621 n. 6, 623 n. 2, 722 n. 3, 735 n. 3, 817 n. 7.
- Ujjain-Nagari,—a fortress of Māli-wah, in Hindūstān, 622, 623 n. 9, 628.
- Uk,—a place in the territory of Sijistān, 36 n., 81 n. See also under Uk.
- Ok,—a fortress of Sijistān or Zāwulistān, xiv, xlvii, 84 and n. 3, 85 n., 201 and n. 4, 1120 and n. 2, 1122 n., 1124, 1125, 1126 and n. 6, 1193 n.
- Ūkī,—a place in Turkistān, 1038 n. Also called Akābar and Akšir.
- ʿUkba Ghūsak,—a pass in a lofty mountain in Northern India, 87 n.
- Uk-timūr [Uladims],—a territory in the country of the Urdū [Russians], 1171 n.
- Uluḡ-Tāgh or Ur-Tāgh,—a range of mountains in Mughūlistān, the Thianshan mountains of the maps, 876 n., 920 n., 922 n., 949 n., 969 n. 1, 970 n. 2, 1184 n.
- Uluḡ-Tāḡ, same as Uluḡ-Tāgh, which see.
- Uluḡ-Yūrat, also styled the Aḡal or Original Yūrat of the Qhāngī Khān, referring to Kalār-ān and Kārī-Kuram, 1104 n. 5, 1106 n., 1138 n., 1140 n., 1185 n.
- Ulās or Ulūḡ Arki or Argi,—a tract of country in Mughūlistān, 895 n.
- Ulās-i-Aurgah or Urgah,—the Ourga or Kuren of modern maps, 895 n.
- Umbeylah,—a town in the Panjāb, the Umballa of the maps, 327 n.
- ʿUmmān,—a district and town in Arabia, 65 n. 5, 88 n. 2, 179 n. 3, 203 n.
- ʿUmsān, see of,—the Arabian Sea, 203 n.
- Umārdan or Umardān, the capital of the Jīj-nagar state, 588 n., 763 and n. 4.
- Umardān or Umardān,—a wilāyat or district of the Jīj-nagar state, 588 n.
- Un Mārān, the,—a river of Mughūlistān, 943 n.
- Ungē—name of the Great Wall of China with the Khitāi, 956 n.
- Un-Nār, the, 77 n. See under the river Nār.
- Un-āl,—a city in the country of the Khitāi, 956 n.
- Upper Andes, the, 663 n. 3, 737.
- Upper Do-āb, 705 n. 7.
- Upper Hungary, 1165 n.
- Upper Jeaneesee, the, 963 n.
- Upper Sind. See under Sind.
- Ur or Aor Mārān, the,—a river on the frontier of Khitāi, 943 n.
- Urdū Balīk. See under the Urdū Balīgh.
- Urdū-Balīgh,—another name of Kārī-Kuram, which is also called the Uluḡ Yūrat, 916 n., 1105 n., 1110 n. 5, 1121 n., 1129 n., 1140 n., 1172 n. 9.
- Urdūḡand,—another name of Kāshghar, 884 n.
- Urga,—a town in Mughūlistān, 1090 n.

Urgān,—a place in the territory of Ghassnīn: probably Urgān, xlix, 388 and n 6.

Urgānj, the capital city of Khwārazm, as called by the Turks; the Jarjānīah of the Arabs and the Gurgānj of the 'Ajāmiā, xiv, xlviii, 52 n 9, 138 n, 308 n, 329 n, 1000 n, 1097 n 7, 1098 n, 1101 n 1, 1103 n, 1116 n, 1118 n 9, 1123 n, 1143 n.

Urganj-i-Kubrī [Kubrāʾ?], the capital of Khwārazm, 930 n. See also under Urgānj.

Urgandj, 1097 n 7, 1098 n, for Urgānj, which see.

Urghundab, the, 1070 n 9, for the Arghand, which see.

Urgūn,—a place in the district of Ghassnīn, xlix.

Urgundab, the, 1070 n 9, for the Arghandāb, which see.

Urjand, 52 and n 9, for Us-gand, the city in Farghānah.

Urkān, 392 n 6, same as Urgān, which see.

Urmardan or Armardan. See under Umārdan.

Urnā-dees or the Upper An-dee,—a part of Tibbat, 787 and 9.

Ur-Tāgh or Or-Tāgh,—or

Ur-Tāḡ or Or-Tāḡ,—a range of mountains in Mughūlīstān, 575 n, 579 n, 570 n 2. See also under Ulugh-Tāgh.

Uramohi,—a city in the country of the Ighāra, 918 n

Urūmī or Arūmī,—a city in the territory of Tinghāt or Khāshān, 1085 n.

Urūmī, sea of,—the Lake Urumiāh in Āzarbāijān, 1263 n.

Urumiāh, Lake,—in Āzarbāijān, 1263 n.

Urumtal,—a city in the country of the I-ghāra, 918 n.

Urūa or Rūa, country of, 1168 n, 1168 n, 1171 n.

Usaneth,—a fortress in Gharjis-tān, 1001 n. [553 n 2]

Ush,—a place near Baghdād, 632 n.

Ush,—a city in the territory of Farghānah, in Māwari-un-Nahr, 921 n, 933 n.

Ushūn-Lūḡ, the,—a range of mountains in the country of the I-ghāra, 869 n.

Usūn, the,—a river issuing from the mountains of Buldān Kā-ir and falling into the river of Ar-dīsh in Turkīstān, 1148 n.

U-tāgh,—or

U-tāḡ,—a tract of country in Mughūlīstān, 1178 n.

Utrār,—a district and town in Turkīstān, 263 n 1, 266 n, 272 and n 1, 273 and n 5, 280 n 9, 338 n, 390 n, 308 n, 311 n, 320 n, 353 n, 366, 368, 369 and n 1, 370 and n 3, 371 n, 375 and n 5, 378 and n, 385 n, 386 n, 388 n, 1041, 1184 n,—also called Fārīsh, which see.

Uzbakīstān, the country of the Uzbaks in Turkīstān, 890 n.

'Uḡdi hospital,—of Baghdād, founded by 'Uḡd-ud-Daulah Buwīsh, 1243 n.

Uḡand,—a city and town in the territory of Farghānah, in Māwari-un-Nahr, 52 n 9, 53 n, 138 n and n 8, 303 n, 321 n, 323 n.

Uḡand, 52 n 9, for Uḡand, the city in Farghānah.

Onband or Yabband,—a city in Turkistān, xiv, 970 n 2, 971 n. | Usmardan or Aqmardan. See under Umīrdan.

## V.

Vaarf,—incorrect spelling of Waḳf, the village in the district of Baghdād, 1254 n.  
 Vaihund, 330 n 7, for Waihind, which see.  
 Valania, the country between the Danube and the Atil or Volga, 1166 n.  
 Van, Lake,—in Armenia, 1264 n. See also under Wān.  
 Vladimir,—a territory in the country of the Urūs [Russians], 1171 n.  
 Volga, the, 1170 n 2. See also under the Wolga.  
 Vū-chang-Fū, capital of the Chinese province of Hā-quang, 1210 n, 1221 n.

## W.

Wabern,—a town of Switzerland near Bern, xvii.  
 Wabhind or Wabband, 76 n 2. See under Bahind and Waihind.  
 Wadiwajsd,—a town of Ghazjistān in Khurāsān, 369 and n 8, 370 n.  
 Wādī, the,—the valley of the Tigris and the Euphrates, 1260 and n 5.  
 Wādī, the,—a valley near the 'Ayn-i-Jālūt in Syria, 1277 n.  
 Wāḡāl Kūghān or Bijand,—a stronghold in the country of the Makrītā, 247 n.  
 Wāḡhān,—a district in the country of Ghūr, 317 n 4.  
 Waband, 76, 80 n. See under Bahind and Waihind.  
 Waihind, 76, 77. See under Bahind and Waihind.  
 Waihind-Sāgar, the,—the river of Waihind or the Indus, 80 n.  
 Waihind or Bahind,—a city on the bank of the river Sind, 76 and n 2, 77 n, 78 n, 79 n, 80 n, 81 n, 293 n, 339 n 7, 1018 n, 1043 n 1, 1217 n.  
 Waihind,—the ancient name of Kandahār of Afghānistān, 1018 n.  
 Wajiah,—a district and castle in the country of Ghūr, 340 and n 1, 392 and n 6.  
 Wajiristān,—a district and town in the country of Ghūr, 108 n 8, 324 n, 334 and n 8, 357 and n 1, 366, 369, 447, 491.  
 Wajraward, 370 n, for Wadiwajsd, which see.  
 Waḳf,—a village in the district of Baghdād, 1254 n.  
 Wākhān,—a tract of country in Central Asia, 1044 n.  
 Wakhsh,—a dependency of Badakhshān, 390, 424 and n 2, 436 and

- n 3, 433, 439, 454, 909 n. Also called Khutlān.
- Wakhsh-Āb, the,—a river issuing out of Turkistān and falling into the Oxus near Tirmid, 433 n 6, 909 n.
- Wālān,—incorrectly for Wālīgh-tān, xlviii, 283 n, 289 n, 290 n 4, 1017 n, 1018 n, 1019 n, 1020 n, 1025 n.
- Walidān,—a tract of country in the Jazīrah [Mesopotamia], 228 n 4.
- Wālīn,—an error for Walwālīj, which see, 283 n 3, 1018 n.
- Walshian,—a town north of Bāmīān and Ghasnīn, 1018 n.
- Wālīshān,—a district in the country of Ghūr, 317 n 4.
- Wālīgh,—a territory in the mountain tract of Waranī, in the country of Ghūr, 319 and n 5, 561 and n, 1018 n.
- Wālīgh-tān, 317 n 4, 561 n. See under Wālīgh of Ghūr.
- Wālīgh-tān,—a tract of country in Tukhārīstān of Balḫ, xlviii, xlix, 581 and n, 1016, 1017 n, 1018 n, 1019 n, 1020 n, 1025 n.
- Wālīstān,—a town in the territory of Khurāsān, 319 n 5.
- Walḫ,—a town in Tukhārīstān of Balḫ, 426 n 6, 989 n, 1002 and n 4, 1004, 1023 and n 3, 1024 n 2, 1025 and n and n 3, 1026, 1027 n 8, 1054, 1058 n 8, 1061 n 7.
- Walwālīj,—a town in the district of Balḫ, in Khurāsān, 288 n 2, 426 n 6, 1010 n, 1017 n, 1018 n, 1025 n, 1153.
- Wāmīān,—incorrectly for Wālīgh-tān, xlviii, 283 n 3, 289 n, 290 n 4.
- Wāmīān, 283 n 3. Same as Bāmīān, which see.
- Wāmūd, for Wāhīd in Reynolds' version of al-'Uṭbī, 76 n 2.
- Wān [val. Van], Lake,—in Armenia, 1264 n, 1275 n 2.
- Wana-Gangī, the,—a river of Hindūstān, 586 n.
- Wanj-rūt,—a territory in the Multān province, 723 and n 1, 725 n 6.
- Warangul, in the Dakhan, formerly called Arangul, 560 n.
- Waranī,—a mountain tract in the country of Ghūr, 319, 1018 n.
- Warḥād,—or
- Warḥādah,—a territory in the country of Ghūr, 339 and n 6.
- Warḥār, 339 n 6, for Warḥādah, which see.
- War-Tāgh,—or
- War-Tāḫ,—a range of mountains in Mughūlīstān, 575 n.
- Warwālīn, 426 n 6, for Zawālīn, the district of Balḫ.
- Wāsīt,—a district and town in 'Irāḳ, 10, 1261 n 7.
- Wāwālīn,—a town in the vicinity of Kunduz, 288 n 2.
- Wazirābād,—a town of Hindūstān, 578 n 1.
- Wejā,—a plain in the territory of Ghūr, 372 n 3.
- Wemah,—a district of Māwarā-n-Nahr, 423 n 8.
- Western Asia, 125 n 8, 579 n, 630 n, 1190 n 1.
- Western Lyax,—the empire of the Kin with the Chinese, 921 n.
- Western Kamrup, 563 n.
- Western Turkistān, 980 n 8.
- Whe-chow,—a town in the district of Shan-fā, in China, 1212 n.

Wan-chow,—a city in the Chinese province of Kachin, 1141 n, 1218 n.  
 Whatingah, fortress of, 79 n, 80 n.  
 Same as Batching or Batching, which see.  
 Whayley,—a town in the country of Khotā or Chin, 958 n.  
 Wihār, 552 n 3,—name of Bihār in Sanskrit.  
 Wihāt or Bihāt, the, 535 n, 536 n, 537 n. See the Bihāt.  
 Wibatah or Bihatah, the, 536 n.  
 See under the Bihāt.  
 Wijayapūr or Bijajpūr,—a town of Hindūstān, 560 n 4.

Wikrāmpūr or Birkāmpūr,—a town of Hindūstān south-east of Dhākah, 558 n 1.  
 Windsor Castle, 651 n 6.  
 Wolga, the,—the Volga of the maps, 870 n, 1000 n, 1169 n, 1170 n 3, 1173 n 9, 1173 n, 1290 n 9.  
 It is also called the Atil.  
 Wurdhan, 561 n 8, for Burdhan-kot, which see.  
 Wurmesghān, 392 n 6.  
 Wurādah-Duj,—a fortress in the mountainous tract between Hamadān and the Siwād of Baghdād, 1238 n 3.

## X

Kandu, the name in Ramens of Sheng-tā or Kay-ping-Fu, the

capital of the Chingizid dynasty in Tartary, 1219 n.

## Y.

Yakah Kurūk,—the place where the Chingiz Khān was buried, 1123 n.  
 Also styled Bāghān or Bārjān Kaldūn.  
 Yakah Wandār,—a mountain range in Mughālistān, 1143 n,—formerly called Buldān Kā-ir.  
 Ye'kūbah,—a district in the neighbourhood of Baghdād, 1255 n.  
 Yalarwān,—a fortress in Charijstān of Khurāsān, 115 n 6, 1073 n 5. Same as Balarwān of Charijstān, which see.  
 Yalāsi-ghān, 930 n, for Bilāsi-ghān, which see.

Yamak or Yamūk,—a district and town in Turkistān, 961 n.  
 Yaman,—a province in Arabia, xxxiii, 6, 7, 8, 26 and n 2, 133 140 n 5, 203, 214 and n 6, 226 and n 7, 236 and n 4, 303 n 7.  
 Yamanā, the,—another name of the Jua or Jumnah, 733 n 7, 743 n 9. See also under the Jūn.  
 Yangi-kant,—a town on the Sihān [Jaxartes], 970 n 2.  
 Yangtai, the,—a river of Mughālistān, 1256 n 6.  
 Yaris or Yāsar,—a fortress in the territory of Sijstān, 1038 n.

Yarkand,—a city south-east of Kāshghar, 869 n, 922 n, 942 n, 984 n, 1044 n.

Yashkal or Baghal, Dara'h or Pass of,—on the road to Tāi-pān, 1208 n.

Yasūn Mur-En, the,—a river issuing from the mountains of Būldān Kā'ir and falling into the river of Ardīsh in Turkistān, 1148 n.

Yatār or Yitār,—a fort near the Junction of the Lā'ir-wāl with the Āb-i-Sind, 77 n, 78 n.

Yāsar or Yāras,—a fortress in Sijistān, 1028 n.

Yasd,—a town in the territory of Āzarbāijān, 296 n.

Yasdawāh or Zaudāh,—a dependency of Hirat, 287 n.

Yaswān,—a plain in the territory of Sind, 1047 n & . Also called Mirwān and Nirwān.

Yehu,—a mountain range of Khitā, 938 n.

Yellow Lake, the,—the Sārigh-Kol, of Badakhshān, lv.

Yellow River, the,—in Mongolia, 960 n.

Yellow Valley,—the Sārigh-Kol, in Badakhshān, lv.

Yengigent, 970 n, for Yangi-kent, which see.

Yenissai, the, 982 n, for the Jam or Kham-Marān.

Yen-king,—a city a little north of Peking, 958 n.

Yighar [I-ghūr],—a country of Turkistān, 267, 270. See under the I-ghār country.

Yitār or Yatār,—a fort near the Junction of the Lā'ir-wāl with the Āb-i-Sind, 77 n, 78 n.

Ylale, 998 n, for Ilāl, the fortress of Mīzandarān, which see.

Yughmā,—a city and territory in Turkistān, 902 n, 908 n, 935 n & , 1158 n & .

Yughmā-oul,—a city or town in Turkistān, 935 n & .

Yūnghāl,—a place in Mughūlistān, 1258 n & .

Yūnān, sea of,—the Mediterranean, 1223 n.

Yun-nan,—a tract of country in Tibbat, 1217 n, 1218 n, 1221 n.

Yurat. See under the Uluḡ Yurat or Asal Yurat.

Yūzhand or Ūzhand,—a city in Turkistān, 971 n.

## Z.

Zābil, 1020 n, wrong spelling of Zābul.

Zābul,—a district and town in the country of Ghūr, 309 n, 319 n & , 376, 880, 1020 n, 1022 n.

Zabulistan, 1017 n for Zabulistān, which see

Zābulistān,—a tract of country north-east and south-east of Ghaznūn, 88 n & , 144 n, 356 n, 1017 n, 1020 n. See also under Zawūlistān.

Zafarabād,—a city of Hindustān, 93 n & , 501 n.



uain,—a district in the country of Qhūr, 888.

uain-i-Diwar,—a district in the territory of Qhūr, in Khurāsān, 81, 74, 111, 185 n, 367, 317 n 5, 330 n 3, 334 n, 329 n, 350, 355 n 7, 374 and n 8, 386, 393, 394, 397, 402 n 7, 403 n, 1018 n. See also under Dāwar.

uain of Kusdār, 74. See under Kusdār.

ug, fortress of, 1072 n 4, same as Lang, which see.

ur-i-Margh,—a mountain of Mandagh in the country of Qhūr, 306 and n 4, 318, 331, 410 and n 5.

urān or Rasān,—a tract in the country of Qhūr, 336 n.

uraj, the capital city of the territory of Sijistān of Khurāsān, xxiv, 30 n 3, 163 n 7, 195 n 2, 309 n, 318 n 6, 1123 n, 1123 n.

urir,—a plain in the territory of Qhūr, 372 and n 8.

uristān,—a district in the country of Qhūr, 319 n 5.

ur-koh,—a fortress in the Kuhistān of the Mulāhidah, 1192 n.

urnak,—a town of Māwarī-un-Nahr, 975 n 5.

urdiak or Yasdawiah,—a dependency of Hirāt, 367 n.

Zāwah,—a town in the district of Nighāpūr, 909 n, 1195 n.

Zawālin,—a district in the territory of Balkh, in Khurāsān, 426 n 6 1018 n.

Zāwul, 319 n 5, 660. Same as Zābul, which see.

Zāwalistān,—another name of the territory of Sijistān, in Khurāsān, 16, 21, 67 n 3, 71, 87 n, 68 n 2, 103, 106, 184 n, 367, 317 and n 4, 330, 355 n, 1017 n, 1020 n, 1119, 1120 n 2, 1133.

Zawzan, a town in the province of Nighāpūr, in Khurāsān, 177 n 6, 258 n, 266 n, 281 n 5, 282 n 7, 283 and nn 8 and 9, 286 n 7, 287 n.

Zerān,—a darah in the province of Karmān east of Shalūzān, 499 n.

Zerni, the ancient capital of the country of Qhūr, 1057 n 4.

Zikht or Rikht, 1197 n 3, for the fortress of Sar-i-Takht in the Kuhistān.

Zinjān,—a town of Azarbāijān, 995 n.

Zinjān,—a town in the territory of Khurāsān, xxix, 321 n 5.

Zubāk-i-Mārān, castle of,—a fortress near Bāmān, 304 n 1, 1035 n.

Zūmīght,—a town in the province of Karmān, 499 n.

#### ERRATA

P. 7, for lines 5-7a substitute:—

Akbar-Nāmah, of Abu'l Faḡl 'Allāmī, the, 880 n 2, 880 n, 883 n, 888 n  
889 n, 884 n.

Akbar-Nāmah, of Faiḡī the Sarhindī, the, xvi.

P. 13, l. 42 b, *dele* p. 145 n 4, and add —

Ayās,—one of the officers of Malīk Shāh, son of Rukn-ud-dīn Bar-  
kiārūk, the Saljūki sovereign, 145 n 4.

Dr. ZAKIR HUSAIN



